# Contents

**Overview** ........................................................................................................................................ 1 - 1

**Introduction** ................................................................................................................................... 1 - 1

**Chapter 1: Magnet Power**
- The Wang Shum Ho permanent magnet motor generator .......................................................... 1 - 7
- The Bedini permanent magnet motor ......................................................................................... 1 - 8
- The Ecklin-Brown generator ...................................................................................................... 1 - 9
- The Phi-Transformer generator ................................................................................................. 1 - 11
- The Dave Squires variation of the Phi-Transformer ................................................................... 1 - 11
- The Howard Johnson magnet motor ......................................................................................... 1 - 13
- The 'Carousel' permanent magnet motor ................................................................................ 1 - 16
- The Robert Tracy permanent magnet motor ............................................................................. 1 - 18
- The Ben Teal electromagnet motor ............................................................................................. 1 - 18
- The Jines permanent magnet motor .......................................................................................... 1 - 20
- The Invention Intelligence permanent magnet motor .............................................................. 1 - 21
- Magnetic lines of force from a standard bar magnet ................................................................. 1 - 22

**Chapter 2: Moving Pulsed Systems**
- The Adams Motor ..................................................................................................................... 2 - 1
- The Teruo Kawai Motor .............................................................................................................. 2 - 7
- Self-Powered 800 watt Generator ............................................................................................. 2 - 8
- The Muller Motor ...................................................................................................................... 2 - 9
- The RotoVerter ......................................................................................................................... 2 - 14
- Alternator details ....................................................................................................................... 2 - 34

**Chapter 3: Motionless Pulsed systems**
- Graham Gunderson's Solid-State Electric Generator ................................................................. 3 - 1
- Charles Flynn's devices .............................................................................................................. 3 - 8
- The MEG ................................................................................................................................... 3 - 10
- Elin Pelin and Valeri Ivanov's generator ................................................................................... 3 - 12
- Floyd Sweet's VTA .................................................................................................................. 3 - 14
- Dan Davidson's Acoustically-coupled Generator .................................................................... 3 - 15
- Pavel Imris' Optical Generator ............................................................................................... 3 - 16
- Michael Ognyanov's Self-powered Power Pack ...................................................................... 3 - 18
- The Michael Meyer and Yves Mace Isotopic Generator ......................................................... 3 - 19
- The Colman / Seddon-Gilliespie Generator ............................................................................. 3 - 20
- Hans Coler's “Stromerzeuger” ................................................................................................. 3 - 22

**Chapter 4: Gravitational Pulsed Systems**
- The Chas Campbell System ...................................................................................................... 4 - 1
- The Bedini Pulsed Flywheel ...................................................................................................... 4 - 6
- The Dale Simpson Gravity Wheel ............................................................................................ 4 - 9
- The Veljko milkovic Pendulum / Lever system ...................................................................... 4 - 11
- The Dale Simpson Hinged-Plate System .................................................................................. 4 - 12
- The Murilo Luciano Gravity Chain ......................................................................................... 4 - 14

**Chapter 5: Energy-Tapping Pulsed Systems**
- Frank Prentice's horizontal wire system .................................................................................. 5 - 1
- Dave Lawton's Water Fuel Cell ............................................................................................... 5 - 3
- John Bedini's Battery Pulse-Charger ....................................................................................... 5 - 4
### Chapter 6: Battery-Charging Pulsed Systems
- Bedini Pulsing .................................................................................................................. 6 - 1
- Ron Pugh’s Charger ........................................................................................................... 6 - 3
- The Self-charging Variation ................................................................................................. 6 - 16
- The Tesla Switch ................................................................................................................ 6 - 18

### Chapter 7: Aerial Systems
- Nikola Tesla’s System ....................................................................................................... 7 - 1
- Thomas Henry Moray’s System ......................................................................................... 7 - 2
- Herman Plauston’s System ................................................................................................. 7 - 6
- Roy Meyer’s System .......................................................................................................... 7 - 8

### Chapter 8: Self-Powered Engines
- The Leroy Rogers Engine ................................................................................................. 8 - 1
- The Eber Van Valkinburg Engine ....................................................................................... 8 - 18
- The Clem Engine .............................................................................................................. 8 - 21
- The Papp Engine ............................................................................................................. 8 - 23
- The Robert Britt Engine .................................................................................................. 8 - 59

### Chapter 9: Passive Systems
- Hans Coler device ........................................................................................................... 9 - 1
- Thomas Trawoeger’s pyramid ......................................................................................... 9 - 3
- The Joe Cell ...................................................................................................................... 9 - 14

### Chapter 10: Vehicle Systems
- The Smack’s Booster ....................................................................................................... 10 - 1
- Other Boosters ............................................................................................................... 10 - 16
- Dealing with the Oxygen Sensor .................................................................................... 10 - 25
- The Zach West Electrolyser ............................................................................................. 10 - 49
- The Bob Boyce Electrolyser ............................................................................................. 10 - 65
- Dave Lawton’s Meyer Fuel Cell replication .................................................................. 10 - 103
- Water injection systems ................................................................................................. 10 - 118
- Mileage improving devices .............................................................................................. 10 - 130
- The FireStorm spark plug ............................................................................................... 10 - 131
- The Water Vapour Injection system ............................................................................. 10 - 132
- The Ram Implosion wing ................................................................................................ 10 - 134
- Fuelsavers ..................................................................................................................... 10 - 134
- Wyoming Instruments .................................................................................................... 10 - 135
- High mpg carburettors .................................................................................................... 10 - 136
- The Weird Nature of Water ............................................................................................. 10 - 136

### Chapter 11: Other devices
- The Tesla Generators ...................................................................................................... 11 - 1
- The Aspden device .......................................................................................................... 11 - 3
- Paulo & Alexandra Correa .............................................................................................. 11 - 15
- Professor Konstantin Meyl ............................................................................................. 11 - 16
- Tesla’s MHD unit ............................................................................................................ 11 - 16
- The Unified Field Theory ................................................................................................. 11 - 18
- Tesla’s Dynamic Theory of Gravity ............................................................................. 11 - 20
- John R. R. Searle ............................................................................................................ 11 - 21
- The Gravity Wave Detector ........................................................................................... 11 - 21
- The Butch Lafonte Motor / Generator .......................................................................... 11 - 23
- The Joseph Newman Motor ........................................................................................... 11 - 29
- Daniel Cook’s Induction Coil ......................................................................................... 11 - 29
Chapter 12: Electronics tutorial
Voltage ........................................................................................................ 12 - 1
Resistance .............................................................................................. 12 - 2
Semiconductors - Transistors ................................................................. 12 - 10
Diodes ...................................................................................................... 12 - 15
Alternating Current ............................................................................... 12 - 17
Coils (Inductors) .................................................................................... 12 - 17
The Ben Teal Motor ............................................................................... 12 - 19
Transformers .......................................................................................... 12 - 21
Rectification and Power Supplies ............................................................ 12 - 22
Multivibrators ......................................................................................... 12 - 24
The Bistable .......................................................................................... 12 - 24
The Monostable ...................................................................................... 12 - 25
The Astable ............................................................................................ 12 - 26
Inverters ................................................................................................. 12 - 27
Digital Logic and Truth Tables ................................................................. 12 - 27
The NAND gate and Gating .................................................................. 12 - 29
The Latch ............................................................................................... 12 - 32
The NE555 Timer Chip .......................................................................... 12 - 36
The 741 Op-amp Chip ........................................................................... 12 - 38
The SCR ................................................................................................. 12 - 42
The Triac ............................................................................................... 12 - 43
The 4022 Divide-By-Eight Chip ............................................................... 12 - 44
Capacitors .............................................................................................. 12 - 45
Prototype Construction ......................................................................... 12 - 47
Test Equipment ..................................................................................... 12 - 50
Power Supply Unit ............................................................................... 12 - 54
The Oscilloscope ................................................................................... 12 - 56
Chapter 13: Doubtful devices
Paul Baumann’s “Thestakia” ................................................................. 13 - 1
The Homopolar or “N-Machine” ............................................................ 13 - 2
The “Romag” and “Mini-Romag” Generators ........................................... 13 - 4
Cold Fusion ............................................................................................ 13 - 7
Moller’s Atomic Hydrogen Generator .................................................... 13 - 7
Muammer Yaldiz’s “Ocean Star” Electrical Generator ......................... 13 - 9
Jesse McQueen ..................................................................................... 13 - 15
The Nitro Cell (“D18”) .......................................................................... 13 - 18
The HydroStar and HydroGen ............................................................... 13 - 36
Hydrogen from Aluminium .................................................................... 13 - 39
Francois Cornish .................................................................................. 13 - 40
Ultrasonic water-splitting ....................................................................... 13 - 41
Chapter 14: Renewable Energy devices
Heaters .................................................................................................... 14 - 1
Eugene Frenette ..................................................................................... 14 - 3
Eugene Perkins ..................................................................................... 14 - 4
Home-build Wind Generator ................................................................. 14 - 6
The Peter Davey Heater ......................................................................... 14 - 20
Solar ovens ............................................................................................ 14 - 22
Appendix
US and UK Wire sizes and capacities ................................................... A - 1
Frank Fecera’s permanent magnet motor patent .................................... A - 2
Howard Johnson’s permanent magnet motor patent ............................ A - 46
Harold Ewing’s Carousel permanent magnet-generator patent ............... A - 56
The Pavel Imris minimal power lighting system patent ......................... A - 74
The Colman/Seddon-Gillespie 70-year battery patent ............................. A - 83
The Jon Sok An Lenz-less electrical generator patent .............................. A - 87
The Molina Martinez self-powered electrical generator patent ................ A - 100
Michael Ognyanov’s solid-state electrical generator patent .................... A - 113
Edwin Gray’s electric motor patent .......................................................... A - 119
Edwin Gray’s electric power supply patent .............................................. A - 142
The Adams-Aspden electrical motor-generator patent ......................... A - 148
William Barbat’s self-powered electrical-generator patent ................... A - 164
John Reardon’s AC generator patent ..................................................... A - 196
Geoffrey Spence’s self-powered electrical-generator patent ................. A - 213
Robert Alexander’s COP = 2.93 electrical generator patent ................. A - 228
Shigeaki Hayasaka’s electrical generator patent .................................... A - 236
Larry Jamison’s electrical generator patent application ....................... A - 252
Teresa Kuai’s COP>1 electric motor patent ........................................ A - 259
Joseph Newman’s Energy Generator patent ......................................... A - 280
Philip Brody’s very high output ceramic solar devices patent ............... A - 298
Charles Flynn’s controlled magnetic devices patent ......................... A - 338
The Motionless Electromagnetic Generator patent .............................. A - 411
Dan Davidson’s acoustic-magnetic electrical generator patent .......... A - 427
John Bedini’s battery-charging patent .................................................. A - 434
John Bedini’s motor-generator patent ................................................ A - 445
John Bedini’s pulse-charging system patent ......................................... A - 456
Richard Weir and Carl Nelson’s battery replacement patent ............... A - 470
Hermann Plauston’s aerial power systems patent ................................ A - 485
Roy Meyer’s Electricity-producing device patent ................................. A - 524
Paulo and Alexandra Correa’s free-electricity patent ......................... A - 532
Paulo and Alexandra Correa’s energy conversion patent .................... A - 561
The Mead-Nachamkin ZPE to electricity conversion patent ............... A - 603
Stanley Meyer’s Water Fuel patent 4,936,961 ...................................... A - 620
Stanley Meyer’s hydrogen injection system for vehicles patent 4,389,981 A - 627
Stanley Meyer’s hydrogen gas burner patent 4,421,474 ....................... A - 637
Stanley Meyer’s hydrogen generation and enhancement patent 5,149,407 A - 642
Stanley Meyer’s water fuel generator patent CA 2,067,735 ................. A - 659
Stanley Meyer’s WFC control circuitry patent WO 92/07861 ............... A - 670
Stephen Meyer’s water-splitting patent application 2005/0246059 ...... A - 680
Henry Pughar’s water-splitting patent 4,392,230 ................................ A - 689
Shigeta Hasebe’s spiral electrolyser patent ........................................ A - 719
Stephen Chambers’ hydroxy generator patent ..................................... A - 725
Charles Garrett’s water carburettor patent ........................................ A - 740
Archie Blue’s electrolyser patent ....................................................... A - 748
Ruggero Santilli’s plasma arc electrolysis patent ................................. A - 754
Chak Chang’s low-voltage low-temperature plasma patent ................ A - 764
Juan Aguerlo’s water-engine patent application ................................ A - 823
Stephen Horvath’s water-powered car patent .................................. A - 830
Christopher Eccles’ water-splitting cell patent .................................. A - 857
Spiro Spiros’ COP>1 electrolyser patent ........................................... A - 864
Henry Paine’s hydroxy gas conversion patent .................................. A - 901
Boris Volosh’s gravity drive patent .................................................... A - 904
Charles Pogue’s first high-mpg carburettor patent .............................. A - 919
Charles Pogue’s second high-mpg carburettor patent ......................... A - 927
Charles Pogue’s third high-mpg carburettor patent ............................ A - 932
Ivor Newberry’s high-mpg carburettor patent ................................... A - 940
Robert Shelton’s high-mpg carburettor patent .................................. A - 945
Harold Schwartz’s high-mpg carburettor patent ................................. A - 949
Oliver Tucker’s high-mpg carburettor patent .................................... A - 952
Thomas Ogle’s high-mpg carburettor patent ...................................... A - 955
Web links to Scientific Papers ......................................................... A - 968
Web links to Videos ........................................................................... A - 969

Alphabetical Index of Devices

AC generator patent, John Reardon ..................................................... A - 196
Acoustic Electrical Generator, Dan Davidson ......................................... 3 - 15
Acoustic-magnetic electrical generator patent, Dan Davidson ........... A - 427
Aerial power systems patent, Hermann Plauston .............................. A - 485
Aerial system, Frank Prentice ................................................................. 5 - 1
Aerial system, Hermann Plauston .......................................................... 7 - 6
Aerial system, Nikola Tesla .................................................................... 7 - 1
Aerial system, Roy Meyers .................................................................... 7 - 8
Aerial system, Thomas Henry Moray ..................................................... 7 - 2
Alternator Design, Prof. Kevin Sullivan .................................................. 2 - 34
Aspden Efect, Harold Aspden ................................................................. 5 - 23
Atomic Hydrogen generator, William Lyne ........................................... 13 - 7
Battery-charging patent, John Bedini .................................................... A - 434
Battery-pulser, John Bedini .................................................................. 5 - 4
Battery-pulser, John Bedini .................................................................. 6 - 1
Battery-pulser, Ron Pugh ..................................................................... 6 - 3
Battery replacement patent, Richard Weir and Carl Nelson ................. A - 470
Battery technology, Ronald Knight ....................................................... 6 - 3
Bi-filar Coil, Nikola Tesla ..................................................................... 5 - 25
Boosters, Various ................................................................................. 10 - 16
Clem engine, Richard Clem ................................................................. 8 - 22
Cold electricity capture, Dave Lawton .................................................. 5 - 10
Cold electricity capture, Dave Lawton .................................................. 10 - 118
Compressed-air engine, Leroy Rogers .................................................. 8 - 1
Compressed-air/oil engine, Eber Van Valkenburg ............................... 8 - 18
Controlled magnetic devices patent, Charles Flynn .............................. A - 338
COP = 2.93 electrical generator patent, Robert Alexander ................. A - 228
COP>1 electric motor patent, Teruo Kawai ........................................... A - 259
COP>1 electrolyser patent, Spiro Spiros ............................................... A - 864
Davey water heater, Peter Davey ......................................................... 14 - 20
Electrical energy from air, Nikola Tesla ............................................... 11 - 1
Electrical free-energy generation, Harold Aspden .............................. 11 - 3
Electrical generator, Alfred Hubbard ................................................... 5 - 28
Electrical generator, Alberto Molina-Martinez ...................................... 5 - 27
Electrical generator, Ecklin-Brown ...................................................... 1 - 9
Electrical generator, Ecklin-Brown ...................................................... 2 - 19
Electrical generator, Graham Gunderson ............................................ 3 - 1
Electrical generator patent application, Larry Jamison ....................... A - 252
Electrical generator, Meyer-Mace ....................................................... 3 - 19
Electrical generator, self-powered ...................................................... 2 - 8
Electrical generator patent, Shigeaki Hayasaka .................................... A - 236
Electrical generator coil, Stephen Mark ............................................... 5 - 27
Electrical motor-generator patent, Adams-Aspden .............................. A - 148
Electrical power pack, Michael Ognyanov .......................................... 3 - 18
Electricity-producing device patent, Roy Meyers ............................... A - 524
Electric motor, Ben Teal ..................................................................... 1 - 19
Electric motor, Ben Teal ..................................................................... 4 - 3
Electric motor patent, Edwin Gray ...................................................... A - 119
Electrical motor, Bill Muller ................................................................. 2 - 9
Electrical motor, Edwin Gray .............................................................. 5 - 21
Electric motor, Robert Adams ............................................................. 2 - 1
Electric motor, Teruo Kawai ............................................................... 2 - 7
Electric power supply patent, Edwin Gray .......................................... A - 142
Electrolyser, Bob Boyce ..................................................................... 5 - 16
Electrolyser, Bob Boyce ..................................................................... 10 - 65
Electrolyser, Zach West ...................................................................... 10 - 28
Electrolyser patent, Archie Blue ......................................................... A - 748
Energy-conversion patent, Paulo and Alexandra Correa .................... A - 561
Energy Generator patent, Joseph Newman ......................................... A - 280
FireStorm spark plug, Robert Krupa .................................................. 10 - 131
Francois Cornish hydrogen generator ................................................ 13 - 40
Free-electricity patent, Paulo and Alexandra Correa ......................... A - 532
Fuelsavers ......................................................................................... 10 - 134
Gravity-chain device, Murilo Luciano ................................................ 4 - 14
Gravity drive patent, Boris Volfsen .................................................... A - 904
Gravity-tapping generator, Chas Campbell ......................................... 4 - 1
Gravity Wave Detector, Dave Lawton ................................................ 11 - 21
Gravity wheel, Dale Simpson ................................................................. 4 - 9
Heaters .................................................................................................. 14 - 1
High-mileage carburators ..................................................................... 10 - 136
High-mpg carburettor patent, Charles Pogue .................................. A - 919
High-mpg carburettor patent, Charles Pogue .................................. A - 927
High-mpg carburettor patent, Charles Pogue .................................. A - 932
High-mpg carburettor patent, Harold Schwartz ............................... A - 949
High-mpg carburettor patent, Ivor Newberry .................................. A - 946
High-mpg carburettor patent, Oliver Tucker ................................. A - 952
High-mpg carburettor patent, Robert Shelton ................................. A - 945
High-mpg carburettor patent, Thomas Ogle ................................. A - 955
Hinged-plate gravity device, Dale Simpson ....................................... 4 - 12
Homopolar generator, Michael Faraday ............................................ 13 - 2
Hydrogen from Aluminium ................................................................. 13 - 39
Hydrogen gas burner patent 4,421,474, Stanley Meyer .................. A - 637
Hydrogen generation and enhancement patent 5,149,407, Stanley Meyer A - 642
Hydrogen injection system for vehicles patent 4,389,981, Stanley Meyer A - 627
HydroStar and HydroGen devices ...................................................... 13 - 36
Hydroxy gas conversion patent, Henry Paine ................................. A - 901
Hydroxy generator patent, Stephen Chambers .............................. A - 725
Induction Coil generator, Daniel Cook .............................................. 11 - 29
Inert-gas engine, Josef Papp ................................................................. 8 - 23
Inert-gas engine, Robert Britt ................................................................. 8 - 60
Inverter system, Jesse McQueen ......................................................... 13 - 15
Joe Cell, Joe Nobel ............................................................................. 9 - 14
Joseph Newman Motor, Joseph Newman ........................................ 11 - 29
Lead-out energy, Lawrence Tseung .................................................. 4 - 1
Lenz-less electrical generator patent, Jon Sok An .......................... A - 87
Long-life battery, Colman / Seddon-gillespie ................................... 3 - 20
Low-voltage low-temperature plasma patent application, Chak Chang A - 764
Magnet motor-generator, permanent 5kW ........................................ 1 - 7
Magnet motor, Bedini ......................................................................... 1 - 8
Magnet motor, Carousel ..................................................................... 1 - 16
Magnet-generator patent, Carousel .................................................... A - 56
Magnet motor patent, Frank Fecera ................................................... A - 2
Magnet motor, Howard Johnson ......................................................... 1 - 13
Magnet motor patent, Howard Johnson ............................................ A - 46
Magnet motor, Invention Intelligence (India) .................................. 1 - 22
Magnet motor, John Jines ................................................................. 1 - 20
Magnet motor, Robert Tracy ................................................................. 1 - 18
Magnetic flux, Charles Flynn ............................................................... 3 - 8
Magnetohydrodynamic drive, Nikola Tesla ................................... 11 - 17
MEG, Tom Beardon et al. ................................................................. 3 - 9
Minimal power lighting system patent, Pavel Imris ....................... A - 74
Motionless Electromagnetic Generator patent .................................. A - 411
Motor-generator, Butch Lafonte ........................................................ 11 - 23
Motor-generator patent, John Bedini ................................................. A - 445
MPG improving devices, Stan Meyer ............................................... 10 - 130
N-machine generator, Michael Faraday ........................................... 13 - 2
Nitro Cell .......................................................................................... 13 - 19
Ocean-Star generator, Muammer Yaldiz ......................................... 13 - 9
Optical Amplifier, Pavel Imris ........................................................... 3 - 16
Oxygen sensor information ............................................................... 10 - 25
Pancake Coil, Nikola Tesla ................................................................. 5 - 26
Pendulum/lever device, Veljko Milkovic ........................................... 4 - 11
Phi Transformer, electrical generator .............................................. 1 - 8
Plasma arc electrolysis patent, Ruggero Santilli ............................. A - 754
Power tube, Edwin Gray (Marvin Cole) ............................................. 5 - 17
Pulse-charging system patent, John Bedini ..................................... A - 456
Pulsed flywheel generator, Chas Campbell ...................................... 4 - 1
Pulsed flywheel generator, John Bedini ............................................ 4 - 6
Pulsed flywheel generator, Jim Watson .............................................. 4 - 6
Pulsed generator, Joseph Newman .................................................. 4 - 7
Pyramid, Thomas Trawoeger .............................................................. 9 - 3
Radium power generation, Nikola Tesla ............................................. 11 - 2
Ram Implosion Wing, Robert Patterson ............................................. 10 - 134
Romag generator, Magnetic Energy .................................................. 13 - 4
RotoVerter, Hector Torres, ................................................................. 2 - 14
RotoVerter, Phil Wood, ................................................................. 2 - 20
RotoVerter, Extra energy collection (DK), ........................................ 2 - 22
RotoVerter, Extra energy collection (PW), ........................................ 2 - 29
Searle Effect Device, John R. R. Searle ............................................. 11 - 21
Self-powered electrical generator patent, Geoffrey Spence .......... A - 213
Self-powered electrical generator patent, Molina Martinez .......... A - 100
Self-powered electrical generator patent, William Barbat .......... A - 164
Seventy-year battery patent, Coleman/Seddon-Gillespie .......... A - 83
Smack's Booster, Eletrik ................................................................. 10 - 1
Solar ovens, BYU ........................................................................... 14 - 22
Solid-state electrical generator patent, Michael Oyganov ........ A - 113
Spiral electrolyser patent, Shigeta Hasebe ................................... A - 719
Squires electrical generator design .................................................. 1 - 11
Stromerzeuger, Hans Coler ............................................................. 3 - 22
Stromerzeuger, Hans Coler ............................................................. 9 - 1
Tesla Coil, Nikola Tesla ................................................................. 5 - 25
Tesla Coil, Correas ........................................................................... 11 - 15
Tesla Switch, Nikola Tesla ............................................................. 5 - 5
Testatika, Paul Baumann ................................................................. 13 - 1
Thyristor Tester, circuit, ................................................................. 2 - 25
Ultrasonic hydrogen generator ....................................................... 13 - 41
Very high output ceramic solar devices patent, Philip Brody .... A - 298
Vortex tube, .................................................................................. 8 - 17
VTA, Floyd Sweet ........................................................................... 3 - 14
VTA, Floyd Sweet ........................................................................... 5 - 30
Waste spark handling ................................................................. 10 - 56
Waste spark handling ................................................................. 10 - 98
Water carburettor patent, Charles Garrett ................................. A - 740
Water-engine patent application, Juan Aguero ......................... A - 823
Water Fuel Cell, Dave Lawton ...................................................... 5 - 3
Water Fuel Cell, Dave Lawton ...................................................... 10 - 103
Water fuel generator patent CA 2,067,735, Stanley Meyer ........ A - 659
Water Fuel patent 4,936,961, Stanley Meyer ............................... A - 620
Water-powered car patent, Stephen Horvath ................. A - 830
Water-splitting cell patent, Christopher Eccles ....................... A - 857
Water-splitting patent application 2005/0246059, Stephen Meyer A - 680
Water-splitting patent 4,392,230, Henry Puharich .................... A - 689
Water vapour injection systems ................................................... 10 - 132
Water injection systems, Stan Meyer .......................................... 10 - 118
WFC control circuitry patent WO 92/07861, Stanley Meyer ........ A - 670
Wind generator, Dan Bartmann and Dan Fink ......................... 14 - 6
Wire sizes and capacities .............................................................. A - 1
ZPE to electricity conversion patent, Mead-Nachamkin ........ A - 603

Alphabetical Index of People

Adams, Robert ............................................................................. 2 - 1
Adams, Robert ............................................................................. A - 148
Aguero, Juan ................................................................................ A - 823
Alexander, Robert ......................................................................... A - 228
An, Jon Sok .................................................................................. A - 87
Andruczyk, David ......................................................................... 10 - 27
Armour, Nathren .......................................................................... 10 - 119
Aspden, Harold ............................................................................... 2 - 5
Aspden, Harold ............................................................................. 5 - 23
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aspden, Harold</td>
<td>11 - 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aspden, Harold</td>
<td>A - 148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barbat, William</td>
<td>A - 164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bartmann, Dan</td>
<td>14 - 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baumann, Paul</td>
<td>13 - 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bearden, Tom</td>
<td>3 - 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bearden, Tom</td>
<td>A - 411</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bedini, John</td>
<td>1 - 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bedini, John</td>
<td>4 - 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bedini, John</td>
<td>5 - 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bedini, John</td>
<td>6 - 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bedini, John</td>
<td>A - 434</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bedini, John</td>
<td>A - 445</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bedini, John</td>
<td>A - 456</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blue, Archie</td>
<td>A - 748</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boyce, Bob</td>
<td>1 - 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boyce, Bob</td>
<td>5 - 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brinkley, William</td>
<td>13 - 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Britt, Robert</td>
<td>8 - 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brody, Philip</td>
<td>A - 298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campbell, Chas</td>
<td>4 - 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chambers, Stephen</td>
<td>A - 725</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chang, Chak</td>
<td>A - 764</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clem, Richard</td>
<td>8 - 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coe, Graham</td>
<td>9 - 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cole, Marvin</td>
<td>5 - 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coler, Hans</td>
<td>3 - 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coler, Hans</td>
<td>9 - 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colman, Harold</td>
<td>3 - 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colman, Harold</td>
<td>A - 83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cook, Daniel</td>
<td>11 - 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cook, Nick</td>
<td>5 - 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cornish, Francois</td>
<td>13 - 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Correa, Paulo and Alexandra</td>
<td>11 - 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Correa, Paulo and Alexandra</td>
<td>A - 561</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crawford, Adam</td>
<td>10 - 119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Davey, Peter</td>
<td>14 - 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Davidson, Dan</td>
<td>3 - 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Davidson, Dan</td>
<td>A - 427</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drbal, Karel</td>
<td>9 - 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eagle Research</td>
<td>10 - 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eagle Research</td>
<td>10 - 137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eccles, Christopher</td>
<td>A - 857</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecklin, John W.</td>
<td>1 - 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrodyne Corporation</td>
<td>5 - 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EVGRAY, Yahoo forum.</td>
<td>2 - 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ewing, Harold</td>
<td>1 - 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ewing, Harold</td>
<td>A - 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Faraday, Michael</td>
<td>5 - 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Faraday, Michael</td>
<td>13 - 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fecera, Frank</td>
<td>A - 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fink, Dan</td>
<td>14 - 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flynn, Charles</td>
<td>3 - 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flynn, Charles</td>
<td>A - 338</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garrett, Charles</td>
<td>A - 740</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gray, Edwin</td>
<td>5 - 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gray, Edwin</td>
<td>A - 119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gray, Edwin</td>
<td>A - 142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gunderson, Graham</td>
<td>3 - 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hasebe, Shigeta</td>
<td>10 - 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hasebe, Shigeta</td>
<td>A - 719</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hayasaka, Shigeaki</td>
<td>A - 236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hayes, James</td>
<td>3 - 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Page Numbers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Henry, Dr Joseph</td>
<td>5 - 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ho, Wang Shum</td>
<td>1 - 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hodowanec, Gregory</td>
<td>11 - 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holdgate, Ed</td>
<td>10 - 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horvath, Stephen</td>
<td>A - 830</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hubbard, Alfred</td>
<td>5 - 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrogen Garage</td>
<td>10 - 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imris, Pavel</td>
<td>3 - 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imris, Pavel</td>
<td>A - 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invention Intelligence (India)</td>
<td>1 - 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jamison, Larry</td>
<td>A - 252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jines, John</td>
<td>1 - 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Johnson, Howard</td>
<td>1 - 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Johnson, Howard</td>
<td>A - 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kawai, Teruo</td>
<td>2 - 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kawai, Teruo</td>
<td>A - 259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kenny, James</td>
<td>3 - 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>King, Moray B.</td>
<td>7 - 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knight, Ronald</td>
<td>6 - 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kousoulides, David</td>
<td>2 - 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Krupa, Robert</td>
<td>10 - 131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lafonte, Butch</td>
<td>11 - 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lawton, Dave</td>
<td>3 - 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lawton, Dave</td>
<td>5 - 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lawton, Dave</td>
<td>5 - 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lawton, Dave</td>
<td>10 - 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lawton, Dave</td>
<td>11 - 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lindemann, Peter</td>
<td>5 - 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luciano, Murildo</td>
<td>4 - 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lyne, William</td>
<td>13 - 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mace, Yves</td>
<td>3 - 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark, Stephen</td>
<td>5 - 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Martinez, Molina</td>
<td>A - 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marvin Cole</td>
<td>5 - 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maynard, Roger</td>
<td>10 - 132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>McQueen, Jesse</td>
<td>13 - 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mead, Franklin</td>
<td>A - 603</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meyer, Michael</td>
<td>3 - 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meyer, Stanley</td>
<td>10 - 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meyer, Stanley</td>
<td>10 - 118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meyer, Stanley</td>
<td>A - 620</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meyer, Stanley</td>
<td>A - 627</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meyer, Stanley</td>
<td>A - 637</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meyer, Stanley</td>
<td>A - 642</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meyer, Stanley</td>
<td>A - 659</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meyer, Stanley</td>
<td>A - 670</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meyer, Stanley</td>
<td>A - 680</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meyers, Roy</td>
<td>7 - 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meyers, Roy</td>
<td>A - 524</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Milkovic, Veljko</td>
<td>4 - 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Molina-Martinez, Alberto</td>
<td>5 - 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moller, Nikolas</td>
<td>13 - 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moore, Kenneth</td>
<td>3 - 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moore, Dr. Terry</td>
<td>11 - 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moray, Thomas Henry</td>
<td>5 - 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moray, Thomas Henry</td>
<td>7 - 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muller, Bill</td>
<td>2 - 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nachamkin, Jack</td>
<td>A - 603</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naudin, Jean-Louis</td>
<td>13 - 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nelson, Carl</td>
<td>A - 470</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Newberry, Ivor</td>
<td>A - 940</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Newman, Joseph</td>
<td>4 - 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Newman, Joseph</td>
<td>11 - 29</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Newman, Joseph ............................................................................................................. A - 280
Nobel, Joe .......................................................................................................................... 9 - 14
Ogle, Thomas .................................................................................................................. A - 955
Ognyanov, Michael ........................................................................................................ 3 - 18
Ognyanov, Michael ......................................................................................................... A - 113
Paine, Henry .................................................................................................................... A - 901
Papp, Josef ......................................................................................................................... 8 - 23
Patrick, Stephen ................................................................................................................ 3 - 9
Patterson, Robert ............................................................................................................. 10 - 134
Plauston, Hermann .......................................................................................................... A - 83
Plauston, Hermann .......................................................................................................... 7 - 6
Pogue, Charles ................................................................................................................... A - 485
Pogue, Charles ................................................................................................................... A - 919
Pogue, Charles ................................................................................................................... A - 927
Pogue, Charles ................................................................................................................... A - 932
Prentice, Frank ................................................................................................................... 5 - 1
Pugh, Ron ............................................................................................................................ 6 - 3
Puharich, Henry .................................................................................................................. A - 689
Reardon, John .................................................................................................................... A - 196
Rogers, Leroy ..................................................................................................................... 8 - 1
Santilli, Ruggero ............................................................................................................... A - 754
Schwartz, Harold ............................................................................................................. A - 949
Searle, John R. R. ............................................................................................................. 11 - 21
Seddon-Gillespie, Ronald ................................................................................................. 3 - 20
Seddon-Gillespie, Ronald ................................................................................................. A - 83
Shelton, Robert ................................................................................................................... A - 945
Simpson, Dale .................................................................................................................... 4 - 9
Simpson, Dale .................................................................................................................... 4 - 12
Spence, Geoffrey .............................................................................................................. A - 213
Spiros, Spiro ..................................................................................................................... A - 864
Squires, Dave .................................................................................................................... 1 - 11
Stevens, Peter .................................................................................................................... 9 - 14
Sullivan, Prof. Kevin ........................................................................................................ 2 - 34
Sweet, Floyd ....................................................................................................................... 3 - 14
Sweet, Floyd ....................................................................................................................... 5 - 30
Teal, Ben ............................................................................................................................. 1 - 19
Teal, Ben ............................................................................................................................. 4 - 3
Tesla, Nikola ....................................................................................................................... 5 - 5
Tesla, Nikola ....................................................................................................................... 5 - 20
Tesla, Nikola ....................................................................................................................... 5 - 22
Tesla, Nikola ....................................................................................................................... 7 - 1
Tesla, Nikola ....................................................................................................................... 11 - 1
Tesla, Nikola ....................................................................................................................... 11 - 17
Thomson, Elihu .................................................................................................................. 5 - 23
Torres, Hector ..................................................................................................................... 2 - 14
Tracy, Robert ...................................................................................................................... 1 - 18
Trawoeger, Thomas ......................................................................................................... 9 - 3
Tseung, Lawrence .............................................................................................................. 4 - 1
Tucker, Oliver ..................................................................................................................... A - 952
Van Valkenburg, Eber ....................................................................................................... 8 - 18
Vassilatos, Gerry ............................................................................................................... 5 - 22
Volfson, Boris ..................................................................................................................... A - 904
Watson, Jim ....................................................................................................................... 4 - 6
Weir, Richard .................................................................................................................... A - 470
West, Zach ......................................................................................................................... 10 - 28
Wiseman, George ............................................................................................................. 10 - 137
Wood, Phil ......................................................................................................................... 2 - 20
Wood, Phil ......................................................................................................................... 2 - 29
Yaldiz, Muammer ............................................................................................................. 13 - 9
Zorzi, Kim ......................................................................................................................... 8 - 1
A Practical Guide to ‘Free-Energy’ Devices


Overview

This document contains most of what I have learned about this subject after researching it for a number of years. I am not trying to sell you anything, nor am I trying to convince you of anything. When I started looking into this subject, there was very little useful information and any that was around was buried deep in incomprehensible patents and documents. My purpose here is to make it easier for you to locate and understand some of the relevant material now available. What you believe is up to yourself and none of my business. Let me stress that almost all of the devices discussed in the following pages, are devices which I have not personally built and tested. It would take several lifetimes to do that and it would not be in any way a practical option. Consequently, although I believe everything said is fully accurate and correct, you should treat everything as being “hearsay” or opinion.

Some time ago, it was commonly believed that the world was flat and rested on the backs of four elephants and that when earthquakes shook the ground, it was the elephants getting restless. If you want to believe that, you are fully at liberty to do so, however, you can count me out as I don’t believe that.

The Wright brothers were told that it was impossible for aeroplanes to fly because they were heavier than air. That was a commonly believed view. The Wright brothers watched birds flying and since, without question, birds are considerably heavier than air, it was clear that the commonly held view was plain wrong. Working from that realisation, they developed aeroplanes which flew perfectly well.

The years passed, and the technology started by the Wright brothers and their careful scientific measurements and well-reasoned theory, advanced to become the “science” of aeronautics. This science was used extensively to design and build very successful aircraft and “aeronautics” gained the aura of being a “law”.

Unfortunately, somebody applied aeronautical calculations to the flight of bumblebees and discovered that according to aeronautics, bumblebees couldn’t possibly fly as their wings could not generate enough lift to get them off the ground. This was a problem, as it was perfectly possible to watch bees flying in a very competent manner. So, the “laws” of aeronautics said that bees can’t fly, but bees actually do fly.

Does that mean that the laws of aeronautics were no use? Certainly not - those “laws” had been used for years and proved their worth by producing excellent aircraft. What it did show was that the “laws” of aeronautics did not yet cover every case and needed to be extended to cover the way that bees fly, which is through lift generated by turbulent airflow.

It is very important to realise that what are described as scientific “laws” are just the best working theories at the present time and it is virtually certain that those “laws” will have to be upgraded and extended as further scientific observations are made and further facts discovered. Let’s hope those four elephants don’t get restless before we have a chance to learn a bit more!

Introduction

It should be stressed at this point, that this material is intended to provide you with information and only that. If you should decide, on the basis of what you read here, to build some device or other, you do so solely and entirely at your own risk and on your own responsibility. For example, if you build something in a heavy box and then drop it on your toe, then that is completely your own responsibility (you should learn to be more careful) and nobody other than yourself is in any way liable for your injury, or any loss of income caused while your toe is recovering. Let me amplify that by stating that I do not warrant that any device or system described in this document works as described, or in any other way, nor do I claim that any of the following information is useful in any way or that any device described is useful in any way or for any purpose whatsoever. Also, let me stress that I am not encouraging you to actually construct any device described here, and the fact that very detailed construction details are provided, must not be interpreted as my encouraging you to physically construct any device described in this document. You are welcome to consider this a work of fiction if you choose to do so.
I apologise if this presentation seems very elementary, but the intention is to make each description as simple as possible so that everybody can understand it, including people whose native language is not English. If you are not familiar with the basic principles of electronics, then please read the simple step-by-step electronics Tutorial in Appendix 1 which is intended to help complete beginners in the subject.

At this point in time - the early years of the twenty-first century - we have reached the point where we need to realise that some of the “laws” of science do not cover every case, and while they have been very useful in the past, they do need to be extended to cover some cases which have been left out until now.

One popular misconception is that you can’t get more energy out of a system than you put into it. That is wrong, because the sentence was worded carefully. Let me say it again and this time, emphasise the key words: “you can’t get more energy out of a system than you put into it”. If that were true, then it would be impossible to sail a yacht all the way around the world without burning any fuel, and that has been done many times and none of the driving energy came from the crews. If it were true, then a grain mill driven by a waterwheel would not be able to produce flour as the miller certainly does not push the millstones around himself. If that were true, then nobody would build windmills, or construct solar panels, or tidal power stations.

What the statement should say is “more energy can’t be taken out of a system than is put into it” and that is a very different statement. When sailing a yacht, the wind provides the driving force which makes the trip possible. Notice that, it is the environment providing the power and not you. The wind arrived without you having to do anything about it, and a lot less than 100% of the wind energy reaching the yacht actually becomes forward thrust, contributing to the voyage. A good deal of the energy arriving at the yacht ends up stretching the rigging, creating a wake, producing noise, pushing the helmsman, etc. etc. This idea of no more energy coming out of a system than goes into it, is called “The Law of Conservation of Energy” and it is perfectly right, in spite of the fact that it gets people confused.

“Free-Energy Devices” or “Zero-Point Energy Devices” are the names applied to systems which appear to produce a higher output power than their input power. There is a strong tendency for people to state that such a system is not possible since it contravenes the Law of Conservation of Energy. It doesn’t. If it did, and any such system was shown to work, then the “Law” would have to be modified to include the newly observed fact. No such change is necessary, it merely depends on your point of view.

For example, consider a crystal set radio receiver:

Looking at this in isolation, we appear to have a free-energy system which contradicts the Law of Conservation of Energy. It doesn’t, of course, but if you do not view the whole picture, you see a device which has only passive components and yet which (when the coil is of the correct size) causes the headphones to generate vibrations which reproduce recognisable speech and music. This looks like Energy Out with no Energy In.

The whole picture is:
Where the power is supplied to a nearby transmitter which generates radio waves which in turn, induce a small voltage in the aerial of the crystal set, which in turn, powers the headphones. The power in the headphones is far, far less than the power taken to drive the transmitter. There is most definitely, no conflict with the Law of Conservation of Energy. However, there is a quantity called the “Coefficient Of Performance” or “COP” for short. This is defined as the amount of power coming out of a system, divided by the amount of power that the operator has to put into that system to make it work. In the example above, while the efficiency of the crystal set radio is well below 100%, the COP is greater than 1. This is because the owner of the crystal radio set does not have to supply any power at all to make it work, and yet it outputs power in the form of sound. As the input power from the user, needed to make it work is zero, and the COP value is calculated by dividing the output power by this zero input power, the COP is actually infinity. Efficiency and COP are two different things. Efficiency can never exceed 100% and almost never gets anywhere near 100% due to the losses suffered by any practical system.

As another example, consider an electrical solar panel:

Again, viewed in isolation, this looks like (and actually is) a Free-Energy device if it is set up out of doors in daylight, as current is supplied to the load (radio, battery, fan, pump, or whatever) without the user providing any input power. Again, Power Out with no Power In. Try it in darkness and you find a different result because the whole picture is:
The energy which powers the solar panel comes from the sun. Only some 17% of the energy reaching the solar panel is converted to electrical current. This is most definitely not a contravention of the Law of Conservation of Energy. This needs to be explained in greater detail. The Law of Conservation of Energy applies to closed systems, and only to closed systems. If there is energy coming in from the environment, then the Law of Conservation of Energy just does not apply, unless you take into account the energy entering the system from outside.

People sometimes speak of “over-unity” when talking about the efficiency of a system. From the point of efficiency, there is no such thing as “over-unity” as that would mean that more power was coming out of the system than the amount of power entering the system. That is not only impossible, but as there are always some losses in all practical systems the efficiency is always less than 100% of the power entering the system. In other words, the efficiency of any practical system is always under unity. However, it is perfectly possible to have a system which has a greater power output than the power input which we have to put into it to make it work. Take the solar panel mentioned above. It has a terribly low efficiency of about 17%, but, we don’t have to supply it with any power to make it work. Consequently, when it is in sunlight, it’s Coefficient Of Performance (“COP”) is it’s output power (say, 50 watts) divided by the input power needed to make it work (zero watts) which is infinity. So, our humble, well-known solar panel has terrible efficiency of 17% but at the same time it has a COP of infinity.

It is now generally accepted that “Dark Matter” and “Dark Energy” form more than 80% of our universe. There is nothing sinister about the adjective “Dark” as in this context, it merely means that we cannot see it. There are many useful things which we utilise, which we can’t see, for example, radio waves, magnetism, gravity, x-rays, etc. etc.

The fact of the matter is, that we are sitting in a vast field of energy which we can’t see. This is the equivalent of the situation for the crystal set shown above, except that the energy field we are in is very, very much more powerful than the radio waves from a radio transmitter. The problem is, how to tap the energy which is freely available all around us, and get it to do useful work for us. It can definitely be done, but it is not easy to do.

Some people think that we will never be able to access this energy. Not very long ago, it was widely believed that nobody could ride a bicycle faster than 15 miles per hour because the wind pressure on the face of the rider would suffocate him. Today, many people cycle much faster than this without suffocating - why? - because the original negative opinion was wrong.

Not very long ago, it was thought that metal aircraft would never be able to fly because metal is so much heavier than air. Today, aircraft weighing hundreds of tons fly on a daily basis. Why? - because the original negative opinion was not correct.

It is probably worth while, at this point, to explain the basics of Zero-Point Energy. The experts in Quantum Mechanics refer to how the universe operates as “Quantum Foam”. Every cubic centimetre of “empty” space is seething with energy, so much in fact, that if it were converted using Einstein’s famous equation E = mc² (that is Energy = Mass x a very big number), then it would produce as much matter as can be seen by the most powerful telescope. There is actually nothing “empty” about space. So why can’t we see anything there? Well, you can’t actually see energy. All right then, why can’t you measure the energy there? Well, two reasons actually, firstly, we have never managed to design an instrument which can measure this energy, and secondly, the energy is changing direction incredibly rapidly, billions and billions and billions of times each second.

There is so much energy there, that particles of matter just pop into existence and then pop back out again. Half of these particles have a positive charge and half of them have a negative charge, and as they are evenly spread out in three-dimensional space, the overall average voltage is zero. So, if the voltage is zero, what use is that as a source of energy? The answer to that is “none” if you leave it in it’s natural state. However, it is possible to change the random nature of this energy and convert it into a source of unlimited, everlasting power which can be used for all of the things we use mains electricity for today - powering motors, lights, heaters, fans, pumps, ... you name it, the power is there for the taking.

So, how do you alter the natural state of the energy in our environment? Actually, quite easily. All that is needed is a positive charge and a negative charge, reasonably near each other. A battery will do the trick, as will a generator, as will an aerial and earth, as will an electrostatic device like a Wimshurst machine. When you generate a Plus and a Minus, the quantum foam is affected. Now, instead of entirely random plus and minus charged particles appearing everywhere, the Plus which you created gets surrounded by a sphere of minus charge particles popping into existence all around it. Also, the Minus which you created, gets surrounded by a spherical-shaped cloud of plus-charge particles popping into existence all around it. The
technical term for this situation is “broken symmetry” which is just a fancy way of saying that the charge distribution of the quantum foam is no longer evenly distributed or “symmetrical”. In passing, the fancy technical name for your Plus and Minus near each other, is a “dipole” which is just a techno-babble way of saying “two poles: a plus and a minus” - isn’t jargon wonderful?

So, just to get it straight in your mind, when you make a battery, the chemical action inside the battery creates a Plus terminal and a Minus terminal. Those poles actually distort the universe around your battery, and causes vast streams of energy to radiate out in every direction from each pole of the battery. Why doesn’t the battery run down? Because the energy is flowing from the environment and not from the battery. If you were taught basic physics or electrical theory, you will probably have been told that the battery used to power any circuit, supplies a stream of electrons which flows around the circuit. Sorry Chief - it just ain’t like that at all. What really happens is that the battery forms a “dipole” which nudges the local environment into an unbalanced state which pours out energy in every direction, and some of that energy from the environment flows around the circuit attached to the battery. The energy does not come from the battery.

Well then, why does the battery run down, if no energy is being drawn from it to power the circuit? Ah, that is the really silly thing that we do. We create a closed-loop circuit (because that's what we have always done) where the current flows around the circuit, reaches the other battery terminal and immediately destroys the battery’s “dipole”. Everything stops dead in it’s tracks. The environment becomes symmetrical again, the massive amount of readily available free-energy just disappears and you are back to where you started from. But, do not despair, our trusty battery immediately creates the Plus and Minus terminals again and the process starts all over again. This happens so rapidly that we don’t see the breaks in the operation of the circuit and it is the continual recreation of the dipole which causes the battery to run down and lose it’s power. Let me say it again, the battery does not supply the current that powers the circuit, it never has and it never will - the current flows into the circuit from the surrounding environment.

What we really need, is a method of pulling off the power flowing in from the environment, without continually destroying the dipole which pushes the environment into supplying the power. That is the tricky bit, but it has been done. If you can do that, then you tap into an unlimited stream of inexhaustible energy, with no need to provide any input energy to keep the flow of energy going. In passing, if you want to check out the details of all of this, Lee and Yang were awarded the Nobel Prize for Physics in 1957 for this theory which was proved by experiment in that same year. This book includes circuits and devices which manage to tap this energy successfully.

Today, many people have managed to tap this energy but no commercial device is readily available for home use, though it is quite likely that there will be in the next six months as some are going through mandatory government testing for safety and reliability ahead of production being approved. This situation has been a long time coming.

The reason for this is human rather than technical. More than 3,000 Americans have produced devices or ideas for devices but none have reached commercial production due to opposition from influential people who do not want such devices freely available. One technique is to classify a device as “essential to US National Security”. If that is done, then the developer is prevented from speaking to anyone about the device, even if he has a patent. He cannot produce or sell the device even though he invented it. Consequently, you will find many patents for perfectly workable devices if you were to put in the time and effort to locate them, though most of these patents never see the light of day, having been taken by the people issuing these bogus “National Security” classifications.

The purpose of this book is to present the facts about some of these devices and more importantly, where possible, explain the background details of why and how systems of that type function. As has been said before, it is not the aim of this book to convince you of anything, just to present you with some of the facts which are not that easy to find, so that you can make up your own mind on the subject.

The science taught in schools, colleges and universities at this time, is well out of date and in serious need of being brought up to date. This has not happened for some time now as people who make massive financial profits have made it their business to prevent any significant advance for many years now. However, the internet and free sharing of information through it, is making things very difficult for them. What is it that they don’t want you to know? Well, how about the fact that you don’t have to burn a fuel to get power? Shocking, isn’t it!! Does it sound a bit mad to you? Well, stick around and start doing some thinking.

Suppose you were to cover a boat with lots of solar panels which were used to charge a large bank of batteries inside the boat. And if those batteries were used to operate electric motors turning propellers which drive the boat along. If it is sunny weather, how far could you go? As far as the boat can travel while the sun
is up and if the battery bank is large, probably most of the night as well. At sun-up on the next day, you can continue your journey. Oceans have been crossed doing this. How much fuel is burned to power the boat? None!! Absolutely none at all. And yet, it is a fixed idea that you have to burn a fuel to get power.

Yes, certainly, you can get power from the chemical reaction of burning a fuel - after all, we pour fuel into the tanks of vehicles “to make them go” and we burn oil in the central heating systems of buildings. But the big question is: “Do we have to?” and the answer is “No”. So why do we do it? Because there is no alternative at present. Why is there no alternative at present? Because the people making incredibly large financial profits from selling this fuel, have seen to it that no alternative is available. We have been the suckers in this con trick for decades now, and it is time for us to snap out of it. Let’s have a look at some of the basic facts:
Chapter 1: Magnet Power

One thing which we are told, is that permanent magnets can't do any work. Oh yes, they can support themselves against the pull of gravity when they stick on your refrigerator, but, we are told, they can't do any work. Really?

What exactly is a permanent magnet? Well, if you take a piece of suitable material like ‘soft’ iron, put it inside a coil of wire and drive a strong electrical current through the coil, then that converts the iron into a permanent magnet. What length of time does the current need to be in the coil to make the magnet? Less than one hundredth of a second. How long can the resulting magnet support its own weight against gravity? Years and years. Does that not strike you as strange? See how long you can support your own body weight against gravity before you get tired. Years and years? No. Months, then? No. Days, even? No.

Well if you can't do it, how come the magnet can? Are you suggesting that a single pulse for a minute fraction of a second can pump enough energy into the piece of iron to power it for years? That doesn't seem very logical, does it? So, how does the magnet do it?

Well, the answer is that the magnet does not actually exert any power at all. In the same way that a solar panel does not put any effort into producing electricity, the power of a magnet flows from the environment and not from the magnet at all. The electrical pulse which creates the magnet, aligns the atoms inside the iron and creates a magnetic “dipole” which has the same effect as the electrical “dipole” of a battery does. It polarises the quantum environment surrounding it and causes great streams of energy flow around itself. One of the attributes of this energy flow is what we call “magnetism” and that allows the magnet to stick to the door of your refrigerator and defy gravity for years on end.

Unlike the battery, we do not put it in a position where it immediately destroys its own dipole, so as a result, energy flows around the magnet, pretty much indefinitely. We are told that permanent magnets can't be used to do useful work. That is not true.

This is a picture of a Chinese man, Wang Shum Ho, who has designed and built an electrical generator of five kilowatt capacity. This generator is powered by permanent magnets and so uses no fuel to run. It has been demonstrated publicly, and two of these generators entered the Chinese government's mandatory six-month “reliability and safety” testing programme in September 2007. Wang has funding and expects to start commercial manufacturing as soon as his generator passes the government testing.

However, it is not particularly easy to arrange permanent magnets in a pattern which can provide a continuous force in a single direction, as there tends to be a point where the forces of attraction and repulsion balance and produce a position in which the rotor settles down and sticks. There are various ways to avoid this happening. It is possible to modify the magnetic field by diverting it through a soft iron component. An example of this is John Bedini’s simple design shown here:
In John’s design, the magnetic field of the stator magnet is altered by the iron yoke and this smothers the repulsion which would normally occur between the North pole of the stator magnet and the North pole of each rotor magnet as it gets close to the stator magnet. This arrangement allows the rotor magnets to receive a push as they pass by the stator magnet, producing a repeating thrust to keep the rotor rotating. To increase the power, there does not appear to be any reason why there should not be two stators as shown here:
There does not appear to be any reason why several of these rotor/stator assemblies should not be attached to a single shaft to increase the power applied to the shaft and allow an increased level of useful work to be performed by the device.

There are many other designs of permanent magnet motor, but before showing some of them, it is probably worth discussing what useful work can be performed by the rotating shaft of a permanent magnet motor. With a home-built permanent magnet motor, where cheap components have been used and the quality of workmanship may not be all that great (though that is most definitely not the case with some home construction), the shaft power may not be very high. Generating electrical power is a common goal, and that can be achieved by causing permanent magnets to pass by coils of wire. The closer to the wire coils, the greater the power generated in those coils. Unfortunately, doing this creates magnetic drag and that drag increases with the amount of electrical current being drawn from the coils.

There are ways to reduce this drag on the shaft rotation. One way is to use an Ecklin-Brown style of electrical generator, where the shaft rotation does not move magnets past coils, but instead, moves a magnetic screen which alternatively blocks and restores a magnetic path through the generating coils. A commercially available material called “mu-metal” is particularly good as magnetic shield material and a piece shaped like a plus sign is used in the Ecklin-Brown generator.

John W. Ecklin was granted US Patent Number 3,879,622 on 29th March 1974. The patent is for a magnet/electric motor generator which produces an output greater than the input necessary to run it. There are two styles of operation. The main illustration for the first is:

Here, the (clever) idea is to use a small low-power motor to rotate a magnetic shield to mask the pull of two magnets. This causes a fluctuating magnet field which is used to rotate a generator drive.

In the diagram above, the motor at point 'A' rotates the shaft and shielding strips at point 'B'. These rectangular mu-metal strips form a very conductive path for the magnetic lines of force when they are lined up with the ends of the magnets and they effectively shut off the magnet pull in the area of point 'C'. At point 'C', the spring-loaded traveller is pulled to the left when the right-hand magnet is shielded and the left hand magnet is not shielded. When the motor shaft rotates further, the traveller is pulled to the right when the left-hand magnet is shielded and the right hand magnet is not shielded. This oscillation is passed by mechanical linkage to point 'D' where it is used to rotate a shaft used to power a generator.

As the effort needed to rotate the magnetic shield is relatively low, it is claimed that the output exceeds the input and so can be used to power the motor which rotates the magnetic shield.

The second method for exploiting the idea is shown in the patent as:
Here, the same shielding idea is utilised to produce a reciprocating movement which is then converted to two rotary motions to drive two generators. The pair of magnets ‘A’ are placed in a housing and pressed towards each other by two springs. When the springs are fully extended, they are just clear of the magnetic shield ‘B’. When a small electric motor (not shown in the diagram) moves the magnetic shield out of the way, the two magnets are strongly repelled from each other as their North poles are close together. This compresses the springs and through the linkages at ‘C’ they turn two shafts to generate output power.

A modification of this idea is the Ecklin-Brown Generator. In this arrangement, the movable magnetic shielding arrangement provides a direct electrical output rather than a mechanical movement:

Here, the same motor and rotating magnetic shield arrangement is used, but the magnetic lines of force are blocked from flowing through a central I-piece. This I-piece is made of laminated iron slivers and has a pickup coil or coils wound around it.

The device operates as follows:

In the position shown on the left, the magnetic lines of force flow downwards through the pickup coils. When the motor shaft has rotated a further ninety degrees, the situation on the right occurs and there, the magnetic lines of force flow upwards through the pickup coils. This is shown by the blue arrows in the diagram. This reversal of magnetic flux takes place four times for every rotation of the motor shaft.

While the Eklin-Brown design assumes that an electric motor is used to rotate the mu-metal shield, there does not seem to be any reason why the rotation should not be done with a permanent magnet motor.
Another effective power take-off system is that used by the “Phi Transformer” (“Phi” is pronounced “Fi”). In this design, the magnetic drag is reduced by containing the magnetic flux in a laminated iron ring or “toroid”. Again, the design expects an electric motor to be used to spin the rotor, but there does not seem to be any great reason why a permanent magnet motor should not be used instead.

Toroidal shapes are clearly important in many devices which pull in additional energy from the environment, even to the extent that Bob Boyce warns against the high-frequency sequential pulsing of coils wound on a toroid yoke, producing a rotating magnetic field as unpredictable surge events can generate some 10,000 amps of additional current which will burn out the circuit components and can very well trigger a radiant energy build up which can create a lightning strike. Bob himself has been hit by just such a lightning strike and he is lucky to have survived. Lesser systems such as the toroid transformer used in Bob’s electrolyser system are safe even though they generate a power gain. So the many toroidal system designs are definitely worth examining.

One of these is the “Phi-Transformer” which looks like a somewhat similar arrangement to the MEG described in Chapter 3. However, it operates in quite a different way:

Here, lines of magnetic flux coming from a permanent magnet are channelled through a laminated yoke which is effectively a circular mains transformer core. The difference is in the fact that instead of electronically driving a coil to alter the flux coming from the permanent magnet, in this system the magnet is rotated by a small motor.

The performance of this device is impressive. The power required to rotate the magnet is not unduly affected by the current drawn from the coils. The flux is channelled through the laminated iron core and in tests an output of 1200 watts for an input of 140 watts has been achieved, and that is a COP of 8.5 which is very respectable, especially for such a simple device.

At http://jnaudin.free.fr/html/dsqromg2.htm a generator design by Dave Squires is shown, dated 1999. All attempts to contact Dave Squires have been unsuccessful, so it is not known if the information there is from tests on a device which has actually been built or if it is just a theoretical design, though it is likely that it was not built at that time. The design is almost identical to the Phi Transformer. A central core is produced by casting the shape shown below, using an amorphous iron powder / epoxy mix. However, as the operating frequency is low at only 50 Hz or 60 Hz, there does not seem to be any reason why normal transformer laminations should not be used, in which case six sets of shims shaped like this:
which would make the winding of the coils very much easier as standard bobbins could be slotted into place as the core yoke is being assembled.

However, the complete core is shaped like this with coils placed in the slots:

The thinking behind this arrangement is that the “back-EMF” magnetic flux which normally causes Lenz Law opposition to the free rotation of the magnets around the toroid, is diverted around behind the coil and turned so that instead of hindering the rotation, it actually assists it:
The speed of rotation is quoted as being 1,000 rpm for 50 Hz and 1,200 rpm for 60 Hz. The coil windings are suggested as being 180 turns of AWG 14 (16 SWG) for 120 volts AC, at a supposed current of 100 amps, which is seems unrealistic as the maximum current for that size of wire is quoted as being 5.9 amps. The magnets are 2 inches long, 1 inch deep neodymium set into a circular rotor of 12 inch diameter. There can, of course, be more than one rotor on a single shaft, and the number of turns would be doubled for 240 volts AC output.

The yoke on which the coils are wound is effectively a series of toroids, though admittedly, not exactly circular is shape. An alternative shape which might be considered would be as shown below where the section carrying the magnetic flux for any one coil is more isolated from the other toroids. It is not clear if making the section which passes through the coil, straight rather than curved, so I will leave that detail to people who are expert in magnetics.

Returning to permanent magnet motors themselves, one of the top names in this field is Howard Johnson. Howard built, demonstrated and gained US patent 4,151,431 on 24th April 1979, from a highly sceptical patent office for, his design of a permanent magnet motor. He used powerful but very expensive Cobalt/Samarium magnets to increase the power output and demonstrated the motor principles for the Spring 1980 edition of *Science and Mechanics* magazine. His motor configuration is shown here:

The point that he makes is that the magnetic flux of his motor is always unbalanced, thus producing a continuous rotational drive. The rotor magnets are joined in stepped pairs, connected by a non-magnetic yoke. The stator magnets are placed on a mu-metal apron cylinder. Mu-metal is very highly conductive to magnetic flux (and is expensive). The patent states that the armature magnet is 3.125” (79.4 mm) long and the stator magnets are 1” (25.4 mm) wide, 0.25” (6 mm) deep and 4” (100 mm) long. It also states that the rotor magnet pairs are not set at 120 degrees apart but are staggered slightly to smooth out the magnetic forces on the rotor. It also states that the air gap between the magnets of the rotor and the stator are a compromise in that the greater the gap, the smoother the running but the lower the power. So, a gap is chosen to give the greatest power at an acceptable level of vibration.
Howard considers permanent magnets to be room-temperature superconductors. Presumably, he sees magnetic material as having electron spin directions in random directions so that their nett magnetic field is near zero until the electron spins are aligned by the magnetising process which then creates an overall nett permanent magnetic field, maintained by the superconductive electrical flow.

The magnet arrangement is shown here, with the inter-magnet gaps assessed from the drawing in Howard’s patent:

Howard made measurements of the magnetic field strengths and these are shown in the following table:
Measurements taken at the North and South poles of the armature magnet shows that there is a constant off balance situation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>&quot;Zero&quot; Air Gap</th>
<th>1/8&quot; Air Gap</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SOUTH POLE of Armature over:</td>
<td>SOUTH POLE of Armature over:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spaces (Repulsion)</td>
<td>Stator Magnets (Attraction)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>925</td>
<td>1650</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>675</td>
<td>2220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600</td>
<td>2200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>2175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>375</td>
<td>2325</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>2275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>525</td>
<td>2150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600</td>
<td>2275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>450</td>
<td>1900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>550</td>
<td>1700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>575</td>
<td>1825</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>2050</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>475</td>
<td>2150</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6,950 Gauss 26,775 Gauss 9,475 Gauss 15,225 Gauss

33,725 Gauss (Total) 24,700 Gauss (Total) 9,025 Gauss (Difference)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>&quot;Zero&quot; Air Gap</th>
<th>3/8&quot; Air Gap</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SOUTH POLE of Armature over:</td>
<td>SOUTH POLE of Armature over:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spaces (Repulsion)</td>
<td>Stator Magnets (Attraction)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>750</td>
<td>1600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700</td>
<td>1450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>950</td>
<td>1500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1175</td>
<td>1600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>950</td>
<td>1400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>900</td>
<td>1400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>950</td>
<td>1575</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800</td>
<td>1350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1050</td>
<td>1550</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000</td>
<td>950</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>850</td>
<td>1700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800</td>
<td>1900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>550</td>
<td>1400</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11,325 Gauss 19,375 Gauss 11,800 Gauss 17,100 Gauss

30,700 Gauss (Total) 28,700 Gauss (Total) 2,000 Gauss (Difference)

The magazine article can be seen at http://newebmasters.com/freeenergy/sm-pg48.html.
An artist’s impression of the completed motor-generator set-up with a cut-away section is shown here:

The Carousel Permanent Magnet Motor/Generator: US Patent 5,625,241 presents the specific details of a simple electrical generator powered by permanent magnets alone. This generator can also be used as a motor. The construction is not particularly complicated:
It uses an arrangement where permanent magnets are associated with every second coil set around the rotor. Operation is self-powered and the magnet arrangement is clearly defined:

As are the possible arrangements of the pick-up coils, both high-power, low voltage wiring:

And high voltage low power connections:
And the physical arrangement of the device is not particularly complicated:

This is a patent which is definitely worth reading and considering, especially since it is not a complicated presentation on the part of the authors, Harold Ewing, Russell Chapman and David Porter. This seemingly very effective generator appears to be overlooked at the present time.

It seems quite clear that permanent magnet motors are a wholly viable option for the home constructor and they are capable of substantial power outputs over long periods.

**The Robert Tracy Magnet Motor.** Some people have opted for permanent magnet motors where the field is shielded at the appropriate moment by a moving component of the motor. Robert Tracy was awarded US Patent Number 3,703,653 on 21st November 1972 for a “Reciprocating Motor with Motion Conversion Means”. His device uses magnetic shields placed between pairs of permanent magnets at the appropriate point in the rotation of the motor shaft:
The Ben Teal Motor. Motors of this kind are capable of considerable power output. The very simple motor, originally built by Ben Teal using wood as the main construction material, was awarded US Patent Number 4,093,880 in June 1978. He found that, using his hands, he could not stop the motor shaft turning in spite of it being such a very simple motor design:
The motor operation is as simple as possible with just four switches made from springy metal, pushed by a cam on the rotor shaft. Each switch just powers its electromagnet when it needs to pull and disconnects it when the pull is completed. The resulting motor is very powerful and very simple. Additional power can be had by just stacking one or more additional layers on top of each other. The above diagram shows two layers stacked on top of one another. Only one set of four switches and one cam is needed no matter how many layers are used, as the solenoids vertically above each other are wired together in parallel as they pull at the same time.

The power delivered by the Teal motor is an indication of the potential power of a permanent magnet motor which operates in a rather similar way by moving magnetic shields to get a reciprocating movement.

James E. Jines and James W. Jines were awarded US Patent 3,469,130 on 23rd September 1969 “Means for Shielding and Unshielding Permanent Magnets and Magnetic Motors Utilising the Same” and which is in the Appendix.

This magnet motor design uses selective shielding of the drive magnets to produce a continuous force in one direction. It also has a mechanical arrangement to progressively adjust the shielding to adjust the power of the motor.
This is a very interesting design of magnetic motor, especially since it does not call for any materials which are not readily available from many suppliers. It also has the advantage of not needing any form of exact adjustment or balancing of magnetic forces to make it operate.

**Invention Intelligence (India).** The following design for a permanent magnet motor was published in the April 1977 issue of ‘Invention Intelligence’ in India:

![Diagrams](image)

This design relies on the magnetic field of a magnet being distorted by having the pole faces angled at 45 degrees. In the diagram, the magnets are shown in blue and they are mounted in a non-magnetic stator and rotor material shown in grey. The rotor is mounted on two ball races shown in yellow. The theory is that the repulsing forces of the four North-North outer magnet pairs along with the repulsing forces of the four inner South-South magnet pairs should be continuously greater than the North-South attracting forces, thus giving continuous rotation.

It appears most likely that this design is just a theory and that a working model has never been constructed. However, it is possible that this system might work very well, so the information is presented here for interest and possible experimentation. It might be remarked that making the magnet face have a 45 degree angle may well not skew the magnetic field sufficiently to give a big enough imbalance to provide significant drive power. One way to increase the effect might be to use a mu-metal strip along the back of each magnet. Mu-metal is an expensive material which conducts magnetic lines of force in a phenomenal way and so soaks up any magnetism near it.

![Diagram](image)

To recap: the underlying principle of the power of magnets is that each permanent magnet mentioned here, has two magnetic poles (one “North” and one “South” pole) and these poles being of opposite type and near each other, form a “dipole”. This dipole unbalances the quantum environment around the magnet, causing continuous streams of energy to flow out in every direction from the magnet. These streams of energy are not what we see as lines of magnetic force, and to date, nobody has managed to design any piece of equipment which responds to that energy and which can be used to measure it. At this point in time, all we can do to estimate the energy flow is to divert it into a battery and then assess the battery charge by
measuring the length of time that the battery can power a load from the energy which it received. This is a very crude method, but it does work.

In passing, schools currently teach that the field surrounding a bar magnet is like this:

![Diagram of a bar magnet with lines of magnetic force and iron filings]

This is deduced by scattering iron filings on a sheet of paper held near the magnet. Unfortunately, that is not a correct deduction as the iron filings distort the magnetic field by their presence, each becoming a miniature magnet in its own right. More careful measurement shows that the field actually produced by a bar magnet is like this:

![Diagram showing the correct field pattern of a bar magnet]

There are many lines of force, although the sketches shown above only show two. The important factor is that there is a circling field at each corner of a typical bar magnet.

It follows then that if a row of magnets is placed at an angle, then there will be a resulting net field in a single direction. For example, if the magnets are rotated forty five degrees counter clockwise, then the result could be like this:

![Diagram of magnets rotated forty five degrees counter clockwise]

Net magnetic force
Here, the opposing corners of the magnets are lower down and so there should be a net magnetic force thrust path. I have not tested this myself, but the supposition seems reasonable. If it tests out to be correct, then placing the angled magnets in a ring rather than a straight line, should create a motor stator which has a continuous one-way net field in a circular path. Placing a similar ring of angled magnets around the circumference of a rotor disc, should therefore give a strong rotary movement of the rotor shaft - in other words, a very simple permanent magnet motor.

Permanent magnet motors have a Coefficient Of Performance (“COP”) of infinity as they produce output power and the user does not have to provide any input power to make them operate. Remember, COP is defined as Output Power divided by the Input Power which has to be provided by the user to make the device operate. In the following chapter, we will be considering pulsed systems, where the user has to provide input pulses to make the device operate. This prevents these devices from having a COP of infinity and instead, we are looking for any device which has a COP greater than one. However, any device with COP>1 has the potential of becoming self-powered, and if that can be arranged, then the COP does in fact become infinity by definition, as the user no longer needs to supply any input power.

The examples of permanent magnet motors and motor-generators mentioned above, have generally been of the type where there is a stationary “stator” and a rotating “rotor”. It should be realised that the arrangement of magnets on the “stator” do not necessarily have to be stationary. Some motor designs do not have a stator, but instead have two or more rotors. This allows the magnets which would have been on the stator to be in position to provide thrust to the output rotor, and then move out of the way so as not to retard the rotor movement. The Bowman magnet motor is one of this type, though admittedly, it uses one stator magnet to get it started and it has two subsidiary small rotors which carry the magnets which would normally be on a stator. A search on the web will provide the details of many permanent magnet motor designs.
Chapter 2: Moving Pulsed Systems

There are three categories of pulsed system and we will consider each in turn. These are drive-pulsed systems, energy-tapping pulsed systems and gravity free-energy pulsing systems. Here we will look at systems where an electrical pulse is used to cause the device to operate by creating a temporary magnetic field caused by electric current flowing through a coil or "electromagnet" as it is often called. Many of these systems are rather subtle in the way that they operate. One very well-known example of this is

The Adams Motor. The late Robert Adams, an electrical engineer of New Zealand designed and built an electric motor using permanent magnets on the rotor and pulsed electromagnets on the frame of the motor. He found that the output from his motor exceeded the input power by a large margin (800%).

The diagram of his motor most frequently shown to explain the basic operation is this one:

with all of the rotor magnets presenting a North pole to the electromagnets. The motor efficiency is high because the permanent magnets of the rotor are attracted to the (laminated) soft iron cores of the electromagnets. Then, the electromagnet coils are pulsed with just enough power to cancel the attraction as the rotor magnets move away again. It is important to understand this. While it is an option to push a large amount of electrical power into the electromagnet coils and generate a very large repulsion push as soon as it is strategic to do so, that method of operation does not produce the highest efficiency.

Phil Wood received instruction direct from Robert Adams, when Phil was building his replication of the Adams motor. He stresses that there are a number of important practical details which need to be considered when building a motor of this type. Phil states that the motor operation is as follows:

All magnets are of the same polarity on the rotor. The magnets are strongly attracted to the centre cores of the electromagnets. This is not because the coils are energised, but because the rotor magnets are strongly attracted to the iron cores of the electromagnets. This causes the rotator to move around, which generates current in the coils. As the magnets get close to being aligned with the coil cores, the coils are energised by the control electronics, but only with just enough power to neutralise the magnet's attraction, which otherwise would then hinder the continued rotation of the rotor magnets. This strategy allows the rotor to pass by without any hindrance and the pulse is maintained until the rotor moves to a position where the next pair of magnets are strongly attracted to the cores of the electromagnets. This minimises the electrical power needed to generate rotational power. It should be noted that the driving force comes from the magnets and not from the electrical power fed to the electromagnets.

An additional bonus is the collection of the Back Electro-Motive-Force ("BEMF") from the collapsing magnetic field in the coils of the electromagnets when their power is cut off. This energy is sent back to the battery which powers the electromagnets, and this raises the overall efficiency of the motor even further.
To summarise the operation thus far: we have a temporally free rotation as the magnets pull the rotor towards the electromagnet coils, which is **Bonus 1**. As this attraction happens, current is generated in the electromagnet coils and that current is used to charge the driving battery, which is **Bonus 2**.

Please remember that the coils must only be energised just enough (of the same polarity as the rotor magnets), to allow the rotor to continue spinning freely past the electromagnets. The coils must **not** be energised to a greater level than this. Once the magnets have passed, the electromagnets are switched off. This creates a surge of electrical power, and the diode recovery circuit collects the energy from the collapsing electromagnetic fields, which is **Bonus 3**.

So, although this motor design looks as if it is an electrical motor driven by powerful electrical pulses fed to the electromagnets, it is actually powered by the permanent magnets attached to the rotor, and the electrical part of the operation is merely a method of overcoming the backwards drag of the magnets just after they pass the cores of the electromagnets.

Now for some practical details. The optimum physical length of the coils can determined by using the “paper clip test”. This is done by taking one of the permanent magnets used in the rotor, and measuring the distance at which that magnet just begins to lift one end of a 32 mm (1.25 inch) paper clip off the table. The optimum length of each coil (and it’s core) from end to end is exactly the same as the distance at which the paper clip starts to lift.

The resistance of the coils in ohms is worked out by what voltage will be used to have the coils energised just enough to equal the strength of the permanent magnets being used in the rotor (the smaller the diameter of the coil wire, the higher the final coil resistance). An Adams motor built using these techniques, has the efficiency claimed by Robert Adams. Coefficient Of Performance (“COP”) values of about eight have been achieved. That is another way of saying that the motor produces eight times more output energy than the input energy needed to make it operate.

The core material used in the electromagnets can be of various different types including advanced materials and alloys such as ‘Somalloy’. The coil proportions are important as an electromagnet becomes less and less effective as its length increases, and eventually, the part furthest from the active end can actually be a hindrance to the effective operation. The best coil shape is one which you would not expect, with the coil width being, perhaps 50% greater than the coil length:

---

**Motor operation can be enhanced by placing the outer end of each coil core on a metal ring which connects them together magnetically**
As indicated in the diagram above, the overall effectiveness of a single set of coils which have only one end used for active drive, can be enhanced by placing a ring of magnetic material to connect the unused ends, forming a magnetic link between them.

Phil also stresses that the speed at which the voltage is applied to, and removed from, the coils is very important. With very sharp voltage rises and falls, additional energy is drawn from the surrounding quantum energy field. The best switching FET which Phil has found is the IRF3205 and the best FET driver is the MC34151.

If using a Hall-effect semiconductor to synchronise the timing, say the UGN3503U which is very reliable, then the life of the Hall-effect device is much improved if it is provided with a 470 ohm resistor between it and the positive supply line, and a similar 470 ohm resistor between it and the negative line. These resistors in series with the Hall-effect device effectively “float” it and protect it from supply line spikes.

The Adams motor as described here, has a very high performance. However, Harold Aspden, a highly-respected British scientist who collaborated with Robert Adams, points out that efficient as it is, some of the energy is still being wasted.

The well-known explanatory diagram shown above, gives the impression that the electromagnets must be mounted so that they radiate out around the edge of the rotor. The diagram is drawn like that to show the operation clearly, and there is actually no great need for the motor to have that particular arrangement.

Harold, points out that there is a more efficient way to construct the motor:

![Diagram of electromagnet arrangement](image)

The Adams motor expends electrical energy when it powers the coils of the electromagnets and it uses only one pole of the electromagnet as part of the motor drive. The magnetic energy generated at the other end of the electromagnet is wasted. You can therefore double the turning force (“torque”) of the motor for no additional use of current if you place the electromagnets parallel to the shaft of the motor and use two (or more) rotor disks holding permanent magnets:
The layout for the Adams/Aspden motor shown above, suggests two different methods of generating an electrical output from the device, though the drive shaft can be used for mechanical output in its own right. However, shown here, on the right, a bank of eight pick-up coils collect energy from the magnets passing them.

On the left, the motor shaft is used to rotate a rectangular soft iron (or mu-metal) yoke, shown in red. At one point in its rotation, this yoke almost completely bridges the gap between the ends of a powerful C-shaped magnet. When the yoke rotates a further ninety degrees, the width, rather than the length, of the yoke is presented to the magnet which creates a significant air gap between the ends of the C-shaped magnet. As this is a very much poorer magnetic path, the rotation causes a fluctuation in the magnetic flux passing through the magnetic circuit and this is collected by the pick-up coils wound on that magnet. The advantage of this arrangement is that there is almost no change in the load on the shaft, no matter how heavily the pick-up coils are loaded by current being drawn from them.

The power of an electromagnet increases with the number of turns of wire around its core. It also increases to a major degree as the current through the winding is increased. As the diameter of the winding increases, the length of wire needed for one turn increases directly in proportion to the diameter. As the resistance of the winding is proportional to the length of wire in the winding (you having already decided on the diameter of the wire), it follows that the magnetic effect for any given voltage applied to the winding, will be greater the smaller the diameter of the core.
The iron core loses power when pulsed, due to eddy currents flowing around inside the iron. The same effect applies to transformer frames, so they are constructed of thin sheets of metal, each insulated from its neighbours. It is suggested therefore, that the core of an electromagnet would be more efficient if it were not a solid piece of metal. It can be constructed from ‘soft’ iron wires cut to the appropriate length and insulated with lacquer which can withstand high voltages or failing that, enamel paint or nail varnish.

The number of electromagnets is a matter of personal choice. The sketch above shows eight electromagnets per stator, which gives the motor eight drive pulses per rotation. The motor works well with as few as two electromagnets. As shown, there can be as many rotors and stators in the motor as you choose. The gap between the electromagnet and the rotor magnets is of major importance and needs to be as small as it is practical to make it as magnetic force drops off very rapidly with distance from the magnet. The spacing of the rotor magnets needs to match exactly, the spacing of the electromagnets so that when an electrical pulse is applied, there is a rotor magnet opposite each electromagnet. There could be twice as many permanent magnets as electromagnets, or three times as many if you prefer.

The timing of the electrical pulses can be taken directly from the pick-up coil bank as its voltage rises as the magnets pass by. This varying voltage waveform can be sharpened up by using a Schmitt trigger circuit. The exact synchronisation can be governed by two monostables, one to set the delay before the pulse starts and one to control the exact length of the pulse.

Alternatively, a separate movable pick-up coil or Hall-effect sensor can be used and its position adjusted to give optimum operation. Another variation is to use a hole through one rotor beside each magnet and positioning an LED to shine through the holes, on to an opto device, to mark the rotation position.

There is a large amount of practical information on the construction of this type of motor at the web site http://members.fortunecity.com/freeenergy2000/adamsmotor.htm. For instance, Tim Harwood shares his experience having constructed many such motors and run many tests. A few of his observations are:

1. Ohm’s Law does not apply to a correctly tuned Adams motor as the current flow is ‘cold energy’ rather than conventional energy being used. The greater the load on a properly set-up and tuned motor, the colder the stator coils and driving transistors become - the reverse of the situation for conventional energy where increased load requires increased current which produces increased heat. Small diameter wire can therefore be used for the electromagnet windings.

2. The cross-sectional area of each electromagnet core should be one quarter of the area of each rotor magnet.

3. The depth of the electromagnet winding should be the same as the maximum distance one rotor magnet can pull a paper-clip to itself.

4. Electromagnet wire of 24 AWG (0.511 mm dia, about 25 SWG) is a suitable size for windings.

5. The stator windings in series should have a (presumably DC) resistance of about ten ohms.

6. He uses steel nails with a 3/8” head, 100 mm shaft for the electromagnet cores. He selects these carefully from a large supply, to pick those with the best magnetic characteristics and which have a head slightly angled away from the official ninety degrees of a correctly manufactured head.

7. He finds that an electrical tape cover to both the electromagnet core before winding and outside the winding on completion, help the characteristics of the electromagnets.

8. He uses outward facing rotor magnets only and finds that having the South pole facing the electromagnets gives a slightly better result.

9. He tunes his motors using 12 Volts and then increases the voltage to 240 Volts.

10. If you use a Hall-effect semiconductor to trigger the timed pulses, he suggests buying several as they are very easy to damage.

11. The construction of the motor frame, supports, enclosure, etc. should avoid all magnetic materials as these can make the tuning difficult and they may block the tapping of ‘cold’ electricity.
12. It is important that the gap between the rotor magnets and the stator electromagnet cores does not exceed 1.5 mm. A gap of 1.0 to 1.5 mm works well but above that, the over-unity effect does not appear to occur. He has had outputs double that of the input for sustained periods. This he calls a “COP” of 2.0 - this website is most definitely worth examining.

Harold Aspden and Robert Adams collaborated to develop and enhance Robert's motor design. They were awarded patent GB 2,282,708 in April 1995. This full patent forms part of this collection of documents and it is for an enhanced design which has one pole fewer in the stator than the number of poles in the rotor.

Practical details are included in the patent. For example, it is important for the width of the magnetic poles of the stator (viewed along the axle) to be only half as wide as the magnetic poles of the rotor. In fact, it can be an advantage for the stator poles to be less than half the width of the rotor poles. In the following diagrams, the magnetic poles of the stator are shown in blue and the magnetic poles of the rotor are shown in red.

With a motor of this type, it is important that the operational efficiency is as high as possible. In Fig.8 shown here, there are seven magnetic arms on the rotor, while there are eight electromagnets in the stator. This mismatch is important as this motor design operates by a stator magnet attracting a rotor magnet, and when the two line up, the stator electromagnet is pulsed to negate its magnetism. The mismatch in the number of poles causes any aligned pair of poles to have non-aligned poles 180° away from them. This can be seen from the following diagram:

![Diagram of motor design](image)

FIG.5

The suggested construction method for this motor is somewhat unusual, as shown here:
The magnetic poles of the rotor are built up from thin laminations insulated from the neighbouring laminations to prevent eddy current losses, and these laminations overlap the windings of the stator electromagnets. The diagram above only shows two of these electromagnets although there would typically be eight of them for a rotor with seven poles as shown. An interesting feature is the method of using four magnets embedded in the (green) supporting disc to provide the magnetism for the rotor laminations.

It is suggested by Harold and Robert, that this arrangement be considered to be a straight motor, used to power a conventional electrical generator, rather than using additional pick-up coils attached to the motor frame to generate electrical power as part of the device itself. Motors of this type have been recorded as producing output power which is seven times the input power. This is referred to as a “COP of 7.0” and is a clear indication of “over-unity” operation, which is supposedly impossible.

It should be remarked that having an output power greater than the input power is considered impossible, due to the “Law of Conservation of Energy”. This is, of course, not true, as the “Law” (actually an expected result deduced from many measured observations) only applies to ‘closed’ systems and all of the ‘over-unity’ devices described here are not ‘closed’ systems. If the so-called “Law” applied to all systems, then a solar panel would be impossible, because when it is in sunlight, it produces a continuous electrical current. The power which you put in, is zero, the power coming out may well be 120 watts of electricity. If it is a ‘closed’ system, then it is impossible. Of course, it is not a ‘closed’ system as sunlight is streaming down on to the panel, and if you measure the energy reaching the panel and compare it to the energy coming out of the panel, it shows that the panel has an efficiency which is less than 20%.

The same situation applies to magnetic devices. Permanent magnets channel energy from the environment into any device which utilises them. As this is external power, a properly constructed magnetic device is capable of a performance which would be ‘over-unity’ if it were a ‘closed’ system. There are many devices which have a COP which is greater than 1.0, i.e. the output power exceeds the input power provided by the user. The objective of this set of documents is to make you aware of some of these devices, and more importantly, you alert you to the fact that it is perfectly possible to tap external energy and so provide power which appears to be completely free, in the same way that sunlight is ‘free’.

**Teruo Kawai.** In July 1995, a patent was granted to Teruo Kawai for an electric motor. In the patent, Teruo states that a measured electrical input 19.55 watts produced an output of 62.16 watts, and that is a COP of 3.18. The main sections of that patent are included in the Appendix.
In this motor, a series of electromagnets are placed in a ring to form the active stator. The rotor shaft has two iron discs mounted on it. These discs have permanent magnets bolted to them and they have wide slots cut in them to alter their magnetic effect. The electromagnets are pulsed with the pulsing controlled via an optical disc arrangement mounted on the shaft. The result is a very efficient electric motor whose output has been measured as being in excess of its input.
**Self-Powered 800 watt Generator.** There is a video on Google which shows a self-powered electrical generator at the location:

http://video.google.com.au/videoplay?docid=2650242262168838984&q=free+energy&total=5428&start=0&num=100&so=1&type=search&plindex=1

This is also a generator of this general type.

Initially, the generator is got up to speed, driven by the mains electrical supply. Then, when it is running normally, the mains connection is removed and the motor/generator sustains itself and is also able to power 800 watts of lightbulbs. The generator output is normal mains current.

**The Muller Motor.** Bill Muller who died in 2004, produced a series of very finely engineered devices, the latest of which he stated produced some 400 amps of output current at 170V DC for 20 amps at 2V DC drive current. The device both generates its own driving power and produces an electrical power output. Bill’s device weighed some 90 kilos and it requires very strong magnets made of Neodymium-Iron-Boron which are expensive and can easily cause serious injury if not handled with considerable care. It should be noted that Ron Classen shows the details of his work in replicating this motor on his web site http://home.mchsi.com/~actt2/index.html and he reports that he spent in excess of US $3,000 in construction and so far, has already achieved an output power of about 170% of the input power. A video of his motor in action is at http://video.google.com/videoplay?docid=65862828639099378 and his development is progressing steadily. Ronald points out that decreasing the gap between the rotor and the stator by just one millimetre raises the input and output current by ten amps, so the potential of his machine is ten times greater than its present performance. Ronald has not implemented this as yet since the cost of the switching components is fairly high. His construction looks like this:
The Muller motor has a lot in common with Robert Adam’s pulsed permanent-magnet motor. Both use a rotor which contains permanent magnets. Both pulse electromagnets at the precise moment to achieve maximum rotor torque. Both have pick-up coils for generating an electrical output. There are, however, considerable differences. Bill Muller’s coils are wound in an unusual way as shown below. He positions his rotor magnets off-centre in relation to the stator coils. His coils are operated in pairs which are wired in series - one each side of the rotor. He has an odd number of coils and an even number of permanent magnets. His magnets are positioned with alternate polarity: N, S, N, S, ...

In order to make it easier to follow, the diagrams below show just five coil pairs and six magnets, but much larger numbers are normally used in an actual construction of the device, typically sixteen magnets.
If AC mains voltage is used then the drive wiring may be as shown here:

When adapted for five pairs of coils, this becomes:
If DC switching is used, then the circuit may be:
This is an unusual arrangement made all the more peculiar by the fact that the drive pulsing is carried out on the same coils which are used for power generation. The driving power pulse is applied to every successive coil which, with just five coils, makes the drive sequence 1, 3, 5, 2, 4, 1, 3, 5, 2, 4 ... For this operation, Coil 1 is disconnected from the power generation circuitry and then given a high-power DC pulse. This boosts the rotation of the rotor. Coil 1 is then re-connected to the power generating circuitry, and coil 3 is disconnected and then given a drive pulse. This is repeated for every second coil, indefinitely, which is one of the reasons why there is an odd number of coils. The following table shows how the drive is operated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pulse:</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Coil 1</td>
<td>Pulse</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Pulse</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Power</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coil 2</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Pulse</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Power</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coil 3</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Pulse</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Pulse</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Power</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coil 4</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Pulse</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Power</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coil 5</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Pulse</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Pulse</td>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Power</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is essential that Neodymium-Iron-Boron magnets are used for this device as they are about ten times more powerful than the more common ferrite types. Bill used sixteen magnets in the 30 - 50 MegaGaussOersted energy density range, constructed in China, they held their magnetism unaltered for eight years of use. The air gap between the coils and the magnets is 2 mm. Bill used a computer chip to generate the switching sequence, and Ronald Classen who is expert in these systems points out that the pulsing system is adjusted when the motor speed increases. This change is not a simple one as when the speed of rotation reaches its maximum level, on a sixteen magnet rotor, only three of the magnets would be driven by coils pulses. That is, during one rotation, just three electromagnets would be energised in one simultaneous pulse, and that pulse would be of longer duration than the pulses which accelerated to rotor from its stationary position.

The output from each coil is passed through a full-wave bridge to give DC, before being added to the output from the other coils. A typical Muller motor would have 16 magnets and 15 coil pairs. The solid coil formers were made from ‘amorphous metal’ and are 2 inches (50 mm) in diameter and 3 inches (75 mm) long. Bill used a special mix of ‘black sand’ (probably magnetite granules) encased in epoxy resin, but an alternative is said to be hard steel - the harder the better. The coil core material is said to be very important and his construction was said to be free of any hysteresis eddy currents. The coils are wound from #6 AWG (SWG 8) or #8 AWG (SWG 10) wire and are formed in an unusual fashion as shown here:

The winding turns are all made in the same direction. The first layer has 14 turns, the next two layers have 9 turns each, and the remaining four layers have 5 turns each, which gives a total of 52 turns. The coils are used in pairs, being wired in series, with one of each pair being on the opposite side of the rotor to the second coil of the pair, as indicated on the drawings. The way in which the coils are connected to the stator.
is not certain. The thin end of the coils face the rotor magnets. The pick-up coils are not shown on the
drawings, but they are placed on both of the stators, in every position where there is no drive coil.

The rotor is constructed of non-magnetic material and spins at about 3,000 rpm. This device has the
potential to output 35 kW of excess power when constructed in the size described, which has a rotor
diameter of 660 mm with the magnets centred on a circle of 570 mm. In the demonstration which produced
35 kW of power, only five out of the intended thirty pairs of pick-up coils had been constructed. It is
predicted that the output would be 400 horsepower if all thirty pairs of pick-up coils were in place.
Predictions of this nature need to be borne out in a demonstration before they can be considered valid.
Please be aware of the size of this item of equipment. I personally, would not be able to pick up a device of
this weight, but would need mechanical lifting equipment to move it. It can, of course, be constructed in a
scaled down size which will have a scaled down electrical output.

Let me stress that handling magnets of this strength has its dangers. Should you take a magnet in your
hand and inadvertently move your hand near a loose steel item, then your hand is liable to become trapped
between the magnet and the steel object. This may result in serious damage to your hand. Great care
should be taken.

The official web site for this system is www.mullerpower.com which you may find difficult to display unless
you have the MacroMedia software installed on your computer. An alternative information site on the
constructional details is http://www.theverylastpageoftheinternet.com/menu/muller.htm which shows both
motor details and details of a separate ‘over-unity’ experiment which lights four 300W light bulbs while taking
1100W directly from the AC mains supply.

The RotoVerter. Not all pulsed-drive systems use permanent magnets as part of their drive mechanism.
For example, the RotoVerter systems uses standard three-phase electric motors instead of magnets. In
addition, some of the electrical driving power can be recovered for re-use.

This system has been reproduced by several independent researchers and it produces a substantial power
gain when driving devices which need an electrical motor to operate. At this time, the web site:
www.theverylastpageoftheinternet.com/ElectromagneticDev/arkresearch/rotoverter.htm has details on how
to construct the device. The outline details are as follows:

```
![Diagram](image)
```

The output device is an alternator which is driven by a three-phase mains-powered, 3 HP to 7.5 HP motor
(both of these devices can be standard ‘asynchronous squirrel-cage’ motors). The drive motor is operated in
a highly non-standard manner. It is a 240V motor with six windings as shown below. These windings are
connected in series to make an arrangement which should require 480 volts to drive it, but instead, it is fed
with 120 volts of single-phase AC. The input voltage for the motor, should always be a quarter of its rated
operational voltage. A virtual third phase is created by using a capacitor which creates a 90-degree phase-
shift between the applied voltage and the current.
The objective is to tune the motor windings to give resonant operation. A start-up capacitor is connected into the circuit using the press-button switch shown, to get the motor up to speed, at which point the switch is released, allowing the motor to run with a much smaller capacitor in place. Although the running capacitor is shown as a fixed value, in practice, that capacitor needs to be adjusted while the motor is running, to give resonant operation. For this, a bank of capacitors is usually constructed, each capacitor having its own ON/OFF switch, so that different combinations of switch closures give a wide range of different overall values of capacitance. With the six capacitors shown above, any value from 0.5 microfarad to 31.5 microfarad can be rapidly switched to find the correct resonant value. These values allow combined values of 0.5, 1.0, 1.5, 2.0, 2.5, 3.0, 3.5, ....by selecting the appropriate switches to be ON or OFF. Should you need a value greater than this, then wire a 32 microfarad capacitor in place and connect the substitution box across it to test higher values step by step to find the optimum value of capacitor to use. The capacitors need to be powerful, oil-filled units with a high voltage rating - in other words, large, heavy and expensive. The power being handled in one of these systems is large and setting one up is not without a certain degree of physical danger. These systems have been set to be self-powered but this is not recommended, presumably because of the possibility of runaway with the output power building up rapidly and boosting the input power until the motor burns out.

The Yahoo EVGRAY Group at [http://groups.yahoo.com/group/EVGRAY](http://groups.yahoo.com/group/EVGRAY) has nearly 900 members many of whom are very willing to offer advice and assistance. A unique jargon has built up on this forum, where the motor is not called a motor but is referred to as a “Prime Mover” or “PM” for short, which can cause confusion as “PM” usually stands for “Permanent Magnet”. RotoVerter is abbreviated to “RV” while “DCPMRV” stands for “Direct Current Permanent Magnet RotoVerter” and “trafo” is a non-standard abbreviation for “transformer”. Some of the postings in this Group may be difficult to understand due to their highly technical nature and the extensive use of abbreviations, but help is always available there.

To move to some more practical construction details for this system. The motor (and alternator) considered to be the best for this application is the “Baldor EM3770T” 7.5 horsepower unit. The specification number is 07H002X790, and it is a 230/460 volts 60Hz 3-phase, 19/9.5 amp, 1770 rpm, power factor 81, device. The Baldor web site is [www.baldor.com](http://www.baldor.com) and the following constructional photographs are presented here by kind permission of Ashweth Palise of the EVGRAY Group.

The end plate of the drive motor needs to be removed and the rotor lifted out. Considerable care is needed when doing this as the rotor is heavy and it must **not** be dragged across the stator windings as doing that would damage them.
The second end-plate is then removed and placed on the opposite end of the stator housing.

The fan is removed as it is not needed and just causes unnecessary drag, and the rotor is inserted the opposite way round to the way it was removed. That is, the housing is now the other way round relative to the rotor, since the rotor has been turned through 180 degrees before being replaced. The same part of the shaft of the rotor passes through the same end plate as before as the end plates have also been swapped over. The end plates are bolted in position and the rotor shaft spun to confirm that it still rotates as freely as before.

To reduce friction to an absolute minimum, the motor bearings need to be cleaned to an exceptional level. There are various ways of doing this. One of the best is to use a carburettor cleaner spray from your local car accessories shop. Spray inside the bearings to wash out all of the packed grease. The spray evaporates if left for a few minutes. Repeat this until the shaft spins perfectly, then put one (and only one) drop of light oil on each bearing and do not use WD40 as it leaves a residue film. The result should be a shaft which spins absolutely perfectly.

The next step is to connect the windings of the two units. The motor (the “Prime Mover”) is wired for 480 volt operation. This is done by connecting winding terminals 4 to 7, 5 to 8 and 6 to 9 as shown below. The diagram shows 120 volts AC as being the power supply. This is because the RotoVerter design makes the motor operate at a much lower input than the motor designers intended. It this motor were operated in the
standard way, a 480 volt 3-phase supply would be connected to terminals 1, 2 and 3 and there would be no capacitors in the circuit.

It is suggested that the jumpering of the motor windings is more neatly done by removing the junction box cover and drilling through it to carry the connections outside to external connectors, jumpered neatly to show clearly how the connections have been made for each unit, and to allow easy alterations should it be decided to change the jumpering for any reason.
The same is done for the unit which is to be used as the alternator. To increase the allowable current draw, the unit windings are connected to give the lower voltage with the windings connected in parallel as shown below with terminals 4, 5 and 6 strapped together, 1 connected to 7, 2 connected to 8 and 3 connected to 9. This gives a three-phase output on terminals 1, 2 and 3. This can be used as a 3-phase AC output or as three single-phase AC outputs, or as a DC output by wiring it as shown here:

![Diagram](image)

The motor and the alternator are then mounted securely in exact alignment and coupled together. The switching of the direction of the housing on the drive motor allows all of the jumpering to be on the same side of the two units when they are coupled together, facing each other:
The input drive may be from an inverter driven from a battery charged via a solar panel. The system how needs to be ‘tuned’ and tested. This involves finding the best ‘starting’ capacitor which will be switched into the circuit for a few seconds at start-up, and the best ‘running’ capacitor. Help and advice is readily available from the EVGRAY Group as mentioned above.

To summarise: This device takes a low-power 110 Volt AC input and produces a much higher-power electrical output which can be used for powering much greater loads than the input could power. The output power is much higher than the input power. This is free-energy under whatever name you like to apply to it. One advantage which should be stressed, is that very little in the way of construction is needed, and off-the-shelf motors are used. Also, no knowledge of electronics is needed, which makes this one of the easiest to construct free-energy devices available at the present time. One slight disadvantage is that the tuning of the “Prime Mover” motor depends on its loading and most loads have different levels of power requirement from time to time.

It is not essential to construct the RotorVeter exactly as shown above, although that is the most common form of construction. The Muller Motor mentioned earlier, can have a 35 kilowatt output when precision-constructed as Bill Muller did. One option therefore, is to use one Baldor motor jumpered as the “Prime Mover” drive motor and have it drive one or more Muller Motor style rotors to generate the output power:

As the objective is to increase the output power and attempt to keep the motor loading as even as possible to make it possible to tune the motor power input as close to the “sweet” resonant point of its operation, another alternative springs to mind. The output power generator which has the least variation in shaft power for changes in electrical output, namely the Ecklin-Brown generator as described in Chapter 1:
The electrical power generated in the coils wound on the I-Section is substantial and the key factor is that the power needed to rotate the shaft is almost unaffected by the current draw from the pick-up coils. These generator sets could be stacked in sequence and still facilitate the tuning of the “Prime Mover” drive motor:

Phil Wood, another member of the EVGRAY enthusiast Group, who has many years of experience working with all varieties of electric motor, has come up with a very clever circuit variation for the RotoVerter system. His design has a 240 volt Prime Mover motor driven with 240 volt AC. The revised circuit now has automated start-up and it provides an extra DC output which can be used to power additional equipment. His circuit is shown here:

Phil specifies the diode bridges as 20 amp 400 volt and the output capacitor as 4000 to 8000 microfarads 370 volt working. The ON/OFF switch on the DC output should be 10 amp 250 volt AC working. The circuit operates as follows:
The charge capacitor “C” needs to be fully discharged before the motor is started, so the press-button switch is pressed to connect the 1K resistor across the capacitor to discharge it fully. If you prefer, the press-button switch and resistor can be omitted and the switch to the DC load closed before the AC input is applied. The switch must then be opened and the AC connected. The starting capacitor “S” and capacitor “R” both operate at full potential until capacitor “C” begins to charge. As capacitor “C” goes through its charging phase, the resistance to capacitors “R” and “S” increases and their potential capacitance becomes less, automatically following the capacitance curve required for proper AC motor operation at start-up.

After a few seconds of run time, the output switch is operated, connecting the DC load. By varying the resistance of the DC load, the correct tuning point can be found. At that point, the DC load resistance keeps both of the capacitors “R” and “S” operating at a potentially low capacitance value.

The operation of this circuit is unique, with all of the energy which is normally wasted when the AC motor is starting, being collected in the output capacitor “C”. The other bonus is where a DC load is powered for free while it keeps capacitors “R” and “S” in their optimum operating state. The DC load resistance needs to be adjusted to find the value which allows automatic operation of the circuit. When that value has been found and made a permanent part of the installation, then the switch can be left on when the motor is started (which means that it can be omitted). If the switch is left on through the starting phase, capacitor “C” can be a lower value if the DC load resistance is high enough to allow the capacitor to go through its phase shift.

The capacitor values shown above were those found to work well with Phil’s test motor which was a three-winding, 5 horsepower, 240 volt unit. Under test, driving a fan, the motor draws a maximum of 117 watts and a variable speed 600 watt drill was used for the DC load. The motor operates at its full potential with this circuit.

The circuit will need different capacitors for operation with a 120 Volt AC supply. The actual values are best determined by testing with the motor which is to be used, but the following diagram is a realistic starting point:

![Diagram of motor circuit](image)

The 120 V AC motor runs very smoothly and quietly drawing only 20 watts of input power.

Advancing the design even further, Phil has now produced an extremely clever design by introducing an additional DC motor/generator coupled to the “Prime Mover” motor. The coupling is nominally mechanical with the two motors physically linked together with a belt and pulleys, but the electrical linking is such that
the two motors will synchronise automatically if the mechanical linkage is omitted. I should like to express my thanks to him for sharing this information, diagrams and photographs freely.

This circuit is very clever as the DC motor/generator automatically adjusts the running of the AC motor both at startup and under varying loading. Also, the selection of the capacitors is not so critical and no manual intervention is needed at startup. In addition, the DC motor/generator can be used as an additional source of electricity.
Phil’s setup

As the loading on the Prime Mover motor is quite low due to the very, very high efficiency of the RotoVerter arrangement, it is perfectly feasible to drive the whole system with a low-power inverter run from a battery. If that is done, then it is possible to use two batteries. One is charged by the DC generator while the other is driving the inverter. A timer circuit then switches the batteries over on a regular basis using relay switching.

Extra Energy Collection

A very effective additional circuit has been developed by David Kousoulides. This circuit allows extra current to be drawn off a RotoVerter while it is running, without increasing the input power needed to drive the RotoVerter. David’s circuit can be used with a wide range of systems, but here it is being shown as an addition to the RotoVerter system, raising it’s efficiency even higher than before.

As is common with many effective circuits, it is basically very simple looking, and it’s apparent operation is easily explained. The objective is to draw additional current from the RotoVerter and use that current to charge one or more batteries, without loading the RotoVerter at all. The current take off is in the form of a rapid series of current pulses which can be heard as a series of faint clicks when fed into the battery.

Let us examine the circuit section by section:

First, we start with a standard “off the shelf” 3-phase motor. In this example, the motor is a 7.5 horsepower motor, which when wired in RotoVerter mode, using just a single-phase supply as shown here, only draws a very low amount of power when running, especially if the single-phase supply is about 25% of the voltage rating of the motor:
Because the running power draw is so low, it is possible to run this motor from a standard battery-powered inverter, but the current draw at start-up is some 17 amps, so the mains is used to get the motor started and then the motor is switched from the mains to the inverter. The inverter also allows easy measurement of the power input and so makes for easier calculation of the overall power efficiency of the system.

There is a power extraction device called a “diode-plug”, which in spite of it’s seeming simplicity, is actually much more subtle in it’s operation than would appear from a quick glance at the circuit:

![Diode Plug Circuit Diagram]

This circuit has been presented as a public-domain non-copyrightable circuit by Hector Perez Torres and it is capable of extracting power from a range of different systems, without affecting those systems or increasing their power draw. In the circuit presented below, just the first half of the diode plug is utilised, though it should perhaps be stressed that it would be perfectly feasible to raise the efficiency of the circuit even further by adding extra components to duplicate the power feed from the battery, drawing on both parts of the diode-plug circuit. For clarity, this is not shown here, but it should be understood that it is a possible, and indeed desirable, extension to the circuitry described here.

When the motor is running, high voltages are developed across the windings of the motor. As only the first half of the diode-plug is being shown here, we will be capturing and using the negative-going voltages. These negative-going pulses are picked up, stored in a capacitor and used to charge a battery using the following circuit:
Here we have the same RotoVerter circuit as before, with high voltage being developed across capacitor C1. The battery-charging section is a free-floating circuit connected to point A of the motor. The high-voltage diode D1 is used to feed negative-going pulses to capacitor C2 which causes a large charge to build up in that capacitor. At the appropriate moment, the PC851 opto-isolator is triggered. This feeds a current into the base of the 2N3439 transistor, switching it on and firing the 2N6509 thyristor. This effectively switches capacitor C2 across the battery, which discharges the capacitor into the battery. This feeds a substantial charging power pulse into the battery. As the capacitor voltage drops, the thyristor is starved of current and it turns off automatically. The charging sequence for the capacitor starts again with the next pulse from the windings of the motor.

The only other thing to be arranged is the triggering of the opto-isolator. This should be done at the peak of a positive voltage on the motor windings and has been built like this:

Here, we have the RotoVerter motor as before, with the voltage developed on C1 being used to trigger the opto-isolator at the appropriate moment. The voltage on C1 is sensed by the diode D2, the pre-set resistor VR1 and the resistor R1. These place a load of some 18.2K ohms on capacitor C1 as the neon has a very high resistance when not conducting. The ten-turn preset resistor is adjusted to make the neon fire at the peak of the voltage wave coming from the motor. Although the adjustment screw of most preset resistors is fully isolated from the resistor, it is recommended that adjustment of the screw be done using an insulated main-tester type of screwdriver, or a solid plastic trimmer-core adjustment tool.

The circuit to test one half of the diode plug is then:
The switch SW1 is included so that the charging section can be switched off at any time and this switch should not be closed until the motor gets up to speed. All wire connections should be made before power is applied to the circuit. Capacitor C1 which is shown as 36 microfarads, has a value which is optimised for the particular motor being used and will normally be in the range 17 to 24 microfarads for a well-prepared motor. The motor used for this development was retrieved from a scrapyard and was not prepared in any way.

The value of capacitor C2 can be increased by experimenting to find at what value the resonance gets killed and the charging section starts drawing extra current from the supply. It should be noted that many new thyristors (Silicon Controlled Rectifiers or ‘SCR’s) are faulty when supplied (sometimes as many as half of those supplied can be faulty). It is therefore important to test the thyristor to be used in this circuit before installing it. The circuit shown below can be used for the testing, but it should be stressed that even if the component passes the test, that does not guarantee that it will work reliably in the circuit. For example, while 2N6509 thyristors are generally satisfactory, it has been found that C126D types are not. A thyristor passing the test may still operate unpredictably with false triggers.
Please note that the 2N6509 package has the Anode connected inside the housing to the metal mounting tab.

Components List:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1K ohm resistor 0.25 watt</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Bands: Brown, Black, Red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2K ohm resistor 0.25 watt</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Bands: Gray, Red, Red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10K ohm preset resistor</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Ten turn version</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.7 mF 440V (or higher) capacitor</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Polypropylene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36 mF 440V (or higher) capacitor</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Non-polarised polypropylene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1N5408 diode</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1N4007 diode</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2N3439 NPN transistor</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Several may be needed to get a good one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC851 opto-isolator</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neon, 6 mm wire-ended, 0.5 mA</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Radiospares 586-015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5A fuse and fuseholder</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Any convenient type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30A switch 1-pole 1-throw</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Toggle type, 120-volt rated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Veroboard or similar</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Your preferred construction board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-pin DIL IC socket</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Black plastic opto-isolator holder (optional)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wire terminals</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Ideally two red and two black</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plastic box</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Injection moulded with screw-down lid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mounting nuts, bolts and pillars</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Hardware for 8 insulated pillar mounts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rubber or plastic feet</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Any small adhesive feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sundry connecting wire</td>
<td>4 m</td>
<td>Various sizes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When using and testing this circuit, it is important that all wires are connected securely in place before the motor is started. This is because high voltages are generated and creating sparks when making connections does not do any of the components any particular good. If the circuit is to be turned off while the motor is still running, then switch SW1 is there for just that purpose.
The operating technique is as follows:

Before starting the motor, adjust the slider of the preset resistor VR1 to the fixed resistor end of its track. This ensures that the charging circuit will not operate as the neon will not fire. Power up the circuit and start adjusting the preset resistor very slowly until the neon starts to flash occasionally. There should be no increased load on the motor and so no extra current drawn from the input supply.

If there is an increase in the load, you will be able to tell by the speed of the motor and the sound it makes. If there is an increase in the load, then back off VR1 and check the circuit construction. If there is no increased load, then continue turning VR1 slowly until a position is reached where the neon remains lit all the time. You should see the voltage across the battery being charged increase without any loading effects on the motor.

If you use an oscilloscope on this circuit, please remember that there is no “ground” reference voltage and that the circuit is not isolated.

Here is a picture of David’s actual board construction. There are various ways for building any circuit. This particular construction method uses plain matrix board to hold the components in position and the bulk of the interconnections are made underneath the board. The charge-collecting capacitor is made here from two separate polypropylene 440 volt capacitors wired in parallel. David has opted to use a separate diode on each capacitor as this has the effect of doubling the current-carrying capacity of a single diode and is a popular technique in pulse charge circuits where sometimes several diodes are wired in parallel.

David has included a heatsink, which he marks as being “not required” but you will notice that there is insulation between the SCR and the heatsink. Mica “washers” available from the suppliers of semiconductors are particularly good for this, as mica is a good insulator and it also conducts heat very well.

Thyristor testing:
The components needed to construct the thyristor testing circuit shown below can be bought as Kit number 1087 from www.QuasarElectronics.com

The circuit is operated by operating SW1 several times so as to get capacitors C1 and C2 fully charged. LED1 and LED2 should both be off. If either of them light, then the thyristor is faulty.

Next, with SW1 at its position 1, press switch SW2 briefly. LED1 should light and stay on after SW2 is released. If either of these two things does not happen, then the thyristor is faulty.

With LED1 lit, press SW3 and LED1 should go out. If that does not happen, then the thyristor is faulty.

As mentioned before, even if the thyristor passes these tests it does not guarantee that it will work correctly in any circuit as it may operate intermittently and it may trigger spuriously when it shouldn't.

Component list:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>47 ohm resistor 0.25 watt</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Bands: Purple, Yellow, Black</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>470 ohm resistor 0.25 watt</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Bands: Purple, Yellow, Brown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1K ohm resistor</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Bands: Brown, Black, Red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 mF 15V capacitor</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Electrolytic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1N914 diode</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light Emitting Diode</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Any type, any size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toggle switch 2-pole 2-throw</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Press-button Push-to-Make</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Non-latching press-on, release off type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9V battery</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Any type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery connector</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>To match chosen battery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Socket</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Plug-in socket for thyristors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Veroboard or similar</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Your preferred construction board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plastic box</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Injection moulded with screw-down lid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mounting nuts, bolts and pillars</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Hardware for 8 insulated pillar mounts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rubber or plastic feet</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Any small adhesive feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sundry connecting wire</td>
<td>4 m</td>
<td>Various sizes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Phil Wood has developed a particularly effective method for extracting the excess resonant circulating energy of a RotoVerter Prime Mover. This is the circuit:

The circuit operation is as follows:

The input from the RotoVerter motor is stepped-down by a transformer to give an 18-volt (nominal) AC output, which is then rectified by a standard rectifier bridge and the output smoothed by an 18-volt zener diode and a 330mF smoothing capacitor, and used to power the MC34151 chip. This DC power supply line is further dropped and stabilised by a 15-volt zener diode and a 47mF capacitor and used to power the LED display chip HEF4017B.

The raw RotoVerter input is also taken direct and rectified by a second 400-volt 35-amp rectifier diode bridge and smoothed by a 20mF capacitor with a high voltage rating. It must be understood that the RotoVerter system is liable to produce considerable power surges from time to time and so this circuit must be capable of handling and benefiting from these surges. This is why the IRG4PH40UD IGBT device was selected (apart from it’s very reasonable price) as it robust and can handle high voltages.

The resulting high-voltage DC is taken by the chain of components two 75-volt zener diodes, 20K resistor and the 100K variable resistor. The voltage developed on the slider of this variable resistor is loaded with a 10K resistor and voltage-limited with a 10-volt zener diode, and decoupled with a 10nF capacitor before being passed to the MC34151 high-speed MOSFET dual driver chip. Both of these drivers are used to
sharpen up the pulse and drive the IGBT cleanly. The result is an output which is a series of DC pulses. The operation of the circuit can be seen quite clearly, thanks to the HEF4017B display circuit which drives a row of LEDs, triggered by the IGBT gate signal, divided by the 1K / 4.7K voltage divider decoupled by the 10nF capacitor. This display shows clearly when the IGBT is switching correctly - actually, the display circuit is quite a useful device for people who do not own an oscilloscope, not just for this circuit, but a wide range of different circuits.

The physical board layout for Phil’s circuit is shown here:

As you will notice from the notes on Phil’s board layout shown above, the first of the 75-volt zener diodes used on the direct RotoVerter power feed, should be replaced with a 30-volt zener if a 120-volt motor is used in this circuit.

Another important point which needs to be stressed, is that the pulsed DC output from this circuit can be at extremely high voltages and needs to treated with considerable care. This is not a circuit for beginners and anyone who is not familiar with handling high voltages needs the supervision of an experienced person. Also, if either this circuit or the RotoVerter is connected to the mains, then no scope ground leads should be connected as the circuit can be a hundred volts or more below ground potential.
The pattern of the printed-circuit board when viewed from the underside of the board is shown here:

And component packaging is:
Phil's build of his circuit was implemented like this:
## Component List:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10 ohm resistor 0.25 watt</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Bands: Brown, Black, Black</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 ohm resistor 0.25 watt</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Bands: Brown, Black, Brown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1K ohm resistor 0.25 watt</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Bands: Brown, Black, Red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2K ohm resistor 0.25 watt</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Bands: Red, Red, Red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.7K ohm resistor 0.25 watt</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Bands: Purple, Yellow, Red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10K ohm resistor 0.25 watt</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Bands: Brown, Black, Orange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22K ohm resistor 0.25 watt</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Bands: Red, Red, Orange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10nF capacitor</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5mF 440V (or higher) capacitor</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Polypropolene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20mF 440V (or higher) capacitor</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Polypropolene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47mF 25V capacitor</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>330 mF 25V capacitor</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1N5819 Schottky barrier diode</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-volt zener diode</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15-volt zener diode</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18-volt zener diode</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75-volt zener diode</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400-volt, 40 A rectifier bridge</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35-volt 1 A rectifier bridge</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MC34151 IC</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEF4017B IC</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRG4PH40UD transistor</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LEDs</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Any type or alternatively, an LED array</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100K ohm variable resistor</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plastic knob for variable resistor</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>240:18 volt mains transformer</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>150 mA or higher rated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10A switch 1-pole 1-throw</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Toggle type, 120-volt rated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Veroboard or similar</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Your preferred construction board or pcb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wire terminals</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Ideally two red and two black</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plastic box</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Injection moulded with screw-down lid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mounting nuts, bolts and pillars</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Hardware for 8 insulated pillar mounts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rubber or plastic feet</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Any small adhesive feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sundry connecting wire</td>
<td>4 m</td>
<td>Various sizes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
It is felt that some specific information on alternators would be helpful at this point. My thanks goes to Professor Kevin R. Sullivan, Professor of Automotive Technology, Skyline College, San Bruno, California, who has given his kind permission for the reproduction of the following training material from his excellent web site at http://www.autoshop101.com/ which I recommend that you visit. The following material is his copyright and All Rights are Reserved by Professor Sullivan.

**UNDERSTANDING THE ALTERNATOR**

The Charging System

A vehicle charging system has three major components: the **Battery**, the **Alternator**, and the **Regulator**. The alternator works together with the battery to supply power when the vehicle is running. The output of an alternator is direct current (DC), however the alternator actually creates AC voltage which is then converted to DC as it leaves the alternator on its way to charge the battery and power the other electrical loads.
The Charging System Circuit

Four wires connect the alternator to the rest of the charging system:

'B' is the alternator output wire that supplies current to the battery.
'IG' is the ignition input that turns on the alternator/regulator assembly.
'S' is used by the regulator to monitor charging voltage at the battery.
'L' is the wire the regulator uses to ground the charge warning lamp.

Alternator Terminal ID's

'S' terminal: Senses the battery voltage
'IG' terminal: Ignition switch signal turns regulator ON
'L' terminal: Grounds warning lamp
'B' terminal: Alternator output terminal
'F' terminal: Regulator Full-Field bypass

The Alternator Assembly
Alternator Overview:

The alternator contains:

A rotating field winding called the rotor.

A stationary induction winding called the stator.

A diode assembly called the rectifier bridge.

A control device called the voltage regulator.

Two internal fans to promote air circulation

Alternator Design

Most regulators are on the inside the alternator. Older models have externally mounted regulators.

Unlike other models, this model can be easily serviced from the rear of the unit. The rear cover can be removed to expose internal parts.

However, today's practice is to replace the alternator as a unit, should one of it's internal components fail.

Drive Pulley

Alternator drive pulleys either bolt on or are pressed on the rotor shaft. Both 'V' and Multi-grove types are used. Please note this alternator does not have an external fan as part of the pulley assembly.
While many manufacturers do use a external fan for cooling. This alternator has two internal fans to draw air in for cooling.

**Inside the Alternator**

![Diagram of Alternator](image)

Removal of the rear cover reveals:

- **The Regulator** which controls the output of the alternator.
- **The Brushes** which conduct current to the rotor field winding.
- **The Rectifier Bridge** which converts the generated AC voltage to a DC voltage.
- **The Slip Rings** (part of the rotor assembly) which are connected to each end of the field winding.

**Brushes**

Two slip rings are located on one end of the rotor assembly. Each end of the rotor field winding is attached to a slip ring. This, allows current to flow through the field winding.
Two stationary carbon brushes ride on the two rotating slip rings. These bushes are either soldered or bolted in position.

**Electronic IC Regulator**

The regulator is the brain of the charging system. It monitors both the battery voltage and the stator voltage and, depending on the measured voltages, it adjusts the amount of rotor field current so as to control the output of the alternator.

Regulators can be mounted in an internal or an external position. Nowadays, most alternators have a regulator which is mounted internally.

**Diode Rectifier**

The **Diode Rectifier Bridge** is responsible for the conversion or rectification of AC voltage to DC voltage.

Six or eight diodes are used to rectify the AC stator voltage to DC voltage. Half of these diodes are used on the positive side and the other half on the negative side.

**Inside the Alternator**
Opening the case reveals:

The **rotor winding assembly** which rotates inside the **stator winding**. The rotor generates a magnetic field and the stator winding develops voltage, which causes current to flow from the induced magnetic field of the rotor.

**The Rotor Assembly**

A basic rotor consists of an **iron core**, a **coil winding**, two **slip rings**, and two claw-shaped **finger pole pieces**. Some models have support bearings and one or two internal cooling fans.

The rotor is driven or rotated inside the alternator by an engine (alternator) drive belt.
The rotor contains the field winding wound over an iron core which is part of the shaft. Surrounding the field coil are two claw-type finger poles. Each end of the rotor field winding is attached to a slip ring. Stationary brushes connect the alternator to the rotor. The rotor assembly is supported by bearings. One on the shaft and the other in the drive frame.

**Alternating Magnetic Field**

The rotor field winding creates the magnetic field that induces voltage in the stator. The magnetic field saturates the iron finger poles. One finger pole becomes a North pole and the other a South pole.

The rotor spins creating an alternating magnetic field, North, South, North, South, etc.

**Stator Winding**
The stator winding looks like the picture above.

**Rotor / Stator Relationship**

As the rotor assembly rotates within the stator winding: The alternating magnetic field from the spinning rotor induces an alternating voltage into the stator winding. The strength of the magnetic field and the speed of the rotor affect the amount of voltage induced in the stator.

**Stator Windings**
The stator is made with three sets of windings. Each winding is placed in a different position compared with the others. A laminated iron frame concentrates the magnetic field. Stator lead ends output current to the diode rectifier bridge.

The Neutral Junction in the Wye design can be identified by the 6 strands of wire.

3-Phase Windings

![3-Phase Windings Diagram]

The stator winding has three sets of windings. Each winding is formed into a number of evenly spaced coils around the stator core.

The result is three overlapping single-phase AC sine-wave current peaks, A, B, C.

These waves add together to make up the total AC output of the stator. This is called three-phase current.

Three-phase current provides a more even current output than a single-phase output would do.

Stator Designs

![Stator Designs Diagram]

Delta-wound stators can be identified by having only three stator leads, and each lead will have the same number of wires attached.
Wye-style stators have four leads. One of the leads is called the Neutral Junction. The Neutral Junction is common to all the other leads.

Wye-wound stators have three windings with a common neutral junction. They can be identified because they have 4 stator lead ends. Wye wound stators are used in alternators that require high-voltage output at low alternator speeds. Two windings are in series at any one time during charge output.

Delta-wound stators can be identified because they have only three stator lead ends. Delta stators allow for higher current flow being delivered at low RPM. The windings are in parallel rather than in series as the Wye designs have.

Diode Rectifier Bridge Assembly
Rectifier Operation:

Two diodes are connected to each stator lead. One positive the other negative. Because a single diode will only block half of the AC voltage, six or eight diodes are used to rectify the AC stator voltage to DC voltage.

Diodes used in this configuration will redirect both the positive and negative parts of the AC voltage in order to produce a better DC voltage waveform. This process is called 'Full-Wave Rectification'.
Diodes are used as one-way electrical check valves. They pass current in only one direction, and never in the other direction. Diodes are mounted in a heat sink to dissipate the heat generated by the current flow. Diodes redirect the AC voltage and convert it into DC voltage, so the battery receives the correct polarity.

Rectifier Operation:

The red path is the positive current passing through the rectifier as it goes to the positive battery terminal. The path shown in green completes the circuit.

As the rotor continues its movement, the voltages generated in the three windings, change in polarity. The battery is still fed current, but now a different winding feeds it. Again, the red path shows the current flow to the battery and the green path shows how the circuit is completed. The same charging continues even though different windings and diodes are being used.
Electronic Regulator

The regulator attempts to maintain a set charging voltage. If the charging voltage falls below this point, the regulator increases the field current, which strengthens the magnetic field, resulting in a raising of the alternator output voltage.

If the charging voltage rises above this point, the regulator decreases the field current, thus weakening the magnetic field, producing a lowering of the alternator output voltage.

Regulator Types:

Two regulator designs can be used. The first type is:

The **Grounded Regulator** type. This type of regulator controls the amount of current flowing through the battery ground (negative) into the field winding in the rotor:

The second type is:

The **Grounded Field** type. This type of regulator controls the amount of current flowing from the Battery Positive ('B+') into the field winding in the rotor.
The Working Alternator

The regulator monitors battery voltage and controls current flow to the rotor assembly.

The rotor produces a magnetic field.

Voltage is induced in the stator windings.

The rectifier bridge converts the AC stator voltage to DC output voltage for use by the vehicle.
Chapter 3: Motionless Pulsed Systems

The pulsed devices mentioned so far have had moving parts. This does not have to be the case if rotating or fluctuating magnetic fields can be created without moving parts. This can indeed be done, and an example of this is Graham Gunderson’s Solid-State Electric Generator shown in US Patent Application 2006/0163971 A1 of 27th July 2006. The details are as follows:

Abstract
A solid-state electrical generator including at least one permanent magnet, magnetically coupled to a ferromagnetic core provided with at least one hole penetrating its volume; the hole(s) and magnet(s) being placed so that the hole(s) intercept flux from the permanent magnet(s) coupled into the ferromagnetic core. A first wire coil is wound around the ferromagnetic core for the purpose of moving the coupled permanent magnet flux within the ferromagnetic core. A second wire is routed through the hole(s) penetrating the volume of the ferromagnetic core, for the purpose of intercepting this moving magnetic flux, thereby inducing an output electromotive force. A changing voltage applied to the first wire coil causes coupled permanent magnet flux to move within the core relative to the hole(s) penetrating the core volume, thus inducing electromotive force along wire(s) passing through the hole(s) in the ferromagnetic core. The mechanical action of an electrical generator is therefore synthesised without the use of moving parts.

Background
This invention relates to a method and device for generating electrical power using solid state means.

It has long been known that moving a magnetic field across a wire will generate an electromotive force (EMF), or voltage, along the wire. When this wire is connected in a closed electrical circuit, an electric current, capable of performing work, is driven through this closed circuit by the induced electromotive force.

It has also long been known that this resulting electric current causes the closed circuit to become encircled with a secondary, induced magnetic field, whose polarity opposes the primary magnetic field which first induced the EMF. This magnetic opposition creates mutual repulsion as a moving magnet approaches such a closed circuit, and a mutual attraction as that moving magnet moves away from the closed circuit. Both these actions tend to slow or cause “drag” on the progress of the moving magnet, causing the electric generator to act as a magnetic brake, whose effect is in direct proportion to the amount of electric current produced.

Historically, gas engines, hydroelectric dams and steam-fed turbines have been used to overcome this magnetic braking action which occurs within mechanical generators. A large amount of mechanical power is required to produce a large amount of electrical power, since the magnetic braking is generally proportional to the amount of electrical power being generated.

There has long been felt the need for a generator which reduces or eliminates the well-known magnetic braking interaction, while nevertheless generating useful electric power. The need for convenient, economical and powerful sources of renewable energy remains urgent. When the magnetic fields within a generator are caused to move and interact by means other than applied mechanical force, electric power can be supplied without the necessity of consuming limited natural resources, thus with far greater economy.

Summary of the Invention
It has long been known that the source of the magnetism within a permanent magnet is a spinning electric current within ferromagnetic atoms of certain elements, persisting indefinitely in accord with well-defined quantum rules. This atomic current encircles every atom, thereby causing each atom to emit a magnetic field, as a miniature electromagnet.

This atomic current does not exist in magnets alone. It also exists in ordinary metallic iron, and in any element or metallic alloy which can be “magnetised”, that is, any material which exhibits ferromagnetism. All ferromagnetic atoms and “magnetic metals” contain such quantum atomic electromagnets.

In specific ferromagnetic materials, the orientation axis of each atomic electromagnet is flexible. The orientation of magnetic flux both internal and external to the material, pivots easily. Such materials are referred to as magnetically “soft”, due to this magnetic flexibility.

Permanent magnet materials are magnetically “hard”. The orientation axis of each is fixed in place within a rigid crystal structure. The total magnetic field produced by these atoms cannot easily move. This constraint aligns the field of ordinary magnets permanently, hence the name “permanent”.

The axis of circular current flow in one ferromagnetic atom can direct the axis of magnetism within another ferromagnetic atom, through a process known as “spin exchange”. This gives a soft magnetic material, like raw...
Iron, the useful ability to aim, focus and redirect the magnetic field emitted from a magnetically hard permanent magnet.

In the present invention, a permanent magnet’s rigid field is sent into a magnetically flexible “soft” magnetic material. The permanent magnet’s apparent location, observed from points within the magnetically soft material, will effectively move, vibrate, and appear to shift position when the magnetisation of the soft magnetic material is modulated by ancillary means (much like the sun, viewed while underwater, appears to move when the water is agitated). By this mechanism, the motion required for generation of electricity can be synthesised within a soft magnetic material, without requiring physical movement or an applied mechanical force.

The present invention synthesises the virtual motion of magnets and their magnetic fields, without the need for mechanical action or moving parts, to produce the electrical generator described here. The present invention describes an electrical generator where magnetic braking known as expressions of Lenz’s Law, do not oppose the means by which the magnetic field energy is caused to move. The synthesised magnetic motion is produced without either mechanical or electrical resistance. This synthesised magnetic motion is aided by forces generated in accordance with Lenz’s Law, in order to produce acceleration of the synthesised magnetic motion, instead of physical “magnetic braking” common to mechanically-actuated electrical generators. Because of this novel magnetic interaction, the solid-state static generator of the present invention is a robust generator, requiring only a small electric force of operate.

Brief Description of the Drawings

The appended drawings illustrate only typical embodiments of this invention and are therefore not to be considered limiting of its scope, as the invention encompasses other equally effective embodiments.

![Figure 1](image)

Fig.1 is an exploded view of the generator of this invention.
Fig. 2 is a cross-sectional elevation of the generator of this invention.

Fig. 3 is a schematic diagram of the magnetic action occurring within the generator of Fig. 1 and Fig. 2.
Fig. 4 is a circuit diagram, illustrating one method of operating the electrical generator of this invention.

**Detailed Description of the Invention**

Fig. 1 depicts a partially exploded view of an embodiment of an electrical generator of this invention. The part numbers also apply in Fig. 2 and Fig. 3.

Numeral 1 represents a permanent magnet with its North pole pointing inward towards the soft ferromagnetic core of the device. Similarly, numeral 2 indicates permanent magnets (preferably of the same size, shape and composition), with their South poles aimed inward towards the opposite side, or opposite surface of the device. The letters “S” and “N” denote these magnetic poles in the drawings. Other magnetic polarities and configurations may be used with success; the pattern shown merely illustrates one efficient method of adding magnets to the core.

The magnets may be formed of any polarised magnetic material. In order of descending effectiveness, the most desirable permanent magnet materials are Neodymium-Iron-Boron (“NIB”), Samarium Cobalt, AlNiCo alloy, or
“ceramic” Strontium-Barium or Lead-Ferrite. A primary factor determining permanent magnet material composition is the magnetic flux strength of the particular material type. In an embodiment of the invention, these magnets may also be substituted with one or more electromagnets producing the required magnetic flux. In another embodiment of the invention, a superimposed DC current bias can be applied to the output wire to generate the required magnetic flux, replacing or augmenting the permanent magnets.

Numeral 3 indicates the magnetic core. This core is a critical component of the generator. The core determines the output power capacity, the optimum magnet type, the electrical impedance and the operating frequency range. The core may be any shape, composed of any ferromagnetic material, formed by any process (sintering, casting, adhesive bonding, tape-winding, etc.). A wide range of shapes, materials and processes is known in the art of making magnetic cores. Effective common materials include amorphous metal alloys (such as sold under the “Metglas” trademark by Metglas Inc., Conway, S.C.), nanocrystalline alloys, manganese and zinc ferrites as well as ferrites of any suitable element including any combination of magnetically “hard” and “soft” ferrites, powdered metals and ferromagnetic alloys, laminations of cobalt and/or iron and silicon-iron “electrical steel”. This invention successfully utilises any ferromagnetic material, while functioning as claimed. In an embodiment of the invention, and for the purpose of illustration, a circular “toroid” core is illustrated. In an embodiment of the invention, the composition may be bonded iron powder, commonly available from many manufacturers.

Regardless of core type, the core is prepared with holes, through which, wires may pass. The holes are drilled or formed to penetrate the core’s ferromagnetic volume. The toroidal core shown, includes radial holes pointing towards a common centre. If, for example, stiff wire rods were to be inserted through each of these holes, these rods would meet at the centre point of the core, producing an appearance similar to a spoked wheel. If a square or rectangular core (not illustrated) is used, then these holes are preferably oriented parallel to the core’s flat sides, causing stiff rods passed through the holes to form a square grid pattern, as the rods cross each other in the interior “window” area framed by the core. While in other embodiments of the invention, these holes may take any possible orientation or patterns of orientation, a simple row of radial holes is illustrated as one example.

Numeral 4 depicts a wire, or bundle of wires which pick up and carry the output power of the generator. Typically, this wire is composed of insulated copper, though other materials such as aluminium, iron, dielectric material, polymers and semiconducting materials may be substituted. It may be seen in Fig.1 and Fig.2, that wire 4 passes alternately through neighbouring holes formed in core 3. The path taken by wire 4 undulates as it passes in opposite direction through each adjacent hole. If an even number of holes is used, the wire will emerge on the same side of the core on which it first entered. Once all the holes are filled, the resulting pair of trailing leads may be twisted together or similarly terminated, forming the output terminals of the generator shown at numeral 5. Output wire 4, may also make multiple passes through each hole in the core, though the winding pattern is not necessarily undulatory, this basic form is shown as an example. Many effective connection styles exist. This illustration shows the most simple.

Numeral 6 in Fig.1, Fig.2 and Fig.3, points to a partial illustration of the input winding, or inductive coil used to shift the fields of the permanent magnets, within the core. Typically, this wire coil encircles the core, wrapping around it. For the toroidal core shown, input coil 6 resembles the outer windings of a typical toroidal inductor - a common electrical component. For the sake of clarity, only a few turns of coil 6 are shown in each of Fig.1, Fig.2
and Fig.3. In practice, this coil may cover the entire core, or specific sections of the core, including, or not including the magnets.

Fig.2 shows the same electrical generator of Fig.1, looking transparently “down” through it from above, so that the relative positions of the core holes (shown as dotted lines), the path of the output wire 4, and the position of the magnets (white hatched areas for magnets under the core and green hatched areas for magnets above the core) are made clear. The few representative turns of the input coil 6 are shown in red in Fig.2.

The generator illustrated, uses a core with 8 radially drilled holes. The spacing between these holes is equal. As shown, each hole is displaced by 45 degrees from each of it’s adjoining holes. The centres of all of the holes lie on a common plane lying half-way down the vertical thickness of the core. Cores of any shape or size may have as few as two or as many as hundreds of holes and a similar number of magnets. Other variations exist, such as generators with multiple rows of holes, zigzag and diagonal patterns, or output wire 4 moulded directly into the core material. In any case, the basic magnetic interaction shown in Fig.3 occurs for each hole in the core as described below.

Fig.3 shows the same design, viewed from the side. The curvature of the core is shown flattened on the page for the purpose of illustration. The magnets are represented schematically, protruding from the top and bottom of the core, and including arrows indicating the direction of magnetic flux (the arrow heads point to the magnet’s North pole).

In practice, the free, unattached polar ends of the generator’s magnets may be left “as-is” in open air, or they may be provided with a common ferromagnetic path linking the unattached North and South poles together as a magnetic “ground”. The common return path is typically made of steel, iron or similar material, taking the form of a ferrous enclosure housing the device. It may serve the additional purpose of a protecting chassis. The magnetic return may also be another ferromagnetic core of a similar electric generator stacked on top of the illustrated generator. There can be a stack of generators, sharing common magnets between the generator cores. Any such additions are without direct bearing on the functional principle of the generator itself, and have therefore been omitted from these illustrations.

Two example flux diagrams are shown in Fig.3. Each example is shown in a space between schematically depicted partial input coils 6. A positive or negative polarity marker indicates the direction of input current, applied through the input coil. This applied current produces “modulating” magnetic flux, which is used to synthesise apparent motion of the permanent magnets, and is shown as a double-tailed horizontal arrow (a) along the core 3. Each example shows this double-tailed arrow (a) pointing to the right or to the left, depending on the polarity of the applied current.

In either case, vertical flux entering the core (b,3) from the external permanent magnets (1,2) is swept along within the core, in the direction of the double-tailed arrow (a), representing the magnetic flux of the input coil. These curved arrows (b) in the space between the magnets and the holes, can be seen to shift or bend (a --> b), as if they were streams or jets of air subject to a changing wind.

The resulting sweeping motion of the fields of the permanent magnets, causes their flux (b) to brush back and forth over the holes and wire 4 which passes through these holes. Just as in a mechanical generator, when the
magnetic flux brushes or “cuts” sideways across a conductor in this way, voltage is induced in the conductor. If an electrical load is connected across the ends of this wire conductor (numeral 5 in Fig.1 and Fig.2), a current flows through the load via this closed circuit, delivering electrical power able to perform work. Input of an alternating current across the input coil 6, generates an alternating magnetic field (a) causing the fields of permanent magnets 1 and 2 to shift (b) within the core 3, inducing electrical power through a load (attached to terminals 5), as if the fixed magnets (1,2) themselves were physically moving. However, no mechanical motion is present.

In a mechanical generator, induced current powering an electrical load, returns through output wire 4, creating a secondary induced magnetic field, exerting forces which substantially oppose the original magnetic field inducing the original EMF. Since load currents induce their own, secondary magnetic fields opposing the original act of induction in this way, the source of the original induction requires additional energy to restore itself and continue generating electricity. In mechanical generators, the energy-inducing motion of the generator’s magnetic fields is being physically actuated, requiring a strong prime mover (such as a steam turbine) to restore the EMF-generating magnetic fields’ motion against the braking effect of the output-induced magnetic fields (the induced field c and the inducing field b), destructively in mutual opposition, which must ultimately be overcome by physical force, which is commonly produced by the consumption of other energy resources.

The electrical generator of the present invention is not actuated by mechanical force. It makes use of the induced secondary magnetic field in such a way as to not cause opposition, but instead, addition and resulting acceleration of magnetic field motion. Because the present invention is not mechanically actuated, and because the magnetic fields do not act to destroy one another in mutual opposition, the present invention does not require the consumption of natural resources in order to generate electricity.

The present generator’s induced magnetic field, resulting from electrical current flowing through the load and returning through output wire 4, is that of a closed loop encircling each hole in the core. The induced magnetic fields create magnetic flux in the form of closed loops within the ferromagnetic core. The magnetic field “encircles” each hole in the core which carries output wire 4. This is similar to the threads of a screw “encircling” the shaft of the screw.

Within this generator, the magnetic field from output wire 4 immediately encircles each hole formed in the core (c), since wire 4 may take an opposing direction through each neighbouring hole, the direction of the resulting magnetic field will likewise be opposite. The direction of arrows (b) and (c) are, at each hole, opposing, headed in opposite directions, since (b) is the inducing flux and (c) is the induced flux, each opposing one another while generating electricity.

However, this magnetic opposition is effectively directed against the permanent magnets which are injecting their flux into the core, but not the source of the alternating magnetic input field 6. In the present solid-state generator, induced output flux (4,c) is directed to oppose the permanent magnets (1,2) not the input flux source (6, a) which is synthesising the virtual motion of those magnets (1,2) by it’s magnetising action on core 3.

The present generator employs magnets as the source of motive pressure driving the generator, since they are the entity being opposed or “pushed against” by the opposing reaction induced by output current which is powering a load. Experiments show that high-quality permanent magnets can be magnetically “pushed against” in this way for very long periods of time, before becoming demagnetised or “spent”.

Fig.3 illustrates inducing representative flux arrows (b) directed oppositely against induced representative flux (c). In materials typically used to form core 3, fields flowing in mutually opposite directions tend to cancel each other, just as positive and negative numbers of equal magnitude sum to zero.

On the remaining side of each hole, opposite the permanent magnet, no mutual opposition takes place. Induced flux (c) caused by the generator load current remains present; however, inducing flux from the permanent magnets (b) is not present since no magnet is present, on this side, to provide the necessary flux. This leaves the induced flux (c) encircling the hole, as well as input flux (a) from the input coils 6, continuing its path along the core, on either side of each hole.

On the side of each hole in the core where a magnet is present, action (b) and reaction (c) magnetic flux substantially cancel each other, being directed in opposite directions within the core. On the other side of each hole, where no magnet is present, input flux (a) and reaction flux (c) share a common direction. Magnetic flux adds together in these zones, where induced magnetic flux (c) aids the input flux (a). This is the reverse of typical generator action, where induced flux (c) is typically opposing the “input” flux originating the induction.

Since the magnetic interaction is a combination of magnetic flux opposition and magnetic flux acceleration, there is no longer an overall magnetic braking or total opposition effect. The braking and opposition is counterbalanced
by a simultaneous magnetic acceleration within the core. Since mechanical motion is absent, the equivalent electrical effect ranges from idling, or absence of opposition, to a strengthening and overall acceleration of the electrical input signal (within coils 6). Proper selection of the permanent magnet (1,2) material and flux density, core 3 material magnetic characteristics, core hole pattern and spacing, and output medium connection technique, create embodiments where the present generator will display an absence of electrical loading at the input and/or an overall amplification of the input signal. This ultimately causes less input energy to be required in order to work the generator. Therefore, as increasing amounts of energy are withdrawn from the generator as output power performing useful work, decreasing amounts of energy are generally required to operate it. This process continues, working against the permanent magnets (1,2) until they are demagnetised.

In an embodiment of this invention, Fig.4 illustrates a typical operating circuit employing the generator of this invention. A square-wave input signal from a transistor switching circuit, is applied at the input terminals (S), to the primary (a) of a step-down transformer 11. The secondary winding (b) of the input transformer may be a single turn, in series with a capacitor 12 and the generator 13 input coil (c), forming a series resonant circuit. The frequency of the applied square wave (S) must either match, or be an integral sub-harmonic of the resonant frequency of this 3-element transformer-capacitor-inductor input circuit.

Generator 13 output winding (d) is connected to resistive load L through switch 14. When switch 14 is closed, generated power is dissipated at L, which is any resistive load, for example, and incandescent lamp or resistive heater.

Once input resonance is achieved, and the square-wave frequency applied at S is such that the combined reactive impedance of total inductance (b + c) is equal in magnitude to the opposing reactive impedance of capacitance 12, the electrical phases of current through, and voltage across, generator 13 input coil (c) will flow 90 degrees apart in resonant quadrature. Power drawn from the square-wave input energy source applied to S will now be at a minimum.

In this condition, the resonant energy present at the generator input may be measured by connecting a voltage probe across the test points (v), situated across the generator input coil, together with a current probe around point (l), situated in series with the generator input coil (c). The instantaneous vector product of these two measurements indicates the energy circulating at the generator's input, ultimately shifting the permanent magnets' fields in order to create useful induction. This situation persists until the magnets are no longer magnetised.

It will be apparent to those skilled in the art that a square (or other) wave may be applied directly to the generator input terminals (c) without the use of other components. While this remains effective, advantageous regenerating effects may not be realised to their fullest extent with such direct excitation. Use of a resonant circuit, particularly with inclusion of a capacitor 12 as suggested, facilitates recirculation of energy within the input circuit, generally producing efficient excitation and a reduction of the required input power as loads are applied.

Another device of this type comes from Charles Flynn. The technique of applying magnetic variations to the magnetic flux produced by a permanent magnet is covered in detail in the patents of Charles Flynn which are included in the Appendix. In his patent he shows techniques for producing linear motion, reciprocal motion, circular motion and power conversion, and he gives a considerable amount of description and explanation on each, his main patent containing a hundred illustrations. Taking one application at random:
He states that a substantial enhancement of magnetic flux can be obtained from the use of an arrangement like this:

![Diagram of a laminated soft iron frame with a powerful permanent magnet positioned in its centre and six coils wound in the positions shown. The magnetic flux from the permanent magnet flows around both sides of the frame.]

Here, a laminated soft iron frame has a powerful permanent magnet positioned in its centre and six coils are wound in the positions shown. The magnetic flux from the permanent magnet flows around both sides of the frame.

![Diagram of control coils powered to divert the magnetic flux to the left hand frame circuit.]

When the left hand control coils are powered so that the magnetic field generated adds to that of the permanent magnet already flowing around that side of the frame, Charles states that all of the permanent magnet's flux gets diverted to the left hand frame circuit. This causes the flux on that side to rise by half of that of the permanent magnet plus all of the electromagnetic flux. In effect, the magnetic variation is greater than the magnetic field generated by the current in the coil. In other words, applying a current to the coil produces an enhanced magnetic effect, thanks to the permanent magnet. The components should be arranged so that the frame does not get saturated at peak current.

The control circuitry then alters the coil drive to:

![Diagram of the control circuitry that diverts the flux to the left hand circuit.]

and the same effect takes place on the other side of the frame. The indications are that this is a very effective method of power conversion.

**The MEG.** Tom Bearden, Stephen Patrick, James Hayes, Kenneth Moore and James Kenny were granted US Patent 6,362,718 on 26th March 2002. This patent is for an electromagnetic generator with no moving parts. This device can be self-powered and is described and illustrated on JL Naudin's web site at [http://jnaudin.free.fr/meg/megv21.htm](http://jnaudin.free.fr/meg/megv21.htm) where test results are shown. This device has been shown to have a greater output than its input and an output five times higher than the input has been mentioned. However, it
should be mentioned that very few people who have attempted to replicate this device, have failed to reach COP>1 performance.

The “Motionless Electromagnetic Generator” or “MEG” consists of a magnetic ring with output coils wound on it. Inside the ring is a permanent magnet to provide a steady magnetic flux around the ring. Superimposed on the ring are two electromagnets which are activated one after the other to make the magnetic flux oscillate. This is very much like Floyd Sweet’s “VTA” device.

If you should construct one of these, please be warned that it should not be started up unless there is an external load across the pick-up coils, otherwise dangerous, potentially lethal voltages can be produced. Don’t get yourself killed or injured - please be very careful.

A re-worded excerpt from the patent for this system, is in PatD4 of this set of documents and it gives the construction details of the prototype: dimensions, number of turns, materials used, drive frequency, monostable pulse durations, etc. The prototype produced two outputs of 48 watts for one input of 12 watts. This allowed the input power to be taken from one of the outputs, while that same output was powering other loads.

This device is essentially, a custom-built transformer with two primary windings (the oscillator coils) and two secondary windings (the pick-up coils), with a permanent magnet inserted to create a standing magnetic field through the yoke (frame) of the transformer. However, a permanent magnet has two separate energy streams coming from it. The main field is the magnetic field which is very well known. It normally flows out in every direction, but in the MEG, a very good conducting path is provided by the frame of the device. This traps the magnetic energy flow and channels it around inside the frame. This prevents it masking the second energy field which is the Electrical energy field. With the magnetic field moved out of the way, it is now possible to tap this energy field for additional power output.

The MEG looks like a very simple device, but in actual fact, it is not. To act as a successful device with a Coefficient of Performance (COP) over 1, where the input power which is provided is less than the useful power output of the device, then Tom says that the frame needs to be made from a nanocrystalline material. This material has special properties which give the MEG it’s exceptional output and it is described in Device Patents No 4. in this series of documents.

Care has to be taken with this device as the output power can be so high that it can burn the insulation off the wires and destroy the device if the output power is not controlled carefully. The output power is normally limited to a COP of 5.4 for practical reasons. If the necessary input power is taken from the output power via a rigorous control circuit which prevents runaway, then the device can provide output power while no outside input power is needed.

The output power is controlled by the waveform being sent to the oscillator coils. The power is controlled by the exact shape of the “square wave” drive:
This waveform is adjusted carefully to keep the COP down to 5.4 for safety sake. The waveform is also adjustable for frequency and Mark/Space ratio.

As it is some years since this device was patented, the question can be asked as to why it is not in production and offered for sale everywhere. The reason is that the MEG is a laboratory prototype which needs careful adjustment and tweaking. It has been replicated by others and its performance verified as being COP>1, but it is not yet ready for production where it is necessary to have the design enhanced to the stage that it can be assembled in a factory and work immediately without the need for manual adjustments. That development is in hand and may be completed in the next year or two.

Some further explanation is in order. The MEG has an overall efficiency, well below 100% in spite of having a Coefficient Of Performance well in excess of 1. The COP of 5.4 mentioned earlier is an arbitrary figure selected by the designers to prevent the insulation being burnt off the output wires. The actual maximum output is almost unlimited, certainly a COP of 100 is perfectly possible, but quite unnecessary in practical terms.

If a standard laminated iron yoke is used for the MEG, it will never have a COP>1 as input power will be needed to make it operate. The magnetic flux from a permanent magnet consists of two components. One component is rotary and it spreads out in every direction. The second component is linear and it gets swamped and hidden by the rotary field. If a torroidal yoke wound with an input winding over its whole length is used, then that traps all of the rotating magnetic field inside the torroid. The snag is that this requires considerable input power to energise the torroidal winding. The big advance with the MEG is that the inventors have discovered some standard off-the-shelf nanocrystalline materials which have the property of trapping the rotational magnetic field inside a torroid formed from them, without the need for any energising coil. This is a major boost to the functioning of the device.

Now, with the rotational magnetic field trapped inside the torroid, the linear field becomes accessible, and it is a very useful field indeed. It is electrical in nature. In actual fact, magnetism and electricity are not two separate things, but instead, they are different aspects of the same thing, so both should really be referred to as “electromagnetism”. Anyway, the linear field is easy to access once the rotational field has been removed. All that is necessary is to pulse it sharply. When that is done, real electricity is introduced into the MEG from the surrounding environment. The sharper the waveform, the greater the additional electrical input becomes. This is what makes the MEG have a COP of say, 5.4 which is a practical working output. If the output is then manipulated to provide the input power needed for the pulsing, the COP effectively becomes infinite as you do not have to provide any power to make it work and you have a substantial power output. The power output divided by the power input you have to provide to make the device operate, gives the COP rating, so any output divided by zero input, always gives infinity.

Dave Lawton has experimented with the MEG arrangement, using a professionally constructed custom laminated iron yoke. He found that using the standard arrangement, he found no difference when he removed the permanent magnet. Testing various configurations, he found that the most effective set-up for his components is:
Here, the drive coils are both put asymmetrically on one side of the frame and wired so that their pulses complement each other. Then two pairs of button magnets are placed on the other side of the centreline, each side of the yoke, and bridged together with two straight vertical sections of laminated iron bar. This arrangement is sensitive to the exact position of these magnets and tuning is achieved by moving the group of four magnets and two bars (effectively two “horseshoe” magnets) slightly left or right to find the optimum position. Introducing or removing these magnets then made a considerable difference to the operation of the device.

There are other devices which are very close to the MEG construction. One of these is at present being displayed on the web page http://www.inkomp-delta.com/page8.html, though for full understanding of what is being said, considerable language skills are needed as the translation programs fail dramatically when asked to translate this information. However, the following information appears to be displayed there by Elin Pelin and Valeri Ivanov and dated 11th February 2007:

An effective device can be constructed from a permanent magnet, a toroid and a laminated iron yoke. The arrangement is displayed like this:
It appears that when the switch is made from State 1 to State 2, that a rotating magnetic field is set up in the toroid. Presumably, the switching will be caused by pulsing a coil wound around the yoke and the output power pick-up from a coil around the toroid like this:

If you are fluent in Russian (or whatever language is used on the web site) it would be most helpful if you would let me know if this description is accurate, and if there are any important additional details which need to be stressed, or any experimental results which it would be useful to know about.
Floyd Sweet's VTA. Another device in the same category of permanent magnets with energised coils round it (and very limited practical information available) was produced by Floyd Sweet. The device was dubbed “Vacuum Triode Amplifier” or “VTA” by Tom Bearden and the name has stuck, although it does not appear to be a particularly accurate description.

The device was capable of producing more than 1 kW of output power at 120 Volts, 60 Hz and is self-powered. The output is energy which resembles electricity in that it powers motors, lamps, etc. but as the power increases through any load there is a temperature drop instead of the expected temperature rise.

When it became known that he had produced the device he became the target of serious threats, some of which were delivered face-to-face in broad daylight. It is quite possible that the concern was due to the device tapping zero-point energy, which when done at high currents opens a whole new can of worms. One of the observed characteristics of the device was that when the current was increased, the measured weight of the apparatus reduced by about a pound. While this is hardly new, it suggests that space/time was being warped. The German scientists at the end of WWII had been experimenting with this (and killing off the unfortunate people who were used to test the system) - if you have considerable perseverance, you can read up on this in Nick Cook’s inexpensive book “The Hunt for Zero-Point” ISBN 0099414988.

Floyd found that the weight of his device reduced in proportion to the amount of energy being produced. But he found that if the load was increased enough, a point was suddenly reached where a loud sound like a whirlwind was produced, although there was no movement of the air. The sound was heard by his wife Rose who was in another room of their apartment and by others outside the apartment. Floyd did not increase the load further (which is just as well as he would probably have received a fatal dose of radiation if he had) and did not repeat the test. In my opinion, this is a dangerous device and I personally, would not recommend anyone attempting to build one. It should be noted that a highly lethal 20,000 Volts is used to ‘condition’ the magnets and the principles of operation are not understood at this time. Also, there is insufficient information to hand to provide realistic advice on practical construction details.

On one occasion, Floyd accidentally short-circuited the output wires. There was a bright flash and the wires became covered with frost. It was noted that when the output load was over 1 kW, the magnets and coils powering the device became colder, reaching a temperature of 20 degrees Fahrenheit below room temperature. On one occasion, Floyd received a shock from the apparatus with the current flowing between the thumb and the small finger of one hand. The result was an injury akin to frostbite, causing him considerable pain for at least two weeks.

Observed characteristics of the device include:

1. The output voltage does not change when the output power is increased from 100W to 1 kW.
2. The device needs a continuous load of at least 25W.
3. The output falls in the early hours of the morning but recovers later on without any intervention.
4. A local earthquake can stop the device operating.
5. The device can be started in self-powered mode by briefly applying 9 Volts to the drive coils.
6. The device can be stopped by momentary interruption of the power to the power coils.
7. Conventional instruments operate normally up to an output of 1 kW but stop working above that output level, with their readings showing zero or some other spurious reading.

Information is limited, but it appears that Floyd's device was comprised of one or two large ferrite permanent magnets (grade 8, size 150 mm x 100 mm x 25 mm) with coils wound in three planes mutually at right angles to each other (i.e. in the x, y and z axes). The magnetisation of the ferrite magnets is modified by suddenly applying 20,000 Volts from a bank of capacitors (510 Joules) or more to plates on each side of it while simultaneously driving a 1 Amp 60 Hz (or 50 Hz) alternating current through the energising coil. The alternating current should be at the frequency required for the output. The voltage pulse to the plates should be applied at the instant when the ‘A’ coil voltage reaches a peak. This needs to be initiated electronically.

It is said that the powering of the plates causes the magnetic material to resonate for a period of about fifteen minutes, and that the applied voltage in the energising coil modifies the positioning of the newly formed poles of the magnet so that it will in future, resonate at that frequency and voltage. It is important that the voltage applied to the energising coil in this ‘conditioning’ process be a perfect sinewave. Shock, or outside influence can destroy the ‘conditioning’ but it can be reinstated by repeating the conditioning process. It should be noted that the conditioning process may not be successful at the first attempt but repeating the process on the same magnet is usually successful. Once conditioning is completed, the capacitors are no longer needed. The device then only needs a few milliwatts of 60 Hz applied to the input coil to give up to 1.5 kW at 60 Hz at the output coil. The output coil can then supply the input coil indefinitely.
The conditioning process modifies the magnetisation of the ferrite slab. Before the process the North pole is on one face of the magnet and the South pole on the opposite face. After conditioning, the South pole does not stop at the mid point but extends to the outer edges of the North pole face, extending inwards from the edge by about 6 mm. Also, there is a magnetic ‘bubble’ created in the middle of the North pole face and the position of this ‘bubble’ moves when another magnet is brought near it.

The conditioned slab has three coil windings:

1. The ‘A’ coil is wound first around the outer perimeter, each turn being $150 + 100 + 150 + 100 = 500$ mm long (plus a small amount caused by the thickness of the coil former material). It has about 600 turns of 28 AWG (0.3 mm) wire.

2. The ‘B’ coil is wound across the 100 mm faces, so one turn is about $100 + 25 + 100 + 25 = 250$ mm (plus a small amount for the former thickness and clearing coil ‘A’). It has between 200 and 500 turns of 20 AWG (1 mm) wire.

3. The ‘C’ coil is wound along the 150 mm face, so one turn is $150 + 25 + 150 + 25 = 350$ mm (plus the former thickness, plus clearance for coil ‘A’ and coil ‘B’). It has between 200 and 500 turns of 20 AWG (1 mm) wire and should match the resistance of coil ‘B’ as closely as possible.

Coil ‘A’ is the input coil. Coil ‘B’ is the output coil. Coil ‘C’ is used for the conditioning and for the production of gravitational effects.

Much of this information and photographs of the original device can be found on the website: "http://www.intakek.com/Index/Projects/Research/Construction%20of%20the%20Floyd%20Sweet%20VTA%20by%20Michael%20Watson.htm" where a paper by Michael Watson gives much practical information. For example, he states that an experimental set up which he made, had the ‘A’ coil with a resistance of 70 ohms and an inductance of 63 mH, the ‘B’ coil, wound with 23 AWG wire with a resistance of 4.95 ohms and an inductance of 1.735 mH, and the ‘C’ coil, also wound with 23 AWG wire, with a resistance of 5.05 ohms and an inductance of 1.78 mH.

In passing, if the gravity thrust aspect of this information interests you, let me mention a television documentary programme which you may not have seen. In it, Boyd Bushman demonstrated what might just have been a simplistic gravity thrust device. Boyd is a US weapons designer of 35 years experience. He designed the prototype for the ‘Stinger’ missile. He moved to Lockheed as a designer. There he experimented with various things including the model he demonstrated.

It consisted of 250 turns of 30 AWG enamelled wire wound in a circular bundle about 200 mm in diameter. The winding was circular in cross section and air cored. The turns were secured by masking tape, some of which was used to tether the ring to a table top. He then plugged the coil directly in to the 110V 60 Hz mains supply. The ring immediately lifted off the table.

Boyd described the device as dangerous as it becomes very hot in just a few seconds. He stated that in his opinion, fed with different voltage and frequency, the ring could be made able to provide thrust for a full-scale flying vehicle.

Dan Davidson. Dan has produced a system rather similar to the ‘MEG’ described above. His system is different in that he uses an acoustic device to vibrate a magnet which forms the core of a transformer. This is said to increase the output by a substantial amount. His arrangement looks like this:
Dan’s patent forms part of this set of documents and it gives details of the types of acoustic transducers which are suitable for this generator design.

Pavel Imris. Pavel was awarded a US patent in the 1970’s. The patent is most interesting in that it describes a device which can have an output power which is more than nine times greater than the input power. He achieves this with a device which has two pointed electrodes enclosed in a quartz glass envelope which contains xenon gas under pressure (the higher the pressure, the greater the gain of the device) and a dielectric material.

Here, the power supply to one or more standard fluorescent lamps is passed through the device. This produces a power gain which can be spectacular when the gas pressure in the area marked ‘24’ and ‘25’ in the above diagram is high. The patent is included in this set of documents and it contains the following table of experimental measurements:

Table 1 shows the data to be obtained relating to the optical electrostatic generator. Table 2 shows the lamp performance and efficiency for each of the tests shown in Table 1. The following is a description of the data in each of the columns of Tables 1 and 2.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test No.</th>
<th>Type of discharge lamp</th>
<th>Pressure of Xenon (Torr)</th>
<th>Field strength across lamp (V/cm)</th>
<th>Current density (A/sq.mm)</th>
<th>Current (A)</th>
<th>Power str. across lamp (W/cm.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Mo elec</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Xe</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>11.8</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>2.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Xe</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>19.6</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>3.57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Xe</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>31.4</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>5.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Xe</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>47.2</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>8.58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Xe</td>
<td>20.00</td>
<td>55.1</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>10.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Xe</td>
<td>30.00</td>
<td>62.9</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>11.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Xe</td>
<td>40.00</td>
<td>66.9</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>12.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Xe</td>
<td>60.00</td>
<td>70.8</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>12.88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Xe</td>
<td>80.00</td>
<td>76.7</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>13.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Xe</td>
<td>100.00</td>
<td>78.7</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>14.31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Xe</td>
<td>200.00</td>
<td>90.5</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>16.46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Xe</td>
<td>300.00</td>
<td>100.4</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>18.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Xe</td>
<td>400.00</td>
<td>108.3</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>19.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Xe</td>
<td>500.00</td>
<td>110.2</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>20.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Xe</td>
<td>600.00</td>
<td>118.1</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>21.47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Xe</td>
<td>700.00</td>
<td>120.0</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>21.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Xe</td>
<td>800.00</td>
<td>122.8</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>22.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Xe</td>
<td>900.00</td>
<td>125.9</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>22.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Xe</td>
<td>1,000.00</td>
<td>127.9</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>23.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Xe</td>
<td>2,000.00</td>
<td>149.6</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>27.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Xe</td>
<td>3,000.00</td>
<td>161.4</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>29.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Xe</td>
<td>4,000.00</td>
<td>173.2</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>31.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Xe</td>
<td>5,000.00</td>
<td>179.1</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>32.56</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Table 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>220</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>1,210</td>
<td>40.00</td>
<td>3,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>218</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>1,199</td>
<td>39.63</td>
<td>3,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>215</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>1,182</td>
<td>39.08</td>
<td>3,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>1,155</td>
<td>38.17</td>
<td>3,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>1,100</td>
<td>36.36</td>
<td>3,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>195</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>1,072</td>
<td>35.45</td>
<td>3,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>190</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>1,045</td>
<td>34.54</td>
<td>3,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>182</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>1,001</td>
<td>33.08</td>
<td>3,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>962</td>
<td>31.81</td>
<td>3,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>162</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>891</td>
<td>29.45</td>
<td>3,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>155</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>852</td>
<td>28.17</td>
<td>3,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>715</td>
<td>23.63</td>
<td>3,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>616</td>
<td>20.36</td>
<td>3,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>550</td>
<td>18.18</td>
<td>3,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>467</td>
<td>15.45</td>
<td>3,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>412</td>
<td>13.63</td>
<td>3,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>368</td>
<td>12.18</td>
<td>3,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>330</td>
<td>10.90</td>
<td>3,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>291</td>
<td>9.63</td>
<td>3,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>275</td>
<td>9.09</td>
<td>3,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>126</td>
<td>4.18</td>
<td>3,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>2.35</td>
<td>3,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>1.45</td>
<td>3,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>0.90</td>
<td>3,200</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The results from Test No. 24 where the gas pressure is a very high 5,000 Torr, show that the input power for each 40-watt standard fluorescent tubes is 0.9 watts for full lamp output. In other words, each lamp is working to its full specification on less than one fortieth of its rated input power. However, the power taken by the device in that test was 333.4 watts which with the 90 watts needed to run the 100 lamps, gives a total input electrical power of 423.4 watts instead of the 4,000 watts which would have been needed without the device. That is an output power of more than nine times the input power.

From the point of view of any individual lamp, without using this device, it requires 40 watts of electrical input power to give 8.8 watts of light output which is an efficiency of about 22% (the rest of the input power being converted to heat). In test 24, the input power per lamp is 0.9 watts for the 8.8 watts of light produced, which is a lamp efficiency of more than 900%. The lamp used to need 40 watts of input power to perform correctly. With this device in the circuit, each lamp only needs 0.9 watts of input power which is only 2.25% of the original power. Quite an impressive performance for so simple a device!

**Michael Ognyanov’s Self-powered Power Pack.** A patent application US 3,766,094 (shown in detail in an accompanying document) gives the details of an interesting device. While it is only an application and not a full patent, the information implies strongly that Michael built and tested many of these devices.

While the power output is low, the design is of considerable interest. It is possible that the device works from picking up the output from many radio stations, although it does not have anything which is intended to be an aerial. It would be interesting to test the device, first, with a telescopic aerial added to it, and second, placed in an earthed metal box.

The device is constructed by casting a small block of a mixture of semiconductor materials such as Selenium with, from 4.85% to 5.5% Tellurium, from 3.95% to 4.2% Germanium, from 2.85% to 3.2% Neodymium, and from 2.0% to 2.5% Gallium. The resulting block is shaped with a dome on one face which is contacted by a short, pointed metal probe. When this arrangement is fed briefly with an oscillating signal, typically in the frequency range of 5.8 to 18 Mhz, it becomes self-powered and can supply electric current to external equipment. The construction is as shown here:
Presumably the output power would be increased by using full-wave rectification of the oscillations rather than the half-wave rectification shown. Michael says that increasing the dimensions of the unit increases the output power. The small unit shown in this example of his, has been shown to be able to provide flashing power for an incandescent lamp of up to 250 mA current requirement. While this is not a large power output, it is interesting that the output is obtained without any apparent input. Michael speculates that the very short connecting wires may act as radio reception aerials. If that is the case, then the output is impressive for such tiny aerials.

**The Michael Meyer and Yves Mace Isotopic Generator.** There is a French patent application number FR2680613 dated 19th August 1991 entitled "Activateur pour Mutation Isotopique" which provides some very interesting information. The system described is a self-contained solid-state energy converter which abstracts large amounts of energy from an ordinary iron bar.

The inventors describes the technique as an "isotopic mutation effect" as it converts ordinary iron (isotope 56) to isotope 54 iron, releasing large amounts of electrical energy in the process. This excess energy can, they say, be used to drive inverters, motors or generators.
The description of the mechanism which is being used by the device is: “the present invention uses a physical phenomenon to which we draw attention and which we will call ‘Isotopic Change’. The physical principle applies to isotope 56 iron which contains 26 protons, 26 electrons and 30 neutrons, giving a total mass of 56.52 Mev, although its actual mass is 55.80 Mev. The difference between the total mass and the actual mass is therefore 0.72 Mev this which corresponds to an energy of cohesion per nucleon of 0.012857 Mev.

So, if one introduces an additional 105 ev of energy to the iron core isotope 56, that core isotope will have a cohesion energy level of 0.012962 Mev per nucleon corresponding to iron isotope 54. The instability created by this contribution of energy will transfer the isotope 56 iron to isotope 54 causing a release of 2 neutrons.

This process generates an excess energy of 20,000 ev since the iron isotope 54 is only 0.70 Mev while isotope 56 has 0.72 Mev. To bring about this iron isotope 56 conversion, we use the principle of Nuclear Magnetic Resonance.”

The practical method for doing this is by using three coils of wire and a magnetic-path-closing support frame of iron as shown in this diagram:

In this arrangement,

**Coil 1**: Produces 0.5 Tesla when fed with DC, converting the iron bar into an electromagnet
**Coil 2**: Produces 10 milli-Tesla when fed with a 21 MHz AC sinewave signal
**Coil 3**: Is the output coil, providing 110, 220 or 380 volts AC at about 400 Hz depending on the number of turns in the coil

This simple and cheap system has the potential for producing substantial energy output for a very long time. The inventors claim that this device can be wired to be self-powered, while still powering external devices. Coil 1 turns the iron rod into an electromagnet with its flux channelled in a loop by the iron yoke. Coil 2 then oscillates that magnetic field in resonance with the isotope 56 iron atoms in the rod, and this produces the isotope conversion and release of excess energy. Coil 3 is wound to produce a convenient output voltage.

**The Colman / Seddon-Gilliespie Generator.** This device, patented by Harold Colman and Ronald Seddon-Gilliespie on 5th December 1956, is quite remarkable. It is a tiny lightweight device which can produce electricity using a self-powered electromagnet and chemical salts. The working life of the device before needing refurbishment is estimated at some seventy years with an output of about one kilowatt.
The operation is controlled by a transmitter which bombards the chemical sample with 300 MHz radio waves. This produces radioactive emissions from the chemical mixture for a period of one hour maximum, so the transmitter needs to be run for fifteen to thirty seconds once every hour. The chemical mixture is shielded by a lead screen to prevent harmful radiation reaching the user. The patent, GB 763,062 is included in the Appendix.

This generator unit includes a magnet, a tube containing a chemical mixture of elements whose nuclei becomes unstable as a result of bombardment by short waves so that the elements become radio-active and release electrical energy, the mixture being mounted between, and in contact with, a pair of different metals such as copper and zinc, and a capacitor mounted between those metals.

The mixture is preferably composed of the elements Cadmium, Phosphorus and Cobalt having Atomic Weights of 112, 31 and 59 respectively. The mixture, which may be of powdered form, is mounted in a tube of non-conducting, high heat resistivity material and is compressed between granulated zinc at one end of the tube and granulated copper at the other end, the ends of the tube being closed by brass caps and the tube being carried in a suitable cradle so that it is located between the poles of the magnet. The magnet is preferably an electromagnet and is energised by the current produced by the unit. The transmitter unit which is used for activating the generator unit may be of any conventional type operating on ultra-shortwave and is preferably crystal controlled at the desired frequency.

The transmitter unit is of any suitable conventional type for producing ultra shortwaves and may be crystal controlled to ensure that it operates at the desired frequency with the necessity of tuning. The quartz tube containing the chemical mixture, works best if made up of a number of small cells in series. In other words, considering the cartridge from one end to the other, at one end and in contact with the brass cap, there would be a layer of powdered copper, then a layer of the chemical mixture, then a layer of powdered zinc, a layer of powdered copper, etc. with a layer of powdered zinc in contact with the brass cap at the other end of the cartridge. With a cartridge some forty five millimetres long and five millimetres diameter, some fourteen cells may be included.
Hans Coler. Hans Coler developed a device which he named the “Stromerzeuger” which consisted of an arrangement of magnets, flat coils and copper plates with a primary circuit powered by a small battery. The output from the secondary circuit was used to light a bank of lamps and it was claimed that the output power was many times the input power and to continue indefinitely.

The apparatus principally consists of two parallel connected spools which being bi-filarly wound in a special way, are magnetically linked together. One of these spools is composed of copper sheets (the spool is called the ‘plate spool’). The other one is made of a number of thin parallel connected isolated wires (called ‘spool winding’), running parallel to the plates, at small intervals. Both spools can be fed by separate batteries (6 Volt, 6.5 Ahr were used). At least two batteries are needed to get the apparatus operating, but subsequently, one battery can be removed.

The spools are arranged in two halves each by the bi-filar windings. The plate spool also contains iron rods with silver wire connections. These rods are magnetised by a special battery through exciter windings. Electrically, the exciter winding is completely isolated from the other windings. Hans said that the production of energy takes place principally in these iron rods and the winding of the spools plays an essential part in the process.

It should be mentioned that the spool circuit is powered up first. Initially, it took a current of 104 mA. The plates and exciter circuits are then switched on simultaneously. When this is done, the current in the spool circuit dropped from 104 mA to about 27 mA.

It is suggested that an electron be not only regarded as a negatively charged particle but also as a South magnetic pole. The basic Stromerzeuger element is that of an open secondary circuit, capacity loaded, inductively coupled to a primary circuit. The novel feature is that the capacities are connected to the secondary core through permanent magnets as shown here:

It is claimed that on switching on the primary circuit, “separation of charges” takes place with M1 becoming positively charged and M2 becoming negatively charged and that these charges are “magnetically polarised” when they formed, owing to the presence of the magnets. When the primary circuit is switched off, a “reversing current” flows in the secondary but the magnets “do not exert a polarising effect on this reversal”.

Two of the basic elements shown above are placed together making a double stage arrangement with the copper plates close together (presumably as capacitor plates):
The secondary windings are both exactly equal and wound in a direction such that, on switching the primary coil on, the electrons in the secondary coil flow from P1 to P2 and from F1 to F2. This is the basic working arrangement. More of these double stages can be added to provide higher outputs.
Chapter 4: Gravity Pulsed Systems

It is generally not realised that excess energy can be obtained from pulsing a flywheel or other gravitational device.

This fact has recently been stressed by Lawrence Tseung who refers to the extra energy obtained in this way as being “Lead-out” energy. This gravitational feature has been part of university Engineering courses for decades, where it has been taught that the loading stress on a bridge caused by a load rolling across the bridge is far less than the stress caused if that same load were suddenly dropped on to the bridge.

The Chas Campbell System. Recently, Mr. Chas Campbell of Australia demonstrated electrical power gain with a flywheel system which he developed:
But what this diagram does not show, is that a couple of the drive belts are left with excessive slack. This causes a rapid series of jerks in the drive between the mains motor and the flywheel. These occur so rapidly that they do not appear noticeable when looking at the system operating. However, this stream of very short pulses in the drive chain, generates a considerable amount of excess energy drawn from the gravitational field. Chas has now confirmed the excess energy by getting the flywheel up to speed and then switching the drive motor input to the output generator. The result is a self-powered system capable of running extra loads.

Let me explain the overall system. A mains motor of 750 watt capacity (1 horsepower) is used to drive a series of belts and pulleys which form a gear-train which produces over twice the rotational speed at the shaft of an electrical generator. The intriguing thing about this system is that greater electrical power can be drawn from the output generator than appears to be drawn from the input drive to the motor. How can that be? Well, Mr Tseung’s gravity theory explains that if an energy pulse is applied to a flywheel, then during the instant of that pulse, excess energy equal to \(2mgr\) is fed into the flywheel, where “\(m\)” is the mass (weight) of the flywheel, “\(g\)” is the gravitational constant and “\(r\)” is the radius of the centre of mass of the flywheel, that is, the distance from the axle to the point at which the weight of the wheel appears to act. If all of the flywheel weight is at the rim of the wheel, the “\(r\)” would be the radius of the wheel itself.

This means that if the flywheel (which is red in the following photographs) is driven smoothly at constant speed, then there is no energy gain. However, if the drive is not smooth, then excess energy is drawn from the gravitational field. That energy increases as the diameter of the flywheel increases. It also increases as the weight of the flywheel increases. It also increases if the flywheel weight is concentrated as far out towards the rim of the flywheel as is possible. It also increases, the faster the impulses are applied to the system. Now take a look at the construction which Chas has used:

You notice that not only does he have a heavy flywheel of a fair size, but that there are three or four other large diameter discs mounted where they also rotate at the intermediate speeds of rotation. While these discs may well not have been placed there as flywheels, nevertheless, they do act as flywheels, and each one of them will be contributing to the free-energy gain of the system as a whole.

If the drive motor were a DC motor which is deliberately pulsed by a special power supply, then the effect is likely to be even greater. It is not clear if the irregular drive which makes this system work so well is due to the way that the mains motor works, or to slight slippage in the drive belts. The bottom line is that Chas’ system produces excess energy, and although it is by no means obvious to everybody, that excess energy is being drawn from gravity.

Ok, so what are the requirements for an effective system? Firstly, there needs to be a suitable flywheel with as large a diameter as is practical, say 4 feet or 1.2 metres. The vast majority of the weight needs to be close to the rim. The construction needs to be robust and secure as ideally, the rate of rotation will be high, and of course, the wheel needs to be exactly at right angles to the axle on which it rotates and exactly centred on the axle:
Next, you need a motor drive which gives a rapid pulsed drive to the shaft. This could be one of many different types. For example, the original motor design of Ben Teal where very simple mechanical contacts power simple solenoids which operate a conventional crankshaft with normal connecting rods:

This style of motor is simple to construct and yet very powerful. It also meets the requirement for rapidly repeated impulses to the axle of the flywheel. The motor power can be increased to any level necessary by stacking additional solenoid layers along the length of the crankshaft.
This style of motor looks very simple and its operation is indeed very simple, but it is surprising how powerful the resulting drive is, and it is a very definite contender for a serious free gravitic energy device in spite of its simplicity.

An alternative suitable drive system could be produced by using the same style of permanent magnet and electromagnet drive utilised by the Adams motor, where electromagnets positioned just clear of the edge of the rotor disc are pulsed to provide an impulse to the drive shaft, in the case shown below, every 30 degrees of shaft rotation.

Here, the sensor generates a signal every time that one of the permanent magnets embedded in the rotor passes it. The control box circuitry allows adjustment of the time between the arrival of the sensor signal and the generation of a powerful drive pulse to the electromagnets, pushing the rotor onwards in its rotation. The control box can also provide control over the duration of the pulse as well, so that the operation can be fully controlled and tuned for optimum operation.

Any ordinary DC motor driven by a low-rate DC motor “speed controller” would also work in this situation, as it will generate a stream of impulses which are transmitted to the flywheel. The shaft of the flywheel will, of course, be coupled to an automotive alternator for generation of a low voltage output, or alternatively a mains voltage generator. It should be stressed that having several flywheels as part of the drive gearing, as Chas Campbell...
does, is a particularly efficient way of leading-out excess gravitational energy. Part of the electrical output can be used to provide a stabilised power supply to operate the drive for the flywheel.

It is possible to make the Chas Campbell arrangement into a more compact construction by reducing the size of the flywheel and introducing more than one flywheel into the design. It is perfectly possible to have more than one flywheel on a single axle shaft. The construction of the flywheels can be efficient if a central steel disc is used and two cast lead collars are attached to the rim on both sides of the web disc. This produces a flywheel which is as cheap and effective as can conveniently be made.

Although it is not shown on the diagram shown above, Chas does use additional discs. These are not particularly heavy, but they will have some flywheel effect. Ideally, these discs should be beefed up and given considerable weight so that they contribute substantially to the overall power gain of the device. This is what Chas’ present build looks like:

A possible alternative construction might be:
Here, there are five heavy flywheels mounted on two heavily supported strong axles, and while the two shown in dark green are only rotating at half the speed of the other three, the energy gain will be equal for each flywheel as each receives the same train of drive pulses.

The drive impulses can be from a DC motor fed with electrical pulses, perhaps via a standard “DC motor speed controller” or using electrical pulses to drive a series of permanent magnets spaced out around the edge of a circular rotor. In this instance, the electrical generation can be via a standard commercial generator, or it can be produced by using the electromagnet driving coils alternately to drive and to capture electrical energy. The following sketch shows a possible arrangement for this concept:

The Bedini Pulsed Flywheel. The Chas Campbell system is not an isolated case. On page 19 of the book “Free Energy Generation - Circuits and Schematics” John Bedini shows a diagram of a motor/generator which he has had running for three years continuously while keeping its own battery fully charged.

At John’s web site http://www.icehouse.net/john34/bedinibearden.html about two thirds of the way down the page, there is a black and white picture of a very large construction version of this motor. The important thing about this motor is that it is being driven by electrical pulses which apply a continuous stream of short drive pulses to the flywheel. This extracts a steady stream of continuous energy drawn out from the gravitational field, enough to charge the driving battery and keep the motor running. The large version built by Jim Watson had an excess power output of many kilowatts, due to the very large size and weight of its flywheel.
The overall strategy for this is shown here:

It is also likely that Joseph Newman’s motor gains additional energy from its large physical weight of some 90 kilograms driven by a continuous stream of pulses. Any wheel or rotor assembly which is driven with a series of mechanical pulses, should benefit from having a serious flywheel attached to the shaft, or alternatively, the outer edge of the rotor. Engineers consider that effect of a flywheel on an irregular system is to iron out the irregularities in the rotation. That is correct as a flywheel does do that, but Lawrence Tseung’s gravity “lead-out” theory indicates that those irregular pulses also add energy to the system.

We are all familiar with the effects of gravity. If you drop something, it falls downwards. Engineers and scientists are usually of the opinion that useful work cannot be performed on a continuous basis from gravity, as, they point out, when a weight falls and converts it’s “potential energy” into useful work, you then have to put in just as much work to raise the weight up again to its starting point. While this appears to be a sound analysis of the situation, it is not actually true.

Some people claim that a gravity-powered device is impossible because, they say that it would be a “perpetual motion” machine, and they say, perpetual motion is impossible. In actual fact, perpetual motion is not impossible as the argument on it being impossible is based on calculations which assume that the object in question is part of a “closed” system, while in reality, it is most unlikely that any system in the universe is actually a “closed” system, since everything is immersed in a massive sea of energy called the “zero-point energy field”. But that aside, let us examine the actual situation.

Johann Bessler made a fully working gravity wheel in 1712. A 300 pound (136 Kg) wheel which he demonstrated lifting a 70 pound weight through a distance of 80 feet, demonstrating an excess power of 5,600 foot-pounds. Considering the low level of technology at that time, there would appear to be very little scope for that demonstration to be a fake. If it were a fake, then the fake itself would have been a most impressive achievement.

However, Bessler acted in the same way as most inventors, and demanded that somebody would have to pay him a very large amount of money for the secret of how his gravity wheel worked. In common with the present day, there were no takers and Bessler took the details of his design to the grave with him. Not exactly an ideal situation for the rest of us.

However, the main argument against the possibility of a working gravity wheel is the idea that as gravity appears to exert a direct force in the direction of the earth, it therefore cannot be used to perform any useful work, especially since the efficiency of any device will be less than 100%.

While it is certainly agreed that the efficiency of any wheel will be less than 100% as friction will definitely be a factor, it does not necessarily follow that a successful gravity wheel cannot be constructed. Let us apply a little common sense to the problem and see what results.

If we have a see-saw arrangement, where the device is exactly balanced, with the same length of a strong plank on each side of the pivot point, like this:
It balances because the weight of the plank ("W") to the left of the support point tries to make the plank tip over in a counter-clockwise direction, while exactly the same weight ("W") tries to tip it over in a clockwise direction. Both turning forces are d times W and as they match exactly, the plank does not move.

The turning force (d times W) is called the "torque", and if we alter the arrangement by placing unequal weights on the plank, then the beam will tip over in the direction of the heavier side:

With this unequal loading, the beam will tip down on the left hand side, as indicated by the red arrow. This seems like a very simple thing, but it is a very important fact. Let me point out what happens here. As soon as the weight on one side of the pivot is bigger than the weight on the other side (both weights being an equal distance from the pivot point), then the heavy plank starts to move. Why does it move? Because gravity is pushing the weights downwards.

One other point is that the distance from the pivot point is also important. If the added weights "m" are equal but placed at different distances from the pivot point, then the plank will also tip over:

This is because the larger lever arm "x" makes the left hand weight "m" have more influence than the identical weight "m" on the right hand side.

Do you feel that these facts are just too simple for anyone to really bother with? Well, they form the basis of devices which can provide real power to do real work, with no need for electronics or batteries.

The following suggestions for practical systems are put forward for you to consider, and if you are interested enough to test out. However, if you decide to attempt to build anything shown here, please understand that you do so entirely at your own risk. In simple terms, if you drop a heavy weight on your toe, while other people may well be sympathetic, nobody else is liable or responsible for your injury - you need to be more careful in the future! Let me stress it again, this document is for information purposes only.
The Dale Simpson Gravity Wheel. The design of gravity-operated machines is an area which has been of considerable interest to a number of people for quite some time now. The design shown here comes from Dale Simpson of the USA. It should be stressed that the following information is published as open-source, gifted to the world and so it cannot be patented by any individual or organisation. Dale’s prototype wheel has a diameter of about five feet, utilising weights of a substantial value. The overall strategy is to create excess torque by having the weights slide along metal rods radiating from a central hub somewhat like the spokes of a cart wheel. The objective is to create an asymmetrical situation where the weights are closer to the hub when rising, than they are when falling.

The difficulty with designing a system of this type is to devise a successful and practical mechanism for moving the weights in towards the hub when they are near the lowest point in their elliptical path of movement. Dale’s design uses a spring and a latch to assist control the movement of each weight. The key to any mechanical system of this type is the careful choice of components and the precise adjustment of the final mechanism to ensure that operation is exactly as intended. This is a common problem with many free-energy devices as careless replication attempts frequently result in failure, not because the design is at fault, but because the necessary level of skill and care in construction were not met by the person attempting the replication.

Here is a sketch of Dale’s design:
The wheel has an outer rim shown in blue and a central hub shown in grey. Metal spokes shown in black run out radially from the hub to the rim. Eight spokes are shown in this diagram as that number allows greater clarity, but a larger number would probably be beneficial when constructing a wheel of this type.

The wheel as shown, rotates in a counter-clockwise direction. Each weight, shown in dark grey, has a pair of low-friction roller bearings attached to it. There is also a spring, shown in red, between the weight and the hub. When a weight reaches the 8-o’clock position, the roller bearings contact a spring compression ramp, shown in purple. This ramp is formed of two parts, one on each side of the spokes, providing a rolling ramp for each of the two roller bearings. The ramp is formed in a curve which has a constant rate of approach towards the hub of the wheel.

The ramp is positioned so that the spring is fully compressed when the weight has just passed the lowest point in its travel. When the spring is fully compressed, a latch holds it in that position. This holds the weight in close to the hub during its upward movement. The springs are not particularly powerful, and should be just strong enough to be able to push the weight back towards the rim of the wheel when the spoke is at forty five degrees above the horizontal. The “centrifugal force” caused by the rotation assists the spring move the weight outwards at this point. The push from the spring is initiated by the latch being tripped open by the latch release component shown in pink.

The weights have an inward motion towards the hub when they are pushed by the wheel’s turning motion which forces the roller bearings upwards along the spring-compression ramp. They have an outward motion along the spokes when the catch holding the spring compressed is released at about the 11-o’clock position. The latch and the release mechanism are both mechanical - no electronics or electrical power supply is needed in this design.

These details are shown in the diagram below:

The question, of course is, will there be enough excess power to make the wheel rotate properly? The quality of construction is definitely a factor as things like the friction between the weights and their spokes needs to be very low. Let us consider the forces involved here:
Take any one weight for this calculation. Any excess rotational energy will be created by the difference between the forces attempting to turn the wheel in a clockwise direction and those forces trying to turn the wheel in a counter-clockwise direction. For the purpose of this discussion, let us assume that we have built the wheel so that the compressed-spring position is one third of the spring-uncompressed position.

As the weights are all of the same value “W”, the see-saw turning effect in a clockwise direction is the weight (“W”) multiplied by it’s distance from the centre of the axle (“L”). That is, $W \times L$.

The turning effect in the counter clockwise direction is the weight (“W”) multiplied by it’s distance from the centre of the axle (“3W”). That is, $W \times 3 \times L$.

So, with $WL$ pushing it clockwise, and $3WL$ pushing it counter-clockwise, there is a net force of $(3WL - WL)$, i.e. a net force of $2WL$ driving the wheel in a counter-clockwise direction. If that force is able to push the weight in towards the hub, compressing the spring and operating the spring latch, then the wheel will be fully operational.

There is actually, some additional turning power provided by the weights on the left hand side of the diagram, both above and below the horizontal, as they are a good deal further out from the axle than those with fully compressed and latched springs.

The only way of determining if this design will work correctly is to build one and test it. It would, of course, be possible to have several of these wheels mounted on a single axle shaft to increase the excess output power available from the drive shaft. This design idea has probably the lowest excess power level of all those in this document. The following designs are higher powered and not particularly difficult to construct.

**The Veljko Milkovic Pendulum / Lever system.** The concept that it is not possible to have excess power from a purely mechanical device is clearly wrong as has recently been shown by Veljko Milkovic at [http://www.veljkomilkovic.com/OscilacijeEng.html](http://www.veljkomilkovic.com/OscilacijeEng.html) where his two-stage pendulum/lever system shows a COP = 12 output of excess energy. COP stands for “Coefficient Of Performance” which is a quantity calculated by diving the output power by the input power which the operator has to provide to make the system work. Please note that we are talking about power levels and not efficiency. It is not possible to have a system efficiency greater than 100% and it is almost impossible to achieve that 100% level.

Here is Veljko’s diagram of his very successful lever / pendulum system:
Here, the beam 2 is very much heavier than the pendulum weight 4. But, when the pendulum is set swinging by a slight push, the beam 2 pounds down on anvil 1 with considerable force, certainly much greater force than was needed to make the pendulum swing.

As there is excess energy, there appears to be no reason why it should not be made self-sustaining by feeding back some of the excess energy to maintain the movement. A very simple modification to do this could be:

Here, the main beam A, is exactly balanced when weight B is hanging motionless in it’s “at-rest” position. When weight B is set swinging, it causes beam A to oscillate, providing much greater power at point C due to the much greater mass of beam A. If an additional, lightweight beam D is provided and counterbalanced by weight E, so that it has a very light upward pressure on its movement stop F, then the operation should be self-sustaining.

For this, the positions are adjusted so that when point C moves to its lowest point, it just nudges beam D slightly downwards. At this moment in time, weight B is at its closest to point C and about to start swinging away to the left again. Beam D being nudged downwards causes its tip to push weight B just enough to maintain its swinging. If weight B has a mass of “W” then point C of beam A has a downward thrust of 12W on Veljko’s working model. As the energy required to move beam D slightly is quite small, the majority of the 12W thrust remains for doing additional useful work such as operating a pump.

The Dale Simpson Hinged-Plate System. Again, this is an open-source design gifted by Dale to the world and so cannot be patented by any person, organisation or other legal entity. This design is based on the increased lever arm of the weights on the falling side compared to the lesser lever arm on the rising side:
This design uses heavy metal plates which are carried on two drive belts shown in blue in the diagram above. These plates are hinged so that they stand out horizontally on the falling side, resting on a pair of lugs welded to the chain link and hang down vertically on the rising side as they are narrower than the gap between the belts.

This difference in position alters the effective distance of their weights from the pivot point, which in this case is the axle of wheel “C”. This is exactly the position described above with the see-saw with equal weights placed at different distances from the pivot. Here again, the distance “x” is much greater than the distance “d” and this causes a continuous turning force on the left hand side which produces a continuous force turning the drive shaft of wheel “C” in a counter-clockwise direction as seen in the diagram.

A key point in this design are the robust hinges which anchor the heavy metal plates to the belt. These are designed so that the plates can hang down and lie flat on the rising side (point “B”) but when the plate passes over the upper wheel to reach point “A”, and the plate flips over, the hinge construction prevents the plate from moving past the horizontal. The upper wheel at point “A” is offset towards the falling side so as to help reduce the length “d” and improve the output power of the device. The chain detail below, shows the inside view of one of the right-hand chain plates. The metal plate swings clear of the chain and the sprocket wheels which the chain runs over.
It should be noted that the movement of the lowest edge of the plates as they turn over when moving past the upper wheel at point “A”, is much faster than anywhere else, and so putting a protective housing around it would definitely be advisable as you don’t want anybody getting hit by one of these heavy plates.

It is, of course, possible to make this device to a much smaller scale to demonstrate it’s operation or test different chain designs. The plates could be made from chipboard which is fairly heavy for its size and relatively cheap.

**The Murilo Luciano Gravity Chain.** Murilo Luciano of Brazil, has devised a very clever, gravity-operated power device which he has named the “Avalanche-drive”. Again, this design cannot be patented as Murilo has gifted it to the world as a royalty-free design which anybody can make. This device continuously places more weights on one side of a drive shaft to give an unbalanced arrangement. This is done by placing expandable links between the weights. The links operate in a scissors-like mode which open up when the weights are rising, and contract when the weights are falling:
In the arrangement shown here, the weights are shown as steel bars. The design is scaleable in both height, width and the mass and number of weights. In the rough sketch above, the practical details of controlling the position of the bars and co-ordinating the rotation of the two support shafts are not shown in order to clarify the movement. In practice, the two shafts are linked with a pair of toothed sprockets and a chain. Two sets of vertical guides are also needed to control the position of the bars when they are in-between the four sprockets which connect them to the drive shafts, and as they go around the sprocket wheels.

In the sketch, there are 79 bar weights. This arrangement controls these so that there are always 21 on the rising side and 56 on the falling side (two being dead-centre). The resulting weight imbalance is substantial. If we take the situation where each of the linking bars weighs one tenth as much as one of the bar weights, then if we call the weight of one link “W”, the rising side has 252 of these “W” units trying to turn the sprockets in a clockwise direction while 588 of the “W” units are trying to turn the sprockets in an counter-clockwise direction. This is a continuous imbalance of 336 of the “W” units in the counter-clockwise direction, and that is a substantial amount. If an arrangement can be implemented where the links open up fully, then the imbalance would be 558 of the “W” units (a 66% improvement) and the level arm difference would be substantial.

There is one other feature, which has not been taken into account in this calculation, and that is the lever arm at which these weights operate. On the falling side, the centre of the weights is further out from the axis of the drive shafts because the link arms are nearly horizontal. On the rising side, the links are spread out over a lesser horizontal distance, so their centre is not as far out from their supporting sprocket. This difference in distance, increases the turning power of the output shafts. In the sketch above, an electrical generator is shown attached directly to one output shaft. That is to make the diagram easier to understand, as in practice, the generator link is likely to be a geared one so that the generator shaft spins much faster than the output shaft rotates. This is not certain as Murilo envisages that this device will operate so rapidly that some form of braking may be needed. The generator will provide braking, especially when supplying a heavy electrical load.

This diagram shows how the two side of the device have the unbalanced loading which causes a counter-clockwise rotation:
The diagrams shown above are intended to show the principles of how this device operates and so for clarity, the practical control mechanisms have not been shown. There are of course, many different ways of controlling the operation and ensuring that it works as required. One of the easiest building methods is to link the two shafts together using a chain and sprocket wheels. It is essential to have the same number of bar weights passing over the upper sprocket wheels as pass under the lower sprocket wheels. On the upper sprocket wheels, the bars are spread out, say, three times as far apart than they are on the lower sprocket wheels, so the upper sprockets need to rotate three times as fast as the lower ones. This is arranged by using a lower drive-chain sprocket wheel which has three times the diameter of the upper one.

The driving force provided by the weight imbalance of the two columns of rod weights needs to be applied to the lower sprocket wheels at point “A” in the diagram above. For this to happen, there has to be a mechanical connection between the stack of bar weights and the sprocket wheel. This can be done in different ways. In the above concept diagrams, this link has been shown as a sprocket tooth or alternatively, a simple pin projection from the sprocket wheel. This is not a good choice as it involves a considerable amount of machining and there would need to be some method to prevent the bar rotating slightly and getting out of alignment with the sprocket wheel. A much better option is to put spacers between the bar weights and have the sprocket teeth insert between the bars so that no bar slots are needed and accurate bar positioning is no longer essential. This arrangement is shown below:
The description up to here has not mentioned the most important practical aspects of the design. It is now time to consider the rising side of the device. To control the expanded section of the chain, and to ensure that it feeds correctly on to the upper sprocket wheels, the gap between successive bar weights must be controlled.

In the example shown here, which is of course, just one option out of hundreds of different implementations, the bars on the rising side are three times as far apart as those on the falling side. This means that on the upper sprocket wheels, only every third tooth will connect with a bar weight. This is shown in the following diagram. However, if the linked weights were left to their own devices, then the rising side bars would hang down in one straight line. While that would be optimum for drive power, Murilo does not envisage that as a practical option, presumably due to the movement of the links as the bar weights move over their highest point. In my opinion, that arrangement is quite possible to implement reliably provided that the length of the links is selected to match the sprocket distance exactly, however, Murilo’s method is shown here.

Murilo’s method is to use additional restraining links between the weights. The objective here is to make sure that when the weights spread out on their upward journey, that they take up positions exactly three bar widths apart, and so feed correctly on to the teeth of the upper sprocket wheel. These links need to close up on the falling side and open up on the rising side. They could be fabricated from short lengths of chain or from slotted metal strips with a pin sliding along the slot.

Whichever method is chosen, it is important that the links stay clear of the bars and do not prevent the bars stacking closely together on the falling side as that would prevent them seating correctly on the teeth of the lower sprocket wheels. The easiest precision option for the home constructor is using chain, where two bar weights are positioned on the upper sprocket wheel to give the exact spacing, and the tensioned chain is welded in position, as shown below. Placing the chain inside a plastic tube causes it to take up an "A" shape standing outwards from the links when they move into their closed position. This keeps the chains from getting between the link bars. In
addition, the chains are staggered from one pair of link bars to the next, as shown below, as an additional measure to keep the operation both reliable and quiet.

In the diagram below, only a few of these restraining links are shown in order to keep the diagram as simple as possible. It is not a good choice to make the upper bar sprocket wheels three times larger than the lower sprocket wheels as this would force both the rising and falling sections of chain out of the vertical, which in turn introduces friction against the guides. The central 1:3 gearing is needed to make sure that the chains on the rising side are fully stretched and the spacing of the bar weights matches the upper sprocket spacing exactly.

The diagrams have not shown the supporting framework which holds the axles in place and maintains the unit in a vertical position, as this framing is not specialised in any way, and there are many acceptable variations. A sensible precaution is to enclose the device in an upright box cabinet to make sure that there is no chance of anything getting caught in the rapidly moving mechanism. This is an impressive design of Murilo’s, who recommends that in the implementation shown above, that the links shown in blue are made 5% longer than those shown in yellow, as this improves the weight distribution and drive of the lower sprocket wheel.

A washing machine has a maximum power requirement of 2.25 kW and in the UK a suitable 3.5 kW alternator costs £225 and needs to be spun at 3,000 rpm for full output.

While the above description covers Murilo’s main design, it is possible to advance the design further, raising its efficiency in the process as well as reducing the construction effort needed to build it. For this version, the main components remain the same, with the upper axle geared to the lower axle as before and the upper axle rotating faster than the lower one. The main difference is that on the rising side, the chain opens up completely. This does away with the need for the chain links, moves the rising weights much closer in and reduces the number of rising weights:
With a reduced number of weights in the diagram above, the weight imbalance is a very substantial 40:11 ratio with the massive advantage of a substantially reduced lever arm “d” which is much smaller than the lever arm “x” of the falling weights. This is a major imbalance, giving 40x pulling the axle in a counter-clockwise direction and only 11d opposing that movement.

In the description so far, it has been assumed that all components will be made of metal. This is not necessarily the best choice. Firstly, metal moving against metal does make a noise, so guides made robustly of thick plastic or other similar material would be a good choice for the guides for the weights.

The weights themselves could equally well be made from strong plastic piping filled with sand, lead pellets, concrete or any other convenient heavy material. The pipes would then have strong end caps capable of holding the pivots for the links. The sprocket wheels themselves could well be made from thick plastic material which would give a quieter operation and which could be bolted to the power take-off shaft with a bolt placed right through the axle.

Most of the dimensions are not critical. Increasing the diameter of the lower sprocket wheel will increase the power of the output axle but will lower its speed. Adding more weights will increase both the output power and to a lesser degree, the speed, but will increase the overall size of the unit and its overall weight and cost. Making each weight heavier will raise the output power, or reduce the overall size if the weight is contained in fewer weights. Increasing the length of the links means fewer weights on the rising side but will require larger sprocket wheels.

It is not necessary to have all the links the same size. If the lengths are chosen carefully and the indentations in the upper sprocket wheel cover the entire circumference, then every second link can be one indentation shorter which tips the weights into a more compact and effective column on the falling side:
With this arrangement, the outer weights, shown here on the left, press down very firmly on the inside column of weights, making a compact group. If using plastic pipes with concrete then the hinge arrangement for the rods can be very simple, with a bolt set in the concrete as shown below.

The rods, washers and bolt can be supported on a thin, rigid strip placed across the top of the pipe. When the concrete has gone solid, the strip is removed and the gap produced by its removal then allows free movement of the rods. If this technique is used, then the bar weights are cast in two steps, with a tightly fitting disc pushed part way up inside the pipe so that one end can be filled while the other end remains open and ready for the completion of the other end.

One advantage of using plastic pipes is that if the sprocket wheels are made from a tough high-density plastic material, such as is used for food chopping boards, and the weight guides are also made from tough plastic, then there should be no metal-upon-metal noise produced during operation, if the bolt holes in the connecting rods are a good fit for the bolts used.

The concrete or mortar used as a filling can be made wet and pliable, since mechanical strength is not an issue here, and a filling with no voids in it is desirable. Even low quality concrete (caused by more water than absolutely necessary) would be more than adequate for this purpose.
The arrangement at the ends of a concrete-filled plastic pipe bar weight could be constructed like this:

There is a very strong inclination when building a device to make it operate smoothly. Where excess energy is being drawn from the gravity field, the reverse is necessary, with a jerky operation being the optimum. Remember that the extra energy only occurs during the duration of the impulses causing the jerks. It follows then, that in an ideal situation, any device of this type should be driven by a rapid series of strong impulses. In practice, using a heavy flywheel or any similar component which has a high inertial mass, although a rapid series of sharp pulses is being applied to the component and jerky operation is not visible to the human eye, excess energy is still being "led-out" and made available to do useful work.

One other observation which may be of interest, and that it the feedback from builders of gravity wheels which says that the power output from a gravity wheel is greater if the axle is horizontal and the rotating wheel is aligned exactly with magnetic East-West.
Chapter 5: Energy-Tapping Pulsed Systems

One very interesting feature of free-energy devices is that although various devices which appear to be completely different and have different apparent applications, the background operation is often the same. It is clear that a sharp positive going DC electric pulse interacts with the surrounding energy field, making large quantities of free-energy available for anyone who has the knowledge of how to gather and use that extra energy.

Let me stress again that “over-unity” is an impossibility. Over-unity suggests that more energy can be taken out of a system than the total energy which goes into the system. This is not possible as you can’t have more than 100% of anything. However, there is another perfectly valid way of looking at the operation of any system, and that is to rate the output of the system relative to the amount of energy that the user has to put in to make it work. This is called the “Coefficient Of Performance” or “COP” for short. A COP = 1 is when all of the energy put in by the user is returned as useful output. A COP>1 is where more useful energy comes out of the device than the user has to put in. For example, a sailing boat in a good breeze transports people along without the need for the energy of movement to be supplied by the crew. The energy comes from the local environment and while the efficiency is low, the COP is greater than 1. What we are looking for here is not something to tap wind energy, wave energy, sunlight energy, river energy, thermal energy or whatever but instead we want something which can tap the invisible energy field which surrounds us all, namely the “zero-point energy” field.

For this, let us look at pulsing circuits used by a wide range of people in a number of apparently quite different devices. An electrical “pulse” is a sudden voltage rise and fall with very sharply rising and falling voltages. However, pulses are seldom generated as isolated events when working with practical devices, so it is probably better to think of a train of pulses, or a “waveform” with very sharp rising and falling edges. These can be called oscillators or signal generators and are so commonplace that we tend not to give them a second thought, but the really important factors for using an oscillator for zero-point energy pick-up is the quality of the signal. Ideally, what is needed can be a perfect square wave with no overshoot, and the voltage level never going below zero volts, or a complex waveform, also with very sharp attack and decay times. These waveforms are a good deal more difficult to generate than you might imagine.

Even in these days of sophisticated solid-state electronic devices, the best method of creating a really sharp voltage pulse is still considered to be a spark gap, especially one which has the spark chopped off suddenly by the use of a strong magnetic field at right angles to the spark gap. For an example of this style of operation, consider the following device.

Frank Prentice. Electrical Engineer Frank Wyatt Prentice of the USA invented what he described as an ‘Electrical Power Accumulator’ with an output power six times greater than the input power (COP = 6). He was granted US patent 253,765 on 18th September 1923 and which says:

My invention relates to improvements in Electrical Power Accumulators, wherein the earth acting as rotor and the surrounding air as a stator, collects the energy thus generated by the earth rotating on its axis, utilises the same for power and other purposes.

In the development of my Wireless Train Control System for railways, covered by my United States Letters Patent Number 843,550, I discovered that, with an antennae consisting of one wire of suitable diameter supported by insulating means three to six inches above the ground and extending one half mile, more or less in length, the said antennae being grounded at one end through a spark gap and energised at the other end by a high frequency generator of 500 Watts input power and having a secondary frequency of 500,000 Hz, would produce in the antenna an oscillatory frequency the same as that of the earth currents and thus electrical power from the surrounding media was accumulated along the length of the transmission antenna and with a closed oscillatory loop antenna 18 feet in length run parallel with the transmission antenna at a distance of approximately 20 feet it was possible to obtain by tuning the loop antennae, sufficient power to light to full power, a series bank of fifty 60 watt carbon lamps.

Lowering or raising the frequency of 500,000 Hz resulted in diminishing the amount of power received on the 18 foot antenna. Similarly, raising the transmission antenna resulted in a proportionate decrease of power picked up on the receiving antenna and at 6 feet above the earth no power at all was obtainable without a change of potential and frequency.

It is the objective of my generic invention to utilise the power generated by the earth as described here, and illustrated in the drawings. The two figures in the drawings illustrate simple and preferred forms of this invention, but I wish it understood that no limitation is necessarily made as to the exact and precise circuits, shapes, positions, and structural details shown here, and that changes, alterations and modifications may be made when desired within the scope of my invention.
DESCRIPTION:

In Fig.1:

1 and 2 are alternating current feed wires supplying 110 volts 60 cycles to a high frequency generator.
3 is a switch with poles 4 and 5.
6 and 7 are connections of high frequency transformer 8 for stepping up the frequency to 500 KHz and the voltage to say 100 KV.
9 is an inductance coil.
10 is a spark gap.
11 is a variable capacitor.
12 is the primary winding of transformer 8.
13 is the secondary winding of transformer 8 which is connected through wire 15 via variable capacitor 16 and wire 17 to ground 18.
14 is the wire from the other side of the secondary winding of transformer 8 connecting it to the main transmission antenna 19 which is supported by insulating means 20.
21 is spark gap from transmission antenna 19 to ground through wire 22, variable capacitor 23, and wire 24 to ground 24'.
Transmission antenna 19 may be of any desired length.

In Fig.2:

25 is a closed oscillating loop antenna of any desired length, which for greatest efficiency, is run parallel with transmission antenna 19 of Fig.1.
26 is the connecting lead between the antenna and step-down transformer 27 of which 27' is the secondary.
28 is the lead connecting the secondary winding 27' to ground 31 via variable capacitor 29 and lead 30.
32 is the primary winding of transformer 27.
33 is a variable capacitor.
and 35 are frequency transformer windings, supplying current through leads 36 and 37 to motor 38, or any other power devices.

**OPERATION OF THE INVENTION:**

Close switch 3 to connect feed wires 1 and 2 to transformer leads 6 and 7. Adjust spark-gap 10 and variable capacitor 11 so that a frequency of 500 KHz and 100 KV is delivered from secondary leads 14 and 15 of step-up transformer 8 of Fig.1. Next adjust spark-gap 21 of transmission antenna 14 so that all nodes and peaks are eliminated in the transmission of the 100 KV and 500 KHz frequency along antenna 14. The surges which occur, pass over gap 21 through lead 22 to variable capacitor 23 and then on to ground 24 via lead 24.

The high frequency current of 500 KHz returns through the ground, to ground connection 18, up lead 17 to the variable capacitor 16 and via lead 15 to the secondary winding 13 of transformer 8 of Fig.1. The alternating current produced by the 100 KV 500 KHz supply is the same frequency as the earth generated currents, and being in tune with them it picks up additional power from them. Being the same frequency as the output from transformer 8 along wires 14, this produces a reservoir of high frequency current which can be drawn upon by a tuned circuit of the same 500 KHz frequency, as shown in Fig.2.

Antenna 25 is tuned to receive a frequency of 500 KHz which produces a current that passes to lead 26 through winding 27' of transformer 27, through wire 28, variable capacitor 29 and wire 30 to ground connection 31. The high frequency currents of 500 KHz pass through to winding 32 and by variable capacitor 33 and windings 34 and 35 of the frequency transformer 27 are stepped down to a voltage and frequency suitable to operate motor 38 via leads 36 and 37. This makes available a current supply for any purpose whatsoever, such as the operation of aeroplanes, cars, railway trains, industrial plants, lighting, heating etc.

The return of current through the earth from transmission antenna 14 is preferable to a metallic return as a higher percentage of accumulation of earth currents is noticeable on receiving antennae of Fig.2 than from a metallic return, caused by the capacitance of the grounded circuit. I also prefer under certain conditions to use a single antenna receiving wire in place of the closed loop shown in Fig.2. Under certain operation requirements I have found it expedient to have the transmission antenna elevated and carried on poles many feet above the earth and in that case a different voltage and frequency were found to be necessary to accumulate earth currents along the transmission antenna 14.

This system of Frank’s effectively applies very sharply pulsed DC pulses to a long length of wire supported in a horizontal position not far above the ground. The pulses are sharp due to both the spark gap on the primary side of the transformer, along with the spark-gap on the secondary (high voltage) side of the transformer. An input power of 500 watts gives a 3 kW power output from what appears to be an incredibly simple piece of equipment.

**Dave Lawton.** A solid-state semiconductor circuit which has proved successful in producing pulses like this is shown as part of Dave Lawton’s replication of Stan Meyer’s Water Fuel Cell. Here, an ordinary NE555 timer chip generates a square wave which feeds a carefully chosen Field-Effect Transistor the BUZ350 which drives a water-splitter cell via a combined pair of choke coils at point “A” in the diagram below.

Stan Meyer used a toroidal ferrite ring when he was winding these choke coils while Dave Lawton uses two straight ferrite bars, bridged top and bottom with thick iron strips. Chokes wound on straight ferrite rods have been found to work very well also. The effects are the same in all cases, with the waveform applied to the pipe electrodes being converted into very sharp, very short, high-voltage spikes. These spikes unbalance the local quantum environment causing vast flows of energy, a tiny percentage of which happens to flow into the circuit as additional power. The cell runs cold, and at low input current, quite unlike an ordinary electrolysis cell where the temperature rises noticeably and the input current needed is much higher.
John Bedini uses this same pulsing of a bi-filar wound coil to produce the same very short, very sharp voltage spikes which unbalance the local energy field, causing major flows of additional energy. The figure shown here is from his US patent 6,545,444.

John has produced and generously shared, many designs, all of which are basically similar and all using a 1:1 ratio bi-filar wound transformer. This one uses a free-running rotor with permanent magnets embedded in it's rim, to trigger sharp induced currents in the windings of the coil unit marked "13b" which switches the transistor on, powering winding "13a" which powers the rotor on its way. The pick-up coil "13c" collects additional energy from the local environment, and in this particular circuit, feeds it into the capacitor. After a few turns of the rotor...
(dictated by the gear-down ratio to the second rotor), the charge in the capacitor is fed into a second “on-charge” battery.

The rotor is desirable but not essential as the coils marked 1 and 2 can self-oscillate, and there can be any number of windings shown as 3 in the diagram. Winding 3 produces very short, sharp, high-voltage spikes, which is the essential part of the design. If those sharp pulses are fed to a lead-acid battery (instead of to a capacitor as shown above), then an unusual effect is created which triggers a link between the battery and the immediate environment, causing the environment to charge the battery. This is an amazing discovery and because the voltage pulses are high-voltage courtesy of the 1:1 choke coils, the battery bank being charged can have any number of batteries and can be stacked as a 24-volt bank even though the driving battery is only 12 volts. Even more interesting is the fact that charging can continue for more than half an hour after the pulsing circuit is switched off.

It can be tricky to get one of these circuits tuned properly to work at peak performance, but when they are, they can have performances of COP>10. The major snag is that the charging mechanism does not allow a load to be driven from the battery bank while it is being charged. This means that for any continuous use, there has to be two battery banks, one on charge and one being used. A further major problem is that battery banks are just not suitable for serious household use. A washing machine draws up to 2.2 kilowatts and a wash cycle might be an hour long (two hours long if a “whites” wash and a “coloureds” wash are done one after the other which is not uncommon). During the winter, heating needs to be run at the same time as the washing machine, which could well double the load.

It is recommended that batteries are not loaded much beyond their “C20” rate, that is, one twentieth of their Amp-Hour nominal rating. Say that 85 Amp-Hour deep-cycle leisure batteries are being used, then the recommended draw rate from them is 85 Amps divided by 20, which is 4.25 amps. Let’s push it and say we will risk drawing double that, and make it 8.5 amps. So, how many batteries would we need to supply our washing machine assuming that our inverter was 100% efficient? Well, 2,200 watts on a 12-volts system is 2,200 / 12 = 183 amps, so with each battery contributing 8.5 amps, we would need 183 / 8.5 = 22 large, heavy batteries. We would need twice that number if we were to treat them right, plus twice that again for household heating, say 110 batteries for an anyway realistic system. That sheer size of battery banks is not realistic for your average householder or person living in an apartment. Consequently, it appears that the Bedini pulse-charging systems are not practical for anything other than minor items of equipment.

However, the really important point here is the way that when these short pulses are applied to a lead-acid battery, a link is formed with the environment which causes large amounts of energy to flow into the circuit from outside. This is extra “free-energy”. Interestingly, it is highly likely that if the pulses generated by Dave Lawton’s water-splitter circuit shown above, were fed to a lead-acid battery, then the same battery-charging mechanism is likely to occur. Also, if a Bedini pulse-charging circuit were connected to a water-splitting cell like the Lawton cell, then it is highly probable that it would also drive that cell satisfactorily. Two apparently different applications, two apparently different circuits, but both producing sharp high-voltage pulses which draw extra free-energy from the immediate environment.

The Tesla Switch. It doesn’t stop there. Nikola Tesla introduced the world to Alternating Current (“AC”) but later on he moved from AC to very short, sharp pulses of Direct Current (“DC”). He found that by adjusting the frequency and duration of these high-voltage pulses, that he could produce a whole range of effects drawn from the environment - heating, cooling, lighting, etc. The important point to note is that the pulses were drawing energy directly from the immediate environment. Leaving aside the advanced equipment which Tesla was using during those experiments and moving to Tesla’s simple-looking 4-battery switch, we discover the same background operation of sharp voltage pulses drawing free-energy from the environment.
Consider the circuit built and tested by the Electrodyne Corp. for a period of three years:

![Circuit Diagram]

This simple-looking circuit needs to have an inductive load, preferably a motor, but that aside, consider the results of that very extended period of testing. If the switching rate and switching quality were of a sufficiently high standard, then the load could be powered indefinitely.

The batteries used were ordinary lead-acid batteries, and after the three years of tests, the batteries appeared to be in perfect condition. Their tests revealed a number of very interesting things. If the circuit was switched off and the batteries discharged to a low level, then when the circuit was switched on again, the batteries returned to full charge in under one minute. As no electrical charging circuit was connected to the system, the energy which charged those batteries had to be flowing into the batteries (and load) from outside the circuit. The similarity with the Bedini pulsed battery charger circuits immediately springs to mind, especially as no heating occurred in the batteries in spite of the massive charging rate. If the circuit was switched off and heavy current drawn from the batteries, then heat would be produced which is quite normal for battery discharging. The system operated lights, heaters, television sets, small motors and a 30-horsepower electric motor. If left undisturbed, with the circuit running, then each battery would charge up to nearly 36 volts with no apparent ill effects.

Here we have spectacular battery charging and performance, quite outside the normal range associated with these ordinary lead-acid batteries. Are they being fed very short, very sharp pulses, like the previous two systems? It would look as if they were not, but one other very interesting piece of information coming from Electrodyne is that the circuit would not operate correctly if the switching rate was less than 100 Hz (that is 100 switchings in one second). The Electrodyne switching was done mechanically via three discs mounted on the shaft of a small motor. It is distinctly possible that the brushes pressing on those rotating discs experienced the equivalent of “switch bounce” which plagues mechanical switches used with electronic circuits. Instead of a single, clean change over from Off to On states, there is a series of very short makes and breaks of the circuit. If this happened with the Electrodyne mechanical switching, then the circuit would have experienced very short, sharp electrical pulses at the instant of switching. The fact that the switching speed had to reach one hundred per second before the effect started happening is certainly interesting, though not proof by any means.

One other detail reported by the Electrodyne testers, is that if the switching speed exceeded 800 times per second, that it was “dangerous” but unfortunately, they didn’t say why or how it was dangerous. It clearly was not a major problem with the batteries as they were reported to be in good shape after three years of testing, so definitely no exploding batteries there. It could well be as simple a thing that the voltage on each battery rose so high that it exceeded the voltage specifications of the circuit components, or the loads being powered, which is a distinct possibility. In my opinion, considering the way that the batteries responded, it would be perfectly reasonable to take it that short pulses were being generated by their mechanical system. If that is the case, then here is another system drawing fee-energy from the environment via sharp voltage pulses.

The Tesla Switch circuit has some very interesting features. Pupils in school are taught that if a bulb is connected across a battery, a current flows from the battery, through the bulb and back to the battery. This current causes the bulb to light, and after a time, the battery runs down and is no longer able to light the bulb. This is completely correct.
However, this teaching gives the wrong impression. It implies that the “work” done in lighting the bulb, uses up the electricity coming from the battery and that the battery somehow has a store of electricity, something like the sand in an hourglass or egg-timer, which when it runs out will no longer be able to light the bulb. Interestingly, those same teachers will show the correct picture of the circuit, drawing it like this:

You will notice that the 1-amp current flowing out of the bulb is exactly the same as the 1-amp current flowing into the bulb. Exactly the same amount of current comes out of the bulb as the current which flows into the bulb. So, how much current is “used up” in doing the work of lighting the bulb? Answer: None. Energy is never destroyed, the most that can happen to it is that it gets converted from one form to another.

So why does the battery end up not being able to light the bulb any more? Well, that is a feature of the way that batteries operate. If the current flow is in one direction, then the battery gets charged up, and if it is in the other direction, then the battery gets discharged:

The battery getting run down, has nothing to do with the current flowing through the bulb, the battery would get run down if the bulb were left out of the circuit. The useful “work” of creating light by having the current flow through the bulb, does not “use up” any current, and more importantly, it does not “use up” any energy. Energy cannot be “used up” - it just gets transformed from one form to another. This is difficult to understand as we have been taught that we have to keep buying energy from the electricity supply companies to power our equipment. The false idea is that we buy the energy, and it then gets “used up” in the equipment, so we have to buy some more to keep the equipment going. We accept it because that’s what we were taught. It isn’t true.

The current flowing through the bulb can be arranged to be a charging current for another battery. It can both light the bulb and charge another battery without needing any extra current:

Here, the circuit is powered by battery 1 as before, but this time the current goes on to charge battery 2. Yes, battery 1 gets discharged just as before, but the plus side is that battery 2 is getting charged up all the time. The final step is to swap the batteries over:
And now, the newly charged battery 2 lights the bulb and charges up battery 1 again. Seem impossible? Well it isn’t. Nikola Tesla demonstrates this with his “4-battery switch” system where he chooses to use four identical batteries to implement this circuit:

With 12-volt batteries as shown here, the bulb has the same 12 volts across it as it would have had with the single battery shown in the first diagram, as batteries 1 and 2 are wired “in series” to give 24 volts, while batteries 3 and 4 are wired “in parallel” to give 12 volts. The Tesla switch circuit swaps the batteries over with 1 and 2 taking the place of 3 and 4, hundreds of times per second. If you wire a simple manual change-over switch and use it to change the battery arrangement as shown above, tests show that the batteries can power the light for a longer time than if they were not switched over. The snag is that batteries are not 100% efficient and so you can only take about half of the charging current back out of the battery again. For a Tesla 4-battery switch to operate indefinitely, there has to be inflow of outside energy to offset the poor efficiency of a lead-acid battery. NiCad batteries are more efficient and so they are sometimes used in this circuit, where they can work well.

There is another important factor involved in battery-charging circuits to be used with normal lead-acid batteries and that is the characteristics of the materials involved. The charging process in this switching circuit is carried out by electrons flowing down the connecting wire and into the battery. The electrons flowing along the outer surface of the wire, move very rapidly indeed. The main current inside the battery is carried by the charged ions inside the lead plates inside the battery. These ions are hundreds of thousands of times heavier than the electrons. This doesn’t matter at all once the ions get moving, but in the initial split second before the ions get going, the incoming electrons pile up like in a traffic jam tail-back. This pile-up of electrons pushes up the voltage on the terminal of the battery, well above the nominal battery voltage, and so the charging starts off with a high-voltage, high-current pulse into the battery.

This is not normally noticed when using a standard mains-powered battery charger, as switch-on only occurs once during the whole charging process. In the Tesla switch shown here, and in the Bedini circuits shown earlier, this is not the case. The circuit takes advantage of this difference in momentum between the electrons and the lead ions, and uses it repeatedly to great advantage. The technique is to use very short duration pulses all the time. If the pulses are short enough, the voltage and current drive into the receiving battery is far greater than a quick glance at the circuit would suggest. This is not magic, just common-sense characteristics of the materials being used in this circuit.

A person unfamiliar with these systems, seeing John Bedini’s many advanced circuits for the first time, might get the impression that they are just crude, roughly-built circuits. Nothing could be further from the truth. John often uses mechanical switching because it gives very sharp switch-on and switch-off times. John is a complete master of this circuitry and knows exactly what he is doing.

The Electrodyne Corporation tested the Tesla 4-battery circuit over a period of three years. They found that at the end of that period, the batteries did not show any unusual deterioration. The batteries used were ordinary lead-acid batteries. The system operated lights, heaters, television sets, small motors and a 30-horsepower electric
motor. If the batteries were run down to a low level and then the circuit switch on with a load, the recharging of the batteries took place in under one minute. No heating was experienced during this rapid charging. Heat was only produced during discharge cycles. If left undisturbed, each battery would charge up to nearly 36 volts. Control circuitry was developed to prevent this over-charging. They used mechanical switching and stated that below 100 Hz there was not much advantage with the circuit and above 800 Hz it could be dangerous.

They didn’t mention why they consider that higher rates of switching could be dangerous. If we consider what exactly is happening, perhaps we can work out why they said that. The charging situation is like this:

At Time “A” the switch closes, connecting a voltage source (battery, charged capacitor, or whatever) to a lead-acid battery. Electrons start flowing down the outside of the connecting wire. Being very light and having little obstruction, they move very fast indeed (the electrons inside the wire only move a few inches per hour as getting through the wire is difficult). All goes well until Time “B” when the leading electrons reach the lead plates inside the battery. Here, they have a problem, because the current flow through the plates is carried by lead ions. Lead ions are very good at carrying current, but it takes them a split second to get going due to their inertia. That split second is critical and it opens the door to free-energy. In that split second, the electrons pile up because they are still arriving down the wire at very high speed. So, at Time “C” they have built up into a large body of electrons.

This large body of electrons has the same effect as if there had been a sudden connection to a much higher voltage source capable of supplying a much higher current. This situation only lasts for a very short time, but it has three very important effects. Firstly, at Time “D”, it drives a much larger current into the battery than could reasonably expected from the original voltage source. Secondly, this high voltage pulse alters the Zero-Point Energy field (the space-time continuum) in which the circuit is located, causing extra energy to flow into the circuit.
from the outside environment. This is a bit like sunshine generating current flow in an electric solar panel, but instead of visible sunshine, the energy flow is not visible to us and we have no instruments which react to this excess energy. Thirdly, the excess energy flows into the battery, charging it much more than would be expected, and at the same time, some of the excess energy flows into the load, powering it as well, and further, some of the flow goes back into the driving circuit, lowering its current draw.

Remember Dave Lawton’s Water Fuel Cell? Well Dave also connects a bulb across the cell to extract additional energy:

A really interesting feature of this extra power draw-off is that when Dave adjusts the frequency to the optimum value, the supply voltage remains unchanged but the input current drops noticeably and the brightness of the lamp increases markedly. Less input power at the same time as greater output power - the circuit hasn’t changed, so where is the extra power coming from? One possibility is certainly that it is flowing in from the environment.

So, returning to our excess energy is collected from the environment and used to both charge the battery and at the same time, perform useful work. The old saying “you can’t have your cake and eat it” just does not hold in this situation as that is exactly what happens. Instead of the battery being run down from powering the load, the load gets powered and the battery gets charged up at the same time. This is why, with this system, a discharged battery can be used to apparently run a motor. It works because the plates in the discharged battery are made of lead which forms a bottleneck for the electron flow, causing the environment to charge the battery and run the load at the same time. That is why you get what looks like the magical effect of a discharged battery appearing to power a load. In passing, the more discharged the battery, the faster it charges as the environment adjusts automatically to the situation and feeds greater power into a flat battery. The environment has unlimited power available for use. John Bedini who is expert in this field has had motors running continuously for three or more years with the battery never running down and the motor doing useful work all the time. Great battery? No, - great environment!!

Not necessarily exactly the same effect, but Joseph Newman’s motor exhibits this same effect, much to the discomfort of a conventionally taught scientist, who measured the motor at a minimum of 400% “efficiency” (really COP=4) and probably nearer 800% when all the major factors were taken into account. One thing which really bothered him was that when powering the motor on almost completely discharged dry cell batteries, the voltage measured at the motor was some three times the voltage at the batteries. That is very upsetting for a scientist who is not aware of the zero-point energy field and considers most systems to be “closed” systems, when in fact, there are practically no “closed” systems in our universe. Surprise, surprise, the Newman motor operates on electrical pulses.
Anyway, returning to the Tesla 4-battery switch. For the vital build up of excess electrons to take place, the switch closure has to be very sudden and very effective. A thyristor or “SCR” might be suitable for this, but the sharp switching of a PCP116 opto-isolator driving an IRF540 FET is impressive and a TC4420 FET-driver could substitute for the opto-isolator if preferred. It is likely that the Tesla 4-battery switch circuit switching in the 100 Hz to 800 Hz region operates in this way.

This drawing in of excess energy from the environment can be further enhanced by suddenly cutting off the electron flow from the original voltage source while the excess electron pile-up is still in place. This causes a sudden (very brief) further surge in the excess power, building up the voltage and current even further and increasing the battery charging and load powering drive.

An even greater effect can be had if the next, short, sharp pulse is applied to the battery/load combination, just before the effect from the last pulse dies away. It may be that this is the situation which the Electrodyne Corporation people encountered when the pulse rate went over the 800 Hz rate. It may not be so much a case that the battery and load could not take the power, but more a case that the components which they were using were not rated high enough to carry that level of power. They do mention that if they went further, that they found that some of their circuit components started failing through not having high enough ratings (notice that the output capacitors are rated at 100 volts which is eight times the nominal battery voltage). This was hardly a problem, considering that they had 12-volt batteries operating happily at 36-volts if they wanted that. They ended up building circuitry to hold the voltages down to a convenient level.

To summarise the situation. The Tesla 4-battery switch appears to do the impossible through:

1. Catching the current coming out of the load and using it to charge another battery instead of wasting it.
2. Providing very short, sharp, and rapid switching pulses which exploit the momentum of the lead-ions current flow.
3. Pulling extra energy in from the local environment to both charge the batteries and power the load at the same time

This leaves aside the possibility of two further gains available through very precise timing of the switching pulses (mainly to make the power available more easily and cheaply handled). So, it should be borne in mind that the practical issues involved in getting this circuit operating effectively are primarily about very fast, clean and well-timed switching. Stranded, very large diameter, high-current rated wire will be helpful in getting the draw of excess energy into the circuit.

Here is the switching sequence for the Tesla 4-battery switch system:

![Switching sequence diagram]

As you can see, this is essentially the same circuit with batteries 1 and 2 swapping over with batteries 3 and 4. But he has added in two capacitors and a diode bridge of four diodes to power the “load” which needs to be inductive for this circuit (transformer, motor, etc.). The circuit used by the Electrodyne Corp. testers was:
This circuit was reported to have excellent results using six On/Off switches on a motor-driven cam arrangement:

Here three discs are mounted on the shaft of a motor as shown here. These are insulated from each other and the conducting sectors are aligned, and so are the brushes. The arrangement gives a mechanical switching such that when the upper brushes are short-circuited together, the lower brushes are open-circuit. As there is a requirement for an inductive load for this circuit, the motor of a mechanical switching system could well form part of the load. Many people prefer solid-state switching to mechanical switching and so set out to design suitable circuits. It needs to be borne in mind that a very precise 50% Mark/Space ratio is essential and that may not be so easy to arrange. The common idea of using mechanical relays is not very practical. Firstly, relays have trouble switching at the speeds suggested for this circuit. Secondly, with a contact life of say, two million and a switching speed of just 100 times per second, the relays would reach their projected lifespan after two weeks of operation, which is not a very practical option.

To get an exact 50% Mark/Space ratio, possibly the following style of circuit could be used with a 10-turn preset resistor in position “A”:
Here, the frequency is not noticeably affected by adjustment through a very wide range of Mark/Space settings. The output from Pin 3 needs to drive a very sharp switching combination such as a TC4420 FET driver connected to IRF540 FETs.

As the circuit diagram used by the Electrodyne Corp. people is a little difficult to follow, perhaps the following diagrams may help by showing the current flow during the two states:

Here, batteries 1 and 2 are wired across each other while batteries 3 and 4 are wired in series (in a daisy-chain). This needs three On/Off switches and the two diodes are inserted so that the plus terminal of battery 1 is not permanently connected to the plus terminal of battery 2, because in State 2, that connection must not be made.
The State 2 wiring is almost identical, requiring another three On/Off switches and two diodes to avoid a permanent link between the plus terminals of batteries 3 and 4.

Here is a suggestion for doing that with PCP116 fast-operating opto-isolators:

Each of the three mechanical switches are replaced with a transistor - one PNP type and two NPN type. These need to be able to handle 30 amps, so although not shown here, they will probably be Darlington pairs with the low gain of the high-power transistor being boosted by the additional gain of a driver transistor, perhaps something like a 2N3055 / 2N2222A combination. The transistor base current comes via a limiting resistor fed from an appropriate battery terminal a fixed 12 volts above it. The switching is controlled via an opto-isolator and the three opto isolators which switch together (shown above) are driven from one side of an astable multivibrator. The other three opto-isolators needed to perform the switching for State 2, will be Off during State 1, so they will be driven by the inverted version of the same oscillator waveform. This ensures that three will be On and three will be Off at all times.
The suggested transistor switching for the State 2 situation is shown above. This is just an attempt to perform the switching with the most simple components available, and has been shown to work in practice.

The mechanical changeover switch can be replaced with transistors:

The Electrodyne Corp. experience indicates that it is likely that additional circuitry will be needed to cut off the extra power when the energy in the batteries rises to the point where it could endanger the equipment which it is powering or the components in the circuitry.

The electronics tutorial which forms part of this set of documents shows the principles which can be used for the design and construction of this kind of circuitry. It might be sensible to have the control circuitry kick in at fourteen or fifteen volts and drop out again when the battery voltage drops back to 12.5 volts or so.
This switching circuit is said to be able to power its load indefinitely. It is also said that if one of the batteries is fully discharged, or nearly fully discharged, then putting it in any of the four positions returns it to full charge within one minute.

The connecting wires should be at least 30 Amp current carrying capacity and the individual diodes and the diode bridge are rated at 35 Amps 50 Volts. The circuit is intended for use with lead/acid batteries but it has been used successfully with rechargeable NiCad batteries. The circuit provides about 12 volts as the output, so mains equipment would be operated using a standard, commercial “inverter” which converts this low DC voltage to normal mains AC voltage capable of powering TV sets, DVD recorders, or whatever.

There have been various different versions of the Tesla 4-battery switch circuit. Some of these show additional diodes, making an absolutely symmetrical circuit where the current flow can continue even if the load is disconnected, as shown here:

Bob Boyce’s Electrolyser. Consider also, Bob Boyce’s very effective electrolyser system, which achieves twelve times the efficiency that Faraday considered to be the maximum possible. Faraday was no fool and he performed very high-quality tests and experiments in a methodical way, making solid observations and drawing conclusions which were respected by his colleagues. Yet here we have Bob Boyce outperforming Faraday by a factor of twelve times. Was Faraday wrong? Probably not. Is Bob wrong? Definitely not. How come then that they appear to disagree?

Well, the Boyce system pulls in additional energy from the immediate environment by applying very high quality pulsing to a toroidal transformer wound with three very accurately wound primaries and one very accurately wound secondary (full details of this are in the Appendix). It also develops an oscillating magnetic field by using a hundred parallel, closely spaced steel plates. These magnetic oscillations enhance the process and place it outside the DC electrolysis which Faraday was examining. In passing, Shigeta Hasebe appears to get ten times the Faraday maximum on DC alone, but that is not the case as Shigeta uses strong permanent magnets to provide an additional energy input, so it is no longer strictly DC electrolysis as performed by Faraday.

The Boyce arrangement is like this:
The output waveform from Bob Boyce’s triple-oscillator board is sharpened up by the use of carefully chosen opto-isolators, and that output would almost certainly drive Dave Lawton’s Meyer replication Water Fuel Cell. It would also be interesting to see if it has the same effect on battery recharging as the John Bedini pulse-charging circuits, as it is distinctly possible that it has. You will notice that Bob defeats the Faraday maximum output by careful construction of the electrolyser, plus one apparently simple electronics board and one apparently simple transformer. Again, these components call for very careful, high-quality construction as is common for most successful free-energy devices.

Serious warning needs to be given here. The combination of sharp pulsing and accurately wound toroid core composed of an iron powder matrix, draws in so much extra power from the environment that it is essential that it is only used with the electrolyser cell which is capable of soaking up excess energy surges. The extra energy drawn in is not always constant and surges can occur which can generate currents of 10,000 amps. It should be understood that this electrical current which we can measure is only the “losses” part of the real power surge which is in a form which we can’t measure as we have no instruments which can measure it directly. Consequently, the actual environmental power surge is far, far in excess of this 10,000 amps. It is very important then, that the electronics board and toroidal transformer are NOT connected to other equipment “to see what will happen”. Even more important is not to arrange a pulsed, rotating magnetic field in the toroid by sequential pulsing of coils spaced around the toroid. These arrangements can generate power surges so great that the excess power not soaked up by the circuit (especially after it’s instantaneous burn-out) is liable to form the ground-leader of a lightning strike. Bob experimented with this and was hit by a direct lightning strike. He was very lucky to survive being hit and he now works in a workshop which has metal walls and roof, and lightning grounding at each corner of the building, plus a separate ground for the equipment inside the building. A device like this is not a toy, and it demonstrates the incredible level of free-energy which can be tapped by quite simple devices if you know what you are doing.

The Ed Gray Power Tube. The power tube presented to the public by Ed Gray snr. (but designed by Marvin Cole) operates by generating a series of very short, very sharp pulses using a spark gap.

Edwin Gray worked as a US Air Force engineer and machine-shop technician. Having discussed the matter with an associate of Nikola Tesla, in 1958 Ed discovered that the magnetic field generated by the very fast discharge of a high voltage source could pick up additional energy. (This was not actually a new discovery as Nicola Tesla had already burnt out a power station when he tried this on a large scale). It is said that in the seventies, Edwin built a device to capture this extra energy, however, it is almost certain that Ed Gray did not build the original system, nor did he understand how it actually operated. The designer and builder, Marvin Cole, unfortunately died, leaving Ed in a difficult position, which he tried, fairly ineffectively, to overcome.
There is no doubt that the original power-generating system and motor operated exactly as described, and both have been replicated by others since then. A rapid and abrupt electrical discharge is produced by generating a spark, and power pick-up is achieved by two copper cylinders surrounding the conductor which carried the spark current. There is more than one way of doing this, and as mild beta-radiation is generated, it is advisable to encase the tube in a metal housing.

The extra power generated is used to drive opposing electromagnets in an electric pulse motor, generating eighty horsepower output. His patents cannot be relied on as Ed did not understand the basic principles of operation of the system, and as well as that, he did not want to disclose anything if he could. The patents were just to encourage investors. The patents show the pulses passing through the driving coils of the motor, charging a second battery via a current-limiting capacitor. Running this powerful motor was essentially free as the battery used to generate the spark voltage was switched periodically with the battery under charge. The result is a powerful motor which needs no fuel to run. Ed Gray received US Patent No 3,890,548 in June 1975 and Patent No 4,661,747 in April 1987. A full and detailed description of how it is believed that “Ed Gray’s” system works is given in Peter Lindemann’s book “The Free Energy Secrets of Cold Electricity” which is available via www.free-energy.ws.

Tesla used this spark gap method with spark quenching provided by a strong magnetic field at right angles to the spark, in order to get really high-quality DC pulses with durations of one microsecond or less. Pulse trains of individual pulses with very short durations produce heat, spontaneous lighting, cooling, etc. depending on the frequency of the pulsing. The power tube is placed around a heavy-duty copper conductor which is pulsed, unbalancing the zero-point energy field and a tiny part of the resulting energy flow as the field moves back into equilibrium again, is captured by the surrounding perforated copper shells. The power output available from the tube is said to be a hundred times the input power needed to make the device work. The circuit used with this device is:

You will notice that the power driving the load does not come from the battery as the battery circuit produces the spark and nothing else. The load is driven by power picked up on the copper shells around the half inch (12 mm) diameter copper rod spark-gap electrode with its silver coated tips. Edwin Gray is famous for his electric pulse motor, which generated eighty horsepower, but the really important item which he demonstrated was the power tube which could power lights and other devices. It was frequently demonstrated that the output from the power tube was not conventional electricity and powered lightbulbs were operated under water and at the same time, it was quite safe for a hand to be put into that same water along with the lit bulb. You do not do that with
conventional mains electricity, nor is it normal to be able to operate a lightbulb underwater when using conventional mains electricity.

The construction of the pick-up tube is not particularly difficult. It is comprised of a teflon (plastic) cylinder of about 80 mm diameter with teflon plates at each end, grooved to hold the pick-up cylinders in place. A pair of 12 mm diameter copper rods are positioned down the centre of the cylinder and provided with a means to adjust the gap between them where they meet. The rod ends form the spark gap and these ends are plated with silver. One rod has a graphite block inserted in it, using a push-fit connection into slots cut in the bar. This carbon insert is supposedly a resistor, but in fact it is an important part of the excess energy generation system. In some successful constructions of the tube an 8-inch long, half-inch diameter carbon rod with a silver tip, is used for one of the electrodes.

The two or three cylinder shells which pick up the Radiant Energy, are constructed from copper sheet. The gap between the outside of one cylinder and the inside of the surrounding cylinder is about 6 mm. These cylinders are more effective if they have a matrix of holes drilled in them. They are connected together electrically and the connection is led out through the teflon casing to feed the load circuit. The cylinder contains air rather than a vacuum or an inert gas. The copper cylinders are held in place by push-fit supports, one set positioned between the outside of the smaller cylinder and the inside of the larger cylinder. The second set are placed between the outside of the larger cylinder and the inside of the housing tube:

The power tube is constructed this way because the Radiant Energy wave generated by the sharp pulse of current through the electrodes, radiates out at right angles to the electrodes.

Peter Lindemann points out that Ed Gray’s power conversion tube circuit is effectively a copy of Nikola Tesla’s circuit for doing the same thing:
This was disclosed by Tesla in his ‘Philadelphia and St Louis’ lecture in 1893 and shows how loads can be powered when a high voltage source is pulsed by a magnetically-quenched sparks - this creates DC pulses of very short duration.

The diagram above, illustrates the difference between the Magnetic field generated around a conductor fed with a pulse of Direct Current and the Radiant Energy waves created by that pulse. If a sharp current pulse is driven down a vertical wire, it causes two different types of field. The first field is magnetic, where the lines of magnetic force rotate around the wire. These lines are horizontal, and rotate clockwise when viewed from above. The magnetic field remains as long as the current flows down the wire.

The second field is the Radiant Energy wave. This wave will only occur if the current pulse is in one direction, i.e. it will not occur if the wire is fed with alternating current. The wave radiates out horizontally from the vertical wire in every direction in the form of a shock wave. It is a one-off event and does not repeat if the current in the wire is maintained. The Radiant Energy briefly unbalances the zero-point energy field and that causes an energy flow as the field moves back into equilibrium again. A tiny fraction of this massive, brief energy flow can be picked up and that collected energy is more than 100 times greater than the energy needed to generate the spark which triggered the energy flow in the first place. Consequently, the tubes are fed with a train of high-intensity, short-duration, DC pulses to generate repeated waves of Radiant Energy. It is the pick-up of the resulting excess energy which allows the motors run without the need for the batteries to be charged by any conventional source of current.

The Radiant energy wave is not restricted to a single plane as shown in the diagram above, which is intended to indicate the difference between the electromagnetic field circling around the wire, and the Radiant Energy field which radiates away from the wire. Both of these fields occur at all points along the full length of the wire as shown here:
Radiant Energy, when converted to electrical power, produces a different kind of electrical power to that produced by batteries and by the mains supply. Power a motor with conventional electricity and it gets hot under load. Power the same motor by Radiant Energy electricity and under load the motor gets cold. Really overload it by stalling it and the motor housing is likely to be covered with frost. That is why this form of electricity is referred to as “cold” electricity.

If a lightbulb powered by conventional electricity is placed in water and you put your hand in the water, then you will almost certainly receive a severe electrical shock which may even kill you. Power the same lightbulb with Radiant Energy electricity and place it in water. The bulb will continue to shine and putting your hand in the water will have no ill effects at all, quite the reverse in fact, as “cold” electricity has healing properties.

Here is a cross-section of the motor. The electromagnets marked “1” are powered by the first capacitor charging circuit, those marked “2” are powered via the second charging circuit and those marked “3” are powered by the third charging circuit. The motor is driven by a brief pulse of high current being applied to the rotor electromagnets and one the numbered sets of fixed (“stator”) electromagnets. This is done so that they repulse each other and the timing is arranged so that the pulse occurs just after the rotor electromagnets have passed over the fixed electromagnets. This way, the rotor gets a strong rotary push nine times during each revolution - or it would do were it not for the extra electromagnets shown in blue in the diagram. The designer opted for a more complicated switching arrangement which gives 27 drive pulses per revolution by using the extra electromagnets and nine electronic circuit copies but this is not important for understanding the operation of his motor. He also designed an ingenious speed control where the electromagnet spark gaps are physically moved to advance the pulse timing (which slows the motor) or retard the pulse timing (which speeds the motor up).
It may be a little difficult to visualise the electromagnets from the above diagram, but consider them to be about 200 mm (6") long, running into the screen, with a wire wound around them, lying in a slot which runs all round the whole of the four sides. The advantage of using an electromagnet is that the power is controlled by the current running through the winding and is not limited by what permanent magnets are available at the time. The power of an electromagnet increases with the number of turns, the strength of the current pulse and the core material (air, soft iron, laminated iron,...). The disadvantage is having to pass current to the moving electromagnets which is done by brushes which generates noise and wear - but neither excessively. One detail which does not show in the patent is the fact that the electromagnet laminations were machined with a fifteen degree angle across their width. This created a sloping face on both the stator and rotor magnets, with the slope facing the direction of rotation. When the magnets fired, the magnet faces are parallel but not facing towards the centre of the shaft. This gives the rotor extra torque without needing extra current.

Conclusion: This motor has a very clever mechanical throttle which operates by rotating the pulsing coils slightly. It is very efficient and may produce more output than its electrical input, but the main source of power is the power-conversion tube which taps the zero-point energy field power flow when that field is unbalanced by Radiant Energy pulses and supplies the resulting collected energy to the motor. It should be stressed that the motor, clever and all as it is, is not a necessary part of this invention as the power-conversion tube has been demonstrated on its own, powering lights and other loads via an air-cored (high frequency) transformer wound on a four-inch diameter plastic pipe, using very heavy duty wire such as is used for vehicle spark plugs.

In his book “Cold War Secrets - HAARP and Beyond”, Gerry Vassilatos quotes research work done in this area by Tesla and others:

**Tesla’s Experiments:** In 1889 Tesla began experimenting with capacitors charged to high voltages and discharged in very short time intervals. These very short pulses produced very sharp shockwaves which he felt across the front of his whole body. He was aware that closing a switch on a high-voltage dynamo often produced a stinging shock. This was believed to be static electricity and it occurred only at switch-on and only for a few milliseconds. However, in those few milliseconds, bluish needles of energy stand out from the electrical cables and they leak to ground, often through the bodies of any people standing nearby, causing immediate death if the installation is large. While the generators of that time were rated at some thousands of volts, these discharges
were millions of volts in intensity. The generator problem was eliminated by the use of highly insulated switches which were provided with a very large ground connection.

Tesla was intrigued by this phenomenon which appeared to match the effect of his capacitor discharges. He calculated that the voltages produced were hundreds of times greater than could be supplied by the capacitor or generator. It was clear that the power supplied was being amplified or augmented in some way, but the question was, from where was the extra energy coming?

Tesla continued to investigate through experiments, taking precautions against the high voltages being produced. He was soon able to produce these shockwaves whenever he wanted to. The shockwaves produced a stinging sensation no matter where he stood in his laboratory, and hands and face were particularly sensitive to the wave. These waves radiated out and penetrated metal, glass and every other kind of material. This was clearly not an electromagnetic wave, so he called the new wave ‘Radiant Electricity’.

Tesla searched the literature to find references to this radiant energy but he could not find much. In 1842, Dr. Joseph Henry had observed that steel needles were magnetised by a Leyden Jar spark discharge located on a different floor of the building. The magnetising wave had passed through brick walls, oak doors, heavy stone and iron flooring and tin ceilings to reach the needles located in a vault in the cellar.

In 1872, Elihu Thomson took a large Ruhmkorff Spark Coil, attached one pole of the coil to a cold-water pipe and the other pole to a metal table top. This resulted in a series of massive sparks which electrified the metal door knob of the room and produced the stinging shockwaves which Tesla was investigating. He found that any insulated metal object anywhere in the building would produce long continuous white sparks discharging to ground. This discovery was written up briefly in the Scientific American journal later that year.

Tesla concluded that all of the phenomena which he had observed, implied the presence of “a medium of gaseous structure, that is, one consisting of independent carriers capable of free motion - besides the air, another medium is present”. This invisible medium is capable of carrying waves of energy through all substances, which suggests that, if physical, its basic structure is much smaller than the atoms which make up commonplace materials, allowing the stream of matter to pass freely through all solids. It appears that all of space is filled with this matter.

Thomas Henry Moray demonstrated this energy flow passing through glass and lighting standard electric light bulbs. Harold Aspden performed an experiment known as the “Aspden Effect” which also indicates the presence of this medium. Harold made this discovery when running tests not related to this subject. He started an electric motor which had a rotor mass of 800 grams and recorded the fact that it took an energy input of 300 joules to bring it up to its running speed of 3,250 revolutions per minute when it was driving no load.

The rotor having a mass of 800 grams and spinning at that speed, its kinetic energy together with that of the drive motor is no more than 15 joules, contrasting with the excessive energy of 300 joules needed to get it rotating at that speed. If the motor is left running for five minutes or more, and then switched off, it comes to rest after a few seconds. But, the motor can then be started again (in the same or opposite direction) and brought up to speed with only 30 joules provided that the time lapse between stopping and restarting is no more than a minute or so. If there is a delay of several minutes, then an energy input of 300 joules is needed to get the rotor spinning again.

This is not a transient heating phenomenon. At all times the bearing housings feel cool and any heating in the drive motor would imply an increase of resistance and a build-up of power to a higher steady state condition. The experimental evidence is that there is something unseen, which is put into motion by the machine rotor. That “something” has an effective mass density 20 times that of the rotor, but it is something that can move independently and take several minutes to decay, while the motor comes to rest in a few seconds.
Two machines of different rotor size and composition reveal the phenomenon and tests indicate variations with time of day and compass orientation of the spin axis. One machine, the one incorporating weaker magnets, showed evidence of gaining strength magnetically during the tests which were repeated over a period of several days.

This clearly shows that there is an unseen medium which interacts with everyday objects and actions, and confirms Tesla’s discovery. Tesla continued to experiment and determined that a very short uni-directional pulse is necessary to generate the radiant energy wave. In other words, an alternating voltage does not create the effect; it has to be a DC pulse. The shorter the pulse time and the higher the voltage, the greater the energy wave. He found that using a capacitor and an arc discharge mechanism with a very powerful permanent magnet placed at right angles to the spark, improved the performance of his equipment by a major factor.

Additional experiments showed that the effects were altered by adjusting the duration of the electrical pulse. In each instance, the power of the radiated energy appeared to be constant irrespective of the distance from his apparatus. The energy was in the form of individual longitudinal waves. Objects placed near the equipment became powerfully electrified, retaining their charge for many minutes after the equipment was switched off.

Tesla was using a charging dynamo as a power source and he found that if he moved his magnetic discharger to one side of the dynamo, the radiant wave was positive. If he moved the magnetic discharger towards the other side of the dynamo, the radiant wave became negative in sign. This was clearly a new electrical force which travelled as light-like rays, showing them to be different in nature to the electromagnetic waves of Maxwell.

Investigating the effects of adjusting the duration of the pulses, Tesla found that a pulse train which had individual pulses with durations exceeding 100 microseconds, produced pain and mechanical pressures. At this duration, objects in the field visibly vibrated and were even pushed along by the field. Thin wires subjected to sudden bursts of the radiant field, exploded into vapour. When the pulse duration was reduced to 100 microseconds or below, the painful effect was no longer felt and the waves are harmless.

With a pulse duration of 1 microsecond, strong physiological heat was felt. With even shorter pulse durations, spontaneous illuminations capable of filling rooms with white light, were produced. Even shorter pulses produced cool room penetrating breezes with an accompanying uplift in mood and awareness. These effects have been verified by Eric Dollard who has written about them in some detail.

In 1890, Tesla discovered that if he placed a two-foot long single-turn deep copper helix coil near his magnetic disrupter, the thin-walled coil developed a sheath of white sparks with long silvery white streamers rising from the top of the coil. These discharges appeared to have much higher voltages than the generating circuit. This effect was greatly increased if the coil was placed inside the disrupter wire circle. The discharge seemed to hug the surface of the coil with a strange affinity, and rode up its surface to the open end. The shockwave flowed over the coil at right angles to the windings and produced very long discharges from the top of the coil. With the disrupter charge jumping one inch in its magnetic housing, the coil streamers were more than two feet in length. This effect was generated at the moment when the magnetic field quenched the spark and it was wholly unknown at that time.

This train of very short uni-directional pulses causes a very strange field to expand outwards. This field resembles a stuttering electrostatic field but has a far more powerful effect than would be expected from an electrostatic charge. Tesla was unable to account for the enormous voltage multiplication of his apparatus using any of the electrical formula of his day. He therefore presumed that the effect was entirely due to radiant transformation rules which would have to be determined through experimental measurements. This he proceeded to do.

Tesla had discovered a new induction law where radiant shockwaves actually auto-intensified when encountering segmented objects. The segmentation was the key to releasing the action. Radiant shockwaves encountered a helix and “flashed over” the outer skin, from end to end. This shockwave did not pass through the windings of the coil but treated the surface of the coil as a transmission path. Measurements showed that the voltage increase along the surface of the coil was exactly proportional to the length travelled along the coil, with the voltage increase reaching values of 10,000 volts per inch of coil. The 10,000 volts which he was feeding to his 24 inch coil were being magnified to 240,000 volts at the end of his coil. This was unheard of for simple equipment like that. Tesla also discovered that the voltage increase was mathematically linked to the resistance of the coil winding, with higher resistance windings producing higher voltages.

Tesla then began to refer to his disrupter loop as his special “primary” and to the long helical coil as his special “secondary” but he never intended anyone to equate these terms to those referring to electromagnetic transformers which operate in a completely different way.
There was an attribute which baffled Tesla for a time. His measurements showed that there was no current flowing in the long copper ‘secondary’ coil. Voltage was rising with every inch of the coil, but there was no current flow in the coil itself. Tesla started to refer to his measured results as his “electrostatic induction laws”. He found that each coil had its own optimum pulse duration and that the circuit driving it needed to be ‘tuned’ to the coil by adjusting the length of the pulses to give the best performance.

Tesla then noticed that the results given by his experiments paralleled the equations for dynamic gas movements, so he began wondering if the white flame discharges might not be a gaseous manifestation of electrostatic force. He found that when a metal point was connected to the upper terminal of the ‘secondary’ coil, the streamers were directed very much like water flowing through a pipe. When the stream was directed at distant metal plates, it produced electronic charges which could be measured as current at the receiving site but in transit, no current existed. The current only appeared when the stream was intercepted. Eric Dollard has stated that this intercepted current can reach several hundred or even thousands of amps.

Tesla made another remarkable discovery. He connected a very heavy U-shaped copper bar directly across the primary of his disrupter, forming a dead short-circuit. He then connected several ordinary incandescent filament bulbs between the legs of the U-shaped bar. When the equipment was powered up, the lamps lit with a brilliant cold white light. This is quite impossible with conventional electricity, and it shows clearly that what Tesla was dealing with was something new. This new energy is sometimes called “cold electricity” and Edwin Gray snr. demonstrated how different it is by lighting incandescent-filament bulbs directly from his power tube, submerging them in water and putting his hand in the water. Cold electricity is generally considered to be harmless to humans. Ed Gray’s power tube operates by generating radiant electricity waves by using a spark gap, and collecting the energy using three encasing copper cylinders surrounding the spark gap. The cylinders are drilled with many holes so as to enhance the pick-up and the load is driven directly from the current in the cylinders. When lighting bulbs, Ed used an air-cored transformer made of just a few turns of very heavy wire. I, personally, am aware of two people who have independently reproduced Ed’s power tube.

Tesla viewed the streamers coming off his coils as being wasted energy so he tried to suppress them. He tried a conical coil but found that this accentuated the problem. He then tried placing a copper sphere at the top of his coil. This stopped the streamers but electrons were dislodged from the copper sphere, creating really dangerous conditions. This implied that metals generate electron flows when struck by the coil streamers (as had been seen when the streamers had been aimed at remote metal plates and current was generated as a result).

Tesla designed, built and used large globe lamps which required only a single external plate for receiving the radiant energy. No matter how far away these lamps were from the radiant source, they became brilliantly lit, almost to the level of an arc lamp and far, far brighter than any of the conventional Edison filament lamps. By adjusting the voltage and the pulse duration of his apparatus, Tesla could also heat or cool a room.

Tesla’s experiments suggest that a method of extracting free-energy is to use a Tesla coil which has a metal spike instead of the more common metal sphere at the end of the ‘secondary’ coil. If the Tesla coil is fed with sufficiently short uni-directional pulses and the ‘secondary’ coil pointed at a metal plate, then it should be possible to draw off serious levels of power from the metal plate, just as Tesla discovered.

The energy drawn from the surrounding field is not electricity and it does not flow through the wire of the ‘secondary’ coil, but instead, it runs along the outside of the coil and through space to strike the surface of the metal plate, where it generates conventional electric current which can be of serious amperage. Thomas Henry
Moray demonstrated that this energy flowing along the outside of the wire can pass through glass without being affected in any way.

While Tesla's experiment used a metal plate, he patented (US 512,340) a coil type which he said is very effective in picking up this radiant energy. This coil type goes by the rather impressive name of “bi-filar serial-connected coil”:

![Alternative flat 'pancake' coil winding method patented by Nikola Tesla]

If a strong magnetic field is positioned across the spark gap as shown above, it sharpens the cut-off of the spark and enhances the uni-directional character of the pulse of current. It should be remembered that if a very short sharp pulse of uni-directional current such as is produced by a spark jumping across a spark gap as in the arrangement shown above, occurs in a conductor, then a strong wave of radiant energy radiates out in a plane at right angles to the pulse of current.

This radiant energy wave is quite different from the electromagnetic field generated around the wire carrying the pulse of current. In the Tesla coil arrangement shown above, it should be possible to gather additional free energy through one or more co-axial (like layers of an onion) cylindrical coils around the spark gap leads. These coils will be better if they are wound as bi-filar serially-connected coils, which just means that the wire used to wind them is doubled over from its mid point before the coil is wound. The reason for this arrangement is that the magnetic field component of the coils is (nearly) zero as the current flowing through the wire is flowing in opposite directions in alternate turns, and so the magnetic fields produced should cancel out:

![Serial-connected bi-filar coil]

Tesla was granted US Patent 685, 957 “Apparatus for the Utilisation of Radiant Energy” in which he shows various ways of handling the energy collected by the metal plate. It is likely that the pick-up techniques shown in the patent of Hermann Plauston, which is in the Appendix, would also work very effectively with this collected energy. Old patents sometimes mention a “condenser” which is the original term for what is nowadays called a “capacitor”.

After careful consideration and many experiments, Tesla concluded that the radiant rays which he was utilising, radiated out so rapidly that electrons were unable to keep up with them. The rays were being carried via a medium consisting of extremely mobile, almost mass-less particles, very much smaller than electrons and which, because of their size and speed, could pass easily through most materials. In spite of their small size, their extreme speed caused them to have considerable momentum. A fact which is very difficult to come to terms with is that these rays seem to propagate outwards instantly, with no time delay at all, as if transmitted through matter which is wholly incompressible. It is sometimes called “Radiant Energy” or “RE” for short and appears to have no
net charge in conventional terms. This is a unique feature of the universe, with unique characteristics, which if utilised, provides a whole host of new applications and capabilities.

Tesla considered that this newly discovered field acted like a fluid. A hundred and fifteen years later, the cover story of the December 2005 edition of the ‘Scientific American’ journal states that experimental models hint that space-time could be a kind of fluid. It has taken a long time for modern science to start catching up with Tesla. In actual fact, it was Michael Faraday (1781 - 1867) who came up with the idea in the first place.

The Alberto Molina-Martinez Generator. US patent application US 20020125774 of 6th March 2002, shows a self-powered electrical generator. Like that used by Bob Boyce, this is a toroidal (ring-shaped) frame with several windings on it, as shown in the diagram below. Once it has been powered up with AC mains frequency voltage, it produces so much power that it can supply it’s own input power requirement as well as powering other loads such as lightbulbs. This patent application is shown in full in the Appendix.

It is said that the Toroid device built by Stephen Mark and shown in web videos, is a replication of this generator design. The forum at present at http://www.overunity.com/index.php/topic,2535.0.html is dedicated to replicating Stephen Mark’s device and considerable progress has been made. This group is operating on the basis that instead of a metallic toroid core as shown here, that a Mobius-loop toroidal wire core is used. At this point in time, their efforts have not yet produced a circuit which exhibits a COP>1 performance.

You will notice that very many different devices, aimed at doing different things, all operate by generating very sharp DC pulses.

So, a wide range of different devices have the same background technique for making them work. Meyer used the pulsing for water-splitting in a hydroxy gas cell. Bedini uses the pulsing to charge batteries with cold electricity. Tesla used the pulsing to charge batteries, provide heating, cooling and lighting. Boyce uses pulsing to obtain electrolysis at 1,000% of Faraday’s stated maximum rate of electrolysis. Gray used the pulsing to capture cold electricity to drive a powerful electric motor. Many different applications all based on using very short, very sharp, high-voltage pulses.

Alfred Hubbard. In 1920 Alfred Hubbard demonstrated his ‘Atmospheric Power Generator’ which was said to have an output power of some three times greater than the input power. It is difficult to determine the exact details of its construction, but the best information to hand suggests the following:

FIG. 1
It consisted of one tall central iron-cored ‘primary’ coil 15 inches high. The core was made from 16 iron rods and the winding made of 43 turns of cable. The cable had 7 cores each of 0.09” diameter, forming a bundle 0.204” in diameter inside the insulation which had an outside diameter of 0.34” which is American Wire Gauge Size 4 wire.

Placed around the central coil were 8 ‘secondary’ coils wound on low-carbon steel fence pipe of 2” inner diameter and approximately 2.25” outer diameter (57 mm), 15 inches high. The windings were also 43 turns of AWG No 4 wire and the coils were wired with the bottom of each coil connected to the top of the adjacent coil, i.e. the secondary coils were wired in series. The secondary coils touch each other tangentially and they also touch the central primary winding tangentially.

The generator was initially demonstrated powering an 18-foot boat with a 35 horsepower electric motor, around Portage Bay on Lake Union, Seattle at eight to ten knots, starting from the Seattle Yacht Club wharf. It appears that the wires should have been larger diameter as they started to overheat quite quickly. Dozens of people witnessed this demonstration and it was reported in the local Seattle press. Alfred is reported to have referred to the secondary windings as “electromagnets” each having both primary and secondary windings of copper wire. Details of the device are presented in Joseph Cater’s book “Awesome Force” which attempts to explain the theory of its operation.

The circuit looks deceptively simple, with the DC input being converted to a rapid train of very short duration pulses, stepped up in voltage and fed to the primary winding. The output is passed through a step-down transformer and was said to be 280 Amps at 125 Volts:
The variable capacitors shown are used to tune the input and output circuits to their resonant frequencies. There appears to be similarities between this circuit and the circuitry used by Edwin Gray when he was using his power tube to drive mains light bulbs and other standard electrical equipment. Edwin used air-cored transformer windings of very heavy-duty wire, to drive the loads and while Alfred does have steel formers for the secondary coils, they are mainly air-core, unlike his primary coil. Edwin and Nikola Tesla were tapping the same source of power, and since Alfred Hubbard worked with Tesla for a short period, it seems likely that his transformer is based on the same techniques that Tesla used so successfully.

It may well be that Alfred’s circuitry was actually constructed more like Tesla’s circuitry for his unique coils. It might have been like this:

Alfred’s association with Tesla raises some interesting points. Firstly, Tesla was aware that to generate Radiant Energy waves of the type that Edwin Gray trapped so successfully, ideally, uni-directional pulses of very short duration (1 millisecond or less) were needed. The best way to generate these is using a spark, so it is distinctly possible that Alfred’s oscillator contained a spark generator. Secondly, Tesla was aware that a serially-connected bi-filar wound coil is a very effective device for collecting Radiant Energy. Might it be possible that the information on how the secondary coils were wound and connected is not quite correct, and that while the coils were connected in series, they were bifilar-wound?

In fact, it seems much more likely that there were separate inner bi-filar windings connected in series while the outer bi-filar windings were also connected in series, especially since, it was reported that the device had four wires coming out of it. This strongly suggests that the bi-filar series-connected ‘secondary’ windings were connected internally to form the final circuit and that the four wires were one pair for the primary winding and one pair for the serially-connected pickup set of sixteen windings:
The device was examined and tested fully by Father William Smith, professor of physics at Seattle College. He was quoted as saying "I unhesitatingly say that Hubbard's invention is destined to take the place of existing power generators". While this indicates that Professor Smith's examination and tests showed that the device worked extremely well, he clearly was not aware of the marketplace opposition to any commercial form of free-energy device.

It has been suggested that the core of the device was packed with radio-active material (probably radium) and that an outer steel cylinder was placed around the device to absorb excess radiation. If that was so, the amount of material would have been very minor, and used only to ionise the air around the coils to improve the energy pick up. Any radio-active material used would have been similar to the 'luminous' paint which used to be applied to the hands of alarm clocks, and consequently, fairly harmless.

**Floyd Sweet's VTA.** Another device in this category of pulsed devices which tap external energy was produced by Floyd ("Sparky") Sweet. The device was dubbed "Vacuum Triode Amplifier" or "VTA" by Tom Bearden and the name has stuck, although it does not appear to be a particularly accurate description. There is very little practical information available on this device, though there is a video of it in operation on the web.

The device was capable of producing more than 1 kW of output power at 120 Volts, 60 Hz and is self-powered. The output is energy which resembles electricity in that it powers motors, lamps, etc. but as the power increases through any load there is a temperature drop instead of the expected temperature rise.

When it became known that he had produced the device he became the target of serious threats, some of which were delivered face-to-face in broad daylight. It is quite possible that the concern was due to the device tapping zero-point energy, which when done at high currents opens a whole new can of worms. One of the observed characteristics of the device was that when the current was increased, the measured weight of the apparatus reduced by about a pound. While this is hardly new, it suggests that space/time was being warped. The German scientists at the end of WWII had been experimenting with this (and killing off the unfortunate people who were used to test the system) - if you have considerable perseverance, you can read up on this in Nick Cook's inexpensive book "The Hunt for Zero-Point" ISBN 0099414988.

Floyd found that the weight of his device reduced in proportion to the amount of energy being produced. But he found that if the load was increased enough, a point was suddenly reached where a loud sound like a whirlwind was produced, although there was no movement of the air. The sound was heard by his wife Rose who was in another room of their apartment and by others outside the apartment. Floyd did not increase the load further (which is just as well as he would probably have received a fatal dose of radiation if he had) and did not repeat the test. In my opinion, this is a potentially dangerous device. It should be noted that a highly lethal 20,000 Volts is used to 'condition' the magnets and the principles of operation are not understood at this time. Also, there is insufficient information to hand to provide realistic advice on practical construction details.
On one occasion, Floyd accidentally short-circuited the output wires. There was a bright flash and the wires became covered with frost. It was noted that when the output load was over 1 kW, the magnets and coils powering the device became colder, reaching a temperature of 20 degrees Fahrenheit below room temperature. On one occasion, Floyd received a shock from the apparatus with the current flowing between the thumb and the small finger of one hand. The result was an injury akin to frostbite, causing him considerable pain for at least two weeks.

Observed characteristics of the device include:

1. The output voltage does not change when the output power is increased from 100W to 1 kW.
2. The device needs a continuous load of at least 25W.
3. The output falls in the early hours of the morning but recovers later on without any intervention.
4. A local earthquake can stop the device operating.
5. The device can be started in self-powered mode by briefly applying 9 Volts to the drive coils.
6. The device can be stopped by momentary interruption of the power to the power coils.
7. Conventional instruments operate normally up to an output of 1 kW but stop working above that output level, with their readings showing zero or some other spurious reading.

It appears that Floyd’s device was comprised of one or two large ferrite permanent magnets (grade 8, size 150 mm x 100 mm x 25 mm) with coils wound in three planes mutually at right angles to each other (i.e. in the x, y and z axes). The magnetisation of the ferrite magnets is modified by suddenly applying 20,000 Volts from a bank of capacitors (510 Joules) or more to plates on each side of it while simultaneously driving a 1 Amp 60 Hz (or 50 Hz) alternating current through the energising coil. The alternating current should be at the frequency required for the output. The voltage pulse to the plates should be applied at the instant when the ‘A’ coil voltage reaches a peak. This needs to be initiated electronically.

It is said that the powering of the plates causes the magnetic material to resonate for a period of about fifteen minutes, and that the applied voltage in the energising coil modifies the positioning of the newly formed poles of the magnet so that it will in future, resonate at that frequency and voltage. It is important that the voltage applied to the energising coil in this ‘conditioning’ process be a perfect sinewave. Shock, or outside influence can destroy the ‘conditioning’ but it can be reinstated by repeating the conditioning process. It should be noted that the conditioning process may not be successful at the first attempt but repeating the process on the same magnet is usually successful. Once conditioning is completed, the capacitors are no longer needed. The device then only needs a few milliwatts of 60 Hz applied to the input coil to give up to 1.5 kW at 60 Hz at the output coil. The output coil can then supply the input coil indefinitely.

The conditioning process modifies the magnetisation of the ferrite slab. Before the process the North pole is on one face of the magnet and the South pole on the opposite face. After conditioning, the South pole does not stop at the mid point but extends to the outer edges of the North pole face, extending inwards from the edge by about 6 mm. Also, there is a magnetic ‘bubble’ created in the middle of the North pole face and the position of this ‘bubble’ moves when another magnet is brought near it.

The conditioned slab has three coil windings:

1. The ‘A’ coil is wound first around the outer perimeter, each turn being 150 + 100 + 150 + 100 = 500 mm long (plus a small amount caused by the thickness of the coil former material). It has about 600 turns of 28 AWG (0.3 mm) wire.

2. The ‘B’ coil is wound across the 100 mm faces, so one turn is about 100 + 25 + 100 + 25 = 250 mm (plus a small amount for the former thickness and clearing coil ‘A’). It has between 200 and 500 turns of 20 AWG (1 mm) wire.

3. The ‘C’ coil is wound along the 150 mm face, so one turn is 150 + 25 + 150 + 25 = 350 mm (plus the former thickness, plus clearance for coil ‘A’ and coil ‘B’). It has between 200 and 500 turns of 20 AWG (1 mm) wire and should match the resistance of coil ‘B’ as closely as possible.

Coil ‘A’ is the input coil. Coil ‘B’ is the output coil. Coil ‘C’ is used for the conditioning and for the production of gravitational effects.
At time of writing, information and photographs of the original device can be found on the website: “http://www.intake.com/Index/Projects/Research/Construction%20of%20the%20Floyd%20Sweet's%20VTA%20by%20Michael%20Watson.htm” where a paper by Michael Watson gives much practical information. For example, he states that an experimental set up which he made, had the ‘A’ coil with a resistance of 70 ohms and an inductance of 63 mH, the ‘B’ coil, wound with 23 AWG wire with a resistance of 4.95 ohms and an inductance of 1.735 mH, and the ‘C’ coil, also wound with 23 AWG wire, with a resistance of 5.05 ohms and an inductance of 1.78 mH.
Chapter 6: Pulse-Charging Battery Systems

It is possible to draw substantial amounts of energy from the local environment and use that energy to charge batteries. Not only that, but when this method of charging is used, the batteries gradually get conditioned to this form of non-conventional energy and their capacity for doing work increases. In addition, about 50% of vehicle batteries abandoned as being incapable of holding their charge any longer, will respond to this type of charging and revive fully. This means that a battery bank can be created for almost no cost.

However, while this economic angle is very attractive, the practical aspect of using batteries for any significant home application is just not practical. Firstly, lead-acid batteries tend to get acid all over the place when repeatedly charged, and this is not suited to most home locations. Secondly, it is recommended that batteries are not discharged more rapidly than a twenty hour period. This means that a battery rated at a capacity of 80 Amp-hours (Ahr) should not be required to supply a current of more than 4 amps. This is a devastating restriction which pushes battery operation into the non-practical category, except for very minor loads like lights, TVs, DVD recorders and similar equipment with minimal power requirements.

The main costs of running a home are those of heating/cooling the premises and operating equipment like a washing machine. These items have a minimum load capacity of just over 2 kW. It makes no difference to the power requirement if you use a 12-volt, 24-volt or 48-volt battery bank. No matter which arrangement is chosen, the number of batteries needed to provide any given power requirement is the same. The higher voltage banks can have smaller diameter wiring as the current is lower, but the power requirement remains the same.

So, to provide a 2 kW load with power, requires a total current from 12-volt batteries of 2000 / 12 = 167 amps. Using 80 Ahr batteries this is 42 batteries. Unfortunately, the charging circuits described below, will not charge a battery which is powering a load. This means that for a requirement like heating, which is a day and night requirement, there needs to be two of these battery banks, which takes us to 84 batteries. This is only for a minimal 2 kW loading, which means that if this is being used for heating, it is not possible to operate the washing machine unless the heating is turned off. So, allowing for some extra loading like this, the battery count reaches, perhaps, 126. Ignoring the cost, and assuming that you can find some way to get over the acid problem, the sheer physical volume of this number of batteries is just not realistic for domestic installation and use. In passing, you would also need two inverters with a 2.5 kW operating capacity.

This brings home the value of devices like the Wang Shum Ho 5 kW permanent magnet motor-generator which is compact and requires no fuel or batteries to operate. However, the pulsed-charging systems are important as they show us features of the local energy field and how to tap it.

John Bedini has designed a whole series of pulse-generator circuits, all based on the 1:1 multi-strand choke coil component disclosed in his patent US 6,545,444.

With this system, the rotor is started spinning by hand. As a magnet passes the triple-wound “tri-filar” coil, it induces a voltage in all three coil windings. The magnet on the rotor is effectively contributing energy to the circuit as it passes the coil. One winding feeds a current to the base of the transistor via the resistor ‘R’. This switches the transistor hard on, driving a strong current pulse from the battery through the second coil winding, creating a ‘North’ pole at the top of the coil, boosting the rotor on its way. As only a changing magnetic field generate a
for several turns in one direction. This produces clockwise twists for half the length and counter-clockwise twists for the other half. This style of winding modifies the magnetic and electrical properties of the windings.

It has been said that the use of “Litz” wire can increase the output of this device by anything up to 300%. Litz wire is the technique of taking three or more strands of wire and twisting them together. This is done with the wires stretched out side by side, by taking a length of say, three feet, and rotating the mid point of the bundle of wires for several turns in one direction. This produces clockwise twists for half the length and counter-clockwise twists for the remainder of the length. Done over a long length of wire, the wires are twisted repeatedly clockwise - counter clockwise - clockwise - counter clockwise - ... along their whole length. The ends of the wires are then cleared of their insulation and soldered together to make a three-strand cable, and the cable is then used to wind the coils. This style of winding modifies the magnetic and electrical properties of the windings. It has been said that taking three long strands of wire and just twisting them together in one direction to make a long twisted three-strand cable is nearly as effective as using Litz wire. The websites www.mwswire.com/litzmain.htm and www.litzwire.com are suppliers of ready made Litz wire.

CAUTION: Care must be taken when working with batteries, especially lead-acid batteries. A charged battery contains a large amount of energy and short-circuiting the terminals will cause a very large current flow which may start a fire. When being charged, some batteries give off hydrogen gas which when mixed with air is highly dangerous and which could explode if ignited by a spark. Batteries can explode and/or catch fire if grossly overcharged or charged with an excessively large current, so there could be danger from flying pieces of the casing and possibly acid being thrown around. Even an apparently clean lead-acid battery can have caustic traces on the case, so you should be sure to wash your hands thoroughly after handling a battery. Batteries with lead terminals tend to shed small fragments of lead when clips are put on them. Lead is toxic, so please be sure to wash your hands after handling any part of a lead-acid battery. Remember too that some batteries can develop slight leaks so please protect against any leakage. If you decide to perform any experiments using batteries, that you do so entirely at your own risk and on your own responsibility. This set of documents is presented for information purposes only and you are not encouraged to do anything other than read the information.

Also, if you get one of John’s pulse motors tuned correctly, it will accelerate to perhaps 10,000 rpm. This is great...
Ronald Knight has many years of professional experience in handling batteries and in pulse-charging them. He comments on battery safety as follows:

I have not heard of anyone having a catastrophic failure of a battery case in all the energy groups to which I belong and most of them use batteries in the various systems which I study. However, that does not mean that it cannot happen. The most common reason for catastrophic failure in the case of a lead-acid battery, is arcing causing failure in the grids which are assembled together inside the battery to make up the cells of the battery. Any internal arcing will cause a rapid build up of pressure from expanding Hydrogen gas, resulting in a catastrophic failure of the battery case.

I am a former maintenance engineer for U.S. Batteries, so I can say with confidence, that when you receive a new battery from at least that manufacturer, you receive a battery which has undergone the best test available to insure the manufacturer that he is not selling junk which will be sent back to him. It is a relatively easy test, and as it takes place during the initial charge, there is no wasted time nor is there one battery that escapes the pass-or-fail test. The battery is charged with the absolute maximum current which it can take. If the battery does not blow up due to internal arcing during the initial charge it is highly likely that it will not blow up under the regular use for which it was designed. However, all bets are off with used batteries that have gone beyond their expected life.

I have witnessed several catastrophic failures of battery cases daily at work. I have been standing right next to batteries (within 12 inches) when they explode (it is like a .45 ACP pistol round going off) and have only been startled and had to change my under shorts and Tyvek jump-suit, and wash off my rubber boots. I have been in the charge room with several hundred batteries at a time positioned very closely together and have seen batteries explode almost every working day and I have never seen two side by side blow, nor have I ever seen one fire or any flash damage to the case or surrounding area as a result. I have never even seen a flash but what I have seen tells me it is wise to always wear eye protection when charging.

I have my new gel cells in a heavy plastic zip-lock bags partly unzipped when in the house and in a marine battery box outside in the garage, that is just in the remote chance of catastrophic failure or the more likely event of acid on the outside of the battery case.

Vented batteries are always a risk of spillage which is their most common hazard, they should always be in a plastic lined cardboard or plastic box with sides taller than the battery and no holes in it. You would be surprised at how far away I have found acid around a vented lead acid battery under charge.

Have an emergency plan, keep a box of baking soda and a water source around to neutralise and flush the acid in case of spillage. It is best to have plastic under and around wherever your lead-acid batteries are located.

Ronald Knight gets about fifteen times more power from his Bedini-charged batteries than is drawn from the driving side of the circuit. He stresses that this does not happen immediately, as the batteries being charged have to be “conditioned” by repeated cycles of charging and discharging. When this is done, the capacity of the batteries being charged increases. Interestingly, the rate of current draw on the driving side of the circuit is not increased if the battery bank being charged is increased in capacity. This is because the power which charges the batteries flows from the environment and not from the driving battery. The driving battery just produces the high-voltage spikes which trigger the energy flow from the environment, and as a consequence of that the battery bank being charged can be a higher voltage than the 12-volt driving battery, and there can be any number of batteries in the charging bank.

Ron Pugh’s Charger. John Bedini’s designs have been experimented with and developed by a number of enthusiasts. This in no way detracts from fact that the whole system and concepts come from John and I should like to express my sincere thanks to John for his most generous sharing of his systems. Thanks is also due to Ron Pugh who has kindly agreed for the details of one of his Bedini generators to be presented here. Let me stress again, that if you decide to build and use one of these devices, you do so entirely at your own risk and no responsibility for your actions rests with John Bedini, Ron Pugh or anyone else. Let me stress again that this document is provided for information purposes only and is not a recommendation or encouragement for you to build a similar device.

Ron’s device is much more powerful than the average system, having fifteen coil windings and it performs most impressively. Here is a picture of it rotating at high speed:
This is not a toy. It draws significant current and produces substantial charging rates. This is how Ron chose to build his device. The rotor is constructed from aluminium discs which were to hand but he would have chosen aluminium for the rotor if starting from scratch as his experience indicates that it is a very suitable material for the rotor. The rotor has six magnets inserted in it. These are evenly spaced 60 degrees apart with the North poles all facing outwards.

The magnets are normal ceramic types about 22 mm wide, 47 mm long and 10 mm high. Ron uses two of these in each of his six rotor slots. He bought several spare ones and then graded all of them in order of their magnetic strength, which varies a bit from magnet to magnet. Ron did this grading using a gauss meter. An alternative method would have been to use a paper clip about 30 mm in size and measure the distance at which one end of the clip just starts to rise up off the table as the magnet is moved towards it:

Having graded the magnets in order of strength, Ron then took the best twelve and paired them off, placing the weakest and strongest together, the second weakest and the second strongest, and so on. This produced six
pairs which have fairly closely matching magnetic strengths. The pairs of magnets were then glued in place in the rotor using super glue:

It is not desirable to recess the magnets though it is possible to place a restraining layer around the circumference of the rotor as the clearance between the magnet faces and the coils is about a quarter of an inch (6 mm) when adjusted for optimum performance. The North poles of the magnets face outwards as shown in the diagram above. If desired, the attachment of the magnets can be strengthened by the addition of blank side plates to the rotor which allows the magnet gluing to be implemented on five of the six faces of the magnet pairs:

The magnets embedded in the outer edge of the rotor are acted on by wound “coils” which act as 1:1 transformers, electromagnets, and pickup coils. There are three of these “coils”, each being about 3 inches long
and wound with five strands of #19 AWG (20 SWG) wire. The coil formers were made from plastic pipe of 7/8 inch (22 mm) outer diameter which Ron drilled out to an inner diameter of 3/4 inch (19 mm) which gives a wall thickness of 1/16 inch (1.5 mm). The end pieces for the coil formers were made from 1/8 inch (3 mm) PVC which was fixed to the plastic tube using plumbers PVC glue. The coil winding was with the five wires twisted around each other. This was done by clamping the ends of the five wires together at each end to form one 120 foot long bundle.

The bundle of wires was then stretched out and kept clear of the ground by passing it through openings in a set of patio chairs. A battery-powered drill was attached to one end and operated until the wires were loosely twisted together. This tends to twist the ends of the wires together to a greater extent near the end of the bundle rather than the middle. So the procedure was repeated, twisting the other end of the bundle. It is worth remarking in passing, that the drill turns in the same direction at each end in order to keep the twists all in the same direction. The twisted bundle of wires is collected on a large-diameter reel and then used to wind one of the “coils”.

The coils are wound with the end plates attached and drilled ready to screw to their 1/4 inch (6 mm) PVC bases, which are the bolted to the 3/4 inch (18 mm) MDF supporting structure. To help the winding to remain completely even, a piece of paper is placed over each layer of the winding:
The three coils produced in this way were then attached to the main surface of the device. There could just as easily have been six coils. The positioning is made so as to create an adjustable gap of about 1/4 inch (6 mm) between the coils and the rotor magnets in order to find the optimum position for magnetic interaction. The magnetic effects are magnified by the core material of the coils. This is made from lengths of oxyacetylene welding wire which is copper coated. The wire is cut to size and coated with clear shellac to prevent energy loss through eddy currents circulating inside the core.

The coils are positioned at equal intervals around the rotor and so are 120 degrees apart. The end pieces of the coil formers are bolted to a 1/4 inch (6 mm) PVC base plate which has slotted mounting holes which allow the magnetic gap to be adjusted as shown here:
The three coils have a total of fifteen identical windings. One winding is used to sense when a rotor magnet reaches the coils during its rotation. This will, of course happen six times for each revolution of the rotor as there are six magnets in the rotor. When the trigger winding is activated by the magnet, the electronics powers up all of the remaining fourteen coils with a very sharp, pulse which has a very short rise time and a very short fall time. The sharpness and brevity of this pulse is a critical factor in drawing excess energy in from the environment and will be explained in greater detail later on. The electronic circuitry is mounted on three aluminium heat sinks, each about 100 mm square. Two of these have five BD243C NPN transistors bolted to them and the third one has four BD243C transistors mounted on it.

The metal mounting plate of the BD243 transistors acts as its heat sink, which is why they are all bolted to the large aluminium plate. BD243C transistors look like this:

The circuit has been built on the aluminium panels so that the transistors can be bolted directly on to it, and provided with insulating strips mounted on top of it to avoid short circuits to the other components. Standard strip connector blocks have been used to inter-connect the boards which look like this:
The circuit used with this device is simple but as there are so many components involved, the diagram is split into parts to fit on the page. These parts are shown here:
While this looks like a fairly large and complicated circuit, it actually is not. You will notice that there are fourteen identical circuit sections. Each of these is quite simple:
This is a very simple transistor circuit. When the trigger line goes positive (driven by the magnet passing the coil) the transistor is switched on hard, powering the coil which is then effectively connected across the driving battery. The trigger pulse is quite short, so the transistor switches off almost immediately. This is the point at which the circuit operation gets subtle. The coil characteristics are such that this sharp powering pulse and sudden cut-off cause the voltage across the coil to rise very rapidly, dragging the voltage on the collector of the transistor up to several hundred volts. Fortunately, this effect is energy drawn from the environment which is quite unlike conventional electricity, and thankfully, a good deal less damaging to the transistor. This rise in voltage, effectively “turns over” the set of three 1N4007 diodes which then conducts strongly, feeding this excess free-energy into the charging battery. Ron uses three diodes in parallel as they have a better current-carrying capacity and thermal characteristics than a single diode. This is a common practice and any number of diodes can be placed in parallel, with sometimes as many as ten being used.

The only other part of the circuit is the section which generates the trigger signal:

When a magnet passes the coil containing the trigger winding, it generates a voltage in the winding. The intensity of the trigger signal is controlled by passing it through an ordinary vehicle 6 watt, 12 volt bulb and then further limiting the current by making it pass through a resistor. To allow some manual control of the level of the trigger signal, the resistor is divided into a fixed resistor and a variable resistor (which many people like to call a “pot”). This variable resistor and the adjustment of the gap between the coils and the rotor are the only adjustments of the device. The bulb has more than one function. When the tuning is correct, the bulb will glow dimly which is a very useful indication of the operation. The trigger circuit then feeds each of the transistor bases via their 470 ohm resistors.

John Bedini aims for an even more powerful implementation, wiring his circuit with AWG #18 (19 SWG) heavy-duty copper wire and using MJL21194 transistors and 1N5408 diodes. He increases the trigger drive by dropping the variable resistor and reducing fixed resistor to just 22 ohms. The MJL21194 transistor has the same pin connections as the BD243C transistor. This is the starting section of John’s circuit:
There are various ways of constructing this circuit. Ron shows two different methods. The first is shown above and uses paxolin strips (printed-circuit board material) above the aluminium heat sink to mount the components. Another method which is easy to see, uses thick copper wires held clear of the aluminium, to provide a clean and secure mounting for the components as shown here:
It is important to realise that the collector of a BD243C transistor is internally connected to the heat-sink plate used for the physical mounting of the transistor. As the circuit does not have the collectors of these transistors connected together electrically, they cannot just be bolted to a single heat-sink plate. The above picture might give the wrong impression as it does not show clearly that the metal bolts fastening the transistors in place do not go directly into the aluminium plate, but instead, they fasten into plastic tee-nuts.

An alternative, frequently used by the builders of high-powered electronic circuits, is to use mica washers between the transistor and the common heatsink plate, and use plastic fastening bolts or metal bolts with a plastic insulating collar between the fastening and the plate. Mica has the very useful property of conducting heat very well but not conducting electricity. Mica “washers” shaped to the transistor package are available from the suppliers of the transistors. In this instance, it seems clear that heat dissipation is not a problem in this circuit, which in a way is to be expected as the energy being drawn from the environment is frequently called “cold” electricity as it cools components down with increasing current as opposed to heating them up as conventional electricity does.

This particular circuit board is mounted at the rear of the unit:
Although the circuit diagram shows a twelve volt drive supply, which is a very common supply voltage, Ron sometimes powers his device with a mains operated Power Supply Unit which shows a power input of a pretty trivial 43 watts. It should be noted that this device operates by pulling in extra power from the environment. That drawing in of power gets disrupted if any attempt is made to loop that environmental power back on itself or driving the unit directly from another battery charged by the unit itself. It may be just possible to power the unit successfully from a previously charged battery if an inverted is used to convert the power to AC and then a step-down transformer and regulated power rectification circuit is used. As the power input is so very low, off-grid operation should be easily possible with a battery and a solar panel.

It is not possible to operate a load off the battery under charge during the charging process as this disrupts the energy flow. Some of these circuits recommend that a separate 4 foot long earthing rod be used to earth the negative side of the driving battery, but to date, Ron has not experimented with this. In passing, it is good practice to enclose any lead-acid battery in a battery box. Marine chandlers can supply these as they are used extensively in boating activities.

When cutting the wire lengths for coating and pushing into the coil formers, Ron uses a jig to ensure that all of the lengths are identical. This arrangement is shown here:
The distance between the shears and the metal angle clamped to the workbench makes each cut length of wire exactly the required size while the plastic container collects the cut pieces ready for coating with clear shellac or clear polyurethane varnish before use in the coil cores.

Experience is particularly important when operating a device of this kind. The 100 ohm variable resistor should be a wire-wound type as it has to carry significant current. Initially the variable resistor is set to its minimum value and the power applied. This causes the rotor to start moving. As the rate of spin increases, the variable resistor is gradually increased and a maximum speed will be found with the variable resistor around the middle of its range, i.e. about 50 ohm resistance. Increasing the resistance further causes the speed to reduce.

The next step is to turn the variable resistor to its minimum resistance position again. This causes the rotor to leave its previous maximum speed (about 1,700 rpm) and increase the speed again. As the speed starts increasing again, the variable resistor is once again gradually turned, increasing its resistance. This raises the rotor speed to about 3,800 rpm when the variable resistor reaches mid point again. This is probably fast enough for all practical purposes, and at this speed, even the slightest imbalance of the rotor shows up quite markedly. To go any faster than this requires an exceptionally high standard of constructional accuracy. Please remember that the rotor has a large amount of energy stored in it at this speed and so is potentially very dangerous. If the rotor breaks or a magnet comes off it, that stored energy will produce a highly dangerous projectile. That is why it is advisable, although not shown in the above photographs, to construct an enclosure for the rotor. That could be a U-shaped channel between the coils. The channel would then catch and restrain any fragments should anything break loose.

If you were to measure the current during this adjustment process, it would be seen to reduce as the rotor speeds up. This looks as if the efficiency of the device is rising. That may be so, but it is not necessarily a good thing in this case where the objective is to produce radiant energy charging of the battery bank. John Bedini has shown that serious charging takes place when the current draw of the device is 3 to 5+ amps at maximum rotor speed and not a miserly 50 mA draw, which can be achieved but which will not produce good charging. The power can
be increased by raising the input voltage to 24 volts or even higher - John Bedini operates at 48 volts rather than 12 volts.

The device can be further tuned by stopping it and adjusting the gap between the coils and the rotor and then repeating the start-up procedure. The optimum adjustment is where the final rotor speed is the highest.

The above text is intended to give a practical introduction to one of John Bedini’s inventions. It seems appropriate that some attempt at an explanation of what is happening, should be advanced at this point. In the most informative book “Energy From The Vacuum - Concepts and Principles” by Tom Bearden (ISBN 0-9725146-0-0) an explanation of this type of system is put forward. While the description appears to be aimed mainly at John’s motor system which ran continuously for three years, powering a load and recharging it’s own battery, the description would appear to apply to this system as well. I will attempt to summarise it here:

Conventional electrical theory does not go far enough when dealing with lead/acid batteries in electronic circuits. Lead/acid batteries are extremely non-linear devices and there is a wide range of manufacturing methods which make it difficult to present a comprehensive statement covering every type in detail. However, contrary to popular belief, there are actually at least three separate currents flowing in a battery-operated circuit:

1. Ion current flowing in the electrolyte between the plates inside the battery. This current does not leave the battery and enter the external electronic circuit.

2. Electron current flowing from the plates out into the external circuit.

3. Current flow from the environment which passes along the external circuitry and into the battery.

The exact chemical processes inside the battery are quite complex and involve additional currents which are not relevant here. The current flow from the environment follows the electron flow around the external circuit and on into the battery. This is “cold” electricity which is quite different to conventional electricity and it can be very much larger than the standard electrical current described in conventional textbooks. A battery has unlimited capacity for this kind of energy and when it has a substantial “cold” electricity charge, it can soak up the conventional energy from a standard battery charger for a week or more, without raising the battery voltage at all.

An important point to understand is that the ions in the lead plates of the battery have much greater inertia than electrons do (several hundred thousand times in fact). Consequently, if an electron and an ion are both suddenly given an identical push, the electron will achieve rapid movement much more quickly than the ion will. It is assumed that the external electron current is in phase with the ion current in the plates of the battery, but this need not be so. John Bedini deliberately exploys the difference of momentum by applying a very sharply rising potential to the plates of the battery.

In the first instant, this causes electrons to pile up on the plates while they are waiting for the much heavier ions to get moving. This pile up of electrons pushes the voltage on the terminal of the battery to rise to as much as 100 volts. This in turn, causes the energy to flow back out into the circuit as well as into the battery, giving simultaneously, both circuit power and serious levels of battery charging. This over potential also causes much increased power flow from the environment into the circuit, giving augmented power both for driving the external circuit and for increasing the rate of battery charge. The battery half of the circuit is now 180 degrees out of phase with the circuit-powering half of the circuit.

It is important to understand that the circuit-driving energy and the battery-charging energy do not come from the sharp pulses applied to the battery. Instead, the additional energy flows in from the environment, triggered by the pulses generated by the Bedini circuit. In other words, the Bedini pulses act as a tap on the external energy source and are not themselves the source of the extra power.

If the Bedini circuit is adjusted correctly, the pulse is cut off very sharply just before the tapped energy inflow is about to end. This has a further enhancing effect due to the Lenz law reaction which causes an induced voltage surge which can take the over-voltage potential to as much as 400 volts. This has a further effect on the local environment, drawing in an even higher level of additional power and extending the period of time during which that extra power flows into both the circuit and the battery. This is why the exact adjustment of a Bedini pulsing system is so important.

The Self-charging Variation. One major disadvantage of these battery pulse-chargers is the fact that it is thought that it is not possible to self-power the device nor to boost the running battery during the battery charging process. There is one variation of the pulse-charger which does actually boost the driving motor as it runs, and one particular implementation of this is shown here:
The rotor weighs about five pounds (2 Kg) and is very heavy for its size, because it is constructed from flooring laminate, and has a thickness of 1.875 inches (48 mm) to match the width of the magnets. There are ten magnets size 1.875” x 0.875” x 0.25” (48 mm x 22 mm x 6 mm) which are assembled in pairs, to produce the most evenly matched magnetic sets possible. That is, the strongest is put together with the weakest, the second most strong with the second weakest, and so on to produce the five sets, each half an inch (12 mm) thick. These pairs are embedded in the rotor at equal 72° centres around the edge of the rotor.

The battery pulsing produced by this circuit is the same as shown in John Bedini’s patent already mentioned. As the rotor turns, the trigger winding energises the 2N3055 transistor which then drives a strong pulse through the winding shown in red in the diagram above. The voltage spike which occurs when the drive current is suddenly cut off, is fed to the battery being charged. This happens five times during a single revolution of the rotor.

The clever variation introduced here, is to position a pick-up coil opposite the driving/charging coil. As there are five magnets, the drive/charging coil is not in use when a magnet is passing the pick-up coil. The driving circuit is
not actually active at this instant, so the microswitch is used to disconnect the circuit completely from the driving battery and connect the pick-up coil to the driving battery. This feeds a charging pulse to the driving battery via the bridge of 1N4007 high-voltage diodes. This is only done once per revolution, and the physical position of the microswitch is adjusted to get the timing exactly right.

This arrangement produces a circuit which in addition to pulsing the battery bank under charge, but also returns current to the driving battery.

**The Tesla Switch.** The Tesla Switch is covered in more detail elsewhere in this document, but it is worth mentioning it again here as it does perform battery charging. The similarity ends there, because the Tesla switch does the battery charging while the circuit is providing serious current into a load. Also, the Tesla switch uses only four batteries, and still is capable of driving a thirty horsepower motor, which is the equivalent of 22 kilowatts of electrical power.

The simple circuit shown here was used by testers of the Electrodyne Corp. over a period of three years using ordinary vehicle lead-acid batteries. During that time, the batteries were not only kept charged by the circuit, but the battery voltage climbed to as much as 36 volts, without any damage to the batteries.

If the voltage on a battery under load actually increases, it is reasonable to assume that the battery is receiving more power than that delivered to the load (a load is a motor, a pump, a fan, lights, or any other electrical equipment). As this is so, and the circuit is not connected to any visible outside source of energy, it will be realised that there has to be an outside source of energy which is not visible. If the circuit is provided with powerful enough components, it is perfectly capable of powering an electric car at high speeds, as has been demonstrated by Ronald Brandt. This indicates that the invisible source of outside energy is capable of supplying serious amounts of additional power. It should also be remembered that a lead-acid battery does not normally return anything like 100% of the electrical energy fed into it during charging, so the outside source of energy is providing additional current to the batteries as well as to the load.

So, how does this circuit manage to do this? Well, it does it in exactly the same way as the battery pulse-charging circuits in that it generates a very sharply rising voltage waveform when it switches from its State 1 to its State 2 (as shown in detail earlier). This very rapid switching unbalances the local quantum energy field, causing major flows of energy, some of which enters this circuit and powers both the circuit and the load. Although it does use four batteries, and the batteries do get charged through the generation of sharp pulses, this is not a circuit which charges massive battery banks so that they can power a load at some later time.
Chapter 7: Aerial Systems

It is generally thought that aerials are not capable of gathering much power. The popular conception is that the only power available is low level radio waves from distant radio transmitters, and while it is certainly true that radio waves can be picked up with an aerial, the real sources of power are not radio transmitters.

For example, we will be looking at information from Herman Plauston and he considered any aerial system of his which did not produce more than an excess power of 100 kilowatts, as a “small” system. Thomas Henry Moray demonstrated his system to audiences repeatedly, pulling in power levels of up to 50 kilowatts. These power levels are not produced by radio station signals.

Nikola Tesla’s System. Nikola Tesla produced an aerial device which is worth mentioning. It was patented on May 21st 1901 as an “Apparatus for the Utilisation of Radiant Energy”, US Patent number 685,957.

The device appears simple but Tesla states that the capacitor needs to be “of considerable electrostatic capacity” and he recommends using the best quality mica to construct it as described in his 1897 patent No. 577,671. The circuit draws power via an insulated, shiny metal plate. The insulation could be spray-on plastic. The larger the plate, the greater the energy pick-up. The higher the plate is elevated, the greater the pick-up.

This system of Tesla’s picks up energy day and night. The capacitor gets charged up and a vibrating switch repeatedly discharges the capacitor into the step-down transformer. The transformer lowers the voltage and raises the current available and the output is then used to power the electrical load.

It seems probable that this device operates primarily from static electricity, which some people believe is a manifestation of the zero-point energy field. Tesla’s equipment might well operate when fed by a motor-driven Wimshurst machine instead of a large aerial plate. Details of home-built Wimshurst equipment are available in the book ‘Homemade Lightning’ by R.A. Ford, ISBN 0-07-021528-6.
Thomas Henry Moray  In this field, Thomas Henry Moray is outstanding. By 1936 he had developed a piece of apparatus which was capable of putting out high power with no human-generated input power at all.

Moray’s equipment is said to have contained a germanium diode which he built himself in the days before solid-state devices became readily available. The equipment was examined and tested many times. On dozens of occasions, he demonstrated the equipment driving a bank of twenty 150W bulbs, plus a 600W heater, plus a 575W iron (a total of 4.175 kW). The power picked up by this device needed only small diameter wires and had characteristics different from conventional electricity. One demonstration which was repeated many times, was to show that the output power circuit could be broken and a sheet of ordinary glass placed between the severed ends of the wire, without disrupting the supply. This type of power is called “Cold electricity” because thin wires carrying major power loads, do not overheat. This form of energy is said to flow in waves which surround the wires of a circuit and not actually trough the wires at all. Unlike conventional electricity, it does not use electrons for transmission and that is why it can continue through a sheet of glass which would stop conventional electricity dead in its tracks.

On one occasion, Moray took his equipment away from all urban areas to a place chosen at random by a critic. He then set up the equipment and demonstrated the power output, well away from any man-generated electrical induction. He disconnected the aerial and showed that the power output stopped immediately. He connected the aerial again to generate the output as before. He then disconnected the earth connection which stopped the output again. When the earth wire was connected again, the output power returned. He found that the power output level fell somewhat at night.

He developed various versions of the device, the latest of which did not need the aerial or earth connections, weighed 50 pounds and had an output of 50 kilowatts. This device was tested in both an aeroplane and a submarine, thus showing the device to be fully self-contained and portable. It was also tested in locations which were fully shielded from electromagnetic radiation.

Moray was shot and wounded in an assassination attempt in his laboratory. This caused him to change the glass in his car to bullet-proof glass. He was threatened many times. His demonstration equipment was smashed with
a hammer. When threats were made against his family, he stopped rebuilding his equipment and appeared to have turned his attentions to other things, producing a device for ‘therapeutic’ medical treatment.

In his book “The Energy Machine of T. Henry Moray”, Moray B. King provides more information on this system. He states that Moray was refused a patent on the grounds that the examiner couldn’t see how the device could output so much power when the valve cathodes were not heated. Moray was granted US Patent 2,460,707 on 1st February 1949 for an Electrotherapeutic Apparatus, in which he included the specification for the three valves used in his power device, apparently because he wanted them to be covered by a patent. As far as can be seen, the valve shown here is an oscillator tube. Moray claimed that this tube had the very high capacitance of 1 Farad when running at its resonant frequency. Moray liked to use powdered quartz as a dielectric in the capacitors which he made, and he had a habit of mixing in radium salts and uranium ores with the quartz. These materials may well be important in producing ionisation in these tubes and that ionisation may well be important in tapping the energy field.

The tube shown above has a six-layer capacitor formed from two U-shaped circular metal rings with the space between them filled with a dielectric material. The plates are shown in red and blue, while the dielectric is shown in green. Inside the capacitor, there is a separate ring of dielectric material (possibly made from a different material) and an inside ring of corrugated metal to form an ion brush-discharge electrode. The capacitor and electrode connections are taken to pins in the base of the tube.

Quartz is suggested for the material of the outer covering of the tube and the wire element numbered 79 in the diagram is said to be a heating element intended to be powered by a low-voltage current source. However, as Moray had an earlier patent application refused on the grounds that there was no heating element in his tubes, it is distinctly possible that the heating element shown here is spurious, and drawn solely to avoid rejection by the examiners. In his patent, Moray refers to the capacitor in this tube as a “sparking” capacitor, so he may have been driving it with excessively high voltages which caused repeated breakdown of the capacitor material.
The tube of Fig.16 above, uses a different technique where an X-ray tube is used to bombard a corrugated electrode through a screen containing an X-ray window. It is thought that a brief burst of X-rays was used to trigger very short, sharp bursts of ions between the anode and cathode of the tube and these pick up extra energy with every burst.

An alternative version of this tube is shown in Fig.18 below. Here the construction is rather similar but instead of an X-ray window, a lens and reflector are used to cause the ionisation of the switching channel between the anode and cathode. In both tubes, the corrugated electrode supports a corona build-up just prior to the short X-ray switching pulse, and it is thought that the ions contribute to the intensity of the resulting pulses which emerge from the tube. Very short uni-directional pulses are capable of causing conditions under which additional energy can be picked up. From where does this extra energy come? In 1873, James Clerk Maxwell published his "treatise on Electricity and Magnetism" and in it he pointed out that the vacuum contains a considerable amount of energy (Vol. 2, p. 472 and 473). John Archibald Wheeler of Princeton University, a leading physicist who worked on the US atomic bomb project, has calculated the flux density of the vacuum. Applying Einstein's $E=mc^2$ formula indicates that there is enough energy in every 1 cc of "empty" space, to create all of the matter in the visible universe which can be seen with our most powerful telescopes. That amount of energy is so great as to be beyond imagining. This energy field is referred to as "Universal Energy", "Cosmic Energy" or "Zero Point Energy". At this time, we do not have any instrument which responds directly to this energy and so it is almost impossible to measure.

The existence of this energy field is now widely accepted by mainstream science and it is borne out by the situation found at quantum levels. It is generally thought that this energy is chaotic in form and for useful energy to be drawn from it, it needs to be restructured into a coherent form. It appears that uni-directional electromagnetic pulses of one millisecond or less, can be used to cause the necessary restructuring as they generate an outward coherent wave of radiant energy, from which energy can be extracted for use in most electrical devices, if a suitable receptor system is used. Tom Bearden states that at the quantum level, the seething energy of this field appears continuously as positive and negative charges. As these are evenly distributed, the net charge at any point is always zero. If a "dipole" (two opposite charges near each other) is created anywhere, then it polarises the energy field disrupting the previously even distribution of charges and causing massive streams of energy to radiate outwards from the dipole.

A voltage pulse acts as a dipole, provided the voltage rise is fast enough, and that is what causes a wave of radiant energy fanning out from the location of the voltage pulse. Batteries and magnets create continuous dipoles and so cause the local quantum energy field to send out continuous streams of massive power which can be utilised if (and only if) you know how to do it. The search for mechanisms to capture and use even a tiny fraction of these energy streams is what the "free-energy" field of research is all about. Some people say that there is no such thing as "free-energy" because you have to pay for the device which captures it. That is like
taking a bus ride to a car dealership where they are giving away new cars, and saying that your new car was not a “free” car because you had to pay a bus fare to reach the car dealership.

Moray King suggests that the circuit used by Thomas Henry Moray was as follows:

There can be little doubt that Thomas Henry Moray built several versions of his apparatus, each of which produced output power well in excess of any input power needed. It seems highly likely that most of them used no input power whatsoever, and if there were any others, they will have been powered by a tiny fraction of the output power. If mild radioactive material was used as described, then the output power could in no way be attributed to that source alone, since the output power was thousands of time greater than any power available from the radioactive materials.

It is perhaps time to explain a little more about voltage, power and current. We have been raised with the notion that it is necessary to “burn” a fuel to get power, that batteries “run down” when used and that you have to keep turning the shaft of an electrical generator to be able to draw current from it. These things are not actually true. The relatively recent field of Quantum Mechanics shows that if a charge, such as an electron has, is positioned in what is supposed to be “empty” space, it is not alone. The “empty” space is actually seething with energy, to the extent that “virtual” particles are popping into existence for a fraction of a second and then disappearing again. They are called “virtual” because they exist for such a short time.

Because of the negative charge of the electron, the particles appearing and disappearing around it will all be positive in charge. The electron has “polarised” the space around itself because it has a charge. The instant that a positive “virtual” particle appears, there are two charges near each other - minus on the electron and plus on the particle. When you have two opposite charges near each other, they form a “dipole”. Dipoles form a gateway
through which energy from the environment flows continuously. An instant later, the particle disappears, but it’s place is immediately taken by another virtual particle. The result is a continuous stream of energy flowing through the dipole.

Batteries with their positive and negative terminals are electrical dipoles as are generators when the input shaft is spun. Permanent magnets with their North and South poles are magnetic dipoles. Both of these have continuous streams of energy flowing through them. So, why then do batteries run down and lose their charge? The reason is that we power circuits using a closed loop. The energy flowing out of one terminal flows into the opposite terminal and instantly destroys the dipole. A new dipole has to be created every split second if the circuit is to deliver power, and it is that self-destructive method of use which causes the battery to discharge or which needs the generator shaft to be rotated continuously.

If a different operating technique is used, where the dipole is not continuously destroyed, then devices which can provide a continuous stream of energy drawn from our natural environment can be constructed. This is not magic, just the next step in conventional science and engineering. Thomas Henry Moray managed it, initially with an aerial and earth like a crystal set to provide the dipole, his device was able to draw many kilowatts of power from the environment. No fuel was needed, the energy is already there surrounding us all, all of the time. As far as I am aware, nobody has managed to replicate Moray’s device (which was the reason for it being violently suppressed) but knowing that it existed and was repeatedly demonstrated to work perfectly well, is useful in that it shows that it is possible to tap the massive zero-point energy field with a practical, home-constructed device.

Hermann Plauston’ Systems. Hermann Plauston was granted US Patent 1,540,998 in June 1925. The patent is similar in style to Tesla’s pick-up system and it illustrates the principle with a system which is very much like Paul Baumann’s “Testatica” device hidden away in a Swiss religious commune. The patent is very detailed with 37 drawings showing different arrangements, and it is shown in full in the Appendix. In fact, the patent reads more like a tutorial rather than a patent.

A system of this type should most definitely be taken seriously: Hermann considers one of his systems with an output of 100 kilowatts as being a “small” system. He illustrates several different methods of energy capture and several methods of increasing the effectiveness of the captured energy. While an installation to capture a continuous supply of 100+ kilowatts is unrealistic for an individual, there is the distinct possibility of making a scaled-down version which is capable of providing serious levels of free power. Reading his patent through carefully is definitely to be recommended.
His patent says: "By suitably selecting the ratio between the number of turns in the primary and secondary windings, with regard to a correct application of the coefficients of resonance (capacitance, inductance and resistance) the high voltage of the primary circuit may be suitably converted into a low voltage high current output. It should be remembered that a spark produces a very sharply rising voltage pulse and that unbalances the local quantum energy field, as described earlier, producing very large energy flows as the local environment returns to its balanced steady-state. The spark, which is produced by relatively low power, is used as a trigger for vastly larger energy flows, which feed the step-down transformer, producing serious current at reasonable voltage, capable of doing useful work, without the requirement for any input power from the user.

You will notice how simple this circuit is. Three capacitors "a1", "b1" and "c1" in a chain, form a single high-voltage capacitor. The blobs shown connected across these capacitors are emergency discharge spark gaps put there to deal with unusual events like the aerial being hit by a lightning strike. This circuit is very much like the Wimshurst machine circuit which Hermann uses as an illustration of the principle of operation of these kinds of circuits. In this circuit, he shows a special motor marked "M" which is driven by the circuit and he also shows output terminals which can have other equipment connected across them.

When the oscillatory discharges in the primary circuit become weaker or cease entirely, the capacitors are charged again by the static electricity until the accumulated charge again breaks down across the spark gap. All this is repeated as long as electricity is produced by the static machine through the application of mechanical energy to it. Herman states that without the spark gap arrangement across the three capacitors connected between the aerial and the earth, "it is impossible to collect and render available large quantities of electrical energy."

In addition to the use of spark gaps in parallel, a second measure of security is also necessary for taking the current from this circuit. This is the introduction of protective electromagnets or choking coils in the aerial circuit as shown by S in the diagram below. A single "electromagnet" having a core of the thinnest possible separate laminations is connected with the aerial. In the case of high voltages in the aerial network or at places where there are frequent thunderstorms, several such toroidal-wound coils may be connected in series.

In the case of large units, several such magnets can be employed in parallel or in series parallel. The windings of these electromagnets may be simply connected in series with the aerials. In this case, the windings should be made up from several thin parallel wires, which together, make up the necessary cross-sectional area of wire. The winding may be made of primary and secondary windings in the form of a transformer. The primary winding will then be connected in series with the aerial network, and the secondary winding more or less short-circuited through a regulating resistor or an induction coil. In the latter case it is possible to regulate, to a certain extent, the effect of these choking coils.
Fig. 5 shows an arrangement for producing large currents which can be used direct without motors, to provide heating and lighting. The main difference here is that the spark gap consists of a star-shaped disc 7 which can rotate on its own axis and is rotated by a motor opposite similarly fitted electrodes 7a. When separate points of starts face one another, discharges take place, thus forming an oscillation circuit with capacitors 5 and 6 and inductor 9. A motor may also be connected directly to the ends of inductor 9.

The patent continues by showing many ways to increase the power of the aerial system and many ways of applying the output to practical electrical devices. It contains 37 diagrams, a wealth of practical information, and a copy of it is in the Appendix.

**Roy Meyers’ Device.** Roy Meyers was granted UK Patent 1913,01098 in January 1914. The patent, which is included in the Appendix, shows an extremely simple device which produces an electrical output without any form of visible input whatsoever. This intriguing device was discovered when testing a very simple form, where two horseshoe magnets were interconnected with soft iron wire and two bars of zinc placed between the legs of the magnets. Roy found that he got an output of 8 volts using just two 4-inch magnets with 1-inch square legs and zinc bars of similar size. The physical orientation of the device is very important. The patent says that current is collected if the open ends of the magnets are pointing in a North-South direction and not if they are positioned in the East-West direction. However, replication attempts seem to indicate the reverse of this with energy pick-up occurring when the alignment is East-West. Indications are that this is not an easy device to get operating correctly.

The first arrangement is shown in the following diagram:

Roy developed his system further and found that while it works indoors, it does perform better if located outdoors and raised to a height of fifty or sixty feet. However, that is by no means essential, and the output power and voltage can be increased by increasing the number of collector units. Roy developed these to produce the style shown here:
The zinc acts more effectively if installed as sheets bent into a V shape. The magnets and zinc sheets can be stacked vertically and/or horizontally and the greater the number used, the greater the electrical output. A good earth connection is recommended and presumably, the average cold water pipe of any house provides a more than adequate earth connection which is convenient to use, provided the pipework is made of metal.
Chapter 8: Self-Powered Engines

Strictly speaking, no engine is actually self-powered, but as the user does not have to supply any energy or fuel to make the engine operate, it seems reasonable in everyday language to describe an engine of this type as being self-powered. The engines mentioned in this chapter are quite different from each other and use different power sources for their driving energy.

The Leroy Rogers Engine. This engine is driven by compressed air. This principle is very easily understood and is not a long way from the operation of steam-powered railway engines of years gone by. What is not generally realised is that more energy is available from compressed air than the energy required to compress the air in the first place. Another detail not generally realised is that simple heat energy can be drawn from the local environment and used to help power the air compressor in a design of this type.

If you feel that these things are not true, then I suggest that you visit the web site of Kim Zorzi who sells electrical generators of commercial size (50 kilowatt and 100 kilowatt units are on offer) which operate without any fuel or power input, at http://www.ultralightamerica.com/air_power.htm where his units are operated from compressed air.

The Rogers motor shown here makes no claims to spectacular operation, but in spite of that, Leroy did admit in an interview that this motor does indeed have a greater output than the applied input, provided that the motor is not left just ticking over. This motor is like the US patent 3,744,252 “Closed Motive Power System Utilising Compressed Fluids” by Eber Van Valkinburg shown below. However, the Rogers patent shown here has the distinct advantage that it uses off-the-shelf motors and readily available hardware and there is nothing really exotic or difficult about the Rogers engine that a person couldn’t get from a valve supplier or get a metal fabrication company to construct.

Present day vehicle engines are under-gearied and run at fairly low revs. These same engines operate much more efficiently at higher revs, if they are given different gearing. With the Rogers motor, the air contained in the high-pressure tank is sufficient to drive the pistons up and down. The exhaust air can be captured in a buffer tank and pumped back into the high-pressure tank by a compressor with much higher gearing and much lower capacity per piston stroke. The expanded air exiting from the engine is at much lower temperature than the surrounding air. This gives it higher density and so the re-compression efficiency is raised and in addition, once back in the storage tank it’s temperature rises again which boosts the pressure in the storage tank, courtesy of the heat from the local environment.

Here is a slightly re-worded copy of the Lee Rogers patent:


METHOD AND APPARATUS FOR OPERATING AN ENGINE ON COMPRESSED GAS

ABSTRACT

The present invention relates to a method and apparatus for operating an engine having a cylinder containing a reciprocating piston driven by a compressed gas. The apparatus comprises a source of compressed gas connected to a distributor which conveys the compressed gas to the cylinder. A valve is provided to admit compressed gas to the cylinder when the piston is in an approximately Top Dead Centre position.

In one embodiment of the present invention, the timing of the opening of the valve is advanced so that the compressed gas is admitted to the cylinder progressively further before the Top Dead Centre position of the piston as the speed of the engine increases.
In a further embodiment of the present invention, a valve actuator is provided which increases the length of time over which the valve remains open to admit compressed gas to the cylinder as the speed of the engine increases.

A still further embodiment of the present invention relates to an apparatus for adapting a conventional internal combustion engine for operation on compressed gas.

US Patent References:
4,018,050 Apr., 1977 Murphy 60/412.

DESCRIPTION

BACKGROUND AND SUMMARY OF THE PRESENT INVENTION

The present invention is a method and apparatus for operating an engine using a compressed gas as the motive fluid. More particularly, the present invention relates to a apparatus for adapting a pre-existing internal combustion engine for operation on a compressed gas.

Air pollution is one of the most serious problems facing the world today. One of the major contributors to air pollution is the ordinary internal combustion engine which is used in most motor vehicles today. Various devices, including many items required by legislation, have been proposed in an attempt to limit the pollutants which an internal combustion engine exhausts to the air. However, most of these devices have met with limited success and are often both prohibitively expensive and complex. A clean alternative to the internal combustion engine is needed to power vehicles and other machinery.

A compressed gas, preferably air, would provide an ideal motive fluid for an engine, since it would eliminate the usual pollutants exhausted from an internal combustion engine. An apparatus for converting an internal combustion engine for operation on compressed air is disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 3,885,387 issued May 27, 1975 to Simington. The Simington patent discloses an apparatus including a source of compressed air and a rotating valve actuator which opens and closes a plurality of mechanical poppet valves. The valves deliver compressed air in timed sequence to the cylinders of an engine through adapters located in the spark plug holes. However, the output speed of an engine of this type is limited by the speed of the mechanical valves and the fact that the length of time over which each of the valves remains open cannot be varied as the speed of the engine increases.

Another apparatus for converting an internal combustion engine for operation on steam or compressed air is disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 4,102,130 issued July 25, 1978 to Stricklin. The Stricklin patent discloses a device which changes the valve timing of a conventional four stroke engine such that the intake and exhaust valves open once for every revolution of the engine instead of once every other revolution of the engine. A reversing valve is provided which delivers live steam or compressed air to the intake valves and is subsequently reversed to allow the exhaust valves to deliver the expanded steam or air to the atmosphere. A reversing valve of this type however does not provide a reliable apparatus for varying the amount of motive fluid injected into the cylinders when it is desired to increase the speed of the engine. Further, a device of the type disclosed in the Stricklin patent requires the use of multiple reversing valves if the cylinders in a multi-cylinder engine were to be fired sequentially.

Therefore, it is an object of the present invention to provide a reliable method and apparatus for operating an engine or converting an engine for operation with a compressed gas.

A further object of the present invention is to provide a method and apparatus which is effective to deliver a constantly increasing amount of compressed gas to an engine as the speed of the engine increases.

A still further object of the present invention is to provide a method and apparatus which will operate an engine using compressed gas at a speed sufficient to drive a conventional automobile at highway speeds.

It is still a further object of the present invention to provide a method and apparatus which is readily adaptable to a standard internal combustion engine, to convert the internal combustion engine for operation with a compressed gas.
Another object of the invention is to provide a method and apparatus which utilises cool expanded gas, exhausted from a compressed gas engine, to operate an air-conditioning unit and/or an oil-cooler.

These and other objects are realised by the method and apparatus of the present invention for operating an engine having at least one cylinder containing a reciprocating piston and using compressed gas as the motive fluid. The apparatus includes a source of compressed gas, a distributor connected it for conveying the compressed gas to the cylinder or cylinders. A valve is provided for admitting the compressed gas to the cylinder when the piston is in an approximately Top Dead Centre position within the cylinder. An exhaust is provided for exhausting the expanded gas from the cylinder as the piston returns to approximately the Top Dead Centre position.

In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, a device is provided for varying the duration of each engine cycle over which the valve remains open to admit compressed gas to the cylinder, dependent upon the speed of the engine. In a further preferred embodiment of the present invention, an apparatus for advancing the timing of the opening of the valve is arranged to admit the compressed gas to the cylinder progressively further and further before the Top Dead Centre position of the piston, as the speed of the engine increases.

Further features of the present invention include a valve for controlling the amount of compressed gas admitted to the distributor. Also, a portion of the gas which has been expanded in the cylinder and exhausted through the exhaust valve, is delivered to a compressor to be compressed again and returned to the source of compressed gas. A gear train can be engaged to drive the compressor selectively at different operating speeds, depending upon the pressure maintained at the source of compressed air and/or the speed of the engine. Still further, a second portion of the exhaust gas is used to cool a lubricating fluid for the engine or to operate an air-conditioning unit.

In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the valve for admitting compressed gas to the cylinder is operated electrically. The device for varying the duration of each engine cycle, over which the intake valve remains open, as the speed of the engine increases, comprises a rotating element whose effective length increases as the speed of the engine increases, causing a first contact on the rotating element to be electrically connected to a second contact on the rotating element, for a longer period of each engine cycle. The second contact operates the valve causing it to remain in an open position for a longer period of each engine cycle, as the speed of the engine increases.

Still further features of the present invention include an adaptor plate for supporting the distributor above the intake manifold of a conventional internal combustion engine after a carburettor has been removed to allow air to enter the cylinders of the engine through the intake manifold and conventional intake valves. Another adaptor plate is arranged over an exhaust passageway of the internal combustion engine to reduce the cross-sectional area of the exhaust passageway.

**BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS**

Preferred embodiments of a method and apparatus for operating an engine according to the present invention will be described with reference to the accompanying drawings in which components have the same reference numbers in each drawing.

**Fig.1** is a schematic representation of an apparatus according to the present invention arranged on an engine:
Fig. 2 is a side view of one embodiment of a valve actuator according to the present invention.
Fig. 3 is a cross-sectional view taken along the line 3--3 in Fig. 2.

Fig. 4 is a cross-sectional view of a second embodiment of a valve actuator according to the present invention.

Fig. 5 is a view taken along the line 5--5 in Fig. 4.
Fig. 6 is a cross-sectional view of a third embodiment of a valve actuator according to the present invention;
Fig. 7 is a view taken along the line 7--7 in Fig. 6.

Fig. 8 is a cross-sectional view of a gearing unit to drive a compressor according to the present invention.
DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

With reference to Fig. 1, an engine block 21 (shown in phantom) having two banks of cylinders with each bank including cylinders 20 having pistons 22 which reciprocate in them in a conventional manner (only one of which is shown in phantom). While the illustrated engine is a V-8 engine, it will be apparent that the present invention is applicable to an engine having any number of pistons and cylinders with the V-8 engine being utilised for illustration purposes only. A compressed gas tank 23 is provided to store a compressed gas at high pressure. It may also be desirable to include a small electric or gas compressor to provide compressed gas to supplement the compressed gas held in the tank 23. In a preferred embodiment, the compressed gas is air which can be obtained from any suitable source.

A line 25 transports the gas withdrawn from the tank 23 when a conventional shut-off valve 27 is open. In addition, a solenoid valve 29 preferably operated by a suitable key-operated engine switch (not shown) is also placed in the line 25. In normal operation, the valve 27 is maintained open at all times with the solenoid valve 29 operating as a selective shut off valve to start and stop the engine 21.

A suitable regulating valve 31 is arranged downstream of the solenoid valve 29 and is connected by a linkage 33 to a throttle linkage 35 which is operator-actuated by any suitable apparatus such as a foot pedal (not shown). The line 25 enters an end of a distributor 33 and is connected to an end of a pipe 35 which is closed at the other end. A plurality of holes, which are equal to the number of cylinders in the engine 21, are provided on either side of the pipe 35 along the length of the pipe 35.

When the present invention is used to adapt a conventional internal combustion engine for operation on compressed gas, an adaptor plate 36 is provided to support the distributor 33 in spaced relation from the usual intake opening in the intake manifold of the engine after a conventional carburettor has been removed. In this way, air is permitted to enter the internal combustion engine through the usual passageways and to be admitted to the cylinders through suitable intake valves (not shown). The adaptor plate 36 is attached to the engine block 21 and the distributor 33 by any suitable apparatus, e.g., bolts.

Each of the holes in the pipe 35 is connected in fluid-tight manner to a single line 37. Each line 37 carries the compressed gas to a single cylinder 20. In a preferred embodiment, each of the lines 37 is 1/2 inch high.
pressure plastic tubing attached through suitable connectors to the distributor 33 and the pipe 35. Each of the lines 37 is connected to a valve 39 which is secured in an opening provided near the top of each of the cylinders 20. In the case of a conversion of a standard internal combustion engine, the valves 39 can be conveniently screwed into a tapped hole in the cylinder 20 typically provided for a spark plug of the internal combustion engine. In a preferred embodiment, the valves 39 are solenoid actuated valves in order to provide a fast and reliable opening and closing of the valves 39.

Each of the valves 39 is energised by a valve actuator 41 through one of a plurality of wires 43. The valve actuator 41 is driven by a shaft of the engine similar to the drive for a conventional distributor of an internal combustion engine. That is, a shaft 55 of the valve actuator 41 is driven in synchronism with the engine 21 at one half the speed of the engine 21.

A first embodiment of the valve actuator 41 (Fig.2 and Fig.3), receives electrical power through a wire 45 which is energised in a suitable manner by a battery, and a coil if necessary (not shown) as is conventional in an internal combustion engine. The wire 45 is attached to a central post 47 by a nut 49. The post 47 is connected to a conducting plate 51 arranged in a housing 53 for the valve actuator 41. Within the housing 53, the shaft 55 has an insulating element 57 secured to an end of the shaft 55 and rotates with it when the shaft 55 is driven by the engine 21. A first end of a flexible contact 59 is continuously biased against the conducting plate 51 to receive electricity from the battery or other suitable source. The other end of the contact 59 is connected to a conducting sleeve 60 which is in constant contact with a spring biased contact 61 which is arranged within the sleeve 60. The contact 61 is pressed by a spring 63 which pushes contact 61 towards a side wall of the housing 53.
With reference to Fig. 3, a plurality of contacts 65 are spaced from one another and are arranged around the periphery of the housing 53 at the same level as the spring biased contact 61. Each contact 65 is electrically connected to a post 67 which extends outside of the housing 53. The number of contacts 65 is equal to the number of cylinders in the engine 21. One of the wires 43, which actuate the valves 39, is secured to each of the posts 67.

In operation, as the shaft 55 rotates in synchronism with the engine 21, the insulating element 57 rotates and electricity is ultimately delivered to successive pairs of the contacts 65 and wires 43 through the spring loaded contact 61 and the flexible contact 59. In this way, each of the electrical valves 39 is activated and opened in the proper timed sequence to admit compressed gas to each of the cylinders 20 to drive the pistons 22 on a downward stroke.

The embodiment illustrated in Fig. 2 and Fig. 3 is effective in causing each of the valves 39 to remain open for a long enough period of time to admit sufficient compressed gas to each of the cylinders 20 of the engine 21 to drive the engine 21. The length of each of the contacts 65 around the periphery of the housing 53 is sufficient to permit the speed of the engine to be increased when desired by the operator by moving the throttle linkage 35 which actuates the linkage 33 to further open the regulating valve 31 to admit more compressed gas from the tank 23 to the distributor 33. However, it has been found that the amount of air admitted by the valves 39 when using the first embodiment of the valve actuator 41 (Fig. 2 and Fig. 3) is substantially more than required to operate the engine 21 at an idling speed. Therefore, it may be desirable to provide a valve actuator 41 which is capable of varying the duration of each engine cycle over which the solenoid valves 39 are actuated, i.e., remain open to admit compressed gas, as the speed of the engine 21 is varied.
A second embodiment of a valve actuator 41 which is capable of varying the duration of each engine cycle over which each of the valves 39 remains open to admit compressed gas to the cylinders 20 dependent upon the speed of the engine 21 will be described with reference to Fig.4 and Fig.5 wherein members corresponding to those of Fig.2 and Fig.3 bear like reference numbers. The wire 45 from the electricity source is attached to the post 47 by the nut 49. The post 47 has an annular contact ring 69 electrically connected to an end of the post 47 and arranged within the housing 53. The shaft 55 rotates at one half the speed of the engine as in the embodiment of Fig.2 and Fig.3.

At an upper end of the shaft 55, a splined section 71 receives a sliding insulating member 73. The splined section 71 of the shaft 55 holds the insulating member 73 securely as it rotates with shaft 55 but permits the
insulating member 73 to slide axially along the length of the splined section 71. Near the shaft 55, a conductive sleeve 72 is arranged in a bore 81 in an upper surface of the insulating element 73 generally parallel to the splined section 71. A contact 75, biased towards the annular contact ring 69 by a spring 77, is arranged within the conductive sleeve 72 and in contact with it. The conductive sleeve 72 also contacts a conductor 79 at a base of the bore 81.

The conductor 79 extends to the upper surface of the insulating element 73 near an outer periphery of the insulating element 73 where the conductor 79 is electrically connected to a flexible contact 83. The flexible contact 83 connects, one after the other, with a series of radial contacts 85 which are positioned on an upper inside surface of the housing 53. A weak spring 87 arranged around the splined section 71 engages a stop member 89 secured on the shaft 55 and the insulating element 73 to slightly bias the insulating element 73 towards the upper inside surface of the housing 53 to ensure contact between the flexible contact 83 and the upper inside surface of the housing 53. As best seen in Fig.5, the radial contacts 85 on the upper inside surface of the housing 53 are arranged generally in the form of radial spokes extending from the centre of the housing 53 with the number of contacts being equal to the number of cylinders 20 in the engine 21. The number of degrees covered by each of the radial contacts 85 gradually increases as the distance from the centre of the upper inside surface of the housing 53 increases.

In operation of the device of Fig.4 and Fig.5, as the shaft 55 rotates, electricity flows along a path through the wire 45 down through post 47 to the annular contact member 69 which is in constant contact with the spring biased contact 75. The electrical current passes through the conductive sleeve 72 to the conductor 79 and then to the flexible contact 83. As the flexible contact 83 rotates along with the insulating member 73 and the shaft 55, the tip of the flexible contact 83 successively engages each of the radial contacts 85 on the upper inside of the housing 53. As the speed of the shaft 55 increases, the insulating member 73 and the flexible contact 83 attached to it, move upwards along the splined section 71 of the shaft 55 due to the radial component of the splines in the direction of rotation under the influence of centrifugal force. As the insulating member 73 moves upwards, the flexible contact 83 is bent so that the tip of the contact 83 extends further outwards radially from the centre of the housing 53 (as seen in phantom lines in Fig.4). In other words, the effective length of the flexible contact 83 increases as the speed of the engine 21 increases.

As the flexible contact 83 is bent and the tip of the contact 83 moves outwards, the tip remains in contact with each of the radial contacts 85 for a longer period of each engine cycle due to the increased angular width of the radial contacts with increasing distance from the centre of the housing 53. In this way, the length of time over which each of the valves 39 remains open is increased as the speed of the engine is increased. Thus, a larger quantity of compressed gas or air is injected into the cylinders as the speed increases. Conversely, as the speed decreases and the insulating member 73 moves downwards along the splined section 71, a minimum quantity of air is injected into the cylinder due to the shorter length of the individual radial contact 85 which is in contact with the flexible contact 83. In this way, the amount of compressed gas that is used during idling of the engine 21 is at a minimum whereas the amount of compressed gas which is required to increase the speed of the engine 21 to a level suitable to drive a vehicle on a highway is readily available.
Shown in Fig.6 and Fig.7, is a third embodiment of a valve actuator 41 according to the present invention. This embodiment includes a curved insulating element 91 having its first end able to pivot, being secured by any suitable device such as screw 92 to the shaft 55 for co-rotation with the shaft 55. The screw 92 is screwed into a tapped hole in the insulating element 91 so that a tab 94 at an end of the screw 92 engages a groove 96 provided in the shaft 55. In this way, the insulating element 91 rotates positively with the shaft 55. However, as the shaft 55 rotates faster, the other end 98 of the insulating element 91 is permitted to pivot outwards under the influence of centrifugal force because of the groove 96 provided in the shaft 55. A spring 93, connected between the second end 98 of the element 91 and the shaft 55 urges the second end of the element 91 towards the centre of the housing 53.

A contact 99 similar to the contact 59 (Fig.2) is arranged so that one end of the contact piece 99 is in constant contact with the conducting plate 51 located centrally within the housing 53. The other end of the contact 99 engages a conductive sleeve 101 arranged in bore 102. A contact element 95 is arranged in the conductive sleeve 101 in constant contact with the sleeve 101. The bore 102 is arranged generally parallel to the shaft 55 near the second end of the curved insulating element 91. The contact 95 is biased by a spring 97 towards the upper inside surface of the housing 53 for selective contact with each of the plurality of radial contacts 85 which increase in arc length towards the outer peripheral surface of the housing 53 (Fig.6).

When the device shown in Fig.6 and Fig.7 is operating, as the shaft 55 rotates the curved insulating element 91 rotates with the shaft 55 and the second end 98 of the insulating element 91 tends to pivot about the shaft 55 due to centrifugal force. Thus, as the effective length of the contact 95 increases, i.e., as the curved insulating element 91 pivots further outwards, the number of degrees of rotation over which the contact 95 is in contact with each of the radial contacts 85 on the upper inside surface of the housing 53 increases thereby allowing each of the valves 39 to remain open for a longer period of each engine cycle, which in turn, allows more compressed gas enter the respective cylinder 20 to further increase the speed of the engine 21.

With reference to Fig.1, a mechanical advance linkage 104 which is connected to the throttle linkage 35, advances the initiation of the opening of each valve 39 such that compressed gas is injected into the respective cylinder further before the piston 22 in the respective cylinder 20 reaches a Top Dead Centre position as the speed of the engine is increased by moving the throttle linkage 35. The advance linkage 104 is similar to a conventional standard mechanical advance employed on an internal combustion engine. In other words, the linkage 104 varies the relationship between the angular positions of a point on the shaft 55 and a point on the housing 53 containing the contacts. Alternatively, a conventional vacuum advance could also be employed. By advancing the timing of the opening of the valves 39, the speed of the engine can more easily be increased.

The operation of the engine cycle according to the present invention will now be described. The compressed gas injected into each cylinder of the engine 21 drives the respective piston 22 downwards to rotate a conventional crankshaft (not shown). The movement of the piston downwards causes the
compressed gas to expand rapidly and cool. As the piston 22 begins to move upwards in the cylinder 20 a suitable exhaust valve (not shown), arranged to close an exhaust passageway, is opened by any suitable apparatus. The expanded gas is then expelled through the exhaust passageway. As the piston 22 begins to move downwards again, a suitable intake valve opens to admit ambient air to the cylinder. The intake valve closes and the ambient air is compressed on the subsequent upward movement of the piston until the piston reaches approximately the Top Dead Centre position at which time the compressed gas is again injected into the cylinder 20 to drive the piston 22 downwards and the cycle begins again.

In the case of adapting a conventional internal combustion engine for operation on compressed gas, a plurality of plates 103 are arranged, preferably over an end of the exhaust passageways, in order to reduce the outlet size of the exhaust passageways of the conventional internal combustion engine. In the illustrated embodiment, a single plate having an opening in the centre is bolted to the outside exhaust passageway on each bank of the V-8 engine, while another single plate having two openings in it, is arranged with one opening over each of the interior exhaust passageways on each bank of the V-8 engine. A line 105 is suitably attached to each of the adaptor plates to carry the exhaust to an appropriate location. In a preferred embodiment, the exhaust lines 105 are made from 1.5" plastic tubing.

In a preferred embodiment, the exhaust lines 105 of one bank of the V-8 engine are collected in a line 107 and fed to an inlet of a compressor 109. The pressure of the exhaust gas emanating from the engine 21 according to the present invention is approximately 25 p.s.i. In this way, the compressor 109 does not have to pull the exhaust into the compressor since the gas exhausted from the engine 21 is at a positive pressure. The positive pressure of the incoming fluid increases the efficiency and reduces wear on the compressor 109. The exhaust gas is compressed in the compressor 109 and returned through a line 111 and a check valve 113 to the compressed gas storage tank 23. The check valve 113 prevents the flow of compressed gas stored in the tank 23 back towards the compressor 109.

A suitable pressure sensor 115 is arranged at an upper end of the tank 23 and sends a signal along a line 117 when the pressure exceeds a predetermined level and when the pressure drops below a predetermined level. The line 117 controls an electrically activated clutch 119 positioned at the front end of the compressor 109. The clutch 119 is operated to engage and disengage the compressor 109 from a drive pulley 121. Also, the signal carried by the line 117 activates a suitable valve 123 arranged on compressor housing 125 to exhaust the air entering the compressor housing 125 from the line 107 when the clutch 119 has disengaged the compressor 109 from the drive pulley 121.

In a preferred embodiment, when the pressure is the tank 23 reaches approximately 600 p.s.i., the clutch 119 is disengaged and the compressor 109 is deactivated and the valve 123 is opened to exhaust the expanded gas delivered to the compressor 109 from the line 107 to the atmosphere. When the pressure within the tank 23 drops below approximately 500 p.s.i., the sensor 115 sends a signal to engage the clutch 119 and close the valve 123, thereby operating the compressor 109 for supplying the tank 23 with compressed gas.

The pulley 121 which drives the compressor 109 through the clutch 119 is driven by a belt 127 which is driven by a pulley 129 which operates through a gear box 131. With reference to Fig.1 and Fig.8, a second pulley 133 on the gear box is driven by a belt 135 from a pulley 137 arranged on a drive shaft 139 of the engine 21. The pulley 137 drives a splined shaft 140 which has a first gear 141 and a second larger gear 143 placed on it, which rotates with the splined shaft 140. The splined shaft 140 permits axial movement of the gears 141 and 143 along the shaft 140.
In normal operation (as seen in Fig.8), the first gear 141 engages a third gear 145 arranged on a shaft 147 which drives the pulley 129. The shafts 140 and 147 are arranged in suitable bearings 149 positioned at each end of it. When the speed of the engine 21 drops below a predetermined level, a suitable sensor 151 responsive to the speed of the drive shaft 139 of the engine 21 generates a signal which is transmitted through a line 153 to a solenoid actuator 155 arranged within the gear box 131. The solenoid actuator 155 moves the first and second gears 141, 143 axially along the splined shaft 140 to the right as seen in Fig.8 so that the second, larger gear 143 engages a fourth smaller gear 157 which is arranged on the shaft 147. The ratio of the second gear 143 to the fourth gear 157 is preferably approximately 3 to 1.

In this way, when the speed of the engine 21 drops below the predetermined level as sensed by the sensor 151 (which predetermined level is insufficient to drive the compressor 109 at a speed sufficient to generate the 500-600 pounds of pressure which is preferably in the tank 23), the solenoid actuator 155 is energised to slide the gears 143, 141 axially along the splined shaft 140 so that the second, larger gear 143 engages the fourth, smaller gear 157 to drive the pulley 129 and hence the compressor 109 at a higher rate, to generate the desired pressure. When the speed of the engine increases above the predetermined level, which, in a preferred embodiment is approximately 1500 rpm, the solenoid actuator 155 is deactivated by the sensor 151 thereby moving the gears 143 and 141 to the left as seen in Fig.8 so that the first gear 141, engages again with the third gear 145 to effectuate a 1 to 1 ratio between the output shaft 139 of the engine 21 and the pulley 129.

The other bank of the V-8 engine has its exhaust ports arranged with adapter plates 103 similar to those on the first bank. However, the exhaust from this bank of the engine 21 is not collected and circulated through the compressor 109. In a preferred embodiment, a portion of the exhaust is collected in a line 159 and fed to an enlarged chamber 161. A second fluid is fed through a line 163 into the chamber 161 to be cooled by the cool exhaust emanating from the engine 21 in the line 159. The second fluid in the line 163 may be either transmission fluid contained in a transmission associated with the engine 21 or a portion of the oil used to lubricate the engine 21. A second portion of the exhaust from the second bank of the V-8 engine is removed from the line 159 in a line 165 and used as a working fluid in an air conditioning system or for any other suitable use.
It should be noted that the particular arrangement utilised for collecting and distributing the gas exhausted from the engine 21 would be determined by the use for which the engine is employed. In other words, it may be advantageous to rearrange the exhaust tubing such that a larger or smaller percentage of the exhaust is routed through the compressor 109. It should also be noted that since the exhaust lines 105 are plastic tubing, a rearrangement of the lines for a different purpose is both simple and inexpensive.

In operation of the engine of the present invention, the engine 21 is started by energising the solenoid valve 29 and any suitable starting device (not shown), e.g., a conventional electric starter as used on an internal combustion engine. Compressed gas from the full tank 23 flows through the line 25 and a variable amount of the compressed gas is admitted to the distributor 33 by controlling the regulator valve 31 through the linkage 33 and the operator actuated throttle linkage 35. The compressed gas is distributed to each of the lines 37 which lead to the individual cylinders 20. The compressed gas is admitted to each of the cylinders 20 in timed relationship to the position of the pistons within the cylinders by opening the valves 39 with the valve actuator 41.

When it is desired to increase the speed of the engine, the operator moves the throttle linkage 35 which simultaneously admits a larger quantity of compressed gas to the distributor 33 from the tank 23 by further opening the regulator valve 31. The timing of the valve actuator 41 is also advanced through the linkage 104. Still further, as the speed of the engine 21 increases, the effective length of the rotating contact 83 (Fig.4) or 95 (Fig.6) increases thereby electrically contacting a wider portion of one of the stationary radial contacts 85 to cause each of the valves 39 to remain open for a longer period of each engine cycle to admit a larger quantity of compressed gas to each of the cylinders 20.

As can be seen, the combination of the regulating valve 31, the mechanical advance 104, and the valve actuator 41, combine to produce a compressed gas engine which is quickly and efficiently adaptable to various operating speeds. However, all three of the controls need not be employed simultaneously. For example, the mechanical advance 104 could be utilised without the benefit of one of the varying valve actuators 41 but the high speed operation of the engine may not be as efficient. By increasing the duration of each engine cycle over which each of the valves 39 remains open to admit compressed gas to each of the cylinders 20 as the speed increases, conservation of compressed gas during low speed operation and efficient high speed operation are both possible.

After the compressed gas admitted to the cylinder 20 has forced the piston 22 downwards within the cylinder to drive the shaft 139 of the engine, the piston 22 moves upwards within the cylinder 20 and forces the expanded gas out through a suitable exhaust valve (not shown) through the adapter plate 103 (if employed) and into the exhaust line 105. The cool exhaust can then be collected in any suitable arrangement to be compressed and returned to the tank 23 or used for any desired purpose including use as a working fluid in an air conditioning system or as a coolant for oil.

When using the apparatus and method of the present invention to adapt a ordinary internal combustion engine for operation with compressed gas it can be seen that considerable savings in weight are achieved. For example, the ordinary cooling system including a radiator, fan, hoses, etc. can be eliminated since the compressed gas is cooled as it expands in the cylinder. In addition, there are no explosions within the cylinder to generate heat. Further reductions in weight are obtained by employing plastic tubing for the lines which carry the compressed gas between the distributor and the cylinders and for the exhaust lines. Once again, heavy tubing is not required since there is little or no heat generated by the engine of the present invention. In addition, the noise generated by an engine according to the present invention is considerably less than that generated by an ordinary internal combustion engine since there are no explosions taking place within the cylinders.

The principles of preferred embodiments of the present invention have been described in the foregoing specification. However, the invention which is intended to be protected is not to be construed as limited to the particular embodiments disclosed. The embodiments are to be regarded as illustrative rather than restrictive. Variations and changes may be made by others without departing from the spirit of the invention. Accordingly, it is expressly intended that all such variations and changes which fall within the spirit and the scope of the present invention as defined in the appended claims be embraced thereby.

This patent shows how the practical details of running an engine on compressed air can be dealt with. What it does not show is background details of the actual energy flows and the effects of compressing air and then
letting it expand. These things are not normally encountered in our daily lives and so we do not have an immediate intuitive feel for how a system like these will operate. Take the effects of expansion. While it is quite well known that letting a compressed gas expand causes cooling, the practical effect is seldom realised.

The web site [http://www.airtxinternational.com/how_vortex_tubes_work.php](http://www.airtxinternational.com/how_vortex_tubes_work.php) show the details of a “vortex tube” which is a completely passive device with no moving parts:

This device does things which you would not expect. Compressed air at a normal temperature of, say, seventy degrees Centigrade is fed into the circular chamber where the shape of the chamber causes it to spiral rapidly as it exits the tube:

There is an energy gain in a vortex, as can be seen in a hurricane or tornado, but the really interesting thing here is the dramatic change in temperature caused by the change in pressure as the air expands. The ratio
of heat gain to heat loss is controlled by the ratio of the sizes of the openings, which is why there is an adjustable nozzle on the small opening.

The air exiting through the large opening is much higher volume than the air exiting through the small opening and it expands very rapidly, producing a massive drop in temperature. The density of this cold air is now much higher than the air entering the vortex chamber. So there has been both a drop in temperature and an increase in density. These features of the expansion are made use of in the Leroy Rogers engine design, where some of the expanded air exhaust of the engine is compressed and passed back to the main air storage tank. While the compressor does raise the air temperature as it pumps the air back into the tank, it does not reach its original temperature instantly.

This results in the air temperature inside the tank dropping as the engine operates. But, the lowered tank temperature causes an inflow of heat from its immediate environment, raising the overall tank temperature again. This warming of the chilled air causes the tank pressure to increase further, giving an energy gain, courtesy of the local environment. It is important to understand that it takes less energy to compress air than the kinetic energy which can be generated by letting that compressed air expand again. This is a practical situation, courtesy of the local environment and is not a breach of the law of Conservation of Energy. It is also a feature which has not yet been exploited to any great degree and which is just waiting to be used by any adventurous inventor or experimenter.

The Eber Van Valkinburg Engine. Eber presents a custom engine based on these principles. His engine uses both compressed air and compressed oil to manipulate pressures within the system and provide an engine which is self-powered. Here is a slightly re-worded copy of the Eber Van Valkinburg patent:

**Patent** US 3,744,252  
10th July 1973  
**Inventor:** Eber Van Valkinburg

**CLOSED MOTIVE POWER SYSTEM UTILISING COMPRESSED FLUIDS**

**ABSTRACT**

Stored energy in a compressed elastic fluid is utilised in a controlled manner to pressurise an inelastic fluid and to maintain such pressurisation. The pressurised inelastic fluid is throttled to the impeller of a prime mover. Only a portion of the output energy from the prime mover is utilised to circulate the inelastic fluid so as to maintain a nearly constant volumetric balance in the system.

**DESCRIPTION**

The objective of the invention is to provide a closed-loop power system which utilises the expansive energy of a compressed elastic fluid, such as air, to pressurise and maintain pressurised throughout the operational cycle of the system a second non-elastic and non-compressible fluid, such as oil. The pressurised non-elastic fluid is released in a controlled manner by a throttle to the rotary impeller of a turbine or the like, having an output shaft. This shaft is coupled to a pump for the non-elastic fluid which automatically maintains the necessary circulation needed for the operation of the prime mover, and maintains a near volumetric balance in the system between the two fluids which are separated by self-adjusting free piston devices. The pump for the non-elastic fluid includes an automatic by-pass for the non-elastic fluid which eliminates the possibility of starving the pump which depends on the discharge of the non-elastic fluid at low pressure from the exhaust of the turbine. Other features and advantages of the invention will become apparent during the course of the following detailed description.

**BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF DRAWING FIGURES**

Fig.1 is a partly schematic cross-sectional view of a closed motive power system embodying the invention.
Fig. 2 is a fragmentary perspective view of a rotary prime mover utilised in the system.
Fig. 3 is an enlarged fragmentary vertical section through the prime mover taken at right angles to its rotational axis.
Fig. 4 is an enlarged fragmentary vertical section taken on line 4--4 of Fig. 1.
Fig. 5 is a similar section taken on line 5--5 of Fig. 4.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION

Referring to the drawings in detail, in which the same numbers refer to the same parts in each drawing, the numeral 10 designates a supply bottle or tank for a compressed elastic fluid, such as air. Preferably, the air in the bottle 10 is compressed to approximately 1,500 p.s.i. The compressed air from the bottle 10 is delivered through a suitable pressure regulating valve 11 to the chamber 12 of a high pressure tank 13 on one side of a free piston 14 in the bore of such tank. The free piston 14 separates the chamber 12 for compressed air from a second chamber 15 for an inelastic fluid, such as oil, on the opposite side of the free piston. The free piston 14 can move axially within the bore of the cylindrical tank 13 and is constantly self-adjusting there to maintain a proper volumetric balance between the two separated fluids of the system. The free piston has the ability to maintain the two fluids, air and oil, completely separated during the operation of the system.

The regulator valve 11 delivers compressed air to the chamber 12 under a pressure of approximately 500 p.s.i. The working inelastic fluid, oil, which fills the chamber 15 of high pressure tank 13 is maintained under 500 p.s.i. pressure by the expansive force of the elastic compressed air in the chamber 12 on the free piston.
The oil in the chamber 15 is delivered to a prime mover 16, such as an oil turbine, through a suitable supply regulating or throttle valve 17 which controls the volume of pressurised oil delivered to the prime mover.

The turbine 16 embodies a stator consisting of a casing ring 18 and end cover plates 19 joined to it in a fluid-tight manner. It further embodies a single or plural stage impeller or rotor having bladed wheels 20, 21 and 22 in the illustrated embodiment. The peripheral blades 23 of these turbine wheels receive the motive fluid from the pressurised chamber 15 through serially connected nozzles 24, 25 and 26, connected generally tangentially through the stator ring 18, as shown in Fig.3. The first nozzle 24 shown schematically in Fig.1 is connected directly with the outlet of the throttle valve 17. The successive nozzles 25 and 26 deliver the pressurised working fluid serially to the blades 23 of the turbine wheels 21 and 22, all of the turbine wheels being suitably coupled to a central axial output or working shaft 27 of the turbine 16.

Back-pressure sealing blocks 28, made of fibre, are contained within recesses 29 of casing ring 18 to prevent co-mingling of the working fluid and exhaust at each stage of the turbine. A back-pressure sealing block 28 is actually only required in the third stage between inlet 26 and exhaust 31, because of the pressure distribution, but such a block can be included in each stage as shown in Fig.1. The top surface, including a sloping face portion 30 on each block 28, reacts with the pressurised fluid to keep the fibre block sealed against the adjacent, bladed turbine wheel; and the longer the slope on the block to increase it's top surface area, the greater will be the sealing pressure pushing it against the periphery of the wheel.

Leading from the final stage of the turbine 16 is a low-pressure working fluid exhaust nozzle 31 which delivers the working fluid, oil, into an oil supply chamber or reservoir 32 of a low pressure tank 33 which may be bolted to the adjacent end cover plate 19 of the turbine, as indicated at 34. The oil entering the reservoir chamber 32 from the exhaust stage of the turbine is at a pressure of about 3-5 p.s.i. In a second chamber 35 of the low pressure tank 33 separated from the chamber 32 by an automatically moving or self-adjusting free piston 36, compressed air at a balancing pressure of from 3-5 p.s.i. is maintained by a second pressure regulating valve 37. The pressure regulating valve 37 is connected with the compressed air supply line 38 which extends from the regulating valve 11 to the high pressure chamber 12 for compressed air.

Within the chamber 32 is a gear pump 39 or the like having its input shaft connected by a coupling 40 with the turbine shaft 27. Suitable reduction gearing 41 for the pump may be provided internally, as shown, or in any other conventional manner, to gear down the rotational speed derived from the turbine shaft. The pump 39 is supplied with the oil in the filled chamber 32 delivered by the exhaust nozzle or conduit 31 from the turbine. The pump, as illustrated, has twin outlet or delivery conduits 42 each having a back-pressure check valve 43 connected therein and each delivering a like volume of pressurised oil back to the high pressure chamber 15 at a pressure of about 500 p.s.i. The pump 39 also has twin fluid inlets. The pump employed is preferably of the type known on the market as "Hydreco Tandem Gear Pump," Model No. 151515, L12BL, or equivalent. In some models, other types of pumps could be employed including pumps having a single inlet and outlet. The illustrated pump will operate clockwise or counter-clockwise and will deliver 14.1 g.p.m.
at 1,800 r.p.m. and 1,500 p.s.i. Therefore, in the present application of the pump 39, it will be operating at considerably less than capacity and will be under no strain.

Since the pump depends for its supply of fluid on the delivery of oil at low pressure from the turbine 16 into the chamber 32, an automatically operating by-pass sleeve valve device 44 for oil is provided as indicated in Fig.1, Fig.4 and Fig.5. This device comprises an exterior sleeve or tube 45 having one end directly rigidly secured as at 46 to the movable free piston 36. This sleeve 45 is provided with slots 47 intermediate its ends. A co-acting interior sleeve 48 engages telescopically and slidably within the sleeve 45 and has a closed end wall 49 and ports or slots 50 intermediate its ends, as shown. The sleeve 48 communicates with one of the delivery conduits 42 by way of an elbow 51, and the sleeve 48 is also connected with the adjacent end of the pump 39, as shown.

As long as the chamber 32 is filled with low pressure oil sufficient to balance the low air pressure in the chamber 35 on the opposite side of free piston 36, such piston will be positioned as shown in Fig.1 and Fig.4 so that the slots 47 and 50 of the two sleeves 45 and 48 are out of registration and therefore no flow path exists through them. Under such circumstances, the oil from the chamber 32 will enter the pump and will be delivered by the two conduits 42 at the required pressure to the chamber 15. Should the supply of oil from the turbine 16 to the chamber 32 diminish so that pump 39 might not be adequately supplied, then the resulting drop in pressure in the chamber 32 will cause the free piston 36 to move to the left in Fig.1 and bring the slots 47 into registration or partial registration with the slots 50, as depicted in Fig.5. This will instantly establish a by-pass for oil from one conduit 42 back through the elbow 51 and tubes 48 and 45 and their registering slots to the oil chamber 32 to maintain this chamber filled and properly pressurised at all times. The by-pass arrangement is completely automatic and responds to a diminished supply of oil from the turbine into the chamber 32, so long as the required compressed air pressure of 3-5 p.s.i. is maintained in the chamber 35.

Briefly, in summary, the system operates as follows. The pressurised inelastic and non-compressible fluid, oil, from the chamber 15 is throttled into the turbine 16 by utilising the throttle valve 17 in a control station. The resulting rotation of the shaft 27 produces the required mechanical energy or work to power a given instrumentality, such as a propeller. A relatively small component of this work energy is utilised through the coupling 40 to drive the pump 39 which maintains the necessary volumetric flow of oil from the turbine back into the high pressure chamber 15, with the automatic by-pass 44 coming into operation whenever needed.

The ultimate source of energy for the closed power system is the compressed elastic fluid, air, in the tank or bottle 10 which through the regulating valves 11 and 37 maintains a constant air pressure in the required
degree in each of the chambers 12 and 35. As described, the air pressure in the high pressure chamber 12 will be approximately 500 p.s.i. and in the low pressure chamber 35 will be approximately 3-5 p.s.i.

It may be observed in Fig. 1 that the tank 33 is enlarged relative to the tank 13 to compensate for the space occupied by the pump and associated components. The usable volumes of the two tanks are approximately equal.

In an operative embodiment of the invention, the two free pistons 14 and 36 and the tank bores receiving them are 8 inches in diameter. The approximate diameters of the bladed turbine wheels are 18 inches. The pump 39 is approximately 10 inches long and 5 inches in diameter. The tank 13 is about 21 inches long between its crowned end walls. The tank 33 is 10 inches in diameter adjacent to the pump 39.

The terms and expressions which have been employed herein are used as terms of description and not of limitation, and there is no intention, in the use of such terms and expressions, of excluding any equivalents of the features shown and described or portions thereof but it is recognised that various modifications are possible within the scope of the invention claimed.

The Clem Engine. This engine is based on an entirely different principle, and one which is not spoken about very often. Hurricanes or “twisters” as they are sometimes called, are large rotating air masses of incredible power which develop in hot areas which are more than eight degrees North or South of the equator. The distance from the equator is essential as the rotation of the Earth is needed to give them their initial spin. They usually develop over water which is at a temperature of twenty-eight degrees Centigrade or higher as that allows the air to absorb enough heat energy to get started. That is why there is a distinct “hurricane season” in these areas, since at certain times of the year the ocean temperature is just not high enough to trigger a hurricane.

What is not generally realised is that a hurricane develops excess energy due to its swirling circular movement. The generation of this extra power was observed and documented by Viktor Schauberger of Austria, who also used his observations to great effect. I think that what Schauberger says makes some people uncomfortable as they seem to think that anything “unorthodox” has to be weird and too peculiar to be mentioned. This is rather strange as all that is involved here is a simple observation of how our environment actually works. A hurricane is wider at the top than at the bottom and this concentrates power at the base of the swirling mass of air. This tapered rotation is called a “vortex” which is just a simple name to describe the shape, but any mention of “vortex power” (the power at the base of this rotation) seems to make many people uncomfortable which is most peculiar.

Leaving that aside, the question is “can we use this energy gain from the environment for our own purposes?” The answer may well be “Yes”. Perhaps this principle is utilised by Richard Clem. In 1992, Richard Clem of Texas, demonstrated a self-powered engine of an unusual type. This engine, which he had been developing for twenty years or more, weighs about 200 pounds (90 kilos) and generated a measured 350 horsepower continuously over the full period of a nine-day self-powered test. Although this engine which runs from 1,800 to 2,300 rpm is especially suited to powering an electrical generator, Richard did install one in a car, and estimated that it would run for 150,000 miles without any need for attention and without any kind of fuel. Richard said that his prototype car had reached a speed of 105 mph. Just after receiving funding to produce his engine, Richard died suddenly and unexpectedly at about 48 years of age, the death certificate having “heart attack” written on it as the cause of death. Remarkably convenient timing for the oil companies who would have lost major amounts of money through reduced fuel sales if Richard’s motor had gone into production.

The motor is unusual in that it is a rotary turbine style design which runs at a temperature of 300°F (140°C) and because of that high temperature, uses cooking oil as its operational fluid, rather than water as the oil has a much higher boiling point. To a quick glance, this looks like an impossible device as it appears to be a purely mechanical engine, which will definitely have an operating efficiency which is less than 100%.

In broad outline, the oil is pumped through a pipe and into the narrow end of the cone-shaped rotor. The engine is started by being rotated by an external starter motor until it reaches the speed at which it generates enough power to sustain its own operation. The rapid spinning of the cone, causes the oil to run along spiral grooves cut in the inner face of the cone and exit through angled nozzles placed at the large end of the cone:
The operating pressure produced by the pump is 300 to 500 psi. Richard did not attempt to patent his engine as US Patent 3,697,190 “Truncated Conical Drag Pump” granted in 1972 as a liquid-asphalt pump is so close in detail that Richard felt that there was insufficient difference for him to be granted a patent:

There appears to be considerable scope for anyone who wishes to build or manufacture this engine and it is capable of acting as a heater as well as device for producing mechanical power. This suggests that water purification could be an additional “extra” option for this engine.

**The Papp Engine.** The Hungarian, Josef Papp, invented an unusual engine system which genuinely appears to be very nearly “fuel-less”. His design modifies an existing vehicle engine to operate on a fixed amount of gas. That is to say, the engine has no air intake and no exhaust and consequently, no inlet or exhaust valves. The engine cylinders contain a mixture of gases which have an Atomic Number below 19, specifically, 36% helium, 26% neon, 17% argon, 13% krypton, and 8% xenon by volume. The control system causes the contained gas to expand to drive the pistons down the cylinders and then contract to suck the
pistons back up the cylinders. This effectively converts the engine into a one-stroke version where there are two power strokes per revolution from every cylinder.

I have to admit that I do not know how the Papp engine works. It is distinctly possible that it interacts with the zero-point energy field and draws in energy that way. It is also possible that the energy comes from the conversion of a few atoms of the gas mix into energy which then powers the engine. It is even possible that some other mechanism produces the excess energy. I don't know of any way of determining the answer. A small amount of radioactive material is used in the engine, and I have seen it suggested that the engine should be screened to protect the user from radiation. I'm not sure that this is correct, but if it is, then it suggests that a matter to energy conversion is indeed taking place. It seems most unlikely that the minor amount of radioactive material in the engine itself could cause any significant radiation. The patent describes the material as "low-level" which suggests to me, material no more dangerous that the luminous paint that used to be used on the hands of clocks and watches.

Suitable engines must have an even number of cylinders as they operate in pairs. Josef's first prototype was a four-cylinder, 90 horsepower Volvo engine. He removed the intake and exhaust components and replaced the engine head with his own design. During a thirty-five minute test in a closed room, the engine generated a constant 300 horsepower output at 4,000 rpm. The electrical power needed to run the engine was produced by the standard engine alternator, which was also able to charge the car battery at the same time. Interestingly, an engine of this type, quite apart from having zero pollution emissions (other than heat), is quite capable of operating under water.

Josef, a draftsman and ex-pilot, emigrated from Hungary to Canada in 1957 where he lived until his death in April 1989. There is solid evidence that Josef built an engine of over 100 horsepower (75 kilowatts) that was "fuelled" by a mixture of inert (or "noble") gases. With no exhaust or cooling system, it had huge torque even at low rpm (776 foot-pounds at only 726 rpm in one certified test). Dozens of engineers, scientists, investors and a Federal judge with an engineering background saw the engine working in closed rooms for hours. This would not have been possible if the engine had been using fossil fuel. There was absolutely no exhaust and no visible provision for any exhaust. The engine ran cool at about 60°C (140°F) on its surface, as witnessed by several reliable observers. All these people became convinced of the engine's performance. They all failed to discover a hoax. Ongoing research in the United States (totally independent of Papp) has proved conclusively that inert gases, electrically triggered in various ways, can indeed explode with fantastic violence and energy release, melting metal parts and pushing pistons with large pressure pulses. Some of the people performing this work, or who have evaluated it, are experienced plasma physicists. Contemporary laboratory work has established that inert gases can be made to explode.

In a demonstration on 27th October 1968 in the Californian desert, Cecil Baumgartner, representing the top management of the TRW aerospace corporation and others witnessed the detonation of one of the engine cylinders. In full public view, just a few cubic centimetres of the inert gas mixture was injected into the cylinder using a hypodermic needle. When the gas was electrically triggered, the thick steel walls of the cylinder were burst open in a dramatic way. William White, Edmund Karig, and James Green, observers from the Naval Underseas Warfare Laboratory had earlier sealed the chamber so that Papp or others could not insert explosives as part of a hoax. In 1983, an independent certification test was carried out on one of the Papp engines.

Joseph Papp was issued three United States patents for his process and engines:

U.S. 3,680,431 on 1st August 1972 "Method and Means for Generating Explosive Forces" in which he states the general nature of the inert gas mixture necessary to produce explosive release of energy. He also suggests several of the triggering sources that may be involved. It appears that Papp is not offering full disclosure here, but there is no doubt that others who have examined this patent and followed its outline have already been able to obtain explosive detonations in inert gases. Caution: Anyone who tries to duplicate this process must be very careful about safety issues.

U.S. 3,670,494 on 20th June 1972 "Method and Means of Converting Atomic Energy into Utilisable Kinetic Energy" and

U.S. 4,428,193 on 31st January 1984 "Inert Gas Fuel, Fuel Preparation Apparatus and System for Extracting Useful Work from the Fuel". This patent shown here, is very detailed and provides information on building and operating engines of this type. It also gives considerable detail on apparatus for producing the optimum mixture of the necessary gasses.
At the time of writing, a web-based video of one of the Papp prototype engines running on a test bed, can be found at http://video.google.com/videoplay?docid=-2850891179207690407 although it must be said that a good deal of the footage is of very poor quality, having been taken many years ago. The video is particularly interesting in that some of the demonstrations include instances where a transparent cylinder is used to show the energy explosion. Frame-by-frame operation on the original video shows energy being developed outside the cylinder as well as inside the cylinder, which does seem to suggest that the zero-point energy field is involved. I have recently been contacted by one man who attended some of the engine demonstrations run by Papp and he vouches for the fact that the engine performed exactly as described.


INERT GAS FUEL, FUEL PREPARATION APPARATUS AND SYSTEM FOR EXTRACTING USEFUL WORK FROM THE FUEL

ABSTRACT

An inert gas fuel consisting essentially of a precise, homogeneous mixture of helium, neon, argon, krypton and xenon. Apparatus for preparing the fuel includes a mixing chamber, tubing to allow movement of each inert gas into and through the various stages of the apparatus, a plurality of electric coils for producing magnetic fields, an ion gauge, ionises, cathode ray tubes, filters, a polarise and a high frequency generator. An engine for extracting useful work from the fuel has at least two closed cylinders for fuel, each cylinder being defined by a head and a piston. A plurality of electrodes extend into each chamber, some containing low level radioactive material. The head has a generally concave depression facing a generally semi-toroidal depression in the surface of the piston. The piston is axially movable with respect to the head from a first position to a second position and back, which linear motion is converted to rotary motion by a crankshaft. The engine's electrical system includes coils and condensers which circle each cylinder, an electric generator, and circuitry for controlling the flow of current within the system.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

This invention relates to closed reciprocating engines, i.e., ones which do not require an air supply and do not emit exhaust gases, and more particularly to such engines which use inert gases as fuel. It also concerns such inert gas fuels and apparatus for preparing same.

Currently available internal combustion engines suffer from several disadvantages. They are inefficient in their utilisation of the energy present in their fuels. The fuel itself is generally a petroleum derivative with an ever-increasing price and sometimes limited availability. The burning of such fuel normally results in pollutants which are emitted into the atmosphere. These engines require oxygen and, therefore, are particularly unsuitable in environments, such as underwater or outer space, in which gaseous oxygen is relatively unavailable. Present internal combustion engines are, furthermore, relatively complex with a great number of moving parts. Larger units, such as fossil-fuel electric power plants, escape some of the disadvantages of the present internal combustion engine, but not, inter alia, those of pollution, price of fuel and availability of fuel.

Several alternative energy sources have been proposed, such as the sun (through direct solar power devices), nuclear fission and nuclear fusion. Due to the lack of public acceptance, cost, other pollutants, technical problems, and/or lack of development, these sources have not wholly solved the problem. Moreover, the preparation of fuel for nuclear fission and nuclear fusion reactors has heretofore been a complicated process requiring expensive apparatus.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

Among the several objects of the present invention may be noted the provision of an engine which is efficient; the provision of an engine which does not require frequent refuelling; the provision of an engine
which develops no pollutants in operation; the provision of an engine which is particularly suited for use in environments devoid of free oxygen; the provision of an engine which requires no oxygen in operation; the provision of an engine having a relatively small number of moving parts; the provision of an engine of a relatively simple construction; the provision of an engine which can be used in light and heavy-duty applications; the provision of an engine which is relatively inexpensive to make and operate; the provision of a fuel which uses widely available components; the provision of a fuel which is relatively inexpensive; the provision of a fuel which is not a petroleum derivative; the provision of relatively simple and inexpensive apparatus for preparing inert gases for use as a fuel; the provision of such apparatus which mixes inert gases in precise, predetermined ratios; and the provision of such apparatus which eliminates contaminants from the inert gas mixture. Other objects and features will be in part apparent and in part pointed out hereinafter.

Briefly, in one aspect the engine of the present invention includes a head having a generally concave depression in it, the head defining one end of a chamber, a piston having a generally semi-toroidal depression in its upper surface, the piston defining the other end of the chamber, and a plurality of electrodes extending into the chamber for exciting and igniting the working fluid. The piston can move along its axis towards and away from the head, causing the volume of the chamber to alter, depending on the position of the piston relative to the head.

In another aspect, the engine of the present invention includes a head which defines one end of the chamber, a piston which defines the other end of the chamber, a plurality of magnetic coils wound around the chamber for generating magnetic fields inside the chamber, and at least four electrodes extending into the chamber for exciting and igniting the working fluid. The magnetic coils are generally coaxial with the chamber. The electrodes are generally equidistantly spaced from the axis of the chamber and are each normally positioned 90 degrees from the adjacent electrodes. Lines between opposed pairs of electrodes intersect generally on the axis of the chamber to define a focal point.

In a further aspect, the engine of the present invention includes a head which defines one end of a chamber, a piston which defines the other end of the chamber, at least two electric coils wound around the chamber for generating magnetic fields inside the chamber, and a plurality of electrodes extending into the chamber for exciting and igniting the working fluid. The electric coils are generally coaxial with the chamber. And the working fluid includes a mixture of inert gases.

The apparatus of the present invention for preparing a mixture of inert gases for use as a fuel includes a chamber, electric coils for generating predetermined magnetic fields inside the chamber, tubing adapted to be connected to sources of preselected inert gases for flow of the gases from the sources to the chamber, and ionisers for ionising the gases.

The fuel of the present invention includes a mixture of inert gases including approximately 36% helium, approximately 26% neon, approximately 17% argon, approximately 13% krypton, and approximately 8% xenon by volume.
BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

Fig. 1 is a side elevation of an engine of this invention:
Fig. 2 is a rear elevation of an engine of this invention:

Fig. 3 is a top plan of an engine of this invention:
Fig. 4 is a cross-sectional view generally along line 4--4 of Fig. 3 of an engine of this invention:
Fig. 5 is a cross-sectional view of a cylinder of an engine of this invention:
Fig. 6 is a plan of the base of a cylinder head of an engine of this invention:

Fig. 7 is an elevation of an electrode rod of an engine of this invention:
**Fig.8** is an elevation, with parts broken away, of one type of electrode used in an engine of this invention:

![Fig.8](image1)

**Fig.9** is a view taken generally along line 9--9 of **Fig.8**:

![Fig.9](image2)

**Fig.10** is a cross-sectional view of a second type of electrode used in an engine of this invention:

![Fig.10](image3)
Fig.11 is a cross-sectional view similar to Fig.5 showing the piston in its uppermost position:
Fig. 12 is a cross-sectional view similar to Fig. 5 showing an alternative cylinder used in an engine of this invention:
Fig. 12A is a cross-sectional view similar to Fig. 5 and Fig. 12, but on a reduced scale and with parts broken away, showing an additional embodiment of a cylinder head used in an engine of this invention:
Fig. 13A and Fig. 13B are schematic diagrams of the electrical circuitry for an engine of this invention:

Fig. 14 is a schematic diagram of an alternative high-voltage ignition system for an engine of this invention:
Fig. 15 is a schematic diagram of an electronic switching unit for an engine of this invention:

Fig. 16 is a schematic diagram of a regulator/electronic switching unit for an engine of this invention:

Figs. 17A-17D are schematic diagrams of a fuel mixer of the present invention:
Fig. 18 is a schematic diagram of the mixing chamber portion of the fuel mixer shown in Figs. 17A-17D.
Figs. 19A-19E are schematic diagrams of a portion of the electrical circuitry of the fuel mixer shown in Figs. 17A-17D:
Figs.20A-20F are schematic diagrams of the rest of the electrical circuitry of the fuel mixer shown in Figs.17A-17D:
Note: Corresponding reference characters indicate corresponding parts throughout all of the views of the drawings.

DESCRIPTION OF A PREFERRED EMBODIMENT

Referring to the drawings, there is shown in Fig.1 a two-cylinder engine 11 comprising a block 13 preferably of a nonmagnetic material such as aluminium, a nonmagnetic head 15, and a pair of cylinder heads 17A and 17B of a magnetisable material such as 0.1-0.3% carbon steel. Also shown in Fig.1 is a flywheel 19 attached to a crankshaft 21, a generator 23, a high-voltage coil 25, a distributor 27 attached by a gear arrangement shown in part at 29 to the crankshaft, and an electrical cable 31 which is connected to the distributor and to both cylinders. Cable 31 (see Fig.2) is also electrically connected to a switching unit 33 which preferably comprises a plurality of silicon controlled rectifiers (SCRs) or transistors. Also shown in Fig.2 is a second electrical connection of the cable to the cylinders, which connection is indicated generally at 35. Turning to Fig.3, there is shown a starter motor 37 as well as a clearer view of the connections 35 to each cylinder.

A cross section of the engine is shown in Fig.4. The cylinder heads have associated with them, pistons marked 39A and 39B, respectively, the heads and pistons define opposite ends of a pair of chambers or cylinders 41A and 41B respectively. The pistons are made of a magnetisable material. Although only two chambers are shown, the engine can include any number. It is preferred, however, for reasons set forth below, that there be an even number of cylinders. Pistons 39A and 39B move axially with respect to their corresponding heads from a first position (the position of piston 39A in Fig.4) to a second position (the position of piston 39B) and back, each piston being suitably connected to crankshaft 21. As shown in Fig.4,
this suitable connection can include a connecting rod CR, a wrist pin WP, and a lower piston portion or power piston LP. The connecting rods and/or power pistons must be of non-magnetisable material. When a split piston is used, pistons 39A and 39B are suitably connected to lower piston portions LP by bolting, spring-loaded press fitting, or the like. Pistons 39A and 39B are attached 180 degrees apart from each other with respect to the crankshaft so that when one piston is at top dead centre (TDC) the other will be at bottom dead centre (BDC) and vice versa. Additional pairs of cylinders may be added as desired but the pistons of each pair should be attached to the crankshaft 180 degrees from each other. Of course, the relative position of each piston with respect to its respective head determines the volume of its chamber.

Integral with the piston bodies are walls 43 which form the walls of the chambers. Preferably, a set of air-tight bellows 45, of similar construction to that sold under the designation ME 197-0009-001 by the Belfab Company of Daytona Beach, Fla., are suitably secured between walls 43 and cylinder heads 17A and 17B respectively to form an airtight seal between each piston and its cylinder head. While walls 43 and piston 39 can be made of one magnetisable piece, a preferable and more efficient construction has walls 43 separate from piston 39 and made of a non-magnetisable material. The length of time that a given engine will run is a function of the efficacy of its sealing system. Means, such as bellows 45, for hermetically sealing the cylinders will optimise said length of time. Such a hermetic seal should be secured between walls 43 and cylinder heads 17 to form an airtight seal between them. This seal could be the airtight bellows system shown or some other sealing system such as an oil sealing system.

Cylinder bodies 47 (see Fig.4), made of nonmagnetic material such as stainless steel, extend from the point of attachment of each bellows to its cylinder head to the base of the corresponding pistons, forming sleeves for each piston in which each piston moves. Three sets of electric coils 49A, 49B, 51A, 51B, and 53A, 53B, are wound around sleeves 47, and hence around chambers 41A and 41B, respectively, for generating magnetic fields in the chambers, those coils being generally coaxial with their respective chambers. Each of these coils has an inductance of approximately 100 mH. It is preferred that 14-19 gauge wire be used to wind these coils and that the coils be coated with a suitable coating, such as #9615 hardener from Furane Plastics, Inc., of Los Angeles, California, or the coating sold by the Epoxylite Corp. of South El Monte, California under the trade designation Epoxylite 8683. Each chamber is also surrounded by a pair of capacitors, C1A, C1B and C2A, C2B wound around it, capacitors C1A, C1B having a capacitance of approximately 1.3 microfarads and capacitors C2A, C2B having a capacitance of approximately 2.2 microfarads. The coils and capacitors are potted in hardened epoxy of fibreglass material 55. The epoxy resin and hardener sold under the designations EPI Bond 121 and #9615 hardener by Furane Plastics, supra, are satisfactory, but other epoxy material which will remain stable at temperatures up to 200 degrees F would probably also be acceptable. It is preferred that a small amount of graphite such as that sold under the trade designation Asbury 225 by Asbury Graphite, Inc. of Rodeo, Calif., be included in the epoxy potting to prevent nuclear particles formed in the chamber from escaping from the apparatus. Ten to 15% graphite to epoxy by weight is more than enough.

A typical cylinder is shown in section in Fig.5, showing the piston in its fully extended position with respect to the head and showing many details on a somewhat larger scale than that of Fig.4. A set of seals 57, made of a material such as that sold under the trade designation Teflon by the DuPont Company of Delaware, is positioned between the cylinder head and wall 43 to prevent escape of the working fluid from chamber 41. A filler tube 59 with a ball valve at its lower end is used in filling the chamber with the working fluid but is closed during operation of the engine.

The cylinder head has a generally concave depression therein, indicated at 61, which defines the top end of the chamber. A plurality of electrodes for exciting and igniting the working fluid extend through the cylinder head into the chamber. Two of those electrodes, shown in section in Fig.5 and labelled 63 and 65, have tungsten points 75, while the other two, labelled 67 and 69 (see Fig.6 for electrode 69) are containers called, respectively, the anode and the cathode. The electrodes are generally equidistantly spaced from the axes of their chambers and are generally coplanar to each other, their mutual plane being perpendicular to the axes of their chambers. Each electrode is positioned 90 degrees from adjacent electrodes in this embodiment and are generally positioned so that a line from the anode to the cathode and a line between the other two electrodes intersect at a focal point generally on the axis of the chamber. The radial distance of each electrode from the focal point is fixed for a reason discussed below. The general construction of electrodes 63 and 65 is shown in Fig.6 to Fig.9. These electrodes include a conductive rod 71 (see Fig.7) preferably of brass or copper; a conductive, generally rectangular plate 73 (see Fig.6, Fig.8 and Fig.9); and tungsten point 75 mounted in a conductive base 77 generally at right angles to the plate (see Fig.8 and Fig.9).

The construction of the anode and cathode is shown in Fig.10. Each includes a conductive rod 79 and a container 81. The cathode container is substantially pure aluminium. If desired, aluminium alloys with, e.g.,
less than 5% copper, 1% manganese and 2% magnesium may be used. In one embodiment, the cathode container contains approximately four grams of thorium-232 and is filled with argon. In this same embodiment the anode container is copper or brass and contains approximately two grams of rubidium-37 and approximately three grams of phosphorus-15 hermetically sealed in mineral oil. In a second embodiment, the cathode is still aluminium, but it contains at least two grams of rubidium-37 in addition to the approximately four grams of thorium-232 in either argon or mineral oil. In this second embodiment, the anode is also aluminium and contains at least 4 grams of phosphorus-15 and at least 2 grams of thorium-232 in argon or mineral oil. Alternatively, mesothorium may be used for the thorium, strontium-38 may be used for the rubidium, and sulphur-16 may be used for the phosphorus. Rods 71 and 79 extend through cylinder head 17 to the exterior where electrical connections are made to the electrodes. Each rod is surrounded by one of four insulating sleeves 83, the lower portion of each of which being flared outwards to seat firmly in the cylinder head.

The piston has a generally semi-toroidal depression in its upper surface (see Fig.4, Fig.5 and Fig.11) and carries a conductive discharge point 85 of copper, brass or bronze generally along the axis of the chamber. When the piston is generally extended, the discharge point is a substantial distance from the electrodes. But when the piston is in its upper position (see Fig.11), the discharge point is positioned generally between all four electrodes and close to them, there being gaps between the electrodes and the discharge point. When the piston is in this upper position, the electrodes extend somewhat into the semi-toroidal depression in the piston's upper surface and the chamber is generally toroidal in shape. The volume of the chamber shown in Fig.11 can be from approximately 6.0 cubic inches (100 cc) or larger. Given the present state of the art, 1500 cubic inches (25,000 cc) appears to be the upper limit. A plurality of ports 87 and one-way valves 89 return working fluid which escapes from the chamber back into it, so long as a sealing system such as bellows 45 is used.

An alternative cylinder head/piston arrangement is shown in Fig.12. The main difference between this arrangement and that of Fig.5 is that the chamber walls, here labelled 43' are integrally formed with the head. As a result seals 57 are carried by the piston rather than by the head, the attachment of bellows 45 is somewhat different, and the fluid-returning valves and ports are part of the piston rather than the head. Otherwise these arrangements are substantially the same. Preferably, the cylinders of both arrangements are hermetically sealed.

An additional embodiment of a cylinder head/piston arrangement used in the present invention is shown in Fig.12A. In this arrangement, a tapered sleeve 17C mates between cylinder head 17 and piston 39, a plurality of seals 57 are provided, and electrodes 67 and 69 have a somewhat different shape. Also, in this embodiment, a chamber 90 is provided in cylinder head 17 for storing additional working fluid, i.e., the purpose of chamber 90 is to extend the operating time between refuelling by circulating the working fluid, viz. the mixture of inert gases described, between cylinder 41 and chamber 90 as needed so that the reactions in cylinder 41 are not adversely affected. To accomplish this, this embodiment further includes a two-way circulation valve 90B, a relief valve 90C, and duct or passageway 90D for evacuating and filling chamber 90, a duct or passageway 90E for evacuating and filling cylinder 41, a passageway 90F between chamber 90 and cylinder 41 in which two-way valve 90B is disposed, a sensor 90G and a plurality of small pressure relief holes 90H. Relief holes 90H serve to relieve the pressure on bellows 45 as the piston moves from BDC to TDC.

In larger engines holes 90H should be replaced with one way valves. Two-way valve 90B is either controlled by sensor 90G or is manually operated, as desired, to allow the circulation of gases between chamber 90 and cylinder 41. The sensor itself detects a condition requiring the opening or closing of valve 90B and signals that condition to the valve. For example, sensor 90G can measure pressure in cylinder 41 while the piston is at top dead centre. A predetermined cylinder pressure can cause a spring to compress, causing the valve to open or close as appropriate. A subsequent change in the cylinder pressure would then cause another change in the valve. Another sensor (not shown) could measure the physical location of the piston by a physical trip switch or an electric eye, or it could measure angular distance from top dead centre on the distributor or the crankshaft. The sensor must keep the gas pressure in chamber 90 at one atmosphere, plus or minus 5%, and at top dead centre, cylinder 41 should also be at that pressure. If gas is lost from the system, it is more important to maintain the proper pressure in cylinder 41. Alternatively, a small passage between cylinder 41 and chamber 90 could function in a passive manner to satisfactorily accomplish the same result. From the above, it can be seen that this embodiment utilises the hollowed out centre of the cylinder head for storing additional working fluid, which fluid is circulated between chamber 90 and cylinder 41 through a valve system comprising valve 90B and sensor 90G with the moving piston causing the gases to circulate.
The electrical circuitry for engine 11 includes (see Fig.13A) a 24 V battery B1, an ignition switch SW1, a starter switch SW2, starter motor 37, a main circuit switch SW4, a step-down transformer 93 (e.g., a 24 V to 3.5 V transformer), a switch SW6 for supplying power to ignition coil 25 (shown in Fig.13A and Fig.13B as two separate ignition coils 25A and 25B), and various decoupling diodes.

The circuitry of Fig.13A also includes a high frequency voltage source or oscillator 95 for supplying rapidly varying voltage through two electronic current regulators 97A, 97B (see Fig.13B for regulator 97B) to the anode and cathode electrodes of each cylinder, and a high-voltage distributor 99 for distributing 40,000 volt pulses to the cylinders. Distributor 99 has two wipers 99A and 99B and supplies three pulses to each cylinder per cycle. Wipers 99A and 99B are 180 degrees out of phase with each other and each operates to supply pulses to its respective cylinder from TDC to 120 degrees thereafter. More pulses are desirable and therefore a better distributor arrangement (shown in Fig.14) may be used. The arrangement shown in Fig.14 includes two ignition coils 101, 103, a simple distributor 105 and a pair of magnetic ignition circuits 107 and 109, described below. Of course many other ignition systems could also be developed. For example, a single circuit might be used in place of circuits 107, 109, additional induction coils might be added to the ignition coils to assist in starting or a resistor could be added to the ignition coils to ensure a constant 40,000 volt output regardless of engine rpm. Also, a solid-state distributor could be used instead of the mechanical distributor labelled 99.

Referring back to Fig.13A, for engines of more than 1000 hp a high frequency source 95 could be used to control engine RPM. The output frequency is controlled by a foot pedal similar to an accelerator pedal in a conventional vehicle. The output frequency varies through a range of from approximately 2.057 MHz to approximately 27.120 MHz with an output current of approximately 8.4 amps. The speed of engine 11 is controlled by the output frequency of source 95. The high frequency current, as described below, is directed to each cylinder in turn by circuitry described below. For engines producing from 300 to 1000 hp (not shown), a high frequency source having a constant output of 27.120 MHz with a constant current of 3.4 amps which is continually supplied to all cylinders could be used. In this case an autotransformer, such as that sold under the trade designation Variac by the General Radio Company, controlled by a foot pedal varies the voltage to each cylinder from 5 to 24 volts DC at 4.5 amps, using power from the batteries or the alternator. The DC current from the Variac is switched from cylinder to cylinder by two small electronic switching units which in turn are controlled by larger electronic switching units. For the smallest engines (not shown), a high frequency generator could supply a constant output of 27.120 MHz with a constant current of 4.2 amps to the cylinders during starting only. Speed control would be achieved by a Variac as described above which controls the DC voltage supplied to the cylinders in turn within a range of from 5 to 24 volts at a current of 5.2 amps. In this case, once the engine is running, the full voltage needed to ignite the (smaller) quantity of gases is obtained from the electrodes in the other cylinder of the pair.

The circuitry of Fig.13A also includes the generator, a voltage regulator and relay 111, five electronic switching units 113, 115, 117, 119 and 121, electrodes 63 and 65 associated with chamber 41A (hereinafter chamber 41A is sometimes referred to as the "A" cylinder and chamber 41B is sometimes referred to as the "B" cylinder), anode 67, cathode 69, magnetic coils 49A, 51A and 53A, capacitors C1A and C2A, and various decoupling diodes. The electronic switching units can take a variety of forms. For example, one simple form (see Fig.15) includes a pair of SCRs 123 and 125. The switching unit is connected at terminal IN to the corresponding line on the input side and at terminal OUT to the corresponding line on the output side. When a voltage of 3.5 volts is supplied from the battery through a distributor, for example, to the ON terminal, SCR 125 conducts, thereby completing a circuit through the switching unit. Conversely, when 3.5 volts is applied to the OFF terminal, SCR 123 conducts and the circuit is broken. Likewise, the circuit for regulators 97A and 97B (see Fig.16) includes two SCRs 127 and 129 and a PNP transistor 131. In this circuit when SCR 127 is gated on, it forces transistor 131 into conduction, thereby completing the circuit through the regulator. When SCR 129 is gated on, the circuit through transistor 131 is broken. A number of other configurations may be used in place of those of Fig.15 and Fig.16 and not all would use SCRs. For example, one triode could be used to replace two main SCRs, or transistors could be used instead of SCRs.

A pair of low-voltage distributors 135 and 137 are also shown in Fig.13A. Distributors 135 and 137 provide gating pulses for the electronic switching units of Fig.13A and Fig.13B. Of course, solid-state distributors could also replace mechanical distributors 135 and 137.

In addition, the engine circuitry includes (see Fig.13B) five electronic switching units 143, 145, 147, 149 and 151 corresponding to units 113, 115, 117, 119 and 121 of Fig.13A, electrodes 63 and 65 of the "B" cylinder, anode 67, cathode 69, electric coils 49B, 51B and 53B, capacitors C1B and C2B, and various decoupling diodes. The circuitry of Fig.13B is generally the same as the corresponding portions of Fig.13A, so the
description of one for the most part applies to both. Of course, if more than two cylinders are used, each pair of cylinders would have associated with them, circuitry such as that shown in Fig.13A and Fig.13B. The circuitry of Fig.13A is connected to that of Fig.13B by the lines L1-L17.

The working fluid and the fuel for the engine are one and the same and consist of a mixture of inert gases, which mixture consists essentially of helium, neon, argon, krypton and xenon. It is preferred that the mixture contain 35.6% helium, 26.3% neon, 16.9% argon, 12.7% krypton, and 8.5% xenon by volume, having been calculated that this particular mixture gives the maximum operation time without refuelling. Generally, the initial mixture may contain, by volume, approximately 36% helium, approximately 26% neon, approximately 17% argon, approximately 13% krypton, and approximately 8% xenon. This mixture results from a calculation that equates the total charge for each of the gases used after compensating for the fact that one inert gas, viz. radon, is not used. The foregoing is confirmed by a spectroscopic flashing, described below, that occurs during the mixing process. If one of the gases in the mixture has less than the prescribed percentage, it will become over-excitement. Similarly, if one of the gases has more than the prescribed percentage, that gas will be under-excited. These percentages do not vary with the size of the cylinder.

Operation of the engine is as follows: At room temperature, each cylinder is filled with a one atmosphere charge of the fuel mixture of approximately 6 cubic inches (100 cc) /cylinder (in the case of the smallest engine) by means of filler tube 59. The filler tubes are then plugged and the cylinders are installed in the engine as shown in Fig.4. One piston is in the fully extended position and the other is in the full retracted position. To start the engine, the ignition and starter switches are closed, as is switch SW6. This causes the starter motor to crank the engine, which in turn causes the wiper arms of the distributors to rotate. The starting process begins, for example, when the pistons are in the positions shown in Fig.4. Ignition coil 25 and distributor 99 (see Fig.13A) generate a 40,000 volt pulse which is supplied to electrode 65 of chamber 41A. Therefore, a momentary high potential exists between electrodes 63 and 65 and the plates on each. The discharge point on piston 39A is adjacent these electrodes at this time and sparks occur between one or more of the electrodes and the discharge point to partially excite, e.g. ionise, the gaseous fuel mixture.

The gaseous fuel mixture in cylinder 41A is further excited by magnetic fields set up in the chamber by coil 49A. This coil is connected to the output side of electronic switching unit 121 and, through switching unit 113, to the battery and the generator. At this time, i.e., between approximately 5 degrees before TDC and TDC, distributor 135 is supplying a gating signal to unit 121. Any current present on the input side of unit 121, therefore, passes through unit 121 to energise coil 49A. Moreover, high frequency current from oscillator 95 is supplied via regulator 97A to coil 49A. This current passes through regulator and relay 97A because the gating signal supplied from distributor 135 to unit 121 is also supplied to relay 97A. The current from switching unit 121 and from oscillator 95 also is supplied to the anode and the cathode. It is calculated that this causes radioactive rays (x-rays) to flow between the anode and the cathode, thereby further exciting the gaseous mixture.

As the starter motor continues cranking, piston 39A begins moving downward, piston 39B begins moving upward, and the wiper arms of the distributors rotate. (Needless to say, a solid-state distributor would not rotate. The distributor could utilise photo cells, either light or reflected light, rather than contact points.) After 45 degrees of rotation, distributor 135 supplies a gating pulse to electronic switching unit 119, thereby completing a circuit through unit 119. The input to unit 119 is connected to the same lines that supply current to coil 49A. The completion of the circuit through unit 119, therefore, causes coil 51A to be energised in the same manner as coil 49A. After an additional 45 degrees of rotation, distributor 135 gates on electronic switching unit 117 which completes a circuit to the same lines. The output terminal of unit 117 is connected to coil 53A, and so this coil is energised when unit 117 is gated on. All three coils of the "A" cylinder remain energised and, therefore, generating magnetic fields in chamber 41A until piston 39A reaches BDC.

As piston 39A moves from TDC to BDC, two additional 40,000 volt pulses (for a total of three) are supplied from distributor 99 to the "A" cylinder. These pulses are spaced approximately 60 degrees apart. If more pulses are desired, the apparatus shown in Fig.14 may be used. In that case, the solenoids indicated generally at 107A, 107B and 109A, 109B are energised to create a number of rapid, high-voltage pulses which are supplied as indicated in Fig.14 to the cylinders, distributor 105 operating to supply pulses to only one of the pair of cylinders at a time.

As piston 39A reaches BDC, distributor 135 sends a pulse to the OFF terminals of electronic switching units 121, 117 and 119, respectively, causing all three coils 49A, 51A and 53A to be de-energised. At about the same time, i.e., between approximately 5 degrees before TDC and TDC for piston 39B, distributor 137 supplies a gating pulse to the ON terminals of electronic switching units 113 and 115. The power inputs to
units 113 and 115 come from the generator through regulator 111 and from the battery, and the outputs are
directly connected to coils 49A and 53A. Therefore, when units 113 and 115 are gated on, coils 49A and
53A are reenergised. But in this part of the cycle, the coils are energised with the opposite polarity, causing
a reversal in the magnetic field in chamber 41A. Note that coil 51A is not energised at all during this portion
of the cycle. Capacitors C1A and C2A are also charged during the BDC to TDC portion of the cycle. (During
the TDC to BDC portion of the cycle, these capacitors are charged and/or discharged by the same currents
as are supplied to the anode and cathode since they are directly connected to them).

As piston 39A moves upwards, electrodes 63 and 65 serve as pick-up points in order to conduct some of the
current out of chamber 41A, this current being generated by the excited gases in the chamber. This current is
transferred via line L7 to electronic switching unit 151. The same gating pulse which gated on units 113
and 115 was also supplied from distributor 137 via line L12 to gate on switching unit 151, so the current from
the electrodes of chamber 41A passes through unit 151 to the anode, cathode and capacitors of chamber
41B, as well as through switching units 147 and 149 to coils 49B, 51B and 53B. Thus it can be seen that
electricity generated in one cylinder during a portion of the cycle is transferred to the other cylinder to assist
in the excitation of the gaseous mixture in the latter. Note that this electricity is regulated to maintain a
constant in-engine current. It should be noted, that twenty four volts from the generator is always present
on electrodes 63 and 65 during operation to provide for pre-excitement of the gases.

From the above it can be seen that distributors 135 and 137 in conjunction with electronic switching units
113, 115, 117, 119, 121, 143, 145, 147, 149 and 151 constitute the means for individually energising coils
49A, 49B, 51A, 51B, 53A and 53B. More particularly, they constitute the means to energise all the coils of
a given cylinder from the other cylinder when the first cylinder's piston is moving from TDC to BDC and
operate to energise only two (i.e., less than all) of the coils from the alternator when that piston is moving
from BDC to TDC. Additionally, these components constitute the means for energising the coils with a given
polarity when the piston of that cylinder is moving from TDC to BDC and for energising the first and third
goats with the opposite polarity when that piston is moving from BDC to TDC.

As can also be seen, switching units 121 and 151 together with distributors 135 and 137 constitute the
means for closing a circuit for flow of current from chamber 41A to chamber 41B during the BDC to TDC
portion of the cycle of chamber 41A and for closing a circuit for flow of current from chamber 41B to
chamber 41A during the TDC to BDC portion of the cycle of chamber 41A. Oscillator 95 constitutes the
means for supplying a time varying electrical voltage to the electrodes of each cylinder, and oscillator 95,
distributors 135 and 137, and regulators 97A and 97B together constitute the means for supplying the time
varying voltage during a predetermined portion of the cycle of each piston. Moreover, distributor 99 together
with ignition coils 25A and 25B constitute the means for supplying high-voltage pulses to the cylinders at
predetermined times during the cycle of each piston.

The cycle of piston 39B is exactly the same as that of piston 39A except for the 180 degree phase
difference. For each cylinder, it is calculated that the excitation as described above causes the gases to
separate into layers, the lowest atomic weight gas in the mixture, namely helium, being disposed generally in
the centre of each chamber, neon forming the next layer, and so on until we reach xenon which is in physical
contact with the chamber walls. The input current (power) to do this is the calculated potential of the gas
mixture. Since helium is located in the centre of the chamber, the focal point of the electrode discharges and
the discharges between the anode and cathode is in the helium layer when the piston is near TDC. As the
piston moves slightly below TDC, the electrons from electrodes 63 and 65 will no longer strike the tip of the
piston, but rather will intersect in the centre of the cylinder (this is called "focal point electron and particle
collision") as will the alpha, beta and gamma rays from the anode and cathode. Of course, the helium is in
this exact spot and is heavily ionised at that time. Thus the electrodes together with the source of electrical
power connected thereto constitute the means for ionising the inert gas.

It is calculated that as a result of all the aforementioned interactions, an ignition discharge occurs in which
the helium splits into hydrogen in a volume not larger than 2 or 3 \times 10^{-6} cubic millimetres at a temperature of
approximately 100,000,000 degrees F. Of course this temperature is confined to a very small space and the
layering of the gases insulates the cylinder walls from it. Such heat excites the adjacent helium so that a
plasma occurs. Consequently, there is a minute fusion reaction in the helium consisting of the energy
conversion of a single helium atom, which releases sufficient energy to drive the piston in that chamber
toward BDC with a force similar in magnitude to that generated in a cylinder of a conventional internal
combustion engine. Electrodes 63 and 65 extend into the argon layer while each piston is in its BDC to TDC
stroke so as to pick up some of the current flowing in that layer. It may take a cycle or two for the gases in
the cylinders to become sufficiently excited for ignition to occur.
Once ignition does occur, the electrical operation of the engine continues as before, without the operation of the starter motor. Distributor 99 supplies three pulses per cycle (or more if the magnetic ignition system of Fig. 14 is used) to each cylinder; and distributors 135 and 137 continue to supply "on" and "off" gating pulses to the electronic switching units. The rpm of the engine is, as explained above, governed by the frequency of the current from oscillator 95 (or in the case of smaller horsepower units, by the DC voltage supplied to the cylinders from the Variac).

Because of the minute amount of fuel consumed in each cycle, it is calculated that a cylinder can run at 1200 rpm approximately 1000 hours, if not more, on a single charge of gas. Note that even at 1200 rpm, there will be intense heat occurring only 0.002% of the time. This means that input power need be applied only sporadically. This power can be supplied to a cylinder from the other cylinder of its pair by means of electronic switching units which, in the case of SCRs, are themselves triggered by low voltage (e.g. 3.5 V) current. Thus, since electrical power generated in one cylinder is used to excite the gases in the other cylinder of a pair, it is practical that the cylinders be paired as discussed above. Capacitors are, of course, used to store such energy for use during the proper portion of the cycle of each cylinder.

From the above, it should be appreciated that the engine of this invention has several advantages over presently proposed fusion reactors, such as smaller size, lower energy requirements, etc. But what are the bases of these advantages? For one, presently proposed fusion reactors use hydrogen and its isotopes as a fuel instead of inert gases. Presumably this is because hydrogen requires less excitation power. While this is true, the input power that is required in order to make hydrogen reactors operate makes the excitation power almost insignificant. For example, to keep a hydrogen reactor from short circuiting, the hydrogen gas has to be separated from the reactor walls while it is in the plasma state. This separation is accomplished by the maintenance of a near vacuum in the reactor and by the concentration of the gas in the centre of the reactor (typically a toroid) by a continuous, intense magnetic field. Accordingly, separation requires a large amount of input energy.

In the present invention, on the other hand, the greater excitation energy of the fuel is more than compensated for by the fact that the input energy for operation can be minimised by manipulation of the unique characteristics of the inert gases. First, helium is the inert gas used for fusion in the present invention. The helium is primarily isolated from the walls of the container by the layering of the other inert gases, which layering is caused by the different excitation potential (because of the different atomic weights) of the different inert gases, said excitation being caused by the action of the electrodes, anode and cathode in a magnetic field. This excitation causes the gases each to be excited in inverse proportion to their atomic numbers, the lighter gases being excited correspondingly more. Helium, therefore, forms the central core with the other four gases forming layers, in order, around the helium. The helium is secondarily isolated from the walls of the container by a modest vacuum (in comparison to the vacuum in hydrogen reactors) which is caused partially by the "choking" effect of the coils and partially by the enlargement of the combustion chamber as the piston moves from TDC to BDC. (Unexcited, the gases are at one atmosphere at TDC). Second, argon, the middle gas of the five, is a good electrical conductor and becomes an excellent conductor when (as explained below) it is polarised during the mixing process. By placing the electrodes such that they are in the argon layer, electrical energy can be tapped from one cylinder for use in the other. During a piston's movement from BDC to TDC, the gases are caused to circulate in the cylinder by the change in the polarity of the coils, which occurs at BDC.

During such circulation, the gases remain layered, causing the argon atoms to be relatively close to each other, thereby optimising the conductivity of the argon. This conductivity optimisation is further enhanced by a mild choking effect that is due to the magnetic fields. The circulation of the highly conductive argon results in a continuous cutting of the magnetic lines of force so that the current flows through the electrodes. This production of electricity is similar to the rotating copper wire cutting the magnetic lines of force in a conventional generator except that the rotating copper wire is replaced by the rotating, highly conductive argon. The amount of electricity that can be produced in this manner is a function of how many magnetic field lines are available to be cut. If one of the coils, or all three of the coils or two adjacent coils were energised, there would be only one field with electricity produced at each end. By energising the top and the bottom coil, two separate fields are produced, with electricity produced at four points.

A five coil system, if there were sufficient space, would produce three fields with the top, bottom and middle coils energised. Six points for electricity production would result. The number of coils that can be installed on a given cylinder is a function of space limitations. The recombination of gas atoms during the BDC to TDC phase causes the radiation of electrical energy which also provides a minor portion of the electricity that the electrode picks up. Additional non-grounded electrodes in each cylinder would result in more electricity being tapped off. It should be noted that during the BDC to TDC phase, the anode and the cathode are also
The second basis of these advantages of the present engine over proposed fusion reactors concerns the charge of the consumed gas so that the total charge of the mixture remains the same. Electron shells. They are therefore well suited to a cycle whereby they are continually organised and reorganised. Fourth, as the helium atoms are consumed, the other gases have the capacity to absorb the charge of the consumed gas so that the total charge of the mixture remains the same.

The second basis of these advantages of the present engine over proposed fusion reactors concerns the fact that hydrogen reactors develop heat which generates steam to turn turbines in order to generate electrical power. This requires tremendous input energy on a continuous basis. The present invention operates on a closed cycle, utilising pistons and a crankshaft which does not require a continuous plasma but rather an infrequent, short duration (10^-6 second) plasma that therefore requires much less input energy. In the present invention, a plasma lasting longer than 10^-6 second is not necessary because sufficient pressure is generated in that time to turn the engine. A plasma of longer duration could damage the engine if the heat were sufficiently intense to be transmitted through the inert gas layers to the cylinder walls. A similar heat build-up in the engine can occur if the repetition rate is increased. Such an increase can be used to increase the horsepower per engine size but at the cost of adding a cooling system, using more expensive engine components, and increasing fuel consumption. Note that even though layers of inert gases insulate the cylinder walls, there might be some slight increase in the temperature of the gas layers after a number of cycles, i.e., after a number of ignitions.

Whereas hydrogen fusion reactors cannot directly produce power by driving a piston (because of the required vacuum), the present invention uses the layered inert gases to transmit the power from the plasma to each gas in turn until the power is applied to a piston, which can easily be translated into rotary motion. The layered gases also cushion the piston from the full force of the ignition. Moreover, the fields inside the cylinder undergoing expansion cause the gases to shrink, thereby taking up some of the pressure generated by the explosion and preventing rupturing of the cylinder walls.

Turning now to Fig.17A to Fig.17D, there is shown apparatus 201 for preparing the fuel mixture for engine 11. For convenience apparatus 201 is called a mixer although it should be understood that the apparatus not only mixes the gases which form the fuel but also performs many other vital functions as well. The five constituent inert gases are introduced in precise, predetermined proportions. The mixer extracts, filters and neutralises the non-inert gases and other contaminants which may be found in the gas mixture. It also increases the potential capacity of gas atoms, discharges the krypton and xenon gases, polarises the argon gases, ionises the gases in a manner such that the ionisation is maintained until the gas has been utilised and otherwise prepares them for use as a fuel in engine 11. In particular, the mixer makes the gases easier to excite during operation of the engine. Mixing does not mean an atomic or molecular combination or unification of gases because inert gases cannot chemically combine, in general, due to the completeness of the outer shell of electrons. During mixing, the various gases form a homogeneous mixture. The mixing of the five inert gases in apparatus 201 is somewhat analogous to preparing a five part liquid chemical mixture by titration. In such a mixture, the proportions of the different chemicals are accurately determined by visually observing the end point of each reaction during titration. In apparatus 201, a visible, spectroscopic flash of light accompanies the desired end point of the introduction of each new gas as it reaches its proper, precalculated proportion. (Each gas has its own distinctive, characteristic, spectroscopic display). The ends points are theoretically calculated and are determined by pre-set voltages on each of a group of ionising heads in the apparatus, as described below.

Mixer 201 includes (see Fig.17A) an intake port, indicated generally at 203, which during operation is connected to a source 205 of helium gas, a gauge 206, glass tubing 207 comprising a plurality of branches B10-B25 for flow of the gases through the mixer, a plurality of valves V1-V11 in the branches, which valves may be opened or closed as necessary, three gas reservoirs 209, 211 and 213 for storing small quantities of helium, argon and neon gas respectively, an ionising and filtering unit 215 for filtering undesired non-inert gases and contaminants out of the fuel mixture, for regulating the gas atom electron charge and to absorb the free flowing electrons, a gas flow circulation pump 217, two ionising heads 219 and 221, and three quality control and exhaust valves V12-V14. The mixer also comprises (see Fig.17B) a high frequency discharge tube 225, a non-directed cathode ray tube 227, two more ionising heads 229 and 231, two additional gas reservoirs 233 and 235 for storing small quantities of xenon and krypton, a quadruple magnetic coil 237, a group of valves V15-V24, valves V23 and V24 being quality control and exhaust valves, and a plurality of additional glass tubing branches B26-B32.

Turning to Fig.17C, mixer 201 also includes additional ionising heads 239, 240 and 241, additional valves V25-V46, V39A and V40A, valves V29 and V32 being quality control and exhaust valves and valve V39A being a check valve, a vacuum and pressure gauge 242 between valves V35 and V36, tubing branches
B34-B49 (branch B39 consisting of two parts B39A and B39B), a pair of intake ports 243 and 245 which during operation are connected to sources 247 and 249 of argon and neon gas respectively, gauges 250A and 250B, a spark chamber 251, a hydrogen and oxygen retention chamber 253 containing No. 650 steel dust in a silk filter, an ion gauge 255 (which can be an RG 75K type Ion Gauge from Glass Instruments, Inc. of Pasadena, Calif.) for removing excess inert gases from the mixture, inner and outer coils of glass tubing 257 and 259 surrounding a mixing chamber 261, a focused x-ray tube 263 for subjecting the mixture flowing through it to 15-20 millirem alpha radiation and 120-125 millirem beta radiation, a directed cathode ray tube 265, two twin parallel magnetic coils 266 and 267, and a focusing magnetic coil 269. It is important that coils 266 and 267 be immediately adjacent mixing chamber 261. And (see Fig.17D) the mixer also comprises three more ionising heads 271, 273 and 275, two entry ports 277 and 279 which during operation are connected to sources 281 and 283 of krypton and xenon respectively, gauges 284A and 284B, a high frequency discharge tube 285, a twin parallel magnetic coil 287 surrounding a polariser 289 for polarising the argon, said polarise containing fine steel particles which are polarised by coils 287 and which in turn polarise argon, a second hydrogen retention chamber 291, a pair of tubing branches B50 and B51, two filters 293 and 295 and a plurality of valves V47-V59, valves V57 and V59 being quality control and exhaust valves.

Inner and outer glass tubing coils 257 and 259 and mixing chamber 261 are shown in cross section in Fig.18. Intermediate glass coils 257 and 259 are two magnetic coils 297 and 299 having an inductance of approximately 130 mH. A yoke coil 301 is positioned in a semi-circle around mixing chamber 261. Inside mixing chamber 261 are located a pair of screens 303 and 305, insulators 307 and 309, and a pair of spark gaps indicated generally at 311 and 313. A high frequency amplitude modulated source provides 120 V AC, 60 Hz, 8.4 amp, 560 watt, 27,120 to 40,000 MHz plus or minus 160 KHz current via heavily insulated wires 315 and 317 to the chamber. These wires are about twelve gauge, like those used as spark plug wires on internal combustion engines. Additionally 95 Volt Direct Current is supplied via a smaller (e.g. sixteen to eighteen gauge) insulated wire 319. As described below, the gases to be mixed and prepared flow through chamber 261 and are suitably treated therein by the action of the various fields present in the chamber.

The magnetic coils, ionisation heads, and pump 217, along with the required electrical interconnections, are schematically shown in Fig.19A to Fig.19E. More particularly, heads 239 and 241 are shown in Fig.19A, as is pump 217. Each ionising head has two electrodes with a gap between them to cause ionisation of gases flowing through the head, the electrodes being connected to a source of electrical power. Pump 217 is directly connected to a source of power (either AC or DC as required by the particular pump being used). The connections between the circuitry on Fig.19A and that on Fig.19B are shown as a plug 321, it being understood that this plug represents a suitable one-to-one connection between the lines of Fig.19A and those of Fig.19B.

The remaining ionising heads and all the magnetic coils are shown in Fig.19B. For clarity, the coils are shown in an unconventional form. Quadruple coil 237 (shown at the top of Fig.19B) has one side of each winding connected in common but the other sides are connected to different lines. Coil 223 consists of two windings in parallel. Coils 297 and 299, the ones around the mixing chamber, are shown overlapping, it being understood that coil 297 is actually interior of coil 299. Yoke coil 301, as shown, extends half-way from the bottom to the top of coils 297 and 299. Twin parallel magnetic coils 267 are connected in parallel with each other, both sides of focusing coil 269 being connected to one node of coils 267. Likewise coils 287 are connected in parallel. The connections between the lines of Fig.19B and those of Fig.19C and Fig.19D are shown as plugs 323 and 325, although other suitable one-to-one connections could certainly be made. Fig.19C shows the interconnecting lines between Fig.19B and Fig.19E. A plug 327 or other suitable one-to-one connections connects the lines of Fig.19C and Fig.19E.

A plurality of power sources, like the above-mentioned Variacs, of suitable voltages and currents as well as a plurality of relays 329, and plugs 331 are shown on Fig.19D and Fig.19E. The connections between these two Figures is shown as a plug 333. It should be appreciated that the Variacs can be adjusted by the operator as necessary to supply the desired voltages to the aforementioned coils and ionising heads. It should also be realised that the desired relays can be closed or opened as needed by connecting or disconnecting the two parts of the corresponding plug 331. That is, by use of plugs 331, the operator can control the energising of the ionising heads and magnetic coils as desired. Plugs 331 are also an aid in checking to ensure that each component is in operating condition just prior to its use. Of course, the manipulation of the power sources and the relays need not be performed manually; it could be automated.

The remaining circuitry for the mixer is shown on Fig.20A to Fig.20F. For convenience, plugs 335, 337, 339, 341, 343, 345 and 347 are shown as connecting the circuitry shown in the various Figures, although other suitable one-to-one connections may be used. The chassis of the apparatus is shown on these Figures in phantom and is grounded. The power supply for the apparatus is shown in part on Fig.20A and
**Fig.20D** and includes an input 349 (see **Fig.20D**) which is connected to 120 volt, 60 Hz power during operation and an input 351 which is connected to the aforementioned high frequency generator or some other suitable source of approximately 27,120 MHz current. The power supply includes a pair of tuners 353, numerous RLC circuits, a triode 355, a pentode 357 with a ZnS screen, a variable transformer 359, an input control 361, a second variable transformer 363 (see **Fig.20A**) which together with a filter 365 forms a 2.0 volts (peak-to-peak) power supply 367, a pentode 369, a variable transformer 371, and a resistor network indicated generally at 373. Exemplary voltages in the power supply during operation are as follows: The anode of triode 355 is at 145 V, the control grid at 135 V and the cathode at -25 V. The voltage at the top of the right-hand winding of transformer 359 is -5 V. The anode of pentode 357 is at 143 V, the top grid is grounded (as is the ZnS screen), the bottom grid is connected to transformer 359, and the control electrode is at 143 V. The input to supply 367 is 143 volts AC while its output, as stated above, is 2 V (peak-to-peak). The anode of pentode 369 is at 60 V, the grids at -1.5 V, the control electrode at 130 V, and the cathode is substantially at ground. The output of resistor network 373, labelled 375, is at 45 V.

Also shown on **Fig.20D** is spark chamber 251. Spark chamber 251 includes a small amount of thorium, indicated at 377, and a plurality of parallel brass plates 379. When the gases in the mixer reach the proper ionisation, the alpha particles emitted by the thorium shown up as flashes of light in the spark chamber.

Turning now to **Fig.20B**, ionising and filtering unit 215 includes a pair of conductive supports 381 for a plurality of conductors 383, said supports and conductors being connected to a voltage source, an insulating support 385 for additional conductors 387, and a ZnS screen 388 which emits light when impurities are removed from the gaseous fuel mixture. Unit 215 also includes a second set of interleaved conductors indicated generally at 389, a cold-cathode tube 391, and an x-ray tube indicated generally at 393. Also shown on **Fig.20B** is an RLC network 395 which has an output on a line 397 which is at 35 V, this voltage being supplied to the x-ray tube.

High frequency discharge tube 255 (see **Fig.20C**) has a conductive electrode 399 at one end to which high frequency current is applied to excite the gases in the mixer, and an electrode/heater arrangement 401 at the other, a voltage of 45 V being applied to an input 402 of the tube. It is desirable that a small quantity of mercury, indicated at 403, be included in tube 225 to promote discharge of the helium gas. Magnetic coils 237 have disposed therein a pair of generally parallel conductors 405 to which a high frequency signal is applied. When gas flows through coils 237 and between parallel conductors 405, therefore, it is subjected to the combination of a DC magnetic field from the coil and high frequency waves from the conductors, which conductors act as transmitting antennas. The resulting high frequency magnetic field causes the atoms to become unstable, which allows the engine to change a given atom's quantum level with much less input power than would normally be required. The volume of each gas atom will also be smaller. Also shown on **Fig.20C** is a non-directed cathode ray tube 227. The grids of tube 227 are at 145 V, the control electrode is at ground, while the anode is at 35 V to 80 V (peak-to-peak). The purpose of non-directed cathode ray tube 227 is to add photons to the gas mixture. To generate these photons, tube 227 has a two layer ZnS coating indicated generally at 407. Chamber 261, described above, is also shown schematically on **Fig.20C**, along with an RLC network 409.

The power supply for the mixer (see the lower halves of **Fig.20E** and **Fig.20F**) also includes two pentodes 411 and 413, a transformer 415, and a diode tube 417. The control electrode of pentode 411 is at 5 V to 40 V (peak-to-peak), the grids are at 145 V, the anode is at 100 V, and the cathode is at 8 V to 30 V (peak-to-peak). The control electrode of pentode 413 is at 115 V, while its grids and cathode are at -33 V. The anode of tube 413 is connected to transformer 415. Also shown on **Fig.20E** are a relay 419 associated with ion gauge 255, and a focused x-ray tube 263 associated with ionisation head 240. The upper input to tube 263 is at 45 V to 80 V (peak-to-peak).

Turning to **Fig.20F**, there is shown tubes 265 and 285. Directed cathode ray tube 265 is a pentode connected like tube 227. High frequency discharge tube 285 includes a phosphor screen and is connected to a high frequency source. Also shown on **Fig.20F** is a triode 421 with its anode at 30 V, its cathode at ground, and its control grid at -60 V; a pentode 423 with its anode at 135 V to 1000 V peak to peak, its cathode at ground, its control electrode at 143 V, its grids at 20 V; and a transformer 425. It should be understood that various arrangements of electrical components other than those described above could be designed to perform the same functions.

The operation of the mixer is best understood with reference to **Fig.17A** to **Fig.17D** and is as follows: Before and during operation, the mixer, and particularly chamber 261 is kept hermetically sealed and evacuated. To begin the mixing process, helium is admitted into the mixer via intake port 203. Then a vacuum is again
drawn, by a vacuum pump (not shown) connected to valve \textbf{V38}, to flush the chamber. This flushing is repeated several times to completely cleanse the tubing branches of the mixer. The mixer is now ready. The ionisation heads next to mixing chamber \textbf{261} are connected to a voltage corresponding to approximately 36\% of the calculated total ionising voltage, DC current is allowed to flow through magnetic coils \textbf{297} and \textbf{299} around chamber \textbf{261}, and high frequency current is allowed to pass through the mixing chamber. Helium is then slowly admitted, via port \textbf{203}, into the mixer. From port \textbf{203}, the helium passes through ionisation head \textbf{219} into glass tubing coil \textbf{259}. This glass coil, being outside magnetic coils \textbf{297} and \textbf{299}, is in the diverging portion of a magnetic field. The helium slowly flowing through glass coil \textbf{259} is gently excited. From coil \textbf{259}, the helium flows through branch \textbf{B45} to ionisation head \textbf{275} and from there, via branch \textbf{B28}, to ionisation head \textbf{229} (see Fig.17B). From head \textbf{229}, the gas flows through non-directed cathode ray tube \textbf{227} to high-frequency discharger \textbf{225}. The high frequency discharger \textbf{225}, with heating element, discharges, separates or completely neutralises the charge of any radioactive and/or cosmic particles that are in the helium atom in addition to the protons, neutrons and electrons.

The gas exits discharger \textbf{225} via branch \textbf{B26} and passes to high-frequency discharger \textbf{285}. The high frequency discharger \textbf{285}, without heating element, disturbs the frequency of oscillation which binds the gas atoms together. This prepares the helium atoms so that the electrons can more easily be split from the nucleus during the excitation and ignition process in the engine. Discharger \textbf{285} includes a phosphorus screen or deposit (similar to the coating on a cathode ray tube) which makes discharges in the tube visible. From discharger \textbf{285}, the helium passes through directed cathode ray tube \textbf{265} and focused x-ray tube \textbf{263}. Directed cathode ray tube \textbf{265} produces cathode rays which oscillate back and forth longitudinally and oscillate back and forth under the gas carrying tube. After that, the helium passes successively through branch \textbf{B21}, ionisation head \textbf{221}, branch \textbf{B23}, twin parallel magnetic coil \textbf{266}, and branch \textbf{B25} into mixing chamber \textbf{261}. Helium flows slowly into and through apparatus \textbf{201}. The helium atoms become ionised as a result of excitation by magnetic force, high frequency vibrations and charge acquired from the ionisation heads. When sufficient helium has entered the apparatus, the ionisation energy (which is approximately 36\% of the total) is totally absorbed. A spectroscopic flash of light in the mixing chamber signals that the precise, proper quantity of helium has been allowed to enter. The entry of helium is then immediately halted by the closing of valve \textbf{V3}.

The next step in preparing the fuel is to add neon to the mixture. The potential on the relevant ionisation heads, particularly head \textbf{241} (see Fig.17C), is raised by the addition of approximately 26\% which results in a total of approximately 62\% of the total calculated potential and valve \textbf{V31} is opened, thereby allowing neon to slowly enter the mixer via port \textbf{245}. This gas passes through branch \textbf{B36}, ionisation head \textbf{241}, and branch \textbf{B35} directly into the mixing chamber. Since the previously admitted helium is fully charged, the neon absorbs all of the increased ionisation potential. As soon as the neon acquires the additional charge, a spectroscopic flash of light occurs and the operator closes valve \textbf{V31}.

In the same manner, the potential on the ionisation heads is increased by the addition of approximately 17\% for a total of approximately 79\% of the total calculated potential and then valve \textbf{V30} is opened to admit argon into the mixer via port \textbf{243}. This gas passes through branch \textbf{B34}, ionisation head \textbf{239}, and branch \textbf{B33} into mixing chamber \textbf{261}. Again, when the proper amount of argon has been admitted, it emits a spectroscopic flash of light and the operator closes valve \textbf{V30}. Next, the potential on the ionisation heads is increased by the addition of approximately 13\% to result in a total of approximately 92\% of the total calculated potential and valve \textbf{V58} (see Fig.17D) is opened to admit krypton into the system. The krypton gas passes through branch \textbf{B51}, ionisation head \textbf{271} and branch \textbf{B48} into chamber \textbf{261}. Upon the emission of a spectroscopic flash of light by the gas, the operator closes valve \textbf{V58}. Finally, the potential on the ionisation heads is increased by the addition of approximately 8\% which brings the ionisation potential to the full 100\% of the calculated ionisation voltage and valve \textbf{V56} is opened to admit xenon into the mixer via port \textbf{279}. This gas passes through branch \textbf{B50}, ionisation head \textbf{273} and branch \textbf{B47} to the mixing chamber. When the proper amount of gas has been admitted, a spectroscopic flash of light occurs signalling the operator to close valve \textbf{V56}. Note that there are two filter/absorber units, labelled \textbf{253} and \textbf{291}. Unit \textbf{253} is connected to the neon and argon inlet branches \textbf{B33} and \textbf{B35} while unit \textbf{291} is connected to the krypton and xenon inlet branches \textbf{B47} and \textbf{B48}. These two units absorb hydrogen residue and immobilise the water vapour created when the pump circulates the gases and generates vacuum states.

After all the gases are admitted in the desired proportions, all the valves are closed. (The mixture in the mixing chamber and in the adjacent tubing is at one atmosphere pressure at this time). Once this is done, the interval valves of the system are all opened (but the inlet and outlet valves remain closed) to allow the mixture to circulate throughout the tubing as follows: branch \textbf{B44}, magnetic coils \textbf{267} and \textbf{269}, ionisation head \textbf{240}, branch \textbf{B29}, ionisation head \textbf{231}, branch \textbf{B24}, ionisation head \textbf{219}, pump \textbf{217}, branches \textbf{B15} and \textbf{B39A}, ionisation gauge \textbf{255}, branches \textbf{B38} and \textbf{B42}, ionisation head \textbf{275}, branch \textbf{B28}, ionisation head \textbf{229}.
non-directed cathode ray tube 227, quadruple magnetic coil 272, ionisation head 221, branch B23, twin parallel magnetic coil 266, branch B25 and mixing chamber 261. When this circuit is initially opened, the pressure of the mixture drops 40-50% because some of the tubing had previously been under vacuum. Pump 217 is then started to cause the gases to be slowly and evenly mixed.

Because of dead space in the tubing and the reaction time of the operator, it may occur that the proportions of the gases are not exactly those set forth above. This is remedied during the circulation step. As the gas flows through ionisation gauge 255, excess gas is removed from the mixture so that the correct proportions are obtained. To do this the grid of gauge 255 is subjected to 100% ionisation energy and is heated to approximately 165 degrees F. This temperature of 165 degrees F is related to xenon's boiling point of -165 degrees F in magnitude but is opposite in sign. Xenon is the heaviest of the five inert gases in the mixture. As the gas mixture flows through ionisation gauge 255, the gas atoms that in excess of their prescribed percentages are burned out of the mixture and their charge is acquired by the remaining gas atoms from the grid of the ionisation gauge. Because the gases are under a partial vacuum, the ionisation gauge is able to adjust the gas percentages very precisely. (Note: The steps described in the last two paragraphs are repeated if the finished gases are rejected in the final quality control step described below).

The next step involves purifying the mixture so that only the five inert gases remain, absorbing any free electrons and regulating the electrical charge in the mixture. To do this, the circuit consisting of the following components is opened: Branch B44, magnetic coil 267, magnetic coil 269, ionisation head 240, branch B29, ionisation head 231, branch B24, ionisation head 219, pump 217, branches B15 and B39, magnetic coil 287 (see Fig.17D) polariser 289, branch B17, ionising and filtering unit 215, branches B16, B42, and B41, x-ray tube 263, branch B21, ionisation head 221, branch B23, magnetic coil 266, branch B25, and mixing chamber 261. The gases should complete this circuit at least three times.

The last step required to prepare the mixture for bottling is polarisation of the argon. The circuit required to do this consists of the following components: mixing chamber 261, branch B44, magnetic coil 267, magnetic coil 269, ionisation head 240, cathode ray tube 265, branch B40, tubing coil 257, branches B49 and B30, ionisation head 231, branch B24, ionisation head 219, pump 217, branches B15 and B39, twin parallel magnetic coil 287 (see Fig.17D), polariser 289, branch B17, ionising and filtering unit 215, branches B16, B42 and B20, ionisation head 229, cathode ray tube 227, magnetic coil 237, ionisation head 221, branch B23 and magnetic coil 266. This too is repeated at least three times. The key to the polarisation of argon is polariser 289 and twin parallel magnetic coil 287 that encircles it. Polariser 289 is a glass bottle which is filled with finely powdered soft iron which can be easily magnetised. The filled bottle is, in effect, the iron core of the coils. The iron particles align themselves with the magnetic lines of force, which lines radiate from the centre toward the north and south poles. The ionised gas mixture is forced through the magnetised iron powder by means of pump pressure and vacuum, thereby polarising the argon gas. Filters 293 and 295 are disposed as shown in order to filter metallic particles out of the gas.

The mixture is now double-checked by means of spark chamber 251 at atmospheric pressure since the fusion reaction in the engine is started at one atmosphere. Because the gases in mixing apparatus 201 are at a partial vacuum, sufficient gases must be pumped into spark chamber 251 to attain atmospheric pressure. To do this valves V33, V36 and V40A are closed and circulating pump 217 pumps the gases in the mixing apparatus via branches B15 and B39A, through check valve V39A into spark chamber 251 until the vacuum and pressure gauge 242 indicates that the gases within spark chamber 251 are at atmospheric pressure. Valve V34 is then closed. The spark chamber is similar to a cloud chamber. Six or more high capacity brass capacitor plates are spaced 1/8" to 1/4" apart in the chamber. A small plastic container holds the thorium 232. One side of the chamber is equipped with a thick glass window through which sparks in the chamber may be observed. A potential is placed on the brass plates in the chamber and the current flowing between the plates is measured. If this current exactly corresponds to the ionisation current, the mixture is acceptable. A difference of greater than 5% is not acceptable. A lesser difference can be corrected by recirculating the gas in the mixer and particularly through ionisation gauge 255 as previously described in the circulation step. A second test is then given the gases that pass the first test. A calculated high frequency current is gradually imposed on the spark chamber capacitor plates. This excitation causes neutrons to be emitted from the thorium 232 which, if the mixture is satisfactory, can be easily seen as a thin thread of light in the chamber. If the mixture is not satisfactory, light discharges cannot be seen and the high frequency circuit will short out and turn off before the desired frequency is reached.

To bottle the mixture, valve V33 is opened and valves V36 and V40 are closed. During bottling polariser 289, twin parallel magnetic coil 287, ionisation unit 215 and ion gauge 255 are electrically energised (all electrical circuits are previously de-energised) to improve the stability of the mixture. The prepared gases are withdrawn from the mixing apparatus via branches B24 and B16, ionisation unit 215, branch B17, filters
In operation of mixing apparatus 201, certain operational factors must be considered. For one, no electrical devices can be on without the pump being in operation because an electrical device that is on can damage adjacent gas that is not circulating. For another, it should be noted that directed cathode ray tube 265, non-directed cathode ray tube 227 and focused x-ray tube 263 serve different functions at different points in the mixing process. In one mode, they provide hot cathode radiation, which can occur only in a vacuum. When gases are flowing through these devices, they provide a cold cathode discharge. For example, during argon polarisation and the circulation step, focused x-ray tube 263 is under vacuum and affects the gases flowing through ionisation head 240 by way of hot cathode radiation. During the introduction of the different gases into mixing apparatus 201 and during the recirculation step, the gases are flowing through focused x-ray tube 263, which affects the gases by way of a cold cathode discharge.

It is preferred that each switchable electrical component in mixing apparatus 201 be wired into a separate circuit despite the fact that one of the poles of each could be commonly wired. In a common ground circuit if one device is turned on, all of the other units may also turn on because the gases in the device are conductive. In addition, if one unit on a common circuit were energised with high frequency current, the others would also be affected. In the same vein, the high frequency current cannot be used when the cathode ray tubes, the x-ray tubes or the discharge generators are heated and under vacuum because the heater filaments will burn out.

Finally, the current source, the variable rectifiers and the electrical measuring instruments must be located more than ten feet from mixing apparatus 201 because the high frequency current is harmful to the rectifiers, causing them to burn out or short out.

It is hoped that a brief summary of the concepts used by the inventor in developing the above invention will be helpful to the reader, it being understood that this summary is in no way intended to limit the claims which follow or to affect their validity. The first concept is that of using an inert gas mixture at approximately one atmosphere at TDC (at ignition) as a fuel in a thermonuclear energy production process. The second concept is the layering of the various inert gases, which layering is designed to confine the input energy in the innermost layers during pre-excitation and ignition, to provide thermal insulation for the container walls during and after ignition, to transmit power resulting from the ignition through the layers in turn to the piston, to absorb the pressure generated during ignition to protect the cylinder walls, and to provide an orderly, predictable positioning of the argon layer during the BDC to TDC portion of the engine cycle. The third concept of this invention involves utilising electric current produced in one cylinder of a pair to perform functions in the other cylinder of that pair. This concept includes the sub-concepts of generating electric current by atomic recombination and of electric generation in place resulting from the rotation of layered inert gases within each cylinder because of the changed polarity of the encircling coils at BDC, from judicious placement of coils which produce magnetic field lines which are cut by a near perfect conductor (polarised argon), and from movement of said near perfect conductor through the magnetic field.

The fourth and fifth concepts of this invention are the transformation of rapid, intense, but short duration thermonuclear reactions into pressure that is transmitted from inert gas to inert gas until it creates linear kinetic energy at the piston, which energy is converted into rotary kinetic energy by a crankshaft, and the use of a shaft-driven generator to provide power to spaced field coils during the BDC to TDC portion of the cycle of each cylinder.

The sixth concept concerns adequate pre-excitation of the inert gas fuel and more particularly involves the sub-concepts of pre-exciting the fuel in the mixing process, of manipulation of the currents in the coils surrounding each cylinder, of discharging the capacitors surrounding each cylinder at predetermined times in the cycles, of causing a stream of electrical particles to flow between electrodes and a conductive discharge point on the piston, of emitting alpha, beta and gamma rays from an anode and a cathode containing low level radioactive material to the piston’s discharge point, of accelerating the alpha, beta and gamma rays by the application of a high-voltage field, and of situating capacitor plates 90 degrees from the anode and cathode to slow and reflect neutrons generated during ignition. The seventh concept involves the provision of a minute, pellet-type fission ignition, the heat from which causes a minute fusion as the result of the ignition chamber shape and arrangement, as a result of the collision of the alpha, beta and gamma rays and the electrical particles at a focal point in conjunction with the discharge of the capacitors that surround the cylinder through the electrodes, and as a result of increasing the magnetic field in the direction of the movement of each piston.
The Robert Britt Engine. Robert Britt designed a very similar engine to that of Josef Papp, and he was also awarded a US patent for an engine operating on inert gasses. William Lyne remarks that this engine design may be replicated using a Chevy “Monza” 6-cylinder engine or a VolksWagen 4-cylinder engine. The heads are removed and the new heads cast using the “pot metal” used for “pseudo chrome” automotive trim. That alloy contains aluminium, tin, zinc and possibly antimony and is particularly suitable as the insides of the cavities can be polished to the high reflectivity specified in the patents.


ATOMIC EXPANSION REFLEX OPTICS POWER SOURCE (AEROPS) ENGINE

ABSTRACT

An engine is provided which will greatly reduce atmospheric pollution and noise by providing a sealed system engine power source which has no exhaust nor intake ports. The engine includes a spherical hollow pressure chamber which is provided with a reflecting mirror surface. A noble gas mixture within the chamber is energised by electrodes and work is derived from the expansion of the gas mixture against a piston.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

An atomic expansion reflex optics power source (AEROPS) engine, having a central crankshaft surrounded by a crankcase. The crankcase has a number of cylinders and a number of pistons located within the cylinders. The pistons are connected to the crankshaft by a number of connecting rods. As the crankshaft turns, the pistons move in a reciprocating motion within the cylinders. An assembly consisting of a number of hollow spherical pressure chambers, having a number of electrodes and hollow tubes, with air-cooling fins, is mounted on the top of each cylinder. The necessary gaskets are provided as needed to seal the complete engine assemblies from atmospheric pressure. A means is provided to charge the hollow spherical pressure chamber assembly and the engine crankcase with noble gas mixtures through a series of valves and tubes. A source of medium-voltage pulses is applied to two of the electrodes extending into each of the hollow spherical pressure chambers.

When a source of high-voltage pulses is applied from an electrical rotary distributor switch to other electrodes extending into each of the hollow spherical pressure chambers in a continuous firing order, electrical discharges take place periodically in the various hollow spherical pressure chambers. When the electrical discharges take place, high energy photons are released on many different electromagnetic frequencies. The photons strike the atoms of the various mixed gases, e.g., xenon, krypton, helium and mercury, at different electromagnetic frequencies to which each is selectively sensitive, and the atoms become excited. The first photons emitted are reflected back into the mass of excited atoms by a reflecting mirror surface on the inside wall of any particular hollow spherical pressure chamber, and this triggers more photons to be released by these atoms. They are reflected likewise and strike other atoms into excitation and photon energy release. The electrons orbiting around the protons of each excited atom in any hollow spherical pressure chamber increase in speed and expand outward from centre via centrifugal force causing the atoms to enlarge in size. Consequently, a pressure wave is developed, the gases expand and the pressure of the gas increases.

As the gases expand, the increased pressure is applied to the top of the pistons in the various cylinders fired selectively by the electrical distributor. The force periodically applied to the pistons is transmitted to the connecting rods which turn the crankshaft to produce rotary power. Throttle control valves and connecting tubes form a bypass between opposing hollow spherical pressure chambers of each engine section thereby providing a means of controlling engine speed and power. The means whereby the excited atoms are returned to normal minimum energy ground-state and minimum pressure level, is provided by disrupting the electrical discharge between the medium-voltage electrodes, by cooling the atoms as they pass through a heat transfer assembly, and by the increase in the volume area above the pistons at the bottom of their power stroke. The AEROPS engine as described above provides a sealed unit power source which has no atmospheric air intake nor exhaust emission. The AEROPS engine is therefore pollution free.
BRIEF OBJECTIVE OF THE INVENTION

This invention relates to the development of an atomic expansion reflex optics power source (AEROPS) engine, having the advantages of greater safety, economy and efficiency over those disclosed in the prior art. The principal object of this invention is to provide a new engine power technology which will greatly reduce atmospheric pollution and noise, by providing a sealed system engine power source which has no exhaust nor intake ports.

Engine power is provided by expanding the atoms of various noble gas mixtures. The pressure of the gases increases periodically to drive the pistons and crankshaft in the engine to produce safe rotary power. The objects and other advantages of this invention will become better understood to those skilled in the art when viewed in light of the accompanying drawings.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

Fig. 1 is an elevational view of the hollow spherical pressure chamber assembly, including sources of gas mixtures and electrical supply:

Fig. 2 is an elevational view of the primary engine power stroke:
Fig. 3 is an elevational view of the primary engine compression stroke:
Fig. 4 is a rear elevational view of a six cylinder AEROPS engine:
Fig. 5 is a top view of the six cylinder AEROPS engine:
Fig. 6 is an electrical schematic of the source of medium-voltage:

Fig. 7 is an electrical schematic of the source of high-voltage:
DETAILED DESCRIPTION

Referring to Fig. 1 of the drawings, the AEROPS engine comprises a hollow spherical pressure chamber 1 having an insulated high-voltage electrode 2 mounted on the top, an insulated medium-voltage electrode 3 mounted on the right, and an insulated common ground electrode 4 mounted on the left, as shown in this particular view. Electrodes 2, 3 and 4 extend through the wall of the hollow spherical pressure chamber 1 and each electrode forms a pressure seal. A plurality of hollow tubes 5 arranged in a cylindrical pattern extend through the wall of the hollow spherical pressure chamber 1, and each hollow tube is welded to the pressure chamber to form a pressure seal. The opposite ends of hollow tubes 5 extend through the mounting plate MP and are welded likewise to form a pressure seal. A plurality of heat transfer fins 6 are welded at intervals along the length of said hollow tubes 5. A bright reflecting mirror surface 7 is provided on the inner wall of the hollow spherical pressure chamber 1. A source of high-voltage 8 is periodically connected to the insulated high-voltage electrodes 2 and 4. A source of medium-voltage 9 from a discharge capacitor is connected to the insulated medium-voltage electrodes 3 and 4. A source of noble gas mixtures 10, e.g., xenon, krypton, helium and mercury is applied under pressure into the hollow spherical pressure chamber 1 through pressure regulator valve 11 and check valve 12.

Referring now to Fig. 2 of the drawings, the complete assembly 13 shown in Fig. 1 is mounted on the top of the cylinder 14 via mounting plate MP. The necessary gaskets or other means are provided to seal the engine and prevent loss of gases into the atmosphere. The piston 15 located within cylinder 14 has several rings 16 which seal against the inner wall of the cylinder. The piston 15 is connected to the crankshaft 17 by connecting rod 18. The source of noble gas mixtures 10 is applied under pressure into the crankcase 21 through pressure regulator valve 11, check valve 12 and capillary tube 19. The piston 15 is now balanced between equal gas pressures. Assuming that the engine is running and the piston 15 is just passing Top-Dead-Centre (TDC), a source of medium-voltage from a capacitor discharge system 9 (Fig. 6, a single typical capacitor section) is applied to electrodes 3 and 4. A source of high-voltage pulses from a standard ignition coil 8 (such as shown in Fig. 7) is applied to electrodes 2 and 4 and the gases within the hollow spherical pressure chamber 1 are ionised and made electrically conductive. An electrical discharge takes place between electrodes 3 and 4 through the gases in the hollow spherical pressure chamber 1.

The electrical discharge releases high energy photons on many different electromagnetic frequencies. The photons strike the atoms of the various gases, e.g., xenon, krypton, helium and mercury at different electromagnetic frequencies to which each atom is selectively sensitive and the atoms of each gas become excited. The first photons emitted are reflected back into the mass of excited atoms by the reflecting mirror surface 7. This triggers more photons to be released by these atoms, and they are reflected likewise from the mirror surface 7 and strike other atoms into excitation and more photons are released as the chain reaction progresses. The electrons orbiting around the protons of each excited atom increase in speed and expand outward in a new orbital pattern due to an increase in centrifugal force. Consequently, a pressure wave is developed in the gases as the atoms expand and the overall pressure of the gases within the hollow spherical pressure chamber 1 increases. As the gases expand they pass through the hollow tubes 5 and apply pressure on the top of piston 15. The pressure pushes the piston 15 and the force and motion of the piston is transmitted through the connecting rod 18 to the crankshaft 17 rotating it in a clockwise direction. At this point of operation, the power stroke is completed and the capacitor in the medium-voltage capacitor discharge system 9 is discharged. The excited atoms return to normal ground state and the gases return to normal pressure level. The capacitor in the medium-voltage capacitor discharge system 9 is recharged during the time period between (TDC) power strokes.

Referring now to Fig. 3 of the drawings, the compression stroke of the engine is shown. In this engine cycle the gases above the piston are forced back into the hollow spherical pressure chamber through the tubes of the heat transfer assembly. The gases are cooled as the heat is conducted into the fins of the heat transfer assembly and carried away by an air blast passing through the fins. An example is shown in Fig. 4, the centrifugal air pump P providing an air blast upon like fins.

Some of the basic elements of the invention as set forth in Fig. 1, Fig. 2, and Fig. 3 are now shown in Fig. 4 and Fig. 5 which show complete details of a six-cylinder horizontally-opposed AEROPS engine.

Referring now to Fig. 4 and Fig. 5 of the drawings. Fig. 4 is a view of the rear section of the engine showing the crankshaft, centre axis and two of the horizontally-opposed cylinders. In as much as the rear R, middle M and front F sections of the engine possess identical features, only the rear R engine section will be elaborated upon in detail in order to prevent repetition and in the interest of simplification. The crankshaft 17A consists of three cranks spaced 120 degrees apart in a 360 degree circle as shown. Both connecting
rods 18A and 18B are connected to the same crank. Their opposite ends connect to pistons 15A and 15B, located in cylinders 14A and 14B respectively. Each piston has pressure sealing rings 16A and 16B. The hollow spherical pressure chamber assemblies consisting of 1A and 1D are mounted on cylinders 14A and 14B via mounting plates MP. The necessary gaskets are provided as needed to seal the complete engine assemblies from atmospheric pressure.

The source of gas mixtures 10A is applied under pressure to pressure regulator valve 11A and flows through check valve 12A, through check valve 12B to the hollow spherical pressure chamber 1A, and through check valve 12C to the hollow spherical pressure chamber 1D. The gas flow network consisting of capillary tubes below point 19A represents the flow of gases to the rear section R of the engine. The middle section M and the front section F both have gas flow networks identical to that consisting of capillary tubes below point 19A, while the gas flow network above is common to all engine sections. Throttle valve 20A and the connecting tubing form a variable bypass between hollow spherical pressure chambers 1A and 1D to control engine speed and power. Engine sections R, M and F each have this bypass throttle network. The three throttle valves have their control shafts ganged together. A source of medium-voltage pulses 9A is connected to medium-voltage electrodes 3A and 3D. In one particular embodiment the medium-voltage is 500 volts. A source of high-voltage pulses 8A is connected to electrode 2A through the distributor as shown. Electrode 4A is connected to common ground. Centrifugal air pumps P force air through heat transfer fins 6A and 6B to cool the gases flowing in the tubes 5A and 5B.

Fig. 5 is a top view of the AEROPS engine showing the six cylinders and crankshaft arrangement consisting of the rear R, middle M and front F sections. The crankshaft 17A is mounted on bearings B, and a multiple shaft seal S is provided as well as the necessary seals at other points to prevent loss of gases into the atmosphere. The hollow spherical pressure chambers 1A, 1B, 1C, 1D, 1E and 1F are shown in detail with high-voltage electrodes 2A, 2B, 2C, 2D, 2E, 2F and medium-voltage electrodes 3A, 3B, 3C, 3E and 3F. The common ground electrodes 4A, 4B, 4C, 4D, 4E, 4F are not shown in Fig.5 but are typical of the common ground electrodes 4A and 4D shown in Fig.4. It should be noted that the cranks on crankshaft 17A are so arranged to provide directly opposing cylinders rather than a conventional staggered cylinder design.

Fig. 6 is an electrical schematic of the source of medium-voltage 9A. The complete operation of the converter is explained as follows: The battery voltage 12 VDC is applied to transformer T1, which causes current to pass through resistors R1, R2, R3 and R4. Since it is not possible for these two paths to be exactly equal in resistance, one-half of the primary winding of T1 will have a somewhat higher current flow. Assuming that the current through the upper half of the primary winding is slightly higher than the current through the lower half, the voltages developed in the two feedback windings (the ends connected to R3 and R2) tend to turn transistor Q2 on and transistor Q1 off. The increased conduction of Q2 causes additional current to flow through the lower half of the transformer primary winding. The increase in current induces voltages in the feedback windings which further drives Q2 into conduction and Q1 into cut-off, simultaneously transferring energy to the secondary of T1. When the current through the lower half of the primary winding of T1 reaches a point where it can no longer increase due to the resistance of the primary circuit and saturation of the transformer core, the signal applied to the transistor from the feedback winding drops to zero, thereby turning Q2 off. The current in this portion of the primary winding drops immediately, causing a collapse of the field about the windings of T1. This collapse in field flux, cutting across all of the windings in the transformer, develops voltages in the transformer windings that are opposite in polarity to the voltages developed by the original field. This new voltage now drives Q2 into cut-off and drives Q1 into conduction. The collapsing field simultaneously delivers power to the secondary windings L1, L2, L3, L4, L5 and L6. The output voltage of each winding is connected through resistors R5, R6 and R7 and diode rectifiers D1, D2, D3, D4, D5 and D6, respectively, whereby capacitors C1, C2, C3, C4, C5 and C6 are charged with a medium-voltage potential of the polarity shown. The output voltage is made available at points 3A, 3B, 3C, 3D, 3E and 3F which are connected to the respective medium-voltage electrodes on the engine shown in Fig.4 and Fig.5.

Referring now to Fig.7 of the drawings, a conventional "Kettering" ignition system provides a source of high-voltage pulses 8A of approximately 40,000 volts to a distributor, which provides selective voltage output at 2A, 2B, 2C, 2D, 2E and 2F, which are connected to the respective high-voltage electrodes on the engine shown in Fig.4 and Fig.5. The distributor is driven by the engine crankshaft 17A (Fig.5) at a one to one mechanical gear ratio.

Referring again to Fig.4 and Fig.5 of the drawings, the operation of the engine is as follows: Assuming that a source of noble gas mixtures, e.g., xenon, krypton, helium and mercury is applied under pressure to the hollow spherical pressure chambers 1A, 1B, 1C, 1D, 1E and 1F and internally to the crankcase 21A through pressure regulator valve 11A and check valves 12A, 12B and 12C; and the source of medium-voltage 9A is
applied to electrodes 3A, 3B, 3C, 3D, 3E and 3F; and a source of high-voltage pulse 8A is applied to electrode 2A through the timing distributor, the gas mixtures in the hollow spherical pressure chamber 1A is ionised and an electrical discharge occurs immediately between electrodes 3A and 4A.

High-energy photons are released on many different electromagnetic frequencies. The photons strike the atoms of the various gases, e.g., xenon, krypton, helium and mercury at different electromagnetic frequencies to which each is particularly sensitive and the atoms of each gas become excited. The first photons emitted are reflected back into the mass of excited atoms by the internal reflecting mirror surface on the inside wall of the hollow spherical pressure chamber 1A. This triggers more photons to be released by these atoms and they are reflected likewise from the mirror surface and strike other atoms into excitation and more photons are released as the chain reaction progresses. The electrons orbiting around the protons of each excited atom in the hollow spherical pressure chamber 1A increase in speed and expand outward in a new orbital pattern due to an increase in centrifugal force. Consequently, a pressure wave is developed in the gases as the atoms expand and the overall pressure of the gases within the hollow spherical pressure chamber 1A increases.

As the gases expand they pass through the hollow tubes 5A applying pressure on the top of piston 15A. The pressure applied to piston 15A is transmitted through connecting rod 18A to the crankshaft 17A rotating it in a clockwise direction. As the crankshaft 17A rotates it pushes piston 15B via connecting rod 18B in the direction of a compression stroke, forcing the gases on the top of the piston through hollow tubes 5B into the hollow spherical pressure chamber 1D. As the gases pass through the hollow tubes 5A and 5B the heat contained in the gases is conducted into the heat transfer fins 6A and 6B, where it is dissipated by a blast of air passing through said fins from the centrifugal air pumps P. At this point of operation the power stroke of piston 15A is completed and the capacitor in the medium-voltage capacitor discharge system 9A is discharged. The excited atoms return to normal ground state and the gases return to normal pressure level. The capacitor in the medium-voltage capacitor discharge system 9A is recharged during the time period between the power strokes of piston 15A.

The above power stroke cycle occurs exactly the same in the remaining cylinders as the high-voltage firing order progresses in respect to the position of the distributor switch. In as much as the AEROPS engine delivers six power strokes per single crankshaft revolution, the crankshaft drives the distributor rotor at a one to one shaft ratio. The complete high-voltage firing order is 1, 4, 5, 2, 3, 6, whereas, the high-voltage is applied to electrodes 2A, 2B, 2C, 2D, 2E and 2F respectively. A means of controlling engine speed and power is provided by a plurality of throttle control valves and connecting tubes which form a bypass between opposing hollow spherical pressure chambers of each engine section.

The AEROPS engine as described above provides a sealed unit power source which has no atmospheric air intake nor exhaust emission and is therefore pollution free.
Chapter 9: Passive Systems

Hans Coler. A German naval captain called Hans Coler invented a COP>1 generator in 1925. He called this device the ‘Stromerzeuger’ and for a few watts from a dry battery it provided 6 kW continuously. He was refused development support because it was “a perpetual motion machine”.

Hans also invented a passive device which he called the ‘Magnetstromapparat’. His unit required very careful and slow adjustment to get it operating but when it started it continued on test in a locked room for three months of continuous operation. Nobody, including Hans, seems any too sure how this device works but it is presented here in case you wish to research it further. It comprises six bar magnets wound as shown here. Some are wound in a clockwise direction when looking at the North pole and these are called “Right” those wound in an anticlockwise direction are called “Left”:

These six magnets are arranged in a hexagon and wired as shown here:
And the schematic diagram is:

One extremely interesting feature of this passive device is that it has been witnessed producing 450 mV for several hours; it was capable of developing up to 12 Volts. The witnesses were quite sure that it was not picking up radio or mains input. So, what was it picking up? With magnets as the key component, it seems clear that it is the zero-point energy field which is being accessed, but clearly, the access represents a vanishingly small percentage of the actual power available.

To operate the device, the switch is left in the open position, the magnets are moved slightly apart and the sliding coil set into various positions with a wait of several minutes between adjustments. The magnets are then separated still further and the coils moved again. This process is repeated until at a critical separation of the magnets, a voltage is developed. The switch is now closed and the process continued more slowly. The voltage then builds up to a maximum which is then maintained indefinitely. The position of the apparatus in the room and the orientation of the device had no effect on the output.

The magnets were selected to be as nearly equal in strength as possible and the resistance of the magnet and coil were checked after winding to make sure they were as nearly equal as possible (about 0.33 ohms).

As far as I am aware, nobody has managed to produce a successful replication of either of the Hans Coler devices, which is a pity since it seems clear that these devices have the potential to indicate the nature of the zero-point energy field and possibly, how it may be tapped efficiently.

A very neat construction of the Coler ‘Magnetstromapparat’ by an unknown German experimenter is shown below - I’m afraid without permission as I have no idea who he is or how to contact him to ask his permission. The quality of workmanship is impressive and the result is a very professional looking device. Notice the sliding coil arrangement at the bottom left with one coil being positioned closely inside another and held in place where the experimenter chooses:
Thomas Trawoeger. One thing which is quite certain, and that is the fact that at this point in time, our technical know-how has not yet encompassed the zero-point energy field properly. It is by no means obvious how the Hans Coler device operates, and if we understood the technology properly, we would be able to say with certainty, exactly how and why it operates, and ways to improve it would be obvious. As it is, all we can do is look at it and wonder, possibly try a few experiments, but the bottom line is that we do not yet understand it. This is the normal situation in the early days of any new field of technology.

It is also quite usual for pioneers in any new field to encounter a good deal of opposition, mistrust, and generally disheartening treatment from other people. That is certainly the case for Thomas Trawoeger from Austria, who has progressed well in the passive energy field. He has suffered repeated web-based attacks with his display material being destroyed and web sites being made inoperable.

So, what makes some people so afraid of Thomas? The answer is that he is experimenting with shapes. That doesn’t sound too terrible does it? Well, it certainly bothers some people, which suggests that he must be on the verge of uncovering a mechanism for drawing serious amounts of power from the zero-point energy field.
Thomas is by no means the first person to examine this area, but he is one of the first to consider drawing serious amounts of electrical energy from the local environment using shape and an appropriate detector. Obviously, this is the same area that Hans Coler was investigating, and it appears that Thomas has managed to tap a continuous 8 watts of electrical energy using a wholly passive device.

As we are not all that familiar with this type of technology, we tend to dismiss it as being a “crackpot” area, not worthy of investigation by serious scientists. It is actually, very far from being that in reality, and it just indicates our serious lack of technical understanding if we dismiss it out of hand. Two hundred years ago, the idea of a television set would definitely have been considered a “crackpot” pipe dream, far, far away from reality. Today, any schoolchild would be horrified at the thought of a TV set being considered “crackpot”. So, what has changed? Only our level of technology, nothing else. In another two hundred years time, when the zero-point energy field is fully understood, people will look back with a smile at the thought of people like us who didn’t know how to draw any amount of energy, freely from the environment, and they will laugh at the thought of burning a fossil fuel to produce energy from a chemical reaction. That, of course, does not help us at all in this time of our ignorance, and we still have to deal with the sort of people who thought that the horse-drawn cart would never be superseded.

The scientific method has been established for a long time now. Essentially, observations are made, experiments are performed and a theory is produced which fits all of the known facts. If additional facts are discovered, then the theory needs to be modified or replaced by another which includes all of the new facts. Established scientists find it difficult to adhere to the scientific principle. They are afraid of losing their reputation, their job or their funding and so are reluctant to investigate any new facts which indicate that some of their best-loved theories need to be revised. Fortunately, not being in the business, we can take new facts on board without any problem. In the light of what certain shapes do, this is just as well.

Let us see if we can put this in perspective. Consider an intelligent, well-educated person living several hundred years ago. Looking skyward at night, he sees the stars. At that time, the theory was that the stars were fixed to a ‘celestial sphere’ which rotates around the Earth. That was a perfectly good theory which matched the known facts of the time. In fact, the concept matches the observed facts so well that some people who teach Astro Navigation to sailors still find it to be useful in teaching the subject today. If you told the average person of those days, that the stars were not very small but very large indeed, that the Earth is orbiting around the Sun and in fact, the Sun is one of those ‘tiny’ stars, then you would have been considered one of the ‘lunatic fringe’.

Next, if you were to tell that person that there were invisible forces passing through the walls of his house and even through him, he would most certainly rate you as a bona fide member of the ‘lunatic fringe’. However, if you then took several compasses into his house and demonstrated that they all pointed in the same direction, he might start to wonder.

Now, just to really establish your membership of the ‘lunatic fringe’ you tell him that one day there will be invisible rays passing through the walls of all buildings and that these rays will allow you to watch things happening on the other side of the world. Finally, to complete the job, you tell him that there is a substance called uranium, and if he were to carry a piece around in his pocket, it would kill him by destroying his body with invisible rays.

Today, school children are aware of, the Solar System, magnetic lines of force, television and X-rays. Further, as the scientific theory has caught up, these children are not considered part of the ‘lunatic fringe’ but this knowledge is expected of them as a matter of course. The only thing which has changed is our understanding of the observed universe.

At the present time, we are faced with a number of observations which do not fit in with the scientific theories of some of the current educational establishments. If we consider these things seriously, we run the risk of being considered part of the ‘lunatic fringe’ until such time as scientific theory catches up with us again. So be it, it is better to face the facts than to pretend that they don’t exist.

Present theory has worked well enough up to now, but we need to take on board the fact that since it does not cover all of the facts, it needs to be extended or modified. So, what observed facts are causing a problem? Well:

1. In Quantum Mechanics it has been found that some pairs of particles are linked together no matter how far apart they are physically. If you observe the state of one of the pair, the state of the other changes instantly. This happens far, far faster than the speed of light and that does not fit neatly into present theory.
2. If a substance is cooled down to Absolute Zero temperature, it should be completely motionless, but that is not the case as movement can be observed. This movement is caused by external energy flowing into the frozen material. That energy, observed at Absolute Zero temperature is called ‘Zero-Point Energy’. So where does that fit into the theory?

3. There are several devices which are self-powered and which are capable of powering external loads. These things appear to act in defiance to the Law of Conservation of Energy.

4. The Aspden Effect (described below) indicates that current theory does not cover all of the facts.

5. It is now known and fully accepted by science that more than 80% of our universe is composed of matter and energy which we cannot see.

6. Even though our Sun is losing some five tons of mass per second, it radiates more energy than can be accounted for by the fusion of the amount of matter which would cause this loss of mass.

7. The inner core of the Earth is hotter than present theory would expect it to be.

These things indicate that there is something in our universe which is not properly covered by current theory. The present theory thinks of space as being a volume which contains no matter, other than perhaps, a tiny amount of inter-sterllar dust. And while space can be traversed by radio waves and many other types of radiation, it is essentially empty.

This concept is definitely not correct. All of the odd observed facts suddenly fit in if we understand that there is an additional field which streams through all of space and passes unnoticed through all matter. This field is composed of particles so tiny that they make an electron appear enormous. These particles may in fact be the ‘strings’ of String Theory. What is sure, is that this stream of matter contains virtually unlimited energy.

It is the energy seen at Absolute Zero as it is continually streaming in from outside the cold area. It flows to us from every direction and the sun being a major source of it, augments the flow we receive during the daytime. This accounts for the variations seen by T. Henry Moray during the night when the energy he was picking up decreased somewhat.

This matter stream acts like a very dense gas except for the fact that effects in it have effectively zero propagation time. This accounts for the widely separated particles having what appears to be simultaneous reactions to a stimulus. Einstein’s idea of the speed of light being an absolute maximum is definitely wrong, as has been demonstrated in the laboratory.

In the early stages of investigating a new field, it can be quite difficult to work out how to approach it, especially if the field is entirely invisible and can’t be felt. The same situation was encountered in the early days of magnetism as lines of magnetic force are not visible and cannot be felt. However, when it was observed that iron was affected by magnetism, a mechanism was discovered for displaying where the invisible lines are located, by the use of iron filings. Interestingly, the presence of an iron filing alters the lines of magnetic force in the area as the lines “have a preference for” flowing through the iron. Also, the iron filings used in school demonstrations do not show the actual lines of magnetic force correctly as they themselves become tiny magnets which alter the lines of force which they are supposed to be showing.

We are still in the early stages of investigating the Zero-Point Energy field, so we have to consider anything which has an effect on this invisible field. One observed effect was found by Harold Aspden and has become known as the ‘Aspden Effect’. Harold was running tests not related to this subject. He started an electric motor which had a rotor mass of 800 grams and recorded the fact that it took an energy input of 300 joules to bring it up to its running speed of 3,250 revolutions per minute when it was driving no load.

The rotor having a mass of 800 grams and spinning at that speed, its kinetic energy together with that of the drive motor is no more than 15 joules, contrasting with the excessive energy of 300 joules needed to get it rotating at that speed. If the motor is left running for five minutes or more, and then switched off, it comes to rest after a few seconds. But, the motor can then be started again (in the same or opposite direction) and brought up to speed with only 30 joules provided that the time lapse between stopping and restarting is no more than a minute or so. If there is a delay of several minutes, then an energy input of 300 joules is needed to get the rotor spinning again.
This is not a transient heating phenomenon. At all times the bearing housings feel cool and any heating in the drive motor would imply an increase of resistance and a build-up of power to a higher steady state condition. The experimental evidence is that there is something unseen, which is put into motion by the machine rotor. That “something” has an effective mass density 20 times that of the rotor, but it is something that can move independently and its movement can take several minutes to decay, while in contrast, the motor comes to rest in a few seconds.

Two machines of different rotor size and composition reveal the phenomenon and tests indicate variations with time of day and compass orientation of the spin axis. One machine, the one incorporating weaker magnets, showed evidence of gaining magnetic strength during the tests which were repeated over a period of several days.

Nikola Tesla found that uni-directional electric pulses of very short duration (less than one millisecond) cause shockwaves in this medium. These Radiant Energy waves passed through all materials and if they strike any metal object, they generate electrical currents between the metal and ground. Tesla used these waves to light glass globes which had just one metal plate. These lights do not have to be near the source of the Radiant Energy waves. He discovered many other features of these ‘longitudinal’ waves but one which is of particular interest is that when using his famous Tesla Coil, the waves produced visible streamers which showed what they were doing. What they were doing was running up the outside of the long inner wire coil, not through the wire, mark you, but along the outside of the coil, and when they reached the end of the coil, they continued on out into the air. Interestingly, Tesla believed that this flow of energy “preferred to run along the corrugations of the outside of the coil”. That is to say, somewhat like magnetic lines showing a preference for running through iron, this energy field shows a preference for flowing along certain physical shapes.

Thomas Henry Moray developed equipment which could tap up to fifty kilowatts of power from this field. There are two very interesting facts about Moray’s demonstrations: Firstly, the valves which he used to interact with the field, had a corrugated cylindrical inner electrode - an interesting shape considering Tesla’s opinion on the corrugated outer surface of his coil. Secondly, Moray frequently demonstrated publicly that the power obtained by his equipment could flow uninterrupted through sheet glass while powering lightbulbs. Quite apart from demonstrating that the power was definitely not conventional electricity, it is very interesting to note that this power can flow freely through materials. I venture to suggest that Moray’s power was not flowing through the wires of his apparatus but rather it was flowing along the outside of the wires, or perhaps more accurately, flowing along near the wires.

Edwin Gray snr. managed to draw large amounts of power from a special tube. The tube contained a spark gap (like that used by Tesla) and those sparks produced Radiant Energy waves in the Zero-Point Energy field. He managed to collect energy from these waves, very interestingly, by using perforated (or mesh) cylinders of copper surrounding the spark gap. His 80 horsepower electric motor (and/or other equipment such as lightbulbs) was powered entirely from energy drawn from the copper cylinders while all of the electrical energy taken from the driving battery was used solely to generate the sparks.

It is very interesting to note that Tesla, Moray and Gray all indicate that corrugated or rough-surface cylinders seem to direct the flow of this energy. Aspden also indicates that once the field is set in motion in any locality, it tends to continue flowing for some time after the influence which is directing it is removed.

Please remember that we are starting to examine a new field of science, and while we know a very limited amount about it at this point in time, at a later date, every schoolchild will be completely familiar with it and find it hard to believe that we knew so little about it, at the start of the twenty-first century. So, at this time, we are trying to understand how energy can be extracted from this newly discovered field. The indications are that the physical shape of some objects can channel this energy.

If you think about it, you suddenly realise that we are already familiar with shape being important in focusing energy. Take the case of a magnifying glass. When the sun is high in the sky, if a magnifying glass is placed in just the right position and turned in just the right direction, then it can start a fire. If the principles behind what is being done are not understood, then the procedure sounds like witchcraft:

1. Make a specially shaped object with curved faces, out of a transparent material
2. Discover the ‘focal-length’ of the object
3. Wait until Noon
4. Place some kindling on the ground
5. Position the object so that it looks directly at the sun
6. The kindling will catch light without you even having to touch it.
Sounds like something out of a book on magic, doesn’t it? Well, you need to know all about that if you want to pass any basic physics examination, and it comes in under the title of “Optics”. Please notice that the shape of the lens is vital: it must have a convex face on both sides. Also, the positioning is vital, the lens must be exactly its focal length away from the kindling material: a little too near or a little too far away and it just does not work. Magic? Well it may seem like it, but no, it is just scientific understanding of the nature of radiation from the sun.

Take the case of a satellite dish. This familiar object needs to be an exact shape to work well. It also needs to be made of a material which reflects high-frequency radio waves. Make one out of wood and it will look just the same but it will not work as the TV transmission will pass straight through the wood and not be reflected on to the pick-up sensor connected to the television set.

However, obvious and all as this is, it still did not cut any ice with the patent office in Czechoslovakia on the 4th November 1949. A radio engineer called Karel Drbal turned up with a patent application for a cardboard pyramid shape which kept razor blades sharp and was promptly told to get lost. The patent authorities demanded that he have a theory to show how the device worked. Karel was not particularly put out, and spent years investigating before he determined a theoretical basis for the device. He returned to the patent office, much to the disbelief of the Chief Patent Officer. He was granted his patent, not because his theory was compelling, but because the Chief Patent Officer took a pyramid home and tested it with his own razor blades. When his practical tests confirmed that the pyramid did exactly what Karel claimed, he was granted Patent No. 91304, “Method of Maintaining Razor Blades and the Shape of Straight Razors” and here is a translation:

**Republic of Czechoslovakia**

**Office For Patents And Inventions**

**Published August, 1959**

**Patent File Number 91304**

The right to use this invention is the property of the State according to Section 3, Paragraph G, Number 34/1957

Karel Drbal, Prague

Method of Maintaining Razor Blades and the Shape of Straight Razors.

Submitted 4 November, 1949(P2399-49)

Patent valid from 1 April, 1952

The invention relates to the method of maintaining of razor blades and straight razors sharp without an auxiliary source of energy. To sharpen the blades therefore, no mechanical, thermal, chemical or electrical (from an artificial source) means are being used. There are various mechanical sharpening devices being used up to now, to sharpen used razor blades. The blade is sharpened by crude application of sharpening material, which always results in certain new wear of the blade during the sharpening process. Furthermore, it is known that the influence of an artificial magnetic field improves the sharpening of razor blades and straight razors, if their blades are laid in the direction of the magnetic lines.

According to this invention, the blade is placed in the earth’s magnetic field under a hollow pyramid made of dielectric material such as hard paper, paraffin paper, hard cardboard, or some plastic. The pyramid has an opening in its base through which the blade is inserted. This opening can be square, circular, or oval. The most suitable pyramid is a four sided one with a square base, where one side is conveniently equal to the height of the pyramid, multiplied by $\pi/2$. (which is $3.14 / 2$). For example, for the height of 10 cm, the
side of 15.7 cm is chosen. The razor blade of a straight razor is placed on the support made also of dielectric material, same as the pyramid, or other such as cork, wood, or ceramics, paraffin, paper, etc. Its height is chosen between 1/5 and 1/3 of the height of the pyramid, this support rests also on a plane made of dielectric material. The size of this support should be chosen as to leave the sharp edges free. Its height could vary from the limits stated above. Although it is not absolute necessary, it is recommended that the blade be placed on the support with its sharp edges facing West or East respectively, leaving its side edges as well as its longitudinal axis oriented in the North / South direction. In other words to increase the effectiveness of the device it is recommended lie in essence in the direction of the magnetic lines of the horizontal component of the earth's magnetism. This position improves the performance of the device, it is not however essential for the application of the principle of this invention. After the blade is properly positioned, it is covered by the pyramid placed in such a way that it's side walls face North, South, East, and West, while its edges point towards North-West, South-West, South-East, and North-East.

It is beneficial to leave a new blade in the pyramid one to two weeks before using it. It is essential to place it there immediately after the first shave, and not the old, dull one. But it is possible to use an old one, if it is properly resharpened. The blade placed using the method above is left unobstructed until the next shave. The west edge should always face West. It improves the sharpening effect.

Example: When this device was used, 1778 shaves were obtained using using 16 razor blades, which is 111 shaves per blade on the average. The brand used was "Dukat Zlato" made in Czechoslovakia. The lowest count was 51, the highest was 200. It is considered very easy to achieve up to 50 shaves on the average. (for a medium hard hair).

The following shows how the invention could save both valuable material and money. One of the razor blades mentioned above, weighs 0.51 grams. We will consider 50 shaves on average when placed in the pyramid against 5 shaves when it is not. It is obvious that the number of shaves, degree of wear, and the ability to regenerate the dull edge depends on the quality of the material, quality of sharpening process, and hardness. ....given that the numbers are averages and could be in fact much better. In the course of the year one therefore uses 73 razor blades without the aid of the pyramid while only eight razor blades while using the pyramid. The resulting annual saving would be 65 razor blades or 33.15 grams of steel per person.

Only the pyramid shape has been used for this invention, but this invention is not limited to this shape, as it can cover other geometric shapes made of dielectric material that was used in accordance with the invention. And that this shape also causes regeneration of sharp edges of shaving blades by lowering of stresses and reducing the number of defects in the grids of crystal units, in other words recovering and renewing the mechanical and physical properties of the blade.

This is interesting, as it confirms by independent test that a pyramid shape produces an effect, even if it is not possible to say with absolute certainty what exactly the effect is and how exactly the pyramid shape manipulates that energy.

Thomas Trawoeger has produced a video of a pyramid which he constructed. The video commentary is in German and it shows a computer fan being operated when connected to his pyramid which looks like this:
Sceptics will immediately say that as there are wires connected to the device, that the power for the fan is being fed through those wires, even though they appear to be connected to monitoring equipment. This is possible, but in my opinion, it is not actually the case. The pick-up used is shown here:

It should be remembered that these pictures are quite old and all inventors keep working on their inventions in an effort to improve their operation and to investigate the effects caused by alterations. At the close of 2007 the design has progressed considerably and now features a number of most unusual things ranging from construction to orientation. The [http://www.overunity.com/index.php/topic,695.300.html](http://www.overunity.com/index.php/topic,695.300.html) forum is working on replicating this design thanks to the generosity of Thomas Traweoger who speaks German and the exceptional work of Stefan Hartmann who has produced an English translation and who hosts the web site.

The following is an attempt to present the basic information from that forum in a clear and concise manner, but I recommend that you visit and contribute to the forum if you decide to experiment with this design.

The frame of the pyramid is not the same shape as the well-known Egyptian pyramids and has a sloping face some 5% longer than those in Egypt. The materials used in constructing the pyramid are very important. The frame is made of 20 mm x 20 mm x 2 mm square-section steel tube. While the exact size of the pyramid is not critical, the exact proportions are critical. The base must be exactly square, with each side of the base being exactly the same length, 1 metre in this case. The sloping sides are exactly the same length as the base pieces being 1 metre long also. Eight one-metre lengths of steel section will therefore be needed for building the frame.

The sides of the pyramid need to be covered with a rigid sheet and here again, the material used is critical, with only gypsum/paper boards (plasterboard with no foil) being satisfactory - other materials just don’t work. If no sides are added, then the pyramid is very difficult to adjust to get proper operation. When the frame has been constructed, its is positioned in a most unusual way being forty-five degrees away from the conventional positioning of a pyramid. This sets this pyramid so that one pair of corners face North - South, and the frame should be connected to a good electrical ground as shown here:
The pick-up is constructed from 12 mm outside diameter copper pipe and fittings and is hard soldered together. It has an overall size of 120 mm x 100 mm hard soldered together as shown here:

This frame of copper piping is not assembled as shown straight off as there is a requirement for a long graphite rod, 2 to 3 mm in diameter, to be positioned vertically inside each vertical leg of this frame and that can’t be done after assembly. So the bottom section is assembled as one piece, and the top section is assembled separately with the graphite rods sticking down out of the T-sections, held in place by their wires and insulating plugs. The graphite rods can be bought from art materials supply shops.
The very fine filter-grade quartz sand filling for the tubes is inserted and the graphite rods carefully positioned so that they do not touch the side walls of the vertical copper tubes, and the two parts joined by hard soldering:
The left hand side hole in the copper pipe is used to inject a 5% salt/water solution, using a hypodermic syringe, until the water starts to come out of the hole at the right hand side. The right hand side hole is 5 mm lower down than the one on the left.

Next, the wires are bent around to produce a 9-turn coil with a 25 mm diameter, around the vertical copper pipes. The windings are in opposite directions on the opposite sides of the frame:

Next, a ten-plate capacitor is made from copper sheets 1 mm thick. As copper is very expensive, the copper plates can be produced from spare lengths of copper pipe, cut along the axis and flattened carefully to produce a smooth, unmarked surface 70 mm x 35 mm in size. The plates are stacked and accurately aligned, and a hole is drilled 1 mm off-centre. Then each alternate plate is turned around to produce two sets of plates bolted together with a 6 mm diameter plastic bolt, 1 mm thick plastic washers and a plastic nut. A plastic threaded rod and a plastic nut can be used instead of a plastic bolt. Because the hole is not quite central, the plates stick out at each end, giving clearance for attaching the plates together with the copper wire coming out of the copper pipe framework:

**Capacitor Construction**

- Copper wire soldered to copper plate
- Plastic bolt
- Plastic washer 1 mm thick
- 1 mm gap
The capacitor is positioned inside the copper pipe frame and held in place by the strength of the 2.5 mm thick copper wire coil around the vertical pipes in the frame:

The pick-up sensor is now attached to the pyramid frame. Using a non-conductive cord, it is suspended by the top lug and its orientation controlled using the lower two lugs. The positioning in the pyramid is unusual, being North-East to South-West, as is shown here:

Next, a second capacitor is constructed from 1 mm thick copper sheet. Again, sections of copper pipe can be used after being cut along their long axis and carefully opened out and flattened. This capacitor is just two plates 140 mm x 25 mm spaced 1 mm apart (one inch = 25.4 mm).
A voltmeter can be used to check the exact alignment of the pyramid. There is a video (with a commentary in German, at http://video.google.com.au/videoplay?docid=-4610658249377461379 showing an earlier version of this pyramid set-up driving an electrical fan taken from a computer). If this device interests you, then you should join the enthusiast research and development forum mentioned earlier.

**The Joe Cell.** In my opinion, the device called the “Joe Cell” is one of the most difficult devices for any experimenter to get operating properly. It is a passive device for concentrating energy drawn from the local environment and it takes great perseverance and patience to use one to power a vehicle. However, a few people have had success with these devices, so here is some practical information on the Joe Cell.

In 1992 in Australia, Graham Coe, Peter Stevens and Joe Nobel developed previously patented units which are now known by the generic name of the “Joe Cell”. Peter introduced Joe to Graham and they rehashed the patented cells which Graham knew about, using materials from the Local Dairy Production Facility NORCO. A two hour long video showing the Joe Cell was produced by Peter and Joe and the unit shown operating in the video was attached to Peter’s Mitsubishi Van. Joe had his equipment stolen and his dog killed, so he decided to keep a low profile, moving out into the wilds and not generating much publicity, in spite of fronting the two hour video recording. A search on the Joe Cell will locate many videos on the subject. This document is an attempt to provide detailed information on a recent Cell built by Bill Williams in the USA and the subsequent constructional advice which has arisen from his experiences.

First, you need to understand that, at this point in time, building and using a Joe Cell of any variety, is more of an art than a science. It might best be explained by saying that creating building plans for it is rather like producing plans for painting a copy of the famous Mona Lisa painting. The instructions for the painting might be:

1. Buy a canvas, if one is not available, then here is how to make one.
2. Buy some oil-based paints, if none are available, then here is how you make them
3. Buy an artists brush, palette and charcoal, if none are available then this is how you make them.
4. Here is how you paint the picture.
Even given the most complete and detailed instructions, many people, including myself, are unlikely to produce a top-quality copy of the Mona Lisa. It is not that the instructions are lacking in any way, it is the skill and ability of the person attempting the task which are not up to the job. Please understand that not everybody who builds a Joe Cell will have instant success. Some people will get perfect results straight off, but others will have to go through a process of persevering and tinkering, and some will give up before they are successful.

This applies to any category of Joe Cell. A Joe Cell is capable of powering a vehicle engine without needing to use conventional fossil fuel. So, what does the engine run on? I suggest that it runs on a newly discovered energy field not yet understood by mainstream science. In another couple of hundred years time, it will be a routine subject which every child in school will be expected to understand, but today it looks like the ‘witchcraft’ of the magnifying glass starting a fire.

It is not unusual for newcomers to the subject to get confused by the Cell itself. The Cell consists of a metal container with tubes inside it. The container has what looks like ordinary water in it and it sometimes has a DC voltage applied across it. This causes many people to immediately jump to the false conclusion that it is an electrolyser. It isn’t. The Joe Cell does not convert water to hydrogen and oxygen gasses to be burnt in the engine. The water in a Joe Cell does not get used up no matter how far the vehicle travels. It is possible to run a car on the gasses produced by electrolysis of water, but the Joe Cell has absolutely nothing whatsoever to do with electrolysis. The Joe Cell acts as a concentrator for a new energy field, in the same way that a magnifying glass acts as a concentrator for sunlight, and both have to be done just right for them to work.

At the present time, there are at least fifteen people who have built Joe Cells and managed to power vehicles using them. Several of these people use their Joe Cell-powered vehicles on a daily basis. Most of these are in Australia. The first Cell-powered vehicle was driven some 2,000 kilometers across Australia.

Disclaimer: The remainder of this document contains considerable specific detail on the design and construction of a Joe Cell. This presentation is for information purposes only and must not be construed as a recommendation that you actually physically construct a device of this nature. The author stresses that he is in no way liable for any damage, loss or injury caused by your future actions. It should also be borne in mind that any alteration to an automotive vehicle, such as changing the fuel on which it runs to hydroxy gas, natural gas, Joe Cell energy, or anything else, might void the vehicle insurance unless the insurer is informed beforehand and agrees to continue insurance cover on the modified vehicle.

In broad outline, a Joe Cell is a 316L-grade stainless steel container, with a central cylindrical electrode, surrounded by a series of progressively larger stainless steel cylinders, and filled with specially treated water. This arrangement of steel shells and treated water acts as a focusing mechanism for the energy field used to power the vehicle.

The Cell itself is made up with the battery negative taken to the central electrode. The connection to this stainless steel electrode is made at the bottom with the electrical connection passing through the base of the cell container. This obviously needs careful construction to prevent any leakage of the conditioned water or the energy focused by the Cell.

Surrounding the central electrode are two or three cylinders made of either solid or mesh stainless steel. These cylinders are not connected electrically and are held in position by insulating material which needs to be selected carefully as the insulation is not just electrical insulation but is also energy-field insulation. The outside stainless steel cylinder forms the container for the cell:
The picture above shows the general construction of a cell of this type although, unlike the description below, this one does not have the lip which is used for attaching the lid. It is included here just as a general illustration of how the cylinders are positioned relative to each other.

The following information on constructing a Joe Cell, is broken down into the following sections:

1. The Materials needed for construction.
2. Constructing the Cell
3. Getting the Cell working
4. Installing the Cell in the vehicle
5. Getting the vehicle running
6. Suppliers
7. Workarounds

The materials needed for construction.

Various vehicles can be powered by a Joe Cell. If you have not built and used a Joe Cell before, then it is worth using the easiest type to convert. The most suitable is an older type vehicle with no computer control of the combustion, a carburettor and a water-cooled engine. If the engine block is aluminium rather than steel then that is also a slight additional advantage.

The Cell is built from stainless steel pipes. The lower the magnetism of the finished unit the better, so 316L grade stainless steel is preferred. However, there is no need to become obsessed with this as most varieties of stainless steel can be persuaded to operate. The length of the tubing is not critical, but about 8 inches (200 mm) is a reasonable choice for the overall length of the inner tubes. The outer pipe which forms the casing, needs to be about 10 inches in length so that there is clearance above and below the inner pipes.
The innermost pipe diameter is 2 inches (50 mm) and the others can be 3 inch, 4 inch, and 5 inches in diameter as that creates a gap of just under half an inch between the pipes, which is a suitable spacing. The wall thickness of the pipes is not critical but it needs to be a practical size with 1 mm being the minimum thickness with the most common thickness being 1/16 inch (1.6 mm or 0.0625 inch). It is important that the walls of the outermost cylinder are completely rigid, so using a greater thickness for that cylinder is an advantage.

Some stainless steel plate is needed for the ends of the outer cylinder. Ideally, the top and base should not overhang the sides but that is difficult to achieve if the cell is to be airtight, so the end pieces will need to be slightly larger than the outside tube and 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick sheet is suggested. The base size is 5 inch square, or possibly slightly larger to facilitate cutting a circular shape out of it. The lid and lip blanks will need to be 6 inch squares, or again, slightly larger to facilitate cutting circles out of them.

The plinth component at the base of the 2-inch inside tube needs to be cut from a piece of stainless steel. If the option of machining the whole plinth as a single piece is chosen, then the piece of 316L stainless steel needed to do this will be substantial, perhaps a section of solid bar 2.25 inches (57 mm) in diameter and some 3 inches (75 mm) long. If the easier and cheaper option of using a standard half-inch (12 mm) 316L stainless steel bolt (if one is available) is selected, then a piece of 316L stainless steel some 2.25 inches (57 mm), or slightly larger, 2 inch (50 mm) thick will be needed. The exact details of this will need to be discussed with the person who will undertake the machining as practical issues come into play, and the optimum size will depend to a certain extent on the lathe being used. If a screw thread is being machined on the spigot of the plinth, then the thread should match the locally available nuts, unless nuts are also being made up.

Some additional steel will be needed for constructing a mounting bracket inside the engine compartment, also, some double-laminated hessian sacking (“burlap”) and about 36 inches (1 m) of half-inch (12 mm) wooden dowel to use in the mounting bracket.

Some Ultra-High Molecular Weight Polyethylene material as found in kitchen chopping boards will be needed to insulate between the engine mounting and the cell and between the inside tube’s plinth and the base plate.

A length of aluminium tubing typically three quarters of an inch (20 mm) in diameter will be needed for connecting the Cell to the engine, and a short length of strong, clear plastic pipe for the actual final connection to the engine, needed to prevent an electrical short-circuit between the Cell and the engine. This plastic pipe needs to be a tight push-fit as clamping clips are not used. A stainless steel compression fitting to fit the pipe is needed to make the seal between it and the lid of the Cell. It is very important that this fitting is stainless steel as other materials such as brass will prevent the cell from operating. The wrong material for this fitting has been the reason for many Cells not operating. Neither brass nor any other material (other than stainless steel) should not be used anywhere in the construction, whether it be for nuts, bolts, fittings, metal connections, or anything else.

Ideally, natural rubber with no additives or colouring, failing that “Buna-n” (nitrile rubber) o-ring is needed for inter-cylinder bracing and some sheet to make the circular lid gasket. Also some white marine-grade Sikaflex 291 bedding compound. Natural rubber with no colouring or additives is the best insulator and should be used if at all possible. After extended use, Bill has found that teflon spacers work better than the rubber and so has switched to teflon.

Seven or eight stainless steel cones will be needed for the water-conditioning process. These are usually manufactured for machines which separate cream from milk and it is possible to buy them via eBay from time to time. If none are available, then it is perfectly possible to construct them yourself.

There will also be minor items like a few bolts, lengths of electrical wire and the like. To summarise this then:

Stainless steel pipes in 316L grade steel:
- 5-inch (125 mm) diameter 10 inches (250 mm) long, one off
- 4-inch (100 mm) diameter 8 inches (200 mm) long, one off
- 3-inch (75 mm) diameter 8 inches (200 mm) long, one off
- 2-inch (50 mm) diameter 8 inches (200 mm) long, one off

Stainless steel plate in 316L grade steel:
5.25 inch (133 mm) square 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick, one off
6.25 inch (157 mm) square 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick, two off
3 inch (75 mm) strip, 16 gauge thick, two feet (600 mm) long
One plinth blank as described above, size depending on the lathe and style of construction.

Stainless steel bolts:
1/4 inch (6 mm) diameter, 3/4 inch (18 mm) long, twelve off with matching nuts
One 1/2 inch (12 mm) diameter, 2.25 inch (57 mm) long with two nuts and three washers

Aluminium tubing 3/4 inch (20 mm) in diameter, 3 feet (1 m) long
Plastic tubing to form a tight fit on the aluminium tubing and some 4 inches (100 mm) long
One stainless steel compression fitting to seal the pipe-to-lid connection

Natural rubber with no additives, (or “Buna-n” insulation if natural rubber just cannot be got):
O-ring tubing, 3 feet (1 m) long
Sheet, 6 inch (150 mm) square, one off

Miscellaneous:
White Sikaflex 291 bedding compound (available from ships chandlers), one off
Double-laminated hessian sacking (“burlap”) 1 foot (300 mm) wide, 6 feet (2 m) long
Wood (ramin) dowel three quarter inch (18 mm) diameter, 36 inches (1 m) long
UHMWP plastic food-chopping board, one off
Sundry connecting wire and ordinary engine compartment mounting bolts, and the like
Stainless steel cones and canister as discussed below

Don’t polish the tubes and never, ever use sandpaper or wet-and-dry paper on any of these components as the result is scored surfaces and each score reduces the effectiveness of the Cell.

**Constructing the Cell**

The Joe Cell looks like a very simple steel construction which could easily be made by any amateur. While it can be constructed by an amateur, it is not a simple construction as it is important to keep any acquired magnetic properties to a minimum. Consequently, it is suggested that an angle grinder is not used for any of the metalwork, and hand tools used for cutting and shaping. Also, if the cutting tool has previously been used to cut anything other than stainless steel it should not be used, or at the very least, thoroughly cleaned before use as contamination of your Cell components through particles of another material is critical and can prevent the Cell from working. It should be stressed again that the materials used in the construction of a Cell are absolutely critical if success is to be assured. If you have an experienced friend who has made many Cells work, then you can experiment with different materials, but if this is your first Cell and you are working on your own, then use the exact materials shown here and don’t end up with a Cell which doesn’t work.

Bill Williams started building a 5 cylinder cell comprising 1”, 2”, 3”, 4” and outer tube 5” but Peter Stevens later advised him to remove the 1” centre tube and go with only two neutrals being the 3” and 4” tubes as the 1-inch diameter is too small for optimum energy pick-up.

Please accept my apologies if the following suggestions for construction seem too basic and simple. The reason for this is that this document will be read by people whose first language is not English and who will find it much easier if plenty of detail is provided.

The first step is to construct the base plate, used to form the bottom of the container. Cut the largest diameter pipe to a 10-inch (250 mm) length. (If you have difficulty in marking the cutting line, try wrapping a piece of paper around it, keeping the paper flat against the tube and making sure that the straight edge of the paper aligns exactly along the overlap, then mark along the edge of the paper). Place the pipe on one of the end blanks and mark the blank around the bottom of the pipe. Cut the blank to form a circular plate which sits flush with the bottom of the tube:
The next step is to mount the innermost 2-inch (50 mm) diameter pipe rigidly to the base plate. Cut the pipe to an 8-inch (200 mm) length. The pipe mounting needs to be exactly in the centre of the plate and exactly at right angles to it. This is probably where the most accurate work needs to be done. To complicate matters, the mounting needs to be connected electrically outside the base, be fully insulated from the base plate, and make a completely watertight fit with the base plate. For that reason, the arrangement looks a little complicated. Start by drilling a three quarter inch (18 mm) hole in the centre of the base plate. Construct and fit two insulating washers so that a half-inch stainless steel bolt will fit through the base plate while being securely insulated from it. The washers are made from Ultra-High Molecular Weight Polyethylene (plastic food-chopping boards are usually made from this material):

The washers which fit into the hole in the base plate need to be slightly less than half the thickness of the plate so that they do not actually touch when clamped tightly against the base plate, as shown in the lower part of the diagram. Cut another washer, using the full thickness of the plastic sheet. This will act as a spacer.

Next, the plinth for the central 2-inch diameter cylinder needs to be made. This is the only complicated component in the construction. It is possible to make this component yourself. The local university or technical college will often be willing to allow you to use their lathe and their staff will usually do the job for you or help you to do it yourself. Failing that, your local metal fabrication shop will certainly be able to do it for you. If all else fails and this equipment is just not available, then the ‘workarounds’ section below shows how to fabricate an alternative version which does not need a lathe.

A large piece of 316L stainless steel needs to be machined to produce the plinth shown below. The actual 2-inch diameter central cylinder needs to be a tight push-fit on the top of this component. To facilitate assembly, the central boss is given a slight chamfer which helps alignment when the tube is forced down on top of it. Peter Stevens recommends that tack welds (in stainless steel using a TIG welder) are used to connect the plinth to the outside of the cylinder. Three evenly-spaced vent holes are drilled in the plinth to allow the liquid inside the Cell circulate freely inside the central cylinder.
An alternative method of construction which does not call for such a large amount of machining is to machine the plinth to take a standard stainless steel bolt as shown here:
When assembled, the arrangement should look like this:
This arrangement looks more complicated than it really is. It is necessary to have a construction like this as we want to mount the innermost tube securely in a central vertical position, with the battery negative connected to the cylinder, by a connection which is fully insulated from the base plate and which forms a fully watertight seal with the base plate, and to raise the central cylinder about one inch (25 mm) above the base plate.

However, as the plastic washers would be affected by the heat when the base plate is joined to the outermost pipe, when all of the components shown have been prepared, they are taken apart so that the base plate can be fuse-welded to the outside tube. Unless you have the equipment for this, get your local steel fabrication workshop to do it for you. Be sure that you explain that it is not to be TIG welded, but fuse-welded and that the joint has to be fully watertight. At the same time, get them to fuse-weld a half-inch wide lip flush with the top edge of the tube. You cut this piece as a 6-inch (150 mm) circle with a 5-inch (125 mm) circular cut-out in the centre of it. When it is welded, it should look like this:
Cut a six-inch (150 mm) diameter lid out of 1/8 inch (3 mm) stainless steel. Cut a matching ring gasket of natural rubber (Buna-n material if natural rubber can't be obtained), place it on top of the flange with the lid on top of it and clamp the lid firmly down on the flange. Drill a hole to take a 1/4 inch (6 mm) stainless steel bolt, through the lid and the middle of the flange. Insert a bolt and tighten its nut to further clamp the lid in place. An alternative to this for the more experienced metalworker, is to drill a hole slightly smaller than the bolt, and when all holes have been drilled, remove the lid, enlarge the lid holes to allow free passage of the bolts, and cut a thread inside the flange holes which matches the thread on the bolts to be used. This gives a very neat, nut-free result, but it calls for a greater skill level and more tools.

If using nuts and bolts, drill a similar hole 180 degrees away and fasten a bolt through it. Repeat the process for the 90 degree and 270 degree points. This gives a lid which is held in place at its quarter points. You can now complete the job with either four more evenly-spaced bolts or eight more evenly-spaced bolts. The complete bolting for the twelve-bolt choice will look something like this when the cell is installed:

The lid can be finished off by drilling its centre to take the fitting for the aluminium pipe which will feed the output from the cell to the engine. This fitting, in common with every other fitting must be made of stainless steel.

The next step is to assemble the neutral pipes. Cut them to 8-inch (200 mm) lengths. These pipes are held in place by the natural rubber insulators. This material comes in an o-ring strip which is like a hosepipe with a large wall-thickness. The gap between the pipes will be approximately half an inch (12 mm), so cut each piece of pipe to a length which makes it a very tight fit in that gap. Cut six spacers, locate the 3-inch diameter pipe exactly over the inner pipe andpush three of them between the pipes, about a quarter of an inch from each end and evenly spaced 120 degrees apart around the circumference of the pipes. The hole through the centre of the insulating strip points towards the centre of the cell and the ends of the insulator pieces press against the cylinder walls. These pieces are not placed lengthwise:

Place similar insulators at the other end of the two-inch pipe, directly above the ones already in place. If you look down the length of the tubes, then only three of the six insulators should be seen if they are correctly
aligned. The spacers will be more effective if the ends are given a thin layer of the Sikaflex 291 bedding compound before the ends get compressed against the cylinder walls.

Do the same for the four-inch pipe, pushing tightly squeezed natural rubber insulators strips between the three-inch and four-inch pipes. Place them directly outside the insulators between the two-inch and three-inch pipes so that when viewed from the end, it looks as if the rubber forms a single strip running through the middle pipe:

Spark off each of the cylinders in the inner assembly. This is done by connecting a 12V battery negative to the inside surface (only) at the bottom of the tube and with a wire from the battery positive, sparking the outside surface of the cylinder at the top of the tube. Give each four sparks in rapid succession.

If you are using a bolt rather than a machined spigot, insert the stainless steel bolt and washer through the bottom of the base to the central pipe. Wedge the bolt in place by inserting a piece of the dowel, or some similar material into the centre of the 2-inch pipe and tape it temporarily in place. Alternatively, force the innermost cylinder tightly over the machined plinth. Turn the inner pipe assembly upside down and place the full-depth UMWP plastic washer on the threaded shaft. Apply a thin layer of white Sikaflex 291 bonding compound to the face of one of the shaped UMWP washers and place it on the threaded shaft with the bonding compound facing upwards.

Carefully clean the surface of the base plate of the outer casing around the central hole, both inside and outside. Under no circumstances use sandpaper or wet-and-dry paper, here or anywhere else, as these abrade and score the surface of the steel and have a major negative effect on the operation of the Cell. Carefully lower the 5-inch outer casing on to the assembly so that the threaded shaft goes through the central hole and the shaped washer fits tightly into the hole in the base of the outer housing. Apply a thin layer of the bonding compound to the face of the second shaped washer, place it over the shaft of the bolt and press it firmly into place to completely seal the hole in the base plate. Add a stainless steel washer and bolt and tighten the bolt to lock the assembly together. If using a bolt, a long-reach box spanner may be needed inside the central pipe for tightening the locking bolt. If one is not available, use a longer bolt through the washers, screw a second nut up on to the shank of the bolt, file two flats on the end of the bolt, clamp them in a vice to hold the bolt securely and tighten the locking nut. When the spare nut is unscrewed, it pushes any damaged fragments of the bolt thread back into place.

Finish the assembly by adding three further rubber insulators between the top of the 4-inch tube and the outer 5-inch casing. Use a thin layer of Sikaflex 291 bonding compound on the cut faces of the insulators as this improves the insulation. Line the new insulators up with the insulators already in place and make them a tight fit. These extra insulators support the end of the tube assembly and reduce the stress on the plinth fitting at the base of the central tube when the unit is subjected to knocks and vibration when the vehicle is in motion.
The construction of the basic unit is now complete, with the exception of the lid fitting for the aluminium pipe which feeds the engine. The construction so far has been straightforward engineering with little complication, but the remaining steps in getting the Cell powering a vehicle are not conventional engineering. If you do not feel confident about this construction, then advice and help can be got from the experienced members at the Yahoo Group http://groups.yahoo.com/group/joecellfreeenergydevice/ or alternatively, the companion Group http://groups.yahoo.com/group/JoesCell2 both of which are very active.

**Getting the Cell working**

The Cell is not just the container and the inner tubes. A major active ingredient of the “Cell” is the liquid placed inside the container. To a casual glance, the liquid appears to be water and loosely speaking it is water. However, water is one of the least understood substances on the planet. It can have many different molecular configurations which give it widely different characteristics. For example, in one configuration, it will actually burn, but this “burning” is nothing like the burning experienced in an ordinary log fire. The water flame is not hot and it is quite possible to hold your hand just over the flame without feeling any heat from it.

We do not want to “burn” the liquid in the Cell. The “conditioned water”, for want of a better description, is not consumed when a Cell powers an engine. Instead, the engine is powered by external energy flowing into it. Here, the Cell acts like a lens, concentrating the external energy and focusing it to flow along the aluminium pipe to the engine. This action is not unlike the way in which a magnifying glass gathers and concentrates the sun’s energy into a small area to raise the temperature there. The “conditioned water” in the cell, along with the materials and shapes in the Cell, cause the gathering and concentration of this external energy and channel it into the engine.

At this point in time, nobody knows for sure, what the energy is. Earlier, I called it the Zero-Point Energy field, but I have no direct evidence for that, some people call this energy “orgone”. Nobody knows exactly how this energy makes the engine run. Engines powered by this energy sound pretty much the same as when they are running on fossil fuels but they run a lot colder and it is usually necessary to advance the timing of the spark. These engines can tick over at a much lower rate than normal and they have much greater power than when running on fossil fuels.

Anyway, how do we get “conditioned water”? It can be generated inside the Cell, but as the conditioning process usually generates an unwanted residue on top of the water and on the bottom of the Cell, there is an advantage to do the conditioning in a separate container. If water conditioning is done in the Cell, then when the residue is removed, the Cell does not have the correct amount of water and needs to be topped up. That has to be done with non-conditioned water which promptly puts the Cell back to square one. So, use a
separate conditioning vat which contains considerably more water than the Cell needs. In the documentary video produced by Peter and Joe, the conditioning procedure is described in some detail.

Joe explains that he conditions the water by suspending an electrode array in the water and applying 12 volts DC to it. Using the water found local to Joe, the current is initially about 10 amps and if left overnight the current drops to anywhere between 2 amps and 4 amps. This indicates that his local water contains a large amount of dissolved material since completely pure water will carry almost no current when 12 volts DC is placed across it. It is almost impossible to get pure water as so many things dissolve in it. Raindrops falling through the atmosphere pass through various gasses and some of these dissolve in the droplets. If the pollution in the atmosphere is particularly bad, then the rain can become acidic and this “acid rain” can rot the trees and vegetation on which it falls. Water on and in the ground, picks up chemical elements from nearly everything with which it comes in contact, so water, any water, needs treatment to reach its “conditioned” state.

Joe’s conditioning electrode array is made up from truncated stainless steel cones, positioned vertically above one another. Joe describes it as being made up from seven cones (not strictly true) with the central cone connected to the battery positive and the top and bottom cones connected to the battery negative. That leaves two unconnected cones positioned between the positive and each of the two outer negative cones. His array looks like this:

What Joe does not mention, but what can be seen in the video, is that there is an eighth cone cut-down and tack-welded in an inverted position underneath the bottom cone:

The inverted cone section appears to project underneath the rim of the bottom cone by an amount of about one inch (25 mm), or perhaps slightly less:
The electrical straps connecting to the cones are insulated to prevent contact with either the other cones or the inside of the metal drum which Joe uses to hold the water being ‘conditioned’. He says that if this array is suspended in a tank of water (his happens to be a vertical metal cylinder - a significant shape) and provided with 12 volt DC electrical power for a few minutes, then the water becomes ‘charged’ as he expresses it. Although the water is supposedly clean, Joe gets gas bubbles coming off the surface of the water. These will explode if lit, so it is very important that this process is carried out in the open air and there is no possibility of the gas ponding on a ceiling.

Joe states that the cleaner the water the better the result. Also, the longer the array is immersed and powered up, the better the result. It is likely that the shape of his powered array is causing the energy field to flow through his water in a concentrated fashion. The water absorbs this energy, and the effect increases with the length of time it is being conditioned, until a maximum level is reached. The objective is to achieve unusually pure water in one of its least usual molecular configurations. The overall procedure is as follows:

1. A vertical stainless steel cylinder, with an open top, is obtained and filled with water. Joe uses a steel beer keg but he selects the keg very carefully indeed from a very large choice of kegs, and then cuts the top off it. There is no need to have such a large container, or cones as large as the ones which Joe uses.

2. The array of cones is suspended vertically in the middle of the water and 12 volts applied to it. The Cell is most definitely not any form of electrolyser and should never be confused with one. An electrolyser operates by breaking water down into hydrogen and oxygen gasses which are then used for combustion inside an engine, and it requires rapid and continuous replacement of the water which gets used up as the engine runs. The Joe Cell never operates in that way, instead it channels outside energy through to the engine and the water inside a Joe Cell is never used up by the engine running. However, in this conditioning process, some hydrogen and oxygen are produced as a side effect of the purification process. Consequently, the conditioning should be carried on out of doors to prevent any hydrogen ponding on the ceiling and forming an explosive mixture there. The more impure the water, the higher the current which flows and the greater the unwanted electrolysis of some of the water.

3. The procedure for applying the 12V supply to the conditioner electrodes is unusual. First, connect the negative supply, and only the negative supply. After 2 to 20 minutes, make the positive connection for just 2 or 3 minutes. A residue of impurities will form from this process. Some, being lighter than water, rise to the surface and form a layer there. Some being heavier than water, sink to the bottom. The surface residue is removed and the process repeated until a surface layer no longer forms. This may take 24 hours. The clean water from the middle section of the container is used to fill the Cell.

Many people are of the opinion that a current of about one amp should flow through the conditioning vat in the early stages of the process. If the current is much less than this, then it may take a considerable length of time to get the processing completed - possibly one or two weeks if the water needs a good deal of work done on it. The process can be speeded up by using higher voltage, 24 volts or 36 volts by adding extra batteries or using an electronics bench power supply. The water can also be pre-processed by placing it in a glass jar in an orgone accumulator for a day or two, but that process is outside the scope of this description.
As the impurities get ejected from the water by this process, the electrolysis element gets stifled progressively and as a consequence, the current drops. As completely pure, molecularly-reconfigured water is the goal, no additives of any kind are normally added to the water used to fill the Cell. However, if citric acid is used to clean the cylinders before assembly, there is no harm in allowing them to be assembled in the Cell with traces of the acid on them.

The Cell is filled to just under the level of the top of the inside tube array. This is very important as we need to have separate cylinders of water divided by the steel cylinders. If the water level is over the top of the cylinders, then the whole charging arrangement is destroyed. Further water conditioning inside the Cell may be needed as the cylinders also need to be conditioned. This is done with an easily removable cover replacing the lid of the Cell. The Cell should be kept covered while it undergoes its further conditioning and the lid only lifted briefly to examine the bubbles (unless a glass lid is used). The positive connection to the cell is made to the outside of the 5-inch cylinder and at the top of the cylinder. A length of copper wire tightened around the top of the cylinder is a convenient way to make the connection to the outside (and only the outside) of the cell. Place the cell on a wooden workbench or failing that, on a sheet of high-density plastic such as a chopping board. Connect the negative wire and wait two minutes before connecting the positive wire.

The Cell is ready for use, when it continues to produce surface bubbles for hours after the 12 volt DC power supply is removed from the Cell. The bubbles produced are not part of the energy-focusing process and are themselves unimportant, but they act as an indicator of the outside energy flowing through the Cell. When the Cell is running correctly, the flow of outside energy is sufficient to keep the water in its conditioned state without the need for any external electrical supply. It also maintains its own energy flow through the Cell. There is no point in proceeding any further until the Cell has reached its self-sustaining condition. If it is not happening for you, check out the information in the “workarounds” section below and if that does not get your Cell operational, ask for advice and assistance through the Yahoo groups mentioned above.

Some people concern themselves with the pH of the water. The pH really is not important as the cell will take up the correct pH as conditioning proceeds. A cell of the type described in this document, will have water which is very slightly acid with a pH of about 6.5, but it is not important to know this or to measure it. Do not put litmus paper in the cell water as that will contaminate the cell. Just rely on the action of the bubbles to determine how the cell conditioning is progressing.

Installing the Cell in the vehicle

When the Cell has reached its self-sustaining condition, it can be mounted in the vehicle. The first step is to insulate the Cell from the engine components. This insulation is not just electrical insulation which is easily accomplished, but it is a case of introducing sufficient separation between the Cell and the engine to stop the concentrated (invisible) energy leaking away instead of being fed to the engine through the aluminium tube. So, wrap the Cell walls in three layers of double-laminated hessian sacking (“burlap”), pulling it tightly around the 5-inch diameter outer tube. Tie (a minimum of) three wooden dowels along the length of the Cell and bend the mounting bracket around the dowels. The purpose of this is solely to ensure that there is at least a three quarter inch air gap between the walls of the Cell and everything else, including the mounting bracket:
The mounting details depend on the layout of the engine compartment. The really essential requirement is that the aluminium pipe running to the engine must be kept at least 4 inches (100 mm) away from the engine electrics, radiator, water hoses and air-conditioning components.

The last four inches or so, of the tube going to the engine cannot be aluminium as that would cause an electrical short-circuit between the (occasional) positive outer connection to the outside of the Cell and the engine itself which is connected to the battery negative. To avoid this, the final section of the pipe is made using a short length of clear plastic piping, forming a tight push-fit on the outside of the aluminium tube and on the connection to the intake of the engine’s carburettor. There should be a 3/4 inch (18 mm) gap between the end of the aluminium pipe and the nearest metal part of the carburettor. If it is just not possible to get an airtight fit on the intake to the carburettor and a hosepipe clamp has to be used, be sure that the fitting is non-magnetic stainless steel. If such a fitting cannot be found, then improvise one yourself, using only 316L grade stainless steel.

In the installation shown above, you will notice that the aluminium tube has been run well clear of the engine components. A vacuum gauge has been added but this is not necessary. For the early stages of installation, the aluminium pipe runs to the vacuum port of the carburettor but stops about 3/4 inch (20 mm) short of it, inside the plastic tubing. This method of connection is advisable for the initial setting up of the vehicle modification. At a later date, when the engine has been running with the Cell and is attuned to it, the Cell operates better if the pipe is connected to one of the bolt heads on the engine block, again using the plastic tube and a gap between the aluminium tube and the bolt head. Some people feel that a safety
pressure-release valve with a safe venting arrangement should be used if the pipe feeding the engine, terminates on a bolt head.

**Getting the vehicle running and driving techniques**

The Joe Cell is not a ‘turnkey’ system. In other words, just building a Cell and installing it in the vehicle is not nearly enough to get the vehicle running without the use of a fossil fuel. Some adjustments need to be made to the timing and the engine has to become ‘acclimatised’ to the energy.

Mount the Cell in the engine compartment and connect the Cell to the battery negative. After two or three minutes, take a lead from the battery plus and touch it briefly to the lid of the Cell. This should produce a spark. Repeat this until four sparks have been produced. This ‘flashing’ process aligns the Cell electrically and directs the energy to flow in the direction of the metal which has been ‘flashed’.

The next procedure is dangerous and should only be carried out with the greatest of care. The engine crankshaft also needs to be ‘flashed’ four times. This is carried out with the engine running and so can be hazardous - take extreme care not to get caught up in the moving parts. Connect the lead from the battery positive to the shaft of a long-handled screwdriver and keep your hands well clear. The procedure is to get a helper to start the engine, then arc the current to the exposed pulley on the crankshaft (where timing adjustments are made). There should be a total of four sparks to the crankshaft in a period of about one second.

Next, for three or four seconds, flash along the length of the aluminium pipe. This encourages the energy to flow along the pipe, reinforcing the natural attraction between aluminium and this energy. Remove the wire coming from the battery positive as the Cell operates with only the negative side of the battery connected (remember that this is NOT electrolysis and the cell just directs the unseen energy into the engine).

Mark the present position of the distributor cap. Loosen the bolt holding it in place and rotate it to advance the timing by 10 degrees. Disconnect the fuel to the carburettor (do not use an electrically operated valve for this). The engine will continue to run on the fuel left in the carburettor and the engine will start to cough. Turn the distributor cap a further 20 degrees (that is now a total of 30 degrees from its original position) and have your helper use the starter motor to assist the engine to keep turning.

Rotate the distributor cap to further advance the spark until the engine starts to run smoothly. There will be a gasping sound and the engine will slow nearly to a stop, then it will pick up again and then slow down. The action is wave-like, something like breathing. Fine-tune the timing to get the smoothest running and then fasten the distributor cap in place. Do not touch the Cell, but leave it undisturbed. You are now ready to drive away in a vehicle which is not using any fossil fuel.

The procedure described here may not end successfully as just described. Some cars are more difficult to get operating on a Cell than others. Experience helps enormously when getting the vehicle started for the first time. Joe mentions in the video that it has taken him a couple of days of sustained effort to get a particular car going for the first time, which is quite something considering that he has years of experience and has got many vehicles and Cells operational.

When the vehicle has been run and is operating correctly on the Cell, it is time to make the final adjustment to the set-up. For this, the pipe connection to the vacuum inlet of the carburettor is moved from there to terminate on a bolt head on the engine block. The Cell works best when completely sealed off from the air in the engine compartment and as no gas is actually being moved from the Cell to the engine, there is no need for any kind of connection to the carburettor. If the engine is a V-type, then the bolt head chosen should be one in the valley of the V, otherwise, any convenient bolt head on the head of the engine block will be satisfactory. Don’t forget that the connecting pipe must still be kept well clear of the engine’s electrical leads and other fittings as described earlier. Also, the 3/4 inch (18 mm) gap between the end of the aluminium pipe and the top of the bolt head must be maintained inside the clear plastic tube, and the pipe fitting should remain airtight. A slight timing adjustment may be necessary with the new connection in order to get the very best running.

The energy which powers the engine has a tendency to run along magnetic fields. Driving under high voltage overhead power lines can position the vehicle in an area where the energy level is not sufficient to maintain the energy flow through the Cell. If the energy flow through the Cell is disrupted, then it is likely to
stop functioning. If this were to happen, then the Cell would have to be set up again in the same way as for a newly built Cell which has never been used before. This can be avoided by attaching an AA ("penlight") dry cell battery across the Cell with the battery plus going to the lid of the Cell. A battery of this type has such a high internal resistance and so little current capacity that no significant electrolysis will take place on the very pure conditioned water in the Cell. But the battery will have the effect of maintaining the integrity of the Cell if it is temporarily moved away from its source of power.

**Suppliers**

Sheets of nitrile rubber NB70 ("Buna-n"): http://www.holbourne.co.uk
Nylon rod: http://www.holbourne.co.uk
Stainless steel tubing: http://www.stabarn.co.uk
A4 Bolts (316 S31 stainless): http://www.a2a4.co.uk

**Workarounds**

If it is not possible to get pipes of the desired diameters, then they can be made up by rolling stainless steel sheet and using a TIG welder with completely inert gas, to tack weld at each end and in the middle of each cylinder. Don’t weld along the full length of the join unless it is the 5-inch outer casing.

If it is found to be particularly difficult to make the four circular cuts in 1/8 inch (3 mm) steel using hand tools, then I would suggest using a plasma cutter. Make a template to guide the cutting head and clamp it securely in place. You can hire the cutter and compressor quite cheaply as you will only need them for a very short time. If they are not given to you as a pair and you have to select each from a range, take the smallest cutter and a twin-cylinder compressor rated at nearly double the input quoted for the cutter. This is because the cutter is rated by the volume of compressed air, and the compressors are rated by the volume of their uncompressed air intake as that sounds more impressive.

If no lathe is available for machining the base plinth for the central cylinder, then take a piece of 16-gauge stainless steel sheet and cut the plinth out of it as shown below. Bend the projecting tags upwards by holding each tag in the end of the jaws of a vise and tapping the body section square, with a flat-faced hammer and if you consider it necessary, tack-weld the top of the tags to the outside of the central cylinder to give rigidity to the mounting. Extreme heat such as is generated by welding or cutting tends to create permanent magnetism in any ferrous metal being heated, so avoid high temperature operations such as welding wherever possible. If a tight push-fit can be obtained with the base of the 2-inch cylinder, then I suggest that the optional spot welds are omitted.

If tack-welded cylinders have to be used, then it is usually best to line all of the seams up as the seam area does not work as well as the remainder of the tube, so if the seams are all aligned, then there is only one small line in the Cell which is not operating at its optimum value.

Cylinders are best aligned in the same direction. This sounds odd as they are physically symmetrical. However, these cylinders will be used to channel an energy field and each cylinder has a direction along which the energy flows best. To find this, stand all of the tubes upright in a tight group on a table. Leave
them for a minute and then place your hand on top of the whole set. If any tube feels hotter than the others, then it is out of energy alignment with the rest and should be inverted. Repeat this test until no tube feels hotter than the rest.

An alternative way to do this test is to use a pair of L-rods. These can be made from two short lengths of rigid black polythene tubing often found in garden centres for use in garden irrigation. This tubing has 1/8 inch internal diameter and so takes 1/8” brass welding rod very nicely. The welding rods should be bent with a radius as shown here:

The curved bend in the brass welding rod helps to prevent the rod fouling the top of the plastic tube handle and it allows free rotation of the brass rod. It is essential that the rod can move completely freely in the handle. If two of these are made up, they can be used to check the cylinders before they are assembled for insertion into the Cell. Place a tube standing vertically on a table well away from all other objects (especially magnetic and electrical items). Hold an L-rod handle in each hand so that the rods are parallel in front of you. The rods must be exactly horizontal so as to avoid any tendency for them to turn under the influence of gravity. Approach the cylinder. The rods should either move towards each other or away from each other as the cylinder is approached.

Repeat this procedure at least three times for each cylinder so as to be sure that a reliable result is being obtained. Invert any cylinder if necessary, so that every cylinder causes the rods to move in the same direction. Then assemble the Cell, maintaining that alignment of the cylinders during the assembly.

If you are having difficulty in getting the Cell operational, then try striking and sparking the cylinders again. This is done as follows:

1. Take a 12V lead-acid battery and position it so that it’s negative terminal is pointing towards East and it’s positive terminal is pointing towards West (i.e. at right angles to the Earth’s magnetic field).
2. Attach a lead from the battery negative to the outside of the base of the tube.
3. Lay the tube on a table and strike it with a hammer along its length. If the tube has a seam, then strike the tube along the length of the seam.
4. Connect a lead to the positive terminal of the battery and spark the inside of the top of the tube. It is essential to spark each tube if they have been polished. It is better not to polish any of the tubes.
5. Repeat this procedure for each tube.

If you consider it necessary to clean the cylinders, then, considering the lengths you went to remove all of the things dissolved in the water, be sure to avoid using any kind of chemical or solvent. You can electro-clean them by using the following procedure:

Starting with the largest cylinder;
1. Put the battery positive on the inside of the top of the cylinder, and the negative on the outside at the bottom, and leave them in place for one minute.

2. Put the negative on the inside of the top of the cylinder, and the positive on the outside at the bottom, and leave them in place for one minute.

3. Repeat step 1: Put the battery positive on the inside of the top of the cylinder, and the negative on the outside at the bottom, and leave them in place for one minute.

Do this for all cylinders, working inwards.

It has been suggested that an improved method of conditioning water to fill the Cell can be achieved if pulsed DC is used instead of straight DC from a battery. This has not been proven but there is a reasonable amount of information to suggest that this is likely. The following, most unusual circuit, has been suggested, but it must be stressed that it is untried and anybody who is unfamiliar with working with electronics should not attempt to construct or use this circuit without the assistance of a person who is experienced in building and using mains equipment.

![Unusual circuit diagram](image)

This is a most unusual circuit. A 12V step-down mains transformer provides 12V AC which is taken through a limiting resistor and a zener diode which would not normally be connected as shown. The really odd thing is that the circuit which contains the secondary of the transformer appears not to be connected. The expected output from this very odd circuit is pulsing DC of odd waveform, all of which is positive relative to the ground connection, which is a literal, physical connection to an earthing rod driven into the ground.

Notes:

Engines running while powered by a Joe Cell act in a somewhat different manner. They can idle at a very low number of revs per minute, the power available on acceleration is much greater than normal and they appear to be able to rev very much higher than ever before without any difficulty or harm.

The type of Cell described in this document was built by Bill Williams in the USA with the help and assistance of Peter Stevens of Australia. Bill describes his first driving experience with his 1975 F 250, 360 cu. in. (5.9 litre) Ford pickup:

Well, all I can say is "who needs an Indy car when you can drive an old FORD" – WOW!!! The first five miles after leaving home were wild. I had to be extremely careful on how I pressed the accelerator. I gingerly crept up to 45 mph and that was with moving the pedal maybe half an inch. The throttle response was very crisp or touchy. With about a 1/8" of movement the next thing I knew I was close to 80 mph. If I lifted off ever so slightly on the throttle, it felt like I was putting the brakes on and the speed would drop down to 30 mph or so. "Very erratic". If I barely even touched or bumped the pedal it felt like I had pushed a nitrous oxide booster button. WOW !!

As stated earlier, the first 5 miles were wild and things started to change. The engine started to buck or surge with very large rpm changes and literally threw me against my seat belt. It got so bad I just took my foot completely off the pedal and rode the brakes to stop the truck. The truck left skid marks on the pavement every time the engine surged in rpm. Well anyway, I manage to get it stopped and shut it off with the ignition key - thank GOD !
I retarded the timing, turned the gasoline back on, crossed my fingers and hit the ignition key, and the engine took right off, revving to maybe 4,000 rpm and then gradually decreased to 700 rpm. I took a deep breath and put it into drive and the truck responded close to normal again. I made it into work a little late, but late is better than never the way I see it. After working during the day at the job and thinking what I could do to stop this erratic rpm oscillation, I decided to disable the cell and drive home on gas. WOW!!!

Peter Stevens states that the main reason for the erratic behaviour of the Cell was due to outside air leaking into the Cell, and he stresses that Cells need to be completely airtight. It is also clear that the timing was not set in the correct position. All properly built Cells give enhanced engine power.

Comments from a very experienced Cell builder

Human presence can affect the operation of the cell in a positive or negative way. The Joe cell is a crude orgone accumulator. As early as the first of January 1867 a French patent, number 60,986 was issued to a Martin Ziegler for an accumulator of a living, non-electrical type of force.

Some properties of orgone energy:

1. Orgone energy is mass and inertia free, so standard electronics test equipment cannot measure it.

2. It is present everywhere, but the concentration is variable from place to place and from time to time. Therefore, if the cell leaks energy and is located in a low concentration area, it may stop breeding or even loose the seed. The indicators for this are an engine which will not produce full power or will not run at all.

3. It is in constant motion. It has an uneven movement from West to East at a speed considerably greater than the earth's speed of rotation. The motion is a pulsating expansion and contraction and a flow which is normally along a curved path. Inside an accumulator, the energy is seen as a spinning, pulsating wave. Both of these can be seen to varying degrees in a charging vat and a cell. These signs are very important to the experimenter as they are his tools for determining the different stages of seeding and breeding which take place in the cell.

4. Orgone exhibits negative entropy as it generally flows from lower concentrations to higher concentrations i.e. orgone concentrations increase, since any orgone concentration attracts outside orgone to itself. If a cell is located in an unfavourable location, it may either not seed at all or alternatively, take a long time to seed. It has been known for cells to take as much as 4 weeks to seed while others take only a few days.

5. Matter is created by it. Under appropriate conditions, which are not rare or unusual, different minerals can be formed inside identical cells, usually a white or green powder which forms as very fine particles which eventually sink to the bottom of the cell. You definitely do not want this to occur in the cell as the cell will not run the car and the only solution is to completely dismantle and clean all components.

6. Orgone can be manipulated and controlled. We do this in the cell by forming alternate organic and non-organic "cylinders" to form an accumulator. Thus the organic layers attract and soak up the orgone and the metallic layers draw it from the organic material and radiate it into the interior of the accumulator. Additionally we use electricity, magnetism and electrolysis to assist with the breeding process.

7. Vast quantities of it come from the sun, so the orgone density peaks in the afternoon and diminishes in the early morning hours. Because of this, people have found that a cell which leaks orgone will stop functioning around 3 am or 4 am.

8. The accumulation of orgone is affected by weather, i.e. humidity, cloud, temperature and time of day. For the experimenter with a leaky cell this explains it’s weird behaviour: Sometimes it works, while at other times it doesn’t. The cell is doomed to failure in the hands of a casual constructor.

9. Orgone moves in the direction of a magnetic field and at right angles to an electrical field. This is highly significant to the cell builder as it controls the position and polarity of the cell's internal wiring as well as dictating how much residual magnetism the steel can have and still allow the cell to work. This is critical in the choice and cutting operations of the steel.

10. It is absorbed by water. This is one of the reasons that we use water in the cell. To be successful, the water has to be the right type of water. We could have used bees wax instead of water, but as we want
to encourage the breeding process with all the tricks in the book, the bees wax would have prevented the use of electrolysis.

11. It is polarised. We can have positive or negative orgonic force, so we can build a positive or negative cell. But, if you mix positive and negative construction materials (as most people do), then your result is a leaky or non-operational cell.

12. It will penetrate or travel along all known materials. Some recent synthetic materials, namely polymers (plastics) make it difficult for orgone to penetrate them.

13. It has a slow conduction rate. Orgone will take 20 seconds or more to traverse 50 yards of wire. For the experimenter, this means that you should wait about 30 seconds after turning power on to the cell before you can expect to observe orgone action at a stable rate.

14. It exhibits a constant tendency to rise vertically. Understanding this is very important if you are to create a non-leaky cell installation in a car.

15. It cannot remain in steel or water longer than about 1 hour. So if a cell is not breeding, then it will die in about 1 hour. This explains the use of a 1.5 volt battery across leaky cells to maintain a breeding process. What you achieve with the small potential across the cell, is a very low rate of electrolysis that matches the leaking of the cell and thus maintaining the breeding process.

16. It radiates for a great distance. The radiation circumference of a typical cell is at least 160 feet (50 metres).

17. It follows optical laws. It is refracted by a prism and reflected by a polished surface.

18. It surrounds itself with alternating spherical zones of opposite polarity. We utilise this to determine cylinder diameters and consequential spacing in the optimisation of the cell.

19. It is affected by living beings. Again, this is very important, as the experimenter and his attitude can interact with the cell.

20. It can only be concentrated to a finite amount. If a cell is charged to its maximum degree so that it can hold no more, the orgone will transform itself into electricity, and in this form, find a discharge. By observing the bubbles, pulsations, and surface tension of the water, we utilise this fact to our advantage.

21. Orgone (torsion) fields transmit information without transmitting energy, and they propagate through physical media without interacting with the media.

22. Orgone (torsion) fields cannot be shielded by most materials, but can be shielded by materials having certain spin structures, typically polymers.

23. Each physical object, whether living or non-living, possesses its own characteristic orgone (torsion) field.

24. All permanent magnets possess their own orgone (torsion) field.

25. Torsion (orgone) fields can be generated as a result of a distortion of the geometry of the physical vacuum. This is demonstrated by pyramids, cones, cylinders, flat triangles, etc.

26. Torsion (orgone) fields can be screened by aluminium. This allows the use of aluminium coated mirrors, or highly polished aluminium to reflect an orgone (torsion) field. (See point 17 above).

27. It passes through all materials, but at different speeds.

As orgone is polarised, either positive or negative, it can be manifested sometimes as both polarities for a short period of time. In our search for the perfect Joe Cell, it is essential to utilise polarity-conducive materials in the construction of the cell. With the use of suspect materials which encourage the creation or retention of both polarities, the resulting cell is not only a poor breeder, but it also leaks orgone. I strongly encourage the experimenter to choose to construct either a negative or positive cell and not to use materials at random or what happens to be handy or cheap, as that is a sure way to failure.

**Positive (Warm)**  **Negative (Cool)**
As seen from the above list, chemical reaction, electrolysis, evaporation, steaming, vibration, sound and chemicals are the most common goings on in the cell and in the motor. To rephrase, since the natural events in our cells habitat favour these actions, I would suggest that the experimenter builds a cell that utilises as many of these parameters as possible, until he gains the knowledge of the causes of the cell behaviour. I personally only build acid cells (as shown in this document). I have a dislike of the corrosion associated with alkaline cells and also find that the water remains crystal clear and the insulators do not fail in my acid cells.

After six years of experimentation, I made the assumption that the Joe Cell was working on orgone energy. This assumption came as a result of hundreds of hours of reading and experimentation. In all that time, all of the hundreds of recorded effects of orgone have matched the behaviour of the Joe Cell. There has never been a departure from the known recorded effect of orgone energy, not even one! As such it would take a far braver man than me to argue with the huge supporting evidence of thousand’s of man-hours and the work of hundreds of qualified individuals from all over the world. So, as my own humble experiments agree with the majority, I have said, and will repeat many times, that the cell accumulates orgone energy.

Let me restate the obvious, namely, if we are to accumulate orgone energy, we must have an orgone accumulator. We are not designing this cell to use neutrino’s, deuterium, nitro-glycerine, steam, nitrogen, hydrogen, hydroxy, or any other author’s pet substance. We are designing our cell to run on orgone energy. A close study of orgone properties and cell polarities would therefore be in order. The cell should use as many of one type of orgone polarity materials and properties as possible, also, we want to utilise as many as possible of all of the external forces available to us to assist us in the accumulation of the orgone energy.

At this stage it may be a good idea to consider the design parameters for the ultimate energy source. After all, why waste our time with the Joe Cell if there is a "better" way of getting our energy. "Better" meaning, cheaper parts, more effective, less polluting, less destructive, longer lasting, etc. Let me give you a brief list of the requirements of this magic accumulator and see if we are on the right track with the Joe Cell:

1. The Joe Cell is an energy-producing device which does a direct conversion of a primary energy source to the final energy supply. As such it seems to provide free-energy.
2. The Joe Cell is silent. There are no moving parts. A solar panel would be the closest (though highly inefficient) other device.
3. The Joe Cell is simple and has no moving parts.
4. The Joe Cell is cheap. After the initial outlay, there are no further material costs or replacements required for worn-out parts. The Joe Cell is virtually everlasting. If you build one with second hand components, your total outlay should be quite low.

5. When we use fundamental energy, i.e. energy which cannot be broken up into any other energy constituents that are at a lower level, we have no waste by-products and thus no pollution. The Joe Cell runs on a fundamental force of the Universe. You don’t get any more basic than that.

6. Any centrifugal, expanding and exploding force is wasteful due to the creation of heat. Any device which generates heat as part of its operation can never be considered an efficient energy source (unless it is a heater). The Joe Cell runs cool and so does the motor that runs from it.

7. Any energy produced from a set of conversion stages is usually wasteful due to the inefficiencies in each stage. The Joe Cell converts orgone into an expanding multiple-use force in one step. Beautifully simple!

8. Orgone does not have to be stored or converted and stored. It is an ‘on-demand’ system and thus there is no infrastructure required to store, distribute, ship or sell it. Unlike fossil fuels, it is the same price each week (free).

If you read through the list of orgone properties and select the ones which look usable, you will probably have selected these:

6. As orgone can be manipulated, it means that we can build a container to house it. We will have concentric cylinders and position them vertically.

9. As orgone moves in alignment with a magnetic field, we know that if we place one of our electrical connections at the bottom of our Cell, and the other at the top, a magnetic field will result and the orgone will move in that direction. As our conductors are the metal cylinders, they must be made from a material which should not interfere with field which assists the orgone to flow vertically.

9. As orgone moves at right angles to an electrical field, if we arrange the electric current flow to be from the innermost cylinder, to the outermost cylinder, then the end result is again a vertical direction of the orgone flow.

10. As orgone is absorbed in water, we will make a cell which contains water, so the cell needs to be waterproof and non-corrosive.

14. As orgone has a preference for a vertical movement, we will have the outlet of our cell at the highest point of the final structure.

20. As orgone can only be concentrated to a final amount, we know that sooner or later something will occur in the vertical plane and something will come out of our outlet which is located at the top of the vertical axis of the cell.

Here is a list of some of the "non-magnetic" stainless steels, but please note that all stainless steel will be magnetic to some slight degree:

AISI 304. Used in dairy, textile, dyeing and chemical industries for containers subject to different types of corrosive conditions.
AISI 316. Parts for chemical and food plants, wearable for high temperature.
AISI 316L. As for 316, but with superior corrosion resistance when exposed to many types of chemical corrosives, as well as marine atmospheres. It also has superior creep strength at elevated temperatures.
AISI 310. Furnace parts, radiant tubes, annealing boxes and heat treatment fixtures.
AISI 410. Cooking utensils, turbine blades, coal screens and pump rods.
AISI 420. For the automobile and aircraft industry. Components such as valves, pistons, and nuts and bolts.
AISI 431. Parts requiring highest strength and rust resistance.

Now, for reasons that I do not fully understand, the Joe Cell fraternity has decided that only 316L will do. I have proved over and over that this is a myth. Not only that, I would challenge any builder to pick 316L stainless from similar grades at a scrap metal dealer! What we are looking for are cylinders, cones and domes that have the least remnant magnetism. This is easily checked by taking your faithful rare earth
magnet to your metal dealer. My magnet is only 5 mm. diameter by 3 mm thick and is attached to a 
convenient length of fishing line. By swinging the magnet near the stainless steel you will easily see how 
magnetic the steel is. Especially check the longitudinal or spiral seam welding. The magnet will be 
attracted to the seam, but reject the material if weld seam is discoloured for more than ¼ of an inch ( 6 mm), 
or it is a different thickness to the rest of the metal, or the magnet sticks and stays there supporting its own 
weight.

Note: Do not use a ferrite magnet similar to the easily obtainable round speaker magnets that every 
experimenter has. These are nowhere near strong enough and you will be deluded into thinking that you 
have found "Joe Cell steel heaven", as all of the stainless steel will pass your magnetic tests. If you are 
buying new stainless stock be prepared for some awfully dodgy 316L stainless. It seems to vary 
tremendously with the country of origin. I have found that certified stainless in a plastic wrappers and with 
'316L' written longitudinally and repetitively along the whole length is generally fine. You will find that when 
you spin a good piece in a lathe and gently hold it with your hand, a good piece will feel " round ", but with a 
bad piece, you will feel longitudinal ripples. Similarly when you are cutting a piece of genuine 316L you will 
hear a ringing and the saw will be really working to cut it. I have cut some so-called 316L that cuts like butter! 
Believe me, real 316L is a bitch to work with.

Summary of the above. Since 316L is "the best", try to buy some certified 316L stock. Try to buy some 
seamless tube if you can. Do not buy any on some salesperson’s guarantee that it is non-magnetic. Test it! 
If they will cut it free of charge, see how they cut it and get it cut at least 1 inch, (25 mm) oversize. Usually a 
top supplier will charge about a $1.00 a cut with a liquid cooled band saw. In such a case, you do not 
require a large waste margin, a ¼ inch will do for your truing operation on the lathe. Make sure that there 
are no dents or major scratches in the sections that you purchase. I don't have to tell you that anything to do 
with stainless is expensive. Think about it three times and buy once only!

I have used 100% silicon thick-wall tubing, or red rubber chemical corks of the right size as cylinder spacers. 
A neutral and superior spacer can be machined from Teflon rod and it works very well.

Seed diameter / Height ratio:

While many different sizes of cylinders will work, the best operation comes from cylinders which have the 
optimum dimensions. To calculate the height of the cylinders for maximum efficiency, proceed as follows:

1. Add Potassium Hydroxide to ordinary water in the cell to obtain a current flow of 1 Amp when 12 Volts is 
   placed across the cell.

2. Place 12 volts across the bottom of the innermost cylinder and the top of the outside of the outermost 
cylinder. Measure this voltage accurately.

3. Leave one lead of the voltmeter on the inner cylinder, and with the other lead, find the half voltage point 
   radially from the inner cylinder to a point in the water. Do your best to memorise this point. Now place 
one lead of the meter on the outer cylinder and with the other lead, find the half voltage point radially 
towards the inner cylinder. Note this point. It will be close to the first measured point, but not necessarily 
the same point (if there is a difference halve the difference, take the centre point) and record the position.

4. Measure the distance from the centre of the innermost cylinder to the half voltage point. Double this 
   measurement is the diameter of the "seed" circumference which will be used in these optimisation 
calculations.

5. By using the natural logarithm of the height of the cylinder, we can interpolate and work out our optimum 
cylinder heights. The formula is \( h = e^d \) where \( h \) = height of cylinder, \( e = 2.718281... \), and \( d \) = seed 
diameter. All measurements are in inches. I have worked out some standard size values for you. You 
can easily work out your value from the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cylinder height</th>
<th>Seed diameter</th>
<th>Cylinder height</th>
<th>Seed diameter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6&quot;</td>
<td>1.79&quot;</td>
<td>13&quot;</td>
<td>2.56&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5&quot;</td>
<td>1.87&quot;</td>
<td>13.5&quot;</td>
<td>2.60&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7&quot;</td>
<td>1.95&quot;</td>
<td>14&quot;</td>
<td>2.64&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5&quot;</td>
<td>2.01&quot;</td>
<td>14.5&quot;</td>
<td>2.67&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8&quot;</td>
<td>2.08&quot;</td>
<td>15&quot;</td>
<td>2.71&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9 - 38
6. So, if in step 4. above, a value of 2.24" was measured as the ‘seed diameter’ of the cell, then we would use inner cylinders of about 9.4" in length. If this length is too great for convenience, then half of the length can be used, but there is a corresponding loss in "breeding" output, but as long as your cell is not too leaky and you are not travelling in a strip of low level orgone you should get away with it.

7. At no stage should you use inner cylinders of a length of less than 7" of cylinder height for the most common cubic capacity car engines. Of course, for test cells, you will be able to get away with lower surface area cylinders. I use 5 inch (125 mm) high cylinders in my test cell, as this allows me to use less water during experiments.

Note: Many many cells have been built without using, or even knowing about, the above table and they all work to a degree, certainly well enough to start the car. As a simple reliable rule that works, use 7 inch long inner cylinders and a 9 inch long outer cylinder for a 4 cylinder cell. Use 8 inch long inner cylinders and a 10 inch long outer cylinder for a 5 cylinder cell.

I use water taken from the start of rivers. Further down the river, the water will have encountered influenced which are unhelpful. I have my favourite water catchment area well outside Melbourne, Australia, where there are no roads, power lines, dams, pipes or any man made intrusions, the water flows how and where it wants to in natural, twisty downhill paths it has created, the whole area is green all year round and you can feel the vitality and Nature at work.

The water that I use, in its natural state has a pH of 6.5. That means it is slightly acidic, and perfect for the cells that I make. I bring this water home making sure that I protect it from excessive sloshing and the heat of the sunlight whilst in the car. At home, I store it in 20 litre Pyrex bottles. Do not store it in plastic containers even if the container is marked "suitable for water". Earthenware or wood containers would also be very suitable.

I make an electrolyte solution by dissolving 500 grams of food-grade phosphoric acid and 100 grams of sodium perborate, in three litres of de-ionised water or distilled water. Just a few drops of this solution will provide a current of 1 amp at 12 volts in the conditioning vat. An alternative is to use a 90% acetic acid solution which has no stabiliser in it.

When conditioning the water in the cell, you will need a lid, or some way of sealing of the cell from air. A lid loosely sitting on top of your test jar is sufficient. The seeding and breeding process is hampered by having too great an area of the top of the cell being exposed to air. All lids are not the same as regards to being a obstruction to orgone. If the lid does not seem to be working, place a layer of aluminium foil underneath the lid and use the foil and lid as one unit.

The aim is to modify the conductivity of the water by the addition of acid, so as to get a suitable current flow. If we used de-ionised water with a pH of 7.0, we would have a very low current flow for our electrolysis, and would have to add something to increase the conductivity of the water if we wanted observable results in a short period of time. As we lower the pH, the current flow and electrolysis process will increase together with a heat increase.

We are trying to achieve electrolysis action with the minimum heat generation. As the propagation of orgone is reasonably slow, there is not much to be achieved with excessive current. Slow and steady does it. For the patient experimenter or one that is using neat water, i.e. water without electrolyte, excellent results are achieved with currents as low as 50 milliamps.

The procedure is:
1. Place your cell on a wooden workbench or on a sheet of plastic type material or, as a last resort, on a newspaper. We are trying to insulate the cell from metal paths that may impede the seeding process. Keep the cell well away from electrical sources such as a television set, refrigerator, electric cooker, etc.

2. With a multimeter, measure the resistance between the innermost and the outermost cylinders of your cell. It should be in the high Megohm range. If not, the insulators are conductive or there is a short-circuit. Check for a short-circuit and if there is none, remove the insulators and reassemble the set, checking the resistance between the innermost and outermost cylinders as each cylinder is added. The resistance between every pair of cylinders should be very high.

3. When all is okay in the above step, fill the cell using a funnel containing a paper coffee filter. Fill it only to a level just under the top of the cylinders and no more. The effect that we want to create is a set of water cells separated by metal cylinders. These are your alternate organic and inorganic chambers. Of course, the submerged section of your chambers are flooded, but with this simple cell, the top will be doing all the work. This is why the cylinders should be completely horizontal and true at the top, otherwise the meniscus formed by the water would not work and the water would flow from compartment to compartment. This level is only critical during the seeding process, as we require maximum orgone capture to seed the cell. Naturally, with a charged cell, the water is sloshing all over the place whilst you are driving the car.

4. Turn on the power supply, and if it is adjustable, set it to 12 volts. Connect the negative end of your power source to one end of your meter that is set up to read a minimum of 2 amps and connect the other end of the meter to the bottom of the central cylinder. Wait for two minutes and then connect the positive end of your power source to the top of the outer cylinder. What you have done is set up the meter to read any current flow into your cell from the power source.

At this stage, if your water is close to a pH of 7, as previously discussed, the current flow will be zero, or in the low milliamp region. If the current flow is amps, then you are doing something wrong! It is impossible to pass a huge current through ordinary pure water when using 12 volts. Think about it. To draw even 1 amp at 12 volts, the resistance of the water would have to be 12 ohms! No way! You are doing something wrong. Correct the problem and then move on.

5. Presuming that the current is only milliamps, you now want to introduce electrolyte to increase the current flow through the water. The aim is to get a current flow of about one amp. To do this, drip a small amount of your chosen electrolyte into the cell water whilst stirring and watching the current measurement. Use a glass, Perspex or wooden dowel rod as the stirrer - do not use your handy paint-stirring screwdriver! Throw away the stirrer when finished as it will have absorbed some of the cell contents. Do plenty of gentle stirring of the water as you add the electrolyte, otherwise you will add too much electrolyte. Stop adding electrolyte when the meter indicates 1 amp. Your water level may rise as a consequence of the addition of electrolyte. Remove some water out of your cell. I use a pipette, so as not to disturb the cell. Remove enough water to again just expose the top of the cylinders. At this stage, disconnect your meter and power source and have a bit of a clean up as the next stages are guided by observation.

The charging process is separated into three distinct stages which are called Stages 1, 2 and 3. These stages have both some obvious differences and some subtle ones. For the rest of the charging process, you will be only connecting your power source to the cell for a maximum of 5 minutes at a time. As orgone lags electricity by about 30 seconds, you will know the state of the cell in less than a minute. Do not be tempted to leave the power connected to the cell for long periods! Yes, I know that you are in a hurry and more is better, but in this case you only generate heat, steam, waste power and overheat the cell. You can pick the failures by seeing their cells running non-stop for days with 20 or more amps turning the water to steam, etching the cylinders and ending up with a barrel full of scum. What else would you expect? After all, electrolysis is time and current related. If you have had the misfortune of having your cell left on for a long period with high current, you have probably destroyed your cylinders. You cannot retrieve the situation so throw the cell away and start again. I bet you don't do it next time!

**Danger:** Do not charge any cell that is totally sealed! The cell will explode, with all the resulting consequences. An airtight seal **is not required**! At no stage do I prescribe any form of airtight container.

**Stage 1:** This stage is plain old electrolysis. Due to passing direct current through a liquid which contains ions, chemical changes will occur. In our case, you will see small bubbles and a cloud of activity that is greater nearest the outside of the innermost negative cylinder. The important observation points are that the
activity is greatest nearest the central cylinder and gets progressively less as we move outward via the
different chambers formed by the rest of the cylinders. Also, within a short period of turning the power off, all
activity stops, the water becomes clear and the bubbles disappear.

Every fool and his dog can reach Stage 1. The secret for progressing further is to restrain your impatience
and not increasing the electrolyte concentration to raise the current (and/or leaving the cell on for days on
end). Be patient, leave the cell on for no longer than 5 minutes, turn the power source off, remove the leads
to the cell, and put the top on the test cell, or partially block off the exit of the car cell. It does not have to be
airtight! Go and do something else. It is like waiting for a tree to grow from the seed. Do this on a daily
basis for days, or a week, or longer, until you get to Stage 2. You will find that the more "alive" the water is,
the quicker is the seeding of the cell. I have found that the storage, age, and source of the water all affect
the seeding speed. I have also found that by changing the structure of the water by various means e.g.
vortexing, shaking, filtering, etc., you can greatly enhance the water quality to make it more "alive".

Stage 2: You will now notice on your initial powering up of the cell, that the bubbles are getting larger and
the white cloud of tiny bubbles in the water are much smaller or more transparent. Also in Stage 1, you had
the action occurring mainly near the central cylinder. Now the bubbles form in a regular fashion irrespective
of their location in the cell. More importantly, on turning the power off from the cell, the bubbles do not go
away immediately but stay there for minutes rather than seconds as in Stage 1. Also, the top of the water
assumes a glazed look and the meniscus is higher due to a change in the surface tension of the water. At
this stage you may have some brownish material amongst your bubbles. Don't panic - it is only the
impurities being removed from the cell. I find that if I wipe the top surface of the water with a paper towel,
the bubbles and the deposit will adhere to the paper and can be removed easily. Top up the cell with water
from your charging vat, if required, after the cleaning, so that again, the top edges of the cylinders are just
showing. No more electrolyte is added! In cleaning the top of the cell as described, it has been observed
that some people react unfavourably with the cell. If so, keep that person away, or if it is you, try changing
your hand i.e. use your right hand instead of your left or vice versa. If the presence of your hand seems to
collapse the surface bubbles, I would suggest you get a friend to do the work for you.

Summary of Stage 2: The result is very similar to Stage 1, but now we have a more even bubble distribution
and an increase of surface tension and a longer presence of the bubbles when the power is turned off.
There will be no scum in the bottom of the cell and the water will be crystal clear. At this stage the orgone
has seeded the cell, but as yet, is not "breeding", that is, the orgone concentration is not yet great enough to
attract additional orgone flow to itself. With the right cell, water and operator, it is possible to go straight to
Stage 2 on the first turn on of a new cell.

Stage 3: Not many people get to this stage, or what is worse, get here incorrectly. If you get here following
the above steps, your water is still crystal clear with no deposits in the sump. If you get here by brute force,
you will have stripped appreciable amounts of material from the cylinders and this material will now be
deposited on the insulators and suspended in the water as tiny particles which never settle out, and finally,
the material will form a deposit at the bottom of the cell. I have found that the storage, age, and source of the water all affect
the seeding speed. I have also found that by changing the structure of the water by various means e.g.
vortexing, shaking, filtering, etc., you can greatly enhance the water quality to make it more "alive".

Right, the miracle of Nature is now breeding in your cell. Upon turning your power on to the cell, within 30
seconds copious beautiful white bubbles will rise from all the surface area of the cell. Before these bubbles
cover the water surface, you will notice a slowly rotating and pulsing front in all cylinders, that is
synchronised and has a regular rhythm of about 2 pulses per second and a clockwise rotation speed of
about 1 revolution every 2 seconds. These effects are very hard to observe for a first time viewer who does
not know what to look for. I find it easier to watch these effects with the aid of a fluorescent light, as the 100
cycles per second pulsations of the light "strobe" the water surface and help the observation.

The bubbles may overflow the container and show great surface tension. One of the definite proofs that the
cell is breeding is that, on turning the power source off and coming back the next day, most of the bubbles
will still be on top of the water as opposed to Stage 1 or Stage 2 where they disappear in minutes. There is
no way that you can mistake this stage. The bubbles are larger and pure white, the surface tension is
greater, the bubbles are pulsating and most importantly the surface tension remains days after the power
has been removed.

I do not recommend any additional tests or measurements. But for those who are incapable of leaving
things be, they may measure the voltage across the cell after it has been left standing with the power off for
at least 24 hours. A Stage 3 cell will have a residual voltage, or more correctly, a self-generated voltage of
around 1 volt. A Stage 1 cell measured under similar conditions will read 0.1 to 0.2 volts. Remember, that
unless you know what you are doing, these voltage measurements can be very misleading due to probe materials and battery effects that can easily mask your true measurement. As the cell reaches the maximum density of orgone that it can hold, the result of the breeding process is the conversion of this excess orgone into the formation of electricity. As such, electrical measurement with the correct instruments is a very valuable method in the verification of the efficiency of the cell. If you are conversant with the work of William Reich, you may care to make an orgone meter and thus remove all guesswork. This meter is fully described on some web sites.

I do not recommend any form of bubble exploding. As noted earlier, noise and vibration are orgone-negative. Therefore, these explosions applied during the delicate seeding period will kill your cell. Apart from a dead cell, the chance of fire igniting other gasses in the workshop and injuries to the ears etc. makes this exercise highly unnecessary. I must admit that I too fell for the "go on, ignite it!" feeling. I had a cell that had been at Stage 3 for seven months. It was my favourite test cell. My hands and matches fought my brain and they won. There was a huge "ear-pulling, implosion/explosion", and yes, I killed the cell. It went back to Stage 2 for four days. I will not do it again.

As all water we are using so far has been electrolysed, this water is not suitable for use in non-stainless steel or glass containers due to reaction with the container and the resultant corrosion, but if you have to, or want to, you can use juvenile water with no electrolyte added and still charge it to Stage 3. As the ion count is much lower, the water is not as conductive, i.e. you cannot get as much current flow with 12 Volts as you would if you electrolysed the water. However, if you obtain a power supply of approximately 60 to 100 Volts at about 1 Amp, you will be able to charge "plain old ordinary water". The down side is the additional waiting, in some cases, over 3 weeks, and the cost of the fairly expensive power supply. The advantage is that you will be able to pour it into the radiator of a car with no increase in corrosion as compared to water containing acids.

Do not at any stage short circuit, i.e. join any of the cell cylinders to each other electrically with your charging leads, wedding ring, etc. If you do, the cell will "die"! Your only option, if this occurs, is to connect the cell to your power source and see if you are still running at Stage 3. If the cell does not revert to running in Stage 3 mode within 1 minute, your only option is to completely dismantle the cell and re-clean and re-charge. Huh???, you are kidding us, right??? No, I am serious, that is your only option! So do not do it, do not short out your cell! You will have similar, but not as severe problems if you reverse your leads to the cell.

When the cell is running at Stage 3, you can tip the charged water out of the cell into a glass container and clean, adjust or maintain your now empty cell. Try to keep all cylinders in the same relation that they were in before you dismantled the cell, i.e. keep all cylinders the same way round and in the same radial alignment. This is mainly relevant when dismantling cells over 6 months old as the metal parts develop a working relationship that can be weakened or destroyed by careless re-assembly.

When finished, pour the charged water back and you are back in business. Of course you can pour this charged water into other cells, or use it as you see fit, but, remember, do not leave it out of the cell for periods longer than 1 hour at a time as the breeding has now stopped and you are slowly losing charge.

Troubleshooting.

It is usually quite difficult to get an engine running from a Joe Cell. Many people find it difficult to get their Cell breeding ("at Stage 3"). The following suggestions from various experienced people who have succeeded are as follows:

1. The metal construction of the Cell needs to be of stainless steel and nothing else. Using copper or brass, even for something as simple as the connector between the Cell and the aluminium tube running to the engine is sufficient to cause serious problems as the energy is not directed to the engine and just leaks away sideways.

2. The water is best charged in a separate vat which has a larger capacity than the Cell itself. That way, when the Cell is being conditioned and scum removed from the surface of the water, the cell can be topped up with charged water from the vat. If, instead, ordinary, uncharged water is used, then the whole process is liable to be put right back to square one.

3. Be very sure that the mounting in the engine compartment is electrically insulated from the engine and chassis and be sure that there is serious clearance between the Cell and everything else. Also, the
aluminium pipe running to the engine must be kept at least four inches (100 mm) clear of the main engine components. Otherwise, the energy which should be running the engine, will leak away sideways and not reach the engine.

4. It can take up to a month to get a steel engine acclimatised to a Cell. Run the engine as a “shandy” where fossil fuel is still used but the Joe Cell is also attached. This usually gives greatly improved mpg, but more importantly, it is getting the engine metal and cooling water ‘charged’ up ready for use with the Joe Cell alone. Once per week, try advancing the timing and see how far it can be advanced before the engine starts to ping. When the timing gets to a 20 or 30 degree advance, then it is time to try running on the Joe Cell alone.

5. Finally, having conditioned the Cell, the water, the engine and the coolant, if there is still difficulty, then it is probably worth conditioning yourself. Both the idea and the procedure sound like they have come from Harry Potter’s classes in Hogwarts School of Witchcraft and Wizardry. However, there is a serious scientific basis behind the method. Use of the Bedini battery-pulsing devices shows that lead/acid batteries act as a dipole for Radiant Energy. Also, the energy flow which powers the Cell moves from West to East. Bearing those two facts in mind, makes the following rather bizarre procedure seem slightly less peculiar:

(a) Get a car battery and position it so that it’s terminals line up East/West with the negative terminal towards the East and the positive terminal towards the West (along the main energy flow line)

(b) Stand on the North side of the battery, facing South.

(c) Wet the fingers of your right hand and place them on the battery’s negative terminal (which is on your left hand side).

(d) Keep your fingers on the terminal for two minutes.

(e) Wet the fingers of your left hand. Place your left arm under your right arm and place the fingers of your left hand on the positive terminal of the battery. Do not allow your arms to touch each other.

(f) Keep the fingers of your left hand on the positive terminal for three minutes.

(g) Remove your left fingers from the positive terminal, but keep the fingers of your right hand on the negative terminal for another 30 seconds.

This procedure is said to align your body with the energy flow and make it much easier for you to get a Cell to “Stage 3” or to get a vehicle engine running. In passing, some people who suffer continuing painful medical conditions state that they have got considerable pain relief from this procedure.
Chapter 10: Automotive Systems

The Smack’s Booster. Automotive systems are very popular, especially in North America. This discussion will cover systems for reducing vehicle emissions, systems for increasing miles per gallon performances and systems intended to allow a vehicle to run without burning any fossil fuel. In previous chapters, information has been provided on fuel-less engines such as those from Josef Papp, Robert Britt, Leroy Rogers, Nikola Tesla, and Joe Nobel, so those will not be mentioned again.

Reducing Vehicle Emissions is a popular topic these days and one of the most effective ways to do that with any vehicle with an internal-combustion engine is to use a “hydroxy” booster. “Hydroxy” is the name given to the mixture of gases produced when an electric current is passed through water in a container and that is generally called a “booster”. For a booster to be effective in use, several important details have to be understood. The electric current needed to generate the hydroxy gas, is relatively minor and can usually be supplied by the electric system of the vehicle without any difficulty. Using a booster cleans out any old carbon deposits from inside the engine, makes the vehicle run more smoothly and more powerfully, and reduces harmful exhaust emissions to zero. One slight problem is that a vehicle with a booster fitted can sometimes fail an automated emissions test in the USA as the computer thinks that the exhaust pipe must be broken because it can measure no pollution emissions at all.

There are many enthusiast forums on the web and a large and very popular one is the well-known http://tech.groups.yahoo.com/group/watercar/ forum. One member of that forum is known as “Eletrik”. He is very experienced, and has produced a booster design which has been shown to be particularly effective. He calls his design “The Smack’s Booster” because of his nickname. He has generously shared his design freely with anyone who wants to build one, and he will even build one for you if you want him to. His design is reproduced here as an introduction to the subject of boosters.

Smack’s Booster

Smack’s booster is a piece of equipment which increases the mpg performance of a car or motorcycle. It does this by using some current from the vehicle’s battery to break water into a mixture of hydrogen and oxygen gasses called “hydroxy” gas which is then added to the air which is being drawn into the engine. The hydroxy gas improves the quality of the fuel burn inside the engine, increases the engine power, cleans old carbon deposits off the inside of the engine, reduces the unwanted exhaust emissions and improves the mpg figures under all driving conditions.

This hydroxy booster is easy to make and the components don’t cost much. The technical performance of the unit is very good as it produces 1.7 litres of hydroxy gas per minute at a very reasonable current draw. This is how to make and use it.

Caution: This is not a toy. If you make and use one of these, you do so entirely at your own risk. Neither the designer of the booster, the author of this document or the provider of the internet display are in any way liable should you suffer any loss or damage through your own actions. While it is believed to be entirely safe to make and use a booster of this design, provided that the safety instructions shown below are followed, it is stressed that the responsibility is yours and yours alone.

The Safety Gear

Before getting into the details of how to construct the booster, you must be aware of what needs to be done when using any booster of any design. Firstly, hydroxy gas is highly explosive. If it wasn’t, it would not be able to do it’s job of improving the explosions inside your engine. Hydroxy gas needs to be treated with respect and caution. It is important to make sure that it goes into the engine and nowhere else. It is also important that it gets ignited inside the engine and nowhere else.

To make these things happen, a number of common-sense steps need to be taken. Firstly, the booster must not make hydroxy gas when the engine is not running. The best way to arrange this is to switch off the current going to the booster. It is not sufficient to just have a manually-operated dashboard On/Off switch as it is almost certain that switching off will be forgotten one day. Instead, the electrical supply to the booster is routed through the ignition switch of the vehicle. That way, when the engine is turned off and the ignition key removed, it is certain that the booster is turned off as well.
So as not to put too much current through the ignition switch, and to allow for the possibility of the ignition switch being on when the engine is not running, instead of wiring the booster directly to the switch, it is better wire a standard automotive relay across the electric fuel pump and let the relay carry the booster current. The fuel pump is powered down automatically if the engine stops running, and so it will also power down the booster.

An extra safety feature is to allow for the (very unlikely) possibility of an electrical short-circuit occurring in the booster or its wiring. This is done by putting a fuse or contact-breaker between the battery and the new circuitry as shown in this sketch:

If you chose to use a contact-breaker, then a light-emitting diode ("LED") with a current limiting resistor of say, 680 ohms in series with it, can be wired directly across the contacts of the circuit breaker. The LED can be mounted on the dashboard. As the contacts are normally closed, they short-circuit the LED and so no light shows. If the circuit-breaker is tripped, then the LED will light up to show that the circuit-breaker has operated. The current through the LED is so low that the electrolyser is effectively switched off. This is not a necessary feature, merely an optional extra feature:

In the first sketch, you will notice that the booster contains a number of metal plates and the current passing through the liquid inside the booster (the “electrolyte”) between these plates, causes the water to break up into the required hydroxy gas mix. A very important safety item is the “bubbler” which is just a simple container with some water in it. The bubbler has the gas coming in at the bottom and bubbling up through the water. The gas collects above the water surface and is then drawn into the engine through an outlet pipe above the water surface. To prevent water being drawn into the booster when the booster is off and cools down, a one-way valve is placed in the pipe between the booster and the bubbler.

If the engine happens to produce a backfire, then the bubbler blocks the flame from passing back through the pipe and igniting the gas being produced in the booster. If the booster is made with a tightly-fitting lid rather than a screw-on lid, then if the gas in the bubbler is ignited, it will just blow the lid off the bubbler and rob the explosion of any real force. A bubbler is a very simple, very cheap and very sensible thing to install.

You will notice that the wires going to the plates inside the electrolyser are both connected well below the surface of the liquid. This is to avoid the possibility of a connection working loose with the vibration of the vehicle and causing a spark in the gas-filled region above the surface of the liquid, which is kept as low as possible as another safety feature.

**The Design**

The booster is made from a length of 4-inch diameter PVC pipe, two caps, several metal plates, a couple of metal straps and some other minor bits and pieces:
This is not rocket science, and this booster can be built by anybody. A clever extra feature is the transparent plastic tube added to the side of the booster, to show the level of the liquid inside the booster without having to unscrew the cap. Another neat feature is the very compact transparent bubbler which is actually attached to the booster and which shows the gas flow coming from the booster. The main PVC booster pipe length can be adjusted to suit the available space beside the engine.
This booster uses cheap, standard electrical stainless steel wall switch covers from the local hardware store and stainless steel straps cut from the handles of food-preparation ladles. The electrical cover plates are clamped together in an array of eight closely-spaced pairs of covers. These are suspended inside a container made from 4-inch (100 mm) diameter PVC pipe. The pipe is converted to a container by using PVC glue to attach an end-cap on one end and a screw-cap fitting on the other. The container then has the gas-supply pipe fitting attached to the cap, which is drilled with two holes to allow the connecting straps for the plate array to be bolted to the cap, as shown here:

In order to ensure that the stainless steel straps are tightly connected to the electric wiring, the cap bolts are both located on the robust, horizontal surface of the cap, and clamped securely both inside and out. A rubber washer or rubber gasket is used to enhance the seal on the outside of the cap. If available, a steel washer with integral rubber facing can be used.

As the stainless steel strap which connects the booster plates to the negative side of the electrical supply connects to the central section of the plate array, it is necessary to kink it inwards. The angle used for this is in no way important, but the strap should be perfectly vertical when it reaches the plates as shown here:
The picture above shows clearly the wall plates being used and how the bubbler is attached to the body of the booster with super-glue. It also shows the various pipe connections. The stainless steel switch-cover plates are 2.75 inch x 4.5 inch (70 mm x 115 mm) in size and their existing mounting holes are drilled out to quarter inch (6 mm) diameter in order to take the plastic bolts used to hold the plates together into an array. After a year of continuous use, these plates are still shiny and not corroded in any way.

Two stainless steel straps are used to attach the plate array to the screw cap of the booster. These straps are taken from the handles of cooking utensils and they connect to three of the plates as the outside strap runs across the bottom of the plate array, clear of the plates, and connects to both outside plates as can be seen in both the above photographs and the diagram below.

The plates are held in position by two plastic bolts which run through the original mounting holes in the plates. The arrangement is to have a small 2 mm gap between each of eight pairs of plates. These gaps are produced by putting plastic washers on the plastic bolts between each pair of plates.

The most important spacing here is the 2 mm gap between the plates as this spacing has been found to be very effective in the electrolysis process. The way that the battery is connected is unusual in that it leaves most of the plates apparently unconnected. These plate pairs are called “floaters” and they do produce gas in spite of looking as if they are not electrically connected.

Stainless steel nuts are used between each pair of plates and these form an electrical connection between adjacent plates. The plate array made in this way is cheap, easy to construct and both compact and robust. The electrical straps are bolted to the screw cap at the top of the unit and this both positions the plate array
securely and provides electrical connection bolts on the outside of the cap while maintaining an airtight seal for the holes in the cap.

Notice that the metal strap running across at the bottom of the array is held in place because it passes through slots cut in the lower edge of the outside covers. The three slotted covers used in this array look like this:
And they are assembled like this:

The slots in the covers are cut using my band saw but they could be made with an ordinary bench grinder or angle grinder. The plates are held in a vise when being drilled:
The covers are further treated by being clamped to a workbench and dented using a centre-punch and hammer. These indentations raise the gas output from 1.5 lpm to 1.7 lpm as the both increase the surface area of the cover and provide points from which the gas bubbles can drop off the cover more easily. The more indentations the better:

The preparation of the plates is very important indeed. After the indentation process, they plates should be sand-blasted. If you do not have the equipment for this, then I strongly recommend that you take the plates to your local metal-working shop and get them to do the sand-blasting for you.
The finished plate, ready for sand-blasting looks like this:

I know that it may seem a little fussy, but it has been found that fingerprints on the plates of any electrolyzer seriously hinder the gas production because they reduce the working area of the plate quite substantially. It is important then, to either avoid all fingerprints (by wearing clean gloves) or finish the plates by cleaning all grease and dirt off the working surfaces with a good solvent, which is washed off afterwards with distilled water.

Another very practical point is that the stainless steel straps running from the screw cap to the plate array, need to be insulated so that current does not leak between them. The same applies to the section of the strap which runs underneath the plates. This insulating can be done by wrapping the straps in electrical insulating tape which has been found to work very well, staying secure for months of use. The tape is wrapped tightly around the straps, being stretched slightly as it is wrapped. The section running underneath the covers is wrapped before the array is assembled.
The PVC housing for the booster has two small-diameter angle pipe fittings attached to it and a piece of clear plastic tubing placed between them so that the level of the electrolyte can be checked without removing the screw cap. The white tube on the other side of the booster is a compact bubbler which is glued directly to the body of the booster using super-glue in order to produce a single combined booster/bubbler unit. The bubbler arrangement is shown here, spread out before gluing in place as this makes the method of connection easier to see.

The half-inch diameter elbows at the ends of the one-inch diameter bubbler tube have their threads coated with silicone before being pushed into place. This allows both of them to act as pressure-relief pop-out fittings in the unlikely event of the gas being ignited. This is an added safety feature of the design.
This booster is operated with a solution of Potassium Hydroxide also called KOH or Caustic Potash which can be bought from Summer Bee Meadow at http://www.summerbeemeadow.com/ via their “Soapmaking Supplies” button. To get the right amount in the booster, I fill the booster to its normal liquid level with distilled water and add the Hydroxide a little at a time, until the current through the booster is about 4 amps below my chosen working current of 20 amps. This allows for the unit heating up when it is working and drawing more current because the electrolyte is hot. The amount of KOH is typically 2 teaspoonfulls. It is very important to use distilled water as tap water has impurities in it which make a mess which will clog up the booster. Also, be very careful handling potassium hydroxide as it is highly caustic. If any gets on you, wash it off immediately with large amounts of water, and if necessary, use some vinegar which is acidic and will offset the caustic splashes.

The completed booster usually looks like this:

![Completed Booster Image]

But, it can be built using different materials to give it a cool look:
And attached to a cool bike:
The final important thing is how the booster gets connected to the engine. The normal mounting for the booster is close to the carb or throttle body so that a short length of piping can be used to connect the booster to the intake of the engine. The connection can be to the air box which houses the filter, or into the intake tube. The closer to the butterfly valve the better, because for safety reasons, we want to reduce the volume of hydroxy gas hanging around in the intake system. You can drill and tap a 1/4" (6 mm) NPT fitting into the plastic inlet tubing with a barbed end for connecting the 1/4" (6 mm) hose.

The shorter the run of tubing to the air ductwork of the engine, the better. Again, for safety reasons, we want to limit the amount of unprotected hydroxy gas. If a long run of 3 feet (1 metre) or more must be used due to space constraints, then it would be a good idea to add another bubbler at the end of the tube, for additional protection. If you do this, then it is better to use a larger diameter outlet hose, say 3/8" or 5/16" (10 mm or 12 mm).

If you don’t have the necessary tools or workspace, then I will make one of these boosters for you for US $200 plus shipping. If you would like to have me do this for you, then e-mail me at eletrik_1@yahoo.com

The parts needed to build this booster with it’s bubbler are easily found:

**Powering your Booster**

Use wire and electrical hardware capable of handling 20 amps DC, no less. Overkill is OK in this situation, so I recommend using components that can handle 30 amps. Run your power through your ignition circuit, so that it only runs when the vehicle is on. A 30 amp relay should be used to prevent damaging the ignition circuit which may not be designed for an extra 20 amp draw. Make sure to use a properly rated fuse, 30
amps is ideal. You can use a toggle switch if you like for further control. As an added safety feature, some like to run an oil pressure switch to the relay as well, so the unit operates only when the engine is actually running. It is very important that all electrical connections be solid and secure. Soldering is better than crimping. Any loose connections will cause heat and possibly a fire, so it is up to you to make sure those connections are of high quality. They must be clean and tight, and should be checked from time to time as you operate the unit just to be sure the system is secure.

**Adjusting the Electrolyte**

Fill your booster with distilled water and NaOH (sodium hydroxide) or KOH (potassium hydroxide) only. No tap water, salt water or rainwater! No table salt or baking soda! These materials will permanently damage the booster!

First, fill the booster with distilled water about 2" from the top. Add a teaspoon of KOH or NaOH to the water and then slide the top into place. Do not tighten it for now, but leave the top loose and resting in place. Connect your 12V power supply to the leads and monitor the current draw of the unit. You want 16 amps flowing when the booster is cold. As the water heats up over time, the current draw will increase by around 4 amps until it reaches about 20 amps, and this is why you are aiming for only 16 amps with a cold system.

If the current is too high, dump out some electrolyte and add just distilled water. If the current is too low, add a pinch or two at a time of your catalyst until the 16 amps is reached. Overfilling your booster will cause some of the electrolyte to be forced up the output tube, so a liquid level tube was added to monitor electrolyte level.

The booster generally needs to be topped off once a week, depending on how long it is in operation. Add distilled water, then check your current draw again. You may observe a drop in current over the course of a few refills, and this is normal. Some of the catalyst escapes the cell suspended in water vapor droplets, so from time to time you may need to add a pinch or two. The water in the bubbler acts to scrub this contaminant out of the gas as well. I highly recommend installing an ammeter to monitor current draw as you operate your booster.

**Mounting the Booster**

Choose a well ventilated area in the engine compartment to mount your booster. Since every vehicle design is different, I leave it up to you to figure out the best method to mount it. It must be mounted with the top orientated upwards. Large 5" diameter hose clamps work well, but do not over tighten them or the PVC may deform. I recommend mounting the booster behind the front bumper in the area usually present between it and the radiator. Support the weight of the unit from the bottom with a bracket of your design, then use two hose clamps to secure the unit, one near the top and one near the bottom. Never install the unit in the passenger compartment for safety reasons.

**Output hose and Bubbler**

The bubbler on the side of the unit should be filled about 1/3 to 1/2 full of water - tap water is fine. The check valve before the bubbler is there to prevent the bubbler water from being sucked back into the booster when it cools and the gases inside contract. Make sure the bubbler level is maintained at all times. Failure to do so could result in an unwanted backfire explosion. That water inside the bubbler is your physical shield between the stored hydroxy volume in the generator and the intake of your engine. Install the output hose as close to the carburetor/throttle body as close as possible by making a connection into the intake tube/air cleaner. Try to make the hose as short as possible to reduce the amount of gas volume it contains. I recommend using the same type of 1/4" poly hose that is used on the unit.

Here is a list of the parts needed to construct the booster and bubbler if you decide to build it yourself rather than buying a ready-made unit:
### The Main Parts Needed

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4-inch diameter PVC pipe 12-inches long</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Forms the body of the booster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-inch diameter PVC pipe end-cap</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Closes the bottom of the booster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-inch diameter PVC pipe screw cap</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>The top of the booster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Half-inch diameter PVC pipe elbow</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>The gas take-off from the booster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quarter-inch diameter PVC pipe elbow</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>The water-level indicator connectors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quarter-inch clear plastic tubing</td>
<td>36 - inch</td>
<td>The water-level indicator tubing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stainless steel switch covers</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>The plate array components</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stainless steel straps 12-inches long</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>The electrical connections to the plates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One-inch diameter PVC pipe</td>
<td>12-inch</td>
<td>Available at Home Depot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quarter-inch stainless steel bolts 1&quot; long</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Electrical strap connection to the top cap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quarter-inch stainless steel nuts &amp; washers</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>To fit the steel bolts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quarter-inch diameter stainless steel nuts</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>To fit nylon threaded rod</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quarter-inch diameter nylon threaded rod</td>
<td>8&quot; min.</td>
<td>Nylon Threaded Rod 1/4&quot;-20 Thread.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quarter-inch nylon washers</td>
<td>1-pack</td>
<td>Nylon 6/6 Flat Washer 1/4&quot; Screw Size .252&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quarter-inch Tube Fitting 90 Degree Elbow</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Sanitary White PVDF Single-Barbed Tube Fitting 90 Degree Elbow for 1/4&quot; Tube ID X 1/2&quot; NPT Male Pipe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quarter-inch Tube Fitting 90 Degree Elbow</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Sanitary White PVDF Single-Barbed Tube Fitting 90 Degree Elbow for 1/4&quot; Tube ID X 1/4&quot; NPT Male Pipe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One-way valve</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Diaphragm Check Valve Nylon Body/Fluorosilicone Diaphragm, 1/4&quot; Barb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PVC glue</td>
<td>1 tube</td>
<td>Same color as the PVC pipe if possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional: Light Emitting Diode</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10 mm diameter, red, with panel-mounting clip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quarter-watt resistor</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>470 ohm (code bands: Yellow, Purple, Brown)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Now, having shown how this very effective booster and bubbler are constructed, it should be pointed out that if you use it with a vehicle fitted with an Electronic Control Unit which monitors fuel injection into the engine, then the fuel-computer section will offset the gains and benefits of using this, or any other, booster. The solution is not difficult, as the fuel-computer can be controlled by adding in a little circuit board to adjust the sensor signal fed to the computer from the oxygen sensor built into the exhaust of the vehicle. Ready-built units are available for this or you can make your own.

### Other Boosters

The principles involved here are not at all difficult to understand. If a small amount of hydroxy gas is added to the air being drawn into the engine, the resulting mix burns very much better than it would if no hydroxy gas were added. With reasonable amounts of hydroxy gas added, the burn quality is so high that a catalytic converter is not needed. Normally, unburnt fuel coming out of the engine is burnt in the catalytic converter. With a good booster connected, there is no unburnt fuel reaching the catalytic converter, so although you leave it in place, it never wears out as it is not being used.

You have just seen the details of the Smack’s booster, which is an excellent design, but naturally, there are many other designs. It would be advisable then if you understood the basic principles of booster design as you can then assess the capabilities of any new design.

Electrolysis has been known for a very long time and it appears very simple. Michael Faraday described the method and determined the gas output for what seemed to be 100% efficiency of the process. Bob Boyce of the ‘watercar’ Group has designed a DC electrolysis cell which achieves twice Faraday’s theoretical maximum output per watt of input power. Straight DC electrolysis works like this:
Here, a current flows through the liquid inside the electrolysis cell, moving from one plate to the other. The current breaks the bonding of the water molecules, converting the H₂O into hydrogen H and oxygen O. There are various forms of hydrogen and oxygen and mixtures of the two. H on its own is called “monatomic” hydrogen, and given the chance, it will join with another H to form H₂ which is called “diatomic” hydrogen. The same goes for the oxygen atoms. The monatomic variety of hydrogen has four times the energy and just under 4% of it mixed with air, is capable of powering an engine without using any fossil fuel oil at all.

If the liquid in the electrolyser is distilled water, then almost no current will flow and almost no gas will be produced. If you add two or three drops of battery acid to the water, the current and gas production increase enormously. Putting acid in the water is a bad idea as it gets used in the process, the acidity of the water keeps changing, the current keeps changing, the acid attacks the electrodes and unwanted gasses are given off. Putting salt in the water, or using seawater, has nearly the same effect with poisonous chlorine gas being given off. Baking soda is also a bad choice as it gives off carbon monoxide which is a seriously toxic gas. Instead of using these additives, it is much better to use a “catalyst” which promotes the electrolysis without actually taking part in the chemical process. The best of these are Sodium Hydroxide (“Red Devil lye” in the USA, “caustic soda” in the UK) and even better still, Potassium Hydroxide (“Caustic Potash”).

The process of electrolysis is most unusual. As the voltage applied to the plates is increased, the rate of gas production increases (no surprise there). But once the voltage reaches 1.24 volts across the electrolyte between the electrodes, there is no further increase in gas production with increase in voltage. If the electrolysis cell produces 1 litre of hydroxy gas per hour with 1.24 volts applied to the electrolyte, then it will produce exactly 1 litre of hydroxy gas per hour with 12 volts applied to the electrolyte. Even though the input power has been increased nearly 10 times, the gas output remains unchanged. So it is much more effective to keep the voltage across the electrolyte to 1.24 volts or some value near that. As there is a small voltage drop due to the material from which the electrodes are made, in practice the voltage per cell is usually set to about 2 volts for the very best electrode metal which is 316L-grade stainless steel.

The electrolyser shown here produces six times as much gas for exactly the same input power. This is a serious gain in efficiency. As all of the cells of this electrolyser are identical, each has approximately 2 volts across it when a 12 volt battery is used. The amount of gas produced depends directly on the amount of current passing through the cells. As they are “in series” (connected in a chain), the same current passes through all of them. For any given battery voltage and electrode spacing, the current is controlled by the amount of catalyst added to the water. The liquid in the electrolyser cells is called the ‘electrolyte’. In practice, there is a distinct advantage in having a large surface area for each electrode, and a small spacing between the electrodes of about 3 mm or 1/8”.

The electrolyser shown here produces six times as much gas for exactly the same input power. This is a serious gain in efficiency. As all of the cells of this electrolyser are identical, each has approximately 2 volts across it when a 12 volt battery is used. The amount of gas produced depends directly on the amount of current passing through the cells. As they are “in series” (connected in a chain), the same current passes through all of them. For any given battery voltage and electrode spacing, the current is controlled by the amount of catalyst added to the water. The liquid in the electrolyser cells is called the ‘electrolyte’. In practice, there is a distinct advantage in having a large surface area for each electrode, and a small spacing between the electrodes of about 3 mm or 1/8”.

The electrolyser shown here produces six times as much gas for exactly the same input power. This is a serious gain in efficiency. As all of the cells of this electrolyser are identical, each has approximately 2 volts across it when a 12 volt battery is used. The amount of gas produced depends directly on the amount of current passing through the cells. As they are “in series” (connected in a chain), the same current passes through all of them. For any given battery voltage and electrode spacing, the current is controlled by the amount of catalyst added to the water. The liquid in the electrolyser cells is called the ‘electrolyte’. In practice, there is a distinct advantage in having a large surface area for each electrode, and a small spacing between the electrodes of about 3 mm or 1/8”.

The electrolyser shown here produces six times as much gas for exactly the same input power. This is a serious gain in efficiency. As all of the cells of this electrolyser are identical, each has approximately 2 volts across it when a 12 volt battery is used. The amount of gas produced depends directly on the amount of current passing through the cells. As they are “in series” (connected in a chain), the same current passes through all of them. For any given battery voltage and electrode spacing, the current is controlled by the amount of catalyst added to the water. The liquid in the electrolyser cells is called the ‘electrolyte’. In practice, there is a distinct advantage in having a large surface area for each electrode, and a small spacing between the electrodes of about 3 mm or 1/8”.
There is a strong tendency for bubbles of gas to remain on the surface of the electrodes and impede the electrolysis process. If there were enough bubbles on an electrode, it would not actually touch the electrolyte and electrolysis would stop altogether. Many methods have been used to minimise this problem. The electrode plates are normally made from 16 gauge 316L-grade stainless steel and it is recommended that there be between 2 and 4 square inches of plate area on every face of every electrode for each amp of current passing through the cell. Some people place an ultrasonic transducer underneath the plates to vibrate the bubbles off the plate surfaces. Archie Blue and Charles Garrett made the engine suck its input air through the electrolyser and relied on the air drawn through the electrolyte to dislodge the bubbles. Some people use piezo electric crystals attached to the plates to vibrate the plates and shake the bubbles free, others use magnetic fields, usually from permanent magnets. The best method is to treat the electrode plates with cross-hatch scouring, an extensive cleansing process and an extensive conditioning process. After that treatment, bubbles no longer stick to the electrodes but break away immediately without the need for any form of additional help.

As indicated in the drawing above, you MUST NOT perform electrolysis with the gas escaping freely, unless you are out of doors with very good ventilation. Hydrogen and hydrogen/oxygen mix gasses are HIGHLY dangerous, easily ignited and can easily injure or kill you. They must be treated with a high degree of respect. You need to keep the amount of gas held at the top of each cell to a minimum, and ALWAYS use a bubbler as shown here:

The deep water in the bubbler stops any flashback reaching the electrolyser and should the gas at the top of the bubbler be ignited by some accident, then the tightly-fitting cap should blow off harmlessly. If equipment of this nature is being installed in any vehicle, NO component containing “hydroxy” gas must ever be placed inside the passenger compartment. The engine compartment should be used to house this equipment or, if you really must, the boot (“trunk”) and no pipe containing gas should run through any part of the passenger area. Staying alive and uninjured is much more important than reducing emissions or fuel consumption.

There are many different ways of constructing electrolysis equipment. A fairly conventional electrical set-up is shown here:

Three plates are used for each electrode and the cells are connected in series. This is a perfectly good arrangement and it has the advantage that the plates can be submerged deeply in the electrolyte, the cells are fully isolated from each other and they can be positioned in convenient locations scattered around the
engine compartment. Also, the gas from each cell can be drawn through the electrolyte of the other cells, and this helps to dislodge gas bubbles and improve the operating efficiency of the system.

It is not necessary to have these containers as separate units. A single, much more compact, housing can contain all of the plates needed to make a very efficient “series” electrolyser, as shown here:
This design has several advantages. The level of electrolyte in each compartment is not critical, so a considerable volume of electrolyte can be held above the plates. This means that topping up with water need only be done very occasionally, and so there is no need for a complicated filling mechanism. The method of construction is very simple. The unit is fairly compact. The electrode plate area can be made a big as you wish. The cell has seven compartments as when a vehicle engine is running, the alternator produces nearly 14 volts in order to charge the 12 volt vehicle battery. This means that there will be about 2 volts across each of the seven cells and gas production will be seven times that of a single cell.

Construction of a housing is not difficult. Pieces are cut out for two sides, one base, one lid and eight absolutely identical partitions. These partitions (which include two housing end pieces) must be exactly the same so that there is no tendency for leaks to develop.

The Bottom piece is the same length as the Sides, and it is the width of the Partitions plus twice the thickness of the material being used to build the housing. If acrylic plastic is being used for the construction, then the supplier can also provide an “adhesive” which effectively “welds” the pieces together making the different pieces appear to have been made from a single piece. The case would be assembled like this:

Here, the partitions are fixed in place one at a time, and finally, the second side is attached and will mate exactly as the partitions and ends are all exactly the same width. A simple construction for the Lid is to attach a strip all the way around the top of the unit and have the lid overlap the sides as shown here:
A gasket placed between the sides and the lid would assist in making a good seal when the lid is bolted down. The electrode plates for this design can be made from stainless steel mesh as this material can be cut by hand using a pair of tin snips:

These plates should be held 3 mm (1/8 inch) apart for the best gas-producing performance. This can be done by using plastic threaded rod and bolts positioned at each corner of the sheets. The sheets are spaced accurately by placing plastic washers on the threaded rod between the plates. If the threaded rods are cut to just the right length, they can be a push-fit between the partitions and that holds the plates securely in position inside the cell. There are various ways of connecting the plates which are placed in each compartment of this cell. The connection method depends on the number of plates in each set. The most simple arrangement is just two plates per compartment, but there can just as easily be, three, four, five or whatever number suits you:
The electrolysis takes place in the gaps between the plates, so with two plates, there is just one area of electrolysis. With three plates, there are two inter-plate spaces and electrolysis takes place on both sides of the central plate in each compartment. With four plates, there are three inter-plates spaces and electrolysis takes place on both faces of the two inner plates in each compartment.

If each plate has, say, 20 square inches of area on each face, then with two plates, the electrolysis area is 20 square inches allowing up to 10 amps of current. With the three plate arrangement, the electrolysis area is 40 square inches, allowing a current of up to 20 amps through the electrolyser. With the four plate arrangement, the electrolysis area of the electrode plates is 60 square inches, allowing up to 30 amps to be passed through the cell. The higher currents are not a problem with this design because with seven cells in series, there is little heating of the electrolyte and the cell operation remains stable.

There are many different styles of cell. It is possible to dispense with the partitions shown above, if you are willing to sacrifice the large volume of electrolyte above the electrode plates. This style of design is necessary if instead of having just seven partitions in the cell, there are to be seventy or more. This leads to the style of construction shown here:

Here, the outer casing is slotted to receive the electrode plates. The build accuracy needs to be high as the electrode plates are expected to form an almost watertight seal to create separate cells inside the housing. In this diagram, the central electrode plates are shown in red for positive and blue for negative voltage connections. The plates are just single sheets of stainless steel and to a quick glance, it looks as if the central plates do nothing. This is not so. Because the electrolyte is not free to move between compartments, it produces the same electrical effect as the arrangement shown here:
An alternative arrangement

While this is the same electrically, it requires the production and slotting of five additional plates. Each extra plate is effectively redundant because the space between the internal pairs is empty (wasted space) and one steel plate is just wired directly to the next one. As the plates are wired together in pairs, there is no need to have two plates and a connecting wire - a single plate will do. The reason for pointing this out in detail is because it is quite difficult to see how the standard arrangement is connected electrically with the opposite sides of a single plate forming part of two adjacent cells and in addition, the electrical connection between those two cells.

When straight DC electrolysis is being used, the rate of gas production is proportional to the current flowing through the cells. With 12 volt systems, the current is usually determined by the concentration of the electrolyte and its temperature. When an electrolyser is first started, it usually has a fairly low temperature. As time goes by, the electrolysis raises the temperature of the electrolyte. This increases the current flowing through the electrolyser, which in turn, heats the electrolyte even more. This causes two problems. Firstly, the gas production rate at start-up is lower than expected as the electrolyte is not as hot as it will become. Secondly, when the electrolyser has been going for some time, a temperature runaway effect is created where the current gets out of hand.

There are various solutions to this situation. One is to accept that the gas production will be low in the early stages of each run, and adjust the concentration of the electrolyte so that the maximum running temperature gives exactly the design current through the electrolyser. This is not a popular solution. Another solution is to use an electronic “Mark/Space Ratio” circuit to control the current. This rather impressive name just means a circuit which switches the power to the electrolyser ON and OFF many times each second, more or less the same as a dimmer switch used to control lighting levels in the home. Using this solution, an ammeter to show the current, and a Mark/Space Ratio control knob, are mounted on the dashboard of the vehicle, and the driver lowers the current manually if it starts to get too high.

Another, very effective alternative is to add in extra electrolysis cells. As well as controlling the current, this raises the efficiency of the gas production. This can be achieved in various ways. One option is to install extra cells with a heavy duty 12V switch across them. When the switch is closed, the cell is starved of current and effectively is not operational at all. Heavy duty switches of this kind can be bought in ship chandlers at reasonable cost as they are used extensively in boating for switching engine and lighting circuits in power boats and sailing yachts. An alternative is to used a high powered semiconductor to replace the switch and use cheap, low power switches to control the semiconductors. This last option adds unnecessary circuitry but it holds out the possibility of automating the process where the electronics circuit switches the cells in and out automatically depending on the current being drawn by the electrolyser. Firstly, using heavy duty switches, the arrangement could be like this:
In the first option, the arrangement is very simple with three switches adding in three additional cells - one switch per cell, very easy to understand and operate. The second arrangement uses the same three switches but it allows twice as many extra cells to be switched in. However, the switching arrangement is more complicated when driving along with one switch having to be opened and another having to be closed.

With the electronics option, the switch arrangement inside the vehicle is very straightforward with a single rotary switch mounted on the dashboard being used to select the number of additional electrolysis cells to be used. The diagram here shows the switching for three additional cells, but the circuit can be continued for more cells if desired. The only practical limit is in the rotary switch where twelve positions is the normal maximum for a standard wafer switch. That would give eleven additional cells which far more than would be realistic in practice. In fact, the three additional cells shown is probably as much as would be used if this method were adopted.
If this all seems rather complicated to you, then you would probably find that reading some of the Electronics Tutorial chapter to be helpful. The tutorial explains how to lay out circuits and how to physically construct them.

Dealing with the Oxygen Sensor. The hydroxy boosters mentioned above, are intended for use with the vehicle's existing fuel supply. The Smack's booster produces about 1.7 litres per minute ("1.7 lpm") and that is enough to improve the quality of the fuel burn inside the engine and clean up both the emissions and any old carbon deposits inside the engine.

If the output of the booster reaches 4 or 5 lpm, then the amount of hydroxy added starts to alter the nature of the fuel mix being used. As hydroxy gas burns maybe a thousand times faster than petroleum droplets (which have to get broken down into smaller particles before they burn properly), it starts to become necessary to delay the spark. If the hydroxy volume gets high enough, then the engine can be run on it alone, without the need for any fossil fuel, and in that instance, the timing needs to be retarded so that the spark occurs about eight degrees after Top Dead Centre ("TDC"). This will be explained in more detail, later in this chapter. As for running a car engine on hydroxy gas alone, the volumes needed for doing that are much larger.

Zach West has recently built an interesting design of electrolyser for his 6-volt, 250 cc motorcycle. He reckons that it produces 17 lpm of hydroxy and can run his bike directly off water. His design is shown in detail, later in this chapter, and it should be quite capable of running a standard electrical generator while taking it's own input power from that generator and powering other equipment as well.

Bob Boyce has recently stated that he has run a 650 cc twin-cylinder marine engine on 60 lpm of hydroxy produced by one of his own designs of sophisticated electrolyser. That engine produced a measured 114 horsepower output. A 101-plate version of Bob's design can produce some 100 lpm and can run a car engine of reasonable size, directly on water, provided that the cell tuning can be maintained on the cell's resonant frequency.
It is normal for hydroxy gas to be used inside an IC engine with a 4% (1:25) concentration in air. The air is needed as it expands with the heat of combustion and raises the pressure inside the cylinder to drive the piston downwards. It is beneficial to have water droplets like those produced by a pond “fogger” device, inside the cylinder as they convert instantly to flash-steam which provides a powerful driving force. Steam and water vapour do not expand further and so they are a hindrance as they just waste space inside the cylinder - space which could have been used for active components.

To see how much hydroxy is needed to power an engine, consider a 1,600 cc engine running at 2,500 rpm and calculate what volume is likely to be required:

The 1.6 litre engine capacity is drawn into the engine when two revolutions are completed. So, 1.6 litres will be taken 1,250 times per minute. That is exactly 2,000 lpm. But only 4% of that volume needs to be hydroxy gas and the remaining 96% can be air. So, the amount of hydroxy gas needed per minute is 2,000 / 25 which is 80 lpm of hydroxy. This figure is definitely of the right order as indicated by the actual experience of people who have run engines on hydroxy gas.

I am not an automotive expert, but people who state that they are professional automotive people, say that an engine running at speed, only succeeds in replacing, typically, 85% of the cylinder contents on the exhaust and intake strokes. If that is correct, then only 85% of that 80 lpm will be needed to run a 1,600 cc engine and that works out to be 68 lpm, which is no small amount of hydroxy gas. If you visualise a 2-litre soft drinks bottle turned upside down and filled with water, and the hydroxy gas output of your electrolyser bubbling up into that bottle, pushing the water out. Then that entire bottle needs to be completely filled with hydroxy gas in less than two seconds, and that is a spectacular rate. Bob Boyce’s design can do that, and full details of it are given in this chapter.

But to return to our 1.7 lpm booster which is capable of giving such good results in cutting harmful vehicle emissions. A booster will not give any improvement in fuel economy on a modern vehicle, because of the feedback coming from the oxygen sensor (or sensors). The fuel computer of the vehicle will detect the very much reduced emissions from the engine, and will immediately believe that there is not enough fuel going into the engine, and it will promptly start pumping more fuel into the engine. For that reason, and that reason alone, adding a booster on its own can actually make the fuel economy slightly worse. The remedy is to adjust the signal coming from the oxygen sensor to the fuel computer, so that it stays on track with the hydroxy gas being added to the fuel mix. This is not as difficult as it sounds. If you are not familiar with electronics, then now might be a good time to take a run through the Electronics Tutorial chapter, so that you can understand exactly what is being said about controlling the oxygen sensor.

In the most simple terms, most vehicles which have an Electronic Control Unit (“ECU”) to control the fuel flow are fitted with one of two types of exhaust sensor. The majority have a “narrowband” sensor while the remainder have a “wideband” sensor. The ideal mix of air to fuel is considered to be 14.7 to 1. A narrowband sensor only responds to mixtures from about 14.2 to 1 through 14.9 to 1. The sensor operates by comparing the amount of oxygen in the exhaust gas to the amount of oxygen in the air outside the vehicle and it generates an output voltage which moves rapidly between 0.2 volts where the mixture is too lean, and 0.8 volts when it passes below the 14.7 to 1 air/fuel mix point where the mixture is too rich (as indicated by the graph shown below). The ECU increases the fuel feed when the signal level is 0.2 volts and decreases it when the signal voltage is 0.8 volts. This causes the signal voltage to switch regularly from high to low and back to high again as the computer attempts to match the amount of “too lean” time to the amount of “too rich” time.
A simple control circuit board can be added to alter the sensor signal and nudge the fuel computer into producing slightly better air/fuel mixes. Unfortunately, there is a severe downside to doing this. If, for any reason, the fuel mix is set too high for an extended period, then the excess fuel being burnt in the catalytic converter can raise the temperature there high enough to melt the internal components of the converter. On the other hand, if the circuit board is switched to a mix which is too lean, then the engine temperature can be pushed high enough to damage the valves, which is an expensive mistake.

Over-lean running can occur at different speeds and loads. Joe Hanson recommends that if any device for making the mix leaner is fitted to the vehicle, then the following procedure should be carried out. Buy a "type K" thermocouple with a 3-inch stainless steel threaded shank, custom built by ThermX Southwest of San Diego. This temperature sensor can measure temperatures up to 1,800 degrees Fahrenheit (980 degrees Centigrade). Mount the thermocouple on the exhaust pipe by drilling and tapping the pipe close to the exhaust manifold, just next to the flange gasket. Take a cable from the thermocouple into the driver’s area and use a multimeter to show the temperature.

Drive the vehicle long enough to reach normal running temperature and then drive at full speed on a highway. Note the temperature reading at this speed. When a leaner mix is used, make sure that the temperature reading under exactly the same conditions does not exceed 180 degrees Fahrenheit (100 degrees Centigrade) above the pre-modification temperature.

David Andruczyk recommends an alternative method of avoiding engine damage through over-lean fuel/air mixtures, namely, replacing the narrowband oxygen sensor with a wideband sensor and controller. A wideband oxygen sensor reads a very wide range of Air/Fuel ratios, from about 9 to 1 through 28 to 1. A normal car engine can run from about 10 to 1 (very rich) to about 17.5 to 1 (pretty lean). Maximum engine power is developed at a mix ratio of about 12.5 to 1. Complete fuel combustion takes place with a mix of about 14.7 to 1, while the mix which gives minimum exhaust emissions is slightly leaner than that.

Unlike narrowband sensors, wideband sensors need their own controller in order to function. There are many of these units being offered for sale for retro-fitting to existing vehicles which have just narrowband oxygen sensor systems. David’s personal recommendation is the Innovate Motorsports LC-1 which is small, and uses the very reasonably priced LSU-4 sensor. This wideband controller can be programmed. Most controllers have the ability to output two signals, the wideband signal suitable for running to a gauge or new ECU, plus a synthesised narrowband signal which can feed an existing ECU. The trick is to install a wideband sensor, with the LC-1 controller and then reprogram it to **shift** the narrowband output to achieve a leaner mix as shown here:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Actual Air/Fuel Mix</th>
<th>Wideband Output</th>
<th>Original Narrowband Output</th>
<th>Shifted Narrowband Output</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9 to 1</td>
<td>9 to 1</td>
<td>Mix is too Rich</td>
<td>Mix is too Rich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 to 1</td>
<td>10 to 1</td>
<td>Mix is too Rich</td>
<td>Mix is too Rich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 to 1</td>
<td>11 to 1</td>
<td>Mix is too Rich</td>
<td>Mix is too Rich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 to 1</td>
<td>12 to 1</td>
<td>Mix is too Rich</td>
<td>Mix is too Rich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 to 1</td>
<td>13 to 1</td>
<td>Mix is too Rich</td>
<td>Mix is too Rich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 to 1</td>
<td>14 to 1</td>
<td>Mix is too Rich</td>
<td>Mix is too Rich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.6 to 1</td>
<td>14.6 to 1</td>
<td>Mix is too Rich</td>
<td>Mix is too Rich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.8 to 1</td>
<td>14.8 to 1</td>
<td>Mix is too Lean</td>
<td>Mix is too Rich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 to 1</td>
<td>15 to 1</td>
<td>Mix is too Lean</td>
<td>Mix is too Rich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.5 to 1</td>
<td>15.5 to 1</td>
<td>Mix is too Lean</td>
<td>Mix is too Lean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 to 1</td>
<td>16 to 1</td>
<td>Mix is too Lean</td>
<td>Mix is too Lean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 to 1</td>
<td>18 to 1</td>
<td>Mix is too Lean</td>
<td>Mix is too Lean</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This system allows you to set the narrowband “toggle point” very precisely on an exact chosen air/fuel ratio. This is something which it is nearly impossible to do accurately with a circuit board which just shifts a narrowband oxygen signal as you just do not know what the air/fuel ratio really is with a narrowband sensor.

However, for anyone who wants to try adding a circuit board to alter a narrowband sensor signal to produce a leaner mix on a vehicle, the following description may be of help. It is possible to buy a ready-made circuit board, although using a completely different operating technique, from the very reputable Eagle Research, via their website: http://www.eagle-research.com/products/pfuels.html where the relevant item is shown like this:

![EFIE DEVICE](image)

We now sell completely assembled EFIE device. All you have to do is hook it up and drive!

The EFIE connects directly to your oxygen sensor and is compatible with ALL oxygen sensors.

The EFIE allows you to retain all your power and performance while taking advantage of increased mileage.

No matter what fuel saver device or method you use on your fuel injected vehicle, you’ll need the EFIE to unleash the full potential of the fuel saver.

The EFIE alone can save 5% - 10% on your fuel bill, simply by ‘leaning’ your fuel mixture. We do not consider it as a fuel saver on it’s own. It is designed as an ASSIST for fuel savers.

Vehicles with more than one oxygen sensor need an EFIE on each oxygen sensor.

Note: Your actual mileage gains will depend on the capability of the fuel saver(s) you apply to your vehicle.

SKU ERI-78-0020

This unit generates a small voltage, using a 555 timer chip as an oscillator, rectifying the output to give a small adjustable voltage which is then added to whatever voltage is being generated by the oxygen sensor. This voltage is adjusted at installation time and is then left permanently at that setting. Eagle Research also offer for sale, a booklet which shows you how to build this unit from scratch if you would prefer to do that.
I understand that at the present time, the purchase price of this device is approximately US $50, but that needs to be checked if you decide to buy one. Alternatively, instructions for building a suitable equivalent circuit board are provided later on in this document.

If you wish to use a circuit board with a narrowband oxygen sensor, then please be aware that there are several versions of this type of sensor. The version is indicated by the number of connecting wires:

Those with 1 wire, where the wire carries the signal and the case is ground (zero volts)

Those with 2 wires, where one wire carries the signal and the other wire is ground.

Those with 3 wires, where 2 (typically slightly thicker) wires are for a sensor heater, and 1 for the signal while the case is ground.

Those with 4 wires (the most common on current model cars), where there are 2 (slightly heavier) for the sensor heater, 1 for the signal, and 1 for the signal ground.

(Sensors with 5 wires are normally wideband devices.)

Look in the engine compartment and locate the oxygen sensor. If you have difficulty in finding it, get a copy of the Clymer or Haynes Maintenance Manual for your vehicle as that will show you the position. We need to identify the sensor wire which carries the control signal to the fuel control computer. To do this, make sure that the car is switched off, then

For 3 and 4 wire sensors:

- Disconnect the oxygen sensor wiring harness,
- Set a multimeter to a DC voltage measurement range of at least 15 volts,
- Turn on the ignition and probe the socket looking for the two wires that provide 12 volts.
- These are the heater wires, so make a note of which they are,
- Shut the ignition off, and reconnect the oxygen sensor.

The two remaining wires can now be treated the same as the wires from a 2-wire sensor, one will carry the sensor signal and one will be the signal ground (for a single wire sensor, the signal ground will be the engine block). Jesper Ingerslev points out that the Ford Mustang built since 1996 has 2 oxygen sensors per catalytic converter, one before the converter and one after. Some other vehicles also have this arrangement. With a vehicle of this type, the circuit board described here should be attached to the sensor closest to the engine.

Find a convenient place along the wires. Don’t cut these wires, you will cut the sensor wire here at a later time, but not now. Instead, strip back a small amount of the insulation on each wire. Be careful to avoid the wires short-circuiting to each other or to the body of the vehicle. Connect the DC voltmeter to the wires (the non-heater wires). Start the engine and watch the meter readings. When the engine is warmed up, if the oxygen sensor is performing as it should (i.e. no engine check lights on), the voltage on the meter should begin toggling between a low value near zero volts and a high value of about 1 volt. If the meter reading is going negative, then reverse the leads. The black multimeter lead is connected to the signal ‘ground’ (zero volts) and the red lead will be connected to the wire which carries the signal from the sensor. Connect a piece of insulated wire to the stripped point of the sensor wire and take the wire to the input of your mixture controller circuit board. Connect a second insulated wire between the signal ‘ground’ wire, or in the case of a 1-wire sensor, the engine block, and the circuit board zero-volts line. Insulate all of the stripped cables to prevent any possibility of a short-circuit:
Construction

If you wish to build an oxygen sensor controller circuit, then here is a suggestion as to how you might do it. This description assumes very little knowledge on the part of the reader, so I offer my apologies to those of you who are already expert in these matters. There are many different ways to design and construct any electronic circuit and each electronics expert will have his own preferred way. In my opinion, the way shown here is the easiest for a newcomer to understand and build with the minimum of tools and materials.

The circuit shown here, is taken from the website http://better-mileage.com/memberadx.html, and is discussed here in greater detail. This circuit can be constructed on a printed circuit board or it can be built on a simple single-sided stripboard as shown here:

Stripboard (often called “Veroboard”), has copper strips attached to one side of the board. The copper strips can be broken where it is convenient for building the circuit. Component leads are cut to length, cleaned, inserted from the side of the board which does not have the copper strips, and the leads attached to the copper strips using a solder joint. Soldering is not a difficult skill to learn and the method is described later in this document.

When all of the components have been attached to the stripboard and the circuit tested, then the board is mounted in a small plastic case as shown here:
Insulating posts can be made from a short piece of plastic rod with a hole drilled through its length. The mounting bolt can self-tap into a hole drilled in the case, if the hole is slightly smaller than the diameter of the bolt threads. Alternatively, the holes can be drilled slightly larger and the bolt heads located outside the case with nuts used to hold the board in place. This style of mounting holds the circuit board securely in place and gives some clearance between the board and the case.

You will need building equipment, namely, a soldering iron, a 12 volt power supply such as a battery pack and an accurate digital volt meter for this project. If the 12 volt supply is a main-powered unit, then it needs to be a well-filtered, voltage-stabilised unit. Lastly, you will need a variable voltage source that can go from 0 to 1 volt to imitate the output from the vehicle’s oxygen sensor when testing the completed circuit board. This is simple enough to make, using a resistor and a variable resistor.
A series of components will be needed for the circuit itself. These can be bought from a number of different suppliers and the ordering details are shown later in this document. Shown above is a resistor. The value of the resistor is indicated by a set of three colour bands at one end of the body. The reason for doing this rather than just writing the value on the resistor, is that when the resistor is soldered in place, its value can be read from any angle and from any side. The component list shows the colour bands for each of the resistors used in this circuit.

Other components which you will be using, look like this:

The MPSA14 and the BC327 devices are transistors. They each have a “Collector”, a “Base” and an “Emitter” wire coming out of them. Please notice that the two packages are not identical, and take care that the right wire is placed in the correct hole in the stripboard before soldering it in place.

The 1N4007 diode has a ring marked at one end of the body. The ring indicates the flat bar across the symbol as shown on the circuit diagram, and in that way it identifies which way round the diode is placed on the stripboard.

The Light-Emitting Diode (the “LED”) will be familiar to most people as it is used so extensively in equipment of all types.

The toggle switch has six contacts - three on each side. The centre contact is connected to one of the two outer contacts on its side, which one, depends on the position of the switch lever.

The two capacitors (which are called “condensers” in very old literature) look quite different from each other. The electrolytic capacitor has it’s + wire marked on the body of the capacitor, while the ceramic has such a small value that it does not matter which way round it is connected.

The main component of the circuit, is an integrated circuit or “chip”. This is a tiny package containing a whole electronic circuit inside it (resistors, capacitors, diodes, whatever, ....). Integrated circuit chips generally look like this:
A very common version of this package has two rows of seven pins each and it goes by the grandiose name of “Dual In Line” which just means that there are two rows of pins, each row having the pins in a straight line. In our particular circuit, the chip has eighteen pins, in two rows of nine.

Now to the circuit itself. If you find it hard to follow, then take a look at the electronics tutorial on the web site as it shows the circuit diagram symbol for each component and explains how each device works.

The circuit contains three capacitors, eight resistors, two diodes, one LED, one IC chip, two transistors, one toggle switch and two types of component not yet described, namely: two preset resistors and one rotary switch.

The preset resistor is very small and is adjusted using a flat bladed screwdriver. It is used for making an adjustable setting which is then left unchanged for a long time. The Rotary switch has a central contact which is connected to a row of outer contacts in turn when the shaft is rotated from position to position. The switch shaft is made of plastic and so can easily be cut to the length needed to make a neat installation, and the knob is locked in place by tightening its grub screw against the flat face of the shaft, although some knobs are designed just to push tightly on to the shaft. There is a wide range of knob styles which can be used with this switch, so the choice of knob is dictated by personal taste.

This is the circuit diagram:
Electronic circuits are normally “read” from left to right, so we will look at this circuit that way. The first component is the 10 microfarad, 16 volt electrolytic capacitor. This is put there to help iron out any little variations in the voltage supply, caused by surges in the current drawn by the circuit when it switches from one state to another.

The next item is the On/Off dashboard switch. When switched to its Off position as shown here:

the connection from the oxygen sensor is passed straight through to the vehicle’s fuel computer, bypassing the circuit board completely. This switch allows the whole circuit to be switched Off should you want to do this for any reason.

In it’s On position, as shown in the circuit diagram, the varying voltage signal coming from the oxygen sensor is passed into the circuit, and the output voltage from the circuit is passed back to the fuel computer, instead of the original sensor voltage. This allows the circuit to manipulate the voltage sent to the fuel computer.

The next set of components (three resistors, one ceramic capacitor and one preset resistor) shown here:
are needed to feed the incoming sensor voltage to the Integrated Circuit chip, and make the chip operate in the way that we want, (the chip manufacturer allows more than one way for the chip to work). You can just ignore these components for now, just understand why they are there.

The Integrated Circuit chip has ten outputs, coming out through Pins 1 and 10 through 18 inclusive:

If the input voltage coming from the oxygen sensor is low, then all of these ten outputs will have low voltages on them. When the input voltage rises a little, the voltage on Pin 10 suddenly rises to a high value, while the other output pins still have low voltages.

If the input voltage rises a little higher, then suddenly the voltage on Pin 11 rises to a high value. At this point, both Pin 10 and Pin 11 have high voltage on them and the other eight output pins remain at low voltage.

If the input voltage rises a little higher again, then suddenly the voltage on Pin 12 rises to a high value. At this point, Pin 10, Pin 11 and Pin 12 all have high voltage on them and the other seven output pins remain at low voltage.

The same thing happens to each of the ten output pins, with the voltage on Pin 1 being the last to get a high voltage on it. The circuit is arranged so that Pin 10 provides the output signal for the richest air/fuel mixture for the vehicle, and the mix gets progressively leaner as the output on Pins 11, 12, ... etc. are selected to be fed to the fuel computer.

As there is the possibility of engine damage if the fuel mix is too lean, only six of the outputs are taken on into the circuit. However, if the engine is being fed hydroxy gas from an electrolyzer to improve both the miles per gallon performance and reduce emissions to zero, then it is likely that the engine will run cooler than before and engine damage is most unlikely to occur. It is quite safe to leave the remaining output pins of the Integrated Circuit chip unconnected. However, if this unit is to be used with the Nitrogen Hydroxide cell described in the D18.pdf document, then it is quite safe to connect Pins 16, 17, 18 and 1 and set the rotary switch to ten positions.

The output pin to be used by the remainder of the circuit is selected by the rotary switch mounted on the dashboard:
A standard single-pole rotary wafer switch has twelve positions but the switch operation can be restricted to any lesser number of positions by placing the end-stop lug of the switch just after the last switch position required. This lug comes as standard, fits around the switch shaft like a washer, and is held in place when the locking nut is tightened on the shaft to hold the switch in place. The lug projects down into the switch mechanism and forms an end-stop to prevent the switch shaft being turned any further. With six switch positions, the circuit provides five levels of leaner air/fuel mix which can be selected. This should be more than adequate for all practical purposes.

The next section of the circuit is the BC327 transistor amplifier stage which provides the output current for the fuel computer:

Here, the switch “SW1” connects to one of the output pins of the Integrated Circuit. When the voltage on that pin goes low, it causes a current to flow through the transistor Base/Emitter junction, limited by the 2.7K (2,700 ohm) resistor. This current causes the transistor to switch hard On, which in turn alters the voltage on its Collector from near 0 volts to near +12 volts. The 2.7K resistor is only there to limit the current through the transistor and to avoid excessive loading on the output pin of the IC.

The transistor now feeds current to the LED via the two 1N4007 diodes and the 1K (1,000 ohm) resistor. This causes the Light Emitting Diode to light brightly. The 1K resistor is there to limit the amount of current flowing through this section of the circuit.

Part of the voltage across the LED is fed back to the fuel computer:
By moving the slider contact on the preset resistor “VR2”, any output voltage can be fed to the fuel computer. This voltage can be anything from the whole of the voltage across the LED, down to almost zero volts. We will use VR2 to adjust the output voltage when we are setting the circuit up for use. In this circuit, VR2 is acting as a “voltage divider” and it is there to allow adjustment of the output voltage going from the circuit to the fuel computer.

The final section of the circuit is the MPSA14 transistor and its associated components:

![Circuit Diagram](image)

This circuit is a timer. When the circuit is first powered up (by the vehicle’s ignition key being turned), the tantalum 2.2 microfarad capacitor “C1” is fully discharged (if it isn’t, then the oxygen sensor will already be hot). As it is discharged and one side is connected to the +12 volt line, then the other side (point “A”) looks as if it is also at +12 volts. This provides a tiny current to the Base/Emitter junction of the MPSA14 transistor, through the very high resistance 10M (10,000,000 ohm) resistor. The MPSA14 transistor has a very high gain and so this tiny current causes it to switch hard on, short-circuiting the LED and preventing any voltage developing across the LED.

As time passes, the tiny current flowing through the MPSA14 transistor, along with the tiny current through the 3.9M (3,900,000 ohm) resistor “R1”, cause a voltage to build up on capacitor “C1”. This in turn, forces the voltage at point “A” lower and lower. Eventually, the voltage at point “A” gets so low that the MPSA14 transistor gets starved of current and it switches off, allowing the LED to light and the circuit to start supplying an output voltage to the fuel computer. The purpose of the section of the circuit is to shut off the output to the fuel computer until the oxygen sensor has reached its working temperature of 600 degrees Fahrenheit. It may be necessary to tailor this delay to your vehicle by altering the value of either “R1” or “C1”. Increasing either or both will lengthen the delay while reducing the value of either or both, will shorten the delay.

**Changes:**

Having examined this circuit, Nigel Duckworth has recommended some alterations. Firstly, the capacitor placed across the battery supply lines is shown as 10 microfarad, which comes from the manufacturer’s specification sheet for the Integrated Circuit. While this will be sufficient for many applications, this circuit will be working in what is effectively a hostile environment, with the battery supply being liable to have severe voltage spikes and surges superimposed on it. Consequently, it would be advisable to increase the value of this capacitor to, say, 100 microfarad in order to help it cope with these difficult conditions. Also, electrolytic capacitors perform much better and have a much longer life if their voltage rating is higher than the average working voltage they are expected to encounter. For vehicle circuits, a minimum of 35 volts is recommended. This has no significant effect on the cost or size of the capacitor, so it is a good idea to increase the rating as recommended.

One other very important point is that the Integrated Circuit has an absolute maximum voltage rating of 25 volts and this can easily be exceeded in vehicle environments. To protect against this, it is worth adding a current-limiting resistor and a 24 volt zener diode as shown here:
With this modification, if the nominal +12 volt supply gets a spike on it which briefly takes the voltage up to, say, 40 volts, the voltage at point “A” starts to rise rapidly. When it reaches 24 volts, the BZX85C zener diode starts to conduct heavily, collapsing the spike and pinning down point “A”, preventing the voltage exceeding 24 volts. One additional protection option is to put a 0.1 microfarad capacitor across the 100 microfarad capacitor. This looks unusual if you have not seen it before, but is a standard method of trapping very sharp spikes on the supply line, as a capacitor as small as that acts like a short-circuit to high frequency spikes. Also, to make adjustment of the circuit easier, an additional 10K resistor has been inserted between VR1 and Pin 6 of the integrated circuit. This makes the circuit:

The next point of concern is the timing circuit of “C1” and “R1”. Contrary to what the website suggests, using the values shown here, capacitor C1 will charge up fully in nine seconds through R1 alone, and not the “few minutes” quoted. That neglects the current flowing through the Base/Emitter junction of the MPSA14 transistor and its 10 megohm resistor, which will shorten the nine second period quite substantially. If this part of the circuit is to generate a realistic delay period, then capacitor C1 needs to be very much larger, say a capacitor of 470 microfarad capacity. That will be an electrolytic capacitor, and they tend to have quite large leakage currents which will prevent them charging fully unless the current being fed into them is reasonably large. For that reason, we should change resistor R1 to 470K (470,000 ohms) which, with a 470 microfarad capacitor for C1, should give a delay time of about three and a half minutes.

There is another detail which needs to be checked, and that is the situation when the vehicle is parked long enough for the oxygen sensor to cool down below its 600 degree Fahrenheit working temperature. We want the time delay to occur if the engine is off for some time, but not to occur if the engine is switched off only briefly. For this to happen, it is suggested that a diode is placed across the timing resistor. This will have no
effect when the circuit is powered up, but it will discharge the capacitor when the circuit is powered down. We can slow down the rate of discharge by putting a high-value resistor in series with the discharge diode and that would make the circuit:

![Circuit Diagram]

**Circuit Operation:**

Now that we have looked at each part of the circuit separately, let us look again at the way that the circuit operates. The main component is the LM3914 integrated circuit. This device is designed to light a row of Light Emitting Diodes ("LEDs"). The number of LEDs lit is proportional to the input voltage reaching it through it’s Pin 5. In this circuit, the integrated circuit is used to provide a reduced voltage to be fed to the fuel computer, rather than to light a row of LEDs. When the operating switch is set in it’s ON position, the sensor voltage is fed to Pin 5 through a 1 megohm resistor.

The sensitivity of this circuit is adjusted, so that when 500 millivolts (0.5 volts) is applied to Pin 5, the output on Pin 10 is just triggered. This is done by adjusting the 10K linear preset resistor “VR1” while placing a test voltage of 500 millivolts on Pin 5. This LM3914 Integrated Circuit is normally switched so that it samples the sensor voltage. The LM3914 chip provides ten separate output voltage levels, and the circuit is arranged so that any one of several of these can be selected by the rotary switch “SW1”. These output voltages range from 50 millivolts on Pin 1 to 500 millivolts on Pin 10, with each output position having a 50 millivolt greater output than it’s neighbouring pin. This allows a wide range of control over the sensor feed passed to the fuel computer.

The input resistor/capacitor circuit provides filtering of the sensor signal. Because this circuit draws very little current, it is easily knocked out of correct operation through it’s input line picking up stray electrical pulses produced by the engine, particularly the vehicle’s ignition circuit. When the exhaust sensor heats up, the signal becomes cleaner and then the circuit starts operating correctly. The circuit includes a delay so that after start up, the output is held low for a few minutes to simulate a cold sensor. The sensor must be operating correctly before we send signals to the computer. The most common problem, if we don’t have this delay, is that the output will be high simply from the noise on the signal line. The computer will think the sensor is working, because it is high, and will cut back the fuel to make the signal go low. If that were to happen, we would end up with an over-lean fuel input to the engine, producing very poor acceleration.

The front panel LED is not just to show that the device is operating, but forms a simple voltage regulator for the output signal to the computer. When the engine is warmed up and running normally, the LED is lit when the output is high, and not lit when the output is low, so this LED should be flashing on and off.
The earth connection for the oxygen sensor is the exhaust system, which is firmly bolted to the engine. The computer earth is the vehicle body. A difference of just 0.5 volts can make a large difference to the mixture. If the engine is not securely earthed to the vehicle body, then a voltage difference can exist between the two, and in this situation a voltage difference of just 0.5 volts would normally go unnoticed. We can’t afford to have that sort of voltage difference when trying to control the mixture accurately, so some investigation and adjustment is needed.

To do this, start the engine, switch the headlights on to high beam, then measure the voltage between the engine and the body. Use a digital volt meter. Any more than 50 millivolts (0.05 volts) means that there is a bad earth connection which need cleaning and tightening. Modern cars usually have more than one connection so look around. If you have trouble achieving a really good connection, then earth your circuit board directly on the engine rather than connecting it to a point on the bodywork of the vehicle. The most important item is to have a good quality signal voltage coming from the sensor, since the operating range consists of quite low voltages. The components and tools needed for building this circuit are shown later, but for now, consider the setting up and testing of the unit so as to understand better what is needed.

**Adjusting on the Bench**

When the circuit has been constructed to the testing stage, that is, with all components in place except for the timing capacitor “C1”, and before the power is turned on, plug the Integrated Circuit chip into its socket mounted on the board. Be very careful doing this as the chip can be destroyed by static electricity picked up by your body. Professionals wear an electrical earth wrist strap when handling these devices, so it would be a good idea to touch a good earth point such as a metal-pipe cold water system just before handling the chip.

It is vital that you install the IC chip, the correct way round or it may be damaged. The circuit board layout shows which way round it goes. The chip has a semi-circular indentation at one end to show which end is which, so be careful that the indentation is positioned as shown on the board layout in the section which shows how the board is built. Some manufacturers use a dot rather than a semi-circular indentation to mark the end of the chip which has Pin 1 in it.

Make up the test voltage device. We need something to give us an adjustable voltage in the range 0 to 1 volt. A very easy way to get this is to use a 10K resistor and a 1K variable resistor (called a “potentiometer” by some people) and connect them across the 12 volt battery, as shown here:
This gives us a voltage in the correct range when the shaft of the variable resistor is turned. Power up the circuit board by switching the 12 volt battery through to the board. Adjust the test-voltage source to 500 millivolts (0.5 volts) and apply it to the board’s input (where the sensor connection will be made when it is installed in the vehicle). Set the switch to the “Richest” position, that is, with the switch connected to Pin 10 of the chip.

Now, using a flat-blade screwdriver, adjust the sensitivity control preset resistor “VR1” so that the output LED is just lit. Leave the preset resistor in that position and adjust the test voltage lower and higher to test that the LED turns on and off in response to the varying voltage at the input to the circuit. The LED should come on at 0.5 volts, and go off just below 0.5 volts. The other outputs, which can be selected by the rotary switch “SW1”, will be about 50 millivolts lower for each position of the switch away from it’s “Richest” setting on Pin 10.

Now, with the output high and the LED lit, use a flat-bladed screwdriver to adjust the preset resistor “VR2” to set the output voltage being sent to the computer to about 1.0 volts. When this has been set, lower the input voltage so that the LED goes out. The output voltage should now be at zero volts. If this is what happens, then it shows that the circuit is operating correctly.

If this board is not in place, the sensor will cause the fuel computer to make the fuel mixture richer so as to maintain a 500 millivolt voltage from the sensor. With the circuit in place and set to its “Richest” setting, exactly the same thing happens. However, if the rotary switch is moved to its next position, the fuel computer will maintain the fuel feed to maintain a 450 millivolt output, which is a leaner fuel-to-air mixture. One step further around and the fuel computer will make the mix even leaner to maintain a 400 millivolt output from the circuit board, which the fuel computer thinks is coming from the exhaust oxygen sensor.

If your circuit board does not operate as described, then power it down and examine the circuit board again, looking for places where the solder connections are not perfect. There may be somewhere where the solder is bridging between two of the copper strips, or there may be a joint which looks as if it is not a good quality joint. If you find one, don’t solder anywhere near the IC chip as the heat might damage the chip. If necessary, earth yourself again, remove the chip and put it back into the anti-static packaging it came in, before repairing the board. If the components are all correctly positioned, the copper tracks broken at all the right places and all solder joints looking good and well made but the board still is not working correctly, then it is likely that the IC chip is defective and needs to be replaced.

Next, install the delay capacitor “C1”. Set the test voltage above 500 millivolts and turn the power on again. It should take about three minutes for the LED to come on. If you want to shorten this delay, then change the timing resistor “R1” for a resistor of a lower value. To lengthen the delay, replace the timing capacitor “C1” with a capacitor of larger value. If you find that the oxygen sensor heats up quickly, then you can reduce the length of the delay. Having too long a delay is not ideal, since the computer will be adding extra fuel to make the mixture richer.

It is suggested that the rotary switch should be set to have only six switch positions (by moving it’s end-stop lug washer), so initially, connect the IC chip output pins 10 through 15 to the switch. You can choose to connect the wires to the switch so that the mixture gets richer when you turn the knob clockwise, or if you prefer, you can wire it in the reverse order so that the mixture gets richer when you turn the knob counterclockwise.
Testing in the Car

You can now test the device in the vehicle but don’t install it yet. Look in the engine compartment and locate the oxygen sensor. If you have difficulty in finding it, get a copy of the Clymer or Haynes Maintenance Manual for your vehicle as that will show you the position. If your vehicle has two sensors, then select the one nearest to the engine. If your sensor has five wires running to it, then it is a “wideband” sensor which measures both the oxygen content and the amount of unburnt fuel, and unfortunately, the type of circuit described here will not control it.

Start the vehicle and allow the oxygen sensor to warm up for a couple of minutes. Remember that there is a delay built into the circuit, so after a few minutes you should see the LED start to flash. Rev the engine and the LED will stay on. When you release the throttle, the LED will go out for a while. A flashing LED is what you want to see. The rate of flashing will be somewhere between 1 and 10 times per second, most likely around 2 per second. Confirm that the LED goes out when you switch off the circuit board On/Off switch mounted on the dashboard.

Now comes the exciting bit, cutting the oxygen sensor wire and inserting the controller. Turn the engine off and cut the wire in a convenient place. Use crimp connectors on the wire ends. Use a matching pair on the wire which you just cut, in case you need to reconnect it, as shown here:

When set up like this, the male connector furthest on the left could be plugged into the female connector furthest on the right and the circuit board removed. Be sure to insulate the sensor and fuel computer plug/socket connections to make quite sure that neither of them can short-circuit to any part of the body. There is no need to insulate the earth connection as it is already connected to the body of the vehicle. Although not shown in the diagram, you could also put a male and female crimp connector pair on the earth cable. If your sensor has only one wire coming from it, then you best earth connection is to a solder-tag connector placed under a bolt on the engine. If you do that, be sure to clean all grease, dirt, rust, etc. off the underside of the bolt head and the area around the bolt hole. Push a paper towel into the bolt hole before doing this to make sure that no unwanted material ends up in the bolt hole and use wet-and-dry paper to really clean the surfaces. The objective here is to make sure that there is a very good electrical connection with shiny metal faces clamped firmly together.

Installing the Controller

Now, install the circuit board in the vehicle. For the 12 volt supply, find a connection which is switched on and off by the vehicle’s ignition switch. Don’t drive the car yet, do this test in the driveway. With the front panel switch in it’s “Off” position, start the car and check that it runs normally. Set the front panel rotary switch to the Richest position (connected to the IC’s Pin 10) and switch the circuit board toggle switch to it’s “On” position. The car is now running with a modified oxygen sensor signal although the mixture is still the same. The vehicle performance should be completely normal. Drive the vehicle with this setting for a while to prove that the system is working reliably before changing to any of the lower settings. When you are satisfied that everything is in order, try the next leanest setting on the rotary switch and see how it runs.

It is important that there should be no hesitation in the engine performance and no knocking or “pinking” as that is an indication that the mix is too lean and the engine is liable to overheat. This circuit is intended for use with an electrolyzer, so your electrolyzer should be set up and working for these tests. The electrolyzer will tend to make the engine run cooler and offset any tendency towards overheating.

Building the Circuit Board

Although the above information has been presented as if the board has already been built, the actual construction details have been left until now, so that you will already have an understanding of what the circuit is intended to do and how it is used.
It is likely that you will know somebody (neighbour, friend, relative,...) who has the necessary equipment and skills. If so, borrow the equipment, or better still, recruit the person to help with the construction. It is very likely that anybody owning the equipment would be very interested in your project and more than willing to help out.

However, the rest of this document will be written on the assumption that you cannot find anybody to help and have had to buy all of the necessary equipment. This project is not difficult to build, so you will almost certainly be successful straight off.

The tools which you will need, are:

1. A soldering iron with a fine conical tapering tip (probably 15 watts power rating)
2. Some “Multicore” resin solder. This is special solder for electronics construction work and is quite different from plumber’s solder which is not suitable for this job.
3. A pair of long-nosed pliers (for holding component wires when soldering them in place)
4. Something for cutting and cleaning wires and stripping off insulation coverings. I personally prefer a pair of “nail” scissors for this job. Others prefer a pair of wire cutters and some sandpaper. You get whatever you feel would be the best tool for doing these tasks.
5. A 1/8 inch (3 mm) drill bit (for making bolt holes in the stripboard and for breaking the copper strips where needed) and a 3/8 inch (9 mm) drill and bit for mounting the switches on the plastic box.
6. A coping-saw or similar small saw for cutting the rotary switch shaft to the optimum length.
7. A small screwdriver (for tightening knob grubscrews).
8. A crimping tool and some crimp connectors.
9. A multimeter (preferably a digital one) with a DC voltage measuring range of 0 to 15 volts or so.
10. (Optional) a magnifying glass of x4 or higher magnification (for very close examination of the soldering)

**Soldering**

Many electronic components can be damaged by the high temperatures they are subjected to when being soldered in place. I personally prefer to use a pair of long-nosed pliers to grip the component leads on the upper side of the board while making the solder joint on the underside of the board. The heat running up the component lead then gets diverted into the large volume of metal in the pair of pliers and the component is protected from excessive heat. On the same principle, I always use an Integrated Circuit socket when soldering a circuit board, that way, the heat has dissipated fully before the IC is plugged into the socket. It also has the advantage that the IC can be replaced without any difficulty should it become damaged.

If you are using CMOS integrated circuits in any construction, you need to avoid static electricity. Very high levels of voltage build up on your clothes through brushing against objects. This voltage is in the thousands of volts range. It can supply so little current that it does not bother you and you probably do not notice it. CMOS devices operate on such low amounts of current that they can very easily be damaged by your static electricity. Computer hardware professionals wear an earthing lead strapped to their wrists when handling CMOS circuitry. There is no need for you to go that far. CMOS devices are supplied with their leads embedded in a conducting material. Leave them in the material until you are ready to plug them into the circuit and then only hold the plastic body of the case and do not touch any of the pins. Once in place in the circuit, the circuit components will prevent the build up of static charges on the chip.

Soldering is an easily-acquired skill. Multi-cored solder is used for electronic circuit soldering. This solder wire has flux resin contained within it and when melted on a metal surface, the flux removes the oxide layer on the metal, allowing a proper electrical and mechanical joint to be made. Consequently, it is important that the solder is placed on the joint area and the soldering iron placed on it when it is already in position. If this is done, the flux can clean the joint area and the joint will be good. If the solder is placed on the soldering iron and then the iron moved to the joint, the flux will have burnt away before the joint area is reached and the resulting joint will not be good.

A good solder joint will have a smooth shiny surface and pulling any wire going into the joint will have no effect as the wire is now solidly incorporated into the joint. Making a good solder joint takes about half a second and certainly not more than one second. You want to remove the soldering iron from the joint before an excessive amount of heat is run into the joint. It is recommended that a good mechanical joint be made before soldering when connecting a wire to some form of terminal (this is often not possible).
The technique which I use, is to stand the solder up on the workbench and bend the end so that it is sloping downwards towards me. The lead of the component to be soldered is placed in the hole in the stripboard and gripped just above the board with long-nosed pliers. The board is turned upside down and the left thumb used to clamp the board against the pliers. The board and pliers are then moved underneath the solder and positioned so that the solder lies on the copper strip, touching the component lead. The right hand is now used to place the soldering iron briefly on the solder. This melts the solder on the joint, allowing the flux to clean the area and producing a good joint. After the joint is made, the board is still held with the pliers until the joint has cooled down.

Nowadays, the holes in the stripboard are only 1/10 inch (2.5 mm) apart and so the gaps between adjacent copper strips is very small indeed. If you solder carefully, there should be no problem. However, I would recommend that when the circuit board is completed, that you use a magnifying glass to examine the strip side of the board to make quite sure that everything is perfectly ok and that solder does not bridge between the copper strips anywhere. Before powering up the circuit, double-check that all of the breaks in the copper strips have been made correctly. Here is a possible layout for the components on the stripboard:

If this board is turned over horizontally, the underside will look like this:
This shows where the breaks in the copper strips need to be made using a 1/8 inch (3 mm) drill bit.

To construct this circuit, cut a piece of stripboard which has 18 strips, each with 32 holes. That is a board size of about two inches (50 mm) by just over three inches (85 mm). Mount the components on the board, working from one end as the installation is easier if you have a clear board to work across. If you are right-handed, then start at the left hand side of the board and work towards the right, installing all components as you go. If you are left-handed, then mount the components starting with the right hand side of the board and working towards the left hand side.

Having said that, it is probably easier if you put all of the wire jumpers in place as the first step. The best wire for this is solid core wire of the type used in telephone wiring, as it is easy to cut, easy to remove the insulation and it lies flat on the board, clear of all of the other holes. So, start with the wire jumpers and then install the electronic components working across the board.

The jumper wires lie flat on the board, and like the other components, have about 2 mm of clean wire projecting through the copper strip before the solder joint is made.

The wires coming off the board should be of the type which have several thin wires inside the insulation, as these are more flexible and withstand the vibration of a vehicle in motion, better than solid core wire. If you have just one reel of wire, then be sure to label the far end of each piece mounted on the board, the moment you have soldered it in place. These labels will help avoid errors when mounting in the case, if you do not have different coloured wires.

The completed circuit board can be mounted in a small plastic box of the type which has a lid held in place by screws. It may be convenient to screw or bolt the case to the underside of the dashboard and then screw the lid in place, covering the mounting screws:
The components in this circuit are not critical and any near-match alternatives can be used. In the event that the MPSA14 Darlington-pair transistor is not available, then two general-purpose high-gain silicon transistors like the BC109 or 2N2222A can be substituted. Just connect them like this:

The emitter of the first transistor is connected to base of the second and the two collectors are connected together. If the transistors have metal cases, then make sure the emitter/base connection cannot touch either case as the cases are often connected internally to the collectors. If each transistor has a gain of only 200, then the pair will have a combined gain of 40,000 times. That means that the base current need only be 40,000 times less than the collector current of the second transistor.

The BC327 transistor can be replaced by almost any other silicon PNP transistor in this circuit as the gain does not need to be great and the power rating is very small. The following is a list of the main electronic components needed for the construction of this circuit as described here. There are several suppliers who are able to supply all of these components and the most suitable depends on where you are located. If there
is any difficulty, try an internet search, and if that fails, ask for help in one or more of the Yahoo enthusiast groups such as ‘watercar’, ‘hydroxy’ or any of the electronics Groups.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Qty.</th>
<th>US Supplier</th>
<th>Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Black plastic box with lid, size about 4&quot; x 3&quot; x 2&quot;</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Radio Shack</td>
<td>270-1803</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stripboard: 18 strips, 32 holes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Electronix Express</td>
<td>0302PB16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Double Pole Double Throw toggle switch</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Radio Shack</td>
<td>275-636</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuseholder, panel mounting, 1.25&quot;</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Radio Shack</td>
<td>270-364</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuse, 2 amp slow-blow 1.25&quot;</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Radio Shack</td>
<td>270-1262 ?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotary wafer switch, 12-way single pole</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Electronix Express</td>
<td>17ROT1-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knob for the rotary switch</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Radio Shack</td>
<td>274-424</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LED, any colour, 5 mm diameter</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Radio Shack</td>
<td>276-041</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IC socket, 18 pin DIL</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Radio Shack</td>
<td>276-1992</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miniature preset resistor, 10K linear</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Radio Shack</td>
<td>271-282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LM3914 LED bar driver Integrated Circuit</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Electronix Express</td>
<td>LM3914</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BC327 PNP transistor</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Electronix Express</td>
<td>2N2905</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MPSA14 Darlington pair transistor</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Electronix Express</td>
<td>MPSA14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1N4007 Diode or equivalent</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Radio Shack</td>
<td>276-1103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>470 microfarad, 35 volt (or higher) axial lead aluminium foil electrolytic capacitor</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Radio Shack</td>
<td>272-1018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 microfarad, 35 volt (or higher) axial lead aluminium foil electrolytic capacitor</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Radio Shack</td>
<td>272-1016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 nF (0.01 microfarad) ceramic disc capacitor</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Radio Shack</td>
<td>272-135 (2 pack)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 megohm 1/4 watt carbon resistor (Bands: Brown,Black,Blue)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Radio Shack</td>
<td>271-1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 megohm 1/4 watt carbon resistor (Bands: Brown,Black,Green)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Radio Shack</td>
<td>271-1356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>470K 1/4 watt carbon resistor (Bands: Yellow,Purple,Yellow)</td>
<td>1 or 1</td>
<td>Radio Shack</td>
<td>use two 1M in parallel or 271-1133 (5 pack 1/2 watt)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10K 1/4 watt carbon resistor (Bands: Brown,Black,Orange)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Radio Shack</td>
<td>271-1335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.7K 1/4 watt carbon resistor (Bands: Red,Purple,Red)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Radio Shack</td>
<td>271-1328</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1K 1/4 watt carbon resistor (Bands: Brown,Black,Red)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Radio Shack</td>
<td>271-1321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 ohm 1/4 watt carbon resistor (Bands: Brown,Black,Brown)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Radio Shack</td>
<td>271-1311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecting wire: stranded and solid core</td>
<td></td>
<td>Local supplier</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

And for a UK supplier:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Qty.</th>
<th>European Supplier</th>
<th>Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Black plastic box with lid, size about 4&quot; x 3&quot; x 2&quot;</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ESR</td>
<td>400-555</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stripboard: 18 strips, 32 holes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ESR</td>
<td>335-010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Double Pole Double Throw toggle switch</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ESR</td>
<td>218-028</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuseholder, panel mounting 31 mm</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ESR</td>
<td>187-115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuse, 2 amp 31 mm</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ESR</td>
<td>190-220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotary wafer switch, 12-way single pole</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ESR</td>
<td>210-012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knob for the rotary switch</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ESR</td>
<td>060-22X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LED, any colour, 5 mm diameter</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ESR</td>
<td>711-540</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IC socket, 18 pin DIL</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ESR</td>
<td>110-180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miniature preset resistor, 10K linear</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>ESR</td>
<td>998-310</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LM3914 LED bar driver Integrated Circuit</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ESR</td>
<td>LM3914</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BC327 PNP transistor</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ESR</td>
<td>BC327</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MPSA14 Darlington pair transistor</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ESR</td>
<td>MPSA13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1N4007 Diode or equivalent</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>ESR</td>
<td>1N4007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BZX85C zener diode, 24 volt version</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ESR</td>
<td>726-240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>470 microfarad, 35 volt (or higher) axial lead aluminium foil electrolytic capacitor</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ESR</td>
<td>810-104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 microfarad, 35 volt (or higher) axial lead aluminium foil electrolytic capacitor</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>ESR</td>
<td>810-096</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 nF (0.01 microfarad) ceramic disc capacitor</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>ESR</td>
<td>871-061</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>Use</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 megohm 1/4 watt carbon resistor</td>
<td>(Bands: Brown, Black, Blue)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 meghohm 1/4 watt carbon resistor</td>
<td>(Bands: Brown, Black, Green)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>470K 1/4 watt carbon resistor</td>
<td>(Bands: Yellow, Purple, Yellow)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10K 1/4 watt carbon resistor</td>
<td>(Bands: Brown, Black, Orange)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.7K 1/4 watt carbon resistor</td>
<td>(Bands: Red, Purple, Red)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1K 1/4 watt carbon resistor</td>
<td>(Bands: Brown, Black, Red)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 ohm 1/4 watt carbon resistor</td>
<td>(Bands: Brown, Black, Brown)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reel of multi-strand connecting wire 6 amp Red</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reel of multi-strand connecting wire 6 amp Blue</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reel of solid core (or local phone wire)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ESR  [http://www.esr.co.uk](http://www.esr.co.uk)  Tel: 01912 514 363

While the components listed above are the parts needed to construct the electronics board, the following items may be needed in addition when testing and installing the board in a vehicle:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rubber or plastic grommets</td>
<td>To protect wires from rubbing against the edges of the holes in the box</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crimp “bullet” connectors</td>
<td>Male and female, one pair for each sensor wire cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mounting bolts, nuts and spacers</td>
<td>To hold the circuit board securely, clear of the box.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Double-sided adhesive tape</td>
<td>For mounting the box on the dash. Alternatively, hardware items for this.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuse-box connector</td>
<td>For connecting to the fuse box to give an ignition-switched 12V supply</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10K resistor and 1K Linear variable resistor</td>
<td>For bench testing with voltages of up to 1 volt, if these components are not already to hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multimeter</td>
<td>For general checking of voltages, continuity, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I should like to express my sincere thanks to the various members of the ‘watercar’ Group who provided the technical information and patient support which made this document possible.

**An Alternative**

Recently, a new product has come on the market. This is the "Protium Oxyisolator" available via the web site at [http://www.protiumfuelsystems.com/oxyisolator.html](http://www.protiumfuelsystems.com/oxyisolator.html) and being a passive component, it requires no expertise in electronics.

The device is used to encase the existing oxygen sensor(s) in a spur fitting attached to the exhaust pipe. This removes the sensor from the direct stream of exhaust gases and yet allows it to operate as it heats up. This is said to overcome the problem of the fuel computer pumping excess fuel into the engine when the quality of the fuel burn is improved by the use of a hydroxy gas booster such as the “Smack’s Booster” shown in on of the accompanying documents in this set.
The Protium connectors shown here allow the oxygen sensor to be screwed into the outer connector piece which itself screws into the inner piece which takes the place of the existing sensor. This results in the sensor being located in a T-junction spur off the main pipe.

**The Zach West Electrolyser.** As has already been mentioned, Zach West of the USA has recently produced an electrolyser for his motorcycle. Zach’s 250 cc motorcycle can run on the output of the electrolyser and Zach estimates the output as being 17 litres per minute of hydroxy gas.

Shigeta Hasebe designed, built, tested and patented a spiral DC electrolyser. His bench tests show that he was achieving ten times the maximum rate that Faraday considered possible. To be perfectly fair, Shigeta used two powerful magnets in addition to the DC current so his power input was somewhat higher than Faraday's. Interestingly, Shigeta was disappointed with his results as his theory indicated that he should be getting twenty times the Faraday maximum. In passing, Bob Boyce regularly achieves more than double the Faraday “maximum” using straight DC power and no magnets, and that indicates clearly that Faraday’s value for maximum gas production with DC electrolysis is not correct.

Shigeta’s electrodes are arranged like this:

A spiral shape like this is very difficult to produce accurately in stiff metal, but a fairly similar electrode shape can be produced with the help of a length of plastic pipe. This is a description of an electrolyser design by Zach West and which is neither a difficult or particularly expensive device to build. Unlike Shigeta’s design, Zach’s electrodes are a helix shape where the gap between the coiled electrodes remains the same, unlike a spiral where the gap decreases progressively as the centre is approached.

Please note that this document is intended for information purposes only and is not intended to be instructions for constructing a unit of this nature. Should you decide to do so contrary to the intentions of this document, then you do so entirely at your own risk, and no responsibility whatsoever for your actions rests with anyone connected with the production or display of this material. Anything which you decide to do is entirely your own responsibility, and you should be aware that this device is not a toy, and the gases produced by electrolysis are highly dangerous and explosive.

In broad outline, Zach’s electrolyser is fed water from a water tank to keep it topped up. The electrolyser contains several pairs of electrodes which split the water into hydrogen and oxygen when fed with electrical signals from the electronics, which is powered by the battery system of the motorcycle. The gas produced by the electrolyser is fed to a dual-purpose container, which prevents any accidental igniting of the gases.
from travelling back to the electrolyser (a “bubbler”) and which removes most of the oxygen from the gas feed to the engine (a “separator”).

There are some unusual design details which need to be explained. Firstly, the hydrogen gas output from the electrolyser is not fed directly to the engine but instead it goes to a pressure tank which is allowed to build up to thirty pounds per square inch before the engine is started. The gas in the pressure tank having passed through the bubbler, will have water vapour in addition to the hydrogen, and that water vapour is beneficial to the operation of the engine, turning into flash-steam during the power stroke. The majority of the oxygen produced by the electrolysis is vented away through a 30 psi one-way valve which is included to keep the pressure inside the bubbler (and the electrolyser) at the 30 psi level.

This has an additional advantage in that it allows an ultra-simple water top-up system. This water supply system operates by having an air-tight supply tank positioned at a higher level than the electrolyser. A small diameter (1/4”) plastic tube from the supply tank feeds through the top of the electrolyser and straight down, terminating at exactly the electrolyte surface level wanted in each of the electrolyser tubes. When the electrolysis lowers the electrolyte level below the bottom of the pipe, a bubbles of gas pass up the tube allowing some water to flow from the tank to raise the electrolyte surface level back to its design position. This is a very neat passive system needing no moving parts, electrical supply or electronics but yet one which accurately controls the electrolyte level. One essential point is that the water tank needs to be rigid so that it will not flex and the filler cap needs to be air-tight to prevent the entire tank discharging into the electrolyser. Another point to remember when topping up the water tank is that the tank contains a mix of air and hydroxy gas above the water surface and not plain air.

Now, to cover the design in more detail. The electrolyser contains eight pairs of electrodes. These electrode pairs are coiled around in “swiss-roll” style and inserted into a length of 2 inch (50 mm) diameter plastic pipe, ten inches (250 mm) tall. The electrodes are each made from a 10 inch (250 mm) by 5 inch (125 mm) of 316L-grade stainless steel shimstock which is easy to cut and work.

Each electrode sheet is cleaned carefully, and wearing rubber gloves, cross-scored using coarse sandpaper in order to produce a very large number of microscopic mountain peaks on the surface of the metal. This increases the surface area and provides a surface which makes it easier for gas bubbles to break away and rise to the surface. The electrodes are rinsed off with clean water and then coiled round to form the required shape and inserted into a length of plastic pipe as shown here:
As the springy metal pushes outwards in an attempt to straighten up again, spacers are used to keep them evenly separated along their whole length by inserting 1/8" thick vertical spacer strips. The connections to the plates were made by drilling a hole in the corner of the plate, splitting the stranded wire, inserting the wire through the hole from both sides, turning it back on itself and making a wire-to-wire solder joint on both sides of the steel. The joint is then insulated with silicone.

An unusual feature of this design is that each of the electrode pairs is effectively a separate electrolyser in its own right as it is capped top and bottom, and effectively physically isolated from the other electrodes. The water feed comes through the top cap which has a hole drilled in it to allow the gas to escape. The electrical wires (AWG #12 / SWG 14) are fed through the base and sealed against leakage of electrolyte. Each of these units has some electrolyte stored above it, so there is no chance of any part of the electrode surface not being able to generate gas. There is also a large amount of freeboard to contain splashes and sloshing without any being able to escape from the container. The end caps are standard PVC caps available from the supplier of the PVC piping, as is the PVC glue used to seal them to the pipe.

Eight of these electrodes are placed in a simple electrolyser case and connected together in pairs as shown here:
It is always difficult to make a good electrical connection to stainless steel plates if space is restricted as it is here. In this instance, the electrical wire is wrapped tightly through a drilled hole and then soldered and insulated. The soldering is only on the wire as solder will not attach to stainless steel.

Pairs of pipe-enclosed electrode spirals are then daisy-chained inside the electrolyser as shown here:

Many years of experimentation and testing have shown that 316L-grade stainless steel is the most suitable material for electrodes, but surprisingly, stainless steel is not totally electrically conductive as you would expect. Each electrode causes a voltage drop of nearly half a volt, and so careful surface preparation, cleansing and conditioning are needed to get top performance from the electrodes. This process is shown in detail later on.
The construction which Zach has used is very sensible, utilising readily available, low-cost PVC piping. The spiral electrodes are inside 2" diameter pipe and the bubbler is also 2" diameter PVC pipe. At this time, Zach only uses one bubbler, but a second one is highly desirable, located between the storage tank and the engine and positioned as close to the engine as possible. This extra bubbler does two things, most importantly, it prevents the gas in the storage tank being ignited by a backfire caused by a valve sticking slightly open and secondly, it removes every last trace of potassium hydroxide fumes, protecting the life of the engine. This is a big gain for such a simple addition.

The gas storage tank is also made from PVC pipe, this time, 4 inch (100 mm) diameter, 14 inches (350 mm) long with standard end caps fixed in place with PVC glue as shown below. This is a compact and effective arrangement well suited for use on a motorcycle where spare space is not readily available. The majority of this extra equipment is mounted in the bike’s panniers, which is a neat arrangement.

The electric drive to the electrolyser is from a Pulse Width Modulator (“DC Motor speed controller”) bought from the Hydrogen Garage:

http://stores.homestead.com/hydrogengarage/Categories.bok?category=ELECTRICAL+%2F+CIRCUITS&searchpath=26438930&start=9&total=12

As this unit is rated at 15 Amps maximum, Zach added another 15 Amp rated FET transistor in parallel to the output stage to raise the current capacity to 30 Amps. A fuse protects against accidental short circuits and a relay is used to control when the electrolyser is to be producing gas. The connecting wire is AWG #12 (SWG 14) which has a maximum continuous current capacity of just under ten amps, so although the current peaks may be twenty amps, the average current is much lower than that.

Two electromagnets outside the bubbler, positioned 2.5 inches (65 mm) above the base, are connected as part of the electrical supply to the electrolyser, and these cause most of the oxygen and hydrogen bubbles to separate and exit the bubbler through different pipes. There is a divider across the bubbler to assist in keeping the gases from mixing again above the water surface. The bubbler also washes most of the potassium hydroxide fumes out of the gas as the bubbles rise to the surface, protecting the engine as these fumes have a very destructive effect on engines.
The objective with any hydroxy system is to have the minimum amount of gas between the bubbler and the engine in order to smother any ignition of the gas in the unlikely event of a backfire. In this system, the gas storage tank contains a very large amount of gas, though admittedly it is not full hydroxy gas thanks to the electromagnet separation system, but nevertheless, it would be most advisable to have a second bubbler between the gas storage tank and the engine, positioned as close to the engine as possible. Also, it is good practice to arrange for the bubbler cap to be a tight push-fit so that in the event of the gas being ignited, the cap blows off, robbing the explosion of its power and containing the event safely.

Zach’s electrolyser arrangement is like this:

It must be realised that the water tank, electrolyser, bubbler/separator and hydrogen holding tank, all operate at thirty pounds per square inch. This means that each of these containers must be robust enough to withstand that pressure quite easily. It also means that the 30 psi one-way check valve on the oxygen venting pipe is an essential part of the design as well as being a safety feature. As a bubble of gas from the electrolyser escapes into the water tank every time a drop of water feeds to the electrolyser, the contents of the water tank above the water surface becomes a stronger and stronger mix of air and hydroxy. Consequently, it soon becomes an explosive mixture. It is common for static electricity to build up on a tank of this nature, so it will be very important to earth both the tank and its cap before removing the cap to fill the tank with water.

The electrolyser has a potassium hydroxide (KOH) solution in it. The electrolysis process produces a mixture of hydrogen, oxygen, dissolved gases (air) and potassium hydroxide fumes. The water in the bubbler washes out most of the potassium hydroxide fumes, becoming a more dilute form of the electrolyte as the system is used.

Potassium hydroxide is a true catalyst and while it promotes the electrolysis process, it does not get used up during electrolysis. The only loss is to the bubbler. Standard practice is to pour the contents of the bubbler into the electrolyser from time to time, filling the bubbler again with fresh water. Potassium hydroxide has been found to be the most effective catalyst for electrolysis but it has a very bad effect on the engine if it is allowed to enter it. The first bubbler is very effective in removing the potassium hydroxide fumes, but many people prefer to take the scrubbing process a step further by placing a second bubbler in the line, in this instance, between the hydrogen pressure tank and the engine. With two bubblers, absolutely no potassium hydroxide fumes reach the engine.

When running with hydroxy gas as the only fuel, it is essential to adjust the timing of the spark so that it occurs after Top Dead Centre. The timing on this bike is now set at 8 degrees after TDC.
If an engine is run without any fossil fuel at all, then timing adjustments need to be made. Hydrocarbon fuels have large molecules which do not burn fast enough to be efficient inside the cylinder of an engine. What happens is that for the first fraction of a second after the spark plug fires, the molecules inside the cylinder split up into much smaller particles, and then these smaller particles burn so fast that it can be described as an explosion:

Because of the delay needed for the conversion of the hydrocarbon molecules to smaller particles, the spark is arranged to occur before the Top Dead Centre point. While the molecules are splitting up, the piston passes its highest point and the crankshaft is some degrees past Top Dead Centre before the driving pressure is placed on the head of the piston. This driving force then reinforces the clockwise rotation of the crankshaft shown in the diagram above and the motor runs smoothly.

That will not happen if hydroxy gas is substituted for the petrol vapour. Hydroxy gas has very small molecule sizes which do not need any kind of breaking down and which burn instantly with explosive force. The result is as shown here:
Here, the explosion is almost instantaneous and the explosion attempts to force the piston downwards. Unfortunately, the crankshaft is trying to drive the piston upwards past the Top Dead Centre (‘TDC’) point, so the explosion will not help the engine run. Instead, the explosion will stop the crankshaft rotating, overload the crankshaft and connecting rod and produce excessive pressure on the wall of the cylinder.

We do not want that to happen. The solution is to delay the spark until the piston has reached the position in its rotation where we want the explosion to take place - that is, in exactly the same place as it did when using petrol as a fuel.

In the example above, the spark would be retarded (delayed) from 8 degrees before TDC to 8 degrees after TDC, or 16 degrees overall. The spark is ‘retarded’ because it needs to occur later in the rotation of the crankshaft. The amount of retardation may vary from engine to engine, but with hydroxy gas, the spark must never occur before TDC and it is preferable that the crankshaft has rotated some degrees past TDC so that most of the push from the piston goes to turn the crankshaft and as little as possible in compressing the crankshaft.

**Waste Spark**

One obvious application for a device such as this is to power a standard electrical generator and use part of the generator’s output to power the electrolyser once the generator gets going. While this looks like a good idea, there are some practical issues which need to be dealt with.

Firstly, as detailed above, when running an internal combustion engine on hydroxy gas, it is essential to delay the spark until several degrees after Top Dead Centre. This may be difficult or impossible to do on some generators, so a careful examination of the engine details should be made before buying the generator. It is much easier to choose carefully than to be faced with a difficult timing adjustment on an engine which was never intended to have the timing adjusted.

Secondly, it is cheaper for the manufacturer to operate the spark from the output shaft of the engine rather than taking a linkage from the camshaft of a four-stroke engine. This generates a spark for every revolution of the output shaft. But, a four-stroke engine only needs a spark on every second revolution, so the extra spark is not needed and so is called a “waste” spark as it is wasted since there is no gas for it to ignite.

This waste spark is harmless when the engine is being run on fossil fuel which needs a spark timing before Top Dead Centre. The waste spark is most definitely not harmless when the timing is altered to some degrees after Top Dead Centre as needed by hydroxy gas operation. In this instance, when the waste spark occurs, the intake valve will be open creating a continuous path to the bubbler, and the waste spark will
ignite the gas causing the bubbler lid to be blown off disrupting the gas supply to the engine. It is absolutely vital to suppress any waste spark, and that is seldom an easy thing to do.

The spark timing needs to be mechanically linked to the position of the cam shaft, with either a contact on the cam shaft or a valve, or a 2:1 gearing down of the drive shaft as no electronic circuit can distinguish one particular pulse from a long row of identical pulses. It is easy to build an electronic circuit to suppress every second spark, but there is no way of knowing which spark to suppress. Pick the wrong spark and you instantly blow the gas supply. All the sparks look the same so you have a 50% chance of picking the wrong spark to suppress, so a contact or sensor on the cam shaft or a valve is essential whether or not an electronic circuit is used. An alternative is to take the timing from an external shaft, geared down to half the speed of the drive shaft as that is essentially a replication of the cam shaft.

So, when considering what generator to buy, you need to check the electrical power output, the noise level, the timing adjustment and if there is a waste spark and how easy it would be to avoid it.

**Handling the electrolyte**

This electrolyser design uses potassium hydroxide solution in the electrolyser itself and fresh water in the water tank as the potassium hydroxide is a true catalyst which assists the electrolysis process but does not get used up in the reaction. Potassium hydroxide is a strong caustic material and considerable care needs to be taken when preparing it. Here is the safety advice given by Bob Boyce in the D9.pdf document of this series. Bob is a most experienced and able builder of high-efficiency electrolysers and his instructions should be followed carefully in every respect when handling potassium hydroxide and preparing stainless steel for use in an electrolyser:

**Mixing Potassium Hydroxide Solution**

Potassium hydroxide is also known as “caustic potash” and it is highly caustic. Consequently, it needs to be handled carefully and kept away from contact with skin, and even more importantly, eyes. If any splashes come in contact with you, it is very important indeed that the affected area be immediately rinsed off with large amounts of running water and if necessary, the use of vinegar which is acidic.

This electrolyser design requires you to make up a weak solution of potassium hydroxide. This is done by adding small amounts of the potassium hydroxide to distilled water held in a container. The container must not be glass as most glass is not high enough quality to be a suitable material in which to mix the electrolyte.

Potassium hydroxide, also called KOH or “Caustic Potash”, can be bought in small quantities from soap making supply outlets. One suitable outlet is Summer Bee Meadow at [www.summerbeemeadow.com](http://www.summerbeemeadow.com) in their “Soapmaking Supplies” section. Another provider who supplies small quantities at reasonable cost is [https://www.saltcitysoapworks.com/newshop/product_info.php?cPath=25&products_id=106&osCsid=07d7da060277e6c8a157be165490541](https://www.saltcitysoapworks.com/newshop/product_info.php?cPath=25&products_id=106&osCsid=07d7da060277e6c8a157be165490541) While Potassium hydroxide is the very best electrolyte, it needs to be treated with care:

Always store it in a sturdy, air-tight container which is clearly labelled “DANGER! - Potassium Hydroxide”. Keep the container in a safe place, where it can’t be reached by children, pets or people who won’t take any notice of the label. If your supply of KOH is delivered in a strong plastic bag, then once you open the bag, you should transfer all its contents to sturdy, air-tight, plastic storage containers, which you can open and close without risking spilling the contents. Hardware stores sell large plastic buckets with air tight lids that can be used for this purpose.

When working with dry KOH flakes or granules, wear safety goggles, rubber gloves, a long sleeved shirt, socks and long trousers. Also, don’t wear your favourite clothes when handling KOH solution as it is not the best thing to get on clothes. It is also no harm to wear a face mask which covers your mouth and nose. If you are mixing solid KOH with water, always add the KOH to the water, and not the other way round, and use a plastic container for the mixing, preferably one which has double the capacity of the finished mixture. The mixing should be done in a well-ventilated area which is not draughty as air currents can blow the dry KOH around.

When mixing the electrolyte, **never** use warm water. The water should be cool because the chemical reaction between the water and the KOH generates a good deal of heat. If possible, place the mixing container in a larger container filled with cold water, as that will help to keep the temperature down, and if your mixture should “boil over” it will contain the spillage. Add only a small amount of KOH at a time, stirring continuously, and if you stop stirring for any reason, put the lids back on all containers.
If, in spite of all precautions, you get some KOH solution on your skin, wash it off with plenty of running cold water and apply some vinegar to the skin. Vinegar is acidic, and will help balance out the alkalinity of the KOH. You can use lemon juice if you don't have vinegar to hand - but it is always recommended to keep a bottle of vinegar handy.

**Plate Cleansing and Conditioning**

Experience has shown that the best material for use as electrodes in this electrolyser design is 316L-grade stainless steel. The preparation of the plates is one of the most important steps in producing an electrolyser which works well. This is a long task, but it is vital that it is not skimped or hurried in any way. Surprisingly, brand new shiny stainless steel is not particularly suitable for use in an electrolyser and it needs to receive careful treatment and preparation before it will produce the expected level of gas output.

The first step is to treat both surfaces of every plate to encourage gas bubbles to break away from the surface of the plate. This could be done by grit blasting, but if that method is chosen, great care must be taken that the grit used does not contaminate the plates. Stainless steel plates are not cheap and if you get grit blasting wrong, then the plates will be useless as far as electrolysis is concerned. A safe method which Bob much prefers is to score the plate surface with coarse sandpaper. This is done in two different directions to produce a cross-hatch pattern. This produces microscopic sharp peaks and valleys on the surface of the plate and those sharp points and ridges are ideal for helping bubbles to form and break free of the plate.

Bob uses a 6-inch x 48-inch belt sander which is great for preparing the plates and he uses it all the time now with 60 or 80 grit. Always wear rubber gloves when handling the plates to avoid getting finger marks on the plates. Wearing these gloves is very important as the plates must be kept as clean and as grease-free as possible, ready for the next stages of their preparation.

Any particles created by the sanding process should now be washed off the plates. This can be done with clean tap water (not city water though, due to all the chlorine and other chemicals added), but only use distilled water for the final rinse.

Prepare a 5% to 10% (by weight) KOH solution and let it cool down. Never handle the plates with your bare hands, but always use clean rubber gloves. Wind the plate material into its spiral shape with two layers of 1/8" (3 mm) spacing material such as leather between the plates and projecting well beyond one end. Wind the plates into the spiral shape (strictly speaking, a helix shape) and slide them into a cut length of the plastic tube. The springy plates expand to press against the inside of the plastic pipe. Pull the spacing material out slightly and start inserting 1/8" x 1/8" five inch long spacers between the plates. Keep on pulling the spacing sheets out and pushing the spacing strips in until they are inserted the full length of the plates.

Fill the electrolyser with the KOH solution until the plates are covered. A voltage is now applied across the whole set of plates by attaching the leads to the outermost two plates. This voltage should be at least 2 volts per cell, but it should not exceed 2.5 volts per cell - for four pairs of spirals, this is 8 to 10 volts. Maintain this
After several hours, disconnect the electrical supply and pour the electrolyte solution into a container. Rinse out the cells thoroughly with distilled water. Filter the dilute KOH solution through paper towels or coffee filters to remove the particles. Pour the dilute solution back into the electrolyser and repeat this cleaning process. You may have to repeat the electrolysis and rinsing process many times before the plates stop putting out particles into the solution. If you wish, you can use a new KOH solution each time you cleanse, but please realise that you can go through a lot of solution just in this cleaning stage if you choose to do it that way. When cleansing is finished (typically 3 days of cleansing), do a final rinse with clean distilled water.

Now, with thoroughly clean plates, the final conditioning process can be undertaken. Using the same concentration of solution as in cleansing, fill the electrolyser with this dilute solution. Apply about 2 volts per cell and allow the unit to run. Remember that very good ventilation is essential during this process. If the current draw is fairly stable, continue with this conditioning phase continuously for two to three days, adding distilled water to replace what is consumed. If the solution changes colour or develops a layer of crud on the surface of the electrolyte, then the cell stack needs more cleansing stages. After two to three days of run time, pour out the dilute KOH solution and rinse out the electrolyser thoroughly with distilled water.

This cleansing and conditioning process makes a spectacular difference to the volume of gas produced for any given current flow through the electrolyser.

It is perfectly possible to build an electronics drive unit suitable for use with this electrolyser. Here is a well-tested design:
This circuit design is taken from Dave Lawton's replication of Stan Meyer's Water Fuel Cell. The circuit is shown below. More detail is given later in this chapter. There is no call for the bi-filar wound coils each side of the electrolyser in this design, but it might be interesting to see what effect is produced if they were introduced as they generate very short, very sharp voltage spikes of over a thousand volts, which tend to draw additional power from the immediate environment.

This circuit is designed to run off twelve volts and while it would probably function well at the nominal six volts of a motorcycle electrics (about 7.3 volts with the engine running), it is likely that a twelve volt version of this electrolyser design will be required for automotive use. In that case, the electrolyser housing would probably become...
It is possible that seven sets of three or four spirals would be used for larger engines with their 13.8 volt electric systems. Ideally, setting the frequency to the resonant frequency of the particular electrolyser build being used, is likely to enhance the gas output. For this, the adjustable frequency PWM unit shown here is likely to be suitable as it has worked well with other designs.

Zach uses the very simple mechanism of allowing excess gas to be vented via the oxygen valve if gas production exceeds the requirements of the engine. When operating on a twelve volt system it might be more convenient to use a standard pressure switch which opens an electrical connection when the gas pressure rises above the value for that switch:

The pressure switch just mounts on one of the end caps of the pressure tank and the switch electrical connection is placed between the relay and the electrolyser. If the gas pressure hits its maximum value of 30 psi. then the switch opens, stopping electrolysis until the pressure drops again:
The underside of the stripboard is shown here:

The ammeter shown here is not really necessary and can be omitted.
### Component List

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component Description</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>100 ohm resistors 0.25 watt</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Bands: Brown, Black, Brown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>220 ohm resistor 0.25 watt</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Bands: Red, Red, Brown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>820 ohm resistor 0.25 watt</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Bands: Gray, Red, Brown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 mF 16V capacitor</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Electrolytic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47mF 16V capacitor</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Electrolytic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 mF 16V capacitor</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Electrolytic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 mF 16V capacitor</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Electrolytic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>220 nF capacitor (0.22 mF)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Ceramic or polyester</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 nF capacitor (0.1 mF)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Ceramic or polyester</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 nF capacitor (0.01 mF)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Ceramic or polyester</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1N4148 diodes</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1N4007 diode</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>FET protection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE555 timer chip</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BUZ350 MOSFET</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Or any 200V 20A n-channel MOSFET</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47K variable resistors</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Standard carbon track Could be screw track</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10K variable resistors</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Standard carbon track Could be screw track</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-pole, 3-way switches</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Wafer type Frequency range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-pole changeover switch</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Toggle type, possibly sub-miniature Any style will do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-pole 1-throw switch</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Toggle type rated at 10 amps Overall ON / OFF switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuse holder</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Enclosed type or a 6A circuit breaker Short-circuit protection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Veroboard</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>20 strips, 40 holes, 0.1 inch matrix Parallel copper strips</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-pin DIL IC sockets</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Black plastic, high or low profile Protects the 555 ICs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wire terminals</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Ideally two red and two black Power lead connectors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plastic box</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Injection moulded with screw-down lid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mounting nuts, bolts and pillars</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Hardware for 8 insulated pillar mounts For board and heatsink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aluminium sheet</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>About 4 inch x 2 inch MOSFET heatsink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rubber or plastic feet</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Any small adhesive feet Underside of case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knobs for variable resistors etc.</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>1/4 inch shaft, large diameter Marked skirt variety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ammeter</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Optional item, 0 to 5A or similar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ferrite rod 1-inch long or longer</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>For construction of the inductors bi-filar wound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22 SWG (21 AWG) wire</td>
<td>1 reel</td>
<td>Enamelled copper wire, 2 oz. reel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sundry connecting wire</td>
<td>4 m</td>
<td>Various sizes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### The Bob Boyce Electrolyser

We come now to an important step forward in hydroxy gas technology. The earlier systems have operated on direct current electrolysis. The Zach West electrolyser is a borderline case as Zach does use a simple Pulse Width Modulator or “DC Motor Speed Control” unit rather than just passing the DC current straight through the cell.

Let me remind you of the basic facts involved in DC electrolyser operation. The current flowing through the cell is an absolutely key factor in gas production, and one of the most difficult to control accurately and economically. The greater the current, the greater the rate of gas production. The current is controlled by the concentration of Potassium Hydroxide in the electrolyte (water plus KOH) and the voltage across the electrolyte in the cell. The voltage across the electrolyte has limited effect as it reaches a maximum at just 1.24 volts. Up to that point, an increase in voltage causes an increase in gas production rate. Once the voltage gets over 1.24 volts, increasing it further produces no further increase in the rate of gas production.

If the voltage is increased above 1.24 volts, the extra voltage goes to heat the electrolyte. Assume that the current through the cell is 10 amps. In that case, the power used to produce gas is 10 amps x 1.24 volts = 12.4 watts. When the engine is running, the voltage at the battery terminals will be about 13.8 volts as the...
alternator provides the extra voltage to drive current into the battery. The excess voltage applied to the cell is about 1.24 less than that, which works out to be about 12.5 volts. The power which heats the electrolyte is about 12.5 volts \times 10 \text{amps} = 125 \text{watts}. That is ten times the power being used to produce gas. This is very, very inefficient. The following diagram may help you understand the situation more clearly:

The best electrode material for the plates is 316L-grade stainless steel. It is hard to believe, but there is a voltage drop across the plate, which makes it necessary to apply about 2 volts to the plates on each side of the cell. So, if you are running off 12 volts, then six cells in a row across the battery gives the maximum possible drive. With the engine running and providing almost 14 volts, seven cells gives the highest possible drive.

The electrolyte heating up is a wholly bad thing as it drives a good deal of water vapour out of the electrolyte and this mixes with the gas and is fed to the engine. Injecting water mist, which is a fine spray of water droplets, into an engine increases its performance due to the water converting instantly to flash-steam at the moment of combustion. This improves both the engine power and the miles per gallon, and it makes the engine run cooler, which improves the life of the engine. But water vapour and steam are bad things as they are already fully expanded and just get in the way of the hydroxy gas, diluting it and lowering the power of the engine with no benefit at all.

As the voltage applied to the cell is pretty much fixed, the current flow is controlled by the concentration of Potassium Hydroxide in the electrolyte and the plate area. Once the cell is built, the plate area is fixed, so the current is adjusted by controlling the amount of KOH added to the water. There is a slight limit to this, in that the gas production increases with KOH concentration until the concentration reaches 28% (by weight). After that point, any increase in the concentration produces a reduction in the rate of gas production. General practice is to have a fairly low concentration of KOH which is found by trial.

People often ask about using other substances to make the electrolyte. Please don’t use anything other than potassium hydroxide or sodium hydroxide (NaOH). Please do\textbf{ n’t} try using baking soda. When you use baking soda, you are making 66% hydrogen gas, 30% carbon monoxide and 4% carbon dioxide. The carbon in the baking soda binds with the oxygen to form the carbon monoxide and carbon dioxide. The carbon also poisons the catalytic capabilities of stainless steel. Salt is also most unsuitable as is battery acid. Stick with KOH as it is easily the best with NaOH coming a close second.

A major step forward is produced by abandoning the simple electrolyser systems described above, and switch to a different arrangement where a large number of cells are wired in series, and instead of applying a DC voltage to the electrolyser, instead, a complex pulsating waveform is used to power the cell. This type of electrolyser is called a “series-connected” unit.

Bob Boyce is easily the most experienced and knowledgeable series-cell designer at the present time, and sincere thanks are due to him for sharing his design freely with everybody and for his continuous help, advice and support of the builders of electrolysers. Bob achieves a massively increased gas production rate by using an electrolyser with a very large number of cells in it. Bob uses one hundred cells (101 plates) in his electrolyser. Units with just 60 cells are inclined more to brute-force DC electrolysis, tending to mask the
gains produced by pulsing. As there is a voltage drop across each stainless steel electrode plate, it is usual to allow about 2 volts across each cell for DC operation. However, Bob finds that for high-efficiency pulsing, the optimum voltage for each cell with 316L-grade stainless-steel electrode plates is about 1.5 volts. This means that a voltage of about 1.5 x 100 = 150 volts is needed to power it to its maximum pulsed output.

To get this higher voltage, Bob uses a 110 Volt inverter. An inverter is an electronic circuit which has a 12 Volt DC input and generates a 110 Volt AC output. These are readily available for purchase as they are used to run (US) mains equipment from car batteries. The output from the inverter is converted from Alternating Current to pulsing Direct Current by passing the output through four diodes in what is called a ‘Diode Bridge’. These are readily available at very low cost from electronic component suppliers.

Obviously, it would not be practical to use a hundred Archie Blue style cells daisy-chained together to act as the series-connected electrolyser cell. There would not be enough physical space in the engine compartment for that, so a different style of cell construction is needed. The view looking down on several separate electrolyser cells could be represented something like this:

![Diagram of electrolyser cells](image)

Here the plus side of each cell is connected to the minus side of the next cell to provide a set of six interconnected cells acting in series. The current flowing through the electrolyser goes through each cell in turn and so each cell receives exactly the same current as the other cells. This is the same sort of arrangement as using six Archie Blue style cells in a daisy-chain. To reduce the physical size of the unit, it would be possible to construct the electrolyser as shown here:

![Diagram of electrolyser cells](image)

In this arrangement, the individual cells have just one positive plate and one negative plate. The plates slot into the sides of the housing so that the electrolyte is trapped between the plates and an air gap is formed between the plus plate of one cell and the minus plate of the next cell.

These air gaps are wasted space. They contribute nothing to the operation of the electrolyser. Each consists of a metal plate, a gap and a wire connection to the next metal plate. From an electrical point of view, the two metal plates at the opposite ends of these gaps, being connected by a wire link, are effectively the same plate (it is just a very thick, hollow plate). These air gaps might as well be eliminated which would save one metal plate and one wire link per cell. This can be difficult to visualise, but it produces an arrangement as shown here:

![Diagram of electrolyser cells](image)

The only air gaps remaining are at the ends of the electrolyser. The plates in the middle are notionally touching each other. The positive plates are marked in red and the negative plates are shown in blue. In reality, there is only one metal plate between each cell and the next cell - the red and blue marking is only a notional device to try to make it easier to see that the diagram actually shows six separate cells in a single housing. They are separate cells because the metal electrode plates extend into the base and sides of the
housing, thus isolating the six bodies of electrolyte from each other. It is very important that the different bodies of electrolyte are fully isolated from each other, otherwise the electrolyser will not act as a series-connected unit and the current will skip past the middle plates and just run from the first plate to the last plate around the sides of the other plates. So, the plates need to be a fairly tight push-fit in grooves cut in the sides and base of the housing. The electrolyte level must always be below the top of the plates as shown here:

An electrolyser with a hundred cells, built in this style will have 101 metal plates and 100 separate bodies of electrolyte. In spite of these large numbers, the size of the overall unit does not have to be excessive. The spacing between the plates is set to, say, 3 mm (1/8 inch) and the plate thickness might be 16 gauge (1/16 inch), so the width of a 100-cell electrolyser is about 20 inches. In actual practice, the gaps at the end of the electrolyser will also contain electrolyte although that electrolyte takes no part in the electrolysis process.

The size of the plates may be determined by the space available in the engine compartment. If there is a large amount of spare space, then the plate size may be selected by allowing from two to four square inches of area on both sides of each plate, per amp of current. Each side of every plate is in a different electrolysis cell so a 6-inch by 6-inch plate will have 36 square inches on each face and so would carry between 36 / 4 = 9 to 18 amps of current. The choice of current is made by the builder of the electrolyser and it will be influenced by the size and cost of the inverter chosen to drive the electrolyser and the allowable current draw from the battery. This is for straight DC electrolysis where the battery is connected directly across the electrolyser. Using Bob’s triple-oscillator electronics pulser card, the electrolyte level has to be kept down to about three inches from the top of the six inch plate because the gas production rate is so high that there has to be substantial freeboard to stop the electrolyte being splashed all over the place.

Bob usually uses a 6” x 6” plate size. It is essential that every item which contains hydroxy gas is located outside the passenger compartment of any vehicle. Under no circumstances should the electrolyser or bubbler be located in the passenger area of the vehicle, even if pop-off caps are provided and a second protective outer housing is provided, as the explosive force is so great that permanent hearing damage would be a serious possibility.

For straight DC operation of an electrolyser of this type, the circuitry is very straightforward. The inverter should be mounted securely, preferably in the stream of air drawn in to cool the radiator. Using a diode “bridge” of four diodes converts the stepped up AC output of the inverter back into pulsing DC and produces the electrical arrangement shown here:
As mains voltage is quoted as an average figure (“root-mean-square”) it has a peak voltage of 41% more than that. This means that the pulsing DC has a voltage peak of just over 150 volts for the nominal 110 volt AC output from the inverter.

The one-way valve shown between the two bubblers, is to prevent the water in the bubbler mounted beside the electrolyser, being driven into the electrolyser in the event of an explosion in the bubbler mounted beside the engine.

**Bob Boyce’s Pulsed Electrolyser System**

The following section of this document describes Bob Boyce’s highly efficient pulsed electrolysis system. This has been very generously shared freely by Bob so that anyone who wishes may construct one for their own use without the payment of a licence fee or royalties. Just before presenting the details, it should be stressed that in order to get Bob’s performance of 600% to 1,000% of the Faraday (supposed) maximum gas output, each step needs to be carried out carefully exactly as described. Much of the following text is quoted from Bob’s forum posts and so should be considered as his copyright, not to be reproduced without his permission.

**Your Responsibility:**

If you decide to construct an electrolyser of this, or any other design, you do so wholly on your own responsibility, and nobody is in any way liable for any loss or damage, whether direct or indirect, resulting from your actions. In other words, you are wholly responsible for what you choose to do. I say again, this document must not be construed as an encouragement for you to construct this or any other electrolyser.

Bob’s electrolyser splits water into a mixture of gases, mainly hydrogen and oxygen. That gas mixture, which will be referred to as “hydroxy” is highly explosive and must be treated with respect and caution. A fairly small volume of hydroxy gas exploded in air is quite liable to cause permanent hearing loss or impairment due to the shock waves caused by the explosion. If hydroxy gas is ignited inside a sealed container, then the resulting explosion is liable to shatter the container and propel shrapnel-like fragments in all directions. These fragments can cause serious injury and every precaution must be taken to ensure that an explosion of that nature never happens. Bob uses two bubblers and a one-way valve to protect against this occurrence, and details of these are given in this document.

To make the water inside the electrolyser carry the necessary current, potassium hydroxide (KOH) is added to distilled water. This is the best electrolyte for an electrolyser of this type. Potassium hydroxide is also known as “caustic potash” and it is highly caustic. Consequently, it needs to be handled carefully and kept away from contact with skin, and even more importantly, eyes. If any splashes come in contact with you, it is very important indeed that the affected area be immediately rinsed off with large amounts of running water and if necessary, the use of vinegar which is acidic.

This electrolyser design uses a torroidal transformer to interface the electronics to the electrolyser cells. It is vital that this transformer be used very carefully. Under no circumstances may this transformer be powered up by the electronics when connected to anything other than the filled electrolyser cells as they act as a
safety buffer. When driven by Bob’s electronics, this transformer draws additional energy from the environment. While this is very useful for electrolysis, there are sometimes unpredictable energy surges which can generate as much as 10,000 amps of current. If one of these should occur when the transformer is not connected to the electrolyser which is able to soak up this excess, the resulting electrical conditions can be very serious. If you are lucky, it will just burn out expensive components. If you are not lucky, it can cause a lightning strike which is liable to hit you. For that reason, it is absolutely essential that the toroid transformer is never powered up with the secondary winding connected to anything other than the filled electrolyser.

**Patenting:**

It should be clearly understood that Bob Boyce, has released this information into the public domain and it has been displayed publicly since early in 2006. It is not possible for any part of this information to be made part of any patent application anywhere in the world. This prior public disclosure of the information prevents it being patented. It is Bob’s intention that this information be freely available to people world-wide.

**The Objective:**

This is a “Hydroxy-On-Demand” (“HOD”) system. It is very difficult indeed to generate hydroxy gas fast enough to power an internal combustion engined vehicle under all road conditions. Moving from standstill to rapid acceleration causes such a massive sudden requirement for additional volumes of hydroxy gas, that it is difficult to provide that volume instantly.

A better solution is to use an electric engine for the vehicle. This can be an electric vehicle which was designed from scratch as such, or it can be a standard vehicle which has been adapted for electric engine use. These electric vehicles are usually limited in how far they can travel, but a good solution to this is to use an electrical generator to charge the batteries, both when the vehicle is in use and when it is parked. This electrolyser can be used to run such a generator on water. With this arrangement, there are no CO2 emissions and the vehicle is very environmentally friendly. The batteries provide the necessary sudden acceleration demands and the generator recharges the batteries during normal driving.

**Overview:**

Bob’s pulsed system has the following components:

1. An electrical connection to the vehicle’s electrical system (with safety features built in).
2. An “inverter” which raises the electrolyser voltage to 160 volts.
3. Bob’s specially designed circuit board which generates a complicated water-splitting waveform.
4. Bob’s specially designed toroidal transformer which links Bob’s circuit board to the electrolyser.
6. A dual-protection system for linking the electrolyser safely to the internal combustion engine.

None of these items is particularly difficult to achieve, but each needs to be done carefully and exactly as described, paying particular attention to the detailed instructions.

**Building the Case:**

The case needs to have very accurate slots cut in it. If you do not have a milling machine, then you should consider getting a fabrication shop to mill the slots for you. The case has two ends, two sides, one base and one lid. Of these, the two sides and the base need 101 accurate grooves cut in them. The grooves are there to hold the electrode plates securely in position, and yet give just enough slack to allow the electrolyte levels inside the cell, equalise if they should ever get out of step with each other. An extra three thousandths of an inch in the slot width is sufficient to do this and still prevent any significant electrical flow around the
plates. If you do not have the equipment to do this, then there is an enthusiast who is willing to do the
cutting for people in the USA, and at reasonable price. To contact him for pricing and delivery details, send
an e-mail to eholdgate@tampabay.rr.com.

The base and two sides of the cell could have grooves cut in them to take the plates. This is not a good idea
for various reasons, including the fact that the steel plates expand when they warm up and are liable to crack
the acrylic case unless the slots are cut deeper than normal. Also, it is difficult to cut very accurate slots in
acrylic due to the heat of the cutting blade causing the acrylic to deform in the immediate area. Grooved
acrylic is very much weaker and breaks easily due to the planes of weakness introduced into the material.

Using Ultra High Molecular Weight Poly Ethylene or High Density Poly Ethylene (food chopping-board
material) strips is a much better technique as that material does not have the same cutting heat problem and
it can also take the plate expansion much better, so it is the construction method of choice. It is also a
cheaper material.

The grooves which are cut for the plates should be three thousandths of an inch wider than the thickness of
the plates. A good plate thickness is 16 gauge sheet which is one sixteenth of an inch thick or 0.0625 inch
(1.5875 mm), so the recommended groove width for that is 0.0655 inches which is not a convenient fraction
being about four and one fifth sixty-fourths of an inch. The grooves are 1/8” (3 mm) deep.

The supplier of the acrylic sheet needed for making the case, will be able to supply “glue” specifically
designed for joining acrylic sheets together. This glue actually welds the plates together so that the sheets
become one continuous piece of acrylic along the joint. Start by mating the sides and the base. Insert two
or three plates into the slots to be quite sure that the alignment is spot-on during the joining process. Line
the ends up during jointing to be sure that the sides are completely square when being joined to the base.

Concerns have been expressed about the strength of the acrylic casing under severe road conditions. So it
has been suggested that the acrylic components be constructed from sheet which is 3/4” to 1” thick (18 mm
to 25 mm) and the corners reinforced with angle iron secured with bolts tapped into the acrylic as shown
below.
Here is a photograph of a partially finished 71-plate housing under construction by Ed Holdgate who works to a very high standard of accuracy and who prepares and sells these housings to anyone who is in the process of constructing a Bob Boyce electrolyser:
Here you see the end plates with the stainless steel straps welded to the two end plates. These straps are used to connect the electrical supply to the plates, keeping any connection which could possible work loose and cause a spark, completely outside the housing. Even though the straps are welded and there is no likelihood of them coming loose, the welds are still kept below the surface of the electrolyte.

**Getting and Preparing the Plates:**
A set of 101 plates is needed for the electrolyser. The material used when making the plates is very important. It should be 16-gauge 316L-grade stainless steel as it contains a blend of nickel and molybdenum in the correct proportions to make it a very good catalyst for the pulsing technique. You can try your local steel stockists to see if they can supply it and what their charges would be. One satisfactory stainless steel supplier which Bob has used is Intertrade Steel Corp., 5115 Mt. Vernon Rd SE, Cedar Rapids, IA 52406. Do not buy from eBay as you have no real comeback if the plates supplied are dished due to having been flame cut. Possible internet suppliers include

- AK Steel, Middletown, OH 513-425-5000 [www.aksteel.com](http://www.aksteel.com)
- Allegheny Ludlum, Pittsburgh, PA 412-394-2800 [www.alleghenyludlum.com](http://www.alleghenyludlum.com)
It is very important indeed that when asking for a quote that you make sure that the supplier is aware of the accuracy you require. The plates need to be flat to a tolerance of +/- 0.001" after cutting and this is the most important factor. That level of accuracy excludes any kind of flame cutting as it produces inevitable heat distortion. With shearing, expect +/- 0.015" on the cuts and +/- 0.001" on flatness. Laser cutting produces much higher accuracy and you can expect as good as +/- 0.005" on cuts and there is no spec needed for flatness since laser cutting does not distort the edges like shearing does.

The plates are square: 6-inches by 6-inches, but that does not represent 36 square inches of active surface area as some plate area is inside the grooves and some of each plate is above the surface of the electrolyte. Another point to remember is that 101 steel plates this size weigh a considerable amount and the completed electrolyser with electrolyte in it will weigh even more. It is essential therefore to have a case which is strongly built from strong materials, and if a mounting bracket is to be used, then that bracket needs to be very robust and well secured in place.

The preparation of the plates is one of the most important steps in producing an electrolyser which works well. This is a long task, but it is vital that it is not skimped or hurried in any way. Surprisingly, brand new shiny stainless steel is not particularly suitable for use in an electrolyser and it needs to receive careful treatment and preparation before it will produce the expected level of gas output.

The first step is to treat both surfaces of every plate to encourage gas bubbles to break away from the surface of the plate. This could be done by grit blasting, but if that method is chosen, great care must be taken that the grit used does not contaminate the plates. Stainless steel plates are not cheap and if you get grit blasting wrong, then the plates will be useless as far as electrolysis is concerned. A safe method which Bob much prefers is to score the plate surface with coarse sandpaper. This is done in two different directions to produce a cross-hatch pattern. This produces microscopic sharp peaks and valleys on the surface of the plate and those sharp points and ridges are ideal for helping bubbles to form and break free of the plate.
Bob uses a 6-inch x 48-inch belt sander which is great for preparing the plates and he uses it all the time now with 60 or 80 grit. Always wear rubber gloves when handling the plates to avoid getting finger marks on the plates. Wearing these gloves is very important as the plates must be kept as clean and as grease-free as possible, ready for the next stages of their preparation.

Any particles created by the sanding process should now be washed off the plates. This can be done with clean tap water (not city water though, due to all the chlorine and other chemicals added), but only use distilled water for the final rinse.

A point which is often missed by people constructing electrolysers is the fact that electrolysis is not just an electrical process, but it is also a magnetic process. It is important for maximum operating efficiency that the plates are aligned magnetically. This will not be the case when the plates arrive from the supplier as each plate will have random magnetic characteristics. The easiest way to deal with this situation is to give the plates a mild magnetic orientation. This can be done quite simply by wrapping a few turns of wire around the stack of plates and passing some brief pulses of DC current through the wire.

![Diagram of battery and plates](image)

Obviously, the plates need to be kept in the same direction when being slotted into the case. The next step in the preparation process is to make up a weak solution of potassium hydroxide. This is done by adding small amounts of the potassium hydroxide to water held in a container. The container must not be glass as that is not a suitable material in which to mix the electrolyte.

Potassium hydroxide, also called KOH or “Caustic Potash”, can be bought in small quantities from soap making supply outlets. One suitable outlet is Summer Bee Meadow at [www.summerbeemeadow.com](http://www.summerbeemeadow.com) in their “Soapmaking Supplies” section. Another provider who supplies small quantities at reasonable cost is [https://www.saltcitysoapworks.com/newshop/product_info.php?cPath=25&products_id=106&osCsid=07d7da060277e6c8a157be165490541](https://www.saltcitysoapworks.com/newshop/product_info.php?cPath=25&products_id=106&osCsid=07d7da060277e6c8a157be165490541) While Potassium hydroxide is the very best electrolyte, it needs to be treated with care:

Always store it in a sturdy air-tight container which is clearly labelled "DANGER! - Potassium Hydroxide". Keep the container in a safe place, where it can't be reached by children, pets or people who won't take any notice of the label. If your supply of KOH is delivered in a strong plastic bag, then once you open the bag, you should transfer all its contents to sturdy, air-tight, plastic storage containers, which you can open and close without risking spilling the contents. Hardware stores sell large plastic buckets with air tight lids that can be used for this purpose.

When working with dry KOH flakes or granules, wear safety goggles, rubber gloves, a long sleeved shirt, socks and long trousers. Also, don’t wear your favourite clothes when handling KOH solution as it is not the best thing to get on clothes. It is also no harm to wear a face mask which covers your mouth and nose. If you are mixing solid KOH with water, always add the KOH to the water, and not the other way round, and use a plastic container for the mixing, preferably one which has double the capacity of the finished mixture. The mixing should be done in a well-ventilated area which is not draughty as air currents can blow the dry KOH around.

When mixing the electrolyte, **never** use warm water. The water should be cool because the chemical reaction between the water and the KOH generates a good deal of heat. If possible, place the mixing container in a larger container filled with cold water, as that will help to keep the temperature down, and if
your mixture should “boil over” it will contain the spillage. Add only a small amount of KOH at a time, stirring continuously, and if you stop stirring for any reason, put the lids back on all containers.

If, in spite of all precautions, you get some KOH solution on your skin, wash it off with plenty of running cold water and apply some vinegar to the skin. Vinegar is acidic, and will help balance out the alkalinity of the KOH. You can use lemon juice if you don’t have vinegar to hand - but it is always recommended to keep a bottle of vinegar handy.

Plate Cleansing:
Prepare a 5% to 10% (by weight) KOH solution and let it cool down. As mentioned before, never handle the plates with your bare hands, but always use clean rubber gloves. Put the sanded and rinsed plates into the slots in the electrolyser case, keeping them all the same way round so that they remain magnetically matched. Fill the electrolyser with the KOH solution until the plates are just covered.

A voltage is now applied across the whole set of plates by attaching the leads to the outermost two plates. This voltage should be at least 2 volts per cell, but it should not exceed 2.5 volts per cell. Maintain this voltage across the set of plates for several hours at a time. The current is likely to be 4 amps or more. As this process continues, the boiling action will loosen particles from the pores and surfaces of the metal. This process produces hydroxy gas, so it is very important that the gas is not allowed to collect anywhere indoors (such as on ceilings).

After several hours, disconnect the electrical supply and pour the electrolyte solution into a container. Rinse out the cells thoroughly with distilled water. Filter the dilute KOH solution through paper towels or coffee filters to remove the particles. Pour the dilute solution back into the electrolyser and repeat this cleaning process. You may have to repeat the electrolysis and rinsing process many times before the plates stop putting out particles into the solution. If you wish, you can use a new KOH solution each time you cleanse, but please realise that you can go through a lot of solution just in this cleaning stage if you choose to do it that way. When cleansing is finished (typically 3 days of cleansing), do a final rinse with clean distilled water.

Plate Conditioning:
Using the same concentration of solution as in cleansing, fill the electrolyser with dilute solution up to 1/2” below the tops of the plates. Do not overfill the cells. Apply about 2 volts per cell and allow the unit to run. Remember that very good ventilation is essential during this process. The cells may overflow, but this is ok for now. As water is consumed, the levels will drop. Once the cells stabilise with the liquid level at the plate tops or just below, monitor the current draw. If the current draw is fairly stable, continue with this conditioning phase continuously for two to three days, adding just enough distilled water to replace what is consumed. If the solution changes colour or develops a layer of crud on the surface of the electrolyte, then the cell stack needs more cleansing stages. Do not allow the cells to overfill and overflow at this point. After two to three days of run time, pour out the dilute KOH solution and rinse out the electrolyser thoroughly with distilled water.

Cell Operation:
Mix up a nearly full-strength solution of potassium hydroxide. The filling of the electrolyser depends on whether straight DC electrolysis is to be used, or resonant electrolysis is to be used.

For straight DC electrolysis, fill the electrolyser to about one inch below the tops of the plates. The DC voltage applied to the electrolyser will be about 2 volts per cell or a little less, so this 100-cell electrolyser will have 180 to 200 volts applied to it. This voltage will be generated with an inverter.

For resonant operation, fill the electrolyser to only half the plate height because the hydroxy gas production is so rapid that room has to be left for the gas leaving the plates. With resonant operation, about 1.5 volts per cell is used.

Troubleshooting:
1. Abnormally low current is caused by improper plate preparation or severe contamination. Take the plates out of the electrolyser and start over again from plate preparation.
2. Abnormally high current is caused by high leakages between cells. This will require re-building or re-sealing of the electrolyser case.

3. If current starts higher then drops off, this means that the plates are contaminated. Take the plates out of the electrolyser and start over again from plate preparation.

Building the Electronics:
Resonant operation of the electrolyser requires the use of a DC pulsing system. Bob has designed an advanced system for this, consisting of a sophisticated electronics board and a finely-tuned toroidal transformer which interfaces and matches the electronics to the electrolyser.

The electronics board produces three separate frequencies which are combined together to give a rich and complex output waveform further modified by the toroidal transformer:

In Bob’s electrolyser build, those frequencies were about 42.8 KHz, 21.4 KHz and 10.7 KHz but please don’t get the wrong impression here, there is no single exact frequency or set of frequencies which should be used. The size and shape of your cell, the electrodes spacings, electrolyte density, electrolyte temperature and operational pressure are all factors which affect the tuning of the electronics. With Bob’s large marine-duty cells with square twelve-inch plates, he found the base resonance point using his original, modified inverter, to be at least 100 Hz lower than that of the prototypes with smaller plate sizes. That inverter is no longer commercially available and even if it would not be used as Bob’s electronics board is far more effective.

When he tried separate flooded cells connected in series, he was not able to get anything more than a marginal rise in performance over a broader range. He felt that this was due to each cell in the set having a slightly different resonant point which did not match very well with the other cells. Bob had to go to the series plate design with accurate spacing and tight tolerance on slots and plates in order to get the resonant responses to line up on all cells. Also, he found that some choices of electrolyte would not produce resonance at any frequency, though he is not sure why. Some worked well while others worked marginally, so Bob stuck with what worked the best for him - sodium hydroxide (NaOH) and potassium hydroxide (KOH).

It needs to be stressed here, that every electrolyser build is slightly different from all others, even though they may have been meant to be exactly the same. There will be small differences between the plates in one electrolyser and the plates in other electrolyzers. The electrolyte concentration will be slightly different,
the plate preparation will be slightly different and the overall magnetic characteristics will be unique to each actual build. For that reason, the tuning of the completed electronics board and the construction of the best possible transformer to match the electronics to the electrolyser, is always different for each electrolyser built.

The first step is to build the electronics control board. The methods for doing this are shown clearly in Bob’s document entitled “Boyce Electrolyser Project.pdf” which is in the “Files” section of the WorkingWatercar Yahoo forum. Bob has designed a printed circuit board to simplify the construction of the electronic drive circuitry. To see Bob’s design and to order one of these boards, you need to download and install the free “ExpressPCB” software which is located at http://www.expresspcb.com/ExpressPCBhtm/Download.htm and which can display his design files. The download is just over nine megabytes in size and contains two programs: “ExpressPCB” and “ExpressSCH”. Only the ExpressPCB program needs to be installed for you to be able to place an order for a board.

The design files needed for you to be able to order the printed circuit board, are located in the “Bob Boyce Project” folder in the “Files” section of the WorkingWatercar forum. If you are not already a member of this Yahoo Group, then you need to join at http://tech.groups.yahoo.com/group/WorkingWatercar/ which is a good idea anyway as the forum members are always willing to give helpful advice. The “Bob Boyce Project” folder contains the “Boyce Electrolyser Project.pdf” document describing the construction of the electronics.

You need to use the ExpressPCB program to access the “PWM3F.pcb” file which is in the “Bob Boyce Project” folder, as this small 50 Kb file contains the design and construction information needed by the manufacturer to construct the board for you. Download the PWM3F.pcb file on to your computer and double-click on it to open it with your newly installed ExpressPCB program. When the file has loaded, click on the “Layout” option at the top of the screen and then click on Click the “Compute Board Cost”, enter your location, select the Two-layer Board option, then pick “MiniBoard”. Alternatively, you can get the board from The Hydrogen Garage for just US $20 at: http://stores.homestead.com/hydrogengarage/Categories.bok?category=ELECTRICAL%2F+CIRCUITS along with other useful items like an ammeter for checking the current flow through the electrolyser.

When your new printed circuit board is delivered, you will need the components to be mounted on it. Terry has set up a pre-filled order form for Digikey which you can use without having to key all the information yourself. Just click on this link: http://sales.digikey.com/scripts/ru.dll?action=pb_view&pb_glue=1014385 to order the parts which will cost about US $60 for US mainland shipping.

The completed board looks like this:
It is not too difficult to assemble this board as the printed circuit board can be purchased ready-made and a complete set of components can be ordered using the ordering system set up in the WorkingWatercar forum.

You should notice here, that the whole of the aluminium case is being used as a "heat-sink" to dissipate the heat generated in the FET driver transistors. These transistors are all bolted to the case and each has its own rectangle of mica "washer" between the transistor and the case. These pieces of mica pass heat very readily to the case, while at the same time, isolating the transistors electrically so that they will not interfere with each other. Notice too, the plastic support columns at each corner of the printed circuit board. These are used to mount the printed circuit board securely, while holding it away from the metal case and so
preventing any possibility of the connections on the underside of the board being short-circuited by the case itself.

In some of the builds of the electronics board, it has been found that it is sometimes difficult to get the highest frequency oscillator operating correctly at around 42.8 KHz due to some NE556 chips being out of specification. Even though they should be the same, chips from different manufacturers, and even the same branded chip from different suppliers, can have slightly different actual specifications. On both the PWM3E and PWM3F boards, C4 has now been changed from 0.1 microfarad back to 0.047 microfarad to accommodate the corrected specs of the newer Texas Instruments NE556N chip (the one marked with MALAYSIA on top). The earlier versions of the NE556N chip had required a change to 0.1 microfarad to correct for specifications that were sub-standard. Depending on which chip you actually use in the “U1 - U3” board positions, you may have to adjust the value of C1, C3, and C4 to compensate for variations from the original 556 chip specification, or adjust some of the other timing component tolerances. The TAIWAN and other marked Texas Instruments chips will still work ok in the “U2” and “U3” locations, but there has been a big issue sourcing chips that will reach 43 kHz in the “U1” location. The MALAYSIA chips tested so far have been satisfactory.

**Setting up the completed board:**

**Jumper J1:** If this is short-circuited it disables all three Pulse-Width Modulators, for oscillator outputs only.

**Jumper J2:** If this is short-circuited it connects the MOSFET Gate Supply TB3 to +DC for a single supply.

**Jumper J3:** If this is short-circuited it connects the MOSFET Source to -DC for a common ground.

**Jumper J4:** If this is short-circuited it enables the input of the Auxiliary TTL Inputs 1, 2 and 3. This is a convenient test point for measuring the outputs of each of the three signal generator stages.

To enable the auxiliary inputs, the on-board generators must be disabled with SW1 switches 1, 2 and 3 as shown here:

**Switch SW1:**
- switching 1 on disables the Pulse-Width Modulation of oscillator 1
- switching 2 on disables the Pulse-Width Modulation of oscillator 2
- switching 3 on disables the Pulse-Width Modulation of oscillator 3
- switching 4 on disables the Pulse-Width Modulation of all three oscillators
Terminal Block TB1: is the DC Power Input & MOSFET Source Ground

Terminal Block TB2: is the MOSFET Drain/PWM Outputs & MOSFET Gate Supply Input

In more detail:

J1 is for the connection of an optional external control or safety shutdown device, such as a pressure or temperature limit switch. J1 is shorted to shut down waveform generation. For normal operation, J1 is left open.

J2 and J3 are for optional voltage modification support. For normal operation, both J2 and J3 are shorted with 2 position jumper shorting blocks.

J4 is for the connection of optional auxiliary inputs. For normal operation, nothing is connected to J4. J4 can also be used to connect an oscilloscope to view the Pulse-Width Modulator generator waveforms of channels 1, 2, and 3.
**SW1** is for disabling PWM generator channels 1, 2, and 3 via switches 1, 2, and 3. Switch 4 is a master disable that turns off all 3 channels. For normal operation, all 4 switches are switched OFF.

**Terminal Block TB1** has 4 connections as follows;

1. DC Input + is connected to the 13.8 V DC power supply positive connection via a 2-amp fuse or circuit breaker.
2. DC Input - is connected to the 13.8 V DC power supply negative connection. If a shorting plug is installed at J3, this wire is optional.
3. and 4. Ground is connected to the 13.8 V DC power supply negative connection via heavy gauge wire. There are two wire connection terminals available so that two equal length wires may be used to reduce wire resistance losses.

**Terminal Block TB2** has 4 connections which are connected as follows:

**Gate +** is not normally connected when a shorting plug is installed at jumper J2.
**Output 1** is connected to the “cold” side of primary 1 of the toroidal transformer.
**Output 2** is connected to the “cold” side of primary 2 of the toroidal transformer.
**Output 3** is connected to the “cold” side of primary 3 of the toroidal transformer.

The “hot” sides of primaries 1, 2, and 3 are brought together, and connected to the 13.8 V DC power supply positive connection via heavy-gauge wire and a 60-amp fuse or DC circuit-breaker.

**Note:** These fuses are for short circuit protection, and are not an indication of system power consumption.

*Testing the completed board:*

Do NOT connect the PWM3F outputs to a powered transformer until after the unit tests show it to be fully functional. You may pull the 60-amp fuse out, or trip the DC circuit-breaker, while testing and tuning.

Power up the PWM3F board and check the indicator LEDs for proper operation:

**LED 1** - the Channel 1 output - should be lit in normal operation, off if disabled.
**LED 2** - the Channel 2 output - should be lit in normal operation, off if disabled.
**LED 3** - the Channel 3 output - should be lit in normal operation, off if disabled.

**LED 4** - the PWM channel 1 disable - should be off in normal operation, on if disabled.
**LED 5** - the PWM channel 2 disable - should be off in normal operation, on if disabled.
**LED 6** - the PWM channel 3 disable - should be off in normal operation, on if disabled.

**LED 7** - the 12 volt supply - should be lit in normal operation, off when powered down.
**LED 8** - the 8 volt supply - should be lit when the power is connected and off when powered down.

If all indicators check out, then start the tuning procedure. If everything checks out ok except the output indicators, then try tuning first then test again. Failures may indicate component or soldering problems.

*Tuning the board:*

Adjust all 3 of the "DC" marked (Duty Cycle) potentiometers (R25, R27, R29) fully clockwise, for minimum pulse width.

Connect a frequency counter or oscilloscope to Jumper J4 pin 1 (Aux Input 3) and adjust the channel 3 "Hz" marked potentiometer (R28) for a reading of 10.7 KHz.

Connect a frequency counter or oscilloscope to Jumper J4 pin 2 (Aux Input 2) and adjust the channel 2 "Hz" marked potentiometer (R26) for a reading of 21.4 KHz.
Connect a frequency counter or oscilloscope to Jumper J4 pin 3 (Aux Input 1) and adjust the channel 1 "Hz" marked potentiometer (R24) for a reading of 42.8 KHz.

**Note:** If channel 1 shuts down while tuning towards 42.8 KHz, replace U1 with a different brand of NE556 type timer chip. Many of these chips, like those marked as made in Taiwan, do not fully meet the NE555 spec and will shut down with the output turned on solid. If this occurs while loaded, the output FET for that channel may be quickly destroyed. The Texas Instruments 556 chips marked as made in Malaysia have typically been tested to work ok at up to 45 KHz.

Once the board has been tuned as described above, verify output at the Terminal Block TB2 Outputs with an oscilloscope. Without a transformer connected, the indicator LEDs only lightly load the FETs, but enough to verify operation during testing. If all checks out ok up to this point, you should be ready to connect the transformer primaries and apply power.

**Note:** If you experience heating issues with any of the Metal Oxide Varistors M1, M2, and M3, they may be safely removed and left out, or replaced with slightly higher voltage MOVs. There have been some Metal Oxide Varistors that work properly, and some that do not. It seems to be a batch related issue.

**Winding the Transformer:**

The transformer in Bob’s system is a very important component. It is an inductor, a transformer, and a source of energy-form conversion, all rolled into one. The transformer has been successfully duplicated and used by others, driven with Bob’s triple-oscillator board, to achieve a resonant drive to the cells which results in a performance which is well beyond the maximum stated by Faraday.

The reason there are no step-by-step instructions for constructing the transformer is because it must be wound to match the load/impedance of the cells it will be driving. There is no “one-transformer-fits-all” solution for this. Bob uses a powdered iron core of 6.5" diameter for units up to 100 cells. The larger the diameter, the greater the power. Ferrite is fine for lower frequencies, but for this application, a powdered iron toroid core is essential. The MicroMetals core, part number “T650-52” is a suitable core and is available from [http://www.micrometals.com/pcparts/torcore7.html](http://www.micrometals.com/pcparts/torcore7.html) and can be purchased in small quantities via their "samples requests", which can be submitted at [http://www.micrometals.com/samples_index.html](http://www.micrometals.com/samples_index.html)

**The Micrometals T650-52 Toroidal Core**

The primary of the transformer is 3-phase, while the secondary is single-phase. As most current flows along the outside of wires rather than through the middle of the wire, the choice and size of the wire chosen to wind the transformer is most important. Bob uses solid teflon-covered silver-plated copper wire (a supplier is [http://www.apexjr.com/](http://www.apexjr.com/)). It is very important that this wire is solid core and not stranded as stranded wire does not work here (due to the generation of inter-strand, phase-differential induced eddy currents). Before any winding is done, the toroid is given a layer of tape. And the materials to be used are collected together, namely, the tape, the wire, the beeswax and the heat gun:
Of paramount importance with the toroid is that unlike traditional transformer design, the secondary is wound first, and the windings must be evenly spaced where they fan out from the center of the core. This means even though they are tightly packed right up against one another at the center hole, they must not be wound so that they bunch up and gap open around the periphery. Mistakes here will cause field errors that will lower the overall efficiency.

As you can see here, Bob uses short lengths of plastic strimmer cable as spacers for the outside of the toroid, though the picture above has been taken to show what a partially prepared secondary winding looks like when its windings are being moved into very accurate positions.

You will notice that Bob has wrapped the toroid in tape before starting the secondary winding:
Bob also uses a jar to assist in applying beeswax to the accurately positioned turns of the toroidal transformer:

When the windings are completed, correctly spaced and encased in beeswax, each layer is finished off with a layer of tape.

So, to recap, the toroid is wrapped in tape, the secondary wound extending the entire way around the toroid, the windings carefully spaced out so that the gaps around the outer edge of the toroid are exactly equal, the winding encased in beeswax, and then the beeswax covered with a layer of tape:
For the great majority of systems, the secondary winding is a tightly wound, single layer, full-fill wrap of 16 gauge, single-core, silver-plated, teflon-insulated copper wire. There will be about 130 turns in this winding, needing a wire length of about 100 feet. Count the exact number of turns in your actual winding and make a note of it. This secondary winding is held in place with melted beeswax, and when that has hardened, the winding is then wrapped tightly with a good quality glass tape. This makes a good base for the primary windings which will be wound on top of the tape layer.
Please note that every winding starts by passing **over** the toroid, proceeds in a counter-clockwise direction, and finishes by passing **under** the toroid. Every winding is created in this way and the quality of workmanship is very important indeed when making these windings. Each winding needs to be tight and positioned exactly with turns touching each other in the centre of the toroid and positioned on the outer edge with exactly equal spaces between each turn. Your construction work **has** to be better than that of a commercial supplier and needs to reach the quality demanded by the military, which would cost thousands of dollars for each toroid if it were to be made up for you by professionals.

The three primaries need to be wound on top of the tape wrapping which covers the secondary winding. These three windings are spaced out equally around the toroid, that is, at 120 degree centres. The primary windings are held in place with beeswax, and then tightly taped. The primaries may need more than a single layer, and they are wound with the same direction of winds as the secondary, and the same care for even winding spacing as the secondary needed. Tape the entire core well with tightly-stretched PVC electrical tape after winding, to ensure that the primary windings do not move and then add an outer layer of winding tape. Bob uses the 1P802YE type on 3” rolls, both the 1” and 2” widths from: [http://www.lodestonepacific.com/distrib/pdfs/tape/1p802.pdf](http://www.lodestonepacific.com/distrib/pdfs/tape/1p802.pdf)

This is where the generic information ends. The exact details of the primary windings must be determined from the operational characteristics of the cells. This means that you must build, cleanse and condition your cells prior to making the operational measurements. From those measurements, calculations can be made to determine what gauge and how many turns of solid-core, silver-plated, teflon-insulated, copper wire are to be used for each of the three primary windings.

The objective here is to have the complex waveform generated by the electronics produce voltages of about 25% of the main power supply voltage at the electrolyser. In other words, if an inverter is being used and its output rectified to produce about 160 volts of pulsing DC, then the toroid transformer secondary should generate about 40 volts.

The output from the electronics board is about 13.8 volts when driven by a vehicle’s electrical system, so to step that up to about 40 volts requires a step up of 2.9, which means that the secondary winding needs to have 2.9 times as many turns in it as the primary winding does. So divide the number of turns in your secondary winding by 2.9 to calculate the number of turns in each of the three primary windings. If you had 130 turns in the secondary, then there would be 45 turns in each of the three primary windings.

Normally, the diameter of the wire used in the primaries will be greater than that of the secondary because it will be driven by a much lower voltage and so will need a much higher current, but that is not the case here. Now that you have cleansed and conditioned the plates in your electrolyser, power up your inverter with your vehicle engine running at 2000 rpm or so, and measure the DC current taken by the inverter. This is the level of current which the primary windings have to carry, so the wire size can be selected from this measurement. Each primary winding is pulsed, so it is not carrying current all of the time, also, the final primary current is the sum of the three pulsing signals, so a reduction can be allowed for that. While the wire diameter for the primary windings of each toroidal transformer need to be calculated separately, a common diameter turns out to be AWG #20 (21 SWG). The wire length for the primaries will be greater per turn as the turns are now being made over the secondary winding. Forty-eight turns of #20 wire are likely to require at least thirty-five feet and that is for each of the three windings, assuming that all turns can be laid flat side-by-side. If it is necessary to make each a two-layer winding, then the wire length will increase further.

If you would like a 360 degree template for marking the positions of the primary windings, then there is one available at [www.thegsresources.com](http://www.thegsresources.com)
Connecting the Electrics:
Bob has specified that the primary windings are connected between the board outputs and the positive supply for the board like this:

In the above diagram, two 200-volt 470 microfarad capacitors are used to smooth the pulsing DC waveform coming from the diode bridge. Their inclusion will have a considerable effect on the waveform. It is important to include heavy-duty chokes (coils) in both sides of the high voltage power supply and in the 13.8 volt positive lead coming from the vehicle electrics. These choke cores are available from Radio Shack in the USA and are wound with wire capable of carrying the current which they have to handle (perhaps AWG #8 or SWG 10 for the low voltage choke and AWG #15 or SWG 17 for the high voltage).

If all is well and the 20-amp contact-breaker (or fuse) is not tripped, the electrical power passes through to the gas-pressure switch mounted on the electrolyser. If the gas production rate is greater than the engine requirement and as a result, the gas pressure inside the electrolyser gets above 5 psi, then the gas pressure switch disconnects the electrical supply which in turn, cuts off the generation of more gas until the pressure inside the electrolyser drops again as the engine uses the gas. If all is well, the gas-pressure switch will be closed and the electrical power is then passed to the relay’s switch contacts. The relay is wired in such a way that the relay will be powered up if, and only if, the engine is running. If all is well and the relay contacts are closed, then the power is passed through to both the inverter and the electronics board. The inverter output is 110 volts AC so it is passed through a diode bridge which converts it to pulsing DC with a peak value of about 155 volts. This voltage and the output of the electronics board toroidal transformer are passed to the electrolyser to break down the water and generate hydroxy gas. The wire connecting the vehicle negative to the electronics board should be very heavy duty as it is carrying a large current.

There is a lot of power stored in a charged battery. It is important therefore, to protect against short-circuits in any new wiring being added to a vehicle, if this electrolyser is to be used with a vehicle. The best overall protection is to have a circuit-breaker or fuse connected in the new wiring immediately after the battery. If any unexpected load occurs anywhere in the new circuitry, then the circuit will be disconnected immediately.

It is also important that the electrolyser is only connected and operating when the engine is running. While the gas-pressure switch should accomplish this, it is no harm to have additional protection in the form of a standard automotive relay in the power supply line as shown in the diagram above. This relay coil can be connected across the electric fuel pump, or alternatively wired so that it is powered up by the ignition switch being turned on.

Supplying the Water:
The potassium hydroxide is not used up when the electrolyser is operated. A small amount leaves the electrolyser in the form of vapour but this is washed out of the gas in the first bubbler. Two bubblers are used, the first is located beside the electrolyser and connected to it via a one-way valve. The second bubbler is located close to the engine. From time to time, the water in the bubblers is poured back into the electrolyser and that prevents the loss of any potassium hydroxide. Not only does this conserve the potassium hydroxide, but it also protects the engine as potassium hydroxide has a very bad effect inside the engine itself.

The overall water system is like this in broad outline, omitting the electrical safety devices:
A probe inside the electrolyser senses when the average level of the electrolyte has dropped and powers up the water pump to inject more water into the electrolyser. The rate of gas production is so high with the pulsed system that the electrolyte level is place at about half the plate height. That is some three inches below the tops of the plates. Because of this violent action, the water-level sensor needs to be operated from the electrolyte outside the plates where the surface of the electrolyte does not move so violently.

A serious issue with an electrolyser of this type is dealing with water loss. As the plates have to be spaced closely together and the since the electrolyte between the cells is effectively isolated from the electrolyte in the other cells, driving a mile down the road is liable to lower the water level by half an inch (say, one centimetre). It is essential to keep replacing the water which is used.

Two things have to be dealt with:

1. Sensing when the electrolyte level has fallen, and
2. Creating some device for getting extra water into each cell

Simple electronics provides the answer to sensing the level of the electrolyte, and a windscreen-washer water pump can be used to inject the additional water.

A sensor for the water in the cells can be on just one cell. If the water level of any one cell falls below the level in the other cells, then the gas produced in that cell will be slightly less than the other cells, so it will lose less water until the water levels match again. Also, Bob recommends cutting the slots which hold the plates, 3 thousandths of an inch (0.003” or 0.075 mm) larger than the actual thickness of the metal plates. This effectively blocks electrical leakage between adjacent cells but does allow a very gradual migration of water between the cells to help maintain an even water surface across the cell.

The water-level sensor can be just one stiff stainless steel wire run down each side of any cell. These wires should be insulated to make sure that they do not short-circuit to either (or both) of the plates on each side of them. They should be set so that their tips are at the intended surface level of the electrolyte.

If the electrolyte level drops below the tip of the wire sensors, then the resistance between the wires will fall, indicating that more water is needed. This can switch the water pump on, which will raise the water level until the electrolyte level reaches the tip of the wire again. A possible circuit for doing this is shown here:
When the level of the electrolyte falls, the sensor wires come clear of the liquid and the voltage at point ‘A’ rises. Provided that this situation remains for a second or two, capacitor C2 charges up and the voltage on the base of transistor Tr1 rises, causing it to switch on. Transistors Tr1 and Tr2 are wired as a Schmitt trigger, so transistor Tr2 changes state rapidly, raising the voltage at its collector, and causing transistor Tr3 to power the relay on. The relay contacts switch the water pump on, which raises the level of the electrolyte until it reaches the sensor wires again. This flips the circuit back into its standby state, powering down the water pump. Resistor R1 feeds capacitor C1 to reduce the effects of variations of voltage reaching the sensor circuit. The components shown here are not critical and there must be at least twenty alternative designs for this circuit.

A possible physical layout for this circuit is shown here:

The build is based on using the standard 10-strip, 39-hole stripboard. For convenience in drawing, the holes are represented as the points where the lines cross in the diagram shown here:

The horizontal lines represent the copper strips and the intersections with the vertical lines represents the matrix of holes. Many different layouts could be used for this circuit, so the following diagram is only a suggestion:
Components:

R1 100 ohms
R2 1,000 ohms
R3 10,000 ohms
R4 1,800 ohms
R5 18,000 ohms
R6 18,000 ohms
R7 3,900 ohms

C1 1000 microfarad 35 volt or higher
C2 330 microfarad 16 volt or higher
D1 1N4001 or similar 100 volt or higher 1 amp
Tr1 to Tr3 2N2222 or 2N2222A or similar

40V, 800 mA, 500 mW, gain 100 - 300
To combat splashing of the electrolyte, a layer of aquarium matting is placed over the tops of the plates. In the diagram above, only a few of the 101 plates are shown, in order to keep the drawing narrow enough to fit on the page. The plates at each end have a stainless steel strap welded to them in order to allow for simple and robust electrical connections to be made through the case.

Even though the plate slots are cut just large enough to allow the electrolyte level to equalise between cells, the water supply is arranged to feed equal amounts of water to each cell. This is done by having a small hole drilled in the water supply pipe running above the plates and positioned above the centre of each cell. As there will be a pressure drop along the pipe as water exits through the nearer holes, the supply pipe is branched into four separate arms, each supplying just one quarter of the cells. There should also be one
hole for each 1/8” (3 mm) gap where the level-sensor probes are located, so as to ensure that the level there does not get out of step with the levels between the plates.

It is important to have a one-way valve in the water supply line where it exits from the electrolyser, otherwise the gas pressure inside the electrolyser will push its way out through the water pump.

**Connecting to the Engine:**

The way that the gas output from the electrolyser is handled is very important. It is vital that there is no possibility of the gas inside the electrolyser being ignited and causing an explosion. Firstly, to prevent any back-pressure, a one-way valve is fitted immediately after the electrolyser:

Further building advice and general encouragement can be had from various enthusiast forums, including:

http://tech.groups.yahoo.com/group/WorkingWatercar/?yguid=274961312

http://tech.groups.yahoo.com/group/Hydroxy/?yguid=274961312 and
Practical Issues

No matter which variety of electrolyser cell is used, it is essential to put a bubbler between it and the engine intake. This is to prevent any accidental ignition of the gas reaching the electrolysis cell. Also, no electrolyser should be operated or tested indoors. This is because the gas is lighter than air so any leak of gas will cause the gas to collect on the ceiling where it can cause a major explosion when triggered by the slightest spark (such as is generated when a light switch is turned on or off). Hydrogen gas escapes very easily indeed as its atoms are very, very small and can get through any tiny crack and even directly through many apparently solid materials. Testing electrolysers should be done outdoors or at the very least, in very well-ventilated locations.

Using at least one bubbler is an absolutely vital safety measure. A typical bubbler looks like this:

![Diagram of a bubbler](image)

Bubbler construction is very simple indeed. It can be any size or shape provided that the outlet of the entry tube has at least five inches (125 mm) of water above it. Plastic is a common choice for the material and fittings are easy to find. It is very important that good sealed joints are made where all pipes and wires enter any container which has hydroxy gas in it. This, of course, includes the bubbler.

The anti-slosh filling in the cap is to prevent the water in the bubbler from splashing up into the exit pipe and being drawn into the engine. Various materials have been used for the filling including stainless steel wool and plastic pot scourers. The material needs to prevent, or at least minimise, any water passing through it, while at the same time allowing the gas to flow freely through it.

Let me stress again, that this document does NOT recommend that you actually build any of the items of equipment discussed here. The ‘hydroxy’ gas produced by electrolysis of water is extremely dangerous, explodes instantly and cannot be stored safely, so this document is strictly for information purposes only.

However, to understand the process more fully, the following details would need to be considered carefully if somebody decided to actually build one of these high-voltage series-cell devices.
There is a considerable difference between a mixture of hydrogen and oxygen gases ('hydroxy') and petroleum (gasoline) vapour. While they both can serve as fuel for an internal combustion engine, they have considerable differences. One major difference is that hydroxy gas burns very much faster than petrol vapour. That would not be a problem if the engine was originally designed to burn hydroxy gas. However, most existing engines are arranged to operate on fossil fuels.

If using hydroxy gas to improve the burn quality and improve the mpg of a vehicle, no timing adjustments are normally necessary. However, all recent cars in the USA are fitted with an Electronic Mixture Controller and if nothing is done about that, a decrease in mpg may actually occur as the Controller may start pumping more fuel into the engine when it sees a change in the quality of the exhaust.

If an engine is run without any fossil fuel at all, then timing adjustments need to be made. Hydrocarbon fuels have large molecules which do not burn fast enough to be efficient inside the cylinder of an engine. What happens is that for the first fraction of a second after the spark plug fires, the molecules inside the cylinder split up into much smaller particles, and then these smaller particles burn so fast that it can be described as an explosion:

Because of the delay needed for the conversion of the hydrocarbon molecules to smaller particles, the spark is arranged to occur before the Top Dead Centre point. While the molecules are splitting up, the piston passes its highest point and the crankshaft is some degrees past Top Dead Centre before the driving pressure is placed on the head of the piston. This driving force then reinforces the clockwise rotation of the crankshaft shown in the diagram above and the motor runs smoothly.

That will not happen if hydroxy gas is substituted for the petrol vapour. Hydroxy gas has very small molecule sizes which do not need any kind of breaking down and which burn instantly with explosive force. The result is as shown here:
Here, the explosion is almost instantaneous and the explosion attempts to force the piston downwards. Unfortunately, the crankshaft is trying to drive the piston upwards past the Top Dead Centre (‘TDC’) point, so the explosion will not help the engine run. Instead, the explosion will stop the crankshaft rotating, overload the crankshaft and connecting rod and produce excessive pressure on the wall of the cylinder.

We do not want that to happen. The solution is to delay the spark until the piston has reached the position in its rotation where we want the explosion to take place - that is, in exactly the same place as it did when using petrol as a fuel.

In the example above, the spark would be retarded (delayed) from 8 degrees before TDC to 10 degrees after TDC, or 18 degrees overall. The spark is ‘retarded’ because it needs to occur later in the rotation of the crankshaft. The amount of retardation may vary from engine to engine, but with hydroxy gas, the spark must never occur before TDC and it is preferable that the crankshaft has rotated some degrees past TDC so that most of the push from the piston goes to turn the crankshaft and as little as possible in compressing the crankshaft.

**Diesel Engines**

Diesel engines do not have spark plugs and so there is no timing alterations needed with them. Any booster volume of hydroxy gas can be added into the air entering a diesel engine and it automatically helps the mpg performance. If a really large volume of hydroxy gas is available, then the diesel engine is set to tick over on diesel and hydroxy gas is then added to rev the engine up and provide the power. The amount of hydroxy gas should not exceed four times the amount of diesel as engine overheating will occur if it does.

Roy McAlister has been running internal combustion engines on hydrogen and many mixtures of hydrogen and other fuels for forty years now. He advises anybody interested in implementing a system like this, to start with a single-cylinder engine of five horsepower or less. That way, the techniques are easily learnt and experience is gained in tuning a simple engine running on the new fuel. So, let us assume that we are going to convert a small generator engine. How do we go about it?

First, we obtain our supply of the new fuel. In this case, let us assume that we will produce hydroxy gas using a multi-cell high-voltage series electrolyser as described earlier. This unit has an electrical cut-off operated by a pressure switch which operates at say, five pounds per square inch. Assuming that the electrolyser is capable of producing a sufficient volume of gas, this is roughly equivalent to a hydrogen bottle with its pressure regulators.

In broad outline, the gas supply would look like this:
The physical connection to the engine is via a 6 mm (1/4 inch) stainless steel pipe, fitted with a standard knob-operated needle valve. The carburettor is removed altogether to allow maximum airflow into the engine, (or failing this, the throttle valve of the carburettor is opened wide and secured in that position). The stainless steel gas pipe has its diameter reduced further by the use of a nozzle with an internal diameter of 1 mm or so (1/16 inch or less), about the size of a hypodermic needle used by a vet. Hydroxy gas has very small molecules and will flow very freely through tiny openings. The nozzle tip is pushed close to the intake valve and the gas feed pipe is secured in place to ensure no movement:

When the engine is about to be started, the needle valve can be hand-adjusted to give a suitable level of gas flow to maintain tick-over, but before that can happen, the timing of the spark needs to be adjusted.

There are two main ways to adjust the timing. The first is mechanical, where an adjustment is made to the mechanism which triggers the spark. Some small engines may well not have a convenient way to adjust the timing by as much as is needed for this application. The second way is to delay the spark by an adjustable electronic circuit (for instance, an NE555 monostable driving a FET). This can either be built or bought ready made. One supplier which offers a dashboard-mounted manually controlled ready-built ignition delay unit is http://www.msdignition.com/1timingcontrols.htm and there are others.

**Waste spark.**

There is one other very important consideration with small engines and that is the way in which the spark is generated. With a four-stroke engine, the crankshaft rotates twice for every power stroke. The spark plug only needs to fire every second time the piston approaches its highest position in the cylinder. This is not particularly convenient for engine manufacturers, so some simplify matters by generating a spark on every revolution. The extra spark is not needed, contributes nothing to the operation of the engine and so is called the “waste spark”. The waste spark does not matter for an engine running on fossil fuel vapour, but it does matter very much if the fuel is switched to hydroxy gas.
As has been shown in the earlier diagrams, it is necessary to retard (delay) the spark by some eighteen degrees or so when using hydroxy gas, due to its very much faster ignition rate. Delaying the hydroxy fuel ignition point until after Top Dead Centre sorts out the situation in an entirely satisfactory manner for the Power Stroke of the engine. However, if the engine generates a spurious 'waste spark' that waste spark does cause a serious problem.

In the case of the fossil fuel, any waste spark will occur towards the end of the Exhaust Stroke and it will have no real effect (apart from wasting electrical power). In the case of the hydroxy fuel, the engine has completed the Exhaust Stroke, the outlet valve has closed, the intake valve has opened and the gas is being drawn through the open inlet valve into the cylinder in the Intake Stroke. At that instant, there is an open passage from the spark plug, through the cylinder, through the open intake valve, to the gas supply pipe and through it to the bubbler between the electrolyser and the engine. If a waste spark takes place, it will ignite the gas:

The gas ignition is highly likely if there is a waste spark in an engine using hydroxy fuel and (the necessary) retarded ignition. Trying to eliminate the unwanted spark by using a 'divide-by-two' electronic counter circuit is not likely to be successful unless there is some mechanically certain way of triggering the counter circuit at start-up. The best way of overcoming a waste spark, if the engine has one, is to use a 2:1 gearing arrangement on the output shaft of the motor and using the slower shaft to trigger the spark. Multi-cylinder engines do not have a waste spark.

Once some experience has been gained in operating a single cylinder engine on hydroxy gas, the move to a full-sized engine is not very difficult. Each cylinder of the large engine is pretty much the same as the small engine. Instead of running a small tube down the carburettor intake of each cylinder, it is more convenient and economic to use the existing intake manifold, leave the throttle wide open and run the hydroxy gas pipe into the manifold. A flexible stainless steel pipe section should be used to absorb the vibration of the engine relative to the electrolyser. Roy McAlister suggests using a knob-operated needle valve to set the idling speed to about 1,000 rpm and placing a throttle-operated lever valve in parallel with it for applying more power to the engine:

It is not immediately clear to me why this arrangement is recommended as the knob-operated needle valve use to set the idling rate appears to be redundant. There appears to be no particular reason why a screw adjustment could not be used on the lever valve linked to the accelerator pedal of the vehicle. If that were done, then the throttle screw could be used to set the idle rate and the screw locked in position. That way,
the needle valve and two Y-connectors could be dispensed with. The only possible reason which suggests itself is that there is slightly less physical construction needed for the recommended way shown here:

![Diagram](image)

One supplier of flexible tubing suitable for this sort of work is [http://www.titeflexcommercial.com](http://www.titeflexcommercial.com) but there will be many others.

So if a vehicle were to be converted to run on hydroxy, what things need to be considered?

1. A suitable vehicle needs to be acquired. This would be an old vehicle which has Capacitor Discharge ignition, or the even earlier Contact-Breaker points ignition system. These types of electrical system allow the timing to be adjusted and do not attempt to feed more fuel into the engine if an exhaust gas sensor decided that the mix was not correct for standard fossil fuel operation. Ideally, the vehicle should have a good deal of spare space in the engine compartment, and if the objective is to run on water alone, then the lower the engine capacity the better. As the objective is to run on water alone, then it must be accepted that rust will occur in the exhaust system, and other ageing problems may well be encountered. For long vehicle life, the vehicle should be converted to run on natural gas ('LPG') and water mist injection should be considered so that the engine runs cooler to improve the life of the valves.

2. A decision needs to be made as to what size of electrolysis cell or cells will be used and secure mountings devised and constructed in the engine compartment, to allow robust installation of the additional devices to be placed there. As an inverter will be used, then if at all possible, it should be mounted in the airstream which is used to cool the radiator. The inverter will have an input of 12 volts DC an output of 110 volts AC in the range 600 to 800 watts. When this is bought, the size and type of mounting brackets will be seen and can be constructed and the inverter mounted in the vehicle. The construction of the remaining mounting platforms shows what dimensions can be used when constructing the electrolyser(s) and bubbler(s). It must be stressed that it is **absolutely vital** that no device containing hydroxy gas, be placed in the section of the vehicle where the driver and passengers sit.

3. Once the space in the engine compartment has been chosen and the mountings constructed, the size of the electrolyser and its plates can be chosen. “Plexiglas” acrylic sheet is a good choice for the housing, provided that it is thick enough to allow slots to be cut in it to accept the stainless steel plates, say 3/4 inch (20 mm) thickness with slots 1/8 inch (3 mm) deep cut in it.

4. The additional items for the electrolyser need to be installed: the pressure switch, water-level sensor wires, water-feed tube with its one-way valve, welded leads to the bolts leading out through the case, and the anti-slosh material, need to be installed.

5. The lid of the housing needs to be a tight fit and pressed into place so that it can act as a pop-off safety feature in the unlikely event of the gas in the cell being ignited. If this is not convenient, then an
additional large-diameter tube and push-fit cap should be installed on the top of the unit to provide the same type of protection.

6. One or more bubblers need to be constructed and installed in the vehicle. Bob Boyce uses one bubbler close to the electrolyser (to catch any electrolyte vapour) and one close to the engine to ensure that any remaining potassium hydroxide vapour is removed and the minimise the volume of gas which could be ignited if the engine were to have a problem such as a sticking valve. Bob also installs a one-way flow automatic valve between the two bubblers so that should the gas in the bubbler near the engine be ignited, then any pressure wave from the explosion would be trapped by the valve and prevent the water in the other bubbler being driven backwards into the electrolyser.

7. The water-level switch circuit is then built. The circuit shown here is only one suggestion out of many different ways of producing the required operation. Most electronic experts will prefer other circuit designs. It is in no way critical how this controller is built so long as it performs the task reliably and is easy and cheap to build. The relay shown in the circuit needs to have contacts capable of switching the current taken by the water pump to be used, and have a coil winding which lets it switch when a voltage of 10 volts is applied to it. The water pump chosen might be a windscreen-washer pump.

8. A plastic water tank can be positioned anywhere convenient in the vehicle and plastic piping run from it to the intake of the water pump.

**Bob Boyce’s Experiences:**

Bob had an electronics business down in south Florida where he owned and sponsored a small boat-race team through his business, starting in 1988. He had a machine shop behind his business, where he did engine work. He worked on engines for other racers and a local minisub research outfit which was building surface-running drone type boats for the DEA. He delved into hydrogen research and started building small electrolysers using distilled water mixed with an electrolyte. He then resonated the plates to improve the efficiency of the units. He discovered that with the right frequencies, He was able to generate ‘monatomic’ Hydrogen and Oxygen rather than the more common ‘diatomic’ versions of these gasses. When the ‘monatomic’ gasses are burnt, they produce about four times the energy output produced by burning the more common diatomic version of these gasses.

About 4% of diatomic Hydrogen in air is needed to produce the same power as petrol, while slightly less than 1% of monatomic Hydrogen in air is needed for the same power. The only drawback is that when stored at pressure, monatomic hydrogen reverts to its more common diatomic form. To avoid this, the gas must be produced on-demand and used right away. Bob used modified Liquid Petroleum carburettors on the boat engines to let them run directly on the gas produced by his electrolysers. Bob also converted an old Chrysler car with a slant six-cylinder engine to run on the hydrogen set-up and tested it in his workshop. He replaced the factory ignition with a high energy dual coil system and added an optical pickup to the crankshaft at the oil pump drive tang to allow external ignition timing adjustment. He used Bosch Platinum series spark plugs.

Bob never published anything about what he was working on, and he always stated that his boats were running on hydrogen fuel, which was allowed. Many years later that he found that he had stumbled on was already discovered and known as “Browns Gas”, and there were companies selling the equipment and plans to make it.

Bob’s electrolyser is fairly simple to make but it requires a lot of plates made of 316 stainless steel able to withstand the more exotic electrolytes which are more efficient, a plastic box to contain the plates, 1/8” spacers to keep the rows of plates apart, the electrolyte, and an adjustable-frequency modified pseudosinewave inverter for the drive electronics. A total of 101 plates 6 inches square are used to give a large surface area. These have their surfaces scoured with coarse sandpaper in an “X” pattern to give a fine crosshatch grain which added fine sharp points to the surfaces.

This is found to improve the efficiency of the electrolysis. The box has two threaded ports, a small one for injecting replacement distilled water, and a larger one for extracting the hydroxy gas. Under the top cover is a piece of plastic matting to prevent sloshing. It is very important to keep the electrolyte level below the tops of the plates to prevent current bypassing any cells and creating excessive water vapour.
Bob places a 5 Pounds per Square Inch cut-off switch in a tee on the water injection port that shut the drive electronics down when the pressure in the unit hit 5 PSI. This allows the unit to be able to supply on demand without building up too much pressure in low-demand situations. He builds a bubbler from a large home cartridge type water-filter housing to prevent any backfire from travelling back up the gas feed pipe to the electrolyser. Without some sort of bubbler there is the risk of the electrolyser exploding if a flame front from the engine flows back to it.

The copper mesh screens designed for welding gasses will not work as hydrogen has a much higher flame propagation speed which passes straight through the copper mesh. The bubbler should be placed close to the engine so as to limit the amount of recombination of the gasses from monatomic to diatomic varieties. The hydroxy gas should be fed to the vapour portion of a Liquid Petroleum Gas carburettor system. The carburettor will have to be modified for hydrogen use (different mixture rate than propane) and adjusted for best performance with the system running.

Bob found that the best electrolytes to use were Sodium Hydroxide (NaOH) and Potassium Hydroxide (KOH). While Sodium Hydroxide works well and is much easier to get (‘Red Devil’ lye found in most department stores) than the slightly more efficient Potassium Hydroxide. Whatever is used, be very careful what construction materials are used. Make absolutely sure that they are compatible with the chosen electrolyte (Plexiglas acrylic sheet was what Bob used). Never use glass containers for mixing or storing Potassium Hydroxide.

Bob never had the chance to drive the test Chrysler on the road with this system. Instead, he placed the rear end up on jack-stands and ran the engine under no-load conditions in drive just to test and tune the system and get an idea of how well the engine held up on the hydrogen fuel. The vehicle was run for a mileometer recorded distance of one thousand miles in this set-up with the hydrolysis being fully powered by the alternator of the vehicle. With the vehicle running at idle, the drive electronics consumed approximately 4 to 4.3 Amps @ 13.8 V DC. With the rear wheels off of the ground, and the engine running with the vehicle speedometer registering 60 mph, the drive electronics drew approximately 10.9 to 11.6 Amps @ 13.8 V DC.

The unit does not use "normal brute force" electrolysis when operating in high efficiency mode. It relies mainly on a chemical reaction that takes place between the electrolyte used and the metal plates, which is maintained by electrical energy applied and stimulated into higher efficiency by the application of multiple harmonic resonances which help to "tickle" the molecules apart. Multiple cells in series are used to lower the voltage per cell and limit the current flow in order to reduce the production of water vapour. It relies on the large surface area of the total number of cells to get the required volume of fuel vapour output.

In the first prototype of this design, Bob used a custom built controller/driver which allowed a lot of adjustment so that performance could be tested using different frequencies, voltages, and waveforms individually. The result was a pattern of 3 interwoven square waves rich in harmonics that produced optimum efficiency. When Bob had the basics figured out he realised that he could just replace the custom controller/driver unit with a modified inverter (much easier than building a unit from scratch). He experimented using a 300 watt pseudo-sine wave inverter that had been modified so the base frequency could be adjusted between 700 and 800 Hz. The stepped sine wave output was fed through a bridge rectifier which turned each stepped sine wave into two positive stepped half waves. Each of these half waves had 8 steps, so a single cycle was turned into 16 steps. The resulting output, while not consisting of intermixed square waves, was still rich in harmonics, and it was much easier to adjust to the point of resonance than trying to tune 3 separate frequencies. Please note that these inverters are no longer available for purchase and that Bob’s triple oscillator board design is far superior, giving more than double the output produced by the old inverter and is definitely the board to use with Bob’s electrolyser.

The frequency range can change depending on the number of steps in the pseudo-sine wave of the inverter you choose since not all inverters are created equal. The desired effect is caused by the multiple harmonic resonances in the inverter output at higher frequencies. You will know when you hit resonance by the dramatic increase in gas output. The frequency does vary a bit depending on what electrolyte is used, the concentration of the electrolyte solution, the temperature of the electrolyte, water purity, etc.

Bear in mind that Bob’s electrolyser tank was large enough to hold 61 plates of 316 grade stainless steel which were 6” X 6” each, spaced 1/8” apart, to create 60 cells in series, with the 130 V DC power from the inverter, through the bridge rectifier, applied to the end plates only. That gave 4,320 square inches of surface area, plenty of surface area to produce enough fuel for a vehicle engine. The best electrolyte for efficiency was Potassium Hydroxide, and the electrolyte level must be kept below the tops of the plates to prevent any current from bypassing the plates and creating excess water vapour through heating. Distilled
water was used to prevent contamination of the electrolyte which would result in reduced performance and efficiency.

The unit had 316 grade stainless steel wires welded to the tops of the end plates. The other ends of the wires were welded to 316-grade stainless steel bolts which passed through holes in the ends of the container, with rubber o-ring gaskets inside and out, located above the liquid level.

There was a PVC spray bar attached on the inside of the chamber to the water injection port with tiny holes drilled along its length on the underside to supply replacement water evenly to the cells when the water pump was switched on. A backflow-prevention valve on top of the tee was used to keep the gas from flowing back into the water lines. There was a mat of interwoven plastic fibres (air conditioner filter material) cut and fitted on top of the plates to help prevent sloshing. Do not use fibreglass mat, which could cause a severe reaction with some electrolytes, like Potassium Hydroxide.

It is very important to understand that unless an engine is originally designed for, or later modified for, running on vapour fuel such as Liquid Petroleum Gas (natural gas), that water mist injection be added. Unless the engine has the proper valves for vapour fuel, the stock valves will not survive for extended run times on vapour fuel of any kind without additional cooling of some sort. This is an issue of valve design by the vehicle manufacturers, not something detrimental because of hydroxy gas combustion. The manufacturers want to prevent their cars from being adapted to high mileage operation without adverse effects, so they designed the valves to fail if not cooled by excess raw fossil fuel.

Dave Lawton’s Replication of Stan Meyer’s Water Fuel Cell. Stanley Meyer of the USA is probably the most famous person in the field of producing hydroxy gas from water. Stan was granted many patents in this and other fields. His earliest work on hydroxy gas was a cell which Stan named his “Water Fuel Cell” in an attempt to indicate that the cell would produce a fuel from water. Stan died some years ago, and recently, Dave Lawton of the UK built a cell intended to be a replication of Stan’s Water Fuel Cell. Unlike the cells mentioned earlier in this chapter, the Water Fuel Cell uses tap water without any additive. However, like Bob Boyce’s electrolyser, a complex waveform is used to drive the cell. The objective here though, is to generate the hydroxy gas while using very little current.

The video of Dave Lawton’s replication of Stanley Meyer’s demonstration electrolyser (not his production electrolyser) seen at http://www.icubenetwork.com/files/watercar/non-commercial/dave/videos/Wfcrep.wmv has caused several people to ask for more details. The electrolysis shown in the video was driven by an alternator, shown here:
The field coil of the alternator is switched on and off by an FET transistor which is pulsed by a 555 timer circuit. This produces a composite waveform which produces an impressive rate of electrolysis using just tap water or rainwater with no additives whatsoever. The tubes in this replication are made of 316L grade stainless steel, five inches long although Stan’s tubes were about three times that length. The outer tubes are 1 inch in diameter and the inner tubes 3/4 inch in diameter. As the wall thickness is 1/16 inch, the gap between them is between 1 mm and 2 mm. The inner pipes are held in place at each end by four rubber strips about one quarter of an inch long.

The container is made from two standard 4 inch diameter plastic drain down-pipe coupler fittings connected to each end of a piece of acrylic tube with PVC solvent cement. The acrylic tube was supplied already cut to size by Wake Plastics, 59 Twickenham Road, Isleworth, Middlesex TW7 6AR Telephone 0208-560-0928. The seamless stainless steel tubing was supplied by: http://www.metalsontheweb.co.uk/asp/home.asp

It is not necessary to use an alternator - Dave just did this as he was copying what Stan Meyer did. The circuit without the alternator produces gas at about the same rate and obviously draws less current as there is no alternator drive motor to be powered. A video of the non-alternator operation can be seen at the web site http://www.panaceauniversity.org/WFCrep2.wmv.

The electrolyser has an acrylic tube section to allow the electrolysis to be watched, as shown here:

![Acrylic tube section of the electrolyser](image)

The electrolysis takes place between each of the inner and outer tubes. The picture above shows the bubbles just starting to leave the tubes after the power is switched on. The picture below shows the situation a few seconds later when the whole of the area above the tubes is so full of bubbles that it becomes completely opaque:
The mounting rings for the tubes are like this:
And the 316L grade stainless steel, seamless tubes:

Here is the assembly ready to receive the inner tubes (wedged into place by small pieces of rubber):
The electrical connections to the pipes are via stainless steel wire running between stainless steel bolts tapped into the pipes and stainless steel bolts running through the base of the unit:

The bolts tapped into the inner tubes should be on the inside and the bottom of the two tubes aligned in spite of them being spread out as shown above. The diagram shows the inner connection on the outside, only for clarity. The bolts going through the base of the unit should be tapped in to give a tight fit and they should be sealed with Sikaflex bonding agent or some similar waterproofing material.

This electrolyser arrangement can be driven either via an alternator or by an electronic circuit. A suitable circuit for the alternator arrangement is:
In this rather unusual circuit, the rotor winding of an alternator is pulsed via an oscillator circuit which has variable frequency and variable Mark/Space ratio and which can be gated on and off to produce the output waveform shown below the alternator in the circuit diagram. This is the waveform recommended by Stan Meyer. The oscillator circuit has a degree of supply de-coupling by the 100 ohm resistor feeding the 100
microfarad capacitor. This is to reduce voltage ripple coming along the +12 volt supply line, caused by the current pulses through the rotor winding.

The output arrangement feeding the pipe electrodes of the electrolyser is copied directly from Stan Meyer's circuit diagram. It is peculiar in that the positive pulses from each stator winding (shown in red in the circuit diagram) are applied to just two of the outer pipes, while the negative pulses (shown in blue in the circuit diagram) are applied to all six inner tubes. It is not obvious why Stan drew it that way, as you would expect all six outer tubes to be wired in parallel in the same way as the inner tubes are.

If the alternator does not have the windings taken to the outside of the casing, it is necessary to open the alternator, remove the internal regulator and diodes and pull out three leads from the ends of the stator windings. If you have an alternator which has the windings already accessible from the outside, then the stator winding connections are likely to be as shown here:

This same performance can be produced by the solid-state circuit on its own, as shown here:
While the above circuits have been assessed as operating at about 300% of the Faraday assumed maximum efficiency, further experimentation has shown that the inductors used by Stanley Meyer form a very important role in raising the operating efficiency still higher. Dave has recently introduced two inductors, each wound with 100 turns of 22 SWG (21 AWG) enamelled copper wire on a 9 mm (3/8") diameter ferrite rod of length 25 mm (1 inch) or longer, or on a ferrite toroid, though that is more difficult to wind. These coils are wound at the same time using two wires side by side. The improved circuit is now:
Circuit operation:

Each NE555 timer chip is placed in an oscillator circuit which has both variable pulse rate ("frequency") and variable Mark/Space ratio which does not affect the frequency. These oscillator circuits also have three frequency ranges which can be selected by a rotary switch. The variable resistors each have a 100 ohm resistor in series with them so that their combined resistance cannot fall below 100 ohms. Each oscillator circuit has its supply de-coupled by placing a 100 microfarad capacitor across the supply rails and feeding the capacitor through a 100 ohm resistor. This has the effect of reducing any pulsing being carried along the battery connections to affect the adjoining circuit.
The first NE555 circuit has fairly large capacitors which give it comparatively slow pulses, as represented by the waveform shown above it. The output from that NE555 is on pin 3 and can be switched to feed the waveform to pin 4 of the second NE555 timer. This gates the second, higher frequency oscillator On and Off to produce the output waveform shown just below the pipe electrodes. The switch at pin 3 of the first NE555 allows the gating to be switched off, which causes the output waveform to be just a straight square wave of variable frequency and Mark/Space ratio.

The output voltage from pin 3 of the second NE555 chip is reduced by the 220 ohm / 820 ohm resistor combination. The transistor acts as a current amplifier, capable of providing several amps to the electrodes. The 1N4007 diode is included to protect the MOSFET should it be decided at a later date to introduce either a coil ("inductor") or a transformer in the output coming from the MOSFET, as sudden switching off of a current through either of these could briefly pull the ‘drain’ connection a long way below the 0 Volt line and damage the MOSFET, but the 1N4007 diode switches on and prevents this from happening by clamping the drain voltage to -0.7 volts if the drain is driven to a negative voltage.

The BUZ350 MOSFET has a current rating of 22 amps so it will run cool in this application. However, it is worth mounting it on an aluminium plate which will act both as the mounting and a heat sink. The current draw in this arrangement is particularly interesting. With just one tube in place, the current draw is about one amp. When a second tube is added, the current increases by less than half an amp. When the third is added, the total current is under two amps. The fourth and fifth tubes add about 100 milliams each and the sixth tube causes almost no increase in current at all. This suggests that the efficiency could be raised further by adding a large number of additional tubes, and as the gas is produced inside the tubes and the outer tubes are connected electrically, they could probably be bundled together.

Although the current is not particularly high, a six amp circuit-breaker, or fuse, should be placed between the power supply and the circuit, to protect against accidental short-circuits. If a unit like this is to be mounted in a vehicle, then it is essential that the power supply is arranged so that the electrolyser is disconnected if the engine is switched off. Passing the electrical power through a relay which is powered via the ignition switch is a good solution for this. It is also vital that at least one bubbler is placed between the electrolyser and the engine, to give some protection if the gas should get ignited by an engine malfunction. It is also a good idea for the bubbler(s) lid to be a tight push fit so that it can pop off in the event of an explosion, and so further limit the effect of an accident.

A possible component layout is shown here:
The underside of the stripboard is shown here:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>100 ohm resistors 0.25 watt</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Bands: Brown, Black, Brown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>220 ohm resistor 0.25 watt</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Bands: Red, Red, Brown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>820 ohm resistor 0.25 watt</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Bands: Gray, Red, Brown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 mF 16V capacitor</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Electrolytic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47mF 16V capacitor</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Electrolytic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 mF 16V capacitor</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Electrolytic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>220 nF capacitor (0.22 mF)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Ceramic or polyester</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 nF capacitor (0.1 mF)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Ceramic or polyester</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 nF capacitor (0.01 mF)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Ceramic or polyester</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1N4148 diodes</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1N4007 diode</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>FET protection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE555 timer chip</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BUZ350 MOSFET</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Or any 200V 20A n-channel MOSFET</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47K variable resistors</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Standard carbon track</td>
<td>Could be screw track</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10K variable resistors</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Standard carbon track</td>
<td>Could be screw track</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-pole, 3-way switches</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Wafer type</td>
<td>Frequency range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-pole changeover switch</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Toggle type, possibly sub-miniature</td>
<td>Any style will do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-pole 1-throw switch</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Toggle type rated at 10 amps</td>
<td>Overall ON / OFF switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuse holder</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Enclosed type or a 6A circuit breaker</td>
<td>Short-circuit protection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Veroboard</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>20 strips, 40 holes, 0.1 inch matrix</td>
<td>Parallel copper strips</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-pin DIL IC sockets</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Black plastic, high or low profile</td>
<td>Protects the 555 ICs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wire terminals</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Ideally two red and two black</td>
<td>Power lead connectors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plastic box</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Injection moulded with screw-down lid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mounting nuts, bolts and pillars</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Hardware for 8 insulated pillar mounts</td>
<td>For board and heatsink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aluminium sheet</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>About 4 inch x 2 inch</td>
<td>MOSFET heatsink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rubber or plastic feet</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Any small adhesive feet</td>
<td>Underside of case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knobs for variable resistors etc.</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>1/4 inch shaft, large diameter</td>
<td>Marked skirt variety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ammeter</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Optional item, 0 to 5A or similar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ferrite rod 1-inch long or longer</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>For construction of the inductors</td>
<td>bi-filar wound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22 SWG (21 AWG) wire</td>
<td>1 reel</td>
<td>Enamelled copper wire, 2 oz. reel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sundry connecting wire</td>
<td>4 m</td>
<td>Various sizes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As mentioned earlier, it is absolutely vital that every precaution be taken to avoid an explosion. The "hydroxy" gas produced by the electrolysis of water is mainly hydrogen gas and oxygen gas mixed together in the ideal proportions for them to recombine to form water again. That happens when the gasses are lit, and as the flame front of the ignition is about 1,000 times faster than the flame front when petroleum vapour is ignited, standard flash-back protection devices just do not work. The best protection device is a bubbler which is a simple container which feeds the gas up through a column of water.

It is also a good idea to use a pressure-activated switch which disconnects the power to the electronics if the gas pressure exceeds, say, five pounds per square inch, as shown here:

If it is intended to use the electrolyser to feed an internal combustion engine, then the timing of the spark will need to be adjusted, and if the engine is very small and has a waste spark, then that needs to be dealt with as well. These details are covered in this chapter.
Dave, who built this replication, suggests various improvements. Firstly, Stan Meyer used a larger number of tubes of greater length. Both of those two factors should increase the gas production considerably. Secondly, careful examination of video of Stan’s demonstrations shows that the outer tubes which he used had a rectangular slot cut in the top of each tube:

![](image)

Some organ pipes are fine-tuned by cutting slots like this in the top of the pipe, to raise it’s pitch, which is it’s frequency of vibration. As they are thinner, the inner pipes in the Meyer cell will resonate at a higher frequency than the outer pipes. It therefore seems probable that the slots cut by Stan are to raise the resonant frequency of the larger pipes, to match the resonant frequency of the inner pipes. If you want to do that, hanging the inner tube up on a piece of thread and tapping it, will produce a sound at the resonant pitch of the pipe. Cutting a slot in one outer pipe, suspending it on a piece of thread and tapping it, will allow the pitch of the two pipes to be compared. When one outer pipe has been matched to your satisfaction, then a slot of exactly the same dimensions will bring the other outer pipes to the same resonant pitch. It has not been proved, but it has been suggested that only the part of the outer pipe which is below the slot, actually resonates. That is the part marked as “H” in the diagram above. It is also suggested that the pipes will resonate at the same frequency if the area of the inside face of the outer pipe (“H” x the inner circumference) exactly matches the area of the outer surface of the inner pipe. It should be remembered that as all of the pipe pairs will be resonated with a single signal, that each pipe pair needs to resonate at the same frequency as all the other pipe pairs.

It is said that Stan ran his VolksWagen car for four years, using just the gas from four of these units.

A very important part of the cell build is the conditioning of the electrode tubes, using tap water. This is done as follows:

1. Do not use any resistance on the negative side of the power supply when conditioning the pipes.
2. Start at 0.5 Amps on the signal generator and after 25 minutes, switch off for 30 minutes.
3. Then apply 1.0 Amps for 20 minutes and then stop for 30 minutes.
4. Then apply 1.5 Amps for 15 minutes and then stop for 20 minutes.
5. Then apply 2.0 Amps for 10 minutes and afterwards stop for 20 minutes.
6. Go to 2.5 Amps for 5 minutes and stop for 15 minutes.
7. Go to 3.0 Amps for 120 to 150 seconds. You need to check if the cell is getting hot...if it is you need to reduce the time.
After the seven steps above, let the cell stand for at least an hour before you start all over again.

You will see hardly any gas generation in the early stages of this conditioning process, but a lot of brown muck will be generated. Initially, change the water after every cycle, but do not touch the tubes with bare hands. If the ends of the tubes need to have muck cleaned off them, then use a brush but do not touch the electrodes!! If the brown muck is left in the water during the next cycle, it causes the water to heat up and you need to avoid this.

Over a period of time, there is a reduction in the amount of the brown stuff produced and at some point, the pipes won’t make any brown stuff at all. You will be getting very good gas generation by now. A whitish powdery coat will have developed on the surfaces of the electrodes. Never touch the pipes with bare hands once this coating has developed.

Important: Do the conditioning in a well-ventilated area, or alternatively, close the top of the cell and vent the gas out into the open. During this process, the cell is left on for quite some time, so even a very low rate of gas production can accumulate a serious amount of gas which would be a hazard if left to collect in a small space.

**Further Developments**

When producing hydroxy gas from water, it is not possible to exceed the Faraday maximum unless additional energy is being drawn in from the surrounding environment. As this cell runs cold and has substantial gas output, there is every indication that when it is running, it is drawing in this extra energy.

This idea is supported by the fact that one of the key methods of tapping this extra energy is by producing a train of very sharply rising and sharply falling electrical pulses. This is exactly the objective of Dave’s circuit, so it would not be too surprising if that effect were happening.

The additional energy being accessed is sometimes referred to as “cold” electricity, which has very different characteristics to normal conventional electricity. Where normal electrical losses cause local heating as a by-product, “cold” electricity has exactly the opposite effect, and where a normal electrical loss would take place, an extra inflow of useful “cold” energy enters the circuit from outside. This flow causes the temperature of the circuitry to drop, instead of increase, which is why it is called “cold” electricity.

This remarkable occurrence has the most unusual effect of actually reducing the amount of conventional power needed to drive the circuit, if the output load is increased. So, increasing the load powered by the circuit causes additional energy to flow in from the environment, powering the extra load and as well, helping to drive the original circuit. This seems very strange, but then, “cold” electricity operates in an entirely different way to our familiar conventional electricity, and it has its own set of unfamiliar rules, which are generally the reverse of what we are used to.

To test his cell system further, Dave connected an extra load across the electrodes of his cell. As the inductors connected each side of the cell generate very high-value, sharp voltage spikes, Dave connected two large value capacitors (83,000 microfarad, 50-volt) across the cell as well. The load was a 10-watt light bulb which shines brightly, and interestingly, the current draw of the circuit goes down rather than up, in spite of the extra output power. The gas production rate appears undiminished.

This is the alteration to that part of the circuit which was used:
It has also been suggested that it would be advisable to protect the output FET against damage caused by accidental short-circuiting of wires, by connecting what is effectively a 150-volt, 10 watt zener diode across it as shown in the above diagram. While this is not necessary for the correct operation of the circuit, it is helpful in cases where accidents occur during repeated testing and modification of the cell components.

**Water Injection Systems.** Stan Meyer moved on from his Water Fuel Cell to produce a system where instead of breaking water down into hydroxy gas and then feeding that gas into the engine for combustion, he switched to a system where a spray of fine water droplets was injected into the engine to produce the driving force of the engine. I do not know if the water droplets are converted into flash-steam inside the engine, or if some is converted into hydroxy gas during the ignition process, or if some other mechanism was used.

Stan received assurances of financial backing for his proposed retro-fit conversion kit to allow cars to run on water as the only fuel. His target retail price for the kit was US $1,500. Stan stopped at a restaurant for a meal, but as soon as he started eating, he jumped up and rushed out to the car park, saying that he had been poisoned. He died in the car park (which was very convenient timing for the oil companies) and nobody has managed to replicate his water injection system although there are several relevant patents of Stan’s on his system. Stan He started by pumping energy into the water molecules by passing them through transparent tubes using arrays of solid state UV lasers to radiate energy into them:
He then adds more energy to the water molecules by pumping both heat and magnetic energy into them with a special assembly heated by the previous power strokes in the cylinder:

At this point, the mixture is ready for injection into the cylinder for compression and ignition. Stan’s patent on this is in the Appendix section, as are several of his other patents in this field.

**Nathren Armour.** Another reported water injection system comes from Nathren Armour, an experienced mechanic of Georgia in the USA. In July 2005, he released most of the details of an apparently simple conversion system which he claims, allows an ordinary car to use water as the only fuel. A long time has elapsed since then and either it was a hoax or alternatively, he has been intimidated into silence since mid-August 2005.

The information currently available is only a partial disclosure of this system. Unlikely as this system seems, the principles behind it do have a sound basis, which has been demonstrated by other people not connected to Nathren in any way. For example, some years ago, a similar system was developed by Adam Crawford of Scotland. This vehicle was demonstrated to, and tested by, Automobile Association automotive engineers.
and shown on Scottish Television, but surprisingly, very little interest was shown by anybody. Another supporting fact is the scientific paper in the Appendix which shows conclusively that explosions can occur in fog, water mist and under water, so there is no doubt at all that the principle behind Nathren’s system is certainly valid.

However, having valid supporting evidence, does not establish whether or not Nathren has actually produced the vehicle system which he claims. To date, he has not shown a single photograph of the equipment in his car or even a photograph of the car itself. Various people have offered to visit him, witness the operation of the vehicle and then publicly vouch for the accuracy of his claims, but in every case, their offers have been turned down. Consequently, the only basis for this information is the unsubstantiated verbal claim of Nathren, which in turn, means that you need to make up your own mind on the subject.

Over an extended period, many people in the watercar forums have tried to replicate Nathren’s system, generally without any success. But having said that, it must be admitted that as far as I am aware, nobody has actually tried to replicate his system using the same or a similar car, and the failures are actually of bench tests which really have little or no bearing on what Nathren actually claims. One person has claimed to have had some success with a bench-mounted engine, getting it to run for seventeen seconds on this system, but that was more than a year ago and no further progress has been reported.

The inventor's car, is said to be run on a daily basis. It is a restored, eight-cylinder 1978 Chevy ‘Camaro’ with stock 350 (5.7 litre) engine, no computer controls, automatic transmission, stock 4-barrel carburettor and stock fuel pump. The fuel tank has been replaced with a metal water tank with the filler cap vented to release heat and pressure. The exhaust was replaced with a new 2 inch pipe which is ducted into the water tank. The water tank has baffles inside it which also muffles the exhaust noise. The stock exhaust manifolds were used, but they will rust on the inside - custom stainless steel pipes would be best but these were not used due to their cost.

All of the stock ignition system is used and no changes have been made. A second battery was placed on the opposite side in the engine compartment. A 400 watt (800W peak) 110 volt 60Hz DC inverter was placed in the engine compartment on the passenger side and a fresh air duct located behind the grill directs air into covers placed around the inverter to keep it cool.

When the ignition switch is on, a relay turns the inverter on, the relay lead contains a 20 amp in-line fuse. This relay only turns the inverter on and off and has no other function. The inverter is connected to the battery via a positive wire and a negative wire (not the chassis). The inverter is not grounded to the car at any point and instead, is carefully insulated to ensure that accidental grounding never occurs.

The wire which would normally go to the spark plug is replaced by a wire which is taken to a box containing one pre-war mechanical twin-coil relay or vibrator per cylinder. Each of these wires drives its own dedicated 'relay', the current energises the relay coil but the other side of the relay coil is left unconnected. The wiring arrangement is shown in the diagrams below.

It is important that the electrical feed to each plug is fed via one wire to the plug cap and a second wire connecting to a washer clamped under the spark plug. This wiring is repeated for each of the spark plugs. To emphasise this, each spark plug should have two wires running to it, one to the cap and one to the washer clamped between the body of the spark plug and the engine block. The wiring is done with “12-2” wire which is 2-core solid copper wire American Wire Gauge size 12 which has core diameters of 2.05 mm giving 3.31 sq. mm. per core, the nearest SWG size is 14. The under-plug washer can be made by bending the end of the solid core into a circle of appropriate size and then flattening the wire slightly.

In the relay box, the relays are positioned with a one-inch gap between them. It is important that the physical construction insures that all of the high-voltage connections are fully insulated should anyone open the relay box when the inverter is running. The batteries used are deep-cycle types with high cranking current ratings – this is important because the inverter must stay on when the engine is being started and it will cut out if the starter motor current drain pulls the battery voltage down excessively. The alternator is the stock 95 Amp type and it charges both batteries simultaneously. When the engine is started, the relays are heard clicking until the cylinders fire and after that, no sound can be heard from the relays. It is distinctly possible that the relays take up a fixed, immobile position when the engine is running. The diagram below marked ‘Effective circuit’ is based on that assumption, and it should be stressed that all of the diagrams are only what I understand from the information provided to date.
Note: It is distinctly possible that the vibrator does not actually vibrate.

Detail of Relay

Note: All diodes are marked 600V 6A but probably have a much higher voltage rating.
The engine timing has to be retarded for the car to run off water. This adjustment should be made to the point where the engine runs the best and this is likely to be different for each make of engine. The Chevy ‘Camaro’ engine runs best with the timing retarded by 35°. The spark plug gap used to be 65 thou. but is now set to 80 thou. (0.08”). The plugs used are the cheap ‘Autolite’ (25) copper core type. Using carburettor jets two sizes larger than normal, allows the engine to produce more power and rev higher than tick-over.

The engine tends to knock when first started from cold but it is likely that this can be overcome by using a heater on the water feed to the carburettor, raising the water temperature to say, 120 degrees Fahrenheit and fitted with a thermostat to disconnect the heater when the engine reaches its normal operating temperature. This car is said to have been run 30,000 miles on water alone and cover some 300 miles per gallon as much of the water vapour exhaust condenses in the water tank.

The disadvantages: the car runs with slightly reduced power and the exhaust system will rust unless stainless steel replacements are used.

Nathren says: The coil is in the top of the distributor cap as a stock Elcamio 350 engine has. The inverter does not put out full load at all times, it only uses what it needs, this is never the total of the power of one battery, the second battery is for the other stuff on the car but both are used in the whole system as needed.
The cheap Auto Zone coil: put one on our jeep and cost $110.00 towing plus the $28.00 for the coil. If you’re going to use a good coil use a MSD (MDS). These coils will give out a triple spark at 80,000 volts and 2.83 amps. These are killer coils and they make ignition modules for vehicle too. Buy cheap and stay cold - just buy the good stuff to start with.

The Bosch Platinum plugs have stranded about 50 people that have brought their cars to me to repair, I don’t recommend these ether but maybe there is a good one out there somewhere. I am using cheap AC plugs in the water car and only replace them every two months, if needed. I did say NOT to use the 110 on the auto coil it will blow up because it was designed for 12 volt use only. The coil fires the relays only. An earlier post suggested that it may be piggy-backing to the plug as well. I don’t now about this, I don’t have the equipment to chase the fire down.

Most automotive coils fire a voltage around 28,000 to 48,000 volts at 0.87 amps. Simple one this: call a parts dealer and ask the voltage on the coil for your vehicle and see what it is. Crunching numbers is a way to tell some one how close to get when they are trying something new. BUT once they have got it to the point where it will run, the numbers will change a bit and slight changes made to make it run better. The numbers will change for each application. As with my car, the coil will put out 48,000 volts at 0.87 amps, BUT when in use it only puts out 35,000 volts at 0.85 amps. The heat of the engine makes a difference as well and will increase or decrease the numbers.

Grounding at the base of the plug ends the 110 at the plug, it does not have to travel through the body to get to where it is needed and there is no static on the radio either. If you use the positive as ground you will short out the 12 volt system burning out all electrical wires in the vehicle. I tried a high-output coil but for some reason it didn’t work. The 110 volts at 20 amps arcs better than the 12 volt 0.87 amp system on the plug. Don’t know the math to it, but it works well.

The Bosch Platinum plugs have stranded about 50 people that have brought their cars to me to repair, I don’t recommend these ether but maybe there is a good one out there somewhere. I am using cheap AC plugs in the water car and only replace them every two months, if needed. I did say NOT to use the 110 on the auto coil it will blow up because it was designed for 12 volt use only. The coil fires the relays only. An earlier post suggested that it may be piggy-backing to the plug as well. I don’t now about this, I don’t have the equipment to chase the fire down.

The fuel used is just water. The inverter should be 400 watt with 800 peak watts or larger. I’m not sure about your donor car. Does it have a computer or smog controls on it? This stuff is not needed. You will need - A manual fuel pump on the engine. This helps heat the water some. A carburettor that allows the jets to be changed - they need to be larger. A points-style of distributor helps but any type will work provided that it is not computer controlled. I had a Fiat 600D years ago, it was a 1962 model. It would have been a good donor car.

I use a small bottle of baby oil in the engine when I change the oil, and a little in the carb before I let it sit longer than 2 weeks. Ever see rust on a baby’s butt? The intake vacuum of the engine helps oil the valves and helps prevent rust as well. A simple connector to the spark plug base can be made if you bend the 12-2 wire in a curve around the plug’s base and then flatten it with a hammer a little, so that it will hold its shape when you tighten the plug. Some plugs don’t come with the washer that goes under them. Why would you need a computer on a car to control the engine if you use water as a fuel?

If you want to experiment, then you must try the experiment under pressure with the pistons in motion. The compression in the cylinders is 165 to 180 psi. in each. The engine turns over 4 or 5 times before it starts. Repeated compression and the right amount of fire in the hole and it will work.

Good donor cars. The Camaro has a computer on board, I have one with a v6 vortec. The Mustang will be the better bet as the car won’t need to be modified. Just print off the diagram and use the parts listed. Don’t change the fuel tank or exhaust at this point in time. Just hook a hose to the fuel pump from a separate tank of water, you won’t have to mount anything on the car either.

Hook up the inverter, then the relay box and finally, run the wires. Do make sure that neither the inverter nor the relay box get grounded to the car anywhere except at the battery connections and the plugs. Check the plugs to see if they are clean and clean them up if they need it. Good plug wires help too. Just to get running, you won’t need the second battery. The only thing to change is the timing, just turn the disc. cap until it starts. You don’t need to change the jets now, it will idle but won’t rev at this point. You may need to adjust the jet screws to allow more water into the engine.

See - no major modifications needed to test it, are there? As I said, it is simple. A good inverter only costs $50 - check at Wal-mart. The relay brakes contact on both wires from the inverter. Mark the disc. cap before you move it so you can reset it if need be. The water in the engine will not be enough to hurt it, you can always put it back on gas and run it for a while. Quacker state motor oil draws water into the engine to help cool the oil down faster. It always leaves a milky gunk in the valve covers. If it does lock up, just take the plugs out and turn the engine over.
My son works for a power company and took one of the relays in for a test. He told me I had it hooked up wrong on the car, and it shouldn't work as it is hooked up. He then ran another test and found that the relay was boosting the amps from the disc cap to the plug. The coil output on the car is 34,000 volts at 0.83 amps; the power at the plug is now 24,000 volts at 6.3 amps. The inverter and the relays reduce the voltage and increase the amps to the plugs. The spark advance in the disc, keeps the engine from passing the firing zone when the engine is running, it locks in place because of the time setting. It was a lucky mistake that I happened to find the right wiring to make the car run like this.

The relays have double feedback diodes in them rated at 1800 volts ac. This is why there is no feedback to the inverter. They also have a double coil with locking contacts under load. The 4 or 5 turns of the engine when starting, is when the coils get charged and change the voltage and amps to the plugs. Once the coils charge, the contacts stay closed and the coils stay charged.

The relays make no noise when the car is running. You can hardly hear the fan on the inverter. They do click a few times when starting the engine from cold, but they stop once it starts up.

![Diagram](image)

Fig. 1

Note: All diodes are marked 600V 6A but probably have a much higher voltage rating.
The high voltage goes in at the top of the relay and the 110 goes in on one side. The 110 charges the coils in the relay and then it's on stand-by to keep the coils charged when needed. This charge in the coils, changes the high voltage to a lower voltage and higher amperage as it passes through on its way to the plug.

The sides of the relay were removed so it could be used in another project. I don’t know why it works this way, but it does. When my son drew this up, I had a few questions for him as well. Why the 110 floats is uncommon, but it does, and the high voltage passes through without interfering with the 110 stand-by. The HV has no place to arc inside the relay as it has heavy insulation around all wires and the coils.

It is evident that the 110 ground is at the relay, and not at the plugs. The relay is the load. The HV connects with the vehicle ground and grounds at the plug. For some unknown reason, the system will not work without the ground wire for the relay running to the base of the plug - I knew I should have taken that class in rocket science! A meter shows no reading between the ground wire and the plug base when the engine is running, or as it starts, The engine just won’t run without the ground wire being in that position.

When a spark plug wire is removed and attached to a spare spark plug, then the spark is a bright blue with a white flash up to a 1/4 inch around the tip and gap. Inside a gasoline engine the air and gas are compressed to somewhere between 85 psi and 180 psi in most engines. When the piston is just past TDC the plug fires and the gases explode as the carbon components superheat under pressure.

Inside the water engine, the process is a little different. The water is taken into the cylinder as the piston goes down after the exhaust is released. The piston goes up to compress the water and air. When the piston starts back down, water is on the piston and the head, while the cylinder walls should be clear of water. Just after the piston starts down, (if the timing is set right), a vacuum will form between the water on the piston and the head. Then the plug fires in the vacuum area, creating a hot shock-wave between the water on the piston and the water on the head, most like a dieseling effect. My engine does not have the power it did have, but it’s not that much less than before. When I am driving down the road at 55 mph the engine is only turning about 1800 rpm. Each size of engine turns at different rpms for its application.

Does the water inside the cylinder explode? - I don’t know.
Does the water separate inside the cylinder to make a gas, and then explode? - I don’t know.
Does the water turn into steam inside the cylinder? - I don’t know.

The big car makers won’t move over to make room for you and your ideas, they will step on you and keep you down. Sure, a car like mine will save you money, but not that much. A tank of gas costs $28.00 and
lasts 1 week, that’s $1,456 in one year. The changes which I made to my car were done using stuff that I had around the shop and help from friends at the welding shop and that’s why the cost was so low on my car. Don’t spend money on stuff you may not need, there are people out there who have surplus stuff that they will share with you if you ask, or exchange the parts in exchange for some work. I worked on my car for over a year to get it right, it took that long to figure to change the timing. You will run into the same problems throughout the building of the car as well.

This does work, but you need the time and money to spend on it as well. Just because you have all the parts and have it all in place does not mean that it’s going to start the first time you turn it over. It is simple to build but to get it right on your car will take time. As far as I can see, no laws of physics have been broken to make this work. It may be a fine line as to how it works, but that ain’t for me to figure out. In the cylinder, on top you have a high pressure, in the middle there is a low pressure, and on the piston there is high pressure. What happens between two high pressures when you add a strong electrical charge between them? - It ain’t rocket science.

I and my son are reverse-engineering the relay that I cut the sides off of and we are going to find newer stuff that can be used for the same use as the relay and as cheap as we can. I found a guy who is 85 years old who knew what the relay fit. It operated two pumps on a 1949 Johnson-Prutte air cooling system. The relay was used to the turn on two pumps, when one would start to get hot the relay would switch the power to the other pump before the other shut down, that’s the reason for the diodes in the relay.

I’ll post the info as soon as we get it together. Since my car is running now, I will replace one relay at a time to test the tech we try. YES, I will keep records of events on this project and take pictures of the stuff needed for the system.

I didn’t change any of the stock stuff on the engine. The spark advance still works, and stock HEI coil in the cap is GM equipment. The vacuum hoses were all replaced with new ones along with the base plate under the carburettor and behind the heater controls. I know the timing seems way off on the engine, but that’s where it runs the best and the smoothest. Other engines may not even have to have the timing changed, I haven’t done that yet.

November 2006: The relays I used were old, they can be replicated with little effort if you can get the right amps and volts from the coil. Think outside the box from normal small electrical stuff. Igniters from a jet engine has the same properties as the old relays that I used. There are still more parts out there that can replace the stuff that I used. Look around and you can find them. I’m stuck where I can’t tell anyone what to use.

The water dose not burn, or explode. It expands very fast and contracts just as fast every time the plug fires. Just check all possible parts for the right one you need. I used a V-8 engine, and this system may not work on smaller engines. Time duration on the stroke cycle has a lot to do with it too.

The discharge when the plug fires is like a lighting flash. It expands the same way, and the charge in the cylinder is the same as the atmospheric conditions needed for lightning to discharge. Duplicate nature’s way of releasing the energy stored in the water.

If you use the engine to drive a generator, no matter what, the power generated will not be free, someone has to pay for the upkeep of the generator and it’s power supply equipment. There is no free energy, it cost to make the stuff to change the engine to what we need to use it for.

***************

No further useful information was received from Nathren. Tesla’s bi-filar series-connected coil is effective in picking up radiant energy. In the light of that, and in the absence of further information from Nathren, the following suggestion might be useful for those who intend to try to reproduce his car design:

The car to test needs to be a gasoline type with a carburettor and no computer control so that the timing of the spark can be adjusted over a wide range and the fuel mixture set where you want it.

Components needed:
Heavy-duty insulated copper wire
110V ac 12V alternator of 400 watt or higher rating
Insulating material
Small plastic box
Two screw connector strips (large)
Diodes for microwave ovens (2 per cylinder)
“Autolite” (25) copper-core plugs (1 per cylinder)
PVC piping
Tape.

The first step is to get the engine ticking over on just water:

1. Replace the plugs with the cheap “Autolite” (25) copper-core plugs, set to 80 thou gap.
2. Retard the timing to about 30 degrees after Top Dead Centre.
3. Mount the inverter so that it is fully insulated from the engine block.
4. Get two microwave oven diodes per cylinder. These should be available from an electrical repair shop, or failing that, they should be able to tell you where you can get them locally.
5. Connect one of the outputs from the inverter to the circuit breaker (either output will do).
6. Get a little plastic box and mount the diodes inside it. Two strips of screw connectors from a hardware store would be good for this. Get the largest size, place them in the box, along the outer edges and just screw the diodes across the box between the connectors. You can then run the wires to them through holes drilled in the box, straight into the connectors:

7. Run a 12-2 solid core wire from a diode to the underside of each plug. You can bend the wire round into a loop to fit tightly around the base of the plug, and then flatten the loop slightly with a hammer. The loop goes around the screw thread of the plug in a clockwise direction when looking down on it, so that turning the plug to tighten it, also tightens the copper wire loop. Alternatively, solder the open end of the loop to make it a rigid complete loop:
8. Be sure that the diodes going to the underside of the plugs are all the same way round and that the ones going to the circuit breaker are all the other way round as shown in the sketch. The other cylinders need to be wired like this:

9. Now we come to the wires from the distributor. As I understand it, the existing wires need to be replaced with very heavy-duty copper wiring. We don’t have Nathren’s relays and it would be sensible to assume that we never will, nor will we get any further information about them. The spark will be much improved if there is a coil in the wire from the distributor to the spark plug, so I suggest that you wind about 30 turns of the connecting wire around an iron core. Initially, the core could be an iron bolt. A solid metal core will have electrical currents induced in it. These flow sideways, heating the core and wasting energy. This is why mains transformers are wound on laminated cores where thin iron strips are insulated from each other to block these ‘eddy’ currents and raise the efficiency of the transformer. So, later on, if your tests
are successful, you might like to replace the bolts with lengths of steel welding rods with the coating cleaned off and painted to insulate them from each other.

10. Remove the gasoline feed pipe from the carburettor and seal it off very carefully. Connect a similar pipe to it and connect that pipe to a water tank, positioned so that the bottom of the water tank is higher than the carburettor.

11. Connect the inverter to the battery, placing an insulated ON/OFF switch (not shown on the diagram) in the lead to the side of the battery which is not connected to the car body - this is normally the Plus side of the battery, but not always, so check it.

12. Turn the engine over to get rid of any gasoline in the carburettor.

13. Heat some water in a kettle to get it hot but not nearly boiling and pour it into the water tank.

You are now ready for your tests. The engine is not likely to fire before turning over four or five times. You will probably need a battery charger to keep topping up your test battery (the one already in the car) when you run it down through trying to get the motor to fire. It will take a lot of fiddling around to get it to work. It may be necessary to adjust the carburettor jets to allow more water vapour into the engine to get it to run. Who knows? Only Nathren has managed it so far.

OK, so it ain’t firing and looks as if it never will. It might be worth trying the following for each cylinder:

Take a few inches of PVC pipe of say, three inch diameter. Cut a couple of discs to fit the ends. Take a length of the wire used to connect the 110V inverter, double it over and wrap it around the cylinder like this:

You can tape the wire in place on the cylinder. Now, run the spark plug wire through the cylinder to produce this arrangement:
This may give you a better spark and get the engine running. The reason for this is that Ed Gray managed to pick up a major amount of extra energy from a copper cylinder arrangement somewhat like this. He got enough extra energy to run a 80 HP electrical engine on it, so you might well get enough extra energy to get your engine going, especially as it appears that the coil shown here is much more effective at picking up extra energy from the current pulse to the spark plug.

It is said that magnetic fields do not help the pick up of the extra energy, so the larger the diameter of the PVC tubing, the lower the magnetic field on the winding.

If you succeed in getting your engine to tick over on just water, then:

1. Replace the carburettor jets with ones two sizes larger.
2. Adjust the timing to get the smoothest running.
3. Feed the pipe from the exhaust manifold into a water tank with baffles as shown below.
4. Connect a second battery in parallel with the existing battery, or add a second alternator:

**Mileage improving devices.**

**Cam Timing:** A deceptively simple way of improving mpg performance has been discussed recently in the watercar forums, and that is the adjustment of the cam settings on American cars made since 1971. This sounds most unlikely, but it is a proven fact. For example, a 2004 Jeep Wrangler 2.4 litre received a 10 degree advancement on both cams, and that gave a 70% improvement on the mpg, much more engine power and an exhaust which runs much cooler.

Over the years, one man experienced a 50% to 100% improvement in mpg over a range of personally owned cars and trucks, and the emissions were improved by nearly 90%. It is not suggested that everybody should make a cam adjustment, just to be aware that an adjustment of that nature can have a dramatic effect.

Another example: “Advancing the cam timing will make the engine run cooler. I have been messing with cam timing for about 25 years. I had a 1985 Ford Ranger with a 2.8 litre engine - it was a dog. The same engine used in the 1970 Mercury Capri had lots of power. The Ranger was a dog because the cam timing was set almost 10 degrees retarded. I gave it an 8 degree advance and the Ford Ranger came to life and hauled ass. Also, after-market ratio-rocker arms help a lot on late model cars. I changed the cam timing on my 1998 Chevy truck by 10 degrees. With it’s 350 cubic inch engine and ratio rocker arms installed, it gained almost 90 horsepower and brought the power band lower giving more torque because the rocker...
makes the cam have higher lift and longer duration on the cam which makes it breath better.”

Comment from a man with 25 years experience in this field: “Cam timing is when the valves open and close in relation to the crank shaft and piston movement. The number 1 piston is set at true Top Dead Centre. At this point the degree wheel is set to the front of the engine against the front pulley at the zero degrees mark and you install a pointer mounted to the engine block pointing at the zero mark on the wheel. When the crank is turned to about the 108 to 112 degree mark, the intake valve is fully opened. That is where most engines are set nowadays. This what I call retarded cam timing. The engine seems to run well but doesn't really to seem to have much low and mid-range pulling power. When racing, you would retard a cam for high RPMs, they also could breath and had no restriction in the exhaust. The power may come in at, lets say, 3000 - 6500 RPM and advancing a cam for more torque and power, that same cam may produce power at 1000- 4000 RPM and after all, who drives over 4000 rpm on the road?”

Another comment: “Our jeep has twin overhead cams. Advancing them does not make them stay open longer, they just open and close sooner. My reason for advancing both cams was, if I only advance the intake cam, the intake would open earlier causing more overlap if the exhaust wasn't advanced. Normally the intake valve closes after Bottom Dead Centre. Just by looking at the piston, sometimes it's almost one quarter of the way up on the compressing stroke before the intake closes. By advancing the cams, the intake closes closer to BDC. This produces higher compression. Years ago, when I did this to some of the V8s, I would switch to adjustable rocker arms and a solid lifter cam. I was able to adjust the overlap by backing off on the rockers. On an engine with one cam, advancing the cam will adjust both the intake and the exhaust. Rule of thumb is: lets say most engines are retarded by 4 degrees or more, you really don't want to advance the cams more than 4 degrees advanced. I sometimes push this as far as 6 degrees advanced for improved mpg. That is a total difference of 10 degrees from 4 degrees retarded to 6 degrees advanced. This works well with low compression engines. I also don't see a need to go to a higher compression ratio. Think about it: if you had a compression ratio of 12 to 1 and the intake closes a quarter of the way up the compression stroke, how much is compression will there be, compared to a 8 to 1 compression ratio where the full stroke compresses the mixture? If you had a engine that made it easy to get to the cam or cams by just removing a dust cover, like on our Jeep 4-cylinder, I would say to install adjustable timing gears. Then you could just remove the cover and play with the cam timing until you came up with the best power and mileage.

The FireStorm Spark Plug:

The “FireStorm” plug was developed by Robert Krupa and it is an innocuous looking spark plug which can be used to replace a standard spark plug in an ordinary production engine:

![FireStorm Spark Plug](image)

However, this plug is far from ordinary. The central electrode has been changed from a cylindrical post to a hemispherical dome, surrounded by four arched electrodes, each of which being positioned at a constant distance from the hemisphere. This allows a much greater spark area and results in very much improved performance.

The fuel/air mixture can be made leaner without any harmful side effects. If this is done using standard plugs, then the engine will run at a much higher temperature which can damage the engine. But when using FireStorm plugs, a leaner fuel/air mix actually results in the engine running at a lower temperature. Robert has measured this effect and found that under identical running conditions, the engine exhaust was 100°F cooler when using FireStorm plugs. A mixture ratio of 24:1 is used rather than the current 14.7:1 mix and polluting emissions are very much reduced by the use of this plug design. Mixtures of up to 40:1 can be used with this plug.
Robert has been awarded two patents for this plug design: US 5,936,332 on 10th August 1999 and US 6,060,822 on 9th May 2000. These show variations of the basic dual arch electrodes, two of which are shown here:

It is hoped that these plugs will go into production early in 2008. Robert gave Bosch of Germany a set of FireStorm plugs to test. After ten weeks of testing, their response was “This is unbelievable. We have never seen anything like this in all the time we have been building sparkplugs”. When standard spark plugs fire for a long time, the spark gap increases and the spark is weakened. Bosch ran an eight-week endurance test on the FireStorm plugs and found that there was zero gap growth. They concluded that FireStorm plugs would never wear out.

Robert’s first FireStorm plug was made in 1996 and he has encountered strong opposition to their introduction and manufacture ever since. This plug will not be popular with the oil companies as less fuel is burnt. This is probably a fallacy because, human nature being what it is, people are likely to keep spending the same amount on fuel and just drive more. For the same reason, the plug will not be popular with governments who tax fuel. The companies who make spark plugs will not like it as it does not wear out like standard plugs do. It uses less fuel and cuts harmful emissions dramatically, so it will be popular with motorists and environmentalists, if Robert can get it into production.

**Water Vapour Injector System:** Fifty years ago car engines were not nearly as powerful as they are now. In those days it was quite common for a driver to remark that his car ran smoother and more powerfully on wet days. This was not imagination as water vapour drawn into the engine along with the air, turned to steam at the moment of ignition, and expanding provided additional thrust to the pistons while lowering the running temperature slightly.

This fact was utilised in World War II when units which were effective standard bubblers used with hydroxy boosters were added to the vehicles. Roger Maynard has built and used these units extensively since 1978, and my thanks goes to him for providing this information and illustrations.
The unit is attached to the air intake of the vehicle, between the air filter and the engine. A small diameter plastic pipe is lead from there to a glass or plastic container holding water. In the above picture Roger is using a glass Mason jar with a screw-on metal lid which has a seal. Sometimes called a preserving jar, these jars are very convenient.

The air feed into the jar is by a length of the same plastic piping and terminated with a standard air-stone or “soap-stone” as used in a home aquarium, as this causes a large number of separate bubbles. It is good practice to glue the plastic fittings to the lid of the jar, but this can make the jar too airtight and if that happens it may be necessary to remove the rubber seal which is around the neck of the jar.

A glass jar has the advantage of not being affected by the heat produced by the engine. This is a very simple unit and it uses ordinary water which is not exactly a hazardous substance. The effect of using it is far greater than would be imagined. On Roger's 4-cylinder KIA car, the mpg rose from 320 miles per tankfull of fuel to 380 miles around town (18%) and 420 miles on the open road (31%) which is a very marked improvement. On his 6-cylinder Tacoma shows an 8% increase around town and a 12% increase on the open road. The water is topped up every 1200 miles or so.
However, some engines are suited to the air-stone and some are not. Smaller engines may work much better if a stainless steel screw is used instead of the air-stone:

![Image of air-stone](image)

**Ram Implosion Wing:** The next device may not be a “free-energy” device as such, but if not, it is very close to being such. It is a structure, which when mounted on top of a motor vehicle, improves the airflow to such an extent that the fuel consumption is said to be reduced by a major factor. The device was invented by Robert Patterson and is said to create a vortex which not only decreases wind resistance but may also create a forward propulsion force.

![Image of Ram Implosion Wing](image)

It is claimed that the effect created by one of these wings reduces the amount of dust stirred up when driving along a dirt road and if there is a paper bag sitting in the middle of the road, it is left unmoved when the vehicle passes over it at high speed. About a dozen people are testing this device at the present time. The biggest effect is at speeds of 60 mph or more. One researcher states that he installed the wing on the roof of his Lincoln Town car using a roof rack which allowed the wing to hang over the rear window by some six inches. He claims that his fuel consumption has improved from 17 mpg to 56 mpg.

Positioning of the wing, texturing of the wing surface, and the speed of the vehicle appear to be important factors in gaining an improvement. There is a research group and the website is in the ‘websites’ file and is at: [http://www.pureenergysystems.com/news/2005/03/08/6900067_RamWingUpdate/](http://www.pureenergysystems.com/news/2005/03/08/6900067_RamWingUpdate/)

**Fuelsavers:** A similar system is on offer from the website [http://www.fuelsavers.com.au/](http://www.fuelsavers.com.au/) where they offer small aluminium fins which mount on top of the trailing edge of the bodywork of a vehicle. The devices are reckoned to save some 10% to 12% on fuel consumption, they can be home-made, nine per vehicle is the recommended number. The device and mounting look like this:
Wyoming Instruments. Since 1991, Wyoming Instruments have been marketing a device called the “Fuel Atomizer 2000” which is claimed to improve fuel consumption, reduce emissions, improve performance and reduce engine wear. They are so confident of their product that they offer a 60-day money back guarantee should any customer not be satisfied with the performance of the device. They quote improved mileage for six vehicles, ranging from 34% extra on a 1993 4-litre Nissan to 140% on a 7.5 litre Ford pickup.

It is stated that one vehicle with 100,000 miles on the clock, failed its emissions test. Four weeks after fitting the device, the test showed lower emissions than would be expected on a new engine. The device can be switched from vehicle to vehicle and works on engines with carburettors and on injection engines. However, it does not work with diesel engines.

It does not produce a leaner burn but instead provides a better atomisation of the fuel entering the engine. It is easy to fit, has no moving parts and only one adjustment. The device turns the liquid fuel into vapour which is then fed into the intake manifold. The liquid fuel flow is decreased to compensate for the vapour added. It would be reasonable to expect a minimum of 20% improvement in fuel consumption when using one of these devices. The price in winter 2005 is quoted as US $75 on their website but their Sales division states that the price is $150 and that there is no UK distributor. Their web address is: http://www.wyominginstruments.com/gas_home.htm

The device looks like this:
High Mileage Carburettors. The very poor mpg figures produced by most vehicles is a quite deliberate arrangement forced on drivers by the oil companies. In 1997, an engineer working at a US Ford company plant witnessed a 351 CID V8 started at about 4:30 pm. with a 1 litre bottle of fuel forming an exactly measured amount. The next morning when he went to the factory floor, that engine was still running and had only consumed about one third of the one litre bottle. On asking about the fuel consumption, he was shown a display that read, “248.92 mpg”. He was shocked and said, “This must be a mistake” but the engineer said that it was true. He then asked when they would have it ready to be put in a new Ford, he was told that he would not see it in his lifetime. This is company policy and has nothing to do with engineering which is easily capable of this level of performance. That 249 miles per US gallon is 298 miles per European gallon since the European gallon is 20% bigger than the US gallon.

There have been more than 200 patents granted for high-mpg carburettors. These designs all give between 100 and 250 mpg on a US gallon of fuel. Not a single one of these designs has made it to the marketplace due to the fanatical opposition of the oil companies. Last year, the Shell oil company posted typical earnings for the year, which showed that that one (typical) oil company made US $3,000,000 profit per hour for every hour of every day of the entire year. Did you enjoy contributing to that profit every time you bought fuel to burn?

Nearly all of these high-mpg carburettor designs convert the fuel to vapour form before it enters the engine. There is no magic about this performance, just good engineering practice. It will probably come as a great surprise to you that the oil companies now put additives into the gasoline sold in the USA. They have 103 varieties of additives and they will explain that these are used to reduce evaporation in summer (as if they care about that!) and combat freezing in the winter. An “unfortunate” side effect of these additives is that they clog up any carburettor which converts the fuel to vapour form. Instead of 200 mpg, it is now quite common for US vehicles to have a 15 mpg performance and that effectively increases the cost per mile by more than ten times.

I am confident that it would be possible to design a high-mpg carburettor which deals with the additive sludge left over when the fuel is converted to vapour. In passing, the present situation gives added encouragement to stop burning oil-based products and switch to electric, compressed air, or water-powered vehicles. That is a perfectly viable option technically, but it would create frantic opposition from the oil companies and most governments which raise massive revenues from taxing oil products. The energy problem is not technical, it is financial and political.

I am not including details of any of these high-mpg carburettors in this chapter as they will be ineffective nowadays, but you will find nine carburettor patents in the Appendix.

The Weird Nature of Water. This chapter has been dealing with systems for enhancing vehicle operation with the use of water, so it seems appropriate to finish it with a brief note on water itself. To a casual glance, it appears that we know all about water. It’s composition is H2O and when it breaks down, we get two hydrogen atoms and one oxygen atoms - right? Well maybe, and maybe not.

The longer you spend looking at systems which use water, the more you get to realise that water is by no means as simple as you would initially think. There is a much maligned branch of alternative medicine called “Homeopathy” which is based on giving patients very dilute water-based solutions various chemicals. Sceptical investigators have run professional-quality tests intended to show that homeopathy is fraudulent and has no medical benefits whatsoever. Unfortunately, the tests did not work out the way that the investigators wanted. The tests showed that there actually was some benefit from the treatments being examined, and unfortunately, because a placebo control group was being used, the placebo effect was definitely not the cause of the effects recorded during the trials.

Determined not to just accept the results which went against their expectations, the testers started testing ever more dilute samples on the patients. They eventually got down to the level where there no longer remained a single atom of the chemical in the liquid being fed to the patients, but to their consternation, the medical effect remained. They tried water which had never had the chemical in it, and there was no medical effect. They returned to the apparently “pure” and definitely chemical-free water and the medical effect was seen again, in spite of the fact that there was not even one atom of the chemical remaining in the water.

This showed clearly that the water was different after having had the chemical in it, even when no chemical remained. They were forced into the opinion that water has “memory”. That, of course, is a conclusion
based on the facts which are hard to explain. You may wish to deduce something else from those facts, and that is entirely up to you - just be aware of the facts.

Very interesting studies carried out by Mr Masaru Emoto have shown that the thoughts of ordinary members of the public can alter the structure of water without there being any actual physical contact with the water. If the water receives positive thoughts and is then frozen, the resulting crystal structure will be like this:

![Positive Thoughts Crystal Structure]

While on the other hand, if negative thoughts are aimed at the water, whether just by looking at it and thinking, or by writing those thoughts down on paper, the resulting crystal shape is quite different when the water is frozen, as shown here:

![Negative Thoughts Crystal Structure]

It is not all that startling if you consider that the quantum mechanics researchers have been saying for a long time that experiments can be affected by the observer. People who build Joe Cells which operate through environmental energy focused by specially treated and structured pure water, record the fact that certain people can affect a Joe Cell in a negative way from a distance of fifty yards (or metres) away.

Personally, I am quite sure that we do not understand the fundamental nature of our environment and that we have very little idea of how we as individuals impact on our surroundings.

There is an extremely honest and reputable researcher called George Wiseman who operates through his company Eagle-Research (http://www.eagle-research.com/). George is very experienced in producing “Brown’s Gas” and he publishes excellent instruction books on the subject. The really interesting thing is that Brown’s Gas is produced from water and that gas has the most remarkable properties which are not readily explained by our present day “conventional” science. When Brown’s Gas is used as the gas to power a cutting torch (like an oxy-acetelene torch) the resulting flame is nearly colourless and can be waved across a bare hand without any ill effects - the hand is not burnt. But when applied to a fire brick which is intended to resist high temperatures, it burns a neat hole through it. It will vaporise a tungsten rod which normally takes 6,000°C to do that, which indicates that the flame temperature depends on what it is being played (!).

It can also weld aluminium to aluminium with the need for an inert gas. It will weld aluminium to brass and it can weld a steel rod to an ordinary building brick. It can fuse glass to a building brick. This is not “normal” for a chemical combustion reaction, showing that Brown’s Gas is not a “normal” chemical substance. And, Brown’s Gas comes from water - so, does that perhaps suggest that water is not a “normal” chemical substance? I will leave you to make up your own mind about that.
Chapter 11: Other Devices

Nikola Tesla. Tesla also designed a device for picking up energy from the air. As far as I am aware, it was never patented and I have never seen a specification of its output. Perhaps it was one of Tesla's failures but personally, I doubt that. It might make a very interesting experiment so see what level of output can be achieved using it. The construction is shown here:

It is essentially, a rectangular cylinder which contains two spherical electrodes like a Wimshurst machine. The cylinder is positioned vertically, so that when the electrodes are powered up with high voltage to create spark discharges, the air inside the cylinder is heated which causes it to rise up the cylinder. The heated air is ionised, so a magnetic field generated by a surrounding electromagnet, causes the charged ions to move to opposite sides of the cylinder. Electrode plates positioned inside the cylinder, provide an electrical path for the excess positive and negative charges to flow together through the load - lighting, heating or motor circuits typically.

On the surface, this system would appear to be less than 100% efficient, in that the amount of power applied to the device to make it operate should be less that the amount of power drawn from it to drive useful loads. I am not sure that this is necessarily so. Firstly, the air already contains charged ions before this device starts to generate more. These naturally occurring ions gain in number when a thunderstorm is likely, even to the extent of giving many people a headache by their presence. These naturally occurring ions will be picked up by this device and without any input power needed to create them, they are capable of providing output power.

Also, the whole earth is immersed in the zero-point energy field. This is seething energy at the quantum level whose effects can be seen even at 'absolute zero'. This field is made of small random effects which makes it hard to obtain useful energy directly from it. The field needs to be structured before energy can be drawn from it. One way to do this is to align the field with an event which causes coherent waves of energy to radiate outwards as a 'radiant energy' wave - something like the ripples caused on the surface of a pond of still water when a large stone is dropped vertically into the water. The ripple 'waves' move outwards from
the ‘event’ until they reach the bank of the pond. If there was a generator attached to a float in the pond, it would be possible to pick up some energy from the ripples. The same can be done with ‘radiant energy’ waves if you can create them and know how to pick up energy from them.

Radiant energy waves can be formed by very short sharp uni-directional electrical pulses. Pulses less than one hundredth of a second are suitable for this. One way of creating pulses of that type is using a spark gap. In Tesla’s device shown above, sparks are generated continuously. These sparks will generate radiant energy waves radiating out at right angles to the spark. Without a doubt, the vertical cylinder will have a mass of radiant energy shooting up it when it is being operated. This is in addition to the air ions which are being picked up. The only question is whether or not the electrode plate arrangement shown is capable of picking up any of this excess energy. Considering the metallic pickup device used by Edwin Gray to capture radiant energy as described below, it seems highly likely that some of that additional energy is, in fact, picked up and used to power the loads.

It should be noted that Tesla’s device shown above, will generate UV radiation in the same way as any MIG or stick welder does, so care should be exercised to avoid looking at the arc or allowing the UV to shine on your skin, even if the skin is covered by clothing. You can get serious sunburn through thin clothing if it is subjected to strong UV radiation. Also, radio interference is likely to be generated by the arc, so screening should be provided during any tests. **WARNING:** Tesla accidentally discovered that electric spark discharges in air, ignite and burn atmospheric oxygen and nitrogen, producing 12,000,000 volt waves. The oxygen and nitrogen, both below atomic number 19 are thereby transmuted into alpha and beta charges (stripped helium nuclei with +2 charge each, and electrons with -1 charges each) by the powerful radiation produced, having a voltage potential of 12 Mev. This is almost three times the Mev level of gamma radiation emitted by radium, it may well be the reason why Tesla did not publicise the device shown above, and should you decide to experiment with it, please be aware of the potential hazard of this radiation.

A variation on the above device of Tesla’s is given in the book “Physical Chemistry” by E. A. Moelwyn-Hughes, Pergamon Press, Oxford 1965, page 224. Rutherford and Geiger determined the fact that radium puts out alpha particles at the rate of 34,000,000,000 per second, each having two units of positive charge at 4.5 million electron-volts. This is a staggering amount of energy which ionises the air inside the housing and produces enough power to be capable of replacing the entire Four Corners power complex indefinitely.

The variation of Tesla’s device shown above, supports the lead container with its gram of radium on a strap across the bottom of the housing. The radiation ionises the air and the magnetic field separates the charges and directs them to opposite sides of the housing, to be collected and used via the electrode plates. There does not appear to be any reason why strong permanent magnets should not be used instead of the DC electromagnet shown.


Harold Aspden. Scientists freely acknowledge that more than 80% of the matter and energy in the universe is "dark matter" and "dark energy" where "dark" only means that we cannot readily see that form of matter and energy. The highly respected British scientist Harold Aspden, has been awarded a patent for a system to collect this energy directly. The patent, which is one of several similar patents included in this set of documents, is reproduced here:

Patent GB2390941 21st January 2004 Inventor: Dr. Harold Aspden

ELECTRICAL POWER GENERATING APPARATUS

Abstract
An electric generating device includes two capacitors 1 and 2, each having a pair of concentric electrodes and in-series connection to inductors 3 and 4. Each capacitor has an electrode connected to a high voltage DC source 5 and another connected to a low-voltage or earth terminal 6. An AC Power output may be produced from terminals between each capacitor and inductor or from a transformer where the inductor is the primary winding. Electricity production may be sustained by drawing energy from the vacuum medium surrounding the electrodes.

Field of the Invention
This invention relates to a new and non-conventional means for the generation of electrical power. The energy source is the quantum underworld of space, the aether medium of the vacuum state, long recognised for its ability to allow the storage of electric field energy by reacting as its intrinsic charge is displaced, a process understood by physicists by reference to the research findings of Clerk Maxwell.

Background of the Invention
The current state of the art of electrical power generation does not recognise the possibility of ultimately tapping energy from the aether. Physics is taught on the basis that energy cannot be created or destroyed, inasmuch as it is conserved in all physical processes, though it can be degraded in its usefulness, as by burning of hydrocarbons and conversion into heat which dissipates as by radiation into outer space. The aether as a source or as an absorber of energy is not deemed to serve any specific role in the physics of energy deployment, it having been dismissed from consideration by invoking the notion of 'field energy' without admitting the specific physical reality of something in space that accounts for the properties involved.

Theoretical physicists have, however come to suspect that space devoid of matter is nevertheless a seething sea of activity subject to sporadic energy fluctuations which can create electron-positron pairs that exist momentarily before decaying back into their quantum underworld. Yet those same physicists deny all possibility that this energy resource of space itself can be exploited to provide useful power on a scale large enough to rival the role played by atomic power plants and fossil fuel generating installations.

Curiously, they do subscribe to the belief that one day they may be able to generate power on a viable commercial scale from fusion reactors by processes replicating what they believe sustains the Sun's heat output as hydrogen is transmuted into different atomic forms. In contrast with this rather elusive objective, it having proved beyond reach even after half a century of effort, this invention is based on success in generating power by replicating, not the Sun's onward energy decay, but rather a process akin to that by which the Sun itself was created from energy drawn from the enveloping aether medium.

The invention to be described below has emerged from an in depth theoretical investigation into the properties of the aether and quite independently of any of the well known claims of published record which feature at the fringe of mainstream scientific literature. A recent and very well-presented account of what amounts to a century of relevant energy history is the book 'The Search for Free Energy' by Keith Tutt, published in 2001 by Simon Schuster (ISBN 0-684-86660-9). Here in this book is a comprehensive background of information concerning the energy devices of several researchers but the references to Nikola Tesla and T. Henry Moray are particularly pertinent to the subject of this invention and, though imposing a limitation on what can be legitimately claimed by this patent application, they serve also as a basis for a very important lesson to those engaging in this field of invention.

The lesson is that it is not sufficient to build and demonstrate something that works, if you do not fully understand why what you have devised actually does work. This is especially the case here where one is
claiming a source of energy hitherto unknown. The invention to be described below will, in its broadest sense, appear to be quite similar to what T. Henry Moray is said to have demonstrated in showing that substantial electrical power could seemingly be drawn from the aether using a simple wire antenna strung between two poles.

However, as will be seen, the antenna is not needed and the reason is that the energy source is not the radiant emission by some process involving radio wave propagation through the aether, but rather what can best be described as a phase-lock that couples the apparatus with the quantised motion of electric aether charge. There is a technique, to be described below, by which it is possible to exploit this phase-lock condition by setting up an energy oscillation involving an apparatus component and its enveloping aether, the result being that energy in an immediately useful electrical form is imported into the apparatus from that aether.

**Brief Description of the Invention**

According to one aspect of the invention, an electric power delivery circuit comprises two capacitors, each having a pair of electrodes formed by a pair of metal cylinders having concentric axes, each capacitor having an associated inductor series-connected to it to form a capacitor-inductor unit, DC voltage excitation means connected to a parallel combination of the two capacitor-inductor units, whereby to apply between corresponding electrodes of the capacitors a DC bias voltage which primes them with electric charge, and power output terminals, one at each point of connection between a capacitor and its associated inductor, whereby to provide for an AC power output owing to oscillations of electric charge between the two capacitors at the resonant frequency of the capacitor-inductor units.

According to another aspect of the invention, an electric power-delivery circuit comprises two capacitors, each having a pair of electrodes formed by a pair of metal cylinders having concentric axes, each capacitor having an associated inductor series-connected to it to form a capacitor-inductor unit, DC voltage excitation means connected to a parallel combination of the two capacitor-inductor units, whereby to apply between corresponding electrodes of the capacitors, a DC bias voltage which primes them with electric charge, and power output terminals. one at each point of connection between a capacitor and its associated inductor, whereby to provide for an AC power output owing to oscillations of electric charge between the two capacitors at the resonant frequency of the capacitor-inductor units.

According to a feature of the invention the capacitors have no intervening solid or liquid dielectric medium separating their concentric electrodes.

According to another feature of the invention, two inductors are coupled electromagnetically by having a common ferrite core and their primary windings are connected to their associated capacitors in the polarity configuration which assures that, in their mutually resonant state, electric charge is exchanged between the two capacitors.

According to yet another feature of the invention, the central axes of both cylindrical electrode capacitors are mutually parallel.

According to a further feature of the invention, an electrical power delivery system comprises a plurality of these electric power delivery circuits, where the central axes have different angular orientations as between the different circuits.

According to a still further feature of the invention, in such a power delivery system, the difference in angular orientation of the central axes is at least 60°.

**Brief Description of the Drawings**
Fig. 1 shows an electrical power generating circuit incorporating two concentric cylindrical capacitors having central axes which are parallel.

Fig. 2 shows a modified version of the circuit of Fig. 1 with a transformer system providing the inductors and an output winding.
**Fig.3** illustrates a mutually inclined capacitor system comprising two pairs of concentric cylindrical capacitors.

**Detailed Description of the Invention**

The invention draws energy from the aether. To understand why the invention works, one needs to understand the process by which the aether stores energy when an electric field is set up across the dielectric separating two capacitor plates. Moreover, one needs to understand the means by which the aether determines the quantum of action, specifically in the form of the Bohr magneton and the unit of angular momentum linked to Planck's constant.

It is not sufficient to imagine that electric charge in the aether is displaced from a rest position in a background continuum of opposite charge polarity to which it is attracted by a restoring force. Indeed, one must consider such action to be superimposed on a system of charge which has an underlying jitter motion, a quantum theory theme associated with the German physicist Heisenberg (Zitter-bewegung, which has the dictionary meaning 'Circular fluctuation movement, of spin'). When these two factors are combined, and the constraint added of there being a phase-lock which keeps that jitter motion in synchronism as between the charges, one finds that the physical theory involved has some very interesting consequences.

One of these consequences is that a spherical or cylindrical volume of aether, if spinning bodily about a central axis, will acquire a magnetic moment and set up an electric field inside that sphere or cylinder that is directed radially with respect to the spin axis. A summary analysis is presented in the Appendix to this specification, being, in part a quotation from pages 31-33 of a booklet entitled 'The Theory of Gravitation' which the Applicant of this invention, Dr. Harold Aspden, authored in 1959 and duly published early in 1960.

The induction of electric charge by 'aether spin' was there shown to give a physical basis, both qualitative and quantitative, for the geomagnetic moment, the property of body Earth of setting up a magnetic field which created magnetic North and South poles at latitudes offset from the geographic poles, with the geomagnetic polar axis precessing slowly around the Earth's spin axis at a rate of several hundred years per revolution. By identifying its source as a rotation of a sphere of aether coextensive with body Earth, a volume of aether relative to which the Earth could have a component of motion even though the aether spin frequency is equal to that of the Earth, this axial tilt of some 17 degrees has a physical explanation. However, that aspect of the aether's role was not seen at the time as offering anything of promise technologically. The physics involved is nevertheless very relevant and directly pertinent to the experiments on which this invention is based, the findings of which would otherwise be quite baffling scientifically.

The applicant has, over the 40 or so years since the theory was first published, given a great deal of consideration to the theoretical implication that, just as aether spin can set up electric charge displacement inside coextensive matter, so the setting up of an electric field directed radially with respect to an s axis can induce aether spin about that axis and with it develop angular momentum. Indeed, in the author's onward publications on this subject, as, for example, 'Physics Unified' published in 1980 by Sabbeton Publications, P.O. Box 35, Southampton, England (ISBN 0 85056 0098), it is shown how the onset of the force of gravitation when a disordered aether consolidated into an orderly structured form caused protons to accrete more rapidly than electrons, owing to their higher mutual rate of gravitational acceleration. This created stars with all initial positive charge and the associated aether spin resulted in the stars acquiring their spin states and shedding matter which consolidated into planets which share the angular momentum so generated. The aether with its property of spin as related by its electric charge density according to the formula presented in the Appendix is therefore the key factor if we attempt to account for the creation of the stars which populate our universe.

That same formula, however, is equally valid if applied to the circumstance where a radial electric field is set up between the concentric cylindrical electrodes of a capacitor formed around a hollow dielectric cylinder. It tells us how fast the aether within that dielectric will spin. The related theoretical analysis shows that the quantum phase-lock feature of the aether imports from the external aether world an amount of energy equal to that supplied in setting up aether charge displacement, this imported energy being the dynamic energy corresponding; to the acquired aether angular momentum. Guided by the argument concerning stellar creation one can see that this aether angular momentum can be transferred to matter and this process also has its energy transfer implications.

However, one can wonder what happens if, after setting up a radial electric field in that capacitor having concentric electrodes, the applied voltage is reduced, thereby withdrawing electric field energy from the capacitor. The imported energy present in kinetic energy form as a cylindrical shell of aether spins about the central axis of the capacitor will tend to sustain electric charge displacement. To conserve energy, since the
aether phase-lock cannot force the expulsion of energy by obliging the enveloping aether universe to keep in step, this energy can only be shed by augmenting that released electrostatically. In other words, the net result is that an up and down fluctuation of the electric charge condition of the capacitor must give rise to an electric energy output that is, for the lowest dielectric constant (the permittivity of the vacuum), double the input in each cycle of change. One can then envisage an oscillation escalating in energy content powered almost wholly by aether input before one taps into that source of power to draw off energy at a rate consistent with stable operation.

This is, of course, a bewildering prediction that no physicist could imagine as being at all possible and yet, given the relevance of the theoretical argument involved, as applied to the phenomenon of geomagnetism and stellar creation, which are supported by strong evidence in that book 'Physics Unified', once such a notion is conceived it surely has to be put to the test by experiment. This then, after decades of effort before this realisation has dawned, is the basis on which the Applicant has only now come to appreciate the amazing technological possibilities that lie before us and is asserting by this patent specification that energy can in fact be tapped from the aether on a commercially viable scale.

Given that aether theory indicates that the special form of capacitor described above will, if subject to an oscillatory charge condition, generate an excess of energy, a question to consider is why such a phenomenon has not manifested itself in bench-type experiments performed in numerous electrical laboratories over the past one hundred years. Ostensibly the implication is that the capacitor will exhibit a negative resistance if used with an inductor as a component in what would become a self-resonating circuit. The answer to this may be that if such a phenomenon has occurred it has passed unnoticed or been regarded as spurious or noise-related, being something connected with radio interference etc. Alternatively, and as a function of the size and scale of the apparatus, the effect may have lacked an exciting trigger needed to overcome an energy threshold set by such factors as circuit contact resistance or contact potentials as well as the basic resistance of the inductors which, with the capacitors, form the resonant circuit.

Note that, even for a capacitor of quite large physical dimensions, having regard to its accommodation on top of a laboratory bench, the actual capacitance is necessarily quite small, being of the order of a billionth of a farad. This means that a capacitor charge fluctuation of the order of a volt would only imply energy fluctuations that are of the order of a billionth of a joule per cycle. The situation is quite different if perchance a DC bias voltage of, say, 5,000 volts is applied to the capacitor. Then a small superimposed voltage fluctuation makes the related energy fluctuations very much larger with much greater prospect of an escalating self-resonance being triggered.

With this in mind the applicant perceived a possible prior art link with the experimental claims reported by Dr. Moray who, in 1929 is said (see pages 46-50 of the above-referenced recently-published book by Keith Tutt) to have powered six 100 watt light bulbs plus a standard 575 watt electric flat iron, merely by providing an earth connection and coupling an input lead to an overhead wire antenna. The apparatus involved had no other source of input power but included a special arrangement of capacitors and presumably some kind of high frequency inductor/transformer unit.

In spite of the attention given to the Moray demonstrations, it seems that the secrets involved in the design and construction of the apparatus remain unknown and so cannot feature in the prior art of published record. Nor, indeed, can the anecdotal evidence of Moray's efforts serve to show that the subject invention has been put to prior use. The technology as to how to replicate the Moray device, always assuming it did perform as claimed, has therefore to be rediscovered and, indeed, given that there is reference to his detectors incorporating some special substance which was referred to as 'Swedish stone', possibly the dielectric he used in his capacitor construction, there is a considerable mystery to unravel. More to the point, however, one is led to believe that Moray was implying that the energy he was tapping was radiant energy drawn from the aether, with that antenna featuring prominently because, without it being connected, the energy output fell to zero. However, as he surely may well himself have known, one just cannot draw power on such a scale from a simple overhead wire strung between two poles and so, without know how, he would have suspected that the energy inflow was coming into his capacitors via the action of that mystery substance he called 'Swedish Stone'.

The applicant here suggests that, based on an insight into the quantum workings of the aether medium as outlined above, the curious discovery demonstrated decades ago by Dr. Moray may have been attributable to setting up an oscillation in a resonant circuit including, a concentric cylindrical electrode capacitor which had a voltage bias of the order of a thousand and more volts fed from a connection to that overhead antenna but drawing no significant current from that antenna other than enough to prime his capacitor with charge.
and stimulate a high frequency fluctuation which could initiate an escalating circuit oscillation tapping aether energy from the aether spin induced in the capacitor dielectric.

This is speculation, but it is sufficient to justify the Applicant's interest in constructing a capacitor and seeking to verify the assumptions just made. Notwithstanding, the reference alcove to Dr. Moray and the note below concerning Nikola Tesla, what it leads to is new invention by virtue of full disclosure of details of operation and manufacture of something hitherto unknown, the actual means by which to harness a source of energy latent in the aether medium and deemed by those familiar with state of the art knowledge to be beyond man's reach. Furthermore, there are supplementary inventive features of a special nature because of the way the subject invention exchanges energy between two capacitors and also because the optimisation of aether power output from the capacitors is found to be a function of the orientation of the capacitor axes relative to the cosmic background owing to the Earth's rotation.

It seems here appropriate to mention something described by Nikola Tesla in his U.S. Patent No. 685,958. This was filed on 21 March 1901 and granted on 5 November 1901. It was entitled: 'Apparatus for the Utilisation of Radiant Energy'. By installing two metal plates, one high above the ground and the other at ground level, with wires connecting the plates to separate electrodes of a capacitor, it was stated that the capacitor became charged to a very high potential, the energy input being that radiated to Earth from outer space. This may well have motivated the efforts of T. Henry Moray but, so far as this Applicant's invention is concerned, no such input from overhead components is necessary as a quite different energy source is at work, namely the zero-point vacuum energy activity of our quantum underworld.

Referring now to Fig. 1, two capacitors 1, 2 formed by concentric cylindrical metal electrodes and having their central axes parallel, form part of a resonant circuit combination by each being series-connected to an inductor 3, 4 having a ferrite core. Their inner electrodes are connected to a high-voltage DC source 5 and their outer electrodes are separately connected through their corresponding inductors to a low-voltage or earth terminal 6. A resistive load device 7 is connected via switch 8 between the junction points of the capacitors and inductors.

In operation, owing to spurious electrical signals induced in the inductors, or to an imposed electrical stimulus provided by means not shown, the priming electric charge of the two capacitors will develop oscillations as charge is exchanged between the two capacitors. There is energy inflow owing to the quantum coupling of electric charge displaced between the concentric electrodes of each capacitor and the quantum activity of the underworld of the enveloping aether. This affords an electrical energy output which is supplied upon closure of switch 8.
Referring to Fig.2, the inductors 3, 4 are shown to have a common ferrite core 9 and to have secondary windings 10,11, which, by transformer action, can supply electrical power output between terminals 12 and 13.

The apparatus of Fig.1 and Fig.2 will, when viewed in side elevation, appear as having a capacitor form with an outer cylindrical electrode within which there is a slightly elongated inner cylindrical electrode, to facilitate the high-voltage connection to that inner electrode. Fig.3 shows, in very simple diagrammatic form, two such arrangements 14, 15, with the central axes of the two pairs of capacitors mutually inclined. There may, however, be three or more such pairs of capacitors, each pair constituting a circuit such as is depicted in Fig.1 or Fig.2.

The reason for configuring multiple capacitor systems, each with its own power output, in a combined manner with the outputs merged to supply an overall energy producing system is that the aether energy output of each capacitor unit is a function of axis orientation. This is because the quantum activity of the aether has its own preferred axis and, as the Earth rotates there is variation of the relative axial orientation in a daily cycle. Also, one needs to cater for systems applying, this invention in a mobile application, which also implies change of orientation and by having; the mutually inclined capacitor axis configurations one can be assured that the potential power output avoids the null situation that can occur if the capacitor axes of a stand-alone unit of Fig.1 or Fig.2 were to be at right angles to the aether quantum spin axis.

The capacitor electrodes can be of thin metal sheet foam and so of light weight and preferably are not spaced apart by any dielectric medium, whether liquid or solid. They need to be held apart by a simple insulating frame structure. The reason is, that the only dielectric medium that is operative in the functioning of the invention is the vacuum medium and to have a normal dielectric present implies more capacitance and so extra current oscillation without extra energy gain per cycle of oscillation. The key factor assuring operation is the need for circuit resistance to be low compared with capacitance that is solely attributable to the vacuum medium combined with the high voltage priming which greatly enhances the power output to weight factor.
The two capacitors of a pair are preferably of identical capacitance and structure, as are the inductors, so that the oscillation period of the two resonant sectors of the circuit is the same. The common ferrite core feature of the Fig.2 configuration assists in this role.

The apparatus will normally be designed to operate at a capacitor frequency of the order of 100 KHz or more, and a voltage of 10,000 V or higher, and so the transformer output of Fig.2 will be preferable with voltage duly adjusted to suit the application. The high frequency AC so produced can then be converted as needed by using the appropriate technology of known form.

Appendix

Extract from pp. 30-31 of 'The Theory of Gravitation', 1960 printed publication by the Applicant. Note that the earlier pages explained that the aether comprises a system of electric particles in a cubic crystal-like distribution set in a uniform background continuum of opposite charge polarity, the particle system and the continuum both sharing a common circular orbital motion of radius \( r \) and the relative velocity between the particles and continuum being the speed of light.

The Effect of Aether Rotation

Consider what happens when a large volume of the aether is rotating bodily. The continuum and particle system rotate together. There will be no resultant magnetic moment unless the particle distribution is disturbed. An evident disturbance is the centrifugal effect arising from aether rotation, but for the angular velocities of magnitude found in the solar system this effect is of negligible consequence. A much more important effect arises from the synchronising interaction between particles in the rotating volume. This requires that the particles shall move about their neutral points at the same angular velocity. Thus if a particle is to have a velocity component \( V \) directed in the plane of its orbit, whilst retaining a mean velocity \( C/2 \), its speed along its orbit must be of the form \( C / 2 + V \cos \theta \), where \( \theta \) is the angle subtended by a line joining the particle and the centre of its orbit relative to a fixed reference datum in the inertial frame. To satisfy the above requirement the centre of the orbit cannot be the neutral point. Evidently the particle is distant from this neutral point by \( r + (2Vr/C) \cos \theta \). As \( V \) is much less than \( C \) the effect of this is that the particle is moving around a circular orbit whose centre has been displaced a distance \( 2Vr/C \) perpendicular to \( V \) in the plane of the orbit. If \( V \) is much less than \( w \times r \cos A \), where \( w \) is the angular velocity at which the aether rotates, \( x \) is the distance of the aether particle from the axis of rotation, and \( A \) is the angle of tilt of the axis to the common axial direction of the aether particle system, this displacement distance is \( 2(w x r / C) \cos A \). Consider a disc-like section of the rotating aether of radius \( x \) and unit thickness. Then, the effective charge displacement arising from the effective physical displacement of the particles is \( 2 \pi x (2w x r / C) \cos A \). The disc has acquired a uniform charge density of \( 4(w r s / C) \cos A \) esu/cc. The polarity of this charge depends upon the direction of rotation of the aether.

When evaluated from the aether data already presented, the charge density is found to be: \( 4.781 w \cos A \) esu/cc. This charge density represents a charge component which rotates with the aether.

Calculation of the Geomagnetic Moment

For Earth, \( w \) is \( 7.26 \times 10^{-5} \) rad/sec and \( A \) is \( 23.5^0 \). Thus the Earth’s charge density is, from the above expression, \( 0.000319 \) esu/cc. The rotation of this charge gives rise to a magnetic moment of:

\[
(0.000319)(4 \pi / 15)w R^5 / C
\]

where \( R \) is here the radius of the Earth's aether.

If \( R \) is greater than the Earth’s radius (\( 6.378 \times 10^8 \) cm) by a small factor \( k \), the Earth's theoretical magnetic moment becomes \( (1 + 5k)6.8 \times 10^{25} \) emu. This may be compared with the measured value of the Earth's magnetic moment of \( 8.06 \times 10^{25} \) emu.

An upper limit of 0.035 is imposed on \( k \) suggesting the Earth's aether terminates at a mean height of about 140 miles above the Earth's surface. This suggests that the ionosphere may be a phenomenon arising at the aether boundary.

Claims

1 An electric power delivery circuit comprising two capacitors each having a pair of electrodes formed by a pair of metal cylinders having concentric axes, each capacitor having an associated inductor series-
connected to it to form a capacitor-inductor unit, DC voltage excitation means connected to a parallel combination of the two capacitor-inductor units, whereby to apply between corresponding electrodes of the capacitors, a DC bias voltage which primes them with electric charge, and power output terminals, one at each point of connection between a capacitor and its associated inductor, whereby to provide for an AC power output owing to oscillations of electric charge between the two capacitors at the resonant frequency of the capacitor-inductor units.

2 An electric power delivery circuit comprising two capacitors, each having a pair of electrodes formed by a pair of metal cylinders having concentric axes, each capacitor having an associated inductor series-connected to it to form a capacitor-inductor unit, DC voltage excitation means connected to a parallel combination of the two capacitor-inductor units, whereby to apply between corresponding electrodes of the capacitors a DC bias voltage which primes them with electric charge, each inductor being the primary winding of an electrical transformer, the secondary winding of which, serves to provide an AC power output owing to oscillations of electric charge between the two capacitors at the resonant frequency of the capacitor-inductor units.

3 An electric power delivery circuit according to Claim 1 or 2, wherein the capacitors have no intervening solid dielectric medium separating their concentric electrodes.

4 An electric power delivery circuit according to Claim 1 or 2, wherein the capacitors have no intervening liquid dielectric medium separating their concentric electrodes.

5 An electric power delivery circuit according to Claim 1 or 2, wherein the two inductors are coupled electromagnetically by having a common ferrite core and their primary windings are connected to their associated capacitors in the polarity configuration which assures that, in their mutually resonant state, electric charge is exchanged between the two capacitors.

6 An electric power delivery circuit according to Claim 1 or 2, wherein the central axes of both cylindrical electrode capacitors are mutually parallel.

7 An electric power delivery system comprising a plurality of electric power delivery circuits according to Claim 6, wherein the central axes have different angular orientations as between the different circuits.

8 An electric power delivery system according to Claim 7, wherein the difference in angular orientation of the central axes is at least 60°.

Comment by Dr. Aspden on 19th March 2006:

OUR ENERGY FUTURE

A Message of Vital Importance
The website www.energyscience.org.uk presents a deliberately concise summary account of something of vital importance to the future of mankind. The world needs a new source of energy, one that is not an exhaustible commodity subject to powerplay as between nations. Yes, one can dream and then awake to say this is impossible, but I urge those with the necessary skills to heed what I have to say in my three messages below.

First, however, let me introduce myself. My name is Dr. Harold Aspden. I am retired and elderly but have had a lifelong scientific interest in fundamental physics relevant to the energy theme. My 6-year university education in U.K. was at Manchester University and Cambridge University (Trinity College). My 33-year working career in U.K. comprised 9 years with English Electric and 24 years with IBM. Though having high technical qualifications (see below), being interested in the specialised field of protecting inventions pertaining to electrical engineering, I became a Chartered Patent Agent and later a European Patent Attorney. My last 19 years with IBM were spent as Director of IBM's European Patent Operations. This was followed, in my early retirement, by 9 years as a Visiting Senior Research Fellow at Southampton University and thereafter my scientific interest has been a private pursuit evidenced by my writings as on this and my related websites. My formal qualifications are: B.Sc., Ph.D., C.Eng., F.I.E.E., F.I.Mech.E., C.Phys., M. Inst.P., C. Sci., Wh.Sc.
**Message No. 1:** Physicists have come to recognise that there exists a quantum underworld alive with energy and permeating all space. However, their related research aims merely at probing experimentally the spectrum of elementary particles that have a transient existence as a product of that energy activity. The reward they seek is recognition should new particles be discovered and, by their properties, reveal connections with other particles that help in formulating a new theory or verifying an existing theory. Sadly, they do not see that quantum underworld as a potential source of energy that we can harness. Nor have they understood how most of the energy shed in creating matter formed the elementary particle which bears the name proton and which, together with the electron, constitutes the hydrogen atom.

There is also a secret they have yet to fathom. It is the effect of creating a radial electric field centred on electrical charge around which that quantum underworld can develop a state of spin that causes it to shed energy. In the presence of a radial electric field set up by an electrically charge body, whatever constitutes that quantum underworld that permeates all space shares a motion like that of sequence dancers who keep in step with one another as they move around the dance floor, a synchronous motion, which, in the presence of that radial electric field can only be held if a secondary motion develops around an axis centred in that radial field.

In depth analysis of the physics involved, meaning the effect of the resulting radial electric field on that quantum underworld, then allows one to calculate the resulting rate of spin and thereby understand how the solar system was created.

How else could the Sun spinning about its own axis have come into existence? Here we have gravity attracting hydrogen atoms and pulling them so closely together that ionisation occurs, meaning freeing some electrons from their proton bonding, and so, because the mass of a proton is very much greater than that of the electron, creating a Sun having a body that is positively charged sitting within an outer shell of negative electron charge. Two free protons experience a mutual rate of gravitational acceleration that is 1836 times that experienced by the interaction of two electrons. The body of the Sun, therefore, has a uniform mass density and a uniform positive charge density enclosed within a compensating negative charge at its surface. This is because gravitational compaction forces balance the expansion forces attributable to electrostatic repulsion. It further means the presence of a radial electric field within the body of the Sun and, in turn, owing to the effect of this field on the space medium of the quantum underworld, this induces a state of spin accompanied by release of energy from that medium to feed the kinetic energy of that spin.

In depth analysis of the physics involved, meaning the effect of the resulting radial electric field on that quantum underworld, then allows one to calculate the resulting rate of spin and thereby understand how the solar system was created.

So, if the reader is a physicist, here is the way forward and full guidance on this is to be found on my parallel website [www.aspden.org](http://www.aspden.org) or in a new book of mine entitled Creation - The Physical Truth, that will be published in the near future. However, if the reader is not a physicist but has the technological aptitudes of the university-trained electrical engineer then it is Message No. 2 below that warrants attention.

**Message No. 2:** If it were possible to generate electrical energy by tapping an omnipresent medium it is surely to be expected that the occasional natural phenomenon might already have hinted at this possibility. Consider, therefore, the thunderball, a glowing spherical object sometimes seen, especially following a lightning storm. It appears aethereal in the sense that it can move unimpeded through matter, yet remains an enigma, an unsolved mystery of record in the annals of science. Lightning strokes are high current discharges which, as electrical engineers well know, can develop a 'pinch effect' squeezing the electron-carried current into a filamentary flow within a cylindrical channel of positively charged air. That implies a radial electric field, a pulsating radial electrical field if the discharge surges, a sure recipe for something to happen that could form a miniature Sun, the thunderball. So when we look at a thunderball we are looking at a natural phenomenon that has drawn energy from that quantum underworld of space, energy which is then dissipated, but energy shed by a process we can surely harness, once we understand the physics involved.

Scientists lacking the necessary imagination do not seek to understand how the thunderball is created and so they seldom write about it. So here we have something to think about. It is Nature's message telling us: "Produce a radial electric field, one that pulsates, and you can develop a spin that taps energy from the quantum underworld of space." As engineers, however, we need to be practical and, if possible, we should avoid trying to replicate a phenomenon that involves powerful electric discharges, if there are better ways in which to proceed.

So now I come to my primary theme in this Message No. 2. It is a brief survey of a few of the claims of record that have declared a mysterious energy gain and have features which I see as relevant to what has been said above. In particular I draw attention to the research findings of four different pioneers in what has come to be termed 'The Search for Free Energy', this being the title of a really excellent book by Keith Tutt, published by Simon & Schuster in 2001. Three of these are described in considerable detail in that work. I now ask you to keep in mind my reference to a radial electric field as I mention each of them below and do
realise that electrical structures of cylindrical form are a key feature.

Nikola Tesla is famous for his research concerning electromagnetic induction and high voltage solenoidal transformer apparatus (Tesla coils) and he is said to have demonstrated an automobile which derived its power by tapping energy from space. He did not disclose its design details and died leaving us with a mystery. Tesla coils comprise large solenoidal windings concentrically mounted and operate with high voltage pulsations between their cylindrical forms which must produce a pulsating radial electric field between those windings. So, although electromagnetic induction effects are the primary focus of attention, there is here scope for the electrical action described in Message No. 1 above. Tesla may well have stumbled experimentally upon a way of tapping energy from space, but without understanding the true underlying physical process.

Dr. Henry Moray, a pioneer of the 1920-1930 era, demonstrated something which merely needed a kind of antenna, a wire connected from tree tops to earth via electrical apparatus in the boot (trunk) of his automobile. It is said that the latter included several capacitors and that a kilowatt level of power was generated. In this case the automobile merely carried the test apparatus for demonstration at a location remote from a built-up area and any electrical power line interference. No doubt Moray was seeking to follow in Tesla's footsteps by drawing energy from the Earth's electric field, known to be measured in hundreds of volts per metre. It is likely that those capacitors were of Leyden jar type configuration, that is cylindrical in structural form, and that the wire linked to tree tops tapped charge at a kilovolt voltage level. However, the output power claimed could surely not have come from that source. Therefore one must assume that Moray used that treepoint voltage input merely to prime the voltage across his capacitor electrodes, whilst incorporating some special feature in the operation of his electrical circuit that gave access to the energy of the quantum underworld. Capacitors having concentric electrodes of cylindrical form will, when charged electrically, have a radial electric field in the space between the electrodes. Several capacitors coupled together could give rise to oscillations of charge as between the capacitors and so lead to a pulsating radial electric field. Yet though demonstrating as possible something that should not be possible, a mysterious inflow of energy able to illuminate several light bulbs, Moray could surely not have understood the true physical process that was feeding energy into his apparatus. Again I see this as relevant to what is stated in Message No. 1.

Stan Meyer demonstrated apparatus that included sets of concentric tubular electrodes enclosed in a cylindrical container filled with water, the electrodes being fed by high voltage (5 KV) pulses. Combustible gas was generated, a mixture of hydrogen and oxygen, the burning of which generated far more heat than could be accounted for by the electrical energy input. Energy was being tapped as if from nowhere unless the source was the ambient medium of space itself. Here there was a pulsating radial electric field and electric charge oscillating between different components in Meyer's apparatus. Meyer did not offer any useful explanation as to the physical process underlying what he could demonstrate but persisted in conveying the message that the invention was wonderful and talking about a multiplicity of applications such as powering automobiles, ships etc. This is the project not mentioned in Keith Tutt's book. As for the Tesla and Moray projects Meyer's research was a U.S. based activity. It did, however, attract the interest of a British Admiral, Admiral Tony Griffin who was concerned with the impact of new technology upon the marine industries. Griffin witnessed Meyer's demonstrations and was interested in its development. Indeed an article on the subject mentioning Admiral Griffin and entitled 'Free Energy forEver' was published in the January 1991 issue of the U.K. magazine Wireless World. The importance of the article was evident from the fact that the Editor of that magazine was the author.

Paul Baumann, a member of a Christian community in an isolated valley high in the Swiss Alps has constructed working free energy devices which have been demonstrated to visitors. The first working prototype was relatively small and included a pair of glass Leyden jars, concentric capacitors. Keith Tutt in his book devotes 30 pages to this subject. The high voltage needed to prime the capacitor operation was generated by a Wimshurst machine driven by the electric power generated. The community has, however, kept design details secret. In spite of such information as is available the underlying physical process governing its operation remains a mystery. Yet I can but feel confident that what I say in my Message No. 1 provides the answer.

**Message No. 3:** My Message No. 1 has drawn attention to the physical process by which the vast amount of energy needed to create the Sun was extracted from the quantum underworld that permeates all space. My Message No. 2 has drawn attention to the reported efforts of just some of the several energy research pioneers who actually demonstrated apparatus that, contrary to accepted scientific principles, drew energy from a mystery source. My Message No. 3, based on recognising the common physical feature can but be the suggestion that technology for generating our power needs from the hidden underworld of space has to be possible. Accordingly, I will now outline what I see as the basis on which to build the ultimate power.
generating device that harnesses the physical principles presented in Message No. 1.

Being 78 years of age and no longer having access to university research laboratory facilities, I can but leave it to others to take note and, hopefully, prove me right. If proved right then the world will benefit and the impending energy crisis will be avoided. Hopefully also, the scientific community might then be willing to accept my claim as to how the quantum underworld deploys its energy into proton creation and is active in producing the phenomenon of gravitation. I know of no other theory that has been able to derive theoretically the value 1836.152 of the proton/electron mass ratio. I would like to see that recognised as my contribution to man's knowledge.

Consider a capacitor formed by a pair of concentric cylindrical electrodes, something many of us remember from the school physics laboratory, the Leyden jar. However, the capacitor structure I have in mind is very much larger and has to be operated at a quite high voltage. When that voltage is applied between the electrodes electric charge is displaced in the underlying vacuum medium located between those electrodes. A commensurate amount of electric charge is thereby held in place on those electrodes, a negative polarity charge on one and a positive polarity charge on the other. Given my claim that this is accompanied by 'vacuum spin', aether rotation, which has imported an equal amount of energy owing to a quantum phase-lock as between the charge of the vacuum medium, we have the energy gain we seek to exploit.

The problem, however, is that, with this simple capacitor configuration, the only control parameter available is the reduction of the voltage between the electrodes. This will shed energy within the circuit of the apparatus used, the outflow of electric charge at the voltage difference merely delivering energy equal to that originally supplied by our voltage source. The added energy imported from space is merely dispersed by the 'vacuum spin' slowing down but expanding beyond the bounds of the capacitor electrodes as it conserves its angular momentum. The energy imported from the quantum underworld of space has no way of enhancing the energy output of the capacitor circuit and so is left to dissipate itself and eventually be reabsorbed by that quantum underworld that pervades all space.

However, now consider a concentric electrode capacitor having a third cylindrical electrode intermediate the inner and outer electrodes. Here we have a control parameter other than the voltage between the outermost and innermost electrodes, because we can wonder about the voltage of the central electrode whilst retaining the other voltage difference at a constant high level. In fact, by keeping the latter voltage difference constant but varying the voltage of the intermediate electrode we can decrease the capacitor energy of one half of the overall capacitor as that of the other half decreases. The imported energy shed by one half of the overall capacitor can then contribute to the action that energises the other half and thereby induce oscillations from which energy can be extracted and deployed as a power source.

One needs two such capacitors having their central electrodes coupled through a load circuit in order to capture the 'free energy' inflow and get it to do useful work rather than being dissipated. An inductance in the coupling circuit can determine the oscillation frequency and, since the energy inflow increases with frequency, this should no doubt be well into the kilocycle region. The figure below is a simple schematic diagram of the electrical apparatus that I have in mind.

So my Message No. 3 is what I may describe as a 'thought experiment', one that I cannot verify myself, owing to my age and lack of facilities. I therefore can but record my thoughts and hope that others will prove me right and not wrong.
The capacitors depicted in the figure should have their electrodes spaced so that the capacitance \( C \) as between their central and outermost electrodes is the same as the capacitance \( C \) between their central and innermost electrodes. Suppose that the outermost electrodes are maintained at a voltage of 20,000V relative to the innermost electrodes. This means that the two central electrodes will be at an intermediate voltage which we expect to be 10,000V in the absence of oscillations. However, as with any ever-active electrical system, there will be minor voltage fluctuations affecting the central electrodes. So we may ask what happens if the voltage of the central electrode of capacitor \( A \) decreases owing to electric charge being shed by the inner capacitance \( C \) but gained by the outer capacitance \( C \). Think about that for a moment. You will see that it implies reciprocal action in the opposite sense by capacitor \( B \), as current flows from \( A \) to \( B \) via the central inductor coupling. Yet no net current flows from the 20,000V power source.

Now, of course, common sense backed by our scientific training assures us that this system can but keep its equilibrium without those minor voltage fluctuations building up in some way. Yet, if we heed Message No. 1 and keep in mind Message No. 2, there is a question we must ask. If current does flow through that central link between \( A \) and \( B \), one half of \( A \) and one half of \( B \) both shed energy and so release the imported 'vacuum spin' energy, if such is present. This occurs as other halves of \( A \) and \( B \) have to gain energy and as angular momentum of the imported 'spin energy' spreads into the other sections of the capacitors. The question then is: "Does that imported energy escape, as it does for the two-electrode capacitor configuration, or might it be retained and so augment the action?"

I submit the answer can only be provided by actual experiment. If the energy does escape then there is nothing further to discuss. However, if some of that energy is captured then we can expect an escalation of oscillations in that inductive link and so can then say that a new source of energy has been discovered. Those oscillations will be a function of the capacitance \( C \) and the inductance of the load circuit. Given a high frequency and a high voltage a significant level of power per unit volume of capacitor structure will be produced. If power output at a level commensurate with the claims of Tesla, Moray, Meyer and Baumann results the world's energy future is then assured. A pollution-free energy resource powered by the quantum underworld of space will be at hand wherever we are on body Earth.

Paulo & Alexandra Correa have discovered a way of converting Tesla's longitudinal waves into ordinary electrical power. They have made US Patent Application 2006/0,082,334 entitled “Energy Conversion Systems” in which they show various ways of achieving this energy-type conversion.

Their techniques range from applying the longitudinal wave energy coming from a Tesla Coil directly to two capacitors via diode rectification and the voltages generated are related directly to actual ground earth potential:

![Diagram of Tesla Coil and Capacitors](image)

The patent application forms part of this set of documents so the full details can be examined. A theory of operation is presented based on their many experiments and observations, and the practical form of one of their conversion devices is:
Where the active pick-up plates $R$ and $T$ are encased in a cylinder and are provided with a cone shape to assist the procedure. The patent application contains a good deal of information and is worth reading.

**Professor Konstantin Meyl.** Another key person in the advancement of current theory and analysis is Professor Konstantin Meyl who has described how field vortices form scalar waves. He has described how electromagnetic waves (transverse waves) and scalar waves (longitudinal waves) both should be represented in wave equations. For comparison, transverse EM waves are best used for broadcast transmissions like television, while longitudinal scalar waves are better for one-to-one communication systems like cell phones.

He also presented the theory that neutrinos are scalar waves moving faster than the speed of light. When moving at the speed of light, they are photons. When a neutrino is slowed to below the speed of light, it becomes an electron. Neutrinos can oscillate between e- and e+. Fusion involves e-, and a lightning flash involves e+. Energy in a vortex acts as a frequency converter. The measurable mixture of frequencies is called noise.

Dr. Meyl has pointed out that Tesla measured the resonance of the Earth at 12 Hz. The Schumann resonance of the Earth is 7.8 Hz. Meyl shows how one can calculate the scalar wave of the Earth to be 1.54 times the speed of light. He has developed a model which ties the expansion of the earth to be the result of the earth’s absorption of neutrino energy. The ramifications of this model are that neutrino energy can be tapped. He took this to the next step and postulated that Zero Point Energy is neutrino power – energy from the field; available at anytime, and everywhere present. To show the place of neutrinos in conventional science, Meyl noted that the 2002 Nobel Physics prize was in regards to work on neutrinos. Dr. Meyl's website is at www.k-meyl.de and if you access it via Google, a rough translation into English is available.

**Nikola Tesla.** Tesla performed an experiment in which he applied high-voltage high-frequency alternating current to a pair of parallel metal plates. He found that the 'space' between the plates became what he described as "solid-state" exhibiting the attributes of mass, inertia and momentum. That is, the area transformed into a state against which a mechanical push could be exerted. This implied that, using this
technique, it should be possible to produce a spaceship drive anywhere in space, if the mechanism for thrusting against the ‘solid-state’ space could be determined. Further experiments convinced Tesla that powerful electromagnetic waves could be used to push against (and pull against) what appears to be ‘empty space’. The drive principle is based on the Hall-effect used in semiconductor magnetic sensors, and is called the magnetohydrodynamic (“MHD”) effect. This might be illustrated like this:

Here, a box is constructed with two metal plates forming opposite sides and two insulating plates holding them in position and surrounding an area of ‘space’. High-frequency, high-voltage alternating current is applied to the metal plates and this creates an electric field \( E \) acting between the plates as shown in black. A magnetic field \( B \) is generated by the electrical field. The magnetic field acts at right-angles to the electric field, as shown in blue. These two fields produce a propulsion thrust \( F \) shown in red in the diagram. This propulsion force is not produced by ejecting any matter out of the box, instead, it is produced by a reaction against the ‘solid-state’ condition of space-time caused by the high-frequency electromagnetic pulsing of that area of space. This is enormously more effective than a jet engine. The thrust increases with the fourth power of the frequency, so if you double the frequency, the effect is sixteen times greater.

To put this into perspective, consider the force being applied against gravity to lift an object into the air. The force pulling the object downwards is gravity and its strength is given by:

Gravitational force:

\[
F = g \times M \times \frac{m}{r^2}
\]

where

\( G \) is the gravitational constant (6.672 x 10^{-8} \text{ cm}^3 \text{ g}^{-1} \text{s}^{-2})

\( M \) is the mass of the first body

\( m \) is the mass of the second body and

\( r \) is distance between the two centres of mass

The lifting force is given by:
Lorentz Force: Force on an object = Electric force + Magnetic force

\[ F = q \times E + q \times v \times B \]

where
- \( q \) is the charge on the object,
- \( B \) is the magnetic field,
- \( v \) is the velocity of the object and
- \( E \) is the electric field

How do these forces compare? Well, the electromagnetic force is stronger than the gravitational force by a factor of about \( 2,200,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000 \) times. That number (\( 2.2 \times 10^{39} \)) is too big for anybody to really visualise, so let me put it another way.

If the amount of energy used to mechanically lift an object a distance of one hundredth of an inch (one quarter of a millimetre) off the ground, were used as an electromagnetic lifting force, then that amount of energy would lift the object more than \( 3,472,222,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000 \) miles off the ground, or in metric units, more than \( 5,588,001,700,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000 \) metres away from the ground. This kind of drive is an entirely different kind of animal. This Hall-effect type of drive if used in a spaceship would require only a very small amount of input power to drive the ship at great speeds and over great distances.

As the device shown above operates directly on the space-time field which penetrates all matter, there would appear to be no reason why it should not be used to drive a conventional vehicle by positioning it in a horizontal position rather than the vertical position shown in the diagram. Throttle operation could be by very slight adjustment to the frequency of the AC pulses applied to the metal plates. However, Bill Lyne indicates that horizontal movement is better achieved by producing Tesla’s very short, high-voltage high-frequency DC pulses at the front of the vehicle while at the same time generating very high-voltage high-frequency AC waves at the back of the vehicle. This style of drive is said to pull the vehicle along rather than push it along.

The Unified Field Theory is being searched for by scientists who want to come up with a theory which encompasses the force of gravity with the electromagnetic force. In my opinion, they would have more chance of success in trying to find a needle in a haystack which does not contain a needle since when the entire haystack has been disassembled, it becomes clear that there never was a needle in it. There is no such thing as a “force of gravity”, in fact, there is no such thing as gravity. Find that hard to believe? Well, let me explain.

If when standing, you hold an object a waist level and let it go, it “falls” and lands near your feet. Yes agreed, and yet there is no such thing as gravity. If you suspend a pendulum close to a mountain, the pendulum does not hang down vertically but moves slightly towards the mountain. This is said to be because the mountain attracts the pendulum. Sorry Chief, but that just ain't true - the mountain does not attract the pendulum. The Moon orbits around the Earth which requires a continuous acceleration inwards towards the Earth and this is said to be caused by the attraction of gravity pulling the two bodies of matter together. Well, yes the Moon does orbit the Earth but not because of "the force of gravity".

The reason why "the force of gravity" is so tiny compared to electromagnetism is because there is no such force at all. Yes, indeed, all of the observed phenomena which are supposed to be gravitational, do exist exactly as seen, but I assure you that there is no such thing as “the force of gravity” and the Unified Field Theory is not needed. Let me explain:

The Zero-Point Energy field exists everywhere in the universe and it flows in every direction equally. It acts like a flow of particles thousands of times more tiny than electrons, and so, it flows through matter. No matter can shield completely from the flow of this energy field. But, a tiny percentage of the flow does happen to collide with the electrons, atoms and molecules of matter as the energy flow moves through matter. The bigger the chunk of matter, the more of the energy flow collides with it. The collisions convert the energy into additional mass, which is why our Sun is not losing mass as rapidly as theory would predict. The situation is like this:
The force of the Zero-Point Energy field is slightly reduced having passed through (and interacted with) the large mass of the Earth. This reduced strength is indicated in the diagram by the light-blue arrows. The incoming Zero-Point Energy field is not reduced in strength in any significant way as the molecules in the atmosphere are not nearly as tightly packed as those in the matter which makes up the Earth itself. The imbalance of these two thrusts causes a net push towards the surface of the Earth.

For clarity, the diagram only shows the field acting in one direction, while in reality, the same situation applies in every possible direction around the planet. When you let an object go and it moves towards the surface of the planet, it is not being pulled down by the force of gravity, but instead, the downward push of the Zero-Point Energy field is greater than the upward push of the Zero-Point Energy field which has just passed through the planet. The object moves “downwards” because the push from above is greater than the push from below.

Exactly the same thing applies to cause the effect that a mountain appears to have on a pendulum. In reality, the mountain has no effect on the pendulum, apart perhaps from a minor electrostatic influence. The main effect is caused by the flow of the Zero-Point Energy field:

Here, the (very roughly drawn) mountain, reduces the push of the Zero-Point Energy field which passes through it, due to its interaction with the matter with which it collides on its trip through the mountain. The push of the Zero-Point Energy field on the side of the pendulum is not diminished, so there is a net push towards the mountain and that makes the pendulum move in the direction of the mountain. The effect is not very large, so the pendulum does not move much out of the vertical as the downward push towards the surface of the planet is quite marked, so the pendulum needs to be very near the mountain for this effect to be observed. This is sometimes expressed in different terms:
Tesla’s **Dynamic Theory of Gravity** (1897) states that all bodies emit microwaves whose voltage and frequency are determined by their electrical contents and relative motion. He measured the microwave radiation of the earth as being only a few centimetres in wavelength. He said that the frequency and voltage were influenced by the velocity and mass of the earth, and that its “gravitational” interaction with other bodies, such as the sun, was determined by the interaction of the microwaves between the two bodies.

If you find the concept of producing a driving force through pushing against the space-time continuum to be difficult to accept, then perhaps you should consider the US Patent granted to Boris Volfson on 1st November 2005. The important thing about this patent (which is crammed full of long words) is not whether or not it presents a realistic mechanism for a practical space drive, but the fact that the US Patent Office in the year 2005, granted the patent after what presumably was careful consideration. With that in view, it is hardly possible to consider Tesla to have been totally confused when he designed (and built) his “electric flying machine” which operated by pushing against the space-time field.

Tesla used high voltage at gigahertz frequencies for his electropulsion system. The propulsion of a vehicle powered by a Tesla drive is by the use of an additional AC generator at the back (which stiffens the space-time continuum behind the vehicle) and a DC ‘brush’ generator at the front (which weakens the space-time continuum in front, causing the vehicle to be pulled forwards).

Tesla was very astute. He deduced that ‘empty space’ actually contained:

1. Independent carriers which permeate all space and all matter and from which all matter is made. These carry momentum, magnetism, electricity or electromagnetic force, and can be manipulated artificially or by nature.
2. ‘Primary Solar Rays’ (starlight) which travel at the speed of light, having frequencies far above X-rays, gamma and UV radiation.
3. ‘Cosmic Rays’, particles in space propelled by the Primary Solar Rays.
4. X-rays, Gamma rays and UV electromagnetic waves, all of which travel at the speed of light.
5. Ordinary visible and Infra-Red electromagnetic waves which travel at the speed of light.
6. Rapidly varying electrostatic force of enormous potential, emanating from the earth and other gravitational bodies in space.

When we grasp the actual nature of the universe, it becomes clear that we have a much larger range of opportunities for producing usable energy in large quantities and at minimal cost.

Additional information can be found in Boris Volfson’s US Patent 6,960,975 of November 2005 “Space Vehicle Propelled by the Pressure of Inflationary Vacuum State” which is reproduced in the Appendix.

If you find the thought of generating a gravitational field, difficult to come to terms with, then consider the work of Henry Wallace who was an engineer at General Electric about 25 years ago, and who developed some incredible inventions relating to the underlying physics of the gravitational field. Few people have heard of him or his work. Wallace discovered that a force field, similar or related to the gravitational field, results from the interaction of relatively moving masses. He built machines which demonstrated that this field could be generated by spinning masses of elemental material having an odd number of nucleons -- i.e. a nucleus having a multiple half-integral value of h-bar, the quantum of angular momentum. Wallace used bismuth or copper material for his rotating bodies and “kinnemassic” field concentrators.

Aside from the immense benefits to humanity which could result from a better understanding of the physical nature of gravity, and other fundamental forces, Wallace’s inventions could have enormous practical value in countering gravity or converting gravitational force fields into energy for doing useful work. So, why has no one heard of him? One might think that the discoverer of important knowledge such as this would be heralded as a great scientist and nominated for dynamite prizes. Could it be that his invention does not work? Anyone can get the patents. Study them -- Wallace -- General Electric -- detailed descriptions of operations -- measurements of effects -- drawings and models -- it is authentic. If you are handy with tools, then you can even build it yourself. It does work.

**John R. R. Searle.** Professor John R.R. Searle of Britain developed an electrical generation system based on two rings of magnets being spun relative to one another. The magnet orientations oppose each other to produce a magnetic splatter field.

![Diagram of John R. R. Searle's electrical generation system](image)

The outer magnets in the diagram above are referred to as “rollers”. When three rings of rollers are placed one inside the other, then the outer ring rotates of its own accord, without any external power being applied. If pick-up coils are placed around the outside, then electrical current is generated with a COP of infinity. The method of imprinting the necessary magnetic pattern on both the rollers and the stators is a difficult and expensive process.

Dr. Terry Moore has recently built a replication model of this Searle technology and his model video is available at [http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=bb3N1epMG7A](http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=bb3N1epMG7A). The Searle device also demonstrates a gravitic effect and John has built what would loosely be described as a “flying disc” using this technology. If high voltage is applied to the device when it is rotating, then a surrounding corona develops and strong upward electrogravitic forces are generated.

**The Gravity Wave Detector.** It has been reported that Nikola Tesla made a device which allowed him to hear sounds at great distances. I have never seen any details of the circuitry used by Tesla. However, Dave Lawton has produced such a device, and he reports that he could hear conversations taking place four and a half miles away from him. Interestingly, the sounds from that distance were also travelling through a solid stone wall some three feet thick. The circuit for this device is described in this document.

In my opinion, the device is not picking up audio signals in the manner of a conventional microphone where air pressure waves vibrate a transducer, creating an electrical signal which is then amplified. The interesting thing is that it is distinctly possible that some other mechanism is coming into play here. This opinion is supported by the fact that Dave’s circuit is a very upgraded version of a monopole gravity-wave detector. Dave used this device to record the “sound” of the Shumaker-Levy comet colliding with Jupiter.

The circuit shown here is quite conventional electronically speaking, comprising of two 741 operational amplifiers connected as a two-stage amplifier. The unusual feature is where a small amount of white noise is being fed into the microphone input:
The white noise is generated by the 5-volt zener diode. The level of this white noise component is controlled by the 1.5 megohm variable resistor plus the 10K fixed limiting resistor. While the range of these two components is 10K to 1.501 Meg, the working setting is normally very high and so only a very small amount of white noise is fed into the input of the first 741 op. amp. to modify the microphone input.

The adjustment of this injection of white noise is the main control of this most unusual circuit, and it has been found that when the setting is just right, the circuit has the feel of a public address system just about to go unstable from positive feedback. The unit build looks like this:

The theory of operation was put forward by Gregory Hodowanec in the April 1986 issue of the Radio-Electronics Magazine, where he puts forward the theory that the source of noise in electronic devices is caused by gravitational waves and he suggests that there are monopole gravity waves. This does not oppose the gravity waves predicted by Einstein. Gregory views these monopole gravity waves as being much stronger than those suggested by Einstein, and consequently, much easier to detect.
He also suggests that monopole gravity waves have been seen for many years and have been described as “1/f noise” signals or “flicker noise”. These signals have also been called Microwave Background Radiation, supposedly caused by the “Big-Bang” though this cause is disputed by some.

Gregory views our universe as a finite, spherical, closed system, i.e. a black body. Monopole gravity waves propagate in Planck time so their effects appear everywhere almost simultaneously. Gravity wave energy can be imparted to ordinary objects. So it is suggested that the fact that a fully discharged electrolytic capacitor can develop a charge when disconnected from all circuitry, is down to the interaction of the capacitor with monopole gravity waves.

Gregory suggests the following circuit for examining monopole gravity waves:

![Gravity Wave Detector Circuit](image)

Details of this and the theory can be found at [www.rexresearch.com/hodorhys/remag86/remag86.htm](http://www.rexresearch.com/hodorhys/remag86/remag86.htm) Dave has taken that circuit and extended it substantially to give added gain plus a controlled feed of white noise, without relying on the characteristics of a capacitor, capacitors being notoriously variable in precise characteristics.

The unit is operated by turning the gain up until the circuit just reaches self-oscillation, and then backing the gain off very slightly. The white noise source is then adjusted until the unit is producing a somewhat echoing quality to the sound. The result is a device which has unusual characteristics. The circuitry is so simple and cheap, that you can easily try it out for yourself.

**The Butch Lafonte Motor / Generator.** Butch has designed an intriguing Motor / Generator system based on the balancing of magnetic and electrical forces. This clever design operates according to the following statements made by Butch:

1. If a magnet is moved away from an iron-cored coil, it generates a voltage:
The voltage generated for any given magnet and speed of movement, is directly proportional to the number of turns of wire which make up the coil.

2. If a magnet is moved away from an air-cored coil, it also generates a voltage. However, the big difference is that the voltage is of the opposite polarity. In other words, the plus and minus connections are swapped over:

Again, the voltage generated for any given magnet and speed of movement, is directly proportional to the number of turns of wire which make up the coil.

So, if these two arrangements are joined together, they produce a system where the voltages cancel each other exactly, provided that the number of turns in each coil are adjusted to produce exactly the same voltages. The mechanical attraction and repulsion forces also balance, so the circuit can be arranged to have no net effect when the rotor is rotated:

It follows then, that this motor arrangement could be introduced into an existing circuit without affecting the operation of that circuit. The arrangement would look like this:
Here, there is no net electrical or magnetic drag on the rotor as the magnets move away from the coils. The battery supplies current to the load in the normal way and rotor arrangement has no effect on the operation of the circuit.

However, when the rotor reaches 100° or so, past the coils, the On/Off switch can be opened. This leaves the rotor in an unbalanced condition, with there being an attraction between one magnet and the iron core of one coil. There is no matching repulsion between the other magnet and the air core of the other coil. This produces a rotational force on the rotor shaft, keeping it spinning and providing useful mechanical power which can be used to generate additional power. This extra mechanical power is effectively free, as the original circuit is not affected by the inclusion of the rotor system.

From a practical point of view, to give high rotational speed and long reliable life, the On/Off switch would need to be an FET transistor with electronic timing related to the rotor position.

There is no need for the rotor to have only two magnets. It would be more efficient if it had four:

Or better still, eight:
And if you are going to have eight, there is no need to have the V-shaped cut-outs which just create turbulence when spinning, so make the rotor circular:

And the stator supporting the coils matches the rotor:
Ferrite is a better material for the cores of the coils. The stators go each side of the rotors and the hole in the middle of the stators is to give clearance for the shaft on which the rotors are mounted:

A system of this type needs accurate timing which is solely related to the rate of rotation. This is best arranged by the use of a bistable multivibrator as described in the accompanying Electronics Tutorials. You will notice the two Timing Coils shown at the right hand side of the diagram above. These are used to toggle the bistable On and Off and they are adjustable in position so that both the On and the Off can be set very precisely. The output of the bistable is set to switch an FET transistor On and Off to give circuit switching which is not affected by either the switching rate or the number of times the switch is operated.

The Rotor / Stator combination can be wired to act as either a driving Motor or an electrical Generator. The difference is the addition of one diode:
With this arrangement, for each rotor, all four pairs of Cored coils are wired in parallel across each other, and all four Air-cored coils are wired in parallel across each other. To improve the clarity, the above diagram shows only one of the four pairs, but in reality, there will be four wires coming into the left hand side of each of the screw terminals.

In the case of the Generator arrangement, you have the option to connect each of the four pairs in parallel as in the Motor arrangement or to connect them in series. Connected in parallel, the coils can sustain a greater current draw, while if connected in series, they provide a higher voltage. The voltage could be further increased by increasing the number of turns on each coil.

Further details of this Motor / Generator can be seen on the web site:
http://www.theverylastpageoftheinternet.com/ElectromagneticDev/lafonte/lafonte.htm
**The Joseph Newman Motor.** Joseph Newman is a man who impresses me. He performs experiments, reports the results and then bases theoretical conclusions on the results of his own experiments. This is the true scientific method.

Joseph has been granted a patent and he has written a book. I would recommend that you buy a copy of his book and help support his work by doing that, but unfortunately, as I understand it, the printing plates for the book were destroyed in a fire and printed copies of his book are effectively unobtainable. You can download a .pdf version from [http://www.panaceauniversity.org/Newman.pdf](http://www.panaceauniversity.org/Newman.pdf) but please be aware that the file size is 100 Mb and so the download will take quite some time. A background download can be had from [http://www.megaupload.com/?d=5MF8ZFAJ](http://www.megaupload.com/?d=5MF8ZFAJ) or the alternative [http://www.megaupload.com/?d=2ZU2ZVM0](http://www.megaupload.com/?d=2ZU2ZVM0) link while the link to Joseph’s own web site is [http://www.josephnewman.com/](http://www.josephnewman.com/).

In very brief outline, Joseph has built a motor which access free energy. He has a theory about where the excess energy is coming from and how it is acquired by his designs. He has also built a large stationary motor to demonstrate his theory and he has built a motor into a car. The car engine runs on very minor battery power and can be seen at [http://video.google.co.uk/videoplay?docid=3091681211753181299&q=Newman+car&total=119&start=0&num=10&so=0&type=search&plindex=1](http://video.google.co.uk/videoplay?docid=3091681211753181299&q=Newman+car&total=119&start=0&num=10&so=0&type=search&plindex=1) Joseph’s patent is included in the Appendix.

---

**Daniel Cook.** In 1871, Daniel Cook obtained US Patent 118,825 for “An Improvement In Induction Coils”. It is by no means obvious how the device described could possibly operate, but as I have no direct evidence that it does not or cannot operate, it is shown here. Interestingly, the highly-respected Harold Aspden considers this a very serious piece of equipment, operating as paired cross-linked capacitors, and his opinion carries very considerable weight.

It is a very simple device which could be interesting to test, especially as it does not involve any electronics or complicated construction. The patent can be summarised as follows:

My invention relates to the combination of two or more, simple or compound, helical coils with iron cores or magnets, in such a manner as to produce a constant electric current without the aid of a battery.

**Fig.1** represents the different parts of a compound helical coil and iron core.
In carrying out my invention, I do not confine myself to any particular mode of coil construction or to any particular size of wire, observing only that the quantity of wire in the various coils must be sufficient to produce the required result; also, the material used to insulate the wires must be suitable for producing the required result. However, I generally prefer to use the same size of wire in the construction of both simple and compound coils.

When constructing simple coils, to produce the required voltage and current, it is desirable to use a long iron core as shown as A in Fig. 1. This iron core may be two, three or even six feet in length, and two, three or more inches in diameter. The coil should be wound from good quality copper wire, insulated with silk or
shellac. The iron core A may be a solid bar or a bundle of separate iron wires, the latter giving better results and providing more current for any given wire diameter. While the wire may be fine or coarse, I prefer to use No. 16 or even heavier wire, as the power output is in proportion to the length and diameter of the wire.

When using compound coils, it is preferable in some cases to use a small wire, say, No. 30 or even less, for the primary coil, and No. 16 or even larger for the secondary coil. With this combination, the initial secondary current of the primary coil being very small in comparison to the terminal secondary current of the secondary coil, offers little resistance to the terminal secondary, hence a quicker action is obtained. Alternatively, the primary coil may be of uninsulated wire coiled into a solid helix, being insulated only between the coils, in which case there is little or no opposing initial secondary current.

Helically wound coils alone with large quantities of wire will produce similar results. A ribbon spiral may be substituted for the secondary coil C, say, of three, six, twelve or twenty-four inches in width and of any convenient length, but always of sufficient length to raise its output current to the level necessary to sustain itself through its action on the primary coil B. In the use of compound coils, it is important that the secondary coil should be wound in the same direction as the primary coil, and the primary and secondary coils be cross-connected as shown in Fig.2. The action will then be as follows:

The secondary current of the secondary coil C, will circulate through the opposite primary coil B, while at the same instant, a secondary current from the primary coil B will be generated and circulate through the opposite secondary coil C, both currents flowing in the same direction in the opposite coils B and C, producing a combined magnetic action on the iron core A in the centre. The opposing initial secondary currents of the two coils B and C being overpowered, do not show in the main circuit D of the device, there being eight distinct currents developed in the action of one entire circuit of the two pairs of coils, two terminal and two initial secondary currents to each pair of coils, the four initial secondaries constantly opposing the circulation of the four terminal secondary currents, but the initial secondaries being of much lower voltage and current than those of the terminal secondary, are overcome, leaving a sufficient surplus terminal power to overcome the resistance of the primary wire and charge the bar A to the degree needed to reproduce itself in the opposite secondary coil. By this means, a constant current is kept flowing in all of the coils.

These coils may be constructed using 500 feet to 1,000 feet or more for each of the primary and secondary coils. The longer, and better insulated the wire, the greater is the power obtained from the device. The larger the wire diameter, the greater the current obtained.

If only single coils are to be used, it is preferable to have a wire length of 1,000 feet or more in each coil. The action is the same as with the compound coils, but only four currents are produced: two initial and two terminal currents, the latter flowing constantly in the same direction - in effect, there being only one current in the same direction.

The action in the coils may be started by using a permanent magnet, an electromagnet or by pulsing an extra coil wound around the outside of one of the coils of the device. If the load circuit is broken for any reason, the current stops immediately. It is then necessary to perform the start-up procedure again to get the device restarted. This can be overcome by permanently connecting a resistor across the terminal of the load so that if the load circuit is broken, the device can continue under very much reduced current until the load is restored. By this means, the device becomes the direct equivalent of a battery.

A rheostat D may be introduced into the main circuit to limit the current and prevent the overheating of the coils through the drawing of excessive amounts of current. The iron cores may also be used for producing electromagnetic motion when the device is operating.

Note: Interesting replication attempts are shown at http://www.overunity.com/index.php/topic,2630.0.html.
Chapter 12: Basic Electronics

Introduction
This document is not an in-depth presentation of the subject of electronics. Instead, it is intended to give you sufficient (empirical) knowledge of the subject to be able to understand, design and build simple circuits such as the control circuits used with the ‘Free Energy’ devices described in the later parts of this document.

Disclaimer
These documents are provided for information purposes only. Should you decide to attempt construction of some device based on information presented here and injure yourself or any other person, I am not liable in any way. To clarify this; should you construct something in a heavy box and drop it on your toe, I am not liable for any injury you may sustain (you should learn to be more careful). If you attempt to construct some electronic circuit and burn yourself with the soldering iron, I am not liable. Also, I strongly recommend that unless you are expert in electronics, you do not construct any device using, or producing more than 12 Volts - high voltage circuits are extremely dangerous and should be avoided until you gain experience or can obtain the help and supervision of a person experienced in constructing high voltage circuits.

Voltage. Voltage is the key to understanding electronics. Without voltage, nothing happens in electronics. What is it? Nobody knows. We know how to generate it. We know what it does. We know how to measure it, but nobody knows what it actually is.

It is also called “Electro Motive Force” or “EMF” which is no help whatsoever in knowing what it is. That, is roughly equivalent to saying “the thing that pushes is the thing that pushes” - very true but absolutely no help whatsoever. OK, having admitted that we really don't know what it is, we can start to say the things we do know about it:

A new battery has a voltage between its terminals. This voltage is said to cause a current to flow through any complete electrical circuit placed across it. The current flowing through the circuit can cause various things to happen such as creating light, creating sound, creating heat, creating magnetism, creating movement, creating sparks, etc., etc.

By using the current caused by a voltage, a device called a ‘Voltmeter’ can indicate how big the voltage is. The bigger the voltage, the bigger the current and the bigger the display on the voltmeter. The voltmeter can have a numerical display where you read the voltage directly from the display, or it can be an ‘analogue’ voltmeter where the voltage is shown by the position of a needle on a scale. The size of the voltage is stated in 'Volts' which is a unit of measurement named after the man Volta who introduced voltage to the world (it was always there, we just did not know about it).

Voltages add up if they are connected the same way round, i.e. with the + terminals all facing the same way:

The physical size of the battery usually determines the length of time it can supply any given current - the bigger the battery, the longer it can provide any given current. A battery is constructed from a number of ‘cells’. The number of cells in the battery controls the voltage of the battery. For example, an ‘AA’ size battery (what used to be called a ‘penlight’ battery) has a single ‘cell’ and so produces 1.5 Volts when new. The very much larger and heavier ‘D’ battery also has just one cell and so it also produces 1.5 Volts when new. The difference (apart from the higher cost of the ‘D’ cell) is that the larger cell can provide a much higher current if both batteries are discharged over the same period of time.
There are several different types of battery construction. A rechargeable NiCad battery has a single cell but its construction method means that it produces about 1.35 Volts when fully charged. In passing, NiCad batteries have a ‘memory’ characteristic which means that if they are recharged before they are fully discharged, then the next time they are discharged they run out of power at the voltage level it had when the last charging was started. Consequently, it is a good idea to fully discharge a NiCad battery before charging it again.

Car and motorcycle batteries are described as Lead/Acid batteries. This type of construction is not very convenient being large, heavy and potentially corrosive. The big advantages are the ability to provide very high currents and giving 2.0 Volts per cell. These batteries are normally produced as 6 Volt or 12 Volt units. The Amp-Hours for lead/acid car batteries is usually quoted for a 20 hour discharge period, so a fully charged, new, 20Ah battery can provide 1 Amp for 20 hours of continuous use. That battery loaded to give 5 Amps, will not provide that current for 4 hours but might only last 2 hours, or perhaps a little better. The manufacturers literature should give an indication of the performance, but if it is important, run your own test to see how the battery actually works in practice.

“Mains units” are known in the electronics world as “Power Supply Units” or “PSUs” for short. These convert the mains voltage (220 Volts in UK, 110 Volts in USA) to some convenient low voltage; 12 Volts, 9 Volts, 6 Volts, or whatever is needed. A mains unit can provide several different voltages simultaneously.

Resistance. Being familiar with Voltage and Resistance is the key to understanding electronic circuitry. Resistance is a measure of how difficult it is for current to flow through something. Some materials such as glass, ceramics, wood and most plastics do not easily carry a current and so are considered to be ‘insulators’. That is why you will see power lines hung from their pylons by a series of ceramic discs. Current flows easily through metals, especially along the surface of the metal, so cables are made from metal wires surrounded by a layer of plastic insulation. The higher grade cables have wire cores made up of many small-diameter strands as this increases the surface area of the metal for any given cross-sectional area of the metal core (it also makes the cable more flexible, and generally, more expensive).

There is a very important, third group of materials, silicon and germanium in particular, which fall between conductors and insulators. Not surprisingly, these are called ‘semi-conductors’ and the amount of current they can carry depends on the electrical conditions in which they are placed. Much, much more about this later on.

While a metal wire carries current very well, it is not perfect at the job and so has some ‘resistance’ to current flowing through it. The thicker the wire, the lower the resistance. The shorter the wire, the lower the resistance. The first researchers used this characteristic to control the way circuits operated. Sometimes, as higher resistances were needed, the researcher used to need long lengths of wire which would get tangled up. To control the wire, a board with nails along each side was used and the wire wound backwards and forwards across the board like this:

![Resistor symbol](image)

When drawing a circuit diagram, the researcher would sketch the wire on the board giving a zig-zag line which is still used today to represent a ‘resistor’ although different methods of construction are now used. An alternative symbol for a resistor is a plain rectangle as shown above.

If a resistor is connected across a battery, a circuit is formed and a current flows around the circuit. The current cannot be seen but that does not mean that it is not there. Current is measured in ‘Amps’ and the instrument used to display it is an ‘ammeter’. If we place an ammeter in the circuit, it will show the current flowing around the circuit. In passing, the ammeter itself, has a small resistance and so putting it in the circuit does reduce the current flow around the circuit very slightly. Also shown is a bulb. If the current flowing around the circuit is sufficiently high and the bulb chosen correctly, then the bulb will light up, showing that current is flowing, while the ammeter will indicate exactly how much current is flowing:
Shown on the right, is the way that this circuit would be shown by an electronics expert (the ‘Resistor’, ‘Ammeter’ and ‘Lamp’ labels would almost certainly not be shown). There are several different styles of drawing circuit diagrams, but they are the same in the basic essentials. One important common feature is that unless there is some very unusual and powerful reason not to do so, every standard style circuit diagram will have the positive voltage line horizontally at the top of the diagram and the negative as a horizontal line at the bottom. These are often referred to as the positive and negative ‘rails’. Where possible, the circuit is drawn so that its operation takes place from left to right, i.e. the first action taken by the circuit is on the left and the last action is placed on the right.

Resistors are manufactured in several sizes and varieties. They come in ‘fixed’ and ‘variable’ versions. The most commonly used are the ‘fixed’ carbon ‘E12’ range. This is a range of values which has 12 resistor values which repeat: 10, 12, 15, 18, 22, 27, 33, 39, 47, 56, 68, 82 and then: 100, 120, 150, 180, 220, 270, 330, 390, 470, 560, 680, 820 and then: 1000, 1200, 1500, 1800, 2200, 2700, 3300, 3900, 4700, 5600, 6800, 8200, etc. etc. Nowadays, circuits often carry very little power and so the resistors can, and are, made in very small physical sizes. The higher the resistance value of a resistor, the less current will flow through it when a voltage is placed across it. As it can be difficult to see printing on small resistors clustered together on a circuit board and surrounded by other larger components, the resistor values are not written on the resistors, instead, the resistors are colour-coded. The unit of measurement for resistors is the ‘ohm’ which has a very small size. Most resistors which you encounter will be in the range 100 ohms to 1,000,000 ohms. The higher the resistance of any resistor, the smaller the current which will flow through it.

The colour code used on resistors is:

- 0 Black
- 1 Brown
- 2 Red
- 3 Orange
- 4 Yellow
- 5 Green
- 6 Blue
- 7 Purple (Violet if your colour vision is very good)
- 8 Grey
- 9 White

Each resistor has typically, three colour bands to indicate its value. The first two bands are the numbers and the third band is the number of noughts:

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Colour</th>
<th>Value Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Value: 5,600 ohms or 5.6K or 5K6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blue</td>
<td>Value: 4,700,000 ohms or 4.7M or 4M7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red</td>
<td>Value: 5M</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Colour</th>
<th>Value Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Value: 5,600 ohms or 5.6K or 5K6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blue</td>
<td>Value: 4,700,000 ohms or 4.7M or 4M7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red</td>
<td>Value: 5M</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The colour bands are read from left to right and the first band is close to one end of the body of the resistor. There is often a fourth band which indicates the manufacturing tolerance: you can ignore that band.

Examples:

Red, Red, Red: 2 2 00 ohms or 2K2
Yellow, Purple, Orange: 4 7 000 ohms or 47K
Black, Brown, Brown: 1 0 0 ohms or 100R
Orange, Orange, Orange: 3 3 000 ohms or 33K
Brown, Green, Red: 1 5 00 ohms or 1K5
Brown, Green, Black: 1 5 no noughts, or 15 ohms
Blue, Grey, Orange: 6 8 000 ohms or 68K
Brown, Green, Green: 1 5 00000 ohms or 1,500,000 ohms or 1M5
Yellow, Purple, Brown: 4 7 0 ohms

As there are only 12 standard resistor values per decade, there are only 12 sets of the first two colour bands:
22: Red/Red, 27: Red/Purple
33: Orange/Orange, 39: Orange/White
47: Yellow/Purple
56: Green/Blue
68: Blue/Grey
82: Grey/Red
We now come to the interesting part: what happens when there are several resistors in a circuit. The important thing is to keep track of the voltages generated within the circuit. These define the currents flowing, the power used and the way in which the circuit will respond to external events. Take this circuit:

What is the voltage at point 'A'? If you feel like saying "Who cares?" then the answer is "you" if you want to understand how circuits work, because the voltage at point 'A' is vital. For the moment, ignore the effect of the voltmeter used to measure the voltage.

If R1 has the same resistance as R2, then the voltage at 'A' is half the battery voltage, i.e. 4.5 Volts. Half the battery voltage is dropped across R1 and half across R2. It does not matter what the actual resistance of R1 or R2 is, as long as they have exactly the same resistance. The higher the resistance, the less current flows, the longer the battery lasts and the more difficult it is to measure the voltage accurately.

There is no need to do any calculations to determine the voltage at point "A" as it is the ratio of the resistor values which determines the voltage. If you really want to, you can calculate the voltage although it is not necessary. The method for doing this will be shown you shortly. For example, if R1 and R2 each have a value of 50 ohms, then the current flowing through them will be 9 volts / 100 ohms = 0.09 Amps (or 90 milliamps). The voltage drop across R1 will be 50 ohms = Volts / 0.09 amps or Volts = 4.5 volts. Exactly the same calculation shows that the voltage across R2 is exactly 4.5 volts as well. However, the point to be stressed here is that it is the ratio of R1 to R2 which controls the voltage at point "A".
If R1 has half as much resistance as R2, then half as much voltage is dropped across it as is dropped across R2, i.e. 3 Volts is dropped across R1, giving point ‘A’ a voltage of 6 Volts and that is what the voltmeter will show. Again, it does not matter what the actual value of R1 is in ohms, so long as R2 has exactly twice the resistance (shown by a higher number on the resistor).

If R1 has twice as much resistance as R2, then twice as much voltage is dropped across it as is dropped across R2, i.e. 6 Volts is dropped across R1, giving point ‘A’ a voltage of 3 Volts. Here are some examples with different resistors:

![Resistor Circuit Diagram]

The same division of the supply voltage can be produced by positioning the slider of a variable resistor at different points by rotating the shaft of the device:

![Variable Resistor Circuit Diagram]

This principle applies immediately to the following circuit:
Here we encounter two new components. The first is ‘VR1’ which is a variable resistor. This device is a resistor which has a slider which can be moved from one end of the resistor to the other. In the circuit above, the variable resistor is connected across the 9 Volt battery so the top of the resistor is at 9 Volts and the bottom is at 0 Volts. The voltage on the slider can be adjusted from 0 Volts to 9 Volts by moving it along the resistor.

The second new device is ‘TR1’ a transistor. This semiconductor has three connections: a Collector, a Base and an Emitter. If the base is disconnected, the transistor has a very high resistance between the collector and the emitter, much higher than the resistance of resistor ‘R1’. The voltage dividing mechanism just discussed means that the voltage at the collector will therefore, be very near to 9 Volts - caused by the ratio of the transistor’s Collector/Emitter resistance compared to the resistor “R2”.

If a small current is fed from the base to the emitter, the resistance between the collector and the emitter drops almost instantly to a very low value, much, much lower than the resistance of resistor ‘R2’. This means that the voltage at the collector will be very close to 0 Volts. The transistor is described as having ‘switched on’. This state can be set by moving the slider of the variable resistor very slowly upwards to reach the switch-on point. This will be at a base/emitter voltage of 0.7 Volts, or so. The transistor can therefore be switched on and off just by rotating the shaft of the variable resistor.

If a bulb is used instead of R2, then it will light when the transistor switches on. If a relay or opto-isolator is used, then a second circuit can be operated. If a buzzer is substituted for R2, then an audible warning will be sounded when the transistor switches on. If a opto-resistor is substituted for VR1, then the transistor will switch on when the light level increases or decreases, depending on how the sensor is connected. If a thermistor is used instead of VR1, then the transistor can be switched on by a rise or fall in temperature. Ditto, for sound, windspeed, water speed, vibration level, etc. etc. - more of this later.

We need to examine the resistor circuit in more detail:
We need to be able to calculate what current is flowing around the circuit. This can be done using “Ohms Law” which states that “Resistance equals Voltage divided by Current” or, if you prefer:

“Ohms = Volts / Amps” which indicates the units of measurement.

In the circuit above, if the voltage is 9 Volts and the resistor is 100 ohms, then by using Ohm’s Law we can calculate the current flowing around the circuit as 100 Ohms = 9 Volts / Amps, or Amps = 9 / 100 which equals 0.09 Amps. To avoid decimal places, the unit of 1 milliamp is used. There are 1000 milliamps in 1 Amp. The current just calculated would commonly be expressed as 90 milliamps which is written as 90 mA.

In the circuit above, if the voltage is 9 Volts and the resistor is 330 ohms, then by using Ohm’s Law we can calculate the current flowing around the circuit as 330 = 9 / Amps. Multiplying both sides of the equation by “Amps” gives: Amps x 330 ohms = 9 volts. Dividing both sides of the equation by 330 gives: Amps = 9 volts / 330 ohms which works out as 0.027 Amps, written as 27 mA.

Using Ohm’s Law we can calculate what resistor to use to give any required current flow. If the voltage is 12 Volts and the required current is 250 mA then as Ohms = Volts / Amps, the resistor needed is given by: Ohms = 12 / 0.25 Amps which equals 48 ohms. The closest standard resistor is 47 ohms (Yellow / Purple / Black).

The final thing to do is to check the wattage of the resistor to make sure that the resistor will not burn out when connected in the proposed circuit. The power calculation is given by:

Watts = Volts x Amps. In the last example, this gives Watts = 12 x 0.25, which is 3 Watts. This is much larger than most resistors used in circuitry nowadays.

Taking the earlier example, Watts = Volts x Amps, so Watts = 9 x 0.027 which gives 0.234 Watts. Again, to avoid decimals, a unit of 1 milliwatt is used, where 1000 milliwatts = 1 Watt. So instead of writing 0.234 Watts, it is common to write it as 234 mW.

This method of working out voltages, resistances and wattages applies to any circuit, no matter how awkward they may appear. For example, take the following circuit containing five resistors:

As the current flowing through resistor ‘R1’ has then to pass through resistor ‘R2’, they are said to be ‘in series’ and their resistances are added together when calculating current flows. In the example above, both R1 and R2 are 1K resistors, so together they have a resistance to current flow of 2K (that is, 2,000 ohms).

If two, or more, resistors are connected across each other as shown on the right hand side of the diagram above, they are said to be ‘in parallel’ and their resistances combine differently. If you want to work out the equation above, for yourself, then choose a voltage across Rt, use Ohm’s Law to work out the current through Ra and the current through Rb. Add the currents together (as they are both being drawn from the voltage source) and use Ohm’s Law again to work out the value of Rt to confirm that the 1/Rt = 1/Ra + 1/Rb + .... equation is correct. A spreadsheet is included which can do this calculation for you.

In the example above, R4 is 1K5 (1,500 ohms) and R5 is 2K2 (2,200 ohms) so their combined resistance is given by 1/Rt = 1/1500 + 1/2200 or Rt = 892 ohms (using a simple calculator). Apply a common-sense check to this result: If they had been two 1500 ohm resistors then the combined value would have been 750 ohms. If they had been two 2200 ohm resistors then the combined value would have been 1100 ohms. Our answer must therefore lie between 750 and 1100 ohms. If you came up with an answer of, say, 1620 ohms, then you know straight off that it is wrong and the arithmetic needs to be done again.

So, how about the voltages at points ‘A’ and ‘B’ in the circuit? As R1 and R2 are equal in value, they will
have equal voltage drops across them for any given current. So the voltage at point ‘A’ will be half the battery voltage, i.e. 6 Volts.

Now, point ‘B’. Resistors R4 and R5 act the same as a single resistor of 892 ohms, so we can just imagine two resistors in series: R3 at 470 ohms and R4+R5 at 892 ohms. Common-sense rough check: as R3 is only about half the resistance of R4+R5, it will have about half as much voltage drop across it as the voltage drop across R4+R5, i.e. about 4 Volts across R3 and about 8 Volts across R4+R5, so the voltage at point ‘B’ should work out at about 8 Volts.

We can use **Ohm’s Law** to calculate the current flowing through point ‘B’:

\[
\text{Ohms} = \frac{\text{Volts}}{\text{Amps}}, \quad \text{or} \quad \text{Amps} = \frac{\text{Volts}}{\text{Ohms}} \quad \text{or} \quad \text{Volts} = \text{Ohms} \times \text{Amps}
\]

\[(470 + 892) = \frac{12}{\text{Amps}}, \text{ so}
\]

\[\text{Amps} = \frac{12}{(470 + 892)}
\]

\[\text{Amps} = \frac{12}{1362} \text{ or}
\]

\[\text{Amps} = 0.00881 \text{ Amps (8.81 milliamps)}.
\]

Now that we know the current passing through (R4+R5) we can calculate the exact voltage across them:

\[\text{Resistance} = \frac{\text{Volts}}{\text{Amps}} \text{ so}
\]

\[892 = \frac{\text{Volts}}{0.00881} \text{ or}
\]

\[\text{Volts} = 892 \times 0.00881
\]

\[\text{Volts} = 7.859 \text{ Volts}.
\]

As our common-sense estimate was 8 Volts, we can accept 7.86 Volts as being the accurate voltage at point ‘B’.

**The Potentiometer.** Just before we leave the subject of resistors and move on to more interesting subjects, we come across the term ‘potentiometer’. This term is often shortened to ‘pot’ and many people use it to describe a variable resistor. I only mention this so that you can understand what they are talking about. A variable resistor is not a potentiometer and really should not be called one. You can skip the rest of this part as it is not at all important, but here is what a potentiometer is:

A fancy name for voltage is ‘potential’, so a circuit powered by a 12 Volt battery can be described as having a ‘potential’ of zero volts at the negative side of the battery and a ‘potential’ of plus twelve volts at the positive side of the battery. Ordinary folks like me would just say ‘voltage’ instead of ‘potential’.  

When a voltmeter is used to measure the voltage at any point in a circuit, it alters the circuit by drawing a small amount of current from the circuit. The voltmeter usually has a high internal resistance and so the current is very small, but even though it is a small current, it **does** alter the circuit. Consequently, the measurement made is not quite correct. Scientists, in years gone by, overcame the problem with a very neat solution - they measured the voltage without taking **any** current from the circuit - neat huh? They also did it with a very simple arrangement:
They used a sensitive meter to measure the current. This meter is built so that the needle is in a central position if no current is flowing. With a positive current flowing, the needle deflects to the right. With a negative current flowing, the needle moves to the left. They then connected a variable resistor ‘VR1’ across the same battery which was powering the circuit. The top end of VR1 is at +12 Volts (they called that ‘a potential of +12 Volts’) and the bottom end of VR1 is at zero volts or ‘a potential of zero volts’.

By moving the slider of VR1, any voltage or ‘potential’ from zero volts to +12 Volts could be selected. To measure the voltage at point ‘A’ without drawing any current from the circuit, they would connect the meter as shown and adjust the variable resistor until the meter reading was exactly zero.

Since the meter reading is zero, the current flowing through it is also zero and the current taken from the circuit is zero. As no current is being taken from the circuit, the measurement is not affecting the circuit in any way - very clever. The voltage on the slider of VR1 exactly matches the voltage at point ‘A’, so with a calibrated scale on the variable resistor, the voltage can be read off.

The slick piece of equipment made up from the battery, the variable resistor and the meter was used to measure the ‘potential’ (voltage) at any point and so was called a ‘potentiometer’. So, please humour me by calling a variable resistor a ‘variable resistor’ and not a ‘potentiometer’. As I said before, this is not at all important, and if you want to, you can call a variable resistor a ‘heffalump’ so long as you know how it works.

**Semiconductors.** This section deals with discrete semiconductors. A later section deals with ‘Integrated Circuits’ which are large-scale semiconductor devices.

**ORP12 Light-dependent resistor.** This device has a high resistance in the dark and a low resistance in bright light. It can be placed in a circuit to create a switch which operates with an increase in light level or a decrease in light level:

![Light-operated switch diagram]

In this version, the voltage at point ‘A’ controls the circuit. In darkness, the ORP12 has a resistance ten times greater than that of R1 which is 12,000 ohms. Consequently, the voltage at point 'A' will be high. As the light level increases, the resistance of the ORP12 falls, dragging the voltage at point ‘A’ downwards. As the variable resistor ‘VR1’ is connected from point ‘A’ to the ground rail (the -ve of the battery), its slider can be moved to select any voltage between 0 Volts and the voltage of ‘A’. A slider point can be chosen to make the transistor switch off in daylight and on at night. To make the circuit trigger when the light level increases, just swap the positions of R1 and the ORP12.

The transistor shown is a BC109 although most transistors will work in this circuit. The BC109 is a cheap, silicon, NPN transistor. It can handle 100mA and 30V and can switch on and off more than a million times per second. It has three connections: the Collector, marked ‘c’ in the diagram, the Base, marked ‘b’ in the diagram and the Emitter, marked ‘e’ in the diagram.

As mentioned before, it has a very high resistance between the collector and the emitter when no current flows into the base. If a small current is fed into the base, the collector/emitter resistance drops to a very low value. The collector current divided by the base current is called the ‘gain’ of the transistor and is often called ‘hfe’. A transistor such as a BC109 or a BC108 has a gain of about 200, though this varies from actual transistor to actual transistor. A gain of 200 means that a current of 200mA passing through the collector requires a current of 1mA through the base to sustain it. Specific information on the characteristics and connections of semiconductors of all kinds can be obtained free from the excellent website www.alldatasheet.co.kr which provides .pdf information files.
The BC109 transistor shown above is an NPN type. This is indicated by the arrow of the symbol pointing outwards. You can also tell by the collector pointing to the positive rail. There are similar silicon transistors constructed as PNP devices. These have the arrow in the transistor symbol pointing inwards and their collectors get connected, directly or indirectly, to the negative rail. This family of transistors are the earliest transistor designs and are called ‘bi-polar’ transistors.

These silicon transistors are so efficiently constructed that they can be connected directly together to give greatly increased gain. This arrangement is called a ‘Darlington pair’. If each transistor has a gain of 200, then the pair give a gain of 200 x 200 = 40,000. This has the effect that a very, very small current can be used to power a load. The following diagram shows a Darlington pair used in a water-level detector. This type of alarm could be very useful if you are asleep on a boat which starts taking on water.

Here, (when the circuit is switched on), transistor TR1 has so little leakage current that TR2 is starved of base current and is hard off, giving it a high resistance across its collector/emitter junction. This starves the buzzer of voltage and keeps it powered off. The sensor is just two probes fixed in place above the acceptable water level. If the water level rises, the probes get connected via the water. Pure water has a high electrical resistance but this circuit will still work with pure water.

The odds are that in a practical situation, the water will not be particularly clean. The resistor R1 is included to limit the base current of TR1 should the sensor probes be short-circuited. Silicon bi-polar transistors have a base/emitter voltage of about 0.7V when fully switched on. The Darlington pair will have about 1.4V between the base of TR1 and the emitter of TR2, so if the sensor probes are short-circuited together, resistor R1 will have 6 - 1.4 = 4.6V across it. Ohms Law gives us the current through it as $\frac{V}{A} = \frac{4.6}{47,000}$ or $A = 0.098$ mA which with a transistor gain of 40,000 would allow up to 3.9A through the buzzer. As the buzzer takes only 30mA or so, it limits the current passing through it, and TR2 can be considered to be switched hard on with the whole battery voltage across it.

NPN transistors are more common than PNP types but there is almost no practical difference between them. Here is the previous circuit using PNP transistors:

Not a lot of difference. Most of the circuit diagrams shown here use NPN types but not only are these not critical, but there are several ways to design any particular circuit. In general, the semiconductors shown in any circuit are seldom critical. If you can determine the characteristics of any semiconductor shown, any reasonably similar device can generally be substituted, especially if you have a general understanding of
how the circuit works. Either of the two previous circuits can operate as a rain detector. A suitable sensor can easily be made from a piece of stripboard with alternate strips connected together to form an interlacing grid:

Here, if a raindrop bridges between any two adjacent strips, the circuit will trigger and sound a warning.

The transistors in the circuit above are connected with their emitter(s) connected to the ground rail (the lower battery line shown in any circuit is considered to be “ground” unless it is specifically shown elsewhere). This connection method is called ‘common emitter’. The following circuit uses the transistor connected in ‘emitter follower’ mode. This is where the emitter is left to follow the base voltage - it is always 0.7V below it unless the base itself is driven below 0.7V:

This is almost the same as the light-operated circuit shown earlier. In this variation, the transistors are wired so that they work as an ‘emitter-follower’ which follows the voltage at point ‘A’ which rises as the light level drops and the resistance of the ORP12 increases. This causes the voltage across the relay to increase until the relay operates and closes its contacts. A relay is a voltage-operated mechanical switch which will be described in more detail later on.

The disadvantage of the above circuit is that as the light level decreases, the current through the relay increases and it may be a significant amount of current for some considerable time. If it was intended to power the unit with a battery then the battery life would be far shorter than it need be. What we would like, is a circuit which switched rapidly from the Off state to the On state even though the triggering input varied only slowly. There are several ways to achieve this, one of them being to modify the circuit to become a ‘Schmitt Trigger’:
Here, an additional transistor ('TR2') has changed the circuit operation significantly, with transistor TR3 switching fully on and fully off, rapidly. This results in the current through the relay being very low until the circuit triggers.

The circuit operates as follows. When the voltage at the base of TR1 is high enough, TR1 switches on, which causes the resistance between its collector and emitter to be so low that we can treat it as a short circuit (which is a nearly-zero resistance connection). This effectively connects the 10K and 1K8 resistors in series across the battery. The voltage at their connecting point (both the collector and emitter of TR1) will then be about 1.8 Volts. The two 18K resistors are in series across that voltage so the voltage at their junction will be half that; 0.9 Volts.

This puts the Base of TR2 at about 0.9 Volts and its emitter at 1.8 Volts. The base of TR2 is therefore not 0.7 Volts above its emitter, so no base/emitter current will flow in TR2, which means that TR2 is switched hard off. This means that the TR2 collector/emitter resistance will be very high. The voltage at the base of TR3 is controlled by the 1K8 resistor, the TR2 collector/emitter resistance (very high) and the 3K9 resistor. This pushes the base voltage of TR3 up to near the full battery voltage and as it is wired as an emitter-follower, its emitter voltage will be about 0.7 Volts below that. This means that the relay will have most of the battery voltage across it and so will switch hard on.

Some practical points: The current flowing into the base of TR3 comes via the 3K9 resistor. A 3K9 resistor needs 3.9 Volts across it for every 1 mA which flows through it. If the relay needs 150 mA to operate and TR3 has a gain of 300, then TR3 will need a base current of 0.5 mA to provide 150 mA of current through its collector/emitter junction. If 0.5 mA flows through the 3K9 resistor, there will be a voltage drop across it of some 2 Volts. The TR3 base/emitter voltage will be a further 0.7 Volts, so the voltage across the relay will be about 12.0 - 2.0 - 0.7 = 9.3 Volts, so you need to be sure that the relay will work reliably at 9 Volts.

If you used a Darlington pair of transistors, each with a gain of 300, instead of TR3, then their combined base/emitter voltage drop would be 1.4 Volts, but they would only need a base current of 150 mA / (300 x 300) = 1/600 mA. That current would only drop 0.007 Volts across the 3K9 resistor, so the relay would receive 10.6 Volts.

So, how do you work out the gain of any particular transistor? The main working tool for electronics is a multimeter. This is a digital or analogue meter which can measure a wide range of things: voltage, current, resistance, ... The more expensive the meter, generally, the greater the number of ranges provided. The more expensive meters offer transistor testing. Personally, I prefer the older, passive multimeters. These are looked down on because they draw current from the circuit to which they are attached, but, because they do, they give reliable readings all the time. The more modern battery-operated digital multimeters will happily give incorrect readings as their battery runs down. I wasted two whole days, testing rechargeable batteries which appeared to be giving impossible performances. Eventually, I discovered that it was a failing multimeter battery which was causing false multimeter readings.

For the moment, let us assume that no commercial transistor tester is to hand and we will build our own (or at least, discover how to build our own). The gain of a transistor is defined as the collector/emitter current divided by the base/emitter current. For example, if 1mA is flowing through the collector and 0.01mA is flowing into the base to sustain that collector flow, then the transistor has a gain of 100 times at 1mA. The transistor gain may vary when it is carrying different current loads. For the circuits we have been looking at
so far, 1mA is a reasonable current at which to measure the transistor gain. So let's build a circuit to measure the gain:

With the circuit shown here, the variable resistor is adjusted until a collector current of 1mA is shown on the milliammeter and the gain of the transistor is then read off the scale on the variable resistor knob. The circuit is built into a small box containing the battery and with a socket into which the transistor can be plugged. The question then is, what values should be chosen for the resistor R1 and the variable resistor VR1?

Well, we might choose that the minimum gain to be displayed is 10. This would correspond to where the variable resistor slider is taken all the way up to point 'A' in the circuit diagram, effectively taking the variable resistor out of the circuit. If the transistor gain is 10 and the collector current is 1mA, then the base current will be 0.1mA. This current has to flow through the resistor R1 and it has a voltage of (9.0 - 0.7) Volts across it as the base/emitter voltage is 0.7 Volts when the transistor is on. Ohms Law gives us Ohms = Volts / Amps, which for the resistor R1 means Ohms = 8.3 / 0.0001 or 83,000 ohms, or 83K.

Rule of thumb: 1K provides 1mA if it has 1V across it, so 10K will give 0.1mA if it has 1 Volt across it. With 8.3 Volts across it, it needs to be 8.3 times larger to hold the current down to the required 0.1mA so the resistor should be 83K in size.

As 83K is not a standard size, we need to use two or more standard resistors to give that resistance. Nearest standard size below 83K is 82K, so we can used one 82K resistor and one 1K resistor in series to give the required 83K.

Suppose that we say that we would like to have 500 as the highest gain shown on our tester, then when VR1 is at its maximum value, it and R1 should provide 1/500 of the collector current of 1mA, i.e. 0.002mA or 0.000002 Amps. From Ohms Law again we get VR1 + R1 = 4,150,000 ohms or 4M15. Unfortunately, the largest value variable resistor available is 2M2 so the circuit as it stands, will not be able to cope.

Suppose we were to just use a 2M2 variable resistor for VR1, what transistor gain range could we display? Well Ohms Law ... lets us calculate the base current with 8.3 Volts across (83,000 + 2,200,000) ohms and from that the maximum transistor gain which would be 277.77 (at 1mA). You would buy a ‘linear’ standard carbon track variable resistor so that the change in resistance is steady as the shaft is rotated. The scale which you would make up would be in even steps and it would run from 10 at the minimum setting, to 278 at the highest setting.

But that is not what we wanted. We wanted to measure up to 500. But they don't make variable resistors big enough, so what can we do? Well, if we wanted, we could lower the battery voltage, which in turn would lower the resistor values. As a 9V battery is very convenient for this kind of circuit, lets not go down that route. We could add extra circuitry to drop the 9V battery voltage down to a lower value. The most simple solution is to add an extra resistor and switch to give two ranges. If we switched in an extra 2M2 resistor above VR1 then the circuit would measure transistor gains from 278 to just over 500 and all we would need to do would be to add a second scale for the VR1 pointer knob to move over. We could, provide extra ranges which overlap and which have more convenient scales to mark. The design is up to you.
The design covered above is not the only way to measure the transistor gain. A second way, which accepts that it is not so accurate, picks a set base current and measures the collector current as a guide to the gain. In this simple method, one or more resistor values are chosen to give gain ranges, and the milliammeter used to read the corresponding gain:

Here, resistor R1 might be chosen to give a collector current of 1mA (which is a full-scale deflection on the meter) when the transistor gain is 100. Resistor R2 might be picked to give a full-scale deflection for a gain of 200, R3 for a gain of 400, R4 for a gain of 600, and so on. Generally speaking, it is not essential to know the exact gain but any reasonable approximation to it is sufficient. You are normally selecting a transistor where you need a gain of 180, so it is not important if the transistor you pick has a gain of 210 or 215 - you are only avoiding transistors with gains below 180.

How do you work out the values of the resistors R1 to R4? Well, you probably won’t expect this, but you use Ohms Law. Voltage drop is 8.3 Volts and the base current is given by the full-scale deflection’s 1mA divided by the transistor gain for each range, i.e. 1/100 mA for R1, 1/200 mA for R2,... 1/600 mA for R4,..

The Diode. One component which has been shown but not described is the diode or ‘rectifier’. This is a device which has a very high resistance to current flowing in one direction and a very low resistance to current flowing in the opposite direction. The base/emitter junction of a transistor is effectively a diode and, at a push, can be used as such. A proper diode is cheap to buy and has far greater voltage and current handling capacities than the base/emitter junction of a transistor.

Diodes are mainly made from one of two materials: germanium and silicon. Germanium diodes are used with very small alternating currents such as radio signals coming from an aerial. This is because a germanium diode needs only 0.2 Volts or so to carry a current while silicon needs 0.6 to 0.7 Volts (same as a silicon transistor base/emitter junction). Germanium diodes (and transistors) are very sensitive to
temperature change and so are normally restricted to low power circuits. One very neat application for a silicon diode is as an ‘un-interruptable power supply’ where mains failure is caught instantly:

![Mains Unit Back-up Circuit](image)

In this circuit, the mains voltage drives the Power Supply Unit which generates 12 Volts at point ‘A’. This provides current to the Load. The diode has +12 Volts at ‘A’ and +12 Volts at point ‘B’ so there is no voltage drop across it and it will not carry current in either direction. This means that the battery is effectively isolated when the mains is functioning. If the Power Supply Unit output were to rise above its design level of +12 Volts, then the diode would block it from feeding current into the battery.

If the mains fails, the Power Supply Unit (‘PSU’) output will fall to zero. If the battery and diode were not there, the voltage at point ‘A’ would fall to zero, which would power-down the Load and possibly cause serious problems. For example, if the load were your computer, a mains failure could cause you to lose important data. With a battery back-up of this type, you would have time to save your data and shut your computer down before the battery ran out.

The circuit operates in a very simple fashion. As soon as the voltage at point ‘A’ drops to 0.7 Volts below the +12 Volts at point ‘B”, the diode starts feeding current from the battery to the Load. This happens in less than a millionth of a second, so the Load does not lose current. It would be worth adding a warning light and/or a buzzer to show that the mains has failed.

**LEDs:** There is a widely used variation of the diode which is extremely useful, and that is the Light Emitting Diode or ‘LED’. This is a diode which emits light when carrying current. They are available in red, green, blue, yellow or white light versions. Some versions can display more than one colour of light if current is fed through their different electrical connections.

LEDs give a low light level at a current of about 8 or 10 mA and a bright light for currents of 20 to 30 mA. If they are being used with a 12 Volt system, then a series resistor of 1K to 330 ohms is necessary. LEDs are robust devices, immune to shock and vibration. They come in various diameters and the larger sizes are very much more visible than the tiny ones.

**SCRs and Triacs:** Another version of the diode is the Silicon Controlled Rectifier or ‘Thyristor’. This device carries no current until its gate receives an input current. This is just like the operation of a transistor but the SCR once switched on, stays on even though the gate signal is removed. It stays on until the current through the SCR is forced to zero, usually by the voltage across it being removed. SCRs are often used with alternating voltages (described below) and this causes the SCR to switch off if the gate input is removed. SCRs only operate on positive voltages so they miss half of the power available from alternating power supplies. A more advanced version of the SCR is the ‘Triac’ which operates in the same way as an SCR but handles both positive and negative voltages.

**Opto-Isolators:** Another very useful variation on the LED is the Opto-Isolator. This device is a fully enclosed LED and light-sensitive transistor. When the LED is powered up, it switches the transistor on. The big advantage of this device is that the LED can be in a low voltage, low power sensing circuit, while the
transistor can be in a completely separate, high voltage, high power circuit. The opto-isolator isolates the two circuits completely from each other. It is a very useful, and very popular, low-cost device.

**Alternating Current:** A battery provides a constant voltage. This is called a Direct Current or 'DC' source of power. When a circuit is connected to a battery, the positive rail is always positive and the negative rail is always negative.

If you connect a battery to a circuit through a double-pole changeover switch as shown here:

![Diagram](image)

When the changeover switch is operated, the battery is effectively turned over or inverted. This circuit is called an 'inverter' because it repeatedly inverts the supply voltage. If the switch is operated on a regular, rapid basis, the graph of the output voltage is as shown on the right. This is a 'square wave' voltage and is used extensively in electronic equipment. It is called alternating current or 'AC' for short. SCRs and Triacs can be used conveniently with supply voltages of this type. Mains voltage is also AC but is rather different:

![Diagram](image)

Mains voltage varies continuously in the form of a sine wave. In Britain, the mains voltage is described as ‘240 Volts AC’ and it cycles up and down 50 times per second, i.e. 50 positive peaks and 50 negative peaks in one second. It would be reasonable to assume that each voltage peak would be 240 Volts but this is not the case. Even though the supply is described as 240 Volts, it peaks at the square root of 2 times greater than that, i.e. 339.4 Volts. The actual supply voltage is not particularly accurate, so any device intended for mains use should be rated to 360 Volts. In America, the supply voltage is 110 Volts AC and it cycles 60 times per second, peaking at plus and minus 155 Volts. Later on, you will see how one or more diodes can be used to convert AC to DC in a unit which is sold as a ‘mains adapter’ intended to allow battery operated equipment be operated from the local mains supply.

**Coils:** If you take a cardboard tube, any size, any length, and wind a length of wire around it, you create a very interesting device. It goes by the name of a ‘coil’ or an ‘inductor’ or a ‘solenoid’.

![Diagram](image)
This is a very interesting device with many uses. It forms the heart of a radio receiver, it used to be the main component of telephone exchanges, and most electric motors use several of them. The reason for this is if a current is passed through the wire, the coil acts in exactly the same way as a bar magnet:

The main difference being that when the current is interrupted, the coil stops acting like a magnet, and that can be very useful indeed. If an iron rod is placed inside the coil and the current switched on, the rod gets pushed to one side. Many doorbells use this mechanism to produce a two-note chime. A ‘relay’ uses this method to close an electrical switch and many circuits use this to switch heavy loads (a thyristor can also be used for this and it has no moving parts).

A coil of wire has one of the most peculiar features of almost any electronic component. When the current through it is altered in any way, the coil opposes the change. Remember the circuit for a light-operated switch using a relay?:
You will notice that the relay (which is mainly a coil of wire), has a diode across it. Neither the relay nor the diode were mentioned in any great detail at that time as they were not that relevant to the circuit being described. The diode is connected so that no current flows through it from the battery positive to the ‘ground’ line (the battery negative). On the surface, it looks as if it has no use in this circuit. In fact, it is a very important component which protects transistor TR3 from damage.

The relay coil carries current when transistor TR3 is on. The emitter of transistor TR3 is up at about +10 Volts. When TR3 switches off, it does so rapidly, pushing the relay connection from +10 Volts to 0 Volts. The relay coil reacts in a most peculiar way when this happens, and instead of the current through the relay coil just stopping, the voltage on the end of the coil connected to the emitter of TR3 keeps moving downwards. If there is no diode across the relay, the emitter voltage is forced to briefly overshoot the negative line of the circuit and gets dragged down many volts below the battery negative line. The collector of TR3 is wired to +12 Volts, so if the emitter gets dragged down to, say, -30 Volts, TR3 gets 42 Volts placed across it. If the transistor can only handle, say, 30 Volts, then it will be damaged by the 42 Volt peak.

The way in which coils operate is weird. But, knowing what is going to happen at the moment of switch-off, we deal with it by putting a diode across the coil of the relay. At switch-on, and when the relay is powered, the diode has no effect, displaying a very high resistance to current flow. At switch-off, when the relay voltage starts to plummet below the battery line, the diode effectively gets turned over into its conducting mode. When the voltage reaches 0.7 Volts below the battery negative line, the diode starts conducting and pins the voltage to that level until the voltage spike generated by the relay coil has dissipated. The more the coil tries to drag the voltage down, the harder the diode conducts, stifling the downward plunge. This restricts the voltage across transistor TR3 to 0.7 Volts more than the battery voltage and so protects it.

Solenoid coils can be very useful. Here is a design for a powerful electric motor patented by the American, Ben Teal, in June 1978 (US patent number 4,093,880). This is a very simple design which you can build for yourself if you want. Ben’s original motor was built from wood and almost any convenient material can be used. This is the top view:
Ben has used eight solenoids to imitate the way that a car engine works. There is a crankshaft and connecting rods, as in any car engine. The connecting rods are connected to a slip-ring on the crankshaft and the solenoids are given a pulse of current at the appropriate moment to pull the crankshaft round. The crankshaft receives four pulls on every revolution. In the arrangement shown here, two solenoids pull at the same moment.

In the side view above, each layer has four solenoids and you can extend the crankshaft to have as many layers of four solenoids as you wish. The engine power increases with every layer added. Two layers should be quite adequate as it is a powerful motor with just two layers.
An interesting point is that as a solenoid pulse is terminated, its pull is briefly changed to a push due to the weird nature of coils. If the timing of the pulses is just right on this motor, that brief push can be used to increase the power of the motor instead of opposing the motor rotation. This feature is also used in the Adams motor described in the ‘Free-Energy’ section of this document.

The strength of the magnetic field produced by the solenoid is affected by the number of turns in the coil, the current flowing through the coil and the nature of what is inside the coil ‘former’ (the tube on which the coil is wound). In passing, there are several fancy ways of winding coils which can also have an effect, but here we will only talk about coils where the turns are wound side by side at right angles to the former.

1. Every turn wound on the coil, increases the magnetic field. The thicker the wire used, the greater the current which will flow in the coil for any voltage placed across the coil. Unfortunately, the thicker the wire, the more space each turn takes up, so the choice of wire is somewhat of a compromise.

2. The power supplied to the coil depends on the voltage placed across it. Watts = Volts x Amps so the greater the Volts, the greater the power supplied. But we also know from Ohm’s Law that Ohms = Volts / Amps which can also be written as Ohms x Amps = Volts. The Ohms in this instance is fixed by the wire chosen and the number of turns, so if we double the Voltage then we double the current.

For example: Suppose the coil resistance is 1 ohm, the Voltage 1 Volt and the Current 1 Amp. Then the power in Watts is Volts x Amps or 1 x 1 which is 1 Watt.

Now, double the voltage to 2 Volts. The coil resistance is still 1 ohm so the Current is now 2 Amps. The power in Watts is Volts x Amps or 2 x 2 which is 4 Watts. Doubling the voltage has quadrupled the power.

If the voltage is increased to 3 Volts. The coil resistance is still 1 ohm so the Current is now 3 Amps. The power in Watts is Volts x Amps or 3 x 3 which is 9 Watts. The power is Ohms x Amps squared, or Watts = Ohms x Amps x Amps. From this we see that the voltage applied to any coil or solenoid is critical to the power developed by the coil.

3. What the coil is wound on is also of considerable importance. If the coil is wound on a rod of soft iron covered with a layer of paper, then the magnetic effect is increased dramatically. If the rod ends are tapered like a flat screwdriver or filed down to a sharp point, then the magnetic lines of force cluster together when they leave the iron and the magnetic effect is increased further.

If the soft iron core is solid, some energy is lost by currents flowing round in the iron. These currents can be minimised by using thin slivers of metal (called ‘laminations’) which are insulated from each other. You see this most often in the construction of transformers, where you have two coils wound on a single core. As it is convenient for mass production, transformers are usually wound as two separate coils which are then placed on a figure-of-eight laminated core.

**Transformers** are used to alter the voltage of any alternating current power source. If the alteration increases the output voltage, then the transformer is called a ‘step-up’ transformer. If the output voltage is lower than the input voltage then it is called a ‘step-down’ transformer. If the voltages are the same, it is called an ‘isolation’ transformer. A common construction looks like this:

The Coil bobbin sits on the section of the laminations marked ‘A’ above. The coil is wound on its bobbin former, first one winding and then the second winding. The bobbin is then placed on the central part of the ‘E’ shaped laminations and then completely surrounded by the laminations when the crossbar is placed on the top. The mounting strap is used to hold the two sets of laminations together and provide mounting lugs for attaching the transformer to a chassis. There are typically, twenty laminations in each set and every lamination is insulated from the adjoining laminations.
If you want to change the voltage of a battery supply, it is possible to build an electronic circuit to generate an alternating voltage and then use a transformer to change that alternating voltage to whatever voltage you want. The most common form of this, is for generating mains voltage from a 12 Volt car battery, so that mains equipment can be run in remote locations, such as boats, caravans, etc. These circuits are called ‘inverters’ and they are very popular pieces of equipment. The voltage in the secondary coil of any transformer is determined by the ratio of the turns in the primary and secondary windings.

For example; if there is a 10 Volt alternating voltage available and you have a transformer which has 100 turns in the primary coil and 1000 turns in the secondary coil. If you connect the 10 Volts across the primary, there will be 100 Volts generated across the secondary coil.

Instead, if you connect the 10 Volts across the secondary coil, a voltage of 1 Volts will be generated across the primary winding. This is because there is a 10:1 ratio between the two windings. The Law of Conservation of Energy applies to transformers as it does to everything else. The power input to the primary winding will be the same as the power in the secondary winding minus the losses. The losses, in this case, will be a temperature rise of the whole transformer. If the current passed through the transformer is well below its rated capacity, then the losses will be small. The important point is that 10 Volts at 1 Amp into the primary winding will generate 100 Volts in the secondary, but at somewhat less than 0.1 Amps; Power Input is 10 Watts and Power Output is almost 10 Watts. The voltage has been raised to 100 Volts but the potential current draw has been reduced from 1 Amp to 0.1 Amps (100 mA).

In practice, the thickness of the wire used in the windings is very important. If the voltage to be placed across the winding is high, then the wire diameter will be small. Coil windings have fairly low resistances but this is not critical in circuits as coils operate in a peculiar way. Coils have AC ‘impedance’ in addition to their DC ‘resistance’. While Direct Current (from a battery, say) can flow quite easily through a coil with low resistance, Alternating Current may have a hard job getting through the coil due to its high ‘impedance’. Sometimes, coils are used to choke off any AC ripple (interference) coming along a DC power cable. When a coil is used for this purpose it is called a ‘choke’. Each coil has its own resonant frequency and at that frequency it is very difficult for AC to get through the coil. Crystal set radios work on that principle:

```
Aerial

Germanium diode

Coil

Tuning

Headphones

Earth
```

Crystal Set Radio

Here, the aerial picks up every radio station broadcasting in the area. These are all at different frequencies and they all head down the aerial wire, looking for the easiest path to the earth connection. Most of them run through the coil with no problem whatsoever. If the resonant frequency of the coil matches the frequency of one of the radio stations, then that radio signal (and only that signal) finds it very hard to get through the coil and looks for an easier path to earth. The next easiest path is through the diode and the headphones, so the signal goes that way. The diode blocks part of the signal which generates the sound of the radio broadcast in the headphones.

This system works very well indeed if there is a good radio signal. A germanium diode is used as the radio signal voltage is very small and a germanium diode operates on 0.2 Volts while a silicon diode needs 0.7 Volts to operate. That difference is significant at these very low voltages. The resonant frequency of the coil depends on the number of turns in the coil. In this design, the coil has a slider which allows the number of turns to be altered and so, different radio stations to be tuned in.

**Rectification and Power Supplies**

We now have the question of how do we turn an alternating voltage into a constant ‘direct’ voltage. The crystal radio set operates by chopping off half of the alternating radio signal. If we were to do this to the output from a mains transformer with an output of say, 12 Volts AC, the result is not very satisfactory:
Here, we have the situation shown in the upper diagram. The output consists of isolated pulses at 50 per second. You will notice that there is no output power for half of the time. The negative part of the waveform is blocked by the high resistance of the diode while the positive part of the waveform is allowed through by the low resistance of the ‘forward-biased’ diode. It should be remembered that the diode drops 0.7 Volts when conducting so the output of the half-wave rectified transformer will be 0.7 Volts lower than the transformer’s actual output voltage.

If four diodes are used instead of one, they can be arranged as shown in the lower diagram. This arrangement of diodes is called a ‘bridge’. Here the positive part of the waveform flows through the upper blue diode, the load ‘L’ and on through the lower blue diode. The negative part flows through the left hand red diode, the load and then the right hand red diode. This gives a much better output waveform with twice the power available. The output voltage will be 1.4 Volts less than the transformer output voltage as there are two silicon diodes in the supply chain.

The output from even the full-wave rectifier is still unsatisfactory as there is a voltage drop to zero volts 100 times per second. Only a few devices operate well with a power supply like that, an incandescent bulb as used in a car can use this output, but then, it could use the original AC supply without any rectification. We need to improve the output by using a reservoir device to supply current during those moments when the voltage drops to zero. The device we need is a Capacitor which used to be called a ‘condenser’. The circuit of a mains unit using a capacitor is shown here:
This produces a much better result as the capacitor stores some of the peak energy and gives it out when the voltage drops. If the load on the unit is light with not very much current taken from it, the output voltage is quite good. However, if the current drain is increased, the output voltage gets dragged down 100 times per second. This voltage variation is called 'ripple' and if the unit is supplying an audio system or a radio, the ripple may well be heard as an annoying hum. The larger the capacitor for any given current draw, the smaller the ripple.

To improve the situation, it is normal to insert an electronic control circuit to oppose the ripple:

This circuit uses one new component, a new variety of diode called a ‘Zener’ diode. This device has an almost constant voltage drop across it when its current-blocking direction breaks down. The diode is designed to operate in this state to provide a reference voltage. The circuit merely uses a tiny current from the top of the zener diode to drive the Darlington pair emitter-follower transistors used to provide the output current.

With this circuit, when the output current is increased, the resistance of the transistor pair automatically reduces to provide more current without varying the output voltage. The 1K resistor is included to give the transistors a completed circuit if no external equipment is connected across the output terminals. The zener
The diode is chosen to give 1.4 Volts more than the required output voltage as the two transistors drop 1.4 Volts when conducting.

You should note that the output transistor is dropping 6 Volts at the full supply current. Watts = Volts x Amps so the power dissipated by the transistor may be quite high. It may well be necessary to mount the transistor on an aluminium plate called a ‘heat sink’ to keep it from overheating. Some power transistors, such as the 2N3055, do not have the case isolated from the active parts of the transistor. It is good practice to use a mica gasket between the transistor and the heat-sink as it conducts then heat without making an electrical connection to the metal heat-sink.

A capacitor, being an electrical reservoir, can be used as part of a timer circuit. If the current flow into it is restricted by passing it through a resistor. The length of time between starting the flow on an empty capacitor, and the voltage across the capacitor reaching some chosen level, will be constant for a high-quality capacitor.

![Capacitor Timer Circuit Diagram]

As the voltage increase tails off, it becomes more difficult to measure the difference accurately, so if the capacitor is to be used for generating a time interval, it is normal to use the early part of the graph area where the line is fairly straight and rising fast.

**Multivibrators:** The number of electronic circuits which can be built with basic components such as resistors, capacitors, transistors, coils, etc. is limited only by your imagination and needs. Here is a circuit where two transistors operate as a pair:

This circuit has two stable states and so it is called a “bi” “stable” or “bistable” circuit. It is important to understand the operation of this simple and useful circuit.

If press-button switch ‘A’ is pressed, it short-circuits the base/emitter junction of transistor TR1. This prevents any current flowing in the base/emitter junction and so switches TR1 hard off. This makes point ‘C’ rise as high as it can. This leaves transistor TR2 powered by R1 and R2 which have 11.3 Volts across them and switches TR2 hard on.

This pulls point ‘D’ down to about 0.1 Volts. This happens in less than a millionth of a second. When the press-button switch ‘A’ is released, transistor TR1 does not switch on again because its base current flows through resistor R3 which is connected to point ‘D’ which is far, far below the 0.7 Volts needed to make TR1 start conducting.
The result is that when press-button ‘A’ is pressed, transistor TR2 switches on and stays on even when press-button ‘A’ is released. This switches transistor TR3 off and starves the Load of current. This is the first ‘stable state’.

The same thing happens when press-button ‘B’ is pressed. This forces transistor TR2 into its ‘off’ state, raising point ‘D’ to a high voltage, switching transistor TR3 hard on, powering the Load and holding transistor TR1 hard off. This is the second of the two ‘stable states’.

In effect, this circuit ‘remembers’ which press-button was pressed last, so millions of these circuits are used in computers as Random Access Memory (‘RAM’). The voltage at point ‘C’ is the inverse of the voltage at point ‘D’, so if ‘D’ goes high then ‘C’ goes low and if ‘D’ goes low, then ‘C’ goes high. In passing, the output at ‘D’ is often called ‘Q’ and the output at ‘C’ is called ‘Q-bar’ which is shown as the letter Q with a horizontal line drawn above it. This is shown on the next circuit diagram.

A minor variation of this circuit allows a load to be energised when the circuit is powered up:

When powered down, the capacitor ‘C1’ in this circuit is fully discharged through resistor ‘R6’. When the 12 Volts supply is connected to the circuit, capacitor C1 does not charge instantly and so holds the base of TR2 down below 0.7 Volts for much longer than it takes for transistor TR1 to switch on (which, in turn, holds TR2 hard off). Mind you, if it is not necessary to have the Load held powered on indefinitely, then an even more simple circuit can do this:

Here, when the switch is closed, both sides of the capacitor C1 are at +12 Volts and this causes the 1K8 resistor to conduct heavily, driving the transistor and powering the load. The capacitor charges rapidly through the transistor and reaches the point at which it can no longer keep the transistor switched on. When the battery is switched off, the 1M resistor discharges the capacitor, ready for the next time the battery is connected.

The Monostable Multivibrator. The monostable has one stable state and one unstable state. It can be flipped out of its stable state but it will ‘flop’ back into its stable state. For that reason, it is also known as a ‘flip-flop’ circuit. It is similar to a bistable circuit, but one of the cross-link resistors has been replaced by a capacitor which can pass current like a resistor, but only for a limited amount of time, after which, the capacitor becomes fully charged and the current flow stops, causing the ‘flop’ back to the stable state once more.
In this circuit, the ‘R’ resistor and the ‘C’ capacitor values determine how long the monostable will be in its unstable state. The circuit operates like this:

1. In the stable state, transistor TR1 is off. Its collector voltage is high, pushing the left hand side of capacitor ‘C’ to near +12 Volts. As the right hand side of capacitor ‘C’ is connected to the base of TR2 which is at 0.7 Volts, the capacitor gets charged to about 11.3 Volts.

2. The press-button switch is operated briefly. This feeds current through its 10K resistor to the base of transistor TR1, switching it hard on. This drops the collector voltage of TR1 to near 0 Volts, taking the left hand side of the capacitor with it.

3. As the voltage across a capacitor can’t change instantly, the right hand side of the capacitor drives the base of transistor TR2 down below 0.7 Volts, causing TR2 to switch off.

4. The circuit can’t hold TR2 in its ‘off’ state for ever. The resistor ‘R’ feeds current into the capacitor, forcing the voltage at the base of TR2 steadily upwards until the voltage reaches 0.7 Volts and transistor TR2 switches on again, forcing TR1 off again (provided that the press-button switch has been released). This is the stable state again. If the press-button switch is held on, then both transistors will be on and the output voltage will still be low. Another output pulse will not be generated until the press-button is let up and pressed again.

This circuit could be used to switch a microwave oven on for any chosen number of seconds, create a delay on your home-built burglar alarm, to give you time to switch it off after walking through your front door, operate a solenoid valve to feed a pre-determined quantity of beverage into a bottle on a production line, or whatever...

The Astable multivibrator. The astable circuit is the monostable with a second capacitor added so that neither state is stable. This results in the circuit flopping backwards and forwards continuously:
The rate of switching is controlled by the R1/C1 and R2/C2 combinations. The load’s ON time to its OFF time is called the ‘mark-space’ ratio, where the ON period is the ‘mark’ and the OFF period is the ‘space’. If you choose to use electrolytic capacitors which have their own polarity, then the +ve end of each capacitor is connected to the transistor collector.

While it is good to understand how these multivibrator circuits operate and can be built, nowadays there are pre-built circuits encased in a single package which you are much more likely to choose to use. These are called Integrated Circuits or ‘ICs’ for short. We will be discussing these shortly. Before we do, notice that in the circuit above, transistor TR3 has been changed to a new variety called a Field Effect Transistor (‘FET’). This type of transistor is newer than the ‘bipolar’ transistors shown in the earlier circuits. FETs come in two varieties: ‘n-channel’ which are like NPN transistors and ‘p-channel’ which are like PNP transistors.

FETs are more difficult to make but have now reached a level of cost and reliability which makes them very useful indeed. They require almost no base current (called ‘gate’ current with this type of transistor) which means that they have almost no effect on any circuit to which they are attached. Also, many of them can handle large currents and boast major power handling capabilities. Because of this, it is usual to see them packaged with a metal plate mounting, ready to be bolted to an aluminium heat-sink plate to help dissipate the heat generated by the large amount of power flowing through them. The ‘RFP50N06’ shown above can handle up to 50 Volts and carry up to 60 Amps, which is serious power handling.

Inverters. Consider the following circuit:

![Inverter Circuit Diagram]

If neither of the press-button switches are operated, the transistor has no base/emitter current flow and so it is off. This places the collector voltage at ‘C’ near the positive rail (+5 Volts).

If press-button switch ‘A’ is operated, the base voltage tries to rise to half of the battery voltage but doesn’t make it because the transistor base pins it down to 0.7 Volts. This feeds base current to the transistor, switching it hard on and causing the output at ‘C’ to drop to nearly 0 Volts.

If press-button switch ‘B’ is operated (don’t do this when switch ‘A’ is closed or you will get a very high ‘short-circuit’ current flowing directly through the two switches) it has no effect on the output voltage which will stay high.

If we re-draw the circuit like this:

![Re-drawn Inverter Circuit Diagram]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRUTH TABLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Input A</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Key:**

0 = Less than 0.5 Volts
1 = More than 3.5 Volts
We can see that if the voltage at the input ‘A’ is taken high, then the output voltage at ‘C’ will be low. If the voltage at the input ‘A’ is taken low, then the output voltage at ‘C’ will be high. A circuit which does this is called an ‘Inverter’ because it ‘inverts’ (or ‘turns upside down’) the input voltage.

We can summarise this operation in a table. Personally, I would call the table an ‘Input/Output’ table, but for no obvious reason, the standard name is a ‘Truth’ table. The purpose of this table is to list all of the possible inputs and show the corresponding output for each input.

Another standard, is to substitute ‘1’ for ‘High Voltage’ and ‘0’ for ‘Low Voltage’. You will notice that many items of electrical and electronic equipment have these symbols on the ON / OFF switch. In computer circuitry (hah! you didn’t notice that we had moved to computer circuits, did you?), the ‘0’ represents any voltage below 0.5 Volts and the ‘1’ represents any voltage above 3.5 Volts. Many, if not most, computers operate their logic circuits on 5 Volts. This Inverter circuit is a ‘logic’ circuit.

A criticism of the above circuit is that its input resistance or ‘impedance’ is not particularly high, and its output impedance is not particularly low. We would like our logic circuits to be able to operate the inputs of eight other logic circuits. The jargon for this is that our circuit should have a ‘fan-out’ of eight.

Let’s go for a simple modification which will improve the situation:

Here, The input impedance has been increased by a factor of 100 by using a Darlington pair of transistors which need far less base current, and so can have a much higher input resistor.

Unfortunately, the output impedance is still rather high when the transistors are in their OFF state as any current taken from the positive line has to flow through the 1K8 resistor. But we need this resistor for when the transistors are in their ON state. We really need to change the 1K8 resistor for some device which has a high resistance at some times and a low resistance at other times. You probably have not heard of these devices, but they are called ‘transistors’.

There are several ways to do this. We might choose to use PNP transistors (we normally use NPN types) and connect these in place of the 1K8 resistor. Perhaps we might use a circuit like this:
This circuit is starting to look complicated and I don't like complicated circuits. It is not as bad as it looks. The NPN transistors at the bottom are almost the same as the previous circuit. The only difference is that the collector load is now two 100 ohm resistors plus the resistance of the two transistors. If the PNP transistors are OFF when the NPN transistors are ON, then the circuit loading on the NPN transistors will be negligible and the whole of the NPN transistors output will be available for driving external circuits through the lower 100 ohm resistor (a large ‘fan-out’ for the ‘0’ logic state). To make sure that the PNP transistors are hard off before the NPN transistors start to switch on, the resistor ‘R1’ needs to be selected carefully.

The PNP transistors are an exact mirror image of the NPN side, so resistor R2 needs to be selected carefully to ensure that the NPN transistors are switched hard OFF before the PNP transistors start to switch ON.

You need not concern yourself unduly with that circuit, because you will almost certainly use an Integrated Circuit rather than building your own circuit from ‘discrete’ components. An Integrated Circuit containing six complete inverters is the 7414 which is shown above. This comes in a small black case with two rows of 7 pins which make it look a bit like a caterpillar. Because there are two row of pins, the packaging is called “Dual In-Line” or “DIL” for short.

Now, consider the following circuit:

This circuit operates the same way as the Inverter circuit, except that it has two inputs (‘A’ and ‘B’). The output voltage at ‘C’ will be low if either, or both, of the inputs is high. The only time that the output is high, is when both Input ‘A’ AND Input ‘B’ are low. Consequently, the circuit is called an “AND” gate. Strictly speaking, because the output voltage goes Down when the input voltage goes Up, it is called a “not AND” gate, which gets shortened to a “NAND” gate. In this context, the word “not” means “inverted”. If you fed the output ‘C’ into an inverter circuit, the resulting circuit would be a genuine “AND” gate. The digital circuit symbols are:

So, why is it called a “Gate” - isn’t it just a double inverter? Well, yes, it is a double inverter, but a double inverter acts as a gate which can pass or block an electronic signal. Consider this circuit:
Here, transistors ‘TR1’ and ‘TR2’ are connected to form an astable (multivibrator). The astable runs freely, producing the square wave voltage pattern shown in red. Transistor ‘TR3’ passes this voltage signal on. TR3 inverts the square wave, but this has no practical effect, the output being the same frequency square wave as the signal taken from the collector of TR2.

If the press-button switch at point ‘A’ is operated, a current is fed to the base of TR3 which holds it hard on. The voltage at point ‘C’ drops to zero and stays there. The square wave signal coming from the collector of TR2 is blocked and does not reach the output point ‘C’. It is as if a physical ‘gate’ has been closed, blocking the signal from reaching point ‘C’. As long as the voltage at point ‘A’ is low, the gate is open. If the voltage at point ‘A’ goes high, the gate is closed and the output is blocked.

There is no need for a manual switch at point ‘A’. Any electronic switching circuit will do:

Here, a slow-running astable is substituted for the manual switch. When the output voltage of ‘Astable 2’ goes high, it switches the gate transistor ‘TR3’, holding it hard on and blocking the square-wave signal from ‘Astable 1’. When the output voltage of ‘Astable 2’ goes low, it frees transistor ‘TR3’ and it then passes the ‘Astable 1’ signal through again. The resulting gated waveform is shown in red at point ‘C’ and it is bursts of signal, controlled by the running rate of ‘Astable 2’. This is the sort of waveform which Stan Meyer found very effective in splitting water into Hydrogen and Oxygen (see ‘Part 6’ of the set of documents on ‘Free-Energy Devices’).

This circuit could also be drawn as:
The small circle on the output side of logic devices is to show that they are inverting circuits, in other words, when the input goes up, the output goes down. The two logic devices we have encountered so far have had this circle: the Inverter and the NAND gate.

If you wish, you can use a NAND gate chip which has the circuitry also built as a Schmitt trigger, which as you will recall, has a fast-switching output even with a slowly moving input. With a chip like that, you can get three different functions from the one device:

If the two inputs of a NAND gate are connected together, then the output will always be the opposite of the input, i.e. the gate acts as an inverter. This arrangement also works as a Schmitt Trigger due to the way the NAND gate circuitry is built. There are several packages built with this type of circuitry, the one shown here is the “74132” chip which contains four “dual-input” NAND gates. Gates can have almost any number of inputs but it is rare to need more than two in any given circuit. Another chip with identical pin connections is the 4011 chip (which is not a Schmitt circuit). This ‘quad dual-input’ NAND gate package uses a construction method called “CMOS” which is very easily damaged by static electricity until actually connected into a circuit. CMOS chips can use a wide range of voltages and take very little current. They are cheap and very popular.

The number of devices built into an Integrated Circuit is usually limited by the number of pins in the package and one pin is needed for one connection to ‘the outside world’. Packages are made with 6 pins (typically for opto-isolators), 8 pins (many general circuits), 14 pins (many general circuits, mostly computer logic circuits), 16 pins (ditto, but not as common) and then a jump to large numbers of pins for Large Scale devices such as microprocessors, memory chips, etc. The standard IC package is small:
Prototype circuits are normally built on 'stripboard' which is a stiff board with strips of copper running along one face, and punched with a matrix of holes. The strips are used to make the electrical connections and are broken where necessary. This stripboard is usually called "Veroboard":

Nowadays, the stripboard holes are spaced 2.5 mm (1/10") apart which means that the gaps between the copper strips is very small indeed. I personally, find it quite difficult to make good solder joints on the strips without the solder bridging between two adjacent strips. Probably, a smaller soldering iron is needed. I need to use an 8x magnifying glass to be sure that no solder bridging remains in place before a new circuit is powered up for the first time. Small fingers and good eyesight are a decided advantage for circuit board construction. The narrow spacing of the holes is so that the standard IC DIL package will fit directly on the board.

Circuits built using computer circuitry, can experience problems with mechanical switches. An ordinary light switch turns the light on and off. You switch it on and the light comes on. You switch it off and the light goes off. The reason it works so well is that the lightbulb takes maybe, a tenth of a second to come on. Computer circuits can switch on and off 100,000 times in that tenth of a second, so some circuits will not work reliably with a mechanical switch. This is because the switch contact bounces when it closes. It may bounce once, twice or several times depending on how the switch is operated. If the switch is being used as an input to a counting circuit, the circuit may count 1, 2 or several switch inputs for one operation of the switch. It is normal to “de-bounce” any mechanical switch. This could be done using a couple of NAND gates connected like this:

Here, the mechanical switch is buffered by a ‘latch’. When the ‘Set’ switch is operated, the output goes low. The unconnected input of gate ‘1’ acts as if it has a High voltage on it (due to the way the NAND gate circuit was built). The other input is held low by the output of gate ‘2’. This pushes the output of gate ‘1’ high, which in turn, holds the output of gate ‘2’ low. This is the first stable state.

When the ‘Set’ switch is operated, the output of gate ‘2’ is driven high. Now, both inputs of gate ‘1’ are high which causes its output to go low. This in turn, drives one input of gate ‘2’ low, which holds the output of gate ‘2’ high. This is the second stable state.

To summarise: pressing the ‘Set’ switch any number of times, causes the output to go low, once and only once. The output will stay low until the ‘Reset’ switch is operated once, twice or any number of times, at which point the output will go high and stay there.

This circuit uses just half of one cheap NAND gate chip to create a bistable multivibrator which is physically very small and light.

**Gate Circuits:** NAND Gates can be used as the heart of many electronic circuits apart from the logic circuits for which the package was designed. Here is a NAND gate version of the rain alarm described earlier. The ‘4011B’ chip is a CMOS device which has a very high input impedance and can operate at convenient battery voltages (3 to 15 Volts):
This circuit is comprised of a rain sensor, two astable multivibrators and a power-driver feeding a loudspeaker:

1. The rain sensor is a wired-up stripboard or similar grid of interlaced conductors, forming a voltage-divider across the battery rails.

2. The output voltage from this, at point ‘A’ in the circuit diagram, is normally low as the stripboard is open-circuit when dry. This holds the first NAND gate locked in the OFF state, preventing the first astable from oscillating. This first astable is colour-coded blue in the diagram. Its frequency (the pitch of the note it produces) is governed by the values of the 47K resistor and the 1 microfarad capacitor. Reducing the value of either of these will raise the frequency (note pitch). If rain falls on the sensor, the voltage at point ‘A’ goes high letting the astable run freely. If the voltage at ‘A’ does not rise sufficiently when it rains, increase the value of the 1M resistor.

3. The output of the first astable is a low voltage when the sensor is dry. It is taken from point ‘B’ and passed to the gating input of the second astable, holding it in its OFF state. The speed of the second astable is controlled by the value of the 470K resistor and the 0.001 microfarad capacitor. Reducing the value of either of these will raise the pitch of the note produced by the astable. The rate at which this astable operates is very much higher than the first astable.

When it rains, the voltage at point ‘A’ rises, letting the first astable oscillate. As it does so, it turns the second astable on and off in a steady rhythmic pattern. This feeds repeated bursts of high speed oscillations from the second astable to point ‘C’ in the diagram.

4. The Darlington-pair emitter-follower transistors cause the voltage at point ‘D’ to follow the voltage pattern at point ‘C’ (but 1.4 Volts lower voltage due to the 0.7 Volts base/emitter voltage drop for each transistor). The high gain of the two transistors ensures that the output of the second oscillator is not loaded unduly. These power-driver transistors place the output voltage across an eighty ohm loudspeaker, padded with a resistor to raise the overall resistance of the combination. The voltage pattern produced is shown at point ‘D’ and is an attention-grabbing sound.

So, why does this circuit oscillate?:

12 - 34
The circuit will not oscillate if the gating input is low, so assume it to be high. Take the moment when the output of gate 2 is low. For this to happen, the inputs of gate 2 have to be high. As the output of gate 1 is wired directly to the inputs of gate 2, it must be high, and for that to be true, at least one of its inputs must be low. This situation is shown on the right.

There is now a full voltage drop between point ‘A’ and point ‘B’. The 47K resistor and the capacitor are in series across this voltage drop, so the capacitor starts to charge up, progressively raising the voltage at point ‘C’. The lower the value of the resistor, the faster the voltage rises. The larger the value of the capacitor, the slower the voltage rises.

When the voltage at point ‘C’ rises sufficiently, the 100K resistor raises the input voltage of gate 1 far enough to cause it to change state. This creates the following situation:

Now, the voltage across ‘A’ to ‘B’ is reversed and the voltage at point ‘C’ starts to fall, its rate governed by the size of the 47K resistor and the 1 microfarad capacitor. When the voltage at point ‘C’ falls low enough, it takes the input of gate 1 low enough (via the 100K resistor) to cause gate 1 to switch state again. This takes the circuit to the initial state discussed. This is why the circuit oscillates continuously until the gating input of gate 1 is taken low to block the oscillation.

Now, here is a NAND gate circuit for a sequential on/off switch:

This circuit turns the Light Emitting Diode on and off repeatedly with each operation of the press-button switch. When the on/off switch is closed, capacitor ‘C1’ holds the voltage at point ‘A’ low. This drives the output of gate 1 high, which moves the inputs of gate 2 high via the 100K resistor ‘R1’. This drives the voltage at point ‘B’ low, turning the transistor off, which makes the LED stay in its off state. The low voltage at point ‘B’ is fed back via the 100K resistor ‘R2’ to point ‘A’, keeping it low. This is the first stable state.

As the output of gate 1 is high, capacitor ‘C2’ charges up to that voltage via the 2M2 resistor. If the press-button switch is operated briefly, the high voltage of ‘C2’ raises the voltage of point ‘A’, causing gate 1 to change state, and consequently, gate 2 to change state also. Again, the high voltage at point ‘B’ is fed back to point ‘A’ via the 100K resistor ‘R2’, keeping it high, maintaining the situation. This is the second stable state. In this state, point ‘B’ has a high voltage and this feeds the base of the transistor via the 4.7K resistor, turning it on and lighting the LED.

In this second state, the output of gate 1 is low, so capacitor ‘C2’ discharges rapidly to a low voltage. If the
press-button switch is operated again, the low voltage of 'C2' drives point 'A' low again, causing the circuit to revert to its original stable state.

We could, if we wished, modify the circuit so that it would operate for three or four minutes after switch-on but then stop operating until the circuit was turned off and on again. This is accomplished by gating one of the gates instead of just using both as inverters. If we gated the second gate, then the LED would be left permanently on, so we will modify the first gate circuit:

This circuit operates exactly the same way as the previous circuit if, and only if, the voltage at point 'C' is high. With the voltage at point 'C' high, gate 1 is free to react to the voltage at point 'A' as before. If the voltage at point 'C' is low, it locks the output of gate 1 at the high level, forcing the output of gate 2 to the low level and holding the LED off.

When the circuit is first powered up, the new 100 microfarad capacitor 'C3' is fully discharged, which pulls the voltage at point 'C' to nearly +9 Volts. This allows gate 1 to operate freely, and the LED can be toggled on and off as before. As time passes, the charge on capacitor 'C3' builds up, fed by the 2M2 resistor. This causes the voltage at point 'C' to fall steadily. The rate of fall is governed by the size of the capacitor and the size of the resistor. The larger the resistor, the slower the fall. The larger the capacitor, the slower the fall. The values shown are about as large as are practical, due to the current 'leakage' of 'C3'.

After three or four minutes, the voltage at point 'C' gets driven low enough to operate gate 1 and prevent further operation of the circuit. This type of circuit could be part of a competitive game where the contestants have a limited time to complete some task.

Gates can also be used as amplifiers although they are not intended to be used that way and there are far better integrated circuits from which to build amplifiers. The following circuit shows how this can be done:
This circuit operates when there is a sudden change in light level. The previous light-level switching circuit was designed to trigger at some particular level of increasing or decreasing level of lighting. This is a shadow-detecting circuit which could be used to detect somebody walking past a light in a corridor or some similar situation.

The voltage level at point ‘A’ takes up some value depending on the light level. We are not particularly interested in this voltage level since it is blocked from the following circuitry by capacitor ‘C1’. Point ‘B’ does not get a voltage pulse unless there is a sudden change of voltage at point ‘A’, i.e. there is a sudden change in light level reaching the light-dependent resistor ORP12.

The first gate amplifies this pulse by some fifty times. The gate is effectively abused, and forced to operate as an amplifier by the 10M resistor connecting its output to its input. At switch-on, the output of gate 1 tries to go low. As its voltage drops, it starts to take its own inputs down via the resistor. Pushing the voltage on the inputs down, starts to raise the output voltage, which starts to raise the input voltage, which starts to lower the output voltage, which ...... The result is that both the inputs and the output take up some intermediate voltage (which the chip designers did not intend). This intermediate voltage level is easily upset by an external pulse such as that produced by the ORP12 through capacitor ‘C1’. When this pulse arrives, an amplified version of the pulse causes a voltage fluctuation at the output of gate 1.

This voltage change is passed through the diode and variable resistor to the input of gate 2. Gates 2 and 3 are wired together as a makeshift Schmitt trigger in that the output voltage at point ‘D’ is fed back to point ‘C’ via a high value resistor. This helps to make their change of state more rapid and decisive. These two gates are used to pass a full change of state to the output stage transistor. The variable resistor is adjusted so that gate 2 is just about to change state and is easily triggered by the pulse from amplifier gate 1. The output is shown as an LED but it can be anything you choose. It could be a relay used to switch on some electrical device, a solenoid used to open a door, a counter to keep track of the number of people using a passageway, etc. etc. Please note that an operational amplifier chip (which will be described later) is a far better choice of IC for a circuit of this type. A gate amplifier is shown here only to show another way that a gate can be utilised.

The ‘NE555’ Timer Chip: There is an exceptionally useful chip designated by the number 555. This chip is designed to be used in oscillator and timer circuits. Its use is so widespread that the chip price is very low for its capability. It can operate with voltages from 5 Volts to 18 Volts and its output can handle 200 mA. It takes 1 mA when its output is low and 10 mA when its output is high. It comes in an 8-pin Dual-In-Line package and there is a 14-pin package version which contains two separate 555 circuits. The pin connections are:

![NE555 Timer Chip Diagram]

This device can operate as a monostable or astable multivibrator, a Schmitt trigger or an inverting buffer (low current input, high current output).

Here it is wired as a Schmitt trigger, and for variation, it is shown triggering a triac which will then stay on until the circuit is powered down (an SCR could be used just as well with this DC circuit):
And here, a monostable:

And here are two astables, the second of which has fixed, equal mark/space ratio:

We can also wire the 555 to give a variable mark/space ratio while holding the frequency of the oscillation fixed:
The output waveform changes drastically as the variable resistor is adjusted, but the frequency (or pitch of the note) of the output stays unaltered.

A variable-frequency version of this circuit can be produced by changing the 33K resistor to a variable resistor as shown here:

Here, the 33K resistor has been replaced by two variable resistors and one fixed resistor. The main variable resistor is 47K in size (an almost arbitrary choice) and it feeds to a second variable resistor of 4.7K in size. The advantage of this second variable resistor is that it can be set to its mid point and the frequency tuning done with the 47K variable. When the frequency is approximately correct, the 4.7K variable can be used to fine tune the frequency. This is convenient as the small variable will have ten times more knob movement compared to the main variable (being just 10% of its value).

Obviously, it is not necessary to have the fine-tuning variable resistor, and it can be omitted without changing the operation of the circuit. As the 47K variable resistor can be set to zero resistance and the 4.7K variable resistor can also be set to zero resistance, to avoid a complete short-circuit between output pin 3 and the 50K Mark/Space variable resistor, a 3.3K fixed resistor is included. In this circuit, the frequency is set by your choice of the resistor chain 47K + 4.7K + 3.3K (adjustable from 55K to 3.3K) and the 100nF (0.1 microfarad) capacitor between pin 6 and the zero volt rail. Making the capacitor larger, lowers the frequency range. Making the resistors larger, also lowers the frequency range. Naturally, reducing the size of the capacitor and/or reducing the size of the resistor chain, raises the frequency.

One 555 chip can be used to gate a second 555 chip via its pin 4 ‘Reset’ option. You will recall that we have already developed a circuit to do this using two astables and a transistor. We also generated the same effect using four NAND gates. Here, we will create the same output waveform using the more conventional circuitry of two 555 chips:
Both of the 555 circuits can be bought in a single 14-pin DIL package which is designated ‘556’.

There are many additional circuit types which can be created with the 555 chip. If you wish to explore the possibilities, I recommend you get a copy of the book “IC 555 Projects” by E.A. Parr, ISBN 0-85934-047-3.

A spreadsheet is included which calculates the frequencies produces with various component values for the basic 555 astable and monostable. It also shows the Duty Cycle which is the ratio of the ON time to the OFF time and the actual times of the ON and OFF signals. The “ON” signal is taken to be when the output is at a high voltage.

**The 741 Chip.** An important and very useful group of Integrated Circuits is the “Operational Amplifier” or “op-amp” group. These devices have a very high gain, an ‘inverting’ input and a ‘non-inverting’ input. There are many op-amps but we will look at just one popular type called the “741” which has an ‘open-loop’ gain of 100,000 times. All operational amplifiers work in the same way in theory. The way they operate in a circuit is controlled by the external components attached to them. They can operate as inverting amplifier, a non-inverting amplifier (i.e. a ‘buffer’), a comparator, an astable multivibrator, and various other things. The symbol and connections for a 741 op-amp are:

![741 Op-Amp Symbol and Connections]

We can connect the 741 chip to act as an amplifier with any set gain level that we choose:

![741 Amplifier Circuit]

Here, the gain is set by the ratio of the 220K resistor to the 22K resistor. This circuit has a gain of 10 times, so the input signal at point ‘B’ will generate an output signal at point ‘C’ which is ten times larger, **provided**
that the output signal does not approach the battery voltage. If it does, then clipping will occur with the top and the bottom of the output waveform chopped off at about a volt away from the battery voltage levels, approximately 1 Volt and +11 Volts in this example.

Operational amplifiers are generally designed to operate from a dual power supply. In the above example, the supply would be created by using two 6 Volts batteries instead of one 12 Volt battery. To avoid the inconvenience of this, a mid-point voltage is generated at point ‘A’ by using two equal resistors in series across the battery. This gives a central voltage of +6 Volts which is fed to the IC.

This circuit can be used in many applications. Here is a circuit for a meter to measure sound intensity:

This circuit is two copies of the previous circuit. Each 741 chip has a reference voltage of half the supply voltage created by a voltage-divider pair of 1K resistors. This voltage is fed to pin 3 of the chip, which is the non-inverting input.

At point ‘A’, a microphone or small loudspeaker is used to generate a signal voltage when sound reaches it. This voltage is fed to the 741 op-amp via a 1 microfarad blocking capacitor. This passes the audio signal through while blocking the +4.5 Volts DC on pin 3. The first 741 has a gain of 22, set by the 10K and 220K resistors (220/10 = 22).

Point ‘B’ then receives an audio signal 22 times larger than the signal produced by the microphone. This signal is still quite small, so the second 741 boosts it further. The gain of the second 741 is variable and depends on the resistance set on the 1M variable resistor. If the variable resistor is set to zero ohms, then the gain of the second 741 will be controlled by the 4K7 resistor at point ‘C’ alone and so will be 1 (4.7/4.7 = 1). If the variable resistor is set to its maximum value, then the gain of the second 741 will be some 214 (1,004,700/4,700 = 213.8).

The two op-amps together have a combined gain which ranges from 22 to 4702. The amplified audio signal arrives at point ‘D’ and it can be adjusted to a respectable value. This alternating voltage is now rectified via the diodes at point ‘E’ and it builds up a DC voltage across the 47 microfarad capacitor there. This voltage is displayed on a voltmeter. The result is that the voltmeter shows a reading directly proportional to the sound level reaching the microphone.

The 741 can be wired as a buffer. This is the equivalent of an emitter-follower circuit when using transistors. The set up for the 741 is:
Difficult circuit - huh! Are you sure you can afford all the extra components? This circuit utilises the full gain of the 741 chip. The output follows the input waveform exactly. The input requires almost no current, so the circuit is described as having a ‘high input impedance’. The output can drive a serious load such as a relay, so the circuit is described as having a ‘low output impedance’.

The 741 chip can be wired to act as a comparator. This is the circuit:

Are you sure you are up to such a difficult circuit? Bit complicated - huh! This is the basic operational form for an operational amplifier.

If the voltage at point ‘A’ is higher than the voltage at point ‘B’ then the output goes as low as it can go, say 1 or 2 volts.

If the voltage at point ‘A’ is lower than the voltage at point ‘B’ then the output goes as high as it can go, say 10 volts or so.

Having seen how transistor circuits work, you should be able to understand why the 741 chip circuitry (which is a transistor circuit inside the 741 package) needs some voltage inside the supply rails to provide an efficient high-current output drive.

Here is a 741 version of the light-operated switch:
This circuit is set up as evening falls. We want the relay to have minimum voltage across it in daylight, so the voltage at point ‘A’ needs to be higher than the voltage at point ‘B’. As the 1K variable resistor is across the supply voltage, its slider can be set to any voltage between 0 Volts and +12 Volts. To make this easy to do, we choose a ‘linear’ variable resistor as the logarithmic variety would be hard to adjust in this application. With the ‘linear’ version, each 1 degree of rotation of the resistor shaft causes the same change in resistance, anywhere along the range. This is not the case for the logarithmic variety.

Anyhow, we adjust the variable resistor downwards until the relay voltage drops to a minimum. When the light level has fallen to the level at which we wish the circuit to trigger, we adjust the variable resistor to make the relay click on. The 741 chip has a very rapid output voltage swing when the input voltages swap over, so the relay switching will be decisive. The switching can be made even more positive by adding a resistor between the output and point ‘B’. This acts like a Schmitt trigger when switching occurs by providing some additional positive feedback, lifting the voltage at point ‘B’.

If you wish the circuit to trigger on a rising light level, just swap the positions of the 10K resistor and the ORP12 light-dependent resistor. The same circuit will operate as a temperature sensing circuit by substituting a ‘thermistor’ (which is a temperature-dependent resistor) for the ORP12.

If we would like the circuit to act as a burglar alarm, we could use the same circuit like this:

The circuit is still controlled by the voltage at point ‘A’. Under normal circumstances, this voltage will be near +6 Volts (produced by the two 10K resistors and the 100K resistor). The upper switch marked ‘NC’ for ‘Normally Closed’, represents a chain of, say, magnetic switches attached to doors and windows. If any of these are opened, then the voltage at point ‘A’ will be dictated by the lower 10K resistor in series with the 100K resistor. This will cause the voltage at ‘A’ to fall instantly to a low value, triggering the circuit.

The ‘NO’ switch (‘Normally Open’) represents one or more pressure-operated switches under carpets or rugs and/or switches which get brushed when doors are swung open, etc. These switches are wired in parallel across each other and if any of them is closed for even a millionth of a second, the voltage at point ‘A’ will be pulled down by the 1K resistor and the circuit will be triggered.

The circuit can be latched on in any one of a variety of ways. One relay contact can be used to hold the relay on or hold the voltage at ‘A’ low. A transistor can be wired across the relay to hold the circuit on, etc.
etc. If this is done, the circuit will remain in its triggered state until the supply voltage is interrupted. You might prefer to use a 555 chip to limit the length of time the alarm sounds to three minutes or so.

An alternative to using a relay or semiconductor latch is to use a Silicon Controlled Rectifier usually referred to as an ‘SCR’ or ‘Thyristor’. This device is normally “off” with a very high resistance to current flow. If it is switched on by applying a voltage to its Gate connection, it stays continuously on until some external device stops current flowing through it. The following circuit shows how it operates:

![SCR Circuit Diagram]

When the voltage is first applied to the circuit by closing switch S2, the SCR is in its OFF state so no current is supplied to the load. If the press-button switch S1 is pressed, a current is fed into the Gate of the SCR, turning it ON. When switch S1 is allowed to open, the SCR remains in its ON state and it will stay that way until the current through it is cut off. Opening switch S2 cuts off the current to the load and the SCR returns to its OFF state. A very valid question would be: “Why have an SCR at all and just turn the load on and off with switch S2?”. The answer is that switch S1 might be the under-carpet pressure pad of a burglar-alarm and it might be operated some hours after switch S2 was closed to activate the alarm system. Stepping off the pressure pad does not stop the alarm sounding.

While this sort of DC latching action is useful, it is more common for an SCR to be used in an AC circuit. For example, take the circuit shown here:

![AC Circuit Diagram]

The 120 volt AC supply coming in from the right hand side, is converted to positive-going sine-wave pulses by the diode bridge. This pulsing voltage is applied to the Load/SCR path. If the voltage at pin 3 of the 555 chip is low, then the SCR will remain OFF and no current will be fed to the load device. If the voltage on pin 3 goes high and the voltage applied to the Load/SCR chain is high, then the SCR will be switched ON, powering the load until the pulsing voltage drops to its zero level again some 1/120 of a second later.

The 555 chip is connected to form a monostable multivibrator and the timing components (the 120K resistor and the 10nF capacitor) cause it to output a 1 millisecond pulse which is long enough to trigger the SCR into its ON state, but short enough to have finished before the mains pulse reaches its zero-voltage level again. The 555 chip is triggered by the rising mains voltage being passed to its pin 2 through the voltage-divider 100K and 120K pair of resistors, and that synchronises it with the AC waveform. Pin 4 of the 555 chip can be used to switch the load power on and off.
In the circuit shown above, the diode bridge is needed to convert the incoming AC waveform to pulsing DC as shown in red in the diagram, as the SCR can only handle current flowing in one direction. The AC load equipment works just as well with the pulsing DC as with a full blown AC waveform. A better semiconductor construction is the ‘Triac’ which acts like two SCR devices back-to-back in a single package. It is shown like this in circuit diagrams:

There are three connections to the device: Main Terminal 1, Main Terminal 2 and the Gate. When switch ‘S’ shown in the diagram is closed, the triac conducts on both positive and negative voltages applied to its MT1 and MT2 terminals. When the switch is open, the device does not conduct at all.

If the external circuit containing switch ‘S’ is placed inside the device as a permanently closed circuit, then the device becomes a ‘Diac’ which can be used to trigger a Triac and give a very neat circuit for controlling the power to an item of AC mains equipment as shown here:

Here, the variable resistor/capacitor pair controls the point on the AC waveform that the Triac is triggered and so controls how much of each sinewave cycle is passed to the mains equipment, and so it controls the average power passed to the equipment. A very common use for a circuit of this type is the ‘dimmer-switch’ used with household lighting.

To return now to the 741 chip. The 741 can also be used as an **astable multivibrator**. The circuit is:

The rate of oscillation of this circuit is governed by the Resistor marked ‘R’ in the diagram and the capacitor marked ‘C’. The larger the resistor, the lower the rate of oscillation, the larger the capacitor, the lower the rate of oscillation.

When the output goes high, capacitor ‘C’ charges up until the voltage on it exceeds the mid-rail voltage on pin 3, at which time the 741 output goes low. The capacitor now discharges through resistor ‘R’ until the voltage on it drops below the voltage on pin 3, at which time the output goes high again. The 10K resistor
connecting the output to pin 3 provides some positive feedback which makes the 741 act quite like a Schmitt trigger, sharpening up the switching.

The same arrangement of resistor and capacitor applied to a Schmitt inverter or Schmitt NAND gate causes exactly the same oscillation:

If you would like to see additional ways of using 741 and 555 chips, I can recommend the excellent book “Elementary Electronics” by Mel Sladdin and Alan Johnson ISBN 0 340 51373 X.

The 4022 Chip. One very useful CMOS integrated circuit is the ‘4022’ chip which is a 16-pin ‘divide by 8’ chip with built-in decoding. The connections are:

If pin 14 is provided with the output from some variety of astable multivibrator, on the first pulse, this chip sets the “0” output on pin 2 to High while the other outputs are Low. On the next pulse, the “0” output goes Low and the “1” output on pin 1 goes High. On the next pulse, output “1” goes Low and the “2” output on pin 3, goes High. And so on until on the eighth pulse, output “7” on pin 10 goes Low and output “0” goes high again.

The chip can also divide by lower numbers:
For ‘Divide by 7’ operation, connect pin 10 to pin 15 (this resets the output to ‘0’)
For ‘Divide by 6’ operation, connect pin 5 to pin 15
For ‘Divide by 5’ operation, connect pin 4 to pin 15
For ‘Divide by 4’ operation, connect pin 11 to pin 15
For ‘Divide by 3’ operation, connect pin 7 to pin 15
For ‘Divide by 2’ operation, connect pin 3 to pin 15
If you want a ‘Divide by 1’ circuit, I suggest you cut down on the amount of alcohol you drink.

Here is an illustration of a ‘Divide by 5’ setup:
There are a number of things to notice in the above diagram. Firstly, the practical arrangements for circuitry have not been stressed before. If the circuitry has a pulsing circuit drawing heavy current, as shown by the thick red arrows, then it should be physically connected to the battery and any low-current circuitry should be further away from the battery. The supply from the battery should have a fuse or circuit breaker and a switch in the line before anything else is connected, so that if any component develops a fault and goes short-circuit, the fuse will blow and prevent any significant problems.

Secondly, it is a good idea to provide the other circuitry with a smoothed power supply as shown by the blue components in the diagram. This minimises the effect if the battery voltage gets pulled down by the pulsing of the high-current circuitry. The diode (silicon, 1 Amp, 50 V) stops the heavy current circuit drawing current from the large smoothing capacitor. The 100 ohm resistor limits the current into the large capacitor on switch-on and provides a little more smoothing. This circuitry is called “de-coupling” as it de-couples the low current circuitry from the high current circuitry.

Thirdly, notice capacitor “C1” which is wired physically as close to the power supply pins of the integrated circuit as is possible. If a spike is superimposed on the battery supply, then this capacitor soaks it up and prevents it damaging or triggering the integrated circuit. A spike could be caused by a very strong magnetic pulse nearby as that can induce an extra voltage in the battery wires.

The lower part of the diagram shows the output voltages produced as the clock pulses reach pin 14 of the chip. The positive-going part of the clock signal triggers the change in state of the outputs. If necessary, a positive-going pulse on the reset pin, pin 15, causes output “0” to go high and the other outputs to go low.

**Capacitors.** We have avoided mentioning capacitors in any detail as it has not been necessary for understanding the circuitry covered so far. Capacitors come in many sizes, types and makes. Their size is
stated in ‘Farads’ but as the Farad is a very large unit, you are unlikely to encounter a capacitor marked in anything larger than a microfarad, which is a millionth of a Farad. The symbol for a microfarad is μF where ‘μ’ is the letter of the Greek alphabet. This is a pain for normal text production as Greek letters do not occur in your average font. Some circuit diagrams give up on ‘μ’ and just write it as uF which looks like μ-F slightly mis-printed where the descender of the μ has not printed.

Anyway, very large capacitors which you may encounter range from 5,000 microfarads to maybe as much as 20,000 microfarads. Large capacitors range from 10 microfarads to 5000 microfarads. Medium sized capacitors run from 0.1 microfarad to about 5 microfarads and small capacitors are those below 0.1 microfarad.

1000 nanofarads (‘nF’) = 1 microfarad.
1000 picofarads (‘pF’) = 1 nanofarad

So:

0.01 microfarad can be written as 10nF
0.1 microfarad can be written as 100nF
0.1nF can be written as 100pF

Capacitors larger than 1 microfarad tend to be ‘polarised’. In other words, the capacitor has a ‘+’ connector and a ‘-’ connector, and it does matter which way round you connect it. The larger capacitors have a voltage rating and this should **not** be exceeded as the capacitor can be damaged and possibly even totally destroyed. Capacitors can be added together, but surprisingly, they add in the reverse way to resistors:

![Example 1](image1)

![Example 2](image2)

![Example 3](image3)

If two capacitors are wired in series, as shown in Example 1 above, the overall capacity is reduced while the voltage rating increases. The reduction in capacitance is given by:

\[
\frac{1}{C_t} = \frac{1}{C_1} + \frac{1}{C_2} + \frac{1}{C_3} + \ldots
\]

In Example 1, then, \( \frac{1}{\text{total capacitance}} = \frac{1}{100} + \frac{1}{100} \) or \( \frac{1}{C_t} = \frac{2}{100} \) or \( \frac{1}{C_t} = 1/50 \) so the overall capacitance reduces from 100 microfarads to 50 microfarads. The advantage in wiring the capacitors like this is that the voltage rating has now increased to 32V (16V across each of the capacitors).
In Example 2, the overall capacitance has reduced to a third of 100 microfarads but the voltage rating has tripled.

In Example 3, the capacitors are wired in parallel. The voltage rating is unchanged but the overall capacitance is now the sum of the three capacitors, namely 300 microfarads.

There is no need for the capacitors to have similar values, there are merely shown that way in the examples to make the arithmetic easier and not distract you from the ways in which the capacitors interact together.

Occasionally, a circuit needs a large capacitor which is not polarised. This can be provided by placing two polarised capacitors back-to back like this:

![Diagram](image)

When the capacitors are connected this way, it does not matter which end of the pair is connected to the positive side of the circuit and which to the negative side.

The time has come for a serious warning: High voltages are very, very dangerous. Do not become so familiar with them that you treat them casually. **High voltages can kill you.** Capacitors are capable of building up high voltages and some good makes can hold the charge for several days.

In particular, do **not** try to make adjustments to, or take parts from, the inside of a TV set. A black and white TV set uses 18,000 Volts on the magnetic coils used to create the moving picture on the tube. A capacitor inside the set may well have that voltage on it three days after the set was last used. Don’t fool around inside a TV set, it could kill you quick, or if you are really unlucky, it could injure you for life. A colour TV set uses 27,000 Volts to operate the coils inside it and that will fry you in jig time if you touch it.

Also, please don’t think that you are safe if you don’t quite touch it; 27,000 volts can jump across a gap to your hand. If you try to discharge a TV capacitor using a metal screwdriver with a wooden handle, please ensure that you medical insurance is up to date before you do it. You can receive a hefty shock through the screwdriver handle.

Voltages up to 24 Volts should be quite safe. **However,** some circuits will generate very high voltages even though the battery driving the circuit is low voltage. A standard off-the-shelf inverter circuit produces 240 Volts AC from a 12 Volt battery. Just because the battery is only 12 Volts does **not** mean that the circuit is not dangerous. Circuits which have inductors in them can produce high voltages, especially if they contain large capacitors. The voltage which produces the spark in your car engine is very high and it comes from the car battery. You know enough about this by now, so **pay attention!**

**Prototype Construction**

The main options for building a prototype circuit are:

1. A breadboard
2. Stripboard
3. A printed circuit board.

1. The typical breadboard unit consists of a matrix of clip holes wired in strips, into which component leads can be pushed to make a circuit. In my opinion, they are best avoided as it takes quite some effort to implement any significant circuit using them, some components do not fit well in the sockets which are small
enough to take DIL IC packages, and when you do get a circuit working well on the breadboard, there is no guarantee that it will work well when you attempt to move it to a permanent soldered board.

2. Stripboard, usually called 'Veroboard' even if it is not made by Vero, is a quick and satisfactory method.

3. A printed circuit board is feasible for a one-off prototype and making one will increase your production skills, so it is also a reasonable option if you have the etching and drilling equipment to hand.

Stripboard will be used in the following descriptions. The first step is to produce a layout for the components on the board. When designing the layout provision should be made for drilling holes to allow the completed board to be bolted to its case using bolts and insulating pillars to keep the soldered joints clear of all other surfaces.

The circuit diagram of the circuit to be built is the starting point. You might wish to draw a light grid of lines to represent the matrix of holes in the stripboard. This helps to visualise the run of the copper strips and the sketch can be made to show the exact number of holes available on the piece of stripboard to be used. The stripboard looks like this:

So you might wish to produce a layout sketch re-usable drawing like this:

where the horizontal strips are numbered and the vertical lines of holes are also numbered. In this sketch, where the lines cross, represents a hole in the board. The sketch of a possible physical layout can then be prepared and it might look like this:
It is very important when producing a sketch like this, that the copper strips making up the circuit are not accidentally used to connect components further along the board, without breaking the copper strip between the two sections of the board. It helps to mark a copy of the circuit diagram when you are sketching a possible physical layout on the stripboard. It might be done like this:

Here, the components just below the diode are ringed to show that they have been marked on the layout sketch and, if necessary, the copper strip broken to isolate the components. A component worth mentioning in passing, is the capacitor marked with red in the circuit diagram. This is a decoupling capacitor, fed from the 12V battery via a resistor and a diode (a diode is not normally used in this part of the circuit).

The decoupling is to provide the 555 chip and drivers with a supply which is reasonably isolated from the heavy current-draw circuit not shown in this small section of the circuit diagram. The pulsating heavy current draw of the rest of the circuit is capable of pulling the battery voltage down slightly many times per second. This creates a voltage ripple on the positive supply line from the battery and to smother the ripple, the resistor and diode are used to feed a large reservoir capacitor which smoothes out the ripple.

The circuit itself is not beyond criticism. Transistor 'TR2' and its associated components are redundant since pin 3 of the 555 chip already supplies the required signal (and with higher drive capacity) so the second output line should be taken directly from pin 3 of the 555 chip. This snippet of circuit is only shown here as an example of marking up a circuit diagram when making a components layout sketch.

As the layout sketch is produced, the circuit diagram should be marked off with a highlighting pen to make sure that every part of the circuit diagram has been successfully copied to the sketch. In the example below, not all of the highlighted strip is shown, since it runs off the small section of the board being shown here:
Many electronic components can be damaged by the high temperatures they are subjected to when being soldered in place. I personally prefer to use a pair of long-nosed pliers to grip the component leads on the upper side of the board while making the solder joint on the underside of the board. The heat running up the component lead then gets diverted into the large volume of metal in the pair of pliers and the component is protected from excessive heat. On the same principle, I always use a DIL socket when soldering a circuit board, that way, the heat has dissipated fully before the IC is plugged into the socket. It also has the advantage that the IC can be replaced without any difficulty should it become damaged.

If you are using CMOS integrated circuits in any construction, you need to avoid static electricity. Very high levels of voltage build up on your clothes through brushing against objects. This voltage is in the thousands of volts range. It can supply so little current that it does not bother you and you probably do not notice it. CMOS devices operate on such low amounts of current that they can very easily be damaged by your static electricity. Computer hardware professionals wear an earthing lead strapped to their wrists when handling CMOS circuitry. There is no need for you to go that far. CMOS devices are supplied with their leads embedded in a conducting material. Leave them in the material until you are ready to plug them into the circuit and then only hold the plastic body of the case and do not touch any of the pins. Once in place in the circuit, the circuit components will prevent the build up of static charges on the chip.

Soldering is an easily-acquired skill. Multi-cored solder is used for electronic circuit soldering. This solder wire has flux resin contained within it and when melted on a metal surface, the flux removes the oxide layer on the metal, allowing a proper electrical joint to be made. Consequently, it is important that the solder is placed on the joint area and the soldering iron placed on it when it is already in position. If this is done, the flux can clean the joint area and the joint will be good. If the solder is placed on the soldering iron and then the iron moved to the joint, the flux will have burnt away before the joint area is reached and the resulting joint will not be good.

A good solder joint will have a smooth shiny surface and pulling any wire going into the joint will have no effect as the wire is now solidly incorporated into the joint. Making a good solder joint takes about half a second and certainly not more than one second. You want to remove the soldering iron from the joint before an excessive amount of heat is run into the joint. It is recommended that a good mechanical joint be made before soldering when connecting a wire to some form of terminal (this is often not possible).

The technique which I use is to stand the solder up on the workbench and bend the end so that it is sloping downwards towards me. The lead of the component to be soldered is placed in the hole in the stripboard and gripped just above the board with long-nosed pliers. The board is turned upside down and the left thumb used to clamp the board against the pliers. The board and pliers are then moved underneath the solder and positioned so that the solder lies on the copper strip, touching the component lead. The right hand is now used to place the soldering iron briefly on the solder. This melts the solder on the joint, allowing the flux to clean the area and producing a good joint. After the joint is made, the board is still held with the pliers until the joint has cooled down.

Test Equipment
When developing new circuitry, it may be convenient to try different values of resistor in some position in the circuit (the resistor value may be dependent on the gain of a transistor or the actual resistance of an ORP12, or some such other situation). For this, it is very convenient to have a resistor-substitution box which allows you to select any standard resistor at the turn of a switch.

These are not readily available on the market. In years gone by, it was possible to buy custom wafer switches, where the number of wafers could be built up to whatever switch size was required, but these do not seem to be available any more. A slightly less convenient method of construction is to use four of these, selected by a second wafer switch:

In the above diagram, all of the resistors in one range (100 ohms to 820 ohms, 1K to 8K2, 10K to 82K or 100K to 820K) are wired to a single 12-way switch. The output wires then have any of these standard resistors across them, depending on the setting of the switch. A second switch can then be used to select several of these groups, while still using the same output wires. When boxed, it might look like this:

It can also be useful to have a versatile signal generator. You can easily construct your own with variable frequency, variable mark/space ratio and optional variable gating. If you do, you might as well make it with a low output impedance so that it can drive devices under test directly rather than having to provide additional buffering. It might look like this:
The really essential item of equipment is a multimeter. These come in many shapes, sizes and varieties and the cost varies enormously. The reliability also varies a great deal. The most reliable and the cheapest is the analogue type which does not use a battery (other than for the occasional measurement of resistance). Although these types are looked down upon nowadays, they are 100% reliable:

The meter shown above is rated at 2,000 ohms per volt, so connecting it to a circuit to make a measurement on the 10V range is the same as connecting a 20K resistor to the circuit. The big brother of this style of equipment is about five times larger and has 30,000 ohms per volt performance, so connecting it on a 10V range is the same as connecting a 300K resistor to the circuit being measured. This one is battery driven, so if you get one of these, may I suggest that you check its accuracy on a regular basis:

The really excellent non-battery (ex-professional) Avo meter multimeters are still available through eBay at affordable prices. These have 30,000 ohms per volt performance and are robust and accurate, having been built to very high standards.
A multimeter uses a 1.5V battery to measure resistance. Ohm’s Law is used as the working principle and the operation is:

The meter shown in the diagram has a small resistance of its own. This has a small variable resistor added to it. This variable resistor will have a small knob mounted on the face of the multimeter, or it will be a thumbwheel knob projecting slightly from the right hand side of the multimeter case. The 1.5V battery will be positioned inside the multimeter case as is the 1K resistor. To use the resistance ranges, the multimeter probes are touched firmly together to form a short-circuit and the variable resistor adjusted so that the meter points to zero.

For the purpose of this discussion, let us assume that the internal resistance of the meter, when correctly adjusted, is exactly 1K. If the resistor under test is exactly 1K in value, then the current through the meter will be halved and the meter will show a needle deflection half way across the scale. If the resistor under test is 2K, then the current will be one third and the scale marking will be at the 1/3 position from the left. If the resistor is 4K, then there will be one fifth (1K+4K=5K) of the full-scale current and the 4K mark will be 20% from the left hand side of the scale.

Two things to notice: firstly, the scale has to read from right to left which can take some getting used to, and secondly, the scale is not linear, with the markings getting closer and closer together and consequently, more difficult to mark and read, the higher the value of the resistor being measured. The bunching up of the scale markings is why the more expensive multimeters tend to have more than one range.

A mains-operated oscilloscope is an excellent piece of equipment to own but they are expensive when new. It is possible to pick one up at a reasonable price second-hand via eBay. An oscilloscope is by no means an essential item of equipment. One of its most useful features is the ability to measure the frequency, and display the shape of a waveform. Most waveforms are of known shape so the frequency is the major unknown. The following meter is not expensive and it displays the frequency of a signal on a digital readout:
So, when you are deciding what multimeter to buy, consider the following points:

1. How reliable is it? If you are opting for a battery driven unit, what happens to the accuracy if the battery starts to run down. Does it display a warning that the battery needs to be replaced? Mains-operated digital multimeters are brilliant but are a problem if you want to make measurements away from the mains.

2. What DC voltage ranges does it have? If you are intending to work mainly with 12V circuits, it is inconvenient for the ranges to be 9V and 30V as successive ranges. Digital meters do not have this problem but the question then is, how accurate are they going to be in day to day use?

3. Transistor testing options you can ignore - you are better off making your own dedicated unit to check transistors if you think you will ever need to do this - you probably won’t.

4. Measuring current can be very useful so see what ranges are offered.

5. Measuring capacitance is very useful, especially since many capacitors are not well marked to indicate their value.

6. Measuring the frequency of a waveform could be a significant bonus but the question is; are you every likely to need it?

7. Measuring resistance is very useful. Every meter has it. There is no need to be over fancy on measurement ranges as you usually only need to know the approximate answer - is it a 1K resistor or a 10K resistor?

Look around and see what is available, how much it costs and what appeals to you. It might not be a bad idea to buy a really cheap multimeter and use it for a while to see if it has any shortcomings which are a nuisance, and if so, what improvements you personally want from a more expensive meter.

It might be worth getting a fancy bench power supply which allows you to set any voltage you want and which displays the current being drawn by your development circuit:
However, there is no need to spend money on a fancy unit when you can build an excellent unit of your own with voltage stabilisation, adjustable output, metered current, etc. etc. Personally, if developing a circuit to be used with a battery, I believe you are better off powering the development from a battery, that way the characteristics of the battery are included in any tests which you carry out.

**Power Supply:** If you wish, you can construct a very convenient development testbed power supply system. This has the advantage that you can make it in the most convenient style for your own use. You can also make the protection ultra-sensitive and build in additional circuitry such as transistor tester and resistor substitution box to produce an integrated test bed. You could perhaps use a circuit like this:

![Power Supply Diagram](image)

Here, the power is supplied by a pack of re-chargeable Ni-Cad batteries or possibly, a mains unit with voltage stabilisation. As in all actual circuits, the next thing in the circuit is always an on/off switch so that the power source can be disconnected immediately should any problem arise. Next, as always, comes a fuse or circuit breaker, so that should the problem be serious, it can disconnect the circuit faster than you can react. If you wish, you can build your own super-accurate adjustable circuit breaker to use in this position.
The two transistors and three resistors form an adjustable, stabilised output. The FET transistor has a high output power handling capacity and a very low input power requirement and so is good for controlling the output voltage. Resistor ‘VR1’ is padded with the 4K7 resistor solely to reduce the voltage across the variable resistor. VR1 is adjusted to control the output voltage. If the current draw is increased and the output voltage is pulled down slightly, then the voltage on the base of the BC109 transistor is reduced. This starts to turn the transistor off, raising the voltage at point ‘A’, which in turn, raises the output voltage, opposing the variation caused by the load.

The output is monitored, firstly by a large milliammeter to show the current draw and secondly, on the output side of the milliammeter, a voltmeter. This allows very close monitoring of the power supplied to the prototype, especially if the milliammeter is placed alongside the prototype. You can build this circuit into a wide flat box which provides a working surface beside the milliammeter.

At point ‘B’ in the above diagram, a method for altering the current range of the milliammeter by placing a ‘shunt’ resistor across it. When the switch is closed, some current flows through the resistor and some through the milliammeter. This resistor has a very low value, so you are better off making it yourself. Let’s say we wish to double the range of the meter. Solder the switch across the meter and for the resistor use a length of enamelled copper wire wound around a small former. Put a load on the output so that the meter shows a full-scale deflection. Close the switch. If the current displayed is exactly half of what it was, if not, switch off, remove some wire to lower the reading or add some wire to raise the reading and repeat the test until exactly half the current is displayed. The lower the value of the shunt resistor, the more current flows through it and the less through the meter, which then gives a lower reading.

Please note: it is very important to have a fuse or circuit breaker in the power being delivered to your test circuit. Any error in building the prototype can cause a major current to be drawn from the supply and this can be dangerous. Remember, you can’t see the current. Even if you have a meter on the current being delivered, you may not notice the high reading. The first sign of trouble may be smoke! You can easily fry the circuit you are building if you do not have a safety cut-off, so use a fuse or other device which limits the current to twice what you are expecting the circuit to draw.

So, after all that, what equipment do you really need? You need a small soldering iron and multicore solder, a pair of long-nosed pliers and a multimeter. One other thing is some tool to cut wires and remove the insulation prior to soldering. Personal preferences vary. Some people prefer one of the many custom tools, some people use a knife, I personally use a pair of straight nail scissors. You pick whatever you are comfortable with.

Not exactly a vast array of essential equipment. The other items mentioned are not by any means essential so I suggest that you start by keeping things simple and use a minimum of gear.

If you are not familiar with electronics, I suggest that you get a copy of the Maplin catalogue, either from one of their shops or via the www.maplin.co.uk web site. Go through it carefully as it will show you what components are available, how much they cost and often, how they are used. The specifications of almost any semiconductor can be found free at www.alldatasheet.co.kr in the form of an Adobe Acrobat document.

Finally, because it is not important, all of the circuitry shown so far has indicated current flowing from the + of a battery to the - terminal. The discovery of voltage was made by Voltaire but he had no way of knowing which way the current was flowing, so he guessed. He had a 50 - 50 chance of getting it right but he was not lucky and got it wrong. Electrical current is actually a flow of electrons, and these flow from the battery minus to the battery plus. So, who cares? Almost nobody, as it has no practical effect on any of the circuitry.

Some useful websites:
http://www.maplin.co.uk for components
http://www.alldatasheet.co.kr for semiconductor specifications
http://www.cricklewoodelectronics.com for components
http://www.greenweld.co.uk for components
http://www.users.zetnet.co.uk/esr for components

The Oscilloscope. If you do decide that you are going to research new equipment, design and possibly invent new devices, then an oscilloscope is useful. Let me stress again that this is not an essential item of equipment and most certainly is not needed until you are quite familiar with constructing prototypes. It is quite easy to misread the settings of an oscilloscope and the methods of operation take some getting used
The low-cost book “How to Use Oscilloscopes and Other Test Equipment” by R.A. Penfold, ISBN 0 85934 212 3 might well be helpful when starting to use a ‘scope.

It is possible to get an oscilloscope at reasonable cost by buying second-hand through eBay. The best scopes are ‘dual trace’ which means that they can display the input waveform and the output waveform on screen at the same time. This is a very useful feature, but because it is, the scope which have that facility sell at higher prices. The higher the frequency which the scope can handle, the more useful it is, but again, the higher the selling price. Not all scopes are supplied with (the essential) ‘test probes’, so it might be necessary to buy them separately if the seller wants to keep his. Getting the manual for the scope is also a decided plus. A low cost scope might look like this:

The Weird Stuff

You don’t need to know the following information, so please feel free to skip it and move on to something else.

The presentation shown above is based on the conventional view of electronics and electrical power as taught in schools and colleges. This information and concepts works well for designing and building circuits, but that does not mean that it is wholly correct. Unfortunately, the world is not as simple as is generally made out.

For example, it is said that current is a flow of electrons passing through the wires of a circuit at the speed of light. While it is true that some electrons do actually flow through the metal of the wires, the small percentage of electrons which actually do that, do it quite slowly as they have to negotiate their way through the lattice of the molecules of metal making up the body of the wires.

In spite of this, when the On/Off switch of a circuit is flipped on, the circuit powers up immediately, no matter how long the wires are. The reason for this is that electrical current flows along the wires at very high speed indeed, but it flows rapidly along the wires, not rapidly through the wires. One thousandth of a second after switching on a circuit, the electrons flowing through the wires have hardly got started, while the current flowing along the outside of the wires has gone all around the circuit and back:
The above sketch does not show the proportions correctly, as the current flow spiralling along the outside of the wire should be hundreds of thousands of times longer than shown, which is not practical in a diagram.

The actual path taken by current flow makes the surface of the wire of particular importance, and the insulation material is also of great importance. In years gone by, wire manufacturers used to anneal (cool down) copper wires in air. This created a layer of cupric oxide on the outer surface of copper wires, and that layer gave the wire different characteristics than copper wire has today. William Barbat in his patent application claims that the cupric oxide layer can be utilised in making devices with greater power output than the power input from the user.

Unfortunately, the world is not quite as simple as that, as power flowing in a circuit has at least two components. The electrical current which we measure with ammeters is as described above and is sometimes referred to as “hot” electricity as when it flows through components, it tends to heat them up. But there is another component referred to as “cold” electricity, so named because it tends to cool components down when it flows through them. For example, if the output wires of Floyd Sweet’s VTA device were short circuited together, frost would form on the device due to the heavy flow of “cold” electricity, and getting a “shock” from it could give you frostbite instead of a burn.

“Cold” electricity is not something new, it has always been there as it is just one aspect of “electricity”. It has not been investigated much by conventional science because none of the instruments used to measure “hot” electricity, react to “cold” electricity at all. (Actually, “hot” electricity, “cold” electricity and magnetism are all features of a single entity which should really be called “electromagnetism”).

Now the spooky bit: “cold” electricity does not flow along or through the wire at all. Instead, it flows in the space around the wire, possibly riding on the magnetic field caused by the “hot” current. Thomas Henry Moray is famous for building a device which captured “cold” electricity and produced a massive power output capable of powering a whole host of ordinary electrical pieces of equipment. In his many public demonstrations before he was intimidated into silence and his equipment smashed, he invited members of the audience to bring a piece of ordinary glass with them. Then, when his circuit was powering a row of lights, he would cut one of the wires and insert the piece of glass between the cut ends of the wires. This had no noticeable effect on his circuit, with the power flowing happily through the glass and on through his circuit, powering the lights just as before. That does not happen with “hot” electricity, but as the “cold” electricity is not flowing through or along the surface of the wire, a break in the wire is not a major obstacle to it.

We still do not know very much about “cold” electricity. Edwin Gray srn. demonstrated lightbulbs powered by “cold” electricity being submerged in water. Not only did the bulbs continue to operate unaffected by the water, but Edwin often put his hand in the water along with the lit bulb, suffering no ill effects from doing so. Neither of those two effects are possible with conventional electricity, so please don’t try them to check it out.

Another interesting item is the water-powered car system produced by an American man who prefers to remain anonymous and just go by his e-mail ID of “s1r9a9m9”. His system, (among other things) involves feeding extra electrical power to the spark plugs. One thing which has always puzzled him is that the engine will not run with just one wire going to the spark plug cap. He has to have a second wire running from his extra power supply to the body of the plug where it screws into the engine block. Take that wire away and the engine stops. Put it back again and the engine runs. But according to conventional electrics, that wire cannot possibly be needed, because the engine block is grounded and the power supply output is grounded, so in theory, there is no voltage difference between the ends of the wire, therefore no current can flow along the wire, hence the wire is not needed and has no function. Well, that is true for “hot” electricity, but it seems almost certain that the “s1r9a9m9” system is using “cold” electricity as well as “hot” electricity and the “cold” electricity needs the extra wire as a flow guide to the spark plug.

Enough about that for now. Let’s go one step further into the “weirdness” of the actual world. If, three hundred years ago, you had described X-rays, gamma rays, nuclear energy and TV signals to the average well-educated person, you would have run a considerable risk of being locked up as being mad. If you do it today, your listener would probably just be bored as he already knows all this and accepts it as a matter of
the matter we can see in the whole of the universe. Think how many cubic centimeters there are in the
been calculated that one cubic centimeter anywhere in the universe contains enough energy to create all of
much of that energy as we wanted for ever and ever. The amount of that energy is unbelievable. It has
big pile of sand? I've got a load just over here...). This big energy field has gone under different names
contained in one cubic millimeter of the universe. This is not a theory, it is a fact. (Would you like to buy a
homes, fly their planes, etc. etc. for the next million years, it would not make the slightest dent in the energy
Earth... the Solar System... our Galaxy... If every person on Earth were to run their vehicles, power their
energy and we just don't notice it. It doesn't harm us, but if we wanted, and knew how, we could use as
over the years. A popular name at the present time is the "Zero-Point Energy Field" and it is responsible for
Changes from one form to another, but if you reverse the process and convert it back to its original form, it
Zero-Point Energy Field and has very little to do with the battery at all. We tend to think of "using up" power,
circuit. Sorry Chief - it is actually nothing like that at all. The power in the circuit comes directly from the
up by his high level of mathematical skills which give him an additional grasp of things. He explains how
Tom Beardon is an American man with very considerable abilities and considerable in-depth knowledge of
how the world actually operates. His statements are generally based on laboratory-proven criteria backed
up by his high level of mathematical skills which give him an additional grasp of things. He explains how
electricity actually works in circuits, and it is nothing like the system taught in schools and colleges. We think
that when we attach a battery to an electrical circuit, the battery forces a current through the wires of the
circuit. Sorry Chief - it is actually nothing like that at all. The power in the circuit comes directly from the
Zero-Point Energy Field and has very little to do with the battery at all. We tend to think of "using up" power,
but that is just not possible. Energy cannot be destroyed or "used up" the most you can do to it is to change
it from one form to another. It will perform "work" (power equipment, generate heat, generate cold...) when it
changes from one form to another, but if you reverse the process and convert it back to its original form, it
will perform another lot of "work" during the conversion and end up back in exactly the same state as it
started out from, in spite of having performed two lots of "work" during the operation.

At the quantum level, it can be seen that particles of matter pop into existence and drop out again into
energy on a continuous basis, everywhere in the whole of the universe. The whole universe is seething with
energy. That energy doesn't bother us any more than water bothers a fish, as we evolved in this sea of
energy and we just don't notice it. It doesn't harm us, but if we wanted, and knew how, we could use as
much of that energy as we wanted for ever and ever. The amount of that energy is unbelievable. It has
been calculated that one cubic centimetre anywhere in the universe contains enough energy to create all of
the matter we can see in the whole of the universe. Think how many cubic centimetres there are in the
Earth... the Solar System... our Galaxy... If every person on Earth were to run their vehicles, power their
homes, fly their planes, etc. etc. for the next million years, it would not make the slightest dent in the energy
contained in one cubic millimetre of the universe. This is not a theory, it is a fact. (Would you like to buy a
big pile of sand? - I've got a load just over here...). This big energy field has gone under different names
over the years. A popular name at the present time is the "Zero-Point Energy Field" and it is responsible for
everything that happens in the universe. It powers life itself. It balances out in equilibrium everywhere,
which is one reason which makes it hard to realise that it is all around us.

Tom Beardon is an American man with very considerable abilities and considerable in-depth knowledge of
how the world actually operates. His statements are generally based on laboratory-proven criteria backed
up by his high level of mathematical skills which give him an additional grasp of things. He explains how
electricity actually works in circuits, and it is nothing like the system taught in schools and colleges. We think
that when we attach a battery to an electrical circuit, the battery forces a current through the wires of the
circuit. Sorry Chief - it is actually nothing like that at all. The power in the circuit comes directly from the
Zero-Point Energy Field and has very little to do with the battery at all. We tend to think of "using up" power,
but that is just not possible. Energy cannot be destroyed or "used up" the most you can do to it is to change
it from one form to another. It will perform "work" (power equipment, generate heat, generate cold...) when it
changes from one form to another, but if you reverse the process and convert it back to its original form, it
will perform another lot of "work" during the conversion and end up back in exactly the same state as it
started out from, in spite of having performed two lots of "work" during the operation.

A battery does not provide energy to power a circuit. Instead, what happens is that the chemical action
inside the battery causes negative charges to gather at the "minus" terminal of the battery and positive
charges to gather together at the "plus" terminal of the battery. These two close-together "poles" of the
battery are called a "dipole" (two opposite poles near each other) and they have an effect on the Zero-Point
Energy Field which is everywhere. The "Plus" pole of the battery causes a massive cluster of Zero-Point
Energy Field negative charges to cluster around it. In the same way, the "Minus" pole of the battery causes
a massive gathering of ZPE ("Zero-Point Energy") positive charges to gather around it. Not only do these
charges gather around the poles of the battery, but an imbalance in the energy field is created and the ZPE
charges continue to arrive at the poles and they radiate out in every direction in a continuous stream of
incredible energy.

So, there is your shiny new battery sitting there, not connected to anything and yet it causes massive energy
streams to radiate out from its terminals in every direction. We don't notice it, because the energy flows
freely through us and we can’t feel it and none of our conventional instruments, such as voltmeters, ammeters, oscilloscopes, etc. react to it at all.

The situation changes immediately if we connect a circuit to the battery. The circuit provides a flow path for the ZPE energy to flow along, and a significant amount of energy flows near the wires of the circuit, actually powering the circuit for a split second until it reaches the battery “pole” at the far end of the circuit. When it gets there it promptly wipes out the pole, destroying it completely. The ZPE field calms down and the energy flow ceases. But our trusty battery immediately does it all again, using it’s chemical energy to create the “dipole” once more, and the imbalance of the ZPE field starts again. It is because the battery has to use it’s chemical energy all the time, creating and re-creating, and re-creating it’s “dipole” that it runs down and eventually ceases to be able to create the dipole any more - result: no more power in the circuit.

Sorry to spoil the illusion, but the battery never did power the circuit itself, it merely acted as channelling device for the Zero-Point Energy Field. In passing, Direct Current (“DC”) is actually not a continuous current at all, but instead it is a stream of DC pulses at an incredibly high frequency - way higher than we can measure at present. The speed of the pulses is so great that it looks continuous to us, a bit like the individual still pictures which are the frames of a movie, appear to be a moving image to us if they are played one after the other at a rate of 25 per second - it looks like continuous movement to us, but in reality, it is a rapid series of still pictures.

The way that a battery “dipole” works on the Zero-Point Energy Field is rather like the way that a magnifying glass acts on sunlight. The rays of the sun get concentrated into a point, focused by the lens. You can start a fire with the lens, and it would be easy to think that the lens started the fire, when in actual fact, it is the rays of the sun that started the fire and the lens just influenced a local area of the large “field” of sunlight, raising the temperature at just one point.

While we tend to think of a “dipole” being generated by a battery, the same effect is also created by a magnet, whether an electromagnet or a permanent magnet - remember that electricity and magnetism are two faces of the same entity. It is possible, but not easy, to capture the energy streaming out from the interference with the ZPE field caused by the poles of a magnet. For example, Hans Coler managed to do this with a completely passive device which, when set up correctly, could produce electrical power, hour after hour from apparently “nothing” (well, actually, the ZPE field). Roy Meyers also did it with his patented array of magnets and zinc plates - completely passive, with no moving parts at all, no battery and no circuitry.
This chapter covers a number of devices which either are unlikely to work, or which have too little practical information available to assist replication attempts. This selection, is of course, a matter of opinion.

Paul Baumann’s “Thestatika” Machine. The “Thestatika” or “Testatika” machine works beautifully and has a very high quality of workmanship. It is self-powered and produces in excess of 2 kW of electrical output continuously. It has two electrostatic discs which are initially rotated by hand and which then continue to rotate under their own power, producing a continuous current. It works best in dry atmospheric conditions. The snag is, it was developed by the late Paul Baumann who was part of a Swiss commune which is not willing to explain its operation. This diagram was produced by Paul Potter in his attempt to back-engineer the device from the information available:

Paul Baumann’s device may operate by creating a series of very short, high-power electrical discharges in the conductors passing through the centre of the two cylinders. These cylinders are effectively the same as Ed Gray’s discharge tube, both having metal shells around the pulsed conductor. The shells pick up the waves of Radiant Energy created by the electrical pulses and feed that energy to the workload. It would be easy to assume that Paul used a motor-driven version of a Wimshurst machine to pick up ‘static’ energy to create the sparks, as shown below but reports from the commune state that the static electricity discs rotate.
One very interesting fact which has been reported by the Swiss group is that if a series of copper, aluminium and Perspex sheets are placed in a magnetic field, they generate a high voltage. This is worth investigating. It is not clear if the magnetic field should be constant or oscillating. The sequence of plates is said to be:  
\[ \text{cpacpacpacpa} \]  
("c" being copper, "p" being 'Perspex' (acrylic or 'Plexiglas') and "a" being aluminium). The following set-up might be worth investigating:

Shorn of all of its frills, the operation of Paul’s machine might possibly be imitated as shown here:

The operation might be fairly simple. The drive motor is powered by part of one of the outputs, so no input power is required. The capacitors charge up quickly and cause a train of sparks. These sparks get cut off very sharply by a strong magnetic field provided by a strong permanent magnet (or electromagnet) as recommended by Nikola Tesla. These very sharp, short, electrical bursts generate a shock wave of Radiant Energy which surges outwards through the metal cylinders surrounding the cabling to the spark gap. These cylinders are normally made out of copper sheet drilled with a matrix of holes and they pick up some of the radiant energy which forms the output of the device. The McGraw-Hill book “Homemade Lightning” by R.A. Ford (ISBN 0-07-021528-6) gives full details of Wimshurst machines and plans for constructing your own, improved version. Ready-built Wimshurst machines are available from the web site:  

The Homopolar or “N-Machine”. This device was the brainchild of Michael Faraday and has an intriguing method of operation and a remarkably large output.
The principle of operation is incredibly simple:

If a copper disc is rotated in a magnetic field, then power is developed between the shaft and the outer edge (or any intermediate position). It was then found that the device will still operate even if the magnet is attached to the copper disc and rotates with it - not something which is intuitively obvious. The power output is tremendous with the capability of extracting 1000 Amps but at a low voltage of less than 1 Volt. The power take-off can be from one face of the disc near the shaft rather than having to have a copper shaft integral with the copper disc.

This looks like a very viable starting point to develop a device which can run itself and provide useful additional output, since a motor to rotate the disc will not require anything remotely like 1000A to drive it. The snag is, it is very difficult to provide reliable sliding contacts capable of handling large currents for extended periods of time. The second picture above shows the disc with its outer edge immersed in a bath of mercury. This is sufficient for a brief demonstration at low power but not realistic for a serious working device.

It might just be possible to get a reasonable working device by accepting that the current output is not going to be anything like 1000A. Long-life brushes could be made from solid copper bar and spring-loaded against the copper disc in matching pairs so that the brush thrusts oppose each other and so do not generate a sideways load. These could be made in multiple sets for each disc, say four or eight per disc, so that the effective electrical resistance between the brushes and the disc is reduced and the possible current draw increased.

Similar multiple brushes could be applied to the central shaft cylinder. Multiple discs could then be mounted on a non-conducting, non-magnetic shaft and their brushes wired in series as shown, to raise the output voltage:
The “Romag” and “Mini-Romag” Generators. These generators have been displayed on the internet for some considerable time now. They can be found on the Jean-Louis Naudin website: http://jnaudin.free.fr/html/mromag.htm
The Mini Romag generator from Magnetic Energy uses the principle of moving magnetic flow named "the magnetic current" for generating electrical power. According to Magnetic Energy this generator is able to produce 3.5 volts, 7A DC (24 Watts) of free electricity plus sufficient power to sustain itself.

This generator needs to be started by using an external motor to rotate it at 2,100 rpm for some 42 seconds. After this, the energy flow is established in the Romag generator and the external motor can be removed and the free electrical energy output can be used.

The starting procedure generates magnetic energy within the six coils of copper wire, the copper tube supporting these coils and the copper coated steel wires wrapped around the magnets. This charging is accomplished while the six coil connection wires, (shown as 22 in the above drawing), are making contact and setting up their alternating magnetic poles. After the 42 second start-up time one of these coil connection wires is opened by switch (24 above) leaving the working load in its place. The load (23 above) can draw 7 amps. As current is drawn from the six coils, it sets up magnetic poles which react with the rotor magnets maintaining the rotation. The main shaft is rotated by the 12 permanent magnets as they attract and build a release field. Then the driver unit (hand crank or motor) is disconnected allowing the unit to continue rotating with the load being the activating driving force.
Construction:
If you decide to attempt to build one of these units we suggest using the stated materials:
1. Aluminum Base Plate
2. Sleeve Bearing of oil impregnated brass, 1" long, 0.5" inside diameter.
3. Brass Shaft, 4" long, 0.5" outside diameter
4) Rotor, brass 1.75" long, 2" diameter,
5) Six rotor slots, each 1.75" long, 0.26" deep, 0.72" wide. These slots are spaced exactly 60 degrees apart.
6) One slot cut in center of Brass Rotor, 360 degrees around, 0.25" wide by 0.313" deep.
7) 12 slots (produced from the six slots when the 360 degree cut is made). Each slot is lined with mica insulation, 0.01" thick.
8) A total of 228 pieces of U-shaped copper coated steel wires, 0.04" thick. Each slot (7 above) has 19 pieces of these wires fitted into the Mica, thus these wires do not contact the Brass rotor. The leading edge of these wires is flush with the Rotor's outer surface and the trailing edge protrudes 1/8" above the Rotor's outer diameter.
9) Each of the 12 magnets receives eleven complete turns of 0.032" thick copper coated steel wire. These 11 turns or 'wraps' accumulate to 3/8" wide and the same pattern is placed around all 12 magnets. When placed into the bent wires (8 above), they form a snug fit making firm contact.
10) Twelve pieces of mylar insulation, 0.005" thick, are inserted into the cores of the wires (9 above).
11) The twelve permanent magnets, insulated with the mylar, must not contact wires of 9). These magnets measure 3/4" long, 5/8" wide, 3/8" thick and are made of a special composition and strength. Alnico 4, M-60: 12 AL, 28 Ni, 5 Cobalt Fe, Isotropic permanent magnet material cooled in magnetic field, Cast 9100 TS. 450 Brin, 2.2 Peak energy product. When inserted in the rotor the outer faces of these 12 magnets are not to be machined to a radius. The center of these magnets pass the center of the coils with 3/32" clearance. The edges, where the wires are wrapped, pass 1/32" away from the coils. This 'changing magnet spacing' aids in not only the release cycle but also contributes to rotational movement. (Sharp magnet edges which are facing the coils are to be sanded to a small smooth radius.)
12) Make sure that the magnets are placed in the Rotor with the polarity shown in the diagram.
13) The 12 magnet wire wraps are divided into two sections; 6 upper and 6 lower. There are no connections between these sections. The magnetic flow direction between the upper 6 wraps and the lower 6 wraps is attained by the 'flow direction'. The wires are wrapped around the magnet starting at the top 'north' half and then after 11 complete turns the wire exits at the lower 'south' half. As this wire then goes to the next magnet it arrives at an attract wire which is its 'north' side. Thus all wires get interconnected from south to north magnet half or north to south magnet half. The actual connections should be crimped copper clips (not solder) with insulation tubing to prevent contact to the Rotor body.
14) A 0.03" thick copper tube (stiff material) 2" long by 2 1/8" inside diameter.
15) Six slots are cut at the top of tube #14. These slots are 5/8" wide by 1/32" deep spaced at 60 degrees apart.
16) Six slots are cut at the bottom of tube #14. These slots are 5/8" wide by 5/16" deep and in line with the upper slots #15.
17) There are six copper tube mounting points.
18) An acrylic ring is used to hold Part #14, measuring 3.75" outer diameter and 2.25" inner diameter, 3/8" thick, bolted directly to Part #1. This ring has a 0.03" wide groove cut 0.25" deep to allow the six copper tube mounting points to be inserted (part 17).
19) Plastic insulation paper, 0.002" thick, is to be placed around the inside and outside of Part #14.
20) There are six coils of insulated copper wire, each coil having 72 turns of .014 thick wire. Each coil is wound with two layers, the bottom layer completely fills the 5/8" wide slot with 45 turns and the top layer spans 5/16" wide with 27 turns. To be sure each coil has the exact wire length of 72 turns, a sample length wire is wrapped then unwound to serve as a template for six lengths. A suggested coil winding method is to fill a small spool with one length then by holding the copper tube at the lower extension, then start at the plus wire in Figure 2 and temporarily secure this wire to the outer surface of the tube. Next, place the pre-measured spool of wire inside the tube, wrapping down and around the outside advancing clockwise until the 5/8" slot is filled with 45 turns. Then, return this wire back across the top of the coil for 15/32" and winding in the same direction again advance clockwise placing the second layer spanned for 5/16" with 27 turns. This method should have the second layer perfectly centered above the first layer. After winding this coil, repeat the process, filling the small spool with another length of pre-measured wire. A very important magnetic response happens as all six coils have their second layers spaced in this way.
22) Item 22 above shows the connection pattern for six coils. When the unit is driven at start-up (hand crank) for 42 seconds at 2100 RPM, all six jumper wires must be together which means the plus wire goes to the minus wire connected by the start switch. After 42 seconds the load is added to the circuit and the start switch is opened. To double check your connections between the coils, note that the finish wire of coil #1 goes to the finish wire of coil #2, which is top layer to top layer. This pattern then has start of coil 2 (bottom layer) going to start of coil 3 (also bottom layer). When the copper tube with the coils is placed around the rotor, the distance from any magnet to any coil must be identical. If it measures different, acrylic holding
shapes can be bolted to the aluminum base, protruding upward, and thus push the copper tube in the direction needed to maintain the spacing as stated.

23) Wires to load.
24) Wires to start switch.
25) Rotational direction which is clockwise when viewing from top down.
26) Acrylic dome for protection against elements.
27) Coating of clear acrylic to solidify rotor. **Do not use standard motor varnish.** Pre-heat the rotor and then dip it into heated liquid acrylic. After removal from dip tank, hand rotate until the acrylic hardens, then balance rotor. For balancing procedure, either add brass weights or remove brass as needed by drilling small holes into rotor on its heavy side.
28) Insulation tubing on all connections.
29) Shaft for start purposes and speed testing (if desired).

The reason that this generator is included in this chapter is because the construction is quite complex. Also, the plans have been around for several years without my being aware of anyone constructing or operating one of these units.

**Cold Fusion.** Cold fusion was initially accepted with great excitement. It then appeared to be discredited. However, at the present time, there have been some two hundred labs. which have confirmed the findings and so there is no doubt as to the reality of the system. In essence, it is said that nuclear fusion can take place at room temperature, under certain conditions. However, developers are struggling to develop a serious working device and although the process has now been confirmed without a doubt, a practical free-energy device based on this method appears to be some time away yet.

There are several web sites which follow the progress in this field, including “Cold Fusion Times” at [http://world.std.com/~mica/cft.html](http://world.std.com/~mica/cft.html) where considerable detail is available.

**Moller’s Atomic Hydrogen Generator.** One already successful experiment can be found at [http://jlnlabs.imars.com/mahg/tests/index.htm](http://jlnlabs.imars.com/mahg/tests/index.htm) where the highly resourceful researcher JL Naudin shows many successful tests on a system which can be found at the [http://jlnlabs.imars.com/mahg/article.htm](http://jlnlabs.imars.com/mahg/article.htm) website. Please check out these very well presented sites. This system should not be called the “Moller” system as it was originated by William Lyne and published in his book “Occult Ether Systems” in 1997. William Lyne states that in 1999, Nikolas Moller bought a copy of his book and subsequently claimed that he (Moller) had invented the Atomic Hydrogen Generator, quoting directly from Lyne’s book. This system should be called the “Lyne Atomic Hydrogen Generator”.

This system involves repeatedly converting a completely contained body of hydrogen gas from its diatomic state (H$_2$ where two hydrogen atoms are bonded together to form a stable molecule), to its monatomic state H-H (where two hydrogen atoms remain as separate atoms, not closely bonded together) and back again. No hydrogen is consumed. No additional gas is required. The gas is just converted from one state to the other repeatedly. The problem for conventional science is that the output power measured in tests is typically 15 times greater than the input power in carefully measured tests run for periods of more than half an hour. Clearly, additional power is coming from somewhere - possibly the Zero-Point Energy field, possibly from the conversion of a minute amount of the gas from matter into energy (which would make this a practical, room temperature, nuclear reactor). In spite of these results, there appears to be little interest in this system.

Just to give you an idea of the type of content of the web site:
The MAHG (Moller Atomic Hydrogen Generator)
Muammer Yaldiz’s “Ocean Star” Electrical Generator. This is a purely mechanical device which is self-powered and which can provide electric current to drive other equipment. Designed and built in Turkey, it was demonstrated in Dortmund on 17th October 2005. Details of this system can be seen on the http://www.ocean-star.org/center.html web site, including video footage of the demonstration with commentary in both English and German. The demonstration was conducted by J. L. Duarte who ran an independent test and produced a report dated 17th July 2005 on behalf of the Department of Electrical Engineering, Electromechanics and Power Electronics of the Eindhoven Technische Universität. Muammer has obtained Patent Application WO2004091083 for his design. The demonstration was of his portable unit which outputs some 12 volts DC:

During the demonstration was used to light a car lightbulb very brightly:
Muammer has also produced a larger version capable of powering a house:

The demonstration unit was started using a 16 Ahr battery for a few seconds. Once the unit reaches its running speed, it becomes self-powered and capable of delivering substantial electrical power and the starting battery is then disconnected. In theory, no mechanical system can produce 100% efficiency, let alone more than 100%. However, it appears that automotive and marine alternators may well operate well in excess of 100% efficiency and so it would not be impossible for Muammer’s device to actually work.

The report by Dr. J. L. Duarte on the smaller unit provides the following information:

This technical note aims at describing a test which I personally conducted in Izmir, Turkey on 17th July 2005. The purpose of the experiment was to check the energy balance with respect to input and output of an apparatus which was the embodiment of the invention described in the international patent WO 2004/091083 A1 (shown below).

The apparatus was confined inside a metallic box sized 550 x 380 x 270 mm, weighing some 20 Kg, and I was allowed to inspect everything outside this box. However, in order to protect the core ideas of the invention, I was not supposed to check all the details of the internal parts. According to the inventor, the apparatus is predominantly a mechanical system, without any kind of energy storage inside the box (such as batteries, accumulators, flywheels, combustion motors, chemical or radioactive reactions). I believe the intentions of the inventor to be in good faith.

The experimental set-up was quite simple, as shown schematically in Fig.1. It consisted of placing the box with unknown contents, from which DC voltages and currents were expected to be generated, on a table in
the middle of the room. A cable with two terminal contacts was run from the box and instruments were placed between the box and the load, which was a standard DC/AC inverter driving an incandescent lamp. The output power from the box was measured before the load connection as shown here:

![Circuit Connection Method](image)

The circuit connection method used is shown here:

After a short start procedure, the metallic box and the load were both fully isolated from the environment, ensuring that there was no physical contact or connection to external power sources such as the public electric mains supply, at any time during the whole duration of the measurements. As the start-up energy input to the apparatus was quite modest, the main issue was then to measure the delivered energy output.

I had prepared the power measurements with care, by using reliable instruments which I personally brought with me from my own University laboratory. In order to measure the DC voltage directly out of the positive and negative terminals, I used two different voltmeters connected in parallel. One voltmeter was an analogue type, constructed with permanent magnets and wires, while the other was a digital voltmeter. To measure the DC current I used two ammeters in series, one analogue and one digital. If electromagnetic waves should interfere with the measurements, then they would disturb one or other instrument, but not all four pieces at the same time and in the same way.

Before starting the test, no audible sound was being produced by the apparatus. The measured voltage and current at the terminals were zero. So, as far as I could observe, the apparatus was completely at rest.

The start-up procedure consisted of connecting a small 12V DC lead-acid battery to two contact points inside the box for a few seconds. I checked the time using my own watch and it was more than 5 seconds but less than 10 seconds. I consider it reasonable to consider the time to have been 8 seconds. After that time, no energy input was connected to the box by means of cables.

Immediately after the start-up procedure, I could hear noise such as would be produced by parts rotating inside the box. The inventor said that some ten minutes should be allowed to elapse before the load was connected. During that time, both of the voltmeters showed the output voltage dropping slowly from 12.9 volts to 12.5 volts. The two voltmeters matched accurately. In the following hours, I observed and recorded by hand, the voltage and current values displayed by the instruments. The displayed values were quite
stable, so I initially decided to note them at 15 minute intervals, but later on at 30 minute intervals.

From time to time, using my hands, I attempted to find a temperature gradient inside the box, but I could not detect any variation or increase in the temperature compared to the room temperature. After five hours, I took the decision to stop the measurements. The results are shown in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>V1 (Digital)</th>
<th>V2 (Analogue)</th>
<th>A1 (Digital)</th>
<th>A2 (Analogue)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0:00</td>
<td>12.54</td>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>2.23</td>
<td>2.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0:15</td>
<td>12.57</td>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>2.29</td>
<td>2.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0:30</td>
<td>12.57</td>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>2.29</td>
<td>2.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0:45</td>
<td>12.53</td>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>2.27</td>
<td>2.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:00</td>
<td>12.51</td>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>2.27</td>
<td>2.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:15</td>
<td>12.48</td>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>2.27</td>
<td>2.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:30</td>
<td>12.47</td>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>2.27</td>
<td>2.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:00</td>
<td>12.41</td>
<td>12.4</td>
<td>2.26</td>
<td>2.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:30</td>
<td>12.35</td>
<td>12.4</td>
<td>2.26</td>
<td>2.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:00</td>
<td>12.30</td>
<td>12.3</td>
<td>2.25</td>
<td>2.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:30</td>
<td>12.22</td>
<td>12.3</td>
<td>2.25</td>
<td>2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:00</td>
<td>12.15</td>
<td>12.2</td>
<td>2.25</td>
<td>2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:30</td>
<td>12.01</td>
<td>12.1</td>
<td>2.24</td>
<td>2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:00</td>
<td>12.00</td>
<td>12.0</td>
<td>2.23</td>
<td>2.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As far as I am concerned, the above table of results kills the proposed system stone dead. The voltage readings are absolutely typical of an inverter powered by a lead-acid battery. I have tested many batteries in exactly the same way and the table looks 100% familiar. If the box contained a genuine self-powered generator, then I would expect the output voltage to remain constant under the constant current drain. In my opinion, it was wholly irresponsible to have stopped the test after just five hours with the output voltage falling steadily. If the output voltage had been rock steady at 12.5 volts for the whole five hours, then that would not have been quite so bad but with it going down 12.3, 12.2, 12.1, 12.0 in the last four 30-minute intervals, and with a lead-acid battery voltage of 11.5 for a fully discharged battery, it was wholly unrealistic to stop the test. A further ten hours of testing should have been undertaken.

For that reason, the OceanStar information is placed here, among the “Unlikely to Result in a Workable Device” section. However, on the basis that I am not infallible and it is possible that this system may actually work as described, here is the information from the Patent Application WO2004091083 although the quality of reproduction and the clarity of the wording is not particularly good:

**A SYSTEM WHICH GENERATES ELECTRICAL POWER VIA AN ACCUMULATOR THAT PROVIDES THE INITIAL MOTION FOR THE SYSTEM**

**ABSTRACT**

This is a portable system that generates electrical power via an accumulator that provides the initial motion for the system. Two batteries are used in this system and the system is kept working via the initial motion provided by these batteries. There is no need for another transformer. This device works using its own mechanism and there is no need for additional devices. In this way, a continuous electrical power generation is possible. This device can work without connecting it to a network so it is possible to use it at places where electricity does not exist. Moreover, when connected to the entry of a building, the need for a network is avoided. This system generates electrical power independent of a network.

**DESCRIPTION**

A system which generates electrical power via an accumulator that provides the initial motion for the system. This is a portable system that generates electrical power via an accumulator that provides the initial motion for the system. Already existing systems can generate electric power of whose duration depends on the lifetime of the battery. In these systems, the battery has to be reloaded in order to restart the system. 12V electrical power provided by the batteries used in cars is increased to 220 V via transformers.

Two accumulators are used in our invention. The system works on a continuous basis after the initial start up via these accumulators. There is no need for another transformer. Our system, which generates electrical
power, does not need any other devices and it keeps on generating energy via its own mechanism. Also, the system works without connecting it to a network.

Thus, it can be used at any place where no electricity exists. Nevertheless, when this system is connected to the entry of the buildings, there is no need for an additional network. The system can produce electrical power independent of a network.

**DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS**

Below are the explanations of the figures that provide a better understanding about this invention.

Fig.1 is a schematic view of the system.

**Numbers used on the schematic:**

1- Accumulator
2- Regulator
3- Big Gear 3/1-Starter dynamo
4- Small gear 4/1-2-Feedback dynamo
5- Small gear 5/1-2-3-Feedback dynamo
6- Contactor
7/1 and 7/2- Commitatris
8- 29 DC input
9- 24 DC output
10- 580 DC output 11- Switch
12- Shunt
13- Rectifier
14- Capacitor
15- 2.5 mm cable
16- Collector
17- Charcoal
18- Fixing clamps
19- Fixing clamps
20- Lamp
21- Conjector
22- Starter dynamo
23- Feedback dynamo
24- Alternating current dynamo
25- Magnetic switch
26- Pulley
27- Pulley
28- V pulley
29- 380V current output
30- 220 V current input
DESCRIPTION

This invention is a system that starts working via the motion of alternator. There exist two accumulators(1), and the first motion provided by the accumulator is carried to the regulator. Contactor (6) keeps the starter dynamo working by disconnecting the accumulator (1) once the regulator (2) is put in. The voltage coming from the accumulator (1) passes through the regulator and the start dynamo (3/1) starts working and thus the feedback alternators via the gears (4/1-2-5/1-23). Feedback dynamo start sending pure DC current to regulator via shunt (12), capacitor (14) and diode (13). It connects all the currents that reaches to the regulator in 4 seconds and sends to the contactor (6). Accumulator (1) is put out by this current that reaches to the regulator. This current is transformed to the started dynamo (3/1). There becomes a transformation within the system. In case of electricity shortage, it keeps on working by using the current generated by the commitatris (7/1).

Via the starter dynamo(3/1), DC is generated in the alternators which are connected to the gears and this current is transformed to the commitatris (7/1 and 7/2) and DC voltage is generated at commitatris (7/1 and 7/2).

Second System: 3x24 DC voltage is transformed to the second starter dynamo (22). Once the start dynamo works (22), a feedback dynamo (23) having a pulley system and a feedback dynamo (24) generating alternating current starts working. The feedback dynamo (23) starts feeding back; the feedback dynamo (24) which generates alternating current is independently generating 6 KV, 18 Amp, 50Hz current. Moreover, first system produces 24 DC and 580 DC current on its own.

The bigger the gears are, the more the generated current is.

This system, which is the subject of our invention, can be used at any place. You can use it at places where there exist no electricity, or at places such as villages, cities, buildings, greenhouses where there is no network. Moreover, network is no longer a must. Instead of a network, you can use our system. There is no need for gasoline when this system is used in vehicles.

Jesse McQueen. There is a US patent which was granted to Jesse McQueen in 2006. This system looks too good to be true and, on the surface, appears impossible, even taking into account that it has been said that ordinary vehicle alternators have a Coefficient Of Performance over one (i.e. output energy is greater than the energy that the user has to put into the device to make it operate). I am not aware of anybody who has tried this system, so I have no evidence that it doesn’t work - just a lack of belief in a system of this type being able to operate as described. As against that, the US Patent office has granted this patent and they have a reputation of being highly opposed to admitting that there is any such thing as a “perpetual motion machine”, which this system clearly is. So, I leave it up to you to make up your own mind, and test the system if you wish, which should be easy to do as it involves no real construction, but instead, uses off-the-shelf manufactured products which are readily available and not particularly expensive. Here is the patent:

US Patent 7,095,126 22nd August 2006 Inventor: Jesse McQueen

INTERNAL ENERGY-GENERATING POWER SOURCE

ABSTRACT

An external power source such as a battery is used to initially supply power to start an alternator and generator. Once the system has started it is not necessary for the battery to supply power to the system. The battery can then be disconnected. The alternator and electric motor work in combination to generator electrical power. The alternator supplies this electrical power to the two inverters. One inverter outputs part of it’s power to the lamp, and part back to the electric motor/generator. This power is used to power the electric motor. The second inverter supplies power to the specific load devices which are connected to the system.

US Patent References:
5033565 July 1991 Abukawa et al.
5036267 July 1991 Markunas
5785136 July 1998 Falkenmayer et al.
BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Electrical energy occurs naturally, but seldom in forms that can be used. For example, although the energy dissipated as lightning exceeds the world's demand for electricity by a large factor, lightning has not been put to practical use because of its unpredictability and other problems. Generally, practical electric-power-generating systems convert the mechanical energy of moving parts into electrical energy. While systems that operate without a mechanical step do exist, they are at present either excessively inefficient or expensive because of a dependence on elaborate technology. While some electric plants derive mechanical energy from moving water (hydroelectric power), the vast majority derives it from heat engines in which the working substance is steam. Roughly 89% of power in the United States is generated this way. The steam is generated with heat from combustion of fossil fuels or from nuclear fission.

In electricity, a machine is used to change mechanical energy into electrical energy. It operates on the principle of electromagnetic induction. When a conductor passes through a magnetic field, a voltage is induced across the ends of the conductor. The generator is simply a mechanical arrangement for moving the conductor and leading the current produced by the voltage to an external circuit, where it actuates devices which require electricity. In the simplest form of generator, the conductor is an open coil of wire rotating between the poles of a permanent magnet. During a single rotation, one side of the coil passes through the magnetic field first in one direction and then in the other, so that the induced current is alternating current (AC), moving first in one direction, then in the other. Each end of the coil is attached to a separate metal slip ring that rotates with the coil. Brushes that rest on the slip rings are attached to the external circuit. Thus the current flows from the coil to the slip rings, then through the brushes to the external circuit. In order to obtain direct current (DC), i.e., current that flows in only one direction, a commutator is used in place of slip rings.

A commutator is a single slip ring split into left and right halves that are insulated from each other and are attached to opposite ends of the coil. It allows current to leave the generator through the brushes in only one direction. This current pulsates, going from no flow to maximum flow and back again to no flow. A practical DC generator, with many coils and with many segments in the commutator, gives a steadier current. There are also several magnets in a practical generator. In any generator, the whole assembly carrying the coils is called the armature, or rotor, while the stationary parts constitute the stator. Except in the case of the magneto, which uses permanent magnets, AC and DC generators use electromagnets. Field current for the electromagnets is most often DC from an external source. The term dynamo is often used for the DC generator; the generator in automotive applications is usually a dynamo. An AC generator is called an alternator. To ease various construction problems, alternators have a stationary armature and rotating electromagnets. Most alternators produce a polyphase AC, a complex type of current that provides a smoother power flow than does simple AC. By far the greatest amount of electricity for industrial and civilian use comes from large AC generators driven by steam turbines.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

It is an objective of the present invention to provide an energy source that generates more energy than the energy source requires in order to operate.

It is a second objective of the present invention to provide a system that uses the excess energy produced by the energy source to power other various devices.

It is a third objective of the present invention to provide an energy source for supplying power to various devices without the reliance on an external energy source for supplying power to the energy source of the present invention.

The present invention provides an energy source that is capable of producing more energy than it requires to operate. The excess energy is used to power devices. A feedback loop approach is used to channel a portion of the energy produce by the generator back to the generators power input port. This feedback loop approach enables the generator to use its own generated energy to operate. The additional energy generated by the generator is used to power other devices that can be connected to the generator.

In the method of the invention an external power source such as a battery is used to initially supply power to start an alternator and generator. Once the system has started it is not necessary for the battery to supply power to the system. The battery can then be disconnected. The alternator and electric motor work in combination to generate electrical power. The alternator supplies this electrical power to the two inverters. One inverter outputs part of its power to the lamp load device and part back to the electric motor/generator.
This power is used to power the electric motor. The second inverter supplies power to the specific load devices that are connected to the system.

**DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS**

Fig.1 is a configuration of an implementation of the internal power generating system of the present invention.

Fig.2 is a configuration of an alternate embodiment of the internal power generating system of the present invention.

**DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION**

This invention is an electric power-generating device that produces several times more power than it takes to operate this system. This invention comprises a first power source that is connected to a second power source. Referring to Fig.1, the system of the present invention comprises a battery source 10 (12 volt DC) that connects to an electrical alternator 20. The battery supplies the initial power to the system to initiate/start the operation of the alternator. The present invention can implement other power sources in addition to the illustrated battery to supply the initial power to the system. In the initial model of the present invention incorporated an alternator from a 1997 Isuzu Trooper. The invention incorporates an electric motor 30 (148 watt AC). The electric motor connects to an inverter 40 (400 watt AC). The system also comprises a second inverter 50. The battery 10 also connects to both inverters 40 and 50. Each inverter has two outputs. For the first inverter 40, one output feeds into the electric motor 30 to provide to the motor and alternator combination. The other output feeds into a lamp device 60. The lamp device is a 60-watt AC lamp. This lamp device alters the current traveling from the inverter 40 such that the current feeding into the electric motor 30 is not purely inductive.

Although, Fig.1 shows a lamp device, other loads can be used to accomplish this same a task. The inverter 40 has an input from which the inverter receives power from the alternator 20. The second inverter 50 also has an input that also receives power from the alternator.

In operation, initially, the battery 10 is used to supply power to start the alternator 20 and generator 30. Once the system has started, it is not necessary for the battery to supply power to the system. The battery can then be disconnected. Once started, the alternator 20 and electric motor 30 work in combination to generate electrical power. The alternator supplies this electrical power to the two inverters 40 and 50. Inverter 40 outputs part of this power to the lamp 60 and part to the electric motor 30. This power is used to power the electric motor. The second inverter 50 supplies power to the specific load devices which are connected to the system. These load devices can be any devices which operate by using electrical power.

The key aspect of the present invention is the loop between the alternator 20, electric motor 30 and the first inverter 40. A portion of the power generated by the electric motor is recycled and is used to power the electric motor. In this way the system produces the power internally that is used to power the system. This concept makes this system a self-power generating system.
Fig. 2 shows an alternative embodiment of the power generating system of the present invention. This embodiment incorporates a gear box 70, a car starter 72, and a head brush generator 74, and buck booster 76. Initially, the car starter 72 works with the battery to supply power to the generator. This process is similar to the process of starting a car. The gearshift 70 increases the rpm of the generator. The Buck Booster serves as the output to supply power to the various loads. This configuration also incorporates a DC converter 78.

**The Nitro Cell.** This document was originally produced at the request of an Australian man who said that the cell worked well for him but that he was afraid to publish the details himself. This document was prepared, approved by him and published. It proved very popular and an enthusiast group was set up to build and test this “Nitro Cell”.

The results of this building and testing have been most unsatisfactory. As far as I am aware, not a single cell proved successful in powering an engine. I therefore, withdrew the document, since even though I believe it to be capable of working, the fact that many people failed to get it working indicates to me that this document should not be in a “practical” guide. I have been assured by two separate independent sources, both of which I rate as being reliable sources, that there are “hundreds” of these cells working in Australia and the USA. I have repeatedly been asked for copies of this document, so I am publishing it again, but requesting you, the reader, to be aware that should you make one of these devices, that it is unlikely that you will get it operational. Having said that, I understand that it may work very well as a booster.

Simple arithmetic applied to the claimed performance of this device, shows that much of the claimed mileage has to have been covered without using any fuel at all. While this sounds impossible, in actual fact it is not, but that sort of operation comes from the Joe Cell which is notoriously difficult to get operational, requiring at least a week of fiddling around to get the metalwork of the vehicle aligned with the energy field used to provide the motive power. Also, each person acts as a “dipole” which produces an energy field around that person. Most people have a polarity which opposes the Joe Cell energy, and they will never get a Joe Cell
to operate as they can disrupt such a cell from several paces away from it. The D10.pdf document which describes the Joe Cell includes information on how to reverse your own personal polarity, to stop blocking the cell performance.

This definitely sounds unbelievable, but as it happens to be the way that things actually are, there is little point in pretending otherwise. Personally, I never recommend anybody to build a Joe Cell for powering a vehicle, as the likelihood of success is so low. However, having said that, a friend of mine in the USA has his Joe Cell connected to his truck in “shandy” mode where the carburettor is left connected to it’s normal fossil fuel supply. The vehicle is perfectly capable of drawing in fossil fuel to run the engine, but it just doesn’t. His fuel consumption is literally zero and he is driving around powered solely by the energy channelled into the engine by the Joe Cell. This is most unusual, and I do not recommend you spending time and money on building such a cell. I mention these cells so that you can know all about them, but I would leave it at that.

Here is the original “D18” document, which is followed by important update information:

A Different Fuel

In the early days of heavier than air flight, observations were made and based on those observations, practical operating rules were deduced. After a time, those rules became called the “laws” of aerodynamics. These “laws” were applied to the design, building and use of aircraft and they were, and are, very useful.

One day it was observed that if you apply those laws of aerodynamics to bumble bees, then according to those laws, it was not possible for a bee to fly since there was just not enough lift generated to get the bee off the ground. But simple observation shows that bees do in fact fly and they can rise off the ground when they choose to do so.

Does that mean that the “laws” of aerodynamics are no good? Of course not, as they have been shown to be of great practical use when dealing with aircraft. What it did show was that the existing laws did not cover every instance, so research was done and the laws of aerodynamics were extended to include the equations for lift generated by turbulent flow. These show how a bee can develop enough lift to get off the ground. Do bees care about this? No, not at all, they just go on flying as before. What has changed is that the understanding of scientists and engineers has been extended to better fit the world around us.

Today, people who are trained in science and engineering are fed the idea that internal combustion engines need to consume a fossil fuel in order to operate. That is not strictly true and at the present time, engines using hydrogen gas as a fuel are becoming commonplace. Unfortunately, most of the hydrogen produced for this use, comes from fossil fuels, so these vehicles are still running on a fossil fuel, though only indirectly.

The “laws” of engineering say that it is not possible for an internal combustion engine to run without consuming some sort of fuel. Unfortunately, Josef Papp has demonstrated an internal combustion engine which has had it’s intake and exhaust systems blanked off. Filled with a mixture of inert gasses, during one demonstration, that Volvo engine ran for half an hour, producing a measured 300 horsepower, and apparently consuming no fuel at all. Josef received US patent 3,680,432 for his engine and you can see a video of one of his engines running at http://video.google.com/videoplay?docid=-2850891179207690407. Robert Britt designed a similar sealed motor filled with a mixture of inert gasses, and he received US patent 3,977,191 for it.

Does this mean that the current laws of engineering are of no use? Certainly not, they are vital for everyday life today. What it does mean, however, is that the present laws need to be extended to include the effects shown by these engines.

Another thing widely accepted today is that an internal combustion engine can’t use water as a fuel. Well… let’s leave that to one side for the moment and look at it from a slightly different angle. Engines can definitely run using air and hydrogen as the fuel, there is no argument about that as there are many vehicle around which do just that. If you pass a current through water, the water breaks up into hydrogen gas and oxygen gas, this mixture is called “hydroxy” gas and that can most definitely be used, along with air, as the fuel for an internal combustion engine. But… this gas came from water, so is it really correct to say that water cannot be used as the fuel for an internal combustion engine?

Ah, says somebody with relief, that is not the case, because you are using water and electricity to get the fuel for the engine. But… the average vehicle powered by an internal combustion engine, has an alternator
which produces electricity when the engine is running, so there is a source of electricity to do the electrolysis of the water and produce the gas to run the engine.

But the laws of engineering say that you can’t get enough electricity from the alternator to produce enough gas to run the engine. Engineers will point to the work of Faraday who examined the process of electrolysis in great detail and produced the “laws” of electrolysis. These laws show that you can’t get enough electrical power from an engine to make enough gas to run the engine.

Unfortunately, there have been several people who have done just that, so we have reached the point in time when these “laws” need to be extended to cover cases not covered by the work of Faraday. People have got from 300% to 1,200% of the gas output which Faraday considered to be the maximum possible. Several people have run vehicles on hydroxy gas produced by electrolysis of water using electricity generated by the vehicle’s alternator. This shows clearly that it can be done, and as a consequence, the “laws” need to be extended to include the newer techniques.

Leaving that aside for the moment, there have been at least two people who have managed to power an engine with water as the only fuel, and without using electrolysis. In this instance, a fine spray of water droplets inside the cylinder is acted on by the spark, and a secondary electrical supply from an inverter boosts the spark, forming a plasma discharge. The result is a power stroke nearly as powerful as using a fossil fuel. For the moment, let us also ignore that style of operation.

This document describes another system which uses water and air as the primary fuels, but again, does not use electrolysis to generate hydroxy gas for use in the engine. Instead, the objective is to create a continuous supply of Nitrogen Hydroxide (NHO₂) for use as the fuel. This system has worked well for a number of people but there has been considerable intimidation and most of these people are very reluctant to pass the information on. This document is an attempt to present those details clearly enough to allow the system to be replicated by anyone who wishes to do so.

So, how exactly is this fuel generated? The production method is described as the fuel gas being synthesised by a mixture of stream water and rock salt (the mineral “halite”) in the presence of air, being acted on by engine “vacuum”, electrolysis and a strong magnetic field. This fuel is said to be more powerful than hydrogen and is a much more viable fuel source as less of it is needed to run an internal combustion engine.

This system may be used with any internal combustion engine, whether used in a vehicle or stationary when powering an electrical generator or other equipment. The additional equipment consists of one, or more, horizontal cylinders mounted near the engine. A single, horizontally mounted, cylinder can generate sufficient gas to power an internal combustion engine up to two litres in capacity. Larger engines will need two cylinders to generate enough gas for them to operate.

It must be stressed that this is not a hydroxy gas electrolysis cell. One test vehicle has been run on this system for a distance of 3,000 miles (4,800 kilometers) and the liquid fuel used was only 2 litres of water and 2 gallons of petrol. Two litres of water converted to hydroxy gas will definitely not power a vehicle engine for anything like 3,000 miles, so let me stress again that the fuel being generated in this cell is Nitrogen Hydroxide (NHO₂). It should be noted that if the cell described here is used as a booster for the original fossil fuel, then it will not be necessary to upgrade the engine by fitting stainless steel valves, piston rings, exhaust system, etc.

The person using this system which is shown in the following photograph, has opted for an exceptionally long generation tube attached to his stationary generator:
The versions of this cell design shown in the previous photograph and the following photograph, are early models which were in use before it was discovered that there was a considerable enhancement in gas production if a coil is wrapped around the cylinder.

For vehicle operation, it is more normal to have a shorter cylinder, (or pair of cylinders if the engine capacity is large) as can be seen in the following photograph of a 4-litre, 8-cylinder vehicle engine which uses this system. Engines of up to 2 litre capacity can be powered by a single horizontal cell, while two cells are used for larger engines.

The construction details are not difficult to follow and the materials needed are not particularly difficult to find nor expensive to buy. The main body of the device is constructed as shown in the following diagram. A chamber is constructed from a piece of 316L Grade (food quality) stainless steel pipe, 300 mm (12 inches) long and 100 mm (4 inches) in diameter. The length of 300 mm is chosen for convenience of fitting in the engine compartment of a vehicle. If there is plenty of room there, the length can be extended for better gas performance and water capacity. If that is done, keep the 100 mm cylinder diameter and all of the clearance dimensions mentioned below.

The chamber is sealed at each end with 12 mm (half inch) thick discs made from “Lexan” (a very strong polycarbonate resin thermoplastic). These discs have a 3 mm (1/8”) deep groove cut into their inner faces. The groove is there for the cylinder to fit into when the discs are clamped in place and held by stainless steel
nests tightened on a 10 mm (3/8") stainless steel threaded rod. To combat engine vibration, a lock nut is used to clamp the retaining nuts in place. The threaded rod also provides the contact point for the negative side of the electrical supply and a stainless steel bolt is TIG welded to the outside of the cylinder to form the connection point for the positive side of the electrical supply.

This basic container is modified in a number of ways. Firstly, a small 3 mm (1/8 inch) diameter air intake pipe is provided in one of the Lexan discs. This air intake is provided with a needle-valve which is screwed tightly shut for the early stages of testing and only eased slightly open when the engine is actually running.

Also fitted is an 12 mm (1/2") stainless steel pipe, attached to the stainless steel cylinder to form a gas supply feed to the engine. A one-way valve is placed in this pipe as the design calls for the cylinder to be maintained at a pressure which is less that the outside atmosphere. The lower the pressure inside the cell, the greater the rate of gas production. The one-way valve allows flow into the engine but blocks any flow from the engine into the cylinder. This valve is the same type as is used in the vehicle's vacuum brake booster system.

The gas outlet pipe is continued from the one-way valve using plastic tubing for a few inches. This is to prevent an electrical connection between the stainless steel cylinder which is connected to the positive side of the electrical supply, and the engine manifold which is connected to the negative side of the electrical supply. If this pipe were metal all the way, then that would create a direct electrical short-circuit. The pipe running to the engine intake manifold needs to be made of metal in the area near the engine, due to the high engine temperature, so stainless steel pipe should be used for the last part of the gas supply pipe running to the engine. The gas supply pipe fitting is made to the most central of the bungs fitted to the manifold.

For the initial testing period, a filling port with a screw cap is mounted on the top of the cylinder, in order to allow the water inside to be topped up as necessary. Later on, if long journeys are made on a regular basis,
then it is worth fitting a separate water tank, water-level sensor and water injection system using a standard vehicle windscreen washer water pump. The topping up is done with water alone as the rock salt additive does not get used in the process and so does not need to be replaced. With these additional features, the gas generation cell looks like this:

There is one further step, and that is to add an inner cylinder of 316L grade stainless steel. This cylinder is 274 mm (10.75 inches) long and 80 mm (3.15") in diameter. Both cylinders have a wall thickness of 1 mm. The inner cylinder is supported on the central threaded bar and it is clamped in place with retaining nuts. A supporting lug is created by making two cuts at each end of the cylinder, drilling a hole and then bending the lug up inside the cylinder at right angles to its axis. This needs to be done accurately, otherwise the inner cylinder will not lie parallel to the threaded rod, or alternatively, not be centred on the threaded rod. The centre of the 10 mm (3/8") hole is positioned 8 mm (5/16") in from the end of the cylinder. Two 48 mm (1.9") long cuts are made each side of the hole, positioned to be about 5 mm (3/16") clear of the hole - this measurement is not critical. This is done at each end of the cylinder and the holes are positioned exactly opposite one another, along the axis of the cylinder, as shown here:

![Diagram of inner cylinder installation](image)

The inner cylinder is secured in position by two bolts as shown here:
The inner nuts are manoeuvred on inside on of the lugs by hand and then the threaded rod is rotated to move one nut to the inside of the other lug, while the nearer nut is held to prevent it rotating. When the rod is positioned correctly and the inner nuts are pressed up hard against the lugs, then a box spanner is used to lock the outer nuts tightly against the lugs, forming a strong mounting lock.

The inner cylinder is inserted inside the outer cylinder, the Lexan end discs are then added and the outer lock nuts added to produce this arrangement:

![Diagram showing the construction of the units](image)

CROSS-SECTION

This gives a 9 mm clearance between the two cylinders and this gap stretches 360 degrees around the cylinders. The inner cylinder is located 10 mm clear of the Lexan end discs.

The units is completed by winding a coil of 2 mm diameter insulated copper wire tightly around the full length of the outer cylinder and filling the unit with electrolyte to a level of 3 mm (1/8 inch) above the top of the inner cylinder as shown here:
The wire used for the coil is heavy duty copper wire with an inner diameter of 2 mm, i.e. British 14 SWG wire or American 12 AWG wire. The coil is held in position at the ends of the cylinder, with plastic cable ties, as these are non-magnetic. This coil is of major importance in this design as the strong magnetic field produced by it has a very marked effect on the performance of the cell. The magnetic field produced by this coil, increases the gas production by anything from 30% to 50% and increases the production of Nitrogen Hydroxide by a factor of ten times. The electrical connection of the coil is in series with the cell, so the battery positive is not taken directly to the bolt welded to the outer cylinder, but instead it passes through the coil winding before being connected to the outer cylinder.

**Installation and Use**

The gas outlet pipe is connected directly to a vacuum port directly below the carburettor on the manifold of the engine. This connection is important as the cell relies on the “vacuum” (actually reduced air pressure) produced by the engine intake stroke, as part of it’s gas-forming process.

The exact method of mounting the cell in a vehicle depends on the vehicle, so this is something which you will need to think out for yourself. Be sure that you insulate the cell from the metal bodywork of the vehicle and I would suggest that you keep it away from the high-voltage electrical wiring (coil, distributor, spark plug leads, etc.).

The electrical connection arrangement is as shown here:

![SINGLE — CYLINDER ARRANGEMENT](image)

Or for larger engines:

![TWIN — CYLINDER ARRANGEMENT](image)

The method of electrical connection is important. It is vital that the electrical supply is disconnected when the engine is not running. For that reason, the power to the cell(s) is taken via the vehicle’s ignition switch. In order not to load that switch unduly, a standard automotive relay is used to carry the main current, leaving...
just the relay current to be handled by the ignition switch. Also, a 30 amp circuit-breaker or fuse is placed in
the circuit, immediately after the battery connection. In the unlikely event of some physical problem with the
cell occurring, this device will disconnect the power instantly and avoid any possibility of a short-circuit
causing a fire, or of excess gas being produced when it is not needed

The water to be used in this cell needs to be selected carefully. Tap water is not acceptable as it will be
contaminated with several additives - fluorine, chlorine, etc. put in it when going through the purification
process of the supply company and many other chemicals picked up along the way. It is considered very
important that the water be taken from a stream, preferably from where it rises, as that is the point of
greatest purity. May I also suggest that the water be transported in either glass containers or stainless steel
containers as these help to maintain the purity. Avoid plastic containers, because while these appear to be
completely inert, they frequently are most definitely not and chemicals from their manufacture can, and do,
enter any liquid contained in them.

The cell is filled to a depth of 25 mm (1 inch) below the top of the outer cylinder and then (on the first
occasion only) one or two grains of rock salt are added to the cell. This addition needs to be minimal as it
controls the current draw from the electrical system and the strength of the magnetic field created by that
current. After using the cell for at least a week, if the gas rate is not adequate, then add one more grain of
rock salt.

Getting the cell attuned to the vehicle is likely to take at least a week of use. The cell is put in place and the
vehicle run using it’s normal fuel. The needle valve on the cell’s air intake is kept completely closed during
this period. The inventor opted to continue running his engine on very small amounts of petrol plus this new
gas fuel - the result being 3,000 miles covered on just two gallons of petrol. If you consider this as still being
a petrol powered vehicle, then getting 1,500 mpg is quite an achievement - I certainly would settle for that.

When the cell is first connected, you will notice that the engine ticks over faster and tends to rev more than it
did before. It will take several days for the system to settle down. Part of this is believed to be the effect of
the new magnetic coil in the engine compartment. It may be that the metal parts of the vehicle have to take
up a magnetic alignment which matches the magnetic field produced by the cell. Whether that is so or not, it
will take a few days before the system settles down into its final state.

It should be realised that if the vehicle has a fuel-control computer with an oxygen sensor mounted in the
exhaust stream, then the oxygen sensor signal will need to be adjusted. The D17.pdf document of this
series, shows in detail how to do this, should it be necessary. If the vehicle has a carburettor, then there is
an advantage in fitting a one inch bore carburettor of the type found on lawnmowers, as this promotes lower
pressure inside the manifold and promotes good cell operation as the lower the pressure (or the greater the
“vacuum”), the higher becomes the rate of gas production.

**Practical Details**

The original end pieces were cut and grooved using a lathe. Most people do not own or have access to a
lathe so an alternative method of cutting the discs needs to be used. The essential part of this operation is
to cut an accurate groove to take the 100 mm stainless steel outer cylinder. The groove needs to be cut
accurately as it needs to form an airtight seal on the end of the cylinder. Consequently, the end of the
cylinder and the bottom of the groove, both need to be straight and true if they are to mate securely.

An alternative method is to use an adjustable hole-cutter drill attachment. If this is used with a drill press or
a vertical stand adaptor for an electric hand drill, then if care is taken, an accurate groove of the correct
dimensions can be cut. As an extra precaution, a thin layer of marine grade white “SikaFlex 291” bedding
compound can be used in the bottom of the groove. Two things here. Firstly, only use the genuine SikaFlex
291 compound even though it is far more expensive than other products which claim to be equivalents - they
aren’t, so pay for the genuine product. Secondly, we do not want the slightest trace of the SikaFlex
contacting the electrolyte if we can avoid it, so be very sparing in the amount put into the groove, no matter
what you paid for it. Make sure that the bedding compound is placed only in the very bottom of the groove
and not on the sides. When the cylinder is forced into the groove, a very small amount of the compound will
be driven into any gap between the cylinder and the sides of the groove.

What is needed is a result which looks like this:
The other important part of this joint is the end of the outer cylinder. It is recommended that the cylinder be cut by hand with a hacksaw to avoid generating excessive heat which can affect the structure of the metal. To get the end exactly square, use a piece of printer paper. This has straight edges and square corners, so wrap it flat around the cylinder and manoeuvre it into place so that the overlapping edges match exactly on both sides. If the paper is flat and tight against the cylinder and the edges match exactly, then the edge of the paper will be an exact true and square line around the cylinder. Mark along the edge of the paper with a felt pen and then use that line as a guide to a perfectly square cut. To avoid excessive heat, do not use any power tool like an angle grinder on the cylinder. Just clean the edges of the cut gently with a hand file.

In the diagrams shown earlier, the gas pipe, water-filler cap and the battery positive connection bolt have all been shown on the top of the cylinder. This is only to show them clearly, and there is no need to have them positioned like that. You will notice that they all get in the way of the wire coil, which is not an advantage.

It is necessary for the gas pipe to be positioned at the top as that gives the best clearance above the water surface. The clearance should be maintained at 25 mm (1 inch). The water-filler cap which was shown on top of the cylinder, would be better positioned on one of the end caps as that would keep it out of the way of the coil of wire:

This arrangement has the advantage that it does not require a filler hole to be drilled through the steel cylinder.

It is necessary for the electrical connection to be welded to the cylinder, but it is not necessary to have a head on the bolt as that just gets in the way of the electrical coil. The best strategy is to use a longer bolt of small diameter, remove the head and weld the shaft in place with spot welds which will not get in the way of the coil, as shown below. Spot welds are very quick to make, but even they generate a good deal of heat in the pipe. Some people prefer to silver-solder the bolt shaft to the cylinder as the heating is less.
The bolt is kept just clear of the end cap to avoid fouling it when it is clamped on to the cylinder. A lock nut is used to keep the solder tag assembly clear of the outer edge of the end cap. This allows the wire coil to be wound right up to the bolt. It does not matter which end of the coil is connected to the outer cylinder, but common sense suggests that the end nearest the bolt is connected to the bolt. It is, however, important that once connected, the electrical connections to the coil are maintained ever afterwards, to ensure that the magnetic field stays in the same direction. Remember that the surrounding metal parts of the vehicle will take up a magnetic orientation matching that of the coil’s magnetic field, so you do not want to keep changing the direction of the coil’s magnetic field.

When welding the bolt to the outer cylinder, be sure you use stainless steel wire. The joint needs to be made with a MIG or TIG welder. If you don’t have one and can’t hire one, then your local metal fabrication shop will make the spot welds for you in less than a minute and probably not charge you for doing them.

The grade of stainless steel in the cylinders is important. Grade 316L is nearly non-magnetic, so if you hold the cylinder with it’s sides vertical and place a magnet against the cylinder, the magnet should fall off under its own weight. Try this test no matter what grade the stainless steel is supposed to be, as some steels are not labelled correctly. There is a good chance that you will be able to find suitable tubing at your local scrapyard, but be careful on sizing. The 9 mm gap between the outer 100 mm diameter cylinder and the inner cylinder’s 80 mm diameter, is very important indeed. This gap needs to be 9 mm (11/32 inch) so if really necessary to vary the diameters slightly up or down, be sure to pick material which gives the correct gap between the cylinders. Seamless piping is usually preferred to pipes which have seams as the seam welding tends to generate a magnetic effect in the steel. However, if a seamed pipe passes the magnet test with the magnet falling off it, it is definitely good material for the cell.

If you can get it, a good material for the 12 mm (1/2 inch) pipe running to the carburettor manifold, is aluminium. Please remember that the one-way valve on the cell’s output pipe needs to be connected to this pipe with a material which insulates the two metal components. The suggested piping is therefore: the cell output is via a stainless steel pipe connector, connected directly to the one-way valve, which then has a plastic pipe connection to the aluminium tube which runs all the way to the manifold. Please remember to insulate the cell from the vehicle chassis and components to avoid a short-circuit.

An alternative to using the rather expensive “Lexan” for the end caps, is to use “UHMWP” - Ultra-High Molecular Weight Polyethylene which is cheap and easy to obtain as plastic food-chopping boards are usually made from it. The advantage of Lexan is that it is transparent and so the level of the electrolyte can be seen without the need for removing the water-filler cap.

It has been suggested that the topping up of water in the cell can be automatic if you wish it to be so. For this, a water-level sensor circuit is used to drive a standard windscreen-washer water pump when the level of the electrolyte falls below the design level. The sensor itself, can be a bolt running through one of the end caps as shown here:
When the electrolyte level drops below the upper bolt, the circuit contact to the control circuit is broken and the circuit responds by powering up the water pump, which injects a little water to bring the electrolyte level back up to where it should be. When the vehicle is moving, the surface of the electrolyte will not be steady as shown in the diagram, so the control circuit needs to have an averaging section which prevents the water pump being switched on until the circuit input has been missing for several seconds.

Circuitry suitable for this is shown in the electronics tutorial at www.web-space.tv/free-energy (needs the browser’s Refresh button to get past a German-language advertisement page to reach the site) and there is no reason why you should not design and build your own circuit for this.

In the initial stages of testing and installation, when adding rock salt, be very sparing indeed. Add just one grain at a time because the salt ions are very effective in carrying current through the electrolyte solution. Also, if too much is added, it is difficult to reduce the concentration as more water needs to be added, which involves draining off some of the water already in the cell. It is much easier to take your time and add very, very little salt. Give the salt grain plenty of time to dissolve and spread out throughout the electrolyte before checking the cell performance again.

Let me remind you that during the initial cell testing, the air intake needle valve is closed completely and it is not eased open until the engine is running satisfactorily. In the engine acclimatisation period, the engine should be run on it’s normal fuel and the cell just used as a booster. Remember that it will take at least a week for the vehicle to settle down to it’s new method of operation. There is no particular hurry, so take your time and don’t rush things.

If the vehicle is fitted with computer control of the fuel supply, it may be necessary to apply some control to the unit by adjusting the signal coming from the oxygen sensor placed in the vehicle’s exhaust system. The information on how to do this is shown in considerable detail in the companion document “D17.pdf” which can be downloaded free from www.web-space.tv/free-energy (needs the browser’s Refresh button to get past a German-language advertisement page to reach the site).

Some questions have been asked about this cell:

1. Does petrol have to be used or can the engine be run on the cell alone?
   Answer: No, you can eventually eliminate petrol altogether but the engine runs so cleanly that old carbon deposits around the piston rings and elsewhere will get cleaned away and the components may rust. These parts can eventually be replaced with stainless steel versions or instead of that, it is probably possible to avoid replacements by the use of the oil additive called “Vacclaisocryptene QX and Molybdenum Disulfide” - see http://www.clickspokane.com/vacclaisocryptene/ for details. This additive reduces wear to such a degree that engine life may be doubled, no matter what fuel is being used.

2. Why is the unit 300 mm long?
   Answer: Just for convenience in fitting it into the engine compartment. It can easily be longer if space allows it. The longer the unit, the greater the gas production and that is why two 300 mm cells are needed for engines over 2 litres in capacity.
3. Does the cell body need to be made from seamless pipe?
   Answer: Seamless 316L-grade stainless steel is preferred.

4. How do you determine the amount of rock salt to add to the water in the cell?
   Answer: The amount varies with the type and size of engine being dealt with. You want the minimum current through the coil so start with one grain and increase it only very gradually with tiny amounts. If the cell is being mounted in the engine compartment of a vehicle, then the make, model and size of the vehicle will affect the amount due to the magnetic effect of metal components near the cell.

5. Does it matter which end of the coil is attached to the outer cylinder?
   Answer: No, it can be either end.

6. Is the pipe diameter shown from the cell to the engine the best size?
   Answer: The 1/2 inch diameter is very good as it increases the "vacuum" inside the cell as the engine runs. When first testing the engine, remember that the needle valve is completely shut off, and when it is opened during tuning, it is only opened to a minimal setting.

7. Are the exhaust emissions damaging to the environment?
   Answer: Some years ago, a Mercedes car dealer ran his own emissions test on a new Mercedes diesel, using his own equipment. He found that the emissions were reduced by 50% and the engine power increased by 12%. The engine ran better, cleaner and quieter. He was fired for doing this.

   Other independent gas-analyser tests showed that there is an increase in water emissions and a drop in carbon emissions as less fossil fuel is used. It was also noted that the volume of gas produced by the cell was affected by where it was mounted in the engine compartment. This is thought to be due to the magnetic effect on the cell.

**Update Information:**

**Question 1:** Where do we connect the outlet hose from the D18 fuel system to the engine on a late model car with fuel injection system?

**Response:** There is a throttle body on the engine and it is connected to a rubber hose which goes to the air filter. Typically, the rubber hose attaches to the throttle body and is clamped in place. A hole needs to be punched through the rubber housing approximately two inches (50 mm) from the throttle body. A brass fitting needs to be put into this opening. It will have a flange on one end and the other end with be threaded to accept a nut to hold it in place. This brass fitting will be the attachment point for the incoming fuel line from the D18 system and/or any other booster. For the D18 horizontal system, the size of the fitting should be half-inch (12 mm) so as to be able to maintain the proper vacuum pressure to the D18 fuel system.

**Important Note:** Since the practice of using alternate fuels by the public is not widely accepted it would be expedient to locate the fuel inlet opening on the under side of the hose out of plain view. This will help the user pass vehicle inspections and keep inquisitive persons from asking too many questions.

**Question 2:** What do I do I have to do to make the on-board computer function properly with my new booster?

**Response:** You need to install an electronic mixer control system. Plans for such a system can be downloaded from www.better-mileage.com. This control system will fool the on-board ECU into thinking that all is okay and it will continue to work as normal with no problems. There are two corrections that need to be made to the system to make it work properly. They are outlined in red on this diagram:
This circuitry is given in greater detail in Chapter 10.

**Note:** In this application the D18 cell is only being used as a booster. Therefore the engine still is using fossil fuel. There are numerous systems available such as "megasquirt", which allow for tweaking the amount of fuel being injected into the engine, and for making numerous other on-board computer adjustments to your Electronic Control Unit, for those of you who want to use nitrogen hydroxide as your only fuel and/or want to reduce the amount of petrol being injected into the engine.

**Air Inlet Port:** None required!

**Ageing of Cell / Cell Break In:** Use only the proper water as described below. The cell needs to be drained every day during the ageing process. Filter the water five to seven times through a cotton T-shirt. Collect the water only in glass jars, and do not touch it with your bare hands. Re-use the water and top the cell up with the proper water. Use absolutely no electrolytes (such as salt or potassium hydroxide). You can use natural water which has not seen light and that has not been charged such as, well, cave, or spring water at its source. Age the cell until it becomes a slight bronze in colour and does not generate any more gunk inside the cell. The purpose of the break-in period is to purge impurities from the cell.

**Cell Current:** The peak electrical current with the proper water is approximately 10 amps.

**The Positive Electrode:** the inner cylinder should be connected to the battery positive. This should be done via an automotive relay to assure proper shutdown of the cell when the engine has been switched off.

**The Negative Electrode:** This is the outer cylinder, which is connected via a metal strap to the chassis.

**Construction:** The inner cylinder is separated from the outer cylinder by spacers made out of ebonite or any other material which will not deteriorate within the cell. The objective is to keep the plates at an equal 9 mm spacing throughout the cell. The inner cylinder is connected to the threaded rod via a stainless steel wire strap, which is silver soldered in place at both ends of the cylinder. The threaded rod forms the battery positive connection point on the outside of the cell.

**Drain:** There should be a drain at the bottom of one of the end plates, so that you can drain the cell without having to remove it from the vehicle. The water will need to be drained and filtered at least once every three weeks. Drain the cell contents into a glass container. Do not touch the water with your bare hands. Filter
the water at least five times (seven is better). Use a cotton T-shirt for filtering. Never throw the water away but just filter it. Put the water back in the cell and top the cell off using only pre-charged water.

**Electrical Generation:** The cell will continue to produce electricity after engine shutdown which will also lead to gas production, so take the precaution of discharging the cell.

**Electrolyte:** Use absolutely no electrolyte (including salt) at any time. This has been found to decrease the fuel output of the cell and also to have caused unnecessary damage to the plates of the cell.

**Engine Timing:** Yes, you have to adjust it to your engine. This is a very important aspect of getting high mileage with this system. Each engine is different and therefore each engine has a different adjustment.

**Fuel Outlet Piping:** Copper piping is recommended as unlike plastic or rubber, it will reduce condensation of water into the fuel lines and thereby reduce the level of water getting into the engine.

**Fuel Outlet Ports:** There are two of them positioned on opposing ends of the cell. If you are using a 12" cell, then they are positioned 3" in from each end of the cell. If you are using an 8" cell then they are positioned 2" in from each end of the cell. Make one outlet port half-inch (12 mm) in diameter and the other three-quarter of an inch (18 mm) in diameter. Make sure that the piping from the ports extends into the cell by at least an eight of an inch (3 mm). This is to prevent water vapour accumulating at the top of the cell from entering the fuel outlet ports. This measure has been found to reduce water reaching the engine.

**Leak Prevention:** Use rubber gaskets - these can be the type used for domestic plumbing.

**One-way Valves:** One-way valves are not used on the fuel outlet pipes.

**Outlet Pipe Connections:** The half-inch (12 mm) pipe is connected to the engine after the butterfly valve, while the three-quarters of an inch (18 mm) pipe is connected to the engine before the butterfly valve.

**Cylinder Preparation:** The inside of the 4" (100 mm) outer cylinder and the outside of the inner cylinder, which are the opposing cell plates should be sanded very well with medium grit sand paper to rough up the surface. Two sanding directions at right angles to each other should be used. This will insure better cell productivity later. It is important that there should be no direct contact between the cell plates and your bare hands, so wear rubber gloves when sanding and then assembling the cell.

**Voltage:** Only 12 volts is required to run the cell, a typical car battery is all you need to power the cell.

**Water Selection:** Use only natural water that has come out of the ground and not seen light such as well, cave, or spring water at it's source. **Important:** Only add charged water to the cell. Water being used must have a pH of somewhere between 6.4 & 6.5 (slightly acidic). Do not use water with a pH of 7 or higher. The water is charged using a regular Joe Cell with electrodes separated by 3/16" (5 mm) for best results. The details of a Joe Cell can be found in D10.pdf which is a document in this series.

**Water Level:** Maintain the water level at approximately half full, that is, just covering the threaded rod.

**E-mail from a contact:**

Hi,

Thanks so much for shedding light into my cell cleaning concerns. I haven't been posting lately since right now the cell is already hooked up in my test car and I've been doing some tests with it day and night.

For once, I can personally tell you that the cell in fact works! However, with my results, it is hard to believe that the Nitrogen Hydroxide produced is enough to make the car get 1500 mpg. When the Nitrogen Hydroxide is allowed to enter the engine, the car starts to rev erratically for 2-3 minutes and then steadies itself thereafter. I noticed an increase of about 800-1400 rpm in my ECU data-logger once the Nitrogen Hydroxide cell is put into the equation. I then adjusted my Engine Management System and removed 15% of the petrol going into the system and drove around the block for a good 15 minutes or so. My exhaust gas temperature rose from 90 Celsius to 97 Celsius which is still fairly acceptable.

I went back to the garage and further adjusted the petrol to less 20% in total and at this point, the car began to vibrate erratically as if it was gasping for air. Upon noticing this, I concluded that not enough NOH must be getting into the ICE or something. The next thing I did was I mounted my old 304L cell alongside with the
316L currently installed. With two cells in the equation, petrol at 20% less did not cause vibrations at all, but mind you that even at 50% less petrol and without Nitrogen Hydroxide cells installed, the car will still run by petrol alone. It was getting dark and so I maxed out my engine management and removed 50% petrol from the equation with the two NOH cells running side by side. Again, there were vibrations and it was very evident but my brother and I drove the car around the block anyway. Within just five minutes of leaving the garage, the engine temperature rose from 97 Celsius to 111 Celsius and was still rising. I also noticed that the car was underpowered to say the least. We drove up and down a parking complex to test out the non-sloshing design and from my guess it performed pretty well.

To cut a long story short, the cell produced some kind of fuel (NOH or HHO), but it was not enough to power the car when 50% petrol was removed even with 2 cells running. I am currently getting 22 mpg with this test car so I assume that 50% less petrol should give me something like 44 mpg on city driving and probably 60 mpg for long trips. These number are very small as compared to the 1500 mpg that the inventor reported. Maybe the cell needs more time to acclimatise to the test car... but I've been getting same results for 3 days now.

I am currently building two new 316L cells which will incorporate my non-slosh design and which have a vacuum-powered water top up system. I also believe that the gap inside the 3" cell should be sealed off since there is no reaction happening in this part of the cell and it only increases the resistance of the water to electricity. I also included this in my new cell design. I will probably publish it if I find that it produces more gas that the D18 design.

By the way, I've contacted someone in my city who sells 914L stainless steel. However, he told me that 914L requires special handling and special tools and it is much much harder to work on with hand tools alone. He gave me a 1" diameter tube as a sample to see if I can work with it. It's really, really expensive. One cut of a 4" diameter 914L will cost just as much as 2 years worth of gasoline (around 70 FULL TANKS).

And: Bore water is water pump out of the ground. It is similar to well water, the only difference being in the way the water is gathered. Well water is dug from the ground while bore water is SUCKED out of the ground by means of an electric or manual pump.

What I noticed so far is that there is really a lot of steaming going on inside the cell. Converting steam into Hydroxy Gas requires less power than water, so I suspect that this steaming is good. The suggestion to only fill the cylinder half-way actually makes sense as this would allow a greater storage space for the steam and pretty much eliminates water sloshing problems. I have also tried switching the polarities on my 304L cell a couple of times but it did not make any noticeable difference. I will try to make a test run with a half-filled cell and tell you my results.

And: The outlet tubes are positioned at 3" on both ends as this might be the optimum position where less water will accidentally splash into the ports. I was also told that these tubes extend inwards into the cell for about 3 mm so that the water building up in the top surface will not be allowed to slide accidentally into the outlet tubes. It makes sense because with the tubes positioned at 3" away from the edge, it actually gives you about 30 degrees of angle before one of the ports are completely submerged in the water. Also, if the cell is just half-filled, this could actually give us 45 degrees which is relatively a very steep slope to say the least.

The 1/2" and the 3/4" remains a mystery for me. The only reason I can think of is that one of these tubes might be directed before the butterfly valve and the other one placed after the butterfly valve. I would suspect that the smaller tube (1/2") was placed after the butterfly valve and the larger tube was placed before the butterfly valve. This will make sense because the negative pressure during idle is naturally constant would only require less NOH, while stepping on the accelerator will result in variable pressures which will require larger amounts of NOH. This is only my theory and I am in no position to declare that this is in fact the reason behind the different tube sizes.

I cannot measure the amount of air entering my cell because my end caps are not see-through plexi glass. I only open my Air Inlet Valve halfway through. At this position, I could see a difference in the rpm and at the same time no water could be seen creeping into the tubes. If I open the valve all the way, the rpm will continue to increase but at the same time so does the water in the tubes.

This is my third installation and probably the most successful one. It has been on my test car for five days now but it was not switched on all the time. I found too much water creeping in into the tubes and so I had to
shut it off and run the car normally just to make sure no rusting will occur in my engine. I estimate that I have the cell switched on and running for a total of maybe 12 to 14 hours as of today.

From another user:

Hi,

thanks for the info about the EFI thing! it worked on my wife's Passat. After a few weeks of searching we were able to find smaller injectors for the car as the variable resistor trick only gave us CEL errors. I do notice that the engine's rpm is changing somewhat with every turn of the variable resistor but the relationship is far from linear.

The cell will in fact continue to produce fuel for some time after the power source has been cut. This will tell you that you have the correct water in your cell and you should be happy! What you should do, is to mount a small 12V computer fan beside your cell so that this fan will feed on the power created by cell and reduce the fuel build-up. If you want to be totally safe, then you should put another outlet port on top of the cell and open this every time you park your vehicle. If you want to automate things to avoid constant accessing of the cell, then you can get an electronic valve which will also feed on the excess power produced by the cell. I will not explain further on how this can be achieved, but basically, the valve and fan should only be activated when the engine is off. A few switches here and there will do the trick.

Regarding outlet ports, you are correct to assume that you should have separate lines. One line before the butterfly valve and another line after it, is quite correct and this is what I am doing right now. You should however, have the means to regulate these lines as you will soon realise that too much fuel is actually bad for the engine's health. Also make sure to top up the water regularly as too much empty space inside the cell will make the cell into a bomb!

My concern right now is that if our cells were made half-filled, then it would mean that more than a litre of empty space would be left inside the cell. One litre of Hydroxy or Nitrogen Hydroxide will definitely turn our D18s into a bomb. We should therefore provide a means of venting the NOH build-up when the car is parked. My cell does not produce 13v when shut off as of this moment, which obviously explains the inefficiency I am getting.

Another person:

Hi,

I've seen your set-up pictures at photobucket and I am surprised at the level of professionalism that you are dedicating into this project. I am even more surprised that you claim that your current set-up doesn't work at all! What gives???

Now for my take on your set-up: it seems that the pipes you are using are too small... is it 1/4"? If so, try to use 1/2" as the minimum. Your fuel output on the end caps should be placed on top of the cell, as I previously stated in my messages. Your water inlet valve should be placed lower. I think the main problem of your set-up is that the introduction of air is placed very near your fuel output. Try to keep these two as far away from each other as possible.

Do not rely on the inventor's set-up as shown on the famous picture on his V8. This picture circulated years ago and to my knowledge, this is not the current set-up that gave him extreme mileage. Last I heard about this guy was that he also used a petrol vapouriser and this was one of the key components in achieving unimaginable mileage on his truck. I for one am not getting even half the mileage that this guy claims. With years of tweaking an old carby truck, I was able to get 225 mpg and this was good enough for me because sometimes I get 300+ on long drives to the country. You should also bear in mind that the longer that petrol stays in your tank, the more evaporation will take place. Upon installing a high mileage device, I realised that most of the petrol is wasted by just sitting in the tank and evaporating.

The air inlet port should be kept as far away from the output ports as possible. It is the water that does the work and not the stainless steel. It should be possible to drain the water completely without removing the cell from the car. The air inlet is a dual purpose port which is placed on the dead bottom of the end caps. Tuning the car to work efficiently with the cell can take a very long time. Make sure that the cell is producing gas aggressively before mounting it on the car.
If you always have the fuel tank full at all times, it reduces fuel loss through evaporation, since on a hot summer day, you are probably losing 12-18% of the fuel through evaporation and what will be left inside the tank will be less volatile, with bigger molecule sizes which won't combust completely in the engine, which in turn, shortens the life of the catalytic converter and causes more pollution.

System Summary by Contact: I use two 8" cells on my truck with two gas ports on each cell for a total of four ports. Two Ports to Manifold and two Ports to air intake, and there are no one-way valves, instead I use small fuel filters to make sure that water entering the engine is minimised, and at the same time oil is prevented from going into the cell.

I drilled a small hole on the bottom of both fuel filters and sealed them with a small screw plus a rubber ring. From time to time, I remove the screw to drain the water from the filters. The water inside the filters is dirty and should not be recycled for use in the cell. No salt or KOH is used because once the cell is aged and ready, catalysts are no longer required as they will only produce more dirt inside the cells.

Now here comes the most controversial part... NO AIR INLET PORT OPENING!! I don't have an opening for air in my cells. I'm sorry that I've been keeping this from you since day one. I know I told you about properly proportioning your air to the amount of gas that your cell produces. This was the same information that I got from another guy years ago. Although this might be true, you can never be precise on how much gas your cell is producing as the temperatures and pressures you get in the engine vary from time to time... Right now you might be thinking that I may be using a different system all along... this is what I was wanting to avoid that is why I withheld this information from you. But don't worry, there's an explanation for everything...

Simple analysis of the cell design will tell you that it is plainly impossible to remove all the air inside the cell. Air will always enter the weakest point in your cell no matter how air-tight you think your cell is. Take your tires for example: air is continuously escaping your tires no matter how air-tight you may think they are. Needless to say, your cell is not air-tight to begin with so why the hell would you need another air opening? As controversial as I may sound, I found this design to the most efficient.

I use a Joe Cell to charge/clean my water. I don't have a working Joe Cell, I just use it for electrolysis to remove the junk out of the water before putting it in the cells in my car. I have a drain valve on the bottom of one cap and I usually drain and filter my cell water whenever I feel like it. If you have good water and an aged cell, you will produce hydroxy in no time. 304, 316, 317 stainless steel - it does not matter, just as long as you are able to produce gas and that it does not rust quickly. More expensive s/s will tend to outperform cheaper s/s but cheap s/s will still work!

I don't have a magnetic coil and I never heard of this until you pointed it out to me. It did not take me weeks to age the cell, the hard part is really the water. You can use plain old tap and maybe get some gas... hooray! You have just made a hydrogen booster! Or you can follow my lead, and use good water and make fossil fuel nearly obsolete. The water level inside the cell may not matter, but I find that the cell will produce more gas when there is less water is inside it. However, for safety reasons, I almost always make sure that the cell is 3/4 filled with water and 1/4 empty space. Another important thing to bear in mind is the steaming inside the cell. If you use plastic or rubber tubes, the steam might condense back into water before getting into the engine. Use copper tubes to make sure that steam will not condense. To my knowledge, the salt is just used to remove the protective layer on the s/s which actually prevents the bubbles from dislodging quickly. You can also age your cells in many other ways and this won’t be a problem.

That main idea is, get your cells to produce hydroxy without using catalysts. The nitrogen part will come as an accident and I cannot explain how this happens. I am still a little sceptical about the nitrogen actually bonding with the hydroxide. Sometimes I think that it is only the hydroxy and steam which are doing all the work... You are entitled to your own opinion.

The wife gets around twice her previous mileage on the Passat. The injector change can only do so much. I only installed one 10" cell to keep all the stock parts intact. She is happy with it and so my EFI project stops here.

Please let me stress again that many people have built this device and tried to get it to work without any success whatsoever, and that is why it is in this chapter.
The HydroStar and HydroGen Systems. There are various sets of plans for car conversions and many of them are worthless and intended to waste the time and money of people who are interested in moving away from fossil fuel products. It is not possible for anyone to say with assurance that these plans do not work since even if you construct in exact accordance with the plans and your replication fails to come anywhere close to working, all that can be truthfully said is that your own replication was useless. We need to avoid this sort of comment, since for example, the Joe Cell does indeed work and can power a vehicle in a completely fuel-less mode, but, most people fail to get it operational. Consequently, it is completely wrong to write off the Joe Cell, but warnings on the difficulty of getting it working should always be given.

In the case of the HydroStar and HydroGen plans, I have never heard of anyone who has ever got either of them working. Also, experienced people are quite convinced that the design is seriously flawed and never worked in the first place. Still, it is up to you to make up your own mind on this, and so these plans are mentioned in this chapter.

The plans shown here can be downloaded free from http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P62.pdf and they are intended for free use by anyone who wants to use them. Please remember that should you decide to undertake any work of this nature, nobody other than yourself is in any way responsible for any loss or damage which might result. The full manual for an essentially updated version of the design is included under the name “HydroGen” and can be downloaded free from http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P61.pdf.

It is recommended that should experimental work be undertaken on a car, then the car chosen should be of little value and that all existing parts be kept so that the vehicle can be restored to its present fossil-oil burning status should you choose to do so. It is also suggested that you use a car which is not important to your present transport needs. It is claimed that the modified car will travel 50 to 300 miles per gallon of water depending on how well it is tuned. The system is set up like this:

Here, the car has an extra tank installed to contain a reserve of water. This is used to maintain the water level in the reaction chamber which contains the electrode plates. The electrodes are driven by the electronics which applies a pulsed waveform to them in the 0.5 to 5.0 Amp range. The electronics box is powered directly from the existing car electrics. The Hydrogen/Oxygen mix which is the output from the reaction chamber is fed directly into the existing carburettor or fuel-injection system.

The start-up procedure is to power up the electronics and wait for the gas pressure to reach the 30 - 60 psi range. Then the car ignition is operated as normal to start the engine. The accelerator pedal is wired into the electronics to give more power to the electrode plates the further the pedal is pressed. This increases the gas production rate as the throttle is operated.

Electronic Control Circuit

The diagrams show a simple circuit to control and drive this mini-system. You are going to make a ‘square-pulse’ signal that you can watch on an oscilloscope. The premise given by the literature is: the faster you want to go down the road, the ‘fatter’ you make the pulses going into the reaction chamber. Duty cycle will vary with the throttle from a 10% Mark/Space ratio (10% on and 90% off) with the pedal up, to a 90% Mark/Space ratio with the pedal fully down.
There are many ways to generate pulses. This circuit uses an “NE555” integrated circuit. The output switching transistor must be rated at 5 Amps, 12V for pulsed operation.

The output of the 741 integrated circuit is adjusted via its 2K variable resistor, to give an output voltage (at point 'B' in the circuit diagram) of 1 Volt when the car throttle is fully up, and 4 Volts when the throttle is fully down.

The CD4069 is just an IC containing six inverters. It can handle a supply voltage of up to 18V and is wired here as an oscillator. Its four capacitors are likely to be used in just four combinations: C1, C+C2, C+C2+C3, and C1+C2+C3+C4 as these are the most widely spaced tuning ranges. There are, of course, eleven other capacitor combinations which can be switched with this arrangement of four switches.
Important Note
Gary of G. L. Chemelec commenting on “The HydroStar” circuit which sounds to be based on the same style of circuitry, states that the circuit and design are riddled with serious errors, some of which are:
1. The use of the 741 WILL NOT WORK! Pin 5 is a Voltage Control pin that already has its own voltage of 2/3 of the Supply voltage so it requires a pull down resistor, not an IC to control it.
2. The 2K Pulse width adjust will blow the 555 timer if adjusted all the way down. It needs an additional resistor to limit current to those pins on the IC.
3. The output of the 555, Pin 3 is fed to the CD4059 as well as a TC4420CPA (Mosfet Driver). This driver is a waste of money as it is not needed.
4. The Output of the TC4420CPA is then fed to the IRF510 Mosfet which is now obsolete, however you can use an RFP50N06 (50V, 60A).
5. There is no schematic of the CD4059. They should have shown pin 1 as in, pin 23 as out, pins 3, 10, 13, 14, and 24 connected to 12 volts and pins 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 11, 12, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, and 22 connected to ground.
6. The "Strength Adjust" Only Needs the variable resistor connected to Pin 5 and the Ground. The Connection of this control to the Supply Voltage Make Absolutely No Difference in the Output Waveforms, as the IC only needs a 2/3's voltage on this Pin and this is supplied internally, Within the IC.
7. The "Frequency Adjust", Connects to Pins 6 & 7 of This 555. Supply to the battery Will Destroy the 555. so another resistor is needed to prevent this from happening.

This is just a small list of what is wrong. There is MUCH MORE and even after the thing is built it does NOT WORK! If you want to experiment then please do, but I would suggest you just make your own Pulse Width Modulator.

There are also many problems with the design of the reaction chamber and simply put, even if you did get it to work you would need more of these units than you could ever fit in your car to even think about running the engine. Simply put, the unit will NOT create enough gas to run much of anything. Don't get me wrong, I do think that the idea is GREAT and that it can be done.

Reaction chamber:
The suggested reaction chamber arrangement is:

It is suggested that you use a section of 4" PVC waste pipe with a threaded screw-cap fitting on one end and a standard end-cap at the other. Make sure to drill-and-epoxy or tap threads through the PVC components for all fittings. Set and control the water level in the chamber so that the pipe electrodes are well covered and there is still ample headroom left to build up the hydrogen/oxygen gas pressure. Use stainless steel wires inside the chamber or otherwise use a protective coating; use insulated wires outside. Ensure that the epoxy seals are perfect or alternatively, lay down a bead of water-proof silicone sufficient to hold the pressure.

The screw fitting may require soft silicone sealant, or a gasket. Its purpose is to maintain the pressure in the cylinder and yet allow periodic inspection of the electrodes. Make sure that there are no leaks and you will
have no problems. Make sure you get a symmetric 1.5 mm gap between the 2 stainless steel pipes. The referenced literature suggests that the closer to 1 mm you get, the better. Check that the chamber water-level sensor is working correctly before you epoxy its cap in place. Make your solder connections at the wire/electrode junctions nice, smooth, and solid; then apply a waterproof coating, e.g. the epoxy you use for joining the pipes to the screw cap. This epoxy must be waterproof and be capable of holding metal to plastic under pressure.

The suggested circuit for the reaction chamber water-level pump control is:

![Circuit Diagram]

**Hydrogen from Aluminium.** Since 2003 Rothman Technologies of Canada have been running a 12 HP petrol motor on hydrogen produced by a chemical process. This is a cheap process in which metal is consumed and so, although of great interest, this is not a 'free-energy' engine. A recent patent application by William Brinkley proposes a system where aluminium pipes are consumed by a 25% solution of Potassium Hydroxide heated to 180 degrees Fahrenheit. William remarks on the non-polluting nature of the system, but this is not really so in that a very large amount of energy has to be put into producing the aluminium metal in the smelting and refining process, and the pollution is just moved from the end user to the industrial plant. Francis Cornish of the UK has a system where electrolysis of water is combined with a chemical process consuming aluminium wire. The system works well, but I have reservations about using consumables which tie you to industrial manufacturing, also concerns about the reliability of mechanical feed systems when they are being used by non-technical people (most car drivers). There is also the issue of removing and recycling the chemical residue generated by the process.

I personally am not keen on chemical processes and I do NOT recommend that you construct anything based on the following description. However, it might be possible to adapt the Brinkley system so that it operates with no moving parts:

![Diagram]

Here, there is a header tank containing a 25% mixture of Potassium Hydroxide (KOH) in water. This tank is positioned higher than the pressure tank where the hydrogen gas is generated and the venting pipe is protected by a baffle. The venting pipe should provide an outlet to the air outside the vehicle or building which contains the system.

Initially, the KOH solution in the pressure tank is heated by the heating element, but when the process gets
started, it generates heat to maintain the chemical reaction. The gas generation then builds up pressure in the strongly-built pressure tank. The raised pressure pushes some of the KOH solution back into the header tank, against gravity. This reduces the area of aluminium exposed to the KOH solution and reduces the rate of gas production. This effectively creates an automated gas production rate control which has no moving parts.

If the rate of gas taken by the engine increases, that lowers the pressure in the pressure tank, allowing more KOH solution to run into the pressure tank, increasing the rate of gas production. When the engine is stopped completely, then the KOH solution gets pushed into the header tank until all gas production stops, as shown here:

This looks as if the pressure tank is under considerable pressure, but that is not so, as the header tank is open to atmospheric pressure. I have concerns about controlling purely chemical processes rapidly enough for practical use. The above system would be more suited to a fixed engine, such as an electrical generator, where the gas requirement does not fluctuate greatly. The KOH tank shown above should be large enough to contain all of the KOH solution in case the gas production just does not stop when it should. The vent from the header tank should be capable of venting excess hydrogen with no possibility of it ponding on a ceiling and forming an explosive mixture with air. As far as I am aware, the above system has never been constructed and it is just shown here for discussion purposes.

Only 5 pounds per square inch of pressure is needed for electrolyser systems to feed a car engine satisfactorily, so a relatively low pressure is quite satisfactory, provided that the piping is of reasonable internal diameter. It should be remembered that the car engine will be applying a slight vacuum through the bubbler. As with all of these systems, it is vital that at least one bubbler is used between the gas production and the engine, to guard against flashback from the engine ignition if faulty ignition should occur. All bubblers should have a tightly fitting pop-off cap which can ease the effect of an explosion, and they should contain only a small amount of gas. The method of connection to the engine and the necessary timing adjustments are shown and explained in the 'D9.pdf' document which forms part of this set.

Francois Cornish. The method of using aluminium for a fuel in an on-demand hydrogen system for vehicle propulsion has been presented in detail by several people. One of the best known is the 1987 US Patent 4,702,894 by Francois Cornish, where he uses a feed mechanism for aluminium wire to maintain an underwater electrical arc which raises the water temperature high enough to make the aluminium react with the water. The rotating drum is made of aluminium but as it has a much larger thermal capacity than the aluminium wire being fed towards it, the drum temperature is much lower than that of the wire. As a result of this, the wire reaches the temperature required to make the aluminium react with the water. The chemical reaction releases hydrogen and converts the aluminium wire to aluminium oxide powder, which settles on the bottom of the tank, passing through a grid just above the bottom of the tank.

The bubbles of hydrogen gas released by the reaction tend to stick to the rotating aluminium drum, so a wiper blade is provided to sweep the bubbles off the drum. The bubbles then rise to the surface of the water and are directed into the gas collection chamber by a funnel located above the arc. If the engine demand drops and the pressure in the gas collection tank rises, a sensor located in the tank causes the wire-feed control electronics to stop the wire feed which cuts off the gas production.

At first glance, a system like this appears to have limited appeal. It uses aluminium wire which requires
manufacturing by a process which uses substantial amounts of energy and while a vehicle using hydrogen produced by this method will generate very little pollution, the pollution occurs at the point of manufacture. Also, the device uses a mechanical wire feed and any device of that nature will need regular maintenance and may not be 100% reliable. In addition, the aluminium oxide powder will have to be cleaned out of the generating tank on a routine basis.

But, having said all that, the system has some very significant advantages. It does not use any fossil fuel (directly). It can be readily installed in a vehicle and the consumption of aluminium wire is surprisingly low. Figures quoted indicate that typical consumption is of the order of 20 litres of water, plus one kilogram of aluminium used to cover 600 kilometers distance (1 pound per 170 miles). This is probably a good deal cheaper than using fossil fuel to drive the vehicle. The system is set up like this:

Another system of interest is the self-powered electrolysis system of the 1992 US Patent 5,089,107 granted to Francisco Pacheco where sacrificial anode plates of magnesium and aluminium are placed in seawater opposite a stainless steel cathode. Electrical power is generated and hydrogen produced on demand. There is also surplus electrical power available to run a standard electrolyser if so desired.

An Ultrasonic System:
I have been told (by a rather doubtful source) of a very high-performance water-splitting system which produces enough hydroxy gas to power a vehicle engine while only drawing 3 milliwatts at 3 volts which is a mere 9 milliwatts of power. I have never seen one of these units, and I have no evidence that the system works, other than word of mouth, so please treat the following entry as just a suggestion rather than a matter of hard fact.

The system is so interesting and simple that it is very attractive. Basically, you have two stainless steel pipes placed in a bath of tap water:
The objective is to get two stainless steel tubes resonating together at the same frequency. That is, they should both produce the same “musical” note when suspended on a thread and tapped. As the inner tube is smaller diameter, it will have a higher note than the larger diameter tube if they are the same length, so for them to match, it would be necessary for the inner tube to be longer, or the outer tube have a slot cut in it as Stan Meyer did and which is discussed in Chapter 10.

The piezo transducers are presumably glued to the cylinders, perhaps as shown above, and they are fed with a 2.24 MHz signal. The tubes need to resonate with the electronics signal, so they are ground down very slowly and carefully until they do resonate. This will presumably be at a much lower harmonic of the electronics signal, one in the standard ultrasonics range. Presumably, there will be three spacers top and bottom, maintaining the gap between the tubes. If the frequency were down in the mains region of about 50 Hz or 60Hz, then the device would just act as a water heater of the type designed by Peter Davey. At ultrasonic frequencies, the result is quite different as cavitation bubbles form in the water. A highly respected textbook on ultrasonics points out that these cavitation bubbles have a positive charge on one side and a negative charge on the other side and these charges cause electrolysis of the water surrounding the bubbles. Lots of bubbles - lots of hydroxy gas produced. So, background theory supports the possibility of this device working, however, I am not aware of anyone who has attempted to replicate it.

What we have not been told is:

1. The size, length and thickness of tubes which work well.
2. The gap between the tubes.
3. The specific transducers used in the prototype.
4. What type of spacers were used.
5. Where and how the transducers were fixed to the cylinders.

However, even without this information, this could be an interesting investigation project using absolutely minimal power at trivial voltage levels.
Chapter 14: Renewable Energy Devices

Heaters

The devices described here are probably not “free-energy” devices as such, but in spite of that, it is an area of considerable interest to many people, and the subject is included here because of that.

If you do not live in an urban area, then a solid fuel stove can be an economic solution, especially if the fuel can be collected free from wooded areas. Stove design has advanced considerably and it is now possible to make a simple stove with very high efficiency and very low emissions as shown here:

Although this stove is a very simple construction, it’s efficiency is very high indeed. The best fuel is made of smaller pieces which rest on a simple shelf. Branches work better than large pieces of wood as the consumption is more complete. As the fuel is consumed, it is pushed further into the stove, which gives the user an appreciation of the rate of consumption. Having the fuel resting on a shelf has the major advantage of allowing air to flow both above it and below it, which gives improved combustion. The operation is said to be so good that there is virtually no residue and no emissions.

Again, if land space is available, a solar oven (or Stirling motor) can be used, either to store energy for later use or generate heat for cooking or home heating, as can hot-water solar panels. However, it is only realistic to consider the application to be during the night in a built-up area with little or no spare space for equipment.

Electrical heating, while very convenient, is usually expensive, and it often seems that the effectiveness of an electric heater is not directly related to its power consumption. In theory it definitely is, but in practice it just does not seem that way. There are other alternatives.

One of the other documents in this set, shows how to construct a Stanley Meyer style electrolyser which uses ordinary tap water and splits it into burnable fuel using just a low power electrical input:
The difficulty in creating a heating system which uses the gas produced by this unit, is in the very high temperature produced when the gas is burnt. Stan overcame this problem with by designing a special burner which mixes air and burnt gasses in with the gas before it is burnt. That lowers the flame temperature to a level which is suitable for heating and cooking:

While this looks a bit complicated, it’s construction is really quite simple. The combination of the Meyer electrolyser and Meyer burner form a system which has the potential of being operated from a solar panel and battery as shown here:
A system like this needs extreme care as the hydrogen / oxygen ("hydroxy") gas produced is explosive. So:

1. It is very important that the electrolyser has the ability to provide sufficient gas to keep the flame(s) sustained.

2. The electrolyser must be fitted with a pressure switch, typically operating at 5 pounds per square inch or so. This is included so that should the gas usage drop, then the drive from the electronics is cut off to stop further gas production, and incidentally, stopping the current draw from the battery.

3. It is absolutely essential that there be a flame-operated valve on the gas supply line to the burner, so that should the flame go out for any reason whatsoever, then the gas supply will be cut off. This type of valve is common on town-gas operated fires for use in homes.

There is an alternative method which it is claimed can convert the explosive hydroxy gas into a much more docile fuel, more suited to conventional burners and stoves. It must be stressed that this system is over 120 years old and it should not be used until you have carried out careful tests on it. The method was patented by Henry M. Paine in US Letters Patent No. 308,276 dated 18th November 1884 and it is very simple:

The idea is to bubble the hydroxy gas produced by electrolysis of water, through a liquid hydrocarbon such as turpentine. The bubbler should have a large number of small holes in the incoming tube, so that a very large number of small bubbles of hydroxy gas pass through the hydrocarbon. This brings the majority of the hydroxy gas into intimate contact with the hydrocarbon and the process is claimed to convert the hydroxy gas into a new variety of gas which is not explosive, can be stored for later use, and which burns with the same characteristics as coal-gas ("town gas").

At this point in time, I do not know of any recent tests to confirm this, so the claim should be treated with caution and careful tests carried out in the open, lighting the gas remotely and taking refuge behind a robust protective object. Having said that, in my opinion, it is highly likely that Henry Paine’s claim is correct in every respect, but that is only my opinion and I have not confirmed it with any form of practical test.

Electric power is very popular for heaters. However, with most appliances, it is a very expensive form of heating. There is a technique which is reputed to improve the efficiency and lower the cost of electric heating. This method involves rotating a cylinder inside an outer cylinder and filling part of the narrow space between the cylinders with some variety of light oil.

This method has been patented more than once. In 1979, Eugene Frenette was granted patent 4,143,639 where a single motor is used to rotate the drum and power a fan to boost the motion of the hot air:
It is not immediately obvious why this arrangement should work well, but it appears that it does. As the inner drum spins around, the oil rises up between the two inner cylinders. It lubricates the bearing under the rotating drum and the rotation causes the oil to heat up. This heats the middle cylinder and air being drawn up around it by the action of the fan blade, is also heated before being pushed out of the top of the heater. After a few minutes, the outer housing becomes so hot that the thermostat attached to it, cuts off the electrical supply.

The heater does not stop heating at this time as air continues to circulate through the heater by ordinary convection. In my opinion, it would be more effective if the fan motor were operated independently and did not cut off when the heater reaches its operating temperature.

Very similar systems were patented by Eugene Perkins: January 1984 patent 4,424,797, November 1984 patent 4,483,277, March 1987 patent 4,651,681, October 1988 patent 4,779,575, and in January 1989 patent 4,798,176.

His first patent shows a horizontal drum which is completely immersed in the liquid:
This calls for a much greater accuracy of construction in that the liquid has to be contained even though it has a rotating shaft running through the housing. This device pumps the heated liquid through central-heating piping and radiators.

In his later patent of the same year, he shows a modified version with two drums and an impeller:

The “heat exchanger” is a radiator or set of radiators.

He progressed to a system where the shaft rotation forces the liquid to be expelled through the tips of arms radiating out from the centre of the impeller hub:
Here, the liquid is forced into a small space between the rotor and its drum housing. This system has been used very successfully for water heating and some measurements indicate that it is at least 100% efficient and some people believe that it is well over the 100% efficiency, though they don’t want get drawn into long discussions on methods of measurement. It is sufficient to say here, that this method is very effective indeed.

*******************************

Here is an interesting article from the Home Power web site. I strongly recommend that you visit their web site and consider subscribing to their magazine as they cover many practical topics using simple wording.
The Wood 103 was built mostly of wood in just a few hours, with very little number crunching. Producing 100 watts in a 30+ mph wind ain’t bad for a weekend project!

The initial goal of our project was to build a functional, permanent magnet alternator from scratch, primarily out of wood. When the alternator was together and working, it became clear that wind was the logical energy source for it. This unit (we call it the “Wood 103”) is not intended to be a permanent addition to a remote home energy system, but a demonstration of how simple it really is to produce energy from scratch—and to be a bit silly!

Many home-made wind generator designs require a fully equipped machine shop to build. Our wooden version, built in a day, can be made with mostly local materials and simple hand tools in any remote corner of the world. The alternator design is well suited to hydroelectric, human, or animal power. We plan to use it for a series of magnet and electricity demonstrations at local schools, and for future experiments with different energy sources, windings, cores, poles, and rotors. This project will cost you only US $50–75, depending on what you pay for magnets and wire.

**Alternator Basics**

Electricity is simply the flow of electrons through a circuit. When a magnet moves past a wire (or a wire past a magnet), electrons within the wire want to move. When the wire is wound into a coil, the magnet passes by more loops of wire. It pushes the electrons harder, and can therefore make more electricity for us to harvest.

The magnetic field can be supplied by either permanent magnets or electromagnets. All of our designs use permanent magnets. In a permanent magnet alternator (PMA), the magnets are mounted on the armature (also sometimes called the “rotor”), which is the part that spins. It is connected directly to the wind generator rotor (the blades and hub). There are no electrical connections to the armature; it simply moves the magnets. Each magnet has two poles, north (N) and south (S). The magnets are oriented in the armature so that the poles alternate N-S-N-S.

The other half of a PMA is the stator, which does not move. It consists of an array of wire coils connected together. The coils in our stator alternate in the direction they are wound, clockwise (CW) and counterclockwise (CCW). The coils and magnets are spaced evenly with each other. So when the north pole of a magnet is passing a clockwise coil, the south pole of the next magnet is passing the counterclockwise coil next door, and so on.

The coil cores are located inside or behind the coils, and help concentrate the magnetic field into the coils, increasing output. The cores must be of magnetic material, but also must be electrically non-conductive to avoid power-wasting eddy currents. The air gap is the distance between the spinning magnets and the stationary coils (between the armature and the stator), and must be kept as small as possible. But the spinning magnets must not be allowed to touch the coils, or physical damage to them will occur.
The more loops of wire that each magnet passes, the higher the voltage produced. Voltage is important, since until the alternator voltage exceeds the battery bank voltage, no electrons can flow. The sooner the alternator voltage reaches battery voltage or above in low winds, the sooner the batteries will start to charge.

Increasing the number of turns of wire in each coil allows higher voltage at any given speed. But thinner wire can carry fewer electrons. Using thicker wire allows more electrons to flow, but physical size limits the number of turns per coil. This also explains why enamelled magnet wire is always used in coils. The enamel insulation is very thin, and allows for more turns per coil than does thick plastic insulation. Any alternator design is a compromise between the number of turns per coil, the wire size, and the shaft rpm.

The electricity produced by an alternator is called “wild” alternating current (AC). Instead of changing direction at a steady 60 times per second like standard AC house current, its frequency varies with the speed of the alternator.

Since we want to charge batteries, the wild AC is fed to them through a bridge rectifier, which converts AC to DC (direct current) for battery charging. The alternator may produce much higher voltages than the battery bank does, but the batteries will hold the system voltage from the wind generator down to their normal level when charging.
The Wood 103 has three, 2 foot, hand-carved blades, creating a swept area of 12.5 square feet.

Materials Used

The materials we used are not hard to find:

- Wood, the harder the better. We used pine since it was locally available.
- Copper magnet wire, about 100 feet (30 m), enameled #22 (0.64 mm diameter).
- Eight surplus neodymium-iron-boron magnets, four with the south pole on the convex face, and four with the north pole on the convex face.
- Dirt (magnetite sand).
- A 10 inch (25 cm) piece of 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) steel shaft with a nut on the end to hold the hub on.
- Two, 3/8 inch by 2 inch (9.5 mm x 5 cm) bolts, but these are optional.
- Bridge rectifier, rated for least 15 amps, 100 volts.
- Other supplies—glue and inseed oil.

Design
We had successfully converted AC induction motors into PMA wind generators before. But starting from scratch was truly a first-time experiment. Our design choices for wire size, number of windings, number of poles, blade pitch, and other factors were intuitive rather than calculated.

Every wind generator, waterwheel, and alternator we’ve built has produced usable energy, no matter how strange the design. The trick is matching the generator, rotor, and energy source. You can do a lot of study and calculation to get there. But if the design is quick, cheap, and easy to build, why not just make adjustments by observing the unit’s performance?

If you try this project and change the wire size, magnet type, rotor design, and stator cores, you’d still be making usable energy and have a great starting point for further research. Just change one thing at a time until the unit performs to your satisfaction. We’re aware that many design improvements could be made to the Wood 103—and we hope that others will experiment with variations.

Wooden Alternator
The biggest problem with building most wind generator designs at home is the need for machine tools — usually at least a metal lathe is required. Headquarters for our business, Otherpower.com, is high on a mountain, 11 miles (18 km) past the nearest utility line. We are lucky enough to have basic tools up here, but many folks around the world don’t. That’s the main reason we used so much wood in this design.

Wood 103 PM Alternator: End View

It is possible to build human-powered woodworking tools in almost any location. With some patience, only simple hand tools are required for this project. If you want to build it in a day, though, a lathe, drill press, band saw, and power planer can be very helpful!

Building the Armature
The key to the Wood 103’s armature is the neodymium-iron-boron (NdFeB) magnets. They are the strongest permanent magnets available. Ours are surplus from computer hard drives. They are curved, and measure about 1⅞ by 1⅞ by ⅛ inch thick (44 x 35 x 6 mm). Eight fit together in a 3⅞ inch (9.8 cm) diameter ring. That’s why we chose this particular diameter for the armature.
The magnets are available with either the north or south pole on the convex face. For this project, you will need four of each configuration. Don’t start tearing your computer apart to get these, though! They are from very large hard drives, and you won’t find any inside your computer. Check the Access section at the end of this article for suppliers.

To construct the armature, we laminated plywood circles together with glue. The 3\( \frac{7}{8} \) inch (9.8 cm) diameter wooden cylinder is 3\( \frac{3}{4} \) inches (9.5 cm) long, with a 1\( \frac{3}{4} \) inch (4.4 cm) wide slot cut into it 1\( \frac{1}{4} \) inch (6 mm) deep to tightly accept the magnets. To assure that the magnets would be flush with the armature surface, we cut the plywood disks a bit oversized, and turned them down on the lathe to the proper diameter. The same procedure was used to cut the magnet slot to exactly the right depth.

Using a firm grip, we carefully press-fit and epoxied the magnets into place. Remember that these magnets come in two different configurations—north pole on the convex face and south pole on the convex face. The magnets must have alternating poles facing out, and this is how they naturally want to align themselves.

Next, we drilled the shaft hole through the centre of the armature using a lathe, though it could certainly be done with a hand drill if you are careful to align it perfectly. We roughed up the surface of the shaft with a file before epoxying it into the hole. It should be a very tight fit—we had to gently tap it through with a hammer.

This may not be strong enough, and it might be wise to actually pin the armature to the shaft. Time will tell!

**Construction without a Lathe**

We did cheat by using a lathe to shape the armature, but a coping saw and sandpaper would work just fine. If a lathe is not available, our suggestion is to first cut out the disks, making sure that some of them (enough to stack up to 1\( \frac{3}{4} \) inches; 4.4 cm) are 1\( \frac{1}{4} \) inch (6 mm) smaller in diameter than the rest. Once assembled, the armature will then have a recessed slot for the magnets.

Otherwise some means of “lathing” the slot will have to be devised. It could be done on the alternator’s pillow blocks with a sanding block mounted below, or in a drill press. It would also be wise to first drill a shaft hole into each plywood disk, and then assemble, glue, and clamp all the plywood disks together on the shaft before turning.

**Building the Pillow Blocks**

The pillow block bearings were made from pine, since that’s the hardest wood we have available up here on the mountain. Certainly hardwood would be much better. First we drilled a hole slightly under 3\( \frac{7}{8} \) inch (9.5 mm) diameter in each pillow block. Using a gas stove burner, we heated the shaft to almost red hot, and forced it through the holes. This gave a good tight fit, hardened the wood, and made a layer of carbon on the inside for better lubrication. We drilled a small hole in the top of each pillow block, down into the shaft hole, so the bearings can be greased.
After pressing the hot shaft through the pillow blocks, we were very pleased with how freely the armature turned and how little play there was. In a slow waterwheel design, wood/carbon bearings would probably last for years. This wind generator is actually a fairly high-speed unit, and real ball bearings would be a big improvement. Such bearings could be easily scavenged from an old electric motor of any kind. Wooden bearings were certainly simple, fast, and fun though!

**Building the Stator**

The stator, on which the coils are wound, is made up of two identical halves. Each half is made from 2 by 4 inch lumber, 6 inches long (5 x 10 x 15 cm). A semi-circular cut-out with a 5 inch diameter (12.7 cm) was made on each half. The tolerances are pretty tight, but this allows more than a $\frac{1}{2}$ inch (13 mm) to fit the coils and core material inside.

On the sides of the 2 by 4s, right over the cut-out, we of this type is often available from electronics stores or glued thin ($\frac{1}{8}$ inch; 3 mm) U-shaped plywood “half disks,” which have an inner diameter of 4 inches (10 cm) and an outer diameter of 6 inches (15 cm). They have slots cut large enough to accept the coils. These were made with a hand saw, $\frac{3}{4}$ inch (9.5 mm) drill bit, and a rat tail file. The coils are wound in these slots, and
the space inside and behind the coils is filled with the magnetite core material. There are four coils on each half of the stator, and they must be evenly spaced.

Our twin stator halves are wound with #22 (0.64 mm diameter) enamelled copper magnet wire. Magnet wire of this type is often available from electronics stores or from electric motor repair shops. Each stator half contains four coils. Each coil is 100 turns, and every coil is wound in the opposite direction as its neighbour. It’s important to wind the coils neatly and tightly, using a wooden dowel to carefully press each winding loop into place.

The two stator halves—one wound with 100 turns per coil, and one ready to be wound.

Most common alternators use thin steel laminates as cores, to help concentrate the magnetic field through the coils. Magnetism in motion pushes the electrons around in the steel too. The laminates are insulated from each other to block these eddy currents, which would otherwise waste energy.

These laminates are difficult to make in a home shop, so we chose dirt as our stator core—actually magnetite sand mixed with epoxy. It is not as effective as real laminates, but was very easy to use, and available for free by separating it from the dirt in our road. We mixed the magnetite with epoxy and simply spooned it into the open cores. If the cores were left empty (an “air core”) the alternator would still work, but with much less power.

Magnetite is a common mineral, a type of iron oxide. It is a by-product of some gold mining operations, and can sometimes be purchased. As an alternative, we simply dragged a large neodymium magnet (just like the ones we used for the armature) around on our local dirt road on a string for a while, attracting all the ferrous sand, which stuck to the magnet.
We separated this somewhat magnetic sand into a pile, sifted it through a window screen, and sorted that with the magnet one more time. The remaining black sand sticking to the magnet was nearly pure magnetite. A quick test of any local dirt pile with a neodymium magnet should reveal whether your sand contains magnetite. If not, try dragging the magnet along the sandy bottom of a local river. Any deposits of black sand on the river bottom are most likely nearly pure magnetite.

The clearance between the stator coils and the armature surface is very important. It must be extremely close (within 1/16 inch; 1.5 mm) without allowing the magnets in the armature to touch the stator. Our model is actually a bit sloppy—the clearances are more like an 1/8 inch (3 mm). Tighter tolerances would produce more power.

**Wiring Configuration**

The completed stator consists of two identical sets of four coils. For our wind generator, we connected the stator halves in parallel for more current (amperage). Connecting them in series would double the voltage produced, but halve the amperage. For low wind speeds, a series connection would be the best—the alternator would reach charging voltage at slower speeds. At higher speeds, a parallel connection is optimum for producing the most amperage.

An ideal system would contain a regulator that switched the stator connections from series to parallel when the unit began to spin fast enough. As is the case with many home-brew and commercial wind turbines, we eliminated this entirely, sacrificing a small amount of efficiency for much greater simplicity and reliability. Many people have experimented with such regulators, both solid state and mechanical.

**Alternator Performance**

We were really surprised by this alternator's performance. We could easily spin it with our fingers and get 12 volts or higher. A cordless drill attached to the shaft would light up a 25 watt, 12 V DU light bulb easily. This might not seem breath-taking, but considering the simplicity of the project and one-day construction time, we were quite impressed.

Our 100 watt rating for the Wood 103 is probably right on, considering the performance we got during testing, and the way commercial wind generator manufacturers rate their products. Our data acquisition system was pretty simple - multimeters and people with pencils and paper to watch them and record measurements.
With a series connection between the stator halves, the unit reached charging voltage for 12 volt batteries at around 300 rpm. With the stator in parallel, it took around 600 rpm to start charging. When installed in our wind machine, the parallel connection gave us 4.8 amps output in a 25 mph (11 m/s) wind.

Building the Frame
To stay with the style of this project, we chose to build the rest of the wind generator out of wood too. It’s a very simple design and should be self-explanatory. It’s all glued and pinned with dowels. No bolts are used except to connect the alternator to the frame. We admit that we cheated here!

We did not make any provision for over-speed control, since this was intended to be a demonstration unit for all energy sources, not just wind. A canted tail and spring assembly could be added to control speed during high winds. And, of course, making the frame out of surplus steel or aluminium angle would give great improvements in durability.

We also did not include slip rings for power transmission as the wind generator yaws. Instead, we used flexible wire for the first few feet, letting it hang in a loose loop. A piece of aircraft cable cut slightly shorter than the power cable was attached, so if the power wire gets wrapped around the pole too tightly, the connections won’t pull loose.

Our normal winds are usually from one direction, and designs without slip rings seem to work fine up here. Wrapping the power wire around the pole is only rarely a problem, and this strain relief cable prevents any damage. Our experience is that if the power cable does wind up all the way, it will eventually unwind itself.

Designing the Rotor
The “rotor” here refers to the blades and hub of the wind generator. We don’t profess to be experts in blade design. Once again, we chose our starting point intuitively rather than trying to calculate the proper blades to match our alternator’s power curve. Since the blade carving process took us less than an hour for the whole set of three, we figured that any design changes would be quick and easy to make. However, because we glued the blades to the hub, a new hub will be necessary for any blade changes.

There’s a great deal of information out there about building blades. Hugh Piggott’s Web site and his Brakedrum Wind Generator plans are some of the best sources around.

The rotor was built from 3/4 inch by 4 inch (19 mm x 100 mm) pine lumber. Each blade is 3 1/2 inches (90 mm) wide at the base and 2 1/2 inches (64 mm) wide at the tip. The three blades are 2 feet long (600 mm), for a total diameter of 4 feet (1.2 m). The pitch of the blades is 10 degrees at the hub, and 6 degrees at the
The hub is made from 2 inch (50 mm) thick wood, press-fit and glued to the roughed-up shaft with epoxy. The blades are held on to the hub by one small nut at the end of the shaft, and several wooden pins with glue.

**Carving the Blades**

To prepare the blades for carving, we simply drew a few lines so that we knew what material to remove. Each blade starts out life as a 2 foot (0.6 m) long, 1 x 4 inch (25 mm x 100 mm). Starting from the leading edge of the blade at the hub, we simply used a protractor to lay out how far into the wood, 10 degrees of pitch would take us at the trailing edge - about 5/8 inch (16 mm).

At the tip, the pitch is about 6 degrees, so we removed about 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) of material from the trailing edge. We made both marks, and connected the two with a line. We then simply took a power planer, and followed the cut depth line all the way up the blade.

For better accuracy (or if you don’t have a power planer), you can use a hand saw to make cuts across the blade every inch or so, down to the cut depth line on the trailing edge and not cutting at all on the leading edge. Using a hammer and chisel, it's easy to break out the chunks of wood to the proper depth. Then...
smooth the blade down to the proper angle with a hand plane. When the saw kerfs disappear, the blade pitch is correct.

The blade width taper occurs on the trailing edge. We simply used a saw to cut the first taper, and used that first blade as a template for cutting the others. No calculations were made for the airfoil shape on the other side of the blades. We picked a likely looking profile and started cutting with the power planer. A hand planer is fine for this process, too. After everything looked good and even, we sanded the blades and treated them with linseed oil.

**Balancing the Blades**

To avoid vibration problems and enable easy starting, we made some effort to balance the blades. We considered them reasonably balanced when each blade weighed the same (about 8 ounces; 227 g) and had the same centre of gravity. Adjustments can be made quickly with a planer.

Once this is done, and all three blades are assembled on the hub, balance can be double-checked by spinning the rotor and making sure it has no tendency to stop in any one place. This is a quick process, and we certainly were not concerned about great precision here. As it turned out, a small effort in balancing the blades yielded good results, and the machine seems well balanced and vibration free.

Truly, one could write an entire book on blade design, and it can get complicated. Don’t worry, though. It is possible to make a very basic blade that will work quite effectively. Often a simple blade with a constant 5 degree pitch from hub to tip and a reasonable airfoil on the backside will work very nicely. If you are interested, explore the books and Web sites listed at the end of this article for more information on blade design.

**Testing**

For testing, we strapped the Wood 103 to our trusty Model A Ford. The Model A serves as a reliable daily driver, and with the bracket we made, it makes an excellent testing facility for wind turbines. It has a perfectly accurate speedometer, which has been carefully checked by the Fort Collins, Colorado Police Department’s radar machines!

We carry a 12 volt battery, a voltmeter, an ammeter, and pencil and paper in the test vehicle. On a still day, we can observe the speedometer and take accurate windspeed versus output measurements on any wind turbine. We’ve used this rig with props over 8 feet (2.4 m) in diameter. The cost of a good Model A (about US $4,000 if you don’t mind a jalopy) is *not* included in the price of this project!

Wind generators should be installed high above human activity. For testing purposes, we’ve run our generator on low towers within reach of people, and on our Model A. Wind generators have parts that spin very fast! The blades could probably take your head off in a high wind if you were silly enough to walk into them. Make all installations well out of reach of curious organisms. You should treat any wind generator with a great deal of respect. This is not a joking matter, though we always shout “Clear prop!” before we fire up the test vehicle...
Many improvements could be made to this design. But the intention was to use mostly wood and hand tools, and keep it fast and simple. The wooden alternator is easy and quick to build, but for longest life, it would need to be protected from rain and snow. Maybe a small shingled roof over it?

Using real ball bearings would help friction loss and longevity a bunch. A metal frame and tail would improve high-wind survivability significantly. A furling system to keep the Wood 103 from destroying itself during a gale would be a great addition too. We plan to experiment with many improvements, and we hope this project piques the interest of others too.
Trade-Offs
Designing and building a permanent magnet alternator involves a long series of trade-offs. For example, thicker wire in the windings would give more possible current, but less room for windings and hence lower voltage at the same rpm. Ceramic magnets might be cheaper, but would give far less power than neodymium magnets.

Series wiring on the stator would allow lower rpm at charging voltage, but parallel gives better charging current—and a regulator to switch between the two would be complicated. Using steel laminates instead of air or dirt stator cores would produce more power, but laminate production is extremely difficult.

The trade-offs involved in designing a complete wind generator (or water turbine, or bicycle generator) are even more lengthy and complicated. Wind speed, rotor diameter, number of blades, blade pitch, width and twist, optimum rpm for your winding configuration, generator diameter, and number of poles all factor into a perfect final design.

Improvise, But Do it!
We’ve tried to demonstrate how easy it is to produce electricity from scratch. Don’t let yourself get hung up on complicated formulas, calculations, and machine tools. Even if you make many changes to this simple design, you’ll still almost certainly have a unit that makes usable energy for charging batteries.

Then, you can make small improvements until it performs exactly right for your application. And it could be powered by wind, falling water, a human on a bicycle, a dog on a treadmill, or a yak in a yoke!

Access
Dan Bartmann and Dan Fink, Forcefield, 2606 West Vine Dr., Fort Collins, CO 80521 • 877-944-6247 or 970-484-7257 • danb@otherpower.com danf@otherpower.com • www.otherpower.com Magnets, magnet wire, bridge rectifiers, free information, and a very active discussion board

All Electronics, PO Box 567, Van Nuys, CA 91408 888-826-5432 or 818-904-0524 • Fax: 818-781-2653 allcorp@allcorp.com • www.allelectronics.com Magnets, rectifiers, and lots of electronics parts at great prices

American Science and Surplus, 3605 Howard St., Skokie, IL 60076 • 847-982-0870 • Fax: 800-934-0722 or 847-982-0881 • info@sciplus.com • www.sciplus.com Magnets, magnet wire, surplus electronics, bearings, and other neat stuff

Marlin P. Jones and Assoc., PO Box 530400, Lake Park, FL 33403 • 800-652-6733 or 561-848-8236 Fax: 800-432-9937 or 561-844-8764 • mpja@mpja.com www.mpja.com • Magnet wire, rectifiers, electronics, tools, test equipment

Hugh Piggott, Scoraig Wind Electric, Scoraig, Dundonnell, Ross Shire, IV23 2RE, UK • +44 1854 633 286 • Fax: +44 1854 633 233 hugh.piggott@enterprise.net • www.scoraigwind.co.uk Wind generator and alternator designs, lots of free information about blade design and carving

WindStuffNow, Edwin Lenz, 10253 S. 34th St., Vicksburg, MI 49097 • 616-626-8029 elenz@windstuffnow.com • www.windstuffnow.com Alternator designs, parts, useful formulas, free information, and blade design software

American Wind Energy Association (AWEA) discussion board • http://groups.yahoo.com/group/awea-windhome • Join the list by sending a blank e-mail to: awea-wind-home-subscribe@yahoogroups.com www.awea.org

Home Power #88 • April / May 2002
The Peter Davey Heater. During World War II, Peter Daysh Davey, of Christchurch, New Zealand, a fighter pilot and musician, designed and built an unusual water heater. This design is not particularly well known and information is fairly thin on the ground, however, the basic principle and design details are known.

The device is intended to operate on the New Zealand mains power supply of 220 volts 50 Hz and a requirement of the apparatus is that it resonates at that 50Hz frequency. Resonance is a frequent requirement of free-energy systems, and the need for it is often overlooked by people who attempt to replicate free-energy devices. Properly built and tuned, this heater is said to have a COP of 20, which means that twenty times as much heat is produced by the device, compared to the amount of electrical power required to make it operate. This power gain is caused by additional energy being drawn from the immediate environment and it is very important as the largest use of energy in cool climates tends to be that used for heating. If that can be reduced by a serious amount, then your annual power costs should be much lower as a result of it.

Peter was granted a New Zealand patent for his heater on 12th December 1944 but he found that after the war, the opposition from the utility companies was so great that it prevented him from going into commercial production with it. For fifty years, Peter kept up his attempts to get sufficient approval to bring his heater to the marketplace, but the opposition finally won and he never managed it.

The device comprises a hemispherical resonant cavity, formed from two metallic dome shapes, both of which resonate at 50Hz. Initially, Peter used two bicycle bells and he found that when submerged in water, the device brought the water to the boil in a very short time indeed. The construction is like this:

If construction were to use two identical hemispheres, then the cavity between them would be anything but even width throughout, but the resonance would be the same. On the other hand, if you want the resonant cavity between the two hemispheres to be of constant width, then the outer sphere needs to be markedly larger than the inner hemisphere. The outside of both hemispheres needs to be insulated unless mounted in such a way that it is not possible to touch the hemispheres, as each is attached to the mains.

In the above diagram, the mains live wire 6, is fed through the connecting pipe 8, and clamped to the inside of the inner hemisphere 1, by nut 3 which screws on to the threaded section of tube 8. It is important that it is the live wire which is connected to hemisphere 1. The mains neutral wire 7, is also fed through the connecting tube 8, exits via a small hole and is clamped on to the outside of the outer hemisphere 2, by nut 5, also on the threaded section of tube 8. The two hemispheres are held apart by a spacing washer 4, which is made from a high-temperature non-conducting plastic. As the tube 8 connects electrically and
mechanically to both mains wires via the two locking nuts 3 and 5, it is essential that this tube is constructed
from an electrically non-conducting material such as plastic. As the tube will be in boiling water on a regular
basis, it is also necessary that the tube material is also able to handle temperatures over 100º C (212º F), so
possible materials include nylon and teflon.

This washer is a key component of the heater and its thickness is key to the efficiency of the whole device.
This thickness L, is the tuning control for the cavity. The outer hemisphere is about 8 mm greater in
diameter than the diameter of the inner hemisphere. Allowing for the thickness of the metal of the bowl, the
resonant cavity will therefore be about 3 mm or one eighth of an inch.

The hemisphere 1 is also tuned to 50 Hz by grinding it carefully until it resonates freely at that frequency.
Connecting a loudspeaker in series with a resistor of say, 100K ohms, will give a sound of the exact
frequency with which this hemisphere needs to resonate. This tuning needs to be done with the unit fully
assembled as the connections to the tube will alter the resonant frequency of the hemisphere. When this is
being done, the resonance will be felt rather than heard, so hold the tube lightly so that it can resonate freely.
The tuning is done by removing a small amount of metal from the face of hemisphere 1 and then testing for
resonance again.

When hemisphere 1 resonates well at the mains frequency, (roughly G two octaves below middle C on a
keyboard), the search for high-efficiency heating is carried out by very small adjustments of the gap L. The
adjustment of the gap L is carried out by very careful grinding down of the separating washer 4 and the
result is best determined by measuring the length of time needed to boil a known volume of water and the
current taken to do that. Repeated tests and recorded results, shows when the best gap has been reached
and the highest efficiency achieved. The heater can, of course, be used to heat any liquid, not just water.

This heater is unlike a standard kettle heating element. In the standard method, the water is not a part of the
main current-carrying circuit. Instead, the mains power is applied to the heater element and the current
flowing through the heater element causes it to heat up, and the heat is then conveyed to the water by
conduction. In Davey’s heater, on the other hand, the current flow appears to be through the water between
the two hemispheres. It seems likely that the actual heating is not produced by current flow at all, but from
cavitation of the water caused by the resonating of the cavity between the two hemispheres. This technique
is used in small jewelry cleaners where an audio frequency is applied to a cleaning fluid in a small
container.

A small amount of electrolysis will take place with the Davey heater as it in effect also forms a single parallel-
connected electrolyser. The amounts should be very small as only 1.24 volts out of the 220 volts applied will
be used in the electrolysis process.

An early construction of the original heater is shown in the photograph below. The coin shown in the picture
is 32 mm (1.25 inch) in diameter. The heater is submerged in water when it is being used, and it brings that
water to the boil exceptionally quickly. The unit was tested by New Zealand scientists who were able to
vouch for its performance, but who were unable to state exactly how its operation allowed it to output such a
high level of heat for such a low level of electrical input. You will notice from the photograph, how carefully
the electrical connections and outer bowl are insulated.

The original prototype which Peter made was constructed from the tops of two bicycle bells, only one of
which was tuned to 50 Hz. This shows that the device will definitely work if the inner hemisphere is tuned
correctly.
Solar Ovens. This information comes from http://solarcooking.org/plans/funnel.htm and ownership remains with the original authors.

The Solar Funnel Cooker

How to Make and Use The Brigham Young University Solar Cooker/Cooler

by Professor of Physics at Brigham Young University (BYU), with Colter Paulson, Jason Chesley, Jacob Fugal, Derek Hullinger, Jamie Winterton, Jeannette Lawler, and Seth, David, Nathan, and Danelle Jones.

Introduction

A few years ago, I woke up to the fact that half of the people in the world must burn wood or dried dung in order to cook their food. It came as quite a shock to me, especially as I learned of the illnesses caused by breathing smoke day in and day out, and the environmental impacts of deforestation - not to mention the time spent by people (mostly women) gathering sticks and dung to cook their food. And yet, many of these billions of people live near the equator, where sunshine is abundant and free. So.....

As a University Professor of Physics with a background in energy usage, I set out to develop a means of cooking food and sterilising water using the energy freely available from the sun. First, I looked at existing methods.

The parabolic cooker involves a reflective dish which concentrates sunlight to a point where the food is cooked. This approach is very dangerous since the sun's energy is focused to a point which is very hot, but which cannot be seen. (Brigham Young University students and I built one which will set paper on fire in about 3 seconds!). I learned that an altruistic group had offered reflecting parabolas to the people living at the Altiplano in Bolivia. But more than once these parabolas had been stored next to a shed -- and the passing sun set the sheds on fire! The people did not want these dangerous, expensive devices, even though the Altiplano region has been stripped of fuel wood.

The box cooker: Is basically an insulated box with a glass or plastic lid, often with a reflecting lid to direct sunlight into the box. Light enters through the top glass (or plastic), to slowly heat up the box. The problems with this design are that energy enters only through the top, while heat is escaping through all of the other sides, which have a tendency to draw heat away from the food. When the box is opened to put food in or take it out, some of the heat escapes and is lost. Also, effective box cookers tend to be more complicated to build than the funnel cooker.

While studying this problem, I thought again and again of the great need for a safe, inexpensive yet effective solar cooker. It finally came to me at Christmastime a few years ago, a sort of hybrid between the parabola and the box cooker. It looks like a large, deep funnel, and incorporates what I believe are the best features of both the parabolic cooker and the box cooker.

The first reflector was made at my home out of aluminium foil glued on to cardboard, then this was curved to form a reflective funnel. My children and I figured out a way to make a large cardboard funnel easily. (I'll tell you exactly how to do this later on.)

The Solar Funnel Cooker is safe and low cost, easy to make, yet very effective in capturing the sun's energy for cooking and pasteurising water -> Eureka!

Later, I did extensive tests with students (including reflectivity tests) and found that aluminised Mylar was good too, but relatively expensive and rather hard to come by in large sheets. Besides, cardboard is
found throughout the world and is inexpensive, and aluminium foil is also easy to come by. Also, individuals can make their own solar cookers easily, or start a cottage-industry to manufacture them for others.

Prototypes of the Solar Funnel Cooker were tested in Bolivia, and outperformed an expensive solar box cooker and a "Solar Coolkit" while costing much less then either. Brigham Young University submitted a patent application, mainly to insure that no company would prevent wide distribution of the Solar Funnel Cooker. Brigham Young University makes no profit from the invention. (I later learned that a few people had had a similar idea, but with methods differing from those developed and shown here). So now I'm trying to get the word out so that the invention can be used to capture the free energy coming from the sun - for camping and for emergencies, yes, but also for every day cooking where electricity is not available and where even fuel wood is getting scarce.

How it Works

The reflector is shaped like a giant funnel, and lined with aluminium foil. (Easy to follow instructions will be given soon). This funnel is rather like the parabolic cooker, except that the sunlight is concentrated along a line (not a point) at the bottom of the funnel. You can put your hand up the bottom of the funnel and feel the sun's heat, but it will not burn you.

Next, we paint a jar black on the outside, to collect heat, and place this at the bottom of the funnel. Or a black pot with a lid can be used. The black vessel gets hot, quickly, but not quite hot enough to cook with. We need some way to build up the heat without letting the outside air cool it. So, I put a cheap plastic bag around the jar -- and, the solar funnel cooker was born! The plastic bag, available in grocery stores as a "poultry bag", replaces the cumbersome and expensive box and glass lid of solar box ovens. You can use the plastic bags used in American stores to put groceries in, as long as they let a lot of sunlight pass. (Dark- coloured bags will not do).

I recently tested a bag used for fruits and vegetables, nearly transparent and available free at American grocery stores, that works great. This is stampe "HDPE" for high-density polyethylene on the bag (ordinary polyethylene melts too easily). A block of wood is placed under the jar to help hold the heat in. (Any insulator, such as a hot pad or rope or even sticks, will also work).

A friend of mine who is also a Physics Professor did not believe I could actually boil water with the thing. So I showed him that with this new "solar funnel cooker" I was able to boil water in Utah in the middle of winter! I laid the funnel on its side since it was winter and pointed a large funnel towards the sun to the south. I also had to suspend the black cooking vessel -- rather than placing it on a wooden block. This allows the weaker sun rays to strike the entire surface of the vessel.

Of course, the Solar Funnel works much better outside of winter days, that is, when the UV index is 7 or greater. Most other solar cookers will not cook in the winter in northern areas (or south of about 35 degrees, either).

I thought that a pressure cooker would be great. But the prices in stores were way too high for me. Wait, how about a canning jar? These little beauties are designed to relieve pressure through the lid -- a nice pressure cooker. And cooking time is cut in half for each 10ºC we raise the temperature (Professor Lee Hansen, private communication). I used one of my wife's wide-mouth canning jars, spray-painted (flat) black on the outside, and it worked great. Food cooks faster when you use a simple canning jar as a pressure cooker. However, you can also put a black pot in the plastic bag instead if you want. But don't use a sealed container with no pressure release like a mayonnaise jar -- it can break as the steam builds up (I've done it)!

How to Build Your Own Solar Funnel Cooker

What You will Need for the Funnel Cooker:

A piece of flat cardboard, about 2 feet wide by 4 feet long. (The length should be just twice the width. The bigger, the better).
Ordinary aluminium foil.
A glue such as white glue (like Elmer's glue), and water to mix with it 50-50. Also, a brush to apply the glue to the cardboard (or a cloth or paper towel will do). Or, some may wish to use a cheap "spray adhesive" available in spray cans. You can also use flour paste.
Three wire brads - or small nuts and bolts, or string to hold the funnel together.  
For a cooking vessel, I recommend a canning jar ("Ball" wide-mouth quart jars work fine for me; the rubber ring on the lid is less likely to melt than for other jars I've found. A two-quart canning jar is available and works fine for larger quantities of food, although the cooking is somewhat slower).

The cooking jar (or vessel) should be spray-painted black on the outside. I find that a cheap flat-black spray paint works just fine. Scrape off a vertical stripe so that you have a clear glass "window" to look into the vessel, to check the food or water for boiling.

A block of wood is used as an insulator under the jar. I use a piece of 2" x 4" board which is cut into a square nominally 4" x 4" by about 2" thick. (100 mm square x 50 mm thick). One square piece of wood makes a great insulator.

A plastic bag is used to go around the cooking-jar and block of wood, to provide a green-house effect. Suggestions:

- Reynolds™ Oven Bag, Regular Size works great: transparent and won't melt. (Cost about 25 cents each in U.S. grocery stores.)

- Any nearly-transparent HDPE bag (High-density Polyethylene). Look for "HDPE" stamped on the bag. I've tested HDPE bags which I picked up for free at my grocery store, used for holding vegetables and fruits. These are thin, but very inexpensive. Tested side-by-side with an oven bag in two solar funnels, the HDPE bag worked just as well! **Caution:** we have found that some HDPE bags will melt should they contact the hot cooking vessel. For this reason, we recommend using the oven-safe plastic bag wherever possible.

- An idea attributed to Roger Bernard and applied now to the BYU Funnel Cooker: place a pot (having a blackened bottom and sides) in a glass bowl, and cover with a lid. Try for a tight fit around the bottom to keep hot air trapped inside. The metal pot or bowl should be supported around the rim only, with an air space all around the bottom (where the sunlight strikes it). Put a blackened lid on top of the pot. Then simply place this pot-in-bowl down in the bottom of the funnel - no plastic bag is needed! This clever method also allows the cook to simply remove the lid to check the food and to stir. I like this idea - it makes the solar cooker a lot like cooking over a fire. See Photographs for further details.

---

**Construction Steps**

Cut a Half-circle out of the Cardboard
Cut a half circle out of the cardboard, along the bottom as shown below. When the funnel is formed, this becomes a full-circle and should be wide enough to go around your cooking pot. So for a 7” diameter cooking pot, the radius of the half-circle is 7”. For a quart canning jar such as I use, I cut a 5” radius half-circle out of the cardboard.

Form the Funnel

To form the funnel, you will bring side A towards side B, as shown in the figure. The aluminium foil must go on the INSIDE of the funnel. Do this slowly, helping the cardboard to the shape of a funnel by using one hand to form creases that radiate out from the half-circle. Work your way around the funnel, bending it in stages to form the funnel shape, until the two sides overlap and the half-circle forms a complete circle. The aluminium foil will go on the INSIDE of funnel. Open the funnel and lay it flat, “inside up”, in preparation for the next step.

Glue Foil to Cardboard
Apply glue or adhesive to the top (inner) surface of the cardboard, then quickly apply the aluminium foil on top of the glue, to affix the foil to the cardboard. Make sure the shiniest side of the foil is on top, since this becomes your reflective surface in the Funnel. I like to put just enough glue for one width of foil, so that the glue stays moist while the foil is applied. I also overlap strips of foil by about 1” (or 2 cm). Try to smooth out the aluminium foil as much as you reasonably can, but small wrinkles won’t make much difference. If cardboard is not available, one can simply dig a funnel-shaped hole in the ground and line it with a reflector, to make a fixed solar cooker for use at mid-day.

**Join side A to side B to keep the funnel together.**

The easiest way to do this is to punch three holes in the cardboard that line up on side A and side B (see figure). Then put a metal brad through each hole and fasten by pulling apart the metal tines. Or you can use a nut-and-bolt to secure the two sides (A & B) together.

Be creative here with what you have available. For example, by putting two holes about a thumb-width apart, you can put a string, twine, small rope, wire or twist-tie in one hole and out the other, and tie together.

When A and B are connected together, you will have a “funnel with two wings”. The wings could be cut off, but these help to gather more sunlight, so I leave them on.

**Tape or glue a piece of aluminium foil across the hole at the bottom of the funnel, with shiny side in.**
This completes assembly of your solar funnel cooker. For stability, place the funnel inside a cardboard or other box to provide support. For long-term applications, one may wish to dig a hole in the ground to hold the Funnel against strong winds.

Final Steps
At this stage, you are ready to put food items or water into the cooking vessel or jar, and put the lid on securely. (See instructions on food cooking times, to follow).

Place a wooden block in the INSIDE bottom of the cooking bag. I use a piece of 2” x 4” board which is cut into a square nominally 4” x 4” by 2” thick. Then place the cooking vessel containing the food or water on top of the wooden block, inside the bag.

Next, gather the top of the bag in your fingers and **blow air into the bag, to inflate it.** This will form a small "greenhouse" around the cooking vessel, to trap much of the heat inside. Close off the bag with a tight twist tie or wire. Important: the bag should not touch the sides or lid of the cooking vessel. The bag may be called a "convection shield," slowing convection-cooling due to air currents.

Place the entire bag and its contents inside the funnel near the bottom as shown in the Photographs.

Place the Solar Funnel Cooker so that it Faces the Sun

Remember: Sunlight can hurt the eyes: so please wear sunglasses when using a Solar Cooker! The Funnel Cooker is designed so that the hot region is deep down inside the funnel, out of harm’s way.

Put the Solar Funnel Cooker in the sun pointing towards the sun, so that it captures as much sunlight as possible. The design of the funnel allows it to collect solar energy for about an hour without needing to be re-positioned. For longer cooking times, readjust the position of the funnel to follow the sun’s path.

In the Northern Hemisphere, it helps to put the Solar Funnel Cooker in front of a south-facing wall or window as this reflects additional sunlight into the funnel. A reflective wall is most important in locations farther from the equator and in winter. In the Southern Hemisphere, put the Solar Funnel Cooker in front of a North-facing wall or window to reflect additional sunlight into your cooker.

After Cooking
Remember that the cooking vessel will be very hot: so use cooking pads or gloves when handling it! If you are heating water in a canning jar, you may notice that the water is boiling when the lid is first
Open the plastic cooking bag by removing the twist-tie. Using gloves or a thick cloth, lift the vessel out of the bag and place it on the ground or table. Carefully open the vessel and check the food, to make sure it has finished cooking. Let the hot food cool before eating.

Helpful Hints

Avoid leaving fingerprints and smudges on the inside surface of the cooker. Keep the inner surface clean and shiny by wiping occasionally with a wet towel. This will keep the Solar Funnel Cooker working at its best.

If your funnel gets out-of-round, it can be put back into a circular shape by attaching a rope or string between opposite sides which need to be brought closer together.

For long-term applications, a hole in the ground will hold the Funnel Cooker securely against winds. Bring the funnel inside or cover it during rain storms.

The lids can be used over and over. We have had some trouble with the rubber on some new canning-jar lids becoming soft and "sticky." "Ball canning lids" do not usually have this problem. Running new lids through very hot water before the first use seems to help. The lids can be used over and over if they are not bent too badly when opened (pry off lid carefully).

The jar can be suspended near the bottom of the funnel using fishing line or string (etc.), instead of placing the jar on a block of wood. A plastic bag is placed around the jar with air puffed inside, as usual, to trap the heat. The suspension method allows sunlight to strike all surfaces of the jar, all around, so that heats faster and more evenly. This suspension method is crucial for use in winter months.

Adjust the funnel to put as much sunlight onto the cooking jar as possible. Look at the jar to check where the sunlight is hitting, and to be sure the bottom is not in the shadows. For long cooking times (over about an hour), readjust the position of the funnel to follow the sun's path. During winter months, when the sun is low on the horizon (e.g., in North America), it is helpful to lay the funnel on its side, facing the sun.

Tests in Utah

I have personally used the Solar Funnel Cooker to cook lunches over many weeks. My favourite foods to cook are potatoes (cut into logs or slices) and carrot slices. Vegetables cook slowly in their own juices and taste delicious. I also make rice, melted cheese sandwiches, and even bread in the Solar Funnel Cooker. I usually put the food out around 11:30 and let it cook until 12:45 or 1 pm, just to be sure that it has time to cook. I've never had any food burn in this cooker.

I have also cooked food in the mountains, at an altitude of around 8,300 feet. If anything, the food cooked faster there - the sunlight passes through less atmosphere at high altitudes.

I find that people are surprised that the sun alone can actually cook food. And they are further pleasantly surprised at the rich flavours in the foods which cook slowly in the sun. This inexpensive device does it!

Students at Brigham Young University have performed numerous tests on the Solar Funnel Cooker along with other cookers. We have consistently found much faster cooking using the Solar Funnel Cooker.
The efficiency/cost ratio is higher than any other solar cooking device we have found to date. Mr. Hullinger also performed studies of transmissivity, reflectivity and absorptivity of alternate materials which could be used in the Solar Funnel Cooker. While there are better materials, such as solar-selective absorbers, our goal has been to keep the cost of the Solar Cooker as low as possible, while maintaining safety as a first priority.

Tests in Bolivia
The BYU Benson Institute organised tests between the Solar Funnel Cooker and the "old-fashioned" solar box oven. The solar box oven cost about $70 and was made mostly of cardboard. It took nearly two hours just to reach water pasteurisation temperature. The Bolivian report notes that "food gets cold every time the pots are taken from and into the oven." The solar box oven failed even to cook boiled eggs. (More expensive box cookers would hopefully work better.)

An aluminised-mylar Solar Funnel Cooker was also tested in Bolivia, during the Bolivian winter. Water pasteurisation temperature was reached in 50 minutes, boiled eggs cooked in 70 minutes, and rice cooked in 75 minutes. The Bolivian people were pleased by the performance. So were we! (La Paz, Bolivia, August, 1996).

I also donated two dozen solar funnel cookers for people in Guatemala. These were taken there by a group of doctors going there for humanitarian service. The people there also liked the idea of cooking with the sun's free energy. For an aluminised-Mylar Solar Funnel Cooker kit, please contact CRM (licensed manufacturer) at +1 (801) 292-9210.

Water and Milk Pasteurisation
Contaminated drinking water or milk kills thousands of people each day, especially children. The World Health Organisation reports that 80% of illnesses in the world are spread through contaminated water. Studies show that heating water to about 65º - 70º C (150º F) is sufficient to kill coliform bacteria, rotaviruses, enteroviruses and even Giardia. This is called pasteurisation.

Pasteurisation depends on how hot and how long water is heated. But how do you know if the water got hot enough? You could use a thermometer, but this would add to the cost, of course. When steam leaves the canning jar (with lid on tight) and forms "dew" on the inside of the cooking bag, then the water is probably pasteurised to drink. (The goal is to heat to 160º Fahrenheit for at least six minutes.) With a stripe of black paint scraped off the jar, one can look through the bag and into the jar and see when the water is boiling - then it is safe for sure.

Think of all the lives that can be saved simply by pasteurising water using a simple Solar Cooker!

Safety
Safety was my first concern in designing the Solar Funnel Cooker, then came low cost and effectiveness. But any time you have heat you need to take some precautions.

- The cooking vessel (jar) is going to get hot, otherwise the food inside it won't cook. Let the jar cool a bit before opening. Handle only with gloves or tongs.
• Always wear dark glasses to protect from the sun's rays. We naturally squint, but sunglasses are important.
• Keep the plastic bag away from children and away from nose and mouth to avoid any possibility of suffocation.

Cooking with the Solar Funnel Cooker
What do you cook in a crock pot or moderate-temperature oven? The same foods will cook about the same in the Solar Funnel Cooker - without burning. The charts below give approximate summer cooking times.

The solar cooker works best when the UV index is 7 or higher (Sun high overhead, few clouds).

Cooking times are approximate. Increase cooking times for partly-cloudy days, sun not overhead (e.g., wintertime) or for more than about 3 cups of food in the cooking jar.

Stirring is not necessary for most foods. Food generally will not burn in the solar cooker.

**Vegetables** (Potatoes, carrots, squash, beets, asparagus, etc.)
**Preparation:** No need to add water if fresh. Cut into slices or "logs" to ensure uniform cooking. Corn will cook fine with or without the cob.
**Cooking Time:** About 1.5 hours

**Cereals and Grains** (Rice, wheat, barley, oats, millet, etc.)
**Preparation:** Mix 2 parts water to every 1 part grain. Amount may vary according to individual taste. Let soak for a few hours for faster cooking. To ensure uniform cooking, shake jar after 50 minutes.
**CAUTION:** Jar will be hot. Use gloves or cooking pads.
**Cooking Time:** 1.5-2 hours

**Pasta and Dehydrated Soups**
**Preparation:** First heat water to near boiling (50-70 minutes). Then add the pasta or soup mix. Stir or shake, and cook 15 additional minutes.
**Cooking Time:** 65-85 minutes

**Beans**
**Preparation:** Let tough or dry beans soak overnight. Place in cooking jar with water.
**Cooking Time:** 2-3 hours

**Eggs**
**Preparation:** No need to add water. **Note:** If cooked too long, egg whites may darken, but taste remains the same.
**Cooking Time:** 1-1.5 hours, depending on desired yolk firmness.

**Meats** (Chicken, beef, and fish)
**Preparation:** No need to add water. Longer cooking makes the meat more tender.
**Cooking Time:** Chicken: 1.5 hours cut up or 2.5 hours whole; Beef: 1.5 hours cut up or 2.5-3 hours for larger cuts; Fish: 1-1.5 hours

**Baking**
**Preparation:** Times vary based on amount of dough.
**Cooking Times:** Breads: 1-1.5 hours; Biscuits: 1-1.5 hours; Cookies: 1 hour

**Roasted Nuts** (Peanuts, almonds, pumpkin seed, etc.)
**Preparation:** Place in jar. A little vegetable oil may be added if desired.
**Cooking Time:** About 1.5 hours

**MRE's and pre-packaged foods**
**Preparation:** For foods in dark containers, simply place the container in the cooking bag in place of the black cooking jar.
**Cooking Times:** Cooking time varies with the amount of food and darkness of package.
How to Use the Solar Funnel as a Refrigerator/Cooler

A university student (Jamie Winterton) and I were the first to demonstrate that the Brigham Young University Solar Funnel Cooker can be used - at night - as a refrigerator. Here is how this is done.

The Solar Funnel Cooker is set-up just as you would during sun-light hours, with two exceptions:

1. The funnel is directed at the dark night sky. It should not "see" any buildings or even trees. (The thermal radiation from walls, trees, or even clouds will diminish the cooling effect.).

2. It helps to place 2 (two) bags around the jar instead of just one, with air spaces between the bags and between the inner bag and the jar. HDPE and ordinary polyethylene bags work well, since polyethylene is nearly transparent to infrared radiation, allowing it to escape into the "heat sink" of the dark sky.

During the day, the sun's rays are reflected on to the cooking vessel which becomes hot quickly. At night, heat from the vessel is radiated outward, towards empty space, which is very cold indeed (a "heat sink"). As a result, the cooking vessel now becomes a small refrigerator. We routinely achieve cooling of about 20º F (10º C) below ambient air temperature using this remarkably simple scheme.

In September 1999, we placed two funnels out in the evening, with double-bagged jars inside. One jar was on a block of wood and the other was suspended in the funnel using fishing line. The temperature that evening (in Provo, Utah) was 78º F (25.5º C). Using a Radio Shack indoor/outdoor thermometer, a BYU student (Colter Paulson) measured the temperature inside the funnel and outside in the open air. He found that the temperature of the air inside the funnel dropped quickly by about 15º F (8º C), as its heat was radiated upwards in the clear sky. That night, the minimum outdoor air temperature measured was 47.5º F (8.6º C) - but the water in both jars had ICE. I invite others to try this, and please let me know if you get ice at 55 or even 60 degrees outside air temperature (minimum at night). A black PVC container may work even better than a black-painted jar, since PVC is a good infrared radiator - these matters are still being studied.

I would like to see the "Funnel Refrigerator" tried in desert climates, especially where freezing temperatures are rarely reached. It should be possible in this way to cheaply make ice for Hutus in Rwanda and for aborigines in Australia, without using any electricity or other modern "tricks." We are in effect bringing some of the cold of space to a little corner on earth. Please let me know how this works for you.

Conclusion: Why We Need Solar Cookers

The BYU Funnel Cooker/Cooler can:

- Cook food without the need for electricity or wood or petroleum or other fuels.
- Pasteurise water for safe drinking, preventing many diseases.
- Save trees and other resources.
- Avoid air pollution and breathing smoke while cooking.
- Use the sun's free energy. A renewable energy source.
- Cook food with little or no stirring, without burning.
- Kill insects in grains.
- Dehydrate fruits, etc.
- Serve as a refrigerator at night, to cool even freeze water.

(Try that without electricity or fuels!)

The burden for gathering the fuel wood and cooking falls mainly on women and children. Joseph Kii reports:

From Dadaab, Kenya: "Women who can't afford to buy wood start at 4 am to go collecting and return about noon... They do this twice a week to get fuel for cooking... The rapes are averaging one per week."

From Belize: "Many times the women have to go into the forest dragging their small children when they..."
go to look for wood. It is a special hardship for pregnant and nursing mothers to chop and drag trees back to the village... they are exposed to venomous snakes and clouds of mosquitoes."

And the forests are dwindling in many areas. Edwin Dobbs noted in *Audubon Magazine*, Nov. 1992, "The world can choose sunlight or further deforestation, solar cooking or widespread starvation..."

Americans should be prepared for emergencies, incident to power failures. A Mormon pioneer noted in her journal: "We were now following in their trail travelling up the Platte River. Timber was sometimes very scarce and hard to get. We managed to do our cooking with what little we could gather up..." (Eliza R. Snow) Now there's someone who needed a light-weight Solar Cooker!

Here's another reason to use a solar cooker. Many people in developing countries look to see what's being done in America. I'm told that if Americans are using something, then they will want to try it, too. The more people there are cooking with the sun, the more others will want to join in. A good way to spread this technology is to encourage small local industries or families to make these simple yet reliable solar cookers for others at low cost. I've used this cooker for three summers and I enjoy it. Cooking and making ice with the funnel cooker/cooler will permit a significant change in lifestyle. If you think about it, this could help a lot of people. The BYU Solar Funnel Cooker uses the glorious sunshine -- and the energy of the sun is a free gift from God for all to use!

**Answers to commonly-asked questions**

**Will the cooker work in winter (in the United States)?**

As the sun moves closer to the southern horizon in the winter, the solar cooker is naturally less effective. A good measure of the solar intensity is the “UV index” which is often reported with the weather. When the ultraviolet or UV index is 7 or above – common in summer months – the solar cooker works very well. In Salt Lake City in October, the UV index was reported to be 3.5 on a sunny day. We were able to boil water in the Solar Funnel Cooker during this time, but we had to suspend the black jar in the funnel so that sunlight struck all sides. (We ran a fishing line under the screw-on lid, and looped the fishing line over a rod above the funnel. As usual, a plastic bag was placed around the jar, and this was closed at the top to let the fishing line out for suspending the jar.)

The solar “minimum” for the northern hemisphere occurs on winter solstice, about December 21st each year. The solar “maximum” occurs six months later, June 21st. Solar cooking works best from about 20th March to 1st October in the north. If people try to cook with the sun for the first time outside of this time window, they should not be discouraged. Try again when the sun is more directly overhead. One may also suspend the jar in the funnel, which will make cooking faster any time of the year.

It is interesting to note that most developing countries are located near the equator where the sun is nearly directly overhead all the time. Solar Cookers will then serve year-round, as long as the sun is shining, for these fortunate people. They may be the first to apply fusion energy (of the sun) on a large scale. They may also accomplish this without the expensive infrastructure of electrical power grids that we take for granted in America.

**How do you cook bread in a jar?**

I have cooked bread by simply putting dough in the bottom of the jar and placing it in the funnel in the usual way. Rising and baking took place inside the jar in about an hour (during summer). One should put vegetable oil inside the jar before cooking to make removal of the bread easier. I would also suggest that using a 2-quart wide-mouth canning jar instead of a 1-quart jar would make baking a loaf of bread easier.

**What is the optimum “opening angle” for the funnel cooker?**

A graduate student at Brigham Young University did a calculus calculation to assess the best shape or opening angle for the Solar Funnel. Jeannette Lawler assumed that the best operation would occur when the sun’s rays bounced no more than once before hitting the cooking jar, while keeping the opening angle as large as possible to admit more sunlight. (Some sunlight is lost each time the light reflects from the shiny surface. If the sunlight misses on the first bounce, it can bounce again and again until being absorbed by the black bottle). She set up an approximate equation for this situation, took the calculus derivative with respect to the opening angle and set the derivative equal to zero. Optimising in this way, she found that the optimum opening angle is about 45 degrees, when the funnel is pointed directly towards the sun.
But we don't want to have to “track the sun” by turning the funnel every few minutes. The sun moves (apparently) 360 degrees in 24 hours, or about 15 degrees per hour. So we finally chose a 60-degree opening angle so that the cooker is effective for about 1.2 hours. This turned out to be long enough to cook most vegetables, breads, boil water, etc. with the Solar Funnel Cooker. We also used a laser pointer to simulate sun rays entering the funnel at different angles, and found that the 60-degree cone was quite effective in concentrating the rays at the bottom of the funnel where the cooking jar sits.

For questions regarding the complete Solar Funnel Cooker kit using aluminised Mylar and a jar for the cooking vessel, please contact CRM at +1 (801) 292-9210.

Tests of the Solar Funnel and Bowl Cookers in 2001
Christopher McMillan and Steven E. Jones
Brigham Young University

Introduction
With an increase in population and a decrease in available fuels such as wood and coal in developing countries, the need for alternative cooking methods has increased. Solar cookers are an alternative to conventional methods such as wood-fires and coal-fires. They provide usable heat for cooking and pasteurising water, without the harmful side effects such as smoke inhalation that non-renewable sources create. In many countries such as Haiti, Bolivia and Kenya, the need for cheap, effective, and safe cooking methods has increased due to poverty and deforestation. Solar cookers are ideal because they rely on the sun’s free energy which is abundant in many of the world’s poorest countries. Though there are good designs, more testing and improvement is desirable.

There are three areas of comparison that were focused on during the course of the study. The first area of comparison is in the reflective material used. The original material is a mirror-finished aluminium Mylar. Due to the mirror finish, the reflection light is very bright and can be difficult to work over when cooking. An alternative material is a matt-finish Mylar. This material diffuses the sunlight and is not as harsh on the eyes as is the mirrored finish.

The second area of concentration is on the method of containing the air that surrounds the cooker so that the cooker is kept from being cooled by convection currents. A common method is to use a clear plastic oven-safe bag around the cooking vessel. However, this method is rather tedious and awkward to use, and such bags are rarely available in developing countries. Another technique is to use a disk or window made out of a clear plastic or glass. This makes the cooker easier to use.

The third main area of focus is in the cooking containers used. The present cooking vessel for the Solar Funnel Cooker is a black-painted canning jar. This method is also tedious and awkward. The canning jars can be hard to clean, and they can break. Design changes are tested that would allow people to use their own cookware. This too would make the cooker more convenient to use.

The fourth area of testing pitted the wooden block support which we have been using for years against a rabbit-wire support. A rabbit-wire cylinder holds the cooking vessel up off the bottom of the cooker, and allows sunlight to strike essentially all surfaces of the cooking vessel, including the bottom.
The effectiveness of these methods is tested and compared both qualitatively and quantitatively. In addition to acquiring temperature-rise versus time data, we also cooked numerous meals in the solar cookers so as to get hands-on experience with cooking. Several students participated in these cooking tests.

Cooker Designs:

Several solar cooker designs were used during these tests. The Solar Funnel Cooker was the main cooker tested. A Solar CooKit and a bowl-shaped variation of the Solar Funnel Cooker were also tested. Most experiments were comparative tests between the various designs, and the cooker set-up was varied from test to test. The basic design of the Solar Funnel Cooker is a funnel-shaped aluminium Mylar collector. A highly reflective material is necessary to collect and concentrate the sun's rays. The funnel walls are at a 60 degree angle (with respect to the horizontal) since this collects sunlight for a two hour time period without requiring re-orientation to follow the sun. Due to the way the Mylar sheets are cut and folded, a pair of wings on opposite ends of the funnel is formed. The wings increase the collector size and create an elliptical shape at top. At the tips of the wings, the cooker stands about 20 inches high and has a diameter of about 28 inches. At the top, along the minor axis of the elliptical funnel, the cooker stands about 15 inches high, and has a diameter of about 20 inches. Since the Aluminium Mylar does not support itself well, a nine inch diameter by five inch high bucket is used to support the funnel.

The cooking container primarily tested is a glass canning jar that has been painted flat black. The black paint allows the jar to absorb the sun’s rays. The canning jar works well due to the added pressure-cooker effect caused by the rubber ring on the inside of the lid. A black-enamel pot and a black-painted stainless steel canister were also used. We found immediately that raising the vessel off the bottom of the cooker using a rabbit-wire stand provided more rapid and even heating than the wooden block used previously. Placing the jar or pot on a wire stand allows as much reflected light onto the cooking vessel as possible. This allows even the bottom of the cooking container to absorb thermal energy that is reflected off the lower portion of the funnel.

Two methods of closing the cookers off from convection currents were used. It is important to keep the air that surrounds the container from circulating, thus keeping the cooking container from being cooled by convection currents or breezes. This first method used was to enclose the cooking vessel and wire stand in a clear plastic bag, such as a heat resistant Reynolds Oven Bag. It is important to make sure that the bag is not touching the cooking vessel, so once the vessel is placed into the clear bag, air is blown into the bag and the bag is tied off. This is the most common method used for solar panel cookers, such as the Solar CooKit, because of the bags’ ability to withstand the temperatures attained in these types of cookers. But these bags tear rather easily and they are not readily available in developing countries and must be imported.

The second method of closing off the cooking vessel from convection currents, designed by Dr. Jones, is to place a clear plastic disk down into the funnel above the cooking vessel. The funnel used in the test was a conventional-shaped funnel that was constructed out of thin sheet metal and aluminium-foil lined for better reflectivity. The diameter of this funnel is about 30 inches at the top, and it stands about 16 inches high.
The walls also form about a 60 degree angle with respect to the horizontal. This funnel was designed to hold a larger cooking container such as a pot. The diameter of the plastic disk is large enough that the disk does not touch the top of the container. For the experiments that tested this method, a one-sixteenth inch (1.6 mm) thick Lexan disk was used.

Data Collection
To collect the temperatures as a function of time, a Texas Instruments Calculator Based Laboratory (CBL) was used. This portable interface is capable of recording real-time data from multiple channels. The data were downloaded into a graphing calculator, where they can be analysed and graphed immediately. From the calculator, the data can be transferred to a computer spreadsheet such as Microsoft Excel for further analysis. Due to the nature of these experiments and the low cost to purchase the CBL, this is an ideal data collector to use. A graphing calculator was used to program the CBL and to tell it what data to collect, how many points to collect, and the time period between data points collected. Since the CBL does not have any internal programs for data collection, a program must be written into the graphing calculator. There are ready-made programs that can be uploaded into the calculator, or a custom program can be made to fit the needs of the test. The program that the CBL used allowed multiple thermocouples to collect data simultaneously. To ensure that the thermocouples were calibrated against each other, both were run on the same constant temperature sample in very close proximity. Both temperature probes agreed to within 0.21°C of each other. For these experiments, this temperature difference was considered to be acceptable.

Procedure
Each experiment was conducted on the campus of Brigham Young University during mid-day, usually between 11:00 am and 2:00 pm to ensure that the sun was close to being directly over-head. This allowed as much sun light as possible to enter the solar collector. Each experiment included several steps, as listed below.

Before each experiment was set up, the volume of the water and the mass of the container were measured and recorded. The heat capacity of the water and the container were also found. The area of the cooker perpendicular to the sun's rays was also measured. To collect temperature data using thermocouple probes, small holes were drilled into the top of the canning jar and stainless steel canister lids. The jar and canister were both painted ultra-flat black to absorb as much of the sun’s energy as possible.

On the morning of each test, the designated volume of water was measured out and poured into the cooking vessel. This volume ranged from 0.6 litre for one-quart jars, to 1.2 litters for half-gallon canning jars. For simultaneous testing, the same amount of water was poured into each container. The temperature probes were wired through the holes in the lids of the containers and secured about 13 mm into the water. For comparative tests, the probes were placed the same depth into the water to ensure that the probes did not read different measurements due to depth-related temperature differences within the containers. To enable later analysis; the time, ambient temperature, and solar irradiance were also noted and recorded. These numbers gave a reference point for each test. Each cooker that was to be tested was then completely set up. The temperature probes were secured through the lids, and the jar was placed into the clear oven bag – supported by a wire cage. Each bag was inflated so that no part of the bag touched the sides or top of the cooking container. The cord from the thermocouple to the CBL was passed through the top of the bag, and the bag was tied off with a twist-tie.

The test began once both cookers were completely ready and the CBL had been programmed. Care was taken to block the sun from radiating directly onto the cookers until both were ready to begin. This ensured that the water in both cookers started at very nearly the same temperature. Most tests were set up to collect one data point every four to five minutes, for up to two hours. This allowed the cooker temperatures to reach maxima and then remain at a nearly constant temperature. Once a test was complete, the cooker was disassembled and the data downloaded into the graphing calculator. Though the graphing calculator does allow analysis, a spread sheet such as Microsoft Excel is easier to use. Thus, the data from each test were downloaded from the calculator into Microsoft Excel. The elapsed time (in seconds) and the corresponding temperatures were listed next to each other. A graph of temperature versus time was made, with the Time being the horizontal axis for each test. For comparative tests, the Temperature versus Time data for both cookers was plotted on the same graph. As a reference, a trend-line was fitted to the linear portion of the graph, along with the linear regression and the coefficient of correlation (R2). It is important to have a coefficient of correlation close to one, as this is how close the linear regression fits the data. In a separate column, the temperatures were again listed, however only from 30°C to 70°C. The change in temperature for every ten or twelve minutes was found and logged next to the temperature column. The power output (in Watts) of each cooker could then be calculated.
To calculate the power output of the cookers for each specific test, the mass of the water and of the container were both measured. Though the thermal energy content of the container was relatively small compared to that of water (due to the large heat capacity of water), it was important to add it into the calculation. Also, since several different containers were compared, the energy content of the container was important. The power is found by:

\[ \text{Power}_{\text{out}} = \frac{Q_{\text{out}}}{\Delta t} \]

\[ Q_{\text{out}} = (m_w c_w + m_c c_c) \Delta T \]

\[ Q_{\text{water}} = Q_{\text{container}} \]

The power is found in Watts. A power output for each change in temperature for the time interval is calculated and logged next to the T column. Since there are uncertainties in all of the measurements, it is important to include the error in each power output. To do this, the error in the water’s and container’s measurements is taken into consideration. The error is found by:

\[ \pm \Delta P = \sqrt{(\frac{\partial P}{\partial m_w} \Delta m_w)^2 + (\frac{\partial P}{\partial m_c} \Delta m_c)^2 + (\frac{\partial P}{\partial \Delta T} \Delta t)^2 + (\frac{\partial P}{\partial \Delta t} \Delta t_c)^2 + 2(\frac{\partial P}{\partial \Delta T} \Delta t)^2 + 2(\frac{\partial P}{\partial \Delta T} \Delta T_c)^2} \]

Where ±dP is the total error in the calculated error, dmw and dmc are the error in the mass of the water and container respectively, \( \Delta T \) is the error in the temperature difference, and \( \Delta t \) is the error in the time interval.

This simplifies to:

\[ \pm \Delta P = \sqrt{(\frac{c_w \Delta T}{t_m} \Delta m_w)^2 + (\frac{c_c \Delta T}{t_i} \Delta m_c)^2 + (\frac{m_w c_w \Delta T}{t_m} \Delta t)^2 + (\frac{m_c c_c \Delta T}{t_i} \Delta t_c)^2 + 2(\frac{m_w c_w \Delta T}{t_m} \Delta t)^2 + 2(\frac{m_c c_c \Delta T}{t_i} \Delta T_c)^2} \]

The error was found only for the average change in temperature, rather than for each individual temperature measurement. Since the power output is dependant on the amount of energy coming in from the sun, the cooker efficiency is a good factor to calculate. To find the efficiency, the total amount of local solar radiation must be known. This should be given in watts per square metre, so that the input wattage can be found. To find the power coming in, the area of the cooker perpendicular to the sun’s rays was multiplied by the solar radiation to give the amount of power that was being collected by the cooker. Since the Solar Funnel is able to be kept on track with the sun, and since the tests were done during mid-day, it was not necessary to calculate any angles. The efficiency is simply the power output divided by the power input. The solar radiation for each test was supplied by the Department of Physics and Astronomy weather station at Brigham Young University in Provo, UT, where the tests took place.

**Results:**

Matt vs. Mirror: Several tests were conducted on the matt versus mirror finishes. In each test, the matt finish outperformed the mirror finish. On 27 July, 2001, a matt funnel and a mirror funnel were simultaneously tested with 650 cc of water. The average power output for the mirror finish was 46.4 W ± 1.7 W, while the matt funnel put out an average of 59.4 W ± 2.1 W. The efficiency of the mirror funnel was 15.8%, while the matt was 20.2% efficient.

The following graph shows the temperatures reached by the matt and mirror funnels.
Channel 1 (Ch1) was the mirror finish, and channel 2 (Ch2) was the matt finish. This shows that both funnels peaked at about the same temperature: 97°C (207°F). The matt funnel peaked in about 76 minutes, whereas the mirror funnel peaked in 96 minutes, twenty minutes later. Though this perhaps a tolerable time difference for actual cooking, it is substantial. Every matt vs. mirror test performed in a similar way. These results are due to the way the matt funnel reflects the sun’s rays. The mirror finish seems to focus a strip of light onto the cooking vessel more than the matt finish does. As a result, the matt finish diffuses the light more and the cooker is heated more uniformly. This is good, since the matt finish is easier to work with, delivering much less glare to the eyes.

The following graph shows the temperature rise with time for a Solar CooKit:
Comparing the two graphs above, we find that the Solar CoolKit performed very well, comparable to the Funnel Cooker. We should note that in both cases, we used a canning jar (pressurised) supported by a wire stand. We found that the wire stand improves the performance of the Solar CooKit significantly and hope that this support stand will be used in countries where the Solar CooKit is in use.

In tests where the use of the clear plastic disk was tested against the oven-bag, an aluminium pot was used in the disk-set-up. In these tests, the cooker with an oven bag outperformed the cooker using a plastic disk. On 10 August, 2001, a test was run which compared the disk/pot set-up against the oven-bag/jar set-up. Both cookers follow similar heating paths with time, but the oven-bag/jar did slightly better. Due to the higher mass of the jar compared to the mass of the aluminium pot, and the much higher heat capacity of the water, the average power output for the oven-bag/jar was 39.8 ± 1.4 W, while the disk/pot put out 30.3 W ± 1.2 W. The efficiency of the oven-bag/jar was 14.7% and the efficiency of the disk/pot set-up was 10.4% for this test. This is also partly due to the pressure-cooker effect that the canning jar produces. Though this is a considerable efficiency difference, the disk/pot set-up did very well in subjective tests where food was actually cooked and tasted. In all cases where the disk/pot set-up was used to cook food, the food cooked in about the same amount of time. The ease of the disk/pot set-up is also an important consideration. Overall, in tests where food was cooked, the disk/pot set-up was preferred over the oven-bag/jar set-up.

Conclusions:
As many countries are depleting their natural resources due to increased population and the resulting deforestation, methods other than burning wood are needed to cook food and pasteurise water. Solar cookers provide a sustainable technology that relies on the sun’s free energy. We report several advances to make them better. The need for cheap and effective solar cookers is very great and growing.

The Solar Funnel Cooker has been designed to meet the growing need by being inexpensive and effective. We determined that the Solar CooKit was nearly as effective when a rabbit-wire stand was used to support
the cooking vessel. By collecting time vs. temperature data, quantitative analysis has been done. This analysis approach is useful for further development of the cookers.

Several areas of research were explored in 2001. Two finishes were tested for the reflector, a matt finish and a mirror finish. The benefits of the matt over the mirror finish are:

1) The matt finish is easier to work over because the sun’s glaring reflection is diffused, and
2) the matt finish out-performs the mirror finish in temperature vs. time tests.

The method of closing off the cooker from convection current was tested and compared with an alternative method – a clear plastic disk. The use of a pot rather than a canning jar was also tested. Though the present oven-bag/jar method does outperform the disk/pot method, the disk/pot method is easier to use and seems to be nearly as efficient. Finally, we showed that a wire-mesh stand is a considerable improvement over the use of a wooden block or other opaque stand for the cooking vessel. We join with our fellow researchers around the world in pursuing further development of solar cookers, particularly to benefit people in developing countries.

References:

Recent Advances in Solar Water Pasteurisation

Boiling isn't necessary to kill disease microbes

The main purpose of solar cookers is to change sunlight into heat which is then used to cook foods. We are all familiar with how successful solar cookers are at cooking and baking a wide variety of foods. In this article I want to consider using the heat in solar cookers for purposes other than cooking. My main focus will be solar water pasteurisation, which can complement solar cooking and address critical health problems in many developing countries.

The majority of diseases in developing countries today are infectious diseases caused by bacteria, viruses, and other microbes which are shed in human faeces and polluted water which people use for drinking or washing. When people drink the live microbes, they can multiply, cause disease, and be shed in faeces into water, continuing the cycle of disease transmission.

World-wide, unsafe water is a major problem. An estimated one billion people do not have access to safe water. It is estimated that diarrhoeal diseases that result from contaminated water kill about 2 million children and cause about 900 million episodes of illness each year.

Boiling contaminated water

How can infectious microbes in water be killed to make the water safe to drink? In the cities of developed countries this is often guaranteed by chlorination of water after it has been filtered. In developing countries, however, city water systems are less reliable, and water from streams, rivers and some wells
may be contaminated with human faeces and pose a health threat. For the billion people who do not have safe water to drink, what recommendation do public health officials offer? The only major recommendation is to boil the water, sometimes for up to 10 minutes. It has been known since the time of Louis Pasteur 130 years ago that heat of boiling is very effective at killing all microbes which cause disease in milk and water.

If contaminated water could be made safe for drinking by boiling, why is boiling not uniformly practised? There seem to be five major reasons:

1) people do not believe in the germ theory of disease,
2) it takes too long,
3) boiled water tastes bad,
4) fuel is often limited or costly,
5) the heat and smoke are unpleasant.

Some examples of the cost of boiling water are worth mentioning. During the cholera outbreak in Peru, the Ministry of Health urged all residents to boil drinking water for 10 minutes. The cost of doing this would amount to 29% of the average poor household income. In Bangladesh, boiling drinking water would take 11% of the income of a family in the lowest quartile. In Jakarta, Indonesia, more than $50 million is spent each year by households for boiling water. It is estimated that in the city of Cebu in the Philippines, population about 900,000, about half the families boil their drinking water, and the proportion is actually higher for families that obtain their water from an unreliable chlorinated piped supply. Because the quantities of fuel consumed for boiling water are so large, approximately 1 kilogram of wood to boil 1 litre of water, and because firewood, coal, and coke are often used for this purpose, an inadequate water supply system significantly contributes to deforestation, urban air pollution, and other energy-related environmental effects.

If wood, charcoal, or dung is used as fuel for boiling water, the smoke creates a health hazard, as it does all the time with cooking. It is estimated that 400 to 700 million people, mainly women, suffer health problems from this indoor air pollution. As a microbiologist, I have always been perplexed as to why boiling is recommended, when this is heat far in excess of that which is necessary to kill infectious microbes in water. I presume the reason boiling is recommended is to make sure that lethal temperatures have been reached, since unless one has a thermometer it is difficult to tell what temperature heated water has reached until a roaring boil is reached. Everyone is familiar with the process of milk pasteurisation. This is a heating process which is sufficient to kill the most heat resistant disease causing microbes in milk, such as the bacteria which cause tuberculosis, undulant fever, streptococcal infections and Salmonellosis. What temperatures are used to pasteurise milk? Most milk is pasteurised at 71.7° C (161° F) for only 15 seconds. Alternatively, 30 minutes at 62.8° C (145° F) can also pasteurise milk. Some bacteria are heat resistant and can survive pasteurisation, but these bacteria do not cause disease in people. They can, however, spoil the milk, so pasteurised milk is kept refrigerated.

There are some different disease microbes found in water, but they are not unusually heat resistant. The most common causes of water diseases, and their heat sensitivity, are presented in Table 1. The most common causes of acute diarrhoea among children in developing countries are the bacteria Escherichia coli and Shigella SD. and the Rotavirus group of viruses. These are rapidly killed at temperatures of 60° C or greater.

Solar water pasteurisation

As water heats in a solar cooker, temperatures of 56° C and above start killing disease-causing microbes. A graduate student of mine, David Ciochetti, investigated this for his master's thesis in 1983, and concluded that heating water to 66° C in a solar cooker will provide enough heat to pasteurise the water and kill all disease causing microbes. The fact that water can be made safe to drink by heating it to this lower temperature - only 66° C - instead of 100° C (boiling) presents a real opportunity for addressing contaminated water in developing countries.

Testing water for faecal contamination

How can one readily determine if the water from a well, pump, stream, etc. is safe to drink? The common procedure is to test the water for bacterial indicators of faecal pollution. There are two groups of indicators which are used. The first is the coliform bacteria which are used as indicators in developed countries where water is chlorinated. Coliform bacteria may come from faeces or from plants. Among the coliform bacteria is the second indicator, Escherichia coli. This bacterium is present in large numbers
in human faeces (approximately 100,000,000 per gram of faeces) and that of other mammals. This is the main indicator used if water is not chlorinated. A water source containing 100 E. coli per 100 ccs poses a substantial risk of disease.

The standard method of testing water for the presence of coliforms and E. coli requires trained personnel and a good laboratory facility or field unit which are usually not present in developing countries. Thus, water supplies are almost never tested.

A new approach to testing in developing countries

In 1987, the Colilert MPM Test (CLT) was introduced as the first method which used a defined substrate technology to simultaneously detect coliforms and E. coli. The CLT comes as dry chemicals in test tubes containing two indicator nutrients: one for coliforms and one for E. coli. The CLT involves adding 10 ml of water to a tube, shaking to dissolve the chemicals, and incubating at body temperature for 24 hours. I prefer incubating tubes under my belt against my body. At night I sleep on my back and use night clothes to hold the tubes against my body.

If no coliform bacteria are present, the water will remain clear. However, if one or more coliforms are present in the water, after 24 hours their growth will metabolise ONPG and the water will change in colour from clear to yellow (resembling urine). If E. coli is among the coliform bacteria present, it will metabolise MUG and the tube will fluoresce blue when a battery-operated, long-wave ultraviolet light shines on it, indicating a serious health hazard. I have invited participants at solar box cooker workshops in Sierra Leone, Mali, Mauritania, and Nepal to test their home water supplies with CLT. One hundred and twenty participants brought in samples. In all four countries, whether the water was from urban or rural areas, the majority of samples contained coliforms, and at least half of these had E. coli present. Bacteriological testing of the ONPG and MUG positive tubes brought back from Mali and Mauritania verified the presence of coliforms/E. coli in approximately 95% of the samples. It is likely that soon the Colilert MPN test will be modified so that the test for E. coli will not require an ultraviolet light, and the tube will turn a different colour than yellow if E. coli is present. This will make the test less expensive and easier to widely use in developing countries to assess water sources.

Effect of safe water on diarrhoea in children

What would be the effect if contaminated water could be made safe for drinking by pasteurisation or boiling? One estimate predicts that if in the Philippines, families at present using moderately contaminated wells (100 E. coli per 100 ml) were able to use a high-quality water source, diarrhoea among their children would be reduced by over 30%. Thus, if water which caused a MUG (++) test were solar pasteurised so it would be clear, this would help reduce the chance of diarrhoea, especially in children.

Water pasteurisation indicator

How can one determine if heated water has reached 65°C? In 1988, Dr. Fred Barrett (USDA, retired) developed the prototype for the Water Pasteurisation Indicator (WAPI). In 1992, Dale Andreatta, a graduate engineering student at the University of California, Berkeley, developed the current WAPI. The WAPI is a polycarbonate tube, sealed at both ends, partially filled with a soybean fat which melts at 69°C ("MYVEROL" 18-06K, Eastman Kodak Co., Kingsport, TN 37662). The WAPI is placed inside a water container with the fat at the top of the tube. A washer will keep the WAPI on the bottom of the container, which heats the slowest in a solar box cooker. If heat from the water melts the fat, the fat will move to the bottom of the WAPI, indicating water has been pasteurised. If the fat is still at the top of the tube, the water has not been pasteurised.
The WAPI is reusable. After the fat cools and becomes solid on the bottom, the fish line string is pulled to the other end and the washer slides to the bottom, which places the fat at the top of the tube. Another pasteurisation indicator has been developed by Roland Saye which is based on expansion of a bi-metal disc which is housed in a plastic container. This also shows promise and is in the early testing stages. The WAPI could be useful immediately for people who currently boil water to make it safe to drink. The WAPI will indicate clearly when a safe temperature has been reached, and will save much fuel which is currently is being wasted by excessive heating.

[Editor’s note: Using Beeswax & Carnauba Wax to Indicate Temperature: In SBJ #15 we discussed using beeswax, which melts at a relatively low 62°C, as an indicator of pasteurisation. We have now found that mixing a small amount of carnauba wax with the beeswax (~1:5 ratio) raises the melting temperature of the beeswax to 70°C - 75°C. Carnauba wax is a product of Brazil and can be bought in the US at woodworking supply stores. Further testing needs to be done to confirm that the melting point remains the same after repeated re-melting.

Different strategies for solar water pasteurisation

The solar box cooker was first used to pasteurise water. David Ciochetti built a deep-dish solar box cooker to hold several gallons of water. At this time of the year in Sacramento, three gallons could be pasteurised on our typical sunny days.

Dale Andreatta and Derek Yegian of the University of California, Berkeley, have developed creative ways to greatly increase the quantity of water which can be pasteurised, as we will hear about at this conference.

I am also excited about the possibility of pasteurising water using the simple solar panel cookers. By enclosing a dark water container in a polyester bag to create an insulating air space, and by using lots of reflectors to bounce light onto the jar, it is possible to pasteurise useful amounts of water with a simple system. It takes about four hours for me to pasteurise a gallon of water in the summer with the system I am using. Solar panel cookers open up enormous possibilities for heating water not only for pasteurisation, but also for making coffee and tea, which are quite popular in some developing countries. The heated water can also be kept hot for a long time by placing it in its bag inside an insulated box. In the insulated container I use, a gallon of 80°C water will be approximately 55°C after 14 hours. Water at a temperature of 55°C will be about 40°C after 14 hours, ideal for washing/shaving in the morning.

I will close with some advice from the most famous microbiologist, who pioneered the use of vaccinations in the 1890s: Louis Pasteur. When he was asked the secret of his success, he responded that above all else, it was persistence. I will add that you need good data to be persistent about, and we certainly have that with solar cookers; the work in Sacramento, Bolivia, Nepal, Mali, Guatemala, and wherever else the sun shines. Continued overuse of fuel-wood is non-sustainable. We need to persist until the knowledge we have spreads and becomes common knowledge world-wide.

For questions or comments contact Dr. Robert Metcalf at.

Dr. Robert Metcalf
1324 43rd St.
Sacramento, California 95819 USA.
IDEXX Laboratories, Inc. makes the Colilert kit and is located at this address:

IDEXX Laboratories, Inc.
One IDEXX Drive
Westbrook, ME 04092

14 - 42
Editor's Note: Testing Water in Developing Countries

The Colilert system makes it possible to test water without the need for a laboratory. IDEXX Laboratories, the manufacturer, recommends that you use five test tubes for each sample. Bob Metcalf explains that five tubes would comprise 50 ml, which is the minimum sample size permitted by US law. This is an unrealistically high standard by which to judge the water in developing countries where you are examining water that is already being drunk, in spite of the fact that it may be making people sick. By using a single test tube (10 ml) there is a very small chance that your sample missed the small number of bacteria that might have been present.

IDEXX Laboratories will also tell you that you need an incubator to achieve valid results. Again, Bob Metcalf tells us that all that is needed is to keep the tubes close to your body for 36 hours, since body temperature is the correct incubation temperature.

What you are actually measuring in the test is the presence of 1) coliform bacteria, and 2) E. coli, a type of coliform bacteria that is largely found in faecal matter. A positive test for coliform bacteria might be due to coliform bacteria that has washed off of plant leaves, and thus be fairly innocuous. A positive test for E. coli, however, would indicate that any bacteriological contamination was from a faecal source, which might also contain Giardia, cholera, or other serious infectious microbes.

This document is published on The Solar Cooking Archive at http://solarcooking.org/pasteurisation/metcalf.htm.

The Solar Puddle

A new water pasteurisation technique for large amounts of water

The lack of clean drinking water is a major health problem in the developing world. To reduce this health risk ways of producing clean water at an affordable cost are needed, and people need to be educated about germs and sanitation, lest they accidentally re-contaminate their clean drinking water. Recently, several of us at the University of California at Berkeley have attacked the first of these requirements. Previous issues of this newsletter have included stories about our water pasteurisation indicator and our flow-through water pasteurisers based on a design by PAX World Service. In this article we describe a new low-cost device that pasteurises water.

For those not familiar with the pasteurisation process, if water is heated to 149°F (65°C) for about 6 minutes all the germs, viruses, and parasites that cause disease in humans are killed, including cholera and hepatitis A and B. [Ed. We have reports from the field that at 145°F (63°C) in a solar puddle, bacterial growth might actually be increased. Since this temperature is very close to the minimum pasteurisation temperature mentioned in this article, we suggest that you heat the water to a higher temperature and perform tests before adopting a solar puddle as your method of pasteurisation]. This is similar to what is done with milk and other beverages. It is not necessary to boil the water as many people believe. Pasteurisation is not the only way to decontaminate drinking water, but pasteurisation is particularly easy to scale down so the initial cost is low.
The new device is called a solar puddle, and it is essentially a puddle in a greenhouse. One form of the solar puddle is sketched in the figure below, though many variations are possible.

One begins by digging a shallow pit about 4 inches deep. The test device was a "family-size" unit, about 3.5 feet by 3.5 feet, but the puddle could be made larger or smaller. If the puddle is made larger there is more water to pasteurise, but there is also proportionately more sunshine collected. The pit is filled with 2 to 4 inches of solid insulation. We used wadded paper, but straw, grass, leaves, or twigs could be used. This layer of insulation should be made flat, except for a low spot in one corner of the puddle.

Put a layer of clear plastic and then a layer of black plastic over the insulation with the edges of the plastic extending up and out of the pit. Two layers are used in case one develops a small leak. We used inexpensive polyethylene from a hardware store, though special UV stabilised plastic would last longer. Put in some water and flatten out the insulation so that the water depth is even to within about 0.5 inch throughout the puddle, except in the trough which should be about 1 inch deeper than the rest. Put in more water so that the average depth is 1 to 3 inches depending on how much sunshine is expected.

A pasteurisation indicator (available from Solar Cookers International at 916/455-4499) should go in this trough since this is where the coolest water will collect. Put a layer of clear plastic over the water, again with the edges extending beyond the edges extending beyond the edges of the pit. Form an insulating air gap by putting one or more spacers on top of the third layer of plastic (large wads of paper will do) and putting down a fourth layer of plastic, which must also be clear. The thickness of the air gap should be 2 inches or more. Pile dirt or rocks on the edges of the plastic sheets to hold them down. The puddle is drained by siphoning the water out, placing the siphon in the trough and holding it down by a rock or weight. If the bottom of the puddle is flat, well over 90% of the water can be siphoned out.

Once the puddle is built it would be used by adding water each day, either by folding back the top two layers of plastic in one corner and adding water by bucket, or by using a fill siphon. The fill siphon should NOT be the same siphon that is used to drain the puddle, as the fill siphon is re-contaminated each day, while the drain siphon MUST REMAIN CLEAN. Once in place the drain siphon should be left in place for the life of the puddle.

The only expensive materials used to make the puddle are a pasteurisation indicator (about $2 for the size tested). All of these items are easily transportable, so the solar puddle might be an excellent option for a refugee camp if the expertise were available for setting them up.

Many tests were done in the spring and summer of this year in Berkeley, California. On days with good sunshine the required temperature was achieved even with 17 gallons of water (2 1/2 inch depth). About 1 gallon is the minimum daily requirement per person, for drinking, brushing one's teeth, and dish washing. With thinner water layers higher temperatures can be reached. With 6 gallons (1 inch depth) 176°F was achieved on one day.

The device seems to work even under conditions that are not ideal. Condensation in the top layer of plastic doesn't seem to be a problem, though if one gets a lot of condensation the top layer should be pulled back to let the condensation evaporate. Small holes in the top layers don't make much difference. The device works in wind, or if the bottom insulation is damp. Water temperature is uniform throughout the puddle to within 2°F.

After some months the top plastic layers weaken under the combined effects of sun and heat and have to
be replaced, but this can be minimised by avoiding hot spots. Another option would be to use a grade of plastic that is more resistant to sunlight. The two bottom layers of plastic tend to form tiny tears unless one is very careful in handling them, (that is why there are two layers on the bottom). A tiny hole may let a little water through and dampen the solid insulation, but this is not a big problem.

There are many variations of the solar puddle. We've been able to put the top layer of plastic into a tent-like arrangement that sheds rain. This would be good in a place that gets frequent brief showers. Adding a second insulating layer of air makes the device work even better, though this adds the cost of an extra layer of plastic. As mentioned the device can cover a larger or smaller area if more or less water is desired. One could make a water heater by roughly tripling the amount of water so that the maximum temperature was only 120°F or so, and this water would stay warm well into the evening hours. This water wouldn't be pasteurised though. One could help solve the problem of dirty water vessels by putting drinking cups into the solar puddle and pasteurising them along with the water. The solar puddle could possibly cook foods like rice on an emergency basis, perhaps in a refugee camp.

You can contact
Dr. Dale Andreatta
S. E. A. Inc.
7349 Worthington-Galena Rd.
Columbus, OH 43085
(614) 888-4160 FAX (614) 885-8014

This document is published on The Solar Cooking Archive at http://solarcooking.org/pasteurisation/ puddle.htm.

Important web link: http://solarcooking.org/plans/default.htm

The "Easy Lid" Cooker  Designed by Chao Tan and Tom Sponheim

Although designs for cardboard cookers have become more simple, fitting a lid can still be difficult and time consuming. In this version, a lid is formed automatically from the outer box.

Making the Base
Take a large box and cut it in half as shown in Figure 1. Set one half aside to be used for the lid. The other half becomes the base.
Fold an extra cardboard piece so that it forms a liner around the inside of the base (see Figure 2).

Use the lid piece as shown in Figure 3 to mark a line around the liner.

Cut along this line, leaving the four tabs as shown in Figure 4.

Glue aluminum foil to the inside of the liner and to the bottom of the outer box inside.

Set a smaller (inner) box into the opening formed by the liner until the flaps of the smaller box are horizontal and flush with the top of the liner (see Figure 5). Place some wads of newspaper between the two boxes for support.
Mark the underside of the flaps of the smaller box using the liner as a guide.

Fold these flaps down to fit down around the top of the liner and tuck them into the space between the base and the liner (see Figure 6).

Fold the tabs over and tuck them under the flaps of the inner box so that they obstruct the holes in the four corners (see Figure 6).

Now glue these pieces together in their present configuration.

As the glue is drying, line the inside of the inner box with aluminum foil.

**Finishing the Lid**

Measure the width of the walls of the base and use these measurements to calculate where to make the cuts that form the reflector in Figure 7. Only cut on three sides. The reflector is folded up using the fourth side as a hinge.

Glue plastic or glass in place on the underside of the lid. If you are using glass, sandwich the glass using extra strips of cardboard. Allow to dry.
Bend the ends of the wire as shown in Figure 7 and insert these into the corrugations on the lid and on the reflector to prop open the latter.

Paint the sheet metal (or cardboard) piece black and place it into the inside of the oven.

**Improving Efficiency**

Glue thin strips of cardboard underneath the sheet metal (or cardboard) piece to elevate it off of the bottom of the oven slightly.

Cut off the reflector and replace it with one that is as large as (or larger than) the entire lid. This reflects light into the oven more reliably.

Turn the oven over and open the bottom flaps. Place one foiled cardboard panel into each airspace to divide each into two spaces. The foiled side should face the center of the oven.

For more information contact:

**Solar Cookers International**

1919 21st St., Suite 101
Sacramento, CA 95811 USA
Appendix

Wire Sizes:

The wire sizes specified for use in some designs are American Wire Gauge so a comparison table showing the UK Standard Wire Gauge and the American Wire Gauge is given here:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AWG</th>
<th>Dia mm</th>
<th>Area mm²</th>
<th>SWG</th>
<th>Dia mm</th>
<th>Area mm²</th>
<th>Max Amps</th>
<th>Ohms / metre</th>
<th>Max Hz</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>7.35</td>
<td>42.40</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7.01</td>
<td>38.60</td>
<td>119</td>
<td>325</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>6.54</td>
<td>33.60</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6.40</td>
<td>32.18</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>410</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>5.88</td>
<td>27.15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5.89</td>
<td>27.27</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>500</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>5.19</td>
<td>21.20</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4.88</td>
<td>18.68</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>650</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>4.62</td>
<td>16.80</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>4.47</td>
<td>15.70</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>810</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>4.11</td>
<td>13.30</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>4.06</td>
<td>12.97</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>1,100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>3.67</td>
<td>10.60</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3.66</td>
<td>10.51</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>1,300</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>3.26</td>
<td>8.35</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>3.25</td>
<td>8.30</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>1,650</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>2.91</td>
<td>6.62</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>2.95</td>
<td>6.82</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>2,050</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>2.59</td>
<td>5.27</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>2.64</td>
<td>5.48</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>0.0042</td>
<td>2,600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>2.30</td>
<td>4.15</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>2.34</td>
<td>4.29</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>0.0053</td>
<td>3,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>2.05</td>
<td>3.31</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>2.03</td>
<td>3.24</td>
<td>9.3</td>
<td>0.0067</td>
<td>4,150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>1.83</td>
<td>2.63</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>1.83</td>
<td>2.63</td>
<td>7.4</td>
<td>0.0085</td>
<td>5,300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>1.63</td>
<td>2.08</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>1.63</td>
<td>2.08</td>
<td>5.9</td>
<td>0.0107</td>
<td>6,700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>1.45</td>
<td>1.65</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>1.42</td>
<td>1.59</td>
<td>4.7</td>
<td>0.0135</td>
<td>8,250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>1.29</td>
<td>1.30</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>1.219</td>
<td>1.17</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>0.0170</td>
<td>11 kHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>1.15</td>
<td>1.04</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>1.016</td>
<td>0.811</td>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>0.027</td>
<td>17 kHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>1.024</td>
<td>0.823</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>0.914</td>
<td>0.657</td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>0.034</td>
<td>21 kHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>0.912</td>
<td>0.653</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>0.813</td>
<td>0.519</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>0.043</td>
<td>27 kHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>0.812</td>
<td>0.519</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>0.711</td>
<td>0.397</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>0.054</td>
<td>33 kHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>0.723</td>
<td>0.412</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>0.610</td>
<td>0.292</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td>0.069</td>
<td>42 kHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>0.644</td>
<td>0.325</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>0.559</td>
<td>0.245</td>
<td>0.729</td>
<td>0.086</td>
<td>53 kHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>0.573</td>
<td>0.259</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>0.508</td>
<td>0.203</td>
<td>0.577</td>
<td>0.109</td>
<td>68 kHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>0.511</td>
<td>0.205</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>0.457</td>
<td>0.164</td>
<td>0.457</td>
<td>0.137</td>
<td>85 kHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>0.455</td>
<td>0.163</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>0.417</td>
<td>0.136</td>
<td>0.361</td>
<td>0.174</td>
<td>107 kHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>0.405</td>
<td>0.128</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>0.376</td>
<td>0.111</td>
<td>0.288</td>
<td>0.218</td>
<td>130 kHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>0.361</td>
<td>0.102</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>0.315</td>
<td>0.0779</td>
<td>0.226</td>
<td>0.276</td>
<td>170 kHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>0.321</td>
<td>0.0804</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>0.274</td>
<td>0.0591</td>
<td>0.182</td>
<td>0.344</td>
<td>210 kHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>0.286</td>
<td>0.0646</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>0.254</td>
<td>0.0506</td>
<td>0.142</td>
<td>0.439</td>
<td>270 kHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>0.255</td>
<td>0.0503</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>0.234</td>
<td>0.0428</td>
<td>0.113</td>
<td>0.554</td>
<td>340 kHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>0.226</td>
<td>0.0401</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>0.193</td>
<td>0.0293</td>
<td>0.091</td>
<td>0.685</td>
<td>430 kHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>0.203</td>
<td>0.0324</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>0.173</td>
<td>0.0234</td>
<td>0.072</td>
<td>0.870</td>
<td>540 kHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>0.180</td>
<td>0.0255</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>0.152</td>
<td>0.0182</td>
<td>0.056</td>
<td>1.105</td>
<td>690 kHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>0.160</td>
<td>0.0201</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>0.132</td>
<td>0.0137</td>
<td>0.044</td>
<td>1.398</td>
<td>870 kHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>0.142</td>
<td>0.0159</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>0.121</td>
<td>0.0108</td>
<td>0.036</td>
<td>1.76</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PERMANENT MAGNET MOTOR

This patent application shows the details of a permanent magnet motor. It should be noted that while in this text, Frank states that permanent magnets store a finite amount of magnetism, in actual fact, the magnet poles form a dipole which causes a continuous flow of energy drawn from the quantum foam of our universe, and that flow continues until such time as the dipole is destroyed. The energy which powers any permanent magnet motor comes directly from the zero-point energy field and not actually from the magnet itself. A piece of iron can be converted into a magnet by a single nanosecond magnetic pulse. It makes no sense that a pulse of that duration could provide months of continuous power from anything stored in the magnet itself, but it makes perfect sense if that brief pulse created a magnetic dipole which acts as a gateway for the inflow of zero-point energy from the environment.

ABSTRACT

A motor providing unidirectional rotational motive power is provided. The motor has a generally circular stator with a stator axis, an outer surface, and a circumferential line of demarcation at about a midpoint of the outer surface. The motor also includes one or more stator magnets attached to the outer surface of the stator. The stator magnets are arranged in a generally circular arrangement about the stator axis and generate a first magnetic field. An armature is attached to the stator so that it rotates with it, the armature having an axis parallel to the stator axis. One or more rotors, are spaced from the armature and coupled to it by an axle to allow each rotor to rotate around an axis, each rotor rotating in a plane generally aligned with the axis of the armature. Each rotor includes one or more rotor magnets, with each rotor magnet generating a second magnetic field. The second magnetic field generated by each rotor magnet interacts with the first magnetic field, to cause each rotor to rotate about the rotor axis. A linkage assembly drive connects each rotor to the stator to cause the armature to rotate about the armature axis thereby providing the unidirectional rotational motive power of the motor.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

This invention relates to dynamo electric motor structures and more particularly to rotary and linear permanent magnet motors. Conventional electric motors rely on the interaction of magnetic fields to produce a force which results in either rotary or linear motion. The magnetic fields in conventional electric motors providing rotary power, are generated by passing an externally provided electric current through conductors in either a stator (i.e. stationary portion of the motor), a rotor (i.e. rotary portion) or both the stator and the rotor. The rotary power of the motor arises from a rotating magnetic field which is created by commutating the electric current, either by a switching the current through different conductors, as in a direct current motor or by a polarity reversal of the electric current as in an alternating current motor.

It is well known that a class of materials known as ferromagnetic materials are also capable of generating a magnetic field having once been energised. Ferromagnetic materials with high coercivity are known as permanent magnets. Permanent magnets are capable of storing a finite amount of energy and retaining the ability to generate a substantial magnetic field until the stored energy is depleted.

There are electric motors which use permanent magnets in either the stator portion of the motor or the rotor portion of the motor. These motors achieve a small size for the amount of power delivered by the motor because the motors avoid having current carrying conductors to produce the magnetic field which is otherwise produced by the permanent magnets. However, these conventional permanent magnet motors still require a source of external power to produce a rotating magnetic field.

There have also been developed permanent magnet motors which use permanent magnets for both the stator and the rotor. For example, U.S. Pat. No. 4,598,221 discloses a permanent magnet motor which relies on an external source of power to rotate the magnetic fields of a rotor by ninety degrees with respect to the interacting stator magnetic fields to eliminate the counterproductive magnetic repulsion and attraction between the rotor and the stator magnets. In another example, U.S. Pat. No. 4,882,509 discloses a permanent magnet motor which relies on an external source of power to position a shield which does not permit coupling between the rotor and the stator magnets at times when attraction or repulsion would drag down the strength of the motor.

There are many instances where a motor action is required and no source of external power is available. Accordingly, a motor which relies solely on the energy stored in permanent magnets would be useful.

BRIEF SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION
Briefly stated, the present invention comprises a rotor for use in a permanent magnet motor and for providing motive power by rotation of the rotor about a rotor axis. The rotor comprises at least one first U-shaped magnet having a north pole and a south pole, and a second U-shaped magnet abutting the north pole of the first U-shaped magnet; and a third U-shaped magnet having a north pole and a south pole, the north pole of the third U-shaped magnet abutting the south pole of the first U-shaped magnet. A portion of the first magnetic field generated by the first U-shaped magnet directly adjacent to the rear of the first U-shaped magnet interacts with a stationary fourth magnetic field to cause the rotor to rotate. A second magnetic field generated by the north pole of the second U-shaped magnet and a third magnetic field generated by the south pole of the third U-shaped magnet interact with the fourth magnetic field to cause the rotor to translate in the direction of the rotor axis.

Another aspect of the present invention comprises a rotor providing motive power by a rotation of the rotor about the rotor axis and by a translation of the rotor in a direction of the rotor axis. The rotor comprises: a first U-shaped magnet having a north pole, a south pole and a rear side, the first U-shaped magnet generating a first magnetic field; a second U-shaped magnet having a north pole and a south pole, the south pole of the second U-shaped magnet being closest to the line of demarcation, the north pole of the second U-shaped magnet being closest to the line of demarcation, wherein the at least one pair of stator magnets is spaced along the line of demarcation so that a first inter-magnet distance measured between the north pole of the second U-shaped magnet and a stationary second magnetic field.

In another aspect, the present invention is directed to a motor providing unidirectional rotational motive power. The motor includes a generally circular stator having a stator axis, an outer surface, and a circumferential line of demarcation at about a midpoint of the outer surface; at least one stator magnet attached to the outer surface of the stator, the at least one stator magnet being arranged in a generally circular arrangement about the stator axis and generating a first magnetic field; an armature attached to the stator for rotation with it; the armature having an axis parallel to the stator axis; at least one rotor, the rotor being spaced from the armature and coupled to it by an axle to allow rotation about an axis of the rotor, the rotor rotating in a plane generally aligned with the armature axis, the rotor, including at least one rotor magnet generating a second magnetic field, where the second magnetic field is caused by an interaction of a portion of the first magnetic field directly adjacent to the rear side of the first U-shaped magnet and a third magnetic field generated by a stationary fifth magnetic field to cause the rotor to translate in the direction of the rotor axis.
demarcation between the south pole of the first stator magnet and the north pole of the second stator magnet; an armature attached to the stator, the armature having an axis parallel to the stator axis and attached to the stator for rotation therewith; and at least one rotor attached to the armature, the at least one rotor being spaced from the armature and coupled to it by an axle for rotation about an axis of the rotor, the rotor rotating in a plane generally aligned with the armature axis, the rotor comprising at least one rotor magnet, the rotor magnet generating a second magnetic field which interacts with the first magnetic field to cause the rotor to rotationally oscillate about the axis of the rotor and to generate a force in a direction of the rotor axis, thereby causing the armature to rotate in the pre-determined direction around the armature axis to provide the unidirectional rotational motive power of the motor.

In a further aspect, the present invention is directed to a motor providing unidirectional linear motive power comprising: a linear stator having a generally curved cross-section and a longitudinal line of demarcation perpendicular to the cross-section extending on about a midpoint of a surface of the stator between a first end and a second end of the stator, the stator including at least one magnet arranged between the first end and the second end, the magnet having a direction of magnetisation at about a right angle to the line of demarcation and generating a first magnetic field, the magnitude of the first magnetic field being generally uniform along the line of demarcation except in a pre-determined number of null regions, wherein the first magnetic field is substantially zero; a rail connected to the stator, the rail having a longitudinal axis generally parallel to the line of demarcation and a helical groove with a pre-determined pitch running around a periphery of the rail; at least one rotor having a rotor axis aligned with the axis of the rail, the rotor being connected to the rail so that the rotor is free to rotate about the axis of the rail and slide along the rail, the rotor including at least one U-shaped magnet having a rear side and generating a second magnetic field, where a portion of the second magnetic field directly adjacent to the rear of the U-shaped magnet interacts with the first magnetic field to cause the rotor to rotate about the axis of the rail; a bearing assembly connecting the rotor to the helical groove, the bearing assembly converting the rotary motion of the rotor about the axis of the rail to linear motion along the rail; and a cross-link connecting the bearing assembly of a first rotor to a second rotor, thereby adding together the linear motion along the rail of the first rotor and the second rotor to provide the unidirectional linear motive power.

In yet another aspect, the present invention is directed to a motor providing unidirectional motive power comprising: a rail having a longitudinal axis and at least one helical groove having a pre-determined pitch running around a periphery of the rail; at least one first helical stator concentrically surrounding the rail, the first helical stator having the pre-determined pitch of the groove and a longitudinal axis generally parallel to the axis of the rail, at least one first stator magnet being attached to the first helical stator, the first stator magnet generating a first magnetic field; at least one rotor having an axis generally aligned with the axis of the rail, the rotor being connected to the rail so that the rotor is free to rotate about the axis of the rail and slide along the rail, the rotor including at least one U-shaped magnet having a rear side and generating a second magnetic field, where a portion of the second magnetic field directly adjacent to the rear of the U-shaped magnet interacts with the first magnetic field to cause the rotor to rotate about the axis of the rail; a bearing assembly connecting the rotor to the helical groove, the bearing assembly converting the rotational motion of the rotor about the rail to unidirectional linear motion along the rail.

A further aspect of the present invention is directed to a motor providing unidirectional motive force comprising: a rail having a longitudinal axis and a helical groove running around the rail, the groove having a predetermined pitch; at least one first helical stator comprising a plurality of discontinuous spaced apart first ribs, each first rib partially surrounding the rail at a generally uniform distance from the rail, the first helical stator having the predetermined pitch of the groove and a longitudinal axis generally aligned with the rail, at least one first stator magnet being attached to each rib, each first stator magnet generating a first magnetic field; at least one rotor having an axis generally aligned with the axis of the rail, the rotor being connected to the rail so that the rotor is free to rotate about the axis of the rail and to slide along the rail, the rotor including at least one rotor magnet generating a second magnetic field, the second magnetic field interacting with the first magnetic field generated by the first stator magnet to cause the rotor to rotate about the axis of the rail; and a bearing assembly connecting the rotor to the helical groove around the periphery of the rail, the bearing assembly converting the rotary motion of the rotor about the rail to linear motion along the rail.

The present invention is further directed to a motor providing unidirectional motive power comprising: a rail having a longitudinal axis and a generally sinusoidal groove running around a periphery of the rail, the sinusoidal groove having a pre-determined period; at least one stator having a generally curved cross-section and a longitudinal line of demarcation perpendicular to the cross-section located at about a midpoint of a surface of the stator, the surface of the stator being disposed generally equidistant from and parallel to the axis of the rail; at least one stator magnet attached to the surface of the stator generating a first magnetic field, the stator magnet having a magnetisation which is displaced sinusoidally from the line of demarcation, the sinusoid having a pre-determined period and a pre-determined maximum amplitude and being divided into a plurality of alternating first and second sectors, with a boundary between the alternating first and second sectors occurring at the maximum amplitude of the sinusoid, the direction of magnetisation of the stator magnet being opposite in direction in the first and second sectors, with a boundary between the alternating first and second sectors occurring at the maximum amplitude of the sinusoid, the direction of magnetisation of the stator magnet being opposite in direction in the first and second sectors; at least one rotor having an axis aligned with the axis of the rail, the rotor being connected to the rail so that the rotor is free to rotate about the axis of the rail and slide along the rail, the rotor including at least one U-
shaped magnet having a rear side and generating a second magnetic field, the U-shaped magnet being positioned on the rotor so that the rear side of the U-shaped magnet is apposite to the first and the second segments of the stator as the rotor rotates about the rotor axis, wherein an interaction of a portion of the second magnetic field directly adjacent to the rear of the U-shaped magnet with the first magnetic field causes the rotor to rotationally oscillate about the axis of the rail; and a bearing assembly connecting the rotor to the sinusoidal groove around the rail, the bearing assembly converting the oscillatory motion of the rotor about the rail to unidirectional linear motion along the rail.

The present invention is also directed to a motor providing unidirectional motive power comprising: a rail having a longitudinal axis and a helical groove running around a periphery of the rail, the helical groove having a predetermined pitch; at least one stator having a generally having a longitudinal line of demarcation located at about a midpoint of a surface of the stator, the surface of the stator being disposed generally equidistant from and parallel to the axis of the rail; at least one stator magnet attached to the surface of the stator, the stator magnet having a direction of magnetisation which rotates about a magnetic axis parallel to the line of demarcation with a predetermined pitch, thereby generating a first magnetic field having a substantially uniform magnitude along the magnetic axis and rotates around the magnetic axis with the predetermined pitch of the stator magnet rotation; at least one rotor having an axis aligned with the axis of the rail, the rotor being connected to the rail so that the rotor is free to rotate about the axis of the rail and slide along the rail, the rotor including at least one U-shaped magnet generating a second magnetic field, the U-shaped magnet being positioned on the rotor so that a portion of the second magnetic field directly adjacent to the rear side of the U-shaped magnet interacts with the first magnetic field of the stator magnet to cause the rotor to rotate about it’s axis; and a bearing assembly connecting the rotor to the helical groove, the bearing assembly converting the rotary motion of the rotor about the rail to unidirectional linear motion along the rail.

**BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE SEVERAL VIEWS OF THE DRAWINGS**

The foregoing summary, as well as the following detailed description of preferred embodiments of the invention, will be better understood when read in conjunction with the appended drawings. For the purpose of illustrating the invention, there are shown in the drawings embodiments which are presently preferred. It should be understood, however, that the invention is not limited to the precise arrangements and instrumentalities shown. In the drawings:

---

**Fig.1A** is a schematic perspective drawing of a first preferred embodiment of a motor providing unidirectional motive power;
Fig. 1B is a schematic perspective drawing of a second preferred embodiment of the motor;

Fig. 1C is a schematic perspective drawing of a third preferred embodiment of the motor;
Fig. 2 is a schematic plan view of a rotor comprising three pair of U-shaped magnets;

Fig. 3 is a schematic plan view of a stator having a plurality of stator magnets generating a uniform magnetic field except in single null region, laid out flat for ease of illustration;

Fig. 4 is a schematic plan view of a stator having a plurality of stator magnets which rotate about a magnetic axis, laid out flat for ease of illustration;
Fig. 5 is a schematic plan view of a stator having a plurality of stator magnets which are sinusoidally displaced from a line of demarcation, laid out flat for ease of illustration;

Fig. 6 is a schematic perspective view of a fourth through a seventh preferred embodiment of the motor;
Fig.7A is a schematic plan view of a rotor used in the fourth preferred embodiment and in an eighth preferred embodiment of the motor;

Fig.7B is a schematic plan view of a rotor used in a fifth preferred embodiment and in a ninth preferred embodiment of the motor;

Fig.7C is a schematic plan view of a rotor used in a sixth preferred embodiment and in a tenth preferred embodiment of the motor;

Fig.7D is a schematic plan view of a rotor used in the seventh preferred embodiment and in an eleventh preferred embodiment of the motor;

Fig.8A is a schematic plan view of a stator used in the fourth, fifth, eighth and ninth preferred embodiments of the motor;
Fig. 8B is a schematic sectional view of the stator shown in Fig. 8A taken along the line 8B-8B;

Fig. 8C is a schematic plan view of a stator used in the sixth and in the tenth preferred embodiments of the motor;

Fig. 8D is a schematic elevational view of the stator shown in Fig. 8C taken along the line 8D-8D shown with the rotor shown in Fig. 7C;

Fig. 8E is a schematic elevational view of an alternative stator shown with the rotor shown in Fig. 7D;
Fig. 9 is a schematic perspective view of the eighth through an eleventh preferred embodiment of the motor;

Fig. 10 is a schematic perspective view of a twelfth preferred embodiment of the motor;
Fig. 11A is a plan view of a rotor assembly used in the eighth through the eleventh preferred embodiments;

Fig. 11B is a plan view of a rotor assembly used in the twelfth through a sixteenth preferred embodiment;
Fig. 12 is an end elevational view of the rotor assembly shown in Fig. 11B, further including a rail mounting post;

Fig. 13 is an elevational view of a thirteenth preferred embodiment of the motor;
Fig. 14 is a plan view of a rotary configuration of the thirteenth preferred embodiment;

Fig. 15A is an elevational view of a portion of a fourteenth preferred embodiment employing spaced apart ribs;
Fig. 15B is an end elevational view of the fourteenth embodiment shown in Fig. 15A;

Fig. 16 is a top plan view of a portion of the fifteenth preferred embodiment of the motor;
Fig. 17 is an elevational end view of the fifteenth preferred embodiment shown in Fig. 16;

Fig. 18 is a top plan view of a portion of the sixteenth preferred embodiment of the motor; and
Fig. 19 is an elevational end view of the sixteenth preferred embodiment of the motor shown in Fig. 18.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

It will be appreciated by those skilled in the art that changes could be made to the embodiments described above without departing from the broad inventive concept thereof. It is understood, therefore, that this invention is not limited to the particular embodiments disclosed, but it is intended to cover modifications within the spirit and scope of the present invention as defined by the appended claims. It should also be understood that the articles "a" and "the" used in the claims to define an element may refer to a single element or to a plurality of elements without a limit as to the number of elements.

Past attempts to construct a working permanent magnet motor have met with difficulties because of the simultaneous attractive and repulsive characteristics of a permanent magnet. A principle has been discovered where, by engaging a magnetic field at the rear of one or more U-shaped magnets mounted on a rotor with a second stationary magnetic field, a torque is created that rotates the rotor about a rotational axis of the rotor. Further, by properly shaping the second magnetic field, the rotor may be caused to also translate in the direction of the rotor axis.
Accordingly, using the aforementioned principle, and referring to Fig.7A, one aspect of the present invention is directed to a rotor 12 for use in a motor and which provides motive power by a rotation of the rotor 12 about a rotor axis 16 and by a translation of the rotor 12 in a direction of the rotor axis 16. In one aspect, the rotor 12 comprises a first U-shaped magnet 20 in which the U-shaped magnet 20 generates a first magnetic field. A rotation of the rotor 12 about the rotor axis 16 is caused by an interaction of a portion of the first magnetic field directly adjacent to a rear 26 of the U-shaped magnet 20 with a stationary second magnetic field. A translation of the rotor 12 in the direction of the rotor axis 16 is caused by an interaction of the first magnetic field adjacent to a north pole 23 and a south pole 25 of the U-shaped magnet 20 with the stationary second magnetic field. As will be appreciated by those skilled in the art, the design of the rotor 12 is not limited to a single U-shaped magnet 12. A plurality of U-shaped magnets 20, arranged around a periphery of the rotor 12 is within the spirit and scope of the invention.

Another aspect of the present invention, shown in Fig.7B comprises a rotor 12 including a first U-shaped magnet having a north pole and a south pole generating a first magnetic field; a second U-shaped magnet 24 having a north pole and a south pole with the south pole of the second U-shaped magnet 24 abutting the north pole of the first U-shaped magnet 20; and a third U-shaped magnet 22 having a north pole and a south pole with the north pole of the third U-shaped magnet 22 abutting the south pole of the first U-shaped magnet 20. A portion of the first magnetic field generated by the first U-shaped magnet 20 directly adjacent to the rear 26 of the first U-shaped magnet 20 interacts with a stationary fourth magnetic field to cause the rotor 12 to rotate. A second magnetic field generated by both the north pole and the south pole of the first thruster magnet 36 and a third magnetic field generated by both the north pole and the south pole of the second thruster magnet 38 respectively interact with a fifth magnetic field to cause the rotor 12 to translate in the direction of the rotor axis 16.

A further aspect of the present invention, shown in Fig.7C, comprises a first U-shaped magnet 20 having a north pole and a south pole generating a first magnetic field. The north pole and the south pole of the U-shaped magnet 20 are generally aligned with a thruster axis 34 which lies in the plane of the rotor 12 and intersects the rotor axis 16. A first thruster magnet 36 is located proximate to and spaced from the north pole of the first U-shaped magnet with a direction of magnetisation being generally aligned with the thruster magnet axis 34. A second thruster magnet 38 is located proximate to and spaced from the south pole of the first U-shaped magnet 20 with a direction of magnetisation also being generally aligned with the thruster magnet axis 34. A portion of the first magnetic field generated by the first U-shaped magnet 20 directly adjacent to the rear side 26 of the first U-shaped magnet 20 interacts with a stationary fourth magnetic field to cause the rotor 12 to rotate. A second magnetic field generated by both the north pole and the south pole of the first thruster magnet 36 and a third magnetic field generated by both the north pole and the south pole of the second thruster magnet 38 respectively interact with a fifth magnetic field to cause the rotor 12 to translate in the direction of the rotor axis 16. In one
further aspect of the rotor 12, as shown in Fig.7D, a bar magnet 43 may be substituted for the U-shaped magnet 20 and the fourth magnetic field is formed by one or more U-shaped magnets, where the bar magnet 43 interacts with a portion of the stationary fourth magnetic field adjacent to the rear of a U-shaped magnet.

As will be appreciated by those skilled in the art, the polarities of the magnets shown in Figs. 7A, 7B, 7C and 7D may be reversed and still be within the spirit and scope of the invention.

Referring now to Fig.1A, Fig.2 and Fig.3 there is shown a first preferred embodiment of a motor 10 using the rotor 12 and providing unidirectional rotational motive power. The first preferred embodiment comprises a generally circular stator 50 having a stator axis 72 and a circumferential surface 64 mounted to a base 18; an armature 70, having an armature axis of rotation 58 coincident with the stator axis 72, attached to the stator 50 by an armature axle 57 for rotation about the armature axis of rotation 58; and five rotors 12 (only one of which is shown for clarity), the rotors 12 being spaced at intervals of about 72 degrees around the armature 70. Each rotor 12 is spaced from the armature by an armature strut 71 and attached to the armature strut 71 by an axle, for rotation about an axis 16 of the rotor 12 in a plane generally aligned with the armature axis of rotation 58. The motor 10 further includes a driving linkage assembly 53 connecting each rotor 12 and the stator 50 together, the linkage 53 urging the armature 70 to rotate about the armature axis of rotation 58 as each rotor 12 rotates about its respective rotor axis 16. As will be appreciated by those skilled in the art the number of rotors 12 is not limited to the five rotors 12 disclosed in the first embodiment. Any number of rotors 12 from one to as many as there would be space for mounting on the armature 70 is within the spirit and scope of the invention.

Preferably, the surface 64 of the stator 50 is curved, having a curvature conforming to the arc of the rotors 12. However, it will be appreciated by those skilled in the art that the surface 64 need not be curved but could be planar and still be within the spirit and scope of the invention. As will be appreciated by those skilled in the art the stator 50 is merely intended as a stationary supporting structure for stator magnets and, as such, the shape of the stator 50 is not intended to be controlling of the size and shape of the air gap between the magnets attached to the stator 50 and the magnets attached to the rotors 12.

Preferably, the stator 50 is made of a material (or a combination of materials) having a magnetic susceptibility less than 10-3, i.e. a material displaying paramagnetic or diamagnetic properties. For example, the stator 50 could be
made of a non-magnetic metal such as aluminium or brass. Also, the rotor 12 could be made of a natural material such as wood, glass, a polymeric material or a combination of any of the aforementioned materials within the spirit and scope of the invention. Further, it should be understood that the aforementioned materials are preferred for the stators and all other parts of the motor 10 that could significantly disrupt the magnetic interaction between the stator and the rotor of all of the disclosed preferred embodiments of the motor 10.

In the first preferred embodiment, the surface 64 of the stator 50 includes a circumferential line of demarcation 49 at about a midpoint of the surface 64 formed by an intersection with the surface 64 of a plane perpendicular to the armature axis of rotation 58. As shown in Fig.3, the stator 50 includes a plurality of bar magnets 68 attached to the outer surface 64 along the line of demarcation 49, except in a single null region 78 where the magnitude of the first magnetic field is substantially reduced. The bar magnets 68 have a direction of magnetisation at about a right angle to the line of demarcation 49 thereby creating a first magnetic field adjacent to the outer surface 64, the magnitude and the direction of which is substantially uniform along the circumferential line of demarcation 49 around the axis 58 of the stator 50, except within the null region 78. As will be appreciated by those skilled in the art, the stator axis 72 need not be coincident with the armature axis of rotation 58. Accordingly, a stator 50 arranged around the armature axis 58 at any location at which the stator axis 72 is parallel to the armature axis 58 and the surface 64 of the stator 50 faces the periphery of the rotors 12 thereby providing for the interaction between the first magnetic field and the second magnetic field around the armature axis 58, is within the spirit and scope of the invention.

Preferably, as further shown in Fig.3, the bar magnets are attached to the surface 64 of the stator 50 so that the direction of magnetisation of the bar magnets 68 are about perpendicular to a radial line of the rotor 12. However, the bar magnets 68 could also be attached to the surface 64 of the stator so that the direction of magnetisation of the bar magnets 68 is aligned with a radial line of the rotor 12. The bar magnets 68 are preferably abutting so as to form the substantially uniform first magnetic field. However, it is not necessary for the bar magnets 68 to abut one another. Further, it is not necessary to use a plurality of bar magnets 68 to form the first magnetic field. A single magnet producing a uniform first magnetic field in the region in which the first magnetic field interacts with the second magnetic field of the rotors 12 would provide the required first magnetic field. Also, the number of null regions 78 may be more than one, depending upon the desired speed of the motor, as explained below.

Preferably, the stator magnets 68 are permanent magnets made of a neodymium-iron-boron material. However, as will be appreciated by those skilled in the art, any type of permanent magnet material displaying ferromagnetic properties could be used for the stator magnets 68. For instance, stator magnets 68 made of samarium cobalt, barium ferrite or AlNiCo are within the spirit and scope of the invention. It should be understood that these permanent magnet materials or their equivalents are preferred for the stator magnets and the rotor magnets of all of the disclosed preferred embodiments of the motor 10. Also, while the use of permanent magnets is preferred, the use of electro-magnets for some or all of the magnets is within the spirit and scope of the invention.

As discussed above, the stator 50 may include a pre-determined number of null regions 78 on the surface of the stator 64. In the first preferred embodiment, the single null region 78 is formed by a shield of a ferromagnetic material, such as iron, placed adjacent to the surface 64. However, as those skilled in the art will appreciate, the null region 78 can also be formed by an absence of the bar magnets 68 in the region coinciding with the null region 78. The null region 78 of substantially reduced magnetic field magnitude may also be formed by an auxiliary magnetic field suitably generated by one or more permanent magnets or by one or more electromagnets powered by an electric current arranged so that the auxiliary magnetic field substantially cancels the first magnetic field in the null region 78. In the case of the electromagnets, the electric current may be turned off in synchronism with the rotation of the rotors 12 passing through the null region 78, in order to conserve power. Preferably, the first magnetic field is reduced to ten percent or less of the magnetic force outside of the null region. However, the motor 10 will operate with a reduction of only fifty percent. Accordingly, a motor 10 having a substantial reduction of the first magnetic field of fifty percent or less is within the spirit and scope of the invention.

As shown in Fig.2, the rotor 12 of the first preferred embodiment includes three pairs 32, 32', 32" of abutted U-shaped magnets 20 spaced apart at about 120 degree intervals around the periphery of the rotor 12. Preferably,
the U-shaped magnets 20 having substantially identical magnetic properties and are arranged to have opposite poles of the abutting each other. The pairs 32, 32', 32" of abutted U-shaped magnets 20 are positioned so that the north pole and the south poles of each U-shaped magnet 20 face toward the axis of the rotor 16, and the rear side 26 of each U-shaped magnet 20, opposite to the north and the south pole of the U-shaped magnet 20, faces out from the axis of the rotor 16 toward the surface 64 of the stator 50. The pairs 32, 32', 32" of the U-shaped magnets 20 are situated on the rotor 12 so that a portion of the second magnetic field directly adjacent to the rear 26 of each U-shaped magnet 20 interacts with a first stationary magnetic field to cause the rotor 12 to rotate about its respective rotor axis 16. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that it is not necessary to have exactly three pairs 32, 32', 32" of U-shaped magnets 20 on the rotor 12. For instance, the number of U-shaped magnets 20 (or groups of abutted U-shaped magnets) spaced apart around the periphery of the rotor 12 may range from merely a single U-shaped magnet 20, up to a number of magnets limited only by the physical space around the periphery of the rotor 12. Further, the number of abutted U-shaped magnets 20 within each group of magnets 32 is not limited to two magnets but may also range from 1 up to a number of magnets limited only by the physical space around the periphery of the rotor 12.

Preferably, the rotor 12 is made of a material (or a combination of materials) having a magnetic susceptibility less than 10⁻³. Accordingly, the rotor could be made of any of the same materials used to make the stator, such as, for instance, a non-magnetic metal, wood, glass, a polymeric or a combination of any of the above as shown in Fig.1A, the rotor 12 is preferably disk shaped with the rear 26 of the U-shaped rotor magnets 20 being arranged on the periphery of the rotor 12 in such a way that the U-shaped magnets 20 pass in close proximity to the circumferential line of demarcation 49 on the outer surface 64 of the stator 50 as the rotor 12 rotates. However, as will be clear to those skilled in the art, the structure of the rotor 12 need not be disk shaped. The rotor 12 could be a structure of any shape capable of rotating around the rotor axis 16 and capable of supporting the U-shaped magnets 20 so that, as the rotor 12 rotates, the U-shaped magnets 20 come into close proximity with the outer surface 64 of the stator 50. For example, a rotor 12 comprised of struts connected to a central bearing, where each strut holds one or more U-shaped magnets 20, is within the spirit and scope of the invention.

In the first preferred embodiment, the linkage 53 connecting each rotor 12 and the stator 50 comprises a beaded chain drive 60 so that, as each rotor 12 rotates about its respective rotor axis 16, the armature 70 is forced to rotate about the armature axis of rotation 58. The eccentric rotor sprocket 59 causes the instantaneous angular velocity of the rotor 12 about the rotor axis 16 to increase above the average angular velocity of the rotor 12 as each pair 32, 32', 32" of U-shaped magnets 20 passes through the null region 78. As will be appreciated by those skilled in the art, the rotor sprocket 59 could be circular and the stator sprocket 61 eccentric and still cause the angular velocity of the rotor 12 to increase. Further, the beaded chain 60 in combination with the stator sprocket 61 and the eccentric rotor sprocket 59 are not the only means for connecting each rotor 12 to the stator 50. For instance, the beaded chain 60 could also be a belt. Further, the linkage 53 could comprise a drive shaft between each rotor 12 and the stator 50, the drive shaft having a bevel gear set at each end of the shaft mating with a bevel gear on the rotor 12 and the stator 50. An automatic gear shift mechanism would shift gears as each U-shaped magnet pair 32, 32', 32" entered the null regions 78 to increase the instantaneous angular velocity of the rotor 12 as the pair 32, 32', 32" of rotor magnets 20 passed through the null region 78. Alternatively the linkage 53 could comprise a transmission system employing elliptical gears.

While it is preferred that the instantaneous angular velocity of the rotor 12 to increase above the average angular velocity of the rotor 12 as each pair of U-shaped magnets 20 passes through the null region 78, it is not necessary to provide the increased angular velocity of the rotor 12 to provide motive power from the motor 10.

Preferably, the diameters of the rotor sprocket 59 and stator sprocket 61 are selected so that the rear 26 of each U-shaped magnet 20 passes through one and only one null region 78 for each full revolution of the rotor 12 about the respective rotor axis 16 as the armature 70 rotates about the armature axis of rotation 58. Accordingly, the revolution rate of the armature 70 is related to the revolution rate of the rotor 12 by the expression:

\[ Sa = (Nr / Ns) \times Sr \]  

Where:

- \( Sa \) is the angular velocity of the armature 70 (RPM);
- \( Nr \) is the number of the U-shaped magnets 20 (or groups of abutted U-shaped magnets 32) on a rotor 12;
- \( Ns \) is the number of null regions 12 on the stator 50; and
- \( Sr \) is the angular velocity of the rotor 12 (RPM).

The timing of the rotation of the rotor 12 around its respective rotor axis 16, and the armature 70 about the armature axis of rotation 58 is such that each U-shaped magnet 20 (or U-shaped magnet pair 32, 32', 32") on each rotor 12 enters into a null region 78 at a point where the magnetic interaction between the first magnetic field...
and the second magnetic field is substantially reduced, thus providing a commutation of the second magnetic field. As each rotor 12 continues to rotate about the rotor axis 16 and the armature 70 rotates about the armature axis of rotation 58, the U-shaped magnet 20 traces a slanted path through the null region 78. As the U-shaped magnet emerges from the null region 78, the U-shaped magnet 20 encounters the strong first magnetic field, which urges the U-shaped magnet 20 to continue the rotation of the rotor 12 about the rotor axis 16.

As previously discussed, the first preferred embodiment of the motor 10 comprises a single null region 78 and five rotors 12, each rotor 12 having three pairs 32, 32', 32'' of abutted U-shaped magnets 20. Preferably, the rotors 12 are uniformly spaced around the armature axis of rotation 58 and the pairs 32, 32', 32'' of U-shaped magnets 20 are uniformly spaced around the periphery of each respective rotor 12. Further, the pairs 32, 32', 32'' of U-shaped magnets 20 on each rotor 12 are phased with respect to each other by one-fifth of a revolution of the rotor 12 (i.e. the reciprocal of the number of rotors) so that the pairs 32, 32', 32'' of U-shaped magnets 20 of all the rotors 12 enter the null region at substantially uniform intervals to provide a more or less continuous magnetic interaction between the first magnetic field of the stator 50 and the second magnetic field of the rotors 12. As will be appreciated by those skilled in the art, the motive power provided by the motor is proportional to the number of rotors 12 and the number of magnets 20 on each rotor 12 as well as the strength of the rotor 12 magnets 20 and the stator 50 magnets 68. Accordingly, the number of rotors 12 and the number of pairs 32, 32', 32'' of U-shaped magnets 20 are not limited to five rotors 12 and three pairs of U-shaped magnets 32. Similarly, the number of null regions 78 is not limited to one. The number of U-shaped magnets 20 and the number of null regions 78 are limited only by adherence to the rule established by Equation (1).
Referring now to Fig.1B, Fig.2 and Fig.4 there is shown a second preferred embodiment of a motor 10 providing unidirectional rotational motive power. The second preferred embodiment comprises a generally circular stator 50 with magnets 68 attached to a surface 64 of the stator 50; an armature 70 attached to the stator 50 by an armature axle 57 for rotation about an armature axis of rotation 58 coincident with the stator axis 72; and five rotors 12 (for clarity, only one of which is shown) having three pairs 32, 32', 32'' of abutted U-shaped magnets 20, the rotors 12 being spaced at intervals of about 72 degrees around the armature 70. Each rotor 12 is spaced from the armature by a strut 71 and attached to the strut 71 by an axle for rotation in the plane of the armature axis of rotation 58 about a rotor 12 axis of rotation 16. The motor 10 further includes a driving linkage 55 connecting each rotor 12 and the stator 50 together to cause the armature 70 to rotate about the armature axis of rotation 58 as each rotor 12 rotates about its respective rotor axis 16.

The second preferred embodiment is identical to the first preferred embodiment except for two differences. First, instead of the first magnetic field being uniform in both magnitude and direction along the circumferential line of demarcation 49 (except in one or more null regions 78 as in the first preferred embodiment), the direction of the first magnetic field rotates about a magnetic axis parallel to the circumferential line of demarcation 49 with a predetermined periodicity along the line of demarcation 49. Preferably, the first magnetic field is formed from one or more stator magnets 68 attached to the outer surface 64 of the stator 50', each magnet 68' having a direction of magnetisation which causes the first magnetic field to rotate about the magnetic axis. In the second preferred embodiment, as shown in Fig.4, the stator magnets 68' are equally sized bar magnets, attached to the stator 50' so that the bar magnets 68' spiral on the stator 50' with the pre-determined periodicity. However, as would be apparent to those skilled in the art, the first magnetic field need not be formed by bar magnets but could be formed from a single magnet (or groups of magnets) such that the direction of magnetisation of the single magnet rotates around the magnetic axis.

The second difference between the first preferred embodiment and the second preferred embodiment is that the linkage 55 of the second preferred embodiment does not include a component for increasing the angular velocity of the rotor 12 above the average velocity of the rotor 12. Accordingly, in the second preferred embodiment, a circular rotor sprocket 63 is used in place of the eccentric rotor socket 59, thereby providing a constant rate of rotation of the rotor 12 about the rotor axis 16 as the armature 70 rotates about the stator 50'.

As will be clear to those skilled in the art, the rotation of the direction of the first magnetic field around the circumferential line of demarcation 49 commutates the second magnetic field, overcoming the need for the null regions 78. In all other respects, the operation of the second embodiment is the same as that of the first embodiment. That is, the revolution rate of each rotor 12 is related to the revolution rate of the armature 70 by Equation (1), where the parameter $N_s$ is the number of rotations around the line of demarcation 49 of the first magnetic field along the line of demarcation 49. In the second preferred embodiment, as shown in Fig.4, the number of rotations of the first magnetic field is one. Accordingly, since there are three pairs 32, 32', 32'' of U-shaped magnets 20, each of the five rotors 12 makes one-third revolution for each full revolution of the armature 70 around the armature axis 58. However, as will be appreciated by those skilled in the art, the motor 10 could be designed for the first magnetic field to have any number of whole periods of rotation about the armature axis 58 provided that the revolution rate of the rotors 12 was adjusted to conform to Equation (1).
Referring now to Fig.1C, Fig.2 and Fig.5 there is shown a third preferred embodiment of a motor 10 providing unidirectional rotational motive power. The third preferred embodiment comprises a generally circular stator 50" mounted to a base 18 and having an axis 72, with magnets 68" attached to the surface 64 of the stator 50", an armature 70 attached to the stator 50" by an axle 57 for rotation about an armature axis of rotation 58 coincident with the stator axis 12, and five rotors 12 (for clarity, only one of which is shown) having three pairs 32, 32', 32" of abutted U-shaped magnets 20, the rotors 12 being spaced at intervals of about 72 degrees around the armature 70. Each rotor 12 is spaced from the armature by an armature strut 71 and attached to the armature strut 71 by an axle for rotation about an axis 16 of the rotor 12 in a plane generally aligned with the armature axis 58 about
an axis 16 of the rotor 12. The motor 10 further includes a driving linkage 62 connecting each rotor 12 and the stator 50 together to cause the armature 70 to rotate about the armature axis of rotation 58 as each rotor 12 oscillates about its respective rotor axis 16.

The third preferred embodiment is identical to the first preferred embodiment except for three differences. First, instead of the first magnetic field being uniform in both magnitude and direction around the circumferential line of demarcation 49 (except in the null zone 78), the first magnetic field is displaced by a sinusoidal pattern having a pre-determined peak amplitude and a pre-determined period along the circumferential line of demarcation 49, with the direction of the first magnetic field alternating in opposite directions along the line of demarcation 49 between each peak amplitude of the sinusoidal pattern.

Preferably, as shown in Fig.5 the first magnetic field is formed by a plurality of bar magnets 68° arranged on the surface 64 of the stator 50° so that the magnetisation of the bar magnets 68° is displaced in the sinusoidal pattern from the line of demarcation 49 around the circumferential line of demarcation 49. The sinusoidal pattern of the bar magnets 68° is divided into first and second sectors, the boundary of which occurs at the peaks of the sinusoidal pattern. The direction of magnetisation of the bar magnets 68° is opposite in direction in the first and the second sectors providing a commutation of the second magnetic field and causing the rotors 12 to reverse in rotational direction as the rotor 12 oscillates around the rotor axis 16 and rotates around the armature axis of rotation 58.

Preferably, the sinusoidal pattern of the magnets has a predetermined peak amplitude so that each rotor 12 oscillates approximately +/-thirty (30) degrees from a neutral position. However, the value of the peak amplitude is not critical to the design of the motor 10. Further, the predetermined period of the sinusoidal pattern may be selected to be any value for which the number of cycles of the sinusoidal pattern around the surface 64 of the stator 50° is an integer value.

As will be apparent to those skilled in the art, the first magnetic field need not be formed by the bar magnets 68° but could be formed from a single magnet (or groups of magnets) so that the first magnetic field would be sinusoidally displaced around the armature axis of rotation 58 and would alternate in opposite directions between each peak of the sinusoidal pattern. Further, as will be appreciated by those skilled in the art, the displacement of the first magnetic field need not be precisely sinusoidal. For instance the displacement may be in a shape of a sawtooth or in a shape having a portion with constant plus and minus amplitude values, within the spirit and scope of the invention.

As a result of the first magnetic field being sinusoidally displaced and alternating each one-half period, each rotor 12 oscillates through an angle corresponding to approximately the peak amplitude of the sinusoid as the rotor 12 follows the stator magnets 68°. Accordingly, a second difference between the third embodiment and the first embodiment is in the structure of the linkage 62. In the third preferred embodiment, shown in Fig.1C, the linkage 62 comprises a reciprocating rod 91 connecting each rotor 12 to a respective first gear 87 rotationally attached to the armature 70. The reciprocating rod 91 is pivotally mounted to each rotor 12 and to each first gear 87 so that the oscillating motion of the rotor 12 is converted to rotary motion of the first gear 87. Each first gear 87 is coupled to a single second gear 89, attached to the stator 50 in a fixed position. The rotary motion of each first gear 87 causes the armature 70 to rotate about the armature axis of rotation 58 as the rotors 12 oscillate about the rotor axis 16. As will be appreciated by those skilled in the art, the speed of the motor 10 is fixed by the ratio of the first gear 87 to the second gear 89 in accordance with the expression:

\[ Sa = \frac{1}{Ns} \times Sr \]  \hspace{2cm} (2)

Where:
\( Sa \) is the angular velocity of the armature 70 (RPM);
\( Ns \) is the number of first magnetic field periods around the stator 50°; and
\( Sr \) is the angular velocity of the rotor 12 (RPM).

Because each rotor 12 oscillates instead of continually rotating, only a single rotor magnet. (or group of magnets) on a given rotor 12 interacts with the single stator 50°. Accordingly, a third difference between the third preferred embodiment and the first preferred embodiment arises because of the oscillatory motion of each rotor 12 whereby each rotor 12 of the third preferred embodiment has only a single pair of magnets 32. However, as will be appreciated by those skilled in the art, additional stators 50° may be added around the periphery of the rotors 12 and additional pairs of U-shaped magnets 20 may be included on each rotor 12 to interact magnetically with each additional stator 50°, thus providing additional motive power.
Referring now to Figs. 6, 7A, 8A and 8B, there is shown a fourth preferred embodiment of the permanent magnet motor 10 for providing unidirectional rotational motive power. The fourth preferred embodiment comprises a generally circular stator 51 having a stator axis 72, attached to a base 18. The stator 51 includes an outer surface 64 divided into a first side 52 and a second side 54 by a circumferential line of demarcation 49, having a pre-determined direction around the stator axis 72, at about a midpoint of the outer surface 64.
Preferably, the surface 64 of the stator 51 is curved, having a curvature conforming to the arc of the rotors 12. However, it will be appreciated by those skilled in the art that the surface 64 need not be curved but could be planar and still be within the spirit and scope of the invention. As will be appreciated by those skilled in the art the stator 51 is merely intended as a stationary supporting structure for stator magnets and, as such, the shape of the stator is not intended to be controlling of the size and shape of the air gap between the magnets attached to the stator and the magnets attached to the rotors.

As shown in Fig.8A, one or more pairs of stator magnets 46 are attached to the outer surface 64 spaced along the line of demarcation 49. Each pair of stator magnets 46 comprises a first stator magnet 40 having a north pole and a south pole and a second stator magnet 42 having a north pole and a south pole. The south pole of each first stator magnet 40, is located on the first side 52 of the outer surface 64, and the north pole of the first stator magnet 40 is closest to the line of demarcation 49. The north pole of each second stator magnet 42 is located on the second side 54 of the outer surface 64 and the south pole of each second stator magnet 42 being closest to the line of demarcation 49. The first and the second stator magnets 40, 42 are spaced along the line of demarcation 49 so that a first inter-magnet distance measured along the line of demarcation 49 between the north pole of the first stator magnet 40 and the south pole of the second stator magnet 42 of an adjacent pair of magnets 46 is generally equal to a second inter-magnet distance measured along the line of demarcation 49' between the south pole of the first stator magnet 40 and the north pole of the second stator magnet 42.

In the fourth preferred embodiment, the stator magnets 40, 42 are bar magnets. Preferably, the north pole of each first stator magnet 40 and the south pole of each second stator magnet 42 are inclined toward the pre-determined direction. Also, the bar magnets are preferably oriented on the surface 64 of the stator 50 so that the south pole of each first magnet 40 and the north pole of each second magnet 42 are nearer to the periphery of each rotor 12 than the opposite pole of each of the magnets 40, 42. As will be appreciated by those skilled in the art, the stator magnets 40, 42 need not be bar magnets. For instance, each stator magnet 40, 42 could be a U-shaped magnet, or could be made up of separate magnets, as long as the first magnetic field generated by the magnets was generally equivalent to that produced by the bar magnets.

In the fourth preferred embodiment, an armature 70 having an armature axis of rotation 58 coincident with the stator axis 72 is attached to the stator 51 by an armature axle 57, which armature axle 57 allowing the armature 70 to freely rotate about the stator axis 72. Each rotor 12 is spaced from the armature 70 by an armature strut 71 and is mounted to the armature strut 71 so as to be free to rotate about the rotor axis 16. The rotor axis 16 is oriented so that the rotor 12 rotates in a plane generally aligned with the armature axis of rotation 58. In the fourth preferred embodiment, five rotors 12 are attached to the armature 70. Preferably, the rotors 12 are uniformly spaced around the circumference of the stator 50 with a spacing of the rotors 12 as measured at the surface 64 of the stator 51 about equal to an integer multiple of twice the inter-magnet distance. However, as those skilled in the art will appreciate, it is not necessary to have the rotors 12 uniformly spaced. Further, the number of rotors 12 can be as few as one and as large as size and space constraints allow. As will be appreciated by those skilled in the art, the stator axis 72 need not be coincident with the armature axis of rotation 58. Accordingly, a stator 50 arranged around the armature axis 58 at any location at which the stator axis 72 is parallel to the armature axis 58 and the surface of the stator 50 faces the periphery of the rotors 12, thereby providing for the interaction between the first magnetic field and the second magnetic field around the armature axis 58, is within the spirit and scope of the invention.

Referring now to Fig.7A, each rotor 12 comprises a first U-shaped magnet 20 generating a second magnetic field. The first U-shaped magnet 20 is positioned on the rotor 12 so that the north pole and the south pole of the first U-shaped magnet 20 faces toward the axis 16 of the rotor 12, and the rear side 26 of the first U-shaped magnet 20 faces the periphery of the rotor 12. When the rear 26 of the first U-shaped magnet 20 is adjacent to the north pole of one of the first stator magnets 40 along the line of demarcation 49, a portion of the second magnetic field directly adjacent to the rear 26 of the first U-shaped magnet 20 interacts with a portion of the first magnetic field generated by the north pole of the first stator magnet 40 to cause the rotor 12 to rotate in a counterclockwise direction. As the rotor 12 rotates in the counterclockwise direction, a portion of the second magnetic field associated with the south pole of the first U-shaped magnet 20 interacts with a portion of the first magnetic field associated with the south pole of the first stator magnet 40, giving rise to a force in the direction of the rotor axis 16, repelling the U-shaped magnet 20, and causing the rotor 12 to translate in the pre-determined direction around the stator axis. As the rotor 12 moves away from first stator magnet 40 in the pre-direction the second magnetic field adjacent to the rear 26 of the U-shaped magnet 20 interacts with the portion of the first magnetic field associated with the south pole of the second stator magnet 42 of the pair of magnets 46, causing the rotor 12 to reverse direction and rotate in the clockwise direction. The portion of the second magnetic field associated with the north pole of the U-shaped magnet 20 then interacts with the portion of the first magnetic field associated with the north pole of the second stator magnet 42, again giving rise to a force in the direction of the rotor axis 16, repelling the U-shaped magnet 20 and causing the rotor 12 to translate in the pre-determined direction. An
oscillation cycle is then repeated with the second magnetic field of the rotor 12 interacting with the first magnetic field of the adjacent pair of magnets 46. Accordingly, the rotor 12 rotationally oscillates about the respective rotor axis 16 and generates a force in the direction of the rotor axis 16, causing the armature 70 to rotate in the pre-determined direction around the armature axis of rotation 58 to provide the unidirectional rotational motive power of the motor. As would be appreciated by those skilled in the art, the fourth embodiment is not limited to a single stator 51 and a single U-shaped magnet 20. Additional stators having first and second stator magnets 40, 42 arranged identically to the stator 51 to interact with corresponding U-shaped magnets spaced around the periphery of each rotor are within the spirit and scope of the invention.

Referring now to Fig.6, Fig.7B and Fig.8A there is shown a fifth preferred embodiment of the permanent magnet motor 10 for providing unidirectional rotary motive force. The structure and operation of the fifth preferred embodiment is similar to that of the fourth preferred embodiment except that each rotor 12 further includes a second U-shaped magnet 24 having a north pole and a south pole with the south pole of the second U-shaped magnet 24 abutting the north pole of the first U-shaped magnet 20, and a third U-shaped magnet 22 having a north pole and a south pole, with the north pole of the third U-shaped magnet 22 abutting the south pole of the first U-shaped magnet 20. As the rotor 12 rotates due to interaction of the portion of the second magnetic field adjacent to the rear of the U-shaped magnet 20 with the first magnetic field, a third magnetic field generated by the north pole of the second U-shaped magnet 24 and a fourth magnetic field generated by the south pole of the third U-shaped magnet 22 each interact with the first magnetic field generated by each stator magnet pair 46 to cause each rotor 12 to generate a force in the direction of the rotor axis 16, thereby causing the armature 70 to rotate in the pre-determined direction around the axis 58 of the stator 51 to provide the unidirectional rotational motive power of the motor.

In the fifth preferred embodiment, the portion of the second magnetic field adjacent to the rear 26 of the first U-shaped magnet 20 serves to rotate the rotor 12 while the second and third U-shaped magnets 24, 22 generate the magnetic fields providing the force in the direction of the rotor axis 16. Accordingly, the fifth preferred embodiment is potentially more powerful than the fourth preferred embodiment. As will be appreciated by those skilled in the art, the stator magnets 40, 42 need not be bar magnets. For instance, each stator magnet 40, 42 could be replaced by a U-shaped magnet or could be made up of separate magnets, as long as the first magnetic field generated by the magnets was generally equivalent to that produced by the bar magnets.
Referring now to Fig.6 and Fig.8C and Fig.8D there is shown a sixth preferred embodiment of the motor 10. The structure and operation of the sixth preferred embodiment is identical to that of the fifth preferred embodiment except that:

(1) The stator magnets 40', 42' on the surface 64 of the stator 51' are in a slightly different orientation;
(2) an additional stator magnet 41 is added to each pair of stator magnets 46 and
(3) the U-shaped magnets 22, 24 attached to each rotor 12 are replaced with bar magnets 36, 38.

Specifically, and referring now to Fig.8C, the direction of magnetisation of each first stator magnet 40' and each second stator magnet 42' is aligned to be generally perpendicular to the line of demarcation 49 instead of being inclined in the pre-determined direction around the armature axis of rotation 58 as in the fifth embodiment. Also, the stator 51' also includes a third stator magnet 41 mounted on the outer surface 64 along the line of demarcation 49 mid-way between each first stator magnet 40' and each second stator magnet 42'. As shown in Fig.8C and Fig.8D, the third stator magnet 41 is oriented so that the direction of magnetisation of the third magnet 41 is aligned with the axis 16 of the rotors 12.

As shown in Fig.8C and Fig.8D, the rotor 12 used in the sixth preferred embodiment includes a first U-shaped magnet 20, similar to that of the fifth preferred embodiment. However, in place of the second and the third U-shaped magnets 24, 22 used in the fifth preferred embodiments, the sixth preferred embodiment includes a first thruster bar magnet 36, spaced from and proximate to the south pole of the first U-shaped magnet 20 and generally aligned with a thruster magnet axis 34, and a second thruster bar magnet 38, spaced from and proximate to the north pole of the first U-shaped magnet 20 and also generally aligned with the thruster magnet axis 34. The thruster axis 34 lies in the plane of the rotor 12 and intersects the rotor axis 16. Similar to the fifth preferred embodiment, the interaction of the portion of the second magnetic field directly adjacent to the rear of the U-shaped magnet 20 with the first magnetic field provides the rotational force for the rotors 12. As the rotor 12 rotates in the clockwise direction (viewed from the second end 30 of the stator 51'), a third magnetic field generated by both the north pole and the south pole of the second thruster magnet 36 interacts with the first stator magnet 40', again generating a force in the direction of the rotor axis 16. Similarly, when the rotor 12 rotates in the counterclockwise direction a fourth magnetic field generated by both the north pole and the south pole of the first thruster magnet 38 interacts with second stator magnet 42', generating a force in the direction of the rotor axis 16. The result of the force in the direction of the rotor axis 16 is to cause the armature 70 to rotate in the predetermined direction around the armature axis of rotation 58 to provide the unidirectional rotational motive power of the motor 10.

In the sixth preferred embodiment, the stator magnets 40', 41, 42' and the thruster magnets 36, 38 are bar magnets. However, as will be appreciated by those skilled in the art, the stator magnets 40', 41 42' and the thruster magnets 36, 38 need not be bar magnets. For instance, each stator magnet 40', 42' could be a U-shaped magnet or could be made up of separate magnets, as long as the first magnetic field generated by the magnets was generally equivalent to that produced by the bar magnets.
Referring now to Fig.6, Fig.7D and Fig.8E there is shown a seventh preferred embodiment of the motor 10. The structure and operation of the seventh preferred embodiment is similar to the sixth preferred embodiment except that the third stator magnet 41’ located on the surface 64 of the stator 51” along the line of demarcation 49 is a U-shaped magnet 41’ with the rear of the U-shaped magnet 41’ facing the rotor 12 and the direction of magnetisation being perpendicular to the line of demarcation 49; and the U-shaped magnet 20 is replaced with a bar magnet 20’ oriented to have the direction of magnetisation aligned with a radial line of the rotor 12. As in the sixth preferred embodiment, each stator magnet 40’, 42’ could be a U-shaped magnet or could be made up of separate magnets, as long as the first magnetic field generated by the stator magnets 40’, 42’ was generally equivalent to that produced by the bar magnets.
Referring now to Fig. 7A, Fig.8A, Fig.8B, Fig.9 and Fig.11A, there is shown an eighth preferred embodiment of the motor 10 for providing unidirectional linear motive power. The eighth preferred embodiment comprises a linear stator 48 having a generally curved cross-section perpendicular to a longitudinal line of demarcation 49 extending on a surface 64 of the stator between a first end 28 and a second end 30 and dividing the surface 64 of the stator 48 into a first side 52 and a second side 54. Preferably, the generally curved cross-section of the stator 48 is concave. However, it will be appreciated by those skilled in the art that the cross-section need not be concave but could be planar or even convex and still be within the spirit and scope of the invention.

The linear stator 48 is identical to the generally circular stator 51 except for the surface 64 of the stator 48 being linear in the direction of the line of demarcation 49 instead of being circular in the direction of the line of demarcation 49.

The eighth preferred embodiment includes the first and the second stator magnets 40, 42 (see Fig.8A), the location and orientation of which are virtually identical to the orientation and location of the stator magnets 40, 42 on the circular stator 51. Accordingly, attached to the linear stator 48 is one or more pairs of magnets 46, each pair of stator magnets 46 generating a first magnetic field and comprising a first stator magnet 40 having a north pole and a south pole and a second stator magnet 42 having a north pole and a south pole. The south pole of
each first stator magnet 40, is located on the first side 52 of the outer surface 64, with the north pole of the first stator magnet 40 being closest to the line of demarcation 49. The north pole of each second stator magnet 42 is located on the second side 54 of the outer surface 64 with the south pole of each second stator magnet 42 being closest to the line of demarcation 49. The first and the second stator magnets 40, 42 are spaced along the line of demarcation 49 so that a first inter-magnet distance measured along the line of demarcation 49 between the north pole of the first stator magnet 40 and the south pole of the second stator magnet 42 of an adjacent pair of magnets 46 is generally equal to a second inter-magnet distance measured along the line of demarcation 49 between the south pole of the first stator magnet 40 and the north pole of the second stator magnet 42.

In the eighth preferred embodiment, the stator magnets 40, 42 are bar magnets, the north pole of each first stator magnet 40 and the south pole of each second stator magnet 42 being inclined toward the second end 30 of the linear stator 48. Also, as shown in Fig.8A, the stator magnets 40, 42 are oriented on the surface 64 of the stator 51 so that the south pole of each first magnet 40 and the north pole of each second magnet 42 are nearer to the periphery of each rotor 12 than the opposite polarity pole of each of the stator magnets 40, 42. As will be appreciated by those skilled in the art, the stator magnets 40, 42 need not be bar magnets. For instance, each stator magnet 40, 42 could be a U-shaped magnet or could be made up of separate magnets, as long as the first magnetic field generated by the magnets was generally equivalent to that produced by the bar magnets.

The eighth preferred embodiment also includes rail 80 having a longitudinal axis located generally parallel to the line of demarcation 49 of the stator 48. Five rotor assemblies 14 comprising a rotor 12 and a bearing assembly 84 are slidably attached to the rail 80.

![Fig. 11A](image-url)

Preferably, the bearing assembly 84, as shown in Fig.11A, includes a pair of first bearings 88 slidably mounted to the rail 80 and constrained to slide along the rail without any substantial rotation, by a boss 37 in each first bearing 88, which is keyed to a longitudinal groove 35 on the rail 80. A second bearing 90 is connected for rotation to the pair of first bearings 88 by ball bearings. The rotor 12 is attached to the second bearing 90. Thus, the rotor 12 attached to each bearing assembly 84 is free to oscillate rotationally about the rail 80 and to generate a force along the rail 80 in the direction of the second end of the stator 30.

Preferably, the eighth preferred embodiment includes a cross-link 94 which ties each bearing assembly 84 together by connecting together the first bearings 88 of each bearing assembly 84, thereby adding together the linear motion along the rail 80 of each rotor 12.

Preferably, each rotor 12 comprises one or more one rotor magnets 20, each rotor magnet 20 generating a second magnetic field which interacts with the first magnetic field to cause the rotor 12 to oscillate rotationally about the axis of the rail 80 and to generate a force in the direction of the axis of the rail 80 to provide the unidirectional linear motive power of the motor. In the eighth preferred embodiment, each rotor 12 is substantially identical to the rotor 12 described for the fourth preferred embodiment. Accordingly, each rotor magnet comprises a first U-shaped magnet 20 having a north pole, a south pole and a rear side 26, a first portion of the second magnetic field directly adjacent to the rear 26 of the U-shaped magnet 20 interacting with each first magnetic field to cause each rotor 12 to oscillate rotationally about the rail 80. A second portion of the second magnetic field adjacent to the north and the south poles of the first U-shaped magnet 20 interacts with the first magnetic field to cause the rotor 12 to generate a force in the direction of the axis of the rail 80 thereby providing the unidirectional linear motive power of the motor. As would be clear to those skilled in the art, the operation of the eighth
preferred embodiment is identical to that of the fourth preferred embodiment except that the motion of the cross-linked rotors 12 is linear along the rail 80 instead of being rotational about the armature axis of rotation 58. Accordingly, for the sake of brevity, a description of the operation of the eighth preferred embodiment is not repeated.

Referring now to Fig.7B, Fig.8A, Fig.8B, Fig.9 and Fig.11A there is shown a ninth preferred embodiment of the motor 10 for providing unidirectional linear motive power. As would be apparent to those skilled in the art, the structure and the operation of the ninth preferred embodiment is virtually identical to that of the fifth preferred embodiment except that the motion of the cross-linked rotors 12 is linear instead of rotational about the armature axis of rotation 58. Accordingly, for the sake of brevity, a description of the structure and the operation of the ninth preferred embodiment is not repeated.

Referring now to Figs. 7C, 8C, 8D, 9 and 11A there is shown a tenth preferred embodiment of the motor 10 for providing unidirectional linear motive power. As would be apparent to those skilled in the art, the structure and the operation of the tenth preferred embodiment is virtually identical to that of the sixth preferred embodiment except that the motion of the cross-linked rotors 12 is linear instead of rotational about the armature axis of rotation 58. Accordingly, for the sake of brevity, the operation of the tenth preferred embodiment is not repeated.

Referring now to Figs. 7D, 8C, 8E, 9 and 11A there is shown an eleventh preferred embodiment of the motor 10 for providing unidirectional linear motive power. The structure and operation of the eleventh preferred embodiment is virtually identical to the seventh preferred embodiment except that the motion of the cross-lined rotors 12 is linear instead of rotational about the armature axis of rotation 58. Accordingly, for the sake of brevity, the operation of the tenth preferred embodiment is not repeated.
Referring now to Fig.2, Fig.3, Fig.10 and Fig.11B, there is shown a twelfth preferred embodiment of the motor 10 for providing linear motive power. As shown in Fig.10, the twelfth preferred embodiment comprises a linear stator 47 having a generally curved cross-section perpendicular to a line of demarcation 49' extending along a midpoint of the stator 47 between a first end 28 and a second end 30 of the linear stator 47, a rail 80' connected to the linear stator 47 having an axis generally parallel to the line of demarcation 49', one or more rotor assemblies 14' comprising rotors 12 connected to the rail 80' by a bearing assembly 84', and a cross-link 94' connecting together the linkages 84' of adjacent rotors 12. Preferably, the generally curved cross section of the stator 47 is concave, having a curvature conforming to the arc of the rotors 12. However, it will be appreciated by those skilled in the art that the generally curved cross-section need not be concave but could be planar or even convex and still be within the spirit and scope of the invention.

As shown in Fig.3, the linear stator 47 includes one or more magnets 68 arranged on the surface 64 of the linear stator 47, each magnet 68 having a direction of magnetisation directed at about a right angle to the line of demarcation 49' and resulting in a first magnetic field directed generally at a right angle to the line of demarcation 49'. The magnitude of the first magnetic field is generally uniform except in the null region 78, in which the magnitude of the first magnetic field is substantially reduced. The linear stator 47 of the twelfth preferred embodiment is virtually identical to the circular stator 50 of the first preferred embodiment except the linear stator 50 is linear in the direction of the line of demarcation 49' instead of being circular around the armature axis of rotation 58. Also, the arrangement of the magnets 68 on the surface 64 of the stator 47 and the structure of the null region(s) 78 is the same as for the first preferred embodiment, as shown in Fig.3 and as fully described in the discussion of the first embodiment. Accordingly, for the sake of brevity, a more detailed description of the structure of the linear stator 47 is not repeated.

The rotors 12 of the twelfth preferred embodiment each have an axis of rotation 16 which is aligned with an axis of the rail 80'. The rotors 12 are connected to the rail 80' by the bearing assembly 84' so that each rotor 12 is free to rotate about the rail 80' and to slide along the rail 80'. Preferably, as shown in Fig.2, each rotor 12 includes three pairs of U-shaped magnets 32, 32, 32', each U-shaped magnet having a rear side 26 and generating a second magnetic field. A portion of the second magnetic field adjacent to the rear-side 26 of each U-shaped magnet 20 interacts with the first magnetic field to cause each rotor 12 to rotate about the axis of the rail 80. The rotors 12 of the twelfth preferred embodiment are the same as the rotors in the first preferred embodiment, as described in Fig.2 and fully discussed above. Accordingly, for the sake of brevity, the detailed description of the rotors 12 is not repeated.
As shown in Fig.11B, the rail 80' has a helical groove 86 with a pre-determined pitch (i.e., turns/unit length) running around a periphery of the rail 80'. The bearing assembly 84' connects each rotor 12 to the helical groove 86, converting the rotational motion of each rotor 12 around the rail 80' to the linear motion along the rail 80'. As shown in Fig.11B, the bearing assembly 84' comprises a pair of first bearings 88' mounted to the rail 80' and constrained to slide along the rail 80' without any substantial rotation, and a second bearing 90', mounted to an outer surface the first bearing 88' for receiving the rotor 12. Preferably, each first bearing 88' has a boss 37 which engages a longitudinal groove 35 so that each first bearing 88' slides on the rail 80' without rotation as the second bearing 90' rotates on the first bearings 88'. It will be appreciated by those skilled in the art, other methods for securing the first bearings 88' to the rail 80' could be employed, as for instance, by making the cross-section of the rail 80' oblate (flattened at the poles). As in the first preferred embodiment, each rotor 12 must rotate at a rate which results in the rear of each U-shaped magnet 20 on the rotor 12 passing through one of the null regions 78 each full rotation of the rotor 12. Accordingly, the pre-determined pitch of the helical groove 86 on the rail 80' preferably equals:

\[ Pg = \frac{1}{Nr} \times Pr \] ........................ (3)

Where:
Pr = the pitch of the null regions 78 (null regions/unit length);
Nr = the number of U-shaped magnets (or groups of abutted U-shaped magnets) on a rotor 12; and
Pg = the pitch of the helical groove 86 (revolutions/unit length).

Preferably, the portions of the helical groove 86 corresponding to each null region 78 have an instantaneous pitch which is greater than the pre-determined pitch of the groove 86 for increasing the angular velocity of the each rotor 12 as each one of the pairs 32, 32', 32'' of U-shaped magnets 20 passes through one of the null regions 78. However, as will be appreciated by those skilled in the art, it is not necessary to provide the greater instantaneous pitch in order for the motor 10 to provide motive power.

As described above, the cross-link 94' connects the bearing assembly 84' of adjacent rotors 12 together. As shown in Fig.10, the cross-link 94' connects the first bearings 88' of each bearing assembly 84' to the first bearing 88' of the adjacent bearing assemblies 84' so that the linear motion of all the rotor assemblies 14' are added together to provide the unidirectional linear motive power of the motor 10.

As previously stated, the first preferred embodiment of the motor 10 comprises a single null region 78 and five rotors 12, each rotor 12 having three pairs 32, 32', 32'' of abutted U-shaped magnets 20. Preferably, the rotors 12 are uniformly spaced along the rail 80' and the pairs 32, 32', 32'' of U-shaped magnets 20 are uniformly spaced around the periphery of each respective rotor 12. Further, the pairs 32, 32', 32'' of U-shaped magnets 20 are phased with respect to each rotor 12 by one-fifth of a revolution of the rotor 12 so that the pairs 32, 32', 32'' of U-shaped magnets 20 of all the rotors 12 pass through the null region 78 at a substantially uniform rate to provide a more or less continuous interaction between the first magnetic field and the second magnetic field of the rotors 12, resulting in a more or less continuous urging of the rotor assemblies 14' toward the second end of the stator 47. As will be appreciated by those skilled in the art, the motive power provided by the motor 10 is proportional to the number of rotors 12 and the number of U-shaped magnets 20 on each rotor 12. Accordingly, the number of rotors 12 and the number of pairs 32, 32', 32'' of magnets 20 of the present invention are not limited to five rotors.
12 and three pairs 32 of U-shaped magnets 20. Neither is the number of null regions limited to one. The number of U-shaped magnets 20 and null regions 78 are limited only by adherence to the rule established by Equation 3.

Referring now to Fig.2, Fig.11B, Fig.12 and Fig.13 there is shown a thirteenth preferred embodiment of the motor 10 comprising a rail 80' supported by rail mounting posts 76 and having a longitudinal axis 65. A helical groove 86 having a pre-determined pitch runs around a periphery of the rail 80.

The thirteenth preferred embodiment also includes three first helical stators 82a, 82b, 82c (82) concentrically surrounding the rail 80' corresponding to three pairs 32, 32' 32'' of U-shaped magnets 20 mounted on each of five rotors 12. Preferably, the first helical stators 82 have the same pitch as the pre-determined pitch of the groove 86 and a longitudinal axis generally parallel to the axis 65 of the rail 80'. A plurality of first stator magnets 11 having a direction of magnetisation aligned with a radial line of each rotor 12 are spaced along each first helical stator 82 with the first stator magnets 11 generating a first magnetic field.
The thirteenth preferred embodiment further includes plurality of second helical stators $82a'$, $82b'$, $82c'$ ($82'$) alternating with the first helical stators $82'$ along the axis $65$ of the rail $80'$, and having the pre-determined pitch of the groove $86$. Each second helical stator $82'$ has mounted upon it a plurality of second stator magnets $11'$ having a direction of magnetisation aligned with a radial line of the rotor $12$ and having a direction of magnetisation opposite in direction to the first stator magnets $11$ mounted on each of the first helical stators $82$. As a consequence of the second helical stators $82'$ being located midway between the first helical stators $82$, a point at about a midpoint between each rotor magnet pair $32$, $32'$, $32''$ is apposite to one of the second helical stators $82'$ as each rotor $12$ rotates about the axis $65$ of the rail $80'$ and slides along the rail $80'$.

The thirteenth preferred embodiment also includes five rotors $12$, (for clarity, only three are shown), having an axis of rotation $16$ generally aligned with the longitudinal axis $65$ of the rail $80'$. Each rotor $12$ is connected to the rail $80'$ by a bearing assembly $84'$ so that the rotor $12$ is free to rotate about the axis $65$ of the rail $80'$ and slide along the rail $80'$. Preferably, each rotor $12$ includes three pairs $32$, $32'$, $32''$ of U-shaped magnets $20$ wherein each U-shaped magnet $20$ generates a second magnetic field, a portion of which adjacent to a rear $26$ of the pair of U-shaped magnets $20$ interacts with the first magnetic field of each first stator magnet to cause each rotor $12$ to rotate about the axis $65$ of the rail $80'$.

The bearing assembly $84'$ (shown in detail in Fig.11B and Fig.12) connects each rotor $12$ to the helical groove $86$ around the periphery of the rail $80$. The bearing assembly $84'$ is similar to the bearing assembly $84'$ described in the twelfth preferred embodiment except for the openings in the first bearings $88'$ and in the second bearing $90'$ which allow the bearing assembly $84'$ past the rail mounting posts $76$ as the bearing assembly $84'$ moves along the rail $80'$.

The thirteenth preferred embodiment may be constructed as either a linear motor or a rotary motor. In the case of the linear motor, the axes of the rail $80'$ and of each helical stator $82$ are substantially straight. The rail $80'$ is supported on the base $18$ by rail mounting posts $76$ placed at intervals along the rail $80'$. The posts $76$ are situated at locations along the rail $80'$ at which the rotation of the rotor $12$ orients the openings in the first and second bearings $88'$, $90'$ to correspond to the mounting posts $76$. Each helical stator $82a$, $82b$, $82c$ is supported on the base by stator mounting posts $75$. The rotors $12$ are connected together by a cross-link $94'$ which connects the first bearings $88'$ of each bearing assembly $84'$ to the first bearing $88'$ of the bearing assembly $84'$ of an adjacent rotor $12$. In this manner, the rotational motion of each rotor assembly $14'$ is added together to provide the linear motive power of the linear motor.

The bearing assembly $84'$ (shown in detail in Fig.11B and Fig.12) connects each rotor $12$ to the helical groove $86$ around the periphery of the rail $80$. The bearing assembly $84'$ is similar to the bearing assembly $84'$ described in the twelfth preferred embodiment except for the openings in the first bearings $88'$ and in the second bearing $90'$ which allow the bearing assembly $84'$ past the rail mounting posts $76$ as the bearing assembly $84'$ moves along the rail $80'$.

The thirteenth preferred embodiment may also be constructed as a rotary motor $10$ as shown in Fig.14. In this case, the axes of the rail $80'$ and the helical stators $82$ are configured to be circular. The circularly configured motor $10$ includes an armature $70$ centrally located within the perimeter of the rail $80'$. The armature $70$ rotates
about an armature axis of rotation 58 connected for rotation within a motor base 18 to which the rail 80' is also attached by mounting posts 76 (not shown). The pitch of the first and the second helical stators 82, 82', measured at a radius of the rail 80, preferably equals the predetermined pitch of the helical groove 86. The armature 70 is fixedly attached to the first bearing 88 (see Fig.11B) of each bearing assembly 84' by an armature strut 71 thereby adding together the rotational motive power of each rotor assembly 14. In order that the armature strut 71 does not interfere with the first and second helical stators 82, 82', the first and second helical stators 82, 82' are made to have an opening toward the armature axis of rotation 58.

Preferably, each first helical stator 82a, 82b, 82c has mounted upon it a plurality of first stator magnets 11 with each stator magnet 11 having a direction of magnetisation aligned with a radial line of the rotor 12. Preferably, the first helical stators 82 are uniformly spaced along the longitudinal axis 65 of the rail 80' with each first helical stator 82 corresponding to one of the plurality of magnet pairs 32, 32', 32''. Preferably, each rotor 12 is positioned on the rail 80' so that one of the rotor magnet pairs 32, 32', 32'' is apposite to one of the corresponding first helical stators 82 as the rotor 12 rotates about the axis 65 of the rail 80 and slides along the rail 80'. However, as those skilled in the art will appreciate, the rotor magnet pairs 32, 32', 32'' need not be directly apposite to each helical stator 82 as the rotors 12 rotate in order to generate a rotational force.

Alternatively, as will be appreciated by those skilled in the art, the motor 10 can be constructed without the second helical stator 82'. In the simplest case the motor 10 could comprise only a single first helical stator 82 and a single rotor 12 comprising a single U-shaped magnet 20 generating the second magnetic field. The single rotor 12 is preferably positioned in the groove 86 on the rail 80' so that the U-shaped rotor magnet 20 is continually apposite to the single first helical stator 82. Consequently, a portion of the second magnetic field directly adjacent to a rear 26 of the U-shaped magnet 20 interacts with the first magnetic field generated by each first stator magnet 11'' mounted on the helical stator 82 to cause the rotor 12 to rotate about the axis 65 of the rail 80 and to slide along the rail 80'. Preferably, when only a single first stator 82 set of first stators 82 is used, each first stator magnet 11'' has a direction of magnetisation oriented to be in the plane of the rotor 12 and generally perpendicular to a radial line of the rotor 12. The north pole and the south pole of the first stator magnet 11'' are preferably spaced apart so that when one pole of the first stator magnet 11 is directly apposite to the rotor magnet 20, the pole of opposite polarity is equally spaced from the U-shaped magnet 20 of the rotor 12. As one skilled in the art would appreciate, a plurality of U-shaped rotor magnets 20 and corresponding first helical stators could be used. Further, as those skilled in the art will appreciate, other configurations of the rotor magnet 20 and the stator magnet 11 are possible, all of which rely on the novel attributes of the magnetic field adjacent to the rear 26 of a U-shaped rotor magnet 20. For example, the previously described stator magnet 11'' perpendicular to the radial line of the rotor 12 could be two separate bar magnets, spaced apart, with the magnetisation of each of the two magnets aligned with a radial line of the rotor and having opposite directions of magnetisation.

Alternatively, as will be appreciated by those skilled in the art, the motor 10 can be constructed without the second helical stator 82'. In the simplest case the motor 10 could comprise only a single first helical stator 82 and a single rotor 12 comprising a single U-shaped magnet 20 generating the second magnetic field. The single rotor 12 is preferably positioned in the groove 86 on the rail 80' so that the U-shaped rotor magnet 20 is continually apposite to the single first helical stator 82. Consequently, a portion of the second magnetic field directly adjacent to a rear 26 of the U-shaped magnet 20 interacts with the first magnetic field generated by each first stator magnet 11'' mounted on the helical stator 82 to cause the rotor 12 to rotate about the axis 65 of the rail 80 and to slide along the rail 80'. Preferably, when only a single first stator 82 set of first stators 82 is used, each first stator magnet 11'' has a direction of magnetisation oriented to be in the plane of the rotor 12 and generally perpendicular to a radial line of the rotor 12. The north pole and the south pole of the first stator magnet 11'' are preferably spaced apart so that when one pole of the first stator magnet 11 is directly apposite to the rotor magnet 20, the pole of opposite polarity is equally spaced from the U-shaped magnet 20 of the rotor 12. As one skilled in the art would appreciate, a plurality of U-shaped rotor magnets 20 and corresponding first helical stators could be used. Further, as those skilled in the art will appreciate, other configurations of the rotor magnet 20 and the stator magnet 11 are possible, all of which rely on the novel attributes of the magnetic field adjacent to the rear 26 of a U-shaped rotor magnet 20. For example, the previously described stator magnet 11'' perpendicular to the radial line of the rotor 12 could be two separate bar magnets, spaced apart, with the magnetisation of each of the two magnets aligned with a radial line of the rotor and having opposite directions of magnetisation.
Referring now to Fig.15A and Fig.15B there is shown a fourteenth preferred embodiment of the motor 10. The fourteenth embodiment is identical in structure to the thirteenth preferred embodiment except that the stator comprises a plurality of first ribs 77a, 77b, 77c (77) and second ribs 77a', 77b', 77c' (77') in place of the first and the second helical stators 82, 82' of the thirteenth embodiment. By substituting ribs 77, 77' for the helical stators 82, 82', the attachment of the armature 70 to the rotors 12 is simplified. As those skilled in the art will appreciate, the length of the ribs 77, 77' may vary from as little as 45 degrees to up to 265 degrees, with the motive power of the motor 10 being proportional to the length of the ribs.

Preferably, the first and the second ribs 77, 77' have a pitch and a spacing that conforms to the pre-determined pitch of the rail 80'. Further the orientation of the first and second stator magnets 11, 11' and of the U-shaped rotor magnets 20 would be identical to the thirteenth embodiment. Accordingly, the operation of the fourteenth embodiment is identical to that of the thirteenth embodiment and is not repeated here for the sake of brevity.
Referring now to Fig.5, Fig.16 and Fig.17 there is shown a fifteenth preferred embodiment of the motor 10 comprising a rail 80" having a longitudinal axis 65 and a generally sinusoidal groove 85 having a pre-determined period running around a periphery of the rail 80".

Preferably, the fifteenth preferred embodiment includes three generally identical stators 50" arrayed in a circular fashion around the rail 80". Each stator 50" has a surface 64 facing the rail 80" and disposed generally equidistant from and parallel to the axis 65 of the rail 80". As shown in Fig.5 and Fig.17 each stator 50" has a generally curved cross-section and a longitudinal line of demarcation 49 perpendicular to the cross-section and located about a midpoint of the surface 64.

A plurality of stator magnets 68" are attached to the surface 64 of the stator 50" generating a first magnetic field. The stator magnets 68" are displaced on the surface 64 in a sinusoidal pattern around the line of demarcation 49. The sinusoidal pattern has a pre-determined period and a pre-determined maximum (peak) amplitude along the line of demarcation 49. In the case where the rail 80" and the longitudinal line of demarcation 49 of the stator 50" are in a straight line, the period of the sinusoid is preferably equal to the period of the groove 85 on the rail 80.

The sinusoidal pattern is also divided into a plurality of first and second alternating sectors with a boundary between the alternating sectors occurring at each maximum (peak) amplitude of the sinusoid. The direction of magnetisation of the stator magnets 68" is opposite in the first and the second segments so that the direction of the first magnetic field in each first segment is opposite to the direction of the first magnetic field in each second segment. Preferably, the direction of magnetisation of the stator magnets 68" is generally perpendicular to a radial line of the rotor 12. Alternatively, the direction of magnetisation of the stator magnets 68" could be generally aligned with a radial line of the rotor 12. Further, as will be apparent to those skilled in the art, the first magnetic field need not be formed by a plurality of bar magnets but could be formed from a single magnet so that the first magnetic field would be sinusoidally displaced from the line of demarcation 49 and would alternate in opposite directions between the peaks of the sinusoid. Further, as will be appreciated by those skilled in the art, the displacement of the first magnetic field need not be precisely sinusoidal. For instance the displacement may be in a shape of a sawtooth or in a shape having a portion with constant plus and minus amplitude values, within the spirit and scope of the invention.
Preferably, the fifteenth preferred embodiment includes five rotors 12, each rotor 12 having an axis 16 aligned with the axis of the rail 80°. Each rotor 12 is connected to the rail 80° by a bearing assembly 84′ so that the rotor 12 is free to rotate about the axis of the rail 65 and slide along the rail 80°. Preferably, each rotor 12 includes three U-shaped magnet pairs 32, 32′, 32″, each pair comprising two U-shaped magnets 20. Each U-shaped magnet 20 has a rear side and generates a second magnetic field. Each of the U-shaped magnet pairs 32, 32′, 32″ is positioned on each rotor 12 so that the rear side 26 of each U-shaped magnet 20 is opposite to the first and the second segments of the sinusoidal pattern as the at least one rotor assembly 14 rotates about the rotor axis 16, wherein an interaction of a portion of the second magnetic field directly adjacent to the rear 26 of each U-shaped magnet 20 with the first magnetic field of a corresponding stator 50" causes the at least one rotor 12 to oscillate rotationally about the axis 65 of the rail 80°. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that it is not necessary to have three pairs of U-shaped magnets 32, 32′, 32″. For instance, the number of U-shaped magnets 20 (or groups of abutted U-shaped magnets) spaced apart around the periphery of the rotor 12 may range from merely a single U-shaped magnet 20, or may range in number up to a number of magnets limited only by the physical space around the periphery of the rotor 12. Further the number of abutted U-shaped magnets 20 in a group of magnets 32 may also range from 1 up to a number of magnets limited only by the physical space around the periphery of the rotor 12. Preferably, the number of stators 50" equals the number of U-shaped magnet pairs 32, 32′, 32". However, as will be appreciated by those skilled in the art, the number of stators 50" is not limited to three but could be any number ranging upward from one, where the number of stators 50" would preferably equal the number of U-shaped magnet pairs 32, 32′, 32″.

As shown in Fig.16 the bearing assembly 84′ converts the oscillatory motion of the at least one rotor 12 about the rail to unidirectional linear motion along the rail 80° by following the sinusoidal groove 85 in the rail 80° with the boss 92 (shown in Fig.11B). A cross-link 94 connects the bearing assembly 84′ of adjacent rotors 12 together, thereby adding together the linear motion of each rotor assembly 14 along the rail to provide the unidirectional linear motive power. The structure of the bearing assembly 84′ and the cross-link 94 is shown in Fig.11B and Fig.12, and the operation is identical to the linkage 84′ and the cross-link 94′ described for the twelfth embodiment. Accordingly, a detailed description of the linkage 84′ and the cross-link 94 is not repeated, for the sake of brevity.

In another aspect, the fifteenth preferred embodiment may also be configured in a circular arrangement similar to that of the fourteenth embodiment. In the fifteenth preferred embodiment, the helical stator 82′ shown in Fig.14 is replaced with one or more curved stators 50" spaced around the rotors 12. In this case, the period of the sinusoidal pattern of the stator magnets is adjusted in accordance with the distance of the surface 64 of the respective stator 50" from the armature axis of rotation 58 in order that the U-shaped magnets 20 on the rotors 12 remain opposite to the first and the second segments, as the rotors 12 slide along the rail 80°. Accordingly, a description of those elements of circular arrangement of the fifteenth embodiment which are the same as for the linear embodiment are not repeated, for the sake of brevity.

Referring now to Fig.4, Fig.18 and Fig.19 there is shown a sixteenth preferred embodiment of the motor 10 for providing unidirectional motive power comprising a rail 80° having a longitudinal axis 65 and a helical groove 86 having a pre-determined pitch, running around a periphery of the rail 80.

Preferably, the sixteenth preferred embodiment further includes three generally identical stators 50′, each stator 50′ having a surface 64 disposed generally equidistant from and parallel to the axis 65 of the rail 80. Each stator 50′ has a longitudinal line of demarcation 49 located about a midpoint of the surface 64. Preferably, a plurality of stator magnets 68′ are attached to the surface of the stator 50′ generating a first magnetic field. The plurality of stator magnets 68′ have a direction of magnetisation which rotates about a magnetic axis parallel to the line of demarcation 49. In the case where the rail 80° and the longitudinal line of demarcation 49 of the stator 50′ are in a straight line, the pitch of the rotation of the stator magnets 68′ is preferably equal to the pre-determined pitch of the helical groove 86 on the rail 80.

The sixteenth embodiment further includes five rotors 12, each rotor 12 having an axis of rotation 16 aligned with the axis 65 of the rail 80. Each rotor 12 is connected to the rail 80 so that the rotor 12 is free to rotate about the axis 65 of the rail 80 and slide along the rail 80. Each rotor 12 includes three pairs 32, 32′, 32″ of U-shaped magnets 20 spaced around the periphery of the rotor 12, each U-shaped magnet 20 generating a second magnetic field. The U-shaped magnets 20 are positioned on each rotor 12 so that a portion of the second magnetic field directly adjacent to the rear side 26 of the U-shaped magnet 20 interacts with the first magnetic field generated by the plurality of stator magnets 68′ to cause each rotor 12 to rotate about the rotor axis 16. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that it is not necessary to have exactly three pairs of U-shaped magnets 32, 32′, 32″. For instance, the number of U-shaped magnets 20 (or groups of abutted U-shaped magnets) spaced apart around the periphery of the rotor 12 may range from merely a single U-shaped magnet 20, or may range in number up to a number of U shaped magnets 20 limited only by the physical space around the periphery of the
rotor 12. Further the number of abutted U-shaped magnets 20 in a group of magnets 32 may also range from 1 up to a number of magnets limited only by the physical space around the periphery of the rotor 12.

The sixteenth embodiment also includes a bearing assembly 84' connecting each rotor 12 to the helical groove 86, the bearing assembly 84' converting the rotary motion of each rotor 12 about the rail 80' to unidirectional linear motion along the rail 80'. A cross-link 94 connects the bearing assembly 84' of adjacent rotors 12 together, thereby adding together the linear motion of each rotor assembly 14' along the rail 80' to provide the unidirectional linear motive power. The structure of the bearing assembly 84' and the cross-link 94 is shown in Fig.11B and Fig.12, is identical to the bearing assembly 84' and cross-link 94 described for the twelfth embodiment. Accordingly, a description of the linkage 84 and the cross-link 94 is not repeated, for the sake of brevity.

In another aspect of the sixteenth preferred embodiment the motor 10 may be configured in a circular arrangement similar to that of the fourteenth embodiment, as shown in Fig.14, except that the helical stator 82' shown in Fig.14 is replaced with one or more stators 50' spaced around the rotors 12. In this case, the pitch of the rotation of the plurality of stator magnets 68' is adjusted in accordance with the distance of the surface 64 of the respective stator 50' from the armature axis of rotation 58 in order that the U-shaped magnets 20 on the rotors 12 remain aligned with the plurality of stator magnets 68' as the rotors 12 rotate about the axis 65 of the rail 80' and slide along the rail 80'. Accordingly, a description of those elements of the circular arrangement of the sixteenth embodiment which are the same as for the straight line configuration are not repeated, for the sake of brevity.

It will be appreciated by those skilled in the art that changes could be made to the embodiments described above without departing from the broad inventive concept thereof. It is understood, therefore, that this invention is not limited to the particular embodiments disclosed, but it is intended to cover modifications within the spirit and scope of the present invention as defined by the appended claims.

CLAIMS
1. An apparatus (10, 10') characterised by:

at least one rotor (12) having a periphery and a rotor axis (16), the at least one rotor (12) comprising a first rotor magnet (20) producing a first magnetic field, said first rotor magnet being U-shaped and having a north pole (23), a south pole (25) and a rear side (26), the rear side (26) of the first rotor magnet being adjacent to the periphery;

an axle (80) to which the at least one rotor (12) is connected at the rotor axis (16) for rotation of the at least one rotor (12) about the rotor axis (16); and

a stationary stator (48, 51) comprising a generally curved cross-section, said stator (51) having a surface (64) opposing the periphery of the at least one rotor (12), and a longitudinal line of demarcation (49) perpendicular to the cross-section at about a midpoint of the surface, the line of demarcation (49) delineating a first side (52) of the surface from a second side (54) of the surface (64), wherein a plurality of pairs of stator magnets (40, 42) producing a second magnetic field are attached to the surface (64), each pair of stator magnets (40, 42) comprising a first stator magnet (40) having a north pole and a south pole and a direction of magnetisation substantially parallel to the surface (64), and a second stator magnet (42) having a north pole and a south pole and a direction of magnetisation substantially parallel to the surface (64), the first stator magnet (40) being on the first side of the surface (64) with the north pole of the first stator magnet being closest to the line of demarcation (49), the second stator magnet (42) being on the second side (52) of the surface with the south pole of the second stator magnet (42) being closest to the line of demarcation (49), wherein the plurality of pairs of stator magnets (40, 42) are spaced along the line of demarcation (49) so that a first inter-magnet distance measured along the line of demarcation (49) between the north pole of the first stator magnet (40) and the south pole of the second stator magnet (42) is about equal to a second inter-magnet distance measured along the line of demarcation between the south pole of the first stator magnet (40) and the north pole of the second stator magnet (42), and wherein the interaction of the first and the second magnetic fields cause the at least one rotor (12) to translate in a predetermined direction along the line of demarcation.

2. The apparatus (10, 10') of claim 1, characterised by the north pole of each first stator magnet (40) and the south pole of each second stator magnet (42) being inclined toward the predetermined direction.

3. The apparatus (10, 10') of claim 1, further characterised by the rotor (12) including a second rotor magnet (22), said second rotor magnet (22) being U-shaped and having a north pole, a south pole and a rear side, the south pole of the second rotor magnet (22) abutting the north pole of the first rotor magnet (26) and the north pole of the second rotor magnet being adjacent to the periphery, and a third rotor magnet (24), said third rotor
magnet (24) having a north pole, a south pole and a rear side, the north pole of the third rotor magnet (24) abutting the south pole of the first rotor magnet (26) and the south pole of the third rotor magnet (24) being adjacent to the periphery, said second magnet producing a third magnetic field and third magnet producing a fourth magnetic field.

4. The apparatus (10) of claim 1, characterised by the apparatus further including an armature (70) having an armature axis (58), the at least one rotor (12) being spaced from the armature (70) by an armature strut (71) and connected thereto by the axle (80) for rotation about the rotor axis (16), the at least one rotor (12) configured for rotation in a plane generally aligned with the armature axis (58), wherein the stator (51) is circular-cylindrical, with a stator axis (72) aligned with the armature axis (58).

5. The apparatus (10') of claim 1, further characterised by the stator (48) being linear, the stator (48) oriented so that the surface (64) of the stator (48) is generally parallel to the axle (80), each at least one rotor (12) being connected to the axle (80) by a bearing assembly (84) comprising a pair of first bearings (88) slidably attached to the axle (80), and a second bearing (90) connected to the pair of first bearings (88) for rotation about the first pair of bearings (88), said at least one rotor (12) being fixedly attached to the second bearing (90).

6. The apparatus (10') of claim 5, further characterised by a crosslink (94) which connects together the at least one rotors (12).

7. A apparatus (10, 10') characterised by:

   at least one rotor (12) having a periphery, a rotor axis (16) and a thruster axis (34) perpendicular to the rotor axis (16) and intersecting the rotor axis (16), the at least one rotor (12) comprising spaced apart first and second rotor magnets (36, 38) having north and south poles aligned with the thruster axis (34), and a third rotor magnet (20, 20') located between the first and second rotor magnets (34, 38) on an axis generally perpendicular to the thruster axis (34), said first, second and third magnets producing a first magnetic field;

   an axle (80) to which the at least one rotor (12) is connected at the rotor axis (16) for rotation of the at least one rotor (12) about the rotor axis (16); and

   a stationary stator (48', 51') comprising a generally curved cross-section, said stator (48', 51') having a surface 64 opposing the periphery of the at least one rotor (12), and a longitudinal line of demarcation (49) perpendicular to the cross-section at about a midpoint of the surface (64), the line of demarcation (49) delineating a first side (52) of the surface from a second side (54) of the surface, wherein a plurality of sets of stator magnets (40', 42', 41) comprising a second magnetic field are attached to the surface (64), each set of stator magnets (40', 42', 41) comprising a first stator magnet (40') having a north pole and a south pole and a direction of magnetisation substantially perpendicular to the surface (64), a second stator magnet (42') having a north pole and a south pole and a direction of magnetisation substantially perpendicular to the surface (64), and a third stator magnet (41) along the line of demarcation (49) midway between the first stator magnet (40') and the second stator magnet (42'), the first stator magnet (40') being on the first side (52) of the surface with the south pole of the first stator magnet (40') being closest surface (64), the second stator magnet (42') being on the second side (54) of the surface (64) with the north pole of the second stator magnet (42') being closest to the surface (64), wherein the plurality of sets of stator magnets (40', 42', 41) are spaced along the line of demarcation (49) so that a first inter-magnet distance measured along the line of demarcation (49) between the north pole of the first stator magnet (40') and the north pole of the second stator magnet (42'), wherein the interaction of the direction of the first and the second magnetic fields cause the at least one rotor (12) to translate in a predetermined direction along the line of demarcation.

8. The apparatus (10, 10') of claim 7, characterised by the third rotor magnet (20) being a U-shaped magnet and the third stator magnet (41) being a bar magnet.

9. The apparatus (10, 10') of claim 7, characterised by the third rotor magnet (20') being a bar magnet and the third stator magnet (41') being a U-shaped magnet.

10. The apparatus (10) of claim 7, characterised by the apparatus further including an armature (70) having an armature axis (58), the at least one rotor (12) being spaced from the armature (70) by an armature strut (71) and connected thereto by the axle (80) for rotation about the rotor axis (16), the at least one rotor (12) being configured for rotation in a plane generally aligned with the armature axis (58), wherein the stator (51') is circular, with a stator axis (72) aligned with the armature axis (58).
11. The apparatus (10') of claim 7, further characterised by the stator (48') being linear, the stator (48') oriented so that the surface (64) of the stator (48') is generally parallel to the axle (80), each at least one rotor (12) being connected to the axle (80) by a bearing assembly (84) comprising a pair of first bearings (88) slidably attached to the axle (80), and a second bearing (90) connected to the pair of first bearings (88) for rotation about the pair of first bearings (88), said at least one rotor (12) being fixedly attached to the second bearing (90).

12. The apparatus (10') of claim 11, further characterised by a crosslink (94) which connects together the at least one rotors (12).

13. An apparatus (10) for providing motion characterised by:

   a stationary, generally circular, stator (50, 50', 50'') having a stator axis (58), an outer surface (64), and a circumferential line of demarcation (49) in a plane perpendicular to the stator axis (58) at about a midpoint of the outer surface (64);

   at least one stator magnet (68, 68', 68'') attached to the outer surface (64) of the stator (50, 50', 50''), the at least one stator magnet (68, 68', 68'') being arranged in a generally circular arrangement about the stator axis (58);

   an armature (70) attached to the stator (50, 50'', 50'') for rotation therewith, the armature (70) having an axis parallel to the stator axis (58);

   at least one rotor (12) including at least one rotor magnet (20), the at least one rotor (12) being spaced from the armature (70) by an armature strut (71) and connected thereto by an axle (80) for rotation about a rotor axis (16), the at least one rotor (12) being configured for rotation in a plane generally aligned with the stator axis (58); and

   a driving linkage assembly (53, 55, 62) connecting the at least one rotor to the stator, the linkage assembly (53, 55, 62) configured to cause the armature (70) to rotate about the stator axis (58) when the at least one rotor (12) rotates about the rotor axis (16).

14. The apparatus according to claim 13 wherein a direction of magnetisation of the at least one stator magnet (68) is generally perpendicular to a radial line of the at least one rotor (12).

15. The apparatus according to claim 13 wherein a direction of magnetisation of the at least one stator magnet (68) is generally aligned with a radial line of the at least one rotor (12).

16. The apparatus according to claim 13 wherein the at least one rotor magnet (20) comprises a U-shaped magnet.

17. The apparatus according to claim 13 wherein the at least one rotor magnet (20) comprises a bar magnet and the at least one stator magnet (68) is a U-shaped magnet.

18. The apparatus according to claim 13, the at least one stator magnet (68') having a direction of magnetisation which rotates about the circumferential line of demarcation (49) with a predetermined periodicity.

19. The apparatus according to claim 13, the at least one stator magnet (68'') having a direction of magnetisation in a plane of the stator (50'') and which is displaced in a sinusoidal pattern from the line of demarcation (49), the sinusoidal pattern having a pre-determined period and a pre-determined maximum amplitude and divided into a plurality of alternating first and second sectors with a boundary between the alternating first and second sectors occurring at peak amplitudes of the sinusoid, the direction of magnetisation of the at least one magnet (68'') being opposite in direction in the first and the second segments.
PERMANENT MAGNET MOTOR

This is a re-worded extract from this Patent. It describes a motor powered solely by permanent magnets and which it is claimed can power an electrical generator.

ABSTRACT
The invention is directed to the method of utilising the unpaired electron spins in ferromagnetic and other materials as a source of magnetic fields for producing power without any electron flow as occurs in normal conductors, and to permanent magnet motors for utilising this method to produce a power source. In the practice of the invention the unpaired electron spins occurring within permanent magnets are utilised to produce a motive power source solely through the superconducting characteristics of a permanent magnet, and the magnetic flux created by the magnets is controlled and concentrated to orientate the magnetic forces generated in such a manner to produce useful continuous work, such as the displacement of a rotor with respect to a stator. The timing and orientation of magnetic forces at the rotor and stator components produced by the permanent magnets is accomplished by the proper geometrical relationship of these components.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION:
Conventional electric motors employ magnetic forces to produce either rotational or linear motion. Electric motors operate on the principal that when a conductor which carries a current is located in a magnetic field, a magnetic force is exerted upon it. Normally, in a conventional electric motor, the rotor, or stator, or both, are so wired that magnetic fields created by electromagnets use attraction, repulsion, or both types of magnetic forces, to impose a force upon the armature causing rotation, or linear displacement of the armature. Conventional electric motors may employ permanent magnets either in the armature or stator components, but to date they require the creation of an electromagnetic field to act upon the permanent magnets. Also, switching gear is needed to control the energising of the electromagnets and the orientation of the magnetic fields producing the motive power.

It is my belief that the full potential of magnetic forces existing in permanent magnets has not been recognised or utilised because of incomplete information and theory with respect to atomic motion occurring within a permanent magnet. It is my belief that a presently unnamed atomic particle is associated with the electron movement of a superconducting electromagnet and the loss-less flow of currents in permanent magnets. The unpaired electron flow is similar in both situations. This small particle is believed to be opposite in charge to an electron and to be located at right angles to the moving electron. This particle must be very small to penetrate all known elements in their various states as well as their known compounds (unless they have unpaired electrons which capture these particles as they endeavour to pass through).

The electrons in ferrous materials differ from those found in most elements in that they are unpaired, and being unpaired they spin around the nucleus in such a way that they respond to magnetic fields as well as creating a magnetic field themselves. If they were paired, their magnetic fields would cancel out. However, being unpaired they create a measurable magnetic field if their spins are orientated in one direction. The spins are at right angles to their magnetic fields.

In niobium superconductors, at a critical state, the magnetic lines of force cease to be at right angles. This change must be due to establishing the required conditions for unpaired electronic spins instead of electron flow in the conductor, and the fact that many powerful electromagnets can be formed with superconductors illustrates the tremendous advantage of producing the magnetic field by unpaired electron spins rather than conventional electron flow. In a superconducting metal, wherein the electrical resistance becomes greater in the metal than the proton resistance, the flow turns to electron spins and the positive particles flow parallel in the metal in the manner occurring in a permanent magnet where a powerful flow of magnetic positive particles or magnetic flux
causes the unpaired electrons to spin at right angles. Under cryogenic superconduction conditions the freezing of the crystals in place makes it possible for the spins to continue, and in a permanent magnet the grain orientation of the magnetised material allows these spins, permitting them to continue and causing the flux to flow parallel to the metal. In a superconductor, at first the electron is flowing and the positive particle is spinning; later, when critical, the reverse occurs, i.e., the electron is spinning and the positive particle is flowing at right angles. These positive particles will thread or work their way through the electron spins present in the metal.

In a sense, a permanent magnet may be considered a room-temperature superconductor. It is a superconductor because the electron flow does not cease, and this electron flow can be made to do work through the magnetic field which it creates. Previously, this source of power has not been used because it was not possible to modify the electron flow to accomplish the switching functions of the magnetic field. Such switching functions are common in a conventional electric motor where electrical current is employed to align the much greater electron current in the iron pole pieces and concentrate the magnetic field at the proper places to give the thrust necessary to move the motor armature. In a conventional electric motor, switching is accomplished by the use of brushes, commutators, alternating current, or other means.

In order to accomplish the switching function in a permanent magnet motor, it is necessary to shield the magnetic leakage so that it will not appear as too great a loss factor at the wrong places. The best method to accomplish this is to concentrate the magnetic flux in the place where it will be the most effective. Timing and switching can be achieved in a permanent magnet motor by concentrating the flux and using the proper geometry of the motor rotor and stator to make most effective use of the magnetic fields. By the proper combination of materials, geometry and magnetic concentration, it is possible to achieve a mechanical advantage of high ratio, greater than 100 to 1, capable of producing continuous motive force.

To my knowledge, previous work done with permanent magnets, and motive devices utilising permanent magnets, have not achieved the result desired in the practice of the inventive concept, and it is with the proper combination of materials, geometry and magnetic concentration that the presence of the magnetic spins within a permanent magnet may be utilised as a motive force.

**SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION:**

It is an object of the invention to utilise the magnetic spinning phenomenon of unpaired electrons occurring in ferromagnetic material to produce the movement of a mass in a unidirectional manner so as to permit a motor to be driven solely by the magnetic forces occurring within permanent magnets. Both linear and rotational types of motor may be produced. It is an object of the invention to provide the proper combination of materials, geometry and magnetic concentration to power a motor. Whether the motor is a linear type or a rotary type, in each instance the "stator" may consist of several permanent magnets fixed relative to each other, to create a track. This track is linear for a linear motor and circular for a rotary motor. An armature magnet is carefully positioned above this track so that an air gap exists between it and the track. The length of the armature magnet is defined by poles of opposite polarity, and the longer axis of the armature magnet is pointed in the direction of its movement.

The stator magnets are mounted so that all the same poles face the armature magnet. The armature magnet has poles which are both attracted to and repelled by the adjacent pole of the stator magnets, so both attractive and repulsive forces act upon the armature magnet to make it move.

The continuing motive force which acts on the armature magnet is caused by the relationship of the length of the armature magnet to the width and spacing of the stator magnets. This ratio of magnet and magnet spacings, and with an acceptable air gap spacing between the stator and armature magnets, produces a continuous force which causes the movement of the armature magnet.

In the practice of the invention, movement of the armature magnet relative to the stator magnets results from a combination of attractive and repulsive forces between the stator and armature magnets. By concentrating the magnetic fields of the stator and armature magnets the motive force imposed upon the armature magnet is intensified, and in the disclosed embodiments, the means for achieving this magnetic field concentration are shown.

This method comprises of a plate of high magnetic field permeability placed behind one side of the stator magnets and solidly engaged with them. The magnetic field of the armature magnet may be concentrated and directionally oriented by bowing the armature magnet, and the magnetic field may further be concentrated by shaping the pole ends of the armature magnet to concentrate the magnet field at a relatively limited surface at the armature magnet pole ends.

Preferably, several armature magnets are used and these are staggered relative to each other in the direction their movement. Such an offsetting or staggering of the armature magnets distributes the impulses of force
imposed upon the armature magnets and results in a smoother application of forces to the armature magnet producing a smoother and more uniform movement of the armature component.

In the rotary embodiment of the permanent magnet motor of the invention the stator magnets are arranged in a circle, and the armature magnets rotate about the stator magnets. A mechanism is shown which can move the armature relative to the stator and this controls the magnitude of the magnetic forces, altering the speed of rotation of the motor.

**BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS**
The objects and advantages of the invention mentioned earlier, will be appreciated from the following description and accompanying drawings:

**Fig. 1** is a schematic view of electron flow in a superconductor indicating the unpaired electron spins,

**Fig. 2** is a cross-sectional view of a superconductor under a critical state illustrating the electron spins,

**Fig. 3** is a view of a permanent magnet illustrating the flux movement through it,

**Fig. 4** is a cross-sectional view illustrating the diameter of the magnet of Fig.3,

**Fig. 5** is an elevational representation of a linear motor embodiment of the permanent magnet motor of the invention illustrating one position of the armature magnet relative to the stator magnets, and indicating the magnetic forces imposed upon the armature magnet,

**Fig. 6** is a view similar to Fig.5 illustrating displacement of the armature magnet relative to the stator magnets, and the influence of magnetic forces thereon at this location,

**Fig. 7** is a further elevational view similar to Fig.5 and Fig.6 illustrating further displacement of the armature magnet to the left, and the influence of the magnetic forces thereon,

**Fig. 8** is a top plan view of a linear embodiment of the inventive concept illustrating a pair of armature magnets in linked relationship disposed above the stator magnets,

**Fig. 9** is a diametrical, elevational, sectional view of a rotary motor embodiment in accord with the invention as taken along section IX-IX of Fig.10, and

**Fig. 10** is an elevational view of the rotary motor embodiment as taken along X-X of Fig.9.
DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

In order to better understand the theory of the inventive concept, reference is made to Figs. 1 through 4. In Fig. 1 a superconductor 1 is illustrated having a positive particle flow as represented by arrow 2. The unpaired electrons of the ferrous conductor 1 spin at right angles to the proton flow in the conductor as represented by the spiral line and arrow 3. In accord with the theory of the invention the spinning of the ferrous unpaired electrons results from the atomic structure of ferrous materials and this spinning atomic particle is believed to be opposite in charge and located at right angles to the moving electrons. It is assumed to be very small in size capable of penetrating other elements and their compounds unless they have unpaired electrons which capture these particles as they endeavour to pass through.

The lack of electrical resistance of conductors at a critical superconductor state has long been recognised, and superconductors have been utilised to produce very high magnetic flux density electromagnets. Fig. 2 represents a cross section of a critical superconductor and the electron spins are indicated by the arrows 3. A permanent magnet may be considered a superconductor as the electron flow therein does not cease, and is without resistance, and unpaired electric spinning particles exist which, in the practice of the invention, are utilised to produce motor force. Fig. 3 illustrates a horseshoe shaped permanent magnet at 4 and the magnetic flux through it is indicated by arrows 5, the magnetic flow being from the south pole to the north pole and through the magnetic material. The accumulated electron spins occurring about the diameter of the magnet 5 are represented at 6 in
Fig. 4, and the spinning electron particles spin at right angles in the iron as the flux travels through the magnet material.

By utilising the electron spinning theory of ferrous material electrons, it is possible with the proper ferromagnetic materials, geometry and magnetic concentration to utilise the spinning electrons to produce a motive force in a continuous direction, thereby resulting in a motor capable of doing work.

It is appreciated that the embodiments of motors utilising the concepts of the invention may take many forms, and in the illustrated forms the basic relationships of components are illustrated in order to disclose the inventive concepts and principles. The relationships of the plurality of magnets defining the stator 10 are best appreciated from Figs. 5 through 8. The stator magnets 12 are preferably of a rectangular configuration, Fig. 8, and so magnetised that the poles exist at the large surfaces of the magnets, as will be appreciated from the N (North) and S (South) designations. The stator magnets include side edges 14 and 16 and end edges 18. The stator magnets are mounted upon a supporting plate 20, which is preferably of a metal having a high permeability to magnetic fields and magnetic flux such as that available under the trademark Netic CoNetic sold by Perfection Mica Company of Chicago, Illinois. Thus, the plate 20 will be disposed toward the south pole of the stator magnets 12, and preferably in direct engagement therewith, although a bonding material may be interposed between the magnets and the plate in order to accurately locate and fix the magnets on the plate, and position the stator magnets with respect to each other.

Preferably, the spacing between the stator magnets 12 slightly differs between adjacent stator magnets as such a variation in spacing varies the forces being imposed upon the armature magnet at its ends, at any given time, and thus results in a smoother movement of the armature magnet relative to the stator magnets. Thus, the stator magnets so positioned relative to each other define a track 22 having a longitudinal direction left to right as viewed in Figs. 5 through 8.

In Figs. 5 through 7 only a single armature magnet 24 is disclosed, while in Fig. 8 a pair of armature magnets are shown. For purposes of understanding the concepts of the invention the description herein will be limited to the use of single armature magnet as shown in Figs. 5 through 7.

The armature magnet is of an elongated configuration wherein the length extends from left to right, Fig. 5, and may be of a rectangular transverse cross-sectional shape. For magnetic field concentrating and orientation purposes the magnet 24 is formed in an arcuate bowed configuration as defined by concave surfaces 26 and convex surfaces 28, and the poles are defined at the ends of the magnet as will be appreciated from Fig. 5. For further magnetic field concentrating purposes the ends of the armature magnet are shaped by bevelled surfaces 30 to minimise the cross sectional area at the magnet ends 32, and the magnetic flux existing between the poles of the armature magnet are as indicated by the light dotted lines. In like manner the magnetic fields of 6 the stator magnets 12 are indicated by the light dotted lines.

The armature magnet 24 is maintained in a spaced relationship above the stator track 22. This spacing may be accomplished by mounting the armature magnet upon a slide, guide or track located above the stator magnets, or the armature magnet could be mounted upon a wheeled vehicle carriage or slide supported upon a non-magnetic surface or guideway disposed between the stator magnets and the armature magnet. To clarify the illustration, the means for supporting the armature magnet 24 is not illustrated and such means form no part of invention, and it is to be understood that the means supporting the armature magnet prevents the armature magnet from moving away from the stator magnets, or moving closer thereto, but permits free movement of the armature magnet to the left or right in a direction parallel to the track 22 defined by the stator magnets.

It will be noted that the length of the armature magnet 24 is slightly greater than the width of two of the stator magnets 12 and the spacing between them. The magnetic forces acting upon the armature magnet when in the position of Fig. 5 will be repulsion forces 34 due to the proximity of like polarity forces and attraction forces at 36 because of the opposite polarity of the south pole of the armature magnet, and the north pole field of the sector magnets. The relative strength of this force is represented by the thickness of the force line.

The resultant of the force vectors imposed upon the armature magnet as shown in Fig. 5 produce a primary force vector 38 toward the left, Fig. 5, displacing the armature magnet 24 toward the left. In Fig. 6 the magnetic forces acting upon the armature magnet are represented by the same reference numerals as in Fig. 5. While the forces 34 constitute repulsion forces tending to move the north pole of the armature magnet away from the stator magnets, the attraction forces imposed upon the south pole of the armature magnet and some of the repulsion forces, tend to move the armature magnet further to the left, and as the resultant force 38 continues to be toward the left the armature magnet continues to be forced to the left. Fig. 7 represents further displacement of the armature magnet 24 to the left with respect to the position of Fig. 6, and the magnetic forces acting thereon are represented by the same reference numerals as in Fig. 5 and Fig. 6, and the stator magnet will continue to move to the left, and such movement continues the length of the track 22 defined by the stator magnets 12.
Upon the armature magnet being reversed such that the north pole is positioned at the right as viewed in Fig.5, and the south pole is positioned at the left, the direction of movement of the armature magnet relative to the stator magnets is toward the right, and the theory of movement is identical to that described above.

In Fig.8 a plurality of armature magnets 40 and 42 are illustrated which are connected by links 44. The armature magnets are of a shape and configuration identical to that of the embodiment of Fig.5, but the magnets are staggered with respect to each other in the direction of magnet movement, i.e., the direction of the track 22 defined by the stator magnets 12. By so staggering a plurality of armature magnets a smoother movement of the interconnected armature magnets is produced as compared when using a single armature magnet as there is variation in the forces acting upon each armature magnet as it moves above the track 22 due to the change in magnetic forces imposed thereon. The use of several armature magnets tends to "smooth out" the application of forces imposed upon linked armature magnets, resulting in a smoother movement of the armature magnet assembly. Of course, any number of armature magnets may be interconnected, limited only by the width of the stator magnet track 22.

In Fig.9 and Fig.10 a rotary embodiment embracing the inventive concepts is illustrated. In this embodiment the principle of operation is identical to that described above, but the orientation of the stator and armature magnets is such that rotation of the armature magnets is produced about an axis, rather than a linear movement being achieved.

In Fig.9 and Fig.10 a base is represented at 46 serving as a support for a stator member 48. The stator member 48 is made of a non-magnetic material, such as synthetic plastic, aluminium, or the like. The stator includes a cylindrical surface 50 having an axis, and a threaded bore 52 is concentrically defined in the stator. The stator includes an annular groove 54 receiving an annular sleeve 56 of high magnetic field permeability material such as Netic Co-Netic and a plurality of stator magnets 58 are affixed upon the sleeve 56 in spaced circumferential relationship as will be apparent in Fig.10. Preferably, the stator magnets 58 are formed with converging radial sides as to be of a wedge configuration having a curved inner surface engaging sleeve 56, and a convex pole surface 60.

The armature 62, in the illustrated embodiment, is of a dished configuration having a radial web portion, and an axially extending portion 64. The armature 62 is formed of a non-magnetic material, and an annular belt receiving groove 66 is defined therein for receiving a belt for transmitting power from the armature to a generator, or other power consuming device. Three armature magnets 68 are mounted on the armature portion 64, and such magnets are of a configuration similar to the armature magnet configuration of Figs. 5 through 7.

The magnets 68 are staggered with respect to each other in a circumferential direction wherein the magnets are not placed exactly 120 degrees apart but instead, a slight angular staggering of the armature magnets is desirable to "smooth out" the magnetic forces being imposed upon the armature as a result of the magnetic forces being simultaneously imposed upon each of the armature magnets. The staggering of the armature magnets 68 in a circumferential direction produces the same effect as the staggering of the armature magnets 40 and 42 as shown in Fig.8.

The armature 62 is mounted upon a threaded shaft 70 by anti-friction bearings 72, and the shaft 70 is threaded into the stator threaded bore 52, and may be rotated by the knob 74. In this manner rotation of the knob 74, and shaft 70, axially displaces the armature 62 with respect to the stator magnets 58, and such axial displacement will vary the magnitude of the magnetic forces imposed upon the armature magnets 68 by the stator magnets thereby controlling the speed of rotation of the armature. As will be noted from Figs. 4 to 7, 9 and 10, an air gap exists between the armature magnets and the stator magnets and the dimension of this spacing, effects the magnitude of the forces imposed upon the armature magnet or magnets. If the distance between the armature magnets and the stator magnets is reduced the forces imposed upon the armature magnets by the stator magnets are increased, and the resultant force 8 vector tending to displace the armature magnets in their path of movement increases. However, the decreasing of the spacing between the armature and stator magnets creates a "pulsation" in the movement of the armature magnets which is objectionable, but can be, to some extent, minimised by using a plurality of armature magnets. Increasing the distance between the armature and stator magnets reduces the pulsation tendency of the armature magnet, but also reduces the magnitude of the magnetic forces imposed upon the armature magnets. Thus, the most effective spacing between the armature and stator magnets is that spacing which produces the maximum force vector in the direction of armature magnet movement, with a minimum creation of objectionable pulsation.

In the disclosed embodiments the high permeability plate 20 and sleeve 56 are disclosed for concentrating the magnetic field of the stator magnets, and the armature magnets are bowed and have shaped ends for magnetic field concentration purposes. While such magnetic field concentration means result in higher forces imposed upon
the armature magnets for given magnet intensities, it is not intended that the inventive concepts be limited to the use of such magnetic field concentrating means.

As will be appreciated from the above description of the invention, the movement of the armature magnet or magnets results from the described relationship of components. The length of the armature magnets as related to the width of the stator magnets and spacing between them, the dimension of the air gap and the configuration of the magnetic field, combined, produce the desired result and motion. The inventive concepts may be practised even though these relationships may be varied within limits not yet defined and the invention is intended to encompass all dimensional relationships which achieve the desired goal of armature movement. By way of example, with respect to Figs. to 7, the following dimensions were used in an operating prototype:

The length of armature magnet 24 is 3.125", the stator magnets 12 are 1" wide, .25" thick and 4" long and grain oriented. The air gap between the poles of the armature magnet and the stator magnets is approximately 1.5" and the spacing between the stator magnets is approximately .5" inch.

In effect, the stator magnets define a magnetic field track of a single polarity transversely interrupted at spaced locations by the magnetic fields produced by the lines of force existing between the poles of the stator magnets and the unidirectional force exerted on the armature magnet is a result of the repulsion and attraction forces existing as the armature magnet traverses this magnetic field track.

It is to be understood that the inventive concept embraces an arrangement wherein the armature magnet component is stationary and the stator assembly is supported for movement and constitutes the moving component, and other variations of the inventive concept will be apparent to those skilled in the art without departing from the scope thereof. As used herein the term "track" is intended to include both linear and circular arrangements of the static magnets, and the "direction" or "length" of the track is that direction parallel or concentric to the intended direction of armature magnet movement.

CLAIMS

1. A permanent magnet motor comprising, in combination, a stator track defining a track direction and having first and second sides and composed of a plurality of track permanent magnets each having first and second poles of opposite polarity, said magnets being disposed in side-by-side relationship having a spacing between adjacent magnets and like poles defining said track sides, an elongated armature permanent magnet located on one of said track sides for relative movement thereto and in spaced relationship to said track side wherein an air gap exists between said armature magnet and said track magnets, said armature magnet having first and second poles of opposite polarity located at the opposite ends of said armature magnet deeming the length thereof, the length of said armature magnet being disposed in a direction in general alignment with the direction of said track, the spacing of said armature magnet poles from said track associated side and the length of said armature magnet as related to the width and spacing of said track magnets in the direction of said track being such as to impose a continuous force on said armature magnet in said general direction of said track.

2. In a permanent magnet motor as in claim 1 wherein the spacing between said poles of said armature and the adjacent stator track side are substantially equal.

3. In a permanent magnet motor as in claim 1 wherein the spacing between adjacent track magnets varies.

4. In a permanent magnet motor as in claim 1 wherein a plurality of armature magnets are disposed on a common side of said stator track, said armature magnets being mechanically interconnected.

5. In a permanent magnet motor as in claim 4 wherein said armature magnets are staggered with respect to each other in the direction of said track.

6. In a permanent magnet motor as in claim 1 wherein magnetic field concentrating means are associated with said track magnets.

7. In a permanent magnet motor as in claim 6 wherein said field concentrating means comprises a sheet of magnetic material of high field permeability engaging side and pole of said track opposite to that side and pole disposed toward said armature magnet.

8. In a permanent magnet as in claim 1 wherein said armature magnet is of an arcuate configuration in its longitudinal direction bowed toward said track, said armature magnet having ends shaped to concentrate the magnetic field at said ends.
9. In a permanent magnet motor as in claim 1 wherein said stator track is of a generally linear configuration, and means supporting said armature magnet relative to said track for generally linear movement of said armature magnet.

10. In a permanent magnet motor as in claim 1 wherein said stator track magnets define a circle having an axis, an armature rotatably mounted with respect to said track and concentric and coaxial thereto, said armature magnet being mounted upon said armature.

11. In a permanent magnet motor as in claim 10, means axially adjusting said armature relative to said track whereby the axial relationship of said armature magnet and said stator magnets may be varied to adjust the rate of rotation of said armature.

12. In a permanent magnet motor as in claim 10 wherein a plurality of armature magnets are mounted on said armature.

13. In a permanent magnet motor as in claim 12 wherein said armature magnets are circumferentially non-uniformly spaced on said armature.

14. A permanent magnet motor comprising, in combination, a stator comprising a plurality of circumferentially spaced stator permanent magnets having poles of opposite polarity, said magnets being arranged to substantially define a circle having an axis, the poles of said magnets facing in a radial direction with respect to said axis and poles of the same polarity facing away from said axis and the poles of opposite polarity facing toward said axis, an armature mounted for rotation about said axis and disposed adjacent said stator, at least one armature permanent magnet having poles of opposite polarity mounted on said armature and in radial spaced relationship to said circle of stator magnets, said armature magnet poles extending in the circumferential direction of armature rotation, the spacing of said armature magnet poles from said stator magnets and the circumferential length of said armature magnet and the spacing of said stator magnets being such as to impose a continuing circumferential force on said armature magnet to rotate said armature.

15. In a permanent magnet motor as in claim 14 wherein a plurality of armature magnets are mounted upon said armature.

16. In a permanent magnet motor as in claim 14 wherein said armature magnets are asymmetrically circumferentially spaced on said armature.

17. In a permanent magnet motor as in claim 14 wherein the poles of said armature magnet are shaped to concentrate the magnetic field thereof.

18. In a permanent magnet motor as in claim 14, magnetic field concentrating means associated with said stator magnets concentrating the magnetic fields thereof at the spacings between adjacent stator magnets.

19. In a permanent magnet motor as in claim 18 wherein said magnet field concentrating means comprises an annular ring of high magnetic field permeability material concentric with said axis and in substantial engagement with poles of like polarity of said stator magnets.

20. In a permanent magnet motor as in claim 14 wherein said armature magnet is of an arcuate bowed configuration in the direction of said poles thereof defining a concave side and a convex side, said concave side being disposed toward said axis, and said poles of said armature magnet being shaped to concentrate the magnetic field between said poles thereof.

21. In a permanent magnet motor as in claim 14, means for axially displacing said stator and armature relative to each other to adjust the axial alignment of said stator and armature magnets.

22. The method of producing a unidirectional motive force by permanent magnets using a plurality of spaced stator permanent magnets having opposite polarity poles defining a track having a predetermined direction, and an armature magnet having a length defined by poles of opposite polarity movably mounted for movement relative to the track in the direction thereof, and of a predetermined length determined by the width and dimensions of said stator magnets comprising forming a magnetic field track by said stator magnets having a magnetic field of common polarity interrupted at spaced locations in a direction transverse to the direction of said magnetic field track by magnetic fields created by magnetic lines of force existing between the poles of the stator magnets and positioning the armature magnet in spaced relation to said magnetic field track longitudinally related to the direction of the magnetic field track such a distance that the repulsion and attraction forces imposed on the armature magnet by said magnetic field track imposes a continuing unidirectional force on the armature magnet in the direction of the magnetic field track.
23. The method of producing a unidirectional motive force as in claim 22 including concentrating the magnetic fields created by magnetic lines of force between the poles of the stator magnets.

24. The method of producing a unidirectional motive force as in claim 22 including concentrating the magnetic field existing between the poles of the armature magnet.

25. The method of producing a unidirectional motive force as in claim 22 including concentrating the magnetic fields created by magnetic lines of force between the poles of the stator magnets and concentrating the magnetic field existing between the poles of the armature magnet.

26. The method of producing a motive force by permanent magnets wherein the unpaired electron spinning particles existing within a permanent magnet are utilised for producing a motive force comprising forming a stator magnetic field track by means of at least one permanent magnet, producing an armature magnetic field by means of a permanent magnet and shaping and locating said magnetic fields in such a manner as to produce relative continuous unidirectional motion between said stator and armature field producing magnets.

27. The method of producing a motive force by permanent magnets as in claim 26 wherein said stator magnetic field is substantially of a single polarity.

28. The method of producing a motive force by permanent magnets as in claim 26 including concentrating the magnetic field of said stator field track and armature magnetic field.
This is a reworded excerpt from this patent which shows a compact, self-powered, combined permanent magnet motor and electrical generator. There is a little extra information at the end of this document.

**ABSTRACT**

A permanent magnet generator or motor having stationary coils positioned in a circle, a rotor on which are mounted permanent magnets grouped in sectors and positioned to move adjacent to the coils, and a carousel carrying corresponding groups of permanent magnets through the centres of the coils, the carousel moves with the rotor by virtue of its being magnetically coupled to it.

**Inventors:**

Ewing, Harold E. (Chandler, AZ, US)
Chapman, Russell R. (Mesa, AZ, US)
Porter, David R. (Mesa, AZ, US)

**Assignee:**

Energy Research Corporation (Mesa, AZ)

**US Patent References:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patent</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Inventor(s)</th>
<th>Class</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3610974</td>
<td>Oct, 1971</td>
<td>Kenyon</td>
<td>310/49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5117142</td>
<td>May, 1992</td>
<td>Von Zweygbergk</td>
<td>310/156.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5289072</td>
<td>Feb, 1994</td>
<td>Lange</td>
<td>310/266.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION**

There are numerous applications for small electric generators in ratings of a few kilowatts or less. Examples include electric power sources for emergency lighting in commercial and residential buildings, power sources for remote locations such as mountain cabins, and portable power sources for motor homes, pleasure boats, etc.

In all of these applications, system reliability is a primary concern. Because the power system is likely to sit idle for long periods of time without the benefit of periodic maintenance, and because the owner-operator is often inexperienced in the maintenance and operation of such equipment, the desired level of reliability can only be achieved through system simplicity and the elimination of such components as batteries or other secondary power sources which are commonly employed for generator field excitation.

Another important feature for such generating equipment is miniaturisation particularly in the case of portable equipment. It is important to be able to produce the required level of power in a relatively small generator.

Both of these requirements are addressed in the present invention through a novel adaptation of the permanent magnet generator or magneto in a design that lends itself to high frequency operation as a means for maximising power output per unit volume.

**DESCRIPTION OF THE PRIOR ART**

Permanent magnet generators or magnetos have been employed widely for many years. Early applications of such generators include the supply of electric current for spark plugs in automobiles and aeroplanes. Early telephones used magnetos to obtain electrical energy for ringing. The Model T Ford automobile also used magnetos to power its electric lights.

The present invention differs from prior art magnetos in terms of its novel physical structure in which a multiplicity of permanent magnets and electrical windings are arranged in a fashion which permits high-speed/high-frequency operation as a means for meeting the miniaturisation requirement. In addition, the design is enhanced through the
use of a rotating carousel which carries a multiplicity of field source magnets through the centres of the stationary electric windings in which the generated voltage is thereby induced.

**SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION**

In accordance with the invention claimed, an improved permanent magnet electric generator is provided with a capability for delivering a relatively high level of output power from a small and compact structure. The incorporation of a rotating carousel for the transport of the primary field magnets through the electrical windings in which induction occurs enhances field strength in the locations critical to generation.

It is, therefore, one object of this invention to provide an improved permanent magnet generator or magneto for the generation of electrical power. Another object of this invention is to provide in such a generator a relatively high level of electrical power from a small and compact structure. A further object of this invention is to achieve such a high level of electrical power by virtue of the high rotational speed and high frequency operation of which the generator of the invention is capable.

A further object of this invention is to provide such a high frequency capability through the use of a novel field structure in which the primary permanent magnets are carried through the centres of the induction windings of the generator by a rotating carousel.

A still further object of this invention is to provide a means for driving the rotating carousel without the aid of mechanical coupling but rather by virtue of magnetic coupling between other mechanically driven magnets and those mounted on the carousel.

A still further object of this invention is to provide an enhanced capability for high speed/high frequency operation through the use of an air bearing as a support for the rotating carousel.

Yet another object of this invention is to provide in such an improved generator a sufficiently high magnetic field density in the locations critical to voltage generation without resort to the use of laminations or other media to channel the magnetic field.

Further objects and advantages of the invention will become apparent as the following description proceeds and the features of novelty which characterise the invention will be pointed out with particularity in the claims annexed to and forming a part of this specification.

**BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS**

The present invention may be more readily described by reference to the accompanying drawings, in which:

![Fig.1](image)

Fig.1 is a simplified perspective view of the carousel electric generator of the invention;
Fig. 2 is a cross-sectional view of Fig. 1 taken along line 2--2;

Fig. 3 is a cross-sectional view of the generator of Fig. 1 and Fig. 2 taken along line 3--3 of Fig. 2;
Fig. 4 is a cross-sectional view of Fig. 3 taken along line 4--4;
Fig. 5 is a partial perspective view showing the orientation of a group of permanent magnets within a twenty degree sector of the generator of the invention as viewed in the direction of arrow 5 of Fig. 3.

Fig. 6 is an illustration of the physical arrangement of electrical windings and permanent magnets within the generator of the invention as viewed in the direction of arrow 6 in Fig. 1;
Fig. 7 is a waveform showing flux linkages for a given winding as a function of rotational position of the winding relative to the permanent magnets;

Fig. 8 is a schematic diagram showing the proper connection of the generator windings for a high current low voltage configuration of the generator;

Fig. 9 is a schematic diagram showing a series connection of generator coils for a low current, high voltage configuration;

Fig. 10 is a schematic diagram showing a series/parallel connection of generator windings for intermediate current and voltage operation;
Fig. 11 is a perspective presentation of a modified carousel magnet configuration employed in a second embodiment of the invention;

Fig. 12A and Fig. 12B show upper and lower views of the carousel magnets of Fig. 11;

Fig. 13 is a cross-sectional view of the modified magnet configuration of Fig. 11 taken along line 13–13 with other features of the modified carousel structure also shown;
Fig. 14 is a modification of the carousel structure shown in Figs. 1-13 wherein a fourth carousel magnet is positioned at each station; and

Fig. 15 illustrates the use of the claimed device as a pulsed direct current power source.
DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENT

Referring more particularly to the drawings by characters of reference, Fig.1 shows the external proportions of a carousel electric generator 10 of the invention. As shown in Fig.1, generator 10 is enclosed by a housing 11 with mounting feet 12 suitable for securing the generator to a flat surface 13. The surface 13 is preferably horizontal, as shown in Fig.1.

Housing 11 has the proportions of a short cylinder. A drive shaft 14 extends axially from housing 11 through a bearing 15. The electrical output of the generator is brought out through a cable 16.

The cross-sectional view of Fig.2 shows the active elements incorporated in one twenty degree sector of the stator and in one twenty degree sector of the rotor.

In the first implementation of the invention, there are eighteen identical stator sectors, each incorporating a winding or coil 17 wound about a rectangular coil frame or bobbin. Coil 17 is held by a stator frame 18 which may also serve as an outer wall of frame 11.

The rotor is also divided into eighteen sectors, nine of which incorporate three permanent magnets each, including an inboard rotor magnet 19, an upper rotor magnet 21 and a lower rotor magnet 22. All three of these magnets have their south poles facing coil 17, and all three are mounted directly on rotor frame 23 which is secured directly to drive shaft 14.

The other nine sectors of the rotor are empty, i.e. they are not populated with magnets. The unpopulated sectors are alternated with the populated sectors so that adjacent populated sectors are separated by an unpopulated sector as shown in Fig.3 and Fig.6.

With reference again to Fig.2, generator 10 also incorporates a carousel 24. The carousel comprises nine pairs of carousel magnets 25 clamped between upper and lower retainer rings 26 and 27, respectively. The lower retainer ring 27 rests inside an air bearing channel 28 which is secured to stator 18 inside the bobbin of coil 17. Air passages (not shown) admit air into the space between the lower surface of ring 27 and the upper or inside
surface of channel 28. This arrangement comprises an air bearing which permits carousel 24 to rotate freely within the coils 17 about rotational axis 29 of rotor frame 23.

Carousel 24 is also divided into 18 twenty-degree sectors, including nine populated sectors interspersed with nine unpopulated sectors in an alternating sequence. Each of the nine populated sectors incorporates a pair of carousel magnets as described in the preceding paragraph.

The geometrical relationship between the rotor magnets, the carousel magnets and the coils, is further clarified by Fig.3, Fig.4 and Fig.5. In each of the three figures, the centre of each populated rotor sector is shown aligned with the centre of a coil 17. Each populated carousel sector, which is magnetically locked into position with a populated rotor sector, is thus also aligned with a coil 17.
In an early implementation of the invention, the dimensions and spacings of the rotor magnets 19, 21 and 22 and carousel magnets, 25A and 25B of carousel magnet pairs 25 were as shown in Fig.5. Each of the rotor magnets 19, 21 and 22 measured one inch by two inches by one-half inch with north and south poles at opposite one-inch by two-inch faces. Each of the carousel magnets 25A and 25B measured two inches by two inches by one-half inch with north and south poles at opposite two-inch by two-inch faces. The magnets were obtained from Magnet Sales and Manufacturing, Culver City, Calif. The carousel magnets were part No.35NE2812832; the rotor magnets were custom parts of equivalent strength (MMF) but half the cross section of the carousel magnets.

Coil supports and other stationary members located within magnetic field patterns are fabricated from Delrin or Teflon plastic or equivalent materials. The use of aluminium or other metals introduce eddy current losses and in some cases excessive friction.

As shown in Fig.5, carousel magnets 25A and 25B stand on edge, parallel with each other, their north poles facing each other, and spaced one inch apart. When viewed from directly above the carousel magnets, the space between the two magnets 25A and 25B appears as a one-inch by two-inch rectangle. When the carousel magnet pair 25 is perfectly locked into position magnetically, upper rotor magnet 21 is directly above this one-inch by two-inch rectangle, lower rotor magnet 22 is directly below it, and their one-inch by two-inch faces are directly aligned with it, the south poles of the two magnets 21 and 22 facing each other.

In like manner, when viewed from the axis of rotation of generator 10, the space between carousel magnets 25A and 25B again appears as a one-inch by two-inch rectangle, and this rectangle is aligned with the one-inch by two-inch face of magnet 19, the south pole of magnet 19 facing the carousel magnet pair 25.

Rotor magnets 19, 21 and 22 are positioned as near as possible to carousel magnets 25A and 25B while still allowing passage for coil 17 over and around the carousel magnets and through the space between the carousel magnets and the rotor magnets.

In an electric generator, the voltage induced in the generator windings is proportional to the product of the number of turns in the winding and the rate of change of flux linkages that is produced as the winding is rotated through
the magnetic field. An examination of magnetic field patterns is therefore essential to an understanding of generator operation.

In generator 10, magnetic flux emanating from the north poles of carousel magnets 25A and 25B pass through the rotor magnets and then return to the south poles of the carousel magnets. The total flux field is thus driven by the combined MMF (magnetomotive force) of the carousel and field magnets while the flux patterns are determined by the orientation of the rotor and carousel magnets.

The flux pattern between carousel magnets 25A and 25B and the upper and lower rotor magnets 21 and 22 is illustrated in Fig.4. Magnetic flux lines 31 from the north pole of carousel magnet 25A extend to the south pole of upper rotor magnet 21, pass through magnet 21 and return as lines 31' to the south pole of magnet 25A. Lines 33, also from the north pole of magnet 25A extend to the south pole of lower rotor magnet 22, pass through magnet 22 and return to the south pole of magnet 25A as lines 33'. Similarly, lines 32 and 34 from the north pole of magnet 25B pass through magnets 21 and 22, respectively, and return as lines 32' and 34' to the south pole of magnet 25B. Flux linkages produced in coil 17 by lines emanating from carousel magnet 25A are of opposite sense from those emanating from carousel magnet 25B. Because induced voltage is a function of the rate of change in net flux linkages, it is important to recognise this difference in sense.
Fig. 6 shows a similar flux pattern for flux between carousel magnets 25A and 25B and inboard rotor magnet 19. Again the lines emanating from carousel magnet 25A and passing through rotor magnet 19 produce flux linkages in coil 17 that are opposite in sense from those produced by lines from magnet 25B.

The arrangement of the carousel magnets with the north poles facing each other tends to confine and channel the flux into the desired path. This arrangement replaces the function of magnetic yokes or laminations of more conventional generators.

The flux linkages produced by magnets 25A and 25B are opposite in sense regardless of the rotational position of coil 17 including the case where coil 17 is aligned with the carousel and rotor magnets as well as for the same coils when they are aligned with an unpopulated rotor sector.

Taking into account the flux patterns of Fig. 4 and Fig. 6 and recognising the opposing sense conditions just described, net flux linkages for a given coil 17 are deduced as shown in Fig. 7.

In Fig. 7, net flux linkages (coil-turns x lines) are plotted as a function of coil position in degrees. Coil position is here defined as the position of the centreline 35 of coil 17 relative to the angular scale shown in degrees in Fig. 6. (Note that the coil is stationary and the scale is fixed to the rotor. As the rotor turns in a clockwise direction, the relative position of coil 17 progresses from zero to ten to twenty degrees etc.).

At a relative coil position of ten degrees, the coil is centred between magnets 25A and 25B. Assuming symmetrical flux patterns for the two magnets, the flux linkages from one magnet exactly cancel the flux linkages from the other so that net flux linkages are zero. As the relative coil position moves to the right, linkages from magnet 25A decrease and those from magnet 25B increase so that net flux linkages build up from zero and passes through a maximum negative value at some point between ten and twenty degrees. After reaching the negative maximum, flux linkages decrease, passing through zero at 30 degrees (where coil 17 is at the centre of an unpopulated rotor sector) and then rising to a positive maximum at some point just beyond 60 degrees. This cyclic variation repeats as the coil is subjected successively to fields from populated and unpopulated rotor sectors.

As the rotor is driven rotationally, net flux linkages for all eighteen coils are altered at a rate that is determined by the flux pattern just described in combination with the rotational velocity of the rotor. Instantaneous voltage
induced in coil 17 is a function of the slope of the curve shown in Fig.7 and rotor velocity, and voltage polarity changes as the slope of the curve alternates between positive and negative.

It is important to note here that a coil positioned at ten degrees is exposed to a negative slope while the adjacent coil is exposed to a positive slope. The polarities of the voltages induced in the two adjacent coils are therefore opposite. For series or parallel connections of odd and even-numbered coils, this polarity discrepancy can be corrected by installing the odd and even numbered coils oppositely (odds rotated end for end relative to evens) or by reversing start and finish connections of odd relative to even numbered coils. Either of these measures will render all coil voltages additive as needed for series or parallel connections. Unless the field patterns for populated and unpopulated sectors are very nearly symmetrical, however, the voltages induced in odd and even numbered coils will have different waveforms. This difference will not be corrected by the coil reversals or reverse connections discussed in the previous paragraph. Unless the voltage waveforms are very nearly the same, circulating currents will flow between even and odd-numbered coils. These circulating currents will reduce generator efficiency.

![Fig.8 Diagram]

To prevent such circulating currents and the attendant loss in operating efficiency for non symmetrical field patterns and unmatched voltage waveforms, the series-parallel connections of Fig.8 may be employed in a high-current, low-voltage configuration of the generator. If the eighteen coils are numbered in sequence from one to eighteen according to position about the stator, all even-numbered coils are connected in parallel, all odd-numbered coils are connected in parallel, and the two parallel coil groups are connected in series as shown with reversed polarity for one group so that voltages will be in phase relative to output cable 16.

![Fig.9 Diagram]

For a low-current, high voltage configuration, the series connection of all coils may be employed as shown in Fig.9. In this case, it is only necessary to correct the polarity difference between even and odd numbered coils. As mentioned earlier, this can be accomplished by means of opposite start and finish connections for odd and even coils or by installing alternate coils reversed, end for end.

![Fig.10 Diagram]

For intermediate current and voltage configurations, various series-parallel connections may be employed. Fig.10, for example, shows three groups of six coils each connected in series. Circulating currents will be avoided so long as even-numbered coils are not connected in parallel with odd-numbered coils. Parallel connection of
series-connected odd/even pairs as shown is permissible because the waveforms of the series pairs should be very neatly matched.

In another embodiment of the invention, the two large (two-inch by two-inch) carousel magnets are replaced by three smaller magnets as shown in Fig.11, Fig.12 and Fig.13. The three carousel magnets comprise an inboard carousel magnet 39, an upper carousel magnet 41 and a lower carousel magnet 42 arranged in a U-shaped configuration that matches the U-shaped configuration of the rotor magnets 19, 21 and 22. As in the case of the first embodiment, the rotor and carousel magnets are present only in alternate sectors of the generator.

The ends of the carousel magnets are bevelled to permit a more compact arrangement of the three magnets. As shown in Fig.12, each magnet measures one inch by two inches by one half inch thick. The south pole occupies the bevelled one-inch by two-inch face and the north pole is at the opposite face.
The modified carousel structure 24' as shown in Fig.13 comprises an upper carousel bearing plate 43, a lower carousel bearing plate 44, an outer cylindrical wall 45 and an inner cylindrical wall 46. The upper and lower bearing plates 43 and 44 mate with the upper and lower bearing members 47 and 48, respectively, which are stationary and secured inside the forms of the coils 17. Bearing plates 43 and 44 are shaped to provide air channels 49 which serve as air bearings for rotational support of the carousel 24'. The bearing plates are also slotted to receive the upper and lower edges 51 of cylindrical walls 45 and 46.

The modified carousel structure 24' offers a number of advantages over the first embodiment. The matched magnet configuration of the carousel and the rotor provides tighter and more secure coupling between the carousel and the rotor. The smaller carousel magnets also provide a significant reduction in carousel weight. This was found beneficial relative to the smooth and efficient rotational support of the carousel.

The modification of the carousel structure as described in the foregoing paragraphs can be taken one step further with the addition of a fourth carousel magnet 52 at each station as shown in Fig.14. The four carousel magnets 39, 41, 42 and 52 now form a square frame with each of the magnet faces (north poles) facing a corresponding inside face of the coil 17. Carousel magnets for this modification may again be as shown in Fig.12. An additional rotor magnet 53 may also be added as shown, in alignment with carousel magnet 52. These additional modifications further enhance the field pattern and the degree of coupling between the rotor and the carousel.

The carousel electric generator of the invention is particularly well suited to high speed, high frequency operation where the high speed compensates for lower flux densities than might be achieved with a magnetic medium for routing the field through the generator coils. For many applications, such as emergency lighting, the high frequency is also advantageous. Fluorescent lighting, for example, is more efficient in terms of lumens per watt and the ballasts are smaller at high frequencies.

While the present invention has been directed toward the provision of a compact generator for specialised generator applications, it is also possible to operate the device as a motor by applying an appropriate alternating voltage source to cable 16 and coupling drive shaft 14 to a load.
It is also possible to operate the device of the invention as a motor using a pulsed direct-current power source. A control system 55 for providing such operation is illustrated in Fig.15. Incorporated in the control system 55 are a rotor position sensor S, a programmable logic controller 56, a power control circuit 57 and a potentiometer P.

Based on signals received from sensor S, controller 56 determines the appropriate timing for coil excitation to assure maximum torque and smooth operation. This entails the determination of the optimum positions of the rotor and the carousel at the initiation and at the termination of coil excitation. For smooth operation and maximum torque, the force developed by the interacting fields of the magnets and the excited coils should be unidirectional to the maximum possible extent.

Typically, the coil is excited for only 17.5 degrees or less during each 40 degrees of rotor rotation.

The output signal 58 of controller 56 is a binary signal (high or low) that is interpreted as an ON and OFF command for coil excitation.

The power control circuit incorporates a solid state switch in the form of a power transistor or a MOSFET. It responds to the control signal 58 by turning the solid state switch ON and OFF to initiate and terminate coil excitation. Instantaneous voltage amplitude supplied to the coils during excitation is controlled by means of potentiometer P. Motor speed and torque are thus responsive to potentiometer adjustments.

The device is also adaptable for operation as a motor using a commutator and brushes for control of coil excitation. In this case, the commutator and brushes replace the programmable logic controller and the power control circuit as the means for providing pulsed DC excitation. This approach is less flexible but perhaps more efficient than the programmable control system described earlier.

It will now be recognised that a novel and useful generator has been provided in accordance with the stated objects of the invention, and while but a few embodiments of the invention have been illustrated and described it will be apparent to those skilled in the art that various changes and modifications may be made without departing from the spirit of the invention or from the scope of the appended claims.
Notes:

I found it a little difficult to visualise the carousel part, so the following may be helpful for some people. The “carousel” is formed from two circular plastic channels like this:

These channels are placed, one below and one above, nine pairs of carousel magnets (coloured blue in some of the patent diagrams shown above. Each carousel magnet sits in the lower channel:

And these magnets are secured as a unit by an identical plastic channel inverted and placed on top of the magnet set:

And this ring assembly of magnets spins inside the wire coils used to generate the electrical output. The ring spins inside the coils because the nine pairs of magnets in the ring, lock in place opposite the matching nine pairs of magnets in the rotor and the magnetic force and rotor rotation causes the ring to spin inside the coils.
OPTICAL GENERATOR OF AN ELECTROSTATIC FIELD HAVING LONGITUDINAL OSCILLATION AT LIGHT FREQUENCIES FOR USE IN AN ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT

Please note that this is a re-worded excerpt from this patent. It describes a gas-filled tube which allows many standard 40-watt fluorescent tubes to be powered using less than 1-watt of power each.

ABSTRACT
An Optical generator of an electrostatic field at light frequencies for use in an electrical circuit, the generator having a pair of spaced-apart electrodes in a gas-filled tube of quartz glass or similar material with at least one capacitor cap or plate adjacent to one electrode and a dielectric filled container enclosing the tube, the generator substantially increasing the electrical efficiency of the electrical circuit.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION
This invention relates to improved electrical circuits, and more particularly to circuits utilising an optical generator of an electrostatic field at light frequencies.

The measure of the efficiency of an electrical circuit may broadly be defined as the ratio of the output energy in the desired form (such as light in a lighting circuit) to the input electrical energy. Up to now, the efficiency of many circuits has not been very high. For example, in a lighting circuit using 40 watt fluorescent lamps, only about 8.8 watts of the input energy per lamp is actually converted to visible light, thus representing an efficiency of only about 22%. The remaining 31.2 watts is dissipated primarily in the form of heat.

It has been suggested that with lighting circuits having fluorescent lamps, increasing the frequency of the applied current will raise the overall circuit efficiency. While at an operating frequency of 60 Hz, the efficiency is 22%, if the frequency is raised to 1 Mhz, the circuit efficiency would only rise to some 25.5%. Also, if the input frequency were raised to 10 Ghz, the overall circuit efficiency would only be 35%.

SUMMARY OF THE PRESENT INVENTION
The present invention utilises an optical electrostatic generator which is effective for producing high frequencies in the visible light range of about $10^{14}$ to $10^{23}$ Hz. The operation and theory of the optical electrostatic generator has been described and discussed in my co-pending application serial No. 5,248, filed on 23rd January 1970. As stated in my co-pending application, the present optical electrostatic generator does not perform in accordance with the accepted norms and standards of ordinary electromagnetic frequencies.

The optical electrostatic generator as utilised in the present invention can generate a wide range of frequencies between several Hertz and those in the light frequency. Accordingly, it is an object of the present invention to provide improved electrical energy circuits utilising my optical electrostatic generator, whereby the output energy in the desired form will be substantially more efficient than possible to date, using standard circuit techniques and equipment. It is a further object of the present invention to provide such a circuit for use in fluorescent lighting or other lighting circuits. It is also an object of the present invention to provide a circuit with may be used in conjunction with electrostatic precipitators for dust and particle collection and removal, as well as many other purposes.

DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS
Fig. 1 is a schematic layout showing an optical electrostatic generator of the present invention, utilised in a lighting circuit for fluorescent lamps:
Fig. 2 is a schematic layout of a high-voltage circuit incorporating an optical electrostatic generator:

Fig. 2A is a sectional view through a portion of the generator and

Fig. 3 is a schematic sectional view showing an optical electrostatic generator in accordance with the present invention, particularly for use in alternating current circuits, although it may also be used in direct current circuits:
DESCRIPTION OF THE ILLUSTRATED EMBODIMENTS

Referring to the drawings and to Fig.1 in particular, a low voltage circuit utilising an optical electrostatic generator is shown. As shown in Fig.1, a source of alternating current electrical energy 10, is connected to a lighting circuit. Connected to one tap of the power source 10 is a rectifier 12 for utilisation when direct current is required. The illustrated circuit is provided with a switch 14 which may be opened or closed depending on whether AC or DC power is used. Switch 14 is opened and a switch 16 is closed when AC is used. With switch 14 closed and switch 16 open, the circuit operates as a DC circuit.
Extending from switches 14 and 16 is conductor 18 which is connected to an optical electrostatic generator 20. Conductor 18 is passed through an insulator 22 and connected to an electrode 24. Spaced from electrode 24 is a second electrode 25. Enclosing electrodes 24 and 25, which preferably are made of tungsten or similar material, is a quartz glass tube 26 which is filled with an ionisable gas 28 such as xenon or any other suitable ionisable gas such as argon, krypton, neon, nitrogen or hydrogen, as well as the vapour of metals such as mercury or sodium.

Surrounding each end of tube 26 and adjacent to electrodes 24 and 25, are capacitor plates 30 and 32 in the form of caps. A conductor is connected to electrode 25 and passed through a second insulator 34. Surrounding the tube, electrodes and capacitor caps is a metal envelope in the form of a thin sheet of copper or other metal such as aluminium. Envelope 36 is spaced from the conductors leading into and out of the generator by means of insulators 22 and 34. Envelope 36 is filled with a dielectric material such as transformer oil, highly purified distilled water, nitro-benzene or any other suitable liquid dielectric. In addition, the dielectric may be a solid such as ceramic material with relatively small molecules.

A conductor 40 is connected to electrode 25, passed through insulator 24 and then connected to a series of fluorescent lamps 42 which are connected in series. It is the lamps 42 which will be the measure of the efficiency of the circuit containing the optical electrostatic generator 20. A conductor 44 completes the circuit from the fluorescent lamps to the tap of the source of electrical energy 10. In addition, the circuit is connected to a ground 46 by another conductor 48. Envelope 36 is also grounded by lead 50 and in the illustrated diagram, lead 50 is connected to the conductor 44.

The capacitor caps or plates 30 and 32, form a relative capacitor with the discharge tube. When a high voltage is applied to the electrode of the discharge tube, the ions of gas are excited and brought to a higher potential than their environment, i.e. the envelope and the dielectric surrounding it. At this point, the ionised gas in effect becomes one plate of a relative capacitor in co-operation with the capacitor caps or plates 30 and 32.

When this relative capacitor is discharged, the electric current does not decrease as would normally be expected. Instead, it remains substantially constant due to the relationship between the relative capacitor and an absolute capacitor which is formed between the ionised gas and the spaced metal envelope 36. An oscillation effect occurs in the relative capacitor, but the electrical condition in the absolute capacitor remains substantially constant.

As also described in the co-pending application serial No. 5,248, there is an oscillation effect between the ionised gas in the discharge lamp and the metallic envelope 36 will be present if the capacitor caps are eliminated, but the efficiency of the electrostatic generator will be substantially decreased.

The face of the electrode can be any desired shape. However, a conical point of 60° has been found to be satisfactory and it is believed to have an influence on the efficiency of the generator.

In addition, the type of gas selected for use in tube 26, as well as the pressure of the gas in the tube, also affect the efficiency of the generator, and in turn, the efficiency of the electrical circuit.
To demonstrate the increased efficiency of an electrical circuit utilising the optical electrostatic generator of the present invention as well as the relationship between gas pressure and electrical efficiency, a circuit similar to that shown in Fig.1 may be used with 100 standard 40 watt, cool-white fluorescent lamps connected in series. The optical electrostatic generator includes a quartz glass tube filled with xenon, with a series of different tubes being used because of the different gas pressures being tested.
Table 1 shows the data to be obtained relating to the optical electrostatic generator. Table 2 shows the lamp performance and efficiency for each of the tests shown in Table 1. The following is a description of the data in each of the columns of Tables 1 and 2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Gas used in discharge tube</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Gas pressure in tube (in torrs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Field strength across the tube (measured in volts per cm. of length between the electrodes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Current density (measured in microamps per sq. mm. of tube cross-sectional area)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Current (measured in amps)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>Power across the tube (calculated in watts per cm. of length between the electrodes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>Voltage per lamp (measured in volts)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>Current (measured in amps)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>Resistance (calculated in ohms)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>Input power per lamp (calculated in watts)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>Light output (measured in lumens)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B Type of discharge lamp</th>
<th>C Pressure of Xenon (Torr)</th>
<th>D Field strength across lamp (V/cm)</th>
<th>E Current density (A/sq.mm)</th>
<th>F Current (A)</th>
<th>G Power str. across lamp (W/cm.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Mo elec</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Xe 0.01</td>
<td>11.8</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>2.14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Xe 0.10</td>
<td>19.6</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>3.57</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Xe 1.00</td>
<td>31.4</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>5.72</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Xe 10.00</td>
<td>47.2</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>8.58</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Xe 20.00</td>
<td>55.1</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>10.02</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Xe 30.00</td>
<td>62.9</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>11.45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Xe 40.00</td>
<td>66.9</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>12.16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Xe 60.00</td>
<td>70.8</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>12.88</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Xe 80.00</td>
<td>76.7</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>13.95</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Xe 100.00</td>
<td>78.7</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>14.31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Xe 200.00</td>
<td>90.5</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>16.46</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Xe 300.00</td>
<td>100.4</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>18.25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Xe 400.00</td>
<td>106.3</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>19.32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Xe 500.00</td>
<td>110.2</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>20.04</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Xe 600.00</td>
<td>118.1</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>21.47</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Xe 700.00</td>
<td>120.0</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>21.83</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Xe 800.00</td>
<td>122.8</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>22.33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Xe 900.00</td>
<td>125.9</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>22.90</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Xe 1,000.00</td>
<td>127.9</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>23.26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Xe 2,000.00</td>
<td>149.6</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>27.19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Xe 3,000.00</td>
<td>161.4</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>29.35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Xe 4,000.00</td>
<td>173.2</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>31.49</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Xe 5,000.00</td>
<td>179.1</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>0.1818</td>
<td>32.56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The design of a tube construction for use in the optical electrostatic generator of the type used in Fig. 1, may be accomplished by considering the radius of the tube, the length between the electrodes in the tube and the power across the tube.

If \( R \) is the minimum inside radius of the tube in centimetres, \( L \) the minimum length in centimetres between the electrodes, and \( W \) the power in watts across the lamp, the following formula can be obtained from Table 1:

\[
R = \left( \frac{\text{Current [A]}}{\text{Current Density [A/sq.mm]}} \right) / \pi
\]

\[
L = 8R
\]

\[
W = L[V/cm] \times A
\]

For example, for Test No. 18 in Table 1:
The current is 0.1818 A,
The current density 0.000353 A/sq.mm and
The Voltage Distribution is 122.8 V/cm; therefore

\[
R = \left( \frac{0.1818}{0.000353} \right)^2 / 3.14 = 12.80 \text{ mm.}
\]

\[
L = 8 \times R = 8 \times 12.8 = 102.4 \text{ mm (10.2 cm.)}
\]

\[
W = 102.2 \times 122.8 \times 0.1818 = 227.7 \text{ VA or 227.7 watts}
\]

The percent efficiency of operation of the fluorescent lamps in Test No. 18 can be calculated from the following equation:

\[
\% \text{ Efficiency} = \left( \frac{\text{Output Energy}}{\text{Input energy}} \right) \times 100
\]
Across a single fluorescent lamp, the voltage is 60 volts and the current is 0.1818 amps therefore the input energy to the lamp 42 is 10.90 Watts. The output of the fluorescent lamp is 3,200 lumens which represents 8.8 Watts power of light energy. Thus, the one fluorescent lamp is operating at 80.7% efficiency under these conditions.

However, when the optical generator is the same as described for Test No. 18 and there are 100 fluorescent lamps in series in the circuit, the total power input is 227.7 watts for the optical generator and 1,090 watts for 100 fluorescent lamps, or a total of 1,318 watts. The total power input normally required to operate the 100 fluorescent lamps in a normal circuit would be 100 x 40 = 4,000 watts. So by using the optical generator in the circuit, about 2,680 watts of energy is saved.

Table 1 is an example of the functioning of this invention for a particular fluorescent lamp (40 watt cool white). However, similar data can be obtained for other lighting applications, by those skilled in the art.

In Fig.2, a circuit is shown which uses an optical electrostatic generator 20a, similar to generator 20 of Fig.1. In generator 20, only one capacitor cap 32a is used and it is preferably of triangular cross-sectional design. In addition, the second electrode 25a is connected directly back into the return conductor 52, similar to the arrangement shown in my co-pending application serial No. 5,248, filed 23rd January 1970.

This arrangement is preferably for very high voltage circuits and the generator is particularly suited for DC usage.

In Fig.2, common elements have received the same numbers which were used in Fig.1.
In Fig. 3, still another embodiment of an optical electrostatic generator 20b is shown. This generator is particularly suited for use with AC circuits. In this embodiment, the capacitor plates 30b and 32b have flanges 54 and 56 which extend outwards towards the envelope 36. While the utilisation of the optical electrostatic generator has been described in use in a fluorescent lighting circuit, it is to be understood that many other types of circuits may be used. For example, the high-voltage embodiment may be used in a variety of circuits such as flash lamps, high-speed controls, laser beams and high-energy pulses. The generator is also particularly usable in a circuit including electrostatic particle precipitation in air pollution control devices, chemical synthesis in electrical discharge systems such as ozone generators and charging means for high-voltage generators of the Van de Graff type, as well as particle accelerators. To those skilled in the art, many other uses and circuits will be apparent.
APPARATUS FOR PRODUCING AN ELECTRIC CURRENT

This patent shows the details of a lightweight device which can produce electricity using a self-powered electromagnet and chemical salts. The working life of the device before needing a recharge is estimated at some seventy years. The operation is controlled by a transmitter which bombards the chemical sample with 300 MHz radio waves. This produces radioactive emissions from the chemical mixture for a period of one hour maximum, so the transmitter needs to be run for fifteen to thirty seconds once every hour. The chemical mixture is shielded by a lead screen to prevent harmful radiation reaching the user. The output from the tiny device described is estimated to be some 10 amps at 100 to 110 volts DC.

DESCRIPTION

This invention relates to a new apparatus for producing electric current the apparatus being in the form of a completely novel secondary battery. The object of this invention is to provide apparatus of the above kind which is considerably lighter in weight than, and has an infinitely greater life than a known battery or similar characteristics and which can be re-activated as and when required in a minimum of time.

According to the present invention we provide apparatus comprising a generator unit which includes a magnet, a means for suspending a chemical mixture in the magnetic field, the mixture being composed of elements whose nuclei becomes unstable as a result of bombardment by short waves so that the elements become radio-active and release electrical energy, the mixture being mounted between, and in contact with, a pair of different metals such as copper and zinc, a capacitor mounted between those metals, a terminal electrically connected to each of the metals, means for conveying the waves to the mixture and a lead shield surrounding the mixture to prevent harmful radiation from the mixture.

The mixture is preferably composed of the elements Cadmium, Phosphorus and Cobalt having Atomic Weights of 112, 31 and 59 respectively. The mixture, which may be of powdered form, is mounted in a tube of non-conducting, high heat resistivity material and is compressed between granulated zinc at one end of the tube and granulated copper at the other end, the ends of the tube being closed by brass caps and the tube being carried in a suitable cradle so that it is located between the poles of the magnet. The magnet is preferably an electromagnet and is energised by the current produced by the unit.

The means for conveying the waves to the mixture may be a pair of antennae which are exactly similar to the antennae of the transmitter unit for producing the waves, each antenna projecting from and being secured to the brass cap at each end of the tube.

The transmitter unit which is used for activating the generator unit may be of any conventional type operating on ultra-shortwave and is preferably crystal controlled at the desired frequency.

DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS
In the form of our invention illustrated, the generator unit comprises a base 10 upon which the various components are mounted. This base 10, having projecting upwards from it a pair of arms 11, which form a cradle housing 12 for a quartz tube 13, the cradle 12 preferably being made of spring material so that the tube 13 is firmly, yet removably held in position. The arms 11 are positioned relative to the poles 14 of an electromagnet 15 so that the tube 13 is located immediately between the poles of the magnet so as to be in the strongest magnetic field created by the electromagnet. The magnet serves to control the alpha and beta rays emitted by the cartridge when it is in operation.
The transmitter unit is of any suitable conventional type for producing ultra shortwaves and may be crystal tuned, then the tuning may be operated by a dial provided with a micrometer vernier scale so that the necessary range, then it may be operated from a suitable electrical supply such as the mains. If the transmitter is to be required to operate over a short range, it may conveniently be battery powered but if it is to operate over a greater range, the tuning accuracy may be achieved.

If the transmitter is only controlled to ensure that it operates at the desired frequency with the necessity of tuning. If the transmitter is only to be tuned, then the tuning may be operated by a dial provided with a micrometer vernier scale so that the necessary tuning accuracy may be achieved.

The quartz tube 13 has mounted in it, at one end, a quantity of granulated copper which is in electrical contact with the brass cap 16 at that end of the tube. Also mounted within the tube and in contact with the granulated copper is a chemical mixture which is in powdered form and which is capable of releasing electrical energy and which becomes radioactive when subjected to bombardment by ultra-short radio waves.

Mounted in the other end of the tube, and in contact with the other end of the powdered chemical mixture is a quantity of granulated zinc which is itself in contact with the brass cap on this end of the tube, the arrangement being that the chemical mixture is compressed between the granulated copper and the granulated zinc.

Projecting outwards from each brass cap 16, and electrically connected to them, is an antenna 21. Each antenna 21 corresponding exactly in dimension, shape and electrical characteristics to the antenna associated with a transmitter unit which is to produce the ultra shortwaves mentioned earlier.

The electromagnet 15 is conveniently carried by a centrally positioned pillar 22 which is secured to the base 10. At the upper end of pillar 22 there is a cross-bar 23, which has the high frequency coil 19 attached to one end of it. The other end of the cross-bar 23 is bent around into the curved shape as shown at 24 and is adapted to bear against a curved portion 25 of the base 26 of the electromagnet 15. A suitable locking device is provided for holding the curved portions 24 and 25 in the desired angular position, so that the position of the poles 14 of the electromagnet can be adjusted about the axis of the quartz tube 13.

The transmitter unit is of any suitable conventional type for producing ultra shortwaves and may be crystal controlled to ensure that it operates at the desired frequency with the necessity of tuning. If the transmitter is only required to operate over a short range, it may conveniently be battery powered but if it is to operate over a greater range, then it may be operated from a suitable electrical supply such as the mains. If the transmitter is to be tuned, then the tuning may be operated by a dial provided with a micrometer vernier scale so that the necessary tuning accuracy may be achieved.

The mixture which is contained within the quartz tube is composed of the elements Cadmium, Phosphorus and Cobalt, having atomic weights 112, 31 and 59 respectively. Conveniently, these elements may be present in the following compounds, and where the tube is to contain thirty milligrams of the mixture, the compounds and their proportions by weight are:

1 Part of Co (No3) 2 6H₂O
2 Parts of CdCl₂
3 Parts of 3Ca (Po₃) 2 + 10C.

The cartridge which consists of the tube 13 with the chemical mixture in it is preferably composed of a number of small cells built up in series. In other words, considering the cartridge from one end to the other, at one end and in contact with the brass cap, there would be a layer of powdered copper, then a layer of the chemical mixture, then a layer of powdered zinc, a layer of powdered copper, etc. with a layer of powdered zinc in contact with the brass cap at the other end of the cartridge. With a cartridge some forty five millimetres long and five millimetres diameter, some fourteen cells may be included.

The cradles 12 in which the brass caps 16 engage, may themselves form terminals from which the output of the unit may be taken. Alternatively, a pair of terminals 27 may be connected across the cradles 12, these terminals 27 being themselves provided with suitable antennae 28, which correspond exactly in dimensions, shape and electrical characteristics to the antennae associated with the transmitter, these antennae 28, replacing the antennae 21.

In operation with the quartz tube containing the above mixture located between the granulated copper and the granulated zinc and with the tube itself in position between the poles of the magnet, the transmitter is switched on and the ultra shortwaves coming from it are received by the antennae mounted at each end of the tube and in contact with the copper and zinc respectively, the waves being thus passed through the copper and zinc and through the mixture so that the mixture is bombarded by the short waves and the Cadmium, Phosphorus and Cobalt associated with the mixture become radioactive and release electrical energy which is transmitted to the granulated copper and granulated zinc, causing a current to flow between them in a similar manner to the current.
flow produced by a thermo couple. It has been established that with a mixture having the above composition, the optimum release of energy is obtained when the transmitter is operating at a frequency of 300 MHz.

The provision of a quartz tube is necessary for the mixture evolves a considerable amount of heat while it is reacting to the bombardment of the short waves. It is found that the tube will only last for one hour and that the tube will become discharged after an hours operation, that is to say, the radioactiveness of the tube will only last for one hour and it is therefore necessary, if the unit is to be run continuously, for the transmitter to be operated for a period of some fifteen to thirty seconds duration once every hour.

With a quartz tube having an overall length of some forty five millimetres and an inside diameter of five millimetres and containing thirty milligrams of the chemical mixture, the estimated energy which will be given off from the tube for a discharge of one hour, is 10 amps at between 100 and 110 volts. To enable the tube to give off this discharge, it is only necessary to operate the transmitter at the desired frequency for a period of some fifteen to thirty seconds duration.

The current which is given off by the tube during its discharge is in the form of direct current. During the discharge from the tube, harmful radiations are emitted in the form of gamma rays, alpha rays and beta rays and it is therefore necessary to mount the unit within a lead shield to prevent the harmful radiations from affecting personnel and objects in the vicinity of the unit. The alpha and beta rays which are emitted from the cartridge when it is in operation are controlled by the magnet.

When the unit is connected up to some apparatus which is to be powered by it, it is necessary to provide suitable fuses to guard against the cartridge being short-circuited which could cause the cartridge to explode.

The estimated weight of such a unit including the necessary shielding, per kilowatt hour output, is approximately 25% of any known standard type of accumulator which is in use today and it is estimated that the life of the chemical mixture is probably in the region of seventy to eighty years when under constant use.

It will thus be seen that we have provided a novel form of apparatus for producing an electric current, which is considerably lighter than the standard type of accumulator at present known, and which has an infinitely greater life than the standard type of accumulator, and which can be recharged or reactivated as and when desired and from a remote position depending on the power output of the transmitter. Such form of battery has many applications.
NO-LOAD GENERATOR

Electrical power is frequently generated by spinning the shaft of a generator which has some arrangement of coils and magnets contained within it. The problem is that when current is drawn from the take-off coils of a typical generator, it becomes much more difficult to spin the generator shaft. The cunning design shown in this patent overcomes this problem with a simple design in which the effort required to turn the shaft is not altered by the current drawn from the generator.

ABSTRACT
A generator of the present invention is formed of ring permanent magnet trains 2 and 2' attached and fixed on to two orbits 1 and 1' about a rotational axis 3, magnetic induction primary cores 4 and 4' attached and fixed above outer peripheral surfaces of the ring permanent magnet trains 2 and 2' at a predetermined distance from the outer peripheral surfaces, magnetic induction secondary cores 5 and 5' attached and fixed on to the magnetic induction primary cores 4 and 4' and each having two coupling, holes 6 and 6' formed therein, tertiary cores 8 and 8' inserted for coupling respectively into two coupling holes 6 and 6' of each of the associated magnetic induction secondary cores 5 and 5' opposite to each other, and responsive coils 7 and 7'. The ring permanent magnetic trains 2 and 2' are formed of 8 sets of magnets with alternating N and S poles, and magnets associated with each other in the axial direction have opposite polarities respectively and form a pair.

DESCRIPTION
TECHNICAL FIELD
The present invention relates to generators, and particularly to a load-free generator which can maximise the generator efficiency by erasing or eliminating the secondary repulsive load exerted on the rotor during electric power generation.

BACKGROUND ART
The generator is a machine which converts mechanical energy obtained from sources of various types of energy such as physical, chemical or nuclear power energy, for example, into electric energy. Generators based on linear motion have recently been developed while most generators are structured as rotational type generators. Generation of electromotive force by electromagnetic induction is a common principle to generators regardless of their size or whether the generator is AC or DC generator.

The generator requires a strong magnet such as permanent magnet and electromagnet for generating magnetic field as well as a conductor for generating the electromotive force, and the generator is structured to enable one of them to rotate relative to the other. Depending on which of the magnet and the conductor rotates, generators can be classified into rotating-field type generators in which the magnetic field rotates and rotating-armature type generators in which the conductor rotates.

Although the permanent magnet can be used for generating the magnetic field, the electromagnet is generally employed which is formed of a magnetic field coil wound around a core to allow direct current to flow through them. Even if a strong magnet is used to enhance the rotational speed, usually the electromotive force produced from one conductor is not so great. Thus, in a generally employed system, a large number of conductors are provided in the generator and the electromotive forces generated from respective conductors are serially added up so as to achieve a high electric power.

As discussed above, a usual generator produces electricity by mechanically rotating a magnet (or permanent magnet) or a conductor (electromagnet, electrically responsive coil and the like) while reverse current generated at this time by magnetic induction (electromagnetic induction) and flowing through the coil causes magnetic force which pulls the rotor so that the rotor itself is subjected to unnecessary load which reaches at least twice the electric power production.
Fig. 6 illustrates that the load as discussed above is exerted on a rotor in a rotating-field type generator mentioned above.

Referring to Fig. 6, a permanent magnet train 104 is arranged about an axis of rotation 106 such that N poles and S poles are alternately located on the outer peripheral surface of the train. At a certain distance outward from the outer periphery of permanent magnet train 104, a magnetic induction core 100 is arranged and a coil 102 is wound around magnetic induction core 100.

As permanent magnet train 104 rotates, the magnetic field produced in the coil by permanent magnet train 104 changes to cause induced current to flow through coil 102. This induced current allows coil 102 to generate a magnetic field 110 which causes a repulsive force exerted on permanent magnet train 104 in the direction which interferes the rotation of the magnet train.

For example, in the example shown in Fig. 6, the S pole of magnetic field 110 faces permanent magnet train 104. The S pole of permanent magnet train 104 approaches coil 102 because of rotation of permanent magnet train 104, resulting in the repulsive force as described above.

If reverse current flows in a responsive coil of an armature wound around a magnetic induction core of a generator so that the resulting load hinders the rotor from rotating, reverse magnetic field of the armature responsive coil becomes stronger in proportion to the electricity output and accordingly a load corresponding to at least twice the instantaneous consumption could occur.

If electric power of 100W is used, for example, reverse magnetic field of at least 200W is generated so that an enormous amount of load affects the rotor to interfere the rotation of the rotor.

All of the conventional generators are subjected to not only a mechanical primary load, i.e. the load when the electric power is not consumed but a secondary load due to reverse current which is proportional to electric power consumption and consequently subjected to a load of at least twice the instantaneous consumption.

Such an amount of the load is a main factor of reduction of the electric power production efficiency, and solution of the problem above has been needed.

**DISCLOSURE OF THE INVENTION**

One object of the present invention is to provide a generator capable of generating electric power with high efficiency by cancelling out the secondary load except the mechanical load of the generator, i.e. cancelling out the load which is generated due to reverse current of a responsive coil of an armature wound around a magnetic induction core, so as to entirely prevent the secondary load from being exerted.
In short, the present invention is applied to a load-free generator including a rotational axis, a first ring magnet train, a second ring magnet train, a first plurality of first magnetic induction primary cores, a first plurality of second magnetic induction primary cores, a first responsive coil, and a second responsive coil.

The first ring magnet train has N poles and S poles successively arranged on an outer periphery of a first rotational orbit about the rotational axis. The second ring magnet train has magnets successively arranged on an outer periphery of a second rotational orbit about the rotational axis at a predetermined distance from the first rotational orbit such that the polarities of the magnets on the second rotational orbit are opposite to the polarities at opposite locations on the first rotational orbit respectively. The first plurality of first magnetic induction primary cores are fixed along a first peripheral surface of the first ring magnet train at a predetermined distance from the first peripheral surface. The first plurality of second magnetic induction primary cores are fixed along a second peripheral surface of the second ring magnet train at a predetermined distance from the second peripheral surface. A first plurality of first coupling magnetic induction cores and a first plurality of second coupling magnetic induction cores are provided in pairs to form a closed magnetic circuit between the first and second magnetic induction primary cores opposite to each other in the direction of the rotational axis. The first responsive coil is wound around the first coupling magnetic induction core. The second responsive coil is wound around the second coupling magnetic induction core, the direction of winding of the second responsive coil being reversed relative to the first responsive coil.

Preferably, in the load-free generator of the invention, the first ring magnet train includes a permanent magnet train arranged along the outer periphery of the first rotational orbit, and the second ring magnet train includes a permanent magnet train arranged along the outer periphery of the second rotational orbit.

Still preferably, the load-free generator of the present invention further includes a first plurality of first magnetic induction secondary cores provided on respective outer peripheries of the first magnetic induction primary cores and each having first and second coupling holes, and a first plurality of second magnetic induction secondary cores provided on respective outer peripheries of the second magnetic induction primary cores and each having third and fourth coupling holes. The first coupling magnetic induction cores are inserted into the first and third coupling holes to couple the first and second magnetic induction secondary cores, and the second coupling magnetic induction cores are inserted into the second and fourth coupling holes to couple the first and second magnetic induction secondary cores.

Alternatively, the load-free generator of the present invention preferably has a first plurality of first responsive coils arranged in the rotational direction about the rotational aids that are connected zigzag to each other and a first plurality of second responsive coils arranged in the rotational direction about the rotational axis that are connected zigzag to each other.

Alternatively, in the load-free generator of the present invention, preferably the first plurality is equal to 8, and the 8 first responsive coils arranged in the rotational direction about the rotational axis are connected zigzag to each other, and the 8 second responsive coils arranged in the rotational direction about the rotational axis are connected zigzag to each other.

Accordingly, a main advantage of the present invention is that two responsive coils wound respectively in opposite directions around a paired iron cores are connected to cancel reverse magnetic forces generated by reverse currents (induced currents) flowing through the two responsive coils, so that the secondary load which interferes the rotation of the rotor is totally prevented and thus a load-free generator can be provided which is subjected to just a load which is equal to or less than mechanical load when electric power production is not done, i.e. the rotational load even when the generator is operated to the maximum.

Another advantage of the present invention is that the reverse magnetic force, as found in the conventional generators, due to reverse current occurring when the rotor rotates is not generated, and accordingly load of energy except the primary gravity of the rotor and dynamic energy of the rotor is eliminated to increase the amount of electricity output relative to the conventional electric power generation system and thus enhance the electric power production and economic efficiency.

**BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS**
Fig. 1 is a cross sectional view of a rotating-field type generator according to an embodiment of the present invention illustrating an arrangement a permanent magnet, magnetic induction cores and coils.

Fig. 2 is a partial schematic view illustrating a magnetic array of the permanent magnet rotor and an arrangement of one of magnetically responsive coils placed around that rotor in an embodiment of the present invention.

Fig. 3 illustrates a structure of the magnetically responsive coils and cores in the embodiment of the present invention.
Fig. 3 is an enlarged plan view of magnetically sensitive cores and coil portions of the load-free generator of the present invention illustrating magnetic flow therethrough.

Fig. 4 is an exploded view about a central axis showing the interconnection of magnetic field coils which are respectively wound around tertiary cores surrounding the permanent magnet rotor in FIG. 1 according to the present invention.

Fig. 5 is an exploded view about a central axis showing the interconnection of magnetic field coils which are respectively wound around tertiary cores surrounding the permanent magnet rotor in FIG. 1 according to the present invention.
Fig. 6 illustrates generation of the secondary load in a conventional generator.
BEST MODES FOR CARRYING OUT THE INVENTION

The structure and operation of a load-free generator according to the present invention are now described in conjunction with the drawings.

Fig.1 illustrates a cross sectional structure of the load-free generator of the invention perpendicular to a rotational axis 3.

Fig.2 partially illustrates a cross sectional structure of the load-free generator of the invention in parallel to rotational axis 3. Specifically, in Fig.2, only one of eight sets of magnetic induction primary cores 4 and 4' arranged around rotational axis 3 as described below is representatively shown.

Referring to Fig.1 and Fig.2, the structure of the load-free generator of the invention is now described. Permanent magnet trains 2 and 2' in ring forms are attached and fixed to respective left and right orbits 1 and 1' provided relative to rotational axis 3 with a certain interval between them. Permanent magnet trains 2 and 2' are fixed onto left and right orbits 1 and 1' respectively such that the polarities on the outer peripheral surface of each magnet train relative to the rotational axis are alternately N poles and S poles. The permanent magnet trains are rotatable about the axis. Further, the facing polarities of respective permanent magnet train 2 and permanent magnet train 2' relative to the direction of rotational axis 3 are arranged to be opposite.
As shown in **Fig.2**, rotational axis 3 and a case 9 are joined by a bearing 10 at a certain distance from the permanent magnet trains 2 and 2'.

At a predetermined distance from permanent magnet trains 2 and 2', magnetic induction primary cores 4 and 4' with respective coils wound around them are fixed to case 9.

In addition, magnetic induction secondary cores 5 and 5' each having two coupling holes 6 and 6' formed therein are structured by stacking and coupling a plurality of thin cores attached and fixed to magnetic induction primary cores 4 and 4' respectively and the secondary cores are attached and fixed to case 9.

Magnetic induction tertiary cores 8 and 8' are inserted respectively into coupling holes 6 and 6' of magnetic induction secondary cores 5 and 5' so as to couple magnetic induction secondary cores 5 and 5' of each other.

Responsive coils 7 and 7' are wound in opposite directions to each other around respective magnetic induction cores 8 and 8'.

**Fig.3** illustrates a structure formed of magnetic induction secondary cores 5 and 5', magnetic induction cores 8 and 8' and responsive coils 7 and 7' viewed in the direction perpendicular to rotational axis 3.

As explained above, the directions of windings of responsive coils 7 and 7' are respectively opposite to each other around magnetic induction cores 8 and 8' which couple magnetic induction secondary cores 5 and 5'.

In the structure described in conjunction with **Fig.1**, **Fig.2** and **Fig.3**, when rotational axis 3 of the generator rotates, permanent magnetic trains 2 and 2' accordingly rotate to generate magnetically sensitive currents (electromagnetically induced current) in responsive coils 7 and 7' and the current thus produced can be drawn out for use.
As shown in Fig.3, the coils are wound about magnetic induction cores 8 and 8' respectively in the opposite directions in the generator of the present invention, and the directions of the magnetic fields generated by the flow of the induced currents are arranged such that the N pole and S pole alternately occurs around rotational axis 3.

Fig.4 illustrates magnetic fields induced in a set of magnetic induction secondary cores 5 and 5', magnetic induction cores 8 and 8' and responsive coils 7 and 7'.

At iron strips on both ends of respective magnetic induction secondary cores 5 and 5', a reverse current magnetic field is generated by responsive coil 7 upon the rotation of N and S poles of permanent magnet trains 2 and 2' is in the direction of MA shown in Fig.4, for example, while a reverse current magnetic field generated by responsive coil 7 is in the direction of MB in Fig.4. Consequently, the reverse magnetic fields generated by the flow of currents cancel each other. The cores are formed of a plurality of iron strips in order to eliminate heat generated by eddy currents.

The magnetic field of the rotor thus has no dependence on the flow of currents, the load caused by the induced magnetisation phenomenon disappears, and energy of movement necessary for rotation against the mechanical primary load of the rotor itself is applied to the rotor.
At this time, a magnetic circuit including magnetic induction secondary cores 5 and 5' and magnetic induction tertiary cores 8 and 8' should be shaped into "quadrature." form. If the circuit does not structured as "quadrature." form, a part of the reverse magnetic field functions as electrical force which hinders the rotational force of the rotor.

Further, permanent magnet trains 2 and 2' of the rotor are arranged to have opposite poles to each other on the left and right sides as shown in Fig.2 so as to constitute the flow of magnetic flux. Each rotor has alternately arranged magnets, for example, eight poles are provided to enhance the generator efficiency.

More detailed description of the operational principle is given now. When the rotor in Fig.1 rotates once, S and N poles of permanent magnets 2 and 2' attached to the periphery of the rotor successively supply magnetic fields to induction primary cores 4 above, and magnetic field is accordingly generated in a path from one orbit of the rotor along induction primary core 4, induction secondary core 5, induction tertiary core 8, induction secondary core 5', induction primary core 4' to the other orbit of the rotor as shown in Fig.2.

Accordingly, current flows in the coils affected by this electric field to generate electric power. For example, if the generated power is used as generated output for switching on an electric light or for using it as motive energy, the current flowing through the coils generates the reverse magnetic fields. However, this reverse magnetic fields do not influence permanent magnets 2 and 2' attached to the rotor in Fig.2 since the reverse magnetic fields of the same magnitude respectively of S and N or N and S on both ends of magnetic induction secondary cores 5 and 5' cancel out each other as shown in Fig.4. Because of this, the rotor is in a no-load state in which any resistance except the weight of the rotor itself and dynamic resistance is not exerted on the rotor.

Fig.5 illustrates a manner of connecting magnetically responsive coils 7 and 7' wound around magnetic induction tertiary cores 8 and 8' with eight poles.

Referring to Fig.5, according to a method of connecting magnetically responsive coils 7 and 7', line 1a1 of responsive coil 7' (one drawn-out line of the wire coiled around a first magnetic induction core 8) is connected to line 1a2' (one drawn-out line of the wire coiled around a second magnetic induction core 8), and then line 1a2 (the other drawn-out line of the wire coiled around a second magnetic induction core 8) is connected to line 1a3', and subsequently lines 1a and 1a' are connected successively in zigzag manner to allow current to flow. Further, responsive coil 7 is arranged to connect lines represented by 1b1 in zigzag manner such that lines 1b and 1b' are successively connected. In this way, lines 1b, 1b' and lines 1a and 1a' of respective magnetically responsive coils 7 and 7' are connected. As a whole, total four electric wires are drawn out for use.
When electric power is to be generated according to the present invention as described above, specifically, a closed circuit is formed by responsive coils 7 and 7', electric currents are induced in responsive coils 7 and 7' wound around the magnetic induction cores of the generator, and the induced magnetic fields produced respectively by responsive coils 7 and 7' could cause a great load which interferes the rotational force of the rotor. However, as shown in Fig.4, the direction of convolution of one coil 7 is opposite to that of the other coil 7' so that the magnetic force generated by the reverse currents (induced currents) in responsive coils 7 and 7' wound around magnetic induction core 4 is not transmitted to magnetic induction cores 8 and 8 accordingly no reverse magnetic force is transmitted to permanent magnets 2 and 2'.

Therefore, each time the N poles and S poles alternate with each other because of the alternation of permanent magnets 2 and 2' shown in Fig.2, the reverse magnetic forces in the right and left direction opposite to the direction of arrows denoted by MA and MB completely disappear as shown in Fig.4. Consequently, the reverse magnetic forces caused by the reverse currents are not influenced by permanent magnets 2 and 2' and accordingly no load except the mechanical primary load is exerted on the generator of the invention.

As discussed above, the load-free generator of the present invention, secondary load except mechanical load of the generator, i.e. the load caused by the reverse currents flowing through the responsive coils can be nulled. With regard to this load-free generator, even if 100% of the current generated by magnetic induction (electromagnetic induction) is used, the magnetic secondary load due to the reverse currents except the mechanical primary load does not serve as load.

Although the number of poles of the rotor is described as 8 in the above description, the present invention is not limited to such a structure, and the invention can exhibit its effect when the smaller or greater number of poles is applied.

Further, although the magnet of the rotor is described as the permanent magnet in the above structure, the invention is not limited to such a case and the magnet of the rotor may be an electromagnet, for example.

In addition, although the description above is applied to the structure of the rotating-field type generator, the generator may be of the rotating-armature type.

**EXPERIMENTAL EXAMPLE**

More detailed description of the generator of the present invention is hereinafter given based on specific experimental examples of the invention.

The generator of the present invention and a conventional generator were used to measure the electric power production efficiency and the amount of load and compare the resultant measurements.

**EXPERIMENTAL EXAMPLE 1**

A 12-pole alternating current (AC) generator for battery charging was used, and the electricity output and the load when 50% of the electricity output was used as well as those when 100% of the electricity output was used were measured. The generator above is a single-phase AC motor and the employed power source was 220V, with 1750 rpm and the efficiency of 60%. The result of measurement using power of a motor of 0.5HP and ampere .times.volt gauge is shown in Table 1.

**EXPERIMENTAL EXAMPLE 2**

Measurement was done under the same conditions as those of experimental example 1 and a generator used was the one which was made according to the present invention to have the same conditions as those of the product of the existing model above. The result of measurement using ampere x volt gauge is shown in Table 1.
Table 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Generator</th>
<th>Electricity Output (Watts)</th>
<th>Amount of Load (Watts)</th>
<th>Electricity Output (Watts)</th>
<th>Amount of Load (Watts)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Conventional:</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>221</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>347</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This invention:</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>220</td>
<td>183</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(electricity output and load amount of the alternating current generators when 50% and 100% of the electricity were used)

From the result of Experimental Example 1 above, the reason for the remarkable reduction of the electricity output when the electricity consumption was 100% relative to the electricity consumption of 50% in the conventional generator is considered to be the significant increase of the repulsive load exerted on the generator when 100% of the electricity is used.

On the other hand, in the generator of the present invention, there was no appreciable difference in the amount of load between those cases in which 50% of the electricity was used and 100% thereof was used respectively. Rather, the amount of load slightly decreased (approximately 20W) when 100% of the electricity was used. In view of this, it can be understood that the amount of generated electric power of the generator of the present invention is approximately doubled as the electricity consumption increases, which is different from the conventional generator producing electric power which sharply decreases when the electricity consumption increases.

In conclusion, the amount of load above is supposed to be numerical value relative to the mechanical load of the generator as described above. Any secondary load except this, i.e. load due to the reverse currents generated in the armature responsive coils can be confirmed as zero.

**EXPERIMENTAL EXAMPLE 3**

12V direct current (DC) generators having similar conditions to those in experimental example 1 were used to make measurement under the same conditions (efficiency 80%). The result of the measurement is presented below.

Table 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Generator</th>
<th>Electricity Output (Watts)</th>
<th>Amount of Load (Watts)</th>
<th>Electricity Output (Watts)</th>
<th>Amount of Load (Watts)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Conventional:</td>
<td>103</td>
<td>290</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This invention:</td>
<td>107</td>
<td>282</td>
<td>236</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(electricity output and load amount of the alternating current generators when 50% and 100% of the electricity were used)

The DC generator has higher efficiency (80%) than that of the AC generator, while use of the brush increases the cost of the DC generator. When 100% of the electricity was used, the amount of load slightly decreased which was similar to the result shown in Table 1 and the electricity output was approximately at least 2.2 times that when 50% of the electricity was used.

**EXPERIMENTAL EXAMPLE 4**

A 220V single-phase alternating current (AC) generator (0.5HP) having similar conditions to those in experimental example 1 was used, and the rotation per minute (rpm) was changed to make measurement under the condition of 100% consumption of the generated electricity. The result of measurement is illustrated in the following Table 3.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>rpm</th>
<th>Electricity Output (Watts)</th>
<th>Amount of Load (Watts)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1750</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3600</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5100</td>
<td>307</td>
<td>342</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(amounts of generated electric power and load when the rotation per minute of the generator of the present invention was varied)
As shown in Table 3 above, as the rotation per minute (rpm) increases as from 1750, 3600 to 5100, the amount of electric power increases respectively from 130, 210 to 307W and consequently the difference between the amount of generated electric power and the amount of load decreases to cause relative decrease of the amount of load as the rotation per minute (rpm) increases.

EXPERIMENTAL EXAMPLE 5
Measurement was done by changing the number of N and S poles of the permanent magnets of the invention under the same conditions as those of experimental example 1 and under the condition that 100% of the generated electricity was used.

The result of the measurement is illustrated below.

Table 4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2 poles</th>
<th>4 poles</th>
<th>8 poles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Electricity Output (Watts)</td>
<td>Amount of Load (Watts)</td>
<td>Electricity Output (Watts)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>152</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(amounts of generated electric power and load when the number of poles of the permanent magnets of the generator of the invention was changed)

From Table 4 above, it can be understood that as the number of poles increases, both of the amounts of generated electric power and load increase. However, the ratio of the amount of generated electric power to the amount of load monotonously increases. In the table above, in terms of the amount of load, only the mechanical primary load is exerted and electrical secondary is not exerted.

The increase of the number of poles causes increase, by the number of increased poles, in the number of lines of magnetic flux which coils traverse, and accordingly the electromotive force increases to increase the amount of generated electric power. On the other hand, the amount of mechanical load has a constant value regardless of the increase of the number of poles, so that the mechanical load amount relatively decreases to reduce the difference between the amount of load and the amount of generated electric power.

Detailed description of the present invention which has been given above is just for the purpose of presenting example and illustration, not for limitation. It will dearly be appreciated that the spirit and scope of the invention will be limited only by the attached scope of claims.
CONTINUOUS ELECTRICAL GENERATOR

This patent application shows the details of a device which it is claimed, can produce sufficient electricity to power both itself and external loads. It also has no moving parts.

ABSTRACT
A stationary cylindrical electromagnetic core, made of one piece thin laminations stacked to desired height, having closed slots radially distributed, where two three-phase winding arrangements are placed together in the same slots, one to the centre, one to the exterior, for the purpose of creating a rotational electromagnetic field by temporarily applying a three-phase current to one of the windings, and by this means, inducting a voltage on the second one, in such a way that the outgoing energy is a lot greater than the input. A return will feedback the system and the temporary source is then disconnected. The generator will run by itself indefinitely, permanently generating a great excess of energy.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION
1. Field of the Invention
The present invention relates generally to electrical power generating systems. More specifically, the present invention relates to self-feeding electrical power generating units.

2. Description of Related Art
Since Nikola Tesla invented and patented his Polyphase System for Generators, Induction Motors and Transformers, no essential improvement has been made in the field. The generators would produce the polyphase voltages and currents by means of mechanical rotational movement in order to force a magnetic field to rotate across the generator's radially spaced windings. The basis of the induction motor system was to create an electro-magnetically rotating field, instead of a mechanically rotated magnetic field, which would induce voltages and currents to generate electromotive forces usable as mechanical energy or power. Finally, the transformers would manipulate the voltages and currents to make them feasible for their use and transmission for long distances.

In all present Electric Generators a small amount of energy, normally less than one percent of the outgoing power in big generators, is used to excite the mechanically rotated electromagnetic poles that will induce voltages and currents in conductors having a relative speed or movement between them and the polar masses.

The rest of the energy used in the process of obtaining electricity, is needed to move the masses and to overcome the losses of the system: mechanical losses; friction losses; brushes losses; windage losses; armature reaction losses; air gap losses; synchronous reactance losses; eddy current losses; hysteresis losses, all of which, in conjunction, are responsible for the excess in power input (mechanical power) required to generate always smaller amounts of electric power.
SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The Continuous Electrical Generator consists of a stationary cylindrical electromagnetic core made of one piece thin laminations stacked together to form a cylinder, where two three-phase windings arrangements are placed in the same slots not having any physical relative speed or displacement between them. When one of the windings is connected to a temporary three-phase source, an electromagnetic rotating field is created, and the field this way created will cut the stationary coils of the second winding, inducting voltages and currents. In the same way and extent as in common generators, about one percent or less of the outgoing power will be needed to keep the rotational magnetic field excited.

In the Continuous Electrical Generator there are no mechanical losses; friction losses; brush losses; windage losses; armature reaction losses; or air gap losses, because there is not any movement of any kind. There are: synchronous reactance losses, eddy current losses and hysteresis losses, which are inherent to the design, construction and the materials of the generator, but in the same extent as in common generators.

One percent or less of the total energy produced by present electric generators goes to create their own magnetic field; a mechanical energy that exceeds the total output of present generators is used to make them rotate in the process of extracting electrical currents from them. In the Continuous Electrical Generator there is no need for movement since the field is in fact already rotating electro-magnetically, so all that mechanical energy will not be needed. Under similar conditions of exciting currents, core mass and windings design, the Continuous Electrical Generator is significantly more efficient than present generators, which also means that it can produce significantly more than the energy it needs to operate. The Continuous Electrical Generator can feedback the system, the temporary source may be disconnected and the Generator will run indefinitely.

As with any other generator, the Continuous Electrical Generator may excite its own electromagnetic field with a minimum part of the electrical energy produced. The Continuous Electrical Generator only needs to be started up by connecting its inducting three-phase windings to a three-phase external source for an instant, and then to be disconnected, to start the system as described herein. Then, disconnected, it will run indefinitely generating a great excess of electric power to the extent of its design.

The Continuous Electrical Generator can be designed and calculated with all mathematical formulas in use today to design and calculate electrical generators and motors. It complies with all of the laws and parameters used to calculate electrical induction and generation of electricity today.

Except for the Law of Conservation of Energy, which, by itself, is not a mathematical equation but a theoretical concept and by the same reason does not have any role in the mathematical calculation of an electrical generator of any type, the Continuous Electrical Generator complies with all the Laws of Physics and Electrical Engineering. The Continuous Electrical Generator obligates us to review the Law of Conservation of Energy. In my personal belief, the electricity has never come from the mechanical energy that we put into a machine to move the masses against all oppositions. The mechanical system is actually providing the path for the condensation of electricity. The Continuous Electrical Generator provides a more efficient path for the electricity.
DESCRIPTION OF DRAWINGS

Fig. 1 shows one embodiment of the present invention.

FIG. 1
Fig. 2 shows an internal wiring diagram for the embodiment of the present invention shown in Fig. 1.

**FIG. 2**

Fig. 3 shows a single laminate for an alternate embodiment of the present invention.

**FIG. 3**
Fig. 4 shows a two-piece single laminate for another alternate embodiment of the present invention.
Fig. 5 shows a wiring diagram for an embodiment of the present invention constructed from the laminate shown in Fig. 3 or Fig. 4.

**FIG. 5**

Fig. 6 shows the magnetic flux pattern produced by the present invention.

**FIG. 6**
Fig. 7 shows the rotational magnetic field patterns produced by the present invention.

**FIG. 7**
Fig. 8 shows the complete system of the present invention.

**FIG. 8**

Fig. 9 is an expanded view of the alternate embodiment of the present invention shown in Fig. 3 or Fig. 4.

**FIG. 9**

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION
The present invention is a Continuous and Autonomous Electrical Generator, capable of producing more energy than it needs to operate, and which provides itself the energy needed to operate. The basic idea consists in the induction of electric voltages and currents without any physical movement by the use of a rotational magnetic field created by a three-phase stator connected temporarily to a three-phase source, and placing stationary conductors on the path of said rotational magnetic field, eliminating the need of mechanical forces.

The basic system can be observed in Fig. 1, which shows one embodiment of the present invention. There is a stationary ferromagnetic core 1 with a three-phase inducting windings 3, spaced 120 degrees and connected in Y 6 in order to provide a rotating electromagnetic field, when a three-phase voltage is applied; for the case, a two-pole arrangement. Inside this core 1 there is a second stationary ferromagnetic core 2, with no space between them, this is, with no air-gap. This second core 2 has also a three-phase stationary winding arrangement (4a in Fig. 4b and 4b in Fig. 2), aligned as shown in Fig. 1 and Fig. 2 with the external core inducting windings 3. There is not any movement between the two cores, since there is no air-gap between them.

There is no shaft on either core since these are not rotating cores. The two cores can be made of stacked insulated laminations or of insulated compressed and bonded ferromagnetic powder. The system works either way, inducting three-phase voltages and currents on the stationary conductors 4a of the internal windings 4b, applying three-phase currents to terminals A 5a, B 5b and C 5c of the external windings 3; or inducting three-phase voltages and currents on the external windings 3, by applying three-phase currents to the terminals T1 7a, T2 7b and T3 7c, of the internal windings 4b. When a three-phase voltage is applied to terminals A 5a, B 5b and C 5c, the currents will have the same magnitude, but will be displaced in time by an angle of 120 degrees. These currents produce magneto motive-forces, which, in turn, create a rotational magnetic flux. The arrangements may vary widely as they occur with present alternators and three-phase motors, but the basics remain the same, a stationary but electro-magnetically rotating magnetic field, inducting voltages and currents on the stationary conductors placed on the path of said rotating magnetic field. The diagram is showing a two-pole arrangement for both windings, but many other arrangements may be used, as in common generators and motors.
Fig. 2 shows the three-phase arrangement of the internal winding 4b which has provided, in practice, symmetrical voltages and currents, due to a space angle of 120 degrees. It is similar to a two-pole arrangement. Many other three-phase or poly-phase arrangements may be used. Wherever a conductor is crossed by a rotational magnetic field, a voltage will be induced across its terminals. The interconnections depend on the use that we will give to the system. In this case, we will have a three-phase voltage in terminals T1 7a, T2 7b and T3 7c and a neutral 8. The outgoing voltage depends on the density of the rotational magnetic flux, the number of turns of the conductor, the frequency (instead of the speed) and the length of the conductor crossed by the field, as in any other generator.

Fig. 3 shows an alternate embodiment of the present invention in which the generator is made from multiple one-piece laminations 9, stacked as a cylinder to the desired height. This embodiment can also be made of a one-piece block of compressed and bonded insulated ferromagnetic powder. The same slot 10 will accommodate the internal 4a/4b and the external windings 3, that is, the inducting and the induced windings (see Fig. 5). In this case, a 24-slot laminate is shown, but the number of slots may vary widely according to the design and needs.

Fig. 4 shows a two-piece single laminate for another alternate embodiment of the present invention. For practical effects the laminations can be divided into two pieces 9a, 9b, as shown, to facilitate the insertion of the coils. Then, they are solidly assembled without separation between them, as if they were only one piece.

The laminates described above may be constructed with thin (0.15 mm thick or less) insulated laminations 9 or 9a and 9b of a high magnetic permeability material and low hysteresis losses such as Hiperco 50A, or similar, to reduce losses or with compressed electrically isolated ferromagnetic powder, which has lower eddy current losses and also may have low hysteresis losses, which can make the generator highly efficient.
OPERATING THE GENERATOR

The Continuous Electrical Generator as described and shown in the following drawings is designed and calculated to produce a strong rotating electromagnetic field with low exciting currents. By using a laminated material, such as the said Hiperco 50A, we can achieve rotating magnetic fields above two Teslas, since there are no air gap losses, mechanical losses, windage losses, armature reaction losses, etc. as said before. This may be obtained by applying a temporary three-phase current to the terminals A, B and C 12 of the inducting coils 13, 14 and 15 (5a, 5b and 5c in Fig.1), spaced 120 degrees from each other (see Fig.5).

Fig.5 shows the spatial distribution of the inducting windings 13, 14 and 15, as well as the induced windings 18a, 18b, 19a, 19b, 20a and 20b. Both, the inducting and the induced windings are placed in the same slots 10 or 16 and 17, with similar arrangements. Even though the system works in both directions, the better configuration seems to be to place the inducting windings 13, 14 and 15, to the centre and the induced windings 18a, 18b, 19a, 19b, 20a and 20b, to the exterior, since small windings will be needed to induce a very strong rotational magnetic field, due to the small losses involved in the process, and in exchange, bigger and powerful windings will be needed to extract all the energy that the system will provide. Both windings are connected in Y (not shown), but they can be connected in different ways, as any other generator. These arrangements are equivalent to the arrangements shown for the embodiment in Fig.1 and Fig.2.

The inducting coils 13, 14 and 15 are designed and calculated so that the generator may be started with common three-phase lines voltages (230 Volts 60 Hz per phase, for example). If the local lines voltages are not appropriate, we can control the voltage to the designed level by means of a three-phase variable transformer, an electronic variator or inverter etc. Once we have such strong magnetic field rotating and crossing the stationary induced coils 18a, 18b, 19a, 19b, 20a and 20b, a three-phase voltage will be induced across terminals T1, T2, T3 and N 21 in proportion to the magnetic flux density, the number of turns in the coils, the frequency used (instead of the speed), the length of the conductors cut by the rotating field, as in any other alternator. We can connect, as we desire in Y or delta, etc., as in any other alternator or generator. The outgoing currents will be three-phase currents (or poly-phase currents depending on the arrangement) and we can have a neutral 21 if we are using a Y connection, as in any other alternator.

The outgoing alternate voltages and currents are perfect sinusoidal waves, perfectly spaced in time, and totally symmetrical. The voltages and currents obtained by this method are usable in any conventional manner. Any voltage can be produced, depending on the design.

Fig.6 shows the magnetic flux pattern produced by the three-phase inducting windings 13, 14 and 15. This pattern is similar to the pattern of an induction motor's stators. Since there is no air gap; the whole path for the magnetic flux is homogeneous with no change in materials. The core is made of thin insulated laminations of a high magnetic permeability and low hysteresis loss material; eddy current losses are minimal due to the thin lamination. There are no counter fluxes or armature reactions thus the magnetic flux may be near to saturation with a small exciting current or input energy. Due to the time differential between the three phases and the spatial distribution of the inducting windings, a rotational magnetic field will be created in the core, as shown in Fig.7.
Once the generator is started, a small part of the energy obtained is sent back (Fig.8 and Fig.9) to feed the inducting coils 3 (in Fig.1) or 13, 14 and 15 (in Fig.5), as in any other auto-excited alternator or generator. Of course voltages and phases should be perfectly identical and aligned, and if necessary the feedback voltages should be controlled and handled by means of variable transformers, electronic variators, phase shifters (to align phases) or other type of voltage or phase controllers.

One possible method consists of the use of an electronic converter or variator 25 which initially converts two or three lines of alternating current 24 to direct current by an electronic rectifier 26 and then, electronically, converts the direct current 27 to three-phase current 28 to supply three-phase currents spaced in time 120 degrees for the electromagnetic fields A, B and C 3. Some variators or converters can accept two lines of voltage, while others will accept only a three-phase line voltage. This embodiment uses a variator of 3 kVA that accepts two 220-volt lines.

The rotational magnetic field created by the currents going through the inducting three-phase windings 13, 14 and 15, will induce a voltage across the terminals T1, T2, T3, N, 29 (7a, 7b, 7c, 8 in Fig.2). Then, from the outgoing current lines 29, a derivation is made 30 to feed back the system, converting the feedback alternate currents, by means of electronic diode rectifiers 31, to direct current 32 and then feed back the electronic converter or variator 25 to the DC terminals of the electronic rectifier 26 (See Fig.8). Once the feedback is connected, the Continuous Electrical Generator may be disconnected from the temporary source 24, and will continue generating electric energy indefinitely.

In Fig.9, an alternate embodiment of the Continuous Electrical Generator can be observed. The basic principles remain the same as for the embodiment described above and shown in Fig.1 and Fig.2. The basic differences are in the shape of the laminations and the physical distribution of the windings, as discussed and shown previously. A variation of the feedback, using a variable and shifting transformers is also shown.

The ferromagnetic core 11 is made of one-piece laminates 9 as shown in Fig.3 (or two for convenience 9a, 9b as shown in Fig.4) stacked to the desired height. The slots 10, as indicated before, will accommodate both the inducting 13, 14 and 15 and the induced 18a-b, 19a-b and 20a-b windings in the same slot 10 or 16 and 17. The incoming three phase lines 12 feed the inducting three-phase windings 13, 14 and 15. They are fed, initially by the temporary source 33 in the first instance, and by the three-phase return 34 once the generator is running by itself.

The inducting windings 13, 14 and 15 have a two-pole arrangement, but many other three-phase or poly-phase arrangements can be made to obtain an electromagnetic rotating field. These windings are connected in Y (not shown) in the same way shown for the embodiment shown in Fig.1, Fig.2 and Fig.8, but may be connected in many different ways. The inducting windings 13, 14 and 15 are located in the internal portion 16 of the slot 10 (Fig.5).

The induced windings 18a-b, 19a-b and 20a-b have a two-pole arrangement, exactly equal to the arrangement for the inducting windings 13, 14 and 15, but many other arrangements can be made depending on the design and the needs. The induced windings must be calculated in a way that the generator will have the lowest possible synchronous reactance and resistance. In this way, most of the outgoing power will go to the charge instead of staying to overcome the internal impedance. These windings are connected in Y to generate a neutral 21, in the same way shown in the embodiment of the present invention shown in Fig.2, but may be connected in different ways according to the needs. The induced windings 18a-b, 19a-b and 20a-b are located in the external portion 17 of the slot 10.

The outgoing three-phase and neutral lines 21 come from the induced windings 18a-b, 19a-b and 20a-b. The rotational magnetic field created in the core (see Fig.6 & Fig.7) by the inducting windings 13, 14 and 15, induces a voltage across the terminals T1, T2 and T3, plus a neutral, 29. From each of the three-phase outgoing lines 21, a return derivation 34 is made to feedback the system.

The temporary three-phase source 33 is temporarily connected to terminals A, B and C 12. The Continuous Electrical Generator must be started with an external three-phase source for an instant, and then disconnected.

Even though the return lines voltage can be calculated and obtained precisely by tabbing the induced windings at the voltage required by the inducting windings (according to the design), it may be convenient to place a three-phase variable transformer or other type of voltage controller 35 in the middle for more precise adjustment of the return voltage.
Placed after the variable transformer 35, the three-phase shifting transformer 36 will correct and align any phase shift in the voltage and currents angles, before the return is connected. This system functions similarly to the system shown in Fig.8 which uses a variator or a converter 25.

Once the voltage and phases are aligned with the temporary source 33, the return lines 34 are connected to the incoming lines A, B and C 12 at feedback connection 37 and the temporary source 33 is then disconnected. The Continuous Electrical Generator will remain working indefinitely without any external source of energy, providing a great excess of energy permanently.

The outgoing electric energy provided by this system has been used to produce light and heat, run poly-phase motors, generate usable mono-phase and poly-phase voltages and currents, transform voltages and currents by means of transformers, convert the alternate outgoing poly-phase currents to direct current, as well as for other uses. The electricity obtained by the means described is as versatile and perfect as the electricity obtained today with common electric generators. But the Continuous Electrical Generator is autonomous and does not depend on any other source of energy but itself once it is running; may be carried anywhere with no limitations; it can be constructed in any size and provides any amount of electricity indefinitely, according to the design.

The Continuous Electrical Generator is and will be a very simple machine. The keystones of the systems reside in the ultra-low losses of a non-movement generation system, and in a very low synchronous reactance design.

The induced windings must be calculated in a way that the generator may have the lowest possible synchronous reactance and resistance. In this way, most of the outgoing power will go to the charge instead of staying to overcome the internal impedance.
This patent application shows the details of a device which it is claimed, can produce electricity via a solid-state oscillator. It should be noted that while construction details are provided which imply that the inventor constructed and tested several of these devices, this is only an application and not a granted patent.

**ABSTRACT**

A resonance oscillator electric power pack for operating a flash lamp, for example, or other electrically operated device, operates without moving mechanical parts or electrolytic action. The power pack is contained in a cylindrical metal envelope and in a preferred embodiment, is coupled to a relaxation oscillator and an incandescent lamp. Within the envelope, and insulated from it, is a semiconductor tablet having a metal base connected to the external circuit. A metal probe makes contact with a point on the semiconductor tablet and with a cylindrical ferrite rod, axially aligned with the envelope. Wound about the ferrite rod, are concentric helical coils designated as a ‘primary’ with many turns, and a ‘secondary’ with fewer turns than the primary.

One end of the primary coil is connected to the probe and the other end is connected to the secondary coil. The leads from the secondary coil are connected to the relaxation oscillator via an adjustable capacitor. Oscillation within the envelope is resonance amplified, and the induced voltage in the secondary coil is rectified for application to the relaxation oscillator and lamp. Selenium and germanium base semiconductor compositions including Te, Nd, Rb and Ga in varying proportions area used for the tablet.

**BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION**

This is a continuation-in-part of my co-pending patent application Serial No. 77,452, filed 2nd October 1970, entitled “Electric Power Pack” now abandoned.

In many situations it is desirable to have a source of electric power which is not dependent on wires from a central generating station, and therefore, portable power supplies having no moving parts have been employed. Typically, such portable power packs have been primary or secondary electrolytic cells which generate or store electrical energy for release by chemical action. Such batteries have a limited amount of contained energy and must often be replaced at frequent intervals to maintain equipment in operation.

Thus, as one example, flashing lights are commonly used along highways and other locations to warn of dangerous conditions. These flashing lights in remote locations are typically incandescent or gas-discharge lamps connected to some type of relaxation oscillator powered by a battery. The batteries employed in such blinking lights have a limited lifetime and must be periodically replaced, typically each 250 to 300 hours of operation. This involves a rather large labour cost in replacing the expended batteries with fresh ones and additional cost for primary cells or for recharging secondary cells. It is desirable to provide an electric power pack capable of providing a sufficient quantity of electrical energy over a prolonged period of time so that the requirement for periodic replacement of the electrolytic cells can be avoided. Such a power pack is valuable even if appreciably more expensive than batteries because of the greatly reduced labour costs required for periodic replacements.

**BRIEF SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION**

There is provided in practice of this invention according to a preferred embodiment, semiconductive compositions selected from the Group consisting of:

Selenium with, from 4.85% to 5.5% Tellurium, from 3.95% to 4.2% Germanium, from 2.85% to 3.2% Neodymium, and from 2.0% to 2.5% Gallium.

Selenium with, from 4.8% to 5.5% Tellurium, from 3.9% to 4.5% Germanium, from 2.9% to 3.5% Neodymium and from 4.5% to 5% Rubidium, and

Germanium with, from 4.75% to 5.5% Tellurium, from 4.0% to 4.5% Neodymium and from 5.5% to 7.0% Rubidium.
DRAWINGS
These and other features and advantages of the invention will be appreciated and better understood by reference to the following detailed description of a preferred embodiment when considered in conjunction with the following drawings:

Fig. 1 illustrates in exploded schematic, a flashing lamp connected to an electric power supply constructed according to the principles of this invention.

Fig. 2 illustrates in longitudinal cross-section, the power pack of Fig. 1.
Fig. 3 is an electric circuit diagram of the system.

DESCRIPTION

Fig. 1 illustrates schematically, a typical flashing lamp having a power supply constructed according to the principles of this invention. As illustrated in this preferred embodiment, an electric power pack 5, is connected electrically to a relaxation oscillator circuit (shown only schematically) on a conventional printed-circuit board 6.

The power pack 5 and the printed-circuit board are mounted in a metal box 7, which has a transverse partial partition 8, which creates two spaces, one for the power pack and the other for the printed-circuit board which is prevented from contacting the metal box by any convenient insulating mounting. Preferably, these components are potted in place in a conventional manner.

A cover 9, having mounting lugs 10, is riveted on to the box after assembly. A small terminal strip 11, mounted on one side of the box 7, provides electrical contacts for connection to a load such as an incandescent lamp (not shown in Fig. 1). the lamp provides a flash of light when the relaxation oscillator switches. Although the described system is employed for a flashing lamp, it will be apparent that other loads may be powered by the invention.
In Fig.2, the electric power pack 10, is illustrated in longitudinal cross-section and has dimensions as follows: These dimensions are provided by way of example for powering a conventional flashing lamp and it will be clear that other dimensions may be used for other applications. In particular, the dimensions may be enlarged in order to obtain higher power levels and different voltage or current levels. The power pack is comprised of a cylindrical metal tube 16, having closely fitting metal caps 17 at each end, which are preferably sealed to the tube after the internal elements are inserted in place. The metal tube 16 and caps 17, which are preferably of aluminium, thus form a closed conductive envelope, which in a typical embodiment, has an inside diameter of about 0.8 inch and a length of about 2.25 inches.

Mounted within one end of the envelope is a plastic cup 18, the dimensions of which are not critical, however, a wall thickness of at least 1/16 inch is preferred. Mounted within the plastic cup 18 is a semiconductor tablet 19 having a flat base and somewhat domed opposite side. The composition of the semiconductor tablet 19 is set out in greater detail below. Typically, the semiconductor tablet has a mass of about 3.8 grams. A metal disc 21 is positioned beneath the base of the tablet 19 in the cup 18, and is preferably adhesively bonded inside the cup. The metal disc is tightly fitted to the base of the tablet so that good electrical contact is obtained over a substantial area of the semiconductor.

An ear 22 on one edge of the disc is soldered to a wire 23, which extends through a short insulating sleeve 24 which passes through a hole in the side of the metal envelope. The insulating sleeve 24 acts as a grommet and ensures that there is no damage to the insulation of wire 23 and subsequent accidental short circuiting between the wire and the metal envelope. Preferably, the insulating sleeve 24 is sealed with a small amount of plastic cement or the like, in order to maintain clean air within the cylindrical envelope. Two other openings for leads through the tube 16, as mentioned below, are also preferably sealed to maintain cleanliness within the envelope.

A pair of circular metal discs 26, are fitted inside tube 16 and are preferably cemented in place to prevent shifting. The two discs 26, are equally spaced from the opposite ends of the envelope and are spaced apart by slightly more than 1.15 inches. Each of the disc has a central aperture 27, and there is a plurality of holes 28, extending through the disc in a circular array midway between the centre of the disc and it’s periphery. The holes 28 are preferably in the size range of about 0.01 to 0.06 inch in diameter and there are 12 on each disc located at 30° intervals around the circle.

The two discs 26 divide the interior of the cylindrical envelope into three chambers, and the pattern of holes 28 provides communication between the chambers and affects the electrical properties of the cavity. It is believed that the pattern of holes affects the inductive coupling between the cavities inside the envelope and influences the oscillations in them.

Although an arrangement of 12 holes at 30° centres has been found particularly advantageous in the illustrated embodiment, it is found in other arrangements that a pattern of 20 holes at 18° centres or a pattern of 8 holes at 45° centres, provides optimum operation. In either case, the circle of holes 28 is midway between the centre and the periphery of the disc.

Mounted between the discs 26 is a plastic spool 29 which has an inside distance of 1.1 inches between its flanges. The plastic spool 29 preferably has relatively thin walls and an internal bore diameter of 1/8 inch. A plastic mounting plug 31, is inserted through the central aperture 27 of the disc 26 farthest from the semiconductor tablet 19, and into the bore of the spool 29. The plastic plug 31 is preferably cemented to the disc 26 in order to hold the assembly together.

Also mounted inside the bore of spool 29 is a cylindrical ferrite core 32, about 1/8 inch diameter and 3/4 inch long. Although a core of any magnetic ferrite is preferred, other ferromagnetic materials having similar properties can be used if desired. The core 32, is in electrical contact with a metal probe 33 about 1/4 inch long. Half of the length of the probe 33 is in the form of a cylinder positioned within the spool 29, and the other half is in the form of a cone ending in a point 34 in contact with the domed surface of the semiconductor tablet 19 where it makes an electrical contact with the semiconductor in a relatively small point.

Electrical contact is also made with the probe 33 by a lead 36, which passes through one of the holes 28 in the disc 26 nearer to the semiconductor tablet and thence to a primary coil 37, wound on the plastic spool 29. The primary coil 37 is in the form of 800 to 1000 turns wound along the length of the spool, and the lead 38 at the opposite end of the coil 37 is soldered to one of the external leads 39 of the power pack. This lead 39 proceeds through one of the holes 28 in the disc farthest from the semiconductor tablet 19, and through an insulating sleeve 41 in the metal tube 16.
The lead 39 is also connected to one end of a secondary coil 42 which is composed of 8 to 10 turns around the centre portion of the primary coil 37. A thin insulating sheet 43 is provided between the primary and secondary coils. The other lead 44 from the secondary coil passes through one of the holes 28 in the disk nearer the semiconductor tablet and thence through an insulating sleeve 46 through the wall of the tube 16.

Fig. 3 illustrates schematically, the electrical circuit employing an electric power pack constructed according to the principles of this invention. At the left hand side of Fig. 3, the arrangement of elements is illustrated in a combination of electrical schematic and mechanical position inside tube 16 for ready correlation with the embodiment illustrated in Fig. 2. Thus, the semiconductor tablet 19, probe 33 and ferrite core 32 are shown in both their mechanical and electrical arrangement, the core being inductively coupled to the coils 37 and 42. The lead 23 from the metal base of the semiconductor tablet 19, is connected to a variable capacitor 47, the other side of which is connected to the lead 44 from the secondary coil 42. The lead 44 is also connected to a rectifying diode 48 shunted by a high value resistor 49.

It will be seen that the variable capacitor 47 is in a tank circuit with the inductive coils 37 and 42 which are coupled by the ferrite core 32, and this circuit also includes the semiconductor tablet 19 to which point contact is made by the probe 33. The mechanical and electrical arrangement of these elements provides a resonant cavity in which resonance occurs when the capacitor 47 is properly trimmed. The diode 48, rectifies the oscillations in this circuit to provide a suitable DC for operating an incandescent lamp 50 or similar load.

The rectifying diode 48 is connected to a complementary-symmetry relaxation circuit for switching power to the load 50. The diode is connected directly to the collector of a PNP transistor 51 which is in an inverted connection. The emitter of the PNP transistor is connected to one side of the load 50 by way of a timing resistor 55. The base of the transistor 51 is connected by way of a resistor 52 and a capacitor 56 to the collector of an NPN transistor 53, the emitter of which is connected to the other side of the load 50. The base of the NPN transistor 53 is coupled to the diode by a resistor 54. The emitter of the PNP transistor 51 is fed back to the base of the NPN transistor 53 by the resistor 55. Current flow through the lamp 50 is also limited by a resistor 57 which couples one side of the lamp and the emitter of the NPN transistor 53 to the two coils 37 and 42 by way of the common lead 39.

The electrical power pack is believed to operate due to a resonance amplification once an oscillation has been initiated in the cavity, particularly the central cavity between the discs 26. This oscillation, which apparently rapidly reaches amplitudes sufficient for useful power, is then half-wave rectified for use by the diode 48. With such an arrangement, a voltage level of several volts has been obtained, and power sufficient for intermittent operation of a lamp requiring about 170 to 250 milliwatts has been demonstrated. The resonant amplification is apparently due to the geometrical and electrical combination of the elements, which provide inductive coupling of components in a suitable resonant circuit. This amplification is also, at least in part, due to unique semiconductor properties in the tablet 19, which has electronic properties due to a composition giving a unique atomic arrangement, the exact nature of which has not been measured.

The semiconductor tablet has electronic properties which are determined by its composition and three such semiconductors satisfactory for use in the combination have been identified. In two of these, the base semiconductor material is selenium provided with suitable dopant elements, and in the third, the base element is germanium, also suitably doped. The semiconductor tablets are made by melting and casting in an arrangement which gives a large crystal structure. It has not been found necessary to provide a selected crystal orientation in order to obtain the desired effects.

A preferred composition of the semiconductor includes about 5% by weight of tellurium, about 4% by weight of germanium, about 3% by weight of neodymium and about 4.7% by weight of rubidium, with the balance of the composition being selenium. Such a composition can be made by melting these materials together or by dissolving the materials in molten selenium.

Another highly advantageous composition has about 5% by weight of tellurium, about 4% by weight of germanium, about 3% by weight of neodymium, and about 2.24% by weight of gallium, with the balance being selenium. In order to make this composition, it is found desirable to add the very low melting point gallium in the form of gallium selenide rather than elemental gallium.

A third suitable composition has about 5% by weight of tellurium, about 4% by weight of neodymium, about 6% by weight of rubidium, with the balance being germanium. These preferred compositions are not absolute and it has been found that the level of dopant in the compositions can be varied within limits without significant loss of performance. Thus, it is found that the proportion of tellurium in the preferred composition can range from about 4.8% to about 5.5% by weight; the germanium can range from about 3.9% to 4.5% by weight; neodymium can range from about 2.9% to 3.5% by weight, and rubidium can vary from about 4.5% to 5.0% by weight. The
balance of the preferred composition is selenium although it has also been found that nominal impurity levels can be tolerated and no great care is required in preventing minor contamination.

The other selenium base composition useful in practice of this invention can have a tellurium concentration in the range of from about 4.85% to 5.5% by weight, germanium in the range of from about 3.95% to 4.2% by weight, neodymium in the range of from about 2.85% to 3.2% by weight, and gallium in the range of from about 2.0% to 2.5% by weight. As in the preferred composition, the balance is selenium and nominal impurity levels can be tolerated. It is preferred to add the gallium in the form of gallium selenide rather than as elemental gallium with a corresponding decrease in the selenium used to make up the composition.

The above selenium base compositions are easier to make and less expensive than the germanium base composition and are therefore preferable for most applications. It is found that these are particularly suited for relatively small semiconductor tablets up to about 1 inch or a little less. For relatively large tablets, it is preferred to use the germanium base composition.

The germanium base composition has a tellurium level in the range of from about 4.75% to 5.5% by weight, neodymium in the range of from about 4.0% to 4.5% by weight, and rubidium in the range of from about 5.5% to 7.4% by weight. It is also found that it is of greater importance to maintain purity of the germanium base compositions than the selenium base compositions. Although the exact purity levels have not been ascertained, it is in excess of 99%.

It has been found that it is not necessary to have single crystals in the semiconductor tablets and any convenient grain size in excess of about 1 millimetre appears satisfactory. In the above compositions, when the recited ranges are exceeded, oscillation in the power pack drops off rapidly and may cease altogether.

The reasons that these compositions are satisfactory in the arrangement providing resonance amplification has not been determined with certainty. It is possible that the semiconductor serves as a source of electrons for providing an oscillating current in the circuit. This is, of course, combined with a relatively large area contact to one side of the semiconductor tablet, and a point contact on another area. Any resonant current in the coils wound on the ferrite rod, induces a varying magnetic field in the resonant cavity, and the electrical connection between the ferrite rod and the metal probe, provides a feedback of this oscillation to the semiconductor tablet.

it should particularly be noted that the oscillation in the circuit does not commence until it is initiated by an oscillating signal. In order to accomplish this, it is only necessary to apply a few millivolts of AC for a few seconds to the semiconductor tablet and the associated coils coupled to it. The initial signal applied to the base of the semiconductor tablet and the lead 39 is preferably in the frequency range of 5.8 to 18 Mhz and can be as high as 150 Mhz. Such a signal can be applied from any conventional source and no great care appears necessary to provide a single frequency signal or to eliminate noise. Once such energisation has been applied to the circuit and oscillations initiated, it does not appear to be necessary to apply such a signal again. This is apparently due to the feedback provided by the ferrite rod to the probe which makes contact with the semiconductor tablet.

Energy is, of course, dissipated in the lamp, or other utilisation device, as the combination operates. Such energy may come from deterioration of the semiconductor tablet as oscillations continue; however, if there is any such deterioration, it is sufficiently slow that a power source may be operated for many months without attendance. Such a source of energy may be augmented by ambient Radio Frequency radiation, coupled into the resonant cavity by the external leads. This is a surprising phenomenon because the leads are small compared to what would normally be considered an adequate antenna, and it is therefore postulated that stimulated amplification may also be a consequence of the unique electronic configuration of the semiconductors having the compositions specified above.

Although only one embodiment of electric power pack constructed according to principles of this invention has been described and illustrated here, many modifications and variations will be apparent to one skilled in the art. Thus, for example, a larger power pack may be axially arranged in a cylindrical container with various electronic elements arranged in the annular space. It is therefore to be understood that other configurations are included within the scope of the invention.
PULSED CAPACITOR DISCHARGE ELECTRIC ENGINE

Please note that this is a re-worded extract from Edwin Gray’s Patent 3,890,548. It describes his high voltage motor and the circuitry used to drive it. This motor was shown to have 80 horsepower of excess energy.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION:

This invention relates to electric motors or engines, and more particularly to a new electric machine including electromagnetic poles in a stator configuration and electromagnetic poles in a rotor configuration, wherein in one form thereof, the rotor is rotatable within the stator configuration and where both are energised by capacitor discharges through rotor and stator electromagnets at the instant of the alignment of a rotor electromagnet with a stator electromagnet. The rotor electromagnet is repelled from the stator electromagnet by the discharge of the capacitor through the coils of both the rotor and stator electromagnets at the same instant.

In an exemplary rotary engine according to this invention, rotor electromagnets may be disposed 120 degrees apart on a central shaft and major stator electromagnets may be disposed 40 degrees apart in the motor housing about the stator periphery. Other combinations of rotor elements and stator elements may be utilised to increase torque or rate of rotation.

In another form, a second electromagnet is positioned to one side of each of the major stator electromagnets on a centreline 13.5 degrees from the centreline of the stator magnet, and these are excited in a predetermined pattern or sequence. Similarly, to one side of each rotor electromagnet, is a second electromagnet spaced on a 13.5 degree centreline from the major rotor electromagnet. Electromagnets in both the rotor and stator assemblies are identical, the individual electromagnets of each being aligned axially and the coils of each being wired so that each rotor electromagnetic pole will have the same magnetic polarity as the electromagnet in the stator with which it is aligned and which it is confronting at the time of discharge of the capacitor.

Charging of the discharge capacitor or capacitors is accomplished by an electrical switching circuit wherein electrical energy from a battery or other source of d-c potential is derived through rectification by diodes.

The capacitor charging circuit comprises a pair of high frequency switchers which feed respective automotive-type ignition coils employed as step-up transformers. The “secondary” of each of the ignition coils provides a high voltage square wave to a half-wave rectifier to generate a high voltage output pulse of d-c energy with each switching alternation of the high frequency switcher. Only one polarity is used so that a unidirectional pulse is applied to the capacitor bank being charged.

Successive unidirectional pulses are accumulated on the capacitor or capacitor bank until discharged. Discharge of the bank of capacitors occurs across a spark gap by arc-over. The gap spacing determines the voltage at which discharge or arc-over occurs. An array of gaps is created by fixed elements in the engine housing and moving elements positioned on the rotor shaft. At the instant when the moving gap elements are positioned opposite fixed elements during the rotor rotation, a discharge occurs through the coils of the aligned rotor and stator electromagnets to produce the repulsion action between the stator and rotor electromagnet cores.
A plurality of fixed gap elements are arrayed in a motor housing to correspond to the locations of the stator electromagnets in the housing. The rotor gap elements correspond to the positions of the rotor electromagnets on the rotor so that at the instant of correct alignment of the gaps, the capacitors are discharged to produce the necessary current through the stator and rotor coils to cause the electromagnets to repel one another.

The charging circuits are arranged in pairs, and are such that the discharge occurs through both rotor and stator windings of the electromagnets, which are opposite one another when the spark gap elements are aligned and arc-over.

The speed of the rotor can be changed by means of a clutch mechanism associated with the rotor. The clutch shifts the position of the rotor gap elements so that the discharge will energise the stator coils in a manner to advance or retard the time of discharge with respect to the normal rotor/stator alignment positions. The discharge through the rotor and stator then occurs when the rotor has passed the stator by 6.66 degrees for speed advance.

By causing the discharge to occur when the rotor position is approaching the stator, the repulsion pulse occurs 6.66 degrees before the alignment position of the rotor and stator electromagnets, thus reducing the engine speed.

The clutch mechanism for aligning capacitor discharge gaps for discharge is described as a control head. It may be likened to a firing control mechanism in an internal combustion engine in that it “fires” the electromagnets and provides a return of any discharge overshoot potential back to the battery or other energy source.

The action of the control head is extremely fast. From the foregoing description, it can be anticipated that an increase in speed or a decrease in speed of rotation can occur within the period in which the rotor electromagnet moves between any pair of adjacent electromagnets in the stator assembly. These are 40 degrees apart so speed changes can be effected in a maximum of one-ninth of a revolution.

The rotor speed-changing action of the control head and its structure are believed to be further novel features of the invention, in that they maintain normal 120 degree firing positions during uniform speed of rotation conditions, but shift to 6.66 degree longer or shorter intervals for speed change by the novel shift mechanism in the rotor clutch assembly.

Accordingly, the preferred embodiment of this invention is an electric rotary engine wherein motor torque is developed by discharge of high potential from a bank of capacitors, through stator and rotor electromagnet coils when the electromagnets are in alignment. The capacitors are charged from batteries by a switching mechanism, and are discharged across spark gaps set to achieve the discharge of the capacitor charge voltage through the electromagnet coils when the gaps and predetermined rotor and stator electromagnet pairs are in alignment.

Exemplary embodiments of the invention are herein illustrated and described. These exemplary illustrations and description should not be construed as limiting the invention to the embodiments shown, because those skilled in the arts appertaining to the invention may conceive of other embodiments in the light of the description within the ambit of the appended claims.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS:
Fig. 1 is an explanatory schematic diagram of a capacitor charging and discharging circuit utilised in the present invention.

Fig. 2 is a block diagram of an exemplary engine system according to the invention.
Fig. 3 is a perspective view of a typical engine system according to the invention, coupled to an automotive transmission.

Fig. 4 is an axial sectional view taken at line 4--4 in Fig. 3.
Fig. 5 is a sectional view taken at line 5--5 in Fig. 4.

Fig. 6 and Fig. 7 are fragmentary sectional views, corresponding to a portion of Fig. 5, illustrating successive advanced positions of the engine rotor therein.
Fig. 8 is an exploded perspective view of the rotor and stator of the engine of Fig. 3 and Fig. 4.

Fig. 9 is a cross-sectional view taken at line 9---9 of Fig. 4.

Fig. 10 is a partial sectional view, similar to the view of Fig. 9, illustrating a different configuration of electromagnets in another engine embodiment of the invention.
Fig. 11 is a sectional view taken at line 11—11 in Fig. 3, illustrating the control head or novel speed change controlling system of the engine.
Fig. 12 is a sectional view, taken at line 12---12 in Fig. 11, showing a clutch plate utilised in the speed change control system of Fig. 11.

Fig. 13 is a fragmentary view, taken at line 13---13 in Fig. 12.
**Fig. 14** is a sectional view, taken at line 14---14 in Fig. 11, showing a clutch plate which co-operates with the clutch plate of Fig. 12.

**Fig. 15** is a fragmentary sectional view taken at line 15---15 of Fig. 13.

**Fig. 16** is a perspective view of electromagnets utilised in the present invention.

**Fig. 17** is a schematic diagram showing co-operating mechanical and electrical features of the programmer portion of the invention.
Fig. 18 is an electrical schematic diagram of an engine according to the invention, showing the electrical relationships of the electromagnetic components embodying a new principle of the invention, and
A - 129

Fig. 19 is a developed view, taken at line 19---19 of Fig. 11, showing the locations of displaced spark gap elements of the speed changing mechanism of an engine according to the invention.

DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENT

As mentioned earlier, the basic principle of operation of the engine of the invention, is the discharge of a capacitor across a spark gap and through an inductor. When a pair of inductors is used, and the respective magnetic cores thereof are arranged opposite one another and arranged in opposing magnetic polarity, the discharge through them causes the cores to repel each other with considerable force.

Referring to the electrical schematic diagram of Fig. 1, a battery 10 energises a pulse-producing vibrator mechanism 16, which may be of the magnetic type, incorporating an armature 15 moving between contacts 13 and 14, or of the transistor type (not shown) with which a high frequency bipolar pulsed output is produced in primary 17 of transformer 20. The pulse amplitude is stepped up in secondary 19 of transformer 20. Wave form 19a represents the bi-directional or bi-polar pulsed output. A diode rectifier 21 produces a unidirectional pulse train, as indicated at 21a, to charge capacitor 26. Successive unidirectional pulses of wave 21a charge capacitor 26 to high level, as indicated at 26a, until the voltage at point A rises high enough to cause a spark across the spark gap 30. Capacitor 26 discharges via the spark gap, through the electromagnet coil 28. A current pulse is produced which magnetises core 28a. Simultaneously, another substantially identical charging system 32 produces a discharge through inductor 27 across spark gap 29, to magnetise core 27a. Cores 27a and 28a are wound with coils 27 and 28 respectively, so that their magnetic polarities are the same. As the cores 27a and 28a confront one another, they tend to fly apart when the discharge occurs through coils 27 and 28 because of repulsion of identical magnetic poles, as indicated by arrow 31. If core 28a is fixed or stationary, and core 27a is moveable, then core 27a may have tools 33 attached to it to perform work when the capacitor discharges.

Referring to Fig. 1 and Fig. 2, a d-c electrical source or battery 10, energises pulsators 36 (including at least two vibrators 16 as previously described) when switch 11 between the battery 10 and pulsator 36 is closed, to apply
relatively high frequency pulses to the primaries of transformers 20. The secondaries of transformers 20 are step-up windings which apply bipolar pulses, such as pulses 19a (Fig.1) to the diodes in converter 38. The rectified unidirectional pulsating output of each of the diodes in converter 38 is passed through delay coils 23 and 24, thus forming a harness 37, wound about the case of the engine, as herein after described, which is believed to provide a static floating flux field. The outputs from delay lines 37, drive respective capacitors in banks 39, to charge the capacitors therein, to a relatively high charge potential. A programmer and rotor and stator magnet control array 40, 41, 42, is formed by spark gaps positioned, as hereinafter described, so that at predetermined positions of the rotor during rotation of the engine, as hereinafter described, selected capacitors of the capacitor banks 39 will discharge across the spark gaps through the rotor and stator electromagnets 43 and 44. The converters 38, programmer 40, and controls 41 and 42, form a series circuit path across the secondaries of transformers 20 to the ground, or point of reference potential, 45. The capacitor banks 39 are discharged across the spark gaps of programmer 40 (the rotor and stator magnet controls 41 and 42). The discharge occurs through the coils of stator and rotor electromagnets 43 and 44 to ground 45. Stator and rotor electromagnets are similar to those shown at 27, 27a, 28 and 28a in Fig.1.

The discharge through the coils of stator and rotor electromagnets 43 and 44 is accompanied by a discharge overshoot or return pulse, which is applied to a secondary battery 10a to store this excess energy. The overshoot pulse returns to battery 10a because, after discharge, the only path open to it is that to the battery 10a, since the gaps in 40, 41 and 42 have broken down, because the capacitors in banks 39 are discharged and have not yet recovered the high voltage charge from the high frequency pulsers 36 and the converter rectifier units 38.

In the event of a misfire in the programmer control circuits 40, 41 and 42, the capacitors are discharged through a rotor safety discharge circuit 46 and returned to batteries 10-10a, adding to their capacity. The circuit 46 is connected between the capacitor banks 39 and batteries 10, 10a.

Referring to Fig.3, a motor or engine 49 according to the present invention is shown connected with an automotive transmission 48. The transmission 48, represents one of many forms of loads to which the engine may be applied. A motor housing 50, encases the operating mechanism hereinafter described. The programmer 40 is axially mounted at one end of the housing. Through apertures 51 and 52, a belt 53 couples to a pulley 57 (not shown in this view) and to an alternator 54 attached to housing 50. A pulley 55 on the alternator, has two grooves, one for belt 53 to the drive pulley 58 on the shaft (not shown) of the engine 49, and the other for a belt 58 coupled to a pulley 59 on a pump 60 attached to housing 50. A terminal box 61 on the housing, interconnects between the battery assembly 62 and motor 49 via cables 63 and 64.

An intake 65 for air, is coupled to pump 60 via piping 68 and 69 and from pump 60 via tubing or piping 66 and 70 to the interior of housing 50 via coupling flanges 67 and 71. The air flow tends to cool the engine and the air may preferably be maintained at a constant temperature and humidity so that a constant spark gap discharge condition is maintained. A clutch mechanism 80 is provided on programmer 40.
Referring to Fig.4, Fig.5 and Fig.9, rotor 81 has spider assemblies 83 and 84 with three electromagnet coil assembly sets mounted thereon, two of which are shown in Fig.4, on 85, at 85a and 85b and on 86 at 86a and 86b. One of the third electromagnet coil assemblies, designated 87a, is shown in Fig.5, viewed from the shaft end. As more clearly shown in the perspective view of Fig.8, a third spider assembly 88 provides added rigidity and a central support for the rotor mechanism on shaft 81.

The electromagnet sets 85a, 85b, 86a, 86b, 87a and 87b, disposed on rotor 81 and spiders 83, 84 and 88, each comprise pairs of front units 85a, 86a and 87a and pairs of rear units 85b, 86b and 87b. Each pair consists of a major electromagnet and a minor electromagnet, as hereinafter described, which are imbedded in an insulating
material 90, which insulates the electromagnet coil assemblies from one another and secures the electromagnets rigidly in place on the spider/rotor cage 81, 83, 84 and 88.

The interior wall 98, of housing 50, is coated with an electrically insulating material 99 in which are imbedded electromagnet coils, as hereinafter described, and the interiors of end plates 100 and 101 of the housing 50. On the insulating surface 98 of housing 50 is mounted a series of stator electromagnet pairs 104a, identical with electromagnet pairs 85a, 86a, 87a, etc. Electromagnet pairs such as 104a or 105a are disposed every 40 degrees about the interior of housing 50 to form a stator which co-operates with the rotor 81-88. An air gap 110 of very close tolerance is defined between the rotor and stator electromagnets and air from pump 65 flows through this gap.

As shown in Fig.8, the electromagnet assemblies, such as 85 through 87, of the rotor and magnet assemblies, such as 104a in the stator, are so embedded in their respective insulating plastic carriers (rotor and stator) that they are smoothly rounded in a concave contour on the rotor to permit smooth and continuous rotation of rotor 81 in stator housing 50. The air gap 110 is uniform at all positions of any rotor element within the stator assembly, as is clearly shown in Fig.16.

The rotor 81 and spiders 83, 84 and 88 are rigidly mounted on shaft 111 journaled in bearing assemblies 112 and 113 which are of conventional type, for easy rotation of the rotor shaft 111 within housing 50.

Around the central outer surface of housing 50, are wound a number of turns of wire 23 and 24 to provide a static flux coil 114 which is a delay line, as previously described. Figs. 5, 6, 7 and 9 are cross-sectional views of the rotor assembly 81-88, arranged to show the positioning and alignment of the rotor and stator electromagnet coil assemblies at successive stages of the rotation of the rotor 81-88 through a portion of a cycle of operation thereof. For example, in Fig.5 the rotor assembly 81-88 is shown so positioned that a minor rotor electromagnet assembly 91 is aligned with a minor stator electromagnet assembly 117.

As shown in further detail in Fig.16, minor electromagnet assembly 117 consists of an iron core 118, grooved so that a coil of wire 119 may be wound around it. Core 118 is the same in stator electromagnet 117 as it is in rotor electromagnet 91.

As a position 13.33 degrees to the right of rotor electromagnet 91, as viewed in Fig.5 and Fig.16, there is a second or major rotor electromagnet 121 which has a winding 123 about its core 122. The electromagnets 91 and 121 are the pair 85a of Fig.4 and Fig.8.
At a position 13.33 degrees to the left of stator electromagnet 117, as viewed in Fig.5, there is a second or major stator electromagnet 120 whose core 122 is of the same configuration as core 122 of rotor electromagnet 121. A winding 123 about core 122 of electromagnet 120 is of the same character as winding 123 on electromagnet 121.

Electromagnet assembly pair 85a on the rotor is identical in configuration to that of the electromagnet stator assembly pair 104a except for the position reversal of the elements 117-120 and 91-121 of the respective pairs.

There are none pairs of electromagnets 120-117 (104a) located at 40 degree intervals about the interior of housing 50. The centreline of core 122 of electromagnet 120 is positioned 13.33 degrees to the left of the centreline of the core 118 of electromagnet 117. Three pairs of electromagnets 85a, 86a and 87a are provided on rotor assembly 81-88 as shown in Fig.5.

Other combinations are possible, but the number of electromagnets in the rotor should always be in integral fraction of the number of electromagnets in the stator. As shown in Fig.8, for the rotor assembly 85a and 85b, there are three of each of the front and back pairs of electromagnetic assemblies. Similarly, as shown in Fig.4 and Fig.8, there are nine front and back pairs of electromagnets in the stator such as 104a and 104b.

In order to best understand the operation of the rotor 81-88 rotating within the stator housing 50 of an engine according to this invention, the positions of rotor electromagnets 91 and stator electromagnets 117 are initially exactly in line at the 13.33 degree peripheral starting position marked on the vertical centreline of Fig.5. The winding direction of the coils of these magnets is such that a d-c current through the coils 119 will produce a particular identical magnet polarity on each of the juxtaposed surfaces 125 of magnet 117 and 126 of magnet 91 (Fig.5). Fig.16 and Fig.6 illustrate the next step in the motion wherein the two major electromagnets, 120 in the stator and 121 in the rotor, are in alignment.

When the d-c discharges from the appropriate capacitors in banks 39 occur simultaneously across spark gaps through the coils 119 of electromagnets 117 and 91, at the instant of their alignment, their cores 118, will repel one another to cause rotor assembly 81-88 to rotate clockwise in the direction indicated by arrow 127. The system does not move in the reverse direction because it has been started in the clockwise direction by the alternator motor 54 shown in Fig.3, or by some other starter means. If started counterclockwise, the motor will continue to rotate counterclockwise.

As noted earlier, the discharge of any capacitor occurs over a very short interval via its associated spark gap and the resulting magnetic repulsion action imparts motion to the rotor. The discharge event occurs when electromagnets 117 and 91 are in alignment. As shown in Fig.5, rotor electromagnet 91a is aligned with stator electromagnet 117c, and rotor electromagnet 91b is aligned with stator electromagnet 117e at the same time that similar electromagnets 117 and 91 are aligned. A discharge occurs through all six of these electromagnets simultaneously (that is, 117, 91, 117c, 91a, 117e and 91b). A capacitor and a spark gap are required for each coil of each electromagnet. Where, as in the assembly shown in Fig.8, front and back pairs are used, both the axial in-line front and back coils are energised simultaneously by the discharge from a single capacitor or from a bank of paralleled capacitors such as 25 and 26 (Fig.1). Although Fig.4 and Fig.8 indicate the use of front and back electromagnets, it should be evident that only a single electromagnet in any stator position and a corresponding single electromagnet in the rotor position, may be utilised to accomplish the repulsion action of the rotor with respect to the stator. As stated, each electromagnet requires a discharge from a single capacitor or
the invention. These motor electromagnets discharge position, as the rotor moves through the rotor positions. In electromagnet cores, the discharge of the appropriate charged capacitors across the associated spark gap occurs through the respective gaps and capacitors with which they are associated for discharge. When the appropriate spark gap terminals are gap terminal connectors previously described. These are positioned at 0 degrees, 120 degrees and 240 degrees respectively. At which time a discharge occurs to repeat the repulsion action, this action continuing as long as d-c power is applied to the system to charge the capacitor banks.

Fig. 18 further illustrates the sequencing of the capacitor discharges across appropriate spark gap terminal pairs. Nine single stator coils and three single rotor coils are shown with their respective interconnections with the spark gaps and capacitors with which they are associated for discharge. When the appropriate spark gap terminals are aligned, at the points in the positioning of the rotor assembly for most effective repulsion action of juxtaposed electromagnet cores, the discharge of the appropriate charged capacitors across the associated spark gap occurs through the respective coils. The capacitors are discharged is sets of three, through sets of three coils at each discharge position, as the rotor moves through the rotor positions. In Fig. 18, the rotor electromagnets are positioned linearly, rather than on a circular base, to show the electrical action of an electric engine according to the invention. These motor electromagnets 201, 202 and 203 are aligned with stator electromagnets 213, 214 and 215 at 0 degrees, 120 degrees and 240 degrees respectively. The stator electromagnets are correspondingly shown in a linear schematic as if rolled out of the stator assembly and laid side by side. For clarity of description, the capacitors associated with the rotor operation 207, 208, 209 and 246, 247, 248, 249, 282 and 283, are arranged in vertical alignment with the respective positions of the rotor coils 201, 202 and 203 as they move from left to right, this corresponding to clockwise rotation of the rotor. The stator coils 213, 214, 215, 260, 261, 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, etc. and capacitor combinations are arranged side by side, again to facilitate description.

An insulative disc 236 (shown in Fig. 17 as a disc but opened out linearly in Fig. 18) has mounted thereon, three gap terminal blocks 222, 225 and 228. Each block is rectangularly U-shaped, and each interconnects two terminals with the base of the U. Block 222 has terminals 222a and 222b. Block 225 has terminals 225a and 225b. Block 228 has terminals 228c and 228d. When insulative disc 230 is part of the rotor as indicated by mechanical linkage 290, it can be seen that terminal U 222 creates a pair of gaps with gap terminals 223 and 224 respectively. Thus, when the voltage on capacitor 216 from charging unit 219, is of a value which will arc over the air spaces between 222a and 223, and between 222b and 224, the capacitor 216 will discharge through the coil of electromagnet 213 to ground. Similarly, gap terminal U 225 forms a dual spark gap with gap terminals 226 and 227 to result in arc-over when the voltage on capacitor 217, charged by charging circuit 220, discharges into the coil of electromagnet 214. Also, U-gap terminal 228 with terminals 228c and 228d, the capacitor 218 will discharge through the coil with terminals 229 and 230 to discharge capacitor 218, charged by charging circuit 221, into coil 215. At the same time, rotor coils, 201, 202 and 203 across gaps 201a - 204, 202b - 205 and 203c - 206 each receives a discharge from respective capacitors 207, 208 and 209.

When the electromagnet coils 213, 214 and 215 and 201, 202 and 203 are energised, the repulsion action causes the rotor assembly to move to position 2 where a new simultaneous group of discharges occurs into rotor coils 201, 202 and 203 from capacitors 246, 248 and 282 across gaps 201a - 240, 202b - 242 and 203c - 244. Simultaneously, because gap-U-elements 222, 225 and 228 have also moved to position 2 with the rotor assembly, capacitor 261 is discharged through electromagnet coil 260, capacitor 265 is discharged through electromagnet coil 264, and capacitor 269 is discharged through electromagnet coil 268 in alignment with position 2 of the rotor electromagnet coils, thus to cause the rotor electromagnets to move to position 3 where the discharge pattern is repeated now with capacitors 247, 249 and 283 discharging through the rotor electromagnet coils 201, 202 and 203, and the capacitors 263, 267 and 281 discharging respectively through stator electromagnet coils 262, 266 and 280.

After each discharge, the charging circuits 219 - 221 and 272 - 277 for the stator capacitors, and 210 - 212 and 284 - 289 for the rotor capacitors, are operated continuously from a battery source as described earlier with reference to Fig. 1, to constantly recharge the capacitors to which each is connected. Those versed in the art will appreciate that, as each capacitor discharges across an associated spark gap, the resulting drop in potential across the gap renders the gap an open circuit until such time as the capacitor can recharge to the arc-over level for the gap. This recharge occurs before a rotor element arrives at the next position in the rotation.

The mechanical schematic diagram of Fig. 17, further clarifies the operation of the spark-gap discharge programming system. A forward disc 236 of an electrically insulative material, has thereon the set of U-shaped gap terminal connectors previously described. These are positioned at 0 degrees, 120 degrees and 240 degrees respectively. In Fig. 17, schematic representations of the position of the coil and capacitor arrangements at the
start of a cycle are shown to correspond to the above description with reference to Fig.18. Accordingly, the coil and capacitor combinations 213/216, 214/217 and 215/218 are shown connected with their gap terminals, respectively, 223/224, 226/227 and 229/230. On the rotor coil and capacitor connection, three separate discs 291, 292 and 293 are shown, each with a single gap terminal. The discs 291 - 293 are rotated so as to position their respective gap terminals 201a, 201b and 201c, at 120 degree increments, with the 0 degrees position corresponding to the 0 degrees position of U-gap terminal 222 on disc 230.

Representative gap terminals are shown about the peripheries of discs 230, 291 - 293 to indicate clearly how, as the discs turn in unison, the gap alignments correspond so that three rotor coils always line up with three stator coils at 120 degree intervals about the rotary path, producing an alignment every 40 degrees, there being nine stator coils. Thus, there are three simultaneous discharges into stator coils and three into rotor coils at each 40 degree position. Nine positions displaced 40 degrees apart provide a total of 27 discharge points for capacitors into the rotor coils and 27 discharge points for capacitors into the stator coils in one revolution of the rotor.

It will be understood that, as illustrated in Fig.17 and Fig.18, nine individual electromagnet coils are shown in the stator and three in the rotor, in order to show in its simplest form, how the three rotor electromagnets are stepped forward from alignment with three of the stator electromagnets, when the appropriate spark gaps are in alignment, to effect the discharge of capacitors through juxtaposed pairs of rotor/stator electromagnets. The repulsion moves the rotor electromagnet from the stator electromagnet to the next alignment position 40 degrees further on. In the interval, until another rotor electromagnet, 120 degrees removed, is aligned with the stator electromagnet which had just been pulsed, the associated capacitor is recharged. Thus, the rotor moves from one position to the next, with capacitor discharges occurring each 40 degrees of rotation, a total of nine per revolution. It should be obvious that, with other rotor/stator combinations, the number of electromagnet coincidences and spark-gap discharges will vary. For example, with the coil pairs shown in Figs 4 through 8, a total of 27 discharges will occur. Although there are 18 stator electromagnets and 3 rotor electromagnets, the discharge pattern is determined by the specific spark gap arrangement.

The rotor/stator configuration of Fig.5 and Fig.8, involving the major and minor pairs of electromagnets, such as 85a and 104a (the terms “minor” and “major” referring to the difference in size of the elements), include nine pairs of electromagnets in the stator, such as 104a, with three electromagnet pairs of the rotor, such as 85a. Because of the 13.33 degree separation between the major and minor electromagnets in the rotor pair 85a, with the same separation of minor and major electromagnets of the stator pair 104a, the sequence of rotation and discharge described above, with respect to the illustrative example of Fig.5, involves the following:
1. A minor element 117 of stator pair 104a is aligned with the minor element 91 of rotor pair 85a. On the discharge, this moves the rotor ahead 13.33 degrees.
2. The major rotor element 122 of the pair 85a, now is aligned with the major stator element 120b of the next stator electromagnet pair, in the stator array as shown in Fig.6. On the discharge, the rotor moves ahead 13.33 degrees.
3. This brings the major rotor electromagnet 91 into alignment with the major stator electromagnet 120b of pair 104d, and the major electromagnet 122 (just discharged) of pair 85a into alignment with minor electromagnet 117b of pair 104d, and the rotor spark gap elements into alignment with a different position of gap elements connected with capacitors not discharged in the previous position of the rotor. It should be remembered at this point that it is the positioning of a rotatable spark gap array, similar to that illustrated in Fig.17 and Fig.18, which controls the time of discharge of capacitors connected to these gap terminals. Therefore, any electromagnet can be energised twice, successively, from separate capacitors as the rotor brings appropriate gap terminals into alignment with the coil terminals of a particular electromagnet.

Thus, although major electromagnet 120b of pair 104d has just been energised as described above, it can now be energised again along with minor rotor electromagnet 91 in step 3, because the rotor moved to a new set of terminals of the spark gap arrays connected to capacitors which have not yet been discharged. These capacitors now discharge through rotor electromagnet 91 and stator electromagnet 120b, causing the rotor to move ahead another 13.33 degrees, thus again aligning two minor electromagnets again, these being 117b of stator pair 104d and 91 of rotor pair 85a. The rotor has now moved 40 degrees since step 1 above. The sequence is now repeated indefinitely. It is to be noted that at each 13.33 degree step, the discharges drive the rotor another 13.33 degrees. There are 27 steps per revolution with nine stator coil pairs. The discharge sequence is not uniform, as is shown in Table 1. In the stator, three major electromagnets 120 degrees apart are energised twice in sequence, followed by a hiatus of one step while three minor electromagnets of the stator, 120 degrees apart, are energised during the hiatus. In the rotor the major electromagnets are energised during a hiatus step following two minor electromagnet energisation steps. A total of 27 energisations are this accomplished in the nine pairs of coils of the stator.

In Table 1, the leftmost column shows the location of each rotor arm 85, 86 and 87 at an arbitrarily selected step No. 1 position. For example, in step 1, rotor arm 85 has a minor stator and minor rotor electromagnet in alignment for capacitors to discharge through them simultaneously at the 13.33 degree position.
Similarly, in step 1, rotor arm 86 is at the 133.33 degree position which has two minor electromagnets in alignment, ready for discharge. Simultaneously, rotor arm 87 is at the 253.33 degree position with two minor electromagnets aligned for capacitor discharge. The other steps of the sequence are apparent from Table 1, for each position of the three rotor arms at any step and the juxtapositions of respective stator and rotor electromagnet elements at that position.

In the simplified motor arrangement shown in schematic form in Fig.18, with single electromagnet configuration, the alignment is uniform and the discharge sequences follow sequentially.

As mentioned before, a change in speed is effected by displacing the stator spark gap terminals on the rotor (shown at 236 in Fig.17 and Fig.18) either counterclockwise or clockwise 6.66 degrees so that the discharge position of the stator electromagnets is displaced. Referring to Figs. 11 to 15, the simultaneous discharge of selected capacitors into the displaced electromagnets results in a deceleration if the rotor electromagnet is approaching the stator electromagnet at the time of discharge, or an acceleration if the rotor electromagnet is leaving the stator electromagnet at the time of the discharge pulse. In each event, there is a repulsive reaction between the stator and rotor electromagnets which effects this change in speed.

Referring to Fig.11, clutch mechanism 304 about shaft 111 is operated electromagnetically in conventional manner, to displace the spark-gap mechanism 236 which is operated normally in appropriate matching alignment with the rotor spark-gap discs 291, 292 and 293. Clutch 304 has a fixed drive element 311, containing an electromagnetic drive coil (not shown) and a motor element 310 which, when the electromagnetic drive coil is energised, can be operated by a direct current. The operation of motor element 310, brings into operation, spark gap elements 224r, 223r or 223f, 224f of the system shown in Figs. 4, 5 and 8, as illustrated in Fig.19.

The fixed stator coil spark gap terminal pairs 223, 224 and 266, 267 are arrayed about a cylindrical frame 322 which is fabricated in insulative material. In the illustrative example of Fig.17 and Fig.18, there are nine such spark gap terminal pairs positioned around the periphery of the cylinder frame 324. In the engine of Figs. 4 to 8, a total of 27 such spark gap pairs are involved. In the illustrative example of the drawing, there are also pairs of terminals, such as 223r or 223f, 224r or 224f and 226r or 226f, 267r or 267f, displaced 6.66 degrees on either side of the pairs 223, 224 or 266, 267 and all other pairs in the spark gap array, the letters “r” and “f” denoting “retard” or “faster”. The latter displaced pairs are used in controlling the speed of the engine rotor. The displaced pairs not shown are involved in the operation of the clutch 304, the speed-changing control element.

### Table 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step No</th>
<th>Rotor Arm 87</th>
<th>Rotor Arm 85</th>
<th>Rotor Arm 86</th>
<th>Rotor Electromagnet Minor</th>
<th>Rotor Electromagnet Major</th>
<th>Stator Electromagnet Minor</th>
<th>Stator Electromagnet Major</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>13 1/3°</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>26 2/3°</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>40°</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>53 1/3°</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>66 2/3°</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>80°</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>93 1/3°</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>106 2/3°</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>120°</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>133 1/3°</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>146 2/3°</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>160°</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>173 1/3°</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>186 2/3°</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>200°</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>213 1/3°</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>226 2/3°</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>240°</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>233 1/3°</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>256 2/3°</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>280°</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>293 1/3°</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>306 2/3°</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>320°</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>333 1/3°</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>346 2/3°</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>360°</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Clutch 304 is associated with shaft 111 in that the movable element 310 draws clutch disc element 322 when energised by a voltage of appropriate polarity applied to its motor electromagnet 311. Such clutch drives are well known in the art.

The clutch mechanism 304 of Fig.11 and Fig.19, when not energised, is in the configuration shown in Fig.11. The energised configuration of clutch 304 is not specifically illustrated. Upon energisation, spark-gap element 222 on disc 236 is displaced rightward, as viewed in Fig.11, by broken lines 236X, into alignment with the positions of fixed spark-gap terminals 223f, 224f and 267r, 266r. When the disc is in position 236X, the flattened edge 332 of pin 330 in disc 325 rides on surface 350 of disc 322. Normally, the flattened edges 351 of pins 330 are engaged against the flat edge 352 in recess 331 of disc 322. The displacement of disc 322 on shaft 111 is effected by the action of clutch 304 against spring 314 (Fig.11). An electric switch (not shown) of clutch mechanism 304 energises it from a d-c power source, and has two positions, one for deceleration and one for acceleration. In either position, clutch 304 is engaged to pull clutch disc 322 from clutch disc 325, momentarily. For the decelerate or the accelerate position, the displaced alignment of spark gap elements 222 is with the 224f, 223f and the 224r, 223r spark-gap terminal elements. However, only the 224f, 223f spark-gap elements are switched into operation with appropriate capacitors for the accelerate position, while in the decelerate position, only the 223r and 224r spark-gap elements are switched into the circuit with their associated capacitors.

Of course, when insulative disc 236 is displaced by clutch 304, its gap terminals 222, 225 and 228 (Fig.14 and Fig.18) are all displaced into the alignment position of 236X so as to engage the “r” and “f” lines of fixed spark gap elements. Although the accelerate and decelerate positions of disc 236 are the same, it is the switching into operation of the 223, 224 or 266, 267 exemplary “r” or “f” pairs of terminals which determines whether the rotor will speed up or slow down.

The momentary displacement of clutch disc 322 from clutch disc 325 results in rotation of disc 325 about disc 322 through an angle of 120 degrees. The detent ball and spring mechanism 320, 321 in disc 325, positions itself between one detent dimple 328 and a succeeding one 328 at a position 120 degrees away on disc 325.

As stated, flat 332 of pin 330 rides on surface 350 of disc 322, and pin 330 leaves the pin-holding groove 331/352 along ramp 333 in disc 322 during the momentary lifting of disc 322 by clutch 304. Pin 330 falls back into the next groove 331 at a point 120 degrees further on about disc 322. Pin 330 falls into place in groove 331 on ramp 334. Pins 330 are rotatable in their sockets 353, so that for either clockwise or counterclockwise rotation, the flat 351 will engage the flat 352 by the particular ramp it encounters.

The deceleration or acceleration due to the action of clutch 304 thus occurs within a 120 degree interval of rotation of disc 325. During this interval, disc 322 may only move a fraction of this arc.

There has been described earlier, an electromotive engine system wherein at least one electromagnet is in a fixed position and a second electromagnet of similar configuration is juxtaposed with it in a magnetic polarity relationship such that, when the cores of the electromagnets are energised, the juxtaposed core faces repel each other. One core being fixed, and the second core being free to move, any attachments to the second electromagnet core will move with it. Hence, if a plurality of fixed cores are positioned about a circular confining housing, and, within the housing, cores on a shaft are free to move, the shaft is urged rotationally each time the juxtaposed fixed and rotatable cores are in alignment and energised. Both the fixed and the movable cores are connected to spark gap terminal elements and the associated other terminal elements of the spark gaps are connected to capacitors which are charged to high voltage from pulsed unipolar signal generators. These capacitors are discharged through the electromagnets across the spark gaps. By switching selected groups of capacitors into selected pairs of spark gap elements for discharge through the electromagnets, the rotor of the circular array systems is accelerated and decelerated.

By confining a fixed electromagnet array in a linear configuration, with a linearly movable electromagnet to which a working tool is attached, exciting the juxtaposed pairs of electromagnets by capacitor discharge, results in the generation of linear force for such tools as punch presses, or for discharging projectiles with considerable energy.

CLAIMS:

1. An electric engine comprising:

A housing;

An array of electromagnets uniformly spaced in said housing to form a stator;
A rotor cage on a shaft journaled in and rotatable within said stator, said rotor cage having thereon a spaced array of electromagnets similar to said stator electromagnets and in number, comprising an integral fraction of the number of electromagnets in said stator array;

Each of the electromagnets of said stator and of said rotor, having a core which can be magnetised and of a particular configuration and each being wound with a coil such that a pulses of unidirectional electric current through said coil, magnetises the respective core thereof to a particular magnetic polarity, and the faces of rotor cores juxtaposing selected stator cores are magnetised to the same polarity, the juxtaposed cores thereby tending to repel one another, one lead of each of the stator and rotor coils being connected to a common terminal, the other lead of each of said coils being connected to a gap terminal, the gap terminals of said rotor coils being on the rotor and equal in number to the number of coils thereon and matching the positions of said rotor electromagnets thereon, the gap terminals of said stator being equal in number to the number of coils on the stator and disposed uniformly about said stator to match the positions of said stator electromagnets within said housing;

A first array of capacitors, each having a terminal in common with the common coil terminal of said stator electromagnets, and each capacitor having its other terminal connected to a gap terminal arrayed adjacent the gap terminal of an electromagnet associated therewith;

A second array of capacitors, each having a terminal in common with said common terminal of said rotor electromagnet coils but equal in number to the number of capacitors in said stator array, the other terminals of said capacitors in said second array being connected to gap terminals arrayed about said housing so as to be in axial alignment with said stator gap terminal positions and being alignable with said rotor gap terminals as said rotor is rotated in said housing and respective gap terminals of said rotor coils pass each second array capacitor gap terminals at a predetermined gap distance;

Gap coupling terminals on said rotor equal in number to the number of rotor electromagnet coils and positioned to match the rotor electromagnet positions on said rotor, the gap coupling terminals being rotatable with said rotor so as to pass said adjacent stator coil and associated stator capacitor gap terminal at a predetermined distance therefrom;

A plurality of capacitor charging circuits connected respectively across each of said capacitors in both said first and said second arrays of capacitors for charging each of said capacitors to a predetermined high d-c potential;

A first source of unidirectional electric potential connected to each of said capacitor charging circuits for energising said charging circuits; and

A second unidirectional electric potential source connected to said electromagnets of said rotor and said stator of such polarity as to receive a charge from the inverse inductive discharge of the electromagnet coils as their fields collapse following the discharge of each capacitor through a rotor or stator electromagnet coil,

Whereby, whenever a rotor electromagnet is aligned opposite a stator electromagnet, the rotor coil gap terminal of that electromagnet is opposite an associated second capacitor array gap terminal, and a gap coupling terminal of said rotor is aligned opposite the stator electromagnet coil gap terminal and associated first capacitor gap terminal, the capacitors discharge the charge thereon across the gaps through their associated electromagnet coils to magnetise their respective juxtaposed electromagnet cores to cause them to repel one another, thus aligning a succeeding pair of rotor and stator electromagnets for capacitor discharge across their respective gaps, to cause them to repel one another, alignments rotor rotation within the housing continuously bringing successive rotor-stator electromagnets into alignment for discharge of the capacitors through them to produce continuous rotary motion of the rotor on said rotor shaft, so long as energy is applied to said charging circuits in said charging circuits for charging said capacitors after each discharge.

2. In an electric engine having a rotor comprising electromagnetic coil means rotatable within a stator comprising similar electromagnetic coil means, said electromagnetic coil means being polarised for magnetic repulsion;

Capacitor means electrically coupled across successive spark gaps to selected ones of said stator and all of the coils of said rotor;

Charging means connected to said capacitor means for charging said capacitor means to an electrical discharge potential sufficient to cause arcing across said spark gaps to result in the discharge of said capacitor means through the electromagnetic coil means repel one another; and

A unidirectional electric power source connected to said charging means to energise said charging means to continue charging said capacitor means following each discharge whereby the rotor of said engine is maintained
in rotation by the successive discharges of said capacitor means across successive spark gaps into said electromagnetic coil means.

3. An electric engine according to claim 2, wherein:

The charging means includes electronic square core oscillators connected to said unidirectional electric power source and includes step-up means and a rectifier to produce a substantial voltage step up from the voltage of said power source.

4. An electric engine according to claim 2, wherein:

The charging means includes a vibrator connected to said power source, and step-up transformer and rectifier means to provide a high voltage for charging said capacitor means.

5. A motive force-producing means comprising:

At least a first electromagnet means including at least one coil wound about a core,

At least a second electromagnet means including at least one coil wound about a core similar to said first core,

The respective cores being positioned adjacent to one another so that the magnetic polarities of the adjacent core surfaces are the same when a unidirectional electric current is passed through the coils,

At least one capacitor means having one terminal thereof connected to one terminal of both of said electromagnet coils,

The other terminal of said capacitor means being connected to one terminal of a spark gap means, the other terminals of the coils of both said first and said second electromagnet means being connected to the other terminal of said spark gap means,

At least one unidirectional pulse charging means connected to said capacitor means to charge said capacitor means to a relatively high potential sufficient to arc across said spark gap means at predetermined spacing of said gap terminals, and

A source of unidirectional potential connected to said charging circuit to energise said charging means,

Whereby upon application of current from said potential source to said charging means the successive pulses generated thereby charge said capacitor means to a voltage level sufficient to arc across said spark gap means to produce a discharge path for said capacitor means through said coils to cause said electromagnet means to repel one another with a substantial force.

6. A motive force-producing means according to claim 5, wherein:

Said first electromagnet means is secured in a relatively stable housing, and said second electromagnet means is connected with and freely movable relative to said stable housing, and has utilisation means connected thereto for performing work therewith when said capacitor means discharges through said coils of said electromagnet means.

7. A motive force-producing means according to claim 6, wherein said utilisation means is a motor rotor coupled with said second electromagnet means and said first electromagnet means is a stator.

8. A motive force-producing means according to claim 6, wherein said utilisation means is a piston attached to said second electromagnet means and is movable therewith to produce hammer-like blows when said capacitor means discharges through said electromagnet means.

9. In an electromotive force-generating system as disclosed, means for accelerating or decelerating the motion of a force-generating system, said means comprising:

At least two juxtaposed electromagnetic core elements, one fixed and one movable, including coils wound around it to provide a repulsion tendency when said cores are energised,

Spark gap terminals connected with said coils,
Capacitor means connected with said spark gap terminals to discharge across said spark gap terminals through said coils when a charge of sufficient voltage level appears across said capacitor means, thus to energise said juxtaposed electromagnets to induce said juxtaposed electromagnet cores to repel one another.

Charging means connected to said capacitors for charging them to said sufficient voltage level, and selective positioning meanscoupled with said spark gap terminals and with at least said movable electromagnet core to cause selective displacement of said movable core with respect to said fixed core.

10. An electromotive force-generating system according to claim 9, wherein:

Said juxtaposed electromagnetic cores include a plurality of fixed cores and a smaller number of movable cores, said smaller number being an integral fraction of the number of fixed cores, and

Said selective positioning means is an electromagnetic clutch coupled with said smaller number of movable cores for movement therewith, and includes selective displacement means coupled with said spark gap terminals connected with said capacitors in said capacitor means and selected combinations of coils in said plurality of fixed electromagnets.

11. The method of generating motive power comprising the steps of:

a. positioning similar electromagnets in juxtaposed relationship with their respective cores arranged for repulsion when said electromagnets are energised,

b. charging capacitors to a relatively high potential, and

c. discharging said capacitors simultaneously through said electromagnets across spark gaps set to break down at said relatively high potential, thereby to cause said similar electromagnets to repel one another with considerable force.

12. The method of generating motive power defined in claim 11, wherein, in said positioning step at least one of said electromagnets is maintained in a fixed position and another electromagnet is free to move relative to said fixed electromagnet.

13. The method of generating motive power according to claim 11, wherein:

The charging step includes the charging of capacitors to a relatively high potential from a pulsed unipolar source of electrical energy.

14. In an electromagnetic capacitor discharge engine including movable electromagnets and fixed electromagnets, said movable electromagnets being movable into polar alignment with said fixed electromagnets, capacitor means, means for charging said capacitor means, and means for discharging said charged capacitor means through said fixed and movable electromagnets to polarise aligned fixed and movable electromagnets for magnetic repulsion, an acceleration and deceleration control means comprising:

First selective means for momentarily delaying the discharge of the capacitors until the movable electromagnets in said engine have begun to recede from the fixed electromagnets, in order to accelerate the motion of said movable electromagnets by the added impetus of the repulsion, and

Second selective means for momentarily accelerating the discharge of the capacitors to occur at a point in the motion of the movable electromagnets where said movable electromagnets are approaching said fixed electromagnets to decelerate the motion of said movable electromagnets by the tendency to repel the approaching electromagnets by the fixed electromagnets.

15. An electric engine, comprising:

Fixed electromagnets;

Movable electromagnets, movable into alignment with said fixed electromagnets;

Capacitor means;

Means for charging said capacitor means, and
Means for discharging said charged capacitor means through said fixed and movable electromagnets to polarise said aligned fixed and movable electromagnets for magnetic repulsion.

16. An electric engine as recited in claim 15, wherein: said means for discharging said charged capacitor means comprises voltage breakdown switch means.

17. An electric engine as recited in claim 16, wherein:
Said voltage breakdown switch means includes at least one terminal movable with at least one of said movable electromagnets for breaking down when said at least one of said movable electromagnets is in alignment with a said fixed electromagnet.

18. An electric engine as recited in claim 17, wherein:
Said voltage breakdown switch means comprises a spark gap means.
EFFICIENT POWER SUPPLY SUITABLE FOR INDUCTIVE LOADS

Please note that this is a re-worded excerpt from this patent. It describes the circuitry used with Edwin Gray’s unique tube which picks up external power to drive his 80 horsepower electric motor.

Fig.1 is a schematic circuit diagram of the electrical driving system.
Fig.2 is an elevational sectional view of the electrical conversion element.
Fig.3 is a plan sectional view taken along line 3----3 of Fig.2.
Fig.4 is a plan sectional view taken along line 4----4 of Fig.2.
Fig.5 is a schematic circuit diagram of the alternating-current input circuit.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION
The present invention provides a more efficient driving system comprising a source of electrical voltage; a vibrator connected to the low-voltage source for forming a pulsating signal; a transformer connected to the vibrator for receiving the pulsating signal; a high-voltage source, where available, connected to a bridge-type rectifier; or the bridge-type rectifier connected to the high voltage pulse output of the transformer; a capacitor for receiving the voltage pulse output; a conversion element having first and second anodes, electrically conductive means for receiving a charge positioned about the second anode and an output terminal connected to the charge receiving means, the second anode being connected to the capacitor; a commutator connected to the source of electrical voltage and to the first anode; and an inductive load connected to the output terminal whereby a high energy discharge between the first and second anodes is transferred to the charge receiving means and then to the inductive load.

As a sub-combination, the present invention also includes a conversion element comprising a housing; a first low voltage anode mounted to the housing, the first anode adapted to be connected to a voltage source; a second high voltage anode mounted to the housing, the second anode adapted to be connected to a voltage source; electrically conductive means positioned about the second anode and spaced therefrom for receiving a charge, the charge receiving means being mounted to the housing; and an output terminal communicating with the charge receiving means, said terminal adapted to be connected to an inductive load.

The invention also includes a method for providing power to an inductive load comprising the steps of providing a voltage source, pulsating a signal from said source; increasing the voltage of said signal; rectifying said signal; storing and increasing the signal; conducting said signal to a high voltage anode; providing a low voltage to a second anode to form a high energy discharge; electrostatically coupling the discharge to a charge receiving element; conducting the discharge to an inductive load; coupling a second capacitor to the load; and coupling the second capacitor to the source.

It is an aim of the present invention to provide a system for driving an inductive load which system is substantially more efficient than any now existing. Another object of the present invention is to provide a system for driving an inductive load which is reliable, is inexpensive and simply constructed.

The foregoing objects of the present invention together with various other objects, advantages, features and results thereof which will be evident to those skilled in the art in light of this disclosure may be achieved with the exemplary embodiment of the invention described in detail hereinafter and illustrated in the accompanying drawings.

DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENT
While the present invention is susceptible of various modifications and alternative constructions, an embodiment is shown in the drawings and will herein be described in detail. It should be understood however that it is not the intention to limit the invention to the particular form disclosed; but on the contrary, the invention is to cover all modifications, equivalents and alternative constructions falling within the spirit and scope of the invention as expressed in the appended claims.

There is disclosed herein an electrical driving system which, on theory, will convert low voltage electric energy from a source such as an electric storage battery to a high potential, high current energy pulse that is capable of developing a working force at the inductive output of the device that is more efficient than that which is capable of being developed directly from the energy source. The improvement in efficiency is further enhanced by the capability of the device to return that portion of the initial energy developed, and not used by the inductive load in the production of mechanical energy, to the same or second energy reservoir or source for use elsewhere, or for storage.

This system accomplishes the results stated above by harnessing the “electrostatic” or “impulse” energy created by a high-intensity spark generated within a specially constructed electrical conversion switching element tube. This element utilises a low-voltage anode, a high-voltage anode, and one or more “electrostatic” or charge receiving grids. These grids are of a physical size, and appropriately positioned, as to be compatible with the size of the tube, and therefore, directly related to the amount of energy to be anticipated when the device is operating.

The low-voltage anode may incorporate a resistive device to aid in controlling the amount of current drawn from the energy source. This low-voltage anode is connected to the energy source through a mechanical commutator or a solid-state pulser that controls the timing and duration of the energy spark within the element. The high-voltage anode is connected to a high-voltage potential developed by the associated circuits. An energy discharge occurs within the element when the external control circuits permit. This short duration, high-voltage, high-current energy pulse is captured by the “electrostatic” grids within the tube, stored momentarily, then transferred to the inductive output load.

The increase in efficiency anticipated in converting the electrical energy to mechanical energy within the inductive load is attributed to the utilisation of the most optimum timing in introducing the electrical energy to the load device, for the optimum period of time.

Further enhancement of energy conservation is accomplished by capturing a significant portion of the energy generated by the inductive load when the useful energy field is collapsing. This energy is normally dissipated in load losses that are contrary to the desired energy utilisation, and have heretofore been accepted because no suitable means had been developed to harness this energy and restore it to a suitable energy storage device.

The present invention is concerned with two concepts or characteristics. The first of these characteristics is observed with the introduction of an energising current through the inductor. The inductor creates a contrary force (counter-electromotive force or CEMP) that opposes the energy introduced into the inductor. This CEMP increases throughout the time the introduced energy is increasing.

In normal applications of an alternating-current to an inductive load for mechanical applications, the useful work of the inductor is accomplished prior to terminating the application of energy. The excess energy applied is thereby wasted.

Previous attempts to provide energy inputs to an inductor of time durations limited to that period when the optimum transfer of inductive energy to mechanical energy is occurring, have been limited by the ability of any such device to handle the high current required to optimise the energy transfer.

The second characteristic is observed when the energising current is removed from the inductor, As the current is decreased, the inductor generates an EMF that opposes the removal of current or, in other words, produces an energy source at the output of the inductor that simulates the original energy source, reduced by the actual energy removed from the circuit by the mechanical load. This “regenerated”, or excess, energy has previously been lost due to a failure to provide a storage capability for this energy.

In this invention, a high-voltage, high-current, short duration energy pulse is applied to the inductive load by the conversion element. This element makes possible the use of certain of that energy impressed within an arc across a spark-gap, without the resultant deterioration of circuit elements normally associated with high energy electrical arcs.

This invention also provides for capture of a certain portion of the energy induced by the high inductive kick produced by the abrupt withdrawal of the introduced current. This abrupt withdrawal of current is attendant upon the termination of the stimulating arc. The voltage spike so created is imposed upon a capacitor that couples the attendant current to a secondary energy storage device.
A novel, but not essential, circuit arrangement provides for switching the energy source and the energy storage device. This switching may be so arranged as to actuate automatically at predetermined times. The switching may be at specified periods determined by experimentation with a particular device, or may be actuated by some control device that measures the relative energy content of the two energy reservoirs.

Referring now to Fig.1, the system 10 will be described in additional detail. The potential for the high-voltage anode, 12 of the conversion element 14 is developed across the capacitor 16. This voltage is produced by drawing a low current from a battery source 18 through the vibrator 20. The effect of the vibrator is to create a pulsating input to the transformer 22. The turns ratio of the transformer is chosen to optimise the voltage applied to a bridge-type rectifier 24. The output of the rectifier is then a series of high-voltage pulses of modest current. When the available source is already of the high voltage, AC type, it may be coupled directly to the bridge-type rectifier.

By repetitious application of these output pulses from the bridge-type rectifier to the capacitor 16, a high-voltage, high-level charge is built up on the capacitor.

Control of the conversion switching element tube is maintained by a commutator 26. A series of contacts mounted radially about a shafts or a solid-state switching device sensitive to time or other variable may be used for this control element. A switching element tube type one-way energy path 28 is introduced between the commutator device and the conversion switching element tube to prevent high energy arcing at the commutator current path. When the switching element tube is closed, current from the voltage source 18 is routed through a resistive element 30 and a low voltage anode 32. This causes a high energy discharge between the anodes within the conversion switching element tube 14.

The energy content of the high energy pulse is eletrostatically coupled to the conversion grids 34 of the conversion element. This electrostatic charge is applied through an output terminal 60 (Fig.2) across the load inductance 36, inducing a strong electromagnetic field about the inductive load. The intensity of this electromagnetic field is determined by the high electromotive potential developed upon the electrostatic grids and the very short time duration required to develop the energy pulse.
If the inductive load is coupled magnetically to a mechanical load, a strong initial torque is developed that may be efficiently utilised to produce physical work.

Upon cessation of the energy pulse (arc) within the conversion switching element tube the inductive load is decoupled, allowing the electromagnetic field about the inductive load to collapse. The collapse of this energy field induces within the inductive load a counter EMF. This counter EMF creates a high positive potential across a second capacitor which, in turn, is induced into the second energy storage device or battery 40 as a charging current. The amount of charging current available to the battery 40 is dependent upon the initial conditions within the circuit at the time of discharge within the conversion switching element tube and the amount of mechanical energy consumed by the workload.

A spark-gap protection device 42 is included in the circuit to protect the inductive load and the rectifier elements from unduly large discharge currents. Should the potentials within the circuit exceed predetermined values, fixed by the mechanical size and spacing of the elements within the protective device, the excess energy is dissipated (bypassed) by the protective device to the circuit common (electrical ground).

Diodes 44 and 46 bypass the excess overshoot generated when the “Energy Conversion Switching Element Tube” is triggered. A switching element U allows either energy storage source to be used as the primary energy source, while the other battery is used as the energy retrieval unit. The switch facilitates interchanging the source and the retrieval unit at optimum intervals to be determined by the utilisation of the conversion switching element tube. This switching may be accomplished manually or automatically, as determined by the choice of switching element from among a large variety readily available for the purpose.
Fig. 2, Fig. 3, and Fig. 4 show the mechanical structure of the conversion switching element tube 14. An outer housing 50 may be of any insulative material such as glass. The anodes 12 and 22 and grids 34a and 34b are firmly secured by nonconductive spacer material 54, and 56. The resistive element 30 may be introduced into the low-voltage anode path to control the peak currents through the conversion switching element tube. The resistive element may be of a piece, or it may be built of one or more resistive elements to achieve the desired result.

The anode material may be identical for each anode, or may be of differing materials for each anode, as dictated by the most efficient utilisation of the device, as determined by appropriate research at the time of production for the intended use. The shape and spacing of the electrostatic grids is also susceptible to variation with application (voltage, current, and energy requirements).

It is the contention of the inventor that by judicious mating of the elements of the conversion switching element tube, and the proper selection of the components of the circuit elements of the system, the desired theoretical results may be achieved. It is the inventor's contention that this mating and selection process is well within the capabilities of intensive research and development technique.

Let it be stated here that substituting a source of electric alternating-current subject to the required current and/or voltage shaping and/or timing, either prior to being considered a primary energy source, or thereafter, should not be construed to change the described utilisation or application of primary energy in any way. Such energy conversion is readily achieved by any of a multitude of well established principles. The preferred embodiment of this invention merely assumes optimum utilisation and optimum benefit from this invention when used with portable energy devices similar in principle to the wet-cell or dry-cell battery.

This invention proposes to utilise the energy contained in an internally generated high-voltage electric spike (energy pulse) to electrically energise an inductive load; this inductive load being then capable of converting the energy so supplied into a useful electrical or mechanical output.

In operation the high-voltage, short-duration electric spike is generated by discharging the capacitor 16 across the spark-gap in the conversion switching element tube. The necessary high-voltage potential is stored on the capacitor in incremental, additive steps from the bridge-type rectifier 24. When the energy source is a direct-current electric energy storage device, such as the battery 12, the input to the bridge rectifier is provided by the voltage step-up transformer 22, that is in turn energised from the vibrator 20, or solid-state chopper, or similar device to properly drive the transformer and rectifier circuits.

When the energy source is an alternating-current, switches 64 disconnect transformer 22 and the input to the bridge-type rectifier 24 is provided by the voltage step-up transformer 66, that is in turn energised from the vibrator 20, or solid-state chopper, or similar device to properly drive the transformer and rectifier circuits.

The repetitions output of the bridge rectifier incrementally increases the capacitor charge toward its maximum. This charge is electrically connected directly to the high-voltage anode 12 of the conversion switching element tube. When the low-voltage anode 32 is connected to a source of current, an arc is created in the spark-gap designated 62 of the conversion switching element tube equivalent to the potential stored on the high-voltage anode, and the current available from the low-voltage anode.

Because the duration of the arc is very short, the instantaneous voltage, and instantaneous current may both be very high. The instantaneous peak apparent power is therefore, also very high. Within the conversion switching element tube, this energy is absorbed by the grids 34a and 34b mounted circumferentially about the interior of the tube.

Control of the energy spike within the conversion switching element tube is accomplished by a mechanical, or
solid-state commutator, that closes the circuit path from the low-voltage anode to the current source at that moment when the delivery of energy to the output load is most auspicious. Any number of standard high-accuracy, variable setting devices are available for this purpose. When control of the repetitive rate of the system’s output is required, it is accomplished by controlling the time of connection at the low-voltage anode.

Thus there can be provided an electrical driving system having a low-voltage source coupled to a vibrator, a transformer and a bridge-type rectifier to provide a high voltage pulsating signal to a first capacitor. Where a high-voltage source is otherwise available, it may be coupled direct to a bridge-type rectifier, causing a pulsating signal to a first capacitor. The capacitor in turn is coupled to a high-voltage anode of an electrical conversion switching element tube. The element also includes a low-voltage anode which in turn is connected to a voltage source by a commutator, a switching element tube, and a variable resistor. Mounted around the high-voltage anode is a charge receiving plate which in turn is coupled to an inductive load to transmit a high-voltage discharge from the element to the load. Also coupled to the load is a second capacitor for storing the back EMF created by the collapsing electrical field of the load when the current to the load is blocked. The second capacitor in turn is coupled to the voltage source.
**ELECTRICAL MOTOR / GENERATOR**

This version of the patent has been re-worded in an attempt to make it easier to read and understand. It describes the design of a pulsed electromagnet / permanent magnet motor which is capable of a higher power output than its own power input.

**ABSTRACT**

An electrodynamic motor-generator has a salient pole permanent magnet rotor interacting with salient stator poles to form a machine operating on the magnetic reluctance principle. The intrinsic ferromagnetic power of the magnets provides the drive torque by bringing the poles into register whilst current pulses demagnetise the stator poles as the poles separate. In as much as less power is needed for stator demagnetisation than is fed into the reluctance drive by the thermodynamic system powering the ferromagnetic state, the machine operates regeneratively by virtue of stator winding interconnection with unequal number of rotor and stator poles. A rotor construction is disclosed (Fig.6 and Fig.7). The current pulse may be such as to cause repulsion of the rotor poles.

**FIELD OF THE INVENTION**

This invention relates to a form of electric motor which serves a generating function in that the machine can act regeneratively to develop output electrical power or can generate mechanical drive torque with unusually high efficiency in relation to electrical power input.

The field of invention is that of switched reluctance motors, meaning machines which have salient poles and operate by virtue of the mutual magnetic attraction and/or repulsion as between magnetised poles.

The invention particularly concerns a form of reluctance motor which incorporates permanent magnets to establish magnetic polarisation.

**BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION**

There have been proposals in the past for machines in which the relative motion of magnets can in some way develop unusually strong force actions which are said to result in more power output than is supplied as electrical input.

By orthodox electrical engineering principles such suggestions have seemed to contradict accepted principles of physics, but it is becoming increasingly evident that conformity with the first law of thermodynamics allows a gain in the electromechanical power balance provided it is matched by a thermal cooling.

In this sense, one needs to extend the physical background of the cooling medium to include, not just the machine structure and the immediate ambient environment, but also the sub-quantum level of what is termed, in modern physics, the zero-point field. This is the field activity of the vacuum medium which exists in the space between atomic nuclei and atomic electrons and is the seat of the action which is that associated with the Planck constant. Energy is constantly being exchanged as between that activity and coextensive matter forms but normally these energy fluctuations preserve, on balance, an equilibrium condition so that this action passes unnoticed at the technology level.

Physicists are becoming more and more aware of the fact that, as with gravitation, so magnetism is a route by which we can gain access to the sea of energy that pervades the vacuum. Historically, the energy balance has been written in mathematical terms by assigning 'negative' potential to gravitation or magnetism. However, this is only a disguised way of saying that the vacuum field, suitably influenced by the gravitating mass of a body in the locality or by magnetism in a ferromagnet has both the capacity and an urge to shed energy.

Now, however, there is growing awareness of the technological energy generating potential of this field background and interest is developing in techniques for 'pumping' the coupling between matter and vacuum field to derive power from that hidden energy source. Such research may establish that this action will draw on the
2.7K cosmic background temperature of the space medium through which the Earth travels at some 400 km/s. The effect contemplated could well leave a cool 'vapour trail' in space as a machine delivering heat, or delivering a more useful electrical form of energy that will revert to heat, travels with body Earth through that space.

In pure physics terms, relevant background is of recent record in the August 1993 issue of Physical Review E, vol. 48, pp. 1562-1565 under the title: 'Extracting energy and heat from the vacuum', authored by D. C. Cole and H. E. Puthoff. Though the connection is not referenced in that paper, one of its author's presented experimental evidence on that theme at an April 1993 conference held in Denver USA. The plasma power generating device discussed at that conference was the subject of U. S. Patent No. 5,018,180, the inventor of record being K. R. Shoulders.

The invention, to be described below, operates by extracting energy from a magnetic system in a motor and the relevant scientific background to this technology can be appreciated from the teachings of E. B. Moullin, a Cambridge Professor of Electrical Engineering who was a President of the Institution of Electrical Engineers in U.K. That prior art will be described below as part of the explanation of the operation of the invention.

The invention presented here concerns specific structural design features of a machine adapted for robust operation, but these also have novelty and special merit in a functional operation. What is described is quite distinct from prior art proposals, one being a novel kind of motor proposed by Gareth Jones at a 1988 symposium under the auspices of the Planetary Association for Clean Energy. Jones suggested the adaptation of an automobile alternator which generates three-phase AC for rectification and use as a power supply for the electrics in the automobile. This alternator has a permanent magnet rotor and Jones suggested that it could be used, with high efficiency gain and torque performance, by operating it as a motor with the three-phase winding circuit excited so as to promote strong repulsion between the magnet poles and the stator poles after the poles had come into register.

However, the Jones machine is not one exploiting the advantages of the invention to be described, because it is not strictly a reluctance motor having salient poles on both stator and rotor. The stator poles in the Jones machine are formed by the winding configuration in a slotted stator form, the many slots being uniformly distributed around the inner circumference of the stator and not constituting a pole system which lends itself to the magnetic flux actions to be described by reference to the E. B. Moullin experiment.

The Jones machine operates by generating a rotating stator field which, in a sense, pushes the rotor poles forward rather than pulling them in the manner seen in the normal synchronous motor. Accordingly, the Jones machine relies on the electric current excitation of the motor producing a field system which rotates smoothly but has a polarity pattern which is forced by the commutation control to keep behind the rotor poles in asserting a continuous repulsive drive.

Another prior art proposal which is distinguished from this invention is that of one of the applicants, H. Aspden, namely the subject of U.K. Patent No. 2,234,863 (counterpart U.S. Patent Serial No.4,975,608). Although this latter invention is concerned with extracting energy from the field by the same physical process as the subject invention, the technique for accessing that energy is not optimum in respect of the structure or method used. Whereas in this earlier disclosure, the switching of the reluctance drive excited the poles in their approach phase, the subject invention, in one of its aspects, offers distinct advantages by demagnetisation or reversal of magnetisation in the pole separation phase of operation.

There are unexpected advantages in the implementation proposed by the subject invention, inasmuch as recent research has confirmed that it requires less input power to switch off the mutual attraction across an air gap between a magnet and an electromagnet than it does to switch it on. Usually, in electromagnetism, a reversal symmetry is expected, arising from conventional teaching of the way forward and back magnetomotive forces govern the resulting flux in a magnetic circuit.

This will be further explained after describing the scope of the invention.

**BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION**

According to one aspect of the invention, an electrodynamic motor/generator machine comprises a stator configured to provide a set of stator poles, a corresponding set of magnetising windings mounted on the stator pole set, a rotor having two sections each of which has a set of salient pole pieces, the rotor sections being axially spaced along the axis of rotation of the rotor, rotor magnetisation means disposed between the two rotor sections arranged to produce a unidirectional magnetic field which magnetically polarises the rotor poles, whereby the pole faces of one rotor section all have a north polarity and the pole faces of the other rotor section all have a south polarity and electric circuit connections between an electric current source and the stator magnetising windings arranged to regulate the operation of the machine by admitting current pulses for a duration determined according
to the angular position of the rotor, which pulses have a direction tending to oppose the polarisation induced in the stator by the rotor polarisation as stator and rotor poles separate from an in-register position, whereby the action of the rotor magnetisation means provides a reluctance motor drive force to bring stator and rotor poles into register and the action of the stator magnetisation windings opposes the counterpart reluctance braking effect as the poles separate.

According to a feature of the invention, the circuit connecting the electric current source and the stator magnetising windings is designed to deliver current pulses which are of sufficient strength and duration to provide demagnetisation of the stator poles as the stator and rotor poles separate from an in-register position.

In this regard it is noted that in order to suppress the reluctance drive torque or brake torque, depending upon whether poles are converging or separating, a certain amount of electrical power must be fed to the magnetising windings on the stator. In a sense these windings are really 'demagnetising windings' because the polarity of the circuit connections admit the pulse current in the demagnetising direction.

However, it is more usual to refer to windings on magnetic cores as 'magnetising windings' even though they can function as primary windings or secondary windings, the former serving the magnetisation function with input power and the latter serving a demagnetising function with return of power.

According to another feature of the invention, the circuit connecting the electric current source and the stator magnetising winding of a first stator pole comprises, at least partially, the electrical pulses induced in the stator magnetising winding of a different second stator pole, the stator pole set configuration in relation to the rotor pole set configuration being such that the first stator pole is coming into register with a rotor pole as the second stator pole separates from its in-register position with a rotor pole.

This means that the magnetising windings of two stator poles are connected so that both serve a 'demagnetising' function, one in resisting the magnetic action of the mutual attraction in pulling poles into register, an action which develops a current pulse output and one in absorbing this current pulse, again by resisting the magnetic inter-pole action to demagnetise the stator pole as its associated rotor pole separates.

In order to facilitate the function governed by this circuit connection between stator magnetising windings, a phase difference is needed and this is introduced by designing the machine to have a different number of poles in a set of stator poles from the number of rotor poles in each rotor section. Together with the dual rotor section feature, this has the additional merit of assuring a smoother torque action and reducing magnetic flux fluctuations and leakage effects which contribute substantially to machine efficiency.

Thus, according to another feature of the invention, the stator configuration provides pole pieces which are common to both rotor sections in the sense that when stator and rotor poles are in-register the stator pole pieces constitute bridging members for magnetic flux closure in a magnetic circuit including that of the rotor magnetisation means disposed between the two rotor sections.

Preferably, the number of poles in a set of stator poles and the number of rotor poles in each section do not share a common integer factor, the number of rotor poles in one rotor section is the same as that in the other rotor section and the number of poles in a stator set and the number of poles in a rotor section differs by one, with the pole faces being of sufficient angular width to assure that the magnetic flux produced by the rotor magnetisation means can find a circular magnetic flux closure route through the bridging path of a stator pole and through corresponding rotor poles for any angular position of the rotor.

It is also preferable from a design viewpoint for the stator pole faces of this invention to have an angular width that is no greater than half the angular width of a rotor pole and for the rotor sections to comprise circular steel laminations in which the rotor poles are formed as large teeth at the perimeter with the rotor magnetisation means comprising a magnetic core structure the end faces of which abut two assemblies of such laminations forming the two rotor sections.

According to a further feature of the invention, the rotor magnetisation means comprises at least one permanent magnet located with its polarisation axis parallel with the rotor axis. The motor-generator may include an apertured metal disc that is of a non-magnetisable substance mounted on a rotor shaft and positioned intermediate the two rotor sections, each aperture providing location for a permanent magnet, whereby the centrifugal forces acting on the permanent magnet as the rotor rotates are absorbed by the stresses set up in the
disc. Also, the rotor may be mounted on a shaft that is of a non-magnetisable substance, whereby to minimise magnetic leakage from the rotor magnetising means through that shaft.

According to another aspect of the invention, an electrodynamic motor-generator machine comprises a stator configured to provide a set of stator poles, a corresponding set of magnetising windings mounted on the stator pole set, a rotor having two sections each of which has a set of salient pole pieces, the rotor sections being axially spaced along the axis of rotation of the rotor, rotor magnetisation means incorporated in the rotor structure and arranged to polarise the rotor poles, whereby the pole faces of one rotor section all have a north polarity and the pole faces of the other rotor section all have a south polarity and electric circuit connections between an electric current source and the stator magnetising windings arranged to regulate the operation of the machine by admitting current pulses for a duration determined according to the angular position of the rotor, which pulses have a direction tending to oppose the polarisation induced in the stator by the rotor polarisation as stator and rotor poles separate from an in-register position, whereby the action of the rotor magnetisation means provides a reluctance motor drive force to bring stator and rotor poles into register and the action of the stator magnetisation windings opposes the counterpart reluctance braking effect as the poles separate.

According to a feature of this latter aspect of the invention, the electric current source connected to a stator magnetising winding of a first stator pole comprises, at least partially, the electrical pulses induced in the stator magnetising winding of a different second stator pole, the stator pole set configuration in relation to the rotor pole set configuration being such that the first stator pole is coming into register with a rotor pole as the second stator pole separates from its in-register position with a rotor pole.
Fig. 1 presents magnetic core test data showing how the volt-amp reactance power required to set up a constant magnetic flux action in an air gap, as assured by constant AC voltage excitation of a magnetising winding, falls short of the associated power of the potential implicit in the force action across that air gap.

Fig. 2 depicts the test structure to which Fig. 1 data applies.
Fig. 3 depicts the magnetisation action at work in causing magnetic flux to traverse an air-gap and turn a corner in a circuit through a magnetic core.

![Fig. 3 Diagram]

Fig. 4 shows the configuration of a test device used to prove the operating principles of the invention described.

![Fig. 4 Diagram]

Fig. 5 in its several illustrations depicts the progressive rotor pole to stator pole relationship as a rotor turns through a range of angular positions in a preferred embodiment of a machine according to the invention.

![Fig. 5 Diagram]
Fig. 6 shows the form of a disc member which provides location for four permanent magnets in the machine described.

Fig. 7 shows a cross-section of the magnetic circuit structure of a machine embodying the invention.

Fig. 8 shows a six stator pole configuration with a seven pole rotor and depicts a schematic series connected linking of the magnetising windings of diametrically opposite stator poles.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION
The fact that one can extract energy from the source which powers the intrinsic ferromagnetic state is not explicitly evident from existing textbooks, but it is implicit and, indeed, does become explicit once pointed out, in one textbook authored by E. B. Moullin. His book 'The Principles of Electromagnetism' published by Clarendon Press, Oxford (3rd Edition, 1955) describes on pages 168-174 an experiment concerned with the effect of air gaps between poles in a magnetic circuit. The data obtained are reproduced in **Fig.1**, where Professor Moullin shows a curve representing AC current input for different air gaps, given that the voltage supplied is constant. In the same figure, Moullin presents the theoretical current that would need to be applied to sustain the same voltage, and so the related pole forces across the air gap, assuming (a) no flux leakage and (b) that there is complete equality between inductive energy input and the mechanical energy potential for the magnetisation that is established in the air gap in a quarter-cycle period at the AC power excitation frequency.

![Fig.1](image)

The data show that, even though the level of magnetic polarisation is well below the saturation value, being confined to a range that is regarded as the linear permeability range in transformer design, there is a clear drop-off of current, and so the volt-amp reactive power input needed, as current increases, compared with that predicted by the mechanical potential built up in the air gaps. Unless leakage flux is excessive, here was clear evidence of anomalous energy activity.

Moullin discusses the leakage flux inferred by this experiment but points out that there is considerable mystery in why the effect of a small gap, which should certainly not result in much flux leakage in the gap region, nevertheless has an enormous effect in causing what has to be substantial leakage in the light of the energy discrepancy. Moullin did not contemplate that energy had been fed in from the zero-point field system and so he left the issue with the statement that it was virtually impossible to predict leakage flux by calculation.

He was, of course, aware of magnetic domain structure and his argument was that the leakage flux problem was connected with what he termed a 'yawing' action of the flux as it passes around the magnetic circuit. Normally, the level of polarisation is below the knee of the B-H curve, which occurs at about 70% of saturation in iron cores of general crystal composition, it requires very little magnetising field to change the magnetic flux density. This is assuming that every effort is made to avoid air gaps. The action involves domain wall movements so that the magnetic states of adjacent domains switch to different crystal axes of easy magnetisation and this involves very little energy change.

However, if there is an air gap ahead in the flux circuit and the magnetising winding is not sitting on that air gap, the iron core itself has to be the seat of a progressive field source linking the winding and the gap. It can only serve in that sense by virtue of the lines of flux in the domains being forced to rotate somewhat from the preferred easy axes of magnetisation, with the help of the boundary surfaces around the whole core. This action means that, forcibly, and consequential upon the existence of the air gap, the flux must be carried through the core by
that 'yawing' action. It means that substantial energy is needed to force the establishment of those fields within the iron core. More important, however, from the point of view of this invention, it means that the intrinsic magnetic polarisation effects in adjacent magnetic domains in the iron cease to be mutually parallel or orthogonal so as to stay directed along axes of easy magnetisation. Then, in effect, the magnetising action is not just that of the magnetising winding wrapped around the core but becomes also that of adjacent ferromagnetic polarisation as the latter act in concert as vacuum-energy powered solenoids and are deflected into one another to develop the additional forward magnetomotive forces.

The consequences of this are that the intrinsic ferromagnetic power source with its thermodynamic ordering action contributes to doing work in building up forces across the air gap. The task, in technological terms, is then to harness that energy as the gap is closed, as by poles coming together in a reluctance motor, and avoid returning that energy as the poles separate, this being possible if the controlling source of primary magnetisation is well removed from the pole gap and the demagnetisation occurs when the poles are at the closest position.

This energy situation is evident in the Moullin data, because the constant AC voltage implies a constant flux amplitude across the air gap if there is no flux leakage in the gap region. A constant flux amplitude implies a constant force between the poles and so the gap width in relation to this force is a measure of the mechanical energy potential of the air gap. The reactive volt-amp power assessment over the quarter-cycle period representing the polarisation demand can then be compared with the mechanical energy so made available. As already stated, this is how Moullin deduced the theoretical current curve. In fact, as his data show, he needed less current than the mechanical energy suggested and so he had in his experiment evidence of the vacuum energy source that passed unnoticed and is only now revealing itself in machines that can serve our energy needs.

In the research leading to this patent application the Moullin experiment has been repeated to verify a condition where a single magnetising winding serves three air gaps. The Moullin test configuration is shown in Fig.2, but in repeating the experiment in the research leading to this invention, a search coil was mounted on the bridging member and this was used to compare the ratio of the voltage applied to the magnetising winding and that induced in the search coil.

The same fall-off feature in current demand was observed, and there was clear evidence of substantial excess energy in the air gap. This was in addition to the inductive energy that necessarily had to be locked into the magnetic core to sustain the 'yawing' action of the magnetic flux already mentioned.

It is therefore emphasised that, in priming the flux 'yawing' action, energy is stored inductively in the magnetic core, even though this has been deemed to be the energy of flux leakage outside the core. The air gap energy is also induction energy. Both energies are returned to the source winding when the system is demagnetised, given a fixed air gap.

If, however, the air gap closes after or during magnetisation, much of that inductive energy goes into the mechanical work output. Note then that the energy released as mechanical work is not just that stored in the air gap but is that stored in sustaining the 'yaw'. Here, then is reason to expect an even stronger contribution to the dynamic machine performance, one that was not embraced by the calculation of the steady-state situation.

Given the above explanation of the energy source, the structural features which are the subject of this invention will now be described.

The 'yawing' action is depicted in Fig.3, which depicts how magnetic flux navigates a right-angled bend in a magnetic core upon passage through an air gap. By over-simplification it is assumed that the core has a crystal structure that has a preferred axis of magnetisation along the broken line path. With no air gap, the current needed by a magnetising winding has only to provide enough magnetomotive force to overcome the effects of non-magnetic inclusions and impurities in the core substance and very high magnetic permeabilities can apply. However, as soon as the air gap develops, this core substance has to find a way of setting up magnetomotive force in regions extending away from the locality of the magnetising winding. It cannot do this unless its effect is so powerful that the magnetic flux throughout the magnetic circuit through the core substance is everywhere deflected from alignment with a preferred easy axis of magnetisation. Hence the flux vectors depicted by the arrows move out of alignment with the broken line shown.

There is a 'knock-on' effect progressing all the way around the core from the seat of the magnetising winding and, as already stated, this harnesses the intrinsic ferromagnetic power that, in a system with no air gap, could only be affected by magnetisation above the knee of the B-H curve. Magnetic flux rotation occurs above that knee, whereas in an ideal core the magnetism develops with very high permeability over a range up to that knee, because it needs very little power to displace a magnetic domain wall sideways and promote a 900 or a1800 flux reversal. Indeed, one can have a magnetic permeability of 10,000 below the knee and 100 above the knee, the latter reducing progressively until the substance saturates magnetically.
In the situation depicted in Fig. 2 and Fig. 3 the field strength developed by the magnetising windings 1 on magnetic core 2 has to be higher, the greater the air gap, in order to achieve the same amount of magnetisation as measured by the voltage induced in a winding (not shown) on the bridging member 3. However, by virtue of that air gap there is potential for harnessing energy supplied to that air gap by the intrinsic zero-point field that accounts for the magnetic permeability being over unity and here one can contemplate very substantial excess energy potential, given incorporation in a machine design which departs from convention.

One of the applicants has built an operative test machine which is configured as depicted schematically in Fig. 4. The machine has been proved to deliver substantially more mechanical power output than is supplied as electrical input, as much as a ratio of 7:1 in one version, and it can act regeneratively to produce electrical power.

What is shown in Fig. 4 is a simple model designed to demonstrate the principle of operation. It comprises a rotor in which four permanent magnets 4 are arrayed to form four poles. The magnets are bonded into four sectors of a non-magnetic disc 5 using a high density polyurethane foam filler and the composite disc is then assembled on a brass spindle 6 between a split flange coupling. Not shown in the figure is the structure holding the spindle vertically in bearings or the star wheel commutator assembly attached to the upper shaft of the spindle.

Note that the magnets present north poles at the perimeter of the rotor disc and that the south poles are held together by being firmly set in the bonding material. A series of four stator poles were formed using magnetic cores from standard electromagnetic relays and were positioned around the rotor disc as shown. The magnetising windings 7 on these cores are shown to be connected in series and powered through commutator contacts 8 by a DC power supply. Two further stator cores formed by similar electromagnetic relay components are depicted by their windings 9 in the intermediate angle positions shown and these are connected in series and connected to a rectifier 10 bridged by a capacitor 11.
The rotor spindle 6 is coupled with a mechanical drive (not shown) which harnesses the torque developed by the motor thus formed and serves as a means for measuring output mechanical power delivered by the machine.

In operation, assuming that the rotor poles are held initially off-register with the corresponding stator poles and the hold is then released, the strong magnetic field action of the permanent magnets will turn the rotor to bring the stator and rotor poles into register. A permanent magnet has a strong attraction for soft iron and so this initial impulse of rotation is powered by the potential energy of the magnets.

Now, with the rotor acting as a flywheel and having inertia it will have a tendency to over-shoot the in-register pole position and that will involve a reverse attraction with the result that the rotor will oscillate until damping action brings it to rest. However, if the contacts of the commutating switch are closed as the poles come into register the commutating switch 8 needs only to be closed for a limited period of angular travel following the top dead centre in-register position of the stator and rotor poles. The power supplied through that switch by those pulses will cause the rotor to continue rotating and high speeds will be achieved as the machine develops its full motor function.

Tests on such a machine have shown that more mechanical power can be delivered than is supplied electrically by the source powering the action through the commutating switch. The reason for this is that, whereas the energy in the air gap between rotor and stator poles which is tapped mechanically as the poles come into register is provided by the intrinsic power of the ferromagnet, a demagnetising winding on the part of the core system coupled across that air gap needs very little power to eliminate the mechanical force acting across that air gap. Imagine such a winding on the bridging member shown in Fig.2. The action of current in that winding, which sits astride the 'yawing' flux in that bridging member well removed from the source action of the magnetising windings 1, is placed to be extremely effective in resisting the magnetising influence communicated from a distance. Hence, very little power is needed to overcome the magnetic coupling transmitted across the air gap.

Although the mutual inductance between two spaced-apart magnetising windings has a reciprocal action, regardless of which winding is primary and which is secondary, the action in the particular machine situation being described involves the 'solenoidal' contribution represented by the 'yawing' ferromagnetic flux action. The latter is not reciprocal inasmuch as the flux 'yaw' depends on the geometry of the system. A magnetising winding directing flux directly across an air gap has a different influence on the action in the ferromagnetic core from one directing flux lateral to the air gap and there is no reciprocity in this action.

In any event, the facts of experiment do reveal that, owing to a significant discrepancy in such mutual interaction, more mechanical power is fed into the rotor than is supplied as input from the electrical source.

This has been further demonstrated by using the two stator windings 9 to respond in a generator sense to the passage of the rotor poles. An electrical pulse is induced in each winding by the passage of a rotor pole and this is powered by the inertia of the rotor disc 5. By connecting the power so generated, to charge the capacitor 11, the DC power supply can be augmented to enhance the efficiency even further.

Indeed, the machine is able to demonstrate the excess power delivery from the ferromagnetic system by virtue of electrical power generation charging a battery at a greater rate than a supply battery is discharged.

This invention is concerned with a practical embodiment of the motor-generator principles just described and aims, in its preferred aspect, to provide a robust and reliable machine in which the tooth stresses in the rotor poles, which are fluctuating stresses communicating high reluctance drive torque, are not absorbed by a ceramic permanent magnet liable to rupture owing to its brittle composition.

Another object is to provide a structure which can be dismantled and reassembled easily to replace the permanent magnets, but an even more important object is that of minimising the stray leakage flux oscillations from the powerful permanent magnets. Their rotation in the device depicted in Fig.4 would cause excessive eddy-current induction in nearby metal, including that of the machine itself, and such effects are minimised if the flux changes are confined to paths through steel laminations and if the source flux from the magnets has a symmetry or near symmetry about the axis of rotation.

Thus, the ideal design with this in mind is one where the permanent magnet is a hollow cylinder located on a non-magnetic rotor shaft, but, though that structure is within the scope of this invention, the machine described will utilise several separate permanent magnets approximating, in function, such a cylindrical configuration.

Referring to Fig.4, it will further be noted that the magnetic flux emerging from the north poles will have to find its way along leakage paths through air to re-enter the south poles. For periods in each cycle of machine operation
the flux will be attracted through the stator cores, but the passage through air is essential and so the power of the magnets is not used to full advantage and there are those unwanted eddy-current effects.

To overcome this problem the invention provides for two separate rotor sections and the stator poles become bridging members, which with optimum design, allow the flux from the magnets to find a route around a magnetic circuit with minimal leakage through air as the flux is directed through one or other pairs of air gaps where the torque action is developed.

Reference is now made to Fig. 5 and the sequence of rotor positions shown. Note that the stator pole width can be significantly smaller that that of the rotor poles. Indeed, for operation using the principles of this invention, it is advantageous for the stator to have a much smaller pole width so as to concentrate the effective pole region. A stator pole width of half that of the rotor is appropriate but it may be even smaller and this has the secondary advantage of requiring smaller magnetising windings and so saving on the loss associated with the current circuit.

The stator has eight pole pieces formed as bridging members 12, more clearly represented in Fig. 7, which shows a sectional side view through two rotor sections 13 axially spaced on a rotor shaft 14. There are four permanent magnets 15 positioned between these rotor sections and located in apertures 16 in a disc 17 of a non-magnetic
substance of high tensile strength, the latter being shown in Fig.6. The rotor sections are formed from disc laminations of electrical steel which has seven large teeth, the salient poles. Magnetising windings 18 mounted on the bridging members 12 constitute the system governing the action of the motor-generator being described.

The control circuitry is not described as design of such circuitry involves ordinary skill possessed by those involved in the electrical engineering art.

It suffices, therefore, to describe the merits of the structural design configuration of the core elements of the machine. These concern principally the magnetic action and, as can be imagined from Fig.7, the magnetic flux from the magnets enters the rotor laminations by traversing the planar faces of the laminations and being deflected into the plane of the laminations to pass through one or other of the stator pole bridging members, returning by a similar route through the other rotor.

By using eight stator poles and seven rotor poles, the latter having a pole width equal to half the pole pitch in an angular sense, it will be seen from Fig.5, that there is always a flux passage across the small air gap between stator and rotor poles. However, as one pole combination is in-register the diametrically-opposed pole combinations are out-of register.

As described by reference to Fig.4 the operation of the machine involves allowing the magnet to pull stator and rotor poles into register and then, as they separate, pulsing the winding on the relevant stator member to demagnetise that member. In the Fig.4 system, all the stator magnetising windings were pulsed together, which is not an optimum way in which to drive a multi-pole machine.

In the machine having the pole structure with one less rotor pole than stator poles (or an equivalent design in which there is one less stator pole than rotor poles) this pulsing action can be distributed in its demand on the power supply, and though this makes the commutation switch circuit more expensive the resulting benefit outweighs that cost. However, there is a feature of this invention by which that problem can be alleviated if not eliminated.

Suppose that the rotor has the position shown in Fig.5(a) with the rotor pole denoted R1 midway between stator poles S1 and S2 and imagine that this is attracted towards the in-register position with stator pole S2. Upon reaching that in-register position, as shown in Fig.5(c), suppose that the magnetising winding of stator pole S2 is excited by a current pulse which is sustained until the rotor reaches the Fig.5(e) position.

The combination of these two actions will have imparted a forward drive impulse powered by the permanent magnet in the rotor structure and the current pulse which suppresses braking action will have drawn a smaller amount of energy from the electrical power source which supplies it. This is the same process as was described by reference to Fig.4.

However, now consider the events occurring in the rotor action diametrically opposite that just described. In the Fig.5(a) position rotor pole R4 has come fully into register with stator pole S5 and so stator pole S5 is ready to be demagnetised. However, the magnetic coupling between the rotor and stator poles is then at its strongest. Note, however, that in that Fig.5(a) position R5 is beginning its separation from stator poles and the magnetising winding of stator pole S6 must then begin draw power to initiate demagnetisation. During that following period of pole separation the power from the magnet is pulling R1 and S2 together with much more action than is needed to generate that current pulse needed to demagnetise S6. It follows, therefore, that, based on the research findings of the regenerative excitation in the test system of Fig.4, the series connection of the magnetising windings on stators S2 and S6 will, without needing any commutative switching, provide the regenerative power needed for machine operation.

The complementary action of the two magnetising windings during the pole closure and pole separation allows the construction of a machine which, given that the zero-point vacuum energy powering the ferromagnet is feeding input power, will run on that source of energy and thereby cool the sustaining field system.

There are various design options in implementing what has just been proposed. Much depends upon the intended use of the machine. If it is intended to deliver mechanical power output the regenerative electrical power action can all be used to power the demagnetisation with any surplus contributing to a stronger drive torque by reversing the polarity of the stator poles during pole separation.

If the object is to generate electricity by operating in generator mode then one could design a machine having additional windings on the stator for delivering electrical power output. However, it seems preferable to regard the machine as a motor and maximise its efficiency in that capacity whilst using a mechanical coupling to an alternator of conventional design for the electrical power generation function.
In the latter case it would still seem preferable to use the self-excitation feature already described to reduce commutation switching problems.

The question of providing for machine start-up can be addressed by using a separate starter motor powered from an external supply or by providing for current pulsing limited to, say, two stator poles. Thus, for example, with the eight stator pole configuration, the cross-connected magnetising windings could be limited to three stator pairs, with two stator magnetising windings left free for connection to a pulsed external supply source.

If the latter feature were not required, then the stator magnetising windings would all be connected in pairs on a truly diametrically opposite basis. Thus Fig.8 shows a rotor-stator configuration having six stator poles interacting with seven rotor poles and stator magnetising windings linked together in pairs.

The invention, therefore, offers a wide range of implementation possibilities, which, in the light of this disclosure will become obvious to persons skilled in the electrical engineering art, all based, however, on the essential but simple principle that a rotor has a set of poles of common polarity which are attracted into register with a set of stator poles that are suppressed or reversed in polarity magnetically during pole separation. The invention, however, also offers the important feature of minimising commutation and providing further for a magnetic flux closure that minimises the leakage flux and fluctuations of leakage flux and so contributes to efficiency and high torque performance as well as durability and reliability of a machine incorporating the invention.

It is noted that although a machine has been described which uses two rotor sections it is possible to build a composite version of the machine having several rotor sections. In the eventuality that the invention finds use in very large motor-generator machines the problem of providing very large magnets can be overcome by a design in which numerous small magnets are assembled. The structural concept described by reference to Fig.6 in providing locating apertures to house the magnets makes this proposal highly feasible. Furthermore, it is possible to replace the magnets by a steel cylinder and provide a solenoid as part of the stator structure and located between the rotor sections. This would set up an axial magnetic field magnetising the steel cylinder and so polarising the rotor. However, the power supplied to that solenoid would detract from the power generated and so such a machine would not be as effective as the use of permanent magnets such as are now available.

Nevertheless, should one see significant progress in the development of warm superconductor materials, it may become feasible to harness the self-generating motor-generator features of the invention, with its self-cooling properties, by operating the device in an enclosure at low temperatures and replacing the magnets by a superconductive stator supported solenoid.

CLAIMS

1. An electrodynamic motor-generator machine comprising a stator configured to provide a set of stator poles, a corresponding set of magnetising windings mounted on the stator pole set, a rotor having two sections each of which has a set of salient pole pieces, the rotor sections being axially spaced along the axis of rotation of the rotor, rotor magnetisation means disposed between the two rotor sections arranged to produce a unidirectional magnetic field which magnetically polarises the rotor poles, whereby the pole faces of one rotor section all have a north polarity and the pole faces of the other rotor section all have a south polarity and electric circuit connections between an electric current source and the stator magnetising windings arranged to regulate the operation of the machine by admitting current pulses for a duration determined according to the angular position of the rotor, which pulses have a direction tending to oppose the polarisation induced in the stator by
the rotor polarisation as stator and rotor poles separate from an in-register position, whereby the action of the rotor magnetisation means provides a reluctance motor drive force to bring stator and rotor poles into register and the action of the stator magnetisation windings opposes the counterpart reluctance braking effect as the poles separate.

2. A motor-generator according to claim 1, wherein the circuit connecting the electric current source and the stator magnetising windings is designed to deliver current pulses which are of sufficient strength and duration to provide demagnetisation of the stator poles as the stator and rotor poles separate from an in-register position.

3. A motor-generator according to claim 1, wherein the circuit connecting the electric current source and the stator magnetising windings is designed to deliver current pulses which are of sufficient strength and duration to provide a reversal of magnetic flux direction in the stator poles as the stator and rotor poles separate from an in-register position, whereby to draw on power supplied from the electric current source to provide additional forward drive torque.

4. A motor-generator according to claim 1, wherein the electric current source connected to a stator magnetising winding of a first stator pole comprises, at least partially, the electrical pulses induced in the stator magnetising winding of a different second stator pole, the stator pole set configuration in relation to the rotor pole set configuration being such that the first stator pole is coming into register with a rotor pole as the second stator pole separates from its in-register position with a rotor pole.

5. A motor-generator according to claim 1, wherein the number of poles in a set of stator poles is different from the number of rotor poles in each rotor section.

6. A motor-generator according to claim 1, wherein the stator configuration provides pole pieces which are common to both rotor sections in the sense that when stator and rotor poles are in-register the stator pole pieces constitute bridging members for magnetic flux closure in a magnetic circuit including that of the rotor magnetisation means disposed between the two rotor sections.

7. A motor-generator according to claim 6, wherein the number of poles in a set of stator poles and the number of rotor poles in each section do not share a common integer factor and the number of rotor poles in one rotor section is the same as that in the other rotor section.

8. A motor-generator according to claim 7, wherein the number of poles in a stator set and the number of poles in a rotor section differs by one and the pole faces are of sufficient angular width to assure that the magnetic flux produced by the rotor magnetisation means can find a circuital magnetic flux closure route through the bridging path of a stator pole and through corresponding rotor poles for any angular position of the rotor.

9. A motor-generator according to claim 8, wherein each rotor section comprises seven poles.

10. A motor-generator according to claim 7, wherein there are N rotor poles in each rotor section and each has an angular width that is 180/N degree of angle.

11. A motor-generator according to claim 7, wherein the stator pole faces have an angular width that is no greater than half the angular width of a rotor pole.

12. A motor-generator according to claim 1, wherein the rotor sections comprise circular steel laminations in which the rotor poles are formed as large teeth at the perimeter, and the rotor magnetisation means comprise a magnetic core structure the end faces of which abut two assemblies of such laminations forming the two rotor sections.

13. A motor-generator according to claim 1 in which the rotor magnetisation means comprises at least one permanent magnet located with its polarisation axis parallel with the rotor axis.

14. A motor-generator according to claim 13, wherein an apertured metal disc that is of a non-magnetisable substance is mounted on a rotor shaft and positioned intermediate the two rotor sections and each aperture provides location for a permanent magnet, whereby the centrifugal forces acting on the permanent magnet as the rotor rotates are absorbed by the stresses set up in the disc.

15. A motor-generator according to claim 1, having a rotor mounted on a shaft that is of a non-magnetisable substance, whereby to minimise magnetic leakage from the rotor magnetising means.

16. An electrodynamic motor-generator machine comprising a stator configured to provide a set of stator poles, a corresponding set of magnetising windings mounted on the stator pole set, a rotor having two sections each of which has a set of salient pole pieces, the rotor sections being axially spaced along the axis of rotation of the
3. A motor-generator according to claim 1, wherein the circuit connecting the electric current source and the stator magnetising windings arranged to regulate the operation of the machine by admitting current pulses for a duration determined according to the angular position of the rotor, which pulses have a direction tending to oppose the polarisation induced in the stator by the rotor polarisation as stator and rotor poles separate from an in-register position, whereby the action of the rotor magnetisation means provides a reluctance motor drive force to bring stator and rotor poles into register and the action of the stator magnetisation windings opposes the counterpart reluctance braking effect as the poles separate.

17. A motor-generator according to claim 16, wherein the electric current source connected to a stator magnetising winding of a first stator pole comprises, at least partially, the electrical pulses induced in the stator magnetising winding of a different second stator pole, the stator pole set configuration in relation to the rotor pole set configuration being such that the first stator pole is coming into register with a rotor pole as the second stator pole separates from its in-register position with a rotor pole.

Amendments to the claims have been filed as follows 1. An electrodynamic motor-generator machine comprising a stator configured to provide a set of stator poles, a corresponding set of magnetising windings mounted on the stator pole set, a rotor having two sections each of which has a set of salient pole pieces, the rotor sections being axially spaced along the axis of rotation of the rotor, rotor magnetisation means disposed between the two rotor sections arranged to produce a unidirectional magnetic field which magnetically polarises the rotor poles, whereby the pole faces of one rotor section all have a north polarity and the pole faces of the other rotor section all have a south polarity and electric circuit connections between an electric current source and the stator magnetising windings arranged to regulate the operation of the machine by admitting current pulses for a duration determined according to the angular position of the rotor, which pulses have a direction tending to oppose the polarisation induced in the stator by the rotor polarisation as stator and rotor poles separate from an in-register position, whereby the action of the rotor magnetisation means provides a reluctance motor drive force to bring stator and rotor poles into register and the action of the stator magnetisation windings opposes the counterpart reluctance braking effect as the poles separate, the machine being characterised in that the stator comprises separate ferromagnetic bridging members mounted parallel with the rotor axis, the ends of which constitute stator poles and the core sections of which provide closure paths operative when the stator and rotor poles are in register to confine magnetic flux developed by the rotor magnetisation means to a stator flux path of restricted cross-section disposed anti-parallel with the unidirectional magnetic field polarisation axis of the rotor magnetising means 2. A motor-generator according to claim 1, wherein the circuit connecting the electric current source and the stator magnetising windings is designed to deliver current pulses which are of sufficient strength and duration to provide demagnetisation of the stator poles as the stator and rotor poles separate from an in-register position.

3. A motor-generator according to claim 1, wherein the circuit connecting the electric current source and the stator magnetising windings is designed to deliver current pulses which are of sufficient strength and duration to provide a reversal of magnetic flux direction in the stator poles as the stator and rotor poles separate from an in-register position, whereby to draw on power supplied from the electric current source to provide additional forward drive torque.

4. A motor-generator according to claim 1, wherein the electric current source connected to a stator magnetising winding of a first stator pole comprises, at least partially, the electrical pulses induced in the stator magnetising winding of a different second stator pole, the stator pole set configuration in relation to the rotor pole set configuration being such that the first stator pole is coming into register with a rotor pole as the second stator pole separates from its in-register position with a rotor pole.

5. A motor-generator according to claim 1, wherein the number of poles in a set of stator poles is different from the number of rotor poles in each rotor section.

6. A motor-generator according to claim 1, wherein the stator configuration provides pole pieces which are common to both rotor sections in the sense that when stator and rotor poles are in-register the stator pole pieces constitute bridging members for magnetic flux closure in a magnetic circuit including that of the rotor magnetisation means disposed between the two rotor sections.

7. A motor-generator according to claim 6, wherein the number of poles in a set of stator poles and the number of rotor poles in each section do not share a common integer factor and the number of rotor poles in one rotor section is the same as that in the other rotor section.
SELF-SUSTAINING ELECTRIC POWER GENERATOR UTILISING ELECTRONS
OF LOW INERTIAL MASS TO MAGNIFY INDUCTIVE ENERGY

This patent application shows a very neat, self-powered electrical generator with a theoretical output of anything up to a COP of 59 when using cadmium selenide. The discussion of the theoretical aspects of the design includes a large amount of historical information and it covers the origin of the “law” of Conservation of Energy which, in spite of being incorrect, has been for decades, a major obstacle to the scientific development of free-energy devices.

Filed: 6th March 2006
Assignee: Levitronics, Inc.
Provisional application No. 60/697,729 filed on 8th July 2005

ABSTRACT
Electrical oscillations in a metallic “sending coil” radiate inductive photons toward one or more “energy-magnifying coils” comprised of a photoconductor or doped semiconductor coating a metallic conductor, or comprised of a superconductor. Electrons of low inertial mass in the energy-magnifying coil(s) receive from the sending coil, a transverse force having no in-line backforce, which exempts this force from the energy-conservation rule. The low-mass electrons in the energy-magnifying coil(s) receive increased acceleration proportional to normal electron mass divided by the lesser mass. Secondarily radiated inductive-photon energy is magnified proportionally to the electrons’ greater acceleration, squared, e.g., the inductive-energy-magnification factor of CdSe photoelectrons with 0.13 x normal electron mass is 59 times. Magnified inductive-photon energy from the energy-magnifying coil(s) induces oscillating electric energy in one or more metallic “output coil(s)”. The electric energy output exceeds the energy input if more of the magnified photon induction energy is directed toward the output coil(s) than is directed as a counter force to the sending coil. After an external energy source initiates the oscillations, feedback from the generated surplus energy makes the device a self-sustaining generator of electric power for useful purposes.

CROSS REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATION
This application corresponds to, and claims the benefit under 35 U.S.C. 119(e), of U.S. provisional application No. 60/697,729, filed on 8th July 2005, incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

FIELD
This disclosure introduces a technical field in which practical electrical energy is created in accordance with the overlooked exception to the energy-conservation rule that Herman von Helmholtz described in his 1847 doctrine on energy conservation: “If . . . bodies possess forces which depend upon time and velocity, or which act in directions other than lines which unite each pair of material points, . . . then combinations of such bodies are possible in which force may be either lost or gained as infinitum”. A transverse inductive force qualifies for Helmholtz’s ad infinitum rule, but this force is not sufficient of itself to cause a greater energy output than input when applied to electrons of normal mass due to their unique charge-to-mass ratio. However, the increased acceleration of conduction electrons of less-than-normal inertial mass, as occurs in photoconductors, doped semiconductors, and superconductors, is proportional to the normal electron mass divided by the low electron mass, and the magnification of harnessable inductive energy is proportional to the square of the greater relative acceleration.

BACKGROUND
Magnetic force also satisfies Helmholtz’s exemption to the energy-conservation rule because magnetic force is transverse to the force that causes it, and magnetic force is determined by the “relative velocity” (i.e. perpendicular to the connecting line) between electric charges. Magnification of magnetic force and energy was demonstrated by E. Leimer (1915) in the coil of a speaker phone and in the coil of a galvanometer when he irradiated a radio antenna-wire with radium. A 10 milligram, linear radium source produced a measured 2.6 fold increase in electrical current in the antenna wire in comparing inaudible radio reception without radium to audible reception with radium. This represented a (2.6)² = 7 times increase in electrical energy flowing through the
The same year that the English translation of Leimer’s paper appeared in Scientific American, 16-year old Alfred M. Hubbard of Seattle, Washington, reportedly invented a fuelless generator, which he later admitted, employed radium. Applicant interprets this as implying that Leimer’s energy-magnification was utilised by Hubbard with feedback to make it self-sustaining. Three years later, Hubbard publicly demonstrated a relatively advanced fuelless generator that illuminated a 20-watt incandescent bulb (Anon. 1919a). A reputable physics professor from Seattle College, who was intimately familiar with Hubbard’s device (but not at liberty to disclose its construction details), vouched for the integrity of the fuelless generator and declared that it was not a storage device, but he did not know why it worked (Anon. 1919b). Because Hubbard initially had no financial means of his own, it is likely that the professor had provided Hubbard with the use of the expensive radium initially and thereby witnessed the inventing process in his own laboratory.

Newspaper photos (Anon. 1920a) of a more impressive demonstration of Hubbard’s fuelless generator, show a device described as 14 inches (36 cm) long and 11 inches (28 cm) in diameter, connected by four heavy electrical cables to a 35 horsepower (26 kW) electric motor. The motor reportedly propelled an 18-foot open launch around a like at a speed of 8 to 10 knots (Anon. 1920b). The event was witnessed by a cautious news reporter who claims to have checked thoroughly for any wires that might have been connected to hidden batteries, by lifting the device and motor from the boat. Radioactive-decay energy can be eliminated as the main power source because about $10^6$ times more radium than the entire world’s supply would have been needed to equal Hubbard’s reported electric energy output of 330 amperes and 124 volts.

Lester J. Hendershott of Pittsburgh, Pa., reportedly demonstrated a fuelless generator in 1928 that was claimed by Hubbard to be a copy of his own device (1928h). The president of Stout Air services, William B. Stout, who also designed the Ford Trimotor aeroplane, reported (1928b): “The demonstration was very impressive. It was actually uncanny.... The small model appeared to operate exactly as Hendershot explained it did”. Also reportedly attesting to the operability of Hendershott’s fuelless generator were Colonel Charles A. Lindbergh and Major Thomas Lanphier of the U.S. Air Corps (1928a, et seq.), and Lanphier’s troops reportedly assembled a working model of his device.

To the Applicant’s best knowledge, the only depiction that was made public of the interior components of any of these reported generators consists of a sketchy drawing (Bermann 1928h) of Hubbard’s apparatus similar in size to the device shown in his 1919 demonstration. It depicts a complex set of parallel coils measuring 6 inches (15 cm) in length and 4.5 inches (11.4 cm) in overall diameter. Four leads of insulated wire, with the insulation peeled back, are shown coming out of the end of the device. What those four wires were connected to internally was not shown. Hubbard’s description of the internal arrangement of coils in the device generally matches the drawing (Anon. 1920a): “It is made up of a group of eight electromagnets, each with primary and secondary windings of copper wire, which are arranged around a large steel core. The core likewise has a single winding. About the entire group of cells is a secondary winding”. Nothing was reported or depicted about how components functioned with each other, or how much radium was used and where the radium was positioned. The only connectors visible on the drawing were between the outer windings of the eight electromagnet coils. These connectors show that the direction of the windings alternated between clockwise and counterclockwise on adjacent coils, so that the polarity of each electromagnet would have been opposite to that of its adjacent neighbours.

If the Hubbard and Hendershot devices actually operated as reported, they apparently never attained acceptance or commercial success. Assuming the devices actually worked, their lack of success may have been largely financially or supply based, or both, compounded with scepticism from believers in the energy-conservation doctrine. How much radium was employed by Hubbard in his larger generator can only be guessed at, but assuming a typical laboratory radium needle containing 10 milligrams of radium was used, that amount would have cost $900 in 1920, dropping to $500 in 1929. That much radium in a fuelless generator would have cost as much as an inexpensive automobile in the 1920s. Possibly much more radium was used than 10 milligrams.

In 1922, when the Radium Company of America of Pittsburgh, Pa., reportedly discontinued its work with Hubbard on his invention (1928h), the entire world’s supply of radium was only about 250 grams. With the extreme
assumption that only 1 milligram of radium was needed per generator, less than 10% of a single year's production of autos in the US in the mid-1920s could have been supplied with such generators. Apparently Hendershot had tried to revive the technology by showing that the fuelless generator could extend the range of air flight indefinitely, but his technology never attracted a sponsor from any private, public or philanthropic entity.

To the best of the Applicant's knowledge, no person other than the Applicant has ever indicated that the presence of cupric oxide on their wires could have provided energy magnification. If Hubbard's device actually did work, certain characteristics of its design are unexplainable by the Applicant, namely the use of four rather than two materials. "During the absorption process, each alpha particle will collide with one or more atoms in the conductor, knocking electrons from their orbits and imparting some kinetic energy to the electrons in the conductor, thereby increasing its conductivity": (Col. 3, Line 68 to Col. 4, line 5). No claim was made by Brown, that the device employed a semiconductor or photoconductor that could have provided low-mass electrons for energy magnification.

Brown claimed an output of 23 amps at 400 volts, which is vastly greater than all the decay energy represented by his reported radioactive content of 1 milligram of radium that was surrounded by weakly radioactive uranium rods and thorium powder. Powered thorium is highly pyrophoric, so it is typically sealed in a nitrogen atmosphere to prevent spontaneous combustion. In his device, Brown reportedly confined the thorium in cardboard without any mention of sealing out air. This condition would have invited a meltdown that could have been interpreted as massive out-of-control electrical production.

To the best of the Applicant's knowledge, no person other than the Applicant has ever indicated that the presence of cupric oxide on their wires could have provided energy magnification. If Hubbard's device actually did work, certain characteristics of its design are unexplainable by the Applicant, namely the use of four rather than two large electrical cables to connect his device to an electrical motor, and the use of alternating polarity instead of single-direction polarity in the orientation of the multiple coils surrounding a central coil. Applicant therefore believes that the specification herein sets forth original configurations of electrical-energy generators that have no known precedent.

**SUMMARY**

To address the needs for electrical generators which are capable of self-generating substantial amounts of electrical power in various environments, and which are portable as well as stationary, apparatus and methods are provided for magnifying an electrical input, and (with feedback) for generating usable electrical power indefinitely without fuel or other external energy source, except for starting. The apparatus utilises electrons of low effective mass, which receive greater acceleration than normal electrons in an amount that is inversely proportional to the effective mass. Applicant has determined that effective mass is the same as the electron's true inertial mass. The photon energy that is radiated when an electron is accelerated is proportional to the square of the acceleration, so the increase in radiated photon energy from an accelerated low-mass electron over the energy from a normal electron is equal to the inverse square of the effective mass, e.g. the calculated energy magnification provided by photoconducting electrons in cadmium selenide, with an electron effective mass of 0.13, is 59 times. The use of a transverse force, that lacks a direct back-force, to accelerate low-mass electrons in an oscillating manner, circumvents any equal-and-opposite force that would invoke the application of the energy-conservation law of kinetics and thermodynamics.

The various embodiments of the apparatus, which are configured either to continuously magnify an input of oscillating electric energy, or to serve as a self-sustaining electric generator, employ three principal components:

**At least one sending coil**

At least one energy-magnification coil, comprising a material that produces, in a "condition" low-mass electrons, and

At least one output coil.

It is desirable that the apparatus also includes a means for establishing the condition with respect to the energy-magnifying coil(s). Except where otherwise indicated in the remainder of this text, where the number of coils of a particular type is referred to in the singular, it will be understood that a plurality of coils of the respective type can alternatively be utilised.

Electrical oscillation in the sending coil, which is comprised of a metallic conductor, causes radiation of inductive photons from the sending coil. The energy-magnifying coil is situated in a position relative to the sending coil so as to receive inductive photons from the sending coil. The inductive photons radiating from electrical oscillations in the sending coil, convey a transverse force to the low-mass electrons in the energy-magnification coil with no
back-force on the sending coil. The greater-than-normal accelerations which are produced in the low-mass electrons of the energy-magnifying coil, produce greater irradiation energy of inductive photons than normal.

The output coil is positioned so as to receive the magnified inductive-photon energy from the energy-magnifying coil. The inductive-photon energy received by the output coil, which is comprised of a metallic conductor, is converted into an oscillating electrical current of normal electrons. In order for the electrical output to exceed the electrical input, the output coil is situated in such a manner that it receives more of the magnified inductive-photon energy than that which is directed back against the sending coil to act as a back-force. This “energy leverage” causes the electrical energy output to exceed the electrical energy input.

By way of example, the energy-magnifying coil can comprise a superconducting material, wherein the “condition” is a temperature (e.g. a cryogenic temperature) at which the superconducting material exhibits superconducting behaviour characterised by production of low-mass electrons.

By way of another example, the energy-magnifying coil can comprise a photoconductive material, wherein the “condition” is a situation in which the photoconductive material is illuminated by a wavelength of photon radiation sufficient to cause the photoconductive material of the energy-magnifying coil to produce conduction electrons having low effective mass. In this latter example, the means for establishing the condition can comprise a photoconductor exciter (e.g. one or more LEDs) situated and configured to illuminate the photoconductive material of the energy-magnifying coil with the wavelength of photon radiation.

By way of yet another example, the “condition” is the presence of a particular dopant in a semiconductor that provides a low-mass electron as a charge carrier. Also, by way of example, the energy-magnifying coil can comprise a semiconductive element or compound that has been doped with a particular element or compound that makes it conductive of low-mass electrons without illumination by photon radiation other than by ambient photons.

Various apparatus embodiments comprise different respective numbers and arrangements of the principal components. The various embodiments additionally can comprise one or more of circuitry, energisers, shielding and other components to fulfill the object of providing a self-sustaining source of electrical power for useful purposes.

Also provided, are methods for generating an electrical current. In an embodiment of such a method, a first coil is energised with an electrical oscillation sufficient to cause the first coil to radiate inductive photons. At least some of the radiated inductive photons from the first coil are received by a second coil, called “the energy-magnifying coil”, comprising a material that produces low-mass electrons. The received inductive photons impart respective transverse forces to the low-mass electrons that cause the low-mass electrons to experience accelerations that are greater than accelerations that otherwise would be experienced by normal free electrons experiencing the transverse forces.

Conduction of the accelerated low-mass electrons in the second coil, causes the second coil to produce a magnified inductive force. The magnified inductive force is received by a third coil which causes the third coil to produce an oscillating electrical output of normal conduction electrons which has greater energy than the initial oscillation. A portion of the oscillating electrical output is directed as feedback from the third coil to the sending coil, so as to provide the electrical oscillation to the sending coil. This portion of the oscillating electrical current directed to the sending coil, desirably is sufficient to cause self-sustaining generation of inductive photons by the first coil without the need for any external energy source. The surplus oscillating electrical output from the third coil can be directed to a work loop.

The method can further comprise the step of starting the energisation of the first coil to commence generation of the oscillating electrical output. This “starting” step can comprise momentarily exposing the first coil to an external oscillating inductive force or for example, to an external magnetic force which initiates an electrical pulse.

The foregoing and additional features and advantages of the invention will be more readily apparent from the following detailed description, which proceeds with reference to the accompanying drawings.

**BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS**
Fig. 1A is a perspective view schematically depicting a sending coil in relationship to an energy-magnifying coil such that inductive photons from the sending coil, propagate to the energy-magnifying coil.

Fig. 1B is a schematic end-view of the sending coil and energy-magnifying coil of Fig. 1A, further depicting radiation of inductive photons from the sending coil and the respective directions of electron flow in the coils.

Fig. 1C is a schematic end-view of the sending coil and energy-magnifying coil of Fig. 1A, further depicting the production of inwardly-radiating and outwardly-radiating magnified inductive photons from the energy-magnifying coil.
Fig. 2A is a perspective view schematically showing an internal output coil, coaxially nested inside the energy-magnifying coil to allow efficient induction of the internal output coil by the energy-magnifying coil, wherein the induction current established in the internal output coil is used to power a load connected across the internal output coil.

Fig. 2B is a schematic end-view of the coils shown in Fig. 2A, further depicting the greater amount of magnified inductive-photon radiation that is received by the external output coil in comparison to the lesser amount that is directed toward the sending coil to act as a back-force.
Fig. 3 is an electrical schematic diagram of a representative embodiment of a generating apparatus.

Fig. 4 is a schematic end-view of a representative embodiment, comprising a centrally disposed sending coil surrounded by six energy-magnifying coils, each having an axis which is substantially parallel to the axis of the sending coil. A respective internal output coil is coaxially nested inside each energy-magnifying coil, and the energy-magnifying coils are arranged so as to capture substantially all the inductive photons radiating from the sending coil.

Fig. 5 is a schematic end-view of the embodiment of Fig. 4, further including an external output coil situated coaxially with the sending coil and configured to surround all six energy-magnifying coils so as to capture outwardly-radiating inductive photons from the energy-magnifying coils. Also depicted is the greater amount of magnified inductive-photon radiation that is received by the internal output coils and the external output coil in comparison to the lesser amount of inductive-photon radiation that is directed towards the sending coil to act as a back-force. Also shown are the arrays of LEDs used for exciting the energy-magnifying coils to become photoconductive.
Fig. 6 is a perspective view of the embodiment of Fig.4 and Fig.5 but further depicting respective inter-coil connections for the energy-magnifying and internal output coils, as well as respective leads for the sending coil, internal output coils and external output coil.

Fig. 7 is a head-end view schematically depicting exemplary current-flow directions in the sending coil, energy-magnifying coils, internal output coils, and external output coils, as well as in the various inter-coil connections of the embodiment of Fig.4.
Fig. 8 is a schematic end-view showing an embodiment of the manner in which inter-coil connections can be made between adjacent energy-magnifying coils.

Fig. 9A is a schematic end-view depicting the coil configuration of an embodiment in which a sending coil and an internal output coil are nested inside an energy-magnifying coil, which in turn is nested inside an exterior output coil. A metallic separator, having a substantially parabolic shape, and being situated between the sending coil and the internal output coil, reflects some of the otherwise unused inductive-photon radiation to maximise the effective radiation received by the energy-magnifying coil. Also, the metallic shield prevents the internal output coil from receiving radiation sent from the sending coil.
Fig. 9B is a schematic end-view of the coil configuration of Fig. 9A, further depicting the metallic separator acting as a shield to restrict the back-force radiation reaching the sending coil while allowing the internal output coil to receive a substantial portion of the magnified radiation from the energy-magnifying coil. Also depicted is the greater amount of magnified inductive-photon radiation that is received by the internal output coil and the external output coil in comparison to the lesser amount that is received by the sending coil to act as a back-force.

Fig. 10A is a schematic end-view depicting the coil configuration of yet another embodiment that is similar in some respects to the embodiment of Fig. 4, but also including respective ferromagnetic cores inside the sending coil and internal output coils. Also depicted is a metallic shield surrounding the entire apparatus.
Fig.10B is a schematic end-view of a sending coil of yet another embodiment in which a ferromagnetic sleeve is disposed coaxially around the sending coil.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION

General Technical Considerations

An understanding of how “infinite energy” mistakenly came to be rejected by the scientific community, clarifies the basis of this invention. The electrodynamic function described in the embodiments described below, conforms to Helmholtz’s alternate energy rule, which states that a force which is not in line with it’s causative force “may be lost or gained ad infinitum”. This rule was included in “Uber die Erhaltung der Kraft” (“On the Conservation of Force”) that Hermann Helmholtz delivered to the Physical Society of Berlin in 1847. But, Helmholtz mistakenly believed that “all actions in nature are reducible to forces of attraction and repulsion, the intensity of the forces depending solely upon the distances between the points involved …. so it is impossible to obtain an unlimited amount of force capable of doing work as the result of any combination whatsoever of natural objects”.

Helmholtz refused to accept the idea that magnetic energy qualifies for ad infinitum status despite the fact that Ampere’s (1820) magnetic force on parallel straight conductors is obviously transverse to the direction of the electric currents rather than being in line with the currents. He omitted mention that the magnetic force in Ampere’s (1825) important invention, the solenoidal electromagnet, is caused by currents in the loops of his coils, which are transverse to the direction of magnetic force. Also, he failed to mention that Ampere considered the magnetic force of a permanent magnet to be caused by minute transverse circular currents, which are now recognised as electrons that spin and orbit transversely.

Helmholtz, who was educated as a military medical doctor without any formal study of physics, relied instead on an obsolete metaphysical explanation of magnetic force: “Magnetic attraction may be deduced completely from the assumption of two fluids which attract or repel in the inverse ratio of the square of their distance….It is known that the external effects of a magnet can always be represented by a certain distribution of the magnetic fluids on its surface”. Without departing from this belief in magnetic fluids, Helmholtz cited Wilhelm Weber’s (1846) similarly wrong interpretation that magnetic and inductive forces are directed in the same line as that between the moving electric charges which cause the forces.

Weber had thought that he could unify Coulombic, magnetic, and inductive forces in a single, simple equation, but Weber’s flawed magnetic-force term leads to the absurd conclusion that a steady current in a straight wire induces a steady electric current in a parallel wire. Also, a changing current does not induce an electromotive force in line with the current, as Weber’s equation showed. The induced force is offset instead, which becomes more apparent the further that two nested, coaxial coils are separated. What appears to be a directly opposing back-force is actually a reciprocal inductive force.

Helmholtz’s assertion that the total sum of the energy in the universe is a fixed amount that is immutable in quantity from eternity to eternity appealed to his young friends. But, the elder scientists of the Physical Society of Berlin declared his paper to be “fantastical speculation” and a “hazardous leap into very speculative metaphysics”, so it was rejected for publication in Annalen der Physik. Rather than accept this rejection constructively, Helmholtz found a printer willing to help him self-publish his work. Helmholtz headed the publication with a statement that his paper had been read before the Society, but he disingenuously withheld mention of its outright rejection. Unwary readers have since received the wrong impression that his universal energy-conservation rule had received the Society’s endorsement rather than its censure.

Helmholtz (1862, 1863) publicised his concept thus: “We have been led up to a universal natural law, which ... expresses a perfectly general and particularly characteristic property of all natural forces, and which ... is to be placed by the side of the laws of the unalterability of mass and the unalterability of the chemical elements”. Helmholtz (1881) declared that any force that did not conserve energy would be “in contradiction to Newton’s axiom, which established the equality of action and reaction for all natural forces” (sic). With this deceitful misrepresentation of Newton’s strictly mechanical principle, Helmholtz had craftily succeeded in commuting the profound respect for Newton’s laws to his unscientific doctrine. Subsequently, the Grand Cross was conferred on Helmholtz by the kings of Sweden and Italy and the President of the French Republic, and he was welcomed by the German Emperor into nobility with the title of "von" added to his name. These prestigious awards made his doctrine virtually unsassailable in the scientific community.

Ampere’s principle of transverse magnetic attraction and repulsion between electric currents had been made into an equation for the magnetic force between moving electric charges by Carl Fredrick Gauss (written in 1835, published posthumously in 1865). The critical part of the Gauss equation shows, and modern physics texts agree, that magnetic force is transverse to the force that imparts a relative velocity (i.e. perpendicular to a connecting line) between charges. Lacking a direct back-force, a transverse magnetic force can produce a greater force than the force that causes it.
The only physicist to recognise in print, the profound significance of the work of Gauss, was James Clerk Maxwell (1873), who stated “(If Gauss’s formula is correct), energy might be generated indefinitely in a finite system by physical means”. Prepossessed with Helmholtz’s “law”, Maxwell chose not to believe Gauss’s transverse magnetic-force equation and accepted Wilhelm Weber’s (1846) erroneous in-line formula instead. Maxwell even admitted knowing of Gauss’s (1845) rebuke of Weber for his mistaken direction of magnetic force as “a complete overthrow of Ampère’s fundamental formula and the adoption of essential a different one”.

In 1893, the critical part of Ampère’s formula for magnetic force, which Weber and Maxwell rejected, and which Helmholtz had replaced with his contrary metaphysical explanation, was proposed for the basis for the international measure of electric current, the Ampere (or amp), to be defined in terms of the transverse magnetic force which the current produces. But Helmholtz’s doctrine had become so impervious to facts that anyone who challenged this “law” faced defamation and ridicule.

The first recognition of unlimited energy came from Sir Joseph Larmor who reported in 1897, “A single ion e, describing an elliptic orbit under an attraction to a fixed centre ... must rapidly lose its energy by radiation ... but in the cases of steady motion, it is just this amount that is needed to maintain the permanency of motion in the aether”. Apparently to mollify critics of his heretical concept, Larmor offered a half-hearted recantation in 1900: “The energy of orbital groups ... would be through time, sensibly dissipated by radiation, so that such groups could not be permanent”.

In 1911, Rutherford found that an atom resembles a small solar system with negative ions moving like planets around a small, positively charged nucleus. These endlessly orbiting electrons were a source of the perpetual radiation that had aptly been described by Larmor, and these orbiting electrons were also Planck’s (1911) “harmonic oscillators” which he used to explain Zero-point Energy (ZPE). ZPE was shown by the fact that helium remains liquid under atmospheric pressure at absolute zero, so that helium must be pressurised to become solid at that temperature. Planck believed that harmonic oscillators derived “dark energy” from the aether to sustain their oscillations, thereby admitting that an infinite source of energy exists. However, he assigned an occult origin to this infinite energy, rather than a conventional source that had not met with Helmholtz’s approval.

Niels Bohr (1924) was bothered by the notion that radiation from an orbiting electron would quickly drain its energy so that the electron should spiral into the nucleus. Whittaker (1951) states, “Bohr and associates abandoned the principle ... that an atom which is emitting or absorbing radiation must be losing or gaining energy. In its place, they introduced the notion or virtual radiation, which was propagated in ... waves but which does not transmit energy or momentum”. Subsequently, the entire scientific community dismissed Larmor radiation as a source of real energy because it failed to conform to Helmholtz’s universally accepted doctrine.

Helmholtz’s constraining idea that the vast amount of light and heat radiating from the many billions of stars in the universe can only come from previously stored energy, has led scientists to concur that fusion of pre-existing hydrogen to helium, supplies nearly all the energy that causes light and heat to radiate from the sun and other stars. If so, then the entire universe will become completely dark after the present hydrogen supply in stars is consumed in about 20 billion years. William A. Fowler (1965) believed that essentially all the hydrogen in the universe “emerged from the first few minutes of the early high-temperature, high-density stage of the expanding Universe, the so-called ‘big bang’ ...” Moreover, the background energy of the universe was thought by some to be “relic” radiation from the “Big Bang”.

To accept the Big Bang idea that all the stars in the universe originated at the same time, it was necessary to disregard the fact that most stars are much younger or much older than the supposed age of the one-time event, which indicates that their energy must have come from a recurring source. The Big Bang is entirely dependent on the idea that the whole universe is expanding, which stemmed from the interpretation that Hubble’s red-shift with distance from the light source, represents a Doppler shift of receding stars and galaxies. This expanding-universe interpretation was shattered by William G. Tifft (1976, 1977), who found that observed red-shifts are not spread randomly and smoothly over a range of values, as would be expected from the Doppler shifts of a vast number of receding stars and galaxies. Instead, the observed red-shifts all fall on evenly spaced, quantised values.

Moreover, Shpenkov and Kreidik (2002) determined that the radiation temperature corresponding to the fundamental period of the orbital electron motion in the hydrogen atom of 2.72800 K matches the measured temperature of cosmic background radiation of 2.72500 K plus or minus 0.00250 K. This represents perpetual zero-level Larmor radiation from interstellar hydrogen atoms dispersed in the universe. So, Helmholtz’s idea that “the energy in the universe is a fixed amount immutable in quantity from eternity to eternity” does not stand up to known facts.

The large aggregate quantity of heat-photon which is generated continually by Larmor radiation can account for the illumination of stars and for the enormous heat and pressure in active galactic centres. Based on the fact that photons exhibit momentum, photons must posses mass, because, as Newton explained, momentum is mass times velocity, which in this case is “c”. Consequently, the creation of photons by induction or by Larmor radiation, also creates new mass. The conditions that Fowler was seeking for hydrogen nucleosynthesis, are apparently being supplied indefinitely in active galaxies and possibly in the sun and other stars above a certain size. This invention utilises a similar unlimited energy source.
Another principle that is important to this specification, is that the transfer of energy by electrical induction was found by the Applicant to work in the same manner as the transfer of energy by broadcast and reception of oscillating radio signals. A transverse force is communicated in both cases, the force declines similarly with distance, and the effects of shielding and reflection are identical. Since radio signals are communicated by photons, Applicant considers that inductive force is also communicated by photons. The radiation of newly formed inductive photons results when an accelerated charge experiences a change in direction of acceleration. Inductive radiation occurs when the acceleration of electric charges is reversed, as in Rontgen's bremsstrahlung, in Hertz’s linear oscillator (plus all other radio-broadcasting antennas), and in coils which carry an alternating current.

In a similar case, when electric charges move in a curving motion due to a continually changing centripetal acceleration, inductive photons are radiated steadily. This includes the radiation from electrons orbiting atomic nuclei (Larmor radiation) and from conduction electrons flowing in a wire coil, whether the current is steady or not. Circularly produced inductive photons induce a circular motion (diamagnetism) in mobile electrons located near the axis of the electron's circular movement.

In both the reverse-acceleration and centripetal-acceleration cases, inductive photons convey a force to mobile electrons that is transverse to the photon's propagation path. As Lapp and Andrews (1954) reported, "Low-energy photons produce photoelectrons at right angles to their path ....". This same right-angle force without a direct back-force, applies as well, to all conduction electrons which are accelerated by low-energy photons. Hence, inductive energy qualifies for exemption from the energy-conservation law by Helmholtz’s same ad infinitum principle which exempts magnetic energy.

The transverse force that inductively produced photons delivered to mobile electrons, is opposite in direction to the simultaneous movement of the primary charge which produces the radiation. This is shown by Faraday's induced current opposite to the inducing current and by the diamagnetically-induced circular motion which, in a rotational sense, is opposite to the circular electron motion in the coil producing it. An oscillating flow of electrons within a loop of a wire coil, induces a force on the conduction electrons which is in the opposite direction in adjacent loops of the same wire. This results in self-induction.

Important to this specification is the realisation that the energy transmitted by photons is kinetic rather than electromagnetic. Inductively radiated photons of low energy, light rays and X-rays cannot be deflected by and electric or magnetic field due to the photons' neutral charge. Neither do neutral photons carry an electric or magnetic field with them. Photon radiation is produced by a change in the acceleration of an electric charge, so only in special cases does it have an electrokinetic origin which involves a magnetic force. To honour these facts, Applicant uses the term "electrokinetic spectrum" in place of "electromagnetic spectrum".

Another principle which is important to this specification is the realisation that, although the charge on the electron has a constant value under all conditions, the mass of an electron is not a fixed, unchanging amount. All free electrons, as in cathode rays, have exactly the same amount of mass at sub-relativistic velocities. This is called "normal" mass and is denoted by \( m_0 \). Free electrons have a unique charge to mass ratio that makes the magnetic force resulting from a sub-relativistic velocity imparted to such an electron, exactly equal to the energy input with "normal" electrons.

Also, when a normal electron is given a sub-relativistic acceleration, the inductive force it produces is equal to the force it receives. The mass of highly conductive electrons of metals is apparently very close to normal, but any very slight inductive-energy gains would be masked by inefficiencies. The ubiquity of free electrons and the conduction electrons of metals has led to the view that electron mass is a never-varying figure that would allow the energy conservation law to apply to magnetic energy and inductive energy.

Accurate determinations of electron mass in solid materials have been made possible by cyclotron resonance, which is also called diamagnetic resonance. The diamagnetic force produced by the steady flow of electrons in a wire coil, induces the mobile electrons of a semiconductor to move in a circular orbit of indefinite radius but at a definite angular frequency. This frequency is only related to the inductive force and the mass of the electron. At the same time, a repulsive magnetic force is developed by the relative velocity between the electron flow in the coil and the conduction electrons, causing the mobile electrons of the semiconductor to move in a helical path away from the coil rather than in planar circles. Only two measurements are needed to determine the mass of such an electron: the cyclotron frequency which resonates with the frequency of the electron's circular motion, and the strength of the inductive force, which is determined by the current and dimensions of the coil. Since the co-produced magnetic field is related to the same parameters, its measurement serves as a surrogate for inductive force.

Because the measured mass of conduction electrons in semiconductors is less than normal, a complicated explanation has been adopted to defend the constancy of electron mass in order to support Helmholtz’s energy doctrine. An extra force is supposedly received from the vibrational lattice-wave energy of the crystal (in what would have to be an act of self-refrigeration) to make normal-mass electrons move faster than expected around a circular path, thereby giving the appearance that the electron has less mass than normal. In this explanation, the electron is considered to be a smeared-out wave rather than a particle, which is contradicted by the billiard-ball-
like recoil of an electron when it is bumped by a quantum of radiation, as described by Arthur Crompton and Samuel Allison (1935).

The fallacy that borrowed energy can provide a boost in velocity to an electron, is more apparent in the case of linear motion. The effective-mass theory considers that the greater linear velocity is caused by a boost given to normal-mass electrons by a “longitudinal wave” imparted by an externally applied force in the same direction as the electron motion. Since this longitudinal wave is also considered to have a source in crystal-lattice vibrations, the effective-mass theory relies on a reversal of entropy in violation of the second Law of Thermodynamics.

No reasonable contribution of direct directional energy can be invoked from any source to impart abnormally great velocity to the conduction electrons in semiconductors. So, the operation of apparatus embodiments described herein, relies on electrons having particle properties and on electrons having less-than-normal inertial mass without invoking any special forces. This is supported by Brennan’s (1999) statement that “the complicated problem of an electron moving within a crystal under the interaction of a periodic but complicated potential, can be reduced to that of a simple free particle, but with a modified mass”. The term “effective” is herein considered redundant in referring to truly inertial mass, but “effective mass” still has relevance in referring to the net movement of orbital vacancies or “holes” in the opposite direction of low-mass electrons.

By $F = ma$, a low-mass electron receives greater acceleration and greater velocity from a given force than an electron of normal mass. The velocity and kinetic energy imparted to an electrically charged body by a force, are determined by the electric charge without regard to the body’s mass. Having a smaller amount of mass, allows a body to attain a greater velocity with any given force. Hence, the magnetic force produced by the charge at this higher velocity will be greater than it would normally be for that same amount of force. This allows low-mass electrons to produce a magnetic force that is greater than the applied force.

Also, the amount of inductive radiation energy from accelerated electrons is related to an electron’s charge without regard to its mass. The energy of inductive radiation increases with the square of the electron’s acceleration according to Larmor’s (1900) equation, while the acceleration is inversely proportional to the lesser electron mass relative to normal electron mass. Therefore, the greater-than-normal acceleration of low-mass electrons, allows the re-radiation of magnified inductive-photon energy at a magnification factor which is proportional to the inverse square of the electron’s mass, e.g., the inductive-energy magnification factor of cadmium selenide photoelectrons with 0.13 of the normal electron mass is $0.13^2$ which is 59 times.

Electrons appear to acquire or shed mass from photons in order to fit the constraints of particular orbits around nuclei, because each orbit dictates a very specific electron mass. In metals, where the conduction electrons seem to move as would a gas, one might think that they would assume the normal mass of free electrons. But the largest mean free path of electrons in the most conductive metals is reportedly about 100 atomic spacings between collisions (Pops, 1997), so the conduction electrons apparently fall back into orbit from time to time and thereby regain their metal-specific mass values.

As conduction electrons pass from one metal type to another, they either lose or gain heat-photons to adjust their mass to different orbital constraints. In a circuit comprising two different metallic conductors placed in series contact with each other, the flow of conduction electrons in one direction will cause the emission of heat-photons at the junction, while an electron flow in the reverse direction causes cooling as the result of ambient heat-photons being absorbed by the conduction electrons at the junction (Peltier cooling effect). When a metal is joined with a semiconductor whose conduction electrons have much lower mass than in metals, much greater heating or cooling occurs at their junction.

John Bardeen (1941) reported that the (effective) mass of superconducting electrons in low-temperature superconductors is only $10^{-4}$ as great as the mass of normal electrons. This is demonstrated when superconducting electrons are accelerated to a much higher circular velocity than normal in diamagnetically induced eddy currents, which results in enormous magnetic forces which are capable of levitating heavy magnetic objects. Electrons with $10^{-4}$ times normal mass are apparently devoid, (or nearly devoid) of included photon mass, so normal electrons are deduced to possess about $10^4$ times more included photon mass than the bare electron’s own mass.

The means by which photon mass may be incorporated within, or ejected from electrons, can be deduced from known information. Based on the Thompson scattering cross-section, the classical radius of a normal electron is $2 \times 10^{-15}$ cm. If the electron has uniform charge throughout a sphere of that radius, the peripheral velocity would greatly exceed the velocity of light in order to provide the observed magnetic moment. Dehmelt (1989) determined that the radius of the spinning charge which creates an electron’s magnetism, is approximately $10^{-20}$ cm. This apparent incongruity can be explained if the electron is considered to be a hollow shell (which is commensurate with the bare electron’s tiny mass in comparison to the very large radius) and if the negative charge of the shell is not the source of the magnetic moment.

It has long been known that a photon can be split into an negative ion (electron) and a positive ion (positron), each having the same amount of charge but of opposite sign. Electrons and positrons can recombine into electrically neutral photons, so it is apparent that photons are composed of a positive and a negative ion. Two
ions spinning around each other could produce the photon's wave nature. The only size of photon ion that can exist as a separate entity has a charge of exactly plus one or minus one, whereas the ions can have a very much larger or very much smaller charge and mass when combined in photons, as long as the two ions are equal in charge and mass. Combined in a photon, the two ions are apparently attracted together so strongly that their individual volumes are very much smaller than as separate entities.

When a dipole photon enters an electron shell, its negative-ion portion is expected to be forced towards the shell's centre by Coulombic repulsion, while the photon's positive ion would be attracted by the negative charge of the shell equally in all directions. The negative photon ions would likely merge into a single body at the electron's centre, while the positive-ion portion would orbit around the centralised negative ion to retain the photon's angular momentum. The high peripheral velocity of this orbiting photon mass would enable portions of photon material to spin off and exit the electron shell at the same velocity at which they entered the electron, i.e., the speed of light. The orbiting of the positive photon charge at Dehmelt's small radius, most likely accounts for the magnetic moment that is observed in electrons of normal mass.

Liberated low-mass conduction electrons within intrinsic semiconductors (which are also photoconductors by their nature) and within doped semiconductors, are mostly protected against acquiring mass from ambient-heat photons by the heat-insulative properties of the semiconductors. In contrast, low-mass electrons injected into heat-conducting metals, rapidly acquire mass from ambient-heat photons by the existence of cryogenic conditions, but they are vulnerable to internal heat-photons created by excessive induction.

Conduction electrons of metals, typically move as a group at drift velocities of less than one millimetre per second, although the velocity of the electrical effects approaches the velocity of light. (Photons are probably involved in the movement of electrical energy in metallic conductors.) In contrast, conductive low-mass electrons can move individually at great velocities in superconductors and semiconductors. Brennan (1999, p. 631) reports the drift velocity of a particular electron moving in a semiconductor, to be one micrometer in about 10 picoseconds, which is equivalent to 100 kilometers per second.

The concentration of the conduction electrons in metals is the same as the number of atoms, whereas in semiconductors, the mobile low-mass electrons which are free to move, can vary greatly with the amount of certain photon radiation received. Since the magnitude of an electric current is a summation of the number of electrons involved, times their respective drift velocities, the current developed by a small ensemble of photoconducting electrons moving at high speed, can exceed the current of a much greater number of conduction electrons moving at a very low speed in a metal.

A general feature of intrinsic semiconductors is that they become photoconductive in proportion to the amount of bombardment by some particular electron-liberating frequency (or band of frequencies) of photon energy, up to some limit. The amount of bombardment by the particular wavelength (or, equivalently, the frequency), increases along with all other photon wavelengths as the ambient temperature rises, that is, as the area under Planck's black-body radiation curve increases. Consequently, the conductivity of semiconductors continues to increase with temperature, while the conductivity drops to almost zero at low temperature unless superconductivity occurs.

A single high-energy alpha particle can liberate a great number of low-mass electrons in a thin-film semiconductor, as Leimer's (1915) energy-magnifying experiment appears to show. Leimer's alpha radiation was situated near the distant end of a suspended antenna wire of unreported length, when he experienced the maximum magnetic energy increase in the coil of the ammeter in the receiver. The low-mass electrons had to have travelled the entire length of the suspended antenna and the connecting line to his receiving apparatus without encountering any trapping holes. Assuming these electrons traversed a distance of 1 to 10 metres in less than one half-cycle of the radio frequency, (that is, less than 4 microseconds at 128 kHz) at which time the direction of the low-mass electron would have been reversed, this would be equivalent to velocities of 25 to 250 km/sec.

A great number of superconducting electrons can be set in motion by inductive photon radiation. In contrast, inductive photon radiation can pass mostly through photoconductors that have low concentrations of mobile, low-mass electrons. Applicant's interpretation of Leimer's experiment is that the liberated low-mass electrons of the semiconductor coating of the antenna wire, were not directly accelerated by the inductive photons of the radio signal, but rather were accelerated to high velocities by an oscillating electric field created in the metallic wire by the radio photons.

A review of an experiment performed by File and Mills (1963), shows that the very low mass of superconducting electrons is responsible for causing supercurrents to differ from normal electric currents. A superconducting solenoidal coil (comprising a Nb-25% Zr alloy wire below 4.3°K,) with the terminals spot-welded together to make a continuous conductor, was employed. Extremely slow declines of induced supercurrents were observed, which can be attributed to an enormous increase in the coil's self-induction. Because a supercurrent approaches its maximum charge asymptotically when discharging, a convenient measure of the coil's charging or discharging rate is the "time-constant". The time-constant has the same value for both charging and discharging, and it is defined as (a) the time needed for charging the coil to 63% of the maximum amount of current inducible in the coil by a given diamagnetic force, or (b) the time needed to discharge 63% of the coil's induced current.
In normal conductors, the inductive time-constant is calculated by the inductance of the coil, divided by the resistance of the coil. By use of an empirical equation, the inductance of the coil in its non-superconducting state is calculated to be 0.34 Henry, based on a double-layered solenoid of 384 turns that measured 4 inches (10 cm) diameter and 10 inches (25 cm) long. The resistance of the 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) diameter wire at a temperature of 50 K. (just above Tc) is estimated by using data for Zr alone, to be 4 x 10^2 ohms. (Resistivity data were not available for Nb or the subject alloy). Under non-superconducting conditions, the time-constant for charging and discharging this coil is thereby calculated to be approximately 8 x 10^{-5} sec.

The time it took to charge up a supercurrent in the coil in the experiment was not reported. But, based on the reported 50 re-energisings and magnetic determinations performed in 200 hours, the measured charging time in the superconducting state is computed to be no more than 4 hours on average.

Using Bardeen’s (1941) formula of m is approximately equal to m_e times 10^{-4} for the order of magnitude of the low Tc superconducting electron’s mass, and using Larmor’s equation (1900) which relates inductive radiation power to the square of the acceleration of the charge, the inductance of the coil is expected to increase by (10^4)^2 = 10^8 times in the superconducting state. Thus, the calculated increase in the time-constant of charging up the supercurrent is 8 x 10^{-5} x 10^8 which equals 8 x 10^3 seconds, or 2.2 hours, which is the same order of magnitude as the maximum actual charging time. The self-induction increased by that amount because the low-mass electrons are accelerated 10^4 times faster.

In the case of discharging, the time constant of the supercurrent was projected by File and Mills from measured declines observed over periods of 21 and 37 days. The projections of the two 63% declines agreed closely at 4 x 10^{12} seconds (= 1.3 x 10^5 years). Therefore, the time-constant of supercurrent discharge, based on projecting actual measurements, had increased by 5 x 10^{16} times over the time-constant for electrons of normal mass.

The driving force during charging, had been the applied inductive force, whereas the driving force during discharging was the supercurrent that had been magnified 10^8 times. Therefore, during the discharging of the supercurrent, the time-constant is increased again by 10^8 times, so the calculated total increase in the time-constant of discharge is 10^3 x 10^8 = 10^{16} times greater than the normal time-constant. This calculated value of the non-superconducting time-constant, based solely on the increase of inductive radiation due to extremely low electron mass, compares favourably in magnitude with the actually observed value of 5 x 10^{16} times the normal time-constant.

The superconducting coil required no more than four hours to charge up the supercurrent, yet during subsequent discharge, the superconducting coil was projected to radiate inductive photon energy from the centripetal acceleration of the superconducting electrons for 130,000 years before declining by 63%. If this experiment could take place where no energy would needed to sustain critical cryogenic conditions, as in outer space, the lengthy discharge of this energised coil would clearly demonstrate the creation of energy in the form of newly-created photons inductively radiating from the superconducting low-mass electrons that circulate around the coil’s loops. Applicant interprets this as showing that low-mass electrons are capable of inductive-energy-magnification based solely on their mass relative to that of normal electrons.

In the embodiments described below, the magnified inductive energy of low-mass electrons is utilised in coils for electric-energy generation by employing a flow of inductively accelerated photons that alternates in direction. This, in turn, drives low-mass electrons in an oscillating manner, so this forced reversal involves only a single stage of inductive-energy magnification, rather than the two stages (charging and naturally discharging) in the foregoing experiment.

Mode of Operation

Inductive photons radiating from an oscillating electric current in a sending conductor (e.g. from a radio-wave broadcasting antenna) convey a force, on conduction electrons in a receiving conductor, that is transverse to the incidence direction of the incident inductive photons on the receiving conductor. As a result, no back-force is transferred directly back to the sending conductor. Applicant has discovered that the action of this transverse force on low-mass electrons in a receiving conductor is analogous to the action of Gauss’s transverse magnetic force on free electrons in a conductor, which is not subject to the kinetics law of conservation of energy. If the receiving conductor has low-mass conduction electrons, then this transverse force would impart greater acceleration to the low-mass electrons than that it would impart to normal free electrons. The resulting greater drift velocities of low-mass electrons than normal free electrons in the receiving conductor, would yield an increased magnitude of inductive force produced by the low-mass electrons in the receiving conductor and hence produce a magnification of the irradiation energy of inductive photons.

The direction of the transverse force imparted by the radiated inductive photons on conduction electrons in the receiving conductor is opposite to the direction of the corresponding electron flow in the sending conductor. This
relationship is similar to the inductive force on electrons in the secondary coil of a transformer, which also is opposite to the direction of flow of electrons in the primary coil.

Various embodiments of Applicant’s electrical generator employ inductive photons radiated from electrical oscillations in a “sending coil”. Inductive photons are radiated from the sending coil toward and inductive-photon receiving coil, termed an “energy-magnifying coil”, which comprises a photoconductive or superconductive material, or other suitable material as described below. The energy-magnifying coil is placed in a condition favourable for the production of low-mass electrons that participate in electrical conduction in the energy-magnifying coil. For example, if the energy-magnifying coil is made of photoconductive material, the coil is provided with a photoconduction exciter. Alternatively, if the energy-magnifying coil is made of a superconductive material, the coil is placed in an environment at a temperature (T) no greater than the critical temperature (T_C); i.e., T < T_C. In the former example, the photoconduction exciter can be a source of illumination which provides an appropriate wavelength of excitive electrokinetic radiation. If the energy-magnifying coil is comprised of a doped semiconductor, the condition that provides mobile low-mass electrons already exists.

In the energy-magnifying coil, the greater-than-normal acceleration of the low-mass electrons produces greater-than-normal inductive forces in the form of greater-than-normal radiation of inductive photons from the coil. The resulting increased inductive-photon energy from the photoconductor or superconductor is converted into useful electrical energy in an output coil inductively coupled to the energy-magnifying coil. The output coil can be made of insulated metallic wire. An exemplary output coil is situated coaxially with, and nested within, the energy-magnification coil. A coil of this type is termed herein, an “internal output coil”.

The ability of the subject apparatus to produce more energy output than energy input, is based on the output coil receiving more of the magnified energy from the energy-magnifying coil than is returned as a back-force from the output coil to the energy-magnifying coil. This principle is termed herein “energy leverage”.

The oscillations in the energy-magnifying coil are initiated by an external energy-input source that provides an initiating impulse of electron flow in the sending coil. For example, the external energy-input source can be an adjacent independent electromagnet or an adjacent permanent magnet moved rapidly relative to the sending coil. The initiating impulse starts an oscillation in the sending coil that stimulates radiation of inductive photons from the sending coil to the energy-magnifying coil. Energy from the external energy-input source is magnified by the apparatus so long as the energy-magnifying coil does not act as an independent oscillator at a different frequency. Independent oscillation is desirably avoided by connecting the ends of the energy-magnifying coil to each other in such a way that it results in one continuous coil, or a continuous multiple-coil system or systems, connected together in such a way that continuity exists for the conduction of low-mass electrons throughout the entire coil system. The energy-magnifying coil inductively creates more energy in the output coil than the energy of the initial impulse. The resulting magnified output of electrical energy produced by the apparatus is available for useful purposes in a work loop.

After initiation, the apparatus is made self-sustaining using a feedback loop arranged in parallel with the work loop that includes the sending coil, and with a capacitor located in the feedback loop to make it an L-C circuit, i.e., after start-up of the apparatus using the external energy-input source, the apparatus becomes self-resonating, which allows the external energy-input source to be decoupled from the apparatus without causing the apparatus to cease production of electrical energy.

During normal self-sustained operation, a portion of the output electrical energy is returned to the sending coil by the feedback loop, thereby overcoming the need to use the external energy-input source for sustaining the oscillations in the sending coil. In other words, after startup, the external energy which was used by the sending coil to excite the photoconductive material or the superconducting material in the energy-magnifying coil is replaced by a portion of the output energy produced by the apparatus itself. The remainder of the output electrical energy is available in the work loop for useful purposes.

Initiating the generation of electrical energy by the apparatus, takes advantage of the fact that the inductive back-force sent from the output coil to the energy-magnifying coil (and hence ultimately, back to the sending coil), arrives at the sending coil one cycle behind the corresponding pulse that initiated the flow of electrons. This one-cycle lag of the back-force, as well as a corresponding one-cycle lag in the feedback, enables small starting pulses produced in the sending coil to produce progressively greater electrical outputs each successive cycle. Consequently, assuming that the electrical load is not excessive during start-up, only a relatively few initiating cycles from the external energy-input source typically are needed for achieving production by the apparatus of an amount of output power sufficient to drive the load as well as providing sufficient energy feedback to the sending coil in a sustained manner.

A half-cycle of the one-cycle lag occurs between an initial acceleration of electrons in the sending coil and a corresponding initial oscillation in the energy-magnifying coil. This half-cycle lag occurs because induction photons are not radiated from the initial acceleration of electrons in the sending coil, but rather are radiated when the electrons are reverse-accelerated. (Kramers, 1923, and Compton and Allison, 1935, p.106). As the newly formed photons are being radiated by the respective deceleration of electrons in the sending coil, even more new photons are simultaneously being formed by the new direction (i.e. reverse direction) of acceleration under
oscillating conditions. Thus, the radiation of photons from electrons alternately accelerated in the opposite direction from the conveyed force, continues each half-cycle after the initial half-cycle.

Applicant also discovered that a half-cycle lag also occurs between the initial flow of electrons in the primary coil of a certain type of transformer, which is simply comprised of coils nested coaxially rather than being inductively coupled by an iron core, and the resulting electron flow induced in the secondary coil. When applied to this apparatus, these findings indicate that a second half-cycle lag occurs between the acceleration of low-mass electrons in the energy-magnifying coil and the corresponding electron flow induced in the output coil. The feedback from the output coil boosts the electron flow in the sending coil one whole cycle after the initial pulse.

As discussed above, the energy-magnifying coil comprises either a photoconductor, a doped semiconductor or a superconductor as a source of, and as a conductor of, low-mass electrons. The general configuration of the coil is similar in either case. The coil including a photoconductor or doped semiconductor, has an operational advantage at normal temperatures, and the coil including a superconductor has an operational advantage at sub-critical temperatures (T < T_c), such as in outer space.

Representative Embodiments

Reference is now made to Fig.1A to Fig.1C and Fig.2A and Fig.2B which depict a sending coil 20 connected to a source of alternating current 21. The sending coil is shown having a desirable cylindrical profile, desirably with a circular cross-section as the most efficient configuration. In Fig.1A and Fig.1B, electrical oscillations from the source 21 are conducted to the sending coil 20 where they cause inductive photons 22 to radiate from the sending coil. The radiated photons 22 convey transverse forces in the same manner that a radio-broadcasting antenna transmits oscillating energy. The sending coil 20 can be a single layer or multiple layers of insulated metal wire (e.g. insulated copper wire). One layer is sufficient, but an additional layer or layers may increase operational efficiency. If necessary, or desired, the turns of wire can be formed on a cylindrical substrate made of a suitable dielectric.

The inductive photons 22 radiating from the sending coil 20, propagate to an energy-magnifying coil 24 that desirably has a cylindrical profile extending parallel to the sending coil. In the embodiment shown in Fig.1A and Fig.1B, the energy-magnifying coil 24 does not terminate at the ends, but rather, it is constructed with a connector 30 to form a continuous conductor. The energy-magnifying coil 24 desirably is a helical coil made of a material comprising a photoconductive or superconductive material, or other suitable material. If necessary or desired, the energy-magnifying coil can be formed on a substrate which, if used, desirably is transmissive to the inductive-photon radiation produced by the coil.
In an energy-magnifying coil 24 made of a superconducting material, a large population of conductive low-mass electrons is produced in the coil by lowering the temperature of the coil to a point below the critical temperature for that material. By way of an example, sub-critical temperatures are readily available in outer space or are produced under cryogenic conditions.

In an energy-magnifying coil 24 made of a photoconductor material, a large population of conductive low-mass electrons is produced in the coil by illuminating the coil with photons of an appropriate wavelength, such as photons produced under cryogenic conditions.

The shaded sector 29, shown in Fig.1B, denotes the proportion of inductive-photon radiation 22 from the sending coil 20, actually received by the single energy-magnifying coil 24 shown, compared to the entire 360-degree radiation of inductive photons 22 from the sending coil 20. Aside from a small amount of inductive-photon radiation lost from the ends of the sending coil 20, the relative amount of the total energy of inductive-photon radiation received by the energy-magnifying coil 24 is determined by the angle subtended by the energy-magnifying coil 24, relative to the entire 360 degrees of inductive-photon radiation from the sending coil 20.

In Fig.1C, the low-mass conduction electrons of the energy-magnifying coil 24 are accelerated to a higher drift velocity than normal free electrons in the energy-magnifying coil 24 would be. As noted above, the sending coil 20 is energised by alternating electron flow, which causes a periodic reversal of direction of electron flow in the sending coil 20 (compare the direction of the arrow 25b in Fig.1C with the direction of the arrow 25a in Fig.1B). Each reversal of direction of electron flow in the sending coil 20 causes a corresponding reversal in the direction of acceleration of the low-mass electrons in the energy-magnifying coil 24 (compare the direction of the arrow 27b in Fig.1C with the direction of arrow 27a in Fig.1B). Each such reversal in direction of acceleration causes a corresponding radiation of inductive photons (jagged arrows 18a, 18b) radially outwards and radially inwards, respectively, from the energy-magnifying coil 24. Note that the arrows 18a and 18b are larger than the arrows denoting the inductive photons (arrows 22) from the sending coil 20. This symbolically denotes energy magnification. Note also that, of the magnified inductive-photon energy radiating from the energy-magnifying coil 24, substantially half is directed inwards (arrows 18b), and substantially the other half is radiated outwards (arrows 18a).
Turning now to Fig. 2A, the sending coil 20, and the energy-magnifying coil 24, are shown. The energy-magnifying coil 24 in Fig. 2A includes an internal output coil 28a, that desirably is situated co-axially inside and is of the same length as the energy-magnifying coil 24. A work loop 48 can be connected to the ends of the internal output coil 28a, thereby forming an electrical circuit in which a load 49 is indicated symbolically as a resistor. The internal output coil 28a and the conductors of the work loop 48, desirably are made of insulated metallic (e.g. copper) wire.

Fig. 2B depicts a transverse section of the coils shown in Fig. 2A. In Fig. 2B, the magnified inductive-photon energy (shaded area 19) produced by the energy-magnifying coil 24 and directed radially inwards towards the internal output coil 28a, induces a corresponding oscillating electron flow in the internal output coil 28a. Thus, the work loop 48 connected across the internal output coil 28a, is provided with greater energy than was received by the energy-magnifying coil 24 from the sending coil 20. The direction of the electron flow (arrow 17) in the internal output coil 28a, is opposite to the direction of flow (arrow 27b) in the energy-magnifying coil 24, which in turn is opposite to the direction of electron flow 25b in the sending coil 20.

In Fig. 2B, the annular-shaped shaded area 19 between the energy-magnifying coil 24 and the internal output coil 28a, indicates that substantially all of the internally-directed magnified inductive-photon energy (i.e. approximately half of the total radiation energy) from the energy-magnifying coil 24, is directed to, and captured by, the internal output coil 28a. In contrast, the shaded sector 16 extending from the energy-magnifying coil 24 to the sending coil 20, indicates that a relatively small proportion of the outwardly directed magnified radiation 18a from the energy-magnifying coil 24 is directed to the sending coil 20 where the radiation provides a corresponding back-force. Aside from the small amount of inductive-photon radiation lost from the ends of the energy-magnifying coil 24, the relative amount of the magnified inductive-photon radiation (sector 16) providing the back-force on the sending coil 20, is a function of the angle subtended by the sector 16, compared to the 360-degree radiation from the energy-magnifying coil 24.

The ratio of magnified energy 18b from the energy-magnifying coil 24 and received by the internal output coil 28a, to the magnified energy 18a received as a back-force by the sending coil 20, denotes the energy “leverage” achieved by the subject apparatus. If this ratio is greater than unity, then the energy output from the internal output coil 28a exceeds the energy input to the energy-magnifying coil 24. This energy leverage is key to the self-sustained operation of the apparatus, especially whenever the apparatus is being used to drive a load. In other words, with a sufficiently large energy-magnification factor achieved by the energy-magnifying coil 24, the electrical energy available in the work loop 48, exceeds the input energy that produces the oscillations in the sending coil 20. The electric power input to the sending coil 20 thereby produces magnified electric power in the internal output coil 28a that can perform useful work in the work loop 48 while self-powering the continued operation of the apparatus.
Reference is now made to Fig. 3, which schematically depicts aspects of the apparatus 15, responsible for self-generation of electric power by employing a feed-back loop 46. The conductors of the feed-back loop 46 can be made of insulated metallic wire. (In Fig. 3, the dotted lines 47a and dotted arrow 47b, indicate that the internal output coil 28a is actually positioned co-axially inside the energy-magnifying coil 24, as described above, but is depicted in the figure as being outside the energy-magnifying coil for ease of illustration). The feed-back loop 46, conducts a portion of the electric power from the internal output coil 28a, back to the sending coil 20. The remaining portion of the electric power from the internal output coil 28a is directed to the work loop 48 where the power is utilised for useful work 51. The relative proportions of output power delivered to the feed-back loop 46 and to the work loop 48, can be varied by adjusting a variable resistor 50.

As noted above, an initial source of electrical energy is used for “starting” the apparatus 15 by initiating an oscillation in the sending coil 20. After starting, under usual operating conditions, the apparatus 15 is self-resonant and no longer requires the input of energy from the initial source. The particular inductance and distributed capacitance of the sending coil 20, plus all other capacitances and inductances in the apparatus, provide a certain corresponding frequency of self-resonating oscillation. In the feed-back loop 46 is a capacitor 77 that makes the apparatus an L-C circuit which oscillates at its own frequency. The frequency can be changed by altering the capacitance or inductance of the apparatus, or both. The capacitor 77 can be a variable capacitor by which the frequency can be adjusted.

As shown in Fig. 3, the initial source of oscillating electrical energy can be an impulse from an external electromagnet 52 powered by its own energy source (e.g. a battery 53 as shown, or other DC or AC source). For example, the electromagnet 52 can be placed near the sending coil 20 or other portion of the feed-back loop 46, and energised by a momentary discharge delivered from the battery 53 via a switch 57. The resulting pulse generated in the electromagnet 52, initiates a corresponding electrical pulse in the sending coil 20 that initiates self-sustaining oscillations in the apparatus 15. In another embodiment, the electromagnet 52 can be energised briefly by an AC source (not shown). In yet another embodiment, the initial source can be a permanent magnet which is moved rapidly (either mechanically or manually) near the sending coil 20 or other portion of the feed-back circuitry. In any event, the pulse provided by the initial source initiates electrical oscillations in the sending coil 20 that produce corresponding oscillating inductive-photon radiation 22 from the sending coil 20, as shown schematically in Fig. 3 by thin jagged arrows. The inductive-photon radiation 22 from the sending coil 20 causes, in turn, re-radiation of magnified inductive-photon energy 18b from low-mass electrons in the energy-magnifying coil 24, as shown schematically in Fig. 3 by thick jagged arrows. Fig. 3 depicts a photoconductive energy-magnifying coil 24 which is illuminated by an incandescent photoconduction exciter 26 energised by its own power source 55 (e.g., an externally connected battery as shown).

A sufficiently high energy-magnification factor of the apparatus 15 allows the magnified energy from the energy-magnifying coil 24 to induce greater energy in the internal output coil 28a than the energy of the corresponding initial pulse. A portion of the magnified electrical energy is returned to the sending coil 20 via the feed-back loop 46 to sustain the oscillations.
photoconductive properties. (High electrical conductivity observed in photoconductive polymers is attributed to the presence of low-mass electrons in the material). The flexible photoconductive ribbon can be wound on a dielectric tubular support, to form the energy-magnifying coil.

In yet another example, a thick-film coating of photoconductive cadmium sulphide (CdS) or cadmium selenide (CdSe) is formed on a wire coil by sintering as paste, which comprises a powder of finely ground CdS or CdSe crystals mixed with water and at least a fluidiser such as cadmium chloride, at a temperature of 5500°C to 6000°C. To form the material into a cylindrical coil having electrical continuity throughout. Some commercially available high - Tc superconductors are available in ribbon or tape form. The energy-magnifying coil can be free-standing or supported on a rigid substrate.

Regarding the energy-magnifying coil, an exemplary embodiment can be made from a low - Tc superconductor such as commercially available, flexible, niobium-zirconium wire which can be readily formed into a coil. Other embodiments, as noted above, of the energy-magnifying coil can be made using a photoconductive material or a high - Tc superconductor. Most high - Tc superconductors (and some photoconductors) have ceramic-like properties and thus require the application of special methods for forming the material into a cylindrical coil having electrical continuity throughout. Such a configuration allows low-mass electrons in the photoconductive material, to receive energy from inductive-photon irradiation.

After starting oscillations in the apparatus, electron flow builds up rapidly, so long as the load does not draw off too much of the output energy during start-up. Upon reaching operating equilibrium, the output of electrical power from the apparatus is a rapidly alternating current (AC). The AC output can be rectified by conventional means to produce direct current (DC), and the output can be regulated as required, using conventional means. Many variations of conventional circuitry are possible, such as, but not limited to, automatic voltage controllers, current controllers, solenoidal switches, transformers, and rectifiers.

By way of example, an energy-magnifying coil can be made from a ribbon of flexible photoconductive material such as the material discussed in patent US 6,310,281, incorporated herein for reference. Briefly, a layer of stress-compliant metal is placed on a plastic ribbon. Then the photoconductive material is deposited on both sides of the metal-covered ribbon and the edges of the ribbon so that the ribbon is coated all the way around. Such a configuration allows low-mass electrons in the photoconductive material, to receive energy from inductive-photons emitted from the sending coil on one side of the ribbon while re-radiating magnified energy from both sides of the ribbon.

In another example, a flexible photoconductor ribbon is made from flexible organic polymer having photoconductive properties. (High electrical conductivity observed in photoconductive polymers is attributed to the presence of low-mass electrons in the material). The flexible photoconductive ribbon can be wound on a dielectric tubular support, to form the energy-magnifying coil.

In yet another example, a thick-film coating of photoconductive cadmium sulphide (CdS) or cadmium selenide (CdSe) is formed on a wire coil by sintering as paste, which comprises a powder of finely ground CdS or CdSe crystals mixed with water and at least a fluidiser such as cadmium chloride, at a temperature of 5500°C to 6000°C. The AC output can be rectified by conventional means to produce direct current (DC), and the output can be regulated as required, using conventional means. Many variations of conventional circuitry are possible, such as, but not limited to, automatic voltage controllers, current controllers, solenoidal switches, transformers, and rectifiers.

In yet another example, a coil of ceramic-like superconductor or photoconductor is made by tape-casting, extruding, slip-casting, cold or hot-pressing, or coating of the material as a thin film arranged helically on a tubular dielectric substrate. The assembly is heat-treated in a controlled atmosphere furnace to increase inter-crystalline contacts. Alternatively, the thin film of superconductor or photoconductor is formed over the entire exterior of the dielectric substrate, followed by removal of selected portions of the superconductor or photoconductor to form the desired helical coil.

[121]In some photoconductors and doped semiconductors, only a small portion of a population of inductive photons irradiated on the material, impact with, and yield acceleration of, low-mass electrons in the material. This is due to a low density of photoconductive low-mass electrons in the material. In such a case, inductive-photon radiation passing through the material can be captured efficiently by normal free conduction electrons in a metallic strip that desirably is in immediate contact with, or embedded in, the material. The acceleration of normal free electrons in the metallic conductor, sets up an electric field that assists in accelerating the low-mass photoelectrons. In this configuration, it is desirable that the photoconductive material be disposed completely over and around the metallic strip so that the photoconductor faces both outwards and inwards, with both sides of the photoconductor or doped semiconductor being in electrical contact with each other.

One factor in the choice of photoconductor material to use in forming the energy-magnifying coil is the potential magnification of energy that can be realised by low-mass electrons of an n-type or p-type photoconductive material. Other important factors are the quantity of low-mass electrons that are available in the photoconductive material for a given amount of illumination and the actual electrical conductance of the material. Standard illumination-sensitivity measurements provide a general overall index of the ability of a photoconductor to serve effectively in magnifying energy.
Cadmium sulphide and cadmium selenide, the most common photoconductive compounds which are available commercially, have calculated magnification factors of 37 and 59, respectively. The peak response wavelength of cadmium sulphide is 515 nanometers (in the green part of the visible spectrum) and of cadmium selenide is 730 nanometers (in the near-infrared part of the spectrum). Cadmium sulphide can be mixed with caesium selenide under certain conditions, so the resulting mixture assumes photoconductive characteristics between those two values. Mixtures can be produced having peak wavelengths which are matched to the wavelengths of commercially available LEDs of many sizes and illumination intensities. Some semiconductors which become photoconductive at a wavelength smaller than the wavelength produced by currently available LEDs can be made conductive of low-mass electrons merely by heating.

Applicant has found that gallium arsenide develops considerably higher conductivity than copper or silver at a temperature of 100\(^\circ\)C. and that the conductive electrons are low-mass. Also, alpha radiation is capable of liberating many low-mass electrons in some semiconductors. A second electron of comparatively low mass may have been liberated from cupric oxide by alpha radiation along with the outer copper electron in Leimer’s (1915) experiments, since the measured energy magnification exceeded the magnification calculated from cyclotron resonance of CuO, which most likely pertains only to the mass of the outer electron.

Dopants can be added to a semiconductor to make it more conductive of low-mass electrons without illumination. Also, the illumination-sensitivity and conductivity of cadmium sulphide are increased by adding small amounts of donor-type dopants such as, but not limited to, sulphides, selenides, tellurides, arsenides, antimonides and phosphides of the Type-IIIa elements: aluminium, gallium, indium and thallium. In this regard, the photoconductors of high-sensitivity photovoltaic cells may comprise as many as five different compounds. The actual mixtures of photoconductive compounds and dopants used in commercially available photovoltaic cells often are trade secrets. But, the sensitivity and conductances of the cells are usually given or are measurable, and these data can be used advantageously in selecting a particular photoconductive compound for use in the apparatus.

Other photoconductive compounds or elements can be employed in energy-magnifying coils. For example, the conduction electrons of silicon have an energy-magnification factor of 15 times. Photoconductors having very high magnification factors include, but are not limited to, gallium arsenide, indium phosphide, gallium antimonide, cadmium-tin arsenide, and cadmium arsenide, which have calculated energy-magnification factors ranging between 200 times and 500 times, and mercury selenide (1100 times), indium arsenide (2000 times), mercury telluride (3400 times) and indium antimonide (5100 times).

The depth of optical transmission largely determines the optimum thickness of photoconductive films for energy-magnifying coils. For example, the highest optical transmission of sintered CdS is reported to be 20 micrometers, but since the average grain size increases (and the average porosity decreases) with an increase in film thickness, the maximum conductivity of a sintered film is at a thickness of 35 micrometers (J. S, Lee et al., 1987).

The metal chosen to be embedded must not react chemically with the photoconductor. For example, aluminium reacts with gallium arsenide (GaAs) in an electrical environment, to change the conductive character of both the GaAs and the aluminium. Gold, platinum, and palladium can serve in many cases because these materials are relatively inert chemically. Gold combines chemically with tellurium, however, so gold is not suitable for embedding in mercury telluride. Cadmium plating over a common metal serves to alleviate the reactivity in cases where cadmium sulphide or cadmium selenide is used as the photoconductor.

The discussion above has been, for ease of explanation, in the context of the apparatus including one energy-magnifying coil 24. However, as discussed, use of a single energy-magnifying coil 24 to capture inductive photons from the sending coil 20, results in loss (by non-capture) of most of the inductive photons from the
sending coil 20. This proportion of captured inductive photons can be increased greatly in an embodiment in which multiple energy-magnifying coils 24 substantially completely surround the sending coil 20, such as shown in Fig.4. In this embodiment, the energy-magnifying coils 24 substantially completely surround the sending coil 20, and (although six energy-magnifying coils 24 are shown) as few as three energy-magnifying coils 24 of adequate diameter, still could substantially completely surround the sending coil 20. There is no limit, except as possibly related to packaging concerns, to the maximum number of energy-magnifying coils 24 which could be used. The depicted configuration of Fig.4, has a desirable number of six energy-magnifying coils 24. In Fig.4, the shaded sectors 31, considered collectively, illustrate that nearly all 360 degrees of inductive-photon radiation 22 from the sending coil 20, are received by the energy-magnifying coils 24. Not shown in Fig.4 are photoconduction exciters (items 26 in Fig.3) used for illuminating respective portions of the energy-magnifying coils 24 in a photoconductive form of the apparatus 15.

Fig.4 also depicts respective internal output coils 28a nested co-axially and co-extensively inside each of the energy-magnifying coils 24. As discussed earlier, each internal output coil 28a receives nearly all the inductive-photon radiation propagating radially inwards from the respective energy-magnifying coil 24. Desirably, the overall energy output of the embodiment of Fig.4, can be increased by surrounding the array of energy-magnifying coils 24 with an external output coil 28b, of which the conductors desirably are made of insulated metallic wire (Fig.5). In this embodiment, approximately half of the outwardly propagating magnified inductive-photon radiation (large arrows 18) from each energy-magnifying coil 24 (one such coil is highlighted in Fig.5) is received by the external output coil 28b. This captured radiation is denoted by the shaded sector 35. When this externally directed inductive radiation captured from all the energy-magnifying coils 24 is added to all the inwardly directed radiation captured from the energy-magnifying coils 24 by their internal output coils 28a, 28b, greatly exceeds the back-force energy directed by the energy-magnifying coils 24 towards the sending coil 20 (the back-force energy from one energy-magnifying coil 24 is shown as the shaded sector 16). Thus, the resulting energy “leverage” exhibited by the apparatus is increased substantially by including the external output coil 28b.

The embodiment of Fig.5 also includes respective arrays (viewed endwise) of light-emitting diodes (LEDs) collectively serving as photoconductor exciters 26 for the energy-magnifying coils 24. The LED arrays are arranged back-to-back and disposed between adjacent energy-magnifying coils 24. Each array in Fig.5 can comprise multiple LEDs or as few as one LED.
Fig.6 provides a perspective view of an apparatus 15 having an arrangement of coils similar to the arrangement shown in Fig.5. In Fig.6, each energy-magnifying coil 24 comprises a helical coil of superconductive or photoconductive material in wire or ribbon (tape-like) form.

Whenever multiple energy-magnifying coils 24 are used, the respective directions of electron flow in them desirably occur in the same circular direction as viewed endwise. Thus, the flow of electrons in all the energy-magnifying coils 24 is clockwise during one phase of an oscillation cycle and counterclockwise during the other phase. The same principle applies to the flow of electrons in the output coils 28a, 28b. (But, in such an embodiment, the flow of electrons in the output coils 28a, 28b, is in the opposite direction to the electron flow in the energy-magnifying coils 24). These relationships of electron flow in the coils during a particular phase of an oscillation cycle, are shown in Fig.7.

The energy-magnifying coils 24 desirably are connected together in series, using inter-coil connectors 30a, 30b, to maintain the same direction of electron flow, which can be clockwise or counterclockwise (as viewed from one end of such a coil). This direction of electron flow in a coil is termed the “handedness” of the coil. If the energy-magnifying coils 24 all have the same handedness, then the ends of adjacent energy-magnifying coils 24 are connected together in a head-to-foot manner progressively in one direction around the group of coils (not shown). (“Head” refers to the forward-facing end, and “foot” refers to the rearward-facing end of the apparatus in relation to the viewer). In this case, the inter-coil connectors 30a, 30b, must pass either completely through the apparatus or around the outside of the apparatus for its entire length, which reduces efficiency and can cause undesirable wear if the connectors are subjected to vibrations. A more desirable arrangement is depicted in Fig.6, in which short inter-coil connectors 30a, cross directly head-to-head between one energy-magnifying coil 24 and an adjacent energy-magnifying coil 24, and short inter-coil connectors 30b cross over directly foot-to-foot in the next energy-magnifying coils 24. In this configuration, the handedness of turns of the energy-magnifying coils 24 alternates from right-to-left to left-to-right in adjacent energy-magnifying coils 24. In the same manner as a right-handed screw advances from head to foot as it is turned clockwise, and a left-handed screw moves in the opposite direction, clockwise electron flow in a right-handed coil advances from head to foot, and clockwise electron flow in a left-handed coil advances from foot to head.

The single-layered internal output coils 28a in Fig.6, present the same situation in which these coils are connected in series. Desirably, the inter-coil connectors 32a cross over directly from one internal output coil 28a to the adjacent internal output coil 28a, head-to-head and the inter-coil connectors 32b cross over directly foot-to-foot from one internal output coil 28a to the adjacent internal output coil 28a. This same handedness convention generally applies to all series-connected internal output coils 28a connected in this manner. The head-to-head inter-coil connectors 32a and foot-to-foot inter-coil connectors 32b for the internal output coils 28a, need not coincide with the same respective connectors 30a, 30b for the energy-magnifying coils 24.

In another embodiment (not shown), each internal output coil is two-layered, with both leads at either the head or foot. Such a configuration allows for short and direct connections between adjacent internal output coils. Multiple-layered internal output coils may be more efficient, but the extra layers of coiled wire increase the mass of the apparatus, which may be a concern in mobile applications. Multiple wire layers carrying high current may also result in overheating, which may require that some space be left between each internal output coil 28a and its surrounding energy-magnifying coil 24 to accommodate one or more conduits of a coolant through the
apparatus (at a sacrifice of some efficiency). The coolant can be, for example, forced air (in the case of photoconductors or doped semiconductors) or liquefied cryogenic gas (in the case of superconductors).

Fig. 6 also shows two external conductors 34 connected to respective internal output coils 28a. Electrons flow through the conductors 34 and the internal output coils 28a in series. In addition, two external conductors 36 are connected to respective ends of the external output coil 28b, and two external conductors 38 are connected to respective ends of the sending coil 20.

The two conductors 36 connected to the external output coil 28b, can be connected to the internal output coils 28a or can be used (without being connected to the internal output coils 28a) with only the external output coil 28b to provide an independent output circuit (not shown). The two conductors 38 connected to the sending coil 20,
are connected in the feed-back loop 46 such that electron flow in the sending coil 20 is in the same circular direction as in the internal output coils 28a.

Fig. 8 depicts yet another embodiment of the apparatus 15, in which each energy magnifying coil 24 comprises a thin film or thick film of a polycrystalline or other suitable photoconductor deposited in a helical manner directly on to a tubular substrate 40 desirably made of ceramic or other suitable dielectric material. On each energy magnifying coil 24, the polycrystalline photoconductor is formed as a helical band on the outside of the tubular substrate 40. The helical band of photoconductor can include a thin film of metal embedded within it. In certain cases, inter-coil connections between adjacent energy magnifying coils 24 can be made by extending the deposited photoconductor from the helices to contact areas 44 situated at the ends of the tubular substrates 40 and extending toward contact areas 44 on adjacent tubular substrates 40. Electrical contact between adjacent energy magnifying coils 24 is made under moderate pressure via the contact areas 44, which are shown in Fig.8. To distinguish the individual contact areas 44, they are shown in a separated position before being pressed together to make contact. To maintain the integrity of the contact areas 44, the energy magnifying coils 24 can be held together in mutual proximity by any of various non-metallic fasteners to make continuous electrical contact between all of the photoconductive portions. For example, bolts 43 and nuts 45 made of a plastic such as nylon, or other dielectric material, can be used. Another variation is to maintain contact pressure of one coil to the next by means of spring clips. Thus, in one embodiment, the energy magnifying coils 24 are connected so as to be in endless contact with each other, with no capacitative break between them. The remainder of the apparatus can be constructed in the same manner as the photoconductor or doped-semiconductor embodiment described above, wherein the same attention to the direction of electron flow in respective coils is observed.
The coil configuration of yet another embodiment is shown in Fig.9A and Fig.9B. A tubular substrate 40, supports a helical, thin film or thick film, dipole-type of energy-magnifying coil 24 that is nested inside and coaxial with a single external output coil 28b. Nested inside the tubular substrate 40, and with respective axes parallel to the axis of the tubular substrate 40, are a sending coil 20 and an internal output coil 28a. The sending coil 20 and the internal output coil 28a, are positioned on opposite sides of a reflective metallic separator 59. The separator 59 is substantially parabolic in cross-section throughout its axial extent, and is positioned so that the longitudinal edges are touching, or nearly touching, the tubular substrate 40. The separator 59 can be composed of common, non-magnetic metal such as aluminium or magnesium. The sending coil 20 is positioned on the concave side of the separator 59, with the axis of the sending coil 20 being positioned at the geometric focus 60 of the parabola and disposed parallel to the axis of the energy-magnifying coil 24. The energy-magnifying coil 24 in this embodiment, comprises a thin film or thick film photoconductor formed helically on the tubular substrate 40. A photoconduction exciter 26 is positioned inside the separator 59. (The tubular substrate 40, is made of a rigid material that is transparent to radiation produced by the photoconduction exciter 26). All the other forms of the energy-magnifying coil 24 as described herein, including the super conducting form, can be employed in this embodiment.

The separator 59, serves a double purpose. One purpose is to direct towards the energy-magnifying coil 24 the portion of the inductive-photon radiation 22 which is not otherwise directed towards the separator, as shown by the reflected-photon rays 61 in Fig.6A. (Reflection of these radiated photons does not change the directionality of the transverse force which these photons convey). Another purpose of the separator 59 is to serve as a shield to restrict the amount of inward radiation 18b from the energy-magnifying coil 24 which is returned as a back-force to the sending coil 20. The restricted back-force radiation is shown by the shaded area 63 in Fig.9B.
The portion of the inwardly directed, magnified inductive-photon radiation 18b which is received by the internal output coil 28a, is denoted by the shaded area 65. The proportional amount of outwardly directed magnified radiation 18a from the energy-magnifying coil 24 which is received by the external output coil 28b, is shown by the shaded area 67. The sum of the magnified radiation in the area 65 which reaches the external output coil 28b, substantially exceeds the magnified radiation in the area 63 (the latter serving as a back-force on the sending coil 20). This excess of utilised energy over the back-force energy, provides energy leverage. This embodiment also includes a starting mechanism, and initial power source for the photoconduction exciter, a work loop, and a feedback loop (not shown) as provided in the other embodiments described herein.

Certain features can be incorporated with any of the embodiments described herein, to add functional practicality. For example, referring to the schematic representation of a coil configuration shown in end view in Fig.10A, a ferromagnetic core 69 can be placed inside the sending coil 20, and ferromagnetic cores 71 can be placed inside respective internal output coils 28a. These cores increase the inductance of the apparatus, which lowers the frequency of the electrical oscillations produced by the apparatus. Although increases in inductance can cause
the output voltage and current to be out of phase, the phase difference can be corrected by adding capacitance to
the circuitry by conventional means. Also shown, is an external metal shield which completely surrounds the
apparatus to block any radiation from the device that could interfere with radios, televisions, telephones,
computers and other electronic devices. the shield can be comprised of any of various non-magnetic metals such
as aluminium or magnesium.

An alternative means of increasing the inductance of the apparatus is shown in Fig.10B, which is a variation of
the end view of just the sending coil 20 that is depicted in Fig.10A. In Fig.10B, a ferromagnetic sleeve 73 is
placed coaxially around the sending coil 20.

The respective dimensional ratios of various components generally remain similar with respect to each other for
different apparatus sizes, except for the longitudinal dimension, which generally can be as short or as long as
desired, up to some practical limit. The respective gauges of wires used in the sending coil 20 and the output
coils 28a and 28b, are commensurate with the electric current carried by these wires, and the respective
thickness of insulation (if used) on the wires is commensurate with the voltage.

The outside diameter of the internal output coils 28a desirably is only slightly less than the inside diameter of the
respective energy-magnifying coils 24, as shown in Fig.6, Fig.7 and Fig.8, thereby ensuring close proximity of
each internal output coil 28a with its respective energy-magnifying coil 24. At a sacrifice in efficiency, the outside
diameter of the internal output coils 28a can be made smaller, to allow space for heat from the current-carrying
wires to escape or be removed by a coolant such as forced air in the case of a photoconductor type or doped
semiconductor type apparatus, or by a cryogenic liquefied gas in the case of a superconductor type apparatus.

Also, desirably, the external output coil 28b is connected in series with the internal output coils 28a to maximise
the output voltage from the apparatus 15 and to minimise heat produced by electric currents in the apparatus.
The output voltage can be stepped down and the output electric current stepped up to normal operating ranges by
using a transformer, wherein the primary of the transformer would comprise the load in the work loop 48.

As discussed above, each energy-magnifying coil 24 can comprise a photoconductor or doped semiconductor
formed as a helical pattern on a respective thin-walled tubular substrate provided with extended, raised contact
surfaces at each end. The energy-magnifying coils 24 desirably are connected electrically (rather than
capacitatively) to each other in series at the raised contact surfaces. The photoconductive coils desirably are
coated using clear varnish or enamel to provide electrical insulation and to protect the photoconductors from
oxidation and weathering.

Where the low-mass photoconducting electrons in the energy-magnifying coils 24 are present in a concentration
which is insufficient for capturing most of the inductive-photon radiation from the sending coil 20, each energy-
magnifying coil desirably includes a thin metallic band. The metal desirably is in intimate contact with the low-
mass-electron carrier the metal can be on the exterior of a doped semiconductor, or it can be embedded in a
photoconductor band of the coil to capture the inductive radiation and set up an electric field which, in turn, assists
in accelerating the low-mass electrons. In the photoconductive embodiment, the photoconductive material
desirably is disposed all around the metallic band so that the low-mass electrons are conducted on the outer side
as well as the inner side and edges of the photoconductive band on the portion or portions which are exposed to
illumination on the outside. The width of the metal band desirably is sufficient to capture as much of the inductive-
photon radiation from the sending coil as is practical, since gaps between turns of the metal band in the energy-
magnifying coil permit the sending coil’s inductive radiation to pass through to the internal output coil. Since the
sending coil’s radiation is a half-cycle out of phase with the inductive radiation from the low-mass electrons, all the
sending coil radiation which reaches the output coil, reduces the output efficiency of the apparatus.

Appropriate photoconductive materials (e.g. cadmium sulphide, cadmium selenide) for forming the energy-
magnifying coils 24 are commercially available. The photoconductive material can be a single material or a
mixture of materials, and can be formed by, for example, sputtering. A mixture of cadmium sulphide and cadmium
selenide can be adjusted optimally to yield energy-magnifying coils exhibiting maximal energy-magnifying factors
at a peak wavelength matching the brightest photoconduction exciters 26 which are available.

With respect to the photoconduction exciters 26, photo-excitation of the energy-magnifying coils 24 can be
provided by one or more LEDs, either surface-emitting or edge-emitting, for example, selected to produce an
output wavelength matched to the peak photoconduction wavelength of the energy-magnifying coils 24. In the
embodiment of Fig.7 and Fig.10A, individual LEDs 26 are positioned in linear arrays mounted back-to-back on
respective mounting bars. The assembled mounting bars with LEDs are placed in the gaps between adjacent
energy-magnifying coils 24 to illuminate at least the sides of the respective energy-magnifying coils 24 which
receive inductive-photon radiation from the sending coil 20. LEDs are advantageous compared to incandescent
lamps because LEDs produce more light with less heat and have a much longer operational lifetime than
incandescent lamps. LEDs are also preferred because of their small size which facilitates fitting a large number of them into the relatively small space between adjacent energy-magnifying coils 24. 

Whereas the invention has been described in connection with several representative embodiments, the invention is not limited to those embodiments. On the contrary, the invention is intended to encompass all modifications, alternatives and equivalents as may be included within the spirit and scope of the invention, as defined by the appended claims.

References Cited in the Text


Anon., 1919a, “Youthful Seattle Inventor and his Invention” (photos and captions), Seattle Post-Intelligencer, Dec. 17, 1919.

Anon., 1919b, “Youth’s Revolutionary invention is Backed by Professor - Hubbard’s New Energy No Fake, Says Seattle College Man”, Seattle Post-Intelligencer, Dec. 17, 1919,


Larmor, J., 1900, Aether and Matter, Cambridge University Press.

A - 194


This is a reworded excerpt from this patent which shows a high-efficiency electrical generator of alternating current. It is stated that this generator design is not affected by Lenz’s law and the experimental results showed a 13,713% improvement over conventional power output.

ABSTRACT
An alternating current electrical generator creates three different and distinct magnetic fields between would coil elements and rotating magnets, two fields of which are induced fields caused by magnet rotation. A plurality of magnets are positioned such that they extend outwardly from a rotating shaft. The magnets are circumferentially spaced around the shaft such that the north polar end of one magnet follows the south polar end of the next magnet or such that the polar end of one magnet follows a magnet with the same polar end. A plurality of stationary coil elements are positioned in spaced relation to the magnets. The coil elements each have electrical windings and metal cores which extend the lengths of the coil elements. The magnets rotate in spaced relation to the ends of the coil elements in such a way that the magnets' flux lines cut the cores located at the centre of each of the coil elements. This induces alternating electric current that oscillates back and forth along the lengths of the cores. This oscillating current creates an expanding and collapsing set of magnetic flux lines which expand and contract through every inch of the coil element's windings. This expanding and collapsing magnetic field induces an expanding and collapsing magnetic field and an alternating electric field in the coil elements.

US Patent References:
4009406 Feb, 1977 Inariba.
4823038 Apr, 1989 Mizutani et al.
5696419 Dec, 1997 Rakestraw et al.
5821710 Oct, 1998 Masuzawa et al.
5973436 Oct, 1999 Mitcham.
6069431 May, 2000 Satoh et al.
6373161 Apr, 2002 Khalaf.
6462451 Oct, 2002 Kimura et al.
6541877 Apr, 2003 Kim et al.
6717313 Apr, 2004 Bae.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION
Alternating current generators are rotating devices which convert mechanical energy into electrical energy. To generate an electromotive force by mechanical motion, there must be movement between an electric coil and a magnetic field in a manner that will cause a change in the flux that passes through the coil. Fundamentally, the induced electromotive force is brought about by a change in the flux passing through the coil.

The use of electromagnets, magnets and magnet components in generators to create the magnetic field and its subsequent effect on electric coils to ultimately generate electric current is well known. Such magnetic generators operate by using the repelling forces created by the effect of changing polarities of both permanent and electromagnets. For instance, there are electrical generating devices which employ electromagnets which are fixed in position and which induce current by being selectively energised, as iron or other magnetic metal discs, bars, or similar elements are rotated at or around the magnets. Other systems employ electromagnet or permanent magnets which are rotated, by various means, in relation to iron cores or coils, inducing an alternating electrical current within the coils.

However, prior alternating current generators which employ rotating magnet systems are inefficient and generally fail to deliver adequate current, in relation to the mechanical effort applied.
SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

It is thus an object of the present invention to address the limitations and disadvantages of prior alternating electric current generators.

It is an object of the present invention to provide an alternating current generator which generates a substantial amount of electrical current efficiently and effectively.

It is a further object of the present invention to provide an alternating current generator which employs rotating magnets to induce increased alternating electrical current within the iron cores of electrical coils.

It is still another object of the present invention to provide an alternating current generator which can be simply and readily manufactured and be operated with high efficiency.

These and other objects are obtained by the present invention, an alternating current electrical generator which creates three different and distinct magnetic fields between wound coil elements and rotating magnets, two fields of which are induced fields caused by magnet rotation. A plurality of magnets are positioned such that they extend outwardly from a rotating shaft. The magnets are circumferentially spaced around the shaft such that the north polar end of one magnet follows the south polar end of the next magnet or such that the polar end of one magnet follows a magnet with the same polar end. A plurality of stationary coil elements are positioned in spaced relation to the magnets. The coil elements each have electrical windings and metal cores which extend the lengths of the coil elements. The magnets rotate in spaced relation to the ends of the coil elements in such a way that the magnets' flux lines cut the cores located at the centre of each of the coil elements. This induces alternating electric current that oscillates back and forth along the lengths of the cores. This oscillating current creates an expanding and collapsing set of magnetic flux lines which expand and contract through every inch of the coil element's windings. This expanding and collapsing magnetic field induces an expanding and collapsing magnetic field and an alternating electric field in the coil elements.

The novel features which are considered as characteristic of the invention are set forth in particular in the appended claims. The invention itself, however, both as to its design, construction, and use, together with additional features and advantages thereof, are best understood upon review of the following detailed description with reference to the accompanying drawings.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

Fig. 1 is an isometric representation of keys components of the present invention.
Fig. 2 is a side view representation of the present invention showing the two housed sets of coil elements and their relationship with the magnets.

Fig. 3 is an explanatory view, showing the generation of flux lines which forms the basis for the operation of the present invention.
Fig. 4 is an alternate embodiment of the present invention.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION
Fig.1 and Fig.2 show a clear depiction of the components of alternating current generator 1 of the subject invention. Generator 1 comprises housings 2 and 3. For simplicity purposes and ease of understanding, only housing 2 is shown in Fig.1. It must be understood, however, that generator 1 of the present invention is configured for use with both housings 2 and 3. Housing 2 contains coil elements 4, 6, 8, and 10. Each coil element comprises multiple windings 12, 14, 16, and 18, respectively, wound around inner steel or similar metal cores 20, 22, 24, and 26, respectively. Each steel core extends the full length and directly through each of the coil elements. Coil elements 4, 6, 8, and 10 are mounted within housing 2, such that the end surfaces of the coil elements and the ends of cores 20, 22, 24, and 26 are positioned flush with the external surface of housing 2.

Housing 3 also contains four coil elements positioned identically as has been described with regard to housing 2. Two of these coil elements 5 and 7 are shown in Fig.2. Coil element 5 has multiple windings 13 and centre core 21 and coil element 7 has multiple windings 11 and centre core 21.

Magnets 28, 30, 32, and 34 are secured to shaft 36, which is configured to be rotated by conventional power source 37, such as a diesel engine, turbine, etc. Magnets 28, 30, 31, and 32 all have ends with outwardly extending polarities. Magnets 28, 30, 32, and 34 are positioned in spaced relation to the ends of exposed cores 20, 22, 24 and 26 of coil elements 4, 6, 8, and 10 and in spaced relation to the ends of the four exposed cores in the four coil elements located in housing 3, cores 19 and 21 being shown in Fig.2. All magnets are equidistantly spaced on and around shaft 36, such that the outwardly extending pole of one magnet circumferentially follows the outwardly extending pole of the next magnet. The north polar end of one magnet may follow the south polar end of the next magnet or the polar end of one magnet may follow a magnet with the same polar end.

While four magnets and four cores are shown, it is contemplated that additional magnets and cores could be employed in the generator. Also, while permanent magnets are shown in the drawings, electromagnets could also be used, as they produce the same magnetic flux.

Alternating electrical current is generated when power source 37 rotates shaft 36, thus causing rotation of magnets 28, 30, 32, and 34 in spaced, adjacent relation to the ends of cores 20, 22, 24, and 26 of coil elements 4, 6, 8, and 10, and in spaced, adjacent relation to the ends of cores 19 and 21 of coil elements 7 and 5 and the ends of the cores of the other two similarly aligned coil elements in housing 3. The current which is generated is transmitted through electrical conductive wiring 27, which merges at connection points 29 in housing 2 and 31 in housing 3, for the consolidated transmission at connection point 33 of the electricity produced.

As best represented in Fig.2, when magnet 28 is rotated in space relation to the end of core 20 of coil element 4, flux lines 100 of the magnet cut the core at the centre of the coil element. This induces an alternating electrical current that oscillates back and forth along the length of core 20. This oscillating current creates an expanding and collapsing set of magnetic flux lines 200 which expand and contract through every inch of coil windings 12. Expanding and collapsing field 200 induces an alternating electric field in coil element 4 which is accompanied by
an expanding and collapsing magnetic field 300. It is noted, significantly, that none of the magnetic field lines 100, 200 and 300, act in a negative fashion or in an opposing action. This allows the subject invention to overcome the limitations of Lenz's law, which states that whenever there is a change in magnetic flux in a circuit, an induced electromotive force is set-up tending to produce a current in a direction which will oppose the flux change.

**FIG. 3**

Fig. 3 illustrates an alternate embodiment of the invention to that which is shown in Fig. 1. As shown in Fig. 3, coil element 44 with outer windings 58 and inner steel core 66, coil element 46 with windings 56 and core 64, coil element 48 with windings 54 and core 62, and coil element 50 with outer windings 52 and core 60 are positioned adjacent to rotor 67, which is mounted on shaft 69. Magnets 68 and 72 are mounted on rotor 67 such that the north poles of the magnets are positioned in spaced relation to coil elements 44, 46, 48 and 50. Magnets 70 and 74 are mounted on rotor 67 such that the south poles of the magnets are also positioned in spaced relation to coil elements 44, 46, 48, and 50. All magnets are fixedly mounted on rotor 67 such that a north pole of one magnet circumferentially follows a south pole of the next magnet in line. The contemplated gap between the magnets and coil element cones is approximately 0.0001 of an inch, although the scope and use of the invention should not be deemed restricted to this distance.

As in the prior embodiment, rotation of magnets 68, 70, 72, and 74, by rotation of shaft 69 and hence rotor 67, causes the flux lines of the magnets to cut cores 60, 62, 64, and 66 of coil elements 44, 46, 48, and 50, eventually resulting in the output of electrical current as previously described.

It is noted that the larger the diameter of rotor 67, the more coil elements can be positioned around the rotor. The greater the number of coil elements, the slower rotor 67 needs to rotate; however, there is a power loss in so doing. In addition, while rotor 67 is shown as being circular, it may be as square in shape or formed of as other appropriate multi-sided configurations.

This unique way of generating electricity allows generation of more electrical power, e.g. anywhere in the range of 4 to 137 times more power, than prior, conventional means. It also has the advantage of obtaining unity power with very little effort.

As evidence of such power gains, reference is made to the below outlined experimental outputs from coils and magnets which produced electric power the conventional way compared with the subject invention. The conventional way of generating power, for purpose of the following experimental outputs, as referenced herein, is accomplished by cutting the wires, not the cores, of the coil's windings with the magnet's flux.

In this regard, proof is also provided that the herein described method of generating electrical power is not affected by Lenz's Law, by reference to the readings obtained by the conventional methods as the rpm and size of the coil increase. With conventional methods, the values do not change linearly, but are less because Lenz's Law restricts the outputs from increasing proportionally to the speed and size of the coil. In comparison, however,
in the method of producing power of the subject invention, there is an increase in the readings of V (voltage), I (current), and P (power) which are actually larger than anticipated.

It is also noted that, just like a transformer, when the number of turns ratio is increased, V increases and I decreases, which is exactly what is seen at the various rpm readings for the different size coils. However, they do not increase or decrease proportionally.

Thus, this presents the ideal model for producing electrical power that corresponds to the general law that states that as the speed increases, the voltage will increase proportionally, through the equation:

$$V = q \text{(charge)} \times \nu \text{(velocity)} \times B \text{(magnetic field strength)}.$$  This also holds true for a coil, in that transformers increase proportionally to the turns ratio.

With reference to the voltage outputs for each of the coils, 1100T, 2200T and 5500T, it is seen that they are consistent with the types of voltage outputs for a transformer action. That is to say, as the turns ratio goes up in a transformer so does the voltage. Since the increases in voltage between the number of turns is not exactly 2 to 5 times, one can pick any one of the coils and assume it is accurate and adjust the other coils accordingly. Thus, by fixing the 1100T coil, the other coils become 2837T and 5896T respectively. By fixing the 2200T coil, the other coils become 853T and 4572T respectively. And by fixing the 5500T coil, the other coils become 1026T and 2646T respectively. Also, if the adjustments are made as described here, i.e. that the coils are bigger than originally thought, and they are applied to the voltages for the conventional method of generating power, the voltages do not increase proportionally but are actually smaller than they are supposed to be, additional proof that Lenz's Law has application to conventional generators, but not to this invention.

The proportional changes in the voltage relative to speed can also be seen. Thus, considering the 350 RPM speed as accurate, the 1200 RPM and 1300 RPM speeds will adjust to 906 RPM and 1379 RPM respectively. Considering the 1200 RPM speed as accurate, the 350 RPM and 1300 RPM speed becomes 464 RPM and 1826 RPM respectively. And finally, considering the 1300 RPM speed as accurate, the 350 RPM and 1200 RPM speeds become 330 RPM and 854 RPM respectively.

It is noted that in using the various RPM readings based upon the above, it is seen that, in the conventional way of generating power, there are losses associated with the measured values. The calculated values again show the application of Lenz's Law in the conventional way of generating power, but not to this invention. In fact, whether or not there is an adjustment of RPM speed or coil size, the power generation of this invention is in no way affected by Lenz's Law.

Since Lenz's Law has no effect in this generator, it can be assumed that the voltages increase proportionally to the speed of the magnets rotation. Therefore, one can extrapolate the expected voltages at 1800 RPM, the speed necessary to create 60 Hz. With regard to this generator, for each of the three coils from the 350 RPM, 1200 RPM and 1300 RPM speeds, the following results (values are based on one coil/magnet.):

1. At assumed 350 RPM the voltages range as follows:
   A. 5.863v @1100T
   B. 15.12v @2200T
   C. 31.42v @5500T

2. At assumed 1200 RPM the voltages range as follows:
   A. 4.425v @1100T
   B. 11.295v @2200T
   C. 16.845v @5500T

3. At assumed 1300 RPM the voltages range as follows:
   A. 6.217v @1100T
   B. 10.716v @2200T
   C. 17.668v @5500T

The reason the current is not changing linearly as the laws of physics imply from transformers, i.e. as voltage goes up based on the number of turns, the current goes down proportionally to the voltage gain, is due to the fact
that the inductive reactance is also going up. See the following chart for the inductive reactances for each coil at each speed.

Impedance (Z) or inductive reactance (X(L)) for a circuit with only a coil in it is the AC voltage divided by the AC current, and the inductance (L) is \( Z/2 \times \pi \times F \) (frequency). For a circuit with a resistor and a coil \( Z = \sqrt{R \text{ (resistance) squared} + X(L) \text{ squared}} \). 

The following is the chart of impedance Z for all coil sizes at all speeds for the conventional method of generating power and the method of generating power with this invention:

Where:

- “T” stands for Turns,
- “CM” stands for Conventional Method and
- “SI” stands for Subject Invention:

1. **For 350 RPM for 1100T, 2200T and 5500T coils,**
   1. (a) CM: \( 0.57v / 56.6 \text{ mA} = 10.021 \text{ ohms} = Z \)  
      (b) SI: \( 1.14v / 106.6 \text{ mA} = 10.694 \text{ ohms} = Z \)
   2. (a) CM: \( 0.93v / 32.4 \text{ mA} = 28.704 \text{ ohms} = Z \)  
      (b) SI: \( 2.94v / 70.1 \text{ mA} = 41.94 \text{ ohms} = Z \)
   3. (a) CM: \( 2.09v / 17.3 \text{ mA} = 120.81 \text{ ohms} = Z \)  
      (b) SI: \( 6.11v / 37.9 \text{ mA} = 161.21 \text{ ohms} = Z \)

2. **For 1200 RPM for 1100T, 2200T and 5500T coils:**
   1. (a) CM: \( 1.45v / 60.2 \text{ mA} = 23.387 \text{ ohms} = Z \)  
      (b) SI: \( 2.95v / 141 \text{ mA} = 20.922 \text{ ohms} = Z \)
   2. (a) CM: \( 3.225v / 36.2 \text{ mA} = 89.088 \text{ ohms} = Z \)  
      (b) SI: \( 7.53v / 73.5 \text{ mA} = 102.449 \text{ ohms} = Z \)
   3. (a) CM: \( 4.81v / 17 \text{ mA} = 282.941 \text{ ohms} = Z \)  
      (b) SI: \( 11.23v / 31.4 \text{ mA} = 357.643 \text{ ohms} = Z \)

3. **For 1300 RPM for 1100T, 2200T and 5500T coils:**
   1. (a) CM: \( 1.6v / 83 \text{ mA} = 19.27 \text{ ohms} = Z \)  
      (b) SI: \( 4.59v / 157 \text{ mA} = 29.236 \text{ ohms} = Z \)
   2. (a) CM: \( 2.75v / 50.4 \text{ mA} = 54.455 \text{ ohms} = Z \)  
      (b) SI: \( 7.74v / 88.5 \text{ mA} = 87.458 \text{ ohms} = Z \)
   3. (a) CM: \( 5.061v / 17.3 \text{ mA} = 292.543 \text{ ohms} = Z \)  
      (b) SI: \( 12.76v / 36.4 \text{ mA} = 350.549 \text{ ohms} = Z \)

4. **For 400 RPM for 2300T coil with 24 gauge wire and 0.5” core:**
   (a) CM: \( 0.15v / 3.7 \text{ mA} = 40.541 \text{ ohms} = Z \)  
   (b) SI: \( 2.45v / 26.2 \text{ mA} = 93.511 \text{ ohms} = Z \)

5. **For 1200 RPM for 2300T coil with 24 gauge wire and 0.5” core:**
   (a) CM: \( 0.37v / 2.7 \text{ mA} = 137.037 \text{ ohms} = Z \)  
   (b) SI: \( 4.1v / 10.3 \text{ mA} = 398.058 \text{ ohms} = Z \)
(6) For 1400 RPM for 2300T coil with 24 gauge wire and 0.5" core:
(a) CM: \(0.58v / 2.4 \text{ mA} = 241.667 \text{ ohms} = Z\)
(b) SI: \(8.3v / 7.8 \text{ mA} = 1065.385 \text{ ohms} = Z\)

(7) For 400 RPM for 2300T coil with 24 gauge wire and 0.75" core:
(a) CM: \(0.23v / 4.2 \text{ mA} = 54.762 \text{ ohms} = Z\)
(b) SI: \(0.37v / 7.2 \text{ mA} = 51.389 \text{ ohms} = Z\)

(8) For 1200 RPM for 2300T coil with 24 gauge wire and 0.75" core:
(a) CM: \(0.79v / 3.4 \text{ mA} = 232.353 \text{ ohms} = Z\)
(b) SI: \(0.43v / 6.9 \text{ mA} = 207.246 \text{ ohms} = Z\)

(9) For 1400 RPM for 2300T coil with 24 gauge wire and 0.75" core:
(a) CM: \(0.79v / 3.21 \text{ A} = 246.875 \text{ ohms} = Z\)
(b) SI: \(2.1v / 2.7 \text{ mA} = 777.778 \text{ ohms} = Z\)

(10) For 400 RPM for 6000T coil with 28 gauge wire and 0.5" core:
(a) CM: \(0.49v / 2 \text{ mA} = 245 \text{ ohms} = Z\)
(b) SI: \(5.48v / 0.13 \text{ mA} = 421.538 \text{ ohms} = Z\)

(11) For 1200 RPM for 6000T coil with 28 gauge wire and 0.5" core:
(a) CM: \(1.25v / 1.5 \text{ mA} = 833.333 \text{ ohms} = Z\)
(b) SI: \(15.04v / 4.1 \text{ mA} = 3668.293 \text{ ohms} = Z\)

(12) For 1400 RPM for 6000T coil with 28 gauge wire and 0.5" core:
(a) CM: \(2.08v / 1.1 \text{ mA} = 1890.909 \text{ ohms} = Z\)
(b) SI: \(18.76v / 2.5 \text{ mA} = 7504 \text{ ohms} = Z\)

(13) For 400 RPM for 6000T coil with 28 gauge wire and 0.75" core:
(a) CM: \(0.64v / 1.7 \text{ mA} = 376.471 \text{ ohms} = Z\)
(b) SI: \(7.97v / 7.4 \text{ mA} = 1077.027 \text{ ohms} = Z\)

(14) For 1200 RPM for 6000T coil with 28 gauge wire and 0.75" core:
(a) CM: \(2.08v / 1.3 \text{ mA} = 1600 \text{ ohms} = Z\)
(b) SI: \(20.4v / 5.6 \text{ mA} = 3642.857 \text{ ohms} = Z\)

(15) For 1400 RPM for 6000T coil with 28 gauge wire and 0.75" core:
(a) CM: \(2.28v / 1.2 \text{ mA} = 1900 \text{ ohms} = Z\)
(b) SI: \(28.4v / 2.1 \text{ mA} = 13523.81 \text{ ohms} = Z\)

It is noted that, based upon the variations of wire size, core size and number of turns, the following effects take place:
(a) the smaller the wire size the higher the gains regardless of speed;
(b) the greater the number of turns, generally the higher the gains; and
(c) the smaller the core size the higher the gains.
However, when comparing coils with smaller cores but a higher number of turns, the effects stay about the same.
Finally, the magnets are placed in the rotor so that they are all north or south poles up or out. A pure half-wave generator is created without rectifying the AC signal, which otherwise must be accomplished in a normal AC generator with electronic components in an electronic circuit.

Experimental Values for Producing Power the Conventional Way and with the Subject Invention:

The results were achieved using a small 3" magnet with a diameter of ±2" on a 1.25" high coil of 1" diameter and 3/8" centre/core of steel. (Unknown wire gauge size.)

(a) Conventional method of generating electricity:
1. 0.324 volts
2. 2.782 mA (milli-amps)
3. 0.9014 mW (milli-watts)

(b) Subject invention method of generating electricity:
1. 7.12 volts
2. 17.35 mA
3. 100.87 mW

(c) Associated gains of Volts, Current and Watts:
1. 2,198% over conventional voltage output.
2. 624% over conventional current output.
3. 13,713% over conventional power output.

The following results show the voltage, current and power outputs for an 1100, 2200 and 5500 turn coil of 20 gauge copper wire, 6" in length, 3" in diameter with a 0.75" core of steel. The results are those taken at 350 rpm, 1200 rpm and 1300 rpm.

(A) 350 RPM for an 1100 turn coil

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Volts</th>
<th>mA</th>
<th>mW</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a)</td>
<td>0.57</td>
<td>56.6</td>
<td>32.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)</td>
<td>1.14</td>
<td>106.6</td>
<td>121.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c)</td>
<td>200%</td>
<td>188.3</td>
<td>376.6%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(B) 350 RPM for a 2200 turn coil

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Volts</th>
<th>mA</th>
<th>mW</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a)</td>
<td>0.93</td>
<td>32.4</td>
<td>30.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)</td>
<td>2.94</td>
<td>70.1</td>
<td>206.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c)</td>
<td>316.1%</td>
<td>216.4%</td>
<td>684%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(C) 350 RPM for a 5500 turn coil

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Volts</th>
<th>mA</th>
<th>mW</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a)</td>
<td>2.09</td>
<td>17.3</td>
<td>36.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)</td>
<td>6.11</td>
<td>37.9</td>
<td>231.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c)</td>
<td>292.3%</td>
<td>219.1%</td>
<td>640%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(D) 1200 RPM for an 1100 turn coil

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Volts</th>
<th>mA</th>
<th>mW</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a)</td>
<td>1.45</td>
<td>60.2</td>
<td>87.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)</td>
<td>2.95</td>
<td>141</td>
<td>416</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c)</td>
<td>203.4%</td>
<td>234.2%</td>
<td>476%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### (E) 1200 RPM for a 2200 turn coil

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Volts</th>
<th>mA</th>
<th>mW</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a)</td>
<td>3.225</td>
<td>36.2</td>
<td>116.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b)</td>
<td>7.53</td>
<td>73.5</td>
<td>553.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c)</td>
<td>233.5%</td>
<td>203%</td>
<td>474%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### (F) 1200 RPM on a 5500 turn coil

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Volts</th>
<th>mA</th>
<th>mW</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a)</td>
<td>4.81</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>81.77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b)</td>
<td>11.23</td>
<td>31.4</td>
<td>352.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c)</td>
<td>235.5%</td>
<td>184.7%</td>
<td>431.3%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### (G) 1300 RPM on an 1100 turn coil

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Volts</th>
<th>mA</th>
<th>mW</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a)</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>132.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b)</td>
<td>4.59</td>
<td>157</td>
<td>704.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c)</td>
<td>280.6%</td>
<td>189.2%</td>
<td>530.8%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### (H) 1300 RPM on a 2200 turn coil

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Volts</th>
<th>mA</th>
<th>mW</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a)</td>
<td>2.75</td>
<td>50.5</td>
<td>138.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b)</td>
<td>7.74</td>
<td>88.5</td>
<td>685</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c)</td>
<td>281.5%</td>
<td>175.2%</td>
<td>493.3%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### (I) 1300 RPM on a 5500 turn coil

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Volts</th>
<th>mA</th>
<th>mW</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a)</td>
<td>5.061</td>
<td>17.3</td>
<td>87.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b)</td>
<td>12.76</td>
<td>36.4</td>
<td>464.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c)</td>
<td>252%</td>
<td>210%</td>
<td>530%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following readings are taken from a coil with 24 gauge wire, 0.5" centre/core of steel and 2300T.

### (A) 400 rpm

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Volts</th>
<th>mA</th>
<th>mW</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a)</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>0.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b)</td>
<td>2.45</td>
<td>26.2</td>
<td>64.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c)</td>
<td>1,633%</td>
<td>708%</td>
<td>11,563%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### (B) 1200 rpm

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Volts</th>
<th>mA</th>
<th>mW</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a)</td>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>2.7</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b)</td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>10.3</td>
<td>42.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c)</td>
<td>1,108%</td>
<td>381%</td>
<td>4,227%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### (C) 1400 rpm

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Volts</th>
<th>mA</th>
<th>mW</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a)</td>
<td>0.58</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>1.39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b)</td>
<td>8.31</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td>64.82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c)</td>
<td>1,433%</td>
<td>325%</td>
<td>4,657%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following readings are taken from a coil made with 24 gauge wire, 0.75" centre/core of copper, 2300T.

### (A) 400 rpm
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RPM</th>
<th>Volts</th>
<th>mA</th>
<th>mW</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(a) Conventional method:</td>
<td>(b) Subject invention method:</td>
<td>(c) Associated gains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.23</td>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>0.97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>2.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>137%</td>
<td>171%</td>
<td>235%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>B</strong> 1200 rpm</td>
<td>Volts</td>
<td>mA</td>
<td>mW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Conventional method:</td>
<td>0.79</td>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>2.69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Subject invention method:</td>
<td>1.43</td>
<td>6.9</td>
<td>9.87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Associated gains</td>
<td>181%</td>
<td>203%</td>
<td>367%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>C</strong> 1400 rpm</td>
<td>Volts</td>
<td>mA</td>
<td>mW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Conventional method:</td>
<td>0.79</td>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>2.53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Subject invention method:</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>2.7</td>
<td>5.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Associated gains</td>
<td>266%</td>
<td>84%</td>
<td>224%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following readings were taken from a coil made of 28 gauge wire, 0.5” centre/core of steel and 6000T.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RPM</th>
<th>Volts</th>
<th>mA</th>
<th>mW</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) Conventional method:</td>
<td>0.49</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Subject invention method:</td>
<td>5.48</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>71.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Associated gains</td>
<td>1,118%</td>
<td>65%</td>
<td>7,269%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>A</strong> 400 rpm</td>
<td>Volts</td>
<td>mA</td>
<td>mW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Conventional method:</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>1.88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Subject invention method:</td>
<td>15.04</td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>61.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Associated gains</td>
<td>1,203%</td>
<td>273%</td>
<td>3,289%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>B</strong> 1200 rpm</td>
<td>Volts</td>
<td>mA</td>
<td>mW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Conventional method:</td>
<td>2.08</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>2.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Subject invention method:</td>
<td>18.76</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>46.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Associated gains</td>
<td>902%</td>
<td>227%</td>
<td>2,050%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>C</strong> 1400 rpm</td>
<td>Volts</td>
<td>mA</td>
<td>mW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Conventional method:</td>
<td>2.08</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>2.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Subject invention method:</td>
<td>20.4</td>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>114.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Associated gains</td>
<td>981%</td>
<td>431%</td>
<td>4,225%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following readings were taken from a coil made of 28 gauge wire, 0.75” steel centre/core and 6000T.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RPM</th>
<th>Volts</th>
<th>mA</th>
<th>mW</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) Conventional method:</td>
<td>0.64</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>1.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Subject invention method:</td>
<td>7.97</td>
<td>7.4</td>
<td>58.98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Associated gains</td>
<td>1,245%</td>
<td>435%</td>
<td>5,421%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>A</strong> 400 rpm</td>
<td>Volts</td>
<td>mA</td>
<td>mW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Conventional method:</td>
<td>2.08</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>2.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Subject invention method:</td>
<td>20.4</td>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>114.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Associated gains</td>
<td>981%</td>
<td>431%</td>
<td>4,225%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RPM</th>
<th>Volts</th>
<th>mA</th>
<th>mW</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) Conventional method:</td>
<td>2.28</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>2.74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Subject invention method:</td>
<td>28.4</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>88.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Associated gains</td>
<td>1,246%</td>
<td>175%</td>
<td>2,180%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The extrapolated voltages for the items immediately above at the 1800 RPM speed for the method of the subject invention are as follows:

**(A)** 400-1400 RPM, 0.5" core, 2300T:
(1) 11.025v  
(2) 6.15v  
(3) 10.68v

**(B)** 400-1400 RPM, 0.75" core, 2300T:
(1) 1.665v  
(2) 2.145v  
(3) 2.7v

**(C)** 400-1400 RPM, 0.5" core, 6000T:
(1) 24.66v  
(2) 22.56v  
(3) 24.12

**(D)** 400-1400 RPM, 0.75" core, 6000T:
(1) 10.25v  
(2) 30.6v  
(3) 36.51v

Some of the readings above do not seem consistent with others. This is attributed to the possibility that the wire connections may have been faulty or the proximity of the magnet relative to the core or coil may not have been the same. This was not taken into account at the time the tests were done.

The following figures are derived based on the premise that the subject invention has characteristics of a transformer when the number of turns on the coils change. In nearly all these situations, the subject invention acts exactly like a transformer, while the conventional way of producing electricity does not.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RPM</th>
<th>CM:</th>
<th>SI:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>350 RPM</td>
<td>expected voltage: 1.14 volts</td>
<td>expected voltage: 2.28 volts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>actual voltage: 0.93 volts</td>
<td>actual voltage: 2.94 volts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>expected current: 28.3 mA</td>
<td>expected current: 53.30 mA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>actual current: 32.4 mA</td>
<td>actual current: 70.10 mA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>expected power: 32.3 mW</td>
<td>expected power: 121.74 mW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>actual power: 30.1 mW</td>
<td>actual power: 206.10 mW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>expected voltage gain: 2</td>
<td>expected voltage gain: 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>actual voltage gain: 1.636</td>
<td>actual voltage gain: 2.579</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>expected current gain: 0.5</td>
<td>expected current gain: 0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>actual current gain: 0.572</td>
<td>actual current gain: 0.658</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>expected power gain: 1</td>
<td>expected power gain: 1.696</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>actual power gain: 0.932</td>
<td>actual power gain: 1.906</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RPM</th>
<th>expected voltage: 2.90 volts</th>
<th>expected voltage: 5.9 volts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>actual voltage: 3.225 volts</td>
<td>actual voltage: 7.53 volts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>expected current: 30.10 mA</td>
<td>expected current: 70.50 mA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>actual current: 36.2 mA</td>
<td>actual current: 73.50 mA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>expected power: 87.29 mW</td>
<td>expected power: 415.95 mW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>actual power: 87.29 mW</td>
<td>actual power: 553.50 mW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>expected voltage gain: 2</td>
<td>expected voltage gain: 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>actual voltage gain: 2.22</td>
<td>actual voltage gain: 2.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>expected current gain: 0.5</td>
<td>expected current gain: 0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>actual current gain: 0.6</td>
<td>actual current gain: 0.52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>expected power gain: 1</td>
<td>expected power gain: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>actual power gain: 1.34</td>
<td>actual power gain: 1.33</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A - 209
The following data represents the expected and actual voltage readings for the conventional method of producing voltage and the method of the subject invention. In virtually all circumstances, the herein invention produced more voltage than the conventional method and has gains that are higher than anticipated.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5500</td>
<td>350 to 1200</td>
<td>7.167 volts</td>
<td>4.81 volts</td>
<td>3.429</td>
<td>2.301</td>
<td>20.951 volts</td>
<td>11.23 volts</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>1.838</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1200 to 1399</td>
<td>7.62 volts</td>
<td>5.061 volts</td>
<td>3.714</td>
<td>2.422</td>
<td>22.693 volts</td>
<td>12.76 volts</td>
<td>3.714</td>
<td>2.088</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1200 to 1399</td>
<td>5.211 volts</td>
<td>5.061 volts</td>
<td>1.083</td>
<td>1.052</td>
<td>12.166 volts</td>
<td>12.76 volts</td>
<td>1.083</td>
<td>1.049</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2300</td>
<td>400 to 1200</td>
<td>0.45 volts</td>
<td>0.37 volts</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>2.467</td>
<td>7.35 volts</td>
<td>4.10 volts</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>1.673</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1200 to 1400</td>
<td>0.525 volts</td>
<td>0.58 volts</td>
<td>3.50</td>
<td>3.867</td>
<td>22.693 volts</td>
<td>8.31 volts</td>
<td>3.50</td>
<td>3.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>400 to 1200</td>
<td>0.432 volts</td>
<td>0.58 volts</td>
<td>1.167</td>
<td>1.568</td>
<td>4.785 volts</td>
<td>8.31 volts</td>
<td>1.167</td>
<td>2.027</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6000</td>
<td>400 to 1200</td>
<td>1.47 volts</td>
<td>0.79 volts</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>3.435</td>
<td>1.11 volts</td>
<td>1.43 volts</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>3.865</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1200 to 1400</td>
<td>1.715 volts</td>
<td>0.79 volts</td>
<td>3.50</td>
<td>3.435</td>
<td>1.295 volts</td>
<td>2.10 volts</td>
<td>3.50</td>
<td>5.676</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>400 to 1200</td>
<td>1.459 volts</td>
<td>0.79 volts</td>
<td>1.167</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.688 volts</td>
<td>2.10 volts</td>
<td>1.167</td>
<td>1.469</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6000</td>
<td>400 to 1200</td>
<td>1.25 volts</td>
<td>1.25 volts</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>2.551</td>
<td>16.44 volts</td>
<td>15.04 volts</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>2.745</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1200 to 1400</td>
<td>2.08 volts</td>
<td>2.08 volts</td>
<td>3.50</td>
<td>4.245</td>
<td>19.18 volts</td>
<td>18.76 volts</td>
<td>3.50</td>
<td>3.423</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>400 to 1200</td>
<td>2.08 volts</td>
<td>2.08 volts</td>
<td>1.167</td>
<td>1.664</td>
<td>17.668 volts</td>
<td>18.76 volts</td>
<td>1.167</td>
<td>11.247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6000</td>
<td>400 to 1200</td>
<td>1.92 volts</td>
<td>2.08 volts</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>3.25</td>
<td>23.91 volts</td>
<td>20.40 volts</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>2.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1200 to 1400</td>
<td>2.24 volts</td>
<td>2.28 volts</td>
<td>3.50</td>
<td>3.563</td>
<td>27.895 volts</td>
<td>28.40 volts</td>
<td>3.50</td>
<td>3.563</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>400 to 1200</td>
<td>2.427 volts</td>
<td>2.28 volts</td>
<td>1.167</td>
<td>2.427</td>
<td>23.80 volts</td>
<td>28.40 volts</td>
<td>1.167</td>
<td>1.392</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CLAIMS

1. A generator for providing alternating electrical current comprising:
   
   (a) an independently supported rotating drive shaft;
   
   (b) a plurality of spaced apart magnets extending outwardly from the shaft, the magnets each creating
       magnetic flux and having a polar end with a particular north or south polarity, said magnets being
       circumferentially spaced and mounted around the shaft, such that the polar ends of the magnets extend
       away from and circumferentially around the shaft;
   
   (c) a plurality of stationary coil elements, each said coil element comprising electrical windings wound about
       substantially the entire coil element, each of said coil elements further comprising a solid metal core with
       two ends extending substantially through the coil element at the centre of the coil element, each element
       being positioned such that one end of each of the cores is located in spaced, adjacent relation to the
       magnets, whereby rotation of the shaft causes rotation of the magnets around the shaft and in spaced,
       adjacent relation to the cores of the coil elements, the magnetic flux of the magnetics cutting the cores of
       the coil elements, creating alternating current in the coil elements; and
   
   (d) a first housing in which some of the plurality of coil elements are mounted and a second housing in which
       the remainder of the plurality of coil elements are mounted.

2. The generator as in claim 1 wherein the magnets are spaced 90° apart around the shaft.

3. The generator as in claim 1 wherein magnets with north polar ends alternate with the magnets with south polar
   ends in spaced, circumferential relation around the shaft.

4. The generator as in claim 1 wherein all the plurality of magnets are magnets with the same polar ends.

5. The generator as in claim 1 wherein the magnets are equidistantly spaced around the shaft.

6. The generator as in claim 1 wherein the plurality of magnets is rotated by the drive shaft between and in
   spaced apart relation with the housings.

7. The generator as in claim 1 further comprising four magnets extending from the shaft, adjacent magnets being
   positioned perpendicular to each other, each magnet having either an outwardly extending north or south polar
   end, and said magnets being positioned such that a north polar end magnet follows a south polar end magnet,
   in spaced, circumferential relation around the shaft.

8. The generator as in claim 1 further comprising multiple north polar end magnets and multiple south polar end
   magnets extending from the shaft, said magnets being positioned in spaced, circumferentially relation around
   the shaft.

9. The generator as in claim 1 in which the shaft is positioned within a rotor and the magnets are circumferentially
   mounted on the rotor.

10. The generator as in claim 1 in which the shaft is connected to power means for rotating the shaft, whereby
    upon rotation of the shaft, the magnets are rotated around the shaft in spaced relation to the cores of the coil
    elements, thereby inducing an alternating electrical field along the length of each of the cores, thereby
    producing an alternating electric current in the windings of the coil elements.

11. The generator as in claim 10 further comprising means to transmit the alternating electrical current for
    electrical power usage.
GEOFFREY SPENCE


ENERGY CONVERSION SYSTEM

This is a slightly reworded excerpt from this patent which has a substantial electrical output capable of providing its own electrical input to be self-powering as well as generating kilowatts of excess power. The highly-respected Dr. Harold Aspden comments:

"In my Energy Science Report No. 81, I also mentioned the apparatus designed by Geoffrey Spence, an inventor based in U.K. This is the subject of his U.S. Patent No. 4,772,816. Electrons injected into a chamber formed between two concentric electrodes are deflected into the inner electrode by a pair of magnets that provide a magnetic field along the central axis of the concentric electrodes. Of itself, this should add no excess energy, because the energy fed into accelerating the electrons is merely absorbed by electrostatic repulsion in charging the central electrode and so the capacitor. However, if that electron flow pulsates and there are connections to draw electron current from that central electrode then the pulsation implies a recurring sequence of charge and discharge. That 'magic capacitor' function is then harnessed.

The questions then are whether the Spence invention really works and whether it is commercially viable? Well, I wrote that Energy Science Report back in 1996, six years ago, and it is only a few months ago that I heard any more of that project. Geoffrey Spence has developed the prototype product to the stage where he has closed the loop in the sense that a portion of the output power was fed back to impart the energy needed to sustain the electron beams. He has a self-sustaining unit that can deliver kilowatts of useful electrical power with no visible energy input."

ABSTRACT

The apparatus uses a magnetic field (80) to accelerate a charged particle radially towards a target electrode (10). The increased kinetic energy of the particles enables the particle to give up more electrical energy to the target electrode (10) than was initially given to it. This charges the target electrode (10), and the increased energy is extracted from the apparatus by connecting an electrical load between the target electrode and a point of lower or higher potential.

US Patent References:
1717413 Jun, 1929 Rudenberg 310/306.

DESCRIPTION

This invention relates to a process and apparatus for generating a potential difference between two or more electrodes and using charged particles as energy carriers.

Electrical power is usually generated by burning a fossil fuel and converting the energy released into rotary motion which drives electrical generators. This is cost-effective only if carried out on a large scale, the conversion process being inefficient; utilising natural resources, and producing waste products which can cause serious environmental pollution. An additional disadvantage is that the electrical power cannot be supplied directly to road vehicles or ships.

The energy-conversion process of this invention involves no health or pollution hazard and generates electrical power directly by a single-stage process without waste products. The overall energy-conversion factor and power-to-weight ratio are both high, making the apparatus suitable for most fixed and mobile applications.

One known apparatus for doing useful work by operating on electrons with a magnetic field is called the "betatron". This includes a doughnut-shaped vacuum chamber between the poles of a specially-shaped electromagnet. Thermionically-produced electrons are injected into the chamber with an initial electrostatic energy of about 50 keV. As the magnetic field builds up during its positive-going half-cycle, it induces an electromotive force within the doughnut, which force accelerates the electrons and forces them to move in an curved path, by
interaction with the magnetic field. An important distinction between the betatron and the energy converter of this invention is that in the former the magnetic field has got to be able to increase over a very short period, in order to accelerate the electrons sufficiently, whereas in the latter the magnetic field is virtually constant and the electrons fall inwardly to give up both their kinetic energy and electric charge to a central electrode.

The present invention aims at providing an energy converter which may be mobile and which has a permanent magnet or an energised source of magnetic radiation associated with it in order to amplify the electrical energy initially imparted to charge particles fed to, or produced in, a so-called "vacuum" chamber forming part of the generator, which increased energy is extracted from the target electrode on which the particles are incident.

Accordingly the present invention provides an energy converter as per the appended claims.

While the invention is not to be limited to any particular theory of operation, it is based on the fact that, when a charged particle is constrained to move through a radial distance \( d \) (irrespective of the path which it actually follows) through a magnetic field of intensity \( H \), the work done on the particle is \( H \times d \). For an electron carrying a charge \( e \), and moving at a speed \( v \) over distance \( d \), the total force on the electron is the centripetal force the sum of \( H \times e \times v \), less the force exerted on the electron in the opposite direction by the centrifugal force, which is the sum of \( (m \times v^2)/r \). By making the radius of the centre electrode appreciably greater than the orbit of equilibrium, the centrifugal force can be minimised, thus maximising the centripetal force, and hence the work done in bringing the charge to the electrode.

The process by which the converter of this invention works uses, as a source of charge, electrically-charged particles, for example electrons and/or ions. Two or more electrodes are housed in a low-pressure chamber. A magnetic field as specified below traverses the chamber: it emanates from a permanent magnet, electromagnet or a source of magnetic radiation. An external source of energy is used to give the charge particles initial kinetic energy, for example by heating, acceleration through an electric field, or from nuclear radiation. The energy-conversion process uses the magnetic field to transfer the charged particles along a desired orbit until they impinge on a central electrode (cathode). The work done on the particles (therefore the electrical potential attained by the cathode) is proportional to the resultant magnetic force times the distance over which the force acts. As the particles move within the chamber they cross the magnetic field. This produces a force acting on the particles, the force being proportional to the field strength, speed and electrical charge of the particles, and the sine of the angle of incidence between the path of the particle and the magnetic lines of force. This force has an angular component and a centripetal one, which forces the particles to travel along a spiral orbit.

An opposing centrifugal force also acts on the particles in opposition to the centripetal magnetic force. The electrode potential is proportional to the work required to be done on the charged particles to overcome both the centrifugal force and the electric field around the cathode as the charges accumulate and the potential difference between the electrodes increases. Maximum electrode potential is reached when the centrifugal and repulsive forces are equal to the centripetal force, after which no further charged particles reach the electrode. The radius of the electrode determines the minimal value voltage between the central and an outer electrode: as the central electrode radius is reduced (by sputtering or erosion) the centrifugal force increases, reducing the number of charged particles which can reach the central electrode and therefore the electrode potential, for a given field strength and particle speed. The difference in mass between ions and lighter charged particles, such as electrons, results in different centrifugal forces for given particle kinetic energies. The generator output and efficiency are optimised when the generator uses the maximum magnetic field to minimise the centrifugal force and to maximise the radial distance over which the force acts for a given field strength. Particles having the highest charge-to-mass ratio should be used.

Low pressure gases can be used as a charge source when ionised by particle collision and excitation within the chamber. Doped gases can minimise the energy level for ionising gas atoms/molecules thereby improving efficiency. However, the resultant magnetic force is lower for the heavier ions due to their lower velocity so that the electric field radiated by the high voltage electrode (cathode) can attract oppositely charged particles (\(+\) ions) and subsequently discharge the electrode reducing the output voltage. Various methods can be used to overcome or reduce this effect. For example one method would be to separate the opposite charges and/or to use electrical biased grids to control the flow of opposite charges to the high voltage electrode.

Gaseous systems are generally more complex than single charge systems, providing higher currents at lower voltages, whereas single charge systems, for example electrons used in high vacuum chambers, can generate higher voltages.

The magnetic field can be from one or more permanent magnets and/or from one or more electromagnets; a static magnetic field produces a constant output voltage, while a varying field produces a varying voltage for particles with equal mass and velocity.
An external source is used to accelerate the charged particles to give them initial kinetic energy, which is released as heat when the particles collide with the electrode. When the energy represented by the increased voltage between the electrodes is greater than the energy required to provide the charged particles; and accelerate them, the conversion process is self-sustaining, the output energy being the difference between the sum of the kinetic energy lost and the energy generated. Charge flows from the central electrode via an external load to another electrode. The electrical energy (work) released is a function of the current (sum of charges that flow per second) times the potential difference. Electrical and thermal output can be controlled by varying: the field strength; the particle speed; the particle density (mean free path), and/or by incorporating a grid to control the rate at which particles reach the central electrode. The output is also proportional to the heat lost or gained, since the translational energy of the particle is proportional to its temperature. Heat liberated at the electrode can be returned to the particles to maintain their energy, or be utilised in a heat exchanger for external use. The generator normally uses non-reacting conductive material to prevent chemical reaction by gases, coolants etc. with the electrodes, container walls or other components. Various particle trajectories, directional movements and positioning of the orbiting particles can be used with appropriate magnetic fields. The low-pressure gas can be ionised by any suitable means: one method would be to use an electron/ion gun where the plane and direction of the injected particles is correct for the applied magnetic field. In gas apparatus, the electrons flowing through the external circuit, on reaching the anode, recombine with a gaseous ion to form a neutral gas atom/molecule. This atomic particle is duly re-ionised by collision and/or the electric fields, the energy being directly or indirectly derived from the work done by the resultant force acting on the charged particles.

In order that the invention may be better understood, it will now be described with reference to the accompanying schematic drawings, which are given by way of example, and in which:

![Fig. 1](image)

**Fig. 1** shows schematically a cross-section of the generator; and the path followed by a particle during the energy-conversion process;
Fig. 2 shows an axial cross-section of one type of apparatus for the invention, using permanent magnets; and a grid controlling ion migration to the cathode.

Fig. 3 shows a cross-section of the apparatus of Fig. 2 along the line A--A;
Fig. 4 is a diagrammatic section through one form of converter using electrons, showing a circular series of electron sources;

Fig. 5 is an axial cross-section through a more practical embodiment of the Fig. 4 converter;
Fig. 6 is a section along the line VI–VI of Fig. 5;

Fig. 7 is a cross-section along a diameter of a doughnut-shaped (toroidal) high-power converter;
Fig. 8 is a section on line A--A of Fig. 7, and Fig. 9 is a scheme of a two-stage converter, using both forms of charged particles concurrently.
As shown in Fig. 1, a charged particle is injected along a trajectory into a magnetic field extending normal to the plane of the drawing. The field permeates the space of the annular cross-section within a cylindrical chamber. The magnetic field produces a force on the particle, extending at right angles to both its direction of motion and the magnetic field. The resultant centripetal force causes the particle to follow a spiral path ending on the central electrode spaced radially inwards from the outer cylindrical electrode. The extra energy acquired by the particle is a function of the radial distance travelled and the strength of the magnetic field between the electrodes. This energy is given up on impact with the central electrode, in the form of heat and/or work done in bringing the charge against the opposing electric field to the electrode. In the absence of the central electrode, the electrons would follow the orbit of equilibrium, this being the orbit followed by a particle when the centrifugal and centripetal forces balance, resulting in no work being done on the particle.

As shown in Fig. 2, the charged particle moves through the annular cross-section of the cylindrical chamber. The magnetic field is extended normal to the plane of the drawing, and the particle follows a spiral path ending on the central electrode spaced radially inwards from the outer cylindrical electrode.
As shown more particularly in Fig.2 and Fig.3, the energy converter 1 consists basically of an annular chamber 6 having an outer cylindrical electrode 12; an inner cylindrical electrode 10, and two gas-tight walls 14 of electrical insulation material. In the electrode 12 is a port 22 through which an electron gun 20 can inject electrons into space 4. Additionally or alternatively, an ion gun 18 can inject positively-charged particles through port 16.

Seated on the major flat surfaces of chamber 6 are magnetic pole-pieces 24 giving rise to a uniform magnetic field 80 which traverses the space 4 parallel with the axis of chamber 6. The magnets may be ceramic permanent magnets, or they may be electromagnets. In either case, means (not shown) may be provided for adjusting the magnetic field strength.

Heavy conductors 26 connect the two electrodes to terminals 28 across which a resistive load can be placed to dissipate the generator output.

A vacuum pump (not shown) has its inlet in communication with the interior of chamber 6 so that the gas pressure in the generator can be reduced to, and kept at, a desired sub-atmospheric value. Associated with the pump, or separate from it, may be means for ensuring that the gas in the generator is of a desired composition, for instance, one which enhances the possibility of ionising collisions between the charged particles and gas atoms or molecules. One such suitable gas would be neon containing 0.1% argon by volume.

In order to cause the generator to start working, it is necessary to start the vacuum pump and to energise the electron gun or each particle source. The latter involves heating a filament from an external source of power until the required internal energy level (temperature) is reached which in turn causes a piece of thermo-emissive material to emit electrons. If the electrons are to be the charge carriers, they are accelerated by a suitable electric field and projected into the space 4. Here they are further accelerated by the radial electric field between the electrodes, and at the same time have a deflecting force applied to them by the axial magnetic field through which they pass.

For an ion source, the electrons are accelerated until they impact some atoms or molecules, to produce a stream of ions which likewise pass into the space 4. With the polarities shown, the electrons are attracted to the central electrode, while the ions are pulled towards the outer electrode, which accounts for the different orientations of sources 18 and 20.

Any gas molecules which pass close to, or between, the electrodes are ionised by collision and/or the electrostatic field. Output current can then be taken through a load impedance connected across terminals 28. The impedance is matched to prevent the internal process energy dropping below a value which would prevent the re-ionisation of the gaseous atoms. As each ion is deionised at the anode, the gas atoms will tend to continue to circulate until re-ionised, the resultant force drawing both the ions (shown by solid circles) and electrons (shown by hollow circles) back into their respective orbits.
It is envisaged that, in the case of a converter using electrons, the chamber could be evacuated to a chosen sub-atmospheric pressure and sealed.

In that form of the invention shown in Fig.4, each electron source forming one of a circular series 29 of sources has a body 30 of electro-emissive material, such as molybdenum coated by caesium, heated by an electric filament 32 connected in series or parallel across a source of electric power (not shown). Immediately in front of each emitter 30 is a grid 34 of fine wires, all the grids being connected with a source of adjustable voltage so as to control the flow of electrons from the emitter. These electrons are projected through one or more acceleration electrodes 36 across which a potential difference is established along the electron path, so that each incremental electron source injects a stream of electrons having known kinetic energy into a space 38, indicated by the circle shown in a broken line, traversed by the deflection magnetic field, within which is the central, target, electrode 40. The stream of electrons injected into the magnetic field may be focused by electric and/or magnetic fields.

In the remaining Figs, those parts already referred to will retain the same references.

In the "flat disc" configuration shown in Fig.5, the annular chamber 6 is enclosed in a body 42 of thermal insulation material. The central electrode 10 is seated on insulators 44 which are pierced by conduits 45 for the passage of a coolant fluid and by an output lead 26, which may extend along the conduit so that it too is cooled.

Fig.5 shows how the deflection magnet is generally U-shaped, and has two annular pole-pieces 48, so that the magnetic field is uniform between the surface of electrode 10 and the region 38 radially innermost of the circular electron source, the electric field between the electrode 36 and emission surface 61 providing the electrons initial accelerations (kinetic energy). Fig.5 also shows how a voltage is tapped off the resistive load 40 (which thus functions as a potentiometer) and is fed through to the acceleration electrode 36.

Chamber 6 is also provided with two annular magnets 49 (or a circular series of incremental magnets) designed to influence the direction along which the electrons pass into space 38. The magnets provide local magnetic fields to ensure that the electrons meet the boundary of space 38 tangentially, i.e. with zero radial velocity.
In that form of the invention shown in Fig.7 and Fig.8, the individual "flat disc" converters of Fig.5 and Fig.6 are arranged in a type of "circular" construction, such that the magnetic fields extend along the axis of the resulting toroidal space 50 penetrated by a single toroidal target electrode 51 through which a coolant fluid may pass, along conduits 52. The cross-section of Fig.8 shows that the magnetic fields are supplemented by an electric field produced by windings 53 wound on a magnetic core 54 bounded by insulation 55.

Apart from the fact that the electrodes are common to all converters, each functions individually as described above. Obviously the power source driving the heaters for the electron guns 56; the electromagnets (if any); the acceleration electrodes and the control grids, have to be of sufficient capacity to supply the greater power needed to drive this "toroidal" configuration. Some changes would need to be made to the physical dimensioning and positioning of the relatively-complex construction, but as all these are readily understood by a competent engineer, they are not further described in this specification.
As already mentioned, the converters of this invention are of two types, i.e. electronic and ionic. Fig.9 shows diagrammatically how they may be combined to take advantage of their differences. In the two-stage power generation apparatus shown in Fig.9 the first stage consists of an ioniser 520 supplying a mixture of charged particles, i.e. ions and electrons, to a separator 540, which supplies electrons to a second stage consisting of a sealed electronic converter 560 in parallel with a gaseous ionic converter 580.

The separator 540 may use the different particle masses to separate them centrifugally using, for example, the energy conversion system of Fig.1 (without the target electrode), or it may use electromagnetic deflection fields, or a physical diffusion process, either alone or in combination. As this is not part of the subject-matter of this invention, it will not be described herein in any further detail.

In the generators of Fig.6 and Fig.8, the respective particles are deflected magnetically and accelerated radially, to function as already described above.

Because each generator is designed to operate most effectively with its particular form of charge carrier, it can be designed optimally, thus reducing the energy absorption caused by ions and electrons recombing before each has fallen on its respective target electrode. Because the electronic converter would finish up with a negatively-charged electrode, whereas the converse is true for the ionic converter, the load 400 extracting energy from the apparatus is connected across the two target electrodes. The other two electrodes of the converters may be held at the same potential, as by being connected together, or their potentials may float.

The generator can be designed to produce a wide range of output voltages and currents. The lower-energy generators are light enough to be mobile, so that they can power vehicles or act as stand-by generators. Various electrode and magnet configurations can be used, and the generators can be connected in series or parallel. Cooling jackets are fitted to prevent overheating in high-powered apparatus, and the generator is enclosed within a thermally-insulating jacket to reduce heat losses thereby increasing particle velocities. For high-energy generators, it may be necessary to provide for forced cooling of the inner electrode, as by fins projecting therefrom into a high-speed stream of suitable coolant.

Although the process according to this invention is particularly suited to using external electrical energy, it must be understood that other sources can be used to provide the initial energy input, e.g. solar and waste process heat are some of the varied energy sources which could be utilised. Control of the charge-generation process can be achieved by other means, including one or more electrically-biased grids, as used in thermionic valves.

CLAIMS
1. An energy conversion process for generating an electric potential, the process comprising: providing a source of electric charge carriers of predetermined polarity, accelerating the carriers away from the source, introducing the carriers into a magnetic field transverse to the path of the carriers in a process chamber, the field bounding an inner electrode within the chamber such that the carriers orbit the electrode while accelerating radially toward the electrode; and converting the resulting increased kinetic energy of the carriers.
into an electric potential at the electrode before the carriers reach an orbit of equilibrium in which the centripetal force is balanced by the centrifugal force on the carriers.

2. A process according to claim 1 in which the electric potential is created between the inner electrode and an outer electrode radially spaced from the inner electrode.

3. A process according to claim 2 in which the outer electrode provides the said source of the charge carriers.

4. A process according to claim 1 or claim 2 in which the chamber is maintained at a sub-atmospheric pressure.

5. A process according to claim 1 in which the electric potential drives a load connected between the inner electrode and a point remote from the electrode.

6. A process according to claim 1 or claim 2 in which the electric charge carriers comprise electrons or ions.

7. A process according to claim 1 in which further charge carriers of the opposite polarity traverse the magnetic field and accumulate at a second electrode to increase the potential difference between the two electrodes.

8. A process according to claim 1 in which electrically biased grids control the flow of the charge carriers from the source.

9. A process according to claim 1 in which the charge carriers are separated from charge carriers of the opposite polarity before being introduced into the magnetic field.

10. A process according to claim 9 in which the charge carriers of opposite polarity are introduced into a corresponding second magnetic field, whereby a potential difference is produced between respective electrodes in each field.

11. A process according to claim 1 in which the carriers are injected into the magnetic field.

12. A process according to claim 11 in which the injection energy is produced by accelerating the carriers through an electric field.

13. A process according to claim 11 in which the injection energy is produced by accelerating the carriers through a magnetic field.

14. A process according to claim 1 in which the injection energy of the carriers is produced by nuclear emission.

15. A process according to claim 1 in which the injection energy of the carriers is produced by heat.

16. A process according to claim 1 in which the generated electric potential is directly or indirectly used to maintain the generation of charge carriers or the internal temperature of the space traversed by the magnetic field, or the applied magnetic field.

17. A process according to claim 1 in which the generated electric potential is directly or indirectly used to maintain the generation of charge carriers and the internal temperature of the space traversed by the magnetic field and the applied magnetic field.

18. An energy converter including a source of electric charge carriers of a predetermined polarity, a process chamber having an inner electrode, means for accelerating the carriers away from the source and for introducing the carriers into the chamber, means for applying a magnetic field transverse to the path of the carriers and bounding the inner electrode of the chamber such that the carriers orbit the electrode while accelerating radially toward the electrode, the electrode being located at a radius which exceeds the equilibrium radius for the carrier mean velocity and applied field strength and intercepting the carriers such that the increased kinetic energy of the carriers due to centripetal acceleration is converted to an electric potential at the electrode.

19. An energy converter according to claim 18 in which the chamber includes an outer electrode spaced radially from the inner electrode, and means for injecting the charge carriers into the space between the electrodes.

20. An energy converter according to claim 19 in which the outer electrode provides the said source of charge carriers.

21. An energy converter according to claim 19 further comprising an insulating wall bounding the outer electrode.
22. A converter according to claim 18 further comprising means for maintaining the chamber at a predetermined sub-atmospheric pressure.

23. A converter according to claim 19 in which the outer electrode has at least one port through which the charge carriers can be injected into the chamber along a desired trajectory.

24. A converter according to claim 23 in which the outer electrode has plural ports and each port communicates with a thermionic source of the respective carriers.

25. A converter according to claim 18 in which the chamber is a vacuum chamber.

26. A converter according to claim 18 further comprising electrically biased grids for controlling the flow of charge carriers from the source.

27. A converter according to claim 22 or claim 25 in which the evacuated chamber comprises a sealed unit.

28. A converter according to claim 18 further comprising means for adjusting the strength of the applied magnetic field.

29. A converter according to claim 18 in which the chamber is filled with low pressure gas.
METHOD AND APPARATUS FOR INCREASING ELECTRICAL POWER

This patent shows a method of altering a standard electrical generator intended to be driven by a separate motor, so that it operates without the motor. In an example quoted, a DC input of 48 volts at 25 amps of current (1.2 kW) produces a 110 volt 60Hz AC output of 3.52 kW. That is a Coefficient Of Performance of 2.93 at an output level suited to Off-The-Grid operation of a house.

ABSTRACT

A form of rotating machine arranged in such a way as to convert a substantially constant input voltage into a substantially constant output voltage; involving generally, a rotor that revolves at a substantially constant speed within a stator, and which comprises a transformer core subjected to and having a primary motor-transformer winding and a secondary transformer-generator winding; whereby transformed and generated power are synchronously combined as increased output power.

BACKGROUND

Electrical power is frequently changed in voltage, phase, frequency, and the current is changed from alternating to direct or from direct to alternating. Voltage conversion in AC circuits is usually by means of transformers, and in DC circuits is usually by means of motor-generators. Phase conversion is also accomplished by either transformers or motor-generators, and frequency conversion is most simply done by motor-generators.

Motor-generators have various classifications of use, as follows:

(1) DC to DC, used to charge batteries and to boost voltage.
(2) AC to AC, used for frequency and phase conversion
(3) AC to DC used for all types of service, such as battery charging, generator and motor field excitation, railways, electrolysis, and speed control etc. and
(4) DC to AC used to limited extent for special applications.

To these ends combination motor-generators have been built, such as dynamotors stepping up DC voltage for radio equipment and amplidynes for reproducing a weak signal at a higher power level. When a particular variable frequency A.C. is required of a motor-generator set and the power supply is DC, the equipment will include a DC motor for variable speed and a separate alternator driven by it. Such equipment is special in nature and characterised by separation of the motor and generator and by polyphase (usually three-phase) generator windings and with auto transformers having suitable taps for obtaining the required voltages; and a DC speed controller for the motor. The phase output of such equipment is selective and its single phase capacity necessarily restricted (66%) as compared with its three-phase capacity, in which case transmission efficiency for single phase is poor.

When a higher level power output is desired, the amplidyne is employed with field windings and brushes equipped for the purpose, and in some instances to give a constant current output from a constant voltage input, for example, in inverted rotary converter provided to convert DC to A.C. However, the present invention is concerned with method and apparatus for increasing electrical power and provides a dynamo-electric converter that operates from an electrical energy supply to produce A.C. most efficiently for a useful load.

The method involves simultaneous motor-transformer-generator steps and the preferred embodiment of the apparatus involves a dynamo-electric converter (DEC) in the form of a rotary machine combined in a single rotor revolving within a stator, the rotor being comprised of a transformer core having both a primary motor-transformer winding and a secondary transformer-generator winding, and the stator being comprised of magnetic field poles.

Synchronous converters have been combined in single rotor machines to produce DC from A.C., but that effect is quite different from the effect of the present invention when A.C. is to be produced from DC in a single rotor having primary and secondary armature windings as distinguished from armature windings common to both A.C. and DC circuits. With the present invention, both a transforming and a generating effect are produced in the rotor, all of which is inherently synchronised and delivered through the A.C. outlet leads. A.C. motors and DC generators have been combined in one machine, that is in one rotor, and referred to as synchronous converters.
However, synchronous converters are lacking in their ability to change DC into A.C. when operating from the former as a prime mover to drive a generator simultaneously, and more specifically to drive an alternator synchronously.

SUMMARY OF INVENTION
This method involves the placement of a primary winding in a field to both motor the same and to have a transformer effect with respect to a secondary winding also in a field to have a generator effect. In its preferred embodiment, this dynamo-electric converter is comprised of primary and secondary windings combined in a rotor commutated to alternate a DC energy supply in and thereby motivate the rotor within a stator field. The primary winding is advantageously of fewer turns than the secondary and by means of electromotive force drives the secondary windings of more turns to cut the magnetic lines of force for the generation of electrical energy at a higher voltage level than the DC supply. This DC operated motor is shunt wound with the stator field poles fully energised by the DC energy supply, or is provided with permanent magnet field poles, to efficiently motivate the rotor and efficiently generate electrical energy in the secondary windings. The A.C. output of the secondary windings is inherently synchronised with the transformer function of the primary windings combined in the common slots of the single rotor; and by adding the transformer and generator voltages and amperages the wattage is correspondingly increased at the output.

DRAWINGS
The various objects and features of this invention will be fully understood from the following detailed description of the typical preferred form and application, which is made in the accompanying drawings, in which:

Fig.1 is a diagrammatic schematic view of the dynamo-electric converter components comprising the present invention.
Fig. 2 is a diagram of a typical commutator brush, slip ring brush and field pole arrangement which is utilised.

Fig. 3 is a longitudinal section through a machine embodying the stator and rotor on bearings with the frame and brushes removed.
Fig. 4 is a typical duplicate of an oscilloscope diagram showing the power output of the dynamo-electric converter.

PREFERRED EMBODIMENT

The dynamo-electric converter is illustrated diagramatically in the drawings and involves, generally, a rotor $R$ carried upon spaced bearings $B$ so as to rotate on an axis $A$ concentric within a stator $S$. The rotor $R$ comprises the armature, while the stator $S$ comprises the field, there being a commutator $C$ associated with primary windings 10 on the rotor and slip rings $SR$ associated with secondary windings 11 on the rotor. Brushes 12 and 13 are engaged slideably with the commutator and slip rings respectively, by conventional means, to conduct DC through the commutator $C$ and to conduct AC through the slip rings $SR$. The brushes 12 and interconnected primary windings 10 comprise a motor while the brushes 13 and interconnected secondary windings 11 comprise a generator or alternator.

In practice, the field windings 16 can be separately energised or connected in parallel with the brushes 12 or shunted with respect to the primary motor winding 10. Motorisation of the armature rotor $R$, or motoring thereof, causes continued polarity reversals on a cycle basis as determined by the speed of rotation, and this of course results in magnetic reversals in the rotor core 15 and a consequent induction in the secondary windings 11. A feature of this invention is the combining and co-operative relationship of the primary and secondary windings which occupy common slots in and embrace a common portion of the core 15 of the rotor $R$, thereby to have a
transformer function as well as a generator function as the lines of magnetic force are cut by the secondary windings. The stator S has field poles of opposite magnetic polarity, excited independently from the armature, or as permanent magnets, and preferably shunted across the DC input. As shown, there are four equally spaced field poles in a circumferentially disposed series.

In practice, the primary DC motor windings are of fewer turns in the rotor slots than the secondary AC generator windings. For example, the primary motor windings 10 are flat wound between north to south poles of the field while the secondary generator windings are flat wound in the same or common slots of the rotor armature. In a typical unit having a four brush commutator with 20 bars and having a 20-slot armature, the primary windings 10 are comprised of a number of turns of conductor efficiently to draw 48 volts DC at 25 amperes or 1,200 watts to rotate at 1,750 rpm, while the secondary windings 11 are comprised of a number of turns of conductor efficiently to deliver 60 cycle (by transforming and generating) 110 volts AC at 32 amperes or 3,520 watts, the volt meter used to read these values upon an actual reduction to practice being calibrated to read the root-mean-square (RMS) value of the pure sine wave, which is 70.7% of the peak voltage.

The reduction to practice previously referred to as a "typical unit" was constructed of a machine originally designed as a self-exciting 60 cps 110 volt 2.5 kVA generator to be shaft driven by a separate prime mover. Firstly, the prime mover was eliminated. The exciter windings were intended to excite the field at 45 volts DC delivered through the commutator, while the generator windings were intended to independently deliver 110-120 volts AC through the slip rings. The winding ratio between the exciter and generator windings was approximately one to three, and these are the values which determined the values employed in the present reduction to practice. However, it is to be understood that other values can be employed by design, for operation at the desired input and output voltages and amperages. It is also to be understood that the example reduction to practice disclosed herein is not necessarily the optimum design, in that other input-output power balances are contemplated, such as a DC battery input voltage substantially equal to the AC power voltage. In any case, an unexpected increase in power is realised by practising this invention.

This dynamo electric converter inherently operates at a substantially constant angular velocity with the result that the alternating cycles of the output are substantially constant. Also, the DC input voltage can be maintained at a substantially constant level with the result that the AC output voltage is also substantially constant. As shown, the output is single phase AC in which case the effective power in watts delivered is the product of current, voltage and power factor. Since the voltage is substantially constant, the current varies with load applied to the output as it is affected by the power factor. It will be seen therefore, that the apparent power represented by voltage times amperage is drawn directly from the DC input and applied to the primary motor winding 10 to motivate the rotor R for the functions previously described. It will also be seen therefore, that the DC input is commutated into AC and transformed by induction from windings 10 into windings 11.

It will also be seen therefore, that the AC generated by motorisation of the motor is synchronously imposed upon the windings 11, and all to the end that the two alternating currents are complementary and one added to the other. It will be observed that the output wattage is approximately triple the input wattage, by virtue of the synchronous superimposing of transformed input voltage and generated voltage while utilising the former to operate the rotor in order to generate the latter. A feature of this invention is the separation of the primary and secondary circuits and the consequent isolation of the inverted input DC from the outlet AC and the utilisation of input energy commensurate with output load according to amperage required for the operations to which this DEC machine is applied.

In carrying out this invention, the dynamo electric machine is conventional in design and the primary and secondary windings 10-11 are wound into the common slots of the armature as they are in self exciting generators. However, the primary windings 10 are motor-transformer windings and function totally as such. Similarly, the secondary windings 11 are wound into the armature slots together with the primary windings 10 and are powered with current that is alternated by virtue of the commutation and rotation of the armature, and consequently there is a transformer action between the primary windings 10 and secondary windings 11, and this transformer function is supplemented by generation of a superimposed current by virtue of the secondary windings 11 cutting the magnetic lines of force provided by the surrounding stator field. Consequently, there is a multiplying of power synchronously applied through the slip rings SR to the output brushes 13, and this increased output power is measurable as previously described and double or almost triple that of the input power.

METHOD

Referring now to this method of increasing electrical power, input alternating current is applied to a primary winding to both motor and alternately magnetise a core. The said primary winding is immersed in a field and consequently is caused to motor and simultaneously to perform the first stage of transforming. A second stage of transforming is then performed by a secondary winding associated with the core to function as both a transformer and a generator winding, and the output current is drawn from it at an increased power value as compared with the input power, since the current induced by transformer action is superimposed upon the current generated in
cutting the magnetic lines of force by motoring the secondary winding through the magnetic field. The direct application of AC power to the primary winding is contemplated, however the present and preferred embodiment employs commutation of DC power which is thereby inverted to AC power in the process of motoring the windings and the core in which they are carried together with the secondary winding. The net result is three fold, in that there is a motoring function, a transforming function, and a generating function, all of which are inherently synchronised to increase the output power with respect to the input power.

From the foregoing it will be seen that this method, and the dynamo-electric converter termed a DEC, synchronously superimposes transformed electrical energy and mechanically generated electrical energy when inverting DC to AC as is shown by observing the oscilloscope diagram duplicated in Fig. 4 of the drawings. The DC motor section of the rotor-stator unit will operate at its designed speed well within a small tolerance, by applying known engineering principles, and consequently, the AC generator-alternator section will operate at a substantially uniform frequency of, for example, 60 cycles per second. Thus, the output voltage potential is kept to a maximum while current is drawn as required, within the design capacity of the unit.

Having described only a typical preferred form and application of my invention, I do not wish to be limited or restricted to the specific details herein set forth, but wish to reserve to myself any modifications or variations that may appear to those skilled in the art:

CLAIMS

1. A dynamo-electric converter for inverting direct current voltage to alternating current voltage and including; a magnetic field having poles of opposite polarity, an armature coaxial with the field and having a core with means to receive windings, coaxial bearing means between the field and the armature, a primary motor-transformer winding in said means of the armature core and a commutator connected therewith, direct current input brushes which can be engaged with the said commutator, a secondary transformer-generator winding in said means of the armature core and slip rings connected therewith, and alternating current output brushes which can be engaged with the said slip rings, whereby direct current input power is both transformed and regenerated as alternating output power.

2. The dynamo-electric converter as set forth in claim 1, wherein the magnetic field is a stator comprised of said poles of opposite polarity, and wherein the armature is a rotor supported upon said bearing means coaxially within said field.

3. The dynamo-electric converter as set forth in claim 1, wherein the means to receive windings is a pair of slots in the armature core, said primary and secondary windings being carried in the slots and subjected to the magnetic capabilities of the core.

4. The dynamo-electric converter as set forth in claim 1, wherein the means to receive windings is a multiplicity of slots disposed in a circumferential series about the armature core, said primary and secondary windings being
circumferentially progressive windings respectively and carried in common slots respectively and subjected to the magnetic capabilities of the core.

5. The dynamo-electric converter as set forth in claim 1, wherein the magnetic field poles are permanent magnets.

6. The dynamo-electric converter as set forth in claim 1, wherein the magnetic field poles are electro magnets energised separately from the said primary motor winding.

7. The dynamo-electric converter as set forth in claim 1, wherein the field poles are electro magnets energised in parallel with the direct current input brushes which can be engaged with the commutator.

8. The dynamo-electric converter as set forth in claim 1, wherein the magnetic field is a stator comprised of said poles of opposite polarity, wherein the armature is a rotor supported on said bearing means coaxially within said field, and wherein the means to receive windings is a pair of slots in the armature core, said primary and secondary windings being carried in the slots and subjected to the magnetic capabilities of the core.

9. The dynamo-electric converter as set forth in claim 1, wherein the magnetic field is a stator comprised of permanent magnet poles of opposite polarity, wherein the armature is a rotor supported on said bearing means coaxially within said field, and wherein the means to receive windings is a multiplicity of slots disposed in a circumferential series about the armature core, said primary and secondary windings being circumferentially progressive windings and carried in common slots respectively and subjected to the magnetic capabilities of the core.

10. The dynamo-electric converter as set forth in claim 1, wherein the magnetic field is a stator comprised of permanent magnet poles of opposite polarity, wherein the armature is a rotor supported on said bearing means coaxially within said field, and wherein the means to receive windings is a multiplicity of slots disposed in a circumferential series about the armature core, said primary and secondary windings being circumferentially progressive windings and carried in common slots respectively and subjected to the magnetic capabilities of the core.

11. The dynamo-electric converter is set forth in claim 1, wherein the magnetic field poles are electro magnets of opposite polarity energised in parallel with the direct current input brushes which can be engaged with the commutator, wherein the means to receive windings is a multiplicity of slots disposed in a circumferential series about the armature core, said primary and secondary windings being circumferentially progressive windings respectively and carried in common slots respectively and subjected to the magnetic capabilities of the core.

12. A method for increasing electrical power and comprised of; placing a primary winding within the flux of a magnetic field and applying alternating current therethrough while motoring the same to revolve, simultaneously revolving a secondary winding with the primary winding and through a flux of a magnetic field, and simultaneously transforming the first mentioned alternating current from the primary winding and into the secondary winding while synchronously generating alternating current in the secondary winding.

13. The method of increasing electrical power as set forth in claim 12 wherein the magnetic field is held stationary and the primary and secondary windings revolved together.

14. The method of increasing electrical power as set forth in claim 12 wherein the primary and secondary windings are related to a common armature synchronously inducing into and generating electrical power through the secondary winding.

15. The method of increasing electrical power as set forth in claim 12 wherein the first mentioned alternating current is commutated from direct current to alternating current by revolvement of said primary winding.

16. The method of increasing electrical power as set forth in claim 12 wherein the magnetic field is held stationary and the primary and secondary windings revolved together and related to a common armature synchronously inducing into and generating electrical power through the secondary winding.

17. The method of increasing electrical power as set forth in claim 12 wherein the first mentioned alternating current is commutated from direct current to alternating current by revolvement of said primary winding and the primary and secondary windings related to a common armature synchronously inducing into and generating electrical power through the secondary winding.

18. The method of increasing electrical power as set forth in claim 12 wherein the first mentioned alternating current is commutated from direct current to alternating current by revolvement of said primary winding and wherein the magnetic field is held stationary and the primary and secondary windings revolved together and
19. A dynamo-electric machine including; a first means applying a first alternating current into a primary motor-transformer winding, and a second means inducing a second alternating current into a secondary transformer-generator winding, said secondary winding being carried by said second means to operate through a flux of a field and thereby generating a third alternating current, whereby said second and third alternating currents are synchronously superimposed one upon the other.

20. The dynamo-electric machine as set forth in claim 19 wherein the field is stationary and the primary and secondary windings are rotary.

21. The dynamo-electric machine as set forth in claim 19 wherein the field is stationary and the primary and secondary windings are rotary with commutator bars synchronously applying a direct current to motorise the armature and to apply said first alternating current thereto.

22. The dynamo-electric machine as set forth in claim 19 wherein the transformer means comprises magnetic core means common to the primary and secondary windings.

23. The dynamo-electric machine as set forth in claim 19, wherein the field is stationary and the primary and secondary windings are rotary with commutator bars synchronously applying a direct current to motorise the armature and to apply said first alternating current thereto, and wherein the transformer means comprises magnetic core means common to the primary and secondary windings.

24. A rotary dynamo-electric machine including: means applying alternating current through a primary motor-transformer winding carried by an armature core carrying a secondary transformer-generator winding, a field, and bearing means for rotation of the armature core relative to the field, whereby the alternating current applied to the primary winding motors the armature and is transformed and an alternating current generated and superimposed thereon through the secondary winding for increased output power.

25. The rotary dynamo-electric machine as set forth in claim 24 wherein the primary and secondary windings are each comprised of a number of turns of conductor to transform the first mentioned applied alternating current to the voltage of the alternating current generated through the secondary winding.

26. The rotary dynamo-electric motor as set forth in claim 24 wherein the first mentioned applied alternating current is of different voltage than the increased output power and wherein the primary and secondary windings are each comprised of a number of turns of conductor to transform the first mentioned applied alternating current to the voltage of the alternating current generated through the secondary winding.

27. The rotary dynamo-electric machine as set forth in claim 24 wherein the first mentioned applied alternating current is of lower voltage than the increased output power and wherein the primary and secondary windings are each comprised of a number of turns of conductor to transform the first mentioned applied alternating current to the voltage of the alternating current generated through the secondary winding.
This patent covers a device which is claimed to have a greater output power than the input power required to run it.

ABSTRACT
An induction generator having a pair of magnetic poles of the same polarity opposed to each other with respect to a rotation shaft is characterised by a high energy conversion efficiency. The induction generation has a rotation shaft driven by an external means; an even number of (more than three) stator cores provided to encircle the rotation shaft, predetermined gaps being provided between the adjacent stator cores; a first monopole rotor provided in the rotation shaft, surrounded by the even number of stator cores, and having first and second magnetic poles of the same polarity, the first and second magnetic poles being opposed to each other with respect to the rotation shaft in a cross section; a second monopole rotor provided in the rotation shaft so as to face the first monopole rotor at a predetermined distance along the rotation shaft, surrounded by the even number of stator cores, and having third and fourth magnetic poles of the same polarity opposite to the polarity of the first and second magnetic poles, the third and fourth magnetic poles being opposite to each other with respect to the rotation shaft; a plurality of windings provided in the even number of stator cores and connected according to a predetermined configuration.

US Patent References:
282472 Jan., 1883 Delaporte 318 / 197.
2982872 May., 1961 Fredrickson 310 / 163.
3858308 Jan., 1975 Peterson 29 / 598.

Other References:

DESCRIPTION

TECHNICAL FIELD
The present invention relates to an induction generator having a pair of magnetic poles of the same polarity opposed to each other with respect to a rotation shaft.

Induction generators have been known as one type of electrical appliance from relatively old days and embodied in various forms adapted for individual applications. In addition to applications in power plants, ships and aircraft, induction generators convenient for household or leisure purposes have also been developed and used extensively.

An induction generator converts kinetic energy into electric energy. Due to a necessity for improving efficiency of energy utilisation, there is a demand for a highly efficient energy conversion.

BACKGROUND ART
As is well known, an induction generator is operated on the principle that an electromotive force is induced in a coil, in proportion to the rate at which magnetic flux crosses that coil (Faraday's law of electromagnetic induction). According to Lenz's law, an induced electromotive force is generated in a direction in which a current that acts against a change in the magnetic flux is generated.
For example, as shown in Fig.1A and Fig.1B, assuming that the magnetic flux $\phi$ crossing a circular coil 1 at a perpendicular direction moves in the A to B direction as indicated by the arrow, a current $I_1$ flows in accordance with Faraday's law of electromagnetic induction so that the pointer of a galvanometer 2 swings clockwise (+ direction) and then returns to the zero position. When the magnetic flux $\phi$ moves in the direction B to C, a current $I_2$ flows so that the indicator of the galvanometer 2 swings counterclockwise (- direction) and then returns to the zero position.

Generally, an induction generator is constructed in such a way that an electromotive force is induced according to Fleming's right-hand rule by a conductor cutting magnetic flux lines (Fig.1A) or by the magnetic flux lines crossing the conductor (Fig.1B).

A rotor in an induction generator is usually constructed as a one-piece body having alternately disposed North poles and South poles. When there are two magnetic poles, the N-pole and the S-pole are opposite to each other. When there are more than two magnetic poles (for example, four magnetic poles or six magnetic poles etc.), the N-pole and the S-pole alternate, resulting in a N-S-N-S-... succession.

In this background, a unipolar induction generator is a special case wherein an electromotive force is generated by a conductor cutting the magnetic flux while moving or rotating, and a direct current is supplied through a slip
ring. In other words, a unipolar induction motor is unique in its construction characterised by a non-alternating magnetic field travelling in the same direction.

In the conventional induction generator such as the one described above, improvement in energy conversion efficiency is attained such that the rotor is constructed of a ferrite, or rare-earth, magnet characterised by a high energy product and a small reversing permeability (recoil permeability). Alternatively, the extent of demagnetisation due to generation of a counter magnetic field in an induction coil is reduced allowing the single polarity of the rotor to interact with the stator in forming a magnetic circuit. However, despite these measures, reduction in energy conversion efficiency due to a counter magnetic field of the rotor core, more specifically, due to demagnetisation resulting from the counter magnetic field caused by armature reaction presents a serious problem.

The present invention has been developed in view of the above points, and its object is to provide an induction generator having a pair of magnetic poles of the same polarity opposed to each other with respect to a rotation shaft, wherein a high energy conversion efficiency is attained.

DISCLOSURE OF THE INVENTION

The present invention provides an induction generator having a pair of magnetic poles of the same polarity opposed to each other with respect to a rotation shaft, characterised by comprising:

A rotation shaft driven by external means;

An even number of (more than three) stator cores provided to encircle the rotation shaft, predetermined gaps being provided between the adjacent stator cores;

A first single-opposed polarity rotor provided in the rotation shaft, surrounded by the even number of stator cores, and having first and second magnets magnetised such that the even number of stator cores remain facing a first polarity, the first and second magnets being opposed to each other with respect to the rotation shaft in a cross section;

A second single-opposed-polarity rotor provided in the rotation shaft so as to face the first single-opposed-polarity rotor at a predetermined distance along the rotation shaft, surrounded by the even number of stator cores, and having third and fourth magnets magnetised such that the even number of stator cores remain facing a second polarity which is opposite to the polarity of the first polarity, the third and fourth magnets being disposed opposite to each other with respect to the rotation shaft;

A plurality of windings provided in the even number of stator cores and connected according to a predetermined configuration, characterised in that:

A rotating magnetic field which causes electromagnetic induction in the even number of stator cores successively is created by the first, second, third and fourth magnets when the first and second single-opposed-polarity rotors are rotated; and

Periodic increase and decrease in the number of magnetic flux lines crossing a given winding and associated periodic decrease and increase crossing an adjacent winding causes a periodic electromotive force having a rectangular waveform to be output.

In one aspect of the present invention, the plurality of windings connected according to the predetermined configuration form first and second serial circuits:

The first serial circuit outputs a periodic first electromotive force having a rectangular waveform when a rotating magnetic field which causes electromagnetic induction in the even number of stator cores successively is created by the first, second, third and fourth magnets when the first and second single-opposed-polarity rotors are rotated; and

The second serial circuit outputs a periodic second electromotive force of a rectangular waveform 180° out of phase with the first electromotive force and having the same period as the first electromotive force, when a rotating magnetic field which causes electromagnetic induction in the even number of stator cores successively is created by the first and second single-opposed-polarity rotors are rotated.

The induction generator of the present invention may also comprise:
Rotation position detecting means for detecting a position of the first and second single-opposed-polarity rotors during their rotation; and

Switching means which alternately causes positive components of the first electromotive force having a rectangular waveform and provided by the first serial circuit, or positive components of the second electromotive force having a rectangular waveform and provided by the second serial circuit to be output at intervals of an electrical angle of 180°.

In another aspect of the present invention, the plurality of windings comprise a first winding provided in a first stator core of the even number of stator cores, a second winding provided in a second stator core adjacent to the first stator core so as to wind in a direction opposite to a direction in which the first winding is provided, a third winding provided in a third stator core adjacent to the second stator core so as to wind in the same direction as the first winding, a fourth winding provided in a fourth stator core adjacent to the third stator core so as to wind in a direction opposite to a direction in which the third winding is provided, the first through fourth windings being connected with each other according to a predetermined configuration.

In still another aspect of the present invention, the first serial circuit comprises a first winding provided to wind in a first direction in a first stator core of the even number of stator cores, a second winding serially connected to the first winding and provided in a second stator core adjacent to the first stator core so as to wind in a second direction opposite to the first direction, a third winding serially connected with the second winding and provided in a third stator core adjacent to the second stator core so as to wind in the first direction, a fourth winding serially connected to the third winding and provided in a fourth stator core adjacent to the third stator core so as to wind in the second direction; and

The second serial circuit comprises a fifth winding provided to wind in the second direction in the first stator core, a sixth winding serially connected to the fifth winding and provided in the second stator core so as to wind in the first direction, a seventh winding serially connected with the sixth winding and provided in the third stator core so as to wind in the second direction, an eighth winding serially connected to the seventh winding and provided in the fourth stator core so as to wind in the first direction.

In yet another aspect of the present invention, the first through fourth magnets are arc-shaped; and the even number of stator cores have arc-shaped cross sections.

In still another aspect of the present invention, the arc-shaped first through fourth magnets and the stator cores which have arc-like cross sections have an almost identical circumferential length.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

Fig.1A and Fig.1B are diagrams explaining the principle of an induction generator;

Fig.2A and Fig.2B are diagrams showing a first embodiment of the present invention;

Fig.3A and Fig.3B are diagrams showing a single-opposed-polarity rotor 11N according to the first embodiment of the present invention;

Fig.4A and Fig.4B are diagrams showing a single-opposed-polarity rotor 11S according to the first embodiment of the present invention;

Fig.5A, Fig.5B and Fig.5C are diagrams showing how wirings are connected with each other according to the first embodiment of the present invention;

Fig.6A is a diagram schematically showing how a rotating magnetic field according to the first embodiment crosses windings 7c-10c;

Fig.6B shows a magnetic path;

Fig.7 is a diagram showing a waveform of an output voltage according to the first embodiment;

Fig.8A and Fig.8B are diagrams showing a second embodiment of the present invention;

Fig.9 is a diagram showing how wirings are connected with each other according to a second embodiment; and
**BEST MODE FOR CARRYING OUT THE INVENTION**

**Fig. 10**

Fig. 10 is a diagram showing a waveform of an output voltage according to the second embodiment.

**Fig. 2A and Fig. 2B**

Fig. 2A and Fig. 2B show a first embodiment of the present invention. Specifically, Fig. 2A is a longitudinal sectional view and Fig. 2B is a cross-sectional view taken in the line 1B-1B' of Fig. 2A.

Referring to Fig. 2A and Fig. 2B, 3 indicates a rotation shaft formed of a non-magnetic material and driven by an external means; 4a and 4b bearings for supporting the rotation shaft 3; 5a and 5b are flanges provided with the bearings 4a and 4b, respectively; and 6 is a cylindrical case cover for accommodating the flanges 5a and 5b.

Stator cores 7, 8, 9 and 10 are arranged so as to encircle the rotation shaft 3, equidistant gaps g1 being provided between the adjacent stator cores. Each of the stator cores 7, 8, 9 and 10 has the same arc-like cross section.

A single-opposed-polarity N-pole rotor 11N and a single-opposed-polarity S-pole rotor 11S are provided on the rotation shaft 3 so as to be opposite to each other. The single-opposed-polarity rotors 11N and 11S are surrounded by the stator cores 7, 8, 9 and 10, a small rotation gap g0 being provided between the single-opposed-polarity rotor and the stator core.
Referring to Fig.2B, windings 7c and 9c are provided clockwise around the stator cores 7 and 9, respectively. Windings 8c and 10c are wound counterclockwise around the stator cores 8 and 10, respectively. The windings 7c, 8c, 9c and 10c are connected with each other in a configuration described later.

![Fig. 3A](image)

**FIG. 3A**

![Fig. 3B](image)

**FIG. 3B**

**Fig.3A** and **Fig.3B** show the single-opposed-polarity rotor 11N. Specifically, **Fig.3A** is a longitudinal sectional view, and **Fig.3B** is a cross-sectional view. The single-opposed-polarity rotor 11N has arc-shaped magnets 12 and 13 which are 180° displaced from each other and are magnetised such that their surfaces which face the stator cores 7-10 are N-poles while their inner surfaces are S-poles. The arc-shaped magnets 12 and 13 are configured to match the outline of the stator cores 7, 8, 9 and 10. Referring to **Fig.3B**, the symbols N and N' are used so as to differentiate between the magnets 12 and 13.

A rotor piece 14 is positioned so as to connect the arc-shaped magnets 12 and 13. The rotor piece 14 is magnetised by the arc-shaped magnets 12 and 13 so that its surfaces which face the arc-shaped magnets 12 and 13 are S-poles and is formed of a substance (for example, a silicon steel) constructed of a low carbon steel having mixed therein several percent of non-ferrous metal subjected to a forging-cast process. The iron core embodied by the rotor piece 14 thus constructed is characterised by a well-balanced magnetic field where the permeability approximates a peak value in a unipolar magnetic field that the iron core presents to its surroundings.

![Fig. 4A](image)

**FIG. 4A**

![Fig. 4B](image)

**FIG. 4B**
Fig. 4A and Fig. 4B show the single-opposed-polarity rotor 11S. Specifically, Fig. 4A is a longitudinal sectional view, and Fig. 4B is a cross-sectional view.

The single-opposed-polarity rotor 11S has arc-shaped magnets 15 and 16 which are $180^\circ$ displaced from each other and are magnetised such that the surfaces thereof facing the stator cores 7-10 are S-poles while their inner surfaces are N-poles. The arc-shaped magnets 15 and 16 are configured to match the outline of the stator cores 7, 8, 9 and 10.

A rotor piece 17 is positioned so as to connect the arc-shaped magnets 15 and 16. The rotor piece 17 is magnetised by the arc-shaped magnets 15 and 16 so that its surfaces which face the arc-shaped magnets 15 and 16 are N-poles. The rotor piece is made from a substance constructed from a low carbon steel having mixed in it, several percent of non-ferrous metal subjected to a forging-cast process. The iron core embodied by the rotor piece 17 thus constructed is characterised by a well-balanced magnetic field where the permeability approximates a peak value in a unipolar magnetic field that the iron core presents to its surroundings.

The arc-shaped magnets 12, 13, 15 and 16 have the same circumferential length, which is also equal to the length of the arc formed by the circumference of the stator cores 7, 8, 9 and 10. More specifically, this length is obtained by dividing the entire hypothetical circumference minus the four $g_1$ gaps by four. Referring to Fig. 2A and Fig. 2B, the rotation gap $g_0$ is equal to $R_1 - R$, where $R_1$ is a distance between the centre of the rotation shaft 3 and the inner surface of the stator cores 7-10, and $R$ is a distance between the centre of the rotation shaft 3 and the outer surface of the single-opposed-polarity rotors 11N and 11S, as indicated in Fig. 3B and Fig. 4B.
Fig. 5A, Fig. 5B and Fig. 5C, show how the wirings are connected with each other. T1 indicates the beginning of a winding, T2 the end of a winding, and 18 and 19 output terminals. More specifically, Fig. 5A shows a serial connection configuration, Fig. 5B a serial-parallel connection configuration, and Fig. 5C a parallel connection configuration. The serial connection configuration allows the electromotive force induced in the windings to be added together and provides a high-voltage output. The parallel connection configuration allows currents resulting from the electromotive force induced in the windings to be added together and provides a large-current output.

A description will now be given, with reference to Fig. 6A, Fig. 6B and Fig. 7, of power generation operation of the serial connection configuration.

Fig. 6A is a diagram showing schematically how the rotating magnetic field provided by the single-opposed-polarity rotors 11S and 11N crosses windings 7c-10c. Fig. 6B shows a magnetic path.

Referring to Fig. 6A, \( \Phi_1 \) and \( \Phi_2 \) indicate rotating magnetic flux rotating along the circumference \( 2\pi R \). Fig. 6B shows the arc-shaped magnets 12 and 15 directly opposite the stator core 7 over their entire length, and the arc-shaped magnets 13 and 16 directly opposite the stator core 9 over their entire length.
As shown in **Fig. 6B**, the magnetic flux $\Phi_1$ forms a magnetic path as follows:

The rotor piece 14 (S) - the arc-shaped magnet pole 12 (N) - stator core 7 - the rotation gap $g_0$ - the arc-shaped magnet 15 (S) - the rotor piece 17 (N).

The magnetic flux $\Phi_2$ forms a magnetic path as follows:

The rotor piece 14 (S) - the arc-shaped magnet 13 (N) - the rotation gap $g_0$ - the stator core 9 - the rotation gap $g_0$ - the arc-shaped magnet 16 (S) - the rotor piece 17 (N).

Thus, a parallel magnetic path is formed. In this state, the magnetic flux $\Phi_1$ crosses the winding 7c, and the magnetic flux $\Phi_2$ crosses the winding 9c.

A description focused on the rotation of the magnetic flux $\Phi_1$ is given. Specifically, a description will be given of a change in the way the magnetic flux $\Phi_1$ crosses the windings.
Referring to a waveform of an output voltage shown in Fig.7, the entirety of the magnetic flux \( \Phi_1 \) crosses the winding 10c at a time \( t_1 \). At a time \( t_2 \), the entirety of the magnetic flux \( \Phi_1 \) crosses the winding 7c. At a time \( t_3 \), the entirety of the magnetic flux \( \Phi_1 \) crosses the winding 8c. At a time \( t_4 \), the entirety of the magnetic flux \( \Phi_1 \) crosses the winding 9c. At a time \( t_5 \), the entirety of the magnetic flux \( \Phi_1 \) rotates at a constant speed during a time \( T \), in a clockwise direction in Fig.6A.

Between the time \( t_1 \) and the time \( t_2 \), an electromotive force having a descending triangular waveform, indicated by \( I \) in Fig.7, is generated in the winding 10c due to a decrease in the number of magnetic flux lines of the magnetic flux \( \Phi_1 \) crossing the winding 10c. An electromotive force having an ascending triangular waveform, indicated by \( I' \) in Fig.6, is generated in the winding 7c due to an increase in the number of magnetic flux lines of the magnetic flux \( \Phi_1 \) crossing the winding 7c. Accordingly, a positive rectangular waveform obtained by the sum of these triangular waveforms is output to the output terminals 18 and 19.

Between the time \( t_2 \) and the time \( t_3 \), an electromotive force having an ascending triangular waveform, indicated by \( II \) in Fig.7, is generated in the winding 7c due to a decrease in the number of magnetic flux lines of the magnetic flux \( \Phi_1 \) crossing the winding 7c. An electromotive force having a descending triangular waveform, indicated by \( II' \) in Fig.7, is generated in the winding 8c due to an increase in the number of magnetic flux lines of the magnetic flux \( \Phi_1 \) crossing the winding 8c. Accordingly, a negative rectangular waveform obtained by the sum of these triangular waveforms is output to the output terminals 18 and 19.

Between the time \( t_3 \) and the time \( t_4 \), an electromotive force having a descending triangular waveform, indicated by \( III \) in Fig.7, is generated in the winding 8c due to a decrease in the number of magnetic flux lines of the magnetic flux \( \Phi_1 \) of the magnetic flux \( \Phi_1 \) crossing the winding 8c. An electromotive force having an ascending triangular waveform, indicated by \( III' \) in Fig.7, is generated in the winding 9c due to an increase in the number of magnetic flux lines of the magnetic flux \( \Phi_1 \) crossing the winding 9c. Accordingly, a positive rectangular waveform obtained by the sum of these triangular waveforms is output to the output terminals 18 and 19.

Between the time \( t_4 \) and the time \( t_5 \), an electromotive force having an ascending triangular waveform, indicated by \( IV \) in Fig.7, is generated in the winding 9c due to a decrease in the number of magnetic flux lines of the magnetic flux \( \Phi_1 \) crossing the winding 9c. An electromotive force having a descending triangular waveform, indicated by \( IV' \) in Fig.7, is generated in the winding 10c due to an increase in the number of magnetic flux lines of the magnetic flux \( \Phi_1 \) crossing the winding 10c. Accordingly, a negative rectangular waveform obtained by the sum of these triangular waveforms is output to the output terminals 18 and 19.

While the magnetic flux \( \Phi_1 \) makes one rotation, an electromotive force having a synthesised rectangular waveform and a period of \( T/2 \) is output, as shown in Fig.7. Since the magnetic flux \( \Phi_2 \) also makes one rotation while the magnetic flux \( \Phi_1 \) makes one rotation and produces an output of an electromotive force having a similar rectangular waveform, the magnitude of the electromotive force obtained between the terminals 18 and 19 is actually double that indicated in Fig.7.

In this way, this embodiment makes it possible to cancel a counter magnetic field and provide an induction generator having a pair of magnetic poles of the same polarity opposed to each other with respect to a rotation shaft and characterised by a high energy conversion efficiency. Our operating practice has confirmed that the generator having the construction of this embodiment provides an energy conversion efficiency which is high enough to require only 1/5.2 of the driving torque for the conventional generator.
Fig. 8A and Fig. 8B show a second embodiment of the present invention. Specifically, Fig. 8A is a longitudinal sectional view, and Fig. 8B is a cross-sectional view taken in the line 7B-7B' of Fig. 8A.

Referring to Fig. 8A and Fig. 8B, 3 indicates a rotation shaft formed of a non-magnetic material and driven by an external source; 4a and 4b are bearings which support the rotation shaft 3, 5a and 5b are flanges housing the bearings 4a and 4b, and 6 is a cylindrical case cover for accommodating the flanges 5a and 5b.

Stator cores 7, 8, 9 and 10 are arranged so as to encircle the rotation shaft 3, equidistant gaps g1 being provided between the adjacent stator cores. Each of the stator cores 7, 8, 9 and 10 has a same arc-like cross section.

A single-opposed-polarity N-pole rotor 11N and a single-opposed-polarity S-pole rotor 11S are provided on the rotation shaft 3 so as to be opposite to each other. The single-opposed-polarity rotors 11N and 11S are surrounded by the stator cores 7, 8, 9 and 10 a small rotation gap g0 being provided between the single-opposed-polarity rotor and the stator core.

Referring to Fig. 8B, windings 7c and 9c are provided clockwise around the stator cores 7 and 9, respectively. Windings 8c and 10c are provided counterclockwise around the stator cores 8 and 10, respectively. Windings 27c and 29c are wound clockwise around the stator cores 8 and 10, respectively. The windings 7c, 8c, 9c, 10c, 27c, 28c, 29c and 30c are connected with each other according to a configuration described later.

A magnetic sensor (for rotation position detection) 31 is provided between the stator cores 7 and 10, and a magnetic sensor (for rotation position detection) 32 is provided between the stator cores 7 and 8. The magnetic sensors 31 and 32 detect the magnetic field so as to determine the position of the single-opposed-polarity rotors 11N and 11S during their rotation.

The single-opposed-polarity rotors 11N has a configuration as shown in Fig. 3A and Fig. 3B, and the monopole rotor 11S has a configuration as shown in Fig. 4A and Fig. 4B.

The single-opposed-polarity rotor 11N has arc-shaped magnets 12 and 13 which are 180° displaced from each other and are magnetised such that their surfaces facing the stator cores are N-poles while their respective inner surfaces are S-poles. The arc-shaped magnets 12 and 13 are configured to match the outline of the stator cores 7, 8, 9 and 10.

A rotor piece 14 is positioned so as to connect the arc-shaped magnets 12 and 13. The rotor piece 14 is constructed from a low-carbon steel having several percent of non-ferrous metal, using a forging-cast process. The iron core rotor piece 14 constructed by this means, has a well-balanced magnetic field where the permeability approximates a peak value in a unipolar magnetic field that the iron core presents to its surroundings.

The single-opposed-polarity rotor 11S has arc-shaped magnets 15 and 16 which are positioned 180° apart from each other and are magnetised so that their surfaces which face the stator cores are S-poles while their inner...
surfaces are N-poles. The arc-shaped magnets 15 and 16 are shaped and positioned so as to match the outline of the stator cores 7, 8, 9 and 10.

A rotor piece 17 is positioned so as to connect the arc-shaped magnets 15 and 16. The rotor piece 17 is constructed from a low-carbon steel having several percent of non-ferrous metal, using a forging-cast process. The iron core rotor piece 17 constructed by this means, has a well-balanced magnetic field where the permeability approximates a peak value in a unipolar magnetic field which the iron core presents to its surroundings.

The arc-shaped magnets 12, 13, 15 and 16 have the same circumferential lengths, which is equal to the length of the arc formed by the circumference of the stator cores 7, 8, 9 and 10. More specifically, this length is obtained by dividing by four, the entire hypothetical circumference minus the four gaps g1. Referring to Figs. 3A, 3B, 4A, 4B and 8, the rotation gap g0 is equal to R1 - R.

As shown in Fig.9, the first serial circuit comprises the winding 7c provided clockwise in the stator core 7, the winding 8c serially connected with the winding 7c and provided counterclockwise in the stator core 8 adjacent to the stator core 7; the winding 9c serially connected with the winding 8c and provided clockwise in the stator core 9; and the winding 10c serially connected with the winding 9c and provided counterclockwise in the stator core 10 adjacent to the stator core 9.

As shown in Fig.9, the second serial circuit comprises the winding 27c provided counterclockwise in the stator core 7; the winding 28c serially connected with the winding 27c and provided clockwise in the stator core 8; the winding 29c serially connected with the winding 28c and provided counterclockwise in the stator core 9; and the winding 30c serially connected with the winding 29c and provided clockwise in the stator core 10.

According to the construction described above, a rotating magnetic field which causes electromagnetic induction in the stator cores 7-10 successively is created by the arc-shaped magnets 12, 13, 15 and 16 when the single-opposed-polarity rotors 11N and 11S are rotated. As has been already explained with reference to Fig.6A, Fig.6B and Fig.7, as the magnetic flux lines crossing one of the windings 7c-10c increase in number, the magnetic flux lines crossing the adjacent one of the windings 7c-10c decrease in number. That is, the magnetic...
flux lines periodically increase and decrease with respect to a given winding so that a first electromotive force, having a rectangular waveform similar to the one shown in Fig.7 and a period that is 1/2 the period of the rotation, is output from the first serial circuit (7c-10c).

As the magnetic flux lines crossing one of the windings 27c-30c increase in number, the magnetic flux lines crossing the adjacent one of the windings 27c-30c decrease in number. That is, the magnetic flux lines periodically increase and decrease with respect to a given winding so that a second electromotive force of a rectangular waveform 180° out of phase with the first electromotive force and having the same period as the first electromotive force is output from the second serial circuit (27c-30c). That is, the second electromotive force is 180° out of phase with the electromotive force shown in Fig.7.

Referring to Fig.10, in accordance with the detection signal from the magnetic sensors 31 and 32, the switches SW1 and SW2 effect switching at 90° intervals. By that means, the positive components I and III of the first electromotive force having a rectangular waveform and provided from the first serial circuit, and the positive components II and IV of the second electromotive force having a rectangular waveform and provided from the second serial circuit are alternately selected at 180° intervals and output to the output terminals 18 and 19.

This means that, this embodiment ensures a high-efficiency energy conversion wherein a counter magnetic field is cancelled, and a DC electromotive force having a positive level is properly synthesised and output. It is of course possible to synthesise and output a negative DC electromotive force by shifting the switching timing by 180°.

INDUSTRIAL APPLICABILITY

As has been described, according to the present invention, the rotation of the first and second single-opposed-polarity rotors generates a rotating magnetic field which causes an induction in an even number of stator cores successively. As the magnetic flux lines crossing one of the first-through-fourth windings increase in number, the magnetic flux lines crossing the adjacent one of the first-through-fourth windings decrease in number. That is, the magnetic flux lines periodically increase and decrease with respect to a given winding. The electromotive force generated as the magnetic flux lines crossing a winding increase in number and the electromotive force generated as the magnetic flux lines crossing an adjacent winding decrease in number are synthesised so that a periodic AC electromotive force having a rectangular waveform is generated out of the synthesis and output. In this way, a high-efficiency energy conversion wherein a counter magnetic field is cancelled is provided.

According to the first serial circuit of the present invention, the rotation of the first and second single-opposed-polarity rotors generates a rotating magnetic field which causes an induction in an even number of stator cores successively. As the magnetic flux lines crossing one of the first through fourth windings increase in number, the magnetic flux lines crossing the adjacent one of the first through fourth windings decrease in number. That is, the magnetic flux lines periodically increase and decrease in a given winding. Accordingly, the first electromotive force having a rectangular waveform is output. According to the second serial circuit, as the magnetic flux lines crossing one of the fifth-through-eighth windings increase in number, the magnetic flux lines crossing the adjacent one of the fifth-through-eighth windings decrease in number. That is, the magnetic flux lines periodically increase and decrease in a given winding. Accordingly, the second electromotive force 180° out of phase with the first electromotive force and having the same period as the first electromotive force is output. In accordance with the detection signal from the rotation position detecting means, the switching means selectively causes the positive components of the first electromotive force provided by the first serial circuit, or the positive components of the second electromotive force provided by the second serial circuit to be output at 180° intervals. In this way the DC electromotive force is synthesised and output. This results in a high-efficiency energy conversion where a counter magnetic field is cancelled.

In addition to extensive applications in power plants, ships, aircraft etc., the present invention may find household applications or may be conveniently adapted for leisure uses.

CLAIMS

1. An induction generator having a pair of magnetic poles of the same polarity opposed to each other with respect to a rotation shaft, characterised by comprising:

a rotation shaft driven by external means;

an even number of (more than three) stator cores provided to encircle said rotation shaft, predetermined gaps being provided between the adjacent stator cores;
a first single-opposed-polarity rotor provided on said rotation shaft, surrounded by said even number of stator cores, and having first and second magnets magnetised such that said even number of stator cores remain facing a first polarity, said first and second magnets sandwiching a magnetic body between them and being opposed to each other with respect to said rotation shaft in a cross section;

a second single-opposed-polarity rotor provided on said rotation shaft so as to face said first single-opposed-polarity rotor at a predetermined distance along the rotation shaft, surrounded by said even number of stator cores, and having third and fourth magnets magnetised such that said even number of stator cores remain facing a second polarity which is opposite to the polarity of said first polarity, said third and fourth magnets sandwiching a magnetic body between them and being disposed opposite to each other with respect to said rotation shaft;

a plurality of windings provided in said even number of stator cores and connected according to a predetermined configuration, characterised in that: a rotating magnetic field which causes electromagnetic induction in said even number of stator cores successively is created by the first, second, third and fourth magnets when said first and second single-opposed-polarity rotors are rotated; and

two windings adjacent to each other are wound in opposite directions and connected in series so that a rectangular waveform is formed by synthesising the electromotive forces generated by the two windings, so that an electromotive force having a triangular waveform caused by periodic increase and decrease in the number of magnetic flux lines crossing one of the two windings and another electromotive force having a triangular waveform caused by associated periodic decrease and increase in the number of magnetic flux lines crossing the other one of the windings are synthesised so as to generate a periodic voltage having a rectangular waveform.

2. The induction generator having a pair of magnets of the same polarity opposed to each other with respect to a rotation shaft as claimed in claim 1, characterised in that:

said plurality of windings connected according to the predetermined configuration form first and second serial circuits;

said first serial circuit outputs a periodic first electromotive force having a rectangular waveform when a rotating magnetic field which causes electromagnetic induction in said even number of stator cores successively is created by said first, second, third and fourth magnets when said first and second single-opposed-polarity rotors are rotated; and

said second serial circuit outputs a periodic second electromotive force of a rectangular waveform 180° out of phase with the first electromotive force and having the same period as the first electromotive force, when a rotating magnetic field which causes electromagnetic induction in said even number of stator cores successively is created by said first and second single-opposed-polarity rotors are rotated.

3. The induction generator having a pair of magnets of the same polarity opposed to each other with respect to a rotation shaft as claimed in claim 2, further comprising:

rotation position detecting means for detecting a position of said first and second single-opposed-polarity rotors during their rotation; and

switching means which alternately causes positive components of said first electromotive force having a rectangular waveform and provided by said first serial circuit, or positive components of said second electromotive force having a rectangular waveform and provided by said second serial circuit to be output at intervals of an electrical angle of 180° to thereby produce a DC output.

4. The induction generator having a pair of magnets of the same polarity opposed to each other with respect to a rotation shaft as claimed in claim 1, characterised in that:

said plurality of windings comprise a first winding provided in a first stator core of said even number of stator cores, a second winding provided in a second stator core adjacent to the first stator core so as to wind in a direction opposite to a direction in which the first winding is provided, a third winding provided in a third stator core adjacent to the second stator core so as to wind in the same direction as the first winding, a fourth winding provided in a fourth stator core adjacent to the third stator core so as to wind in a direction opposite to a direction in which the third winding is provided, the first through fourth windings being connected with each other according to a predetermined configuration.
5. The induction generator having a pair of magnets of the same polarity opposed to each other with respect to a rotation shaft as claimed in claim 2, characterised in that:

said first serial circuit comprise a first winding provided to wind in a first direction in a first stator core of said even number of stator cores, a second winding serially connected to said first winding and provided in a second stator core adjacent to the first stator core so as to wind in a second direction opposite to the first direction, a third winding serially connected with said second winding and provided in a third stator core adjacent to the second stator core so as to wind in the first direction, a fourth winding serially connected to said third winding and provided in a fourth stator core adjacent to the third stator core so as to wind in the second direction; and

said second serial circuit comprises a fifth winding provided to wind in the second direction in said first stator core, a sixth winding serially connected to said fifth winding and provided in said second stator core so as to wind in said first direction, a seventh winding serially connected with said sixth winding and provided in said third stator core so as to wind in said second direction, an eighth winding serially connected to said seventh winding and provided in said fourth stator core so as to wind in said first direction.

6. The induction generator having a pair of magnets of the same polarity opposed to each other with respect to a rotation shaft as claimed in claim 1, characterised in that:

said first through fourth magnets are arc-shaped; and

said even number of stator cores have arc-shaped cross sections.

7. The induction generator having a pair of magnets of the same polarity opposed to each other with respect to a rotation shaft as claimed in claim 6, characterised in that said arc-shaped first through fourth magnets and said stator cores which have arc-shaped cross sections have an almost identical circumferential length.

8. The induction generator having a pair of magnets of the same polarity opposed to each other with respect to a rotation shaft as claimed in claim 2, characterised in that:

said first through fourth magnets are arc-shaped; and

said even number of stator cores have arc-shaped cross sections.

9. The induction generator having a pair of magnets of the same polarity opposed to each other with respect to a rotation shaft as claimed in claim 3, characterised in that:

said first through fourth magnets are arc-shaped; and

said even number of stator cores have arc-shaped cross sections.

10. The induction generator having a pair of magnets of the same polarity opposed to each other with respect to a rotation shaft as claimed in claim 4, characterised in that:

said first through fourth magnets are arc-shaped; and

said even number of stator cores have arc-shaped cross sections.

11. The induction generator having a pair of magnetic poles of the same polarity opposed to each other with respect to a rotation shaft as claimed in claim 5, characterised in that:

said first through fourth magnets are arc-shaped; and

said even number of stator cores have arc-shaped cross sections.

12. The induction generator having a pair of magnetic poles of the same polarity opposed to each other with respect to a rotation shaft as claimed in claim 8, characterised in that said arc-shaped first through fourth magnets and said stator cores which have arc-shaped cross sections have an almost identical circumferential length.

13. The induction generator having a pair of magnetic poles of the same polarity opposed to each other with respect to a rotation shaft as claimed in claim 9, characterised in that said arc-shaped first through fourth magnets and said stator cores which have arc-shaped cross sections have an almost identical circumferential length.
14. The induction generator having a pair of magnetic poles of the same polarity opposed to each other with respect to a rotation shaft as claimed in claim 10, characterised in that said arc-shaped first through fourth magnets and said stator cores which have arc-shaped cross sections have an almost identical circumferential length.

15. The induction generator having a pair of magnetic poles of the same polarity opposed to each other with respect to a rotation shaft as claimed in claim 11, characterised in that said arc-shaped first through fourth magnets and said stator cores which have arc-shaped cross sections have an almost identical circumferential length.
ENERGY SOURCE EMPLOYING ELECTRICAL ENERGISER

This patent application shows the details of a device which it is claimed, can produce electricity without the need for any fuel. It should be noted that while construction details are provided which imply that the inventor constructed and tested several of these devices, this is only an application and not a granted patent.

ABSTRACT
An energy producing system is provided which produces energy for use, for example, in an electric vehicle or in a home power plant. The system includes an electrical energiser (60) including a double-wound rotor and a double-wound stator, for producing electrical energy which is stored in the system, e.g. in a battery (66) storage arrangement, which provides initial energisation of the system. the stored energy is supplied to an electric motor (68) which drives the energiser (60) to thereby create additional energy. the energiser is able to supply the needs of the system as well as to power a load.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION
The present invention relates to energy producing systems and, more particularly, to an electrical energiser-motor system for providing energy, e.g., for an automotive vehicle or as part of a home energy plant.

With the advent of the so-called “energy crisis” and the consequent search for alternative energy sources to substitute for oil, considerable attention has been focused on automotive vehicles as chief users of oil products. One aspect of this search has fostered renewed interest in electrically driven vehicles such as electric cars and the like. A principal shortcoming of prior-art electrical vehicles has been the need to recharge the batteries which provide the power for the electrical motor drive system.

The present invention overcomes this problem through the provision of an electrical energiser-motor system which produces more energy than is expended, thereby enabling the excess energy to be stored in the battery system, to be drawn upon as required. Thus, the need for recharging of the batteries associated with conventional electrical vehicles is eliminated with the system of this invention. It should be noted that while the system of the invention has enormous potential in connection with its use in electrical vehicles, the system is clearly not limited to such use and would obviously be advantageous when used, for example, as the energy source for a home energy plant, as well as in many other applications.

In accordance with the invention, and energy producing system of the type described above is provided which comprises and electrical “energiser” comprising at least one double-wound stator and at least one double-wound shaft-mounted rotor located within a housing, electrical energy being collected from the rotor through a suitable electrical take-off device and being available for utilisation by the system, and an electric motor, powered by the energiser for driving the rotor shaft of the energiser. A battery arrangement is initially used to supply energy to the system and, as stated above, the excess energy generated by the energiser over and above that required by the system and the system load, is stored through charging of the batteries. The motor includes an armature with a plurality of winding slots in it and a plurality of windings being wound into two circumferentially spaced slots in the armature, i.e. such a winding is wound through a first slot (e.g. slot 1) and returned through a second spaced slot (e.g. slot 5). depending on the energy demands, the energiser may include a pair of stators and rotors, with the rotors being mounted on a common shaft. The motor is preferably energised through an arrangement of a commutator and plural brushes, while a slip ring and associated brushes connected to an output bridge circuit form the energy take-off for the energiser.

Other features and advantages of the invention will be shown in the detailed description of the preferred embodiments which follows.
**Fig. 1**

Fig. 1 is a partially sectioned elevational view of the electrical “energiser” of the invention.

**Fig. 2**

Fig. 2 is a block diagram of the overall energy-producing system of the invention.

**Fig. 3**

Fig. 3 is a partially sectioned side elevational view of a modified electrical motor constructed in accordance with the invention.
Fig. 4 is an exploded perspective view of the basic components of the motor of Fig. 3.

Fig. 5 is an end view of the brush holder also illustrated in Fig. 4.

Fig. 6 and Fig. 7 show details of the winding pattern of the motor of Fig. 3.
Referring to Fig.1, a preferred embodiment of the "energiser" device of the invention is shown. The device includes a housing 10, in which are located, in a first chamber or compartment 10a, a first rotor 12 and a first stator 14 and, in a second compartment 10b, a second rotor 16, and a second stator 18. It should be noted that although two stator-rotor combinations are used in this embodiment, a single stator-rotor combination can be used for some applications. Housing 10 is divided into the compartments 10a and 10b, by a centre plate 20 and it includes a pair of end plates 22 and 24. Both the rotors 12, 16 and the stators 14, 18 are double wound and the rotors 12, 16 are nested inside their respective stators 14 and 18 and mounted for rotation on a common shaft 26. Shaft 26 extends longitudinally through housing 10 and is mounted on bearings 28 and 30, supported by end plates 22 and 24, and a further bearing 32 which is supported by central plate 20.

A pair of slip rings 34 and 36, are mounted on shaft 26 and connect with their corresponding brush pairs 38 and 40. Slip rings 34 and 36 are connected to rotors 12 and 16 respectively, and permit the current flowing in the rotor windings to be collected through the associated pairs of brushes 38 and 40. Brush pairs 38 and 40 are mounted on respective brush holders 42 and 44. The terminals of respective bridge circuits 46 and 48 are connected to stators 14 and 18, while conversion bars 50 and 52 are connected to brush holders 42 and 44, as indicated.
A cooling fan 54, is also mounted on shaft 26 and a plurality of apertures 201, 22a and 24a are provided in centre plate 20 and end plates 22 and 24, to promote cooling of the device. The energiser of Fig.1 is preferably incorporated in a system such as shown in a highly schematic manner in Fig.2 where the output of the energiser is used to supply the energy for driving a motor. To this end, the energiser, which is denoted by 60 in Fig.2, is connected through a regulator 62, to battery charger 64 for batteries 66 connected to a motor 68. These batteries 66 are used to provide the initial energisation of the system as well as to store energy produced by the energiser 60. It will be understood that the energiser 60 provides energy enough to power motor 68 (which, in turn, drives energiser 60 through rotation of shaft 26) as well as to provide storage for energy in the system. It will also be appreciated that the system illustrated schematically in Fig.2 includes suitable controls (switches, rheostats, sensors, etc.) to provide initial energisation as well as appropriate operational control of the system.

In a preferred embodiment, motor 68 is of the form shown in Fig.3. As illustrated, the motor is of a generally conventional form (with exceptions noted below) and comprises an armature 70, mounted on a shaft 72 within housing 74. Housing 74 includes a pair of end plates 76 and 78, which mount shaft bearings 77 and 79. Apertures 76a and 78a are provided in end plates 76 and 78 and a cooling fan 80 is mounted on shaft 72 to provide cooling.
A commutator 82 is also mounted on shaft 72, and co-operates with associated brushes (not shown in Fig.1), to conduct current to the windings of armature 70. This co-operation is shown best in Fig.4 which is an exploded view, illustrating the armature 70, commutator 82 and a brush holder 84.

![Fig. 5]

As shown in Fig.5, the brush holder 84 includes eight brush mounts 86, each of which defines a slot 88 in which a pair of brushes is mounted. One brush 90 is shown in Fig.5, it being understood that two such brushes are mounted in each slot 88 so that sixteen brushes are required.

The motor of Fig.3 to Fig.6 includes eight pole shoes (not shown) which are secured to housing 74 and which serve to mount eight field coils or windings 92 (see Fig.3 and Fig.4) spaced out around the periphery of armature 72.

An important feature of the motor of Fig.3 to Fig.6 concerns the manner in which the windings for armature 70 are wound. As illustrated in Fig.3, Fig.6 and Fig.7, a typical winding W1 is wound in two slots, with the illustrated winding being doubled back and continuing from armature slot S1 to armature slot S5 (see Fig.3 and Fig.6). Similarly, the winding in slot S2 continues to slot S6, the winding of slot S3 continues to slot S7, and so on for the forty-nine windings.

In a specific preferred embodiment, the motor described above is a 48-volt, 412 horsepower motor having a top operating speed of 7,000 rpm. A rheostat control (not shown) is used to control the input voltage and, as discussed above, the motor is powered from the energiser of Fig.1. It will be appreciated that the energy take-off from the system is preferably from the output shaft of the motor, although the electrical energy may also be tapped off from the energiser output.

Although the invention has been described in relation to exemplary embodiments, it will be understood by those skilled in the art, that variations and modifications can be effected in these embodiments without departing from the scope and spirit of the invention.

CLAIMS

1. An energy-producing system providing an output for utilisation by a utilising device, the system comprising:

   An electrical energising means comprising a housing (10); at least one double-wound stator (14 or 18) located within the housing; at least one double-wound rotor (12 or 16) located within the housing; a rotor shaft (26), supported in the housing, and on which the double-wound rotor is mounted; and an energy take-off mechanism (34 or 36) including a mechanism for collecting electrical energy from the rotor, mounted on the shaft and connected to the rotor, the mechanism having at least one stationary output.

   A motor (68), including a connection to the electrical energiser through which to draw the power to operate the motor and drive the rotor shaft of the energiser, the motor having an armature (70) with a plurality of winding slots (S1 to S49) in it, and a plurality of windings (W1) wound in those slots, at least some of the windings being wound in two slots spaced out around the circumference of the armature (for example, S1 and S5), and an energy supply mechanism (66) for supplying electrical energy to the motor at least during initial energisation of the motor, and connected to the energiser for supplying energy to the motor during its operation.
2. A system as in Claim 1, where the energiser includes a pair of these rotors (12, 16) and a pair of stators (14, 18), the rotors being mounted on a common shaft (26).

3. A system as in Claim 1, where the energy take-off includes a slip ring (34 or 36) and at least one brush (38 or 40) for collecting electrical current from the rotor windings, the brush being connected to a bridge circuit (46 or 48).

4. A system as in Claim 1, where the motor contains a commutator (82) through which energy is supplied to the armature windings.

5. A system as in Claim 4, where the same winding (W1) is wound in the first and fifth slot positions of the motor armature, and the ends of that winding are connected to two positions spaced out around the circumference of the commutator (see Fig.3).
Please note that this is a re-worded excerpt from this patent. It describes a motor which has an output power greater than its input power.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

It is an object of the invention to provide a motive power generation device in which the occurrence of a force acting in a direction opposite to the direction of movement of a rotor and/or a stator is prevented, so as to permit efficient use of electric energy to be applied to electromagnets, as well as magnetic energy generated by a permanent magnet.

In order to achieve the above object, the first invention comprises a permanent magnet disposed around a rotational output shaft which is mounted on a bearing, a magnetic body positioned concentrically with the permanent magnet for rotation with the output shaft, the magnetic body being subjected to the magnetic flux of the permanent magnet, a plurality of electromagnets permanently mounted on the support member so that they are spaced a predetermined distance around the periphery of the magnetic material, each magnetic circuit of the electromagnets being independent of one another and the excitation change-over mechanism of the electromagnets which can sequentially magnetise one of the electromagnets which is positioned forward, with regard to a rotational direction, of the output shaft, so as to impart to the electromagnet a magnetic polarity magnetically opposite to that of the magnetic pole of the permanent magnet, whereby a magnetic flux passing through the magnetic body converges in one direction thereby applying a rotational torque to the output shaft.

According to the first invention, when one of the electromagnets which is positioned ahead in the rotational direction of the rotational output shaft, a magnetic field created by the excited electromagnet and a magnetic field created by the permanent magnet interact with each other. Thus, the magnetic flux passing through the magnetic body converges toward the excited electromagnet, so as to rotate the rotational output shaft by a predetermined angle toward the excited electromagnet. When the rotational output shaft has been rotated by the predetermined angle, the above excited electromagnet is de-magnetised, and another electromagnet currently positioned ahead with respect to the rotational direction of the rotor output shaft is excited or magnetised. Sequential excitation of the electromagnets in the above manner permits rotation of the output shaft in a predetermined direction. In this regard, it should be noted that the electromagnets are excited so as to have a magnetic polarity opposite to that of the magnetic pole of the permanent magnet and that the magnetic circuit of the excited electromagnets is independent from those of adjacent electromagnets. Thus, the magnetic flux generated by the excited electromagnet is prevented from passing through magnetic circuits of adjacent electromagnets, which, if it occurs, might cause the electromagnets to be magnetised to have the same polarity as that of the magnetic pole of the permanent magnet. Accordingly, no objectionable force will be generated which might interfere with rotation of the output shaft.

In order to achieve the above object, the second invention comprises a permanent magnet mounted on a movable body arranged movably along a linear track, a magnetic body mounted on the permanent magnet, the magnetic body being subjected to a magnetic flux of the permanent magnet, a plurality of electromagnets spaced an appropriate distance along the linear track, the electromagnets having magnetic circuits which are independent of one another and the excitation mechanism arranged to magnetise each of the electromagnets sequentially when each is positioned forward of the movable body, (with respect to the direction of movement) so as to impart to the excited electromagnet a magnetic polarity opposite to that of the magnetic pole of the permanent magnet and that the magnetic circuit of the excited electromagnets is independent from those of adjacent electromagnets. Thus, the magnetic flux generated by the excited electromagnet is prevented from passing through magnetic circuits of adjacent electromagnets, which, if it occurs, might cause the electromagnets to be magnetised to have the same polarity as that of the magnetic pole of the permanent magnet. Accordingly, no objectionable force will be generated which might interfere with rotation of the movable body.

According to the second invention, when the electromagnet positioned ahead of the forward end of the movable body with regard to the direction of the movement of the movable body is excited, a magnetic field generated by the excited electromagnet and magnetic field generated by the permanent magnet interact with each other. Thus, a magnetic flux passing through the magnetic body converges toward the excited electromagnet, so as to displace the movable body a predetermined distance toward the excited electromagnet. When the movable body has been moved the predetermined distance, the movable body is positioned below the above excited electromagnet, and another electromagnet is positioned ahead of the forward end of the movable body. When this occurs, excitation of the electromagnet positioned above the movable body is interrupted, and excitation of the electromagnet now positioned ahead of the forward end of the movable body is initiated. Sequential excitation of
the electromagnets in the above manner permits movement of the movable body in a predetermined direction. It should be noted that no objectionable force which would interfere with movement of the movable body is created for the same reason as that explained in relation to the first invention.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

Fig. 1 is a front elevational view, partly in section and partly omitted, of a motor according to a first embodiment of the invention;
Fig. 2 is a sectional view along line II--II in Fig. 1;
FIG. 3 is a rear elevational view of the motor provided with a light shield plate thereon;
Fig. 4A through Fig. 4H illustrate operation of the motor when the electromagnets are excited or magnetised;
Fig. 5A is an illustrative view showing a magnetic path of magnetic flux created by a permanent magnet of the motor when the electromagnets are not magnetised;
Fig. 5B is an illustrative view showing a magnetic path of magnetic flux created by the permanent magnet of the motor, as well as magnetic path of magnetic flux created by the electromagnets;
FIGS. 6 through 9 are cross-sectional view illustrating a modified form the motor;
FIGS. 10A through 10C are cross-sectional views illustrating operation of the modified motor;
FIGS. 11A through 11H are illustrative diagrams showing operation of a motor in a form of a linear motor according to a second embodiment of the invention;
DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

Preferred embodiments of the invention will be explained in detail below with reference to the attached drawings.

According to a first embodiment of the invention, a rotational output shaft 11 is mounted in a bearing between front and rear side plates 10a of a support member 10 through bearings 11a, as shown in Fig.1 and Fig.2. A ring of permanent magnets 13 are fitted over the opposite ends of the output shaft, inside the side plates 10a and these move with the rotor shaft 11. The permanent magnets are magnetised in the axial direction. A magnetic body 14 is rigidly mounted between each of the side plates 10a of the rotor shaft 11 and the permanent magnets 13. Each of these magnetic bodies 14 has alternate notches 14a and magnetic teeth 14b. It should be noted that the flux of the permanent magnets 13 passes through the respective magnetic bodies 14. For example, Fig.1 shows the magnetic body 14 with three notches 14a and three magnetic teeth 14b. The permanent magnets 13 and magnetic bodies 14 are positioned co-axially with the rotor output shaft 11. The corresponding permanent magnets 13 and magnetic bodies 14 are shown connected together by bolts 15 so as to form a rotor 12 which is attached to the rotational output shaft 11.

It should be noted that the support member 10 and rotational output shaft are both made from a non-magnetic material. The support member 10 may be formed, for example, from stainless steel, aluminium alloys, or synthetic resins, while the rotational output shaft 11 may be formed from stainless steel, for example. Thus, the magnetic circuit formed by the permanent magnet 13 and magnetic body at one axial end of the rotational output shaft 11 and the magnetic circuit formed by the permanent magnet 13 and magnetic body at the opposite axial end of the output shaft, are independent of one another. The magnetic bodies 14 may be formed from magnetic materials having a high magnetic permeability, such as various kinds of steel materials, silicon steel plate, permalloys, or the like.

The stator contains electromagnets 16a through 16l, which are positioned between the side plates 10a. The electromagnets are evenly spaced around the magnetic pieces 14 so that they surround the magnetic bodies. As shown in Fig.1, twelve electromagnets may be used. The magnetic circuit of each of the electromagnets 16a
through 16i is arranged so as to be independent of each other, so that no flux of a magnetised electromagnet passes through the iron cores of the adjacent electromagnets.

The iron cores of the electromagnets 16a through 16i are positioned parallel to the rotor axis shaft 11, and positioned with only a slight gap between them and the magnetic bodies 14.

Some of the electromagnets 16a through 16i are located at a position corresponding to boundary portions 14c1 through 14c6 between the notch 14a and the magnetic tooth 14b. For example, as shown in Fig.1, electromagnets 16a, 16b, 16e, 16f, 16i and 16j are positioned opposite the boundary portions 14c1, 14c2, 14c3, 14c4, 14c5, and 14c6, respectively.

Fig.5A shows a path of magnetic flux created by the permanent magnet 13 when the electromagnets are not excited or magnetised, while, Fig.5B shows a path of magnetic flux created by the permanent magnet 13 and a path of magnetic flux created by the windings of the electromagnets when the electromagnets are magnetised. As will be clear from Fig.5A and Fig.5B, both paths of magnetic flux represent a uni-polar distribution in which N-pole or S-pole evenly appears at the opposite axial ends. When the electromagnets are magnetised, the magnetic fields of the permanent magnet and electromagnets co-operate or interact with each other so as to generate a rotational torque.

Excitation change-over mechanism 17 for sequentially exciting or magnetising the electromagnets 16a through 16i is basically consisted of a conventional excitation circuit for supplying direct current to each winding of the electromagnets 16a through 16i. In this embodiment, the change-over portion for changing electric feed to the electromagnets 16a through 16i includes a plurality of optical sensors 18 and a light shielding plate 19 for turning the optical sensors ON and OFF as shown in Fig.6.

The optical sensors 18 are spaced apart from one another with a space between them for permitting the light shield plate 19 to pass through a light emitting element and a light receiving element. The optical sensors 18 are disposed in the outer surface of one of the side plates 10a equally spaced apart along the circumference, so that they are positioned to correspond to the electromagnets 16a through 16i (for example, the optical sensor 18 is shown to be disposed in the outer surface of the rear side plate). The light shielding plate 19 is fixed to the rotational output shaft 11 at the end thereof, the light shielding plate protruding from the rear side plate 10a on which the optical sensors are mounted.

According to the illustrated embodiment, when a particular optical sensor 18 is blocked by the light shielding plate 19, the electromagnet corresponding to such optical sensor 18 is supplied with electricity.

The operation of the first embodiment described above will be explained with reference to Fig.4A through Fig.4H. When the electromagnets 16a through 16i are not supplied with electricity by means of the excitation changeover mechanism 17, the electromagnets 16c, 16d, 16g, 16h, 16k and 16l opposed to the magnetic teeth 14b with a small gap between them merely serve as a magnetic material disposed within the magnetic field of the permanent magnet 13 (refer to shaded portion in Fig.4A), so as to absorb the magnetic teeth 14b, and the rotor 12 remains stationary.

When the electromagnets 16a, 16e and 16i positioned adjacent to the boundary portion 14c1, 14c3 and 14c5 formed between the respective notches 14a and the magnetic teeth 14b are magnetised or excited simultaneously by means of the excitation change-over mechanism, as shown in Fig.4B, the magnetic field of the permanent magnet 13 and the magnetic fields of the electromagnets 16a, 16e and 16i interact with each other, so that a magnetic flux 14d passing through the magnetic body 14 instantaneously converges to the electromagnets 16a, 16e, and 16i. In this way, the rotor 12 is imparted with a rotational torque in a direction in which the magnetic flux 14d will be widened, i.e., counterclockwise direction as viewed in Fig.4B. Fig.4C through Fig.4G illustrate change in the width of the magnetic flux 14d in accordance with rotation of the rotor 12. When the width of the magnetic flux becomes maximised, i.e., when only the magnetic teeth 14b are opposed to the electromagnets 16a, 16e and 16i, while the notches 14a are displaced completely away from the electromagnets 16a, 16e and 16i, the width of the magnetic flux 14d is maximised. Thus, an absorption force acting between the permanent magnet 13 and the electromagnets 16a, 16e and 16i is maximised. On the other hand, the rotational torque acting on the rotor 12 becomes zero.

Before the rotational torque acting on the rotor 12 becomes zero, i.e., as the boundary portion 14c1, 14c3 and 14c5 approach another electromagnets 16b, 16f and 16j positioned ahead of (with regard to the rotational direction), respectively, the electromagnets 16a, 16e and 16i are demagnetised and the electromagnets 16b, 16f and 16j are excited or magnetised by means of the excitation change-over mechanism 17. Thus, the magnetic
flux 14d converges toward the electromagnets 16b, 16f and 16j, as shown in Fig.4H, so that a rotational torque acts upon the rotor, as described above.

Then, the electromagnets 16c, 16g and 16k are excited. When the boundary portion 14c1, 14c3 and 14c5 approach another electromagnets 16d, 16h and 16l positioned ahead with respect to the rotational direction, in response to rotation of the rotor 12, the electromagnets 16c, 16g and 16k are de-magnetised and the electromagnets 16d, 16h and 16l are energised or excited.

As explained above, sequential excitation or energising of the electromagnets 16a through 16l causes interaction between the magnetic flux of the permanent magnet 13 and the electromagnets 16a through 16l, whereby a rotational torque is applied to the rotor 12.

When this occurs, a rotational torque is generated between one of the magnetic poles of the permanent magnet 13 (for example, N-pole) and the magnetic poles (for example, S-poles) of the electromagnets 16a through 16l positioned at their respective axial ends. A rotational torque is also generated between the other magnetic pole (for example, S-pole) of the permanent magnet 13 and the other magnetic pole (for example, N-pole) of each of the electromagnets 16a through 16l positioned at the other axial end.

It should be noted that, at one magnetic pole, for example N-pole, of the permanent magnet 13, certain of the electromagnets 16a through 16l are magnetised only to S-pole, thus preventing formation of a magnetic circuit, due to passage of magnetic flux from the excited electromagnets through either of the adjacent electromagnets, which tends to bring about N-poles magnetically similar to the permanent magnet 13. It is also noted that, at the other magnetic pole, for example S-pole, of the permanent magnet 13, certain of the electromagnets are magnetised only to N-pole, thus preventing formation of a magnetic circuit, due to passage of magnetic flux from the excited electromagnets through adjacent electromagnets, which tends to bring about S-poles magnetically similar to the permanent magnet 13. The magnetic flux of the permanent magnet 13 passes through the magnetic bodies 14 so as to be converged to the excited electromagnets (refer to the magnetic flux 14d shown in Fig.4 through Fig.4H), thus forming dead zones, through which no magnetic flux passes, in the magnetic bodies 14 at a position opposite to the un-excited electromagnets. Accordingly, no force is generated which would tend to prevent rotation of the rotor 12.

In view of electric energy applied to the electromagnets 16a through 16l, substantially all the electric energy applied is used to contribute to the rotation of the rotor 12. On the other hand, and in view of magnetic energy of the permanent magnet 18, all the magnetic energy contributes to the rotation of the rotor 12.

It is also noted that, since the notches 14a and the magnetic teeth 14b are alternately disposed in the outer periphery of the magnetic materials 14 in an acute angle configuration seen in Fig.4A to Fig.4H, and the electromagnets are disposed at a position each corresponding to the boundary portions between the notches and the magnetic teeth, it is possible for the line of the magnetic force, generated in each gap between the boundary portions and the electromagnets when the electromagnets are excited, to be inclined to a substantial degree, so that a sufficient degree of rotational torque may be obtained upon initial excitation of the electromagnets.

The result obtained during an actual running test of the motor according to the first embodiment is shown in Fig.1 to Fig.3.

Pure steel was used as a magnetic material. The magnetic material was 30 mm in thickness and formed to have magnetic teeth of 218 mm diameter and notches of 158 mm diameter. A ferrite magnet was used as a permanent magnet. The magnetic force of the magnet was 1,000 gauss. Electric power of 19.55 watts was applied to the electromagnets at 17 volts and 1.15 amperes. The above conditions produced a rotational speed of 100 rpm, with a torque of 60.52 Kg-cm and an output of 62.16 watts.

Alternative embodiments will be explained below with reference to Fig.6 through Fig.9.

The modified embodiment shown in Fig.6 is similar to the motor presented as the first embodiment as shown in Fig.1 through Fig.3, with the exception that each electromagnet 160 used as part of the stator, comprises an iron core 161 having a pair of legs 162 which extend towards the outer periphery of the magnetic bodies (outer periphery of the magnetic teeth 14b), each of the legs being wound with coils 163. The remaining components are basically identical to those in the motor shown in Fig.1 through Fig.3. In Fig.6, the components similar to those in Fig.1 through Fig.6 are denoted by like reference numerals. It should be noted that each coil 163 is supplied with electricity so that one leg 162 (left-hand side in Fig.6) of each of the iron cores 161 is magnetised to be S-pole which is magnetically opposite to the magnetic pole (N-pole) of the confronting magnetic body 14, while the leg 162 disposed at the other end of each of the iron cores is magnetised to be N-pole which is magnetically opposite to the magnetic pole (S-pole) of the confronting magnetic body 14.
According to this modified embodiment, it is possible to significantly reduce leakage of the magnetic flux created by the electromagnets 160 in gaps each defined between the surfaces of the magnetic poles of the electromagnets 160 and the outer peripheries of the magnetic teeth 14b of the magnetic bodies 14.

An alternative embodiment shown in Fig.7 is similar to the motor shown in Fig.1 through Fig.8, with the exception that: an additional magnetic body 14 is mounted on the rotational output shaft 11 at its axial midpoint; two permanent magnets 130 are freely mounted on the output shaft 11 in the manner shown in Fig.6; and each iron core 165 is provided with three legs 166 positioned at the opposite axial ends and midpoint thereof and extending toward the respective outer periphery of the magnetic bodies, with the legs 166 positioned at axial opposite ends of the respective iron cores 165 being wound with a coil 167, which form electromagnets 164. The remaining components are substantially the same as those in the motor shown in Fig.1 through Fig.3. It should be noted here, that the rotational output shaft 11 may be formed from either magnetic materials or non-magnetic materials.

As shown in Fig.7, each of the coils 167 is supplied with electricity so that the legs 166 positioned at the opposite axial ends of each of the iron cores 164 is magnetised to be S-pole which is magnetically opposite to the magnetic pole (N-pole) of the confronting magnetic body 14. By this, the leg 166 positioned at the midpoint of the iron core 165 is magnetised to be N-pole which is magnetically opposite to the magnetic pole (S-pole) of the confronting magnetic body 14.

In this embodiment, it is also possible, as in the modified embodiment shown in Fig.6, to significantly reduce the leakage of the magnetic flux generated by the electromagnets 164. In addition to this, it is also possible to obtain a rotational torque between the leg 166 positioned at the midpoint of the iron core and the magnetic body 14 positioned at the axial midpoint of the rotational output shaft 11. Accordingly, a higher rotational torque may be obtained with the same amount of electrical consumption, in comparison with the embodiment shown in Fig.6.

A further embodiment shown in Fig.8 is similar to the motor shown in Fig.1 though Fig.3, with the exception that a permanent magnet magnetised in the radial direction, rather than in the axial direction is employed. The permanent magnet 131 of an annular configuration has, for example, N-pole in the outer periphery and S-pole in the inner periphery. The permanent magnet 131 is received in a cavity 14e provided in the respective magnetic body 14 at the intermediate portion thereof as disposed at the opposite axial ends of the rotational output shaft 11. The remaining components are identical to those in the motor shown in Fig.1 though Fig.3. The components identical to those in the motor shown in Fig.1 though Fig.3 are denoted by the same reference numerals. It should be noted that this embodiment may also employ the electromagnets 160 shown in Fig.6.

In this embodiment, the rotational output shaft 11 may be formed from magnetic materials, rather than non-magnetic materials.

Further embodiment shown in Fig.9 is similar to the motor shown in Fig.1 though Fig.3, with three exceptions. The first exception is that a permanent magnet magnetised in the radial direction, rather than in the axial direction is employed. The permanent magnet 131 having an annular configuration has, for example, N-pole in the outer periphery and S-pole in the inner periphery. The permanent magnet 131 is received within a cavity 14e provided in the respective magnetic body 14 at the intermediate portion thereof as disposed at the axial opposite ends of the rotational output shaft 11. The second exception is that an additional magnetic body 14 is disposed at the axial midpoint of the rotational output shaft 11. Finally, the third exception is that the iron core 165 is provided with three legs 166 disposed at the axial opposite ends and the midpoint thereof, respectively, and extending toward the outer periphery of the magnetic body 14, with the legs positioned at the opposite axial ends being wound with respective coils so as to form an electromagnet 164. The remaining components are identical to those in the motor shown in Fig.1 though Fig.3. The components identical to those in the motor shown in Fig.1 though Fig.3 are denoted by the same reference numerals.

As shown in Fig.9, each coil is supplied with electricity so that the legs 166 disposed at opposite axial ends of the iron core 165 are magnetised to be S-pole which is magnetically opposite to the magnetic pole (N-pole) of the confronting magnetic body 14. By this, the leg 166 disposed at the midpoint of the iron core 165 is magnetised to be N-pole which is magnetically opposite to the magnetic pole (S-pole) of the confronting magnetic body 14.

According to the embodiment described above, the rotational output shaft 11 may be formed from magnetic materials rather than non-magnetic materials. With this embodiment, it is possible to obtain the same effect as that obtained with the embodiment shown in Fig.7.

Further the alternative embodiments shown in Fig.10A to Fig.10C are similar to the motor shown in Fig.1 though Fig.3, with the exception that: like the embodiments shown in Fig.8 and Fig.9, an annular permanent magnet 131 is employed which is received in a cavity 140 provided in the central portion 140 of the magnetic body 140, the magnetic body 140 is provided with notches 140a in the outer peripheral portion thereof, so that the gap G
between the magnetic body 140 and the electromagnet becomes gradually broader in the rotational direction of the rotor; and the electromagnets confronting to the gap G with an intermediate width as positioned between the electromagnets confronting to the gap G with a narrower width and the electromagnets confronting to the gap G with a broader width are excited or magnetised in a sequential manner. The remaining components are identical to those in the motor shown in Fig.1 through Fig.3. In Fig.10A to Fig.10C, the components identical to those in Fig.1 through Fig.3 are denoted by the same reference numerals. In this regard, it should be noted that reference numeral 140d indicates magnetic flux passing through the magnetic body 140, so as to illustrate converged condition of such magnetic flux upon excitation of the electromagnets.

In the embodiment just described above, it is possible to rotate the rotor in the counter clockwise direction as viewed in Fig.10A, for example, by exciting the electromagnets 16a, 16d, 16g and 16j, as shown in Fig.10A, then, the electromagnets 16c, 16f, 16i and 16l, as shown in Fig.10B, and then the electromagnets 16b, 16e, 16h and 16k. According to this embodiment, it is possible to obtain a stable rotational force, as well as a higher rotational torque, even though number of rotations is reduced in comparison with the above embodiment.

As shown in Fig.10A, four notches 140a are provided. It should be noted, however, that two or three notches may be provided. It is also possible to attach the magnetic material 140 to the rotational output shaft 11 in an eccentric manner in its entirety, without providing notches 140a.

Fig.11A through Fig.11H are illustrative diagrams showing the operation of the second embodiment of the invention when developed into a linear motor type.

According to this embodiment, a movable body 21 is adapted to be moved along a linear track 20 of a roller conveyor type. The track includes a frame on which a plurality of rollers are positioned in parallel relative to one another. A permanent magnet 22 is mounted on the movable body 21. A magnetic body 23 of a plate-like configuration is fixed to the permanent magnet 22 in the upper surface, so as to form a movable element. It should be noted that magnetic flux from the permanent magnet 22 passes through the magnetic body 23. A plurality of electromagnets 25a, 25b, 25c, 25d and so on are disposed above the movable element 24 along the linear track positioned parallel to each other. These electromagnets constitute a stator 25. Magnetic circuits of the electromagnets 25a, 25b, 25c, 25d, and so on, are independent from one another, so that the electromagnets are magnetised in a sequential manner by means of excitation change-over mechanism (not shown), so as to have a magnetic polarity opposite to the magnetic pole of the permanent magnet 22. Power output shafts 21a are attached to a side surface of the movable body 21.

Operation of the above second embodiment will be explained below.

As shown in Fig.11A, and when no electricity is supplied to the electromagnets, the electromagnets 25a and 25b positioned Just above the movable element 24 are subjected to magnetic field of the permanent magnet 22 (refer to shaded portion in Fig.11A). Thus, such electromagnets magnetically absorb the magnetic body 23, so that the movable element 24 remains to be stopped.

As shown in Fig.11B, and when the electromagnet 25c, positioned ahead with respect to the direction in which the movable element 24 moves, is excited, the magnetic field of the permanent magnet 22 and the magnetic field of the electromagnet 25c interact with each other, so that magnetic flux 23a passing through the magnetic body 23 converges instantaneously toward the electromagnet 25c. By this, the movable element 24 is magnetically absorbed to the electromagnet 25c, so that it is moved along the linear track 20 under the propulsive force acting in the direction in which the width of the magnetic flux 23a becomes broader, i.e., in the direction of an arrow mark shown in Fig.11B.

Fig.11C through Fig.11E illustrate a change in width of the magnetic flux 23a in response to movement of the movable element 24. At the point at which the width of the magnetic flux 23a becomes maximised, i.e., when the forward end of the magnetic material 23 of the movable element 24 is positioned just before passing by the electromagnet 25c, the width of the flux 23 becomes maximised. At this time, magnetic absorption acting between the permanent magnet 22 and the electromagnet 25c becomes maximised, but the propulsive force acting on the movable element becomes zero.

Before the propulsive force acting on the movable element 24 becomes completely zero, i.e., when the forward end of the magnetic body 23 of the movable element 24 is about to pass the electromagnet 25d, the excitation changeover mechanism is actuated so as to stop excitation of the electromagnet 25c and so as to initiate excitation of the electromagnet 25d. Thus, the magnetic flux 23a converges to the electromagnet 25d, as shown in Fig.11F, so that a propulsive force acts on the movable element 24, as in the previous stage.

Subsequently, and in response to further movement of the movable element 24, the width of the magnetic flux 23a is reduced as shown in Fig.11G and Fig.11H, and thus a similar operation will be repeated.
The sequential excitation of the electromagnets, as explained above, causes interaction between the magnetic fields of permanent magnet 22 and electromagnets, whereby a propulsive force is applied to the movable element 24.

It should be noted that, when the magnetic polarity of the permanent magnet 22 confronting the electromagnets is assumed to be N-pole, the electromagnet 25c is magnetised solely to be S-pole, so as to prevent formation of a magnetic circuit by virtue of passage of magnetic flux from the electromagnet 25c through to the adjacent electromagnets 25b and 25d, which formation, if it occurs, tends to cause the polarity of the electromagnets to be N-pole identical to the magnetic pole of the permanent magnet 22. Accordingly, and in a manner similar to that in the first embodiment, no force is generated which tends to interfere with movement of the movable element 24.

In the present invention, a plurality of electromagnets serving as a stator are so arranged that their respective magnetic circuits become independent from one another. The electromagnets are also arranged so that they are solely magnetised or excited to have a magnetic polarity opposite to the magnetic pole of the confronting permanent magnet. Thus, each electromagnet is prevented from becoming magnetised to the same polarity as that of the permanent magnet, which may occur when magnetic flux from a particular electromagnet passes through to adjacent electromagnets. Accordingly, no force will be exerted which tends to interfere with the intended movement of a rotor or a movable element. As a result, electric energy applied to the electromagnets may be efficiently utilised, while, at the same time, magnetic energy contained in the permanent magnet may also be efficiently utilised.

The coils constituting the electromagnets are consistently supplied with electric current with the same polarity, without any change, so that heating of coils may be prevented. Further, it is possible to obviate the problems of vibration and noise which might occur due to a repulsive force being generated when polarity of an electric current supplied to the coils is changed.
This patent covers a device which is claimed to have a greater output power than the input power required to run it.

**ABSTRACT**
A system for generating obvious work motion, or electromagnetic energy (fields of force) or electric current utilising the electromagnetic energy which makes up a matter and results in a greater output of energy, than the initial input of conventional energy means and teachings. A first exemplary embodiment (Fig.1) of the generator uses a contained fluid (117) surrounding a series of aligned magnets (120); while a second exemplary embodiment (Fig.3) uses a special material (201) held stationary between two static magnets (202, 203), the special material having its atoms aligned but maintaining the resulting magnetic field at least substantially within its boundary surface; while third and fourth exemplary embodiments (Fig.5 and Fig.6) utilise a relatively heavy coil (205) made up of relatively large diameter wire of relatively great length and number of loops and length and a relatively small energising current to drive a rotatable permanent magnet (200).
All of the prior art systems are designed accordingly to rigid mathematical laws taught both in physics and electrical engineering which coincide with the hypothesis rigidly accepted by the industrial and scientific communities concerning the Second Law of Thermodynamics (1850).

From the foregoing generally accepted hypothesis it has also been generally accepted and rigidly taught in physics and electrical engineering that the electric current flowing in a closed circuit from a battery, electric generator, etc.

is used up in the mechanical device being operated by this flow of electric current, and that all such electric current producing systems would only put out at most work equal to the work initially put into the system, or in accordance with generally accepted laws stating that a particular electrical generating system was only capable of a given output of energy and no more.

These beliefs have till this date still remained rigid in both the industrial and scientific communities in spite of proof of Einstein's equation $E=mc^2$. Nuclear reactors convert matter into usable electromagnetic energy in the form of heat, which converts water into steam to turn conventional turbines for production of electric current by conventional electrical generating means. This system is extremely inefficient using less than 1% of the energy of the atom and producing a deluge of contaminated materials which has caused a serious problem as to safe disposal.

Additionally, the basic electrical generators is use throughout the world today utilise the principle of causing relative movement between an electrical conductor (for example a rotor) and a magnetic field produced by a magnet or an electromagnet (for example a stator), all using the generally accepted hypothesis that the greater the relative speed or movement between the two are concerned and the more normal or perpendicular the relative movement of the conductive material to the lines of force of the electromagnetic field, the greater will be the efficiency of the prior art electrical generator. Additionally, all of the prior art systems are based on the generally accepted hypothesis that the greater the electrical conductivity of the material being moved through the field, the more efficient will be the electrical generation.

From the foregoing generally accepted hypotheses, it also has been generally accepted that there should always be movement between, for example, the rotor and stator elements, and that only generally accepted electrical conductors, that is materials with high electrical conductivity, will effectively serve in an electrical generation system.

However, in one of the systems (Fig.3) of the present invention, electrical generation can occur with relatively static elements and with materials that are not generally considered to be of high electrical conductivity, although, of course, the present invention likewise can utilise relatively moving elements as well as materials of generally accepted high electrical conductivity, if so desired, as occurs in the systems of the present invention illustrated in Fig.5 and Fig.6.

The prior art has failed to understand certain physical aspects of matter and the makeup of electromagnetic fields, which failure is corrected by the present invention.

**BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF DRAWINGS**

For a further understanding of the nature and objects of the present invention, reference should be had to the following detailed description, taken in conjunction with the accompanying drawings, in which like parts are given like reference numerals and wherein:
Fig. 1 is a schematic, side view in generalised, representational form of a first embodiment of an electrical generator based on the principles and guidelines of the present invention.

Fig. 2 is a close-up view in general form of an electrical charge pick-up element which can be used in the generator illustrated in Fig. 1.

Fig. 3 is a schematic view in generalised, representational form of a second embodiment of an electrical generator based on the principles and guidelines of the present invention.
Fig. 4 is a schematic view in generalised, representational form of the negative and positive particles exhibiting gyroscopic actions which emanate from a magnet to form an electromagnetic field.

Fig. 5 and Fig. 6 are schematic views in generalised, representational form of third and fourth embodiments of a combined electrical generator and motor utilising a static, relatively large coil energised by a relatively low current.
driving a rotatable magnet, wherein in the embodiment of Fig.5 the rotatable magnet is positioned along side of the coil and in the embodiment of Fig.6 the rotatable magnet is positioned within the open core of the coil.

**DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF-PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS:**

**Basic Principles and Guidelines**

In accordance with the principles of the present invention and as generally illustrated in Fig.3, an electromagnetic field 10 comprises flows of quanta or particles 20, 30 of electrical energy flowing from each of the poles 21, 31 of a magnet (or electromagnet) 40 to the other pole, following the "lines of force" 11 of the electromagnetic field. These particles 20, 30, believed to be travelling at the speed of light, are always coming out of one end 21, 31, respectively, of the magnet 40 and going into the other pole 31, 21, respectively, flowing from a relatively high energy source to a low energy source.

These particles 20, 30 are, it is believed, negative and positive charges and have a spin producing a gyroscopic motion and follow the mechanical laws of gyroscopic action.

The mass of each of the particles 20, 30 equals the energy of the particle divided by the speed of light squared. The peripheral speed of the gyroscopic spin of the particles is believed to be the speed of light.

For purposes of illustration only and as a matter of nomenclature, the positive charge particle 20 is going in one direction ("N" to "S") with a clockwise spin, and the negative charge particle 30 is going in the opposite direction with a counter-clockwise spin. Of course, if a particle such as 20 or 30 is flipped around one-hundred-and-eighty degrees, it becomes the opposite charge or type of particle.

The electromagnetic field 10 is thus the orderly flow of the positive and negative charges 20, 30 moving at the speed of light from the north and south poles 21, 31, to the south and north poles 31, 21, respectively, and follow the paths of what is termed in the art as the "lines of force" 11 of the electromagnetic field 10.

As is known from the laws of gyroscopes, a gyroscopic particle or body moves at right angles to the direction of an applied force. Therefore, when a force is applied to the electrical energy particles 20, 30, they will move at right angles to that force.

It should also be noted from known gyroscopic laws that the electrical energy particles 20, 30, when they move with their gyroscopic axis straight into an object, tend to knock that object straight, but, if that object hits the particles at an angle to the axis other than at zero or one-hundred-and-eighty degrees, the particles are moved off at an angle from the straight.

Additionally, it is noted that a magnetic field caused by a current flowing through a wire comes from negative and positive particles, such as 20, 30, with a net flow of such particles going in the same direction but with opposite spin.

In the system and method of the present invention, the foregoing principles serve as guidelines in the present invention.

Reference is further had to pages DD23 through DD27 of the Disclosure Document and to page 8, line 26 through page 11, line 23 of the prior application Serial number 25,907 and its Figures 7 - 10.

From the foregoing disclosures, many different devices, structures, and methods are possible to embody the principles and guidelines of the system of the present invention, which will in general utilise a material or substance or structure to place a force at the proper angle to the gyroscopic particles 20, 30 wherein the particles 20, 30 follow a path or paths which do not cancel one another out, thereby producing electrical current at appropriate outputs for further use or for increasing available potential electrical energy for ultimate use.
First Embodiment (Fig.1)

One possible, exemplary embodiment using the principles of the system of the present invention is schematically shown in the generalised illustration of Fig.1.

As illustrated in Fig.1, there is provided an electrical current generator 100 comprising an outer keeper housing 115 and an inner, pressure containing, closed housing 116 supported therein by insulating supports 105. A vacuum exists in the area 106 between the two housings 115, 116, which vacuum is regulated and induced by means of the vacuum line 104 with its gauge 107 and its control valve 108. The outer housing 115 acts as a keeper for magnetic fields of force, and can be made for example of soft iron, while the vacuum in area 106 prevents the leakage or discharge of static electrical charges which might build up on the exterior of the inner housing 116.

A gas or gas-liquid mixture 117 which may also include solid particles such as for example lead or brass filings, is included within the inner housing 116 surrounding a series of aligned magnets 120 carried by insulating braces or supports 121 and producing a high, combined electromagnetic field. The magnets 120, which can for example be cryogenic magnets, have their "north" and "south" poles aligned (as illustrated by the "Ns" and "Ss") so that their magnetic fields reinforce one another.

The level of the gas or gas-liquid mixture 117 in the housing 116 is regulated by means of the line 122 with its gauge 123 and control valve 124. Electric current output wires 119 are provided and extend down to electrically connect with a wire pick-up system 118 (shown in close-up in Fig.2), which can be for example in the form of very small wires forming a closely spaced network or mesh or of a porous conducting metal body or sheet, located in and extended throughout the fluid 117 in the housing 116.

It is noted that a thimbleful of gas contains a fantastically large number of extremely tiny bodies which are in continuous, random motion moving at extremely high speeds. Hence, the fluid 117 continuously applies a force to the gyroscopic particles (analogous to particles 20, 30 of Fig.3) moving at the speed of light in the high electromagnetic field (produced by the magnets 120) as they continuously collide with each other, which results in the fluid 117 becoming electrically charged. The charged fluid 117 discharges its electrical charge to the pick-up wire network 118 positioned in the fluid, and the electric current so produced and generated is taken off for use via the electrical output wires 119.

As an alternative to having internally contained magnets 120, the electromagnetic field needed in the fluid 117 could be produced by a source located outside of the confines of the fluid 117 as long as a significant field was produced within the fluid 117.
A further exemplary, generalised embodiment utilising the principles of the system of the present invention is shown in schematic form in Fig.3.

The electrical current generator 200 of Fig.3 comprises an extended member 201 of a special material having its atoms especially aligned to produce electric current when positioned in an electromagnetic field but which does not on its own exhibit any substantial magnetic field outside of its boundary surfaces but substantially contains the field within itself. This is in contrast to "magnetic" materials which likewise have atom alignment but which also exhibit or produce a substantial magnetic field in the area surrounding it.

The generator 200 further comprises for example two magnets 202, 203, with their north and south poles facing each other, with the member 201 positioned between them, and with the three elements 201-203 held static with respect to each other. Because of the special nature of the material of the member 201 and its special atom alignment, it will produce a direct current through output line 204 as a result of the gyroscopic actions of the particles of the electromagnetic field 205 produced by the facing magnets 202, 203, on the especially aligned atoms in member 201, which phenomenon occurs even when and even though the member 201 is completely static with respect to the magnets 212, 203.

However, it may be desirable in some applications to allow or produce some relative movement between the generator elements 201-203. The output line 204 extends to an appropriate "load" 206 for using the electrical current generated by the generator 200. A return line 207 completes the circuit back to the member 201.

Based on experiments to date, it is believed that brass and lead are materials which can have their atoms especially aligned to interact with the gyroscopic particles (analogous to particles 20, 30) flowing between the magnets 202, 203 and will substantially contain within their surface boundaries the magnetic field produced by the aligned atoms or molecules.

With respect to producing the proper material with atom alignment for the member 201, it is noted that most materials seem to align their atoms in random directions when formed by conventional methods of production. However, it can be observed that certain materials can be made magnetic by putting the material in an electromagnetic field while cooling from a temperature of around a thousand degrees Centigrade. The magnetism is the result of atom alignment of the material in a given direction (see pages DD19 through DD21 of the Disclosure Document). All materials are affected so as to align parallel or across lines of force when in a powerful electromagnetic-field. Accordingly, if a material while being formed is cooled in an extremely powerful electromagnetic field, the atoms of the material will take a particular alignment. The atom alignment direction could be varied depending on whether the electromagnetic field was aligned with the material or at a ninety degree angle to the material. This would result in the atoms of a material having their particular electromagnetic spin direction primarily along the same axis.

However, merely having atom alignment is not sufficient. Additionally the material for the invention should be such that it exhibits very little if any magnetic field in the area surrounding it. Thus it should be noted that the exterior electromagnetic field that occurs from the atom alignment of the conventional magnet is not duplicated in the material of the invention, because the electromagnetic energy resulting from atom alignment in the material of the invention will be primarily contained within the boundaries of the material It is believed that lead, made superconductive by immersion in a bath of for example liquid helium, is such a special material and could for example serve as the material for member 201.

This then results in having a material which would place a force at the proper angle on the gyroscopic type particles moving in the electromagnetic field so as to cause an EMF to be produced even when the material was sitting still. (See also first paragraph of page DD23 and paragraphs four, A through E, of page DD19 of the Disclosure Document).

It is believed that high, contained pressures, as well as other methods, can also probably produce atom alignment as the atoms of a conductor or any material will react to sufficient external force. (See first paragraph of page DD35 of the Disclosure Document). This possibility is also indicated by the fact that hard knocks or impacts will demagnetise a magnet.

The proper procedure of material production in achieving atom alignment with internally contained fields of force will cause the controlled release of electrical energy in electromagnetic fields of force when the material of the invention is placed in the lines of force of the electromagnetic field.

-Third and Fourth Embodiments (Fig.5 and Fig.6)
A. Related Principles

1. Numerous scientific tests and experiments made by the inventor indicate that the magnetic field resulting from an electrical current flowing through a conductor is the result of atom alignment within that conductor at an extremely high speed with an ability to reverse atom alignment just as rapidly without the magnetic hysteresis associated with conventional materials considered "magnetic." Prior to this time it has been believed and taught by the scientific community that the magnetic field associated with an electric current carrying conductor was the result of the electric current itself and not of the conductor material, for example copper, which was considered to be "nonmagnetic." Even the inventor was influenced and misled by these teachings and attempted to mechanically explain and justify the prior teachings, as is seen on page DD-27 of the Disclosure Document which is an important part of this patent application.

However, as taught in the present invention, what mechanically happens is that the gyroscopic particles making up the electric current moving in a conductor interact with the electromagnetic makeup of the atoms of the conductor, causing them to align extremely rapidly, thereby then releasing some of their electromagnetic make-up in the form of a magnetic field exactly as explained in great detail for conventional magnetic materials in the Disclosure Document.

This is easily proven and understood by taking for example, a size 14-gauge conductor one foot long, winding it into a coil and connecting the coil to a meter and a 1.5 volt battery. The total current registered on the meter will be 1.5 amps and the strength of the magnetic field created from the short conductor will be extremely small. Next, the same type of test is run again but with the length of the conductor increased to for example two thousand feet, but still in a coil. The total current registered on the meter will now be considerably less, but the strength of the magnetic field given off from the conductor will now be extremely large!

This shows that the magnetic field is not from the electric current flow, but is the result of the interactions of the gyroscopic particles which make up the electric current interacting with the atoms of the conductor! This causes the gyroscopic particles of the electric current not to be able to make the circuit back to the battery so quickly, and therefore the meter shows less current used.

The magnetic field is the result of the atom alignment of the conductor. The more atoms in a conductor (up to a point), the stronger the magnetic field produced from a given amount of electric current input. Again, this is proven by changing the diameter of the conducting wires, and, with the lengths being the same, the strongest magnetic field will result from the conductor with the largest diameter. The reason for this is that there are more conducting atoms to interact with the gyroscopic particles of the electric current moving through the conductor, which results in a greater number of conducting atoms being aligned, thereby then releasing some of their electromagnetic make-up, exactly as has been explained in great detail in the Disclosure Document as being possible for all matter.

If the magnetic field produced was strictly based on the amount of current going through a conductor, as taught in the prior art, then the strongest magnetic field would result when current went through a large diameter and short length conductor, because the current flow through the entire circuit is greatest at that time. However, experiments prove that the shorter a conductor is made, the greater the current flow through the entire circuit and the less strength of the magnetic field surrounding that conductor. The longer that same conductor is made (up to a point), the greater the magnetic field surrounding the total mass of the conductor and the less current that makes the complete circuit of the entire system. Reason: more atoms!

2. Numerous scientific tests and experiments made by the inventor also indicate that the magnetic field created when an electric current moves in a conductor does not use up measurable energy when performing obvious or non-obvious work, force or power. This is true no matter how strong or how immense the power of the motor or electromagnets is.

Reason: the magnetic field coming from the conductor is the result of extremely quick atom alignment within that conductor. Therefore the energy in the magnetic field is the energy that makes up the atoms of the conductor! This energy is literally Einstein's equation of E=MC2, and therefore the energy is believed to be moving at the speed of light.

This energy use cannot be measured by today's measuring instruments. This has been explained in great detail in the Disclosure Document and is believed to be true of all matter!

3. The same is true for the electric current that comes from a conventional battery. The electromagnetic energy coming from the battery is the energy that makes up the atoms of the material of the battery! Again this energy use is not measurable by today's measuring instruments. Electric meters of all types are simply mechanical
devices which measure the amount of electric current that comes into that instrument. They do not measure the amount of mass that has been converted into electromagnetic energy.

Present teachings in science state that the electric energy flowing from a battery is used up in the device operated by that flow of electric current. This is not true at all! The electromagnetic energy released from the atom makeup of a battery has a relatively infinite capacity to do obvious work, force, or power.

This is easily proven even with a small motor and a 1.5 volt battery. With a battery connected to motor to operate it and with a meter to take readings, the motor is then physically stopped from turning by physically holding or restraining the shaft. At that moment the motor is performing no obvious work, force or power, but the meter will register a greater flow of current. The magnets of the motor can be taken out and the reading will still be the same. If the electric current was being used to operate the motor, the meter would register more current when the motor was running.

The electric current not only will operate the motor but, once it flows through the complete circuit back to the battery, it also does additional work based on Faraday's Laws of Electrolysis within the battery itself. What has happened is that the electromagnetic energy released from the atoms of the material of the battery once they have completed the circuit, then take a "short cut" and move large pieces of the mass of one material of the battery over to the other material of the battery. The inventor has stated and shown throughout the Disclosure Document that the effect of gravity was the non-obvious effect of electromagnetic energy. Once the materials of the battery have combined, the extreme desire for the two materials to merge is physically reduced. These materials will attempt this merger anyway possible and, if the electric current initially released from a battery is not allowed by mechanical means to complete the circuit back within itself, the electromagnetic energy then in the mechanical means will perpetually (in a relative, theoretical sense) perform obvious work, force or power. The reason: the force which initiated this flow of current (electromagnetic make-up of atoms of material) is constant, similar to hydraulic pressure, with the noticeable exception that it is moving it is believed at the speed of light and will interact with the electromagnetic make-up of the atoms of other materials, causing them to release some of their electromagnetic make-up in the form of a magnetic field. This then multiples the capacity for doing obvious or non-obvious work, force or power, which can then react with another conducting coil or with the electromagnetic energy within the magnetic field of a conventional magnet and multiply this effect even further, and on and on and on for a relatively unlimited source of energy.

The same is true in not letting the current get back to a conventional generator. If a mechanical means is set up so that the electric current is "trapped," without completing a circuit, the gyroparticles of the current have a capacity for continuous work without increasing the power input into the generator system. However, if the circuit is complete and the electric current moving in the system does absolutely no obvious work, force or power, the gyroscopic particles making up the current on getting back to the generator will then increase the need for more power input into the system. Reason: the opposing effect of magnetic fields as defined in Lentz's Law. This law is simply an observation of this effect, which before now has never been fully understood.

4. Numerous scientific tests and experiments made by the inventor also indicate that there is a correlation between the electromagnetic spin orientation of the atoms of non-conductors, semi-conductors, and conductors, and the varying results achieved with an electric current in attempting to move through these materials, or when moving these materials through a magnetic field attempting to induce electric current. The property of resistance to electric current movement is generally speaking the same type factor already explained above for electric current producing a magnetic field when moving in a conductor.

The gyroscopic particles in a moving electric current interact with the atoms of the material through which the current is moving. Each atom can efficiently only interact with sun exact maximum amount of electric current, and, if exceeded, there is an interruption of orderly movement. Then the angle of release of the gyroscopic particles from the atoms are such that the electromagnetic release from those atoms are in the form of heat, exactly as explained in great detail in the Disclosure Document. This effect is easily observed by the fact that resistance decreases relative to an increase of the cross-section of the material. Reason: simply, more atoms within that given area, and, for a fixed input of electric current, there are more atoms to receive and interact efficiently with the gyroparticles making up the electric current.

Again the same is true for resistors designed for deliberately producing heat. Such resistors are not materials which are considered good conductors of electric current. It is stated and shown in great detail in the Disclosure Document that the electromagnetic spin orientation of the atoms of a non-conductor are different from that of conductor atoms, and therefore different results will occur from the same inputs of electromagnetic energy.

This is easily seen by the fact that, in a resistor, for a given amount of electric current input, the heat release increases as the diameter increases. What that means is that the property of resistance has decreased. On a conductor it is just the opposite. If the diameter is increased the resistance is decreased, but so is heat release. Again, this is an indication that the gyro particles in the electric current movement interact with each atom of the
material. This same effect shows up again in conventional electrical induction from a conductor interacting with a magnetic field. Experiments by the inventor have indicated that the property of conventional induction is the result of the same property of resistance.

If one increases the diameter of a conductor, lengths staying the same, one decreases the amount of electric current produced relative to the total number of atoms within the conductors under consideration. Or, if one takes a given number of wires of the same diameter and length, and moves a magnet across them, the current produced will be considerably less, than if one takes the same diameter wire, but only one wire, and increases its length considerably and then forms it into a coil forming the same number of wires on any one side and then moves the same magnet across only one side of that coil, the electric current generated will then be considerably greater. Reason: the property of resistance. This is the mechanical effect within the gyroscopic electromagnetic make-up and orientation of the atoms of all materials which have the mechanical ability to perform a given task efficiently up to a point concerning input of additional electromagnetic energy and then mechanically causes varying results once this threshold is exceeded.

This and all the other thoughts and innovations in this and the previous disclosures of the previous applications and the Disclosure Document previously put forth show that there are many different mechanical ways to release a relatively unlimited source of energy from electromagnetic energy which makes up all matter and which results from this invention.

B. Working Prototypes

Fig.5 and Fig.6 illustrate rough, working prototypes of this aspect of the invention. These embodiments are only relatively inefficient prototypes built by hand for the purpose of demonstrating the invention. It should be self-evident that the prototypes, by various mechanical means and designs, can easily be made extremely efficient and the illustrated embodiments are being presented only for general, representational purposes.

As is illustrated in Fig.5, there is provided a combined electrical current generator and an electromagnetic motor comprising a rotatably mounted, permanent magnet 200, a battery 201, brushes and commutator 202, bearings 203 and power, mounting shaft 204, and a first, primary, magnetic producing coil 205 and a second, secondary electric producing coil 206. The two coils 205, 206 are juxtaposed together in parallel disposition with concurrent core centre-lines, with the magnet 200 positioned alongside of coil 205 at or near its core centre-line with the rotational axis of the shaft 204 positioned orthogonally to the centre-line.

In the prototypes a very small battery 201, for example, size "N", of 1.5 volts is used. When the circuit is completed, the battery 201 converts an immeasurable amount of its mass into electrical current (gyroscopic particles moving at the speed of light) which goes out through the communicator and brushes 202, and then enters magnetic producing conductor coil 205 made, for example, from insulated 14-gauge or 15-gauge copper wire, with the total weight of the coil 205 being for example seventy to ninety pounds. This causes the atoms of coil 205 to align extremely fast then releasing some of their electromagnetic make-up (gyroscopic particles) in the form of a magnetic field. This field then interacts with the gyroscopic particles making up the magnetic field coming from the atoms of the material of the permanent magnet 200.

This causes magnet 200 to attempt to align its magnetic field movement with the magnetic field movement coming from the atoms of coil 205, resulting in rotation of magnet 200 and the shaft 204 to which it is attached. This then changes the position of the commutator and brushes 202 relative to each other's initial positions, which then causes the electric current coming from battery 201 to be going in the opposite direction into coil 205, causing the
atoms of coil 205 to extremely quickly reverse their alignment and the polarity of their magnetic field which they are emitting. The reversed field then interacts again with the magnetic field of permanent magnet 200, causing it to further rotate.

This process is then continuously repeated, producing continuous rotation of the shaft 204 which can be used as a source of motive power in many different ways. A power belt wheel 207 for example using a continuous "V" belt is illustrated as a general representation of this motive power source for producing useful, obvious work. In a prototype test run with a small 1.5 volt, type "N" battery, the shaft 204 and the magnet 200 - rotated at a high speed for approximately twelve hours before running down. By improving the particular design features of the prototype and by using longer lasting batteries, the rotation time of the shaft 204 can be greatly increased to a theoretical point approaching "perpetual" for all practical purposes. At the same time the alternating magnetic field produced by the coil 205 induces into coil 206 electrical induction, which then causes coil 206 to produce an alternating current across its "load," which current can be made to exceed the conventional output of the battery 201. The battery source 201 can be replaced when needed.

It is very important to understand that, the longer the length of the conducting wire in coil 205, the stronger will be the magnetic field produced and the less electric current that will complete the circuit and get back into the battery and destroy the mechanical source of the electrical current. This effect can be increased further by increasing the diameter of the conducting wire in coil 205 and then greatly increasing its length still further in the coil.

Reason: The gyroscopic particles making up the electric current interact with the atoms of coil 205. The more atoms in coil 205, relative to it’s length, the longer it takes the gyroparticles of the electric current to influence them and exit from the other end of the coil. It is then easily seen that if the direction of the current flowing into coil 205 is then reversed, this then further increases the lag time. Reason: The gyroscopic particles have inertia and are believed to be moving at the speed of light and they are interacting with the gyroscopic particles making up the atoms of the conducting coil 205. These atoms also have inertia, and when the direction of current in coil 205 is reversed, the incoming current then collides with the current already in coil 205 going in the opposite direction.

This causes a brief hesitation during the time the current already in the coil is being forced to reverse its direction, thereby then reversing the direction of the atoms within coil 205 which have already been influenced to become aligned. This causes a constant force throughout the circuit, but does not allow very much current to get back into the battery 201 to destroy the mechanical means which initiated the release of electric current in the first place.

Therefore, it should be further understood that, the faster the current direction reverses into the coil 205, the more efficiently the matter of battery 201 is converted into 2 pure electrical energy (E=MC^2), without destruction of the mechanical situation that initiates the electrical current release.

It is also important to understand that, the stronger the magnetic field coming from the mass of magnet 200, the greater will be its rotational speed. Additionally, the greater the magnetic field coming from the mass of coil 205, the greater will be the rotational speed of magnet 200, and, up to a point, the greater the electric current input from battery 201, the greater the rotational speed of magnet 200.

Reason: the greater the electric current flow into coil 205, the greater will be the percentage of the atoms making up coil 205 that are aligned. This probably has the same relationship as does achieving atom alignment in conventional magnetic materials. Once complete atom alignment is reached in coil 205, no amount of current will cause those atoms to increase the strength of the magnetic field emitting from those atoms.

Therefore, it should be clear that, for a given input of electric current from battery 201, the most efficient design is one in which the most atoms of coil 205 are influenced to atom alignment by that given electric current, which means increasing the diameter and the length of the conducting wire of coil 205 to the point that the strength of the magnetic field produced is sufficient to cause rotation of the magnet 200 to a speed that allows none or at least very little of the electric current which initially comes from the battery 201 to complete the circuit and get back into battery 201 and destroy or reduce the mechanical effect which induced the conversion of the matter of battery 201 in electric current in the first place. Again this desired effect can be increased by increasing the strength of the magnetic field given off by the atoms of the permanent magnet 200.
In the second prototype embodiment of Fig. 6, the structure and operation of the prototype is substantially identical to that of Fig. 5 with the major exception being that the magnet 300/shaft 304 elements (and related sub-elements 302, 303 and 307) are positioned inside of and within the core of the primary coil 305, as compared to the placement of the magnet 200/shaft 204 elements next to and along side of the coil 205 of Fig. 5. Therefore, for brevity, a detailed description of the elements of Fig. 6 will not be repeated, but it is noted that the corresponding and analogous elements and sub-elements are similarly numbered in Fig. 5 and Fig. 6.

It is also important to again stress the fact that the prototype designs shown are presented simply to prove the correctness of the invention, and it should be clear that the invention can be made extremely more efficient by utilising all of the magnetic field produced by coil 205 and designing the magnet 200 of a shape and strength that efficiently interacts with the majority of the magnetic fields from coil 205. The illustrated prototypes is relatively highly inefficient in this regard, but even so, the results of the invention itself greatly exceed the prior art as to use of electric current from whatever source and interaction with an electric motor or whatever work was conventionally performed.

The applicant feels it is very important to again stress, in building many varying designs of this invention, consideration must be given to the fact that the Energy in the field of force of any type magnet is the Energy that makes up the Atoms of the material from which it comes! This Energy is a real Entity with, it is believed, a gyroscopic action. It is literally Einstein's Equation of E=MC\(^2\) and it is believed that this Energy moves at the speed of light and makes up all Matter. And that this Energy has a constant pressure effect back to the Atoms of the material from which it came, similar to hydraulic pressure. This effect is additionally more fully understood by stating the following results obtained from experimentation by the applicant in the process of this invention.

a) When the system is initially attached to a 1.5 volt size N Battery 201 or 301 and the magnet 200 or 300 and related rotation entities are placed close to or in the centre of coil 205 or 305, the following results are observed:

If the electric current produced in coil 206 (306) is then fed back into coil 205 (305) in accordance with proper polarity, the rotation speed of magnet 200 or 300 will then accelerate. If fed back into coil 205 (305) in wrong polarity, the rotation speed of magnet 200 (300) will slow down.

This proves that the total force from coil 205 (305) interacting with the magnet 200 (300) is greater when the electrical energy from coil 206 (306) is fed back into coil 205 (305), then when only the initial electric energy from battery 201 (301) is fed into coil 205 (305)! When two or three batteries are electrically connected together in series, so as to create for example three or four and a half volts of electrical input, this effect is multiplied. Remember, up to a point, the greater the electrical input, the greater the percentage of atom alignment within coil 205 (305).

This further proves that the electric current produced in coil 206 (306) is a result of the gyroscopic particles of Energy released from the magnetic fields which came from the Electromagnetic make-up of the atoms of coil 205 (305), and is not part of the initial Electrical Energy released from the atoms making up the materials of battery 201 (301)! The coil 206 (306) can be taken out of the system, or its electrical current fed away from the system, and the rotational speed of the magnet 200 (300) will not observably change. However, the rotational speed of magnet 200 (300) will noticeably change when the electric current from coil 206 (306) is fed back into coil 205 (305)!

Now a different result:
b) When the electric current from battery 201 (301) becomes weaker to the point that the magnetic field coming from coil 205 (305) has weakened and shrunk allowing the magnetic field of the rotating magnet 200 (300) to expand and then noticeably induce electric current into coil 206 (306) and into coil 205 (305), then reverse results are observed. When the magnetic field from the coil 205 (305) is large, then the magnetic field from magnet 200 (300) is retained! If coil 206 (306) is then short circuited, the rotation of magnet 200 (300) will noticeably slow down.

If electric current from coil 206 (306) is fed back into coil 205 (305) in wrong polarity, the rotation of the magnet 200 (300) will stop. If fed back into coil 205 (305) in correct polarity, the rotation of the magnet 200 (300) will slow down. At that point, the rotation of the magnet 200 (300) will not accelerate, no matter how connected!

These results show that, at this time, the magnetic field from magnet 200 (300) noticeably induces a current in coils 206 (306) and 205 (305) which opposes the rotation of the magnet 200 (300). This effect has already been mechanically explained, and it has been shown that Lenz’s Law was simply an observation of that mechanical explanation. These results further demonstrate that the expanding and collapsing magnetic fields from coil 205 (305) and 206 (306) do not noticeably effect each other detrimentally.

Because the resulting magnetic fields from all the coils are the results of fluctuating atom alignment within the coils! Remember, the gyroscopic energy particles making up the magnetic fields have a hydraulic pressure effect back to the atoms from which they came. Also remember that the atoms making up the material of the permanent magnet 200 (300) are stationary as to atom alignment direction! Therefore, the pressure effect resulting from an opposing field which the magnet 200 (300) induced, is immediate. As is Hydraulic Pressure.

However, the magnetic field emitted from the atoms of coil 205 (305) relative to induction into the atoms of coil 206 (306) are fluctuating and out of step, so to speak, and therefore, in harmony with each other. The pressure effect from the induction of coil 205 (305) into coil 206 (306) is an action and reaction effect which reinforces the flipping action of the atoms of coil 205 (305) and back into the atoms of coil 206 (306).

This action is again seen when the invention is hooked into one-hundred-fifteen volt alternating current, and battery 201 (301) is not used. The magnet 200 (300) will not rotate even though the magnetic field from coil 205 (305) is strong and is alternating. Reason: The fluctuating magnetic field is so fast, that the inertia mass of magnet 200 (300) can not get started in one direction before the magnetic field from coil 205 (306) has reversed, thereby, causing magnet 200 (300) to vibrate only microscopically at sixty cycles per second. And, if a sixty watt bulb is hooked into the system of coil 205 (306), it will only light dimly. And there is a lag time of two to three seconds before it lights even dimly.

If then coil 206 (306) is hooked to a meter, there is a reading of forty-nine volts, and if the meter is replaced by another sixty watt bulb it will light only extremely dimly. However, the sixty watt bulb hooked to coil 205 (305) will now become noticeably brighter! This again shows that the action and reaction results of the atoms of the coils are not noticeably detrimental to each other. Because of the lag time (out of step, so to speak), resulting in reinforcing the flipping atom alignment of the coils.

From this further explanation of the invention it is seen that desirable results may be obtained by the following:

For example, in Fig.6 the magnet 300 may be of a design and/or be located at a distance from the inside diameter of coil 305 and coil 306, whereby the majority of the magnetic field from the magnet 300 does not cut the conducting loops of coil 305 or 306. Yet the alternating magnetic field produced by coil 305 should efficiently have the majority of its gyroscopic particles interacting with the majority of the gyroscopic particles making up the magnetic field of the permanent magnet 300, but not directly reacting with the atoms making up coil 305, or magnet 300!

When the magnetic lines of force of the magnet 200 (300) cross at right angles with the conducting wires of coil 205 (305), 206 (306), a braking action is incurred. It should be noted that, as the inner diameter of coil 205 (305) increases, the percentage of time of braking effect decreases.

Along this same line of instruction, the commutator segments 202 (302) can be made of a large diameter and the area of brushes made small, whereby, when the brushes cross over the gaps in the commutator segments, there will be no short circuit at any time directly back to the battery 201 (301).

By combining the slip rings and brushes (the slip rings can be made of a small diameter) to the side or sides of the brushes and commutator segments 202 (302), then battery 201 (301) does not have to rotate with magnet 200 (300).
The 14-gauge and 15-gauge insulated copper wire weighing seventy and ninety pounds respectively (31.5 kilograms and 40.5 kilograms) used for the motor coil 205 (305) and the generator coil 206 (306), respectively, in the first hand-made prototypes of the embodiments of Fig.5 and Fig.6, for demonstration purposes only, come in standard buckets of varying weights from wholesale outlets.

It was then wound in coils as shown, and, as taught, the more conducting wire used, the better the results. The magnets 200 and 300 were each initially about a 2.5 inch (6.25 centimetre) cube and can be any size and strength desired.

In a further, rough, hand-built, demonstration, working prototype of the invention of the type illustrated in Fig.6, the primary or motor coil 305 was made of 5-gauge copper wire in a single, continuous wire, weighing approximately 4,100 pounds (1,845 kilograms) with a coil loop diameter of 4.5 feet (135 centimetres), while the secondary or generator coil 306 was made of 24-gauge copper wire in a single continuous wire weighing approximately 300 pounds (135 kilograms) with the same, approximate coil loop diameter of 4.5 feet (135 centimetres), with both coils 305, 306 coincidentally forming a cylinder of approximately 30 inches (75 centimetres) in length. The coils 305, 306 were built around a cylindrical, fiberglass core body of approximately 200 pounds (90 kilograms) having a vertical, longitudinal centre-line axis.

The rotating magnet 300 was made up of six, separate, parallel cylindrical magnetic columns spaced and disposed about the periphery of a hollow cylindrical fiberglass surface of approximately twenty inch (fifty centimetres) in diameter. Each column was 30 inches 75 cm.) long and was composed of a stack of 70, individual ceramic ring magnets in disc form as made by Jobmaster Magnets of Randallstown, Maryland, 21133, U.S.A. Each disc had a thickness of seven-sixteenths of an inch (1.09375 centimetres), an inner diameter of 1 inch (2.5 cm.) and an outer diameter of 4 inches (10 cm.). The discs were stacked and secured together in 4 inch (10 cm.) diameter fiberglass tubes longitudinally mounted on the inner surface of the twenty inch (fifty cm.) diameter fiberglass cylinder.

The composite magnet 300 had a total weight of approximately 400 pounds (180 kilograms) and a total length of 30 inches (75 cm.) and an approximate diameter of 20 inches (50 cm.).

The magnet 300 was mounted for rotation on a horizontal shaft 304 extending across the hollow core of the coils 305, 306 crossing through the centre point of the longitudinal centre-line of the cylinder and orthogonally to the longitudinal centre-line of the magnet 300 for rotation within the open centre area of the cylindrically disposed coils 305, 306 with the longitudinal centre-lines of the coils being vertically disposed.

With a D.C. battery source 301 of two 12 volt lantern batteries and seventeen 6 volt lantern batteries all in series (totalling 126 volts), a measured voltage of 126 volts and a measured current of 99 milliamps in the primary coil 305 were noted. Concurrently a voltage reading of 640 volts and an amperage measurement in excess of 20 milliamps were noted in the secondary or generating coil 306, with the magnet 300 rotating at a speed of 120 revolutions per minute (rpm). Thus the system was outputting and producing in the generating coil 306 usable electrical energy in excess of 102% of that being inputted in the motor coil 305! This excess useful electrical energy, of course, is in addition to the further useful mechanical energy available at the exemplary drive take-off 307 on the rotating shaft 304, on which the 400 pound, 30 inch long magnet 300 was rotating at 120 rpm!

Thus the invention, by utilising the energy of the gyroscopic particles in the magnetic field, produces a greater energy output than the energy input into the system, thus producing results beyond presently accepted scientific teachings of the world.

This prototype achieves exactly what has already been described in great detail in applicant's prior patent applications. There was simply used in this prototype a stronger magnet and a larger diameter conducting wire of great length, that has a considerably greater number of atoms aligned when current is put into the system, and used a greater number of atoms in the generator coil of fine diameter conducting wire.

While the results of the energy released from this particular prototype is highly impressive to others, the applicant still has only scratched the surface of the energy that can be released using the principles of the present invention.

Again, as has already been stressed, the most efficient design, is one in which the least amount of input of current causes the greatest amount of atom alignment.

These data do not constitute any departure from applicant's previous work, but is only to further document that which has already been stressed in the prior patent applications.
Varying the D.C. voltage for the battery source 301 shows that obvious efficiency will continue to rise as the voltage input goes up! Also, the leverage factor advantage of the invention, combined with the inertia of the 400 pound magnet 300 rotating at 120 rpm (even while causing the electrical generator to put out over 100% of energy input) proves the invention to be greatly over 100% efficient even at this slow rpm.

It is contemplated that the next prototype will use super-conducting type material for the coil 305 with a magnet 300 having a magnetic field strength comparable to that of cryogenic-type magnet relative to percentage of atom alignment or size. This will result in the size of the device being much smaller and yet with the available work output being much greater than the prototype just described. Reason: The most efficient type design is one whereby the least amount of current input into the motor coil produces the greatest atom alignment of said motor coil and having rotatable magnet also comparable in strength, relative to size.

The invention can be made without using the coil 206 (306) and producing just useful mechanical energy.

Coil 206 (306) can be merged or wound with coil 205 (305).

The magnet 200 (300) can be an electromagnet, a permanent magnet, a cryogenic magnet or any magnet.

The design of magnet 200 (300) can create a strong but retained magnetic field.

The design of coil 205 (305) can be used to further retain the magnetic field of magnet 200 (300).

Alternating current (A.C.) can be used in place of the direct current (D.C.) battery 201 (301), if the magnet 200 (300) is designed accordingly.

The coils 205 (305) and 206 (306) may be made up of several coils rather than a single coil.

The magnet 200 (300) may be made up of several individual magnets rather than from just a single magnet.

From the foregoing it should be understood that, unlike the teachings of the prior art, the following is desired in the design of the coil 205/305 under the principles of the present invention:

a) Current initially flowing into and through the coil should be small compared to the energy output of the system;
b) A relatively large diameter wire or its equivalent is used for the coil;
c) A relatively large number of coil loops or coils is used;
d) A relative long, continuous length of coil wire or its equivalent is used; and
e) The greatest magnetism for a given mass of the magnet 200/300 is desired but may be designed so that the magnetic lines of force will not cut the coils at a right angle.

The present invention applies to any mechanical device which is operated by electrical energy. In accordance with the principles of the present invention, the mechanical device should be designed wherein the electric current as much as is feasible cannot get back to its source, but the circuit is completed whereby the "pressure force" is constant throughout the system.

What has been invented, built and disclosed is an invention of immense importance to the well-being of the entire world. There will be many devices built from what has been shown and taught. It should now be known that all matter is made up of electromagnetic energy and that there are many mechanical ways to release this energy, as has been stated throughout the five prior, related patent applications hereof and the Disclosure Document. All of these future developments will be as a result of the present invention which - releases energy above and beyond conventional energy release mechanisms, prior to this invention.

Some of the basic approaches of the invention are outlined below:

1. Any device which utilises a means by which the electric current (electromagnetic energy) is retained within a member or members outside of the source of said original electric current and then, as a result thereof, is capable of producing a continuous electromagnetic motion or current if so desired beyond present scientific teachings.

2. Any device which releases the electromagnetic energy make up of matter to such an impressive degree as does this invention that it defies several of the present accepted laws of physics and electrical engineering as of this time.

3. That the energy release is noticeably higher and in some cases more controllable than the conventional means of energy release of this time.
Because many varying and different embodiments may be made within the scope of the inventive concept taught here, and because many modifications may be made in the embodiments detailed here in accordance with the descriptive requirements of the law, it is to be understood that the details given above are to be interpreted as illustrative and not in any limiting sense.

**CLAIMS**

1. A usable energy generation system, comprising:

   usable energy output means for making available for use the usable energy generated in the system; and
   usable energy generation means associated with said output means and designed to take into account the reaction to a force of the gyroscopic type energy particles and to utilise the gyroscopic type energy particles moving in a magnetic field for producing usable energy of an amount greater than the amount of energy input.

2. The system of Claim 1, wherein said generation means includes structural means for placing a force at an angle to the gyroscopic particles causing the particles to follow paths having a net directional effect, producing electric current flow.

3. The system of Claim 2, wherein said structural means comprises magnetic means and a closed housing associated therewith containing a fluid in the magnetic field produced by said magnetic means, said fluid becoming charged as a result of its interaction with the gyroscopic type energy particles making up said magnetic field.

4. The system of Claim 3, wherein said magnetic means is a series of aligned magnets positioned centrally within said housing but electrically insulated therefrom.

5. The system of Claim 3, wherein there is included a further, keeper housing completely surrounding said closed housing and electrically insulated therefrom, said keeper housing tending to keep and concentrate the magnetic field produced by said magnetic fields within it.

6. The system of Claim 3, wherein said output means includes a network of metallic surfaces immersed in said fluid to pick up the electrical charges on said fluid.

7. The system of Claim 2, wherein said structural means comprises a member having its atoms aligned to produce a net magnetic field which is at least substantially contained within the surface boundaries of said member.

8. The system of Claim 7, wherein said member is positioned in operative association to at least one magnet, and said member and said magnet are held static with respect to one another.

9. The system of Claim 1, wherein:

   The usable energy generation system comprises an electrical energy generation system; said usable energy output means comprises an electrical power output means; and said usable energy generation means comprises electrical energy generation means.

10. The system of Claim 1, wherein:

    the usable energy generation system comprises usable motion generation system; said usable energy output means comprises usable motion output means; and said usable energy generation means comprises usable motion generation means.

11. The system of Claim 1, wherein said generation means includes:

    a magnetic device;
    a source of electrical energy;
    complete electrical circuit means between said magnetic device and said source of electrical energy for producing an alternating electrical current potential; and
    current retarding means for retarding the flow of current through said device back to said source to the greatest extent practical, producing a relatively small and preferably negligible current flow through said source.

12. The system of Claim 11, wherein said magnetic device includes at least one relatively large coil of wire having a relatively large number of turns of wire of a relatively large diameter and a relatively great length.

13. The method of producing usable energy utilising a magnetic field system, comprising the following steps:

   a. providing a structure interacting with a magnetic field; and
b. arranging said structure to utilise the energy of the gyroscopic type particles in the magnetic field to generate an electrical current in said structure, or usable motion from said system, or both, and results in producing a greater energy output than energy input into the system.

14. The method of Claim 13, wherein there is included in step "b" the further step of arranging said structure to place a force at an angle to the gyroscopic particles cause the particles to follow paths having a net directional effect, producing electric current flow, without any normal, visible movement taking place in the system.

15. The method of increasing the availability of usable electrical energy or usable motion, or both, comprising the steps of:
   a. providing a magnetic device for producing usable electrical energy or usable motion, which device includes a material through which electrical current can interact producing a magnetic field which interacts with a separate mass having a magnetic field, and further providing a source of electrical energy such as for example a battery, generator, or any other;
   b. providing a complete electrical circuit between said magnetic device and said source of electrical energy and producing from said source to said device an alternating electrical current potential; and
   c. retarding the flow of current through said device back to said source to the greatest extent practical, producing a relatively small and preferably negligible current flow through said source and resulting in electrical energy output, or usable motion output, being a greater energy output than energy input into the device.

16. The method of Claim 15, wherein step "c" is achieved at least in part by the step of providing in said device a relatively large coil or coils of wire having a relatively large number of turns of wire of a relatively large diameter and a relatively great length.

17. The method of Claim 15, wherein step "c" is achieved at least in part by the step of utilising a means by which the electric current is retained within at least one member outside of the source of said original electric current and then, as a result thereof, is capable of producing a continuous electromagnetic motion or current.

18. The method of claim 15, wherein there is included the step of providing a separate magnetic source positioned so that its magnetic lines of force avoid significantly cutting the material through which the electrical energy flows avoiding a braking effect which would retard the desired motion of said magnetic source.

19. The method of Claim 15, wherein step "a" is achieved by said material being a super conducting material and said separate magnetic mass is at least equivalent to a cryogenic magnet.

20. The method of Claim 15, wherein step "a" is achieved by the step of having said material a conducting material and said separate magnetic mass of any desired configuration or strength or type.

21. The method of increasing the availability of usable electrical energy, or usable motion, or both, comprising the steps of:
   a. providing a magnetic device which has a material mass into which an electrical current is introduced, by any desired means, which results in causing pertinent atom alignment, within said material mass, thereby releasing some of the electromagnetic energy making up the material mass, in the form of a magnetic field, which then causes the gyroscopic type energy particles of said magnetic field to then interact with the gyroscopic type energy particles making up a magnetic field coming from the atoms of a different material mass; and
   b. having the magnetic device then cause a release of electrical current or usable motion or both through at least one power outlet and resulting in producing a greater energy output than energy input into the device.

22. The method of Claim 21, wherein the material mass or masses are made of a material or substance that allows for extremely fast atom alignment, without the delay, or conventional degree of hysteresis losses normally associated with conventional iron atom alignment.

23. A device which increases the availability of usable electrical energy or usable motion, or both, by causing the atoms of a material or materials to release some of their magnetic energy makeup in the form of a magnetic field, consisting of gyroscopic type energy particles which make up the atoms of the material from which the magnetic field comes; and
   a properly designed mechanism, or power output arrangement being place to utilise the energy of said gyroscopic type energy particles, causing a release of energy output greater than energy input without producing radioactive material.

24. A device which increases the availability of usable electrical energy or usable motion, or both, from a given mass or masses by a device causing a controlled release of, or reaction to, the gyroscopic type energy
particles making up or coming from the atoms of the mass or masses, which in turn, by any properly designed system, causes an energy output greater than the energy input.

25. A system including an energy generator, motor, etc.
of any design or mechanism that takes into account- the reaction to a force of the gyroscopic type energy particles moving in a magnetic field at tremendous speeds which releases greater output than energy input.

26. The system of Claim 25, wherein a small input of electrical current into the mechanism causes extremely quick and high atom alignment, resulting from using a super conducting material, thereby creating a powerful magnetic field, whereby its gyroscopic type energy particles then interact with the gyroscopic type energy particles coming from a second powerful magnetic field and results in producing a greater output of energy than input of energy into the mechanism.

27. The system of Claim 25, wherein a structure is arranged, whereby, there is, or will be, a pressure, or force, exerted on or in said structure, thereby causing the atoms of said structure to react to said pressure or force, and as a result take a pertinent atom alignment direction that results in said atoms of said structure then causing the gyroscopic type energy particles moving in the magnetic field to be generally deflected in the same direction through said structure, which results in usable electric current flow, producing a greater energy output, than energy input into the system.

28. The system of Claim 25, wherein a rotary magnetic mass is designed to react to a reversing magnetic field of another mass, and said reversing magnetic field can not reverse any faster than the atoms of said other mass can flip and realign; said rotary magnet mass being made as long as is practical to adjust to this requirement, wherein the distance of the arc of circle travelled by the ends of said rotary magnet mass is great; great leverage from said reversible magnetic field of other mass being applied to said rotary magnet, and in addition the increased distance of arc travelled by the ends of rotary magnet before the magnetic field of said other mass reverses, greatly increasing the time in which a maximum force is exerted by the gyroscopic type energy particles moving in the magnetic field coming from the maximum number of atoms aligned in said other mass, thereby causing a longer time of acceleration of said rotatable magnet mass before the atoms of said other mass are required to reverse.

29. The method of producing usable energy, comprising the following steps:
a. imputing energy into a device from an external source;
b. having electrical current flow within said device; and
c. utilising the internal electromagnetic energy of at least some of the matter in the device to add to the energy being imputed into the device from the external source to produce useful energy for use outside of the device having an amount greater than the energy being imputed to the device.
This version of the patent has been re-worded in an attempt to make it easier to read and understand. The original can be examined at www.freepatentsonline.com and downloaded without charge. This patent covers several different applications, namely; a high-voltage very high-efficiency solar electric device, a photovoltaic memory device, an optical display device and a high-voltage battery, to name just a few. It should be noted that this patent is assigned to the US Army. In my opinion, that lends weight and credibility to this patent. It is claimed that a one centimetre square piece of this material can produce 1,500 volts as opposed to less than one volt using conventional solar cell materials.

ABSTRACT
A method and apparatus is disclosed by which high voltage and current can produced by a polycrystalline ferroelectric ceramic material in response to incident light. Numerous applications of the ferroelectric ceramic material taking advantage of such properties thereof are further disclosed. The polycrystalline ferroelectric ceramic material is initially poled by the application of a pulse of voltage of predetermined magnitude and direction. After being poled in such fashion, light shining on the various surfaces of the ferroelectric ceramic material will generate a consistent high voltage between the surfaces of the ferroelectric ceramic material. If electrodes are attached to the material, then a current will be generated and a load can then be powered by it. Importantly, the magnitude of the voltage produced by the light is directly proportional to the remanent polarisation of the ferroelectric ceramic material, and is further directly proportional to the length of the material, the polarity of the high voltage being dependent upon the polarity of the remanent polarisation and being capable of being reversed when the remanent polarisation is reversed. The open circuit voltages produced by the ferroelectric ceramic material are orders of magnitude higher than those which typically have been produced in the prior-art through the utilisation of standard photovoltaic materials.

DESCRIPTION
BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION
This invention generally relates to solid state devices exhibiting photovoltaic effects and is particularly directed to the provision of a device consisting of a class of polycrystalline ferroelectric ceramic materials which have been discovered to produce voltages upon the application of light. These voltages are many orders of magnitude higher than voltages typically produced by conventional photovoltaic materials.

Initially, and as background, the instant inventive apparatus and techniques to be discussed below are to be clearly distinguished from the photovoltaic effect now known in the prior-art in that the mechanism for the effect to be discussed herein appears to be unique and different from photovoltaic mechanisms previously described.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION
It is the primary objective of the instant invention to provide a device and technique by which extremely high voltage can be generated utilising a solid state polycrystalline class of materials upon the application to such materials of incident light, the voltage generated exhibiting properties entirely unlike the well-known photovoltaic effect of the prior art and of orders of magnitude higher than voltages previously obtainable.

Another equally important objective of the instant invention is the provision of apparatus utilising ferroelectric ceramic materials of the type to be described below, such apparatus taking advantage of the unique properties as discovered to be existent in the class of materials to which the instant invention relates.

These broad objectives, as well as others which will become apparent as the following description proceeds, are implemented by the subject invention which utilises at its heart a class of materials known as ferroelectric...
ceramics, and which take advantage of the unique photovoltaic properties discovered to be existent in such class of materials.

Specifically, by illuminating the surfaces of these materials, a steady voltage results across conducting electrodes placed in contact therewith. Currents can then be drawn through loads placed across these electrodes. It has been discovered that an arrangement of an initially polarised ceramic material with electrodes attached thereto as is shown in Fig. 1 of the application drawings produces steady high voltages from a steady illuminating source such as the sun, an incandescent bulb, a fluorescent tube, etc. and that the magnitude of these voltages is high and directly proportional to the length, l, of the sheet of material provided. In Fig. 1, the shaded area represents an electrode, and \( P_r \) is the remanent polarisation. In another basic arrangement of the invention, light enters through transparent electrodes and the material is poled in the direction of the light, and the photo-emf up to a certain limiting thickness is proportional to the thickness of the slab.

It has further been discovered that the magnitude of the photo-voltages produced is directly proportional to the remanent polarisation of the material. The polarity of the photo-voltage is dependent on the polarity of the remanent polarisation and reverses when the remanent polarisation is reversed. The magnitude of the voltages that are produced can also be varied by varying the sizes of the grains of which the ceramic is composed, the voltage having a generally proportional relation to the number of grains per unit length. Grain size can be controlled by well-known fabrication techniques involving compositional additives and firing rates, which techniques do not form a part of the present disclosure.

When illuminated at intensity levels such as that produced by direct sunlight or at lesser levels such as that produced by a fluorescent lamp, the materials will behave as voltage sources in series with a high output resistance. The output resistance will decrease as the intensity of illumination increases and also varies with wavelength.

The open circuit voltages produced by the materials of the invention are much higher than those that are typical of other photovoltaic materials. These high open circuit photo-voltages have been observed to some extent in virtually all materials examined which can generally be described or classified by the term ferroelectric ceramic, provided that the material was characterised by a net remanent polarisation. Such high photo-voltages are to be expected in virtually all polarised ferroelectric ceramic materials properly doped, the class including thousands of different known materials of this kind with numerous variations possible in each kind. Such variations are produced by additives, varying grain size, and by changing compositional blends, in those formed from mixtures. Any of these are expected to have application as photovoltaic materials.

From the viewpoint of application, the novel photovoltaic effect seen in ferroelectrics in accordance with the teachings herein differs in two important respects from the well known junction photovoltaic effect which is the mechanism in prior-art devices such as solar cells, and photo-diodes.

First, the prior-art junction photo-emf is independent of the length or thickness of the unit and is low, less than one volt. To obtain high voltages, many cells have to be connected in series. The photovoltaic effect in ferroelectrics, on the other hand, can be used to directly produce high voltages. The photo-emf is proportional to length, and the photo-emf per unit length can be very high. For example, the composition \( \text{Pb(Zr}_{65}\text{Ti}_{35})\text{O}_3 \) with 7% of the lead substituted by lanthanum, when composed of 2-4 microns grains produces, when illuminated as shown in Fig. 1, 1500 volts for every centimetre of length between the electrodes. A single one cm square unit thus directly produces 1500 volts.

In this case, it is also clear that the voltage per unit length will be further increased by the development of a composition in which the average grain size is further decreased.

These voltages are so high that applications have been contemplated which are alternatives to the devices presently used for the generation of extremely high DC voltages at low currents -- such as belt machines (the Van de Graaff), in which high voltages are produced by mechanically moving electric charges.

Second, and perhaps even more important, is the fact that the direction of the photo-current and photo-voltage can be reversed simply by reversing the direction of its remanent polarisation. The magnitude of these quantities can be changed by changing that of the remanent polarisation, which in turn can be done (for example) by applying the proper polarity electrical voltage (poling voltage) to the same terminals across which the photo-voltages appear. The reversibility and control provided make immediately possible applications to use in computer memories of a new type -- in which information is stored as remanent polarisation and read out as the polarity and magnitude of a photo-current or photo-emf, such typical applications are disclosed here.

Application to the generation of electrical power from solar radiation, for example, to solar battery type devices and to electrical power generating stations operating on the basis of solar to electrical energy conversion also is
possible and contemplated but would require, to be practical, (except in special cases) considerably larger conversion efficiency than has been observed so far in the materials examined. A calculation of theoretical maximum efficiency, however, yields results which are large enough to suggest eventual practical use in this manner. A conversion system based on these high voltage materials would have the particular advantage of producing its electricity directly at high voltage which is advantageous for power transmission purposes.

The mechanism for the discovered effect appears to be unique and different from photovoltaic mechanisms previously described. Description will be provided explaining the mechanism and developing a theory for it. From this, it will be clear that the entire class of polycrystalline ferroelectrics are expected to exhibit high photo-emf's to at least some extent.

**BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS**

The invention itself will be better understood and further features and advantages of it will become apparent from the following detailed description which makes reference to the drawings, where:

**Fig.1** is a schematic diagram illustrating the basic arrangement by which photovoltaic voltages are generated by the application of light to a ferroelectric ceramic material as shown by this invention;

![Fig. 1](image1.png)

**Fig.2** is an electrical schematic diagram depicting an equivalent circuit to the basic apparatus of **Fig.1**, where $C_0$ is the capacitance of the sample measured utilising a capacitance meter connected between the electrodes and $C_1$ is the parallel capacitance of a load coupled to the electrodes, and $R_1$ is the resistive value of that load;

![Fig. 2](image2.png)

**Fig.3** is a graphical illustration of current vs. applied voltage to an illuminated ferroelectric wafer of the basic form depicted in **Fig.1**;

![Fig. 3](image3.png)
Fig. 4 is a graphical illustration of the photo-emf and photo-current as a function of intensity of illumination, with the particular graphical results being for a solid solution Pb(Zr0.53Ti0.47)O3 with about 1% by weight of Nb2O5 added;

Fig. 5 is a graphical illustration of photo-emf vs. grains per unit length (inverse median grain size) for two different materials;
Fig. 6 is a graphical illustration of photo-voltage vs. remanent polarisation for ceramic BaTiO$_3$ + 5% by weight of CaTiO$_3$;

Fig. 7 is a diagram illustrating the short-circuit photo-current as a function of wavelength for the solid solution Pb(Zr$_{0.53}$Ti$_{0.47}$)O$_3$;
Fig. 7 is a diagram illustrating the short circuit photo-current as a function of wave length for ceramic BaTiO$_3$ + 5% by weight of CaTiO$_3$.

Fig. 8 is a diagram illustrating the short circuit photo-current as a function of wave length for ceramic BaTiO$_3$ + 5% by weight of CaTiO$_3$. 
**Fig.9** is a diagram illustrating the short-circuit photo-current as a function of wavelength for the solid solution Pb(Zr$_{0.65}$ Ti$_{0.35}$)O$_3$ with 7% of the lead substituted for by lanthanum;

![Fig. 9](image)

**Fig.10** is a diagram illustrating the photo-emf vs. wavelength for the solid solution Pb(Zr$_{0.35}$ Ti$_{0.47}$)O$_3$ with 1% by weight of Nb$_2$O$_5$ added;

![Fig. 10](image)
Fig. 11 is a diagram illustrating the photo-current divided by intensity vs. cut-off wavelength of long wave length cut-off dichroic filters, with the materials being Pb(Zr_{0.53} Ti_{0.47})O_3 with 1% by weight of Nb_2O_5 added and utilising a high-pressure mercury arc as the illumination source.

Fig. 12 is a diagram illustrating the photo-current divided by intensity vs. cut-off wavelength of short wave length cut-off filters, with the material being Pb(Zr_{0.53} Ti_{0.47})O_3 with 1% by weight of Nb_2O_5 added;
Fig. 13 is a diagram illustrating the photo-emf vs. wavelength cut-off filters, with the material being \( \text{Pb(Zr}_{0.53} \text{Ti}_{0.47})\text{O}_3 \) with 1\% by weight of \( \text{Nb}_2\text{O}_5 \) added.

Fig. 14 is a pictorial illustration of the manner in which a single crystal produces a photo-emf, with the polarisation \( P_s \) being normal to the electrodes, which electrodes are illustrated by the shaded area.
Fig. 15 is a diagram illustrating photo-current vs. wave length of the single crystal BaTiO$_3$.

![Fig. 15](image)

Fig. 16 is a diagram illustrating the photo-voltage vs. temperature for BaTiO$_3$ +5% by weight of CaTiO$_3$.

![Fig. 16](image)
Fig. 17 is a diagram illustrating the photo-voltage vs. temperature of single crystal BaTiO$_3$;

![Fig. 17](image1)

Fig. 18 is a diagram illustrating photo-current vs. temperature for BaTiO$_3$ + 5\% by weight of CaTiO$_3$;

![Fig. 18](image2)
**Fig. 19** is a cross-sectional, elevational view schematically depicting the ceramic slab of **Fig. 1**, with the photo-emf appearing across the electrodes on the edge, and with most of the photo-current flow being found in the shaded region near the surface;

![Fig. 19](image)

**Fig. 20** is a cross-sectional, elevational view of a slab of ferroelectric ceramic material utilising transparent electrodes and depicting light incident through the transparent electrodes into the slab with the slab being polarised in the thickness direction;

![Fig. 20](image)
Fig. 21 is a cross-sectional diagrammatic illustration of a single layer of grains depicting the manner in which photo-emf's are produced across the grains in an additive fashion to produce a length dependent effect in the ceramic material, the illumination being incident from the left-hand portion of the drawing and being typically quickly absorbed as it penetrates the material;

![Fig. 21 Diagram](image)

**FIG. 21**

Fig. 22 is a diagram illustrating idealised two dimensional crystals of length \( l \) with spontaneous polarisation \( P_s \), dielectric constant \( \varepsilon_b \), compensating surface charge per unit area of \( \Sigma = P_s \);

![Fig. 22 Diagram](image)

**FIG. 22**
Fig. 23 is an illustration depicting the structure of a typical ferroelectric grain or crystallite;

![Fig. 23](image)

**FIG. 23**

Fig. 24 is an illustration depicting a model of a crystal of length $l$;

![Fig. 24](image)

**FIG. 24**

Fig. 25 is a diagram illustrating the potential distribution in an illuminated crystal;

![Fig. 25](image)

**FIG. 25**

Fig. 26 is a schematic representation of the instant inventive ferroelectric ceramic substrate utilised as a photovoltaic memory device with optical scanning;

![Fig. 26](image)
Fig. 27 is a schematic illustration of an optical display apparatus utilising a ferroelectric ceramic material in accordance with the general teachings of the instant invention;

Fig. 28 is a schematic illustration depicting an optical display apparatus constructed in accordance with the teachings of the instant invention in monolithic form utilising a colour switching liquid crystal;
Fig. 29 is a schematic illustration of the display apparatus of Fig. 28, modified to make utilisation of a twisted nematic liquid crystal;
**Fig. 30** is a cross-sectional elevational view depicting an optical display apparatus utilising a colour switching liquid crystal in conjunction with a ferroelectric ceramic substrate of the instant invention, and which display apparatus exhibits permanent memory capabilities;

![Fig. 30](image)

**Fig. 31** is a cross-sectional elevational view of a further form of an optical display apparatus constructed in accordance with the teachings of the instant invention, said apparatus utilising a colour switching liquid crystal and further utilising length-wise polarisation of the ceramic substrate;

![Fig. 31](image)

**Fig. 32** is an elevational view, in section, of a further form of an optical display apparatus constructed in accordance with the teachings of the instant invention, this apparatus being similar to that depicted in **Fig. 31** of the application drawings but utilising a liquid crystal of the twisted nematic type; and
Fig. 33 is a schematic illustration of a further form of optical display and storage utilising the photoconductive as well as photovoltaic properties of the ferroelectric ceramics.
Fig.34 illustrates how the image stored in a substrate is displayed.

**DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED INVENTIVE EMBODIMENTS**

With reference now initially to Fig.1 of the application drawings, a discussion of the novel phenomena of the instant invention will ensue. Upon the application of incident illumination to the ferroelectric ceramic, a steady voltage is produced which is proportional to the length \( l \) between the electrodes. By dividing the sample into two equal segments along a line perpendicular to the direction of the remanent polarisation and by placing new electrodes on the cut edges, new samples would result each producing photo-emf's which is one half the original photo-emf.

An arrangement such as that shown in Fig.1 can be described roughly by the equivalent circuit as shown in Fig.2. This has a saturation photo-emf \( V_0 \), in series with the photo resistance of the illuminated sample. Fig.3 is a current-voltage characteristic of a typical illuminated ferroelectric slab, and has the form expected from the equivalent circuit in Fig.2 except for the slight tendency towards saturation in the lower left quadrant. As a function of intensity, the photo-emf saturates at relatively low levels of illumination. The short circuit photo-current is, however, linear with light intensity. Results for the material \( \text{Pb}(Zr_{0.53}\text{Ti}_{0.47})\text{O}_3 \) with 1% by weight of \( \text{Nb}_2\text{O}_5 \) are shown in Fig.4. The implication of these results and the equivalent circuit in Fig.2 is that the photo-resistance \( R_{\text{ph}} \) is inversely proportional to intensity.

A saturation photo-emf and a short circuit current proportional to intensity has been measured in several poled ferroelectric materials. These are shown in Table I:
For a given composition the photo-emf is also a function of grain size. These results are shown in Table II.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sample</th>
<th>Illumination Wave length (nm)</th>
<th>Saturation Photo-emf (Volts/cm)</th>
<th>Short Circuit Photocurrent (μAmpere/cm²)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pb(Zr$<em>{53}$Ti$</em>{47}$)O$_3$ + 1 wt% Nb$_2$O$_5$</td>
<td>373</td>
<td>610</td>
<td>.31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BaTiO$_3$ + 5 wt% CaTiO$_3$</td>
<td>403</td>
<td>360</td>
<td>.020</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pb(Zr$<em>{65}$Ti$</em>{35}$)O$_3$ with 7% lanthanum-lead substitution</td>
<td>382</td>
<td>1500</td>
<td>.030</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pb(Zr$<em>{65}$Ti$</em>{35}$)O$_3$ with 8% lanthanum-lead substitution</td>
<td>382</td>
<td>750</td>
<td>.015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BaTiO$_3$ + 5 wt% CaTiO$_3$</td>
<td>403</td>
<td>355</td>
<td>.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pb(Zr$<em>{53}$Ti$</em>{47}$)O$_3$ + 1 wt% Nb$_2$O$_5$ with polished surfaces</td>
<td>382</td>
<td>610</td>
<td>~ .61</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

the photo-voltage v. number of grains per unit length is plotted in Fig.5 for two different compositions. The plot clearly shows a relationship between the two quantities.

The fact that the photo-emf of a particular sample depends on the remanent polarisation is shown by the results for a typical ferroelectric material, barium titanate + 5% by weight of CaTiO$_3$, as plotted in Fig.6.

The short circuit photo-current depends strongly on the wave length of the impinging illumination. It is a maximum at a wavelength resulting in a photon energy equal to the band gap energy of the material. Other wavelengths can, however, contribute strongly to the current.

Results for typical materials are shown in Fig.7, Fig.8, and Fig.9. The current (ordinate) is that produced by illumination contained in a small band, of about +10 nm about a wavelength indicated on the abscissa. A mercury source and notch type dichroic filters were used. The total intensity within each band was only roughly constant.
The current that has been plotted has been therefore normalised to constant intensity by assuming the linear relation between the two.

The photo-emf is less strongly dependent on wave length. Results for a particular material, using notch dichroic filters is shown in Fig.10. These values are saturation values, roughly independent of intensity.

An important additional phenomena shows a dependence of current produced in the red and infrared regions in the presence of simultaneous blue band gap radiation. These results are shown in Fig.11 and Fig.12. The ordinate (Fig.11) is the current produced by the light from a mercury arc shining through dichroic long wavelength cut off filters, the abscissa the wavelengths above which no light illuminates the sample. Note the step at 650 nm. Using short wavelength cut off filters which eliminate the band gap light results in no current until the cut off wavelength is below the band gap. These results are shown in Fig.12. The amount of output in the red actually depends on the intensity of simultaneous band gap radiation, thus the energy efficiency of these materials for a broad band source is not simply the intensity weighted average of the efficiencies for individual wavelengths as produced by notch filter. The actual value is larger.

Photo-emf vs. cut-off wavelength for Pb(Zn0.53Ti0.47)03 +1% by weight of Nb205 is shown in Fig.13. A substantial photo-emf appears at long wavelengths but no current can flow. In other words, the internal resistance $R_{ph}$ is extremely high unless band gap is incident.

**Single Crystal Results**

The ceramic results imply a small photo-emf from a single crystal illuminated as shown in Fig.14. Such emf = 0.55V at room temperature was indeed observed.

The short circuit current is, as for the ceramic material, a strong function of wavelength. These results are shown in Fig.15.

**Temperature Dependence**

Ceramic photo-emf is a function of temperature. Results for barium titanate ceramic with 5% by weight of CaTiO3 are shown in Fig.16. For both Pb(Zn0.52Ti0.47)O3 with 1% by weight of Nb2O5 added and barium titanate the photo-emf decreases with increasing temperature. In these measurements, the temperature ranged to the transition temperature, the photo-emf vanishing at the temperature at which the remanent polarisation also vanishes. The remanent polarisation vs. temperature for this material is also shown in Fig.16. Similar results for single crystal barium titanate are shown in Fig.17. The single crystal photo-emf are, of course, much smaller. Short circuit was measured as a function of temperature. Results for barium titanate +5% by weight of CaTiO3 are shown in Fig.18. Similar results over the same temperature range were obtained for Pb(Zn0.53Ti0.47)O3 + 1% by weight of Nb2O5 material. In that case there was no maximum, the photo-current still increasing with increasing temperature at 130ºC.

**Effects of Optical Properties**

In the arrangement shown in Fig.1, the direction of polarisation, and consequently the direction of the photo-emf is perpendicular to the direction of incidence of the light which is also the direction in which the light is strongly absorbed. The light only enters into a region near the surface of the material. The rapidity of the absorption depends strongly on the wavelength of the light, the light becoming fully absorbed in a region closer and closer to the surface as one decreases the wavelength of the light and approaches the band gap wavelength. For shorter wavelengths, the light no longer enters the material and thus for these wave lengths the light-induced effects decrease rapidly with decreasing wavelength.

Ceramic materials which exhibit these photo-emf's can appear transparent, translucent, and apparently opaque when viewed with white light. Light, however, obviously enters even the opaque materials to produce the photo-emf's. The apparent opacity is produced by diffuse reflection at granular boundaries. It is of course desirable to minimise the degree to which diffuse reflectivity prevents light from entering the material. Nevertheless, the largest photo-currents and greatest photovoltaic efficiency has been originally observed in a material which appears opaque in thickness more than a few thousandths of an inch. The cross sectional drawing Fig.19 depicts the way light enters the material with the arrangement as originally shown in Fig.1.

When a circuit connects the electrodes, the maximum density of current occurs near the surface, the current density decreasing in regions deeper within the thickness.
Polishing the surfaces of these materials, however, increases the transparency and, as expected, the magnitude of the photo-current and the photovoltaic conversion efficiency. An emf will also be produced by the arrangement shown in Fig.20 provided, of course, that the electrodes are of a nature to allow light to enter the material. Normal thick metal electrodes are opaque to light. When metal electrodes are thin enough, they permit light to be transmitted and yet are sufficiently conductive to function as electrodes. Other conducting transparent electrodes include indium oxide. The emf now will be seen to appear across the thickness of the material, in the direction of the remanent polarisation.

In this arrangement the high dark resistance of any un-illuminated bulk portion of the material is in series with the circuit connecting the electrodes. The current that can be drawn is limited. Maximum currents can be drawn when the thickness between the electrodes is equal to or less than the absorption depth of the radiation. However, since the saturation photo-emf is not a strong function of intensity, vanishing only for extremely low intensities, the full photo-emf per unit length \( v_o \) can usually be observed for this samples.

**Proposed Mechanism for the High Voltage Photovoltaic Effect in Ferroelectrics**

Briefly, it is proposed that the photo-emf results from the action of an internal field within the bulk of an individual ceramic grain on non-equilibrium carriers generated by illumination. These carriers move to screen the internal field. The photo-emf that appears is the open circuit result of such screening. A change in charge distribution upon illumination changes the voltage across a grain from an initial value of zero to the photo-voltages which are observed.

These photo-emf's appears across individual ceramic grains. What is observed as a length dependent high photo-voltage is the series sum of the photo-emf's appearing across grains, each of which is characterised by saturation remanent polarisation \( P_r \). The situation is shown schematically in Fig.21. Individual grains typically are small, of the order of 10 microns in diameter. To produce a high photo-voltage per unit length in the ceramic the voltage across an individual grain need not be large. For example the results in Table II for Pb\((Zn_{0.65}Ti_{0.47})_03\) with 7% Lator Pb can be explained by individual grain photo-voltage of only about 0.5 volts per grain. The clear implication of the experimental results (Table II and Fig.5) is that for the range of grain sizes investigated, the photo-emf across a grain is more or less independent of the size of the grain. This is supported also by the single crystal results.

Ferroelectric crystals are characterised by large spontaneous polarisation which would be expected to produce large emf's even in the dark. Such emf's are not observed even across highly insulating materials. This is presumed to be the result of space charge within the volume or on the surface of a ferroelectric crystal (which, in ceramics, are the individual grains or crystallites). The space charge produces a potential across a crystal cancelling the potential produced by the net polarisation within they crystal. It is obvious that as long as there are sufficient charges within the crystal which are free to move, any potential produced by an internal polarisation will eventually vanish.

This dark zero potential state is the initial state of a crystal crystallite, grain, and of the ceramic body composed of these grains. The absence of a net potential in the dark does not however mean the absence of internal fields. Internal fields can be expected to exist and are the consequence of the spatial distribution of the charges which bring the net potentials across grains to zero. These spatial distributions can not be arbitrarily assigned, but are subject to constraints of a basic physical nature.

In the idealised two dimensional crystal shown in Fig.22, the surface charge density \( \Upsilon = P_s \) reduces the potential between the surfaces to zero. If the surface charge density (in actually this does not occur) is completely juxtaposed upon the bound polarisation surface charge, which has a value \( P_s \), then there are no internal fields. Were there no charge, the crystal would show an internal field \( \frac{P_s}{\varepsilon b} \) and a potential between the surfaces of \( P_s / \varepsilon b \).

Such a field would be well above the dielectric breakdown strength of a real dielectric. For a single domain typical ferroelectric barium titanate \( P_s = 26 \times 10^2 \) C/m, and the relative dielectric constant \( \varepsilon_r \) in the direction of polarisation is 137. The field that would have to exist in the absence of compensation charge is over \( 2 \times 10^5 \) volts/cm which is well above the dielectric strengths typical of these materials. If such a field could momentarily exist within a ferroelectric crystal it would not exist for long but be reduced from its maximum value to some value below the dielectric strength of the material. The strong field would break down the material and a charge flow would produce a space charge distribution resulting in a new lower value for the internal fields within the crystal.

Such a space charge distribution must exist in an actual crystal. The space charge serves to reduce the potential across a crystal to zero. Such charges have limited mobility and the materials continue to behave as insulators for ordinary strength applied fields.
Such a space charge cannot occupy a delta function-like region as in the idealised situation shown in Fig.22, but must occupy instead a finite volume. If these are localised near the surface of the crystal, then an internal field $\varepsilon_0$ exists within the bulk of the material and additional fields $E_x$ exist within the space charge regions near the surface.

It is hypothesised that these space charge regions are near the surface of real crystals with the charge distributed within a surface layer thickness $s$. The reasons for same are as follows:

1. The surface regions of ferroelectric crystals are characterised by regions whose dielectric, ferroelectric, and thermodynamic properties differ markedly from that of the bulk. These differences are best explained by the existence of strong fields in this region that would be produced by space charge. There is a considerable body of information in the literature supporting the existence and delineating the properties of these layers;

2. The interplay of space charge and the very non-linear dielectric constant of ferroelectric would be expected to localise space charge in a low dielectric constant layer near the surface. In ferroelectrics, unusually high, low field relative dielectric constants (of the order of 1000) can be expected to reduce in value with increasing field strength. Thus charge in a region reduces the dielectric constant of that region increasing the field strength of that region. This feedback mechanism can be shown to localise charge within a layer.

The experimental results supporting the existence of surface layers will not be reviewed here, nor the calculations which support the localisation of charge into layers as a result of a non-linear (saturable) dielectric constant. These may be reviewed by referring to the literature.

A schematic description of a typical grain, i.e. crystallite, with space charge regions of thickness $s$, and a bulk region of thickness $l$, is shown in Fig.23. The internal fields (in the two dimensional model) of such a charge distribution superimposed on that produced by the bound polarisation charge will be calculated and also the effect of these fields on carriers within the bulk produced as the result of an internal photo effect (photo-ionisation). Formulae for the photo emf that will be derived will have the correct sign, a linear dependence on remanent polarisation, and the kind of temperature dependence that has actually been observed. In addition there will result an estimate of a size independent grain photo-emf for a typical ferroelectric, barium titanate, which is consistent with that implied from the observed ceramic emf, and single grain emf. The grain has as shown in Fig.23:

1. A bulk region with dielectric constant $\varepsilon_0$, and uniform polarisation (at zero applied field) $P_o$;

2. Surface layers of dielectric constant $\varepsilon_s$, considerably less than that of the bulk. There are also polarisation in the surface regions $P_s(x)$ which exist at zero applied field. These will generally be parallel to the bulk polarisation at one end and anti-parallel at the other end;

3. Space charges in these surface layers which serves to remove any potential across the grain. It is the space charge layers which produce high fields which reduce the highly non-linear dielectric constant of the bulk to the lesser value in the surface layers, and also produce the remanent polarisation, $P_s(x)$ with the surfaces.

Such a structure also has an internal bulk field, and surface fields which can be calculated. For the purposes of this calculation we assume a simple two dimensional model shown in Fig.24.

The polarisation with the various regions are assumed only for simplicity to be uniform within these regions. Again, only for simplicity those in the surface layers and the bulk are assumed equal in magnitude (i.e. $P_s(x) = P_o$). The space charge densities $\pm \pm n_e$ are also assumed uniform and equal in magnitude. The polarisations are equivalent to four bound surface charge densities,

$$\sigma_1 = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} P_o$$

$$\sigma_2 = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} P_o$$

$$\sigma_3 = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} P_o$$

$$\sigma_4 = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} P_o$$

There are, using Gauss's law, electric fields as shown in Fig.24.

$$E_1 = \frac{1}{\varepsilon_s} [P_o + \mu \partial x]$$

$$E_2 = \frac{1}{\varepsilon_b} [-P_o + \mu \partial x]$$

$$E_3 = \frac{1}{\varepsilon_s} [-P_s + n_e (i - x)]$$

It has been assumed that the voltage across the crystal vanishes,
\[
\int_0^1 l + 2s \quad E(x)dx = 0
\]

\[n_0 \text{ and } s, \text{ from this and the three preceding equations, must be related by the expression}
\]
\[
m_{es} = \frac{P_0}{1 + \frac{\epsilon_b}{\epsilon_s} \frac{s}{l}}
\]

and the bulk field
\[
E_2 = \frac{-P_0}{\epsilon_b} \left[ \frac{\epsilon_b}{\epsilon_s} \frac{s}{l} \right]
\]

Surface layers in barium titanate ceramic grains have been estimated at \(10^{-6}\) cm (see for example Jona and Shirane Ferroelectric Crystals, Pergamon Press, 1962). The remanent polarisation typical of the ceramic material is about \(8 \times 10^{-2}\) C/m\(^2\), the relative dielectric constant of the poled ceramic about 1300. The high field dielectric constant will be estimated at roughly 0.5 the bulk dielectric constant. These numbers yield a bulk field, for a typical \(10^{-3}\) cm grain of,

\[E_2 = 350 \text{ volts/cm}\]

The potential across the bulk would thus be approximately \(-0.35\) volts. The remaining potential across the grain would be that across the surface layers. Illumination has the effect of producing charges which screen the internal field, \(E_2\) causing it to vanish.

The negative voltage vanishes and a positive potential appears across the sample. The light makes the sample look more positive. This is exactly what happens as the result of a thermally-induced decrease in polarisation. Thus the pyro-electric voltage is in the same direction as the photo-voltage as is experimentally observed.

In the fully screened case, the photo-emf is also the emf across the two surface layers

\[
\Delta V = \left[ \frac{P_0}{\epsilon_s} \frac{1}{1 + \frac{\epsilon_b}{\epsilon_s} \frac{s}{l}} \right] s \approx .35 \text{ volts}
\]

The light generated free electrons sets up a counter field which tends to cancel the bulk field \(E_2\); thus, the observed voltage drop is less than it would be in a perfectly insulating medium. This is what is meant by the term ‘screening’. The counter field approaches \(-E_2\). Assuming the shielding occurs only in the bulk, the total voltage across the grain is now the sum of the voltages across the surface layers.

The photo-emf is in the opposite direction to the bulk polarisation. This fact predicted in the theory is what is always observed experimentally. The complete screening of the bulk field thus would, in barium titanate, be expected to result in a photo-emf of \(+0.35\) volts per grain or 350 V/cm and about 0.35 volts across a macroscopic single crystal. These are roughly the values actually observed as seen in Table I, and with the single crystal results. The linear relation between remanent polarisation and saturation photo-emf as shown in Fig.6 is also predicted by these equations. The dependence on temperature of the photo-emf as shown in Fig.16 and Fig.17 is predicted by the fact that as one approaches the curie temperature, not only is \(P_o\) decreasing but the dielectric \(\epsilon_{s}\) is increasing. The bulk internal field, \(E_2\), should therefore decrease with temperature more rapidly than the remanent polarisation.

**Screening**
Solving the general problem of screening in a ferroelectric is difficult. Many of the principles involved can be demonstrated by solving a special case. The special case is meant to be particularly applicable to the Pb(Zr0.53, Ti0.47)O3 + 1% by weight of Nb2O5 material.

Utilised, only for simplicity, is a two dimensional model, with photo-produced carriers limited to those of a single sign. It will be assumed that these are electrons generated from deep trapping levels midway in the band gap, and that the illumination empties all the traps leaving fixed positive charges to replace the original traps. The complete emptying of a deep trapping level would produce the long wave length photo-voltages and the phenomena of an intensity saturation of the photo-emf typical of the Pb(Zr0.53, Ti0.47)O3 + 1% by weight of Nb2O5.

Consider a two dimensional illuminated slab of length 1 within which is an internal field \( \varepsilon \) and within which, light generates a uniform density of electrons \( n_0 \) (n electrons per unit length). Schematically the situation is shown in *Fig.25*, where \( \Phi(x) \) is the potential at a point \( x \).

The carriers respond to the internal field and occupy a Boltzman distribution

\[
M = M_0 e^{\phi(x)/kT}
\]

if the fields due to the electrons could be neglected, then

\[
\mathcal{F}(e) = -E_x
\]

This is, of course, too rough an approximation. With \( n(0) \) the density of electrons at \( x=0 \), and \( n_0 \), the density of the immobile donor ions

\[
\frac{d^2}{dx^2} \left[ n(x) - n(0) \right] = \frac{\epsilon}{\epsilon'} \left[ n(0) e^{\phi(0)/kT} - n_0 \right]
\]

Since for \( \Phi = 0 \) \( n(0) = n_0 \), and since all traps are emptied, assuming electrical neutrality,

\[
\int_0^l n_0 e^{\phi(x)/kT} dx = n_0 l
\]

\[
\int_0^l e^{\phi(x)/kT} dx = m_o
\]

then

\[
\int_0^l \frac{d^2}{dx^2} \left[ n(x) - n_0 \right] dx = 0
\]

or

\[
\frac{d}{dx} \left|_x = l \right. = \frac{d}{dx} \left|_x = 0 \right.
\]

If the crystal is neutral there must be no electric field at the boundary except the applied field \( -E_o \)

\[
\frac{d}{dx} \left|_x = 0 \right. = E_o
\]

\[
\frac{d}{dx} \left|_x = l \right. = E_o
\]

These two boundary conditions allow the solution of Poisson's equation.
\[
\frac{d^2 \phi}{dx^2} = \frac{m \phi}{\epsilon} \left[ \frac{m(o)}{m} e^{-\phi/\epsilon kT} - 1 \right]
\]

or

\[
\frac{d^2 \psi}{dx^2} \left[ \frac{e^\psi}{kT} \right] = \frac{M \phi^2}{\epsilon kT} \left[ \frac{M(o)}{M} e^{-\phi/\epsilon kT} - 1 \right]
\]

substituting

\[
y_o = \ln \frac{M}{m(o)}, \quad y = \frac{e^\psi}{kT}, \quad l_o = \frac{\epsilon kT}{m \phi^2}
\]

we obtain,

\[
\frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} = \frac{1}{l_o^2} \left[ e^y - y - 1 \right]
\]

in this new notation,

\[
\left. \frac{dy}{dx} \right|_{x = 0} = \left. \frac{dy}{dx} \right|_{x = l} = \frac{\epsilon E_o}{kT}
\]

let

\[
\frac{dy}{dx} = \rho
\]

\[
\frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} = \frac{dp}{dy} - \frac{dy}{dx} \frac{dp}{dx} - \rho \frac{dp}{dy} = \frac{d}{dy} \left( \frac{1}{2} \rho^2 \right)
\]

so

\[
\frac{d}{dy} \left( \frac{1}{2} \rho^2 \right) = \frac{1}{l_o^2} \left( e^y - y - 1 \right)
\]

setting \( y(o) = 0 \) since the zero for a potential may be set arbitrarily

\[
\frac{1}{2} \rho^2(l) - \frac{1}{2} \rho^2(o) = \frac{1}{l_o^2} \int_0^l \left( e^y - y - 1 \right) dy
\]

\[
= \frac{1}{l_o^2} \left[ e^{y(l)} - y(l) - e^{-y(0)} \right]
\]

\[
y(\rightarrow) = \frac{e^\psi(x)}{kT}
\]

\[
y(l) = \frac{\epsilon E_o}{kT}
\]

\[
\left. \frac{dy}{dx} \right|_o = \left. \frac{dy}{dx} \right|_l = P(o) = P(l)
\]
\[
O = \frac{1}{t_2^2} e^{-\Delta \left( \frac{e^\Delta - 1}{\Delta} \right)}
\]

where \( \Delta = \frac{kT}{\Delta} \text{ and } e^{\Delta} = \frac{e^\Delta - 1}{\Delta} \),

and thus
\[
\frac{M_0}{M(O)} = \frac{e^\Delta - 1}{\Delta} = \frac{\frac{e}{kT} \Delta v}{e} = \frac{\frac{e}{kT} \Delta v}{e^\Delta - 1}
\]

substituting
\[
\frac{d}{dy} (\rho^2) = \frac{1}{l_2^2} \left[ \frac{\Delta}{e^\Delta - 1} e^\Delta - 1 \right]
\]

so
\[
\frac{1}{l_2^2}(\rho^2(x) - \rho^2(0)) = \frac{1}{l_2^2} \left[ \frac{\Delta}{e^\Delta - 1} (e^\Delta - 1) - y \right]
\]

\[
= \frac{1}{l_2^2} \left[ \Delta \frac{e^\Delta - 1}{e^\Delta - 1} - y \right]
\]

Thus
\[
\left( \frac{dy}{dx} \right)^2 = \left( \frac{eF_o}{kT} \right)^2 + \frac{2}{l_2^2} \left( \Delta \left( \frac{e^\Delta - 1}{e^\Delta - 1} \right) - y \right)
\]
or
\[
\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{l_D} \sqrt{\Gamma^2 + \Delta \left( \frac{\epsilon^* - 1}{\epsilon^* - 1} \right) - y}
\]

where

\[
\Gamma^2 = \frac{1}{2} \frac{\epsilon^*}{kT} E_0 l
\]

integrating this equation from 0 to 1 yield

\[
\int_0^1 \frac{dy}{\sqrt{\Gamma^2 + \Delta \left( \frac{\epsilon^* - 1}{\epsilon^* - 1} \right) - y}} = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{l_D} \int_0^1 dx
\]

or,

\[
\int_0^\Delta \frac{dy}{\sqrt{\Gamma^2 + \Delta \left( \frac{\epsilon^* - 1}{\epsilon^* - 1} \right) - y}} = \frac{\sqrt{2} l_D}{l_D}
\]

which is an implicit expression for \( \Delta V \) in terms of \( E_0, l, \) and \( l_D. \)

For low \( n_0 \) and/or large \( E_0, \) \( \Gamma \) is large

\[
\int_0^\Delta \frac{dy}{\sqrt{\Gamma^2}} = \frac{\sqrt{2} l_D}{l_D}
\]

\[
\Delta = \sqrt{2} l \frac{\Gamma}{l_D}
\]

or

\[
\Delta = \sqrt{2} l \times \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left[ \frac{\epsilon^*}{kT} E_0 l_D \right] l_D = \frac{\epsilon^*}{kT} E_0 l
\]
or
\[ \Delta V = E_I \]
which is the original potential across the bulk of the crystal.

The situation of interest is however large \( n_o \) and small \( l_D \) and small \( \Gamma^2 \).

It is in this situation that
\[ \Delta = \frac{e^2}{\hbar} \Delta V \]
can be expected to vanish.

Expanding the expression for \( \Delta \) small, which is always the case, then
\[ \Delta \frac{e^2}{\hbar} \frac{1}{e^2 - 1} - y \approx \hbar y^2 - \hbar y \Delta \]

Keeping only second order terms in \( y \) and \( \Delta \), then
\[ \int \Delta \frac{dy}{\Gamma^2 + \frac{1}{2} y^2 - y \Delta} = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{l_D} \]

Let
\[ \xi = y - \frac{\Delta}{2} \]

this becomes
\[ \int_{-\Delta/2}^{\Delta/2} \frac{d\xi}{\sqrt{(\Gamma^2 + \frac{1}{2} \xi^2) + \xi^2}} = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{l_D} \]

Setting
\[ \xi = \sqrt{2\Gamma^2 - \left(\frac{\Delta}{2}\right)^2}, \sin k \theta \]
gives
\[ 2\sqrt{2} \sin h^{-1} \left[ \frac{\Delta/2}{\sqrt{2\Gamma^2 - \left(\frac{\Delta}{2}\right)^2}} \right] = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{l_D} \]
The implication is therefore that photovoltaic contributions from the bulk will be much larger than that from the surface layers, for surface layers are extremely small while \( I_D \) can be estimated as very roughly equal in the bulk and the surface. Thus, illumination will result in the vanishing of the internal field within the bulk resulting in a maximum photo-emf, where \( E_2 \) is the bulk field.

For small intensities, we can assume no small, then

\[
\Delta V = E_2 I_D \tan h \frac{I}{2I_D}
\]

Clearly as

\[ I_D \to 0 \quad \Delta V \to 0 \]

This approximation for \( \Delta V \) is good for all reasonable values of \( T \).

Illumination thus reduces the dark bulk emf = \( E_2 I \), producing a net photovoltage

\[
V_{\text{PHOTO}} = E_2 I \left[ 1 - \frac{\tanh \frac{I}{2I_D}}{I/2I_D} \right]
\]

where

\[
I_D = \sqrt{\frac{E_2 T}{n e^2}}
\]

A simplified expression occurs for small

\[
\frac{I}{2I_D}
\]

where, \( \tanh x = x - \frac{1}{3} x^3 \)

\[
V_{\text{PHOTO}} = E_2 I \left[ \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{I}{2I_D} \right)^2 \right]
\]

Here, it is clear that the photovoltage becomes insignificant for

\[
\frac{I}{I_D}
\]

The implication is therefore that photovoltaic contributions from the bulk will be much larger than that from the surface layers, for surface layers are extremely small while \( I_D \) can be estimated as very roughly equal in the bulk and the surface.

Thus, illumination will result in the vanishing of the internal field within the bulk resulting in a maximum photo-emf.

\[
\Delta V = 0 \quad E_2 I
\]

For small intensities, we can assume \( n_s \) small, then

\[
V_{\text{PHOTO}} = E_2 I \frac{1}{4} \frac{n_s e^2}{ekT}
\]
i.e., the photo-voltage is proportional to $n_0$ which can be reasonably assumed proportional to intensity which is experimentally observed (see Fig.4).

The model just described explains the long wave length photo-emfs, in the material Pb$_{(0.53Zr,0.47Ti)}$O$_3 + 1\%$ by weight of Nb$_2$O$_5$. Such a deep trapping level is probably typical of the lead titanate-lead zirconate materials with characteristic lead vacancies. These bind electrons leaving holes (producing p type dark conductivity). The addition of common dopants -- for example niobium gives rise to free electrons which combine with holes or get trapped by the lead vacancies. The doping can thus be said to provide electrons which fill traps.

It is these trapped electrons which are photo-injected into the conduction band by the long wave length light providing near maximum photo-emfs in material illuminated at 500 nm and even longer wave lengths as shown in the results plotted in Fig.13. Full saturation, that is the complete shielding of the bulk internal field, requires however band gap carriers which occurs as one approaches the 373 nm band gap wave length. Solving this problem, that of band gap carriers in addition to electrons generated by deep traps, can be accomplished in a manner similar to that which was accomplished for the trapped electrons but is more complex for example because mobile holes are being produced in addition to electrons and one cannot necessarily fix the maximum number of carriers.

The photo-emfs are created by photo-induced carriers shielding the bulk field. Effectively, no photo-current can flow however unless band gap light is present as is clear from the results shown in Fig.12 and Fig.13. Here it is clear the band gap light produces maximum photo-emf and maximum photo-currents, less than band gap light, maximum or almost maximum photo-emf but no photo-currents and that the output resistance under these circumstances appears extremely high. Addition of band gap light allows current to flow.

The tentative explanation is that the surface layers from high resistance barriers, the magnitude of which lowers with band gap light. The surface layers thus act as intrinsic photoconductors in series with an emf. This picture not only explains the rather unique dependence of photo-emf and short circuit photo-current on wave length as shown in Fig.12 and Fig.13 but also the equivalent circuit which is typical of all these materials as described in Fig.2 and as indicated by the current-voltage results in Fig.3.

A possible explanation for the high resistance of the surface layers is that they include quantities of charged ions which have been localised there. These are immobile under normal applied voltages moving only under the action of high fields such as produced by the reversal of the remanent polarisation. Those ions not only will occupy trapping levels, eliminating the need for easily ionised trapped electrons and thus reducing the intrinsic conductivity but also form centres for coulomb scattering of conduction electrons which should contribute markedly to the resistivity.

**Efficiency**

Some insight into the possible maximum efficiency of the process can be obtained by considering carriers generated by band gap light, with potential energy

$$U = 2\int_0^L e \cdot (x)\delta M dx$$

with $-(x) < E_x$

so that a maximum value of energy

$$U = 2e \int_0^L E_0^x + dx$$

$$= e\delta M E_x L^2$$

The energy required to produce $\delta m_e$ electron hole pairs

$$\epsilon = \delta M_e E_p$$

where $E_g$ is the band gap energy.

The power into the crystal is

$$P_m = L E_g \frac{\delta M_e}{\delta t}$$
while the power out (the rate of increase in internal potential energy) is

\[ P_{\text{out}} = eEL \frac{\delta M_y}{\delta T} \]

The efficiency

\[ = \frac{eEL}{E_g} \]

For \( \text{Pb(Zr}_{0.53} \text{Ti}_{0.47})\text{O}_3 + 1 \text{ wt\% Nb}_2\text{O}_3 \) added \( E \) is roughly 600 v/cm and the grain size roughly 5 microns. The emf across a grain is thus about .3 volts. The band gap is about 3 eV. Thus the efficiency is

\[ = \frac{2}{3} \approx 10\% \]

Which compares with an observed band gap efficiency of about 0.06%. The calculation, of course, depends on idealising assumptions, some of which may be practically obtainable.

**PHOTOVOLTAIC MEMORY DEVICE**

With the above background and general teachings of the unique discovery of the invention now firmly in mind, numerous and important applications of the properties of the ferroelectric ceramics above-discussed are readily possible as will be evident to those skilled in this art. For example, the device of the instant invention will be shown to exhibit particular utility as a memory apparatus, thus making use of the property of the ferroelectric ceramic defined as remanent polarisation or "memory" as previously explained.

With particular reference now to **Fig.26** of the application drawings, one such photovoltaic memory apparatus is disclosed, the memory apparatus being optically addressed. In this respect, a substrate or sheet of a ferroelectric ceramic material of the type above-discussed is indicated by reference numeral 10 as being "sandwiched" between at least one pair of electrodes such as electrodes 12 and 14 positioned on opposing sides of the substrate.

In the preferred embodiment as shown, an array of electrode pairs, such as pairs 12-14 and 16-18 are disposed on opposing sides of the substrate 10 as to define a matrix configuration. Information is put into the memory and particularly into the region of the substrate 10 lying between electrode pairs by temporarily applying a voltage pulse of a predetermined polarity between the electrode pairs, such pulse being provided by the Write Pulse Generator 20 coupled to the various electrodes and of typical construction. Specifically, if a positive voltage pulse was provided by the Write Pulse Generator 20 between electrode pairs 12-14, with electrode 12 being presumed to be the positive electrode in this example, a remanent ferroelectric polarisation will take place in the region of substrate 10 lying between the crossed electrode pair, this remanent polarisation being in a direction and of a polarity dependent upon the polarity of the write pulse.

Similarly, if a negative voltage pulse was applied between electrode 16 on the one hand, and electrode 18 on the other hand, with electrode 16 in this instance being presumed to have the negative polarity, a remanent polarisation within the ferroelectric ceramic 10 will take place in the region disposed between the intersecting or crossed electrodes 16 and 18. In a similar fashion, predetermined remanent polarisation can be produced individually in all of the regions of the ferroelectric ceramic 10 that are disposed between crossed electrode pairs of the matrix array in direct dependence upon the polarity of the write pulse voltage applied, this remanent ferroelectric polarisation constituting stored information in that such polarisation within the ceramic will remain until removed by the application of a write voltage pulse of opposing polarity.

In accordance with the teachings of the instant invention, these stored "bits" of information in the form of remanent ferroelectric polarisation within the various regions of the substrate 10 can be extracted or "read" by selectively illuminating the poled regions of the substrate with a beam of light, as preferably can be provided by a laser, for example. Upon illumination, the polarised regions of the ferroelectric ceramic will produce a photovoltaic current and voltage at an associated electrode pair, with the polarity of the photo-current and photo-voltage being...
dependent upon the "stored" remanent ferroelectric polarisation or "information" within the particular region of the substrate.

In the preferred embodiment of the device wherein a so-called matrix configuration of the electrode pairs are provided, the entire ferroelectric ceramic substrate can be scanned by the illuminating beam which is contemplated to be continuously swept in the fashion of a "light pencil" by a light beam scanner of conventional construction as is designated by reference numeral 22, for example, light beam scanner 22 providing the sweeping illuminating beam designated by reference numeral 24. Further, and in this particular embodiment, the illumination from the light beam 24 would be transmitted into the associated poled regions of the ferroelectric ceramic 10 by passing through electrodes 12, 16 etc. disposed on the surface of the ceramic facing the illuminating beam, electrodes 12, 16, etc. being constructed so as to be transparent.

The generated photovoltaic currents and voltages at the electrode array would be detected by a synchronised detector designated by reference numeral 26 coupled to each of the electrode pairs, detector 26 being of conventional construction and serving to monitor the polarity of the photovoltaic currents and voltages developed in time synchronism with the light beam scanner 22. Such synchronism can be effected through a direct coupling of the detector 26 to the light beam scanner 22 in typical fashion, or through the utilisation of an external computer clock, all in accordance with standardised matrix memory addressing techniques.

Optical Display Apparatus

The discovered properties of the ferroelectric ceramic substrate of the instant invention can further be applied in conjunction with liquid crystals to fabricate a novel display apparatus and, in this respect, attention is generally directed to Fig.27 to Fig.32 of the appended application drawings.

The operational principle associated with the fabrication of such optical displays relies upon the utilisation of the photovoltaic currents and voltages generated by substrates of a ferroelectric ceramic material to effect switching of the opacity state of a liquid crystal operating in the field - effect mode. This generalised combination will be seen to provide a write-in read-out memory and optical display. Both the liquid crystal and the ferroelectric ceramic effectively function as a memory, either in a binary or bi-stable mode having two possible states designated as an "on" state or an "off" state wherein the liquid crystal is switched from a substantially transparent condition to a substantially opaque condition, or in a multi-state mode by which the transmission characteristics of the liquid crystal are varied through many states to effect a so-called gray scale display.

With particular reference to Fig.27 of the application drawings, a typical optical display device following the general teachings of the instant invention is shown, such display device providing so-called dark spot display capabilities. As depicted in Fig.27, a twisted nematic liquid crystal is designated by reference numeral 28, such crystal being sandwiched between two transparent electrodes 30 and 32.

As is known, the twisted nematic liquid crystal 28 will vary its transmission characteristic to incident light dependent upon the polarity and magnitude of a voltage applied across electrodes 30 and 32. Specifically, the twisted nematic liquid crystal 28 serves to transmit illumination through it as long as there is no voltage across electrodes 30 and 32. In conjunction with the twisted nematic liquid crystal 28, a linear polariser 34 is provided, as is an analyser 36 of conventional construction. The linear polariser 34 and the analyser 36 are crossed so that no light passes through the combination to a diffuse reflector 38 except for the fact that the twisted nematic liquid crystal cell interposed between them rotates the polarisation of the incident illumination by 90° so as to allow passage of light. Application of a voltage across the cell electrodes 30 and 32 destroys the ability of the liquid crystal cell 28 to rotate the plane of the polarisation of the illumination and the illumination is consequently absorbed in the analyser 36 rather than transmitted and reflected off the diffuse reflector 38.

Accordingly, when voltage is applied across electrodes 30 and 32, a dark colour of the liquid cell would be displayed in so-called dark spot display. The magnitude of the display is dependent upon the magnitude of the applied voltage, such that a voltage applied across cell electrode 30 and 32 less than a characteristic amount necessary to effect full plane rotation will only partially reduce the rotating ability of the liquid crystal 28 thereby resulting in only a partial extinction of illumination and the generation of a gray-scale display. The above discussion of the operation of a so-called twisted nematic liquid crystal is entirely conventional.

To obtain the switching voltage for application to the cell electrodes 30 and 32, a substrate of a ferroelectric ceramic designated by reference numeral 40 it utilised, the substrate 40 being sandwiched between electrodes 42 and 44 as shown, ceramic substrate 40 being disposed such that the illustrated illumination impinges not only on the liquid crystal 28, but also on the ceramic substrate. As illustrated, electrodes 42 and 44 of the ceramic substrate 40 are respectively coupled to the transparent electrodes 30 and 32 of the twisted nematic liquid crystal cell 28.
Initially, a polarisation voltage is applied to the ferroelectric ceramic substrate 40 across the associated electrodes 42 and 44, such voltage being in the form of a pulse and serving to produce a remanent polarisation in the direction of the arrow shown within the substrate. Subsequently, and in accordance with the teachings of the invention, when the substrate 40 is illuminated, a current will flow in a circuit connecting terminal 42 to terminal 30 of the liquid crystal cell 28, through the cell 28 to electrodes 32, and then to terminals 44 of the ceramic substrate 40, this current being a photovoltaic current proportional to the magnitude of the remanent polarisation effected within the ferroelectric ceramic by the initial application of the polarisation voltage pulse.

The magnitude of the photovoltaic current can be varied in accordance with the generalised teachings of the instant invention discussed at the outset by simply varying the magnitude of the initial polarising pulse. The so-called gray-scale display capability of the light transmission characteristics of the liquid crystal 28 is provided simply through a pre-selection of the magnitude of the remanent polarisation produced and, of course, assuming a constant intensity illumination. The memory characteristics of the ferroelectric ceramic 40 are inherently brought about in that the value of the photovoltaic current can be changed only through the application of another polarising pulse. Thus, the generalised apparatus of Fig.27 functionally constitutes an apparatus which effects an optical display of the state of the memory within ferroelectric ceramic substrate 40.

In the embodiment as described in Fig.27, a so-called "dark spot display" was effected. In the event that a so-called "bright spot" is desired to appear during the "on" state of the liquid crystal in transmission or reflection, polariser 34 and analyser 36 would be disposed in a parallel relationship with respect to one another, rather than crossed. Further, and although the basic embodiment above-discussed refers to the utilisation of liquid crystals of the twisted nematic type, similar results can be obtained with so-called colour switching crystals which, in like fashion, alter their light transmission characteristics to incident polarised light in response to the application of a voltage across them.

In accordance with the generalised teachings of Fig.27, various other forms of optical displays can be constructed. For example, and with particular reference to Fig.28 of the application drawings, a different form of combined memory and optical display apparatus is illustrated, this apparatus making use of a colour switching liquid crystal 46 instead of the twisted nematic liquid crystal 28 of Fig.27. As was explained above, the colour switching liquid crystal such as crystal 46 serves to alter its light transmission characteristics to incident polarised light, and it is for this reason that the light source illustrated in Fig.28 is defined as being polarised illumination, although it is to be understood that in this embodiment, as well as in the following embodiments to be discussed which use colour switching liquid crystals, a non-polarised light source can be provided if a linear polariser is disposed within the apparatus on the side of the liquid crystal nearest the incoming illumination.

The display apparatus of Fig.28 defines a so-called monolithic structure as opposed to the exemplary structure of Fig.27 wherein the liquid crystal was physically spaced from the energising ferroelectric ceramic. In Fig.28, a "sandwich" construction is provided comprising a face plate 48, a transparent electrode 50 coupled to ground, the colour switching liquid crystal 46, a slab or substrate of a ferroelectric ceramic 52, and a plurality of electrodes such as electrodes 54 coupled to the ferroelectric ceramic 52 in an array.

When a short voltage pulse is initially applied between the ground electrode 50 and one of the polarity of rear electrodes 54, the region of the liquid crystal 46 immediately in front of the rear electrode 54 will become transparent resulting in a potential appearing between the semi-transparent ground electrode 50 and the rear electrode 54 due to the incident illumination. In this instance, the ferroelectric ceramic material 52 would preferably be a transparent ceramic, such as 0.020 inch disk of 8.5/65/35 PLZT with a grain size of 6 microns, polarised in the thickness direction and producing a photo-emf of about 30 volts and a short circuit current of $10^{-7}$ amperes/cm.sup.2 per watt per cm.sup.2 input at 388 nm, for example. Further, the rear electrodes 54 are contemplated to be of a transparent variety, such as indium oxide 50 that a display can be provided in transmission.

A further variant of the operation of the device of Fig.28 is possible, eliminating the necessity for the initial application of a short voltage pulse between the ground electrode 50 and one of the plurality of rear electrodes 54 to commence the process of clearing of the liquid crystal 46. In this respect, and in addition to the normally provided uniform polarised illumination, an additional intense source of light providing a thin beam such as a laser would be provided, the laser constituting a so-called "light pencil". Upon application of the intense pencil beam of light of the apparatus of Fig.28, such intense light would penetrate the liquid crystal even in its nominally closed state thus illuminating the ferroelectric ceramic 52, such illumination causing a photo-voltage to be generated as above-discussed which would then appear across the liquid crystal in the region of the intense light beam causing that region to become transparent and allowing the uniform polarised illumination to penetrate into that region, such uniform illumination further clearing the crystal in a regenerative process. This would result in a clear region which looked bright under reflected light, and a current flowing from the associated rear electrode 54 to ground, for example, through a non-illustrated resistor that would be provided. With this modification, the intense beam of
light constituting the "light pencil" can be utilised to actually enter a line drawing into the display, with a point by point read-out being provided.

As opposed to obtaining a point-by-point electrical read-out, the image written-in by the "light pencil" can be externally projected. In this respect, and as explained, the "image" constitutes transparent sections of the liquid crystal. If a light source such as a tungsten-halogen lamp normally associated with projectors was additionally provided to illuminate the display apparatus from the "rear" thereof in a direction opposing the direction of the incident polarised illumination, such auxiliary light source would pass through the display apparatus at the transparent regions, much in the same manner as a photographic slide is projected, the projection image being displayed on a suitable screen. In this instance, of course, a ferroelectric ceramic material that is transparent would be required, such as the material known as PLZT 7/65/35.

As can further be appreciated, the memory characteristics of the optical display of Fig.28 are not permanent. If domain switching and a permanent memory capability is desired, an alternative electrode configuration would be required in the fashion illustrated in Fig.30 of the application drawings, components of the apparatus of Fig.30 that are the same as those of Fig.28 being represented by the same reference numerals. Specifically, an additional transparent electrode 56 would be disposed between the colour switching liquid crystal 46 and the ferroelectric ceramic 52 polarisation within the ferroelectric ceramic 52 being effected by the application of a voltage pulse across electrodes 54 and 56, and with an additional grounding electrode 52 being provided on the ceramic 52 as is shown so as to couple one end of the ferroelectric ceramic 52 to the transparent electrode 50.

If a twisted nematic liquid crystal were desired to be utilised in the generalised configuration of the optical display of Fig.28, a still further modification of the electrode arrangement would be needed and, in this respect, attention is directed to Fig.29 of the application drawings. Like parts in this figure are again represented by the same reference numerals.

Initially, since a twisted nematic liquid crystals alters its light transmissions characteristics by rotating the plane of the polarisation of the illumination, a further polariser such as analyser 60 is required to be disposed between the ferroelectric ceramic 52 and the liquid crystal 46, the crystal 46 thereby being properly responsive to incoming polarised illumination either provided directly by a polarised source, or provided through the utilisation of a non-polarised illumination source in conjunction with a polariser such as polariser 34 of the embodiment of Fig.27. Additionally, a light transmitting electrode 62 would be disposed on the surface of the analyser 60 immediately adjacent the liquid crystal 46, transparent electrode 62 being coupled through the analyser and the ferroelectric ceramic substrate 52 to an associated rear electrode 54. Each of the rear electrodes 54 of the array would have associated therewith an additional transparent electrode 62 in similar manner.

If the analyser 60 was constructed to be crossed with the incoming polarised illumination, the liquid crystal 46 would normally transmit light through it and, upon the application of a voltage between electrode 54 and the front transparent electrode 50, would cause the apparatus to provide a so-called "dark spot display." Alternatively, if the incoming polarised light has a plane of polarisation parallel to the polarisation plane of analyser 60, a so-called "bright spot display" would result. It should further be appreciated that the embodiment of Fig.29 can be utilised with a "light pencil" to provide a functional operation similar to that discussed with respect to Fig.28.

Attention is now directed to Fig.31 of the application drawings wherein an illustration is provided of an optical display array utilising a liquid crystal 64 of the colour switching type. Each of the units shown is contemplated to represent one of the horizontal row in an overall array. The structure illustrates is in monolithic form and, as shown, constitutes a polarity of superposed layers. Specifically, a transparent electrode 66 is provided, behind which is the liquid crystal 64 disposed between two face plates 68 and 70. A transparent electrode structure 72 is provided imbedded at one end with the liquid crystal 64 and coupled at the other end to one end of the ferroelectric ceramic substrate 74 as is shown. The other end of each ferroelectric ceramic slab 74 is commonly coupled to ground along with the front transparent electrode 66 as was discussed.

With the embodiment of Fig.31, each ferroelectric ceramic substrate 74 would be initially polarised by the application of a polarising voltage pulse between the representative terminals or electrodes 76 and 78, for example. Now, upon the application of illumination to the ferroelectric ceramic, a photovoltaic voltage will be generated which appears between the front transparent electrode 66 and the rear transparent electrode 72 causing the liquid crystal 64 between these electrodes to become transparent.

Liquid crystal 64 would normally be in a nominally opaque state. However, sufficient light would be transmitted through the liquid crystal material so as to produce the photo-voltage in the ferroelectric ceramic 74, which photovoltage applied to the electrodes 66 and 72 in a positive feedback arrangement serves to increase the transparency of the colour switching liquid crystal 64 in the region between the electrodes. This increased transparency, in turn, increases the voltage output of the ferroelectric material 74 which further increases the transparency of the liquid crystal 64 such that a transparent region would be formed appearing as a bright spot.
with reflected light. The surface of the ferroelectric ceramic 74 would in this instance serve itself as a diffuse reflector which would be required by a display function in the reflection mode.

Further, it should be appreciated that a certain threshold light transmission of the liquid crystal 64 would be required to begin this process of creating a transparent region. If the liquid crystal is sufficiently thick, the transmitted light through the crystal in its normally opaque state would be insufficient to commence this clearing process and an applied voltage would be initially necessary across the crystal to commence the process, this voltage being used as a "read" signal.

As can be appreciated, the remanent polarisation of the ferroelectric ceramic material 74 in the embodiment depicted in Fig.31 is along the length of the ceramic substrate. An alternate arrangement is possible wherein the memory writing is accomplished by altering the remanent polarisation of the ferroelectric ceramic in the thickness direction. In this respect, reference is once again made to Fig.30 of the application drawings illustrating the disposition of a ferroelectric ceramic 52 in conjunction with the colour switching liquid crystal 46 such that the remanent polarisation of the ceramic is achieved in the thickness direction, and such that permanent memory characteristics are imparted. With this arrangement, the incident illumination would be quickly absorbed in the surface of the ferroelectric ceramic material but would still penetrate sufficiently so as to produce relatively large photovoltaic voltages.

Finally, the optical display device of Fig.31 can be constructed with a twisted nematic liquid crystal as opposed to the colour switching liquid crystal of Fig.31 and attention is herein directed to Fig.32 of the application drawings. Again, components of the apparatus of Fig.32 which are similar to those in Fig.31 are represented by the same reference numeral.

In this embodiment, a polariser 80 would initially be provided so as to polarise the incoming illumination. In a fashion similar to the generalised embodiment of Fig.27, an analyser 82 would likewise be provided, polariser 80 and analyser 82 being assumed to be parallelly disposed. Incoming polarised light will not impinge on the ferroelectric ceramic material 74 because the twisted nematic crystal 64 would rotate the plane of the polarisation of the illumination by 90° and such illumination would thus be absorbed in analyser 82. The display unit, accordingly, would initially be in an "off" or dark state and no voltage would exist across the terminals or electrodes 76 and 78 of the ferroelectric ceramic.

The "on" of the display apparatus would be bright under reflected illumination and would be indicated by the appearance of a DC voltage across terminals 76 and 78. The unit would be switched to the "on" stage through the application of an initial polarising voltage pulse between electrodes 76 and 78. The twisted nematic liquid crystal would now lose its ability to rotate the plane of polarisation of the illumination and light would fall on the surface of the now-polarised ferroelectric ceramic material 74 such that the ceramic would generate a steady, high photovoltaic voltage which would appear across the electrodes of the liquid crystal. This photovoltaic voltage would prevent the liquid crystal from returning to the twisted phase and the liquid crystal would thus remain transparent and a voltage potential would be maintained across the electrodes for the duration of the illumination.

The display apparatus can be returned to its dark state simply by shorting across terminals 76 and 78 and the crystal cell would return to its opaque condition with no voltage appearing across the electrodes. A new external voltage pulse would be required across electrodes 76 and 78 to again switch the unit on. It should be appreciated that only a momentary voltage pulse is required to turn the display unit on, and only a momentary short circuit is needed to turn the unit off.

If the incident illumination were interrupted, the display unit would likewise be put into an "off" state. The memory characteristics of the display apparatus thus are volatile in the sense that a removal of illumination will put the display unit into an "off" state. Permanent memory characteristics can be obtained by depoling the ferroelectric ceramic 74 with additional circuitry and the illumination could then be interrupted. When illumination is restored, a voltage pulse would switch "on" only those units of the array which were in an "on" state at the time of interruption of illumination, since only the polarised ferroelectric ceramic units will produce a photo-voltage. The depoled units can then be repoled without switching them "on", utilising a suitable circuit to apply a polarising voltage to the ceramic but not to the liquid cell to therefore retain the liquid crystal cell in its dark state as it was at the time the illumination was removed.

Many other different embodiments combining a liquid crystal display with the ferroelectric ceramic substrate of the instant invention can be fabricated along the generalised teachings referred to above. From the standpoint of materials selection, PLZT is desired when a transparent ferroelectric ceramic is required, and other ferroelectric ceramics such as Pb(Zr0.53Ti0.47)O3 + 1% by weight of Nb2O5 (i.e. PZT-5), a solid solution of lead titanate, and lead zirconate can be utilised when relatively cheap "opaque" materials are acceptable. With the display devices as above-discussed, typical thickness of the ferroelectric ceramic material are on the order of 0.020 inches. In accordance with the generalised teachings appearing at the outset of this specification, it is to be appreciated that
the photovoltaic output of the ferroelectric ceramic material is proportional to the material length and, the higher the photovoltaic output, the faster the switching time of the associated liquid crystal.

A further form of optical display apparatus is contemplated herein by which the previously discussed photoconductive properties of ferroelectric ceramic materials are utilised in the formation of display apparatus. As will be recalled and appreciated, the resistivity of typical ferroelectric ceramic materials varies as a function of the illumination incident thereon and thus, the voltage drop across illuminated regions of a ferroelectric ceramic substrate that has a polarising voltage applied thereto would be less than the voltage drop across non-illuminated or dark regions of the ceramic. Attention in this respect is directed to Fig.33 of the application drawings.

The display device depicted in Fig.33 is such that a photograph in the form of a projected image can be stored in a ferroelectric ceramic sheet or substrate 84 as a pattern of poled ferroelectric regions where the remanent polarisation of such regions is simply related to the intensity of the projected image at that point. The pattern of poled regions can be produced by the already discussed technique of a photoconductive ferroelectric sandwich, or by utilising the photoconductive properties of ferroelectric materials directly.

In the embodiment of Fig.33, an image is projected onto a ferroelectric-photoconductive substrate 84, which substrate is backed by a sheet of resistive material 86 such as evaporated carbon, semiconductor material or the like. A transparent front electrode 88 forming a ground plane covers the surface of the ferroelectric material 84, which material is of the type which would exhibit a sizable polarisation dependent photovoltaic effect. A further electrode 90, covers the rear surface of the resistive material 86, and a polarising voltage would be applied to the apparatus between electrodes 90 and 83.

With such an arrangement the voltage drop will be seen to exist across those regions of the ferroelectric substrate 84 which are illuminated will be less than the voltage drop apparent across the non-illuminated or dark regions. As such the lower remanent polarisation within the ferroelectric material will be effected than in those regions of the ferroelectric material that are not illuminated by the projected image. Accordingly a "negative" of the projected image would thus be stored in the ferroelectric substrate or sheet 84 as regions of varying remanent polarisation. In that the ferroelectric 84 is photovoltaic having polarisation dependent photo-voltages as discussed this stored image is now read out electrically utilising the techniques already described with respect to the embodiments of the invention illustrated in Fig.26 of the application drawings or Fig.28 et. seq. of the application drawings. It is displayed by applying the photo-voltages from regions of polarisation in which the image is effectively stored to liquid crystal electrodes as for example is illustrated in Fig.34 of the application drawings where illumination sufficiently strong penetrates the dark liquid crystal 93, to in a regenerative fashion, apply the photo-voltage from polarised region 91, to the liquid crystal region immediately adjacent varying in intensity depending on the value of the polarisation. A negative image is produced in reflection.

High Voltage Battery

The teaching in this patent may be applied toward the provision of a novel high voltage battery serving to convert radiation such as X-radiation in this instance, directly into electrical energy. In this respect, a block or substrate of ferroelectric ceramic material would again be provided to which electrodes are attached in the identical fashion as was discussed with respect to the basic physical configuration of the invention illustrated in Fig.1 of the application drawings. An example of the constituent material of the ferroelectric ceramic in this instance is solid solution PZT-5A consisting of 53 mole percent ZrTiO₃ and 47 mole PbTiO₃ with 1 percent by weight of niobium added such as Nb₂O₅. This ferroelectric ceramic material would be poled in the usual fashion by the application of a high voltage applied across the electrodes.

To function as a battery, the ceramic material can contain a radioactive component and this can be all or a portion of any of the above-discussed constituent elements. For example, the material may be fabricated with a radioactive isotope of Zr, Ti, Nb, etc., or a radioactive additive can be added to the composition. Alternatively, the composition may be placed next to a strong radioactive source and, for example, could actually be coated with a radioactive material. The primary requirement is that a flux of gamma rays or X-rays within the material be produced, which radiation has the effect of ionising the ferroelectric ceramic material so as to produce non-equilibrium carriers.

Thus, in the instance of the application of a poled ferroelectric ceramic material as a high voltage battery, an external light source would not be required as the ionising source in that the non-equilibrium carriers would be produced by the internal ionisation of the ferroelectric ceramic material effected by the radiation and would result in an emf which would appear across the electrodes.

Accordingly, an open circuit voltage proportional to the length of the ferroelectric ceramic material between the electrodes and inversely proportional to average grain size, and the like as was discussed at the outset of this
specification would be produced by the gamma or X-radiation. Similarly, a short circuit current proportional to the electrode area and the net (steady state) increment of excess carriers introduced into the conduction band would likewise be produced, this being related to the intensity of the ionising radiation.

As can be appreciated, the emf would persist as long as the ionising radiation persisted and, extrapolating from the detailed photo-effect results, the emf produced by this high voltage battery would be relatively independent of the intensity of the radiation and thus not strongly dependent on the half-life of the radioactive material.

While there has been shown and described several preferred embodiments and applications of the basic invention hereof, those skilled in the art should appreciate that such embodiments are exemplary and not limiting and are to be construed within the scope of the following claims:

CLAIMS

1. A photovoltaic memory apparatus comprising: a substrate of a ferroelectric ceramic; means for selectively applying a voltage pulse of a predetermined polarity across a region of said substrate to thereby effect a remanent ferroelectric polarisation in said region of said substrate representative of the information to be stored; means for selectively illuminating said poled region of said substrate with a source of radiation, whereby a photovoltaic voltage is produced at said region of a polarity dependent upon said predetermined polarity of said polarising voltage pulse; and means for detecting said photovoltaic voltage whereby the stored information is retrieved.

2. A memory apparatus as defined in claim 1, wherein an array of electrode pairs are disposed on opposing sides of said substrate to define a matrix configuration of poled regions, said polarising voltage pulse being applied across selected electrode pairs, and wherein said information reading means scans said matrix configuration in accordance with a desired pattern, said detecting means being coupled to said array of electrode pairs and being synchronised with said information reading means.

3. A memory apparatus as defined in claim 1, wherein said substrate is sandwiched between at least one electrode pair and one electrode of said electrode pair is transparent such that said illumination from said information reading means passes through it into said respective poled region of said substrate.

4. A method of addressing and storing information utilising a substrate of a ferroelectric ceramic as a memory core, said method comprising the steps of initially effecting a remanent electrical polarisation in regions of the ferroelectric ceramic by the application of a voltage pulse across the regions of the substrate, the voltage pulse having at least one of a polarity and magnitude representative of the information to be stored; addressing the memory core while illuminating the polarised regions of the ferroelectric ceramic substrate with a source of radiation; and detecting at least one of the polarity and magnitude of the photovoltaic current and voltage produced by such illumination upon the polarised regions, the polarity and magnitude being dependent upon the polarity and magnitude of the initial polarising voltage pulse whereby the stored information is recovered.

5. An optical apparatus comprising in combination: an electro-optic means providing variable light transmission characteristics in response to the magnitude and polarity of an applied voltage; a substrate of a ferroelectric ceramic; means for applying a polarising voltage pulse of a predetermined magnitude and polarity across said substrate to effect a remanent electrical polarisation within said substrate; means for illuminating said electro-optic means and said ceramic substrate, illumination impinging upon said substrate effecting the generation by said substrate of a photovoltaic current and voltage having a polarity dependent upon the polarity of said polarising voltage pulse; and means for applying said generated photovoltaic voltage to said electro-optic means, whereby the transmission characteristics of said electro-optic means to the illumination impinging thereon is varied to effect a visual display.

6. A display apparatus as defined in claim 5, wherein the light transmission characteristics of said electro-optic means is switched from a relatively low opacity to a relatively high opacity upon application thereto of said generated photovoltaic voltage.

7. A display apparatus as defined in claim 5, wherein the light transmission characteristics of said electro-optic means is switched from a relatively high opacity to a relatively low opacity upon application thereto of said generated photovoltaic voltage.

8. A display apparatus as defined in claim 6, wherein said relatively low opacity is of a value such that said electro-optic means is substantially transparent, said relatively high opacity being of a value such that said electro-optic means is substantially opaque.
9. A display apparatus as defined in claim 7, wherein said relatively low opacity is of a value such that said electro-optic means is substantially transparent, said relatively high opacity being of a value such that said electro-optic means is substantially opaque.

10. A display apparatus as defined in claim 5, wherein the magnitude of said polarising voltage is selected such that the light transmission characteristics of said electro-optic means is switched between varying opacities to define a gray scale.

11. A display apparatus as defined in claim 33, wherein said electro-optic means is a liquid crystal of the twisted nematic type.

12. A display apparatus as defined in claim 5, wherein said electro-optic means is a liquid crystal of the colour switching type.

13. A display apparatus as defined in claim 11, wherein said liquid crystal is sandwiched between a light polariser and a light analyser.

14. A display apparatus as defined in claim 5, wherein said electro-optic means and said ferroelectric ceramic substrate are disposed in superposition to define a monolithic structure.

15. A display apparatus as defined in claim 14, wherein said electro-optic means is a colour switching liquid crystal disposed in superposition with said ceramic substrate to define a monolithic structure, and wherein said means for applying a polarising voltage to said substrate and said means for applying said photovoltaic voltage to said liquid crystal comprises a plurality of electrodes disposed on opposite faces of said structure with said structure being sandwiched between them, at least one electrode pair being in contact with said liquid crystal and with said ceramic substrate, respectively; said electrode of said pair which is in contact with said liquid crystal being transparent.

16. A display apparatus as defined in claim 14, wherein said monolithic structure constitutes a plurality of stacked superposed layers comprising a first transparent electrode, an electro-optic means, a second transparent electrode, said substrate of a ferroelectric ceramic, and a third electrode, said third electrode being coupled to said first electrode, said means for applying said polarising voltage being defined by said second and third electrodes, said means for applying said generated photovoltaic voltage being defined by said first and second electrodes, and wherein said means for illuminating said electro-optic means and said substrate comprises a light beam directed to impinge upon said first transparent electrode.

17. A display apparatus as defined in claim 16, wherein said electro-optic means is a liquid crystal of the colour switching type.

18. A display apparatus as defined in claim 16, wherein said plurality of stacked layers further includes a polariser disposed over said first transparent electrode, and an analyser disposed between said second transparent electrode and said ceramic substrate, said electro-optic means being a liquid crystal of the twisted nematic type.

19. A display apparatus as defined in claim 16, wherein said illumination means comprises a source of polarised light, said plurality of stacked layers including an analyser disposed between said second transparent electrode and said ceramic substrate, said electro-optic means being a liquid crystal of the twisted nematic type.

20. A display apparatus as defined in claim 19, wherein said analyser is disposed in a direction parallel to the plane of polarisation of the incident illumination.

21. A display apparatus as defined in claim 19, wherein said analyser is disposed so as to be crossed with respect to the plane of polarisation of the incident illumination.

22. A method of electrically storing optical information comprising the steps of: projecting an image constituting the optical information onto a sandwich of a ferroelectric ceramic backed by a layer of resistive material to form an illumination pattern thereon; applying a voltage pulse across the sandwich whereby varying remanent polarisations within the ferroelectric ceramic are produced in dependence upon the illumination pattern.

23. The method of claim 22, further including the step of reading out the remanent polarisations to thereby extract the stored optical information.
24. A display apparatus as defined in claim 5, wherein said variation of the transmission characteristics of the electro-optic means ensures that illumination continues to impinge upon said substrate to latch said electro-optical means and maintain said transmission variation thereof.

25. A method of electrically storing optical information comprising the steps of: projecting an image constituting the optical information onto a ferroelectric ceramic layer to form an illumination pattern thereon and thereby alter the resistivity of the ceramic layer in accordance with said pattern; applying a voltage pulse across the ceramic whereby varying remanent polarisations within the ferroelectric ceramic are produced in dependence upon the illumination pattern.
METHODS FOR CONTROLLING THE PATH OF MAGNETIC FLUX FROM A PERMANENT MAGNET AND DEVICES INCORPORATING THE SAME

This patent covers a device which is claimed to have a greater output power than the input power required to run it.

ABSTRACT

A permanent magnet device includes a permanent magnet having north and south pole faces with a first pole piece positioned adjacent one pole face thereof and a second pole piece positioned adjacent the other pole face thereof so as to create at least two potential magnetic flux paths. A first control coil is positioned along one flux path and a second control coil is positioned along the other flux path, each coil being connected to a control circuit for controlling the energisation thereof. The control coils may be energised in a variety of ways to achieved desirable motive and static devices, including linear reciprocating devices, linear motion devices, rotary motion devices and power conversion.

DESCRIPTION

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

This invention relates generally to permanent magnet devices and more particularly, to a permanent magnet control component in which the flow of flux from a permanent magnet is controlled between two or more flux paths by utilising timed delivery of electrical signals through one or more coils placed along at least one of the flux paths. Such permanent magnet control components may take on a variety of configurations facilitating use of such components in a variety of applications including applications involving the production of reciprocating, linear, and rotary motion and power conversion. Several novel permanent magnet rotary motion devices of motor constructions which operate by controlling the path of magnetic flux from one or more permanent magnets are described, such permanent magnet rotary motor constructions having increased efficiency and more desirable torque characteristics as compared to many currently used motors.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Magnetic force of attraction is commonly used in a variety of types of permanent magnet devices including both linear and rotary motors. In the field of such permanent magnet devices there is a continuous pursuit of increased efficiency and reduced complexity.

Accordingly, an object of the present invention is to provide a permanent magnet control component in which the path of a given level of permanent magnet flux can be controlled by a lesser level of electromagnetic flux.

Another object of the present invention is to provide a permanent magnet control component in which substantially all of the flux from a permanent magnet can be switched between at least two different flux paths of the permanent magnet control component so as to enable useful work in the form of linear, reciprocating, and rotary motion.

Still another object of the present invention is to provide permanent magnet control components and motor constructions in which flux path control is provided by energising an 10 electromagnet to oppose the magnetic flux of one or more permanent magnets.

Another object of the present invention is to provide permanent magnet control components and motor constructions in which flux path control is provided by energising an electromagnet to aid the magnetic flux of one or more permanent magnets.

Yet another object of the present invention is to provide permanent magnet motor 15 constructions with improved operating characteristics.
SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

These and other objects of the invention are attained by an apparatus which, in one aspect, is a permanent magnet device, comprising a permanent magnet having north and south pole faces, a first pole piece, a second pole piece, a first control coil, a second control coil, and circuit means, the first pole piece positioned adjacent the north pole face of the permanent magnet and including a first path portion, a second path portion and a third portion, the first path portion extending beyond a perimeter of the north pole face and the second path portion extending beyond the perimeter of the north pole face to define first and second flux paths for magnetic flux emanating from the north pole face of the permanent magnet, the first path portion of the first pole piece connected to the second path portion of the first pole piece by the third portion which extends across the north pole face of the permanent magnet, the second pole piece positioned adjacent the south pole face and including a first path portion and a second path portion, the first path portion extending beyond a perimeter of the south pole face and substantially aligned with the first path portion of the first pole piece, the second path portion extending beyond the perimeter of the south pole face and substantially aligned with the second path portion of the first pole piece, the first control coil positioned around the first path portion of the first pole piece, the second control coil positioned around the second path portion of the first pole piece, the circuit means connected to each of the first control coil and the second control coil to alternate energise the first coil and the second coil in a timed sequential manner.

Another aspect of the present invention provides a method for controlling the path of magnetic flux from a permanent magnet which involves placing a first pole piece adjacent a first pole face of the permanent magnet so as to have at least first and second path portions extending beyond a perimeter of the first pole face. A second pole piece is placed adjacent a second pole face of the permanent magnet so as to include at least one portion which substantially aligns with the first and second path portions of the first pole piece. A first control coil is placed along and around the first path portion of the first pole piece and a second control coil is placed along and around the second path portion of the first pole piece. The first control coil is repeatedly energised in a permanent magnet magnetic flux opposing manner so as to prevent magnetic flux of the permanent magnet from traversing the first path portion of the first pole piece, and the second control coil is repeatedly energised in a permanent magnet magnetic flux opposing manner so as to prevent magnetic flux of the permanent magnet from traversing the second path portion of the first pole piece.

Yet another aspect of the present invention provides a method for controlling the path of magnetic flux from a permanent magnet by placing a first pole piece adjacent a first pole face of the permanent magnet so as to have at least first and second path portions extending beyond a perimeter of the first pole face. A second pole piece is placed adjacent a second pole face of the permanent magnet so as to include at least one portion which substantially aligns with the first and second path portions of the first pole piece. A first control coil is placed along and around the first path portion of the first pole piece, and a second control coil is placed along and around the second path portion of the first pole piece. The following steps are alternately performed in a repeated manner:

(i) energising the first control coil in a permanent magnet magnetic flux aiding manner so as to couple with substantially all magnetic flux of the permanent magnet such that substantially no magnetic flux of the permanent magnet traverses the second path portion of the first pole piece when the first control coil is so energised; and

(ii) energising the second control coil in a permanent magnet magnetic flux opposing manner so as to couple with substantially all magnetic flux of the permanent magnet such that substantially no magnetic flux of the permanent magnet traverses the first path portion of the first pole piece when the second control coil is so energised.

A further aspect of the present invention provides method for controlling the path of magnetic flux from a permanent magnet by placing a first pole piece adjacent a first pole face of the permanent magnet so as to have at least first and second path portions extending beyond a perimeter of the first pole face, and placing a second pole piece adjacent a second pole face of the permanent magnet so as to include at least one portion which substantially aligns with the first and second path portions of the first pole piece. A first control coil is placed along and around the first path portion of the first pole piece, and a second control coil is placed along and around the second path portion of the first pole piece. The following steps are alternately performed in a repeated manner:

(i) energising the first control coil in a permanent magnet magnetic flux aiding manner so as to couple with substantially all magnetic flux of the permanent magnet such that substantially no magnetic flux of the permanent magnet traverses the second path portion of the first pole piece when the first control coil is so energised; and

(ii) energising the second control coil in a permanent magnet magnetic flux opposing manner so as to couple with substantially all magnetic flux of the permanent magnet such that substantially no magnetic flux of the permanent magnet traverses the first path portion of the first pole piece when the second control coil is so energised.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION
For a better understanding of the present invention reference may be made to the accompanying drawings in which:

Fig. 1 is a perspective view of a magnetic device in which the magnetic flux from a magnetic member traverse a single path to produce a coupling force;

Fig. 2 is a perspective view of a magnetic device in which the magnetic flux from a magnetic member splits between two paths;

Fig. 3 is a side view of two magnetic members arrange in parallel between pole pieces;
**Fig. 4** is a side view of two magnetic members arranged in series between pole pieces;

**Fig. 5** and **Fig. 6** are side views of a permanent magnet device including a permanent magnet having pole pieces positioned against the pole faces thereof and including a movable armature;
Fig. 7, Fig. 8 and Fig. 9 are side views of a permanent magnet device including a permanent magnet having pole pieces positioned against the pole faces thereof to provide two magnetic flux paths and including a movable armature which can be positioned along each magnetic flux path;
Figs. 10, 10A-10H are perspective views of various embodiments of permanent magnet 5 control components which include two or more magnetic flux paths;
Figs. 11, 11A-11F are side views of a permanent magnet device including a permanent magnet having pole pieces positioned against the pole faces thereof and including a movable armature and a permanent bypass extending between the pole pieces;
Figs. 12, 12A-12E are side views of a two path permanent magnet device including two bypasses;
Figs. 13A-13C are side views of a permanent magnet linear reciprocating device;

Fig. 14 is a side view of an electromagnetic linear reciprocating device;

Fig. 15 is a side view of a two path permanent magnet device showing control coils energised in an exceeding manner;
Figs.16A-E are a side view of a linear reciprocating device with control coils energised in an exceeding manner;
Figs. 17A-17D depict another embodiment of a linear reciprocating device;
Figs.18A-18E show a linear motion device;
Fig. 19 is an exploded perspective view of a rotary motion device;

Fig. 20 is a partial assembled and cut away view of the rotary motion device of Fig.19;
Figs.21A-21E are top views of the partial assembly of Fig.20, which views depict rotational motion thereof,
Fig. 22 is an assembled, cut-away view of the rotary motion device of Fig. 19 including a housing;

Fig. 23 is an exploded perspective view of another embodiment of a rotary motion device;
Fig. 24 is a perspective view of the rotary motion device of Fig. 23 as assembled;

Figs. 25A-25B are end views of the rotary motion device of Fig. 24 with the end cap removed to expose the rotor member;

Figs. 26-28 show end views of various configurations for skewing the direction of rotation in the rotary motion device of Fig. 24;
Figs. 29A-29D are end views of the rotary motion device of Fig. 24 illustrating a sequence of its rotational movements;

Fig. 30 is an exploded partial perspective view of another embodiment of a rotary motion device;
Fig. 31 is a perspective view of the rotary motion device of Fig. 30 as assembled.

Figs. 32A-32D are top views of the rotary motion device of Fig. 31 illustrating its rotational movement.
Fig. 33 is a side view of the rotary motion device of Fig. 31 as assembled and including a housing;

Fig. 34 is a perspective view of another embodiment of a rotary motion device;

Fig. 35 is a top view of the rotary motion device of Fig. 34;
Fig. 36 is a perspective view of the permanent magnet rotor member of the rotary motion device of Fig. 34;

Fig. 37 and Fig. 38 show alternative configurations for the control component incorporated into the rotary motion device of Fig. 34;
Figs. 39A-39D are top views of the rotary motion device of Fig. 34 and depict its rotational movement;
Figs. 40-44 are alternative variations of the circuit for controlling the timed energisation of control coils in the various devices of the present invention;
Figs. 45A-45C and Figs. 45X-45Z are side views of two path power conversion devices;
Fig. 46 is a schematic view of the permanent magnet portion of a rotor for use in some embodiments of the present device;

Fig. 47 and Fig. 48 show other embodiments of a linear motion device;
Fig. 49 is a top view of another embodiment of a rotating motor like construction; and

Fig. 50 is a schematic view of one of the three stator portions of the device shown in Fig. 49.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS
Referring now to the drawings, Figs. 1-4 are provided to facilitate an understanding of various aspects or features of the technology utilised in the present invention. Fig. 1 depicts a device 10 having a magnetic flux producing member 12 which may be a permanent magnet or electromagnet with magnetic poles 14 and 16 as shown. Pole pieces 18 and 20 are positioned adjacent respective poles 14 and 16 to provide a path for the magnetic flux of member 12. Each pole piece 18 and 20 has a pole piece end face 22 and 24. As used throughout this specification, it is understood that a pole piece, regardless of its shape or size, is preferably formed of soft iron, steel or some other magnetic material, with the preferred material being one which provides low reluctance, exhibits low hysteresis, and has a high magnetic flux density capability. Accordingly, the various pole pieces disclosed and described herein could likewise be of laminate type construction.

Referring again to Fig. 1 an armature 26, also formed of magnetic material, is shown with end faces 28 and 30 which are positioned and sized for being placed adjacent pole piece end faces 22 and 24, such that when so positioned a substantially continuous low reluctance path 32 is provided for magnetic flux from north pole 14, through pole piece 18, through armature 26, through pole piece 16, and to south pole 16. The magnetic flux travelling along such path 32 results in a force which tends to hold armature 26 in position aligned with pole piece end faces 22 and 24. The resulting magnetic coupling or holding force \( F \) provided between adjacent pole piece end face 22 and armature end face 28, and between adjacent pole piece end face 24 and armature end face 30, can be approximated by the following equation:

\[
F = B^2A/2\mu_0,
\]

where \( B \) is the magnetic flux density passing through the adjacent end faces and \( A \) is the surface area of the adjacent end faces. Assuming that if \( B \) is uniform throughout flux path 32 and that the area \( A \) of all end faces 22, 24, 28, and 30 is the same, then the total holding force \( F_{26} \) of armature 26 against pole pieces 18 and 20 will be:

\[
F_{26} = B^2A/\mu_0.
\]
In Fig. 2 a device 40 having the same magnetic flux producing member 12 with magnetic poles 14 and 16 is shown. Pole pieces 42 and 44 are positioned adjacent respective pole faces 14 and 16 to provide two paths, as opposed to one above, for the magnetic flux of member 12. In particular, pole piece 42 includes a first path portion 46 extending beyond a perimeter of north pole face 14 in one direction and a second path portion 48 extending beyond the perimeter of north pole face 14 in another direction. Similarly, pole piece 44 includes a first path portion 50 extending beyond the perimeter of south pole face 16 in one direction and a second path portion 52 extending beyond the perimeter of south pole face 16 in another direction. Each pole piece path portion 46, 48, 50, 52 includes a respective end face. A first armature 54 which can be positioned adjacent to the end faces of pole piece path components 48 and 52 provides a first magnetic flux path 56 and a second armature 58 which can be positioned adjacent between the end faces of pole piece path components 46 and 50 provides a second magnetic flux path 60. If the flux carrying area along flux paths 56 and 60 is the same as the flux carrying area along flux path 32 of Fig. 1, the magnetic flux density along each flux path 56 and 60 will be one-half the magnetic flux density along flux path 32 of Fig. 1 because the same amount of flux is split between two like paths. The effect of dividing a given amount of magnetic flux along two like flux paths instead of it passing along just one flux path can be seen by examining the holding force on armature 54 as compared to the holding force on armature 26 of Fig. 1. As already noted the magnetic flux density along path 56 will be one-half that along flux path 32 and thus the total holding force \( F_{T54} \) can be determined as:

\[
F_{T54} = (B/2)2A_0, H = B^2A_0/4H = F_{T26}/4.
\]

It is therefore seen that dividing the same amount of magnetic flux along two flux paths rather than along one flux path reduces the magnetic holding or coupling force on an armature to one-fourth rather than one-half as might have been expected. This unexpected magnetic holding or coupling force differential, resulting from multiple flux paths, can provide advantageous properties in linear, reciprocating, and rotary motion devices.
Referring now to Fig. 3 and Fig. 4, the behaviour of multiple magnetic flux sources arranged in parallel and series is described as compared to a single flux source. When identical flux sources 70 and 72 are positioned in parallel as shown in Fig. 3 with pole pieces 74 and 76 positioned adjacent the poles thereof to provide a flux path through armature 78, the flux density B through armature 78 is double what the flux density would be if only one magnetic flux producing member were present. However, the field intensity H resulting from the two members 70 and 72 remains unchanged. This result holds true regardless of whether members 70 and 72 are both permanent magnets, are both electromagnets, or are a combination of one permanent magnet and one electromagnet. On the other hand, the properties resulting from magnetic flux producing members 80 and 82 arranged pole-to-pole in series between pole pieces 84 and 86, with armature 88, as shown in Fig. 4, will vary depending on the nature of the members 80 and 82.

In a first case, if both members 80 and 82 are permanent magnets, the magnetic field intensity H resulting from the two permanent magnets will be double that of one permanent magnet and the flux density B through armature 88 will be the same as what the flux density would be if only one permanent magnet type member were present.

In a second case, if both members 80 and 82 are electromagnets, the field intensity H again doubles and the flux density B increases according to the B/H curve or relationship of the pole piece 84, 86 and armature 88 materials.

In a third case, if member 80 is a permanent magnet and member 82 is an electromagnet, the field intensity H again doubles, but, since the permanent magnet is near flux density saturation \( B_r \) the flux density can only be increased from \( B_r \) to \( B_{\text{max}} \) of the permanent magnet. At the point where electromagnet-type member 82 contacts permanent magnet-type member 80 the flux from the electromagnet-type member 82 couples with the flux of the permanent magnet-type member 82 until the flux density through permanent magnet-type member 80 reaches \( B_{\text{max}} \). At that point additional flux from electromagnet-type member 82 does not contribute to the flux density along the flux path unless a bypass path around the permanent magnet-type member is provided. Use of such bypass paths will be described below.

Controlling the flow of flux along both one and multiple flux paths is best described with reference to Figs. 5-9. In Fig. 5 and Fig. 6 a permanent magnet device 90 including a permanent magnet 92 having pole pieces 94 and 96 positioned adjacent to it’s pole faces, and an armature 98 completing a low reluctance path 104 from pole to pole is shown. Control coils 100, 102 are positioned along path 104. When control coils 100, 102 are not energised, the magnetic flux of permanent magnet 92 follows path 104 as shown and armature 98 is held in place against
pole pieces 94, 96 due to the resulting magnetic coupling forces. However, if coils 100, 102 are energised to provide an equal but opposing magnetic flux to that of permanent magnet 92, the result is that the magnetic flux of permanent magnet 92 is blocked and no magnetic flux traverses the path which includes armature 98 and therefore no magnetic coupling forces act on armature 98 allowing it to fall away as shown in Fig.6. The permanent magnet device 90 is useful, although as will become apparent below, it is more advantageous to provide multiple flux paths rather than one.

In this regard, in Fig.7 a permanent magnet device 110 includes a permanent magnet 112 having pole pieces 114, 116 positioned adjacent the pole faces of it, with armatures 118, 120 completing two low-reluctance paths 130, 132 from pole to pole thereof. Control coils 122, 124 are positioned along path 130 and control coils 126, 128 are positioned along path 132. The two paths provided are assumed to be of equal reluctance. With no coils energised, the magnetic flux of permanent magnet 112 divides equally along flux path 130 and flux path 132 such that both armatures 118, 120 are subjected to a magnetic coupling force which holds them in place against pole pieces 114, 116.

If coils 122, 124 are energised to provide a magnetic flux equal to but opposing the magnetic flux which travels along flux path 130 from permanent magnet 112 when no coils are energised, the result is that the magnetic flux of permanent magnet 112 is blocked and no magnetic flux traverses the path which includes armature 118 and therefore no magnetic coupling forces act on armature 118 allowing it to fall away as shown in Fig.8. Further, the magnetic flux traversing path 132 will be double that of when no coils are energised and therefore the magnetic coupling force on armature 120 will be about four (4) times that of when no coils are energised. By energising coils 126, 128 in an opposing manner a similar result would be achieved such that armature 120 would fall away and such that the magnetic coupling force on armature 118 would be increased.

If coils 122, 124 are energised to provide a magnetic flux equal to and aiding the magnetic flux which travels along flux path 130 when no coils are energised, the result is that the control coils couple completely with the magnetic flux of permanent magnet 112 and no magnetic flux traverses the path which includes armature 120 and therefore no magnetic coupling forces act on armature 120 allowing it to fall away as shown in Fig.9. Further, the magnetic flux traversing path 130 will be double that of when no coils are energised and therefore the magnetic coupling force on armature 118 will be about four (4) times that when no coils are energised. By energising coils 126, 128 in an aiding manner a similar result would be achieved such that armature 118 would fall away and the magnetic coupling force on armature 120 would be increased.

Based on the foregoing, it is seen that the full magnetic coupling force available from the permanent magnet 112, can be switched from one path to another path by the application of one half the power it would require for a coil alone to produce the same magnetic flux along one path. The ability to switch the full magnetic coupling force easily from one path to another, allows for efficient reciprocating, linear, and rotary motion and power conversion to be achieved.
The basic device utilised to achieve permanent magnet flux division and to control such permanent magnet flux division is defined herein as a "permanent magnet control component," various configurations of which are shown by way of example only, and not by way of limitation, in Figs. 10A-10F. Fig. 10A depicts a permanent magnet control component 150 in which pole pieces 152 and 154 are positioned adjacent to the pole faces of permanent magnet 156 to provide two magnetic flux paths extending from opposite sides of permanent magnet. Control coils 158 are positioned along each path.

Fig. 10B depicts a permanent magnet control component 160 in which pole pieces 162 and 164 are positioned against the pole faces of permanent magnet 166 to provide two spaced, adjacent magnetic flux paths extending from the same side of permanent magnet 166. Control coils 168 are positioned along each path.

Fig. 10C depicts a permanent magnet control component 170 in which pole pieces 172 and 174 are configured so as to be positioned adjacent the pole faces of permanent magnet 176 so as to provide four flux paths, each flux path extending in a respective direction from permanent magnet 176. Control coils 178 are also positioned along each path.
Fig. 10D depicts another four-path configuration of a permanent magnet control component 180 in which pole pieces 182, 184 are configured and positioned to provide four flux paths for permanent magnet 186, with a pair of spaced, adjacent flux paths extending from each side of permanent magnet 186. Control coils 188 are positioned along each path.

Fig. 10E depicts another four-path configuration of a permanent magnet control component 190 in which all four flux paths formed by pole pieces 192, 194 extend from one side of permanent magnet 196. Again, control coils 198 are positioned along each flux path.

Fig. 10F still further depicts a four-path configuration of a permanent magnet control component 200 in which pole pieces 202, 204 extend to one side of permanent magnet 206, with pole piece 202 defining four flux paths and with pole piece 204 including a continuous return path. Control coils 208 are positioned along each path of pole piece 202. Many other variations are possible.

Accordingly, it is seen that a variety of different configurations of permanent magnet control components are possible, in accordance with the present invention. The important considerations for division of permanent magnet flux in such permanent magnet control components include, extending each pole piece to, or beyond, the outer perimeter of the pole face of the permanent magnet in each region where a flux path is intended and assuring that the pole face of the permanent magnet intersects each of the flux paths. It is not necessary for each pole piece to include the same number of path portions extending beyond the perimeter of the respective permanent magnet pole face as noted with reference to permanent magnet control component 200. Although two control coils are shown along each of the flux paths in Figs. 10A-10E, it is apparent from component 200 in Fig. 10F that one control coil positioned along a flux path is generally sufficient for purposes of the present invention. Further, although in the illustrated configurations each pole piece is positioned to contact a respective pole face of the permanent magnet, a small spacing between a pole piece and its adjacent permanent magnet pole face could be provided, particularly in applications where relative movement between the subject pole piece and the permanent magnet will occur.
In its simplest form a two path permanent magnet control component only requires one control coil positioned along one of the control paths to permit the magnetic flux of a permanent magnet to be switched between the two paths. In particular, a side view of such a two path component is shown in Fig.10G and includes a permanent magnet 211 pole pieces 212 and 213, and control coil 214 which may be connected to a suitable control circuit. By alternating energising control coil 214 in an opposing manner and an aiding manner the magnetic flux of permanent magnet can be switched between the path including armature 215 and the path including armature 216. When control coil 214 is energised in an opposing manner the magnetic flux will traverse the path including armature 215 and when control coil 214 is energised in an aiding manner the magnetic flux will traverse the path including armature 216. Control coil 214 could also be placed at any of the positions to achieve the flux path switching.

![Fig. 10 G](image)

Further, in the two coils embodiment shown in Fig.10H control coil 217 is added. In such a device, flux switching can be achieved by simultaneously energising control coil 214 in a flux aiding manner and control coil 217 in a flux opposing manner, and by then simultaneously reversing the energisation of the respective control coils 214 and 217.

![Fig. 11 A](image)

Reference is made to Figs.11A-11F which depict devices similar to that of Figs.5-6 except that a bypass, formed of magnetic material, is provided in each case. In device 220 of Figs.11A-11C a bypass 222 is provided from pole piece 224 to pole piece 226 and is located between permanent magnet 228 and control coils 230, 232, with armature 234 located adjacent the ends of pole pieces 224, 226. In Fig.11A with no coil energisation, magnet flux components 236 and 237 travel as shown.

![Fig. 11 B](image)

When coils 230 and 232 are energised in an aiding or adding manner as in Fig.11B, the result is permanent magnet magnetic flux components 236 and 237 travelling as shown, and with the added magnetic flux component...
from coils 230 and 232 also travelling as shown. Thus, in device 220 energising the coils in an aiding manner results in an increased magnetic coupling force on armature 234.

In Fig.11C coils 230, 232 are energised in an opposing exceeding manner which results in permanent magnetic flux components 236 and 237 travelling as shown and excess magnetic flux component 238 travelling as shown. Thus, in device 220 energising the coils in an opposing exceeding manner results in magnetic coupling force on armature 234, albeit smaller than that in the aiding exceeding case.

In device 240 of Figs.11D-11F a bypass 242 is provided between pole piece 244 and pole piece 246 but is located on an opposite side of permanent magnet 248 as compared to control coils 250, 252 and armature 254. Permanent magnet flux components 256 and 257 are shown for no coil energisation in Fig.11D. In Fig.11E the paths of permanent magnet flux components 256 and 257, as well as excess coil magnetic flux 258, are shown when coils 250, 252 are energised in an aiding exceeding manner.
In Fig. 11F the path of each magnetic flux component 256, 257, and 258 is shown when coils 230, 232 are energised in an opposed exceeding manner.

Figs. 12A-12E depict a device 270 similar to that shown in Figs. 7-9 except that bypasses 272 and 274 are provided from pole piece 276 to pole piece 278. Bypass 272 is located between permanent magnet 280 and control coils 282, 284 and bypass 274 is located between permanent magnet 280 and control coils 286, 288. Armatures 290 and 292 are also provided. When no coils are energised permanent magnet magnetic flux components 294, 296, 298, and 300 travel as shown in Fig. 12A.

If coils 282, 284 are energised in an opposing manner permanent magnet flux components 295, 297, and 299 travel as shown, with no flux component traversing the path which includes armature 290 and therefore no magnetic coupling force acting thereon. This would be the case when coils 282, 284 are energised to the level where the coils magnetic flux just blocks, but does not exceed, the magnetic flux component 294 (Fig. 12A) from permanent magnet 280. However, if coils 282, 284 are energised in an opposed exceeding manner an excess coil magnetic flux component 301 is produced which travels a path including armature 290 and bypass 272 results as shown in Fig. 12C.
Coils 286, 288 may be energised in an aiding manner such that all permanent magnet magnetic flux travels along the path which includes armature 292 as shown in Fig.12D. If coils 286, 288 are energised in excess of the level of Fig.12D then the excess magnetic flux component 304 traverses the path which includes armature 292 and bypass 274 as shown in Fig.12E, thereby increasing the magnetic coupling force on armature 292 as compared to Fig.12D. The advantage of incorporating such bypasses into permanent magnet control components in certain applications will become apparent below.

Reciprocating Motion

As mentioned above, controlling the path of magnetic flux from a permanent magnet can be useful in a variety of applications such as achieving reciprocating motion. In this regard, if the device 110 of Figs.7-9 is modified such that armatures 118 and 120 are fixed to a sliding shaft 320 as shown in Figs.13A-13C, and if the distance between the armatures is greater than the end to end length of pole pieces 114, 116, limited linear motion in two directions (left and right in Figs.13A-13C), and therefore linear reciprocating motion, can be achieved by the timed, alternate delivery of electrical signals to control coils 122, 124 and control coils 126, 128. By way of example, Fig.13A represents the position of shaft connected armatures 118, 120 when coils 122, 124 are energised in an opposing manner to block the flux of permanent magnet 112 such that all magnetic flux traverses path 132 as shown and such that the resulting magnetic coupling force acts to the left as indicated by arrow 322.
As shown in Fig. 13B when coils 122, 124 are de-energised the magnetic flux from permanent magnet 112 can again travel along path 130 through armature 118. However, due to the air gap 324 between armature 118 and pole pieces 114, 116 the reluctance along path 130 will be significantly greater than the reluctance along path 132. Accordingly, the amount of magnetic flux which flows along path 130 will be less than the amount of magnetic flux which flows along path 132 such that the magnetic coupling force on armature 118 acting to the right will be significantly less than the magnetic coupling force on armature 120 acting to the left as shown by arrows 326 and 328, which arrows are sized to represent the strength of the respective directional force.

Fig. 13C represents the position of shaft connected armatures 118, 120 after coils 126, 128 are energised in a manner to oppose the flux of permanent magnet 112 such that all flux traverses path 130 and the resulting magnetic coupling force on armature 118, depicted by arrow 330, moves the shaft 10 connected armatures 118, 120 to the right.

Control coils 122, 124 and 126, 128 could also be energised in a flux aiding manner to achieve the same result. In such a device, Fig. 13A would represent coils 126, 128 energised to aid magnetic flux along path 132, Fig. 13B would again represent no coils energised, and Fig. 13C would represent coils 122, 124 energised to aid magnetic flux along path 130.

Thus, by alternately energising and de-energising control coils 122, 124 and 126, 128 a linear reciprocating motion of shaft connected armatures 118, 120 may be achieved. Further, such reciprocating motion may be achieved by energising the coils in either an opposing or aiding manner. The magnetic coupling force exerted on a given armature when 20 the control coils are energised to establish all magnetic flux along a single path which includes that armature is significantly greater than the magnetic coupling force which would be exerted on such armature by an identical energisation of the control coils in the absence of the permanent magnet.
This is demonstrated with reference to Fig. 14 which depicts a reciprocating device 340 in which only coils or electromagnets are utilised. As shown armatures 342 and 344 are connected by shaft 346, and each armature 342, 344 includes a respective U-shaped pole path piece 348, 350 which pole path pieces are mechanically connected by a non-magnetic material 352. Each pole path piece 348 and 350 has respective control coils 354, 356 and 358, 360 positioned along them. By comparison with the device of Figs.13A-13C, if coils 358, 360 of device 340 are energised to cause magnetic flux flow in either direction, clockwise or counterclockwise, along path 362, the amount of electrical energy which would be required in order to achieve the same magnetic coupling force on armature 344 as achieved on armature 120 above in Fig.13A would be twice that delivered to coils 122, 124 or 126, 128 in Fig.13A. It is therefore demonstrated, that by controlling or switching the flow of magnetic flux from a permanent magnet between at least two different paths results in greater coupling forces per unit of input electrical energy, and therefore that such control or switching will enable more work to be achieved per unit of input electrical energy.

As described above, if a coil is energised beyond the point where the magnetic flux produced by the coil aiding the amount of the permanent magnet's flux that is either opposed or aided, the extra magnetic flux needs a low reluctance path between the poles of the coil that produces the excess magnetic flux. If a complete low-reluctance path is not provided for the excess magnetic flux, there is little potential for taking advantage of the excess magnetic flux in terms of producing additional magnetic coupling forces. The path for such excess flux cannot be through a permanent magnet member. In assemblies which include an armature on each path, the armature will provide the necessary low-reluctance path.

Referring to Fig.15, various components of the magnetic flux in device 110 (Figs.7-9) are depicted by numerals 380, 382, and 384 for the case when coils 122, 124 are energised to oppose the magnetic flux of permanent magnet 112 in an amount which exceeds the level of magnetic flux which permanent magnet 112 would cause to flow through armature 118 when no coils are energised. Fig.15 is likewise representative of the case when coils 126, 128 are energised to aid the magnetic flux of permanent magnet 112 by an amount which exceeds the level of magnetic flux which permanent magnet 112 would cause to flow through armature 118 when no coils are energised. In particular, magnetic flux component 380 represents the magnetic flux of permanent magnet 112 which normally flows through the path including armature 120; magnetic flux component 382 represents the magnetic flux of permanent magnet 112 which is diverted by the opposing field of coils 122, 124 so as to traverse...
the path which includes armature 120; and magnetic flux component 384 represents the magnetic flux produced by coils 122, 124 which is in excess of the diverted magnetic flux 382. As shown, the excess magnetic flux 384 produced by coils 122, 124 traverses the path which includes armature 120 and bypasses permanent magnet 112 so as to also traverse the path which includes armature 118. Thus, the excess magnetic flux produced by coils 122, 124 adds to the permanent magnet flux traversing the path which includes armature 120, thus increasing the magnetic coupling force on armature 120, while at the same time providing a magnetic coupling force on armature 118.

In a reciprocating device where armatures 118 and 120 are connected by shaft 320 as shown in Figs.13A-13C and again in Fig.16A, excess magnetic flux 384 will increase magnetic coupling force 390 on armature 120 acting to the left. However, because such excess flux 384 also traverses the path which includes armature 118, such excess magnetic flux 384 also results in a magnetic coupling force 392 on armature 118 which acts to the right. Even though excess magnetic flux 384 traversing the path which includes an armature 118 has an opposite polarity to that which would traverse the path due to permanent magnet 112, the magnetic coupling force on armature 118 still acts to the right because armature 118 is not polarity sensitive, that is, armature 118 will be attracted regardless of the direction of the magnetic flux traversing the path. The overall effect is that a resultant force which is the difference between force 390 and force 392 will act on the shaft-connected armatures 118, 120. However, if armatures 118 and 120 were formed by permanent magnets having polarities as shown at the top and bottom of such armatures, the force acting on each armature would be in the same direction and therefore additive.

In this regard reference is made to Fig.16B in which a two path device 371 having four control coils 373, 375, 377 and 379 is shown with the illustrated armatures being formed by permanent magnets 381 and 383 having polarities as shown. With no coils energised both permanent magnet armatures 381 and 383 are attracted to the ends of pole pieces 385 and 387. With coils 373, 375 energised in an opposing manner and coils 377, 379 energised in an aiding manner, the attractive force on permanent magnet armature 383 will generally increase and the attractive force on permanent magnet armature 381 will generally decrease.

A - 380
This is demonstrated with reference to the graph of Fig. 16C which depicts a graph of the current flowing in the control coils on the x-axis versus the magnetic flux in gauss on the y-axis with line 389 representing the flux along the aiding side of device 371 and line 391 representing the flux along the opposing side of device 371. As shown, the magnetic flux on the coil opposing side decreases as the coil current increases and passes through zero at point 393. After point 393, reverse magnetic flux begins to be produced and would result in a repelling force on permanent magnet armature 381. In some applications, particularly those where permanent magnet armatures and rotors are not utilised, it is critical to recognise point 393 so that reverse magnetic flux is not produced.
In this regard, reference is made to Fig.16D and Fig.16E, in which use of Hall Effect switches 401 and 403 is made to enable control of the coil energising current in situations where it is desirable to prevent reverse magnetic flux. As shown, small bypasses 405 and 407 are provided with Hall Effect switches 401 and 403 positioned in gaps along them, the switches being connected to control circuit 409. As the flux travelling along the bypass path falls to zero, the Hall Effect switch can be utilised to prevent further energisation of the control coils so that no reverse flux is created.
Another embodiment of a device 400 which would provide reciprocating motion is shown in Figs.17A-17D in which a permanent magnet control component 402 having two flux paths may is provided. A first pole piece 404, has two spaced, adjacent path portions 406 and 408 extending beyond the perimeter of the pole face of permanent magnet 410, and a second pole piece 412 includes only one continuous portion 414 extending beyond the perimeter of the pole face of permanent magnet 410, each path portion 406 and 408 of pole piece 404 being substantially aligned with at least a part of portion 414 of pole piece 412. Control coil 416 is positioned along pole piece path portion 406 and control coil 418 is positioned along pole piece portion 408. An armature 420 is positioned in the region between pole piece path portions 404, 406 and pole piece portion 414 and is free to slide from side to side as shown by arrows 422 and 424.

A front view of component device 400 with no coils energised and armature 420 at a mid-point depicts flux flowing from the north pole face of permanent magnet 410, through each of pole piece path portions 406 and 408, through armature 420, and returning to the south pole face through pole piece portion 414. Thus, the magnetic flux divides equally along two paths. If coil 416 is energised in an aiding manner, or if coil 418 is energised in an opposing manner, all or a majority of the magnetic flux of the permanent magnets can be made to flow through pole piece portion 406 so that a resulting magnetic coupling force on armature 420 causes it to move to the left as shown in Fig.17C.

Likewise, if control coil 416 is energised in an opposing manner, or if control coil 418 is energised in an aiding manner, all or a majority of the permanent magnet flux can be made to flow through pole piece path portion 408 such that a resulting magnetic coupling force on armature 420 causes it to move to the right as shown in Fig.17D. Accordingly, by alternately energising and de-energising coils 416 and 418 a reciprocating motion of armature 420 may be achieved.

Linear Motion

Referring now to Figs.18A-18E, linear motion in accordance with the present invention is described. In particular, a permanent magnet control component 440 including a permanent magnet 442 with a pole piece 444 positioned against it’s north pole face and a pole piece 446 positioned against it’s south pole face is shown in an exploded view in Fig.18A and assembled in Fig.18B.
Pole piece 444 includes five path portions 448A-448E which extend beyond the edge of the north pole face of permanent magnet 442 to one side of it and at respective positions along it's length, and it has path portion 448A-448E each with a control coil 450A-450E positioned around them. Pole piece 446 includes one portion 452 extending beyond the edge of the south pole face of permanent magnet 442 to the one side of it, and this portion 452 extends along the entire length of permanent magnet 442. A number of armatures 454 define a path of relative movement between permanent magnet control component 440 and such armatures 454, and by providing timed energisation of given control coils 450A-450E such relative movement can be achieved.

The sequence of side views depicted in Figs.18C-18E illustrate such relative movement, with coils 450A, 450C and 450E being energised in an opposing manner simultaneously in Fig.18C, with coils 450A and 450D being energised simultaneously in an opposing manner in Fig.18D, and with coils 450B and 450D being energised simultaneously in an opposing manner in Fig.18E.

In Fig.18C, magnetic flux will only flow along path portions 448B and 448C of pole piece 444 causing resultant magnetic coupling forces depicted by arrows 456, 458 which act to move permanent magnet control component 440 to the left, assuming armatures 454 are fixed. Similarly, due to the timing of subsequent coil energisation resultant magnetic forces depicted by arrows 460, 462 in Fig.18D and arrows 464, 466 in Fig.18E act to continue movement of permanent magnet control component 440 to the left. Thus, if permanent magnet control component 440 were fixed to a device or structure, controlled movement of the device or structure along the path defined by armatures 454 could be achieved. Conversely, if permanent magnet control component 440 were fixed and armatures 454 were located on a device or structure, controlled movement of the device or structure...
could also be achieved. It is also easily recognised that by varying the coil energisation sequence and timing relative movement in the opposite direction can be achieved. Further, if the permanent magnet was doughnut shaped and the armatures were arranged in a circumferential pattern, rotary motion would likewise be achievable.

Rotary Motion

One embodiment of a rotary motion device or motor 500 which incorporates various permanent magnet flux control aspects of the present invention is shown in the exploded view of Fig.19 and in the partial assembled view of Fig.20. Motor 500 includes a rotor assembly which includes a shaft 502 and associated upper bearing 504, a non-magnetic disk member 506 mounted for rotation with shaft 502, and a rotor pole piece 508 which is mounted for rotation with disk member 506 such as by the use of screws 510. Rotor pole piece 508 includes a ring-shaped portion having two inwardly extending magnetic flux path portions 512A and 512B. A stator assembly of motor 500 includes a doughnut or ring-shaped permanent magnet 514 having an upwardly directed north pole face positioned adjacent and in close proximity to rotor pole piece 508, and a downward directed south pole face positioned adjacent and in contact with a stator pole piece 516. A stator pole piece includes a ring-shaped portion having five inwardly projecting path portions 518A-518E. Each path portion includes a respective winding post 520A-520E extending therefrom and having a respective control coil 522A-522E wound on it. Stator pole piece faces 524A-524E are which can be positioned on respective winding posts 518A-518B and, as shown in the partial assembly of Fig.20, are substantially aligned with the top surface of permanent magnet 514 so as to be which can be positioned adjacent rotor path portions 512A and 512B when aligned therewith. Each of winding posts 518A-518E and stator pole piece faces are formed of magnetic material, and although shown as separate pieces, an integral, one piece stator could be formed with similar winding posts and pole piece faces machined on it. Lower bearing 526 is also shown.
Figs. 21A-21E illustrate top views of the partial assembly of Fig. 20 with magnetic flux shown. In Fig. 21A magnetic flux travel when none of coils 522A-522E are energized is depicted. Disregarding leakage flux, due to the low-reluctance path provided by rotor pole piece path portions 512A and 512B, the majority of magnetic flux from the north pole face of permanent magnet 514 will travel radially inward along one of such path portions before passing downward through the stator assembly and returning to the south pole face of permanent magnet 514. It is noted that rotor pole piece 508 includes two path portions and stator pole piece 516 includes five path portions such that rotor pole piece path portions 512A and 512B will always be skewed relative to the stator pole piece faces 524A-524E. Only one rotor pole piece path portion can directly align with a stator pole piece face at a given time. By alternately energizing the control coils of each of the stator pole piece paths, rotary motion of the rotor may be achieved.

In particular, referring to Figs. 21B-21D, an energizing sequence which results in such rotary motion is described. In Fig. 21B, control coils 522A and 522C are energized in a permanent magnet flux opposing manner. Permanent magnet magnetic flux travelling along rotor pole piece path portion 512A tends to traverse to stator pole piece face 524B causing a magnetic coupling force indicated by arrow 526. Likewise, permanent magnet flux travelling along rotor pole piece path portion 512B tends to traverse to stator pole piece face 524D causing a magnetic coupling force indicated by arrow 528. The result is rotation of rotor pole piece 508 in a clockwise direction as indicated by arrow 530.
Referring to Fig.21C, just after rotor pole piece path portion 512B is no longer aligned with stator pole piece face 524D, control coil 522C is de-energised and control coil 522D is energised in an opposing manner such that the permanent magnet flux travelling along rotor pole piece path 512B tends to traverse to stator pole piece face 524E resulting in magnetic coupling force indicated by arrow 532. Control coil 522A remains energised such that a magnetic coupling force indicated by arrow 534 results. Accordingly, clockwise rotation of rotor pole piece 508 is continued.

In Fig.21D, just after rotor pole piece path portion 512A is no longer aligned with stator pole piece face 524B, control coil 522A is de-energised and control coil 522B is energised in a permanent magnet magnetic flux opposing manner such that the permanent magnet magnetic flux travelling along rotor pole piece path 512A tends to traverse to stator pole piece face 524C such that a magnetic coupling force indicated by arrow 536 results. Control coil 522D remains energised such that a magnetic coupling force indicated by arrow 538 results, and clockwise rotation of rotor pole piece 508 is continued.
As shown in Fig. 21E, just after rotor pole piece path portion 512B is no longer aligned with stator pole piece face 524E, control coil 522D is de-energised and control coil 522E is energised in a permanent magnet magnetic flux opposing manner such that the permanent magnet magnetic flux travelling along rotor pole piece path 512B tends to traverse to stator pole piece face 524A such that a magnetic coupling force indicated by arrow 540 results. Control coil 522B remains energised such that a magnetic coupling force indicated by arrow 542 results, and clockwise rotation of rotor pole piece 508 is continued.

Thus, by alternating energising and de-energising control coils 522A-522E, in a predetermined timed sequence based upon rotation of the rotor assembly, continued rotation movement of rotor pole piece 508 may be achieved. Such an energisation/de-energisation scheme can be achieved utilising circuitry common in the art, such as the control circuitry described in Applicant's U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,463,263 and 5,455,474, as well as various of the circuit configurations described below.

Referring now to Fig. 22, an assembled view of rotary motor 500 is shown including a housing or cover formed by an upper housing member 544 and a lower housing member 546, with portions of each housing member cut away to expose motor structure described above. It is recognised that such housing members 544 and 546 should be constructed from a non-magnetic material, and likewise that motor shaft 502 and bearings 504, 526 should be constructed from a non-magnetic material.
In another embodiment, a rotary motion device or motor 580 in accordance with the present invention is shown in an exploded perspective view in Fig.23 and in an assembled perspective view in Fig.24. Two spaced permanent magnets 582 and 584 are positioned between stator pole pieces 586 and 588. Stator pole piece 586 includes two path portions 590A and 590B extending away from permanent magnets 582, 584 in opposite directions. Likewise, stator pole piece 588 includes two path portions 592A and 592B extending away from permanent magnets 582, 584 in opposite directions and which can be aligned with stator pole piece path portions 590A and 590B. Control coils 594, 596, 598, and 600 are each positioned along a stator pole piece path portion as shown. A non-magnetic shaft 602 includes a pair of matching elongated rotor members 604 and 606, formed of magnetic material, mounted at spaced locations on the shaft and being set at an angle to each other, shaft 602 passing between spaced permanent magnets 582 and 584. Two end cap members 608 and 610, made from non-magnetic material, are attached to the ends of stator pole pieces 586 and 588 and are configured for receiving shaft 602 and respective bearings 612 and 614.
The ends of the stator pole pieces 506 and 508 are configured for a given desired coupling relationship with rotor members 604 and 606. For example, as shown in the exemplary end views of Fig. 25A and Fig. 25B, with end cap 608 removed, the end of stator pole piece 586 may include an curved portion 616 which is configured to create a variable-reluctance air gap 618 with elongated rotor member 604. The end of stator pole piece 588 includes an curved portion 620 which is also configured to create a variable-reluctance air gap 622 with rotor member 604.

In particular, portion 618 includes a circumferential curvature which has a centre point offset below the axis of rotation of shaft 602 and rotor member 604 as indicated by circle 624 shown in shadow. Similarly, portion 620 includes a circumferential radius of curvature which has a centre point offset above the axis of rotation of shaft 602 and rotor member 604. When magnetic flux is passing along the path which includes a given end of the assembly, maximum coupling between the rotor member and stator pole pieces occurs when the rotor is positioned as shown in Fig. 25B. Accordingly, the illustrated rotor member and stator pole piece configurations of themselves do not provide any skewing to the direction of rotation of the rotor assembly.

In this regard, various configurations for the rotor and ends of the stator pole piece are shown in the end views of Figs. 26-28, which configurations provide skewing the direction of rotation. In particular, in device 620 of Fig. 26 a
rotor member 622 having notches 624 and 626, which notches provide for greater magnetic coupling with the stator pole pieces 628 and 630 at corners 632 and 634 such that rotation is skewed in the clockwise direction. If notches were instead located at corners 632 and 634, skewed rotation in the counterclockwise direction would be the result. In device 620 such counterclockwise rotation could also be achieved by removing rotor 622 from shaft 636, flipping it end to end, and replacing it on shaft 636.

In the device 640 of Fig.27, a portion 642 of the curved end portion of stator pole piece 644 is removed and a portion 646 of the curved end portion of stator pole piece 648 is removed. This configuration results in greater magnetic coupling between rotor member 650 and stator pole piece 644 at corner 652, and greater magnetic coupling between rotor member 650 and stator pole piece 648 at corner 654, such that rotation is skewed in the counterclockwise direction. Clockwise rotation could be achieved by instead modifying the opposite side of stator pole pieces 644 and 648.

Fig.28 depicts an end view of a device 660 in which the axis 662 of the curved end portion of upper stator pole piece 664 and lower stator pole piece 666 is placed at an angle A as shown. This configuration creates an unequal variable-reluctance air gap where opposite corners of rotor member 668 are closer to stator pole pieces 664 and 666. Further, the angle at which maximum magnetic coupling between rotor member 668 and stator pole pieces 664 and 666 occurs is retarded by angle A. Rotation would be in the counterclockwise direction for the illustrated configuration.

Fig. 28

Fig. 29A

Fig. 29B
Referring again to motor 580 of Figs.23-25, rotary motion of such device is depicted in the end views of Figs.29A-29D. In each end view the end cap has been removed to show rotation of the rotor members and in each of Figs.29A-29D an end view depicting rotor member 604 and an end view depicting rotor member 606 are shown side-by-side. In Fig.29A, rotor member 604 is defined as being at zero degrees and rotor member 606 is defined as being at ninety degrees. Control coils 594, 598 are energised in a permanent magnet magnetic flux aiding manner such that no magnetic flux passes through stator pole piece path portions 590B and 592B. This allows rotor member 606 to move out of its ninety degree position and the magnetic coupling between rotor member 604 and stator pole piece path portions 590A and 592A will cause rotation to the position shown in Fig.29B and then Fig.29C. When rotor member 604 reaches the ninety degree position shown in Fig.29D control coils 594, 598 are de-energised and control coils 596, 600 are energised in a permanent magnet magnetic flux aiding manner causing rotation to continue due to the magnetic coupling between rotor member 606 and stator pole piece path portions 590B and 592B. Thus, by alternately energising the control coils of each path with every ninety degree rotation of rotor members 604 and 606, continuous rotary motion is achieved.

The initial direction of rotation can be controlled by the circuit means used to energise control coils 594, 598 and 596, 600, which circuit means includes circuitry for detecting the angular position of the rotor members. In particular, if rotor members 604 and 606 are at rest in the position shown in Fig.29A, and coils 594, 598 are energised in an aiding manner, rotation may be clockwise or counterclockwise. If the desired direction is clockwise but upon energisation of coils 594, 598 the rotor members begin to move counterclockwise, the detection circuitry will immediately de-energise coils 594, 598 and energise coils 596, 600 so that the clockwise direction is achieved.

Further, bypasses around permanent magnets 582 and 584 could be provided in rotary motion device 580, such as those shown in Fig.12, and rotor members 604 and 606 could be formed by permanent magnets so as to take advantage of energising the control coils in an exceeding manner.
A third embodiment of a rotary motion device or motor 650 is shown in the exploded partial perspective view of Fig.30 and in the assembled partial perspective view of Fig.31. In motor 650 the stator assembly includes a control component 651 including a permanent magnet 652 having a stator pole piece 654 positioned adjacent to one pole face of the magnet and a stator pole piece 656 positioned adjacent to the opposite pole face. Stator pole piece 654 includes a path portion 658A extending to one side of permanent magnet 652 and a path portion 658B extending to the one side thereof and spaced from first path portion 658A. Control coils 660 and 662 are positioned along respective stator pole piece path portions 658A and 658B.

In the same way, stator pole piece 656 includes path portions 664A and 664B which extend in a similar manner from it so as to be aligned with stator path portions 658A and 658B respectively. Control coils 666 and 668 are positioned along respective stator pole piece path portions 664A and 664B. Positioned opposite, and facing control component 651, is a similar control component 670 including permanent magnet 672 stator pole piece 674 with path portions 676A and 676B having the control coils 678 and 680, and stator pole piece 682 with path portions 684A and 684B having their control coils 686 and 688. The end of each of the pole piece path portions 658A, 658B, 664A, 664B, 676A, 676B, 684A, and 684B is of a generally curved configuration.

A rotor assembly of motor 650 includes a non-magnetic shaft 700 having a permanent magnet rotor member 702 mounted on it and which rotates with it. Permanent magnet rotor member 702 is generally ring-shaped and segmented to include distinct north and south pole faces which reverse about every ninety degrees around them. When assembled, the top and bottom surfaces of permanent magnet rotor member 702 align with pole pieces 654, 656, 674, and 682 of the stator assembly and are preferably configured so that there is a minimal gap between the outer surface of permanent magnet rotor member 702 and the curved surfaces of the pole piece path portions.
Rotation of device 650 can be achieved by controlled, timed energising and de-energising of control coils 660, 662, 666, 668, 678, 680, 686, and 688. Exemplary rotation is demonstrated with reference to the top views of Figs.32A-32B which depict counterclockwise rotation of permanent magnet rotor member 702 through one-hundred and eighty degrees. In Fig.32A stator pole piece path portion 658A of component 651 is active and stator pole piece path portion 658B is not active, which may be achieved by energising control coil 660 in a permanent magnet magnetic flux aiding manner or by energising control coil 662 in a permanent magnet magnetic flux opposing manner. Stator pole piece path portion 676B of component 670 is active and stator pole piece path portion 676A is not active, which may be achieved by energising control coil 680 in a permanent magnet magnetic flux aiding manner or by energising control coil 678 in a permanent magnet magnetic flux opposing manner.

Thus, portions 690 and 692 of permanent magnet rotor member 702, which both have a north magnetic polarity, will be repelled by the north polarity of stator pole piece path portions 658A and 676B aligned with it. Portions 694 and 696 of permanent magnet rotor member 702, both of which have a south magnetic polarity, will be attracted to the active path portions 658A and 676B. At the instant that rotor member portion 694 becomes aligned with stator pole piece path portion 658A, as shown in Fig.32B, all coils are de-energised such that all pole piece path portions will be active as shown. Pole piece path portions 658B and 676A are then kept active while pole piece path portions 658A and 676B are made inactive. This is achieved by energising control coils 662 and 678 in a permanent magnet magnetic flux aiding manner or by energising control coils 660 and 680 in a permanent magnet magnetic flux opposing manner. Rotor member portions 690 and 692 will again be repelled by the north polarity of path portions 658B and 676A aligned with it so that rotation of permanent magnet rotor 702 is continued.

In Fig.32D all coils are shown de-energised when rotor portion 692 aligns with pole piece path portion 658A. By continuing this timed sequence of energisation and de-energisation of the control coils, continued rotary movement is achieved. As explained above, the initial direction of rotation can be controlled by circuit means.
which detects the initial direction of permanent magnet rotor 702 and immediately alters the coil energisation scheme if the initial direction is incorrect.

A side view of assembled motor 650 is shown in Fig.33 and includes an upper housing or enclosure portion 710, a bottom housing portion 712, upper bearing 714, and a lower bearing 716.
A fourth embodiment of a rotary motion device or motor 740 is illustrated in Figs.34-39. Motor 740 includes five stator control components 742A-742E positioned around a ring shaped permanent magnet rotor member 744 (Fig.36). As shown with reference to component 742A in Fig.37, each stator component 742A includes a permanent magnet 746A with an upper pole piece 748A positioned adjacent to one pole face and a lower pole piece 750A positioned adjacent to the opposite pole face. Control coils 752A, 754A are positioned along respective pole pieces 748A, 750A. A bypass 756A extends from pole piece 748A to pole piece 750A and is positioned between permanent magnet 746A and control coils 752A, 754A. Alternatively, bypass 756A could be provided on the opposite side of permanent magnet 746A as shown in Fig.38. Although not shown, it is anticipated that permanent magnet rotor member 744 would be mounted on an axis for rotation with it and that a motor housing or enclosure could be provided, such as shown in relation to motor 650 of Fig.33.

Referring to the top views of Figs.39A-39D, rotary motion of rotor member 744 is depicted by the sequence of views. Regions 770 and 772 in Figs.39A-39D represent the magnetic north regions of the top of permanent magnet rotor 744. In Fig.39A control coils 752E and 752C are energised in a permanent magnet aiding and exceeding manner such that regions 770 and 772 of permanent magnet rotor 744 are repulsed by components 742E and 742C while permanent magnet motor regions 774 and 776 are attracted by components 742E and 742C. The resultant coupling forces act to move permanent magnet rotor in a counterclockwise direction to the location shown in Fig.39B. Just after permanent magnet rotor region 772 passes the point shown in Fig.39C, control coil 752B is energised in a permanent magnet aiding and exceeding manner, while control coils 752E and 752C also remain energised, and counterclockwise rotation of permanent magnet rotor 744 is continued. Just
after permanent magnet rotor region 772 passes by control component 742C control coil 752C is de-energised, while control coils 752E and 752B remain energised, so as to continue counterclockwise rotation. Then, just after permanent magnet rotor region 770 reaches the location shown in Fig.39D control coil 752D is energised in a permanent magnet flux aiding and exceeding manner, while coils 752E and 752B remain energised, so as to continue counterclockwise rotation. Thus, as in the other embodiments, repeated and timed energisation and de-energisation of the control coils produces the desired rotational movement.

In terms of controlling the energisation of coils in the devices described above, various electronic control circuit-switching means and electromechanical control circuit-switching machines are depicted in Figs.40-44. In circuit 800 of Fig.40 a given coil 802 is placed in series between an electrical energy source 804 and a power MOSFET 806. An LED 808 is connected to electrical energy source 804 through resistor 810 and is positioned to impinge upon a phototransistor 812 which is connected in series with resistor 814. A control input of MOSFET 806 is connected between phototransistor 812 and resistor. Accordingly, when LED 808 activates phototransistor 812 the voltage drop across resistor 814 activates, or turns ON, MOSFET 806 and coil 802 is energised. Timed energisation of coil 802 is provided by mounting an interrupter 816, such as shown in Fig.42, to the shaft 816 of the motor device to be controlled, such that as interrupter 814 rotates with shaft 816 coil 802 is alternately energised and de-energised. In a device with a plurality of coils a corresponding plurality of LED/photoresistor pairs may be provided.

In circuit 820 of Fig.41 a coil 822 is positioned between electrical energy source 824 and power MOSFET 826. A hall switch 828 is connected in series with resistor 830. Hall switch 828 is also connected to the control input of MOSFET 826 through resistor 832. In a given device hall switch 828 would be positioned to react to a change in magnetic flux so as to control the ON/OFF switching of MOSFET 826, and thus the alternate energisation and de-energisation of coil 822.
In **Fig. 43** a circuit 840 for controlling two coils in an opposite manner is provided such that when coil 842 is energised coil 844 is de-energised, and such that when coil 842 is de-energised coil 844 is energised. Both coils 842 and 844 are connected in series between electrical energy source 846 and respective power MOSFETs 848 and 850. An LED 852 and phototransistor 854 arrangement is provided, LED connected in series with resistor 856 and phototransistor connected in series with resistor 858. When LED 852 turns phototransistor 854 ON the voltage drop across resistor 858 turns MOSFET 848 ON and coil 842 is energised. At that time the voltage applied at the control input of MOSFET 850 will be low and therefore MOSFET 850 will be OFF and coil 844 will be de-energised. When interrupter 814 blocks LED 852, phototransistor 854 is turned OFF and MOSFET 848 is likewise turned OFF. The control input of MOSFET 850 is therefore pulled high through resistor 860 and MOSFET 850 is turned ON such that coil 844 is energised.

In **Fig. 44** a system 870 including member 872 mounted on rotating shaft 874 is provided, with the left side of member 872 being alternately conductive at 876 and non-conductive at 878. Coils 880 and 882 are connected to respective brushes 884 and 886 which are positioned to contact member 872 during each rotation of the shaft. Member 872 is connected through brush 890 to power supply 888. Thus, coils 880 and 882 will alternately be energised and de-energised as the respective brushes thereof contact the conductive and non-conductive portions of member 872.

Any of such circuit means, variations thereof, or other circuit means may be used to provide the timed energisation of the control coils in the various embodiments of the present invention.

From the preceding description of the illustrated embodiments, it is evident that the objects of the invention are attained. Although the invention has been described and illustrated in detail, it is to be clearly understood that the same is intended by way of illustration and example only and is not to be taken by way of limitation.

For example, although the magnetic flux control techniques of the present invention have been discussed as applicable mainly to various motive applications, such magnetic flux control techniques are also useful in static applications.
Power Conversion

Referring to Figs.45A-45C there is shown the permanent magnet device 900 of Figs.45A-45C which has two magnetic flux paths provided by rectangular pole piece 902 which includes upper portion 904 and lower portion 906 each positioned against a respective pole face of permanent magnet 910. Unlike the device of Figs.7-9, fall away armatures are not provided. Instead, fixed armatures in the form of integral pole piece portions 912 and 914 extend from upper portion 904 to lower portion 906 completing the two flux paths in a permanent manner. Control coils 916, 918 are provided along one flux path and control coils 920, 922 are provided along the other flux path, such control coils acting as primary windings in device 900. One coil 924 is positioned around pole piece portion 912 and another coil 926 is positioned around pole piece portion 914, such coils 924, 926 acting as secondary windings in device 900.

![Fig. 45A](image)

In Fig.45A no coils are energised and the permanent magnet magnetic flux splits evenly between paths 930 and 932, coupling with both coil 924 and coil 926.

![Fig. 45B](image)

In Fig.45B coils 916, 918 are energised in a permanent magnet magnetic flux aiding manner so as to couple with all the magnetic flux of permanent magnet 910. All magnetic flux flows along path 930 as shown and thus couples with coil 924.
In Fig.45C coils 920, 922 are energised in a permanent magnet magnetic flux aiding manner such that all magnetic flux traverses path 932 and couples with coil 926. By continuously alternately energising and de-energising coils 916, 918 and 920, 922 in such a manner energy conversion is achieved due to the coupling with coils 924 and 926. The magnetic flux in the integral pole piece portions 912 and 914, and thus the flux coupling with respective coils 924 and 926, varies by a factor of twice the amount of magnetic flux generated by energising coils 916, 918 and 920, 922.

The construction shown in Fig.45A and Fig.45X are similar to the construction shown in Fig.7 and Fig.47. The difference in both cases relates to replacing the two flux paths and armatures with one continues flux path. The arrangement in Fig.7 has one permanent magnet and four coils and the arrangement in Fig.47 has two permanent magnets and two coils. Although the physical aspects of the two arrangements and the details of the flux control vary, the control method for varying the permanent magnets flux are similar and will be described simultaneously and only differences will be pointed out.
With continuous flux paths the static flux from the permanent magnet or magnets is useless. However, if the static flux of the permanent magnet confined to the flux paths were modified to be time varying it would have utility for electromagnetic induction devices for power conversion like transformers and power inverters. However, the same basic method for controlling the flux of a permanent magnet to provide linear and rotary motion can also be applied to time varying the static flux from the permanent magnet. The construction shown in Fig. 45X utilises four control coils and a single permanent magnet while the construction shown in Fig. 45A uses two control coils and two permanent magnets. The flux that would normally be supplied by a primary winding is supplied by the static flux of the permanent magnet or magnets and the control coils convert this static flux into a time varying flux in a novel way. Both arrangements use two secondary coils, the secondary coils are placed in the region of the continuous flux path that would be occupied by an armature or rotor in the linear or rotary arrangements. The regions of the flux paths that perform work are the same in all cases.

In all cases the control coils can either be wired in series or parallel and the secondary coils can be either wound in series or parallel. More than one secondary coil or secondary coils with multiple taps can be placed in the working regions and further multiple flux paths can be utilised with one or more secondary coils placed in each of the working regions. This is made obvious by the disclosures of the linear and rotary devices herein and based on the fact that the working regions of the flux paths are identical.

Fig. 45X and Fig. 45A also show the paths of the static flux of the permanent magnet or magnets when no current is flowing in the control coils. In the arrangement shown in Fig. 45X the flux from the single permanent magnet divides between the two working areas of the flux path. In the arrangement of Fig. 45A all of the flux of one of the permanent magnets passes through one of the working regions and all of the flux of the second permanent magnet passes through the other working region. Each of the working regions in both cases are occupied by secondary coils.

Fig. 45Y and Fig. 45B show the control coils energised with the polarity shown with respect to the polarity of the permanent magnet or magnets included. In Fig. 45Y the opposing coil, blocks the passage of flux from the permanent magnet, and the aiding coil couples with the flux of the permanent magnet and therefore all of the flux of the permanent magnet passes through one working region as shown. In Fig. 45B the opposing side of the coil blocks the passage of flux from the permanent magnet on the opposing side of the coil and the aiding side of the
coil couples with the flux of the other permanent magnet and therefore all of the flux of both the permanent magnets passes through the working region as shown.

Fig.45Z and Fig.45C show the control coils energised with a polarity opposite of that shown in Fig.45Y and Fig.45B. The same action occurs and results in all of the permanent magnet or magnets path flux passing through the opposite working regions.

By alternating the polarity of the control coils during one cycle, one working region experiences an increasing flux and the opposite region experiences a decreasing flux and during the next cycle the opposite occurs. This results in the induction of a voltage in the secondary coils that is decided by the magnitude of the change in flux in the working region and the time in which this change occurs. The novelty of this discovery is that the primary flux inducing the voltage in the secondary coils is supplied by the permanent magnet or magnets and is far greater than the flux supplied by the control coils.

Further, in the rotary motion devices of Fig.31 and Fig.34, it is not necessary that respective rotor members 702 and 744 be formed of permanent magnets. Each could take the form shown in Fig.46 where sections 950 and 952 are formed of magnetic material such as soft iron and sections 954 and 956 are formed by a non-magnetic filler material.
Fig.47 and Fig.48 show another embodiment 1000 of the subject device. The embodiment 1000 includes two spaced permanent magnets 1002 and 1004 each of which has its north pole adjacent to the upper surface and its south pole adjacent to the lower surface. A magnetisable bridging member 1006 extends across and makes contact with the north magnetic poles of the magnets 1002 and 1004 and another magnetisable bridging member 1008 makes contact with the south magnetic poles of the two permanent magnets 1002 and 1004.

The members 1006 and 1008 extend slightly beyond the opposite sides of the respective permanent magnets 1002 and 1004 and a pair of spaced armature members 1010 and 1012 are positioned to move into and out of engagement with the ends of the members 1006 and 1008. Coils 1014 and 1016 are mounted respectively on the members 1006 and 1008 in the space between the permanent magnets 1002 and 1004, and the armatures 1010 and 1012 are shown connected together by a rod 1018 which enables them to move backwards and forwards into engagement with the respective members 1006 and 1008 when different voltages are applied to the respective coils 1014 and 1016.

In Fig.47, the coils 1014 and 1016 are energised as shown with the coil 1014 having its north magnetic end to the left and its south magnetic end to the right and the opposite is true of the coil 1016. In Fig.48, the voltage applied to the respective coils 1014 and 1016 is reversed so that the polarity of the left end of coil 1014 is south and the polarity of the opposite end of the same coil 1014 is a north magnetic pole. The reverse is true of the coil 1016. In Fig.47 and Fig.48 it should be noted that the relationship of aiding and opposing is indicated on the figures to indicate the relationship when the coils are energised. For example, in Fig.47 when the coils are energised as shown the relationship is opposing for the permanent magnet 1002 and is aiding with respect to the permanent magnet 1004. The reverse is true when the voltage on the coils is reversed as shown in Fig.48. The movement of the armature is therefore controlled by the proper timing of the voltage on these coils. The same principles can be applied to produce rotating movement as shown in Fig.42.
Fig. 49 shows another embodiment 1030 of the subject invention using principles similar to those described in connection with Fig. 47 and Fig. 48. The embodiment 1030 includes a plurality, three being shown, of stationary members 1032, 1034 and 1036.

The details of these members are better shown in Fig. 50 which shows the details of the member 1036. This member includes a pair of permanent magnets 1038 and 1040, each of which has magnetisable members mounted adjacent to its opposite sides, as in the previous construction. The members 1042 and 1044 also have coils 1046 and 1048, respectively, and the coils are energised as described in connection with Fig. 47 and Fig. 48 to produce aiding and opposing magnetism. The construction shown in Fig. 49 may have three stator portions as shown or it may have more stator portions as desired. The rotor 1050 is positioned in the space between the members 1032, 1034 and 1036 and includes a permanent magnet portion part of which has its north magnetic pole on the surface as shown and the other parts has its south magnetic pole in the same surface as shown. The permanent magnets 1038 and 1040 on the stators interact with the permanent magnets on the rotor to produce the rotating motion and is controlled by the energising of the coils.

Other applications and advantages of the devices and methods of the present invention exist and various modifications are possible, and therefore the present invention is not intended to be limited to the specific examples disclosed herein. Accordingly, the spirit and scope of the invention are to be limited only by the terms of the appended claims.

**CLAIMS**

1. A permanent magnet device, comprising a permanent magnet having north and south pole faces, a first pole piece, a second pole piece, a first control coil, a second control coil, and circuit means, the first pole piece positioned adjacent the north pole face of the permanent magnet and including a first path portion, a second path portion and a third portion, the first path portion extending beyond a perimeter of the north pole face in
one direction and the second path portion extending beyond the perimeter of the north pole face in another
direction to define first and second flux paths for magnetic flux emanating from the north pole face of the
permanent magnet, the first path portion of the first pole piece connected to the second path portion of the first
pole piece by the third portion which extends across the north pole face of the permanent magnet, the second
pole piece positioned adjacent the south pole face and including a first path portion and a second path portion,
the first path portion extending beyond a perimeter of the south pole face and substantially aligned with the first
path portion of the first pole piece, the second path portion extending beyond the perimeter of the south pole
face and substantially aligned with the second path portion of the first pole piece, the circuit means connected to each of the first control coil and the second control coil to alternately energise the first coil and the second coil in a timed sequential manner.

2. The permanent magnet device as set forth in claim 1, wherein the first control coil and the second control coil
are alternately energised in a permanent magnet magnetic flux aiding manner.

3. The permanent magnet device as set forth in claim 1, wherein the first control coil and the second control coil
are alternately energised in a permanent magnet magnetic flux opposing manner.

4. The permanent magnet device as set forth in claim 1, further comprising a rotor member mounted on a shaft for
rotation therewith, the rotor member sized, shaped, and positioned to extend substantially from the first path
portion of the first pole piece to the first path portion of the second pole piece during at least some part of its
rotation.

5. The permanent magnet device as set forth in claim 4, wherein the rotor member is formed by at least one
permanent magnet.

6. The permanent magnet device as set forth in claim 1, wherein the second path portion of the first pole piece
and the second path portion of the second pole piece are positioned alongside the first path portion of the first
pole piece and the first path portion of the first pole piece.

7. The permanent magnet device as set forth in claim 1, further comprising a first bypass extending from the first
path portion of the first pole piece to the first path portion of the second pole piece, one end of the first bypass
positioned adjacent the first path portion of the first pole piece and between the permanent magnet and the
first control coil.

8. The permanent magnet device as set forth in claim 6, further comprising a second bypass extending from the
second path portion of the first pole piece to the second path portion of the second pole piece, one end of the
second bypass positioned adjacent the second path portion of the first pole piece and between the permanent
magnet and the second control coil.

9. The permanent magnet device as set forth in claim 1, further comprising a plurality of armatures arranged to
define a path of movement, wherein the second path portion of the first pole piece and the second path portion
of the second pole piece are positioned alongside the first path portion of the first pole piece and the first path
portion of the second pole piece, and wherein all of such pole piece path portions include an end face
positioned adjacent the path of movement defined by the plurality of armatures.

10. The permanent magnet device as set forth in claim 1, wherein the first control coil and the second control coil
are simultaneously energised one in a permanent magnet magnetic flux aiding manner and one in a
permanent magnet magnetic flux opposing manner.

11. The permanent magnet device as set forth in claim 1, further comprising two shaft connected armatures which
can be positioned adjacent the ends of the first and second pole pieces, wherein each of the armatures is
formed by a permanent magnet.

12. The permanent magnet device of claim 1 further comprising a first fixed armature extending between the first
path portion of the first pole piece to the first path portion of the second pole piece and a second fixed
armature extending between the second path portion on the first pole piece to the second path portion of the
second pole piece.

13. The permanent magnet device of claim 12 where a first secondary coil is wrapped around the first fixed
armature and a second secondary coil is wrapped around the second fixed armature.

14. The permanent magnet device of claim 13 including circuit means connected to the control coils to control the
energising thereof to produce a varying flux in the armatures and to induce voltage in the secondary coils.
15. The permanent magnet device of claim 1 wherein there are at least two permanent magnets each having north and south pole faces, the first pole piece being positioned extending between the north pole faces of the permanent magnets and the second pole piece positioned extending between adjacent south pole faces of the permanent magnets.

16. A method for controlling the path of magnetic flux from a permanent magnet, the method comprising the steps of:

(a) placing a first pole piece adjacent a first pole face of the permanent magnet so as to have at least first and second path portions extending beyond a perimeter of the first pole face;

(b) placing a second pole piece adjacent a second pole face of the permanent magnet so as to include at least one portion which substantially aligns with the first and second path portions of the first pole piece;

(c) placing a first control coil along and around the first path portion of the first pole piece;

(d) placing a second control coil along and around the second path portion of the first pole piece;

(e) repeatedly energising the first control coil in a permanent magnet magnetic flux opposing manner so as to prevent magnetic flux of the permanent magnet from traversing the first path portion of the first pole piece; and

(f) repeatedly energising the second control coil in a permanent magnet magnetic flux opposing manner so as to prevent magnetic flux of the permanent magnet from traversing the second path portion of the first pole piece.

17. The method as set forth in claim 16 wherein the energisation of steps (e) and (f) take place in a simultaneous manner.

18. A method for controlling the path of magnetic flux from a permanent magnet, the method comprising the steps of:

(a) placing a first pole piece adjacent a first pole face of the permanent magnet so as to have at least first and second path portions extending beyond a perimeter of the first pole face;

(b) placing a second pole piece adjacent a second pole face of the permanent magnet so as to include at least one portion which substantially aligns with the first and second path portions of the first pole piece;

(c) placing a first control coil along and around the first path portion of the first pole piece;

(d) placing a second control coil along and around the second path portion of the first pole piece; and

(e) alternately performing the following steps in a repeated manner:

(i) energising the first control coil in a permanent magnet magnetic flux aiding manner so as to couple with substantially all magnetic flux of the permanent magnet such that substantially no magnetic flux of the permanent magnet traverses the second path portion of the first pole piece when the first control coil is so energised; and

(ii) energising the second control coil in a permanent magnet magnetic flux opposing manner so as to couple with substantially all magnetic flux of the permanent magnet such that substantially no magnetic flux of the permanent magnet traverses the first path portion of the first pole piece when the second control coil is so energised.

19. A method for controlling the path of magnetic flux from a permanent magnet the method comprising the steps of:

(a) placing a first pole piece adjacent a first pole face of the permanent magnet so as to have at least first and second path portions extending beyond a perimeter of the first pole face;

(b) placing a second pole piece adjacent a second pole face of the permanent magnet so as to include at least one portion which substantially aligns with the first and second path portions of the first pole piece;
(c) placing a first control coil along and around the first path portion of the first pole piece;

(d) placing a second control coil along and around the second path portion of the first pole piece; and

(e) alternately performing the following steps in a repeated manner:

(i) simultaneously energising the first control coil in a permanent magnet magnetic flux aiding manner and the second control coil in a permanent magnet flux opposing manner; and

(ii) simultaneously energising the first control coil in a permanent magnet flux opposing manner and the second control coil in a permanent magnet magnetic flux aiding manner.

20. A rotary motion device, comprising a rotor assembly including a shaft which defines an axis of rotation of the assembly, a rotor pole piece mounted for rotation with the shaft, the rotor pole piece including an outer ring portion having at least two path portions extending inwardly from a periphery of the outer ring portion;

a stator assembly including a permanent magnet having a generally ring-shaped configuration, a first pole face of the permanent magnet positioned adjacent the outer ring portion of the rotor pole piece, the stator assembly further comprising a stator pole piece including an outer ring portion positioned adjacent a second pole face of the permanent magnet and having a plurality of path portions extending inwardly from the periphery, each path portion further including a respective portion which extends toward a plane defined by the first pole face of the permanent magnet and capable of being aligned with each of the rotor pole piece path portions at certain rotational positions of the rotor pole piece, each path portion including a control coil positioned along it;

and circuit means connected to each of the coils and including a source of electrical energy and switch means for energising respective ones of the control coils in a predetermined timed sequence based upon rotation of the rotor assembly.

21. A rotary motion device, comprising:

a rotor assembly including a shaft which defines an axis of rotation of the assembly, a pair of spaced elongated rotor members mounted on the shaft at spaced locations thereon and angularity oriented with respect to each other, each of the elongated rotor members formed of a magnetic material;

a stator assembly including a permanent magnet having opposed first and second pole faces, a first pole piece positioned adjacent the first pole face and a second pole piece positioned adjacent the second pole face, each pole piece including a respective first path portion extending beyond a perimeter of its adjacent pole face and having an curved shaped end portion, the first path portion of the first pole piece aligned with the first path portion of the second pole piece, each pole piece further including a respective second path portion extending beyond the perimeter of its adjacent pole face in a direction opposite to that of the first path portions and having an curved shaped end portion, the second path portion of the first pole piece aligned with the second path portion of the second pole piece, at least one of the first path portions of the first pole piece and the first path portion of the second pole piece including a control coil mounted on at least one of the pole pieces, at least one of the second path portions of the first pole piece and the second path portion of the second pole piece including a control coil mounted on at least one of the pole pieces,

wherein the rotor assembly extends from end to end of the stator assembly such that the elongate members are aligned with the curved shaped end portions of the path portions of the pole pieces;

and circuit means connected to each of the coils and including a source of electrical energy and switch means for energising respective ones of the control coils in a predetermined timed sequence based upon rotation of the rotor assembly.

22. A rotary motion device comprising:

a rotor assembly including a shaft which defines an axis of rotation of the assembly, a ring-shaped rotor member mounted for rotation with the shaft, the ring-shaped rotor member including a plurality of distinct circumferential regions;

a stator assembly including a first permanent magnet, a first pole piece positioned against a first pole face and a second pole piece positioned against a second pole face, the first pole piece including at least a first path portion extending beyond a perimeter of the first pole face, the second pole piece including at least a first path portion extending beyond a perimeter of the second pole face, the first path portion of the first pole piece aligned with the first path portion of the second pole piece, at least a portion of the ring-shaped rotor member
positioned between the first path portion of the first pole piece and the first path portion of the second pole piece, at least one of the first path portions of the first pole piece and the first path portion of the second pole piece including a first control coil positioned at a point intermediate the first permanent magnet and the ring-shaped rotor member;

and circuit means connected to the first control coil and including a source of electrical energy and switch means for energising the first control coil in a predetermined timed manner based upon rotation of the rotor assembly.

23. The rotary motion device as set forth in claim 22, wherein the ring-shaped rotor member is formed by a permanent magnet having distinct circumferential regions of opposite polarity.

24. The rotary motion device as set forth in claim 23, wherein the first pole piece includes a second path portion spaced from and extending adjacent to the first path portion, the second pole piece including a second path portion spaced from and extending adjacent to the first path portion such that the second path portion of the first pole piece is aligned with the second path portion of the second pole piece, at least a portion of the ring-shaped permanent magnet rotor member positioned between the second path portion of the first pole piece and the second path portion of the second pole piece, at least one of the second path portions of the first pole piece and the second path portion of the second pole piece having a second control coil mounted on at least one of the pole pieces at a point intermediate the first permanent magnet and the ring-shaped permanent magnet rotor member, the second control coil connected to the circuit means so as to be energised in a predetermined timed manner based upon rotation of the rotor assembly.

25. The rotary motion device as set forth in claim 22, wherein the stator assembly further comprises a second permanent magnet, a third pole piece positioned adjacent a first pole face of the second permanent magnet and a fourth pole piece positioned adjacent a second pole face of the second permanent magnet, the third pole piece including at least a first path portion extending beyond a perimeter of the second permanent magnet first pole face, the fourth pole piece including at least a first path portion extending beyond a perimeter of the second permanent magnet second pole face, the first path portion of the third pole piece aligned with the first path portion of the fourth pole piece, at least one of the first path portions of the third pole piece and the first path portion of the fourth pole piece including a third control coil mounted on at least one of the pole pieces at a point intermediate the second permanent magnet and the ring-shaped permanent magnet rotor member, the third pole piece including a second path portion spaced from and extending adjacent to the first path portion thereof such that the second path portion of the third pole piece is aligned with the second path portion of the fourth pole piece, at least a portion of the ring-shaped permanent magnet rotor member positioned between the first path portion of the third pole piece and the first path portion of the fourth pole piece, at least one of the second path portions of the third pole piece and the second path portion of the fourth pole piece including a fourth control coil mounted on at least one of the pole pieces at a point intermediate the second permanent magnet and the ring-shaped permanent magnet rotor member, wherein each of the third and fourth control coils are connected to the circuit means so as to be energised in a predetermined timed manner based upon rotation of the rotor assembly.

26. A device for producing rotary motion comprising:

a rotor assembly including a shaft which defines an axis of rotation for the assembly, a ring-shaped rotor member mounted for rotation with the shaft, the ring-shaped rotor member having a plurality of distinct circumferentially positioned regions extending around the axis, a stator assembly including a first permanent magnet, a first pole piece positioned against the first pole face of the first pole piece and a second pole piece positioned against a second pole face of the first pole piece, the first pole piece including at least a first path portion extending beyond a perimeter of the first pole face, the second pole piece including at least a first path portion extending beyond the perimeter of the second pole face, the first path portion of the first pole piece aligned with the first path portion of the second pole piece, at least one of the first path portions of the first pole piece and the first path portion of the second pole piece including a first control coil mounted on at least one of the pole pieces at a point intermediate the first permanent magnet and the ring-shaped rotor member; and circuit means connected to the first control coil and including a source of electrical energy and switch means for energising the first control coil in a predetermined timed manner based upon position of the rotor assembly during rotation of the rotor assembly.

27. The device for producing rotary motion of claim 26 wherein the circuit means includes means for timing the energising of the first control coil includes means for adjusting the timing thereof.
28. The device for producing rotor motion of claim 26 including means to vary the flux generated in the first and second pole pieces.

29. A device for handling the flux between two separate permanent magnets each of which has a north magnetic pole adjacent one side face and the south magnetic pole adjacent to the opposite side face, the north and south side face pieces respectively of both magnets being substantially in alignment, a first member in surface-to-surface contact with the north magnetic faces of the spaced permanent magnets, a second member in surface-to-surface contact with the south magnetic faces of the spaced permanent magnets, first and second armatures each positioned adjacent opposite ends of the first and second permanent magnets and adjacent to opposite ends of the spaced members, a coil mounted on each of the members in the space between the adjacent permanent magnets, and means for applying voltages of predetermined polarities across the respective coils to change the magnetic coupling between the permanent magnets and between the armatures.

30. A device for producing rotational movement comprising:

   a rotor having a shaft rotatable about the axis thereof, a member constructed of permanent magnets mounted on the shaft, said member having circumferential portions some of which have a north magnetic pole and others a south magnetic pole adjacent to the same side thereof, the opposite surface of the permanent magnet member having north magnetic poles opposite the south magnetic poles and south magnetic poles opposite the north magnetic poles, a stator having a plurality of circumferentially spaced portions each of which includes at least one permanent magnet and a pair of members mounted adjacent opposite sides of the permanent magnets, the members being positioned adjacent to the periphery of the rotor permanent magnet member and means on the member adjacent each opposite side of the stator permanent magnet for mounting a coil, and means for energising the coil on each stator portion in sequence to produce magnetic coupling force between the stator and the rotor in a direction to produce rotating motion of the rotor.

31. A device including a rotating member and a stationary member, each having a permanent magnet portion positioned to produce magnetic coupling force between them in predetermined positions thereof, the rotor including a shaft rotatable about its axis and the permanent magnet extending around the shaft and formed by a plurality of adjacent portions of permanent magnet material whereby adjacent portions have their north and south magnetic pole faces on opposite sides of the rotor permanent magnet, a plurality of stator members each stator member having at least one permanent magnet having a north magnetic pole adjacent one side and a south magnetic pole adjacent to the opposite side, a pair of members positioned adjacent respective opposite sides of the stator permanent magnet in position to extend to adjacent the rotor permanent magnet whereby a flux path is formed between the members and the stator and rotor permanent magnets, a coil mounted on each member of the stator and means for applying a voltage of predetermined polarity to each of said coils to control the flux through a path between the permanent magnets and to control the coupling force between the permanent magnets on the stator and the permanent magnets on the rotor.

32. A motion producing device comprising at least one permanent magnet having a north pole opposite and spaced from a south pole, a pair of spaced substantially parallel members adjacent respectively the north and south poles of the at least one permanent magnet and extending outwardly to substantially aligned opposite edges, a flux supporting member positioned adjacent the respective opposite edges of each pair of parallel members, a coil on selected ones of the parallel members, and a source of electrical energy connected to each of the coils for energising the coils to change the flux in the parallel members and in the flux supporting members.

33. The motion producing device of claim 32 wherein there are at least two spaced permanent magnets extending between the parallel members.

34. The motion producing device of claim 32 wherein one of said pair of parallel members is subdivided into a plurality of sidewardly extending portions extending to one of said opposite side edges, at least one of said coils being positioned on at least one of said sidewardly extending portions.

35. The motion producing device of claim 34 wherein there are coils on a plurality of respective ones of the sidewardly extending portions.

36. The motion producing device of claim 32 wherein the permanent magnet and the parallel members are annular in shape.

37. The motion producing device of claim 32 including a by-pass member extending between the pair of spaced substantial parallel members adjacent one side of the permanent magnet.
38. A permanent magnet device comprising at least two permanent magnets each having north and south pole faces, a first pole piece, a second pole piece, a first control coil, a second control coil, and circuit means, the first pole piece positioned adjacent the north pole faces of the at least two permanent magnets and including a first path portion, a second path portion and a third path portion, the first path portion extending beyond the perimeter of the north pole faces and the second path portion extending beyond the perimeter of the north pole faces to define first and second flux paths for magnetic flux emitting from the north pole faces of the at least two permanent magnets, the first path portion of the first pole piece connected to the second path portion of the first pole piece by a third portion which extends across the north pole face of the at least two permanent magnets, the second pole piece positioned adjacent to the south pole faces of the at least two permanent magnets and including a first path portion and a second path portion, the first path portion extending beyond a perimeter of the south pole faces and substantially aligned with the first path portion of the first pole piece, the second path portion extending beyond the perimeter of the south pole faces and substantially aligned with the second path portion of the first pole piece, the first control coil positioned around the first path portion of the first pole piece, the second control coil positioned around the second path portion of the first pole piece, and the circuit means connected to each of the first control coil and the second control coil to alternately energise the first coil and the second coil in a timed sequential manner.

39. The permanent magnet device of claim 38 further comprising a first fixed armature extending between the first path portion of the first pole piece to the first path portion of the second pole piece and a second fixed armature extending between the second path portion of the first pole piece to the second path portion of the second pole piece.

40. The permanent magnet device of claim 39 where a first secondary coil is wrapped around the first fixed armature and a second secondary coil is wrapped around the second fixed armature.

41. The permanent magnet device of claim 40 including circuit means connected to the control coils to control the energising thereof to produce a varying flux in the armatures and to induce voltage in the secondary coils.

42. The permanent magnet device of claim 38 wherein there are at least two permanent magnets each having north and south pole faces, the first pole piece being positioned extending between the north pole faces of the permanent magnets and the second pole piece positioned extending between the south pole faces of the permanent magnets.
MOTIONLESS ELECTROMAGNETIC GENERATOR

Please note that this is a re-worded excerpt from this patent. It describes an electrical device which both powers itself and supplies current to additional external equipment.

ABSTRACT
An electromagnetic generator without moving parts includes a permanent magnet and a magnetic core including first and second magnetic paths. A first input coil and a first output coil extend around portions of the first magnetic path, while a second input coil and a second output coil extend around portions of the second magnetic path. The input coils are alternatively pulsed to provide induced current pulses in the output coils. Driving electrical current through each of the input coils reduces a level of flux from the permanent magnet within the magnet path around which the input coil extends. In an alternative embodiment of an electromagnetic generator, the magnetic core includes annular spaced-apart plates, with posts and permanent magnets extending in an alternating fashion between the plates. An output coil extends around each of these posts. Input coils extending around portions of the plates are pulsed to cause the induction of current within the output coils.

DESCRIPTION
1. Field of the Invention: This invention relates to a magnetic generator without moving parts, used to produce electrical power, and more particularly, to such a device capable of powering itself.

2. Description of the Related Art: The patent literature describes a number of magnetic generators, each of which includes a permanent magnet, two magnetic paths external to the permanent magnet, each of which extends between the opposite poles of the permanent magnet, switching means for causing magnetic flux to flow alternately along each of the two magnetic paths, and one or more output coils in which current is induced to flow by means of changes in the magnetic field within the device. These devices operate in accordance with an extension of Faraday's Law, indicating that an electrical current is induced within a conductor within a changing magnetic field, even if the source of the magnetic field is stationary.

A method for switching magnetic flux to flow predominantly along either of two magnetic paths between opposite poles of a permanent magnet is described as a "flux transfer" principle by R. J. Radus in Engineer's Digest, Jul. 23, 1963. This principle is used to exert a powerful magnetic force at one end of both the north and south poles and a very low force at the other end, without being used in the construction of a magnetic generator. This effect can be caused mechanically, by keeper movement, or electrically, by driving electrical current through one or more control windings extending around elongated versions of the pole pieces 14. Several devices using this effect are described in U.S. Patent Nos. 3,165,723, 3,228,013, and 3,316,514.

Another step toward the development of a magnetic generator is described in U.S. Patent No. 3,368,141, as a device including a permanent magnet in combination with a transformer having first and second windings about a core, with two paths for magnetic flux leading from each pole of the permanent magnet to either end of the core, so that, when an alternating current induces magnetic flux direction changes in the core, the magnetic flux from the permanent magnet is automatically directed through the path which corresponds with the direction taken by the magnetic flux through the core due to the current. In this way, the magnetic flux is intensified. This device can be used to improve the power factor of a typically inductively loaded alternating current circuit.

Other patents describe magnetic generators in which electrical current from one or more output coils is described as being made available to drive a load, in the more conventional manner of a generator. For example, U.S. Patent No. 4,006,401 describes an electromagnetic generator including a permanent magnet and a core member, in which the magnetic flux flowing from the magnet in the core member is rapidly alternated by switching to generate an alternating current in a winding on the core member. The device includes a permanent magnet and two separate magnetic flux circuit paths between the north and south poles of the magnet. Each of the circuit paths includes two switching means for alternately opening and closing the
circuit paths, generating an alternating current in a winding on the core member. Each of the switching means includes a switching magnetic circuit intersecting the circuit path, with the switching magnetic circuit having a coil through which current is driven to induce magnetic flux to saturate the circuit path extending to the permanent magnet. Power to drive these coils is derived directly from the output of a continuously applied alternating current source. What is needed is an electromagnetic generator not requiring the application of such a current source.

U.S. Patent No. 4,077,001 describes a magnetic generator, or dc/dc converter, comprising a permanent magnet having spaced-apart poles and a permanent magnetic field extending between the poles of the magnet. A variable-reluctance core is disposed in the field in fixed relation to the magnet and the reluctance of the core is varied to cause the pattern of lines of force of the magnetic field to shift. An output conductor is disposed in the field in fixed relation to the magnet and is positioned to be cut by the shifting lines of permanent magnetic force so that a voltage is induced in the conductor. The magnetic flux is switched between alternate paths by means of switching coils extending around portions of the core, with the flow of current being alternated between these switching coils by means of a pair of transistors driven by the outputs of a flip-flop. The input to the flip flop is driven by an adjustable frequency oscillator. Power for this drive circuit is supplied through an additional, separate power source. What is needed is a magnetic generator not requiring the application of such a power source.

U.S. Patent No. 4,904,926 describes another magnetic generator using the motion of a magnetic field. The device includes an electrical winding defining a magnetically conductive zone having bases at each end, the winding including elements for the removing of an induced current therefrom. The generator further includes two pole magnets, each having a first and a second pole, each first pole in magnetic communication with one base of the magnetically conductive zone. The generator further includes a third pole magnet having a magnetic axis substantially transverse to an axis of the magnetically conductive zone, the third magnet having a pole nearest to the conductive zone and in magnetic attractive relationship to the first poles of the two pole magnets, in which the first poles thereof are like poles. The generator is supplied with a pair of transistors driven by the outputs of a flip-flop. The magnetic flux within the winding is shifted back and forth through the bundle of conductors by a pair of switching coils extending around portions of the core, with the flow of current being alternated between these switching coils by means of a pair of transistors driven by the outputs of a flip-flop. Power for this drive circuit is supplied through an additional, separate power source. What is needed is a magnetic generator not requiring the application of such a power source.

U.S. Patent No. 5,221,892 describes a magnetic generator in the form of a direct current flux compression transformer including a magnetic envelope having poles defining a magnetic axis and characterised by a pattern of magnetic flux lines in polar symmetry about the axis. The magnetic flux lines are spatially displaced relative to the magnetic envelope using control elements which are mechanically stationary relative to the core. Further provided are inductive elements which are also mechanically stationary relative to the magnetic envelope. Spatial displacement of the flux relative to the inductive elements causes a flow of electrical current. Further provided are magnetic flux valves which provide for the varying of the magnetic reluctance to create a time domain pattern of respectively enhanced and decreased magnetic reluctance across the magnetic valves, and, thereby, across the inductive elements.

Other patents describe devices using superconductive elements to cause movement of the magnetic flux. These devices operate in accordance with the Meissner effect, which describes the expulsion of magnetic flux from the interior of a superconducting structure as the structure undergoes the transition to a superconducting phase. For example, U.S. Patent No. 5,011,821 describes an electric power generating device including a bundle of conductors which are placed in a magnetic field generated by north and south pole pieces of a permanent magnet. The magnetic field is shifted back and forth through the bundle of conductors by a pair of thin films of superconductive material. One of the thin films is placed in the superconducting state while the other thin film is in a non-superconducting state. As the states are cyclically reversed between the two films, the magnetic field is deflected back and forth through the bundle of conductors.

U.S. Patent No. 5,327,015 describes an apparatus for producing an electrical impulse comprising a tube made of superconducting material, a source of magnetic flux mounted about one end of the tube, a means, such as a coil, for intercepting the flux mounted along the tube, and a means for changing the temperature of the superconductor mounted about the tube. As the tube is progressively made superconducting, the magnetic field is trapped within the tube, creating an electrical impulse in the means for intercepting. A reversal of the superconducting state produces a second pulse.

None of the patented devices described above use a portion of the electrical power generated within the device to power the reversing means used to change the path of magnetic flux. Thus, like conventional rotary generators, these devices require a steady input of power, which may be in the form of electrical power.
driving the reversing means of one of these magnetic generators or the torque driving the rotor of a
conventional rotary generator. Yet, the essential function of the magnetic portion of an electrical generator is
simply to switch magnetic fields in accordance with precise timing. In most conventional applications of
magnetic generators, the voltage is switched across coils, creating magnetic fields in the coils which are used
to override the fields of permanent magnets, so that a substantial amount of power must be furnished to the
generator to power the switching means, reducing the efficiency of the generator.

Recent advances in magnetic material, which have particularly been described by Robert C. O'Handley in
Modern Magnetic Materials, Principles and Applications, John Wiley & Sons, New York, pp. 456-468, provide
nanocrystalline magnetic alloys, which are particularly well suited for rapid switching of magnetic flux. These
alloys are primarily composed of crystalline grains, or crystallites, each of which has at least one dimension of
a few nanometres. Nanocrystalline materials may be made by heat-treating amorphous alloys which form
precursors for the nanocrystalline materials, to which insoluble elements, such as copper, are added to
promote massive nucleation, and to which stable, refractory alloying materials, such as niobium or tantalum
carbide are added to inhibit grain growth. Most of the volume of nanocrystalline alloys is composed of
randomly distributed crystallites having dimensions of about 2-40 nm. These crystallites are nucleated and
grown from an amorphous phase, with insoluble elements being rejected during the process of crystallite
growth. In magnetic terms, each crystallite is a single-domain particle. The remaining volume of
nanocrystalline alloys is made up of an amorphous phase in the form of grain boundaries having a thickness
of about 1 nm.

Magnetic materials having particularly useful properties are formed from an amorphous Co–Nb–B (cobalt-
niobium-boron) alloy having near-zero magnetostriction and relatively strong magnetisation, as well as good
mechanical strength and corrosion resistance. A process of annealing this material can be varied to change
the size of crystallites formed in the material, with a resulting strong effect on DC coercivity. The precipitation
of nanocrystallites also enhances AC performance of the otherwise amorphous alloys.

Other magnetic materials are formed using iron-rich amorphous and nanocrystalline alloys, which generally
show larger magnetisation than the alloys based on cobalt. Such materials are, for example, Fe–B–Si–Nb–Cu
(iron-boron-silicon-niobium-copper) alloys. While the permeability of iron-rich amorphous alloys is limited by
their relatively large levels of magnetostriction, the formation of a nanocrystalline material from such an
amorphous alloy dramatically reduces this level of magnetostriction, favouring easy magnetisation.

Advances have also been made in the development of materials for permanent magnets, particularly in the
development of materials including rare earth elements. Such materials include samarium cobalt,
SmCo.sub.5, which is used to form a permanent magnet material having the highest resistance to
demagnetisation of any known material. Other magnetic materials are made, for example, using combinations
of iron, neodymium, and boron.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION:

It is a first objective of the present invention, to provide a magnetic generator which eliminates the need for an
external power source during operation of the generator.

It is a second objective of the present invention to provide a magnetic generator in which a magnetic flux path
is changed without a need to overpower a magnetic field to change its direction.

It is a third objective of the present invention to provide a magnetic generator in which the generation of
electricity is accomplished without moving parts.

In the apparatus of the present invention, the path of the magnetic flux from a permanent magnet is switched
in a manner not requiring the overpowering of the magnetic fields. Furthermore, a process of self-initiated
iterative switching is used to switch the magnetic flux from the permanent magnet between alternate magnetic
paths within the apparatus, with the power to operate the iterative switching being provided through a control
circuit consisting of components known to use low levels of power. With self-switching, a need for an external
power source during operation of the generator is eliminated, with a separate power source, such as a
battery, being used only for a very short time during start-up of the generator.

According to a first aspect of the present invention, an electromagnetic generator is provided, including a
permanent magnet, a magnetic core, first and second input coils, first and second output coils, and a
switching circuit. The permanent magnet has magnetic poles at opposite ends. The magnetic core includes a
first magnetic path, around which the first input and output coils extend, and a second magnetic path, around
which the second input and output coils extend, between opposite ends of the permanent magnet. The
switching circuit drives electrical current alternately through the first and second input coils. The electrical
current driven through the first input coil causes the first input coil to produce a magnetic field opposing a concentration of magnetic flux from the permanent magnet within the first magnetic path. The electrical current driven through the second input coil causes the second input coil to produce a magnetic field opposing a concentration of magnetic flux from the permanent magnet within the second magnetic path.

According to another aspect of the present invention, an electromagnetic generator is provided, including a magnetic core, a plurality of permanent magnets, first and second pluralities of input coils, a plurality of output coils, and a switching circuit. The magnetic core includes a pair of spaced-apart plates, each of which has a central aperture, and first and second pluralities of posts extending between the spaced-apart plates. The permanent magnets each extend between the pair of spaced apart plates. Each permanent magnet has magnetic poles at opposite ends, with the magnetic fields of all the permanent magnets being aligned to extend in a common direction. Each input coil extends around a portion of a plate within the spaced-apart plates, between a post and a permanent magnet. An output coil extends around each post. The switching circuit drives electrical current alternately through the first and second input coils. Electrical current driven through each input coil in the first plurality of input coils causes an increase in magnetic flux within each post within the first plurality of posts from permanent magnets on each side of the post and a decrease in magnetic flux within each post within the second plurality of posts from permanent magnets on each side of the post. Electrical current driven through each input coil in the second plurality of input coils causes a decrease in magnetic flux within each post within the first plurality of posts from permanent magnets on each side of the post and an increase in magnetic flux within each post within the second plurality of posts from permanent magnets on each side of the post.

**BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS:**

Figure 1 is a partly schematic front elevation of a magnetic generator and associated electrical circuits built in accordance with a first version of the first embodiment of the present invention:

![Figure 1 Diagram](image-url)

Figure 2 is a schematic view of a first version of a switching and control circuit within the associated electrical circuits of Figure 1:
Figure 3 is a graphical view of drive signals produced within the circuit of Figure 2:

Figure 4 is a schematic view of a second version of a switching and control circuit within the associated electrical circuits of Figure 1:

Figure 5 is a graphical view of drive signals produced within the circuit of Figure 3:

Figure 6A is a graphical view of a first drive signal within the apparatus of Figure 1,
Figure 6B is a graphical view of a second drive signal within the apparatus of Figure 1,
Figure 6C is a graphical view of an input voltage signal within the apparatus of Figure 1,
Figure 6D is a graphical view of an input current signal within the apparatus of Figure 1,
Figure 6E is a graphical view of a first output voltage signal within the apparatus of Figure 1,
Figure 6F is a graphical view of a second output voltage signal within the apparatus of Figure 1,
Figure 6G is a graphical view of a first output current signal within the apparatus of Figure 1,
Figure 6H is a graphical view of a second output current signal within the apparatus of Figure 1:

Figure 7 is a graphical view of output power measured within the apparatus of Figure 1, as a function of input voltage:
Figure 8 is a graphical view of a coefficient of performance, calculated from measurements within the apparatus of Figure 1, as a function of input voltage:

Figure 9 is a cross-sectional elevation of a second version of the first embodiment of the present invention:

Figure 10 is a top view of a magnetic generator built in accordance with a first version of a second embodiment of the present invention:
Figure 11 is a front elevation of the magnetic generator of Figure 10:

Figure 12 is a top view of a magnetic generator built in accordance with a second version of the second embodiment of the present invention:
DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION:

Fig. 1 is a partly schematic front elevation, of an electromagnetic generator 10, built in accordance with a first embodiment of the present invention, to include a permanent magnet 12 to supply input lines of magnetic flux moving from the north pole 14 of the magnet 12, outward into magnetic flux path core material 16.

The flux path core material 16 is configured to form a right magnetic path 18 and a left magnetic path 20, both of which extend externally between the north pole 14 and the south pole 22 of the magnet 12.

The electromagnetic generator 10 is driven by means of a switching and control circuit 24, which alternately drives electrical current through a right input coil 26 and a left input coil 28. These input coils each extend around a portion of the core material 16, with the right input coil 26 surrounding a portion of the right magnetic path 18 and with the left input coil 28 surrounding a portion of the left magnetic path 20. A right output coil 29 also surrounds a portion of the right magnetic path 18, while a left output coil 30 surrounds a portion of the left magnetic path 20.

In accordance with a preferred version of the present invention, the switching and control circuit 24 and the input coils 26, 28 are arranged so that, when the right input coil 26 is energised, a north magnetic pole is present at its left end 31, the end closest to the north pole 14 of the permanent magnet 12, and so that, when the left input coil 28 is energised, a north magnetic pole is present at its right end 32, which is also the end closest to the north pole 14 of the permanent magnet 12. Thus, when the right input coil 26 is magnetised, magnetic flux from the permanent magnet 12 is repelled from extending through the right input coil 26. Similarly, when the left input coil 28 is magnetised, magnetic flux from the permanent magnet 12 is repelled from extending through the left input coil 28.

Thus, it is seen that driving electrical current through the right input coil 26 opposes a concentration of flux from the permanent magnet 12 within the right magnetic path 18, causing at least some of this flux to be transferred to the left magnetic path 20. On the other hand, driving electrical current through the left input coil 28 opposes a concentration of flux from the permanent magnet 12 within the left magnetic path 20, causing at least some of this flux to be transferred to the right magnetic path 18.

While in the example of Fig. 1, the input coils 26, 28 are placed on either side of the north pole of the permanent magnet 12, being arranged along a portion of the core 16 extending from the north pole of the permanent magnet 12, it is understood that the input coils 26, 28 could as easily be alternately placed on either side of the south pole of the permanent magnet 12, being arranged along a portion of the core 16 extending from the south pole of the permanent magnet 12, with the input coils 26, 28 being wired to form, when energised, magnetic fields having south poles directed toward the south pole of the permanent magnet 12. In general, the input coils 26, 28 are arranged along the magnetic core on either side of an end of the permanent magnet forming a first pole, such as a north pole, with the input coils being arranged to produce magnetic fields of the polarity of the first pole directed toward the first pole of the permanent magnet.

Further in accordance with a preferred version of the present invention, the input coils 26, 28 are never driven with so much current that the core material 16 becomes saturated. Driving the core material 16 to saturation means that subsequent increases in input current can occur without effecting corresponding changes in magnetic flux, and therefore that input power can be wasted. In this way, the apparatus of the present
invention is provided with an advantage in terms of the efficient use of input power over the apparatus of U.S. Patent No. 4,000,401, in which a portion both ends of each magnetic path is driven to saturation to block flux flow.

In the electromagnetic generator 10, the switching of current flow within the input coils 26, 28 does not need to be sufficient to stop the flow of flux in one of the magnetic paths 18, 20 while promoting the flow of magnetic flux in the other magnetic path. The electromagnetic generator 10 works by changing the flux pattern; it does not need to be completely switched from one side to another.

Experiments have determined that this configuration is superior, in terms of the efficiency of using power within the input coils 26, 28 to generate electrical power within the output coils 29, 30, to the alternative of arranging input coils and the circuits driving them so that flux from the permanent magnet is driven through the input coils as they are energised. This arrangement of the present invention provides a significant advantage over the prior-art methods shown, for example, in U.S. Patent No. 4,077,001, in which the magnetic flux is driven through the energised coils.

The configuration of the present invention also has an advantage over the prior-art configurations of U.S. Patent Nos. 3,368,141 and 4,077,001 in that the magnetic flux is switched between two alternate magnetic paths 18, 20 with only a single input coil 26, 28 surrounding each of the alternate magnetic paths. The configurations of U.S. Patent Nos. 3,368,141 and 4,077,001 each require two input coils on each of the magnetic paths. This advantage of the present invention is significant both in the simplification of hardware and in increasing the efficiency of power conversion.

The right output coil 29 is electrically connected to a rectifier and filter 33, having an output driven through a regulator 34, which provides an output voltage adjustable through the use of a potentiometer 35. The output of the linear regulator 34 is in turn provided as an input to a sensing and switching circuit 36. Under start up conditions, the sensing and switching circuit 36 connects the switching and control circuit 24 to an external power source 38, which is, for example, a starting battery. After the electromagnetic generator 10 is properly started, the sensing and switching circuit 36 senses that the voltage available from regulator 34 has reached a predetermined level, so that the power input to the switching and control circuit 24 is switched from the external power source 38 to the output of regulator 34. After this switching occurs, the electromagnetic generator 10 continues to operate without an application of external power.

The left output coil 30 is electrically connected to a rectifier and filter 40, the output of which is connected to a regulator 42, the output voltage of which is adjusted by means of a potentiometer 43. The output of the regulator 42 is in turn connected to an external load 44.

**Fig.2** is a schematic view of a first version of the switching and control circuit 24. An oscillator 50 drives the clock input of a flip-flop 54, with the Q and Q' outputs of the flip-flop 54 being connected through driver circuits 56, 58 to power FETs 60, 62 so that the input coils 26, 28 are driven alternately. In accordance with a preferred version of the present invention, the voltage V applied to the coils 26, 28 through the FETs 60, 62 is derived from the output of the sensing and switching circuit 36.

**Fig.3** is a graphical view of the signals driving the gates of FETs 60, 62 of **Fig.2**, with the voltage driving the gate of FET 60 being represented by line 64, and with the voltage driving FET 62 being represented by line 66. Both of the coils 26, 28 are driven with positive voltages.

**Fig.4** is a schematic view of a second version of the switching and control circuit 24. In this version, an oscillator 70 drives the clock input of a flip-flop 72, with the Q and Q' outputs of the flip-flop 72 being connected to serve as triggers for one-shots 74, 76. The outputs of the one-shots 74, 76 are in turn connected through driver circuits 78, 80 to drive FETs 82, 84, so that the input coils 26, 28 are alternately driven with pulses shorter in duration than the Q and Q' outputs of the flip flop 72.

**Fig.5** is a graphical view of the signals driving the gates of FETs 82, 84 of **Fig.4**, with the voltage driving the gate of FET 82 being represented by line 86, and with the voltage driving the gate of FET 84 being represented by line 88.

Referring again to **Fig.1**, power is generated in the right output coil 29 only when the level of magnetic flux is changing in the right magnetic path 18, and in the left output coil 30 only when the level of magnetic flux is changing in the left magnetic path 20. It is therefore desirable to determine, for a specific magnetic generator configuration, the width of a pulse providing the most rapid practical change in magnetic flux, and then to provide this pulse width either by varying the frequency of the oscillator 50 of the apparatus of **Fig.2**, so that this pulse width is provided with the signals shown in **Fig.3**, or by varying the time constant of the one-shots 74, 76 of **Fig.4**, so that this pulse width is provided by the signals of **Fig.5** at a lower oscillator frequency. In this way, the input coils are not left on longer than necessary. When either of the input coils is left on for a
period of time longer than that necessary to produce the change in flux direction, power is being wasted through heating within the input coil without additional generation of power in the corresponding output coil.

A number of experiments have been conducted to determine the adequacy of an electromagnetic generator built as the generator 10 in Fig.1, to produce power both to drive the switching and control logic, providing power to the input coils 26, 28, and to drive an external load 44. In the configuration used in this experiment, the input coils 26, 28 had 40 turns of 18-gauge copper wire, and the output coils 29, 30 had 450 turns of 18-gauge copper wire. The permanent magnet 12 had a height of 40 mm (1.575 in.) between its north and south poles, in the direction of arrow 89, a width of 25.4 mm (1.00 in.), in the direction of arrow 90, and in the other direction, a depth of 38.1 mm (1.50 in.). The core 16 had a height, in the direction of arrow 89, of 90 mm (3.542 in.), a width, in the direction of arrow 90, of 135 mm (5.315 in.) and a depth of 70 mm (2.756 in.). The core 16 had a central hole with a height, in the direction of arrow 89, of 40 mm (1.575 mm) to accommodate the magnet 12, and a width, in the direction of arrow 90, of 85 mm (3.346 in.). The core 16 was fabricated of two "C"-shaped halves, joined at lines 92, to accommodate the winding of output coils 29, 30 and input coils 26, 28 over the core material.

The core material was a laminated iron-based magnetic alloy sold by Honeywell as METGLAS Magnetic Alloy 2605SA1. The magnet material was a combination of iron, neodymium, and boron.

The input coils 26, 28 were driven at an oscillator frequency of 87.5 KHz, which was determined to produce optimum efficiency using a switching control circuit configured as shown in Fig.2. This frequency has a period of 11.45 microseconds. The flip flop 54 is arranged, for example, to be set and reset on rising edges of the clock signal input from the oscillator, so that each pulse driving one of the FETs 60, 62 has a duration of 11.45 microseconds, and so that sequential pulses are also separated to each FET are also separated by 11.45 microseconds.

Fig.6A to Fig.6H, are graphical views of signals which occurred simultaneously during the operation of the apparatus shown in Fig.1 and Fig.2, when the input voltage applied was 75 volts. Fig.6A shows a first drive signal 100 driving FET 60, which conducts to drive the right input coil 26. Fig.6B shows a second drive signal 102, driving FET 62, which, when it conducts, provides the drive to the left input coil 28.

Fig.6C and Fig.6D show voltage and current signals produced when the current driving the FETs 60, 62 is provided from a battery source. Fig.6C shows the level 104 of voltage V. While the nominal voltage of the battery was 75 volts, a decaying transient signal 106 is superimposed on this voltage each time one of the FETs 60, 62 is switched on. The specific pattern of this transient signal depends on the internal resistance of the battery, as well as on a number of characteristics of the magnetic generator 10. Similarly, Fig.6D shows the current 106 flowing into FETs 60, 62 from the battery source. Since the signals 104, 106 show the effects of current flowing into both FETs 60, 62 the transient spikes are 11.45 microseconds apart.

Figs.6E to 6H. show the voltage and current levels measured at the output coils 29, 30. Fig.6E shows a voltage output signal 108 of the right output coil 29, while Fig.6F shows a voltage output signal 110 of the left output coil 30. For example, the output current signal 116 of the right output coil 29 includes a first transient spike 112 caused when a pulse of current is generated in the left input coil 28 in order to boost the magnetic flux passing through the right magnetic path 18, and a second transient spike 114 caused when the left input coil 28 is turned off as the right input coil 26 is being turned on. Fig.6G shows an output current signal 116 of the right output coil 29, while Fig.6H shows an output current signal 118 of the left output coil 30.

Fig.7 is a graphical view of output power measured using the electromagnetic generator 10 and eight levels of input voltage, varying from 10v to 75v. The oscillator frequency was retained at 87.5 KHz. The measured values are represented by points 120, while the curve 122 is generated by polynomial regression. (a least squares fit).

Fig.8 is a graphical view of a coefficient of performance, defined as the ratio of the output power to the input power, for each of the measurement points shown in Fig.7. At each measurement point, the output power was substantially higher than the input power. Real power measurements were computed at each data point using measured voltage and current levels, with the results being averaged over the period of the signal. These measurements agree with RMS power measured using a Tektronic THS730 digital oscilloscope.

While the electromagnetic generator 10 was capable of operation at much higher voltages and currents without saturation, the input voltage was limited to 75 volts because of voltage limitations of the switching circuits being used. Those familiar with electronics will understand that components for switching circuits capable of handling higher voltages are readily available for use in this application.

The experimentally-measured data were extrapolated to predict operation at an input voltage of 100 volts, with the input current being 140 mA, the input power being 14 watts, and with a resulting output power being
48 watts for each of the two output coils 29, 30, at an average output current of 12 mA and an average output voltage of 4000 volts. This means that for each of the output coils 29, 30, the coefficient of performance ("COP") would be 3.44.

While an output voltage of 4000 volts may be needed for some applications, the output voltage can also be varied through a simple change in the configuration of the electromagnetic generator 10. The output voltage is readily reduced by reducing the number of turns in the output windings. If this number of turns is decreased from 450 to 12, the output voltage is dropped to 106.7, with a resulting increase in output current to 0.5 amps for each output coil 29, 30, (i.e. 53 watts). In this way, the output current and voltage of the electromagnetic generator can be varied by varying the number of turns of the output coils 29, 30, without making a substantial change in the output power, which is instead determined by the input current, which determines the amount of magnetic flux shuttled during the switching process.

All of the Coefficients Of Performance were significantly greater than 1. These are plotted in Fig.8 and they indicate that the output power levels measured in each of the output coils 29, 30 were substantially greater than the corresponding input power levels driving both of the input coils 26, 28. Therefore, it is apparent that the electromagnetic generator 10 can be built in a self-powered form, as discussed above in reference to Fig.1. In the example of Fig.1, except for a brief application of power from the external power source 38 to start the process of power generation, the power required to drive the input coils 26, 28 is derived entirely from power developed within the right output coil 29. If the power generated in the single output coil 29, is more than sufficient to drive the input coils 26, 28, an additional load 126 may be added to be driven with power generated in the output coil 29. On the other hand, each of the output coils 29, 30 may be used to drive a portion of the input coil power requirements, for example, output coils 26 can provide the driving voltage V for FET 60 while output coil 28 can provide the driving voltage V for FET 62.

Regarding thermodynamic considerations, it is noted that when the electromagnetic generator 10 is operating, it is an open system not in thermodynamic equilibrium. The system receives static energy from the magnetic flux of the permanent magnet. Because the electromagnetic generator 10 is self-switched without an additional energy input, the thermodynamic operation of the system is an open dissipative system, receiving, collecting, and dissipating energy from its environment; in this case, from the magnetic flux stored within the permanent magnet. Continued operation of the electromagnetic generator 10 causes demagnetisation of the permanent magnet. The use of a magnetic material including rare earth elements, such as a samarium cobalt material or a material including iron, neodymium, and boron is preferable within the present invention, since such a magnetic material has a relatively long life in this application.

Thus, an electromagnetic generator operating in accordance with the present invention should not be considered as a perpetual-motion machine, but rather as a system in which flux radiated from a permanent magnet is converted into electricity, which is used both to power the apparatus and to power an external load. This is analogous to a system including a nuclear reactor, in which a number of fuel rods radiate energy which is used to keep the chain reaction going and to heat water for the generation of electricity to drive external loads.

Fig.9 is a cross-sectional elevation of an electromagnetic generator 130 built in accordance with a second version of the first embodiment of the present invention. This electromagnetic generator 130 is generally similar in construction and operation to the electromagnetic generator 10 built in accordance with the first version of this embodiment, except that the magnetic core 132 of the electromagnetic generator 10 is built in two halves joined along lines 134, allowing each of the output coils 135 to be wound on a plastic bobbin 136 before being placed over the legs 137 of the core 132.

Fig.9 also shows an alternate placement of an input coil 138. In the example of Fig.1, both of the input coils 26, 28 were placed on the upper portion of the magnetic core 16, with these coils being configured to generate magnetic fields having north magnetic poles at the inner ends 31, 32 of the coils 26, 28, with these north magnetic poles thus being closest to the end 14 of the permanent magnet 12 having its north magnetic pole. In the example of Fig.9, a first input coil 26 is as described above in reference to Fig.1, but the second input coil 138 is placed adjacent the south pole 140 of the permanent magnet 12. This input coil 138 is configured to generate a south magnetic pole at its inner end 142, so that, when input coil 138 is turned on, flux from the permanent magnet 12 is directed away from the left magnetic path 18 into the right magnetic path 18.

Fig.10 and Fig.11 show an electromagnetic generator 150 built in accordance with a first version of a second embodiment of the present invention, with Fig.10 being a top view, and Fig.11 being a front elevation. This electromagnetic generator 150 includes an output coil 152, 153 at each corner, and a permanent magnet 154 extending along each side between output coils. The magnetic core 156 includes an upper plate 158, a lower plate 160, and a square post 162 extending within each output coil 152, 153. Both the upper plate 158 and the lower plate 160 include central apertures 164.

A - 422
Each of the permanent magnets 154 is oriented with a like pole, such as a north pole, against the upper plate 158. Eight input coils 166, 168 are placed in positions around the upper plate 158 between an output coil 152, 153 and a permanent magnet 154. Each input coil 166, 168 is arranged to form a magnetic pole at its end nearest to the adjacent permanent magnet 154 of the same polarity as the magnetic poles of the magnets 154 adjacent the upper plate 158. Thus, the input coils 166 are switched on to divert the magnetic flux of the permanent magnets 154 from the adjacent output coils 152, into magnetic paths through the output coils 153. Then, the input coils 168 are switched on to divert magnetic flux of the permanent magnets 154 from the adjacent output coils 153, with this flux being diverted into magnetic paths through the output coils 152. Thus, the input coils form a first group of input coils 166 and a second group of input coils 168, with these first and second groups of input coils being alternately energised in the manner described above in reference to Fig.1 for the single input coils 26, 28. The output coils produce current in a first train of pulses occurring simultaneously within coils 152 and in a second train of pulses occurring simultaneously within coils 153.

Thus, driving current through input coils 166 causes an increase in flux from the permanent magnets 154 within the posts 162 extending through output coils 153 and a decrease in flux from the permanent magnets 154 within the posts 162 extending through output coils 152. On the other hand, driving current through input coils 168 causes a decrease in flux from the permanent magnets 154 within the posts 162 extending through output coils 153 and an increase in flux from the permanent magnets 154 within the posts 162 extending through output coils 152.

While the example of Fig.10 and Fig.11 shows all of the input coils 166, 168 deployed along the upper plate 158, it is understood that certain of these input coils 166, 168 could alternately be deployed around the lower plate 160, in the manner generally shown in Fig.9, with one input coil 166, 168 being within each magnetic circuit between a permanent magnet 154 and an adjacent post 162 extending within an output coil 152, 153, and with each input coil 166, 168 being arranged to produce a magnetic field having a magnetic pole like the closest pole of the adjacent permanent magnet 154.

Fig.12 is a top view of a second version 170 of the second embodiment of the present invention, which is similar to the first version thereof, which has been discussed in reference to Fig.10 and Fig.11, except that an upper plate 172 and a similar lower plate (not shown) are annular in shape, while the permanent magnets 174 and posts 176 extending through the output coils 178 are cylindrical. The input coils 180 are oriented and switched as described above in reference to Fig.9 and Fig.10.

While the example of Fig.12 shows four permanent magnets, four output coils and eight input coils it is understood that the principles described above can be applied to electromagnetic generators having different numbers of elements. For example, such a device can be built to have two permanent magnets, two output coils, and four input coils, or to have six permanent magnets, six output coils, and twelve input coils.

In accordance with the present invention, material used for magnetic cores is preferably a nanocrystalline alloy, and alternately an amorphous alloy. The material is preferably in a laminated form. For example, the core material is a cobalt-niobium-boron alloy or an iron based magnetic alloy.

Also in accordance with the present invention, the permanent magnet material preferably includes a rare earth element. For example, the permanent magnet material is a samarium cobalt material or a combination of iron, neodymium, and boron.

While the invention has been described in its preferred versions and embodiments with some degree of particularity, it is understood that this description has been given only by way of example and that numerous changes in the details of construction, fabrication, and use, including the combination and arrangement of parts, may be made without departing from the spirit and scope of the invention.

CLAIMS:

1. An electromagnetic generator comprising: a permanent magnet having magnetic poles at opposite ends; a magnetic core including first and second magnetic paths between said opposite ends of said permanent magnet, wherein said magnetic core comprises a closed loop, said permanent magnet extends within said closed loop, and said opposite ends of said permanent magnet are disposed adjacent opposite sides of said closed loop and against internal surfaces of said magnetic core comprising said closed loop; a first input coil extending around a portion of said first magnetic path, a second input coil extending around a portion of said second magnetic path, a first output coil extending around a portion of said first magnetic path for providing a first electrical output; a second output coil extending around a portion of said second magnetic path for providing a second electrical output; and a switching circuit driving electrical current alternately through said first and second input coils, wherein said electrical current driven through said first input coil causes said first input coil to produce a magnetic field opposing a concentration of magnetic flux
An electromagnetic generator comprising: a permanent magnet having magnetic poles at opposite ends; a magnetic core including first and second magnetic paths between said opposite ends of said permanent magnet, wherein said magnetic core comprises a closed loop, said permanent magnet extends within said closed loop, said opposite ends of said permanent magnet are disposed adjacent opposite sides of said closed loop, and a first type of pole of said permanent magnet is disposed adjacent a first side of said closed loop; a first input coil, disposed along said first side of said closed loop, extending around a portion of said first magnetic path, a second input coil, disposed along said first side of said closed loop, extending around a portion of said second magnetic path, a first output coil extending around a portion of said first magnetic path for providing a first electrical output; a second output coil extending around a portion of said second magnetic path for providing a second electrical output; and a switching circuit driving electrical current alternately through said first and second input coils, wherein said electrical current driven through said first input coil causes said first input coil to produce a magnetic field opposing a concentration of magnetic flux from said permanent magnet within said first magnetic path, and additionally causes said second input coil to produce a magnetic field opposing a concentration of magnetic flux from said permanent magnet within said second magnetic path.

2. An electromagnetic generator comprising: a permanent magnet having magnetic poles at opposite ends; a magnetic core including first and second magnetic paths between said opposite ends of said permanent magnet, wherein said magnetic core comprises a closed loop, said permanent magnet extends within said closed loop, said opposite ends of said permanent magnet are disposed adjacent opposite sides of said closed loop, and a first type of pole of said permanent magnet is disposed adjacent a first side of said closed loop; a first input coil, disposed along said first side of said closed loop, extending around a portion of said first magnetic path, a second input coil, disposed along said first side of said closed loop, extending around a portion of said second magnetic path, a first output coil extending around a portion of said first magnetic path for providing a first electrical output; a second output coil extending around a portion of said second magnetic path for providing a second electrical output; and a switching circuit driving electrical current alternately through said first and second input coils, wherein said electrical current driven through said first input coil causes said first input coil to produce a magnetic field opposing a concentration of magnetic flux from said permanent magnet within said first magnetic path, and additionally causes said second input coil to produce a magnetic field opposing a concentration of magnetic flux from said permanent magnet within said second magnetic path.

3. An electromagnetic generator comprising: a permanent magnet having magnetic poles at opposite ends; a magnetic core including first and second magnetic paths between said opposite ends of said permanent magnet, wherein said magnetic core comprises a closed loop, said permanent magnet extends within said closed loop, and said opposite ends of said permanent magnet are disposed adjacent opposite sides of said closed loop, and a first type of pole of said permanent magnet is disposed adjacent a first side of said closed loop, and a second type of pole, opposite said first type of pole, of said permanent magnet is disposed adjacent a second side of said closed loop; a first input coil extending around a portion of said first magnetic path, wherein said first input coil is disposed along said first side of said closed loop; a second input coil extending around a portion of said second magnetic path wherein said second input coil is disposed along said second side of said closed loop; a first output coil extending around a portion of said first magnetic path for providing a first electrical output; a second output coil extending around a portion of said second magnetic path for providing a second electrical output; and a switching circuit driving electrical current alternately through said first and second input coils, wherein said electrical current driven through said first input coil causes said first input coil to produce a magnetic field opposing a concentration of magnetic flux from said permanent magnet within said first magnetic path, and additionally causes said second input coil to produce a magnetic field opposing a concentration of magnetic flux from said permanent magnet within said second magnetic path.

4. An electromagnetic generator comprising: a permanent magnet having magnetic poles at opposite ends; a magnetic core including first and second magnetic paths between said opposite ends of said permanent magnet; a first input coil extending around a portion of said first magnetic path, a second input coil extending around a portion of said second magnetic path, a first output coil extending around a portion of said first magnetic path for providing a first electrical output; a second output coil extending around a portion of said second magnetic path for providing a second electrical output; and a switching circuit driving electrical current alternately through said first and second input coils, wherein said electrical current driven through said first input coil causes said first input coil to produce a magnetic field opposing a concentration of magnetic flux from said permanent magnet within said first magnetic path, and wherein said electrical current driven through said second input coil causes said second input coil to produce a magnetic field opposing a concentration of magnetic flux from said permanent magnet within said second magnetic path, wherein a portion of electrical power induced in said first output coil provides power to drive said switching circuit.

5. The electromagnetic generator of claim 4, wherein said switching circuit is driven by an external power source during a starting process and by power induced in said first output coil during operation after said starting process.
6. The electromagnetic generator of claim 2, wherein said magnetic core is composed of a nanocrystalline magnetic alloy.

7. The electromagnetic generator of claim 6, wherein said nanocrystalline magnetic alloy is a cobalt-niobium-boron alloy.

8. The electromagnetic generator of claim 6, wherein said nanocrystalline magnetic alloy is an iron-based alloy.

9. The electromagnetic generator of claim 2, wherein said changes in flux density within said magnetic core occur without driving said magnetic core to magnetic saturation.

10. The electromagnetic generator of claim 2, wherein said switching circuit drives said electrical current through said first input coil in response to a first train of pulses, said switching circuit drives said electrical current through said second input coil in response to a second train of pulses, alternating with pulses within said first train of pulses, and said pulses in said first and second trains of pulses are approximately 11.5 milliseconds in duration.

11. The electromagnetic generator of claim 2, wherein said permanent magnet is composed of a material including a rare earth element.

12. The electromagnetic generator of claim 11, wherein said permanent magnet is composed essentially of samarium cobalt.

13. The electromagnetic generator of claim 11, wherein said permanent magnet is composed essentially of iron, neodymium, and boron.

14. An electromagnetic generator comprising: a magnetic core including a pair of spaced-apart plates, wherein each of said spaced-apart plates includes a central aperture, and first and second pluralities of posts extending between said spaced-apart plates; a plurality of permanent magnets extending individually between said pair of spaced-apart plates and between adjacent posts within said plurality of posts, wherein each permanent magnet within said plurality of permanent magnets has magnetic poles at opposite ends, wherein all magnets within said plurality of magnets are oriented to produce magnetic fields having a common direction; first and second pluralities of input coils, wherein each input coil within said plurality of input coils extends around a portion of a plate within said spaced-apart plates between a post in said plurality of posts and a permanent magnet in said plurality of permanent magnets; an output coil extending around each post in said first and second pluralities of posts for providing an electrical output; a switching circuit driving electrical current alternatively through said first and second pluralities of input coils, wherein said electrical current driven through each input coil in said plurality of input coils causes an increase in magnetic flux within each post within said plurality of input coils from permanent magnets on each side of said post and a decrease in magnetic flux within each post within said plurality of input coils from permanent magnets on each side of said post.

15. The electromagnetic generator of claim 14, wherein each input coil extends around a portion of a magnetic path through said magnetic core between said opposite ends a permanent magnet adjacent said input coil, said magnetic path extends through a post within said magnetic core adjacent said input coil, and driving electrical current through said input coil causes said input coil to produce a magnetic field opposing a concentration of magnetic flux within said magnetic path.

16. The electromagnetic generator of claim 14, wherein said switching circuit is driven by an external power source during a starting process and by power induced in said output coils during operation after said starting process.

17. The electromagnetic generator of claim 14, wherein said magnetic core is composed of a nanocrystalline magnetic alloy.

18. The electromagnetic generator of claim 2, wherein a portion of electrical power induced in said first output coil provides power to drive said switching circuit.

19. The electromagnetic generator of claim 18, wherein said switching circuit is driven by an external power source during a starting process and by power induced in said first output coil during operation after said starting process.
20. The electromagnetic generator of claim 3, wherein a portion of electrical power induced in said first output coil provides power to drive said switching circuit.

21. The electromagnetic generator of claim 20, wherein said switching circuit is driven by an external power source during a starting process and by power induced in said first output coil during operation after said starting process.

22. The electromagnetic generator of claim 3, wherein said magnetic core is composed of a nanocrystalline magnetic alloy.

23. The electromagnetic generator of claim 22, wherein said nanocrystalline magnetic alloy is a cobalt-niobium-boron alloy.

24. The electromagnetic generator of claim 22, wherein said nanocrystalline magnetic alloy is an iron-based alloy.

25. The electromagnetic generator of claim 3, wherein said changes in flux density within said magnetic core occur without driving said magnetic core to magnetic saturation.

26. The electromagnetic generator of claim 3, wherein said switching circuit drives said electrical current through said first input coil in response to a first train of pulses, said switching circuit drives said electrical current through said second input coil in response to a second train of pulses, alternating with pulses within said first train of pulses, and said pulses in said first and second trains of pulses are approximately 11.5 milliseconds in duration.

27. The electromagnetic generator of claim 3, wherein said permanent magnet is composed of a material including a rare earth element.

28. The electromagnetic generator of claim 27, wherein said permanent magnet is composed essentially of samarium cobalt.

29. The electromagnetic generator of claim 27, wherein said permanent magnet is composed essentially of iron, neodymium, and boron.
ABSTRACT

The Acoustic Magnetic Field Power Generator uses an acoustic signal focused into a permanent magnet to stimulate the nuclear structure of the magnet to cause the magnetic field of the permanent magnet to move or oscillate. This effect can be used to tap power from the oscillating magnetic field by putting a coil of wire in the oscillating field. When an alternating current signal generator is connected simultaneously to an acoustic transducer and a stimulating coil; whereby, both the acoustic transducer and the stimulating coil are located within the magnetic field of the magnet, the acoustic signal enhances the stimulating effect to the permanent magnet transformer. The acoustic transducer can be any acoustic generation device such as a piezoelectric, magnetostrictive, or other acoustic transducer. The combined effect of the acoustic signal and the stimulating coil increases the efficiency of permanent magnet induction transformers.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to a solid state electrical generator having no moving parts. More particularly, the invention makes use of a new method of stimulating the nuclear material of a permanent magnet so that the electronic structure of the atom will vibrate and thus cause the magnetic field of the permanent magnet to oscillate. It is a well-known fact that an oscillating magnetic field will induce electrical current in a coil as was discovered by Michael Faraday in the last century. What is new in this invention, is the discovery of the ability of an acoustic field to stimulate the nuclear structure of a material to cause the electrons to wobble under the influence of the acoustic field. If the material is magnetic or temporarily magnetised by an external magnetic field then the magnetic field will vibrate under the stimulus of the acoustic field. If this effect is combined with a coil which is simultaneously stimulating the magnet then the efficiency of stimulating the permanent magnet's field is enhanced. If a pickup coil is placed in the oscillating magnetic field so as to create an induction transformer then the combination of the acoustic and magnetic stimulation will enhance the efficiency of the induction transformer.

The most relevant prior art known to the inventor comprises U.S. Pat. No. 4,904,926 (1990) to Mario Pasichinsky, entitled Magnet Motion Electrical Generator; and U.S. Pat. No. 4,077,001 (1978) to Frank Richardson, entitled Electromagnetic Converter With Stationary Variable-Reluctance Members; and U.S. Pat. No. 4,006,401 (1977) to de Rivas, entitled Electromagnetic Generator.


The reference to Peek cited above, takes advantage of the difference in operation of piezoelectric and magnetostrictive crystals to produce a response in one when stimulated by the other. The Peek patent does not use an acoustic wave to stimulate a permanent magnet as in the present invention.

The reference to Sommers cited above, is a transducer which uses a conductive bar or tube, which supports relatively slow helicon waves, placed next to a piezoelectric or magnetostrictive crystal. The transducer is designed in such a way as to either enhance the acoustic wave or the electric wave by interaction of the two materials. The Sommers patent does not use an acoustic wave to stimulate a permanent magnet to enhance to oscillation of the magnetic field as the present invention does.

The reference to Balmuth cited above, uses mechanically resonant reeds, rods, or chambers which are coupled to transducers that are piezoelectric, magnetostrictive, or transistorised. The electrical output of the transducers stimulates an electrical circuit when the resonator receives acoustic energy and again does not use an acoustic wave to stimulate a permanent magnet to enhance to oscillation of the magnetic field as the present invention does.

The reference to Olson cited above, uses an acoustically responsive material such as a piezoelectric or a magnetostrictive to act as a delay line for microwave signals and again does not use an acoustic wave to stimulate a permanent magnet to enhance to oscillation of the magnetic field as the present invention does.

The references to Benson, Quinn, Grisdale, Scott, and Butler cited above, are all concerned with acoustic transducers which convert acoustic pressure to an electrical signal or vice versa using only the piezoelectric and/or the magnetostrictive effect. The Benson patent is an underwater acoustic transformer which converts acoustic waves hitting a transducer into an electromagnetic field which excites a transformer. The Quinn patent uses a magnetostrictive effect to stimulate piezoelectric crystals to output a high voltage which is a reverse of the Benson patent. The Grisdale patent uses mechanically stacked piezoelectric or magnetostrictive crystals to produce a more efficient mechanical gyrator. The Scott patent uses and electrical oscillator to stimulate magnetostrictive rods which put pressure on piezoelectric crystals to output a high voltage from the piezoelectric crystals. The Butler patent uses a combined effect of piezoelectric and magnetostrictive crystals to produce an enhanced acoustic energy detector.

The reference to Thompson cited above, uses a permanent magnetic transducer to induce eddy currents in metal which is in the field of the transducer or uses moving eddy currents in a piece of metal to stimulate a magnetic field. The induction of the eddy currents is the result of an oscillating magnetic field generated in the transducer.

None of the references cited above, use an acoustic wave to stimulate the atoms of a permanent magnet and hence are not related to this invention.

**SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION**

An object of this invention is to provide a power generator with no moving parts.

Another object of this invention is to use an acoustic field to stimulate the nuclear level of the magnetic material and provide a method of oscillating the magnetic field of permanent magnets.

Another object of this invention is to provide a simple method of generating electrical energy by including a piezoelectric transducer which is used to vibrate the magnetic field of a permanent magnet. When the nucleus of the atom is vibrated by the piezoelectric, it in turn, vibrates the electronic structure of all the atoms. Since the electronic structure is the basis of the magnetic field of the magnet then the entire magnetic field of the magnet is vibrated when the electronic structure is vibrated. Coils placed in the vibrating magnetic field will have voltage and current induced in them.

It is a well established fact, that when the magnetic field of a permanent magnet is vibrated, it is possible to generate an alternating current in a coil winding placed within the vibrating magnetic field. What is unique about this invention, is to increase the efficiency of permanent magnet transformers by using acoustic stimulation from piezoelectrics to further stimulate the permanent magnet so as to add to the inductive effects of permanent magnet transformers. This invention does this by stimulating the permanent magnet cores of permanent magnet transformers with an acoustic field generated by a piezoelectric or other acoustically active generator which is vibrated at the same frequency as the electrical induction of the permanent magnet transformers.
BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

Fig. 1 illustrates a frequency signal generator attached to and driving a piezoelectric transducer which is in the acoustic proximity of a bar type of permanent magnet with an output coil placed within the magnetic field of the permanent magnet.

![Fig. 1](image)

Fig. 2 illustrates a frequency signal generator attached to and driving a piezoelectric transducer which is in the acoustic proximity of a torroidal type of permanent magnet with an output coil wrapped around the torroidal permanent magnet.

![Fig. 2](image)

Fig. 3 illustrates a frequency signal generator attached to and driving a piezoelectric transducer which is in the acoustic proximity of a torroidal type of permanent magnet transformer and the signal generator is also driving the input coil of the torroidal permanent magnet transformer.

![Fig. 3](image)

Fig. 4 illustrates a frequency signal generator attached to and driving two torroidal core permanent magnet transformers as well as an acoustic transducer that is in acoustic proximity of the torroidal cores.

![Fig. 4](image)
FIG. 4.
DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

In Fig. 1, a frequency signal generator 6 is connected to a piezoelectric transducer 1 via wires 4 and 5 connected to the electrode surfaces of the piezoelectric transducer 2 and 3 respectively. The piezoelectric transducer 1 is made from a high dielectric material such as barium titanate or lead zirconate titanate or any other acoustic transducer material suitable for sonic and ultrasonic generators. The piezoelectric transducer 1 is placed in close proximity to the permanent magnet 7 such that the acoustic field of the piezoelectric transducer 1 can radiate into the permanent magnet material. A permanent magnet transformer shown as coil 8 is positioned in the magnetic field of the permanent magnet 7. When the piezoelectric transducer 1 is stimulated by the frequency generator 6 then a voltage and current is generated between the output leads 9 and 10 of the permanent magnet transformer.

Another embodiment of this invention is shown in Fig. 2, which is similar to Fig. 1, with a similar frequency signal generator 6 connected to a piezoelectric material 1 via wires 4 and 5 connected to the electrode surfaces of the piezoelectric transducer 2 and 3. The piezoelectric transducer 1 is as defined above, that is to say that it is constructed from a material suitable for sonic and ultrasonic generators. The piezoelectric transducer 1 is placed in close proximity to the permanent magnet 11 so that the acoustic field of the piezoelectric transducer 1 can radiate into the permanent magnet material. A permanent magnet transformer shown as coil 12 is placed in the magnetic field of the permanent magnet 11. When the piezoelectric transducer 1 is stimulated by the frequency generator 6 then a voltage and current is generated between the output leads 13 and 14 of the above defined magnetic transformer.

Fig. 3 is similar to Fig. 1 and Fig. 2 with a frequency signal generator 6 connected to a piezoelectric transducer 1 via wires 4 and 5 connected to the electrode surfaces 2 and 3 of the piezoelectric transducer. The piezoelectric transducer 1 is as defined in the descriptions above. The signal generator 6 is also connected to the input coil 20.
of the permanent magnet transformer defined by the torroidal permanent magnet core 11, input coil 20 and output coil 19. The piezoelectric transducer 1 is placed in close proximity to the permanent magnet 11 so that the acoustic field of the piezoelectric transducer 1 can radiate into the permanent magnet material. The magnetic transformer defined by 11, 19, and 20 is in the magnetic field of the permanent magnet 11 and is connected to the frequency signal generator 6 via wires 15 and 16. The frequency generator 6 stimulates the piezoelectric transducer 1 which stimulates the permanent magnet transformer via the acoustic field and at the same time the signal generator also stimulates the coil electromagnetically. A voltage and current is generated at the output coil 19 and power can be taken from the output wires 17 and 18 of the magnetic transformer.

A further embodiment of this invention, shown in Fig.4, is a frequency signal generator 6 driving a pair of permanent magnet transformers defined by 26, 35, 27 and 25, 36, 28 respectively, also driving a piezoelectric transducer 1. The piezoelectric transducer is as described above. The signal generator is connected via input wires 23 and 24 to the input coil 26 of the permanent magnet transformer on the left and to the input coil 25 of the transformer on the right respectively. The other input wire 38 of the left permanent magnet transformer is connected to the remaining input wire 39 of the right magnetic transformer. The output of the signal generator in also connected to the piezoelectric transducer 1 via connections 21 and 22 to the connector surface of the piezoelectric 33 and 34 respectively. The output of the permanent magnet transformer on the left is connected to a load 40 via wire 30 and the output of the permanent magnet transformer on the right is connected to the load via wire 29. The remaining output wires 31 and 32 of the left and right permanent magnet transformers are also connected to the load. The load 40 can be anything such as a motor or electrical lights or any appliance.

This invention is not limited to the 4 different versions of the invention shown in Figs. 1, 2, 3, and 4 as there are any number of cascading and electrical hook-up techniques that can be accomplished to amplify power and to take advantage of the acoustic influence of the piezoelectric upon the magnetic material. Similarly, this invention is not limited to the torroidal core configuration as there can be many types of permanent magnet transformers with any number of magnetic core and coil configurations that can be enhanced with acoustic stimulation depending on power and output requirements according to the rules of electronics and those familiar with the state of the art in permanent magnet power transformers.

CLAIMS
1. An acoustic magnetic power generator composed of an alternating current signal generator connected to an acoustic transducer which stimulates the core of a permanent magnet such that the atoms of the magnet are caused to vibrate which in turn causes the magnetic field to vibrate and causes a current and voltage to be generated in an output coil wrapped around a permanent magnet or in the magnetic field of the permanent magnet which said current and voltage can be used for powering a load.

2. An acoustic magnetic power generator composed of an alternating signal generator connected to an acoustic transducer which stimulates the core of a permanent magnet and causes the core to vibrate; the signal generator further connected to a drive coil surrounding the permanent magnet, and an output coil within the field of the permanent magnet which by induction generates an electrical output.

3. A method of causing the magnetic field of permanent magnet transformers to oscillate by the application of an acoustic signal applied to the atomic structure of permanent magnet.

4. A method of maximising the efficiency of permanent magnet transformers by stimulating the core material of the permanent magnet transformers with both an acoustic vibration and an electromagnetic signal simultaneously.
Please note that this is a re-worded excerpt from this patent. It describes a self-contained device which can charge an external battery or battery bank.

ABSTRACT

A back EMF monopole motor and method using a rotor containing magnets all of the same polarity and in a monopole condition when in momentary apposition with a magnetised pole piece of a stator having the same polarity, the stator being comprised of a coil with three windings: a power-coil winding, a trigger-coil winding, and a recovery-coil winding. The back EMF energy is rectified using a high voltage bridge, which transfers the back EMF energy to a high voltage capacitor for storage in a recovery battery. The stored energy can then be discharged across the recovery battery through the means of a contact rotor switch for further storage.

DESCRIPTION

Technical Field:
The invention relates generally to the capturing of available electromagnetic energy using a device and method for creating an electromagnetic force (‘EMF’) and then using the available stored energy for recycling into the system as stored energy. The method of creating back EMF is the result of coupling/uncoupling a coil to a voltage source.

Background:
The operation of present day normal magnetic motors, has the rotor pole attracting the stator pole, resulting in the generation of mechanical power from the magnets to the rotor and flywheel. During this phase, energy flows from the magnetics to the rotor/flywheel and is stored as kinetic energy in the increased rotation. A rotor pole leaving a stator pole and creating a condition of “drag” results in power having to be put back into the magnetic section by the rotor and flywheel to forcibly overcome the drag. In a perfect, friction-free motor, the net force field is therefore referred to as “most conservative”. A most conservative EMF motor has maximum efficiency. Without extra energy continually fed to the motor, no net work can be done by the magnetic field, since half the time the magnetic field adds energy to the load (the rotor and flywheel) and the other half of the time it subtracts energy from the load (the rotor and flywheel). Therefore, the total net energy output is zero in any such rotary process without additional energy input. To use a present day magnetic motor, continuous energy must be fed to the motor to overcome drag and to power the motor and its load.

Motors and generators presently in use, all use such conservative fields and therefore, have internal losses. Hence, it is necessary to continually input all of the energy that the motor outputs to the load, plus more energy to cover losses inside the motor itself. EMF motors are rated for efficiency and performance by how much energy "input" into the motor actually results in "output" energy to the load. Normally, the Coefficient of Performance (‘COP’) rating is used as a measure of efficiency. The COP is the actual output energy going into the load and powering it, divided by the energy that must be input into the device with its motor/load combination. If there were zero internal losses in a motor, that "perfect" motor would have a COP equal to 1.0. That is, all energy input into the motor would be output by the motor directly into the load, and none of the input energy would be lost or dissipated in the motor itself.

In magnetic motor generators presently in use, however, due to friction and design flaws, there are always internal losses and inefficiencies. Some of the energy input into the motor is dissipated in these internal losses. As a consequence, the energy that gets to the load is always less than the input energy. So a standard motor operates with a COP of less than 1.0, which is expressed as COP<1.0. An inefficient motor may have a COP of 0.4 or 0.45, while a specially designed and highly efficient motor may have a COP of 0.85.

The conservative field inside of a motor itself is divided into two phases. Producing a conservative field involves net symmetry between the "power out" phase from the magnetics to the rotor/flywheel and the "power back in" phase from the rotor/flywheel back to the magnetics. That is, the two flows of energy are identical in magnitude but opposite in direction. Each phase alone is said to be "asymmetrical", that is, it either has: 1) a net energy flow out to the rotor/flywheel; or 2) a net energy flow back into the magnetics from the rotor/flywheel. In simplified terms, it is referred to as "power out" and "power back in" phases with respect to the motor magnetics.
For the power-out phase, energy is derived from the EMF existing between the stator pole and incoming rotor pole in an attraction mode. In this phase, the rotary motion (angular momentum and kinetic energy) of the rotor and flywheel is increased. In short, power is added to the rotor/flywheel (and thus to the load) from the fields between stator pole and rotor pole (the electromagnetic aspects of the system).

For the "power back in" phase, energy must be fed back into the magnetics from the rotor and flywheel (and the load) to overcome the drag forces existing between stator pole and outgoing rotor pole. In this phase, energy is returned to the internal magnetic system from the rotary motion of the rotor and flywheel (the angular momentum, which is the rotational energy multiplied by time). As is well known in physics, a rotor/flywheel's angular momentum provides a convenient way to store energy with the spinning rotor/flywheel mass acting as an energy reservoir.

Most present day conventional magnetic motors use various methods for overcoming and partially reversing back EMF. Back EMF may be defined as the return pulse from the coil out of phase and is the result of re-gauging, which is the process of reversing the magnetics polarity, that is, form North to South, etc. The back EMF is shorted out and the rotor is attracted back in, therefore eliminating drag. This can be accomplished by pouring more energy in, which overpowers the back EMF, thereby producing a forward EMF in that region. The energy required for this method is furnished by the operator.

It is well known that changing the voltage alone creates a back EMF and requires no work. This is because to change the potential energy does not require changing the form of that potential energy, but only its magnitude. Work is the changing of the form of energy. Therefore, as long as the form of the potential energy is not changed, the magnitude can be changed without having to perform work in the process. The motor of the present invention takes advantage of this permissible operation to create back EMF asymmetrically, and thereby change its own usable available potential energy.

In an electric power system, the potential (voltage) is changed by inputting energy to do work on the internal charges of the generator or battery. This potential energy is expended within the generator (or battery) to force the internal charges apart, forming a source dipole. Then the external closed circuit system connected to that source dipole ineptly pumps the spent electrons in the ground line back through the back EMF of the source dipole, thereby scattering the charges and killing the dipole. This shuts off the energy flow from the source dipole to the external circuit. As a consequence of this conventional method, it is a requirement to input and replace additional energy to again restore the dipole. The circuits currently utilised in most electrical generators have been designed to keep on destroying the energy flow by continually scattering all of the dipole charges and terminating the dipole. Therefore, it is necessary to keep on inputting energy to the generator to keep restoring its source dipole.

A search of prior art failed to reveal any monopole motor devices and methods that recycle available energy from back EMF to charge a battery or provide electrical energy for other uses as described in the present invention. However, the following prior art patents were reviewed:
U.S. Pat. No. 4,055,789 to Lasater, Battery Operated Motor with Back EMF Charging.
U.S. Pat. No. 2,279,690 to Z. T. Lindsey, Combination Motor Generator.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

An aspect of the device and method of the present invention is a new monopole electromagnetic motor that captures back EMF energy. The captured back EMF energy may be used to charge or store electrical energy in a recovery battery. The amount of energy recoverable, as expressed in watts, is dependent upon the configuration, circuitry, switching elements and the number and size of stators, rotors, magnets and coils which comprise the motor.

The motor uses a small amount of energy from a primary battery to "trigger" a larger input of available energy by supplying back EMF, thus increasing the potential energy of the system. The system then utilises this available potential energy to reduce, or reverse, the back EMF, thereby increasing the efficiency of the motor and, therefore, the COP.

If the energy in phase 1 (the power-out phase) is increased by additional available energy in the electromagnetics themselves, then the energy in phase 1 can be made greater than the energy in phase 2 (the power-back-in phase) without the operator furnishing the energy utilised. This produces a non-conservative nett field. Nett power can then be taken from the rotating stator and flywheel, because the available energy added into the stator and flywheel by the additional effects, is transformed by the rotor/flywheel into excess angular momentum and stored as such. Angular momentum is conserved at all times, but now, some of the angular momentum added to the flywheel, is evoked by additional effects in the electromagnetics, rather than being furnished by the operator.
That is, the motor is designed to deliberately create a back EMF itself, and thus increase its potential energy, thereby retaining each extra force for a period of time and applying it to increase the angular momentum and kinetic energy of the rotor and flywheel. Specifically, this back EMF energy with its nett force is deliberately applied in the motor of the present invention to overcome and even reverse the conventional drag-back (the back EMF). Hence, less energy needs to be taken from the rotor and flywheel to overcome the reduced back EMF, and in the ideal case, none is required since the back EMF has been overpowered and converted to forward EMF by the back EMF energy and force. In the motor, the conventional drag section of the magnetics becomes a forward-EMF section and now adds energy to the rotor/flywheel instead of reducing it. The important feature is that the operator only pays for the small amount of energy necessary to trigger the back EMF from the primary battery, and does not have to furnish the much larger back EMF energy itself.

Thus, when the desired energy in phase 1 (the power-out phase) is made greater than the undesired drag energy in phase 2, then part of the output power normally taken from the rotor and flywheel by the fields in phase 2, is not required. Hence, in comparison to a system without special back EMF mechanisms, additional power is available from the rotor/flywheel. The rotor therefore maintains additional angular momentum and kinetic energy, compared to a system which does not produce back EMF itself. Consequently, the excess angular momentum retained by the rotor and flywheel can be utilised as additional shaft power to power an external load.

In this motor, several known processes and methods are utilised. These allow the motor to operate periodically as an open dissipative system (receiving available excess energy from back EMF) far from thermodynamic equilibrium, whereby it produces and receives its excess energy from a known external source.

A method is utilised to temporarily produce a much larger source of available external energy around an energised coil. Design features of this new motor provide a device and method that can immediately produce a second increase in that energy concurrently as the energy flow is reversed. Therefore, the motor is capable of producing two asymmetrical back EMFs, one after the other, of the energy within a single coil, which dramatically increases the energy available and causes that available excess energy to then enter the circuit as impulses which are collected and utilised.

The motor utilises this available excess back EMF energy to overcome and even reverse the drag EMF between stator pole and rotor pole, while furnishing only a small trigger pulse of energy from a primary battery necessary to control and activate the direction of the back EMF energy flow.

By using a number of such dual asymmetrical self back EMFs for every revolution of the rotor, the rotor and flywheel collectively focus all the excess impulsive inputs into increased angular momentum (expressed as energy multiplied by time), shaft torque, and shaft power.

Further, some of the excess energy deliberately generated in the coil by the utilisation of the dual process manifests in the form of excess electrical energy in the circuit and can be utilised to charge a recovery battery or batteries. The excess energy can also be used to power electrical loads or to power the rotor and flywheel, with the rotor/flywheel also furnishing shaft horsepower for powering mechanical loads.

The motor utilises a means to furnish the relatively small amount of energy from a primary battery to initiate the impulsive asymmetrical self back EMF actions. Then part of the available excess electrical power drawn off from back EMF created energy is utilised to charge a recovery battery with dramatically increased over-voltage pulses.

Design features of this monopole motor utilise one magnetic pole of each rotor and stator magnet. The number of impulsive self-back EMF in a single rotation of the rotor is doubled. Advanced designs can increase the number of self-back EMFs in a single rotor rotation with the result that there is an increase in the number of impulses per rotation, which increase the power output of this new motor.

The sharp voltage spike produced in the coil of this monopole motor by the rapidly collapsing field in the back EMF coil is connected to a recovery battery(s) in charge mode and to an external electrical load. The nett result is that the coil asymmetrically creates back EMF itself in a manner which adds available energy and impulse to the circuit. The available energy collected in the coil is used to reverse the back-EMF phase of the stator-rotor fields to a forward EMF condition, with the impulses adding acceleration and angular momentum to the rotor and flywheel. The available back EMF energy collected in the coil is used to charge a battery. Loads can then be driven by the battery.

A device and method in which the monopole motor alters the reaction cross section of the coils in the circuit, which briefly changes the reaction cross section of the coil in which it is invoked. Thus, since this new motor uses only a small amount of current in the form of a triggering pulse, it is able to evoke and control the immediate change of the coil's reaction cross section to this normally wasted energy-flow component. As a result, the motor captures and directs some of this usually wasted available environmental energy, collecting the available excess energy in the coil and then releasing it for use in the motor. Through timing and switching, the innovative gate
design of this new motor directs the available excess energy so that it overcomes and reverses the return EMF of the rotor-stator pole combination during what would normally be the back EMF and demonstrates the creation of the second back EMF of the system. Now, instead of an "equal retardation" force being produced in the back EMF region, a forward EMF is produced which adds to the rotor/flywheel energy, rather than subtracting from it. In short, it further accelerates the rotor/flywheel.

This results in a non-conservative magnetic field along the rotor's path. The line integral of the field around that path (i.e., the net work on the rotor/flywheel to increase its energy and angular momentum) is not zero but a significant amount. Hence, the creation of an asymmetrical back EMF impulse magnetic motor:
1) Takes its available excess energy from a known external source, the huge usually non-intercepted portion of the energy flow around the coil;
2) Further increases the source dipolarity by this back EMF energy; and
3) Produces available excess energy flow directly from the source dipole's increased broken symmetry in its fierce energy exchange with the local vacuum.

By operating as an open dissipative system, not in thermodynamic equilibrium with the active vacuum, the system can permissibly receive available energy from a known environmental source and then output this energy to a load. As an open dissipative system not in thermodynamic equilibrium, this new and unique monopole motor can tap in on back EMF to energise itself, loads and losses simultaneously, fully complying with known laws of physics and thermodynamics.

**BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS**

**Fig.1** is a perspective side view of a monopole back EMF motor with a single stator and a single rotor.

![Fig. 1](image)

**Fig.2** is a perspective top view of a monopole back EMF motor with a single stator and a single rotor.
DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

An embodiment of the present invention is a device and method for a monopole back EMF electromagnetic motor. As described in the Summary of the Invention, this monopole motor conforms to all applicable electrodynamic laws of physics and is in harmony with the law of the conservation of energy, the laws of electromagnetism and other related natural laws of physics.

The monopole back EMF electromagnetic motor comprises a combination of elements and circuitry to capture available energy (back EMF) in a recovery element, such as a capacitor, from output coils. The available stored energy in the recovery element is used to charge a recovery battery.

As a starting point, an arbitrary method in describing this device will be employed, namely, the flow of electrical energy and mechanical forces will be tracked from the energy’s inception at the primary battery to its final storage in the recovery battery.
Fig. 1 is a perspective side view of the monopole motor according to an embodiment of the invention. As shown in Fig. 1, electrical energy from primary battery 11 periodically flows through power switch 12 and through power-coil wiring 13a. In one embodiment, power switch 12 is merely an On-Off mechanical switch and is not electronic. However, the switch 12 may be a solid-state switching circuit, a magnetic Reed switch, a commutator, an optical switch, a Hall-effect switch, or any other conventional transistorised or mechanical switch. Coil 13 is comprised of three windings: power-coil winding 13a, trigger-coil winding 13b, and recovery-coil winding 13c. However, the number of windings can be more or fewer than three, depending upon the size of the coil 13, size of the motor and the amount of available energy to be captured, stored and used, as measured in watts. Electrical energy then periodically flows from power-coil winding 13a and through transistor 14.

Trigger energy also periodically flows through variable resistor 15 and resistor 16. Clamping diode 17 clamps the reverse base-emitter voltage of transistor switch 14 at a safe reverse-bias level that does not damage the transistor. Energy flows to stator 18a and pole piece 18b, an extension of stator 18a. Pole piece 18b is electrically magnetised only when transistor switch 14 is on and maintains the same polarity as the rotor poles 19 - North pole in this instance - when electrically magnetised. The North rotor poles 19a, 19b and 19c, which are attached to rotor 20, come in momentary apposition with magnetised pole piece 18b creating a momentary monopole interface. The poles 19a,b,c, which are actually permanent magnets with their North poles facing outward from the rotor 20, maintain the same polarity when in momentary alignment with pole piece 18b.

Rotor 20 is attached to rotor shaft 21, which has drive pulley 22. Attached to rotor shaft 21 are rotor-shaft bearing blocks 31a and 31b, as seen in Fig. 2. As rotor 20 begins to rotate, the poles 19a,b,c respectively comes into alignment with magnetised pole piece 18b in a momentary monopole interface with energy flowing through diode bridge rectifier 23 and capacitor 24. The number of capacitors may be of a wide range, depending upon the amount of energy to be temporarily stored before being expelled or flash charged into recovery battery 29. Timing belt 25 connects drive pulley 22 on timing shaft 21 to timing wheel 26. Attached to timing wheel 26 is contact rotor 27, a copper insulated switch that upon rotation, comes in contact with brushes on mechanical switch 28. The means for counting the number of rotor revolutions may be a timing gear or a timing belt. Finally, the available energy derived from the back EMF that is stored in capacitor 24 is then discharged and stored in recovery battery 29.
Fig. 2 is a mechanical perspective top view of the monopole motor of the instant invention without electrical circuitry. Stator 18a consists of coil 13, which is comprised of three separate coil windings: power-coil winding 13a, trigger-coil winding 13b and recovery-coil winding 13c. Pole piece 18b is at the end of stator 18a. As rotor 20, (which is attached to rotor shaft 21) rotates, each pole 19 respectively comes in a momentary monopole interface with pole piece 18b. The polarity of pole piece 18b is constant when electrically magnetised. Rotor shaft 21 has rotor shaft bearing blocks 31a,b attached to it for stabilisation of rotor shaft 21. Attached to rotor shaft 21 is drive pulley 22 with timing belt 25 engaged with it. Another means for timing may be a timing gear. Timing belt 25 engages with timing wheel 26 at its other end. Timing wheel 26 is attached to timing shaft 30. Shaft 30 is stabilised with timing shaft bearing blocks 32a,b. Attached to one end of timing shaft 30 is contact rotor 27 with brush 28a, which, upon rotation of the timing shaft, comes into momentary contact with brushes 28b,c.

Fig. 3 is a block diagram detailing the circuitry of the monopole motor. Block 40 represents primary battery 11 with energy flowing to coil block 41, which represents coil windings 13a,b,c. From coil block 41 energy flows into three directions: to trigger-circuit block 42, transistor-circuit block 43, and rectifier-circuit block 44. Energy flows from rectifier-block 44 to storage-capacitor block 45 with energy flowing from block 45 to both recovery-battery block 46 and rotor-switch block 47.

Referring to Fig. 1, the operation of the motor is described according to an embodiment of the invention. For purpose of explanation, assume that the rotor 20 is initially not moving, and one of the poles 19 is in the three o’clock position.
First, the switch 12 is closed. Because the transistor 14 is off, no current flows through the winding 13a.

Next, the motor is started by rotating the rotor 20, say, in a clockwise direction. The rotor may be rotated by hand, or by a conventional motor-starting device or circuit (not shown).

As the rotor 20 rotates, the pole 19 moves from the three o’clock position towards the pole piece 18b and generates a magnetic flux in the windings 13a, 13b and 13c. More specifically, the stator 18a and the pole piece 18b include a ferromagnetic material such as iron. Therefore, as the pole 19 moves nearer to the pole piece 18b, it magnetises the pole piece 18b to a polarity - South in this instance - that is opposite to the polarity of the pole 19 (which is North). This magnetisation of the pole piece 18b generates a magnetic flux in the windings 13a-13c. Furthermore, this magnetisation also causes a magnetic attraction between the pole 19 and the pole piece 18b. This attraction pulls the pole 19 toward the pole piece 18b, and thus reinforces the rotation of the rotor 20.

The magnetic flux in the windings 13a-13c generates voltages across their respective windings. More specifically, as the pole 19 rotates toward the pole piece 18b, the magnetisation of the stator 18a and the pole piece 18b, and thus the magnetic flux in the windings 13a-13c, increases. This increasing flux generates voltages across the windings 13a-13c such that the dotted (top) end of each winding is more positive than the opposite end. These voltages are proportional to the rate at which the magnetic flux is increasing, and so, they are proportional to the velocity of the pole 19.

At some point, the voltage across the winding 13b becomes high enough to turn the transistor 14c on. This turn-on, i.e., trigger, voltage depends on the combined serial resistance of the potentiometer 15 and the resistor 16. The higher this combined resistance, the higher the trigger voltage, and vice-versa. Therefore, one can set the level of the trigger voltage by adjusting the potentiometer 15.

In addition, depending on the level of voltage across the capacitor 24, the voltage across the winding 13c may be high enough to cause an energy recovery current to flow through the winding 13c, the rectifier 23, and the capacitor 24. Thus, when the recovery current flows, the winding 13c is converting magnetic energy from the rotating pole 19 into electrical energy, which is stored in the capacitor 24.

Once turned on, the transistor 14 generates an opposing magnetic flux in the windings 13a-13c. More specifically, the transistor 14 draws a current from the battery 11, through the switch 12 and the winding 13b. This current increases and generates an increasing magnetic flux that opposes the flux generated by the rotating pole 19.

When the opposing magnetic flux exceeds the flux generated by the rotating pole 19, the opposing flux reinforces the rotation of the rotor 20. Specifically, when the opposing flux (which is generated by the increasing current
through winding 13a) exceeds the flux generated by the pole 19, the magnetisation of the pole piece 18 inverts to North pole. Therefore, the reverse-magnetic pole piece 18 repels the pole 19, and thus imparts a rotating force to the rotor 20. The pole piece 18 rotates the rotor 20 with maximum efficiency if the pole-piece magnetisation inverts to North when the centre of the pole 19 is aligned with the centre of the pole piece. Typically, the potentiometer 15 is adjusted to set the trigger voltage of the transistor 14 at a level which attains or approximates to this maximum efficiency.

The transistor 14 then turns off before the opposing flux can work against the rotation of the rotor 20. Specifically, if the pole piece 18 remains magnetised to North pole, it will repel the next pole 19 in a direction (counterclockwise in this example) opposite to the rotational direction of the rotor 20. Therefore, the motor turns transistor 14 off, and thus demagnetises the pole piece 18, before this undesirable repulsion occurs. More specifically, when the opposing flux exceeds the flux generated by the pole 19, the voltage across the winding 13b reverses polarity such that the dotted end is less positive than the opposite end. The voltage across the winding 13b decreases as the opposing flux increases. At some point, the voltage at the base of the transistor decreases to a level that turns transistor 14 off. This turn-off point depends on the combined resistance of the potentiometer 15 and resistor 16 and the capacitance (not shown) at the transistor base. Therefore, potentiometer 15 can be adjusted, or other conventional techniques can be used to adjust the timing of this turn-off point.

The rectifier 23 and capacitor 24 recapture the energy that is released by the magnetic field (which energy would otherwise be lost) when the transistor 14 turns off. Specifically, turning transistor 14 off abruptly, cuts off the current flowing through winding 13a. This generates voltage spikes across the windings 13a-13c where the dotted ends are less positive than their respective opposite ends. These voltage spikes represent the energy released as the current-induced magnetisation of stator 18a and pole piece 18b collapses, and may have a magnitude of several hundred volts. But, as the voltage spike across the winding 13c increases above the sum of the two diode drops of the rectifier 23, it causes an energy-recovery current to flow through the rectifier 23 and the voltage across the capacitor 24 charge the capacitor 24. Thus, a significant portion of the energy released upon collapse of the current-induced magnetic field is recaptured and stored as a voltage in the capacitor 24. In addition, the diode 17 prevents damage to the transistor 14 by clamping the reverse base-emitter voltage caused by the voltage spike across the winding 13b.

The recaptured energy can be used in a number of ways. For example, the energy can be used to charge a battery 29. In one embodiment, the timing wheel 26 makes two revolutions for each revolution of the rotor 20. The contact rotor 27 closes a switch 28, and thus dumps the charge on the capacitor 24 into the battery 29, once each revolution of the wheel 26. Other energy-recapture devices and techniques may also be used. Rotor 20 may be stopped, either by applying a brake to it or by opening the switch 12.

Other embodiments of the monopole motor are contemplated. For example, instead of remaining closed for the entire operation of the motor, the switch 12 may be a conventional optical switch or a Hall-effect switch that opens and closes automatically at the appropriate times. To increase the power of the motor, the number of stators 18a and pole pieces 18b, may be increased and/or the number of poles 19. Furthermore, one can magnetise the stator 18a and pole piece 18b during the attraction of the pole 19 instead of or in addition to magnetising the stator and pole piece during the repulsion of the pole 19.

Moreover, the stator 18a may be omitted so that coil 13 becomes an air coil, or the stator 18a and the pole piece 18b may compose a permanent magnet. In addition, although the transistor 14 is described as being a bipolar transistor, a MOSFET transistor may also be used. Furthermore, the recaptured energy may be used to recharge the battery 11. In addition, although described as rotating in a clockwise direction, the rotor 20 can rotate in a counterclockwise direction. Moreover, although described as attracting a rotor pole 19 when no current flows through winding 13a and repelling the pole 19 when a current flows through winding 13a, the pole piece 18b may be constructed so that it attracts the pole 19 when a current flows through winding 13a and repels the pole 19 when no current flows through winding 13a.

In multiple stator/rotor systems, each individual stator may be energised one at a time or all of the stators may be energised simultaneously. Any number of stators and rotors may be incorporated into the design of such multiple stator/rotor monopole motor combinations. However, while there may be several stators per rotor, there can only be one rotor for a single stator. The number of stators and rotors that would comprise a particular motor is dependent upon the amount of power required in the form of watts. Any number of magnets, used in a monopole fashion, may comprise a single rotor. The number of magnets incorporated into a particular rotor is dependent upon the size of the rotor and power required of the motor. The desired size and horse power of the motor determines whether the stators will be in parallel or fired sequentially. Energy is made accessible through the capturing of available energy from the back EMF as a result of the unique circuitry and timing of the monopole motor. Individual motors may be connected in sequence with each motor having various combinations of stators and rotors or they may be connected in parallel. Each rotor may have any number of rotor magnets, all arranged without change of polarity. The number of stators for an individual motor may also be of a wide range.
One feature that distinguishes this motor from all others, is the use of monopole magnets in momentary apposition with the pole piece of the stator maintaining the same polarity when magnetised. In this particular embodiment, there are three magnets and one pole piece, the pole piece being an extension of a permanent-magnet stator. Finally, although the invention has been described with reference of particular means, materials and embodiments, it is to be understood that the invention is not limited to the particulars disclosed and extends to all equivalents within the scope of the claims.

CLAIMS

1. A back EMF monopole motor utilising a rotor wherein the magnets maintain a polarity when in apposition with a stator pole piece having the polarity, said motor to capture available back EMF energy for charging and storage in a recovery device, the motor comprising:
   a. A means for producing initial energy;
   b. A means for capturing energy in the form of back EMF, caused by a collapsing field in a coil comprised of multiple windings with a pole piece at one end of the stator of the coil, the pole piece having the correct polarity when magnetised and in aligned with the magnets of the rotor;
   c. A means for rectifying the back EMF energy, comprising of a voltage bridge for transferring the back EMF energy to a capacitor for storage;
   d. A means for discharging the stored voltage across a recovery battery; and
   e. A means for counting the revolutions of the rotor.

2. The back EMF monopole motor of Claim 1, where a battery is used to provide the initial energy.

3. The back EMF monopole motor of claim 1, where the rotor revolutions are counted by a timing gear.

4. The back EMF monopole motor of claim 1, where the rotor revolutions are counted by a timing belt.

5. The back EMF monopole motor of claim 1, where the means for discharging collected energy comprises a rotating switching commutator which discharges the collected energy into a recovery battery, the commutator switch having the same polarity as the recovery battery.

6. A back EMF monopole motor utilising a rotor in which the rotor magnets maintain a polarity when aligned with a magnetised stator pole piece, suited to capturing available back EMF energy for charging and storage in a recovery device, the motor comprising:
   a. A primary input battery and a means for switching the battery, namely, either a solid-state switching circuitry, a magnetic Reed switch, a commutator, an optical switch, or a Hall-effect switch;
   b. A means for capturing energy in the form of back EMF, created by a collapsing field in a coil comprised of multiple windings and a pole piece at one end of the stator coil;
   c. A means for rectifying the back EMF energy comprising a voltage bridge for transferring the energy to a capacitor for storage;
   d. A means for discharging the stored voltage across a recovery battery, the means being a rotating contact rotor switch;
   e. A means for counting the revolutions of the rotor via a timing gear or timing belt;
   f. A rotating switching commutator for switching the rotating contact rotor switch.
ABSTRACT
This invention is a back EMF permanent electromagnetic motor generator and method using a regauging process for capturing available electromagnetic energy in the system. The device comprises a rotor with magnets of the same polarity; a timing wheel in apposition to a magnetic Hall-effect pickup switch semiconductor; and a stator comprised of two bars connected by a permanent magnet with magnetised pole pieces at one end of each bar. There are input and output coils created by wrapping each bar with a conducting material such as copper wire. Energy from the output coils is transferred to a recovery rectifier or diode. The magnets of the rotor, which is located on a shaft along with the timing wheel, are in apposition to the magnetised pole pieces of the two bars. The invention works through a process of regauging, that is, the flux fields created by the coils is collapsed because of a reversal of the magnetic field in the magnetised pole pieces thus allowing the capture of available back EMF energy. Additional available energy may be captured and used to re-energise the battery, and/or sent in another direction to be used for work. As an alternative, the available back EMF energy may be dissipated into the system.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

1. Field of the Invention
The invention relates generally to the capturing of electromagnetic energy using a method and device to create back EMF (electromagnetic force) and re-phasing of the back EMF to recycle and capture the available back EMF energy. Back EMF is also referred to as regauging and may be defined as energy created by the magnetic field from coils, and only from coils, and not from magnets.

2. Background Information and Related Art
Operation of a normal magnetic motor has the rotor pole attracting the stator pole, resulting in the generation of power from the magnets to the rotor and flywheel. During this phase, energy flows from the magnetics to the rotor/flywheel and is stored in the increased rotation. A rotor pole leaving a stator pole and creating a condition of drag-back results in power having to be put back into the magnetic section by the rotor and flywheel to forcibly overcome the drag-back. In a perfect, friction-free motor, the nett force field is therefore referred to as most conservative. In other words, a most conservative EMF motor has maximum efficiency. Without extra energy continually fed to the motor, no nett work can be done by the magnetic field, since half the time the magnetic field adds energy to the load (the rotor and flywheel) and the other half of the time it subtracts energy from the load (the rotor and flywheel). Therefore the total nett energy output is zero in any such rotary process without additional energy input. To use a present day magnetic motor, continuous energy must be fed to the motor to overcome drag-back and to power the motor and its load.

Present EMF motors and generators all use such conservative fields and therefore, have internal losses. Hence, it is necessary to continually input all of the energy that the motor outputs to the load, plus more energy to cover losses inside the motor itself. EMF motors are rated for efficiency and performance by how much energy input into the motor actually results in output energy to the load. Normally, the Coefficient of Performance (COP) rating is used as a measure of efficiency. The COP is the actual output energy going into the load and powering it, divided by the energy that must be input into the device with its load. COP is the power out into the load, divided by the power input into the motor/load combination. If there were zero internal losses in a motor, that "perfect" motor would have a coefficient of performance (COP) equal to 1.0. That is, all energy fed into the motor would be output by the motor directly into the load, and none of the input energy would be lost or dissipated in the motor itself.

In magnetic motor generators presently in use, however, due to friction and design flaws, there are always internal losses and inefficiencies. Some of the energy input into the motor is dissipated in these internal losses. As a consequence, the energy that gets to the load is always less than the input energy. So a standard motor operates with a COP of less than 1.0 which is expressed as COP<1.0. An inefficient motor may have a COP of 0.4 or 0.45, while a specially designed, highly efficient motor may have a COP of 0.85.

The conservative field inside a motor itself can be divided into two phases. Producing a conservative field involves nett symmetry between the "power out" phase from the magnetics to the rotor/flywheel and the "power back in" phase from the rotor/flywheel back to the magnetics. That is, the two flows of energy (one from the
magnetics into the rotor and flywheel, and one from the rotor and flywheel back to the magnetics) are identical in magnitude but opposite in direction. Each phase alone is said to be "asymmetrical"; that is, it either has:

1) a nett energy flow out to the rotor/flywheel; or
2) a nett energy flow back into the magnetics from the rotor/flywheel.

In simplified terms, it is referred to as "power out" and "power back in" phases with respect to the motor magnetics. Hence, the two asymmetrical phases are:

1) the power-out phase; and
2) the "power back in" phase, with reference to the magnetics.

For the power-out phase, energy is derived from the EMF existing between the stator pole and incoming rotor pole in an attraction mode. In this phase, the rotary motion (angular momentum and kinetic energy) of the rotor and flywheel is increased. In short, power is added to the rotor/flywheel (and thus to the load) from the fields between stator pole and rotor pole (the electromagnetic aspects of the system).

For the "power back in" phase, energy must be fed back into the magnetics from the rotor and flywheel (and the load) to overcome the drag-back forces existing between stator pole and outgoing rotor pole. In this phase, energy is returned to the internal magnetic system from the rotary motion of the rotor and flywheel (the angular momentum, which is the rotational energy multiplied by time). As is well known in physics, a rotor/flywheel's angular momentum provides a convenient way to store energy with the spinning rotor/flywheel mass acting as an energy reservoir.

All present day conventional magnetic motors use various methods for overcoming, and partially reversing, back EMF. Back EMF is the out of phase return pulse from the coil and is also referred to as regauging. The back EMF is shorted out and the rotor is attracted back in, therefore eliminating back drag. This can be accomplished by pouring more energy in to overpower the back EMF, thereby producing a forward EMF in that region. The energy required for this method must be furnished by the operator.

The motor of the present invention uses only a small amount of energy to "trigger" a much larger input of available energy by supplying back EMF, thus increasing the potential energy of the system. It then utilises this excess potential energy to reduce or reverse back EMF, thereby increasing the efficiency of the motor and, therefore, the COP.

If the energy in phase 1 (the power-out phase) is increased by additional available energy in the electromagnetics themselves, then the energy in phase 1 can be made greater than the energy in phase 2 (the power-back-in phase) without the operator furnishing the energy utilised. This produces a non-conservative nett field. Nett power can then be taken from the rotating stator and flywheel, because the available energy transferred into the stator and flywheel by the additional effects, is transformed by the rotor/flywheel into additional angular momentum and stored as such. Angular momentum is conserved at all times; but now some of the angular momentum added to the flywheel is generated by additional effects in the electromagnetics rather than being provided by the operator.

Electrodynamicists assume that the potential available energy of any system can be changed at will and without cost. This is back EMF and is well-known in physics. It is also routinely employed by electrodynamicists in the theoretical aspects. However, to simplify the mathematics, electrodynamicists will create a back EMF twice simultaneously, each back EMF being carefully selected so that the two available forces which are produced, are equal and opposite and cancel each other "symmetrically". This is referred to as "symmetrical back EMF". A symmetrical back EMF system cannot produce a COP>1.0.

On the other hand, the motor of the present invention deliberately creates a back EMF itself and its potential energy only once at a time, thereby retaining each extra force for a period of time and applying it to increase the angular momentum and kinetic energy of the rotor and flywheel. Specifically, this back EMF energy with its nett force is deliberately applied in the motor of the present invention to overcome and even reverse the conventional drag-back (the back EMF). Hence less energy need be taken from the rotor and flywheel to overcome the reduced back EMF, and in the ideal case none is required since the back EMF has been overpowered and converted to forward EMF by the back EMF energy and force. In the motor of the present invention, the conventional back-drag section of the magnetics becomes a forward-EMF section and now adds energy to the rotor/flywheel instead of subtracting it. The important feature is that the operator only has to provide the small amount of energy necessary to trigger the back EMF, and does not have to furnish the much larger back EMF energy itself.

When the desired energy in phase 1 (the power out phase) is thus made greater than the undesired "drag-back" energy in phase 2, then part of the output power normally dragged back from the rotor and flywheel by the fields in phase 2 is not required. Hence, compared to a system without the special back EMF mechanisms, additional power is available from the rotor/flywheel. The rotor maintains additional angular momentum and kinetic energy, compared to a system which does not produce back EMF itself. Consequently, the excess angular momentum
retained by the rotor and flywheel can be utilised as additional shaft power to power an external load connected to the shaft.

A standard magnetic motor operates as the result of the motor being furnished with external energy input into the system by the operator to reduce phase 2 (power back into the magnetics from the rotor/flywheel) by any of several methods and mechanisms. The primary purpose of this external energy input into the system is to overcome the back EMF and also provide for the inevitable energy losses in the system. There is no input of energy separate from the operator input. Therefore, the COP of any standard magnetic motor is COP less than 1.0. The efficiency of a standard magnetic motor varies from less than 50% to a maximum of about 85%, and so has a COP<1.0. When nothing is done in the motor that will produce a reduction of the back EMF without the operator inputting all the energy for it, then for even a frictionless, ideal permanent magnet motor, the COP can never exceed 1.0.

Until the introduction of the motor of the present invention, it has been standard universal practice that the operator must furnish all energy used to reduce the back EMF, provide for the internal losses, and power the load. It is therefore a common belief by the scientific community that an ideal (loss-less) permanent magnet motor cannot exceed a COP of 1.0. That is true, so long as the operator himself must furnish all the energy. Furthermore, since real permanent magnetic motors have real internal losses, some of the input energy is always lost in the motor itself, and that lost energy is not available for powering the rotor/flywheel and load. Hence a real permanent magnetic motor of the conventional kind will always have a COP<1.0.

The common assumption that the COP of a motor is limited to less than 1.0 is not necessarily true, and that COP>1.0 is permitted without violating the laws of nature, physics, or thermodynamics. However, it can immediately be seen that any permanent magnet motor exhibiting a COP>1.0 must have some available energy input returning in the form of back EMF.

A problem relates to how back EMF energy can be obtained from a circuit's external environment for the specific task of reducing the back-drag EMF without the operator having to supply any input of that excess energy. In short, the ultimate challenge is to find a way to cause the system to:
1) become an open dissipative system, that is, a system receiving available excess energy from its environment, in other words, from an external source; and
2) use that available excess energy to reduce the drag-back EMF between stator and rotor poles as the rotor pole is leaving the stator pole.

If this objective can be accomplished, the system will be converted from thermodynamic equilibrium. Instead, it will be an out-of-equilibrium thermodynamic system. A system so converted is not obliged to obey classical thermodynamic equilibrium.

Instead, an out-of-equilibrium thermodynamic system must obey the thermodynamics of open systems far from the established and well-known parameters of thermodynamic equilibrium. As is well known in the physics of thermodynamics, such open systems can permissibly:
1) self-order;
2) self-oscillate;
3) output more back EMF energy than energy input by the operator (the available excess back EMF energy is received from an external source and some energy is input by the operator as well);
4) power itself as well as its loads and losses simultaneously (in that case, all the energy is received from the available external source and there is no input energy from the operator); and
5) exhibit negative entropy, that is, produce an increase of energy that is available in the system, and that is independent of the energy put into the system by the operator.

As a definition, entropy roughly corresponds to the energy of a system that has become unavailable for use. Negative entropy corresponds to additional energy of a system that has become available for use.

In the back EMF permanent magnet electromagnetic motor generator of the present invention, several known processes and methods are utilised which allow the invention to operate periodically as an open dissipative system (receiving available excess energy from back EMF) far from thermodynamic equilibrium, whereby it produces and receives its excess energy from a known external source.

A method is utilised to temporarily produce a much larger source of available external energy around an energised coil. Then the unique design features of this new motor provides a method and mechanism that can immediately produce a second increase in that energy, concurrently as the energy flow is reversed. Therefore, the motor is capable of producing two asymmetrical back EMFs, one after the other, of the energy within a single coil, which dramatically increases the energy available and causes that available excess energy to then enter the circuit as an impulse, being collected and utilised.
The present motor utilises this available excess back EMF energy to overcome and even reverse the back-drag EMF between stator pole and rotor pole, while furnishing only a small trigger pulse of energy necessary to control and activate the direction of the back EMF energy flow.

By using a number of such dual asymmetrical self back EMFs for every revolution of the rotor, the rotor and flywheel collectively focus all the excess impulsive inputs into increased angular momentum (expressed as energy multiplied by time), shaft torque, and shaft power.

Further, some of the excess energy deliberately generated in the coil by the utilisation of the dual process manifests itself in the form of excess electrical energy in the circuit and is utilised to power electrical loads, e.g., a lamp, fan, motor, or other electrical devices. The remainder of the excess energy generated in the coil can be used to power the rotor and flywheel, with the rotor/flywheel also furnishing shaft horsepower for powering mechanical loads.

This new and unique motor utilises a means to furnish the relatively small amount of energy to initiate the impulsive asymmetrical self back EMF actions. Then part of the available excess electrical power drawn off from the back EMFs is utilised to recharge the battery with dramatically increased over voltage pulses.

The unique design features of this motor utilise both north and south magnetic poles of each rotor and stator magnet. Therefore, the number of impulsive self back EMFs in a single rotation of the rotor is doubled. Advanced designs increase the number of self back EMFs in a single rotor rotation with the result that there is an increase in the number of impulses per rotation which increase the power output of this new motor.

The sharp voltage pulse produced in the coil of this new motor by the rapidly collapsing field in the back EMF coil is connected to a battery in charge mode and to an external electrical load. The nett result is that the coil asymmetrically creates back EMF itself in a manner adding available energy and impulse to the circuit. The excess available energy collected in the coil is used to reverse the back-EMF phase of the stator-rotor fields to a forward EMF condition, and through an impulse, adding acceleration and angular momentum to the rotor and flywheel. At the same time, a part of the excess energy collected in the coil is used to power electrical loads such as charging a battery and operating a lamp or such other device.

It is well known that changing the voltage alone, creates a back EMF and requires no work. This is because to change the potential energy does not require changing the form of that potential energy, but only its magnitude. Strictly speaking, work is the changing of the form of energy. Therefore, as long as the form of the potential energy is not changed, the magnitude can be changed without having to perform work in the process. The motor of the present invention takes advantage of this permissible operation to create back EMF asymmetrically, and thereby change its own usable available potential energy.

In an electric power system, the potential (voltage) is changed by inputting energy to do work on the internal charges of the generator or battery. This potential energy is expended within the generator (or battery) to force the internal charges apart, forming a source dipole. Then the external closed circuit system connected to that source dipole ineptly pumps the spent electrons in the ground line back through the back EMF of the source dipole, thereby scattering the charges and killing the dipole. This shuts off the energy flow from the source dipole to the external circuit. As a consequence of that conventional method, it is a requirement to input and replace additional energy to again restore the dipole. The circuits currently utilised in most electrical generators have been designed to keep on destroying the energy flow by continually scattering all of the dipole charges and terminating the dipole. Therefore, it is necessary to keep on inputting energy to the generator to keep restoring its source dipole.

An investigation of particle physics is required to see what furnishes the energy to the external circuit. Since neither a battery nor a generator furnishes energy to the external circuit, but only furnishes energy to form the source dipole, a better understanding of the electric power principle is required to fully understand how this new motor functions. A typical battery uses its stored chemical energy to form the source dipole. A generator utilises its input shaft energy of rotation to generate an internal magnetic field in which the positive charges are forced to move in one direction and the negative charges in the reverse direction, thereby forming the source dipole. In other words, the energy input into the generator does nothing except form the source dipole. None of the input energy goes to the external circuit. If increased current is drawn into the external load, there also is increased spent electron flow being rammed back through the source dipole, destroying it faster. Therefore, dipole-restoring-energy has to be inputted faster. The chemical energy of the battery also is expended only to separate its internal charges and form its source dipole. Again, if increased current and power is drawn into the external load, there is increased spent electron flow being rammed back through the source dipole, destroying it faster. This results in a depletion of the battery's stored energy faster, by forcing it to have to keep restoring the dipole faster.

Once the generator or battery source dipole is formed (the dipole is attached also to the external circuit), it is well known in particle physics that the dipole (same as any charge) is a broken symmetry in the vacuum energy flux.
By definition, this means that the source dipole extracts and orders part of that energy received from its vacuum interaction, and pours that energy out as the energy flowing through all space surrounding the external conductors in the attached circuit. Most of this enormous energy flow surging through space surrounding the external circuit does not strike the circuit at all, and does not get intercepted or utilised. Neither is it diverted into the circuit to power the electrons, but passes on out into space and is just "wasted". Only a small "sheath" of the energy flow along the surface of the conductors strikes the surface charges in those conductors and is thereby diverted into the circuit to power the electrons. Standard texts show the huge available but wasted energy flow component, but only calculate the small portion of the energy flow that strikes the circuit, is caught by it, and is utilised to power it.

In a typical circuit, the huge available but "wasted" component of the energy flow is about 10 to the power 13 times as large as the small component intercepted by the surface charges and diverted into the circuit to power it. Hence, around every circuit and circuit element such as a coil, there exists a huge non-intercepted, non-diverged energy flow that is far greater than the small energy flow being diverted and used by the circuit or element.

Thus there exists an enormous untapped energy flow immediately surrounding every EMF power circuit, from which available excess energy can be intercepted and collected by the circuit, if respective non-linear actions are initiated that sharply affect and increase the reaction cross section of the circuit (i.e., its ability to intercept this available but usually wasted energy flow).

The method in which the motor of the present invention alters the reaction cross section of the coils in the circuit, is by a novel use, which momentarily changes the reaction cross section of the coil in which it is invoked. Thus, by this new motor using only a small amount of current in the form of a triggering pulse, it is able to evoke and control the immediate change of the coil's reaction cross section to this normally wasted energy flow component. As a result, the motor captures and directs some of this usually wasted environmental energy, collecting the available excess energy in the coil and then releasing it for use in the motor. By timing and switching, the innovative gate design in this new motor directs the available excess energy so that it overcomes and reverses the return EMF of the rotor-stator pole combination during what would normally be the back EMF and demonstrates the creation of the second back EMF of the system. Now instead of an "equal retardation" force being produced in the back EMF region, a forward EMF is produced that is additive to the rotor/flywheel energy and not subtractive. In short, it further accelerates the rotor/flywheel.

This results in a non-conservative magnetic field along the rotor's path. The line integral of the field around that path (i.e., the nett work on the rotor/flywheel to increase its energy and angular momentum) is not zero but a significant amount. Hence, the creation of an asymmetrical back EMF impulse magnetic motor:

1) takes its available excess energy from a known external source, the huge usually non-intercepted portion of the energy flow around the coil;
2) further increases the source dipolarity by this back EMF energy; and
3) produces available excess energy flow directly from the source dipole's increased broken symmetry in its fierce energy exchange with the local vacuum.

No laws of physics or thermodynamics are violated in the method and device of the present invention, and conservation of energy rigorously applies at all times. Nonetheless, by operating as an open dissipative system not in thermodynamic equilibrium with the active vacuum, the system can permissibly receive available excess energy from a known environmental source and output more energy to a load than must be input by the operator alone. As an open system not in thermodynamic equilibrium, this new and unique motor can tap in to back EMF to energise itself, loads and losses simultaneously, fully complying with known laws of physics and thermodynamics.

A search of prior art failed to reveal any devices that recycle available energy from back EMF of a permanent electromagnetic motor generator as described in the present invention. However, the following prior art US patents were reviewed:

1. No. 5,532,532 to DeVault, et al., Hermetically Sealed Super-conducting Magnet Motor.
2. No. 5,508,575 to Elrod, Jr., Direct Drive Servovalve Having Magnetically Loaded Bearing.
4. No. 5,371,426 to Nagate et al., Rotor For Brushless Motor.
5. No. 5,369,325 to Nagate et al., Rotor For Brushless Electromotor And Method For Making Same.
8. No. 5,334,894 to Nakagawa, Rotary Pulse Motor.
10. No. 5,130,595 to Arora, Multiple Magnetic Paths Pulse Machine.
11. No. 4,980,595 to Arora, Multiple Magnetics Paths Machine.
12. No. 4,972,112 to Kim, Brushless D.C. Motor.

A - 449
13. No. 4,916,346 to Kliman, Composite Rotor Lamination For Use In Reluctance Homopolar, And Permanent Magnet Machines.
14. No. 4,761,590 to Kaszman, Electric Motor.
16. No. Re. 31,950 to Binns, Alternating Current Generators And Motors.
17. No. 4,488,075 to DeCesare, Alternator With Rotor Axial Flux Excitation.
18. No. 4,433,260 to Weisbord et al., Hysteresis Synchronous Motor Utilizing Polarized Rotor.
19. No. 4,429,263 to Muller, Low Magnetic Leakage Flux Brushless Pulse Controlled D-C Motor.
20. No. 4,423,343 to Field, II, Synchronous Motor System.
21. No. 4,417,167 to Ishii et al., DC Brushless Motor.
22. No. 4,265,754 to Menold, Water Treating Apparatus and Methods.
23. No. 4,265,746 to Zimmermann, Sr. et al. Water Treating Apparatus and Methods.
25. No. 2,974,981 to Vervest et al., Arrester For Iron Particles.
27. No. 2,560,260 to Sturtevant et al., Temperature Compensated Magnetic Suspension.
SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The device and method of the present invention is a new permanent electromagnetic motor generator that recycles back EMF energy (regauging) thus allowing the motor to produce an energy level of COP = 0.98, more or less, depending upon configuration, circuitry, switching elements and the number and size of stators, rotors and coils that comprise the motor. The rotor is fixed between two pole pieces of the stator. The motor generator is initially energised from a small starter battery means, analogous to a spark plug, that sends a small amount of energy to the motor, thus stimulating a rotating motion from the rotor. As the rotor rotates, energy is captured from the surrounding electromagnetic field containing an asymmetrical pulse wave of back EMF. The energy produced and captured can be directed in one of several directions, including returning energy to the initial starter battery, rotating a shaft for work and/or sending a current to energise a fan, light bulb or other such device.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. 1 is the top view of a back EMF permanent electromagnetic motor generator with a single stator and a single rotor.
**Fig. 1a** is a side view of a timing wheel and magnetic Hall-effect sensor of the back EMF motor generator.

![Fig. 1A](image)

**Fig. 1b** is a side view of the rotor of the back EMF motor generator.

![Fig. 1B](image)

**Fig. 2** is a schematic drawing incorporating circuitry for the back EMF motor generator.

![Fig. 2](image)
Fig. 3 is a box diagram showing the relationships of the back EMF motor generator circuitry.

**DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION**

The present invention is a device and method for creating a back EMF permanent electromagnetic motor generator. As described in the Background Information, this new motor generator conforms to all applicable electrodynamic laws of physics and is in harmony with the law of the conservation of energy, the laws of electromagnetism and other related natural laws.

The back EMF permanent electromagnetic motor generator is comprised of a combination of electrical, material and magnetic elements, arranged to capture available electromagnetic energy (back EMF) in a recovery rectifier or single diode from output coils. The capturing of back EMF energy is also known as 'regauging'. As an arbitrary starting point in describing this invention, an input battery, as a means of energy, sends power through a power on-off switch and then to a timing mechanism, such as a magnetic timing switch (a semiconductor Hall-effect magnetic pickup switch) which is triggered by a magnet on a timing wheel. The timing wheel may contain any number of magnets (i.e. one or more), with the South poles facing outwards and aligned with the Hall-effect pickup switch.

The timing wheel is mounted at the end of a shaft which is located along the centreline of a rotor, which in turn, may contain any number of magnets (i.e. two or more). The rotor magnets are arranged so that they have the same polarity and are equidistant from each other. The shaft has the timing wheel mounted at one end, the rotor, and then some means for performing work, such as a power take off at the opposite end. However, there are other embodiments in which the position of the rotor, timing wheel and power take-off have other configurations. The rotor is mounted on a platform or housing which is fixed in a stationary position within a stator.

The stator is comprised of a permanent magnet connected to a means for conducting electromagnetic energy such as two parallel bars, each bar having a magnetised pole piece at one end. The conduction material of the bar may be ferrous, powdered iron, silicon steel, stainless magnetic steel, laminations of conductive material or any other magnetic conductive material. Each bar has an input coil placed around it. The coil may be constructed from copper, aluminium or any other suitable conductive material. The primary or input coil is connected to the switching circuit. A second coil on top of the input coil becomes a secondary or output coil. The secondary or output coil is connected to the recovery circuit. The rotor is located symmetrically between the pole pieces of the bars of the stator and it contains a series of magnets all having the same polarity, North or South, with each magnet in the rotor being in aligned with the pole piece as the rotor rotates.

When the rotor is energised from the battery of the switching circuit, there is an initial magnetic field that is instantly overcome as the magnetised pole pieces align with the rotor magnets. As the rotor begins to move, increasing electromagnetic energy is produced as a result of flux galting from the aligned magnets of the rotor and pole pieces. The coils surrounding the bars "buck" the permanent magnet connecting the bars. This is known as the "buck boosting" principle. When the permanent magnet is bucked by the coils, it reverses the polarity of the pole pieces which are aligned with the rotor magnets causing the rotor to increase its rate of rotation. The energy
available from the fields that are collapsing in the primary and secondary coils, (which creates the back EMF within the system), is now in non-equilibrium. Energy can now be put back into the system via the switching circuitry. Available energy captured from the back EMF, may be applied in different directions, including re-energising the input battery, storage in a capacitor, conversion by a recovery rectifier to be stored in the input battery, a capacitor or a secondary or recovery battery. Recovery rectifiers are used to convert this AC to DC. Available energy may be used to energise an electric bulb, fan or any other uses.

The shaft in the centre of the rotor can transfer energy in the form of work through a power take-off. The power take-off may be connected to any number of secondary shafts, wheels, gears and belts to increase or reduce torque.

This is a description of the basic invention, however, there are an innumerable number of combinations and embodiments of stators, rotors, Hall-effect magnetic pickup switches, coils, recovery rectifiers and electronic connecting modes that may be combined on a single shaft or several shafts connected in various combinations and sequences, and of various sizes. There may be any number of stators to one rotor, (however, there can be only one active rotor if there is a single stator). The number of Hall-effect pickup switches may vary, for example, in the case of multiple stators of high resistant coils, the coils may be parallel to form a low resistant coil so that one Hall-effect pickup with one circuit may fire all of the stators at the same time. The number of magnets in both the timing wheel and the rotor may also vary in number as well as the size and strength of the magnets. Any type of magnet may be used. The number of turns on both the input and output coils on each conducting bar may also vary in number and in conductive material.

The motor generator, as shown in Fig.1, a top perspective view of a single stator, single rotor back EMF motor and is comprised of a means of providing energy, such as input battery 10 connected to power switch 11 (shown in Fig.2) and Hall-effect magnetic pickup switch 13. Magnetic pickup 13 interfaces with timing wheel 12 to form a timing switch. Timing wheel 12 contains four magnets 14 with the South pole of each said magnet facing outward towards magnetic pickup 13. Timing wheel 12 is fixed at one end of shaft 15. Located on shaft 15 is rotor 16. Rotor 16 can be of any realistic size, and in this example the rotor contains four rotor magnets 17. The rotor magnets 17 are arranged so all have the same polarity.

Opposite timing wheel 12 on shaft 15 is a means for performing work, such as a power take-off 18. Rotor 16 is mounted in a fixed position with rotor magnets 17 in aligned with the magnetised pole pieces 19a and 19b. Each pole piece 19a and 19b is connected to iron bars 20a and 20b. These iron bars are connected by a permanent magnet 21. Wire is wrapped around iron bars 20a and 20b to form input coils 22a and 22b. Superimposed upon input coils 22a and 22b are output coils 23a and 23b. These output coils are connected to full wave bridge first recovery rectifier 24a which then connects to battery 10.

Fig.1a is a side view of the back EMF Motor Generator timing wheel 12 with Hall-effect magnetic pickup 13 positioned to be triggered by each of the four magnets 14 in turn as timing wheel 12 rotates. The magnets 14 have their South poles facing outward and they are spaced evenly with a 90 degree angular separation.

Fig.1b is a side view of rotor 16 with four rotor magnets 17 with 90 degree angular separation from each other and having the same polarity.

Fig.2 is a schematic diagram of the motor generator circuitry showing input coil connections from input battery 10 through power switch 11, transistors 30a,b,c resistors 31a-e, through power supply lead 32 (“VCC+”) and to magnetic pickup 13. Magnetic pickup 13 is in aligned with timing wheel magnets 14 located on timing wheel 12.
Collector lead 33 and ground lead 34 carry the signals from magnetic pickup 13. When current is reversed, it flows through resistor 31e and transistor 30c to input battery 10. Input coils 22a,b send power to full wave bridge first recovery rectifier 24a which then sends power through switch recovery 27 back into the system, and/or to the input battery 10. Output coils 23a and 23b send power through single diode second recovery rectifier 24b to recovery battery 25.

In this particular embodiment, the value and type number of the components are as follows:
Hall-effect magnetic pickup switch 13 is a No. 3020;
Transistor 30a is a 2N2955;
Transistor 30b is an MPS8599;
Transistor 30c is a 2N3055;
Resistors 31a and 31b are 470 ohms
Resistor 31b is 2.2 K ohms
Resistor 31c is 220 ohms
Resistor 31d is 1 K ohms
Recovery rectifier 24a is a 10 Amp, 400 volts bridge rectifier.

Fig.3 is a box diagram showing the flow of voltage from input battery A, through recovery circuit B, switching circuit C and motor coils D. Motor coils D send available back EMF energy through recovery circuit B, and then on to recovery battery E and input battery A. Available back EMF energy can also flow from switching circuit C to recovery circuit B.

In multiple stator/rotor systems, each individual stator may be energised one at a time or all of the stators may be energised simultaneously. Any number of stators and rotors may be incorporated into the design of such multiple stator/rotor motor generator combinations. However, while there may be several stators per rotor, there can only be one rotor for a single stator. The number of stators and rotors that would comprise a particular motor generator is dependent upon the amount of power required in the form of watts. The desired size and horsepower of the motor determines whether the stators will be in parallel or fired sequentially by the magnetic Hall-effect pickup or pickups. The number of magnets incorporated into a particular rotor is dependent upon the size of the rotor and power required of the motor generator. In a multiple stator/rotor motor generator, the timing wheel may have one or more magnets, but must have one magnet Hall-effect pickup for each stator if the stators are not arranged in parallel. The back EMF energy is made available through the reversing of the polarity of the magnetised pole pieces thus collapsing the field around the coils and reversing the flow of energy to the recovery diodes, which are capturing the back EMF.

Individual motors may be connected in sequence, with each motor having various combinations of stators and rotors, or they may be connected in parallel. Each rotor may have any number of magnets ranging from a minimum of 2 to maximum of 60. The number of stators for an individual motor may range from 1 to 60 with the number of conducting bars ranging from 2 to 120.

What distinguishes this motor generator from all others is the presence of a permanent magnet connecting the two conducting bars which transfer magnetic energy through the pole pieces to the rotor, thereby attracting the rotor between the pole pieces. With the rotor attracted in between the two pole pieces, the coils switch the polarity of the magnetic field of the pole pieces so that the rotor is repelled out. Therefore there is no current and voltage being used to attract the rotor. The only current being used is the repulsion of the rotor between the two conductive bar pole pieces thereby requiring only a small amount of current to repel the rotor. This is known as ‘a regauging system’ and allows the capturing of available back EMF energy.

Finally, although the invention has been described with reference of particular means, materials and embodiments, it is to be understood that the invention is not limited to the particulars disclosed and extends to all equivalents within the scope of the claims.
ABSTRACT
This two-phase solid-state battery charger can receive input energy from a variety of sources including AC current, a battery, a DC generator, a DC-to-DC inverter, solar cells or any other compatible source of input energy. Phase 1 is the charging phase and Phase 2 is the discharge phase, where a signal, or current, passes through a dual timing switch which independently controls two channels, thus producing the two phases.

The dual timing switch is controlled by a logic chip, or pulse width modulator. A potential charge is allowed to build up in a capacitor bank. The capacitor bank is then disconnected from the energy input source and then a high voltage pulse is fed into the battery which is there to receive the charge. The momentary disconnection of the capacitor from the input energy source allows a free-floating potential charge in the capacitor. Once the capacitor has completed discharging the potential charge into the battery, the capacitor disconnects from the charging battery and re-connects to the energy source, thus completing the two-phase cycle.

TECHNICAL FIELD
This invention relates generally to a battery pulse-charger using a solid-state device and method where the current going to the battery is not constant. The signal or current is momentarily switch-interrupted as it flows through either the first channel, (the charging phase), or the second channel, (the discharging phase). This two-phase cycle alternates the signal in the two channels thereby allowing a potential charge in a capacitor to disconnect from its power source an instant before the capacitor discharges its stored potential energy into a battery set up to receive the capacitor's stored energy. The capacitor is then disconnected from the battery and re-connected to the power source upon completion of the discharge phase, thereby completing the charge-discharge cycle. The battery pulse-charger can also drive devices, such as a motor and a heating element, with pulses.

BACKGROUND AND PRIOR ART
Present day battery chargers use a constant charge current in their operation with no momentary disconnection of the signal or current as it flows either: (1) from a primary energy source to the charger; or (2) from the charger itself into a battery for receiving the charge. Some chargers are regulated to a constant current by any of several methods, while others are constant and are not regulated. There are no battery chargers currently in the art or available wherein there is a momentary signal or current disconnection between the primary energy source and the charger capacitors an instant before the capacitors discharge the stored potential energy into a battery receiving the pulse charge. Nor are there any chargers in the art that disconnect the charger from the battery receiving the charge when the charger capacitors receive energy from the primary source. The momentary current interruption allows the battery a short "rest period" and requires less energy from the primary energy source while putting more energy into the battery receiving the charge while requiring a shorter period of time to do it.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION
One aspect of the invention relates to a solid-state device and method for creating a pulse current to pulse-charge a battery or a bank of batteries in which a new and unique method is used to increase and preserve, for a longer period of time, the energy stored in the battery, as compared to constant-current battery chargers. The device uses a timed pulse to create a DC pulse waveform to be discharged into the battery receiving the charge.

One embodiment of the Invention uses a means for dual switching such as a pulse-width modulator (PWM), for example, a logic chip SG3524N PWM, and a means for optical coupling to a bank of high-energy capacitors to
store a timed initial pulse charge. This is the charge phase, or phase 1. The charged capacitor bank then discharges the stored high energy into the battery receiving the charge in timed pulses. Just prior to discharging the stored energy into the battery, the capacitor bank is momentarily disconnected from the power source, thus completing the charge phase, and thereby leaving the capacitor bank as a free-floating potential charge disconnected from the primary energy source to then be discharged into the battery. The transfer of energy from the capacitor bank to the battery completes the discharge phase, or phase 2. The two-phase cycle now repeats itself.

This embodiment of the battery pulse-charger works by transferring energy from a source, such as an AC source, to an unfiltered DC source of high voltage to be stored in a capacitor or a capacitor bank. A switching regulator is set to a timed pulse, for example, a one second pulse that is 180 degrees out of phase for each set of switching functions. The first function is to build the charge in the capacitor bank from the primary energy source; the second function is to disconnect the power source from the capacitor bank; the third function is to discharge the stored high voltage to the battery with a high voltage spike in a timed pulse, for example, a one second pulse; and the fourth function is to re-connect the capacitor bank to the primary energy source.

The device operates through a two-channel on/off switching mechanism or a gauging/re-gauging function wherein the charger is disconnected from its primary energy source an instant before the pulse-charger discharges the high-energy pulse into the battery to be charged. As the primary charging switch closes, the secondary discharging switch opens, and vice-versa in timed pulses to complete the two phase cycle.

The means for a power supply is varied with several options available as the primary energy source. For example, primary input energy may come from an AC source connected into the proper voltage (transformer); from an AC generator; from a primary input battery; from solar cells; from a DC-to-DC inverter; or from any other adaptable source of energy. If a transformer is the source of primary input energy, then it can be a standard rectifying transformer used in power supply applications or any other transformer applicable to the desired function. For example, it can be a 120-volt to 45-volt AC step-down transformer, and the rectifier can be a full-wave bridge of 200 volts at 20 amps, which is unfiltered when connected to the output of the transformer. The positive output terminal of the bridge rectifier is connected to the drains of the parallel connected field-effect transistors, and the negative terminal is connected to the negative side of the capacitor bank.

The Field Effect Transistor (FET) switches can be IRF260 FETs, or any other FET needed to accomplish this function. All the FETs are connected in parallel to achieve the proper current handling capacity for the pulses. Each FET may be connected through a 7-watt, 0.05-ohm resistor with a common bus connection at the source. All the FET gates may be connected through a 240-ohm resistor to a common bus. There may also be a 2 K-ohm resistor wired between the FET gates and the drain bus.

A transistor, for example an MJE15024, can be used as a driver for the gates, driving the bus, and in turn, an optical coupler powers the driver transistor through the first channel. A first charging switch is used to charge the capacitor bank, which acts as a DC potential source to the battery. The capacitor bank is then disconnected from the power rectifier circuit. The pulse battery charger is then transferred to a second field effect switch through the second channel for the discharge phase. The discharge phase is driven by a transistor, and that transistor is driven via an optical coupler. When the second (discharge) switch is turned on, the capacitor bank potential charge is discharged into the battery waiting to receive the charge. The battery receiving the charge is then disconnected from the pulse-charger capacitor bank in order to repeat the cycle. The pulse-charger may have any suitable source of input power including:

1. solar panels to raise the voltage to the capacitor bank;
2. a wind generator;
3. a DC-to-DC inverter;
4. an alternator;
5. an AC motor generator;
6. a static source such as a high voltage spark; and
7. other devices which can raise the potential of the capacitor bank.

In another embodiment of the invention, one can use the pulse-charger to drive a device such as a motor or heating element with pulses of energy.

**BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS**
Fig. 1 is a schematic drawing of a solid-state pulse-charger according to an embodiment of the invention.
Fig. 2 is a schematic drawing of a conventional DC-to-DC converter that can be used to provide power to the pulse-charger of Fig. 1 according to an embodiment of the invention.
Fig. 3 is a schematic drawing of a conventional AC power supply that can be used to provide power to the pulse-charger of Fig. 1 according to an embodiment of the invention.

Fig. 4A to Fig. 4D are schematic drawings of other conventional power supplies that can be used to provide power to the pulse-charger of Fig. 1 according to an embodiment of the invention.

Fig. 5
Fig. 5 is a block diagram of the solid-state pulse-charger of Fig. 1 according to an embodiment of the invention.

![Fig. 5](image)

Fig. 6 is a diagram of a DC motor that the pulse-charger of Fig. 1 can drive according to an embodiment of the invention.

![Fig. 6](image)

Fig. 7 is a diagram of a heating element that the pulse-charger of Fig. 1 can drive according to an embodiment of the invention.

![Fig. 7](image)

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

An embodiment of the present invention is a device and method for a solid-state pulse-charger that uses a stored potential charge in a capacitor bank. The solid-state pulse-charger comprises a combination of elements and circuitry to capture and store available energy in a capacitor bank. The stored energy in the capacitors is then pulse-charged into the battery to be charged. In one version of this embodiment, there is a first momentary disconnection between the charger and the battery receiving the charge during the charge phase of the cycle, and a second momentary disconnection between the charger and the input energy source during the discharge phase of the cycle.

As a starting point, and an arbitrary method in describing this device and method, the flow of an electrical signal or current will be tracked from the primary input energy to final storage in the battery receiving the pulse charge.
**Fig. 1**

**Fig. 1** is a schematic drawing of the solid-state pulse-charger according to an embodiment of the invention. As shown in Fig. 1, the primary input energy source to the pulse-charger is a power supply 11, examples of which are shown in Fig. 2, Fig. 3, and Figs. 4A-4D. A 12-volt battery, as a low voltage energy source 12, drives a dual switching means of control such as a logic chip or a pulse-width modulator (PWM) 13.

Alternatively, the voltage from the power supply 11 may be converted to a voltage suitable to power the PWM 13. The PWM 13 may be an SG3524N logic chip, and functions as an oscillator or timer to drive a 2-channel output with "on/off" switches that are connected when on to either a first optical isolator 14, or alternatively, to a second optical isolator 15. The first and second optical isolators 14 and 15 may be H11D3 optical isolators. When the logic chip 13 is connected to a first channel, it is disconnected from a second channel, thus resulting in two phases of signal direction; phase 1, a charge phase, and phase 2, a discharge phase.

When the logic chip 13 is switched to the charge phase, the signal flows to the first optical isolator 14. From the optical isolator 14, the signal continues its flow through a first NPN power transistor 16 that activates an N-channel MOSFET 18a and an N-channel MOSFET 18b. Current flowing through the MOSFETs 18a and 18b builds up a voltage across a capacitor bank 20, thereby completing the charge phase of the switching activity.

The discharge phase begins when the logic chip 13 is switched to the second channel, with current flowing to the second optical isolator 15 and then through a second NPN power transistor 17, which activates an N-channel MOSFET 19a and an N-channel MOSFET 19b. After the logic chip 13 closes the first channel and opens the second channel, the potential charge in the capacitor bank 20 is free floating between the power supply 11, from which the capacitor bank 20 is now disconnected, and then connected to a battery 22 to receive the charge. It is at this point in time that the potential charge in the capacitor bank 20 is discharged through a high-energy pulse into the battery 22 or, a bank (not shown) of batteries. The discharge phase is completed once the battery 22 receives the charge. The logic chip 13 then switches the second channel closed and opens the first channel thus completing the charge-discharge cycle. The cycle is repetitive with the logic chip 13 controlling the signal.
direction into either channel one to the capacitor bank, or to channel two to the battery 22 from the capacitor bank. The battery 22 is given a momentary rest period without a continuous current during the charge phase.

The component values for the described embodiment are as follows. The resistors 24, 26, . . . 44b have the following respective values: 4.7K, 4.7K, 47K, 330, 330, 2K, 47, 47, 0.05(7W), 0.05(7W), 2K, 47, 47, 0.05(7W), and 0.05(7W). The potentiometer 46 is 10K, the capacitor 48 is 22 mF, and the total capacitance of the capacitor bank 20 is 0.132F. The voltage of the battery 22 is between 12-24 V, and the voltage of the power supply 11 is 24-50 V such that the supply voltage is approximately 12-15 V higher than the battery voltage.

Other embodiments of the pulse-charger are contemplated. For example, the bipolar transistors 16 and 17 may be replaced with field-effect transistors, and the transistors 18a, 18b, 19a, and 19b may be replaced with bipolar or insulated-gate bipolar (IGBT) transistors. Furthermore, one can change the component values to change the cycle time, the peak pulse voltage, the amount of charge that the capacitor bank 20 delivers to the battery 22, etc. In addition, the pulse-charger can have one or more than two transistors 18a and 18b, and one or more than two transistors 19a and 19b.

Still referring to Fig.1, the operation of the above-discussed embodiment of the pulse-charger is discussed. To begin the first phase of the cycle during which the capacitor bank 20 is charged, the logic circuit 13 deactivates the isolator 15 and activates the isolator 14. Typically, the circuit 13 is configured to deactivate the isolator 15 before or at the same time that it activates the isolator 14, although the circuit 13 may be configured to deactivate the isolator 15 after it activates the isolator 14.

Next, the activated isolator 14 generates a base current that activates the transistor 16, which in turn generates a current that activates the transistors 18a and 18b. The activated transistors 18a and 18b charge the capacitors in the bank 20 to a charge voltage equal or approximately equal to the voltage of the power supply 11 less the lowest threshold voltage of the transistors 18a and 18b. To begin the second phase of the cycle during which the capacitor bank 20 pulse charges the battery 22, the logic circuit 13 deactivates the isolator 14 and activates the isolator 15. Typically, the circuit 13 is configured to deactivate the isolator 14 before or at the same time that it activates the isolator 15, although the circuit 13 may be configured to deactivate the isolator 14 after it activates the isolator 15.

Next, the activated isolator 15 generates a base current that activates the transistor 17, which in turn generates a current that activates the transistors 19a and 19b. The activated transistors 19a and 19b discharge the capacitors in the bank 20 into the battery 22 until the voltage across the bank 20 is or is approximately equal to the voltage across the battery 22 plus the lowest threshold voltage of the transistors 19a and 19b. Alternatively, the circuit 13 can deactivate the isolator 15 at a time before the bank 20 reaches this level of discharge. Because the resistances of the transistors 19a and 19b, the resistors 44a and 44b, and the battery 22 are relatively low, the capacitors in the bank 20 discharge rather rapidly, thus delivering a pulse of current to charge the battery 22. For example, where the pulse-charger includes components having the values listed above, the bank 20 delivers a pulse of current having a duration of about 100 ms and a peak of about 250 A.
Fig. 2 is a schematic drawing of a conventional DC-to-DC converter 30 that can be used as the power supply 11 of Fig. 1 according to an embodiment of the invention. A DC-to-DC converter converts a low DC voltage to a higher DC voltage or vice-versa. Therefore, such a converter can convert a low voltage into a higher voltage that the pulse-charger of Fig. 1 can use to charge the capacitor bank 20 (Fig. 1). More specifically, the converter 30 receives energy from a source 31 such as a 12-volt battery. An optical isolator sensor 33 controls an NPN power transistor which provides a current to a primary coil 36 of a power transformer 32. A logic chip or pulse width modulator (PWM) 34 alternately switches on and off an IRF260 first N-channel MOSFET 35a and an IRF260 second N-channel MOSFET 35b such that when the MOSFET 35a is on the MOSFET 35b is off and vice-versa. Consequently, the switching MOSFETs 35a and 35b drive respective sections of the primary coil 36 to generate an output voltage across a secondary coil 38. A full-wave bridge rectifier 39 rectifies the voltage across the secondary coil 38, and this rectified voltage is provided to the pulse-charger of Fig. 1. Furthermore, the secondary coil 38 can be tapped to provide a lower voltage for the PWM 13 of Fig. 1 such that the DC-to-DC converter 30 can be used as both the power supply 11 and the low-voltage supply 12 of Fig. 1.
Fig. 3 is a schematic drawing of an AC power supply 40 that can be used as both the power supply 11 and the power supply 12 of Fig. 1 according to an embodiment of the invention. The power input 42 to the supply 40 is 120V AC. A first transformer 44 and full-wave rectifier 46 compose the supply 11, and a second transformer 48, full-wave rectifier 50, and voltage regulator 52 compose the supply 12.

Fig. 4A to Fig. 4D are schematic drawings of various conventional primary energy input sources which can be used as the supply 11 and/or the supply 12 of Fig. 1 according to an embodiment of the invention. Fig. 4A is a schematic drawing of serially coupled batteries. Fig. 4B is a schematic drawing of serially-coupled solar cells. Fig. 4C is a schematic drawing of an AC generator, and Fig. 4D is a schematic drawing of a DC generator.

Fig. 5 is a block diagram of the solid-state pulse-charger of Fig. 1 according to an embodiment of the invention. Block A is the power supply 11, which can be any suitable power supply such as those shown in Fig. 2, Fig. 3, Figs. 4A-4D. Block B is the power supply 12, which can be any suitable power supply such as a 12V DC supply or the supply shown in Fig. 3. Block C is the PWM 13 and its peripheral components. Block D is the charge switch that includes the first optical isolator chip 14, the first NPN power transistor 16, the first set of two N-
channel MOSFETs 18a and 18b, and their peripheral resistors. Block E is the capacitor bank 20. Block F is the discharge switch that includes the second optical isolator chip 15, the second NPN power transistor 17, the second set of two N-channel MOSFETs 19a and 19b, and their peripheral resistors. Block G is the battery or battery bank 22 which is being pulse-charged.

A unique feature that distinguishes one embodiment of the pulse-charger described above, from conventional chargers is the method charging the battery with pulses of current instead of with a continuous current. Consequently, the battery is given a reset period between pulses.

Fig.6 is a diagram of a DC motor 60 that the pulse-charger of Fig.1 can drive according to an embodiment of the invention. Specifically, one can connect the motor 60 in place of the battery 22 (Fig.1) such that the pulse-charger drives the motor with pulses of current. Although one need not modify the pulse-charger to drive the motor 60, one can modify it to make it more efficient for driving the motor. For example, one can modify the values of the resistors peripheral to the PWM 13 (Fig.1) to vary the width and peak of the drive pulses from the capacitor bank 20 (Fig.1).

Fig.7 is a diagram of a heating element 70, such as a dryer or water-heating element, that the pulse-charger of Fig.1 can drive according to an embodiment of the invention. Specifically, one can connect the heating element 70 in place of the battery 22 (Fig.1) such that the pulse-charger drives the element with pulses of current. Although one need not modify the pulse-charger to drive the element 70, one can modify it to make it more efficient for driving the element. For example, one can modify the values of the resistors peripheral to the PWM 13 (Fig.1) to vary the width and peak of the drive pulses from the capacitor bank 20 (Fig.1).

In the embodiments discussed above, specific electronic elements and components are used. However, it is known that a variety of available transistors, resistors, capacitors, transformers, timing components, optical isolators, pulse width modulators, MOSFETs, and other electronic components may be used in a variety of combinations to achieve an equivalent result. Finally, although the invention has been described with reference of particular means, materials and embodiments, it is to be understood that the invention is not limited to the particulars disclosed and extends to all equivalents within the scope of the claims.

CLAIMS
1. A solid-state pulse battery charger wherein input power from a primary source is stored as a potential charge in a capacitor bank, said capacitor bank then disconnected from said input power source through a dual timing means, said capacitor then connected to a battery to receive the potential charge, the charge then discharged into said battery from said capacitor, said battery then disconnected from said capacitor through said dual timing means, said capacitor then re-connected to said input power source completing a two phase switching cycle comprising:
   a. a means for providing input power;
   b. a means for timing a signal and a current flow in two phases, a charge phase and a discharge phase, through either a first channel output for charging said capacitor bank, or a second channel output for discharging stored energy from said capacitor into said battery, the current flowing from said first channel output through a first optical isolator and through a first NPN power transistor, said first transistor activating a first pair of N-channel MOSFETs with voltage stored as the potential charge in said capacitor bank, said capacitor disconnecting from said input power means by said timing means;
   c. said means for timing current flow connecting to said second channel output, current flowing from said second channel through a second optical isolator and through a second NPN power transistor, said second transistor activating a second pair of N-channel MOSFETs, said capacitor connecting to said battery, the potential charge discharging into said battery, said timing means disconnecting said capacitor from said battery, and connecting said capacitor to said power means.

2. The pulse-charger of claim 1 wherein the means for providing input power is an AC voltage current.

3. The pulse-charger of claim 1 wherein the means for providing input power is a battery.

4. The pulse-charger of claim 1 wherein the means for providing input power is a DC generator.

5. The pulse-charger of claim 1 wherein the means for providing input power is an AC generator.

6. The pulse-charger of claim 1 wherein the means for providing input power is a solar cell.

7. The pulse-charger of claim 1 wherein the means for providing input power is a DC-to-DC inverter.
8. The pulse-charger of claim 1 wherein the means for timing a signal is a pulse width modulator, said modulator an SG3524N logic chip.

9. The pulse-charger of claim 1 wherein the optical isolator is an H11D3 isolator.

10. The pulse-charger of claim 1 wherein the NPN power transistor is an MJE15024 transistor.

11. The pulse-charger of claim 1 wherein the N-channel MOSFET is an IRF260 MOSFET.

12. A solid-state pulsed battery charger wherein input power from a primary source is stored as a potential charge in a capacitor bank, said capacitor then disconnected from said input power source through a dual timing means, said capacitor then connected to a battery to receive the potential charge, the charge then discharged into said battery from said capacitor, said battery then disconnected from said capacitor through said dual timing means, said capacitor then reconnected to said input power source completing a two phase cycle comprising:
   a. a means for providing said input power, said means either an AC voltage current, or a battery, or a DC generator, or an AC generator, or a solar cell, or a DC-to-DC inverter;
   b. a means for timing a signal and a current flow, said timing means a pulse width modulator, logic chip SG3524N, the current flowing through either a first channel output, or a second channel output, the current flowing from said first channel output through a first optical isolator, said isolator an H11D3, and through a first NPN power transistor, said transistor an MJE15024, said first transistor activating a first pair of N-channel MOSFETs, said MOSFETs an IRF260, with current voltage stored as the potential charge in said capacitor bank, said capacitor disconnecting from said input power means by said logic chip;
   c. said timing logic chip connecting to said second channel output, current flowing from said second channel through a second optical isolator, said isolator an H11D3, and through a second NPN power transistor, said second transistor an MJE15024, and activating a second pair of N-channel MOSFETs, said MOSFETs an IRF260, with current voltage stored as the potential charge in said capacitor bank, said capacitor disconnecting from said input power means by said logic chip, said capacitor connecting to said battery, the potential charge discharging into said battery, said timing means disconnecting said capacitor from said battery and connecting said capacitor to said power means.

13. A method of making a solid-state pulse battery charger wherein input power from a primary source is stored as a potential charge in a capacitor bank, said capacitor disconnected from said input power source through a dual timing means, said capacitor connected to a battery to receive the potential charge, said charge discharged into said battery from said capacitor, said battery disconnected from said capacitor through said dual timing means, said capacitor reconnected to said input power source completing a two phase cycle comprising the steps of:
   a. providing a source of input power;
   b. connecting a means for dual-timing said charger to control a signal or current flow through a first channel output comprising a first optical isolator, a first NPN power transistor and a first pair of N-channel MOSFETs;
   c. capturing energy from said current and storing said energy in said capacitor bank thereby charging said capacitor;
   d. switching the flow of said current using said timing device to a second channel comprising a second optical isolator, a second NPN power transistor and a second pair of N-channel MOSFETs, thus disconnecting said capacitor from said power source and connecting said capacitor to said battery;
   e. discharging the potential charge into said battery;
   f. switching the flow of the current using said timing device to said power source and said first channel to complete said cycle.

14. The pulse-charger of claim 13 wherein the means for providing input power is an AC voltage current.

15. The pulse-charger of claim 13 wherein the means for providing input power is a battery.

16. The pulse-charger of claim 13 wherein the means for providing input power is a DC generator.

17. The pulse-charger of claim 13 wherein the means for providing input power is an AC generator.

18. The pulse-charger of claim 13 wherein the means for providing input power is a solar cell.

19. The pulse-charger of claim 13 wherein the means for providing input power is a DC-to-DC inverter.

20. The pulse-charger of claim 13 wherein the means for timing a signal is a pulse width modulator, said modulator an SG3524N logic chip.
21. The pulse-charger of claim 13 wherein the optical isolator is an H11D3 isolator.

22. The pulse-charger of claim 13 wherein the NPN power transistor is an MJE15024 transistor.

23. The pulse-charger of claim 13 wherein the N-channel MOSFET is a IRF260 MOSFET.

24. A battery charger, comprising:
   a supply node;
   a charge node;
   a switch circuit coupled to the supply and the charge nodes and operable to, allow a battery-charge current to
   flow into the charge node during a
   battery-charge period, and prohibit the battery-charge current from flowing into the charge node during
   a battery-rest period.

25. The battery charger of claim 24, further comprising:
   a charge-storage device coupled to the switch circuit; and
   wherein the switch circuit is operable to, allow the battery-charge current to flow from the charge-storage
   device into the charge node during the battery-charge period, and charge the charge-storage device during
   the battery-rest period.

26. The battery charger of claim 24, further comprising:
   a capacitor coupled to the switch circuit; and
   wherein the switch circuit is operable to, allow the battery-charge current to from the capacitor into the charge
   node
   during the battery-charge period, and charge the capacitor during the battery-rest period.

27. A method, comprising:
   charging a battery during a first period of a charge cycle; and
   prohibiting the charging of the battery during a second period of the charge cycle.

28. The method of claim 27 wherein:
   charging the battery comprises charging the battery with a charge current during the first period of the charge
   cycle; and
   prohibiting the charging of the battery comprises prohibiting the charge current from flowing into the battery
   during the second period of the charge cycle.

29. The method of claim 27 wherein:
   charging the battery comprises discharging a capacitor into the battery during the first period of the charge
   cycle; and
   prohibiting the charging of the battery comprises uncoupling the capacitor from the battery during the second
   period of the charge cycle.

30. The method of claim 27, further comprising:
   wherein charging the battery comprises discharging a capacitor into the battery during the first period of the
   charge cycle;
   wherein prohibiting the charging of the battery comprises uncoupling the capacitor from the battery during the
   second period of the charge cycle; and
   charging the capacitor during the second period of the charge cycle.

31. A method, comprising:
   discharging a charge-storage device into a battery during a first period of a battery-charge cycle; and
   uncoupling the charge-storage device from the battery and charging the charge-storage device during a
   second period of the battery-charge cycle.

32. The method of claim 31 wherein uncoupling the charge-storage device comprises uncoupling the charge-
storage device from the battery before commencing charging of the charge-storage device.

33. The method of claim 31 wherein uncoupling the charge-storage device comprises uncoupling the charge-
storage device from the battery after commencing charging of the charge-storage device.

34. The method of claim 31 wherein uncoupling the charge-storage device comprises simultaneously uncoupling
the charge-storage device from the battery and commencing charging of the charge-storage device.
Notes:
The following information is NOT part of John’s patent. It is information intended to be helpful, but as it is not coming from John it must be considered to be opinion and not fact. In the above diagrams, the SG3524N integrated circuit is likely to be unfamiliar to many readers, and an examination of the specification sheet does not make it obvious which pin connections are used in John’s circuit. The following pin connections are believed to be correct, but cannot be guaranteed.

In addition to these SG3524N pin connections, it is suggested that pins 1, 4 and 5 be connected to ground instead of just pin 8, and that a 100nF capacitor be connected from pin 9 to ground. Pins 3 and 10 are left unconnected. The pinouts for the chip are:

![SG3524N Pinout Diagram]
ELECTRICAL-ENERGY-STORAGE UNIT UTILISING CERAMIC AND INTEGRATED-CIRCUIT TECHNOLOGIES FOR REPLACEMENT OF ELECTROCHEMICAL BATTERIES

This patent shows an electrical storage method which is reputed to power an electric car for a 500 mile trip on a charge taking only five minutes to complete. This document is a very slightly re-worded copy of the original. It has been pointed out by Mike Furness that while a five minute recharge is feasible, it is not practical, calling for cables with a six-inch diameter. Also, the concept of recharging stations as suggested is also rather improbable as the electrical supply needed would rival that of a power station. However, if the charging time were extended to night time, then it would allow substantial driving range during the day time.

ABSTRACT
An Electrical-Energy-Storage Unit (EESU) has as a basis material a high-permittivity, composition-modified barium titanate ceramic powder. This powder is double coated with the first coating being aluminium oxide and the second coating calcium magnesium aluminosilicate glass. The components of the EESU are manufactured with the use of classical ceramic fabrication techniques which include screen printing alternating multi-layers of nickel electrodes and high-permittivity composition-modified barium titanate powder, sintering to a closed-pore porous body, followed by hot-isostatic pressing to a void-free body. The components are configured into a multi-layer array with the use of a solder-bump technique as the enabling technology so as to provide a parallel configuration of components that has the capability to store electrical energy in the range of 52 kWH. The total weight of an EESU with this range of electrical energy storage is about 336 pounds.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

1. Field of the Invention
This invention relates generally to energy-storage devices, and relates more particularly to high-permittivity ceramic components utilised in an array configuration for application in ultra high electrical-energy storage devices.

2. Description of the Relevant Art
The internal-combustion-engine (ICE) powered vehicles have as their electrical energy sources a generator and battery system. This electrical system powers the vehicle accessories, which include the radio, lights, heating, and air conditioning. The generator is driven by a belt and pulley system and some of its power is also used to recharge the battery when the ICE is in operation. The battery initially provides the required electrical power to operate an electrical motor that is used to turn the ICE during the starting operation and the ignition system.

The most common batteries in use today are:
Flooded lead-acid,
Sealed gel lead-acid,
Nickel-Cadmium (Ni-Cad),
Nickel Metal Hydride (NiMH), and
Nickel-Zinc (Ni-Z).

References on the subject of electrochemical batteries include the following:
K. A. Nishimura, "NiCd Battery", Science Electronics FAQ V1.00: Nov. 20, 1996;
Ovonics, Inc., "Product Data Sheet": no date;
Evercel, Inc., "Battery Data Sheet—Model 100": no date;
B. Dickinson et al., "Issues and Benefits with Fast Charging Industrial Batteries", AeroVeronent, Inc. article: no date.

Each specific type of battery has characteristics, which make it either more or less desirable to use in a specific application. Cost is always a major factor and the NiMH battery tops the list in price with the flooded lead-acid battery being the most inexpensive. Evercel manufactures the Ni-Z battery and by a patented process, with the
One aspect of the present invention is that the materials used to produce the energy-storage unit, EESU, are not explosive, corrosive, or hazardous. The basis material, a high-permittivity calcined composition-modified barium titanate powder is an inert powder and is described in the following references: S. A. Bruno, D. K. Swanson, and I. Burn, J. Am Ceram. Soc. 76, 1233 (1993); P. Hansen, U.S. Pat. No. 6,078,494, issued Jun. 20, 2000. The most cost-effective material that can be used for the conduction paths is nickel. Nickel as a metal is not hazardous and only becomes a problem if it is in solution such as in deposition of electroless nickel. None of the EESU materials will explode when being recharged or impacted. Thus the EESU is a safe product when used in electric vehicles, buses, bicycles, tractors, or any device that is used for transportation or to perform work. It could also be used for storing electrical power generated from solar voltaic cells or other alternative sources for residential, commercial, or industrial applications. The EESU will also allow power averaging of power plants utilising SPVC or wind technology and will have the capability to provide this function by storing sufficient electrical energy so that when the sun is not shining or the wind is not blowing they can meet the energy requirements of residential, commercial, and industrial sites.

Another aspect of the present invention is that the EESU initial specifications will not degrade due to being fully discharged or recharged. Deep cycling the EESU through the life of any commercial product that may use it will not cause the EESU specifications to be degraded. The EESU can also be rapidly charged without damaging the material or reducing its life. The cycle time to fully charge a 52 kWh EESU would be in the range of 4 to 6 minutes with sufficient cooling of the power cables and connections. This and the ability of a bank of EESUs to store sufficient energy to supply 400 electric vehicles or more with a single charge will allow electrical energy stations that have the same features as the present day gasoline stations for the ICE cars. The bank of EESUs will store the energy being delivered to it from the present day utility power grid during the night when demand is low and then deliver the energy when the demand hits a peak. The EESU energy bank will be charging during the peak times but at a rate that is sufficient to provide a full charge of the bank over a 24-hour period or less. This method of electrical power averaging would reduce the number of power generating stations required and the charging energy could also come from alternative sources. These electrical-energy-delivery stations will not have the hazards of the explosive gasoline.

Yet another aspect of the present invention is that the coating of aluminium oxide and calcium magnesium aluminosilicate glass on calcined composition-modified barium titanate powder provides many enhancement features and manufacturing capabilities to the basis material. These coating materials have exceptional high voltage breakdown and when coated on to the above material will increase the breakdown voltage of ceramics comprised of the coated particles from $3 \times 10^6$ V/cm of the uncoated basis material to around $5 \times 10^6$ V/cm or higher. The following reference indicates the dielectric breakdown strength in V/cm of such materials: J. Kuwata et al., "Electrical Properties of Perovskite-Type Oxide Thin-Films Prepared by RF Sputtering", Jpn. J. Appl. Phys., Part 1, 1985, 24(Suppl. 24-2, Proc. Int. Meet. Ferroelectr., 6th), 413-15. This very high voltage breakdown assists in allowing the ceramic EESU to store a large amount of energy due to the following: Stored energy $E = CV^2 / 2$, where $C$ is the capacitance of the EESU and $V$ is the voltage breakdown.
Formula 1, as indicated in F. Sears et al., "Capacitance-Properties of Dielectrics", University Physics, Addison-Wesley Publishing Company, Inc.: Dec. 1957: pp 468-486, where C is the capacitance, V is the voltage across the EESU terminals, and E is the stored energy. This indicates that the energy of the EESU increases with the square of the voltage. Fig.1 indicates that a double array of 2230 energy storage components 9 in a parallel configuration that contain the calcined composition-modified barium titanate powder. Fully densified ceramic components of this powder coated with 100 Angstrom units of aluminium oxide as the first coating 8 and a 100 Angstrom units of calcium magnesium aluminosilicate glass as the second coating 8 can be safely charged to 3500 V. The number of components used in the double array depends on the electrical energy storage requirements of the application. The components used in the array can vary from 2 to 10,000 or more. The total capacitance of this particular array 9 is 31 F which will allow 52,220 W-h of energy to be stored as derived by Formula 1.

These coatings also assist in significantly lowering the leakage and ageing of ceramic components comprised of the calcined composition-modified barium titanate powder to a point where they will not effect the performance of the EESU. In fact, the discharge rate of the ceramic EESU will be lower than 0.1% per 30 days which is approximately an order of magnitude lower than the best electrochemical battery.

A significant advantage of the present invention is that the calcium magnesium aluminosilicate glass coating assists in lowering the sintering and hot-isostatic-pressing temperatures to 800°C. This lower temperature eliminates the need to use expensive platinum, palladium, or palladium-silver alloy as the terminal metal. In fact, this temperature is in a safe range that allows nickel to be used, providing a major cost saving in material expense and also power usage during the hot-isostatic-pressing process. Also, since the glass becomes easily deformable and flowable at these temperatures it will assist in removing the voids from the EESU material during the hot-isostatic-pressing process. The manufacturer of such systems is Flow Autoclave Systems, Inc. For this product to be successful it is mandatory that all voids be removed to assist in ensuring that the high voltage breakdown can be obtained. Also, the method described in this patent of coating the calcium magnesium aluminosilicate glass ensures that the hot-isostatic-pressed double-coated composition-modified barium titanate high-relative-permittivity layer is uniform and homogeneous.

Yet another aspect of the present invention is that each component of the EESU is produced by screen-printing multiple layers of nickel electrodes with screening ink from nickel powder. Interleaved between nickel electrodes are dielectric layers with screening ink from calcined double-coated high-permittivity calcined composition-modified barium titanate powder. A unique independent dual screen-printing and layer-drying system is used for this procedure. Each screening ink contains appropriate plastic resins, surfactants, lubricants, and solvents, resulting in a proper rheology (the study of the deformation and flow of matter) for screen printing. The number of these layers can vary depending on the electrical energy storage requirements. Each layer is dried before the next layer is screen printed. Each nickel electrode layer 12 is alternately preferentially aligned to each of two opposite sides of the component automatically during this process as indicated in Fig.2. These layers are screen printed on top of one another in a continuous manner. When the specified number of layers is achieved, the component layers are then baked to obtain by further drying sufficient handling strength of the green plastic body. Then the array is cut into individual components to the specified sizes.

Alternatively, the dielectric powder is prepared by blending with plastic binders, surfactants, lubricants, and solvents to obtain a slurry with the proper rheology for tape casting. In tape casting, the powder-binder mixture is extruded by pressure through a narrow slit of appropriate aperture height for the thickness desired of the green plastic ceramic layer on to a moving plastic-tape carrier, known as a doctor-blade web coater. After drying, to develop sufficient handling strength of the green plastic ceramic layer, this layer is peeled away from the plastic-tape carrier. The green plastic ceramic layer is cut into sheets to fit the screen-printing frame in which the
A - 473

electrode pattern is applied with nickel ink. After drying of the electrode pattern, the sheets are stacked and then pressed together to assure a well-bonded lamination. The laminate is then cut into components of the desired shape and size.

The components are treated for the binder-burnout and sintering steps. The furnace temperature is slowly ramped up to 350°C and held for a specified length of time. This heating is accomplished over a period of several hours so as to avoid any cracking and delamination of the body. Then the temperature is ramped up to 850°C and held for a specified length of time. After this process is completed the components are then properly prepared for the hot isostatic pressing at 700°C and the specified pressure. This process will eliminate voids. After this process, the components are then side-lapped on the connection side to expose the preferentially aligned nickel electrodes. Then these sides are dipped into ink from nickel powder that has been prepared to have the desired rheology. Then side conductors of nickel are dipped into the same ink and then are clamped on to each side of the components that have been dipped into the nickel powder ink. The components are then fired at 800°C for 20 minutes to bond the nickel bars to the components as indicated in Fig.3. The components are then assembled into a first-level array, Fig.3, with the use of the proper tooling and solder-bump technology. Then the first-level arrays are assembled to form a second-level array, Fig.4, by stacking the first array layers on top of one another in a preferential mode. Then nickel bars are attached on each side of the second array as indicated in Fig.4. Then the EESU is packaged to form its final assembly configuration.

The features of this patent indicate that the ceramic EESU, as indicated in Table 1, outperforms the electrochemical battery in every parameter. This technology will provide mission-critical capability to many sections of the energy-storage industry.

| Table 1 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NiMH | LA(Gel) | Ceramic EESU | Ni—Z |
| Weight (pounds) | 1,716 | 3,646 | 336 | 1,920 |
| Volume (cu. inch) | 17,881 | 43,045 | 2,005 | 34,780 |
| Discharge rate | 5% in 30 days | 1% in 30 days | 0.1% in 30 days | 1% in 30 days |
| Charging time (full) | 1.5 hours | 8.0 hours | 3 to 6 minutes | 1.5 hours |
| Life reduced with deep cycle use | moderate | high | none | moderate |
| Hazardous materials | Yes | Yes | None | Yes |
This EESU will have the potential to revolutionise the electric vehicle (EV) industry, the storage and use of electrical energy generated from alternative sources with the present utility grid system as a backup source for residential, commercial, and industrial sites, and the electric energy point of sales to EVs. The EESU will replace the electrochemical battery in any of the applications that are associated with the above business areas or in any business area where its features are required.

The features and advantages described in the specifications are not all inclusive, and particularly, many additional features and advantages will be apparent to one of ordinary skill in the art in view of the description, specification and claims made here. Moreover, it should be noted that the language used in the specification has been principally selected for readability and instructional purposes, and may not have been selected to delineate or circumscribe the inventive subject matter, resort to the claims being necessary to determine such inventive subject matter.

**BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS**

![Diagram 1](image1.png)

**Figure 1**

Fig.1 indicates a schematic of 2320 energy storage components 9 hooked up in parallel with a total capacitance of 31 Farads. The maximum charge voltage 8 of 3500 V is indicated with the cathode end of the energy storage components 9 hooked to system ground 10.

![Diagram 2](image2.png)

**Figure 2**

Fig.2 is a cross-section side view of the electrical-energy-storage unit component. This figure indicates the alternating layers of nickel electrode layers 12 and high-permittivity composition-modified barium titanate dielectric layers 11. This figure also indicate the preferentially aligning concept of the nickel electrode layers 12 so that each storage layer can be hooked up in parallel.
Fig. 3 is side view of a single-layer array indicating the attachment of individual components 15 with the nickel side bars 14 attached to two preferentially aligned copper conducting sheets 13.

Fig. 4 is a side view of a double-layer array with copper array connecting nickel bars 16 attaching the two arrays via the edges of the preferentially aligned copper conductor sheets 13. This figure indicates the method of attaching the components in a multi-layer array to provide the required energy storage.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference No.</th>
<th>Refers to this in the drawings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>System maximum voltage of 3500 V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>2320 energy-storage components hooked up in parallel with a total capacitance of 31 Farad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>System ground</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>High-permittivity calcined composition-modified barium titanate dielectric layers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Preferentially aligned nickel electrode layers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Copper conductor sheets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Nickel sidebars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Components</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Copper array connecting nickel bars</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

Fig. 1, Fig. 2, Fig. 3, and Fig. 4 of the drawings and the following description depict various preferred embodiments of the present invention for purposes of illustration only. One skilled in the art will readily recognise from the following discussion those alternative embodiments of the structures and methods illustrated herein may be employed without departing from the principles of the invention described here. While the invention will be described in conjunction with the preferred embodiments, it will be understood that they are not intended to limit the invention to those embodiments. On the contrary, the invention is intended to cover alternatives, modifications, and equivalents, which may be included within the spirit and scope of the invention as defined by the claims.

Preparation of the high-permittivity calcined composition-modified barium titanate powder that is used to fabricate the EESU is explained as follows. Wet-chemical-prepared powders of high-purity as well as composition-modified barium titanate with narrow particle-size distribution have been produced with clear advantages over those prepared by solid-state reaction of mechanically mixed, ball-milled, and calcined powdered ingredients. The
compositional and particle-size uniformity attained with a coprecipitated-prepared powder is vastly superior to that with a conventional-prepared powder. The microstructures of ceramics formed from these calcined wet-chemical-prepared powders are uniform in grain size and can also result in smaller grain size. Electrical properties are improved so that higher relative permittivities and increased dielectric breakdown strengths can be obtained. Further improvement can be obtained by the elimination of voids within the sintered ceramic body with subsequent hot isostatic pressing.

High-relative-permittivity dielectrics have inherent problems, namely ageing, fatigue, degradation, and decay of the electrical properties, which limit their application. The use of surface-coated powders in which the surface region is comprised of one or two materials different in composition from that of the powder overcomes these problems provided that the compositions are appropriately chosen.

Among ceramics, alumina [aluminium oxide (Al₂O₃)], and among glasses, calcium magnesium aluminosilicate (CaO,MgO,Al₂O₃,SiO₂) glasses are the best dielectrics in terms of having the highest dielectric breakdown strengths and to seal the high-relative-permittivity dielectric powder particles so as to eliminate or significantly reduce their inherent problems.

A glass with a given composition at temperatures below its glass transition temperature range, which is in the neighbourhood of its strain-point temperature, is in a fully rigid condition, but at temperatures above this range is in a viscous-flow condition, its viscosity decreasing with increasing temperature. The application of hot isostatic pressing to a sintered closed-pore porous ceramic body comprised of sufficient-thickness glass-coated powder will lead to void elimination provided the glass is in the viscous-flow condition where it is easily deformable and flowable.

The wet-chemical-prepared and calcined composition-modified barium titanate powder is accordingly coated with these layers of, first, alumina, and second, a calcium magnesium aluminosilicate glass. After the first layer has been applied by wet-chemical means, the powder is calcined at 1050°C to convert the precursor, aluminium nitrate nonahydrate [Al(NO₃)₃.9H₂O] to aluminium oxide (corundum) [α-Al₂O₃]. Then the second layer is applied by wet-chemical means with the use of the precursors in the appropriate amounts of each, and in absolute ethanol (CH₃CH₂OH) as the solvent, shown in the accompanying table. After drying, the powder is calcined at 500°C to convert the precursor mixture to a calcium magnesium aluminosilicate glass. It is important that the calcining temperature is not higher than the strain point of the selected glass composition to prevent sticking together of the powder. The glass coating has the further advantage of acting as a sintering aid and allowing a substantially lower firing temperature for densification of the ceramic body particularly during the hot-isostatic-pressing step.

Another significant advantage of the calcium magnesium aluminosilicate glass coating is that sintering and densification temperatures are sufficiently lowered to allow the use of nickel conductor electrodes in place of the conventional expensive platinum, palladium, or palladium-silver alloy ones.

Preparation of the Calcined Composition-Modified Barium Titanate Powder is Indicated by the Following Process Steps.

A solution of the precursors: Ba(NO₃)₂, Ca(NO₃)₂.4H₂O, Nd(NO₃)₃.6H₂O, Y(NO₃)₃.4H₂O, Mn(CH₃COO)₂.4H₂O, ZrO(NO₃)₂, and [CH₃CH(O—)COONH₄]₂Ti(OH)₂, as selected from the reference; Sigma-Aldrich, Corp., "Handbook of Fine Chemicals and Laboratory Equipment", 2000-2001, in de-ionised water heated to 80°C is made in the proportionate amount in weight percent for each of the seven precursors as shown in the most right-hand column of Table 3. A separate solution of (CH₃)₄NOH somewhat in excess amount than required, as shown in Table 4, is made in de-ionised water, free of dissolved carbon dioxide (CO₂) and heated to 80°C-85°C. The two solutions are mixed by pumping the heated ingredient streams simultaneously through a coaxial fluid jet mixer. A slurry of the co-precipitated powder is produced and collected in a drown-out vessel. The co-precipitated powder is refluxed in the drown-out vessel at 90°-95° C. for 12 hr and then filtered, de-ionised-water washed, and dried. Alternatively, the powder may be collected by centrifugal sedimentation. An advantage of (CH₃)₄NOH as the strong base reactant is that there are no metal element ion residuals to wash away anyway. Any residual (CH₃)₄NOH, like any residual anions from the precursors, is harmless, because removal by volatilisation and decomposition occurs during the calcining step. The powder contained in a silica glass tray or tube is calcined at 1050°C in air. Alternatively, an alumina ceramic tray can be used as the container for the powder during calcining.

### TABLE 2
Composition-modified barium titanate with metal element atom fractions given for an optimum result, as demonstrated in the reference: P. Hansen, U.S. Pat. No. 6,078,494, issued Jan. 20, 2000.
Composition-modified barium titanate with metal element atom fractions as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metal Element</th>
<th>Atom Fraction</th>
<th>Atomic Weight</th>
<th>Weight %</th>
<th>Multiplier (Total)</th>
<th>Product Weight %</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ba</td>
<td>0.9575</td>
<td>137.327</td>
<td>98.5285</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>95.95748</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ca</td>
<td>0.0400</td>
<td>40.078</td>
<td>1.20125</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>3.62228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nd</td>
<td>0.0025</td>
<td>144.240</td>
<td>0.27020</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>0.42024</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yt</td>
<td>0.0025</td>
<td>88.90585</td>
<td>0.39839</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>0.21005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ti</td>
<td>0.8150</td>
<td>47.867</td>
<td>69.92390</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>39.07161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zr</td>
<td>0.1800</td>
<td>91.224</td>
<td>29.43157</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>16.42032</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Total:** 1.0000

**Total Weight %:** 100.00000

---

**TABLE 3**

Water-soluble precursors and reagent strong base for wet chemical-prepared powder of a composition-modified barium titanate by a coprecipitation procedure.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Precursor</th>
<th>Formula</th>
<th>FW</th>
<th>Mol fraction</th>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Weight %</th>
<th>Multiplier (Total)</th>
<th>Product Weight %</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Barium nitrate</td>
<td>Ba(NO$_3$)$_2$</td>
<td>261.34</td>
<td>0.9575</td>
<td>250.233050</td>
<td>95.95748</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>95.95748</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium nitrate tetrahydrate</td>
<td>Ca(NO$_3$)$_2$·4$\text{H}_2$O</td>
<td>236.45</td>
<td>0.0400</td>
<td>9.446000</td>
<td>98.5285</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>3.62228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neodymium nitrate hexahydrate</td>
<td>Nd(NO$_3$)$_2$·6$\text{H}_2$O</td>
<td>438.25</td>
<td>0.0025</td>
<td>1.093875</td>
<td>0.27020</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>0.42024</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yttrium nitrate tetrahydrate</td>
<td>Y(NO$_3$)$_2$·4$\text{H}_2$O</td>
<td>346.88</td>
<td>0.0025</td>
<td>0.88745</td>
<td>0.39839</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>0.21005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manganese(II) acetate tetrahydrate</td>
<td>Mn(CH$_3$COO)$_2$·4$\text{H}_2$O</td>
<td>245.08</td>
<td>0.0025</td>
<td>0.61270</td>
<td>0.27020</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>0.21005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxozirconium(IV) nitrate</td>
<td>ZrO(NO$_3$)$_2$</td>
<td>231.23</td>
<td>0.1800</td>
<td>41.02140</td>
<td>98.5285</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>14.04023</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bs(ammonium lactate) dihydroxotitanium(IV)</td>
<td>(CH$_3$CH(C—)COONH$_4$)2Ti(OH)$_2$</td>
<td>294.08</td>
<td>0.0150</td>
<td>239.67520</td>
<td>84.75175</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>84.33396</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Readable strong base</td>
<td>(CH$_3$)$_2$NH</td>
<td>91.16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Total:** 1.0000

**Total Weight %:** 100.00000

**TABLE 4**

Composition-modified barium titanate with metal element atom fractions as follows:
Calculation of minimum amount of \((\text{CH}_3)_4\text{NOH}\) required for 100 g of the precursor mixture

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Precursor</th>
<th>FW</th>
<th>Wt %</th>
<th>Wt %/FW</th>
<th>Reactant base multiplier</th>
<th>Mol of base required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(\text{Ba(NO}_3\text{)}_2)</td>
<td>261.34</td>
<td>48.09898</td>
<td>0.184048</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.368095</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{Ca(NO}_3\text{)}_2 \cdot 4\text{H}_2\text{O})</td>
<td>236.15</td>
<td>1.81568</td>
<td>0.007689</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.015377</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{Nd(NO}_3\text{)}_3 \cdot 6\text{H}_2\text{O})</td>
<td>438.35</td>
<td>0.21065</td>
<td>0.000481</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.001442</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{Y(NO}_3\text{)}_3 \cdot 4\text{H}_2\text{O})</td>
<td>346.98</td>
<td>0.15300</td>
<td>0.000441</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.001323</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{Mn(CH}_3\text{COO)}_2 \cdot 4\text{H}_2\text{O})</td>
<td>245.08</td>
<td>0.10806</td>
<td>0.000441</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.000882</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{ZrO(NO}_3\text{)}_2)</td>
<td>231.23</td>
<td>7.34097</td>
<td>0.031747</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.063495</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>([\text{CH}_3\text{CH(O—)}\text{COONH}_4]_2\text{Ti(OH)}_2)</td>
<td>294.08</td>
<td>42.27266</td>
<td>0.143745</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.287491</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total:</strong></td>
<td><strong>100.00000</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>0.738105</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>0.738105</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reactant strong base

\((\text{CH}_3)_4\text{NOH}\)

91.15

Note: The weight of \((\text{CH}_3)_4\text{NOH}\) required is accordingly a minimum of \((0.738105 \text{ mol}) \times (91.15 \text{ g/mol}) = 67.278 \text{ g}\) for 100 g of the precursor mixture. Tetramethylammonium hydroxide \((\text{CH}_3)_4\text{NOH}\) is a strong base.

Coating of Aluminium Oxide on Calcined Modified Barium Titanate Powder

Barium titanate \(\text{BaTiO}_3\)

FW 233.19
d \(6.080 \text{ g/cm}^3\)

Aluminium oxide \(\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3\)

FW 101.96
d \(3.980 \text{ g/cm}^3\)

Precursor, aluminium nitrate nonahydrate, as selected from the reference: Sigma-Aldrich Corp., "Handbook of Fine Chemicals and Laboratory Equipment", 2000-2001. \(\text{Al(NO}_3\text{)}_3 \cdot 9\text{H}_2\text{O}\) FW 375.13

For Calcined Aluminium Oxide \((\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3)\) Coating of 100 Angstrom units Thickness on Calcined Modified Barium Titanate Powder 100 Angstrom units = 10-6 cm 1.0 m² = 104 cm²

area thickness of \(\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3\) coating volume \((10^4 \text{ cm}^2 / \text{g})(10^{-6} \text{ cm}) = 10^{-2} \text{ cm}^3 / \text{g} - - - \) of calcined powder

\[
\frac{(10^{-2} \text{ cm}^3 \text{ volume } \text{Al}_2\text{O}_3 \text{ coating}) \times (3.98 \text{ g/cm}^3 \text{ density of } \text{Al}_2\text{O}_3)}{\text{g of calcined powder}} = 39.8 \times 10^{-3} \frac{\text{g of } \text{Al}_2\text{O}_3 \text{ coating}}{\text{g of calcined powder}}
\]

or

\[
39.8 \frac{\text{mg of } \text{Al}_2\text{O}_3 \text{ coating}}{\text{g of calcined powder}}
\]

\(\text{Al(NO}_3\text{)}_3 \cdot 9\text{H}_2\text{O} \text{ (FW 375.13)}(2)=750.26\)

\(\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3 \text{ FW 101.96}=101.96\)

750.26/101.96=7.358

\[
\frac{(7.358)(39.8 \text{ mg of } \text{Al}_2\text{O}_3 \text{ coating})}{\text{g of calcined powder}} = \frac{292.848 \text{ mg of } \text{Al(NO}_3\text{)}_3 \cdot 9\text{H}_2\text{O}}{\text{g of calcined powder}}
\]

For an aluminium oxide \((\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3)\) coating of 100 Angstrom units thickness on calcined modified barium titanate powder with particle volume of 1.0 \(\mu\text{m}^3\), 39.8 mg of \(\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3\) are required per g of this powder, corresponding to 292.848 mg of the aluminium nitrate nonahydrate \([\text{Al(NO}_3\text{)}_3 \cdot 9\text{H}_2\text{O}]\) precursor required per g of this powder.

Coating of Calcium Magnesium Aluminosilicate Glass on Aluminium Oxide Coated Calcined Modified Barium Titanate Powder

| Calcium methoxide  | Ca(OCH3)2 | 101.15 |
| Calcium isopropoxide | Ca[(CH3)2CHO] | 158.25 |
| Magnesium methoxide  | Mg(OCH3)2 | 86.37 |
| Magnesium ethoxide  | Mg(OCH2CH3)2 | 114.43 |
| Aluminium ethoxide  | Al(OCH3)3 | 162.16 |
| Aluminium isopropoxide | Al[(CH3)2CHO]3 | 204.25 |
| Aluminium butoxide  | Al(CH2CH(OCH3)2) | 246.33 |
| Tetraethyl orthosilicate | Si(OCH2CH3)4 | 208.33 |

Select glass composition, e.g.,

CaO.MgO.2Al2O3.8SiO2 and accordingly the precursors:

\[
\begin{align*}
1 \text{ mol} & \quad (158.25 \text{ g}) \text{ calcium isopropoxide} \\
1 \text{ mol} & \quad (114.43 \text{ g}) \text{ magnesium ethoxide} \\
4 \text{ mol} & \quad (817.00 \text{ g}) \text{ aluminium isopropoxide} \\
8 \text{ mol} & \quad (1666.64 \text{ g}) \text{ tetraethyl orthosilicate}
\end{align*}
\]

\[2756.32 \text{ g for 1.0 mol glass} \]

Prepare Mixture of these Precursors in Absolute Ethanol (to Avoid Hydrolysis) and in Dry-Air Environment (Dry Box) (also to Avoid Hydrolysis).

Glass Composition: CaO.MgO.2Al2O3.8SiO2 or CaMgAl4Si8O24

| 1 mol (56.08 g) | CaO |
| 1 mol (40.30 g) | MgO |
| 2 mol (101.96 g x 2 = 203.92 g) | Al2O3 |
| 8 mol (60.08 g x 8 = 480.64 g) | SiO2 |

glass FW total 780.98 g/mol
Density of glass: about 2.50 g/cm³

Calcined modified barium titanate powder
Particle volume: 1.0 μm³ or 1.0 (10⁻⁴ cm)³ = 10⁻¹² cm³
so there are 10⁻¹² particles/cm³ (assumption of no voids)
Particle area: 6 μm² or (6)(10⁻⁴ cm)² = 6×10⁻⁸ cm²;
Particle area/cm³ (no voids):
(6×10⁻⁸ cm²/particle)(10¹² particles/cm³) = 6×10⁴ cm²/cm³ or 6 m²/cm³.

Then for density of 6 g/cm³, the result is:

\[
\frac{6 \text{ m}²/\text{cm}³}{5 \text{ g/cm}³} = 1.0 \text{ m}²/\text{g}
\]

For Calcined Glass Coating of 100 Angstrom units Thickness on Calcined Powder:
100 Angstrom units = $10^{-6}$ cm $1.0 \text{ m}^2 = 10^4 \text{ cm}^2$

$(10^4 \text{ cm}^2/\text{g})(10^{-6} \text{ cm}) = 10^{-2} \text{ cm}^3/\text{g}$ of calcined powder of glass coating and then

\[
\frac{(10^{-2} \text{ cm}^3/\text{g} \text{ of glass coating})}{\text{g of calcined powder}} \times (2.50 \text{ g/cm}^3 \text{ density of glass}) = \frac{25.0 \times 10^{-3} \text{ g of glass coating}}{\text{g of calcined powder}} \text{ or } \frac{25.0 \text{ mg of glass coating}}{\text{g of calcined powder}}
\]

Precursor mixture FW 2756.32 = 3.529
Glass FW 780.98

\[
\frac{(3.529)(25.0 \text{ mg of glass coating})}{\text{g of calcined powder}} = 88.228 \text{ mg of precursor mixture}
\]

For a CaMgAl$_4$Si$_8$O$_{24}$ glass coating of 100 Angstrom units thickness on calcined modified barium titanate powder with particle volume of $1.0 \mu\text{m}^3$, 25.0 mg of this glass are required per g of this powder, corresponding to 88.228 mg of the precursor mixture required per g of this powder.

**Particle Volume and Area**

\[\text{V particle} = a^3 \text{ for cube}\]

If $a = 1.0 \mu\text{m}$, $V = 1.0 \mu\text{m}^3$

\[\text{A particle} = 6a^2 \text{ for cube}\]

If $a = 1.0 \mu\text{m}$, $A = 6 \mu\text{m}^2$

**Particle coating volume**

\[(6a^2)(t), \text{if } t = 100 \text{ Angstrom units} = 10\times10^3 \mu\text{m}, \text{and } 6a^2=6.0 \mu\text{m}^2, \text{then } (6.082 \mu\text{m}^2)(10\times10^{-3} \mu\text{m}) = 60\times10^{-3} \mu\text{m}^3 = V \text{ coating}\]

Ratio of particle coating volume to particle volume $60\times10^{-3} \mu\text{m}^3/1.0 \mu\text{m}^3 = 60\times10^{-3} = 0.06$ or 6%

With the assumption of no voids and absolutely smooth surface, for an ideal cubic particle with volume of $1.0 \mu\text{m}^3$ and for a particle coating of 100 Angstrom units thickness, the coating volume is $60\times10^{-3} \mu\text{m}^3$ or 6.0% that of the particle volume.

**Calculations of the Electrical-Energy-Storage Unit's Weight, Stored Energy, Volume, and Configuration.**

**Assumptions:**

The relative permittivity of the high-permittivity powder is nominally 33,500, as given in the reference: P. Hansen, U.S. Pat. No. 6,078,494, issued Jan. 20, 2000.

* The 100 ß coating of Al2O3 and 100 ß of calcium magnesium aluminosilicate glass will reduce the relative permittivity by 12%.
* $K = 29,480$
  * Energy stored by a capacitor: $E = CV^2/(2\times3600 \text{ s/h}) = \text{W} \cdot \text{h}$
* $C = \text{capacitance in farads}$
* $V = \text{voltage across the terminals of the capacitor}$

It is estimated that is takes 14 hp, 746 watts per hp, to power an electric vehicle running at 60 mph with the lights, radio, and air conditioning on. The energy-storage unit must supply 52,220 W·h or 10,444 W for 5 hours to sustain this speed and energy usage and during this period the EV will have travelled 300 miles. Each energy-storage component has 1000 layers.

\[C = \varepsilon_0 K A/t\]
Voltage breakdown of the energy-storage components material after coating with Al₂O₃ and calcium magnesium aluminosilicate glass will be in the range of 1.0×10⁶ V/cm to 5×10⁶ V/cm or higher. Using the proper voltage breakdown selected from this range could allow the voltage of the energy-storage unit to be 3500 V or higher.

One hp = 746 W

**EXAMPLE**

Capacitance of one layer = 8.854 × 10⁻¹² F / m × 2.948 × 10⁴ × 6.45 × 10⁻⁴ m² / 12.7 × 10⁻⁶ m

\[ C = 0.000013235 \text{ F} \]

With 1000 layers:

\[ C = 0.013235 \text{ F} \]

The required energy storage is

\[ E_t = 14 \text{ hp} \times 746 \text{ W/hp} \times 5 = 52,220 \text{ W·h} \]

The total required capacitance of the energy-storage unit:

\[ C_T = E_t \times 2 \times 3600 \text{ s/h} / V^2 = 52,220 \text{ W·h} \times 2 \times 3600 \text{ s/h}/(3500 \text{ V})^2 \]

\[ C_T = 31 \text{ F} \]

Number of capacitance components required:

\[ N_c = 31 \text{ F} / 0.013235 \text{ F} = 2320 \]

Volume and weight of energy-storage unit:

Volume of the dielectric material:

\[ \text{Volume} = \text{area} \times \text{thickness} \times \text{number of layers} \]
\[ = 6.45 \text{ cm}^2 \times 12.72 \times 10^{-4} \text{ cm} \times 1000 \]
\[ = 8.2 \text{ cm}^3 \]

Total volume = 8.2 cm³ × number of components (2320) = 19,024 cm³

Density of the dielectric material = 6.5 g/cm³

Weight of each component = density × volume = 53.3 g

Total weight of the dielectric material = 53.3 g × 2320 / 454 g per pound = 272 pounds

Volume of the nickel conductor layers:

Thickness of the nickel layer is 1×10⁻⁶ m

Volume of each layer = 6.45 cm²×1.0×10⁻⁴ cm × 1000 = 0.645 cm³

Density of nickel = 8.902 g/cm³

Weight of nickel layers for each component = 5.742 g

Total weight of nickel = 34 pounds

Total number of capacitance layers and volume of the EESU:

Area required for each component to solder bump = 1.1 inch²

A 12 × 12 array will allow 144 components for each layer of the first array
19 layers of the second array will provide 2736 components which are more than enough to meet the required 2320 components. The distance between the components will be adjusted so that 2320 components will be in each EESU. The second array area will remain the same.

The total weight of the EESU (est.) = 336 pounds

The total volume of the EESU (est.) = 13.5 inches × 13.5 inches × 11 inches = 2005 inches³ which includes the weight of the container and connecting material.

The total stored energy of the EESU = 52,220 W·h
From the above description, it will be apparent that the invention disclosed herein provides a novel and advantageous electrical-energy-storage unit composed of unique materials and processes. The foregoing discussion discloses and describes merely exemplary methods and embodiments of the present invention. As will be understood by those familiar with the art, the invention may be embodied in other specific forms and utilise other materials without departing from the spirit or essential characteristics thereof. Accordingly, the disclosure of the present invention is intended to be illustrative, but not limiting, of the scope of the invention, which is set forth in the following claims.

CLAIMS
1. A method for making an electrical-energy-storage unit comprising components fabricated by the method steps as follow;

   a) preparing a wet-chemical-prepared calcined composition-modified barium titanate powder derived from a solution of precursors: Ba(NO$_3$)$_2$, Ca(NO$_3$)$_2$.4H$_2$O, Nd(NO$_3$)$_3$.6H$_2$O, Y(NO$_3$)$_3$.4H$_2$O, Mn(CH$_3$COO)$_2$.4H$_2$O, ZrO(N$_3$O)$_2$, and [CH$_3$CH(O—)COONH$_4$]$_2$Ti(OH)$_2$ in de-ionised water heated to 80°C, and a separate solution of (CH$_3$)$_4$NOH made in de-ionised water and heated to 80-85°C, then mixing the solutions by pumping the heated ingredient streams simultaneously through a coaxial fluid mixer producing co-precipitated powder, then collecting the co-precipitated powder in a drown-out vessel and refluxing at a temperature of 90-95°C for 12 hours, then filtering, washing with de-ionised water, drying, and then calcining 1050°C in air;

   b) fabricating an aluminium oxide (Al$_2$O$_3$) coating of 100 Angstrom units thickness on to the wet-chemical-prepared calcined composition-modified barium titanate powder, with the use of aluminium nitrate nonahydrate precursor applied by wet chemical means, then calcining at 1050°C, resulting in a single-coated calcined composition-modified barium titanate powder;

   c) fabricating on to the alumina-coated composition-modified barium titanate powder, a second uniform coating of 100 Angstrom units of calcium magnesium aluminosilicate glass derived from alcohol-soluble precursors: calcium methoxide or calcium isopropoxide, magnesium methoxide or magnesium ethoxide, aluminium ethoxide or aluminium isopropoxide or aluminium isooctoxide, and tetraethyl orthosilicate are applied by wet chemical means which upon calcining at 500°C results in a double-coated composition-modified barium titanate powder;

   d) blending, this double-coated composition-modified barium titanate powder with a screen-printing ink containing appropriate plastic resins surfactants, lubricants, and solvents to provide a suitable rheology for screen printing;

   e) screen-printing into interleaved multi-layers of alternating offset nickel electrode layers 12 and double-coated calcined composition-modified barium titanate high-relative-permittivity layers 11 with the use of screening inks having the proper rheology for each of the layers;

   f) drying and cutting the screen-punted multi-layer components 15 into a specified rectangular area;

   g) sintering the screen-printed multi-layer components 15, first at a temperature of 350°C for a specified length of time, then at 850°C for a specified length of time, to form closed-pore porous ceramic bodies; and

   h) hot isostatically pressing the closed-pore porous ceramic bodies, at a temperature of 700°C with a specified pressure, into a void-free condition;

   i) grinding and each side of the component to expose the alternating offset interleaved nickel electrodes 12;

   j) connecting nickel side bars 14 to each side of the components 15, that have the interleaved and alternating offset nickel electrodes 12 exposed, by applying nickel ink with the proper rheology to each side and clamping the combinations together;

   k) heating the components and side nickel bar combination 14-15 800°C, and time duration of 20 minutes to bond them together;

   l) wave soldering each side of the conducting bars;

   m) assembling the components 15 with the connected nickel side bars 14 into the first array, utilising unique tooling and solder-bump technology;
n) assembling the first arrays into the second array;

o) assembling the second arrays into the EESU final assembly.

2. The method of claim 1 wherein a second coating of glass is provided on to the double-coated composition-modified barium titanate powder being in contact with the nickel electrodes and having an applied working voltage of 3500 V across the parallel electrodes.

3. The method of claim 1 wherein a dielectric voltage breakdown strength of $5.0 \times 10^6$ V/cm was achieved across the electrodes of the components.

4. The method of claim 1 wherein the method provides an ease of manufacturing due to the softening temperature of the calcium magnesium aluminosilicate glass allowing the relatively low hot-isostatic-pressing temperatures of $700^\circ$C which in turn provides a void-free ceramic body.

5. The method of claim 1 wherein the method provides an ease of fabrication due to the softening temperature of the calcium magnesium aluminosilicate glass allowing the relatively low hot-isostatic-pressing temperatures of $700^\circ$C which in turn allows the use of nickel for the conduction-path electrodes rather than expensive platinum, palladium, or palladium-silver alloy.

6. The method of claim 1 wherein the method provides an ease of fabrication due to the softening temperature of the calcium magnesium aluminosilicate glass allowing the relatively low hot-isostatic-pressing temperatures of $700^\circ$C, which feature along with the coating method provided a uniform-thickness shell of the calcium magnesium aluminosilicate glass and in turn provides hot-isostatic-pressed double-coated composition-modified barium titanate high-relative-permittivity layers that are uniform and homogeneous in microstructure.

7. The method of claim 1 wherein the method provides the double coating of the basis particles of the composition-modified barium titanate powder thereby reducing the leakage and ageing of this material by an order of magnitude of the specification of this basis material, thus reducing the discharge rate to 0.1% per 30 days.

8. The method of claim 1 wherein the method provides a double coating of the composition-modified barium titanate powder, the hot-isostatic-pressing process, the high-density solder-bump packaging, and along with the double-layered array configuration stored 52,220 W·h of electrical energy in a 2005 inches³ container.

9. The method of claim 1 wherein the method provides materials used: water-soluble precursors of barium (Ba), calcium (Ca), titanium (Ti), zirconium (Zr), manganese (Mn), yttrium (Y), neodymium (Nd), forming the composition-modified barium titanate powder, and the metals: nickel (Ni), and copper (Cu), which are not explosive, corrosive, or hazardous.

10. The method of claim 1 wherein the method provides an EESU that is not explosive, corrosive, or hazardous and therefore is a safe product when used in electrical vehicles, which include bicycles, tractors, buses, cars, or any device used for transportation or to perform work.

11. The method of claim 1 wherein the method provides an EESU which can store electrical energy generated from solar voltaic cells or other alternative sources for residential, commercial, or industrial applications.

12. The method of claim 1 wherein the method provides an EESU which can store electrical energy from the present utility grid during the night when the demand for electrical power is low and then deliver the electrical energy during the peak power demand times and thus provide an effective power averaging function.

13. The method of claim 1 wherein the method provides a double coating of the composition-modified barium titanate powder and a hot-isostatic-pressing process which together assists in allowing an applied voltage of 3500 V to a dielectric thickness of $12.76 \times 10^{-6}$ m to be achieved.

14. The method of claim 1 wherein the method provides a EESU which when fully discharged and recharged, the EESU's initial specifications are not degraded.

15. The method of claim 1 wherein the method provides a EESU which can be safely charged to 3500 V and store at least 52.22 kW·h of electrical energy.

16. The method of claim 1 wherein the method provides a EESU at has a total capacitance of at least 31 F.
17. The method of claim 1 wherein the method provides a EESU that can be rapidly charged without damaging the material or reducing its life.
CONVERSION OF ATMOSPHERIC ELECTRIC ENERGY

Please note that this is a re-worded excerpt from this patent. It describes in considerable detail, different methods for abstracting useable electrical power from passive aerial systems. He describes a system with 100 kilowatt output as a “small” system.

Be it known that I, Hermann Plauson, Estonian subject, residing in Hamburg, Germany, have invented certain new and useful improvements in the Conversion of atmospheric Electric Energy, of which the following is a specification.

According to this invention, charges of atmospheric electricity are not directly converted into mechanical energy, and this forms the main difference from previous inventions, but the static electricity which runs to earth through aerial conductors in the form of direct current of very high voltage and low current strength is converted into electro-dynamic energy in the form of high frequency vibrations. Many advantages are thereby obtained and all disadvantages avoided.

The very high voltage of static electricity of a low current strength can be converted by this invention to voltages more suitable for technical purposes and of greater current strength. By the use of closed oscillatory circuits it is possible to obtain electromagnetic waves of various amplitudes and thereby to increase the degree of resonance of such current. Such resonance allows various values of inductance to be chosen which, by tuning the resonance between a motor and the transformer circuit, allows the control of machines driven by this system. Further, such currents have the property of being directly available for various uses, other than driving motors, including lighting, heating and use in electro-chemistry.

Further, with such currents, a series of apparatus may be fed without a direct current supply through conductors and the electro-magnetic high frequency currents may be converted by means of special motors, adapted for electro-magnetic oscillations, into alternating current of low frequency or even into high voltage direct current.

DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

Fig. 1 is an explanatory figure
Fig. 2 is a diagrammatic view of the most simple form.

Fig. 3 shows a method of converting atmospheric electrical energy into a form suitable for use with motors.

Fig. 4 is a diagram showing the protective circuitry.
Fig. 5 is a diagram of an arrangement for providing control

Fig. 6 is an arrangement including a method of control

Fig. 7 shows how the spark gap can be adjusted
Fig. 8 shows a unipolar connection for the motor.

Fig. 9 shows a weak coupled system suitable for use with small power motors.

Fig. 10, Fig. 11 and Fig. 12 show modified arrangements.
Fig. 13 shows a form of inductive coupling for the motor circuit.

Fig. 14 is a modified form of Fig. 13 with inductive coupling.

Fig. 15 is an arrangement with non-inductive motor.
Fig. 16 is an arrangement with coupling by capacitor.

Fig. 17, Fig. 18 and Fig. 19 are diagrams showing further modifications.

Fig. 20 shows a simple form in which the aerial network is combined with special collectors.

Fig. 21.

Fig. 22.
Fig. 21 shows diagramatically, an arrangement suitable for collecting large quantities of energy. Fig. 22 is a modified arrangement having two rings of collectors.

Fig. 23 shows the connections for three rings of collectors.

Fig. 24 shows a collecting balloon and diagram of its battery of capacitors.
Fig. 25 and Fig. 26 show modified collector balloon arrangements.
Fig. 26.
Fig. 27 shows a second method of connecting conductors for the balloon aerials.
Fig. 28 shows an auto-transformer method of connection.
Fig. 29 shows the simplest form of construction with incandescent cathode.

Fig. 30 shows a form with a cigar-shaped balloon.
Fig. 31 is a modified arrangement.

Fig. 32 shows a form with cathode and electrode enclosed in a vacuum chamber.
Fig. 33 is a modified form of Fig. 32.
Fig. 34 shows an arc light collector.

Fig. 35 shows such an arrangement for alternating current.
Fig. 36 shows an incandescent collector with Nernst lamp.
Fig.37 shows a form with a gas flame.

Fig.1 illustrates a simple diagram for converting static electricity into dynamic energy of a high number of oscillations. For the sake of clarity, a Wimshurst machine is assumed to be employed and not an aerial antenna. Items 13 and 14 are combs for collecting the static electricity of the influence machine. Items 7 and 8 are spark-discharging electrodes. Items 5 and 6 are capacitors, 9 is the primary winding of an inductive coil, 10 is the secondary winding whose ends are 11 and 12. When the disc of the static influence machine is rotated by mechanical means, the combs collect the electric charges, one being positive and one negative and these charge the capacitors 5 and 6 until such a high voltage is developed across the spark gap 7–8 that the spark gap is jumped. As the spark gap forms a closed circuit with capacitors 5 and 6, and inductive resistance 9, as is well known, waves of high frequency electromagnetic oscillations will pass in this circuit.
The high frequency of the oscillations produced in the primary circuit induces waves of the same frequency in the secondary circuit. Thus, in the primary circuit, electromagnetic oscillations are formed by the spark and these oscillations are maintained by fresh charges of static electricity.

By suitably selecting the ratio between the number of turns in the primary and secondary windings, with regard to a correct application of the coefficients of resonance (capacitance, inductance and resistance) the high voltage of the primary circuit may be suitably converted into a low voltage high current output.

When the oscillatory discharges in the primary circuit become weaker or cease entirely, the capacitors are charged again by the static electricity until the accumulated charge again breaks down across the spark gap. All this is repeated as long as electricity is produced by the static machine through the application of mechanical energy to it.

![Diagram](image)

An elementary form of the invention is shown in Fig.2 in which two spark gaps in parallel are used, one of which may be termed the working gap 7 while the second serves as a safety device for excess voltage and consists of a larger number of spark gaps than the working section, the gaps being arranged in series and which are bridged by very small capacitors a₁, b₁, c₁, which allow uniform sparking in the safety section.

1 is the aerial antenna for collecting charges of atmospheric electricity, 13 is the earth connection of the second part of the spark gap, 5 and 6 are capacitors and 9 is the primary coil winding. When the positive atmospheric electricity seeks to combine with the negative earth charge via aerial 1, this is prevented by the air gap between the spark gaps. The resistance of spark gap 7 is lower than that of the safety spark gap set of three spark gaps connected in series a which consequently has three times greater air resistance.

Therefore, so long as the resistance of spark gap 7 is not overloaded, discharges take place only through it. However, if the voltage is increased by any influence to such a level that it might be dangerous for charging the capacitors 5 and 6, or for the coil insulation of windings 9 and 10, the safety spark gap set will, if correctly set, discharge the voltage directly to earth without endangering the machine. Without this second spark gap arrangement, it is impossible to collect and render available large quantities of electrical energy.

The action of this closed oscillation circuit consisting of spark gap 7, two capacitors 5 and 6, primary coil 9 and secondary coil 10, is exactly the same as that of Fig.1 which uses a Wimshurst machine, the only difference being the provision of the safety spark gap. The high frequency electromagnetic alternating current can be tapped off through the conductors 11 and 12 for lighting and heating purposes. Special motors adapted for working with static electricity or high frequency oscillations may be connected at 14 and 15.
In addition to the use of spark gaps in parallel, a second measure of security is also necessary for taking the current from this circuit. This is the introduction of protective electromagnets or choking coils in the aerial circuit as shown by $S$ in Fig.3. A single electromagnet having a core of the thinnest possible separate laminations is connected with the aerial. In the case of high voltages in the aerial network or at places where there are frequent thunderstorms, several such magnets may be connected in series.

In the case of large units, several such magnets can be employed in parallel or in series parallel. The windings of these electromagnets may be simply connected in series with the aerials. In this case, the winding preferably consists of several thin parallel wires, which together, make up the necessary cross-sectional area of wire. The winding may be made of primary and secondary windings in the form of a transformer. The primary winding will then be connected in series with the aerial network, and the secondary winding more or less short-circuited through a regulating resistor or an induction coil. In the latter case it is possible to regulate, to a certain extent, the effect of the choking coils. In the following circuit and constructional diagrams, the aerial electromagnet choke coil is indicated by a simple ring $S$.

Fig.3 shows the most simple way of converting atmospheric electricity into electromagnetic wave energy by the use of special motors adapted for high oscillatory currents or static charges of electrical energy. Recent improvements in motors for working with static energy and motors working by resonance, that is to say, having groups of tuned electromagnetic co-operating circuits render this possible but such do not form part of the present invention.

A motor adapted to operate with static charges, will for the sake of simplicity, be shown in the diagrams as two semi-circles 1 and 2 and the rotor of the motor by a ring $M$ (Fig.3). $A$ is a vertical aerial or aerial network. $S$ is the safety choke or electromagnet with coil $O$ as may be seen is connected with the aerial $A$. Adjacent to the electromagnet $S$, the aerial conductor is divided into three circuits, circuit 8 containing the safety spark gap, circuit 7 containing the working spark gap, and then a circuit containing the stator terminal 1, the rotor and stator terminal 2 at which a connection is made to the earth wire. The two spark gaps are also connected metallically with the earth wire. The method of working in these diagrams is as follows:

The positive atmospheric electric charge collected tends to combine with the negative electricity (or earth electricity) connected via the earth wire. It travels along the aerial $A$ through the electromagnet $S$ without being checked as it flows in the same direction as the direct current. Further, its progress is arrested by two spark gaps placed in the way and the stator capacitors. These capacitors charge until their voltage exceeds that needed to jump the spark gap 7 when a spark occurs and an oscillatory charge is obtained via the closed oscillation circuit containing motor $M$. The motor here forms the capacity and the necessary inductance and resistance, which as is well known, are necessary for converting static electricity into electromagnetic wave energy.

The discharges are converted into mechanical energy in special motors and cannot reach the aerial network because of the electromagnet or choke. If, however, when a spark occurs at spark gap 7, a greater quantity of atmospheric electricity tends to flow to earth, then a counter voltage is induced in the electromagnet, which is greater the more rapidly and strongly the flow of current direct to earth is. This opposing voltage causes the circuit to exhibit a sufficiently high resistance to prevent a short circuit between the atmospheric electricity and the earth.

The circuit containing spark gap 8, having a different wave length which is not in resonance with the natural frequency of the motor, does not endanger the motor and serves as security against excess voltage, which, as practical experiments have shown, may still arise in certain cases.
In Fig. 4, spark gap 7 is shunted across capacitors 5 and 6 from the motor M. This arrangement provides improved over-voltage protection for the motor and it gives a uniform excitation through the spark gap 7.

Fig. 5 shows an arrangement for producing large currents which can be used direct without motors, to provide heating and lighting. The main difference here is that the spark gap consists of a star-shaped disc 7 which can rotate on its own axis and is rotated by a motor opposite similarly fitted electrodes 7a. When separate points of starts face one another, discharges take place, thus forming an oscillation circuit with capacitors 5 and 6 and inductor 9. It is evident that a motor may also be connected directly to the ends of inductor 9.

Fig. 6 shows how the oscillation circuit may have a motor connected via a variable inductor which opposes any excess voltages which might be applied to the motor. By cutting the separate coils 9 (coupled inductively to the aerial) in or out, the inductive action on the motor may be more or less increased, or variable aerial action may be exerted on the oscillation circuit.
In Fig. 7 the oscillation circuit is closed through the earth (E and E₁). The spark gap 7 may be increased or reduced by means of a contact arm 7b.

Fig. 8 shows a unipolar connection of the motor with the aerial network. Here, two oscillation circuits are closed through the same motor. The first oscillation circuit passes from aerial A through electromagnet S, point x, inductance 9a to the earth capacitor 6, across spark gap 7 to the aerial capacitor 5 and back to point x. The second oscillation circuit starts from the aerial 5 at the point x₁ through inductor 9 to the earth capacitor 6 at the point x₃, through capacitor 6, across spark gap 7 back to point x₁. The motor itself, is inserted between the two points of spark gap 7. This arrangement produces slightly dampened oscillation wave currents.

Fig. 9 shows a loosely coupled system intended for small motors for measuring purposes. A is the serial, S is the electromagnet or aerial inductor, 9 the inductor, 7 the spark gap, 5 and 6 capacitors, E the earth, M the motor, and 1 and 2 the stator connections of the motor which is directly connected to the oscillator circuit.
**Fig.10** shows a motor circuit with purely inductive coupling. The motor is connected with the secondary wire 10 as may be seen in **Fig.11** in a somewhat modified circuit. The same applies to the circuit of **Fig.12**.

The circuit diagrams shown so far, allow motors of small to medium strength to be operated. For large aggregates, however, they are too inconvenient as the construction of two or more oscillation circuits for large amounts of energy is difficult; the governing is still more difficult and the danger in switching on or off is greater.

**Fig.13**

A means for overcoming such difficulties is shown in **Fig.13**. The oscillation circuit shown here, runs from point x over capacitor 5, variable inductor 9, spark gap 7 and the two segments 3a and 3b forming arms of a Wheatstone bridge, back to x. If the motor is connected by brushes 3 and 4 transversely to the two arms of the bridge as shown in the drawing, electromagnetic oscillations of equal sign are induced in the stator surfaces 1 and 2 and the motor does not revolve. If however, the brushes 3 and 4 are moved in common with the conducting wires 1 and 2 which connect the brushes with the stator poles, a certain alteration or displacement of the polarity is obtained and the motor commences to revolve.

The maximum action will result if one brush 3 comes on the central sparking contact 7 and the other brush 4 on the part x. In practice however, they are usually brought on to the central contact 7 but only held in the path of the bridge segments 4a and 3a in order to avoid connecting the spark gaps with the motor oscillation circuit.
As this prevents the whole of the oscillation energy acting on the motor, it is better to adopt the modification shown in Fig. 14. The only difference here is that the motor is not wired directly to the segments of the commutator, but instead it is wired to secondary coil 10 which receives induced current from primary coil 9. This arrangement provides a good transforming action, a loose coupling and an oscillation circuit without a spark gap.

In Fig. 15, the motor is wired directly to the primary coil at x and x1 after the principle of the auto-transformer. In Fig. 16, instead of an inductor, capacitor 6 replaces the inductance and is inserted between the segments 3a and 4a. This has the advantage that the segments 3a and 4a need not be made of solid metal, but may consist of spiral coils which allow a more exact regulation, and high inductance motors may be used.

The circuits shown in Fig. 17, Fig. 18 and Fig. 19 may be used with resonance and particularly with induction capacitor motors; between the large stator induction capacitor surfaces, small reversing pole capacitors are connected which are lead together to earth. Such reversing poles have the advantage that, with large quantities of electrical energy, the spark formation between the separate oscillation circuits ceases.

Fig. 19 shows another method which prevents high frequency electromagnetic oscillations formed in the oscillation circuit, feeding back to the aerial. It is based on the well known principle that a mercury lamp, one electrode of which is formed of mercury, the other of solid metal such as steel, allows an electric charge to pass in only one direction: from the mercury to the steel and not vice versa. The mercury electrode of the vacuum tube N is therefore connected with the aerial conductor and the steel electrode with the oscillation circuit. Charges can then only pass from the aerial through the vacuum tube to the oscillation circuit and no flow occurs in the opposite direction. In practice, these vacuum tubes must be connected behind an electromagnet as the latter alone provides no protection against the danger of lightning.

As regards the use of spark gaps, all arrangements as used for wireless telegraphy may be used. Of course, the spark gaps in large machines must have a sufficiently large surface. In very large stations they are cooled in liquid carbonic acid or better still, in liquid nitrogen or hydrogen; in most cases the cooling may also take place by means of liquefied low homologues of the metal series or by means of hydrocarbons, the freezing point of which lies between -90°C and -40°C. The spark gap casing must also be insulated and be of sufficient strength to be able to resist any pressure which may arise. Any undesirable excess super-pressure which may be formed must
be let off automatically. I have employed with very good results, mercury electrodes which were frozen in liquid carbonic acid, the cooling being maintained during the operation from the outside, through the walls.

Fig. 20 shows one of the most simple forms of construction of an aerial network in combination with collectors, transformers and the like. E is the earth wire, S the safety spark gap, 7 the working spark gap, 1 and 2 the stator surfaces of the motor, 5 a capacitor battery, S the protective magnet which is connected with the coil in the aerial conductor, A to A aerial antennae with collecting balloons, N horizontal collecting or connecting wires, from which, a number of connections run to the centre.

The actual collectors consist of metal sheaths, preferably made of an aluminium magnesium alloy, and are filled with hydrogen or helium, and are attached to copper-plated steel wires. The size of the balloon is selected so that the actual weight of the balloon and its conducting wire is supported by it. Aluminium spikes, made and gilded as described below, are arranged on top of the balloons in order to produce a conductor action. Small quantities of radium preparations, more particularly, polonium-ionium or mesothorium preparations, considerably increase the ionisation, and the performance of these collectors.

In addition to metal balloons, fabric balloons which are sprayed with a metallic coating according to Schoop’s metal-spraying process may also be used. A metallic surface may also be produced by lacquering with metallic bronzes, preferably according to Schoop’s spraying process, or lacquering with metallic bronze powders in two electrical series of widely different metals, because this produces a considerably increased collecting effect.

Instead of the ordinary round balloons, elongated cigar-shaped ones may be employed. In order also to utilise the frictional energy of the wind, patches or strips of non-conducting substances which produce electricity by friction, may be attached to the metallised balloon surfaces. The wind will impart a portion of its energy in the form of frictional electricity, to the balloon casing, thus substantially increasing the collection effect.

In practice however, very high towers of up to 300 metres may be employed as antennae. In these towers, copper tubes rise freely further above the top of the tower. A gas lamp secured against the wind is then lit at the point of the copper tube and a netting is secured to the copper tube over the flame of this lamp to form a collector. The gas is conveyed through the interior of the tube, up to the summit. The copper tube must be absolutely protected from moisture at the place where it enters the tower, and rain must be prevented from running down the walls of the tower, which might lead to a bad catastrophe. This is done by bell-shaped enlargements which expand downwards, being arranged in the tower in the form of high voltage insulators of Siamese pagodas.

Special attention must be devoted to the foundations of such towers. They must be well insulated from the ground, which may be achieved by first embedding a layer of concrete in a box form to a sufficient depth in the ground, and inserting in this, an asphalt lining and then glass bricks cast about 1 or 2 metres in thickness. Over this in turn, there is a ferro-concrete layer in which alone the metal foot of the tube is secured. This concrete block must be at least 2 metres from the ground and at the sides, be fully protected from moisture by a wooden covering. In the lower part of the tower, a wood or glass housing should be constructed to protect the capacitors and/or motors. In order to ensure that the ground lead connects to the water-table, a well insulated pit lined with vitreous bricks must be provided. Several such towers are erected at equal distances apart and connected with a horizontal conductor. The horizontal connecting wires may either run directly from tower to tower or be carried on bell-shaped insulators similar to those in use for high voltage electricity transmission lines. The width of the aerial tower network may be of any suitable size and the connection of the motors can take place at any convenient location.

A - 508
In order to collect large quantities of electricity with few aerials, it is as well to provide the aerial conductor with sets of capacitors as shown in the two methods of construction illustrated in Fig.21 and Fig.22. In Fig.21 the set of capacitors 5 is connected between the aerials Z via lead A and an annular conductor from which horizontal run to the connecting points C to which the earth wire is connected. Fig.22 shows a similar arrangement.

Should two such series of antenna rings be shown by a voltmeter to have a large voltage difference (for example, one in the mountains and one on the plain) or even of a different polarity, these differences may be compensated for by connecting sufficiently large capacitor sets (5, 5a, 5b) by means of Maji star conductors D and D1. Fig.23, shows a connection of three such rings of collectors are positioned in a triangle with a central set of capacitors.

The capacitor sets of such large installations must be embedded in liquefied gasses or in liquids freezing at very low temperatures. In such cases, a portion of the atmospheric energy must be employed for liquefying these gasses. It is also preferable to employ pressure. By this means, the capacitor surfaces may be reduced in area and still allow the storage of large quantities of energy to be stored, secure against breakdown. For the smaller installations, the immersing of the capacitors in well insulated oil or the like, is sufficient. Solid substances, on the other hand, cannot be employed as insulators.

The arrangement in the diagrams shown earlier has always shown both poles of the capacitors connected to the aerial conductors. An improved method of connection has been found to be very advantageous. In this method, only one pole of each capacitor is connected to the collecting network. Such a method of connection is very important, as by means of it, a constant current and an increase in the normal working voltage is obtained. If, for example, a collecting balloon aerial which is allowed to rise to a height of 300 metres, shows 40,000 volts above earth voltage, in practice it has been found that the working voltage (with a withdrawal of the power as described earlier by means of oscillating spark gaps and the like) is only about 400 volts. If however, the capacity of the capacitor surfaces be increased, which capacity in the above mentioned case was equal to that of the collecting surface of the balloon aerials, to double the amount, by connecting the capacitors with only one pole, the voltage rises under an equal withdrawal of current up to and beyond 500 volts. This can only be ascribed to the favourable action of the connecting method.
In addition to this substantial improvement it has also been found preferable to insert double inductances with electromagnets and to place the capacitors preferably between two such electromagnets. It has also been found that the useful action of such capacitors can be further increased if an induction coil is connected as an inductive resistance to the unconnected pole of the capacitor, or still better if the capacitor itself be made as an induction capacitor. Such a capacitor may be compared to a spring, which when compressed, carries in itself accumulated force, which it gives off again when released. In charging, a charge with reversed sign is formed at the other free capacitor pole, and if a short circuit occurs through the spark gap, the accumulated energy is again given back since now new quantities of energy are induced at the capacitor pole connected to the conductor network, which in fact, charges with opposite sign to that at the free capacitor pole. The new induced charges have of course, the same sign as the collector network. The whole voltage energy in the aerial is thereby increased. In the same time interval, larger quantities of energy are accumulated than is the case without such capacitor sets being inserted.

In Fig.24 and Fig.25, two different connection diagrams are illustrated in more detail. Fig.24 shows a collecting balloon along with its earth connections. Fig.25 shows four collecting balloons and the parallel connection of their capacitor sets.

A is the collecting balloon made of an aluminium magnesium alloy (electron metal maganalium) of a specific gravity of 1.8 and a plate thickness of 0.1 mm to 0.2 mm. Inside, there are eight strong vertical ribs of T-shaped section of about 10 mm to 20 mm in height and about 3 mm in thickness, with the projecting part directed inwards (indicated by a, b, c, d and so forth). They are riveted together to form a firm skeleton and are stiffened in a horizontal direction by two cross ribs. The ribs are further connected to one another internally and transversely by means of thin steel wires, whereby the balloon obtains great strength and elasticity. Rolled plates of 0.1 mm to 0.2 mm in thickness made of magnalium alloy are then either soldered or riveted on to this skeleton so that a fully metallic casing with a smooth external surface is created. Well silvered or coppered aluminium plated steel wires run from each rib to the fastening ring 2. Further, the coppered steel hawser L, preferably twisted out of separate thin wires (shown as dotted lines in Fig.24) and which must be long enough to allow the balloon to rise to the
desired height, leads to a metal roller or pulley 3 and on to a winch W, which must be well insulated from the earth. By means of this winch, the balloon which is filled with hydrogen or helium, can be allowed to rise to a suitable height of 300 to 5,000 metres, and brought to the ground for recharging or repairs.

The actual current is taken directly through a friction contact from the metal roller 3 or from the wire or even from the winch, or simultaneously from all three by means of brushes (3, 3a and 3b). Beyond the brushes, the conductor is divided, the paths being:- firstly, over 12 to the safety spark gap 8, on to the earth conductor $E^1$, and secondly over electromagnet $S^1$, point 13, to a second loose electromagnet having an adjustable coil $S^2$, then to the spark gap 7 and to the second earth conductor $E^2$. The actual working circuit is formed through the spark gap 7, capacitors 5 and 6, and through the primary coil 9; here the static electricity formed by oscillatory discharges is accumulated and converted into high frequency electromagnetic oscillations. Between the electromagnets $S^1$ and $S^2$ at the crossing point 13, four capacitor sets are introduced which are only indicated diagrammatically in the drawings by a single capacitor. Two of these sets of capacitors (16 and 18) are made as plate capacitors and prolonged by regulating induction coils or spirals 17 and 19 while the two others (21 and 23) are induction capacitors. As may be seen from the drawings, each of the four capacitor sets, 16, 18, 21 and 23 is connected by only one pole to either the aerial or to the collector conductor. The second poles 17, 19, 22 and 24 are open. In the case of plate capacitors having no inductive resistance, an induction coil is inserted. The object of such a spiral or coil is the displacement of phase of the induction current by $\frac{1}{4}$ periods, whilst the charging current of the capacitor poles which lie free in the air, works back to the collector aerial. The consequence of this is that in discharges in the collector aerial, the back-inductive action of the free poles allows a higher voltage to be maintained in the aerial collecting conductor than would otherwise be the case. It has also been found that such a back action has an extremely favourable effect on the wear of the contacts. Of course, the inductive effect may be regulated at will within the limits of the size of the induction coil, the length of the coil in action being adjustable by means of wire connection without induction (see Fig.24 No. 20).

$S^1$ and $S^2$ may also be provided with such regulating devices, in the case of $S^2$ illustrated by 11. If excess voltage be formed, it is conducted to earth through wire 12 and spark gap 8, or through any other suitable apparatus, since this voltage would be dangerous for the other components. The action of these capacitor sets has already been described.

The small circles on the collector balloon indicate places where small patches of extremely thin layers (0.01 to 0.05 mm thick) of zinc amalgam, gold amalgam or other photoelectric acting metals, are applied to the balloon casing of light metal. Such metallic patches may also be applied to the entire balloon as well as in greater thickness to the conducting network. The capacity of the collector is thereby considerably strengthened on the surface. The greatest possible effect in collecting may be obtained by polonium amalgams and the like. On the surface of the collector balloon, metal points or spikes are also fixed along the ribs. These spikes enhance the charge collection operation. Since it is well known that the sharper the spikes, the less the resistance of the spikes, it is therefore extremely important to use spikes which are as sharp as possible. Experiments have shown that the formation of the body of the spike or point also play a large part, for example, spikes made of bars or rollers with smooth surfaces, have point resistance many times greater than those with rough surfaces. Various kinds of spike bodies have been experimented with for the collector balloons and the best results were given with spikes which were made in the following way: Fine points made of steel, copper, nickel or copper and nickel alloys, were fastened together in bundles and then placed as anode with the points placed in a suitable electrolyte (preferably in hydrochloric acid or muriate of iron solutions) and so treated with weak current driven by 2 to 3 volts. After 2 to 3 hours, according to the thickness of the spikes, the points become extremely sharp and the bodies of the spikes have a rough surface. The bundle can then be removed and the acid washed off with water. The spikes are then placed as cathode in a bath containing a solution of gold, platinum, iridium, palladium or wolfram salts or their compounds, and coated at the cathode galvanically with a thin layer of precious metal, which must however be sufficiently firm to protect them from atmospheric oxidation.

Such spikes act at a 20 fold lower voltage almost as well as the best and finest points made by mechanical means. Still better results are obtained if polonium or radium salts are added to the galvanic bath when forming the protective layer or coating. Such pins have low resistance at their points and have excellent collector action even at one volt or lower.

In Fig.24, the three unconnected poles are not connected with one another in parallel. That is quite possible in practice without altering the principle of the free pole. It is also preferable to interconnect a series of collecting aerials in parallel to a common collector network. Fig.25 shows such an arrangement. $A^1$, $A^2$, $A^3$, $A^4$ are four metal collector balloons with gold or platinum coated spikes which are electrolytically mad in the presence of polonium emanations or radium salts, the spikes being connected over four electromagnets $S^1$, $S^2$, $S^3$, $S^4$, through an annular conductor $R$. From this annular conductor, four wires run over four further electromagnets $S^a$, $S^b$, $S^c$, $S^d$, to the connecting point 13. There, the conductor is divided, one branch passing over 12 and the safety spark gap 7 to the earth at $E^1$, the other over inductive resistance $J$ and working spark gap 7 to the earth at
The working circuit, consisting of the capacitors 5 and 6 and a resonance motor or a capacitor motor M, such as already described, is connected in proximity around the sparking gap section 7. Of course, instead of connecting the capacitor motor directly, the primary circuit for high frequency oscillatory current may also be inserted.

The capacitor sets are connected by one pole to the annular conductor R and can be either inductionless (16 and 18) or made as induction capacitors as shown by 21 and 23. The free poles of the inductionless capacitors are indicated by 17 and 19, and those of the induction capacitors by 22 and 24. As may be seen from the drawings, all of these poles 17, 22, 19 and 24 may be interconnected in parallel through a second annular conductor without any fear that thereby the principle of the free pole connection will be lost. In addition to the advantages already mentioned, the parallel connection also allows an equalisation of the working voltage in the entire collector network. Suitably calculated and constructed induction coils 25 and 26 may also be inserted in the annular conductor of the free poles, by means of which, a circuit may be formed in the secondary coils 27 and 28 which allows current produced in this annular conductor by fluctuations of the charges, to be measured or otherwise utilised.

According to what has already been stated, separate collector balloons may be connected at equidistant stations distributed over the whole country, either connected directly with one another metallically or by means of intermediate suitably connected capacitor sets through high voltage conductors insulated from earth. The static electricity is converted through a spark gap, into high frequency dynamic electricity which may be utilised as a source of energy by means of a suitable connection method, various precautions being observed, and with special regulations. The wires leading from the collector balloons, have up to now been connected through an annular conductor without this endless connection, which can be regarded as an endless induction coil, being able to exert any action on the whole conductor system.

It has now been found that if the network conductor connecting the aerial collector balloons with one another, is not made as a simple annular conductor, but preferably short-circuited in the form of coils over a capacitor set or spark gap or through thermionic valves, then the total collecting network exhibits quite new properties. The collection of atmospheric electricity is thereby not only increased but an alternating field may easily be produced in the collector network. Further, the atmospheric electrical forces showing themselves in the higher regions, may also be obtained directly by induction. In Fig.26 and Fig.28, a form of construction is shown, on the basis of which, the further foundations of the method will be explained in more detail.
In Fig.26, 1, 2, 3 and 4 are metallic collector balloons, with 5, 6, 7 and 8 their metallic aerial conductors and I the actual collector network. This consists of five coils and is mounted on high voltage insulators in the air, on high voltage masts (or with a suitable construction of cable, embedded in the earth). One coil has a diameter of 1 to 100 km. or more. S and S1 are two protective electromagnets, F is the second safety section against excess voltage, E its earth conductor and E1 the earth conductor of the working section. When an absorption of static atmospheric electricity is effected through the four balloon collectors, in order to reach the earth connection E1, the current must flow spirally through the collector network, over the electromagnet S, primary induction coil 9, conductor 14, anode A of the audion tube, incandescent cathode K, as the way over the electromagnet and safety spark gap F offers considerably greater resistance. Owing to the fact that the accumulated current flows in one direction, an electromagnetic alternating field is produced in the interior of the collector network coil, whereby all of the free electrons are directed more or less into the interior of the coil. An increased ionisation of the atmosphere is therefore produced. Consequently, the points mounted on the collector balloon, show a considerably reduced resistance and therefore increased static charges are produced between the points on the balloon and the surrounding atmosphere. This results in a considerably increased collector effect.

A second effect, which could not be achieved in any other way, is obtained by the alternating electromagnetic field running parallel to the earth’s surface, which acts more or less with a diminishing or increasing effect on the earth’s magnetic field, whereby in the case of fluctuations in the current, a return induction current of reversed sign is always produced in the collector coil by earth magnetism. Now if a constantly pulsating, continuous alternating field is produced as stated in the collector network I, an alternating current of the same frequency is also produced in the collecting network coil. As the same alternating field is further transmitted to the aerial balloon, the resistance of its points is thereby considerably reduced, while the collector action is considerably increased. A further advantage is that positive charges which collect on the metal surfaces during the conversion into dynamic current, produce a so-called voltage drop in the collector area. As an alternating field is present, when discharge of the collector surfaces takes place, the negative ions surrounding the collector surfaces produce, by the law of induction, an induction of reversed sign on the collector surface - that is, a positive charge. In addition to the advantages already stated, the construction of connecting conductors in coil form, when of
sufficiently large diameter, allows a utilisation of energy arising in higher regions, also in the most simple way. As is well known, electric discharges frequently take place at very great elevations which may be observed, such as ‘St. Elmo’s fires’ or ‘northern lights’. These energy quantities have not been able to have been utilised before now. By this invention, all of these kinds of energy, as they are of electromagnetic nature and since the axis of the collector coils is at right angles to the earth’s surface, can be absorbed in the same way as a radio absorbs distant radio signals. With a large diameter of the spiral, it is possible to connect large surfaces and thereby take up large quantities of energy.

It is well known that in the summer months and in the tropics, large radio stations are very frequently unable to receive signals due to interruptions caused by atmospheric electricity, and this takes place with vertical coils of only 40 to 100 metres in diameter. If, on the contrary, horizontal coils of 1 to 100 kilometres in diameter are used, very strong currents may be obtained through discharges which are constantly taking place in the atmosphere. Particularly in the tropics, or still better in the polar regions where the northern lights are constantly present, large quantities of energy may probably be obtained in this way. A coil with several windings should perform the best. In a similar manner, any alteration of the earth’s magnetic field should act inductively on such a coil.

It is not at all unlikely that earthquakes and sunspots will also produce an induction in collector coils of that size. In similar manner, this collector conductor will react to earth currents more particularly when they are near the surface of the earth or even embedded in the earth. By combining the previous kind of current collectors, so far as they are adapted for the improved system with the improved possibilities of obtaining current, the quantities of free natural energy which are to be obtained in the form of electricity are considerably increased.

In order to produce uniform undamped current oscillations in the improved collector coil, so-called audion high vacuum or thermionic valves are used instead of the previous described spark gaps (Fig. 26, 9-18). The main aerial current flows through electromagnet S (which in the case of a high number of alternations is not connected here but in the earth conductor E1) and may be conveyed over the primary coils in the induction winding through wire 14 to the anode A of the high vacuum grid valve. Parallel with the induction resistance 9, a regulating capacity of suitable size, such as capacitor 11, is inserted. In the lower part of the vacuum grid valve is the incandescent filament cathode K which is fed through a battery B. From the battery, two branches run, one to the earth conductor E1 and the other through battery B1 and secondary coil 10 to the grid anode g of the vacuum tube. By the method of connections shown in dotted lines, a desired voltage may also be produced at the grid electrode g through wire 17 which is branched off from the main current conductor through switches 16 and some small capacitors (a, b, c, d) connected in series, and conductor 18, without the battery B1 being required. The action of the whole system is somewhat as follows:-

On the connecting conductor of the aerial collector network being short-circuited to earth, the capacitor pole 11 is charged, and slightly dampened oscillations are formed in the short-circuited oscillation circuit formed by capacitor 11 and self inductance 9. Because of the coupling through coil 10, voltage fluctuations of the same frequency take place in the grid circuit 15 and in turn, these fluctuations influence the strength of the electrode current passing through the high vacuum amplifying valve and thus produce current fluctuations of the same frequency in the anode circuit. A permanent supply of energy. Consequently, a permanent supply of energy is supplied to the oscillation circuits 9 and 10 takes place, until a balance is achieved where the oscillation energy consumed exactly matches the energy absorbed. This produces constant undamped oscillations in the oscillation circuits 9 - 11.

For regular working of such oscillation producers, high vacuum strengthening tubes are necessary and it is also necessary that the grid and anode voltages shall have a phase difference of 180° so that if the grid is negatively charged, then the anode is positively charged and vice versa. This necessary difference of phase may be obtained by most varied connections, for example, by placing the oscillating circuit in the grid circuit or by separating the oscillation circuit and inductive coupling from the anodes and the grid circuit, and so forth.

A second important factor is that care must be taken that the grid and anode voltages have a certain relation to one another; the latter may be obtained by altering the coupling and a suitable selection of the self induction in the grid circuit, or as shown by the dotted lines 18, 17, 16 by means of a larger or smaller number of capacitors of suitable size connected in series; in this case, the battery B1 may be omitted. With a suitable selection of the grid potential, a glow discharge takes place between the grid g and the anode A, and accordingly at the grid there is a cathode drop and a dark space is formed. The size of this cathode drop is influenced by the ions which are emitted in the lower space in consequence of shock ionisation of the incandescent cathodes K and pass through the grid in the upper space. On the other hand, the number of the ions passing through the grid is dependent on the voltage between the grid and the cathode. Thus, if the grid voltage undergoes periodic fluctuations (as in the present case), the amount of the cathode drop at the grid fluctuates, and consequently, the internal resistance of the valve fluctuates correspondingly, so that when a back-coupling of the feed circuit with the grid circuit takes
place, the necessary means are in place for producing undamped oscillations and of taking current as required, from the collecting conductor.

With a suitably loose coupling, the frequency of the undamped oscillations produced is equal to the self-frequency of the oscillation circuits 9 and 10. By selecting a suitable self-induction for coil 9 and capacitor 11, it is possible to extend operation from frequencies which produce electromagnetic oscillations with a wavelength of only a few metres, down to the lowest practical alternating current frequency. For large installations, a suitable number of frequency producing tubes in the form of the well known high vacuum transmission tubes of 0.5 kW to 2 kW in size may be connected in parallel so that in this respect, no difficulty exists.

The use of such tubes for producing undamped oscillations, and the construction and method of inserting such transmission tubes in an accumulator or dynamo circuit is known, also, such oscillation producing tubes only work well at voltages of 1,000 volts up to 4,000 volts, so that on the contrary, their use at lower voltages is considerably more difficult. By the use of high voltage static electricity, this method of producing undamped oscillations as compared with that through spark gaps, must be regarded as an ideal solution, particularly for small installations with outputs from 1 kW to 100 kW.

By the application of safety spark gaps, with interpolation of electromagnets, not only is short-circuiting avoided but also the taking up of current is regulated. Oscillation producers inserted in the above way, form a constantly acting alternating electromagnetic field in the collector coil, whereby, as already stated, a considerable accumulating effect takes place. The withdrawal or ‘working’ wire is connected at 12 and 13, but current may be taken by means of a secondary coil which is firmly or moveably mounted in any suitable way inside the large collector coil, i.e. in its alternating electromagnetic field, so long as the direction of its axis is parallel to that of the main current collecting coil.

In producing undamped oscillations of a high frequency (50 KHz and more) in the oscillation circuits 9 and 11, electromagnets S and $S_1$ must be inserted if the high frequency oscillations are not to penetrate the collector coil, between the oscillation producers and the collector coil. In all other cases they are connected shortly before the earthing (as in Fig.27 and Fig.28).

In Fig.27 a second method of construction of the connecting conductor of the balloon aerials is illustrated in the form of a coil. The main difference is that in addition to the connecting conductor I another annular conductor II is inserted parallel to the former on the high voltage masts in the air (or embedded as a cable in the earth) but both in the form of a coil. The connecting wire of the balloon aerials is both a primary conductor and a current producing network while the coil is the consumption network and is not in unipolar connection with the current producing network.
In Fig. 27 the current producing network I is shown with three balloon collectors 1, 2, 3 and aerial conductors 4, 5, 6; it is short-circuited through capacitor 19 and inductor 9. The oscillation forming circuit consists of spark gap f, inductor 10 and capacitor 11. The earth wire E is connected to earth through electromagnet $S_1$. F is the safety spark gap which is also connected to earth through a second electromagnet $S_{II}$ at $E_{II}$. On connecting up the capacitor circuit 11 it is charged over the spark gap f and an oscillatory discharge is formed. This discharging current acts through inductor 10 on the inductively coupled secondary 9, which causes a change in the producing network, by modifying the voltage on capacitor 19. This causes oscillations in the coil-shaped producer network. These oscillations induce a current in the secondary circuit II, which has a smaller number of windings and lower resistance, consequently, this produces a lower voltage and higher current in it.

In order to convert the current thus obtained, into current of an undamped character, and to tune its wavelengths, a sufficiently large regulatable capacitor 20 is inserted between the ends 12 and 13 of the secondary conductor II. Here also, current may be taken without an earth conductor, but it is advisable to insert a safety spark gap $E_1$ and to connect this with the earth via electromagnet $S_2$. The producer network may be connected with the working network II over an inductionless capacitor 21 or over an induction capacitor 22, 23. In this case, the secondary conductor is unipolarly connected with the energy conductor.

In Fig. 28, the connecting conductor between the separate collecting balloons is carried out according to the autotransformer principle. The collecting coil connects four aerial balloons 1, 2, 3, 4, the windings of which are not made side-by-side but one above the other. In Fig. 28, the collector coil I is shown with a thin line and the metallically connected prolongation coils II with a thick line. Between the ends I and II of the energy network I, a regulating capacitor 19 is inserted. The wire I is connected with the output wire and with the spark gap F.
As transformer of the atmospheric electricity, an arrangement is employed which consists of using rotary pairs of capacitors in which the stator surface $B$ is connected with the main current, while the other $A$ is connected to the earth pole. These pairs of short-circuited capacitors are caused to rotate and the converted current can be taken from them via two collector rings and brushes. This current is alternating current with a frequency dependent on the number of balloons and the rate of revolutions of the rotor. As the alternating current formed in the rotor can act through coils $10$ on the inductor $9$, an increase or decrease of the feed current in $I$ can be obtained according to the direction of the current by back-induction. Current oscillations of uniform rhythm are produced in the coil-shaped windings of the producer network.

As the ends of this conductor are short-circuited through the regulatable capacitor $19$, these rhythms produce short-circuited undamped oscillations in the energy conductor. The frequency of these oscillations can be altered at will by adjusting the capacitance of capacitor $19$. These currents may also be used as working current via the conductors $I$ and $II$. By inserting capacitor $20$, a connection between these conductors may also be made, whereby harmonic oscillations of desired wavelength are formed. By this means, quite new effects as regards current distribution are obtained. The withdrawal of current can even take place without direct wire connection if, at a suitable point in the interior of the producing network (quite immaterially whether this has a diameter of 1 or 100 km) a coil tuned to these wavelength and of the desired capacity, is firmly or moveably mounted in the aerial conductor in such a way that its axis is parallel with the axis of the collector coil. In this case, a current is induced in the producing network, the size of which is dependent on the total capacity and resistance and on the frequency selected. A future possibility is taking energy from the producer network by radio signals as in addition to atmospheric electricity, magnetic earth currents and energy from the upper atmosphere may be tapped.

Of course, vacuum tubes may be used to produce undamped oscillations anywhere spark gaps are shown in the circuits. The separate large-diameter coils of the producer network may be connected to one another through separate conductors all in parallel or all in series or in groups in series. By regulating the number of oscillations and the magnitude of the voltage, more or fewer large collector coils of this kind may be used. The coils may also be divided spirally over the entire section. The coils may be carried out in annular form or in triangular, quadrangular, hexagonal or octagonal form.

Of course, wires which form guides for the current waves, may be carried from a suitable place to the centre or also laterally. This is necessary when the currents have to be conducted over mountains and valleys and so forth. In all these cases, the current must be converted into a current of suitable frequency.

As already mentioned, separate collecting balloons may be directly metallically interconnected an equidistant stations distributed over the entire country, or may be connected by interpolation of suitable capacitor sets by means of high voltage conductors. The static electricity is converted through a spark gap into dynamic energy of high frequency and could then in that form be used as an energy source after special regulation.

According to this invention, in order to increase the collecting effect of the balloon in the aerial collector conductor or in the earth wire, radiating collectors are used. These consist of either incandescent metal or oxide electrodes in the form of vacuum grid valves, or electric arcs (mercury or similar electrodes), Nernst lamps, or flames of various kinds maybe simply connected with the respective conductor.

It is well known that energy can be drawn off from a cathode consisting of an incandescent body opposite an anode charged with positive electricity (vacuum grid tube). Hitherto however, a cathode was always first directly placed opposite an anode, and secondly, the system always consisted of a closed circuit.

Now if we dispense with the ordinary ideas in forming light or flame arcs in which a cathode must always stand directly opposite an anode charged to a high voltage or another body freely floating in the air, or consider the incandescent cathode to be only a source of unipolar discharge, (which represents group and point discharges in electro-static machines similar to unipolar discharges), it may be ascertained that incandescent cathodes and less perfectly, all incandescent radiators, flames and the like, have relatively large current densities and allow large quantities of electric energy to radiate into open space in the form of electron streams as transmitters.

The object of this invention is as described below, if such incandescent oxide electrodes or other incandescent radiators or flames are not freely suspended in space but instead are connected metallically with the earth so that they can be charged with negative terrestrial electricity, these radiators possess the property of absorbing the free positive electrical charges contained in the air space surrounding them (that is to say, of collecting them and conducting them to earth). They can therefore serve as collectors and have in comparison to the action of the spikes, a very large radius of action $R$; the effective capacity of these collectors is much greater than the geometrical capacity ($R_0$) calculated in an electro-static sense.

As is well known, our earth is surrounded with an electro-static field and the difference of potential $\mathrm{dV}/\mathrm{dh}$ of the earth field according to the latest investigations, is in summer about 60 to 100 volts, and in winter, 300 to 500 volts.
per metre difference in height, a simple calculation gives the result that when such a radiation collector or flame collector is arranged, for example, on the ground, and a second one is mounted vertically over it at a distance of 2,000 metres and both are connected by a conducting cable, there is a voltage difference in summer of about 2,000,000 volts and in winter 6,000,000 volts or more.

According to Stefan Boltzmann’s law of radiation, the quantity of energy which an incandescent surface (temperature $T$) of 1 sq. cm. radiates in a unit of time into the open air (temperature $T_0$) is expressed by the following formula:

$$S = R (T^4 - T_0^4) \text{ watts per square centimetre}$$

and the universal radiation constant $R$, according to the latest researches of Ferry, is equal to $6.30 \times 10^{-12}$ watts per square centimetre.

Now, if an incandescent surface of 1 sq. cm., as compared to the surrounding space, shows a periodic fall of potential $dV$, it radiates (independent of the direction of the current) in accordance with the above formula, for example at a temperature of $3715^\circ$ C, an energy of 1.6 kW per square centimetre. As for the radiation, the same value can be calculated for the collection of energy, but reversed. Now, as carbon electrodes at the temperature of the electric arc, support a current density up to 60 to 65 amps per sq. cm., no difficulties will result in this direction in employing radiating collectors as accumulators.

If the earth be regarded as a cosmically insulated capacitor in the sense of geometrical electro-statics, according to Chwolson, there results from the geometric capacity of the earth:

For negative charging $1.3 \times 10^6$ Coulomb For negative potential $V = 10 \times 10^8$ volts.

It follows from this that EJT is approximately equal to $24.7 \times 10^{24}$ watts/sec. Now if it is desired to make a theoretical short circuit through an earthed flame collector, this would represent an electrical total work of about 79,500 $\times 10^{10}$ kilowatt years. As the earth must be regarded as a rotating mechanism which is thermodynamically, electromagnetically and kinematically coupled with the sun and star system by cosmic radiation and gravitation, a reduction in the electric energy of the earth field can not only cause a lowering of the earth temperature. This is however, not the case as the earth does not represent a cosmically entirely insulated system. On the contrary, there is conveyed from the sun to the earth an energy of 18,500 $\times 10^{10}$ kilowatts. Accordingly, any lowering of the earth temperature without a simultaneous lowering of the sun’s temperature would contradict Stefan Boltzmann’s law of radiation.

From this it must be concluded that if the earth temperature sinks, the total radiation absorbed by the earth increases, and further, the rate of cooling of the earth is directly dependent on that of the sun and the other radiators cosmically coupled with the sun.

The incandescent radiation collectors may, according to this invention, be used for collecting atmospheric electricity if they (1) are charged with the negative earth electricity (that is to say, when they are directly connected to the earth by means of a metallic conductor) and (2) if large capacities (metal surfaces) charged with electricity are mounted opposite them as positive poles in the air. This is regarded as the main feature of the present invention as without these inventive ideas it would not be possible to collect with an incandescent collector, sufficiently large quantities of the electrical charges contained in the atmosphere as technology requires; the radius of action of the flame collectors would also be too small, especially if it be considered that the very small surface density does not allow of large quantities of charge being absorbed from the atmosphere.

It has already been proposed to employ flame collectors for collecting atmospheric electricity and it is known that their collecting effect is substantially greater opposite the points. It is however, not known that the quantities of current which hitherto be obtained are too small for technical purposes. According to my experiments, the reason for this is to be found in the inadequate capacities of the collector conductor poles. If such flame or radiating collectors have no or only small positive surfaces, their radius of action for large technical purposes is too small. If the incandescent collectors be constantly kept in movement in the air, they may collect more according to the speed of the movement, but this is again not capable of being carried out in practice.

By this invention, the collector effect is considerably increased by a body charged with a positive potential and of the best possible capacity, being also held floating (without direct earth connection) opposite such an incandescent collector which is held floating in the air at a desired height. If, for example, a collecting balloon of sheet metal or metallised fabric, be caused to mount to 300 to 3,000 metres in the air, and as a positive pole it is brought opposite such a radiating collector connected by a conductor to earth, quite different results are obtained.
The metallic balloon shell which has a large surface area is charged to a high potential by atmospheric electricity. This potential is greater the higher the collecting balloon is above the incandescent collector. The positive electricity acts concentratedly on the anode floating in the air as it is attracted through the radiation shock ionisation, proceeding from the incandescent cathode. The consequence of this is that the radius of action of the incandescent cathode collector is considerably increased and so is the collecting effect of the balloon surface. Further, the large capacity of the anode floating in the air, plays therefore an important part because it allows the collection of large charges resulting in a more uniform current even when there is substantial current withdrawal - this cannot be the case with small surfaces.

In the present case, the metallic collecting balloon is a positive anode floating in the air and the end of the earth conductor of this balloon serves as positive pole surface opposite the surface of the radiating incandescent cathode, which in turn is charged with negative earth electricity as it is connected to the earth by a conductor. The process may be carried out by two such contacts (negative incandescent cathode and anode end of a capacity floating in the air) a capacitor and an inductive resistance being switched on in parallel, whereby simultaneously undamped oscillations may be formed.

In very large installations it is advisable to connect two such radiating collectors in series. Thus an arc light incandescent cathode may be placed below on the open ground and an incandescent cathode which is heated by special electro-magnetic currents, be located high in the air. Of course for this, the special vacuum Liebig tubes with or without grids may also be used. An ordinary arc lamp with oxide electrodes may be introduced on the ground and the positive pole is not directly connected with the collecting balloon, but through the upper incandescent cathode or over a capacitor. The method of connecting the incandescent cathode floating in the air may be seen in Figs. 29-33.

B is the air balloon, K a Cardan ring (connection with the hawser) C the balloon, L a good conducting cable, P a positive pole, N negative incandescent cathode and E the earth conductor.

**Fig. 29** represents the simplest form of construction. If electric oscillations are produced below on the ground by means of a carbon arc lamp or in any other suitable way, a considerably greater electric resistance is opposed to that in the direct way by inserting an electrical inductive resistance 9. Consequently, between P and N, a voltage is formed, and as, over N and P only an inductionless ohmic resistance is present, a spark will spring over so long as the separate induction coefficients and the like are correctly calculated. The consequence of this is that the oxide electrode (carbon or the like) is rendered incandescent and then shows as incandescent cathode, an increased collecting effect. The positive poles must be substantially larger than the negative in order that they may not also become incandescent. As they are further connected with the large balloon area which has a large capacity and is charged at high voltage, an incandescent body which is held floating in the air and a positive pole which can collect large capacities is thereby obtained in the simplest way. The incandescent cathode is first
caused to become incandescent by means of separate energy produced on the earth, and then maintained by the energy collected from the atmosphere.

**Fig. 30** only shows the difference that instead of a round balloon, a cigar-shaped one may be used, also, a capacitor 5 is inserted between the incandescent cathode and the earth conductor so that a short-circuited oscillation circuit over P N 5 and 9 is obtained. This has the advantage that quite small quantities of electricity cause the cathode to become incandescent and much larger cathode bodies may be made incandescent.

In this form of construction, both the incandescent cathode and the positive electrode may be enclosed in a vacuum chamber as shown in **Fig. 32**. A cable L is carried well insulated through the cover of a vessel and ends in a capacitor disc 5. The cover is arched in order to keep the rain off. The vessel is entirely or partially made of magnetic metal and well insulated inside and outside. Opposite disc 5 another disc 6 and on this again a metallic positive pole of the vacuum tube g with the incandescent cathode (oxide electrode) N is arranged. The negative electrode is on the one hand connected to the earth conductor E, and on the other hand with the inductive resistance 9 which is also connected with the cable L with the positive pole and wound around the vessel in coils.
The action is exactly the same as that in Fig.29 only instead of an open incandescent cathode, one enclosed in vacuo is used. As in such collectors, only small bodies be brought to incandescence, in large installations a plurality of such vacuum tubes must be inserted in proximity to one another. According to the previous constructions Fig.31 and Fig.33 are quite self evident without further explanations.
Figs. 34-37 represent further diagrams of connections over radiating and flame collectors, and in fact, how they are to be arranged on the ground. Fig. 34 shows an arc light collector with oxide electrodes for direct current and its connection. Fig. 35 shows a similar one for alternating current. Fig. 36 an incandescent collector with a Nernst lamp and Fig. 37 a similar one with a gas flame.

The positive pole 1 of the radiating collectors is always directly connected to the aerial collecting conductor A. In Fig. 34, this is further connected over the capacitor set 5 with a second positive electrode 3. The direct current dynamo b produces current which flows over between the electrodes 3 and 2 as an arc light. On the formation of an arc, the negative incandescent electrode 2 absorbs electricity from the positive poles standing opposite it and highly charged with atmospheric electricity which it conveys to the working circuit. The spark gap 7, inductive resistance 9 and induction coil 10 are like the ones previously described. The protective electromagnet S protects the installation from earth circuiting and the safety spark gap 8 from excess voltage or overcharging.

In Fig. 35, the connection is so far altered that the alternating current dynamo feeds the excitation coil 11 of the induction capacitor. 12 is its negative and 13 its positive pole. If the coil 3 on the magnet core of the dynamo is correctly calculated and the frequency of the alternating current sufficiently high, then an arc light can be formed between poles 1 and 2. As the cathode 2 is connected to the negatively charged earth, and therefore always acts as a negative pole, a form of rectification of the alternating current produced by the dynamo 3 is obtained, since the second half of the period is always suppressed. The working circuit may be carried out in the same way as in Fig. 34; the working spark gap 7 may however be dispensed with, and instead of it, between the points n and m, a capacitor 5 and an induction resistance 9 may be inserted, from which, a current is taken inductively.

Fig. 36 represents a form of construction similar to that shown in Fig. 34 except that here instead of an arc lamp, a Nernst incandescent body is used. The Nernst lamp is fed through the battery 3. The working section is connected with the negative pole, the safety spark gap with the positive poles. The working spark gap 7 may also be dispensed with and the current for it taken at 12 over the oscillation circuit 5, 11 (shown in dotted lines).

Flame collectors (Fig. 37) may also be employed according to this invention. The wire network 1 is connected with the aerial collector conductor A and the burner with the earth. At the upper end of the burner, long points are provided which project into the flame. The positive electrode is connected with the negative over a capacitor 5 and the induction coil 9 with the earth.
The novelty in this invention is:

(1) The use of incandescent cathodes opposite positive poles which are connected to large metallic capacities as automatic collecting surfaces.

(2) The connection of the incandescent cathodes to the earth whereby, in addition to the electricity conveyed to them from the battery of machine which causes the incandescing, also the negative charge of the earth potential is conveyed, and

(3) The connection of the positive and negative poles of the radiating collectors over a capacitor circuit alone or with the introduction of a suitable inductive resistance, whereby simultaneously an oscillatory oscillation circuit may be obtained. The collecting effect is by these methods quite considerably increased.
ROY MEYERS

Patent GB1913,01098  14th January 1914  Inventor: Roy J. Meyers

APPARATUS FOR PRODUCING ELECTRICITY

ABSTRACT
A rectifier for use with apparatus for producing electricity from the earth consists of mercury-vapour lamps constructed and arranged as shown in Fig.4. Each lamp comprises two wires 6<1>, 7<1> wound around a steel tube 15 surrounding a mercury tube 11 preferably of copper. The coil 6<1> is connected between the electrode 14 and the terminal 18, and the coil 7<1> between the terminals 19, 5. The coils 6<1>, 7<1> are preferably composed of soft iron.

DESCRIPTION
This invention relates to improvements in apparatus for the production of electrical currents, and the primary object in view is the production of a commercially serviceable electrical current without the employment of mechanical or chemical action. To this end the invention comprises means for producing what I believe to be dynamic electricity from the earth and its ambient elements.

I am, of course aware that it has been proposed to obtain static charges from upper strata of the atmosphere, but such charges are recognised as of widely variant potential and have thus far proved of no practical commercial value, and the present invention is distinguished from all such apparatus as has heretofore been employed for attracting static charges by the fact that this improved apparatus is not designed or employed to produce or generate irregular, fluctuating or other electrical charges which lack constancy, but on the other hand I have by actual test been able to produce from a very small apparatus at comparatively low elevation, say about 50 or 60 feet above the earth’s surface, a substantially constant current at a commercially usable voltage and amperage.

This current I ascertained by repeated tests is capable of being readily increased by additions of the unit elements in the apparatus described below, and I am convinced from the constancy of the current obtained and its comparatively low potential that the current is dynamic and not static, although, of course, it is not impossible that certain static discharges occur and, in fact, I have found occasion to provide against the damage which might result from such discharge by the provision of lightning arresters and cut-out apparatus which assist in rendering the obtained current stable by eliminating sudden fluctuations which sometimes occur during conditions of high humidity from what I consider static discharges.

The nature of my invention is obviously such that I have been unable to establish authoritatively all of the principles involved, and some of the theories herein expressed may possibly prove erroneous, but I do know and am able to demonstrate that the apparatus which I have discovered does produce, generate, or otherwise acquire a difference of potential representing a current amperage as stated above.

The invention comprises the means for producing electrical currents of serviceable potential substantially without the employment of mechanical or chemical action, and in this connection I have been able to observe no chemical action whatever on the parts utilised although deterioration may possibly occur in some of the parts, but so far as I am able to determine such deterioration does not add to the current supply but is merely incidental to the effect of climatic action.

The invention more specifically comprises the employment of a magnet or magnets and a co-operating element, such as zinc positioned adjacent to the magnet or magnets and connected in such manner and arranged relative to the earth so as to produce current, my observation being that current is produced only when such magnets have their poles facing substantially to the north and south and the zinscs are disposed substantially along the magnets.

The invention also comprehends other details of construction, combinations and arrangements of parts as will be fully set forth.
DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

Fig. 1 is a plan view of an apparatus embodying the features of the present invention, the arrow accompanying the figure indicating substantially the geographical north, parts of this figure are diagrammatic.

Fig. 2 is a view is side elevation of the parts seen in plan in Fig.1
Fig. 3 is a vertical section taken on the plane indicated by the line A--A of Fig.2.
Fig. 4 is a detail view, partly in elevation and partly in section, showing the connections of the converter and intensifier.

Fig. 5 is a transverse section taken on the planes indicated by line 5-5 of Fig. 4, looking downwards.
Fig. 6 is an enlarged detail fragmentary section illustrating the parts at the junction of the conductors and one of the intensifiers.

Fig. 7 is an enlarged detail view partly in elevation and partly in section of one of the automatic cut-outs.
Fig. 8 is a diagrammatic view of one of the simplest forms of embodiment of the invention.

Referring to the drawing by numerals, 1,1 indicates magnets connected by a magnetic substance 2, preferably an iron wire. The magnets 1 are arranged in pairs, one pair being spaced beneath the other, and interposed between the magnets are zinc plates 3,3 connected by an iron wire conductor 4. Suitable insulating supports 5 are arranged for sustaining the respective magnets 1 and plates 3,3. Each plate 3 is preferably bent substantially into V form, as clearly seen in Fig. 1, and the V of one of the plates opens or faces toward the North and the V of the other plate to the South. I have determined by experimentation that it is essential that the plates 3 be disposed substantially North and South with their flat faces approximately parallel to the adjacent faces of the cooperating magnets, although by experience I have not discovered any material difference in the current obtained when the plates are disposed slightly to one side of North and South, as for instance when the plates are disposed to one side of North and South, as for instance when disposed in the line of the magnetic polarity of the earth. The same is true with respect to the magnets 1, the said magnets being disposed substantially North and South for operative purposes, although I find that it is immaterial whether the North pole of one of the magnets is disposed to the North and the South pole to the South, or vice versa, and it is my conviction from experience that it is essential to have the magnets of each pair connected by magnetic material so that the magnets substantially become one with a pole exposed to the North and a pole exposed to the South.

In Fig. 1, I have indicated in full lines by the letters 8 and N the respective polarities of the magnets 1, and have indicated in dotted lines the other pole of those magnets when the connection 2 is severed. I have found that the magnets and zinc plates operate to produce, (whether by collection or generation I am not certain), electrical currents when disposed substantially North and South, but when disposed substantially East and West, no such currents are produced. I also find that the question of elevation is by no means vital, but it is true that more efficient results are obtained by placing the zins and magnets on elevated supports. I furthermore find from tests, that it is possible to obtain currents from the apparatus with the zins and magnets disposed in a building or otherwise enclosed, although more efficient results are obtained by having them located in the open.

While in Figures 1, 2, and 3, I have shown the magnets and the zinc plates as superimposed, it will be apparent, as described in detail below, that these elements may be repositioned in horizontal planes, and substantially the same results will be secured. Furthermore, the magnets 1 with the interposed zins 3, as shown in Figures 1, 2 and 3 merely represent a unit which may be repeated either horizontally or vertically for increasing the current supply, and when the unit is repeated the zinc plates are arranged alternating with the magnets throughout the entire series as indicated below.

A conductor 6 is connected in multiple with the conductors 2 and a conductor 7 is connected with conductor 4, the conductor 6 extending to one terminal of a rectifier which I have indicated by the general reference character 8, and the conductor 7 extending to the other terminal of the rectifier. The rectifier as seen in the diagram Fig. 1 may
assume any of several well known embodiments of the electrical valve type and may consist of four asymmetric cells or Cooper-Hewitt mercury vapour lamps connected as indicated in Fig.1 for permitting communication of the positive impulses from the conductor 6 only to the line conductor 9 and the negative impulses from conductor 6 on only to the line conductor 10. The current from this rectifier may be delivered through the conductors 9 and 10 to any suitable source for consumption.

While the said rectifier 8 may consist of any of the known types, as above outlined, it preferably consists of a specially constructed rectifier which also has the capacity of intensifying the current and comprises specifically the elements shown in detail in Figures 4, 5, and 6 wherein I have disclosed the detail wiring of the rectifier when composed of four of the rectifying and intensify in elements instead of asymmetric cells or simple mercury vapour valves. As each of these structures is an exact embodiment of all the others, one only will be described, and the description will apply to all. The rectifying element of each construction consists of a mercury tube 11 which is preferably formed of glass or other suitable material, and comprises a cylinder having its end portions tapered and each terminating in an insulating plug or stopper 12. Through the upper stopper 12 is extended the electrode 13 which extends well into the tube and preferably about one-half its length, to a point adjacent the inner end of an opposing electrode 14 which latter electrode extends from there down through the insulation 12 at the lower end of the tube. The tube 11 is supplied with mercury and is adapted to operate on the principle of the mercury vapour lamp, serving to rectify current by checking back impulses of one sign and permitting passage of impulses of the other.

To avoid the necessity for utilising a starter, as is common with the lamp type of electrical valve, the supply of mercury within the tube may be sufficient to contact with the lower end of the electrode 13 when current is not being supplied, so that as soon as current is passed from one electrode to the other sufficiently for volatilising that portion of the mercury immediately adjacent the lower end of electrode 13, the structure begins its operation as a rectifier. The tube 11 is surrounded by a tube 15 which is preferably spaced from tube 11 sufficiently for allowing atmospheric or other cooling circulation to pass the tube 11. In some instances, it may be desirable to cool the tube 11 by a surrounding body of liquid, as mentioned below. The tube 15 may be of insulating material but I find efficient results attained by the employment of a steel tube, and fixed to the ends of the of the tube are insulating disks 16, 16 forming a spool on which are wound twin wires 6' and 7', the wire 6' being connected at the inner helix of the coil with the outer end of the electrode 14, the lower portion of said electrode being extended to one side of the tube 11 and passed through an insulating sleeve 17 extending through the tube 15, and at its outer end merging into the adjacent end of the wire 6'. The wire 7' extends directly from the outer portion of the spool through the several helices to a point adjacent to the junction of the electrode 14 with wire 6' and thence continues parallel to the wire throughout the coil, the wire 6' ending in a terminal 18 and the wire 7' ending in a terminal 19.

For the sake of convenience of description and of tracing the circuits, each of the apparatus just above described and herein known as an intensifier and rectifier will be mentioned as A, B, C and D, respectively. Conductor 6 is formed with branches 20 and 21 and conductor 7 is formed with similar branches 22 and 23. Branch 20 from conductor 6 connects with conductor 7' of intensifier B and branch 21 of conductor 6 connects with the conductor 7' of intensifier C, while branch 22 of conductor 7 of intensifier C, while branch 22 of conductor 7 connects with conductor 7' of intensifier D. A conductor 27 is connected to terminal 19 of intensifier A and extends to and is connected with the terminal 18 of intensifier C, and conductor 27 connects with conductor 7' of intensifier D. A conductor 27 is connected to terminal 19 of intensifier A, and extends to and is connected to terminal 18 of intensifier C, and a conductor 28 is connected to the terminal 19 of intensifier C and extends from the terminal 19 of intensifier B to the terminal 18 of intensifier D to electrode 13 of intensifier B. Each electrode 13 is supported on a spider 13' resting on the upper disk 16 of the respective intensifier. Conductors 31 and 32 are connected to the terminals 18 of intensifiers A and B and are united to form the positive line wire 9 which co-operates with the negative line wire 10 and extends to any suitable point of consumption. The line wire 10 is provided with branches 35 and 36 extending to the electrodes 13 of intensifiers C and D to complete the negative side of the circuit.

Thus it will be seen that alternating currents produced in the wires 6 and 7 will be rectified and delivered in the form of a direct current through the line wires 9 and 10, and I find by experiment that the wires 6 and 7 should be of iron, preferably soft, and may of course be insulated, the other wiring not specified as iron being of copper or other suitable material.

In carrying out the operation as stated, the circuits may be traced as follows: A positive impulse starting at the zinces 3 is directed along conductor 7 to branch 23 to conductor 7' and the winding of the rectifier of intensifier B through the rectifier to the conductor 6', through its winding to the contact 18, conductor 32 and to the line wire 9. The next, or negative, impulse directed along conductor 7 cannot find its way along branch 23 and the circuit just above traced because it cannot pass across the rectifier of intensifier B but instead the negative impulse passes along conductor 22 to conductor 7 of intensifier A and its winding to the contact 19 and to conductor 27 to contact 18 of intensifier C, to the winding of the wire 6' thereof to the electrode 14 through the rectifier to the of the
electrode 13 and conductor of intensifier A, electrode 14 thereof and conductor 6′ to contact 18 and wire 31 to line wire 9.

Obviously the positive impulse cannot pass along the wire 20 because of its inverse approach to the rectifier of intensifier B. The next impulse or negative impulse delivered to conductor 6 cannot pass along conductor 21 because of its connection with electrode 13 of the rectifier of intensifier A, but instead passes along conductor 20 to the wire 7′ and its winding forming part of intensifier B to the contact 19 and conductor 29 to contact 18 and the winding of wire 6′ of intensifier D to the electrode 14 and through the rectifier to the electrode 13 and conductor 35 to line wire 10. Thus the current is rectified and all positive impulses directed along one line and all negative impulses along the other lie s that the potential difference between the two lines will be maximum for the given current of the alternating circuit. It is, of course, apparent that a less number of intensifiers with their accompanying rectifier elements may be employed with a sacrifice of the impulses which are checked back from a lack of ability to pass the respective rectifier elements, and in fact I have secured efficient results by the use of a single intensifier with its rectifier elements, as shown below.

Grounding conductors 37 and 38 are connected respectively with the conductors 6 and 7 and are provided with the ordinary lightning arresters 39 and 40 respectively for protecting the circuit against high tension static charges.

Conductors 41 and 42 are connected respectively with the conductors 6 and 7 and each connects with an automatic cut-out 43 which is grounded as at 4. Each of the automatic cut-outs is exactly like the other and one of the these is shown in detail in Fig.7 and comprises the inductive resistance 45 provided with an insulated binding post 46 with which the respective conductor 6 or 7 is connected, the post also supporting a spring 48 which sustains an armature 49 adjacent to the core of the resistance 45. The helix of resistance 45 is connected preferably through the spring to the binding post at one end and at the other end is grounded on the core of the resistance, the core being grounded by ground conductor 44 which extends to the metallic plate 52 embedded in moist carbon or other inductive material buried in the earth. Each of the conductors 41, 42 and 44 is of iron, and in this connection I wish it understood that where I state the specific substance I am able to verify the accuracy of the statement by the results of tests which I have made, but of course I wish to include along with such substances all equivalents, as for instance, where iron is mentioned its by-products, such as steel, and its equivalents such as nickel and other magnetic substances are intended to be understood.

The cut-out apparatus seen in detail in Fig.7 is employed particularly for insuring against high voltage currents, it being obvious from the structure shown that when potential rises beyond the limit established by the tension of the spring sustaining the armature 40, the armature will be moved to a position contacting with the core of the cut-out device and thereby directly close the ground connection for line wire 41 with conductor 44, eliminating the resistance of winding 45 and allowing the high voltage current to be discharged to the ground. Immediately upon such discharge the winding 45 losing its current will allow the core to become demagnetised and release the armature 49 whereby the ground connection is substantially broken leaving only the connection through the winding 45 the resistance of which is sufficient for insuring against loss of low voltage current.

In Fig.8 I have illustrated an apparatus which though apparently primitive in construction and arrangement shows the first successful embodiment which I produced in the course of discovery of the present invention, and it will be observed that the essential features of the invention are shown there. The structure shown in the figure consists of horseshoe magnets 54, 55, one facing North and the other South, that is, each opening in the respective directions indicated and the two being connected by an iron wire 55 which is uninsulated and wrapped about the respective magnets each end portion of the wire 55 being extended from the respective magnets to and connected with, as by being soldered to, a zinc plate 56, there being a plate 56 for each magnet and each plate being arranged longitudinally substantially parallel with the legs of the magnet and with the faces of the plate exposed toward the respective legs of the magnet, the plate being thus arranged endwise toward the North and South. An iron wire 57 connects the plates 56, the ends of the wire being preferably connected adjacent the outer ends of the plates but from experiment I find that the wire may be connected at practically any point to the plate. Wires 58 and 59 are connected respectively with the wires 55 and 57 and supply an alternating current at a comparatively low voltage, and to control such current the wires 58 and 59 may be extended to a rectifier or combined rectifier and intensifier, as discussed above.

The tests which I have found successful with the apparatus seen in Fig.8 were carried out by the employment first of horseshoe magnets approximately 4 inches in length, the bar comprising the horseshoe being about one inch square, the zinCs being dimensioned proportionately and from this apparatus with the employment of a single intensifier and rectifier, as above stated, I was able to obtain a constant output of 8 volts.

It should be obvious that the magnets forming one of the electrodes of this apparatus may be permanent or may be electromagnets, or a combination of the two.
While the magnets mentioned throughout the above may be formed of any magnetic substance, I find the best results obtained by the employment of the nickel chrome steel.

While the successful operation of the various devices which I have constructed embodying the present invention have not enabled me to arrive definitely and positively at fixed conclusion relative to the principles and theories of operation and the source from which current is supplied, I wish it to be understood that I consider myself as the first inventor of the general type described above, capable of producing commercially serviceable electricity, for which reason my claims hereinafter appended contemplate that I may utilise a wide range of equivalents so far as concerns details of construction suggested as preferably employed.

The current which I am able to obtain is dynamic in the sense that it is not static and its production is accomplished without chemical or mechanical action either incident to the actual chemical or mechanical motion or incident to changing caloric conditions so that the elimination of necessity for the use of chemical or mechanical action is to be considered as including the elimination of the necessity for the use of heat or varying degrees thereof.
ENERGY CONVERSION SYSTEMS

This patent application shows the details of devices which can produce ordinary electricity from Tesla longitudinal waves. If these claims are correct (and there does not appear to be the slightest reason for believing that they are not), then implementations of this patent application are capable of producing free electrical power and the importance of this information is enormous.

ABSTRACT

This invention relates to apparatus for the conversion of mass-free energy into electrical or kinetic energy, which uses in its preferred form a transmitter and a receiver both incorporating Tesla coils, the distal ends of whose secondary windings are co-resonant and connected to plates of a chamber, preferably evacuated or filled with water, such that energy radiated by the transmitter may be picked up by the receiver, the receiver preferably further including a pulsed plasma reactor driven by the receiver coil and a split phase motor driven by the reactor. Preferably the reactor operates in pulsed abnormal gas discharge mode, and the motor is an inertially dampened drag motor. The invention also extends to apparatus in which an otherwise driven plasma reactor operating in pulsed abnormal gas discharge mode in turn used to drive an inertially dampened drag motor.

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

This is a continuation of application Ser. No. 09/907,823, filed Jul. 19, 2001.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Energy converters that are fed by local or environmental energy are usually explained by taking recourse to the notion that they convert zero point electromagnetic radiation (ZPE) to electric energy. The ZPE theories have gained a life of their own, as T. Kuhn has pointed out (in his "Black Body Theory and the Quantum"), after emerging from Planck's second theory, specifically from the term $\frac{1}{2} \hbar \nu$ in the new formula for oscillator energy. In 1913, Einstein and Stern suggested that motional frequencies contributing to specific heat fell into two categories—those that were independent of temperature and those that were not (e.g. rotational energy), leading them to conclude that zero-point energy on the order of $\frac{1}{2} \hbar \nu$ was most likely. In the second part of their paper, however, they provided a derivation of Planck's Law without taking recourse to discontinuity, by assuming that the value of the ZPE was simply $\hbar a$. It is worth noting that Einstein had already in 1905 ("Erzeugung und Verwandlung des Lichtes betreffenden heuristischen Gesichtspunkte", Ann. d. Phys, 17, 132) framed the problem of discontinuity, even if only heuristically, as one of placing limits upon the infinite energy of the vacuum state raised by the Rayleigh-Jeans dispersion law. According to Einstein, the Rayleigh-Jeans law would result in an impossibility, the existence of infinite energy in the radiation field, and this was precisely incompatible with Planck's discovery - which suggested instead, that at high frequencies the entropy of waves was replaced by the entropy of particles. Einstein, therefore, could only hope for a stochastic validation of Maxwell's equations at high frequencies "by supposing that electromagnetic theory yields correct time-average values of field quantities", and went on to assert that the vibration-energy of high frequency resonators is exclusively discontinuous (integral multiples of $\hbar \nu$).

Since then, ZPE theories have gone on a course independent from Planck's second theory. The more recent root of modern ZPE theories stems from the work of H. Casimir who, in 1948, apparently showed the existence of a force acting between two uncharged parallel plates. Fundamentally the Casimir effect is predicated upon the existence of a background field of energy permeating even the "vacuum", which exerts a radiation pressure, homogeneously and from all directions in space, on every body bathed in it. Given two bodies or particles in proximity, they shield one another from this background radiation spectrum along the axis (i.e. the shortest distance) of their coupling, such that the radiation pressure on the facing surfaces of the two objects would be less than the radiation pressure experienced by all other surfaces and coming from all other directions in space. Under these conditions, the two objects are effectively pushed towards one another as if by an attractive force. As the distance separating the two objects diminishes, the force pushing them together increases until they collapse one on to the other. In this sense, the Casimir effect would be the macroscopic analogy of the microscopic van der Waals forces of attraction responsible for such dipole-dipole interactions as hydrogen bonding. However, it is worth noting that the van der Waals force is said to tend to establish its normal radius, or
the optimal distance between dipoles, as the distance where the greatest attractive force is exerted, beyond which
the van der Waals forces of nuclear and electronic repulsion overtake the attraction force.

Subsequently, another Dutch physicist, M. Sparnaay, demonstrated that the Casimir force did not arise
from thermal radiation and, in 1958, went on to attribute this force to the differential of radiation pressure between the
ZPE radiation from the vacuum state surrounding the plates and the ZPE radiation present in the space between
them. Sparnaay's proposal is that a classical, non-quantal, isotropic and ubiquitous electromagnetic zero-point
energy exists in the vacuum, and even at a temperature of absolute zero. It is further assumed that since the ZPE
radiation is invariant with respect to the Lorentz transformations, it obeys the rule that the intensity of its radiation
is proportional to the cube of the frequency, resulting in an infinite energy density for its radiation spectrum.

What appeared to be the virtue of this reformulated theory was the notion that the vacuum no longer figured as
pure space empty of energy, but rather as a space exposed to constantly fluctuating "fields of electromagnetic
energy".

Puthoff has utilised the isomorphism between van der Waals and Casimir forces to put forth the zero-point (ZP)
energy theory of gravity, based on the interpretation that the virtual electromagnetic ZP field spectrum predicted
by quantum electrodynamics (QED) is functionally equivalent to an actual vacuum state defined as a background
of classical or Maxwellian electromagnetic radiation of random phases, and thus can be treated by stochastic
electrodynamics (SED). Whereas in QED, the quanta are taken as virtual entities and the infinite energy of the
vacuum has no physical reality, for SED, the ZPE spectrum results from the distortion of a real physical field and
does not require particle creation. Gravity then, could be seen as only the macroscopic manifestation of the
Casimir force.

We do not dispute the fact that even in space-absent matter, there is radiant energy present which is not of a
thermal nature. But we claim that this energy is not electromagnetic, nor is its energy spectrum-infinite. That this
is so, stems not just from our opinion that it is high time that Einstein's heuristic hypothesis should be taken as
literally factual - in the dual sense that all electromagnetic energy is photon energy and all photons are local
productions, but above all from the fact that it is apparent, from the experiments of Wang and his colleagues
(Wang, Li, Kuzmich, A & Dogariu, A. "Gain-assisted superluminal light propagation", Nature 406; #6793; 277),
that the photon stimulus can propagate at supraluminal speeds and lies therefore well outside of any scope of
electromagnetic theory, be this Maxwell's classical approach taken up by ZPE theories, or Einstein's special
relativistic phenomenology of Maxwell's theory. The fact is, that if the light stimulus can propagate at speeds
greater than those of light, then what propagates is not light at all, and thus not energy configured electromagnetically. Light is solely a local production of photons in response to the propagation of a stimulus that
itself is not electromagnetic.

It is critical to understand that the implication from this, that - aside from local electromagnetic radiation and from
thermal radiation associated with the motions of molecules (thermo-mechanical energy), there is at least one
other form of energy radiation which is everywhere present, even in space-absent matter. Undoubtedly, it is that
energy which prevents any attainment of absolute zero, for any possible local outpumping of heat is matched by
an immediate local conversion of some of this energy into a minimum thermal radiation required by the manifolds
of Space and Time. Undoubtedly also, this radiation is ubiquitous and not subject to relativistic transformations
(i.e. it is Lorentz invariant). What it is not, is electromagnetic radiation consisting of randomistic phases of
transverse waves.

To understand this properly, one must summarise the differences from existing ZPE theories - and all these
differences come down to the fact that this energy, which is neither electromagnetic nor thermal per se, (and is
certainly not merely thermo-mechanical), has nevertheless identifiable characteristics both distributed across sub-
types or variants and also common to all of them.

Essentially, the first sub-type or variant consists of longitudinal mass-free waves which deploy electric energy.
They could well be called Tesla waves, since Tesla-type transformers can indeed be shown experimentally to
radiate mass-free electric energy, in the form of longitudinal magnetic and electric waves having properties not
reducible to photon energy nor to "electromagnetic waves", and having speeds of displacement which can be
much greater than the limit c for all strictly electromagnetic interactions.

One may well denote the second sub-type by the designation of mass-free thermal radiation, since it contributes
to temperature changes - and, as obviously indicated by the impossibility of reaching an absolute zero of
temperature, this contribution occurs independently of the presence of matter, or mass-energy, in Space. In
other words, not all thermal radiation can be reduced to vibration, rotation and translation (drift motion) of
molecules, i.e. to thermomechanical energy, because the properties of pressure and volume which determine
temperature and affect matter, appear indeed to a great extent to be independent from matter, a fact which itself is
responsible for the observed catastrophic and unexpected phase changes of matter and has required to this day
the insufficient explanation offered semi-empirically by the Van der Waals Force Law.
Finally, the third sub-type may be designated latent mass-free energy radiation - since it deploys neither charge, nor thermal or baroscopic effects, and yet it is responsible for “true latent heat” or for the “intrinsic potential energy” of a molecule. It is also responsible for the kineto-regenerative phenomenon whereby an electroscope performs a variable charge-mediated work against the local gravitational field.

The common characteristic of all three sub-types of mass-free energy radiation is that they share the same non-classical fine structure, written as follows for any energy unit, where \( c \) is any speed of light wave function, and the wavelength \( \lambda \) and wave function \( W \) are interconnected as a function of the physical quality of the energy field under consideration:

\[
E = \frac{1}{c} W = \frac{p c}{W} = \frac{(h/\lambda)}{W} = -q V
\]

In the instance of longitudinal electric radiation, this takes on the directly quantifiable form:

\[
E = \frac{\lambda}{c} W = \lambda \left( \frac{\pi V}{c} \right) (\lambda n_1) \sim k T
\]

and in the third instance - of latent mass-free radiation, the transformation obeys Boltzmann’s rule (\( k \) is now Boltzmann’s constant and \( T \) is Kelvin-scale temperature):

\[
E = \frac{\lambda}{n_1 c} W = \lambda \left( \frac{f}{c} \right) (\lambda n_1) = \lambda c \frac{3n_1}{\lambda_1 f n_1}
\]

where \( c \) and \( f \) are frequency functions, \( f \) being a specific gravitational frequency term, and \( f_n_1 \) being defined as equal to \( (\lambda n_1) \cdot 10^{-14} \) meter \( \cdot \sec^{-1} \) and \( \lambda n_1 \) has the value of \( c/\lambda n_1 \)

If the electric variant of mass-free radiation has a direct quantum equivalence, via the Duane-Hunt Law, none of the three primary aether energy variants possess either the classic form of electromagnetic energy which requires square superimposition of speed of light wave functions \( c \), as \( c^2 \), or the quantum form of energy, requiring \( E = h \omega \). The critical first step in the right direction may well be attributed to Dr. W. Reich, as it regards the fact that mass-free energy couples two unequal wave functions, only one of which is electromagnetic and abides by the limit \( c \). We then unraveled the threefold structure described above, and further showed that, in the case of longitudinal electric waves, the postulated equivalence \( (q \lambda c) \) is merely phenomenological, as these waves are not restricted by the function \( c \) in their conveying of electric charge across space. It can further be demonstrated that all black-body photons are bound by an upper frequency limit (64 x 10^{14} Hz), above which only ionising photons are produced, and that all black-body photons arise precisely from the interaction of mass-free electric radiation with molecules of matter (including light leptons), whereby the energy of that radiation is locally converted into photon or electromagnetic radiation. In other words, all non-ionising electromagnetic energy appears to be secondary energy which results locally from the interaction of matter with mass-free electric energy. It cannot therefore consist of the primary energy that is present in the vacuum, an energy that is neither virtual nor electromagnetic, but actual and concrete in its electric, thermal and antigravitic manifestations. Lastly, gravitational energy, being either the potential or the kinetic energy responsible for the force of attraction between units of matter, is a manifestation that also requires, much as electromagnetic radiation does, coupling of mass-free energy to matter or to mass-energy.

The Tesla coil is a generator of a mass-free electric energy flux which it transmits both by conduction through the atmosphere and by conduction through the ground. Tesla thought it did just that, but it has been since regarded instead (because of Maxwell, Hertz and Marconi) as a transmitter of electromagnetic energy. The transmitter operates by a consumption of mass-bound electric power in the primary, and by induction it generates in the
coupled secondary two electric fluxes, one mass-bound in the coil conductor, and the other mass-free in the body of the solenoid. Tesla also proposed and demonstrated a receiver for the mass-free energy flux in the form of a second Tesla coil resonant with the first. The receiver coil must be identical and tuned to the transmitter coil; the capacitance of the antenna plate must match that of the transmitter plate; both transmitter and receiver coils must be grounded; and the receiver coil input and output must be unipolar, as if the coil were wired in series.

The generators of mass-free energy with which we are concerned, provide current pulses associated with a dampened wave (DW) oscillation of much higher frequency than the pulse repetition frequency. A particular problem in recovering the mass-free energy content of such pulses is provided by the dampened wave oscillations. Although in our U.S. Pat. No. 5,416,391 we describe arrangements incorporating split phase motors to recover such energy, their efficiency is a great deal less than what should theoretically be attainable. Other workers such as Tesla and Reich, have encountered the same problem to an even greater degree.

In nineteenth century motor engineering terminology, dynamos capable of producing direct current by continuous homopolar induction were known as “unipolar” generators. The term “unipolar induction” appears to have originated with W. Weber, to designate homopolar machines where the conductor moves continuously to cut the magnetic lines of one kind of magnetic pole only, and thus require sliding contacts to collect the generated current. Faraday's rotating copper disc apparatus was, in this sense, a homopolar generator when the disc was driven manually, or a homopolar motor when the current was provided to it. Where the rotating conductor continuously cuts the magnetic field of alternatingly opposite magnetic poles, the operation of a machine, whether a generator or a motor, is said to be “heteropolar”. Unipolar machines went on to have a life of their own in the form of low voltage and high current DC generators - from Faraday, through Plucker, Varley, Siemens, Ferraris, Hummel, to Lord Kelvin, Pancinoti, Tesla and others - almost exclusively in the form of disc dynamos, but some having wound rotors.

In Mordey's alternator, and in so-called “inductor alternators”, however, homopolar generators were employed to obtain alternating currents, with the use of rotors wound back and forth across the field. Use of smooth, unwound rotors in AC induction motors (as opposed to AC synchronous motors, such as hysteresis motors) was a later development than homopolar dynamos. By 1888, Tesla and Ferraris amongst still others, had independently produced rotating magnetic fields in a motor, by employing two separate alternate currents with the same frequency but different phase. Single phase alternate current motors were developed later, and split-phase motors were developed last. Ferraris (Ferraris, G (1888) "Rotazioni elettrodyamiche", Turin Acad. March issue) proposed the elementary theory of the 2-phase motor, where the current induced in the rotor is proportional to the slip (the difference between-the angular velocity of the magnetic field and that of the rotating cylinder), and the power of the motor is proportional to both the slip and the velocity of the rotor.

If an iron rotor is placed within the rotating magnetic field of a 2-phase stator, it will be set in rotation, but not synchronously, given that it is always attracted to the moving magnetic poles with a lag. But if an aluminium or copper rotor is used instead, it gets “dragged” around by the rotating stator field because of the eddy currents induced in it. If the aluminium or copper rotor were to rotate synchronously with the stator magnetic field, there would be no induced eddy currents and thus no motor action would result. The motor action depends, in this instance, upon the presence of asynchronous slip, since the function of the latter is to sustain the induction of those currents in the rotor that are responsible for the motor action of the dragged rotor. This then is the origin of the term “AC drag motors”. Once the drag rotor evolved from a cylinder to a hollow cup, they earned the epithet of “drag-cup motors”. Later, already in the 20th century, the cups were fitted over a central stator member, and the sleeve rotor 2-phase servo motor was born.

Tesla knew that impulse currents as well as CW (constant wave) sinusoidal currents could be used to drive AC motors. Regarding his invention of a hysteresis motor (which he called a “magnetic lag motor”), he stated: “... pulsatory as well as an alternating current might be used to drive these motors...” (Martin, T C (1894) "The inventions, researches and writings of Nikola Tesla", Chapter XII, p. 68). In his search for efficient utilisation of the high frequency DW (dampened wave) impulse currents of his induction coils, Tesla began by employing an AC disc induction motor as shown in Fig.17 of his famous 1892 address (Tesla, N (1892) "Experiments with alternate currents of high potential and high frequency", in "Nikola Tesla Lectures", 1956, Beograd, pp. L-70-71). This consisted of a copper or aluminium disc mounted vertically along the longitudinal axis of an iron core on which was wound a single motor coil which was series wired to the distal terminal of an induction coil at one end, and to a large suspended and insulated metal plate at the other. What was new about this was the implementation of an AC disc induction motor drive, where the exciting current travelled directly through the winding with just a unipolar connection to the coil secondary (under certain conditions, even the series connection to the plate could be removed, or replaced with a direct connection to the experimenter's body): "What I wish to show you is that this motor rotates with one single connection between it and the generator" (Tesla, N. (1892), op. cit., L-70, Tesla's emphasis). Indeed, he had just made a critical discovery that, unlike in the case of mass-bound charge where current flow requires depolarisation of a bipolar tension, mass-free charge engages current flow unipolarly as a mere matter of proper phase synchronisation.
Tesla thought that his motor was particularly adequate to respond to windings which had “high-self-induction”, such as a single coil wound on an iron core. The basis of this self-induction is the magnetic reaction of a circuit, or an element of a circuit - an inductor - whereby it chokes, dims or dampens the amplitude of electric waves and retards their phase.

For the motor to respond to still higher frequencies, one needed to wind over the primary motor winding, a partial overlap secondary, closed through a capacitor, since “it is not at all easy to obtain rotation with excessive frequencies, as the secondary cuts off almost completely the lines of the primary” (Idem, L-71.).

Tesla stated that “an additional feature of interest about this motor” was that one could run it with a single connection to the earth ground, although in fact one end of the motor primary coil had to remain connected to the large, suspended metal plate, placed so as to receive or be bathed by “an alternating electrostatic field”, while the other end was taken to ground. Thus Tesla had an ordinary induction coil that transmitted this "alternating electrostatic field", an untuned Tesla antenna receiving this "field", and a receiver circuit comprising his iron-core wound motor primary, a closely coupled, capacitatively closed secondary, and the coupled non-ferromagnetic disc rotor. Eventually, in his power transmission system, he would replace this transmitter with a Tesla coil, and place an identical receiving coil at the receiving end, to tune both systems and bring them into resonance. But his motor remained undeveloped, and so did the entire receiver system.

Tesla returned to this subject a year later, saying "on a former occasion I have described a simple form of motor comprising a single exciting coil, an iron core and disc" (Tesla, N (1893) "On light and other high frequency phenomena", in "Nikola Tesla Lectures", 1956, Beograd, pp. L-130, and L-131 with respect to Fig.16-II). He describes how he developed a variety of ways to operate such AC motors unipolarly from an induction transformer, and as well other arrangements for "operating a certain class of alternating motors founded on the action of currents of differing phase". Here, the connection to the induction transformer is altered so that the motor primary is driven from the coarse secondary of a transformer, whose finer primary is coupled, at one end, directly and with a single wire to the Tesla secondary, and at the other left unconnected. On this occasion, Tesla mentions that such a motor has been called a “magnetic lag motor”, but that this expression (which, incidentally, he had himself applied to his own invention of magnetic hysteresis motors) is objected to by "those who attribute the rotation of the disc to eddy currents when the core is finally subdivided" (Tesla, N (1893), op. cit., p. L-130).
In none of the other motor solutions, 2-phase or split-phase, that he suggests as unipolar couplings to the secondary of an induction coil, does the non-ferromagnetic disc rotor motor again figure. But he returns to it a page later, and indirectly so, by first addressing the disadvantages of ferromagnetic rotors: "Very high frequencies are of course not practicable with motors on account of the necessity of employing iron cores. But one may use sudden discharges of low frequency and thus obtain certain advantages of high-frequency currents-without rendering the iron core entirely incapable of following the changes and without entailing a very great expenditure of energy in the core. I have found it quite practicable to operate, with such low frequency disruptive discharges of condensers, alternating-current motors."

In other words—whereas his experiments with constant wave (CW) alternating currents, and as well with high-voltage dampened wave (DW) impulses from induction coils, indicated the existence of an upper frequency limit to iron core motor performance, one might employ instead high-current, DW impulses - of high DW frequencies but low impulse rates - to move these motors quite efficiently. Then he adds "A certain class of [AC] motors which I advanced a few years ago, that contain closed secondary circuits, will rotate quite vigorously when the discharges are directed through the exciting coils. One reason that such a motor operates so well with these discharges is that the difference of phase between the primary and secondary currents is 90 degrees, which is generally not the case with harmonically rising and falling currents of low frequency. It might not be without interest to show an experiment with a simple motor of this kind, inasmuch as it is commonly thought that disruptive discharges are unsuitable for such purposes."

What he proposes next, forms the basis of modern residential and industrial AC electric power meters, the AC copper disc motor whose rotor turns on the window of these meters, propelled forward by the supply frequency. But instead of employing any such Constant Wave input, Tesla uses the disruptive discharges of capacitors, incipiently operating as current rectifiers. With the proper conditions, e.g. correct voltage from the generator, adequate current from the capacitor, optimum capacitance for the firing rate, and tuned spark-gap, to mention a few, Tesla found that the non-ferromagnetic disc rotor turned but with considerable effort. But this hardly compared to the results obtained with a high-frequency CW alternator, which could drive the disc "with a much smaller effort". In summary then, Tesla went as far as being the first to devise a motor driven by Tesla waves, that employed a non-ferromagnetic rotor, and whose arrangement encompassed both transmitter and receiver circuits. For this purpose, he employed a single-phase method in which the signal is fed unipolarly to the winding, placed in series with a plate capacitance.

Tesla also later proposed driving a similar single-phase non-ferromagnetic disc motor from bipolar capacitative discharges through an atmospheric spark-gap now placed in parallel with the main motor winding, and again simulating a split-phase by a closely-wound secondary which was closed by a capacitance.

As Tesla admits, the results of all his AC eddy current motor solutions were meagre and limited by current and frequency problems. Likewise, the two-phase arrangements proposed by Reich for his OR motor, involving a superimposition of the Dampened Waves of a first phase on a fixed Continuous Wave second phase, require an external power source and a pulse amplifier circuit, and failed to meet Reich's own requirements.

We have previously proposed the use of squirrel cage motors with capacitative splitting of phase to convert the Dampened Wave output of plasma pulsers, but once a Squirrel Cage is introduced, the dampening effect which the non-ferromagnetic copper cage exerts in being dragged by the revolving stator field, is counteracted by the ferromagnetic cylinder of laminated iron, in which the copper cage is embedded, working to diminish the slip and bring the rotor to near synchronism. This is, in all likelihood, what limits Squirrel Cage motors responding to the DC component of the Dampened Wave impulse, and thus be limited to respond to fluxes of mass-bound charges. Historically, as we shall see, the obvious advantage of the Squirrel Cage servo motors lay in the fact that, in particular for 2-phase applications, they were far more efficient at performing work without evolution of heat. Indeed, if the eddy currents in the non-ferromagnetic rotor are permitted to circulate in non-ordered form, the rotor material and stator will heat up rapidly and consume much power in that heating. This is in fact considered to be a weakness of AC non-ferromagnetic-rotor induction motors.

**SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION**

The present invention is concerned with conversion to conventional electrical energy of the variants of mass-free energy radiation considered above, referred to for convenience as Tesla waves, mass-free thermal radiation and latent mass-free radiation. The first variant of such radiation was recognised, generated and at least partially disclosed by Tesla about a hundred years ago, although his work has been widely misinterpreted and also confused with his work on the transmission of radio or electromagnetic waves. The Tesla coil is a convenient generator of such radiation, and is used as such in many of the embodiments of our invention described below, but it should be clearly understood that our invention in its broadest sense is not restricted to the use of such a coil as a source of mass-free radiation and any natural or artificial source may be utilised. For example, the sun is...
a natural source of such radiation, although interaction with the atmosphere means that it is largely unavailable at the earth's surface, limiting applications to locations outside of the earth's atmosphere.

According to the invention, a device for the conversion of mass-free radiation into electrical or mechanical energy comprises a transmitter of mass-free electrical radiation having a dampened wave component, a receiver of such radiation tuned to resonance with the dampened wave frequency of the transmitter, a co-resonant output circuit coupled into and extracting electrical or kinetic energy from the receiver, and at least one structure defining a transmission cavity between the transmitter and the receiver, a full-wave rectifier in the co-resonant output circuit, and an oscillatory pulsed plasma discharge device incorporated in the co-resonant output circuit. The output circuit preferably comprises a full-wave rectifier presenting a capacitance to the receiver, or an electric motor, preferably a split-phase motor, presenting inductance to the receiver. The transmitter and receiver each preferably comprise a Tesla coil and/or an autogenous pulsed abnormal glow discharge device. The transmission cavity is preferably at least partially evacuated, and comprises spaced plates connected respectively to the farthest out poles of the secondaries of Tesla coils incorporated in the transmitter and receiver respectively, the plates being parallel or concentric. The structure defining the cavity may be immersed in ion-containing water. The split-phase motor is preferably an inertially-dampened AC drag motor.

The invention, and experiments demonstrating its basis, are described further below with reference to the accompanying drawings.

SHORT DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

Fig. 1 is a schematic view of a Tesla coil connected to a full-wave rectifier to form an energy conversion device:
Fig. 2 is a schematic view of a Tesla coil connected to a gold leaf electrometer:

Fig. 3 to Fig. 6 show alternative electrometer configurations:
Fig. 7 to Fig. 11 show modifications of the circuit of Fig. 1:
Fig. 12 shows apparatus for investigating aspects of the experimental results obtained with the foregoing devices;

Fig. 13 is a graph illustrating results obtained from the apparatus of Fig. 12:
Fig. 14 to Fig. 17 show schematic diagrams of embodiments of energy conversion devices:
Fig. 18 is a diagrammatic cross-section of an inertially dampened drag cup motor:
**DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS**

Based upon observations of weight loss in metallic matter as induced by exposure to high frequency alternating electric fields, we developed an experimental method to optimise this weight loss, and from this a device that treats the forces causing weight loss as manifestations of intrinsic potential energy $\Delta U$ (or true "latent heat") of the molecules of matter, and converts both "true latent heat" energy present in the neighbourhood of a receiver, and "sensible" heat induced within that receiver, into electric energy which can be used to drive a motor, flywheel or charge batteries.

It is commonly believed that the output of the Tesla coil is ionising electromagnetic radiation. We have demonstrated that it is not, i.e. that it is neither electromagnetic radiation, nor ionising electromagnetic radiation. The output of an air-cored, sequentially-wound secondary, consists exclusively of electric energy: upon contact with the coil, a mass-bound AC current can be extracted at the resonant frequency, whilst across a non-sparking gap, mass-free AC-like electric wave radiation having the characteristics of longitudinal waves, can be intercepted anywhere in adjacent space. Accordingly, the radiation output from such coils is different to electromagnetic radiation.

The basic demonstration that the output of a Tesla coil does not consist of ionising radiation, is that it does not accelerate the spontaneous discharge rate of electroscopes, whether positively or negatively charged. In fact, in its immediate periphery, the coil only accelerates the spontaneous discharge rate of the negatively charged electroscope (i.e. the charge leakage rate), whereas it arrests the discharge of the positively charged electroscope (i.e. the charge seepage rate falls to zero). But this dual effect is not due to any emission of positive ions from the secondary, even if it can positively charge a discharged electroscope brought to its proximity. This charging effect is in fact an artifact, in that metals but not dielectrics are ready to lose their conduction and outer valence band electrons when exposed to the mass-free electric radiation of the coil.

This is simply demonstrated by the apparatus of Fig.1, in which the outer terminal of the secondary winding 6 of a Tesla coil having a primary winding 4 driven by a vibrator 2 is connected to the input of a full-wave voltage wave divider formed by diodes 8 and 10 and reservoir capacitors 12 and 14 (the same reference numerals are used for similar parts in subsequent diagrams). If the rectifiers employed are non-doped, then the coil appears to only charge the divider at the positive capacitance 10, but if doped rectifiers are employed, the coil will be observed to charge both capacitances equally. Whereas positive ionises can charge either doped or un-doped dividers.

**Fig.19** is a schematic diagram of a further embodiment of an energy conversion device incorporating such a motor:

![Fig.19 Diagram]
positively, no positive ionise can charge a doped divider negatively, clearly demonstrating that the Tesla coil does not emit positive ions.

The basic demonstration that the output of a Tesla coil is not non-ionising electromagnetic radiation of high frequency, such as optical radiation, or of lower frequency, such as thermal photons, is also a simple one. Placement of a sensitive wide spectrum photoelectric cell (capable of detecting radiation to the limits of vacuum UV), wired in the traditional closed circuit manner from a battery supply, at any distance short of sparking from the outer terminal of the coil will show in the dark that the light output from the coil is negligible. This rules out optical radiation at high frequency. The demonstration that the sensible heat output from the Tesla coil is also negligible will be addressed below.

Our theory proposed the existence of physical processes whereby mass-free electric radiation can be converted into electromagnetic radiation. Such a process is at work whenever mass-free electric wave radiation interacts with electrons, such as those that remain in the valence bands of atoms. This mass-free electric energy interacts with charge carriers, such as electrons, to confer on them an electrokinetic energy which they shed in the form of light whenever that electrokinetic energy is dissociated from those carriers (e.g. by deceleration, collision or friction processes). Such a process is at work to a negligible extent in the coil itself and its usual terminal capacitance, hence the faint glow that can be seen to issue from it, but it can also be greatly amplified in the form of a corona discharge by connecting a large area plate to the output of the secondary, as Tesla himself did in his own experiments, and thus by increasing the capacitance of the coil system.

Now, what is interesting in this process is that, in the absence of virtually any I^2R losses at the plate, and if the plate thus introduced is bent at the edges so that it has no pointed edges, or if it is in the form of a bowl, and in any other manner that precludes sparking at edges and specially corners, and thus enhances the corona discharge, any electroscope, whether negatively or positively charged, now brought close to the plate will show a tendency to arrest its spontaneous discharge rate. One might say that this is simply the result obtained in a Faraday cage which disperses charge on its outside and electrically insulates its interior, and indeed if an electroscope is placed inside a Faraday cage no amount of Tesla radiation on the outside of that cage, save direct sparking, adversely affects the leakage or seepage rate of the electroscope. In fact, since the effect of such a cage can be shown to be that of, by itself, inducing arrest of either spontaneous electroscopic discharge, this effect simply remains or is magnified when the cage is bathed by Tesla radiation. However, a cage constitutes an electrically isolated environment, whereas a plate with or without curved or bent edges does not. Furthermore, the change observed in the properties of the output radiation from a Tesla coil when certain metal plates or surfaces are directly connected to the outer terminal of the secondary, takes place whilst the capacitance of the coil is increased by the connected plate, and thus the plate is an electrically active element of the circuit - and hence the opposite of an electrically isolated element.

For a long time, we believed that the anomalous cathode reaction forces observed in autoelectronic discharges (atmospheric sparks, autogenous PAGD (pulsed abnormal glow discharge) and vacuum arc discharges) were exclusive to an autoelectronic emission mechanism prompted by a direct potential between discharging electrodes. Sparking driven by AC potentials could sustain the same forces, but their mutual cancellation over time would not deploy a net force. In this sense, when a large gold leaf connected directly to the ground (via a water pipe or any other suitable connection) or to another large area plate suspended at some height above the ground, is vertically placed at a sparking distance above the surface of another plate connected to the secondary of a Tesla coil, one would not expect the AC spark to sustain any net force across the gap between the gold leaf and the plate. In terms of cathode reaction forces, one would expect their cancellation to be simply brought about by the high frequency of the current alternation in the coil, as both leaf and plate would alternate between being the emitting cathode or the receiving anode. However, this is not what is observed - instead, the gold leaf 16 lifts away from the plate 18 (Fig.2). If instead, the suspended gold leaf is connected to the coil terminal, and the bottom plate is connected to the ground in the same manner as described above, this also yields the same result.

Even more curious is the finding that this anomalous reaction force deployed by an alternate current of mass-bound charges in the arc, remains present when the sparking is prevented and instead the corona effect is enhanced (by employing a large plate connected to the outer pole of the secondary, and by employing a distance at which sparking ceases), as if the leaf itself were the property of the corona underlying the spark channels and not the property per se of the autoelectronic emission mechanism.

By mounting the suspended leaf 16 (41 mg of hammered 99.9996% pure gold) directly at the end of a long dielectric rod 20 balanced at the centre and placed on a light stand over an electronic balance 22, we sought to determine the observed lift of the leaf as weight lost. Surprisingly, and despite the most apparent lifting motion of the leaf, the balance registered a substantial weight gain, indicating the addition of 1 to 5 mg weight (with the same 14W input to the vibrator stage), independently of whether the leaf was connected to the terminal of the coil or instead to the earth ground via a water pipe. This suggested to us that, whether formed as a DC or AC spark channel, or whether in the form of a corona discharge, the electric gap develops an expansion force (exactly
opposite to a Casimir force) on both electrodes, independently of their polarity, which force is responsible for the observed repulsion. Yet, this expansion goes hand in hand with an increase in their weight such that some other process is at work in that electric gap.

To examine this problem further, we assembled a different experiment where the gold leaf 16 was suspended between two large metal plates 18 and 24 placed 20 cm apart, and the leaf was not electrically connected to them or to any other circuit, while attached to the dielectric rod employed to suspend it over the electronic balance. Given that the leaf is suitably and equally spaced from both plates, there is no arcing between it and either plate. The obvious expectation is that, since the electric field bathing the leaf alternates at high frequency (measured in hundreds of kilohertz), and the corona from both electrodes should equalise and balance any electric wind, no lift should be observed. In fact, no lift is apparent, but a most curious observation is made: depending upon which orientation is employed for the plates, the gold leaf either gains or loses 4-6% of its weight. This gain or loss is registered for as long as the coil is on. If the top plate is grounded and the bottom one connected to the different terminal of the secondary, a gain in weight is observed (Fig.3). If the connections are reversed, an equal weight loss is registered (Fig.4).

Furthermore, in this last instance, if the grounded plate 24 is entirely removed (Fig.5), and only the top plate remains connected to the outer terminal of the secondary, the observed loss of weight continues to occur such that in effect, this reaction can be obtained with unipolar electric fields of high frequency, and it provides a unidirectional force which, once exerted upon metallic objects bathed by its field, can be made to oppose or augment gravity.

Now, these effects can be greatly magnified, in the order of 10-fold, if the same gold leaf is made part of a simple series floating electric circuit where the leaf functions as a large area plate, and is wired in series with a coil 26 which, for best results, should be wound so as to be of a length resonant with the secondary of the Tesla-type coil employed; and this coil is connected in turn to a point antenna 28 upwardly oriented (Fig.6). The entire floating circuit is mounted on the rod 20 and this in turn, is mounted over the sensitive balance. If both plates are kept as in Fig.3 and Fig.4, the observed weight loss and weight gain both vary between 30% and 95% of the total weight of the leaf. Again, the gain or loss of weight is registered for as long as the coil is on.

These anomalous findings suggested that, whatever is the nature of the energy responsible for the force observed in that high frequency alternating current gap, any metallic object placed in that gap will experience a force repelling it from the electric ground. This force will be maximised if the gap frequency is tuned to the elementary or molecular structure of the metallic object. If the electric ground is placed opposite the actual plane of the earth ground, that force will act in the direction of gravity. If, instead, the electric ground and the earth ground are made to coincide on the same plane, that force will act opposite the direction of gravity, i.e. will repel the metallic object from the ground.

No such weight alteration was observed with solid dielectrics, for instance with polyethylene and other thermoplastic sheets.

These facts rule out the possibility of a hidden electrostatic attraction force, acting between the plate connected to the different terminal of the secondary and the gold leaf. Firstly, such an attraction would be able to lift the gold leaf entirely, as is easily observed with the unipole of any electrostatic generator operating with a few milliwatts output with either negative or positive polarity; secondly, the same attraction, if it existed and were the product of an electric force, would surely be manifested independently from whether the experimental leaf was metallic or a dielectric (as again is observed with electrostatic generators).

The results suggest therefore, that whenever a large plate is connected to a Tesla-type coil, it induces in surrounding matter that is not part of its own circuit, a directional thrust which is oriented in a direction which is opposite to the electric ground and, if the electrical ground is on the same side as the surface of the Earth, then a thrust is produced which opposes gravity.

When this thrust is made to oppose gravity, we believe that its effect upon the gold leaf can be compared to the lifting power imparted to the water molecule when it transits from the liquid to the vapour state and which is associated with the increase in internal (or intrinsic) potential “thermal” energy ∆U (See Halliday D & ResnickR (1978) “Physics”, Vol. 1, section 22-8, p. 489). The “specific latent heat” of water (mL) contains indeed both an expression for the sensible radiant thermal work involving volume and pressure relations:

W = P(VV-VL) where P = a pressure of 1 atmosphere, and VV and VL are the molar volumes in the vapour and liquid phases respectively, and an expression for a quantity of “latent” energy (∆U) which is associated with the molecule in the more rarefied state. Hence, the relation for the latter with respect to water vapour is: ∆U = mL - P(VV-VL)
We propose that likewise, if a very small portion of the energy of the mass-free electric waves is indirectly transformed by mass-bound charge carriers on that plate into blackbody photons (once those charge carriers shed their electrokinetic energy), the greater portion of those waves are directly transformed in the space adjacent to that plate into the latent energy equivalent to $\Delta U$ for the atoms of the surrounding air, and so on, until this process itself is also occurring for the atoms of that gold leaf, thus inducing their non-electrical weight loss and suggesting the existence of a non-thermal "antigravitokinetic" energy term previously unknown to mankind other than as "latent heat" or "internal potential energy".

From this viewpoint, the energy released by any Tesla-type coil to its surroundings, would be tantamount to a radiative injection of "internal potential energy" which would confer on local gas molecules a weight cancellation (a cancellation of gravitational mass occurring in the absence of any cancellation of inertial mass - a process which the inventors theorise is explained by the neutralisation of elementary gravitons), and the same process would be equally at work for metallic solids but not dielectric solids.

Gold vapour also deploys a substantial intrinsic potential energy. With an enthalpy of vaporisation on the order of $H_v = 324$ kJ mol$^{-1}$, the molar volumetric work performed by gold vapour at atmospheric pressure at the temperature of vaporisation $T_v$ (2,856$^\circ$C., i.e. 3,129 degrees Kelvin) is:

$$W = P \Delta V_{V-L} = 23.58 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1} \text{ where } \Delta V_{V-L} = 0.2327 \text{ m}^3.$$  

The intrinsic potential energy of gold vapour is then given by:

$$\Delta U = H_v - W = 300.4 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1} \text{ i.e. 12.74 times greater than the volumetric work performed during the phase transition.}$$

It is our contention that this intrinsic potential energy, associated with molecules as their "latent heat", has fine structure that in turn is altered if this energy is released from these molecules and fails to gain a "sensible" thermal form. What is suggested is that the fine structure of "latent heat" is not electromagnetic and obeys instead the molecular function:

$$\lambda_{n_2} = \frac{n_2c}{N_A}$$

where $N_A$ is Avogadro's number, the wavelength denoted as $\lambda_{n_2}$ is the wavelength-equivalent of the mass of the molecule to which the "latent heat" is associated, obtained by a conversion method proposed in these inventors' theory, and the frequency term $f$ is a non-electromagnetic frequency term, specifically in this case a gravitational frequency function.

Employing the conversion of Joules into m$^3$ sec$^{-2}$ proposed by these inventors as being exactly:

$$1 \text{J} = 10 N_A \text{ m}^3 \text{ sec}^{-2},$$

and putting the wavelength $\lambda_{n_2}$ down as the wavelength-equivalent of the mass of the gold atom, $\lambda_{Au}$, at 1.9698 m, that frequency term $f_{n_2}$ can be obtained as being equal to $2.6 \times 10^{-3}$ sec$^{-1}$.

According to the present inventors' theory, the wave function $\psi$ constitutive of the fine structure of "latent heat" associated with molecules of matter, carries the same wavelength $\lambda_{Au}$ and its frequency is given in the usual manner by $c/\lambda_{Au} = 1.52 \times 10^3$ sec$^{-1}$. The resultant frequency for the non-Planckian unit quantum of "latent energy" associated with each gold atom at the vaporisation temperature is then obtained by the geometric mean of the two synchronous frequency terms: $[(c/\lambda_{Au}) f_{n_2}]^{0.5} = 624$ Hz. However, this is the signature of that intrinsic potential energy when associated with that gold atom at its vapourisation temperature. It is not the signature of the energy quantum itself if it is released from that molecule, nor prior to being absorbed (i.e. in transit), at that same temperature.

The fine structure of the same non-Planckian "latent" energy quantum varies to encompass different determinations of the constituent wavelength and frequency functions. The basic relation for the determination of the wavelength of a "latent thermal" energy quantum not associated with matter, but corresponding to one that is, is:

$$\lambda_{n_1} = [\Delta U / N_A / c]^{0.666} \text{ meters}^{0.333} \text{ seconds}^{0.666}$$

which gives 0.046478 m for the unbound equivalent of the "latent heat" unit quantum of vaporisation associated with the gold atom at a pressure of one atmosphere. The fine structure of the free quantum is still parallel, as given by:

$$\Delta U / N_A = \lambda_{n_1}^2 c f_{n_1}$$
but now notice how the frequency terms have changed value, with the \( f_n \) function having the value 4.65 sec\(^{-1}\) and \( c / \lambda_n \) yielding 6.48 x 10\(^9\) sec\(^{-1}\). The geometric mean of the superimposition of the two frequencies is then:

\[
[(c / \lambda_n^2)^{\frac{1}{2}} f_n]^{0.5} = 173.7 \text{ KHz}
\]

We contend that it is at this frequency that the atoms of gold vapour absorb "latent heat".

However, this is just the overall scenario of what happens at the temperature of vapourisation of gold. But at room temperature (e.g. 293 degrees Kelvin), and with respect to processes where there is no sublimation of the atoms of that gold leaf under way (and indeed, once the coil is turned off, the leaf returns to its normal weight), one must infer to a different phase of matter what portion of "latent heat" energy, if any, do the atoms of gold hold in the solid phase lattice. Assuming the same proportionality between the "sensible" and "latent" thermal energy terms for atoms of gold at room temperature, where the unit thermal energy is \( N_a kT = 2.436 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1} \), we speculate that the gold atom could absorb up to 12.74 times the value of this "sensible" thermal energy, and thus hold \( N_a kT = 31.053 \text{ KJ} \) more energy in its own micro-atmosphere.

If this speculation is correct, and employing the above novel methodology, then the mean geometric frequency of the maximal "latent heat" energy quantum of a gold atom at room temperature would be 538 KHz (versus 174 KHz at the vapourisation temperature), and once absorbed its mean frequency mode would reduce to 201.5 Hz (versus 630 Hz once the atom has vaporised).

To test this hypothesis, we employed two different Tesla-type coils having output frequencies of 200 KHz and 394 KHz. The circuit tested was that shown in Fig.6, and both coils were operated at 50 KV outputs. Whereas the former coil, closer to the 174 KHz marker, could only systematically produce 10mg to 11 mg of weight cancellation in the gold leaf of the floating circuit, the second coil, closer to the speculated 538 KHz marker, could produce 15mg to 35 mg of weight cancellation in the same gold leaf. The empirical results appear therefore to suggest that our speculation may well be a valid one.

The above-mentioned full wave divider (see Fig.1) can be easily coupled to our autogenous Pulsed Abnormal Glow Discharge technology as described in our U.S. Pat. No. 5,416,391 to form an alternative source of direct current, ultimately powered by Tesla waves, and such a drive can equally be applied to any other vacuum device that can sustain endogenous oscillatory discharges, whether in the PAGD regime or any other pulsatory regime. For the purposes of experimental and visual determination of power outputs from the divider in question, we have utilised either 2 Torr vacuum tubes operating in the high-current PAGD regime, or 20-100 Torr spark tubes requiring high voltages (2 to 10 KV) for their spark breakdown. As taught in the above US Patent, the output from the full wave voltage divider can be assessed by the energy spent in driving the tube and the motor, whose rotary speed is proportional, within the limits chosen, to the power input.

Two separate sets of experiments presented in Table 1 below, showed that direct connection of the wave divider to the outer terminal of the coil (set constantly at 6 clicks on the vibrator stage in Fig.1) or to the same terminal but across a large (2 or 3 square feet) plate \( \text{30} \) that increased the capacitance of the secondary (Fig.7), presented the same power output in either case (the effect of the plate is to lower the voltage of the output proportional to the increase in current). A substantial increase in power output through the divider is observed only when an identically wound Tesla coil is connected in reverse (Fig.8) with the non-common end of its winding \( \text{4} \) not connected, in order to obtain a condition of resonance, and this observed increase is further augmented by now interposing either of the metal plates \( \text{18}, \text{24} \) between the two chirally connected and identical coils (Fig.9). The increase in plate area appears to have the effect of increasing the output for as long as the plate is isolated between the two chiral image coils. Throughout these experiments, the input power to the vibrator was fixed at 14W (60 Hz AC). [Note: 'Chirality', or 'handedness', is a property of objects which are not symmetrical. Chiral objects have a unique three-dimensional shape and as a result a chiral object and its mirror image are not completely identical - PJK].
In our loss of weight experiments described above, we noted that the phenomenon of weight loss by a metallic body placed in proximity of the coil output continued to be observed when only the plate connected to the distal pole of the secondary was retained. The leaf, although not part of the circuit of the secondary, could however be seen as part of a circuit for the capture of ambient radiant energy, specifically that generated by the coil and, as well, that also possibly picked up, in the process, from other ambient sources. To determine whether the last consideration is a possibility at all, or whether the energy picked up by an analogue of our metallic body or gold leaf in the experiments described above, is entirely a by-product of the energy transmitted by the plate connected to the outer pole of the secondary, we next determined what would happen if the pick-up for the full-wave divider were placed, not at the output from the secondary coil, but from an, in all respects identical, plate (the Receiver plate $R$, as opposed to the Transmitter plate $T$) placed a distance away from, and above, the first one. In other words, the gold leaf is replaced by a receiver plate, and this carries an attached test circuit identical to the test circuit employed to directly assess the coil output.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Pulse rate (PPS)</th>
<th>Motor rotation (RPM), M ± SEM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Expt A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tesla coil ($T$) to divider</td>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>582.5 ± 3.9 (n = 4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TC to inverted $T$, to divider</td>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>621.7 ± 6.6 (n = 4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TC to 2 ft$^2$ plate, to inverted $T$, to divider</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>775.25 ± 23.6 (n = 4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expt B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tesla coil ($T$) to divider</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>613 ± 5.6 (n = 12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TC to 2 ft$^2$ plate, to divider</td>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>605 ± 2.6 (n = 12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TC to inverted $T$, to divider</td>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>722 ± 5.7 (n = 12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TC to 2 ft$^2$ plate, to inverted $T$, to divider</td>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>877.5 ± 6.5 (n = 12)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In our loss of weight experiments described above, we noted that the phenomenon of weight loss by a metallic body placed in proximity of the coil output continued to be observed when only the plate connected to the distal pole of the secondary was retained. The leaf, although not part of the circuit of the secondary, could however be seen as part of a circuit for the capture of ambient radiant energy, specifically that generated by the coil and, as well, that also possibly picked up, in the process, from other ambient sources. To determine whether the last consideration is a possibility at all, or whether the energy picked up by an analogue of our metallic body or gold leaf in the experiments described above, is entirely a by-product of the energy transmitted by the plate connected to the outer pole of the secondary, we next determined what would happen if the pick-up for the full-wave divider were placed, not at the output from the secondary coil, but from an, in all respects identical, plate (the Receiver plate $R$, as opposed to the Transmitter plate $T$) placed a distance away from, and above, the first one. In other words, the gold leaf is replaced by a receiver plate, and this carries an attached test circuit identical to the test circuit employed to directly assess the coil output.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Pulse rate (PPS)</th>
<th>Motor rotation (RPM), M ± SEM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 ft$^2$ plates</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$R$ plate to inverted $T$, to divider</td>
<td>3$^{\text{&quot;}}$</td>
<td>6.7 882 ± 17.5 (n = 4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4$^{\text{&quot;}}$</td>
<td>8.0 906 ± 12.1 (n = 4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6$^{\text{&quot;}}$</td>
<td>10 936 ± 46.1 (n = 9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 ft$^2$ plates</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TC to $T$, to divider</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2.3 605 ± 2.6 (n = 12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$R$ plate to divider</td>
<td>6$^{\text{&quot;}}$</td>
<td>3.3 890.1 ± 3.8 (n = 12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$R$ plate to inverted $T$, to divider</td>
<td>6$^{\text{&quot;}}$</td>
<td>5.1 1009.2 ± 4 (n = 12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$R$ plate to divider</td>
<td>8$^{\text{&quot;}}$</td>
<td>4.0 783.1 ± 11.3 (n = 12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$R$ plate to inverted $T$, to divider</td>
<td>8$^{\text{&quot;}}$</td>
<td>5.1 1005.7 ± 6 (n = 12)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As shown in Table 2 above, the results of the experiment show that there is no loss of energy picked up at the $R$ plate (Fig.10) when compared to the most favourable situation involving the plate $30$ (Fig.9) interposed between the chirally connected coils. This observation is however not always the case. For best results one should employ iron, gold or silver plates placed parallel to the horizon, with the $T$ plate underneath the $R$ plate. In fact, if one employs instead aluminium plates and suspends these vertically, one can consistently register a loss of output at the divider when changing the divider input from the $T$ to the $R$ plates.
If however the plate \( R \) is connected in turn to a second identical coil, also wired in reverse, and this second coil in turn serves as input to the full-wave divider (Fig.11), then a most curious occurrence takes place - the power output increases considerably (see Table 2), as if the divider circuit had undergone an energy injection not present at the source. Note that the circuits are in fact resonant, but the energy injection contributing nearly 60-66% (for both plate areas in the previous experiment) of the input that we refer to, is not caused by inductive resonance, since the effect of resonance can be ascribed to the set-up described in Fig.9. The distance between the plates, as well as their orientation with respect to the local horizon system of the observer also appear to matter, best results being achieved at optimal distances (e.g. for 2 square feet plates the best gap, at 43% RH and room temperature, was at least 6 inches).

We tested the possibility that environmental heat produced by operation of the coil might be the source of the injected energy, the plate of the second system acting possibly as collector for the heat present in the gap. As it turned out, experiments showed repeatedly that in the gap between the \( T \) and \( R \) plates there was no significant thermal radiation propagating between one and the other. The more illustrative experiments are those in which we identified where the sensible thermal energy appears, and which involved coupling two cavities: the Transmitter-Receiver gap between plates \( T \) and \( R \), and a Faraday cage enclosure 34 (see Fig.12). The first cavity appears to be much like that of a capacitor: the two identical parallel plates are surrounded by a thick dielectric insulator 32, and a thermometer \( T_2 \) is inserted half-way through it. A thermometer \( T_1 \) is also fixed to the \( T \) plate, to measure it's temperature. The second cavity is a simple insulated metal cage with a thermometer \( T_3 \) inserted 2 cm into its top. Some 2-4 cm above the top of the cage there is placed a fourth thermometer \( T_4 \), inside an insulated cylinder.

If the Tesla Coil is a source of thermal energy (e.g. IR radiation, microwaves, etc.) we would expect the \( T \) plate to be the hottest element from which, by radiation, thermal energy would reach the middle of the first cavity making the next thermometer \( T_2 \) second hottest, and that the third thermometer \( T_3 \) inside the second cavity, even if it might initially be slightly warmer than the other two, would, over time, become comparatively cooler than either one of the other two thermometers, despite the fact that the rising heat would still be seen to warm it up over time. One would expect a similar outcome for the fourth thermometer \( T_4 \), above the cage. As shown by Fig.13, where only the temperature differences \((\Delta T^0 - T_c^0)\) between the experimental thermometers and the control thermometer reading the air temperature \( T_c^0 \) of the laboratory are shown, the surface of the \( T \) plate warms up by 0.1°C. at 3 minutes after initiation of the run (closed squares), whereas in the space of the \( T/R \) gap a diminutive warming, by 0.05°C., is registered after 10 minutes (open circles). Conversely, the temperature inside the cage, at the top (shaded circles) rises by 0.1°C. also by the third minute, and the temperature above the cage itself (shaded squares) rises by a much greater difference of 0.35°C., which remains stable after the eighth minute.

These results show that it is not sensible heat that radiates from the \( T \) plate. Instead, some other form of radiation traverses these cavities to generate sensible heat at their metallic boundaries, such that more heat is generated above the \( R \) plate (inside the cage) and again above the third plate, i.e. above the top of the cage, than is generated in the \( T/R \) gap, i.e. near the \( T \) plate. This clearly shows that the Tesla coil is not a significant source of thermal radiation, and that sensible heat can be detected inside and on top of the Faraday cage only as a further transformation of the radiant energy transmitted across the \( T/R \) cavity. The same experiment also illustrates that, whatever is the nature of the additional environmental energy being injected at the surface of \( R \) plate (as shown by Table 2 results above), it is most likely not thermal radiation, at least not energy in the form of sensible heat. And whatever is the nature of this ambient radiant energy being mobilised by the electric radiant energy transmitted from the \( T \) plate, it can produce significant heat inside an enclosure adjacent to plate \( R \).

Since we also know experimentally, that this observation of an ambient energy injection at the \( R \) plate or \( R \) cage depends upon relative humidity, being most easily observable when the latter is low (<50% Relative Humidity), and being virtually impossible to observe when air is saturated with water vapour, we can infer that water vapour is a good absorber of the electric mass-free radiant energy emitted from the \( T \) plate. This strongly suggests that this absorption process is tantamount to increasing the potential intrinsic energy \( \Delta U \) of the water vapour molecules adjacent to the \( T \) plate. In the absence of significant quantities of water vapour, when the atmosphere is dry, one may speculate that this absorption process is replaced by what one presumes is a parallel process involving the various gaseous molecules of air. However, either because the air molecules involve molecular species that readily give off this potential energy, as one might speculate is the case with molecular oxygen, hydrogen and nitrogen, or because the air molecules absorb far less "latent" energy (as appears to be the case with inert gases), and therefore there is more of it in the molecularly unbound state (as we explicitly propose as a possibility) and thus available for absorption by the appropriately tuned receiver, the increased \( \Delta U \) of air molecules conferred by the absorption of the mass-free electric radiation in the \( T/R \) gap is transferred to the \( R \) conductor together with the latent energy which those molecules already possessed before entering that gap. Hence the
energy injection and its dependency upon the partial pressure of water vapour, which absconds instead with this "latent" energy and succeeds in withholding it from transmission to the R plate.

If the T/R gap can mobilise ambient energy which is neither electromagnetic nor thermal in nature, but which "latent" energy becomes injected into the divider circuit in electric form, the heat (i.e. sensible thermal energy) produced inside and on top of the cage, can also be mobilised electrically as input into the divider circuit. The obvious place to look for the positioning of the cool junction which could convert sensible heat into electrokine tic energy of mass-bound charges is at the top of the cage, where it is warmest (See top curve of Fig.13 in shaded squares). This is clearly observed from the results shown in Table 3 below, where the initial temperature difference between the top of the box and the T plate surface was 0.5°C., and the top of the box temperature rose by 0.2°C. after 2.5 minutes when the divider was connected at the junction, versus 0.35°C. when it was not (and the transmitter coil was on).

For the run performed with the naked R cage, the temperature directly above the top of the cage was 24.3°C., at the outset, versus the control room temperature of 23.9°C. For the run performed with the insulated R cage exposed directly to the sun at midday, on a cool and clear August day, the temperature directly above the top of the cage was 32°C., versus the control air temperature of 18.4°C. The temperature of the cool junction at the top of the cage was 31.9°C. while the run was performed.

It is apparent from the data of Table 3, how a second injection of energy has occurred in the apparatus. If, within the T/R gap, the energy injected appears to be on the order of absorption of "latent heat", at the top of the cage cavity, at the cool junction, the injection is one of radiant "sensible" heat. Moreover, this secondary energy addition could be further enhanced by placing strong insulation around the whole apparatus or the cage itself, and further so, by exposing the whole apparatus to solar radiation.

We next turned our attention to the T/R gap cavity with the intention of determining whether atmospheric conditions or vacua yield the same or different results. We could not, of course, test the same large area plates as have been employed for the studies undertaken at atmospheric pressures. For the present purpose we employed instead large area electrodes (ca 0.2 ft²) made of high grade stainless steel or even aluminium. Preliminary results showed that these T/R gap tubes, when coupled to the divider circuit, yielded faster pulse rates in the secondary circuit when evacuated than at atmospheric pressure. The strength of the corona discharge also intensified, as it eventually became replaced by a normal glow discharge. For purposes of improved spatial capture of (1) the electric mass-free energy radiated from the T electrode and (2) the non-radiant latent thermal energy mobilised by it to be collected electrically at the R plate, an axial cylindrical T electrode was inserted inside a larger concentric cylinder or between two common plates of large surface area (e.g. >100 cm²) functioning as the R electrode(s), in a dielectric container suitable for evacuation (glass, polycarbonate), at a typical distance of at least 3 cm between electrodes, and the entire device was tested at different pressures.

The secondary circuit connected downstream from the full-wave divider was as shown in Fig.14 (employing an autogenous pulsed abnormal glow discharge, or PAGD, converter circuit), with the PAGD reactor set at 10 Torr (in light of the high-voltage input, which varied between 1,500V and 3,200V) and gave the results presented in Table 4 below. We should remark also that these pulses charged the charge pack CP through the coupling
capacitors 38, bridge rectifier 40 and reservoir capacitors 42, and blocking diodes 44, as expected from the prior art represented by our patents related to PAGD devices.

The effect of the vacuum in the T/R gap tube seems to be dual. By transforming the corona discharge into a normal glow discharge, it increases the local production of photons (probably associated to the formation and discharge of metastable states in the plasma), and at the same time, increases the pulse rate in the output circuit and thus, in all probability, the energy injected in the T/R gap cavity. But this did not yet permit us to confirm whether or not it is "latent heat" energy of the plasma molecules which is being tapped at the receiver plate, even if it be plausible in principle that plasmas may effect more efficient transfer of "latent heat" to tuned receivers than atmospheric gases.

The vacuum dependency of the pulse rate of the PAGD reactor employed as example in the secondary circuit downstream from the divider is also rather well marked, with the fastest pulse rates being registered at 1 Torr for the sample run shown in Table 5 below.

It is worth noting here that the illustrated polarity of the wiring of the PAGD reactor tube, as shown in Fig.14, is best for purposes of sustaining regular auto-electronic emission at high voltage. The reverse configuration, with the centre electrode negative and the plates positive favours instead heating of the cathode and a lapse into a normal glow discharge.

We tested a similar arrangement to that shown in Fig.14 above, but with a PAGD motor circuit (see our U.S. Pat. No. 5,416,391). A split-phase motor 44 replaces the rectifier and charge pack, and the PAGD reactor is operated at the same pressure of 15 Torr, as shown in Fig.15. The T/R gap tube tested had a longer plate distance (2''), with one plate now functioning as Transmitter and the other as Receiver. Note also the different wiring of the PAGD reactor. The results, as shown below in Table 6, present pulse per second (PPS) and motor revolutions per minute (RPM) curve trends that appear to be analogous and parallel to the well known Paschen curves for breakdown voltage in vacuum - such that the T/R gap performs better either in the atmospheric corona discharge mode, or in the high vacuum normal glow discharge (NGD) mode, than in the low breakdown voltage range of the curve where the discharge forms a narrow channel and takes on the appearance of an "aurora" transitional region discharge (TRD).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T/R tube Pressure (Torr)</th>
<th>Pulse rate (PPS)</th>
<th>PAGD Reactor Pressure (Torr)</th>
<th>Voltage (across divider)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.025</td>
<td>0.115</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>4.5 kV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.025</td>
<td>0.1553</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>3.5 kV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.025</td>
<td>0.183</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>3.3 kV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.025</td>
<td>0.291</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>1.6 kV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.025</td>
<td>0.513</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>1.4 kV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.025</td>
<td>0.602</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>0.53 kV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.025</td>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.45 kV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.025</td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
These results suggest that plasmas with high lateral dispersion, i.e. formed over large electrode areas (e.g. corona and NGD plasmas) and thus devoid of pinch, are more likely to mobilise electrically, the intrinsic potential energy of the molecular charges than pinch plasmas appear to be able to do (e.g. TRD plasmas). Apparently also, the greater the vacuum drawn from the T/R gap cavity, the more efficient does the transfer of this intrinsic potential energy become, i.e. the mass-bound latent heat, to the electrokinetic energy of the charges circulating in the receiver circuit. At about 0.06 Torr, this transfer in vacuo is comparable to that observed under atmospheric conditions and thus for a much greater density of molecules.

We investigated whether it is possible to tap the latent heat energy of water molecules. It is possible that in the vapour phase they can effectively hold on to their latent energy - but could they give off some of it once closely packed in liquid phase? To test this hypothesis we immersed the T/R gap in a glass water tank. The motor employed for these tests was a high-speed 2-phase drag-cup motor (see Fig.18 and associated description), wired in split-phase with two identical phase windings capacitatively balanced, and the galvanised iron plates each had an area of one square foot. The results are shown in Table 7 below, and clearly indicate that it is possible to tap - within the T/R cavity - the 'latent heat' of water in the liquid phase. As observed, immersion of the T/R cavity in water increased the motor output speed 22% (12,117 / 9,888) x 100). This corresponds to a 50% increase in power output, from 18W at 9,888 rpm to 27W at 12,117 rpm:

Thus the use of ion-containing water or other ion-containing aqueous liquid in the cavity promotes long distance propagation and a greater injection of latent and thermal energies in the receiver circuit. Such a result is not achieved if the cavity is filled with deionised water.

The preceding results lead therefore to the design of a presently preferred apparatus, based on these findings, for the conversion of mass-free electric energy, "latent heat" energy and "sensible" heat energy into conventional electric energy, as shown in Fig.16, which integrates all of the separate findings and improvements. The winding 6 of the Tesla coil at the bottom is driven in the usual manner employing a vibrator stage 2 to pulse the primary coil 4. The outer pole of the secondary 6 is then connected to a circular metal plate T which is one end of an evacuated cylindrical cavity, connected to a vacuum pump or sealed at a desired pressure, or which forms a still containing water or other aqueous solution or liquid. This cavity constitutes the transmitter/receiver gap, and is therefore bounded by a dielectric envelope and wall structure 32, with the circular receiver plate R as its top surface. In turn this plate R serves as the base of a conical Faraday cage 34, preferably air-tight and at atmospheric pressure, but which could also be subject to evacuation, which conical structure carries at its apex provisions for a cold junction 45 and any possible enhancement of the same junction by surface application of different metallic conductors that may optimise the Peltier-Seebeck effect. The output from the cold junction where sensible thermal energy is added to the electrokinetic energy of charge carriers, is also the input to the distal end of the winding 6 of the chiral coil arrangement that sustains resonant capture of all three energy flows ((1) mass-free electric waves of a longitudinal nature, (2) true "latent heat" or the intrinsic (thermal) potential energy, and (3) the thermokinetic energy of molecules, (i.e. "sensible" heat) and, placed in series with the input of

<p>| Table 6 |
|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T/R tube Pressure (Torr)</th>
<th>Pulse rate (PPS)</th>
<th>Motor rotation (RPM), M ± SEM (n = 17)</th>
<th>Discharge Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>750</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>751.2 ± 7.1</td>
<td>Corona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>611.5 ± 5.1</td>
<td>TRD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>701.9 ± 4.6</td>
<td>TRD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.006</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>748.4 ± 9.3</td>
<td>NGD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.003</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>819.4 ± 6.3</td>
<td>NGD</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| Table 7 |
|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pulse rate PPS</th>
<th>Motor rotation RPM M ± SEM</th>
<th>T/R distance cm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Direct from TC</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>8076 ± 89.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TC to T plate</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>9888 ± 78.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R plate</td>
<td>2.75</td>
<td>12117 ± 29.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R plate</td>
<td>2.9</td>
<td>12203 ± 55.9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Thus thus the use of ion-containing water or other ion-containing aqueous liquid in the cavity promotes long distance propagation and a greater injection of latent and thermal energies in the receiver circuit. Such a result is not achieved if the cavity is filled with deionised water.
the full wave divider 8, 10, feeds the circuit output from the series capacitors 12, 14 grounded at their common tap. In the T/R gap, the transmitted electric longitudinal wave energy is captured along with any intrinsic potential energy shed by molecules caught in the field. Within the R element, expanded into an enclosure that guides "sensible" radiant heat, the latter is generated and then recaptured at the cold junction.

The apparatus consisting of the cylindrical T/R gap cavity and the contiguous conical cage is then preferably finished in gloss white and cylindrically enveloped within a matt black container 46 by effective thermal insulation 48, the latter terminating at the height of the bottom disc T. Apparatus (not shown) may be provided to move the plate T vertically to adjust the T/R gap.

Another alternative embodiment of the apparatus is shown in Fig.17. Here the circuit driving the apparatus is as we have set forth in our prior patents, which employs an autogenous pulsed abnormal glow discharge tube 50 in the configuration shown, supplied by a battery pack DP through blocking diodes 52 and an RC circuit formed by resistor 54 and capacitor 56 to drive the primary 2 of a first Tesla coil to obtain at the distal pole of the secondary 6 the energy to be injected to plate T in the form of a central electrode of a coaxial vacuum chamber (sealed or not), of which the cylindrical metallic envelope forms the receiver plate R, the latter being placed centrally inside the conical cage 34 and contiguous with its walls and base. The top and bottom of the coaxial chamber carries suitable insulating discs, preferably with O-ring type fittings. Again, the apparatus is enclosed in insulation within a cylindrical container 46, and the input into the capture circuit driven from the full wave divider is taken from the cold junction 45 at the apex of the air-tight cage. The output circuit is similar to that of Fig.15.

We have found however that even when the component values in the motor driver and motor circuits are carefully selected so that these circuits are co-resonant with the dampened wave (DW) component of the motor driver pulses, the motor power output falls short of that which should theoretically be attainable. In an endeavour to meet this problem, we replaced the squirrel-cage type induction motor 44 by a drag cup motor of type KS 8624 from Western Electric in the expectation that the low-inertia non-magnetic rotor would allow better response to the Dampened Wave component. This motor is similar to one of the types used by Reich in his experiments. Although results were much improved they still fell short of expectations. Replacement of this motor by an inertially dampened motor of type KS 9303, also from Western Electric, provided much better results as discussed below.

Fundamentally, the difficulties we encountered stemmed from the inability of motor couplings to respond efficiently and smoothly, and at the same time, to the pulse and wave components of Dampened Wave impulses: that is, simultaneously to the high-intensity peak current pulses (the front end event), the DC-like component, and to the dampened wave trains these cause, i.e. the pulse tails (or back end event)-or AC-like component. This difficulty is present even when we just seek to run induction motors from the DW impulses of a Tesla coil, the very difficulty that led Tesla to abandon his project of driving a non-ferromagnetic disc rotor mounted on an iron core bar stator with dampened waves.

We believe that the key to the capture of the mass-free energy flux output in electric form by Tesla transmitters, including any injected latent or thermal energy that have undergone conversion into electrical energy is to employ the tuned, unipolar, Y-fed, PAGD-plasma pulser driven split-phase motor drive we have invented (U.S. Pat. No. 5,416,391) in conjunction with an inertia lly dampened AC servomotor-generator (see the tuned, unipolar, Y-fed, PAGD-plasma pulser driven split-phase motor drive which we invented), his motor would succeeded in overcoming the limitations of his 2-phase OR Motor solution, as we have now shown it is possible to do (by applying the Function Y circuit to the PAGD split-phase motor drive which we invented), his motor would have suffered the same limitations which we encountered with the KS 8624 motor.

Any motor, by itself, has an internal or inherent damping whereby the acceleration only vanishes when the rotor is running at constant speed. For motors which operate on the basis of the drag principle, where the asynchronous slip is actually constitutive of the motor action, by inducing eddy currents in the rotor, the inherent damping is always more pronounced than for other induction motors. The damping or braking torque is produced when a
constant current flows through a rotating drag disc or cup.

Aside from this inherent braking, dampers can also be applied to servo motors to further stabilise their rotation. They absorb energy, and the power output and torque of the motor is thereby reduced. Optimal operation of servo motors requires both rapid response on the part of the rotor to changes in the variable or control phase, and a stable response that is free from oscillation, cogging and overshooting. The rapid response is assured by employing low inertia rotors, such as drag-cups or cast alloy squirrel-cages, and the overshooting and oscillation are reduced to a minimum by damping or a retarding torque that increases with increasing motor speed. Typically, in a viscous-dampened servomotor, the damper is a drag-cup generator mounted rigidly on the shaft of the motor rotor, and the generator drag-cup rotates against the stator field of a static permanent magnet field. The generator develops a retarding torque directly proportional to speed, and the energy absorbed by the damper is proportional to speed squared. The damping can be adjusted and, as it increases, the same amount of input power yields lower torque and motor speeds. Inertial-dampened servo motors differ from viscous dampened motors in that the permanent magnet stator of the drag-cup generator is now mounted in its own bearings, either in the motor shaft or on a separate aligned shaft, forming a high-inertia flywheel.

This means that, whereas the motor rotor always experiences a viscous damping in viscous-dampened servo motors, in inertial-damped servo motors the drag cup motor rotor only experiences a viscous damping while accelerating the flywheel, with the damping torque always opposing any change in rotor speed. Once the flywheel rotates synchronously with the rotor, all damping ceases. Note that this viscous damping is carried out via the coupling of the drag-cup generator rotor, rigidly affixed to the motor rotor, to the PM flywheel, so that their relative motion generates the viscous torque proportional to the relative velocity. Use of drag-cup sleeve rotors in inertially dampened servo motors was largely supplanted by squirrel-cage rotors once the latter became produced as cast alloy rotors. Since inertially dampened motors can be used in open and closed-loop servo applications, and present better stability - even in the presence of non-linearities - and higher velocity characteristics than other induction motors do (Diamond, A (1965) "Inertially dampened servo motors, performance analysis", Electro-Technology, 7:28-32.), they have been employed in antenna tracking systems, stable inertial-guidance platforms, analogue to digital converters, tachometers and torque tables.

The typical operation of an inertially dampened servomotor is as follows: with the reference phase fully excited, the motor rotor - fixedly linked to the generator rotor, as well as the flywheel - remain immobile; once power is applied to the control phase, the motor rotor immediately responds but the flywheel remains at rest. However, as the drag-cup generator is forced to move through the permanent magnetic field of the flywheel, it creates a drag torque that slows down the attached motor rotor proportionally to the acceleration that it imparts to the flywheel that it now sets into motion, thus creating the viscous damper. As the flywheel accelerates, the relative speed of the motor with respect to the flywheel, as well as the damping torque, decrease until both motor and flywheel rotate synchronously and no damping torque is exercised - at which point the drag on the motor cup exerted by the generator cup is negligible.

The KS-9303 motor is an inertial dampened servomotor but is differentiated with respect to other inertially dampened motors, in that (1) it employs a drag-cup sleeve motor rotor made of aluminium, very much like that of the KS-8624, but with slightly altered dimensions and with a shaft extension for the drag-cup copper generator rotor, and (2) the moving flywheel structure was journaled on a separate, fixed shaft, as already described with reference to Fig.18. Now, in principle, even application of minimal damping decreases motor efficiency, resulting in diminished torque and speed. Whether the inertial-dampened motor has a drag-cup rotor, a sleeve rotor or a squirrel-cage rotor, the damping increases the rotor slip. Laithwaite considers drag-cup motors as being "dynamically inferior to their cage counterparts" (Laithwaite, E R (1957) "Induction machines for special purposes", London, England, p. 323). If we now add a viscous damping and retarding torque, we should not be able to get much more than a 55% efficiency in the best of conditions. On the other hand, the inertial damping arrangement described will only abstract or supply energy when the motor rotor is accelerating or decelerating relative to the flywheel.

These drag-cup motors, whether inertially dampened or not, develop a constant torque at constant rpm for a given supply frequency and a suitable phase shift capacitance. For each frequency the motors respond to, there is an optimum resonant split-phase capacitance, but other values nearby are still suited for operation, and for each value of capacitance, there is an optimum frequency to which the motors respond. For example the KS-8624 motor responds best at 450 Hz when a 1 microfarad capacitance is employed, responds best at 250 Hz when a capacitance of 10 microfarads is employed, and responds best at 60 Hz, when a capacitance of 100 microfarads is employed. As the capacitance increases, the resonant CW frequency of the motor is displaced to lower values. If we fix the capacitance at a value (e.g. 10 microfarads) suitable for testing the frequency response at a fixed voltage of 12 VAC, the observed result for both the KS-8624 and KS-9303 motors show a response distribution of the motor rotary velocity that has an identical peak at 250 Hz for both motors, with the response decreasing to zero smoothly on both sides of the peak.
These results indicate that, when wired as a split-phase motor, the motor rotary velocity varies not as a function of voltage or current, but as a function of frequency when the phase-splitting capacitance is fixed within a suitable range, there being an optimum frequency mode for each value of suitable capacitance, with lower values of capacitance favouring higher frequency modes. For a given frequency and capacitance, the motor rotary velocity remains essentially constant and independent from voltage and current input, and thus at a plateau. Torque, in the same circuit arrangement, follows exactly the same pattern as rotary velocity, as a function of input frequency at a fixed potential. Torque is linearly proportional to rpm in these motors when they are split-phase wired, and rpm linearly proportional to CW frequency, which makes them ideal for experimentation and determination of power output computations. Moreover, since these are drag machines, the slip itself determines the rotor currents and these are susceptible to tuning such that their retardation and relative position in the field can find resonant modes for varying CW frequency and capacitance.

In the circuit of Fig.17 when using the KS 9303 motor, the inertial damping of the flywheel coupling retards the motor rotor currents sufficiently to allow them to build up torque, with the entire motor assembly serving as the preferred sink for all of the energy, mass-free and mass-bound, captured by the receiving coil circuit with a drawing action established by the motor on the circuit, and providing satisfactory absorption by an inertial damper of the combined, synchronised, dampened wave impulses, those occurring at a low frequency as a result of the firing of the PAGD reactor, and those occurring at a higher superimposed frequency -sourced in the transmitter circuit and picked-up by the receiver plate and coil. The action of each DW impulse train itself generates two different events: the DC-like auto-electronic-like discontinuity which sets the motor in motion and initiates the rotor currents, and the AC-like dampened wavetrain which supports the consistency of those rotors. The concentration of current required to kick-start the motor is provided by the DW impulses of the PAGD reactor, whereas, once the motor is in motion, and particularly, once it is stabilised by the flywheel, the cumulative action of the higher frequency DW impulses makes itself felt by accelerating the rotor to an optimum rotary velocity.

For the next series of tests we employed the basic circuit diagram of the improved motor shown in Fig.19. The transmission station is the typical Tesla transmitter with a line-fed, 60 Hz vibrator stage. At the line input to the first stage, we place a calibrated AC wattmeter (Weston Model 432), and a Beckman 330B rms ammeter in series with the hot lead, we set the vibrator stage for 41 clicks, consuming between 28.5W and 35W, depending upon circumstances yet to be described. This consumption was confirmed by driving the coil from an inverter powered by a 12 volt battery. The inverter consumes 2.16 watts, and is 90% efficient. The total consumption from the battery was 42 watts (12V at 3.5A); once the 2.16 watts is deducted and the efficiency taken into account, we obtain the same 36W (vibrator stage at max., i.e. 47 clicks, in this experiment). The T/R gap is adjusted to 3", and 2 square foot plates are used. Transmitter and receiver coils are tuned, and so are the plate capacitances, to 250 kHz, also the capacitances of the Function Y circuit connected at the output of the receiving coil.

The rectified voltage and current generated by the transmitter secondary and by the transmitter plate was ascertained with a coil-tuned wave-divider (Function Y) circuit by loading it with different resistive values. The results constitute a measure of the mass-bound electrical power output directly from the transmitter apparatus. The same method was employed to ascertain the voltage, current and power of the mass-bound charges circulating in the receiving plate and coil circuit. The results are shown in Table 8 below:

| TABLE 8 |
|--------------------------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| Massbound currents rectified by Function Y at the output of the Tesla transmitter, transmitter plate and receiver plate, as a function of the bleeding resistance employed in each of the Function Y arms | VDC (kilovolts) | ADC (amp) | WDC (watts) | R/arm (Mohm) |
| Direct from 2° | 42–50 | \(3 \times 10^{-5}\) | 1.26–1.5 | 500 |
| From 2° (T) plate | 26 | \(2 \times 10^{-5}\) | 0.52 | 500 |
| From 2° (R) plate | 15.1 | \(1.25 \times 10^{-5}\) | 0.189 | 500 |
| Direct from 2° | 20.4 | \(3.4 \times 10^{-4}\) | 6.936 | 50 |
| From 2° (T) plate | 15.2 | \(2.4 \times 10^{-4}\) | 3.648 | 50 |
| From 2° (R) plate | 9 | \(1.2 \times 10^{-4}\) | 1.08 | 50 |
| Direct from 2° | 3.3 | \(1.75 \times 10^{-3}\) | 5.775 | 1 |
| From 2° (T) plate | 3.5 | \(2 \times 10^{-3}\) | 7 | 1 |
| From 2° (R) plate | 2.95 | \(1.6 \times 10^{-3}\) | 4.72 | 1 |
The results indicate that the highest mass-bound power assembled by the secondary transmitter circuit does not exceed 7 watts - and this is directly output from the secondary when the load is 50 Megohm, or from the transmitter plate when the load is 1 Megohm. The mass-bound electric power emulated by the receiving circuit (plate, coil and Function Y without the plasma pulser circuitry) never exceeds the mass-bound electric power outputted directly by the transmitter, and peaks when the resistive load value (1 Megohm) approaches the pre-breakdown resistance range of the vacuum tube, at 4.72W. These findings then indicate that when the transmitter circuit is consuming a maximum of 35W, a typical output from the secondary of the transmitter is 7W, and at 3” of distance within the proximal field of the latter, the pick-up by a tuned receiver will be of the order of 5W of mass-bound current duplicated within the receiving coil. The loss in the first stage is therefore on the order of sevenfold.

Continuing with the description of the circuit of Fig.19, a 128 cm² plate area, 6 cm gap PAGD reactor is used, connected as described in our prior art to a high-vacuum rotary pump (Correa, P & Correa, A (1995) "Energy conversion system", U.S. Pat. No. 5,449,989). Pressure readings were obtained with a thermocouple gauge during the operational runs. The KS-9303 motors to be tested are then connected to the PAGD reactor in the usual capacitively-coupled, inverter fashion described in our prior art (Correa, P & Correa, A (1995) "Electromechanical transduction of plasma pulses", U.S. Pat. No 5,416,391). Their rpm is detected by a stroboscopic tachometer and fed to a Mac Performa 6400 running a motor algorithm program calculating the power output. Motor measurements were made at five minutes into each run for the unloaded motors, and at ten minutes for the inertially dampened motors.

All experiments were carried out in the same work session. The experimental determination of the continuous rotary power output as a function of the reactor pulse rate confirmed that the improved circuit develops maximum rotary capture of the mass-free energy in the receiver circuit at the lowest rates of pulsation, just as we have previously found for the conversion system of U.S. Pat. No. 5,449,989. Furthermore, the data showed that even motors of type KS-8624 are able to output power mechanically in excess of the mass-bound power output by the transmitter (7W) or captured by the receiver (5 to a max. of 7W), once the PAGD rate decreases to 1.5 PPS. Such an anomaly can only be explained by the system having become able to begin capturing the mass-free energy flux in the receiver circuit that we know already is output by the transmitter circuit. But this excess mechanical power is still less than the power input into the transmitter, and clearly so. It represents a power gain with respect to the secondary, but a loss with respect to the primary. The full breadth of the capture of the mass-free electric energy flux circulating in the receiver circuit is not seen until the motors are resonantly loaded because they are inertially dampened.

The KS-9303 motors, once inertially dampered, and thus loaded, are able to recover enough power from the mass-free energy field to develop a mechanical power, not just greatly in excess of the mass-bound power of the secondary, but also greatly in excess of the mass-bound power input to the vibrator stage and the primary, at 28 to 35W. Once the pulse rate approaches the same 1.5 PPS marker, mechanical power in excess of the mass-bound electric power input to the primary becomes evident, peaking at nearly three times that input. In fact, the highest output recorded was also obtained with the lowest input to the transmitter circuit, the highest exact coefficient observed in this experiment being 100.8W / 28W = 3.6. Furthermore, with respect to the secondary mass-bound output, the same mechanical rotary output represents a much greater overunity coefficient of performance, on the order of 14.4 times greater. This is at least partly the result of the receiver and motor capture of the mass-free electric energy output by the transmitter, and may be partly the result of mass-free energy engrafted by the PAGD regime in the PAGD reactor.

Reviewing the mechanical power output results as a function of increasing vacuum in the PAGD reactor and at different output power levels, any motor performance below the 5-7W limit of the traditional mass-bound output power of the secondary represents an output mechanical power loss with respect to both the mass-bound secondary output and the mass-bound primary input. All the results for pressures down to 0.03 Torr fall into this category, and thus represent a very inefficient coupling to the PAGD regime. Any motor performance between 7W and 28-35W represent a loss with respect to the electrical power input to the transmitter system, but a net gain of power with respect to the mass-bound secondary power output. None of the non-inertially dampened motors tested were able to perform outside of this area, under the test conditions. With more efficient primary to secondary couplings in the transmitter station, however, one could advantageously employ these motors alone to extract some of the mass-free power of the secondary or to operate them in enclosed vessels without conventional external electrical connections.

To reach satisfactory levels of recovery of mass-free energy, one must dampen the superimposed DW impulses. Hence, all results showing outputs in excess of 35W were obtained using the inertially dampened KS-9303 motors, and represent a net overunity power gain over both the power input to the primary and the mass-bound power output by the secondary, or the mass-bound power emulated by the receiver circuitry. This happens when the PAGD pulse rate falls to 2 PPS, with the rotary power output steeply increasing as the rate falls to 1 PPS.
One of the interesting features of the motor circuitry we have proposed is that it can operate with pulsed plasmas in both the TRD and the AGD regions, the least efficient response occurring in the NGD region near the Paschen minimum. One might think that the voltage depression would allow increased current intensity supplied to the motors, but in fact that is not observed, with the flashing of the NGD yielding erratic oscillations and low values of current. In keeping with the notion that the TRD plasma is mainly composed of lagging positive ions, whereas the PAGD plasma is mostly an electron plasma, the observed direction of rotation of the motors is opposite in the TRD region to that of the AGD region. The NGD region therefore marks the depression where the velocity vectors change direction. In the second or PAGD region, motor operation is very quiet, unlike what is observed in the TRD region.

Part and parcel of the tuning of the circuit components is the selection of the optimum capacitances employed to couple the PAGD reactor to the motor circuit and split the phase to feed the auxiliary winding of the motor. We have experimented with capacitances ranging from 0.5 to 100 microfarads, and found that best results (for the specific circuit in question - including the characteristics of the transmission), were such that the optimum value of the PAGD coupling capacitance lay near 4 microfarads, and the phase splitting capacitance, near 1 to 4 microfarads, depending upon weather conditions. In good weather days lower capacitance values can be used, while in bad weather days higher capacitances are needed. For ease of comparison in demonstrating the need to tune the circuit by employing optimum capacitances in those two coupleings (reactor to motor, and motor phase coupling), we employed the same capacitances in both circuit locations.

A comparison of tests using 1 and 4 microfarad values shows the difference caused by changing those capacitances from their optimum value: across all discharge regions of the pressure range that was examined, the four motors tested, operated with greater motor speeds when the capacitances are set to 4 microfarads rather than to 1 microfarad. The less efficient performance obtained with 1 microfarad capacitance fits the inverse correlation of pulse power with increasing pulse frequency, such as we have found for the PAGD regime. This is made evident by a comparison of rpm versus pulse rate for the two capacitance values being considered. They demonstrate the higher pulse rates observed with the lower capacitance, that correlate with the lower motor speeds, and result in lower efficiency of the motor response. The results equally indicate that low capacitance values increase the pulse rate, but if this increase is out of tune with the rest of the circuit values, it results in power waste because it imposes a rate that is not optimum.

We have also determined experimentally that the efficiency of the system is affected by external weather conditions, higher efficiencies being noted on a fine bright day than under poor weather conditions even though the apparatus is not exposed to such conditions. This may reflect a diminution under poor weather conditions of latent mass-free energy that can be taken up by the system. The observed high efficiency of circuits including inertially dampened motors indicates that the phenomenon does not reduce to a mere optimum capture of, DC-like pulses produced by the reactor in what is essentially an AC motor circuit. Effectively, the pulsed plasma discharge deploys a front-end, DC-like pulse, or discontinuity, but this is followed by an AC-like dampened wave of a characteristic frequency (having a half-cycle periodicity identical to that of the front-end pulse) to which the motor circuit also responds. Moreover, the mass-free electric radiation from the transmitter circuit itself induces, in the receiver antenna, coil and circuit, and in the reactor discharge itself, the train of finer dampened wave impulses responsible, after conversion through the wave-divider, for the mass-bound rectified current which is employed to charge the plasma reactor to begin with. Servings as trigger of the plasma discharges in the reactor are the DW impulses circulating in the receiver circuit, such that the two different lines of DW impulses, in the receiver circuit (for example 120 PPS for the pulses and 154 kHz for the waves) and from the reactor, are synchronised by interpolated coincidences, since their pulse and wave frequencies are different. Ideally, these two superimposed DW frequencies are harmonics or made identical. The receiver stage involves capture of the mass-free electric energy received from the transmitter, duplication of the mass-bound current in the receiver coil, and injection of latent and sensible thermal energy in the T/R gap cavity which augments the emulated mass-bound current.

The mass-bound current is employed to charge the wave-divider capacitance bridge and therefore the reactor. In turn, the plasma pulses from the reactor are superimposed with the DW impulses from the receiving coil, and together they are coupled to the split-phase motor drive. Hence the first receiver stage employs the totality of the energy captured in the T/R gap cavity - mass-free electric energy transmitted by the T plate, latent and sensible thermal energy injected at the surface of the R plate - and produces in the receiving coil a mass-bound current comparable to that assembled in the transmitter coil by the action of the primary. The mass-bound current is stored in the wave-divider bridge and used to drive the plasma reactor in the PAGD region. Subsequently, the autogenous disruptive discharge that employs a substantial electron plasma generates both a concentrated, intense flux of mass-bound charges in the output circuit, and a mass-free oscillation of its own. The damped motor is therefore fed directly with (1) the intense mass-bound current output from the reactor; (2) the pulse and wave components of the mass-free electric energy captured by the receiver plate and coil (and matched by conduction through the earth), and which are gated through the wave-divider and the reactor for the duration of the PAGD channel; and (3) any mass-free latent energy taken up from the vacuum by the PAGD event. Once the
motor is set into motion, and is resonantly loaded with an inertial damper, we believe that it will also respond to
the much weaker DW impulses captured by the receiver, since these impulses encompass both a DC-like front
end - further enhanced by analytic separation through the wave-divider - and a dampened wave at 154 kHz.

Essentially, the DW impulses that are ultimately sourced in the transmitter - and received unipolarly through the
T/R gap - have sufficient DC-like potential (plus all the other requisite physical characteristics, such as frequency)
to contribute directly to the motor response, once the motor has gained substantial speed (for they lack the
current to set it into motion, one of the contributions from the plasma pulser). This is the case, provided that the
motor itself is suited for absorption of both DC-like pulses and AC-like dampened waves, which is precisely the
case with motors of the type shown in Fig.18 since the inertia of the flywheel is overcome through homopolar
absorption of the dampened oscillations simultaneously in the motor drag-cup rotor and in the generator drag-cup
rotor.

We also tested these inertially dampened motors in the traditional DC power supply-driven PAGD circuit we have
taught in our previous patents, that is, circuits with an overt HV DC power source, and thus in the absence of any
Function Y circuit or transmitter circuit. Here then, only the DW impulses generated by the PAGD reactor can
account for the motor response. The tube employed (A31) had an area of 256 cm², and a gap distance of 4 cm.
Coupling capacitances employed were 4 microfarads for the inverter coupling, and 1 microfarad for the split phase
motor coupling. The DC power supply delivered up to 1 ampere of current between 150 and 1,000 VDC, and the
ballast resistor was adjusted to 215 ohms. Having determined the basic physical characteristics of the reactor’s
behaviour in the circuit under consideration, we conducted our experiment in the PAGD region. We chose a
pressure of 0.6 Torr, just off from the Paschen minimum, as we intended to benefit from the lower sustaining
voltage which it affords.

The experiment basically consisted of increasing the sustaining voltage at this fixed pressure in the PAGD
regime, and measuring the diverse physical parameters of the circuit and motor response in order to ultimately ascertain
the difference between the input electric DC power and the output mechanical rotary power. We first looked at
how the motor rpm response varied as a function of the sustaining voltage (Vₜₐ₉): the results illustrate the
importance of starting close to the Paschen minimum in the pressure scale, since the KS-9303 motors reach
plateau response (at 17,000 rpm) when the reactor output voltage nears 450V. Any further increase in potential is
simply wasted. Likewise, the same happened when we measured motor speed as a function of increasing peak
DC current, plateau response being reached at 0.1 ADC. Again, any further increase in current is wasted.
Essentially then, the optimal power input to the reactor when the output of the latter is coupled to the motor, lies
around 45 watts. This is a typical expenditure in driving a PAGD reactor. As for pulse rate we once again find a
motor response that is frequency proportional in the low frequency range, between 10 and 40 PPS (all pulse rates
now refer solely to PAGDs per sec), but once rates of >40 PPS are reached, the response of the motor also
reaches a plateau.

The observed increment in speed from 40 to 60 PPS translates only into an increase of 1,000 RPM, from 16,000
to 17,000 RPM. So, we can place the optimal PAGD rate at ca 40 PPS. The DC electric power input to drive the
PAGD reactor was next compared to the rotary mechanical power output by the inertially loaded motor, driven in
turn by the reactor. This comparison was first carried out with respect to the PAGD rates. The motor response far
exceeds the conventional input power, indicating that the whole system can be tuned to resonance such that
optimal power capture inside the reactor takes place, the critical limit rate lying at around 60 PPS, when the motor
response is firmly within the pulse response plateau. At this juncture, the break-even efficiency for the measured
rates of energy flux over time reach 700% (overunity coefficient of 7), in keeping with the observations and the
values we have made in the PAGD conversion system. In the proportional part of the curve, before the plateau is
reached, even greater rates of break-even efficiency - up to >1,000% were registered.

These results constitute the first time we have been able to confirm the presence of output energy in excess of
break-even over conventional mass-bound energy input in the PAGD inverter system, and the results are
comparable to what we have observed and previously reported for the PAGD converter system. At pulse rates
greater than 60 PPS a greater input power results in decreased efficiency, also translated into a noticeable
heating of the reactor and motor. And this is all the more remarkable as experiments we have conducted with
inductive tuning of PAGD reactors, or employing PAGD reactors as replacements for the primaries of Tesla coil
assemblies, and still, more recently, with the PAGD inverter circuit driving motors, have all shown that it is
possible to operate these reactors with minimal mirroring and heating, preserving essentially the cold-cathode
conditions and yet focusing the plasma column so that deposition on the insulator is negligible. It appears that
above a certain threshold of optimal efficiency, surplus input energy is just dissipated thermally by both the reactor
and the motors.

It should be understood that the above described embodiments are merely exemplary of our invention, and are,
with the exception of the embodiments of Figs. 16 to 19 designed primarily to verify aspects of the basis of the
invention. It should also be understood that in each of these embodiments, the transmitter portion may be omitted
if an external or natural source of Tesla waves is available, provided that the receiver is tuned to the mass-free radiation mode of the source. For example if solar radiation is available in which the mass-free component has not interacted with the earth's atmosphere (as in space applications), the receiver is tuned to the voltage wave of the mass-free radiation sourced in the sun, e.g. by using a Tesla coil in the receiver constructed to have an appropriate voltage wave close to the 51.1 kV characteristic of such radiation.

CLAIMS

1. A device for the conversion of mass-free radiation into electrical or electrokinetic energy comprising a transmitter of mass-free electrical radiation having a dampened wave component, a receiver of such radiation tuned to resonance with the dampened wave frequency of the transmitter, a co-resonant output circuit coupled into and extracting electrical or electrokinetic energy from the receiver, and at least one of a transmission cavity between the transmitter and the receiver, a full-wave rectifier in the co-resonant output circuit, and an oscillatory pulsed glow discharge device incorporated in the co-resonant output circuit.

2. A device according to claim 1, wherein the output circuit comprises a full wave rectifier presenting a capacitance to the receiver.

3. A device according to claim 2, wherein the output circuit comprises an electric motor presenting inductance to the receiver.

4. A device according to claim 3, wherein the motor is a split phase motor.

5. A device according to claim 4, wherein the motor is a drag motor having a non-magnetic conductive rotor.

6. A device according to claim 5, wherein the motor has inertial damping.

7. A device according to claim 6, wherein the motor has a shaft, a drag cup rotor on the shaft, and inertial damping is provided by a further drag cup on the shaft.

8. A device according to claim 6, wherein the transmitter and receiver each comprise at least one of a Tesla coil and an autogenous pulsed abnormal glow discharge device.

9. A device according to claim 8, wherein the transmitter and receiver both comprise Tesla coils, and further including a transmission cavity which comprises spaced plates connected respectively to the distal poles of the secondaries of Tesla coils incorporated in the transmitter and receiver respectively.

10. A device according to claim 9, wherein the plates are parallel.

11. A device according to claim 9, wherein the plates are concentric.

12. A device according to claim 9, wherein at least the receiver comprises a Tesla coil driving a plasma reactor operating in PAGD (pulsed abnormal glow discharge) mode.

13. A device according to claim 1, wherein the transmitter and receiver each comprise at least one of a Tesla coil and an autogenous pulsed abnormal glow discharge device.

14. A device according to claim 12, wherein the transmitter and receiver both comprise Tesla coils, and further including a transmission cavity which comprises spaced plates connected respectively to the distal poles of the secondaries of Tesla coils incorporated in the transmitter and receiver respectively.

15-17. (cancelled)

18. A device according to claim 1 wherein a transmitter/receiver cavity is present and filled with an aqueous liquid.

19. A device for the conversion of mass-free radiation into electrical or electrokinetic energy comprising a receiver of such radiation from a source of mass-free electrical radiation having a dampened wave component, the receiver being tuned to resonance with the dampened wave frequency of the source, a co-resonant output circuit coupled into and extracting electrical or electrokinetic energy from the receiver, and at least one of a transmission cavity between the source and the receiver, a full-wave rectifier in the co-resonant output circuit, and an oscillatory pulsed glow discharge device incorporated in the co-resonant output circuit.
This patent shows a method of extracting environmental energy for practical use. In the extensive test runs, an input of 58 watts produced an output of 400 watts (COP = 6.9). This document is a very slightly re-worded copy of the original.

ABSTRACT
An energy conversion device includes a discharge tube which is operated in a pulsed abnormal glow discharge regime in a double ported circuit. A direct current source connected to an input port provides electrical energy to initiate emission pulses, and a current sink in the form of an electrical energy storage or utilisation device connected to the output port captures at least a substantial proportion of energy released by collapse of the emission pulses.

US Patent References:
3205162 Sep, 1965 MacLean.
3705329 Dec, 1972 Vogeli.
3801202 Apr, 1974 Breaux.
3864640 Feb, 1975 Bennett.
3878429 Apr, 1975 Iwata.
4009416 Feb, 1977 Lowther.
4128788 Dec, 1978 Lowther.
4194239 Mar, 1980 Jayaram et al.
4443739 Apr, 1984 Woldring.
4489269 Dec, 1984 Edling et al.
4527044 Jul, 1985 Bruel et al.
4772816 Sep, 1988 Spence.
4896076 Jan, 1990 Hunter et al.
5126638 Jun, 1992 Dethlefsen.

Other References:

REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATIONS
This application is a continuation-in-part of U.S. application Ser. No. 07/922,863, filed Jul. 31, 1992 (abandoned), and is also a continuation-in-part of U.S. patent application Ser. No. 07/961,531, filed Oct. 15, 1992, now U.S. Pat. No. 5,416,391.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION
1. Field of the Invention:
This invention relates to energy conversion circuits utilising discharge tubes operating in the pulsed abnormal glow discharge (PAGD) regime.

2. Review of the Art:
Such discharge tubes and circuits incorporating them are described in our co-pending U.S. patent application Ser. Nos. 07/922,863 and 07/961,531. The first of these applications discloses discharge tube constructions particularly suited for PAGD operation, and the second discloses certain practical applications of such tubes, particularly in electric motor control circuits. The review of the art contained in those applications is incorporated here by reference, as is their disclosure and drawings.

It is known that there are anomalous cathode reaction forces associated with the cathodic emissions responsible for vacuum arc discharges, the origin and explanation of which have been the subject of extensive discussion in scientific literature, being related as it is to on-going discussion of the relative merits of the laws of electrodynamics as variedly formulated by Ampere, Biot-Savart and Lorentz. Examples of literature on the subject are referenced later in this application.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION
The particular conditions which prevail in a discharge tube operated in the PAGD regime, in which a plasma eruption from the cathode is self-limiting and collapses before completion of a plasma channel to the anode gives rise to transient conditions which favour the exploitation of anomalous cathode reaction forces.

We have found that apparatus utilising discharge tubes operated in a self-sustaining pulsed abnormal glow discharge regime, in a double ported circuit designed so that energy input to the tube utilised to initiate a glow discharge pulse is handled by an input circuit substantially separate from an output circuit receiving energy from the tube during collapse of a pulse, provides valuable energy conversion capabilities.

The invention extends to a method of energy conversion, comprising initiating plasma eruptions from the cathode of a discharge tube operating in a pulsed abnormal glow discharge regime utilising electrical energy from a source in a first circuit connected to said discharge tube, and capturing electrical energy generated by the collapse of such eruptions in a second circuit connected to the discharge tube.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS
The invention is described further with reference to the accompanying drawings, in which:
Fig. 1 shows variation of applied DC current and pulse AC rms currents characteristic of a low current PAGD regime, as a function of decreasing pressure, for a 128 cm$^2$ H34 aluminium plate pulse generator having a 5.5 cm gap length and being operated in the single or plate diode configuration of FIG. 11A, at about 600 V DC.

![Figure 2](image1.png)

**FIG. 2**

Fig. 2 shows variation of applied DC current and AC rms currents of a high current PAGD regime, as a function of the decreasing pressure, for a device identical to that of Fig. 1, and operated at the same potential.

![Figure 3](image2.png)

**FIG. 3**

Fig. 3 shows PAGD rate vs pulse generator cathode temperature as a function of the time of continuous PAGD operation, for a pulse generator with 64 cm$^2$ plates having a 4 cm gap distance, operated at a DC voltage of 555 (av) and R1 = 600 ohms (see Fig.9).
Fig. 4 shows PAGD frequency variation with time, for 18 successive spaced one-minute PAGD runs for a pulse generator with 128 cm$^2$ plates, and a 5.5 cm gap distance, operated at $V_{DC} = 560$ (av) and $R_1 = 300$ ohms.

Fig. 5 shows variation of the PAGD frequency in pulses per minute (PPM) with increasing charge of a PAGD recovery charge pack (see Fig. 9), as measured in terms of the open circuit voltage following 15 minutes of relaxation after each one minute long PAGD run, repeated 18 times in tandem, under similar conditions to Fig. 4.
**Fig. 6** shows volt amplitude variation of continuous PAGD at low applied current, as a function of decreasing air pressure, for a 128 cm$^2$ plate area device, gap length = 5 cm; (DC V at breakdown = 860).

**Fig. 7** shows volt amplitude variation of continuous PAGD at high applied current as a function of the decreasing air pressure, for a 128 cm$^2$ plate area device, gap length = 5 cm; (DC V at breakdown = 860).
Fig. 8 is a schematic diagram of a first experimental diode (without C6) or triode PAGD circuit.

Fig. 9 is a schematic diagram of a preferred diode or triode PAGD circuit in accordance with the invention.
Fig. 10A, Fig. 10B and Fig. 10C are fragmentary schematic diagrams showing variations in the configuration of the circuit of Fig. 9.
Fig. 11 is a modification of Fig. 9, in which an electromagnetic machine, in the form of an electric motor, is connected into the circuit as an accessory electromechanical arm.

Fig. 12 shows a further development of the circuit of Fig. 9, permitting interchange of driver pack and charge pack functions.
Fig. 13 shows open circuit voltage relaxation curves for battery packs employed in tests of the invention, respectively after pre-PAGD resistive discharge (DPT1 and CPT1), after a PAGD run (DPT2 and CPT2) and after post-PAGD resistive discharge (DPT3 and CPT3).

Fig. 14 shows an example of negligible actual power measurements taken immediately before or after a PAGD run, showing both the drive pack loss and the charge pack gain in DC Watts; DP resistance = 2083 ohms; CP resistance = 833 ohms.
Fig. 15A and Fig. 15B show resistive voltage discharge curves for two separate lead-zero gel-cell packs utilised respectively as the drive and the charge packs; load resistances employed were 2083 ohms across the drive pack (Fig. 15A) and 833 ohms across the charge pack (Fig. 15B).
Fig. 16 shows resistive discharge slopes for a drive pack before and after a very small expenditure of power in providing energy input to a PAGD run; $R = 2083$ ohms.

Fig. 17 shows resistive discharge slopes for a charge pack before and after capturing energy from the collapse of PAGD pulses in the same test as Fig. 15; $R = 833$ ohms.
Fig. 18 shows resistive discharge slopes for a drive pack before and after a very small expenditure of power in providing energy input to a PAGD run in a further experiment; $R = 2083 \text{ ohms.}$

Fig. 19 shows resistive discharge slopes for a charge pack before and after capturing energy from the PAGD run of Fig. 18; $R = 833 \text{ ohms.}$
Fig. 20 shows an example of operational measurements taken videographically during a 10 second period for both the power consumption of the drive pack (PAGD input) and the power production captured by the charge pack (PAGD output); the two values are also related by the expression of percent break-even efficiency.

Fig. 21 shows variation of PAGD loaded voltage of a drive pack (in squares) compared with the PAGD charging voltage of the charge pack (in circles), during more than 1 hour of continuous PAGD operation.

DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS
The basic PAGD function and the construction of discharge tubes specifically designed for PAGD operation are described in our corresponding co-pending applications Nos. 07/922,863 (the "863" application) and 07/961,531 (the "531" application). For purposes of the experiments described below four aluminium H34 plate devices (one with 64 and three with 128 cm² plate areas) and three aluminium (H200) plate devices (one with 64 and two with 128 cm² plate areas), with inter-electrode gap lengths of 3 cm to 5.5 cm, were utilised at the indicated vacua, under pump-down conditions and with either air or argon (ultra high purity, spectroscopic grade 99.9996% pure).
constituting the residual gas mixture. The pump-down conditions were as described in the “863” application. Some experiments were performed with the tubes under active evacuation, at steady-state conditions, while others utilised sealed devices enclosing the desired residual gas pressures.

The circuit designs utilised in the various experiments to be described are set out further below, and represent further developments and extensions of the circuits set forth in the “531” application.

Test equipment utilised was as follows:

An Edwards (trade mark) thermocouple gauge (TC-7) was employed for the determination of pressure down to 1 micron of mercury (0.001 Torr).

Banks of Beckman (trade mark) rms multimeters 225 and 330 (30 and 100 kHz bandwidths, respectively) were utilised for all current measurements.

Frequency meters capable of discriminating events up to 0.1 nanosecond apart, and having adjustable amplitude windows, were used. Direct analysis on a Tektronix (trade mark) dual-trace, storage scope (Model 549) was also carried out for both parameters.

Split-phase, single-phase and two-phase motors were employed, of the synchronous, induction and universal types, as previously described in the “531” application, in the accessory electromechanical arm that may be coupled to the power producing circuit described in the present application.

Large banks of 12 V, 6 Ah lead-acid gel cells (Sonnenschein (trade mark) A212/6S) were utilised either as power sources (designated as drive packs) or as accumulators of the energy (referred to as charge packs) captured by the test circuits. Charge packs made of rechargeable 9V NiCad or of nominally non-rechargeable C-Zn or alkaline batteries were also utilised.

PAGD emission areas were determined by metallographic examination of a series of craters produced by PAGDs in clean H34 cathodes, under a metallurgical Zeiss (trade mark) standard 18 microscope equipped with an epi-fluorescent condenser, very high power apochromatic objectives and a 100 W mercury lamp. For best results a focusable oblique source of light (12V halogen) was also added to the incident light.

Following our low and high applied current studies on PAGD production as set forth in the “863” application, we noticed that the AC rms value of the component associated with each abnormal glow discharge pulse varied nonlinearly with the magnitude of the applied current. We originally noted the existence of a current induced shift of the entire PAGD region upward in the pressure scale: while the PAGD regime became more clearly defined as the applied constant DC was increased, the pressure required to observe the PAGD increased two to three orders of magnitude. In the course of these rarefaction studies we found that, at applied currents of 1mA or less, the rms value of the different AC waveforms associated with the consecutive regimes of the discharge (TRD --> NGDm --> AGD+PAGD) was, by more than half log, inferior to the value of the applied DC current, during the first two regimes (TRD and NGD) and reached a value equivalent to the applied current with the onset of spontaneous PAGD, at pressures < 0.1 Torr (see Fig.1); however, in the downward tail of the PAGD regime (down to 3 x 10⁻³ Torr), the AC rms current component of each PAGD again decreased to more than half log of the intensity of the applied DC value, in a manner proportional to the log of the decreasing pressure. In stark contrast, at high applied currents of about 500 mA, and aside from the high current-induced upward shift in pressure of the PAGD regime (to the point that the compression of the previous regimes on the pressure scale results in their suppressing, as was the case in the present example), the AC rms component associated with each pulse (see closed circles, Fig.2) is, from onset of the discharge at about 8 Torr, greater in magnitude than the value of the applied current (open circles, Fig.2). Under the conditions described, the distribution of the field current associated with each pulsed abnormal glow discharge approached (on a linear Y axis; not shown) an uni-modal gaussian distribution with the pressure peak at about 1 Torr, and a corresponding observed maximum of 7.5 times. higher AC rms values than the applied DC values.

We have previously described in the “863” application how the PAGD frequency is affected by several factors, namely:

- the magnitude of the parallel discharge capacitance,
- the value of the negative pressure for the relevant vacuum PAGD range,
- the magnitude of the applied potential, the magnitude of the applied direct current,
- the inter-electrode gap distance and
- the area of the parallel plate electrodes.

In the “531” application we have also described how the wiring configuration (plate diode versus triode) affects the PAGD frequency by adding tungsten auto-electronic emissions from the axial electrode, to those emissions from
the plate. There are other factors which limit the PAGD regime of discharge and have also been discussed in the “863” application. The following data indicates their specific effect upon PAGD frequency.

In the data presented in Table 1, control of the frequency parameter for the circuit shown in Fig.9 is by a ballast resistance R1 within a specific range of interest (about 800-150 ohms, for Table 1 experimental conditions), and this in turn increases the applied current which, at "high current" values (i.e. >100 mA, as for Table 1 conditions), will drive the PAGD frequency up, as previously reported in the “863” application.

Table 2 shows the effect of the progressive displacement of a given frequency, chosen as 200 PPS, with the cumulative pulse count of the same device, in the plate diode configuration. This displacement of the same frequency (cf. group numbers 1-3 of Table 2) on to higher pressure regions is shown to be promoted by the alteration of the work function of the PAGD emitting cathode, such as this is caused by the cumulative pulse count and resultant crater formation on the electrode surface. After the first million pulses, the anode facing cathode surface is completely turned over by emission sites, and this corresponds well to the threshold crossed by group 2 of Table 2. Once the cathode surfaces are broken in, the rates shown in groups 3 and 4 of Table 2, tend to remain constant.

Originally we wondered whether this might be caused by the alteration of the electrostatic profile of the plasma sheaths at the periphery of the envelope, due to the mirroring deposits that result from the sputter of ions and trapped neutral atoms (from air gases or metallic vapour) associated with the auto-electronic emission mechanism (and from further emissions triggered in turn, by secondary ionic bombardment of the cathode with molecular species present in the plasma ball formed over the primary emission site). However, reversal of the plate polarity (firing the ex-anode as a crater-free cathode) for over a million counts, followed by re-reversal to the original polarity, the entire operation being performed in air as the residual gas substrate, led to the partial recovery of the original work function for as long as the test was run (1.5 x 10^4 pulses), as shown by a comparison of groups 2, 4 and 5, of Table 2. From a metallographic examination of the surfaces of plates used solely as anodes, we have also concluded that prolonged PAGD operation has the effect, not only of cleaning the anode surface from surface films and adsorbed gases, as ionic bombardment promoted by electromagnetic induction coils does, but it also does more: it polishes the target surface and smooths it by a molecular erosive action. Observations of the surface of reversed cathodes, shows the same smoothing and polishing effects observed in exclusive anodes. Thus the recovery of the PAGD rates promoted by polarity reversal of the plates is not a function of the sputter-promoted mirroring deposits on the envelope wall, but a function of the actual work-function of the emitting cathode.

Another variable that interacts with the PAGD frequency is the molecular nature of the residual gas: Table 3 shows the differential frequency response of air with a halogen quencher, argon, for the same pulse generator employed in the tests of Table 2. It is apparent that argon obtains much higher rates of AGD pulsation for the same range of negative pressure, for the same "broken in" cathode, than does the air mixture. All these measurements were taken at cathode support-stem temperatures of 350°C.

Time of operation is also a variable affecting the frequency and operating characteristics of the cathode, as it becomes expressed by the passive heating of the cathode, an effect which is all the more pronounced at the higher pressures and at the higher frequencies examined. Utilising the triode circuit discussed in the next section, the pulse rate of a PAGD generator with 64 cm² plates can be seen (see Fig.3) to decrease, at a negative pressure of 0.8 Torr, from 41 PPS to the operating plateau of 6 PPS within 15 minutes of continuous operation, as the temperature of the cathode support increased from 19°C to about 44°C. As the temperature plateaus at about 51°C +/- 1°C., so does the pulse rate at 6 PPS, for the remaining 48 minutes of continuous operation.

However, in order to confirm this time-dependent heating effect and threshold, we also performed the same experiment, utilising the same circuit and the same negative air pressure, with twice as large a cathode area (128 cm², which should take nearly twice as long to heat), being operated for 18 one-minute long continuous periods equally spaced apart by 15 minutes of passive cooling, with the cathode stem always at 19.7°C to 21°C., room temperature at the start of each period. The results surprised us, inasmuch as they showed that for a larger area tube which takes longer to heat to the same temperatures at comparable rates of PAGD triggering, one could observe a much earlier frequency reduction (by half, within the first 5 minutes or periods of interrupted functioning) in the absence of any significant heating effect (< 1.5°C) of the cathode (see Fig.4). Repetition of these experiments has led us to conclude that, as shown in Fig.5, the variable responsible for this repeatedly observed reduction in the PAGD frequency, when the PAGD operation sequence is systematically interrupted, is the state of charge/discharge of the battery pack (the charge pack) at the output of the triode circuit in question: the PPM rates in Fig.5 decrease rapidly with the steepest rate of charging of the charge pack and the fastest recovery rate of its open circuit voltage; above a given state of charge, when the open voltage of the charge pack climbs more slowly (> 340 V), in a log fashion, the PPM rate stabilises at its plateau values.
Confirmation of the importance of the charge pack in the PAGD function of the present circuitry here considered, comes from the fact that the size (the number of cells) and the intrinsic capacitance of the charge pack affect the PAGD frequency dramatically (see Table 4): increasing the charge pack size of 29 cells to 31, by 7% leads to a 10-fold reduction in frequency; further increases in the number of charge pack cells extinguishes the phenomenon. On the upper end of the scale, this effect appears to be tied in to restrictions that it places on the ability of the larger charge packs to accept the discharge power output once the charge pack voltage exceeds the PAGD amplitude potential. All of these measurements were conducted with the same 128 cm² plate PAGD generator, at a pressure of 0.8 Torr and in the triode configuration (see Fig.9).

Other factors can also affect the frequency: the motion of external permanent magnetic fields oriented longitudinally with the inter-electrode gap, external pulsed or alternating magnetic fields, external electrostatic or electromagnetic fields, specific connections of the earth ground, and the presence of a parallel capacitative, capacitative-inductive or self-inductive arm in the circuit, such as we have described for our electromechanical PAGD transduction method as described in the “531” application.

Analysis of the modulation of PAGD amplitude is simpler than that of its frequency, because fewer factors affect this parameter:
(1) magnitude of the applied potential,
(2) inter-electrode gap distance and
(3) the negative pressure, as shown in the “863” application, for “low” applied currents.

As the magnitude of the applied potential itself is limited by the gap and the pressure, to the desired conditions of breakdown, the important control parameter for the PAGD amplitude is the pressure factor. This is shown in Fig.6 and Fig.7, respectively for “low” (5 mA) and “high” (about 500 mA) applied currents and for the same plate diode configuration of a H34 Al 128 cm² plate PAGD generator (5 cm gap), in the simple circuit described in the “863” application; it is apparent that both positive and negative components of the amplitude of these pulses in the oscillograph, are a function of the pressure, but the maximum cut-off limit of our equipment, for the negative component (at 240 volts for the “low” current experiment and at 120 volts for the “high” current), precluded us from measuring the peak negative voltage of these pulses.

However, rms measurements of the pulse amplitude at the plates and DC measurements at the circuit output to the charge pack indicate that the negative component increases with decreasing pressure to a maximum, for a given arrangement of potential and gap distance; no pressure-dependent bell shape variation of the pulse amplitude, as that seen for the positive component at “high” applied currents (Fig.7) is observed with the negative amplitude component. For the typical range of 0.8 to 0.5 Torr, the rms value for pulse amplitude varies from 320 to 480 volts, for a 5.5 cm gap distance and applied DC voltages of 540 to 580 volts. PAGD amplitude is a critical factor for the design of the proper size of the charge pack to be utilised in the optimal circuit.

The development of the circuits to be described stemmed from fundamental alterations to the principles implicit in our previous methods of electromechanical transduction of AGD plasma pulses as described in the “531” application. Whereas this electromechanical coupling (capacitative and self-inductive), utilised directly, energises the AGD pulses inverted from the DC input by the vacuum generator, the purpose of the development that led to the presently described experiments was to capture efficiently, in the simplest of ways, most of the pulse energy in a closed circuit, so that power measurements for the energy transduction efficiency of the observed endogenous pulsation could be carried out. Ideally, comparative DC power measurements would be performed at both the input and output of the system, taking into account the losses generated across the components; this would overcome the measurement problems posed by the myriad of transformations implicit in the variable frequency, amplitude, crest factor and duty-cycle values of the PAGD regime, and necessitated some form of rectification of the inverted tube output.
From the start our objective was to do so as simply as possible. Early circuits utilising half-wave rectification methods coupled in series to a capacitative arm (for DC isolation of the two battery packs), with the charge pack also placed in series, showed marginal recoveries of the energy spent at the PAGD generator input. Attempts at inserting a polar full-wave rectification bridge led, as shown in Fig.8, to the splitting of the capacitor into capacitors C3 and C5, at the rectification bridge input, and capacitor C4 in series with both capacitors, all three being in a series string in parallel with the PAGD generator. Under these conditions a DC motor/generator could be run continuously in the same direction at the transversal output (U1 and U2) of the bridge; but if this inductive load was replaced with a battery pack CP (charge recovery pack), either the parallel capacitor C4 had to remain in the circuit, for the diode configuration or, less desirably, a further capacitor C6 could replace C4 and connect one electrode, preferably the cathode C, to the axial member of the discharge tube T, thus resulting in a first triode configuration as actually shown in Fig.8. Energy recovery efficiencies of the order of 15% to 60% were obtained utilising C6 in this manner, but measurements of the potential and currents present at the output from the rectifier bridge were substantially lower than those obtained using optimal values of C4. Effectively, under these conditions, much of the power output from the tube was never captured by the output circuit formed by the second, right hand arm of the system and, being prevented from returning as counter-currents to the drive pack DP by diodes D1 and D4, was dissipated and absorbed by the inter-electrode plasma, electrode heating and parasitic oscillations.
Solutions to this problem were explored using the circuit shown in Fig.9, which still maintains the necessary communication link for the quasi-sinusoidal oscillation of the capacitively stored charges at the input and outputs of the rectification bridge, but integrated the functions of capacitor $C_4$ into the single rectification circuit, in the form of an asymmetric capacitative bridge $C_7a$ and $C_7b$ placed transversally to the capacitative bridge formed by $C_3$ and $C_5$ and in parallel with the charge pack $C_P$ at the output from the rectification bridge $D_5, D_6, D_2, D_3$.

This second capacitative bridge is so disposed as to have its centre point connected to the anode $A$ through capacitor $C_5$. If the axial member of the Tube $T$ were to connect to the junction of $D_2$ and $D_3$ instead of at the junction $D_5-D_6$, the function of bridge $C_7a$ and $C_7b$ would be connected to the cathode $C$ through capacitor $C_3$. The capacitative bridge is insulated from the charge pack whose voltage it stabilises, by rectifiers $D_7$ and $D_8$, which also prevent leakage of charge across $C_7a$ and $C_7b$.

The anode and cathode oscillations generated by the electrostatic charge transduction through $C_3$ and $C_5$ into the poles of the charge pack are trapped by the transversal transduction of the $C_7$ bridge, at the outputs from the rectification bridge, of which the oscillation has to become split between the bridge inputs into half-waves, for electrostatic transduction and full wave rectification to occur. In fact, under these conditions, removal of the $C_7$ bridge will suppress the PAGD phenomenon, unless other circuit variables are also altered. The transversal bridge is thus an essential piece of this novel circuit. Variations in the circuit as shown in Fig.10 were then studied, the first two being selectable utilising switch $S_2$ (Fig.9).

The presence of the capacitative bridge effectively reduces the dynamic impedance of the charge pack $C_P$ so that the output circuit approximates to a characteristic in which it presents a very high impedance to the tube $T$ at potentials below a certain level, and a very low impedance at potentials above that level.

With this modified circuit, more effective recovery of the energy produced by collapse of the PAGD pulses is possible, with more effective isolation from the input circuit utilised to trigger the pulses. Under these conditions, the energy captured by this circuit at the output, is not directly related to that utilised in triggering the pulses from the input. The attainment of this condition critically depends on the large capacitance of the transversal bridge being able to transfer the output energy from the tube $T$ into the charge pack $C_P$. Under these conditions, we have found, as will be shown below, that the large peak pulse currents released by collapse of the PAGD pulses released more energy than is used to trigger them, and these findings appeared to tally with other observations (abnormal volt-ampere characteristics and anomalous pulse currents, etc.) associated with the anomalous cathode reaction forces that accompany the auto-electronic emission-triggered PAGD regime. Experiments so far indicate that the power output can be increased proportionately to the series value of $C_3, C_5$ and the two identical $C_7$ capacitors.
The circuit of Fig. 10 can be integrated with a circuit such as that disclosed in the “863” application as shown in Fig. 11, in which a part of the energy recovered can be shunted by the switch S4 into an induction motor M1 having rotor R, to a degree determined by the adjustment of potentiometer R4 and the value selected for C4.

The circuit of Fig. 11 can be further developed as exemplified in Fig. 12 to include configurations which provide switching permitting interchange of the functions of charge packs and the drive packs, it being borne in mind that the nominal potential of the drive pack must be substantially higher than that of the charge pack, the former needing to exceed the breakdown potential of the tube at the beginning of a PAGD cycle, and the latter to be less than the extinction potential.
Fig. 12 essentially represents a duplication of the circuit of Fig. 11, the two circuits however sharing two identical battery packs BP1 and BP2, and being provided with a six pole two way switch, the contact sets of which are identified as S1, S2, S3, S4, S5 and S6. When the contacts are in position A as shown, battery pack BP1 acts as a drive pack for both circuits, with the upper half (as shown) of the battery pack BP2 forming the charge pack for the upper circuit, and the lower half forming the charge pack for the lower circuit. When the pack BP1 is at least partially discharged, the switch is thrown so that contacts move to position B, which reverses the function of the battery packs thus allowing extended operation of the motors in each circuit each time the switch is thrown.

Based on the manufacturer’s data, and using current values within the range of our experimentation as discussed in the next sections, an optimal discharge cycle for a fully charged 6.0 Ah battery pack at 0.300 A draw is 20 hours, as claimed by the manufacturer, and this corresponds to a cycling between 100% (12.83 V/cell open circuit and load start voltage) and < 1% (10.3 V/cell load voltage) of the battery’s absolute charge capacity. Even though the discharge mechanism is a time cumulative process with a log function, the discharge can, within 4 to 5 hour time segments (or periods with 20%-25% of the full range), be regarded as practically linear with time. This trait, or linearisation of the discharge slope, becomes more marked with advancing age and decreasing absolute storage capacity of the cells.

The proportionality between open circuit voltage and the percentage of residual relative capacity for these cells when new (uncycled and not yet aged) is uniform over 96% of the permissible charge capacity withdrawal. In practice this translates into a slope that becomes steeper with time, while the absolute storage capacity diminishes. In turn, this decreasing absolute capacity of the cells results in shorter load discharge times and their further linearisation.

A circuit in general accordance with Fig. 9, employed in the studies reported in this and the following sections, utilises a drive pack of 46 12 V Lead acid gel-cells each with a 6.0 Ah rating, and a charge pack with 28 or 29 12 V identical cells. The charge pack was cycled anywhere from 11.2 V to 12.8 V/cell (open circuit voltages), within the proportional region of the relative capacity slope, to yield a capacity increment in the order of 50% (e.g. from 6.0 Ah to 9.0 Ah).
20% to 70%), anywhere within the range of 2% to 100% of its total charge capacity, assumed for now as invariant. The charging process, hereinafter referred to as a PAGD run, took about 20-30 minutes under optimal conditions. The drive pack typically consumed, in the same period of time, 4% to 11% of its initial total capacity, its open circuit voltage typically falling 0.1 V to 0.2 V per cell after a PAGD run, within the open circuit range of 12.8 V/cell (100% relative capacity) and 11.2 V/cell (about 2%). At the 100% capacity benchmark, the drive pack would theoretically have 20 h x 46 cells x 12.83 V/cell x 0.3 A = 3.5 kWh, and the charge pack, for example, 20 h x 29 x 12.83 V/cell x 0.3 A = 2.2 kWh. Since the capacity per cell is linear with the open circuit voltage within the proportional range, as claimed by the manufacturer, we projected the open circuit voltage intercepts on the manufacturer's proportional curve in order to determine the residual percentage of the total relative capacity and the standard hours of operation left, from any experimental open circuit voltage measurements.

Three pulse generators (one 64 cm² and two 128 cm² plate areas) were employed in these studies; they were operated in PAGD runs at 1-120 pulse/second rates, within a negative pressure range of 0.2 to 0.8 Torr and with applied direct currents of 0.2 to 0.6 A.

Both drive and charge packs utilised cells which were bought new at the same time and had initial charge values of 12.4 to 12.55 V/cell (open circuit). These batteries are capable of energy densities of 33-35 WHr/Kg. However, the experiments shown in Table 5 are selected from a series that spanned nearly 12 months, beginning 6 months after purchase; hence, loss of absolute storage capacity by the batteries had occurred in the intervening time, as a function of both charge and discharge cycle life.

Measurements of the open voltage of either drive (D) or charge (C) (see column 2, Table 5) packs for 8 separate experiments, all utilising the triode configuration, were performed before (b) and after (a) a PAGD run (see columns 3 and 4); at either 15 or 30 minutes (see column 26) of the open circuit voltage relaxation after a PAGD run was terminated. Corresponding open circuit voltages per cell are shown in column 5, and the percentages of the predicted total relative charge capacity resulting from the intercepts on the manufacturer's proportional curve are shown in column 6, Table 5. Equivalent maxima for the theoretical hours of operation left are shown in column 7, the percentage change in relative capacity arising as a consequence of either charge pack charge capture (capacity gained) or of drive pack output (capacity lost) is shown in column 8. Translating the intercepts into power units yields the values shown in column 9, Table 5, for total kWh left in each pack before and after PAGD production, those shown in column 10 for the actual power gained and lost during the periods of operation (presented in column 12) and those shown in column 13 for the power predicted to be gained or lost per hour of PAGD production.

On the basis of the experimental open voltage values and their intercepts, the predicted net kWh values per hour of PAGD energy production (after deduction of measured losses) and the corresponding experimental break-even efficiencies (where breakeven = 100%) are presented, respectively, in columns 14 and 15. The PAGD frequency per second is shown in column 11; the number of 12 V cells, in column 16; the tube ID, in column 17; the cathode (and anode) area (s), in column 18; the plate material, in column 19; the input ballast utilised (R1, FIG. 9), in column 20; the size of each capacitor (C3 or C5) of the tube output bridge, in column 21; the size of each capacitor (C7a or C7b) of the transversal capacitative bridge, in column 22; the status of S4 and thus, of the parallel and auxiliary electromechanical arm (see Fig.11), in column 23; the negative air pressure in column 24; the gap distance between the plates, in column 25; and columns 27, 28, and 29, show the status of the elements of the switched on parallel electromechanical arm of the circuit—the parallel C4 capacitor, the motor input resistor R4 and the motor revolutions per minute (measured stroboscopically, respectively).

From these figures of Table 5, and utilising the data for the two first examples shown, we calculated the predicted performance of the system based on the open voltage measurements. In the first example, where the system was run continuously without interruption, the charge pack increased the percentage of its total capacity by 43% (a two-fold increase in capacity) and, during the same period, the driver pack decreased the percentage of its total capacity by 7% (an approximately 10% decrease in capacity relative to the percentage of residual total capacity at the start, i.e. 77%) (cp. columns 6 and 8, Table 5). Subtracting the predicted initial total energy (0.835 kWh) available to the charge pack before the experimental run (first line of column 9, Table 5) from the predicted total energy (1.823 kWh, second line of column 9) available to the charge pack after the PAGD charge run, gives us the total energy gained by the charge pack: 0.988 kWh (column 10) in 21.5 minutes (column 12) of continuous PAGD performance.

Conversely, subtracting the predicted final total energy (2.4 kWh) available to the driver after the experimental run (fourth line of column 9, Table 5) from the predicted total energy (2.66 kWh, third line) available to the driver before the PAGD charge run, gives us the total energy lost by the drive pack: 0.26 kWh in 21.5 minutes. If we divide the total available energy gained by the charge pack, by the total energy lost by the drive pack, we obtain a surplus factor of 3.9., or 388% of the break-even point (column 15). The same values result from dividing the charge pack % of total capacity gain by the drive pack % of total capacity lost, and then down-scaling this value by multiplying it by the typical scale factor for the two packs, 29 / 46 = 0.63 times.

A - 581
In an analogous fashion, we analysed the results for the second example shown in Table 5. Here, the charger increased the percentage of its total capacity by 45.5% (a 22.75 fold increase in estimated total relative capacity) and, during the same period, the driver decreased the percentage of its predicted total capacity by 7% (about a 17.5% decrease in capacity relative to the percentage of residual total capacity at the start, i.e. 40%). By dividing the predicted total available energy gained by the charge pack (0.962 kWh/18 minutes) by the expected total energy lost by the driver pack (0.246 kWh/18 minutes) we obtain a surplus factor of 3.9 times, or 391% of the break-even point. This corresponds to an interrupted, total sequential run of 18 minutes, each minute-long run being separated by a cooling and voltage relaxation period of 15 minutes before the next run is carried out, at an average PAGD frequency of 61 PPS.

Analysis of the remaining results illustrates how a number of PAGD controlling parameters interact to determine conditions for effective maintenance of a PAGD regime. The lower gain and higher loss per unit time registered for the third run of Table 5, which results in the lower break-even efficiency of 230% and a smaller net power production rate than before (power estimates of 1.396 kWh/h of PAGD operation vs 2.387 kWh/h, for the second run, Table 5) illustrate, for example, the combined effect of lowering the pressure (0.8 to 0.7 Torr) and running the PAGD continuously (the heating effect), both of which depress the PAGD frequency. The fourth run of Table 5 identifies the continuous performance of a "broken in" softer grade of aluminium (column 19), having a lower work-function (as determined from the higher PAGD frequency spectrum) than the harder H34 plates of the previous examples, and shows that, despite the series value of the total capacitance being higher (5,333 mF vs 4,030 mF for runs one through three), and despite the higher vacuum (0.2 Torr), the lower work-function results in a higher frequency; however, even though this run registers a predicted higher break-even efficiency (310%) than the previous experiments, these conditions result in a 4 / 5-fold lower estimate of net power produced, when compared to the previous three PAGD runs.

PAGD runs 5 and 6, Table 5, illustrate the effect of switching on the auxiliary electromechanical arm of the circuit shown in Fig.11. Increasing the amount of charge capacitatively shunted into the electromechanical arm by higher C4 values (column 27), and increasing the current that feeds the squirrel cage induction motor utilised by lowering R4 (column 28), results in a power capture by the charge pack that registers an energy loss (predicted to be 96% efficient, falling short 4% of break-even recovery), as most of the tube output power is spent in the electromechanical arm and its motor effect. Furthermore, under the conditions of maximum electromechanical action, the drain imposed on the drive pack becomes considerable (see loss in columns 10 and 13), even if the C3 and C5 values are reduced, column 21, Table 5). These runs also illustrate how the motor appears to function as an electrical induction generator having rpm values much higher than the synchronous values prescribed by the frequency of the PAGD (column 29, Table 5).

The extremely large break-even efficiency of PAGD run 5, Table 5, indicates that with selected values of C4 and R4, it is possible to operate the motor in the auxiliary arm and still accumulate excess energy from the PAGD production in the charge pack.

Runs 7 and 8 illustrate results obtained for 64 cm² plates, and a shorter inter-electrode gap distance, for two pressures (0.8 and 0.5 Torr), the device being open to a rotary pump manifold in the first instance and sealed from the pump, in the second case. Despite the lower vacuum, the higher pulse frequency (32 vs 5 PPS) and break-even efficiency (906% vs 289%) registered by run 8 when compared to run 7, are a consequence of the method of run 8, which was interrupted systematically by 5 passive cooling periods, as in the case of run 2, whereas run 7 was continuous. This again resulted in higher average PAGD frequencies (at lower pressures), a predicted two-fold greater gain and a predicted two-fold smaller loss (columns 13 and 14) for run 8.

Fig.13 shows curves representing the slopes of the open circuit relaxation voltages, which are linear with the log of time elapsed from cessation of discharge, for both drive and charge packs, in the same run 8 set out in Table 5. The experiment in its entirety consisted of preliminary resistor-loaded measurement discharges and their corresponding open circuit voltages from the moment of cessation of the resistive discharge (illustrated, respectively, by the open squares of DPT1 for drive pack relaxation time 1, and by the open circles of CPT1 for charge pack relaxation time 1), followed by their relaxation rates in the wake of the PAGD production (the hatched squares of DPT2 for drive pack relaxation time 2, and the hatched circles of CPT2 for charge pack relaxation time 2), and finally, by the relaxation rates from the final resistor-loaded measurement discharges (the black squares of DPT3 for drive pack relaxation time 3, and the black circles of CPT3 for charge pack relaxation time 3). Discharge resistances were 833 ohms for the charge pack, and 2083 ohms for the drive pack in all cases, corresponding to resistors R3 and R2, respectively, of Fig.9. This methodology will be examined in greater detail below. It is apparent that, after every load period, be this resistive (CPT1, DPT1, CPT3 and DPT3) or due to PAGD operation (DPT2), the relaxation slope is positive; as shown from slopes CPT1 and DPT1, the log time proportionality of the open circuit voltage relaxation, under these conditions, tends to plateau after about 30 minutes. The exception to this general behaviour lies in the voltage relaxation slope CPT2, which is negative and
reflects the charge accumulation occurring in the charge pack and obtained by capture of energy produced during PAGD operation, triggered by the energy drawn from the drive pack during load time 2.

As a first approximation of electrical power generated and consumed by the energy conversion system of the invention, the previous open circuit voltage method is of significance in showing the basic trends involved in interaction of the operating parameters. However, in all likelihood, it overestimates the actual values of electrical power consumed and generated, for a variety of reasons. First, it assumes that the relative capacity scale of the batteries in the drive and charge packs is an absolute charge capacity scale with an invariant maximal charge retention, which it is not; in fact, the absolute charge capacity is itself a variable subject to several factors, such as the cycle life, overcharging or undercharged conditions, cell age, residual memory and the rate of charge and discharge. Hence, the inference of a uniform time scale on the basis of the open circuit voltage/capacity intercepts may not be warranted. Finally, it does not integrate the open voltage decrease over time, and utilises the specification load current as the average current over time.

In order to obviate these problems, we resorted to a variety of other measurement methods. First, we proceeded to compare the closed circuit, preliminary, resistive-load discharge measurements for either charge or drive pack, under conditions of negligible loss of power, as these measurements were statistical means (n = 9) taken, at equal intervals, during the first 90 seconds of the load discharge, and obtained both just before the PAGD production runs (but separated from each PAGD run by an open circuit voltage relaxation of 30 minutes) and just after the runs (but equally separated by a relaxation of 30 minutes). As an example of the data generated by such an approach, Fig.14 illustrates the shift of the slopes indicating marginal power loss for the drive pack (from the closed squares to the open squares) and those indicating gain of power for the charge pack (from the open circles to the closed circles), in actual total load power values.

Integration of these power measurements over the projected load discharge time, taken from the family of curves generated on the basis of the manufacturer's load voltage over discharge time specifications, led to a direct comparison of the new values, as shown in Table 6, with the values presented in Table 5, for the first three instances introduced. All values of Table 6 were obtained by resistive measurements of power that entailed a negligible power loss. Table 6 confirms the fundamental equivalence of runs 1 through 3, as already seen from their corresponding analysis using the open voltage method (see runs 1 to 3, Table 5). This new power estimation method also confirms the lower loss encountered in run 2 utilising interrupted PAGD operation. While the break-even efficiencies sensibly doubled using this method, the estimates of actual electrical power consumption recovery decreased by a 2 to 3-fold factor. Thus this direct load voltage/amperage measurement method of estimating actual power losses or gains, is a check upon the open voltage method previously utilised.

Direct, instantaneous measurements of the voltage and current characteristics of the PAGD production and capture phenomena being discussed, were also performed during PAGD runs for diverse sets of conditions, including all those described in the two previous sections. In Table 7 we show these results for two PAGD generators having an identical electrode area (128 cm²) and connected to electrical energy capture circuits of three separate configurations as set forth in Fig.10A, Fig.10B and Fig.10C and column 2, Table 7. In the configuration of Fig.10C, or double diode configuration, both electrode plates act as cathodes and the axial member as the anode collector (experiments 1-4, for the H220 device and 13-14, Table 7, for the H34 device). In the configuration of Fig.10B, or triode configuration, one plate acts as the cathode, the axial member as an auxiliary cathode and the other plate as a collector (experiments 5-9, Table 7). In the configuration of Fig.10A or single (plate to plate) diode configuration, the axial member is disconnected, and the polarity of the plates remain as in the triode configuration (experiments 10-12). All measurements were taken after 1 minute of PAGD operation of the devices, which were, at the start of each run, at room temperature. All cathodes had been previously broken in with > 2 x 10⁶ AGD pulses. The open circuit voltage of the charge pack was, for all cases, at 359 to 365 volts, before each test. The direct measurements of the PAGD input and output DC voltages and currents were obtained as statistical means of 10 second long measurements, and at no time did the standard error of the plate voltage mean exceed 35 volts.

The air pressure within the tube during these tests is shown in column 3, Table 7, the drive pack DC voltage (X), in column 5, the DC voltage across the plates (Y), in column 6, the drive pack output current (PAGD input current), in column 7, and the drive pack total watts output is shown in column 8. Columns 9 and 10 show the PAGD voltage (PAGD V = (X-Y) / I av) and the value of the PAGD extinction potential in V/cm. The recovery coordinates (i.e. the PAGD output energy) found at the U1-U2 output (Fig.9), are shown in columns 11 to 13, as the charge pack's E1-E2 input DC voltage, amperage and power watts, respectively. The calculated resistance of the entire circuit is given in column 14, the registered PAGD frequencies in column 16, and running conditions in columns 17 to 18. The break-even efficiency obtained by direct comparison of the electrical power figures for the drive and charge packs, respectively, is given in column 15. This assumes, for purposes of a generalisation of power production rates over time, that the quasi-instantaneous, direct measurements here obtained can be translated to outputs obtained per unit time, and thus into direct Watt-hour measurements.
Data from runs 1 through 4 demonstrate that, at these PAGD frequencies, there is no difference between using fast switching (32 nanoseconds) MUR 860 diodes, or regular 40HFR-120 silicon diodes, in the rectification bridge of the electrical energy capture circuit, and that the PAGD frequency varies as a function of decreasing air pressure.

Runs 5 to 14 show that, in general, for the same tube, the single and double diode configurations are the most efficient, for the same pressure, the diode configuration typically yields some 1.5 to 2 times larger break-even efficiencies (cp runs 10-11 and 13-14, with runs 5-9, Table 7). The largest accumulations of power are also registered in the diode mode(s). This trend appears to be a function of the much lower cathodic work-function of the aluminium plates, than of the tungsten of the axial member utilised as an auxiliary cathode in the triode configuration. A feature of the data from these 14 different runs is the consistent excess power outputs (column 15, Table 7) and their narrower range (218 to 563%), when compared to those observed with the previous two methods of experimental analysis.

Run 12, Table 7, shows that the switching on of the electromechanical arm can be performed without entailing a power loss in the PAGD capture circuit, as previously found for run 5, Table 5, utilising the open circuit voltage method. In fact, with $C_4 = 8$ microfarads and $R_4 = 500$ ohms, the AC induction motor behaves as an electrical flywheel (e.g. 2800-3000 rpm for 10 PPS inputs), while the electrical energy capture circuit still registers a sizeable excess electrical power production (compare runs 11 and 12, Table 7). Runs 13 and 14 illustrate how the charge pack's state of charge and its inherent capacitance affects both the PAGD frequency and the power producing efficiency of the entire system: as the charge pack is reduced from 29 to 19 cells, the PAGD generator adjusts by reducing its frequency logarithmically and, while the charge pack input current is greater than before, the drive pack loss becomes still larger and the break-even efficiency much lower (by >1/2, from 563% to 228%). This is because the circuit must translate the naturally larger PAGD amplitude into a larger surplus of output current, and in this process becomes less efficient.

If the first measurement method employed (the open circuit method) had to make too many theoretical assumptions about the system's performance under load conditions and hence about its effective charge capacity, the second approach still had to suppose an invariant discharge time and thus an invariant absolute charge capacity on the part of the battery systems (charge packs) employed for capture which it approximated by an operation of integral calculus. With the third method described above, theoretical assumptions were avoided except that, in these measurements, the actual performance of a given battery in terms of time, time of delivery and time of capture, was also ignored; no account is taken of the time-dependent modulation of the PAGD frequency, as affected by certain of the parameters analysed, namely the charge pack state of charge, the method of sequencing the PAGD runs (continuous vs interrupted) and its concomitant heating effects, and the state of charge (load voltage and current capacity) of the drive pack.

1) Before a PAGD run, a resistive discharge was measured across either pack over periods of 1 to 3 hours (utilising the DP and CP resistances previously reported in the open voltage section) and followed by a 15 to 30 minute open circuit voltage relaxation;

2) Then, the PAGD runs were performed, either continuously or as interrupted, composite sequences, and the corresponding open circuit relaxation voltage(s) were measured, after the cessation of the integral PAGD run;

3) Finally, resistive discharge measurements, obtained under identical conditions to those recorded before the PAGD run, were carried out for either pack, followed by concomitant battery voltage relaxation rate measurements.

Under these experimental conditions, exact power measurements could be taken from an analysis of the actual battery discharge curves before and after the PAGD run. Based on a comparison of the curve trends of the pre-run resistive discharge of the drive pack with those of the post-run resistive discharge, the effective power drawn ($\Delta E_c$) from the withdrawable power capacity of the drive pack incurred during a PAGD run, was ascertained. This represents the power consumption during the run, and the experimental value thus recorded constitutes the actual power figure that must be matched for break-even to occur. Hence, the break-even value equals, by definition, the electrical energy input to the system. Similarly, a comparison of the charge pack pre-run and post-run resistive discharge curve trends identified the effective power ($\Delta E_{rho}$) added to the withdrawable capacity of the charge pack. This quantity represents the electrical energy recovered during the run. The relation for the two quantities is expressed by the break-even efficiency equation:

$$\% = \frac{\Delta E_{rho}}{\Delta E_c} \times 100$$
If the break-even efficiency is less than 100%, then the apparatus registers a net loss in electrical energy in the CP with respect to the DP. Conversely, if the efficiency exceeds 100%, then there is a net gain in electrical energy in the CP, as compared to that lost in the DP. For purposes of this analysis, a limit to the minimum withdrawable capacity was placed, from experiment and in agreement with the load current curves of the manufacturer, at 115 W for the driver pack (average current of 0.250 A, minimum current of 0.230 A), and at 90 W for the charge pack (average current of 0.375 A, minimum current of 0.334 A), as a function of both their total cell size (respectively, 46:29) and the difference in the resistive loads employed for the discharge measurements. All cathodes had been broken in, as described before.

The results obtained with this fourth method, for six selected experiments with three diverse types of devices (using different electrode plate areas, gap lengths, and electrode work-functions), configured both in the triode or the (single) diode (e.g. Fig.10B) arrangements, at the indicated pressures, are presented in Table 8. In all cases, a net excess of combined battery pack charge, expressed as electrical watt hours, is registered (columns 8 and 10, Table 8) and the break-even efficiencies are all >100% (column 10). Experimental groups 1 and 2 again demonstrate that, for the same cathode, the interrupted PAGD sequence method of group 2 (1 minute of PAGD function, followed by a 15 minute relaxation, and so on) yields a higher break-even efficiency because of the lower losses registered with this minimal plate heating method (column 10, Table 8). Group 3 of Table 8, shows that the PAGD power production efficiency is also higher for a lower work-function cathode material (H220 vs H34), being subjected to PAGD auto-electronic conditions at a 4-fold lower pressure than the control groups 1 and 2; however, the lower pressure depresses the frequency and, together with the interrupted PAGD sequencing method, it also lowers the loss, causing an actually much larger break-even value than registered for the previous two groups. Groups 4 and 5 exemplify the dual effect of lowering both the plate area and the gap distance: the former affects the PAGD event frequency, whereas the latter affects the PAGD amplitude, and thus the capture efficiency of the charge pack. Despite a cathodic work-function practically and operationally identical to that of groups 1 and 2, these smaller plate area and shorter gap devices utilised in groups 4 and 5, yield 3- to 6-fold lower net power outputs, as well as lower break-even efficiencies, than the former groups, at the same pressure. Finally, group 6 exemplifies the results obtained for the plate diode configuration, where the frequency is lower (no triggering role for the axial member), and a higher loss leads to the lower break-even efficiency, comparable to that of the lower area and shorter gap groups 4 and 5.

In order to verify the discharge curve lengths employed in these analyses and experimentally establish the actual charge capacity of the battery packs, calibration resistive discharges, between the maximum charge state and the minimum limits chosen, were performed for each pack with their respective discharge resistances R2 and R3 (see Fig.9). These discharge calibration curves were plotted for half maximal charge values shown in Fig.15A and Fig.15B, and from the curve produced, we have determined the total half-charge capacities of each battery pack to be 1.033 kWh (100%=2.066 kWh) for the drive pack and 660 Whr (100%=1.320 kWh) for the charge pack. Based upon the corresponding maximal (100%) capacity values, we determined the actual percentages of the relative charge capacities shown in column 5, Table 8, which correspond to the experimental values obtained. We also noted that the curves plotted showed two quite distinct time linear slopes, the slope of the delivery of capacity, occurring at 115 W into power per time unit steepening very markedly at the approach to the limits of the permissible withdrawable capacity, occurring at 115 W into R2, and 90 W into R3.

The pre-PAGD and post-PAGD run, drive and charge pack discharge curves corresponding to groups 3 and 6, respectively for triode and plate diode configurations, in Table 8, are shown in Fig.16 (drive pack) and 17 (charge pack), for group 3, and in Fig.18 (drive pack) and Fig.19 (charge pack), for group 6. In all cases, the open symbols represent the pre-PAGD run discharge curves, whereas the closed symbols represent the post-PAGD run discharge curves.

As a further check on these values, a videographic, millisecond analysis of the singular power simultaneities occurring at both ends of the system (drive and charge packs) was performed for various 10 second samples of diverse PAGD runs. A typical example is shown in Fig.20, which is a sample of the PAGD run designated as 6 in Table 8. While the drive pack DC wattage spent as input to PAGD production varied from 36.6 to 57.82 watts, by a factor of 1.6 times, the DC wattage entering the charge pack as captured PAGD output varied more pronouncedly by a factor of 2.7 times, from 146.4 to 399.6 watts (all meters were in the same selected ranges of voltage and current) with the semi-periodic, intermittent character of each singular emission, though within specific, ascertainable ranges for both amplitude and current outputs.

Assimilation of the singular behaviour of the PAGD in this sample, by a statistical treatment of its variation (with n = 64), indicates that the operational break-even efficiency observed during this sampled period lies at 485.2% +/- 18% with projected 48.3Wh drive pack loss and 221.7Wh charge pack gain. This matches rather closely the observed 483% break-even efficiency, and the 37.7Wh loss as well as the 182.2 kWh gain for the overall PAGD run reported in group 6 of Table 8, and indicates how close are the values obtained by the operational and extensive non-negligible resistive discharge power measurement methods employed.
Finally, an example of the correlation between the drive pack PAGD load voltage and the charge pack PAGD charging voltage, as a function of the duration of the intervening PAGD run between resistive discharge measurements, is shown in Fig.21, for the PAGD run corresponding to group 4 of Table 8.

Using the same pulse generator with H200 Al 128 cm\(^2\) plates, in a double diode configuration, and the same circuit values (but with CP = 23 cells), three experiments were conducted at different PAGD frequencies, as a function of varying air pressure. Analysis of driver pack losses and charge pack gains by the extensive load discharge measurement method, as described before, led to the determination of the gross and net gains (respectively, without and with losses included) per pulse, in milliwatt-hour, for each frequency, as well as of the gross and net power gains per second of PAGD operation. The results are shown in Table 9. Even though the gross and net gains of power per pulse were observed to increase with decreasing frequency, the gross power gain per unit time increased with increasing frequency. However, this last trend does not necessarily translate into a higher net gain per unit time, because the losses in the driver pack (not shown) also increase significantly with PAGD frequency. These losses are in all probability related to more energy retention by the plasma at higher frequencies when plasma extinction becomes incomplete. We expect net gains to reach optimal thresholds for any given type of circuit configuration set of values and pulse generator dimensions.

Certain additional observations made during experiments with the double diode configuration of Fig.10A may assist in understanding of the invention.

1) Replacing residual air with argon gas leads to higher PAGD frequencies, as noted by us when utilising a 128 cm\(^2\) H200 AC plate pulse generator in the double diode configuration (V = 575). At 1 Torr, the pulsation rate went from 20 PPS in air to 1300-1400 PPS in argon. With 29 12V cells in the charge pack, input currents ceased to flow into it. Under these conditions, the tube potential across the plates decreased and the drop across the input resistor increased. The value of \(E (= V/d)\) became smaller (gap size = 3 cm from plate to axial anode collector), as the extinction voltage decreased.

2) With frequencies of 400 PPS, the currents flowing into the charge pack fell to zero. Replacing a fast-recovery type HFR 120 (1200v, 40A) diode bridge by a type MUR 860 (600v, 8A) diode bridge had no effect. When the amplitude of plate potential oscillations falls below the potential of the charge pack, there is also a tendency to produce arc discharges. For output currents from the vacuum pulse generator to enter the charge pack, the number of cells must be reduced so that the potential of the charge pack is low enough to admit the transduced currents. A reduction from 29 to 23 cells allowed currents of 250 mA to enter the CP, and further reduction to 19 cells doubled these currents (per polarity arm).

3) Our observations show that it suffices under these conditions (CP of 19 cells) to increase the vacuum, so that the frequency decreases, and the plate potential and the charge pack input currents increase. At 0.1 Torr, the currents reached 1A DC per plate, and at 0.05 Torr, 2A DC.

The interconnection between these factors indicates that the extinction voltage is a function of the PAGD frequency: the higher the PAGD frequency, the lower the extinction voltage, until empirical (in distinction from predicted) VAD field values are reached. As a consequence, the start voltage of the charge pack must be adjusted, by varying the number of cells composing it, so that it lies below the lowest extinction voltage of the PAGD, for any given geometry and gap distance.

Secondly, as the ion plasma is made more rarefied, the frequency of the emissions decreases, but the peak values of the output voltage and current per pulse increase. The slower the PAGD and the more rarefied the atmosphere, the higher is the output energy produced by the system relative to the input energy.

Autographic analysis of PAGD-induced cathode craters in H34 plates was performed, and their average inner diameter and maximum depth were determined. Similar studies were performed for PAGD-induced craters in Alzak (trade mark) plates. The secondary craters characteristically found in Alzak plates, along fracture lines irradiating from the main crater, are absent in H34 plates; instead, in H34 plates, one observes a roughened surface surrounding the emission crater, quite distinct from the original rough aspect of the pulled finish of these hardened aluminium plates. Also, unlike the Alzak main craters, the H34 craters often have a convex centre occupied by a cooled molten metal droplet, whereas the Alzak craters had a concave, hollowed out aspect. Eventually, as the pitting resulting from PAGD cathodic emissions covers the entire cathode, the metallic surface gains a very different rough aspect from its original appearance. In this process, craters from earlier metal layers become progressively covered and eroded by subsequent emissions from the same cathode. Altogether different is the surface deposition process occurring at the anode; here, the surface appears to become more uniform, through the mirroring and possibly abrasive actions of cathode jets. Macroscopically, with increased periods of PAGD operation, the anode surface appears cleaner and more polished.
With the data obtained by the metallographic method of crater measurement, we estimated the volume of metal ejected from the cathode, by assuming that the crater represents a concavity analogous to a spherical segment having a single base \(\frac{1}{6}\pi x H \left[3r^2 + H^2\right]\), where \(H\) is the height of the spherical segment and \(r\) the radius of the sphere), while disregarding the volume of the central droplet leftover from the emission. The following are mean +/- SEM crater diameters (D), crater depths (H) and maximum volumes (V) of extruded metallic material for two types of aluminium cathodes, Alzak and H34 hardened aluminium, subject to a high input current PAGD:

1. Alzak: D -0.028 cm +/- 0.003; H -0.002 cm +/- 0.0002; V - 6.2 x 10^{-7} cm^3

2. H34: D -0.0115 cm +/- 0.0004; H -0.0006 +/- 0.0001; V - 3.1 x 10^{-8} cm^3

Accordingly, utilising plates composed of either material with 3 mm of thickness, and thus with a volume of 38.4 cm^3 per plate and considering that only 2/3rds of the cathode shall be used (a 2 mm layer out of the 3 mm thickness), the total number of pulses per plate total (TLT) and partial (PLT) lifetimes is theoretically:

1. Alzak: TLT: 6.2 x 10^7 pulses; PLT: 4.1 x 10^7 pulses;

2. H34: TLT: 1.2 x 10^9 pulses; PLT: 8.1 x 10^8 pulses.

Typically, an H34 device can produce about 0.25 kWh per 10,000 pulses. The corresponding value for a PLT is thus a minimum of 1.0 MWh/Alzak cathode and of 20 MWh/H34 cathode. As the cathode for each combination is only 66.7% consumed, the vacuum pulse generator may continue to be used in a reverse configuration, by utilising the other plate in turn as the cathode; thus, the estimated minimal values become, respectively, 2.0 MWh/Alzak pulse generator and 40 MWh/H34 pulse generator. The same rationale applies for the double diode configuration of Fig.10C.

We have created a two-ported system for the production of the singular discharge events which we have previously identified in the “863” application as an endogenous pulsatory abnormal glow discharge regime where the plasma discharge is triggered by spontaneous electronic emissions from the cathode. We have examined the functioning of this two-ported system in order to determine what were the electrical power input and output characteristics of a sustained PAGD regime. Despite the wide (10-fold) variations in net power and break-even efficiencies measured by the four different methods employed (open voltage measurements, time integration of negligible power measurements, operational power measurements and real time non-negligible power measurements), all methods indicate the presence of an anomalous electrical transduction phenomenon within the vacuum pulse generator, such as can result in the production at the output port of electrical energy measured and directly captured which is greater than would be anticipated having regard to the electrical energy input at the input port. With the most accurate of the methods employed, we have found typical PAGD power production rates of 200 WHr/hour of PAGD operation, and these may reach >0.5 kWh/h values.

The discrepancies between the methods utilised have been extensively examined in the preceding section. Our systematic approach demonstrates that the most frequently employed method of measuring the charge capacity of batteries by the open voltage values is the least reliable approach for the determination of the actual net power lost or gained by the battery packs used in the system: when compared to all three other methods, it overestimates net power consumed and produced by up to 10 fold, as well as distorting the break-even efficiencies, particularly at the extremes of operation. All this results from the grossly diminished (50-60% of manufacturer's theoretical estimate) effective charge capacity of the lead acid gel cells employed, as determined experimentally from Fig.18 and Fig.19, when compared to the theoretical maximal charge capacity values that serve as scale for the open voltage measurements. In other words, the effective energy density of the batteries during these experiments was in fact approximately half of the manufacturer's estimated 30 WHr/kg.

Under these actual conditions of battery performance, the third and fourth methods (respectively, operational and real-time non-negligible power measurements) of power consumption and production proved to be the best approach to measure both PAGD electrical power input and output, as the results of both methods matched each other closely, even though the former is a statistical treatment of simultaneous events and the latter is a real time integration of their cumulative effects. The second method is clearly less reliable than either the third or the fourth methods, and this stems from the fact that the power consumption slopes of negligible resistive discharges not only are very different from the quasi-steady state discharge slopes (beginning at >5 - 15 minutes) of extensive resistive discharges, but also their proportionality may not reflect the real time proportionality of equivalent prolonged resistive discharges.

The main advantage of the fourth method is that it effectively takes into account the actual time performance of the batteries comprised by the overall PAGD production and capture system we have described. As such, the method may have the main disadvantage of reflecting more the limitations of the batteries employed (their high
rate of degradation of the absolute value of total effective charge capacity, and limited efficiency in retaining charge derived from discontinuous input pulses) than indicating the actual power output. There are a number of possibilities for fine tuning of the system introduced by the present work, beginning with the utilisation of secondary batteries or other charge shortage or absorption devices that have less variable or more easily predictable actual charge capacity.

In this respect, there are two major shortcomings to the batteries used to form the drive and charge packs; (1) their significant memory effect and (2) their design for constant, rather than discontinuous, DC charging.

Recently developed Nickel Hydride batteries are an example of an electrostatic charge-storage system that lacks a substantial charge memory effect, and their experimental batteries are being developed currently for higher efficiency intermittent charging methods. Electrostatic charge retention systems having better energy densities, better charge retentivities and insignificant memory effects will probably be more efficient at capturing and holding the energy output by the circuit. In practical embodiments of the invention, effectiveness in charge utilisation will be more important than measurability, and any device that will use the energy effectively whilst presenting an appropriate back EMF to the system may be utilised.

The effect of the performance characteristics of the drive and charge packs is only one amongst many parameters affecting operation of the invention. As shown by our extensive investigation of the diverse PAGD phenomenon the recovery of energy from it by electromechanical transduction as in the “531” application, or electrostatic capture as described above, the factors involved in modulating the frequency, amplitude and peak current characteristics of the PAGD regime are complex. Manipulation of these factors can improve electrical energy recovery, or reduce it or even suppress PAGD. We have so far noted numerous factors that affect PAGD frequency and some amongst those that also affect the PAGD amplitude. Aside from these factors, the circuit parameters of the output port portion of the circuit, in addition to the nature and chemical characteristics of the battery cells already discussed, the charge potential of the charge pack, the characteristics of the rectifiers in the recovery bridge in relation to the period of PAGD super-resonant frequencies, and the effective values of the parallel and transversal capacitance bridges can all influence the results achieved. Certain factors however have a radical effect on PAGD operation, such as the gap distance and the charge pack potential.

Too small a gap distance between the cold emitter (cathode) and the collector will result in an increasing reduction in energy recovery. The potential presented by the charge pack must be less than the voltage amplitude developed by the PAGD, as specified by a given gap distance at a given pressure. Too large a charge pack size with respect to PAGD amplitude and the gap length will preclude PAGD production or result in extremely low PAGD frequencies. In brief, the energy absorption rate and the counter potential presented by the charge pack or other energy utilisation device are important factors in the operation of the circuit as a whole, and should either be maintained reasonably constant, or changes should be compensated by changes in other operating parameters (as is typical of most power supply circuits).

Since our test results indicate that the electrical power output of the circuit can be greater than the electrical power input to the circuit, the circuit clearly draws on a further source of energy input. Whilst we do not wish to be confined to any particular theory of operation, the following discussion may be helpful in explaining our observations. These observations have been discussed in some detail so that the phenomenon observed can be reproduced, even if the principles involved are not fully understood.

In the “863” and “531” applications we have identified a novel, cold-cathode regime of vacuum electrical discharge, which we have termed the pulsed abnormal glow discharge (PAGD) regime. This regime, which occupies the abnormal glow discharge region of the volt-ampere curve of suitable discharge tubes, has the singular property of spontaneously pulsing the abnormal glow discharge in a fashion which is coming from the tube and its circuit environment that constitutes a vacuum pulse generator device, when it is operated under the conditions which we have identified. In fact, when stimulated with continuous direct current, in such conditions, such a circuit responds with spontaneous abnormal glow discharge pulses that enable effective segregation of input and output currents.

We have demonstrated electrically, metallographically, oscillographically and videographically, how the pulsed discontinuity results from a self-limiting, auto-electronic cathode emission that results in repeated plasma eruptions from the cathode under conditions of cathode saturated current input. The auto-electronic triggering of the PAGD regime is thus akin to that of the high-field emission mechanism thought to be responsible for vacuum arc discharges (VAD regime). However, under the PAGD conditions we have defined, this mechanism is found to operate in the pre-VAD region at very low field and low input average direct current values, with very large inter-electrode distances and in a self-limiting, repetitive fashion. In other words, the PAGD regime we have identified has mixed characteristics: its current versus potential (abnormal glow) discharge curve is not only distinct from that of a vacuum arc discharge, but the electrical cycle of the PAGD regime itself oscillates back and forth within the potential and current limits of the abnormal glow discharge region, as a function of the alternate
plasma generation and collapse introduced by the discontinuous sequencing of the auto-electronic emission process. Accordingly, the intermittent presence of the abnormal glow, as well as the observed segregation of the current flows, are due to the diachronic operation of these spontaneous cathode emission foci. The micro-crater and videographic analyses of the PAGD have demonstrated the presence of an emission jet at the origin of each pulse, a phenomenon which VAD theory and experiment has also identified. Metallic jets originating at the cathode spots of VADs have been known to present velocities up to, and greater than 1000 m/sec.

In light of the above, the energy graft phenomenon we have isolated would have to be operated, at the micro-event scale, by the interactions of the cathode emission jet with the vortex-formed impulse-transducing plasma in the inter-electrode space. Several aspects can be approached in terms of the complex series of events that constitute a complete cycle of operation, on a micro-scale. There are interactions within the cathode, interactions at the cathode surface, interactions between the emission jet and the plasma globule close to the cathode, and finally, interactions of the resulting electron and ion distributions in the inter-electrode plasma, within parallel boundaries.

In general, in the presence of an electrical field, the distribution of potential near the cathode forms a potential barrier to the flow of electronic charge, as this barrier is defined by the energy that the most energetic electrons within the metal (the Fermi energy electrons) must acquire before freeing themselves from the cathode surface potential, to originate an emission jet. Before any free electrons become available for conduction in the space adjoining the cathode, they must cross the boundary posed by the potential barrier. With a weak applied field, classical electron emission from a metal can only occur if an energy practically equal to the work-function of the metal is imparted in addition to the Fermi energy. Under thermionic conditions of emission, the heating of the cathode provides the needed energy input. However, the cold-cathode Fowler-Nordheim quantum-field emission theory predicted the existence of a finite probability for an electron to tunnel through the potential barrier, when the applied field is high. Cold-cathode electron emissions are thus possible, under these conditions, at practically Fermi energy levels, as the high field would catalyse the tunnelling through the potential barrier by narrowing the barrier width for the Fermi energy electrons. The exact localisation of the emission would then depend on the randomised fluctuations of high fields at the cathode, which were produced by positive space charges sweeping in proximity to it.

For most purposes, this theory has been the working hypothesis of the last 60 years of field emission studies, which have centred upon the VAD mechanism, despite the fact that observed field gradients are evidently inadequate to explain breakdown as a function of the theoretical high field mechanism. The Fowler-Nordheim theory has therefore suffered major revisions and additions, mostly to account for the fact that it postulates, as a condition for cold-cathode field emission in large area electrodes, the presence of enormous fields (>10⁹ V/m) and extremely low work functions, neither of which are borne out by experimental VAD investigations. Some researchers have found that the breakdown responsible for the VAD field emission is promoted by Joule heating and vapourisation of microscopic emitter tips, and that this requires a critical current density (10¹² A/cm²), while others emphasised that this explanation and these thresholds did not hold for large area emitters and that a space charge effect of concentrating the ion distribution near the cathode promoted breakdown under these circumstances, when the field reached a critical value; large field enhancement factors (more than a thousand-fold) have been postulated to explain the discrepancy between theoretical predictions and experimental findings regarding the critical breakdown field values, and others have demonstrated how this critical field value effectively varies with work-function and electrode conditioning.

The PAGD regime and its self-extinguishing auto-electronic emission mechanism stands as an exception to the high field emission theory as it currently stands with all its modifications, especially given that in this phenomenon we are confronted with a cathode emission that spontaneously occurs across the large gaps in large plate area pulse generators, at very low field values (down to <1 x 10⁴ V/m), as shown above and in the “863” application. Moreover, a Fowler-Nordheim plot (in the form Log₁₀ (I/V²) versus 1/V) of the PAGD volt-ampere characteristic exhibits a positive slope, rather than the Fowler-Nordheim negative slope characteristic of VAD field emission. However, current density values obtained from correlations of autographic analysis of the cathode with an analysis of event-oscillogram (peak pulse currents), indicate that the PAGD current density J may reach values of 10⁵ to 10⁷ A/m² during the emission process (the larger Alzak craters have an associated lower J value), values which, at the upper end, do not reach the 10¹² A/m² current density threshold required by the Fowler-Nordheim theory. Considering these two distinct observations with regards to field strength and current density, we have to admit the existence of a low field, large area cold-cathode auto-electronic emission endowed with high current densities, which is not predicted by current field emission theory.

Unlike the typical VAD regime, the PAGD is neither a high frequency oscillation, nor does it occur in a random fashion. It constitutes a semi-regular, quasi-coherent, periodic energy transduction which cycles between cathode drop limits that are higher by a factor of 2 to 15 than typical vacuum arc cathode drops. The intermittent cathode emission responsible for the low frequency, pulsed behaviour of the abnormal glow, is also self
extinguishing and self-starting, under the conditions we have defined. Furthermore, we have also identified a novel and unexpected dependency of the periodic pulse rate upon the cathode area. This indicates the presence of field emission control parameters heretofore unsuspected. It is likely that field fluctuations of the polarised pre-breakdown field is responsible for eliciting the particular localisations of the auto-electronic emission foci, as well as what imparts, in a lens-like fashion, the distorted field energy needed for electron surface release. In this sense, external, electrical or magnetic field fluctuations (e.g. motion of static charges or of constant magnetic fields) induced by us at pre-breakdown potentials, provoked PAGD emissions and breakdown at these levels.

In general, VAD studies have shown that, for large area electrodes, microgeometry, adsorbed gas layers and gas impurity contents of the cathode play a role in modulating field emission. In our PAGD studies, the interactions at the cathode surface and across the cathode potential drop are clearly modulated by:

1. the nature of residual gases, as shown by our air vs Argon studies;
2. their pressure,
3. electrode conditioning,
4. work-function and
g5. cumulative pulse count, amongst others.

The plasma, in leak-controlled or low pressure PAGD devices, has both residual gas and metallic vapour substrates. In devices initially closed at high to very high vacuum, the major residual substrate, whose presence increases with time of operation, is the metallic vapour released from the cathode and not impacted on to the envelope walls or the anode. It has been previously shown for externally (magnetically or electrostatically) pulsed plasma accelerators, that the amount of residual gas or vapour left in the inter-electrode space diminishes with increasing number of consecutive discharges and a growing amount of electrode-insulator absorption of gas. The effect of such removal of residual gas or vapour is to decrease the vacuum of a sealed envelope. With high vacuum sealed PAGD generators we have observed that prolonged operation and sputter-induced mirroring of the envelope causes a progressive disappearance of the discharge, as the voltage potential needed to trigger it also increases. At the thermocouple, low frequency pulsed abnormal glow discharges can also be seen to increase the vacuum significantly. These results suggest instead the presence of a pumping mechanism in the PAGD which is somewhat analogous to that of sputter ion pumps, where collision of ionised gas molecules with the cathode is responsible for the sputtering of cathode material that either combines with the gas substrate (‘gettering’ action) or ‘plasters over’ the inert gas molecules on to the anode (a process known as ‘ion burial’). These are the two basic pressure reducing actions of sputtered getter atoms, in ion pumps.

However, in ion sputter pumps, the initiation of the cycle is a function of the presence of high velocity electrons in the high field plasma of the glow discharge, which are necessary to ionise the gas substrate molecules; also, the getter material typically has a high work-function for field emission. Hence, the sputtering is due to the secondary impact of plasma positive ions at the cathode, after plasma ionisation has occurred in the inter-electrode space. Altogether different is the mechanism of spontaneous, primary electron emission from the cathode, which is characteristic of the low field PAGD: here, the sputtering is caused by the electronic emission itself and attendant metallic vapourisation processes. By artificially confining the firing foci to a part of the cathode, we have shown in the single diode configuration how the PAGD induced sputtering is associated with the cathode auto-electronic emission mechanism, rather than with the abnormal cathode glow per se, given the localisation of sputtering on to the emission region of the plate, despite its overall cathode glow saturation.

These observations would thus seem to corroborate the hypothesis of a progressive vacuum increase with the cumulative number of emitted pulses, were it not for the fact that experiments performed with leak controlled devices (reported here and in previous studies) show that, when the negative pressure is maintained by balanced leak admission of air or argon, pulse rates still decrease with cumulative pulse count, and do so neither as a function of an increase in vacuum, nor as a function of envelope mirroring (unless this is so extensive as to establish envelope conduction), but rather as a function of processes (generally referred to as conditioning) inherent to the electrodes, specifically, to the cathode. We have further shown that, for such altered emitter states, the pressure of the vessel must be increased, not because of an increasing vacuum (precluded by the controlled gas leak), but because of the effect that residual gases may have in modulating the low field PAGD emission.

PAGD electrode conditioning is a cathode-dominant process resulting from the cumulative emission of high numbers of pulses by a cathode, and has been shown to be a factor independent of the nature and pressure of the residual gas and partially reversible only by operation with reversed plate polarity, unlike reports of copper cathode-dominant conditioning. It is thought that electrode conditioning and the accompanying increase in VAD breakdown potential are due to the progressive adsorption of residual gases, though cathode-dominant conditioning processes, such as subjecting the vacuum gap to consecutive discharges, have been shown to correlate the decrease in plasma impulse strength with electrode outgassing of absorbed or adsorbed gases. Moreover, given the pitting action of crater formation at the cathode by the PAGD regime, and, as we shall see below, the metallic plating of the anode, the PAGD cathode-dominant process of conditioning we have observed with respect to decreased pulse frequency and increase in potential, suggests that the apparent increase in
cathode work function is not due to gas adsorption or absorption. These processes are more likely to occur on the plated anode. It is likely that, given the observed PAGD pressure reducing effect caused by the cathodic jet, a certain outgassing of the cathode is in fact occurring during PAGD function.

One might also expect that the anode, if plated by sputtering atoms, would increase its gas content in the formed surface film. However, controlled leak experiments suggest instead that some other type of alteration of the cathode work function is occurring, which is, as we shall examine below, independent of the adsorbed gas state of the electrodes, as well as independent of the PAGD ion pump-like effect. Nonetheless, even at the level of the anode, the PAGD sputtering action may have contradictory effects: it may impact inter-electrode gap molecules on to the collector, as well as release, by ionic bombardment and vaporisation, gases adsorbed to, or contaminating the anode. If we assume that gas adsorption by impact on the collector is the predominant mechanism, one could explain the increase in the number of breakdown sites per unit time, as observed by us for a re-reversed cathode, if the number of PAGD breakdown sites depended on the quantity of adsorbed gases, e.g. oxygen, on the cathode being tested. Recovery of the cathode work-function would depend on the electronic charge recovery of the positively charged, adsorbed or occluded gas layer at the cathode- either by reversal or as a function of time of inactivity.

The surface film theory of “electrical double layer formation at the cathode” in fact contended that, low field flash over is a photocathodic effect dependent upon the presence of a glowingly positively polarised gaseous film at the cathode; this film would lower the cathode emissivity by decreasing the field between the cathode surface and the leading edge of the cathode glow, across the cathode drop. However, even though the surface film theory of “electrical double layer formation at the cathode” predicts the lowering of the emission breakdown potential and the increase in flash over rate when the electrodes are reversed - as the anode would have acquired a surface charge capable of affecting the breakdown potential, it acknowledges nevertheless, that the anodic surface charge hardly explains the observed intensity of the polarisation effects.

Moreover, non-reversed, conditioned cathodes retained their lower PAGD frequencies in a time-independent manner, for as long as reversal was avoided (excluding a PAGD frequency recovery effect due to plate cooling, which may be as short as 15 minutes). PAGD conditioning was independent of idle time and increased with cumulative pulse count. Moreover, the AGD pulses are not UV photocathodic Townsend discharges, liberating secondary electrons via positive ion impact at the cathode. Nor could photocathodic emissions generate currents of the magnitude observed in the PAGD. Lastly, the PAGD discharge and breakdown thresholds appear to be unaffected by UV, though they may be somewhat depressed by visible light, and the emission mechanism in the PAGD is the primary process.

Removal or flattening of protuberances and tips from the emitting cathode by the action of the discharge, is a process also thought to play a role in hardening the cathode or increasing its field emission work-function. However, this explanation may not be adequate for the PAGD emission process, if we consider our metallographic findings of a smoothing action of the discharge at the collector. In fact, it would appear that the flattened, smoother, plated, mirrored and cleaner surfaces subjected to PAGD bombardment are the explanation for the observed increased emission ability of re-reversed cathodes: mirrored Alzak surfaces emit at higher frequencies than do dull H34 and H220 surfaces; new, polished surfaces emit at a higher frequency than do pitted, broken-in surfaces; anode surfaces, never before utilised as cathodes but subjected to prolonged PAGD action, emit at higher frequencies when employed as cathodes, than do new, identical cathode surfaces; and ex-cathodes, employed for prolonged periods as anodes, regain a higher emission frequency upon re-use as cathodes. The better PAGD emission performance of smoother cathodes, compared with the worse VAD emission performance of the same, when pitted cathodes (lacking protuberances) are used, requires explanation.

Rakhovsky has put forth a VAD model for cathode spots, that distinguishes between Type I spots (quickly moving spots, far from steady state and responsible for crater formation), and Type II spots (quasi-stationary and near steady-state, but leaving an itinerant track with no sign of crater formation). Whereas the former would obey the Fowler-Nordheim requirement for high fields (>10^9 V/m), the latter could hardly be expected to do so with typical arc voltage drops in the order of 10 V. Once again, autographic analysis of the PAGD emission aspect indicates mixed characteristics: the PAGD cathode spot is a hybrid. It behaves as an intermittent instability that leaves single (e.g. in H34) or clustered (e.g. in Alzak) craters, which are both qualities of Type I cathode spots; and it exists under low field conditions (<10^5 V/m), with cathode drops of 20 to 150 V, in a quasi-coherent mode, leaving an itinerant track of successive craters when operating at the higher frequencies, all of which are properties approaching those of a VAD Type II cathode spot.

Furthermore, the macroscopically visible metal sputtering (due to the explosive action of the PAGD emission phenomenon) occurring at the upper end of the permissible DC current input scale, and the presence of large solidified molten metal droplets in and around the craters, suggest models which have been proposed for explosive electronic emission. Explosion models propose that the creation of a residual plasma ball in front of a microprotuberance provokes the large potential drop at the prospective emission focus and sufficiently high
resistive and Nottingham heating to reach $>10^7$ A/cm$^2$ current densities during the explosive consumption of these microemitters. Whether the explosive action associated with cathode spots is an auxiliary effect that applies solely to the vaporisation of the emitting microproltrusion, or an integral emission and vaporisation explosive process, it does not appear that it can be restricted to high-field VAD Type II cathode spots, given that it can be equally made to occur with the low field PAGD hybrid cathode spot, and be macroscopically observed. Indeed, in the plate diode configuration, it is easy to visualise the metallic particle explosions that surround and accompany the plasma jets, near to upper current limit conditions. However, if we are to assume that any of these models apply to the emission mechanism, we would, in all likelihood, have to conclude that the PAGD initial emission sites must be sub-microscopic (100 to 10 nm), rather than microscopic.

Resolution limits to our own metallographic examination of the smoothing action of the PAGD discharge on the collector would thus have precluded us from detecting formation of such sub-microscopic protrusions, as well as their presence in a “soft” cathode and thus infer their disappearance from a pitted, hardened cathode; but if the disappearance of such sub-microprotuberances were responsible for the observed alteration of cathode work function, one would also thereby have to postulate the existence of a mechanism for microroughness regeneration (e.g., tip growth) at the anode, in order to explain the observed increased emission upon cathode reversal. Furthermore, this regeneration would have to be actively promoted by operation with reversed polarity, and this is problematic. Focusing of the distorted or magnified field upon alumina inclusions on pure iron electrodes has been demonstrated to degrade breakdown voltage for field emission, but the effect was greater for larger microscopic particles. If we were to apply this concept to our work, it would require the existence of unmistakably abundant microscopic heterogeneities in the quasi-homogeneous electrode surfaces employed, which we did not observe; on the contrary, their absence suggests that either the microroughness responsible for the low field PAGD emission is sub-microscopic, or that the field distortion responsible for eliciting the PAGD is independent of the presence of these protuberances. This last possibility must be taken all the more seriously, in light of the fact that PAGD functioning is able to cover the entire surface of an emitter with craters.

Whereas the discharge potentials observed in the PAGD have been shown to be relatively independent of the kind of gas present, there is a gas effect in the PAGD phenomenon, particularly in what concerns its frequency, whenever the same “run down” cathode was capable of much higher emission rates when exposed to argon, than to air. Utilising the technique of bias sputtering, it has been demonstrated that the number of charge symmetric collisions (dependent upon sheath thickness $d$ and the ion mean free path) in the plasma sheath, which are responsible for lower energy secondary peaks in ion energy distribution $N(E)$, at pressures of 0.2 Torr, is substantially greater in argon than in argon-nitrogen mixtures, and thus that, under these conditions, mostly $Ar^+$ and $Ar^{++}$ ions impact the negatively biased electrode. In non-equilibrium RF discharges, greater ion densities have also been attained with argon, than with air. With respect to field emissions, one would expect a gas effect only with regards to changes on surface conditions, though such studies have shown contradictory effects of argon upon cathode work function.

In light of the foregoing, and given that the PAGD is an emission discharge and not a sputtering discharge per se, in the strict sense, we can conceive of the role of inert gas atoms in increasing, as compared to air or nitrogen, the ion energy density distribution at the PAGD cathode spot interface with the cathode surface emitter, and thus elicit increased emission rates from the cathode, by pulling electrons from the metal via the field effect. While this is consistent with the concept of focused distortions of space-charge field fluctuations inducing localisation of the emission foci, the argon effect can be observed in the PAGD regime over the entire range of the Paschen low vacuum curve, and into Cooke's mid to high vacuum curve, at low fields and without negative biasing. Thus, it is not simply a high pressure (nor a gas conditioning) effect, even if the gas effect in question applies to the description of a local pressure rise at the emission site/cathode spot interface, which may play a role in enhancing the local field.

Considered together, the PAGD emission-derived sputtering, the observed metallic plating of the anode and the explosive aspect of the discharge, suggest the presence of a jet of metallic vapour present in the discharge and running, contrary to the normal flow of positive ions, from the cathode to the anode. This jet appears to have properties similar to the high speed vapour ejected from the cathode in a VAD, as first detected by Tanberg with his field emission pendulum (Tanberg, R. (1930), "On the cathode of an arc drawn in vacuum", Phys. Rev., 35:1080) In fact, the VAD high field emission process is known to release, from the cathode spot, neutral atoms with energies much greater than the thermal energy of the emission discharge. This anomalous phenomenon brings into play the role of the reported cathode reaction forces detected in vacuum arc discharges (Tanberg, as above, also Kobel, E. (1930), "Pressure and high vapour jets at the cathodes of a mercury vacuum arc", Phys. Rev., 36:1636), which were thought to be due to the counterflow of neutral metallic atoms, from the cathode on to the anode (charged metallic ions are normally expected to target the cathode). In absolute units of current, this current quadrature phenomenon has been shown to reach, in the VAD regime, proportions of the order of $100 \times i^2$ (see also the Aspden papers referenced below).
Early interpretations attributed this to the cathode rebounding of <2% of gas substrate-derived plasma positive ions hitting the cathode and being charge-neutralised in the process, but having kept most of their thermal energy. Tanberg held instead that the counterflow of neutral particles responsible for the cathode reaction force was cathode derived, effectively, that it constituted a longitudinal interaction acting in the direction of the metallic arc jet. However, even though secondary high energy distributions of neutral atoms emanating from the cathode do not have thermal energies, their modal distribution does (Davis, W. D. and Miller, H. C. (1969) J. Appl. Phys., 40:2212) furthermore, the major anomalous atomic counterflow that accompanies the high-energy electron flow toward the anode, was shown mass spectrographically to consist predominantly of multiply ionised, positively charged ions of cathode metal, rather than neutral atoms. If this made it easier to abandon the primacy of the rebounding model, it was now more difficult for field emission theorists to accept and explain the observed high energies (ion voltages in excess of the discharge voltage drops) and the high ionisation multiplicity associated with these counter-flowing positive ions.

This field of investigation has indeed been one of the mounting sources of evidence suggesting that there is something amiss in the present laws of electrodynamics. The anomalous acceleration of counter-flowing ions, and the energy transfer mechanisms between high speed or “relativistic” electrons and ions in a plasma (Sethion, J. D. et al, "Anomalous Electron-Ion Energy Transfer in a Relativistic-Electron-Beam-Heated Plasma" Phys. Rev. Letters, Vol. 40, No. 7, pages 451-454), in these and other experiments, has been brilliantly addressed by the theory of the British physicist and mathematician, H. Aspden, who first proposed a novel formulation of the general law of electrodynamics capable of accounting for the effect of the mass ratio factor (M/m') in the parallel (and reverse) motion of charges with different masses, (Aspden, H. (1969) "The law of electrodynamics", J. Franklin Inst., 287:179; Aspden, H (1980) "Physics Unified", Sabberton Publications, Southampton, England). The anomalous forces acting on the counter-flowing metallic ions would stem from their out-of-balance interaction with the emitted high speed electrons, as predicated by the electrodynamical importance of their mass differential. This results in a fundamental asymmetry of the plasma flow between electrodes, localised on to the discontinuous interfaces of the plasma with the electrodes, namely, in the cathode dark space and in the anodic sheath: on the cathode side, electrons act upon ions, as the emitted electrons having less than zero initial velocities, drift against the incoming ion flux and in parallel with the ion and neutral counterflows; on the anode side of the discharge, positive ions flowing toward the cathode confront mainly the incoming counterflow of positive ions and neutral atoms, as the high speed electrons have abnormally transferred their energy to counter-flowing, high speed, cathodic metal ions. An out-of-balance reaction force thus results at the cathode, to which the leaving metallic atoms impart a force of equal momentum but opposite direction, a force which is added to the cathode momentum generated by impacting, normal flowing positive ions.

Moreover, Aspden confirmed theoretically the fundamental contention of Tanberg's experimental findings that an electrodynamical force will manifest itself along the direction of the discharge current flow, and thus, that the atomic counterflow is a metallic jet. Aspden further demonstrated that this asymmetry of plasma discharges does not imply any violation of the principles of conservation of energy and charge equivalence, given that there will be no out-of-balance force when such anomalous forces are considered in the context of the whole system of charge which must, perforce, include the local electromagnetic frame itself. Such discharges must be viewed as open-energy systems, in balance with their electromagnetic environment: their apparatuses may constitute materially closed or limited systems, but they are physically and energetically open systems. Current work on Aspden’s formulation of Ampere’s Law indicates that both classical electromagnetism and special relativity ignore precisely, in circuits or in plasma, the longitudinal interactions that coexist with transverse ones. Standing longitudinal pressure-waves, of a non-electromagnetic nature, have been previously shown in plasma electrons, which did not conform to the Bohm and Gross plasma oscillation speed mechanism (Pappas, P. T. (1983) "The original Ampere force and Bio-Savart and Lorentz forces", I Nuovo Cimento, 76B:189; Looney, D. H. and Brown, S. C. (1954) "The excitation of plasma oscillations" Phys. Rev. 93:965)

The present theoretical approach to the novel regime of electrical discharge which we have isolated in specially designed devices, and to its mixed glow-arc characteristics, suggests that a similar, out-of balance current quadrature phenomenon occurs in the discharge plasma during the low field, auto-electronic emission-triggered PAGD, and is responsible for the observed surplus of energy in the experimental system described in this report. Clearly, all the evidence we have adduced indicates that there is a powerful longitudinal component to the emission-triggered PAGD, i.e. that the discharge pulses characteristic of this pre-VAD regime are longitudinally propelled jets of cathode-ejected high speed electrons and high speed ions. We have performed experiments, in the PAGD regime of operation, with very thin axial members that bend easily when placed in the path of the discharge, or with Crooke radiometer-type paddle-wheels, and both show the presence of a net longitudinal force in the plasma discharge acting in the direction of the anode, which confirms the magnitude of the atomic counterflow (ionised and neutral) present during the PAGD, very much like Tanberg's pendulum did for the VAD.

These observations also tally with the explosive action of the emission mechanism, such as we have examined it above. In this context, two aspects of the PAGD are remarkable: the fact that a phenomenon akin to field emission occurs at low field values, for large area electrodes across large gaps, and the conclusion that the PAGD must deploy an excessively large counterflow of, in all probability, both ionised and neutral cathodic
The observation of ion current contributions to the cathode current on the order of 8 to 10%, in VADs, can hardly apply to the PAGD mechanism responsible for the anomalous currents and counterflows observed. Hence, we should further expect that the characteristically intermittent, or chopped current regime of the PAGD, is a major factor in the generation of disproportionately high energy longitudinal pulses and in allowing our system to capture most of the electrical energy output from the device. In all probability, field collapse at the end of discharge favours the nearly integral collection of the plasma charge, and ensures the transduction of most of the plasma energy of the pulse (blocked, as it is, from flowing back through the input port to the drive pack) to the output port, through the parallel, asymmetric capacitance bridge that interfaces with the charge recovery reservoir (the charge pack). Collapse of the field of the discharge may also be a contributing factor to the anomalous acceleration of ions, and to the observed anode plating effect.

It is equally possible that such abnormally large longitudinal pulses may never be observable, for a given arrangement and scale, above threshold frequencies of the oscillation; we have, in this sense, presented data that indicates that for a given geometry, above specific PAGD frequencies, the capture of surplus energy decreases steadily in efficiency until it ceases altogether, for a given arrangement. The point at which this surplus begins to decrease coincides with the setting in of frequency-dependent irregularities in the discharge sequence and, most importantly, it coincides with a reduction of the peak pulse current for each PAGD pulse. We have further remarked that increasing the PAGD frequency above the zero surplus point, for a given arrangement, by manipulating any of the frequency control parameters, provokes the slippage of the PAGD into a full fledged VAD regime, while input currents greatly increase and output peak currents greatly decrease (to comparable peak input levels of 10 to 15A).

The transition between the two modes of emission-triggered discharge, PAGD and VAD, thus appears to be tied in to adjustable thresholds in the frequency of the emission discontinuities; in this sense, it is rather likely that the plasma field collapse plays a major role in regularising and optimising the anomalous energies of field emissions, as in the PAGD regime. At low frequencies of low field emission, the emission regime is highly discontinuous, diachronic and regular, for it has time to fully extinguish the discharge; hence the PAGD singularity, in which the phases of each discharge pulse are well defined and sequential. Above a given high frequency, when ion and electron recombination will happen more often, before each can be collected at the electrodes, the stream of emitted discontinuities merges into a noisy, randomised continuum, where simultaneous emissions become possible and the plasma field no longer has time to collapse and fully resolve the longitudinal pulses. Any anomalous energy generated is then minimised and trapped in the plasma body and, in these conditions, the VAD regime eventually sets in. Such model would easily explain why the high field VAD experiments performed to date have never detected such extraordinarily large anomalous forces.

Given the entirely non-inductive nature of the external circuit utilised in many instances, the inductive properties in evidence are those of the vacuum device itself. It also suggests that, in the absence of any need of an applied external magnetic field for the PAGD discharge to occur coherently, it is possible that the magnitude of the currents generated produces by itself a significant self-magnetic field. Thus, we cannot rule out the possibility of a self-organisation of the plasma discharge, which may, in Prigogine's sense, constitute a dissipative structure (Prigogine, I. and George, C. (1977), "New quantisation rules for dissipative systems", Int. J. Quantum Chem., 12 (Suppl.1):177). Such self-ordering of the PAGD plasma jet is suggested by the experimentally observed transition of these pulses from the current saturated limit of the normal glow discharge region, into the PAGD regime, as a function of increasing current: smaller foci of discharge can be seen to discontinue agglutinate into larger emission cones, or into jets with a vortex-like appearance, when the input current reaches a given threshold.

It is possible that, under these conditions, the distribution of the charge carriers and their sudden fluctuations may render any steady-state plasma boundary conditions ineffective and provoke a singularity in the discharge mechanism; this non-linear behaviour, together with any self-magnetic effects, might provide radial coherence of the plasma flow along the longitudinal path of the discharge. This concept is akin to what has been proposed for periodically fading-away solution structures referred to as “instantons”, that represent self-organising transitions
between the two states of a system. The PAGD may well be an instance of an instanton type structure bridging the open, or conductive, and the closed, or insulating, states of the vacuum gap. An analytical formulation of the problem of the plasma flow from the cathode spot to the anode, which would take into account the self-magnetic and self-organising properties of the PAGD plasma channel, would be extremely difficult, given the out of balance longitudinal force, its abnormal energy transfer and associated counterflow, as well as the competition between collisional and inertial exchanges.

The plating observed at the anode most likely results from the impact of counter-flowing ions (and possibly neutral atoms), whereas the pitting of the (locally molten) cathode results from the emission of vapourised metallic material and electrons, as well as, secondarily, from bombardment by incident positive ions. The first action smooths the surface by mirroring it (deposition of cathode-derived atoms) and abrading it, whereas the latter smoothes it in places by rounding concavities and by forming molten droplets upon local cooling, while simultaneously roughening it on the crater peripheries. One might think that this cathode roughening should lower the work function and facilitate the discharge, but the facts indicate that just the opposite must be happening in view of changes in the PAGD according to the nature and state of the cathode surface. The observed alterations of electrode work function for PAGD low field emission must thus be related to the molecular and charge effects of these different actions at the two electrodes. It appears that for large parallel plate electrodes, the PAGD low field emission is modulated by the nature and, most likely, by the molecular structure of the metallic surface layer of the emitter.

We have thus devised a system for the capture, as electricity, of the energy of anomalously energetic longitudinal pulses sequentially triggered by spontaneous emissions of high-speed electrons and ions generated from low work function cathodes, during the low field and singularly mixed PAGD regime of electrical discharge in vacuo. To confirm the above interpretation of the anomalous flux in the observed PAGD phenomenon, the cathode jet composition, as well as time-dependent and usage-dependent changes occurring in the tubes, with diverse sealed negative pressures and after submission to prolonged PAGD operation, must be analysed by mass-spectroscopy. In any event, the excess energy present in the anomalous counter-flowing force appears to stem from a discharge mechanism that effectively pulls high speed electrons and constituent atoms out of a metal surface, at low fields and with high current densities, and is modulated by a complex multiplicity of parameters.

The system described appears to transduce efficiently the observed non-linear longitudinal pulse discontinuities of the plasma field, under conditions of current saturation of the cathode, because the self-extinguishing and self-limiting properties of the discharge allows the energy from the collapse of the discharge to be captured. The particular design of the circuitry, which couples a rectification bridge to the asymmetric bridge quadrature of large capacitances, placed at the output of the PAGD generator, permits effective capture. Our findings constitute striking evidence for Aspden's contention of a need to revise our present electrodynamic concepts. The dual ported PAGD discharge tube circuits which we have described are the first electrical systems we know of which permit effective exploitation of anomalous cathode reaction forces and allow for the recovery of electrical energy from systems exhibiting this effect. Any apparent imbalance in the electrical energy input to the system and withdrawn from the system by its operator must be considered in the context of the entire continuum in which the system operates, within which it is anticipated that accepted principles of energy balance will be maintained.

Moreover, the energy conversion system of the invention has substantial utility as an electrical inverter accepting direct current, and providing one or more of a direct current output at lower voltage and higher current, variable frequency input to alternating current motors, and, by suitable combinations of discharge tube systems, more flexible DC-to-DC conversion systems.

As an alternative to the batteries used in the experiments described, a DC power supply may be utilised or, more advantageously from the viewpoint of entailing less transformation losses, a DC generator to provide the electrical energy input to the system. As a DC motor can be run directly from the rectified output of the circuit of Fig.3 at EI-E2, in place of a battery charge pack, DC motor/generator sets of suitable characteristics (in terms of back E.M.F. and circuit loading) can be used to charge the batteries of the drive pack, utilising the rectified PAGD output to drive the DC motor component of the set. This provides a simple, one battery pack solution, where the PAGD input and output circuits are electrically separated by the DC motor/generator interface: the drive pack is simultaneously being discharged to drive PAGD production, and charged by the DC generator output which, in turn, is being driven by the electromechanical transformation of the rectified PAGD output that would typically accrue to a charge pack in the experiments already described. The main limitations to such an arrangement lie in the efficiency of the motor and generator transformations utilised.

A pulsed DC source could be used to provide input to the circuit if suitably synchronised, but care is needed not to interfere unduly with the auto-electronic mechanism of the field induced cathode emissions.
TABLE 1

Results for the ballistic resistance (and current) dependent PAGD frequency utilizing an H34 aluminum pulse generator with 128 cm² plates at 5.5 cm distance, in the triode configuration, at a pressure of 0.8 Torr. The circuit employed is that of the present invention, as described in the third Results Section. DCV = 560.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>R in Ω</th>
<th>Regime of Discharge</th>
<th>Pulse Rate (&gt;100 V)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5,000</td>
<td>NGD</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Cold Cathode)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600</td>
<td>PAGD</td>
<td>10 PPS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>PAGD</td>
<td>40 PPS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>PAGD</td>
<td>180 PPS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>VAD</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>VAD</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| TABLE 2 |

128 cm² H2O Al; 530 volts DC; 300 Ω = R; Diode Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PPS</th>
<th>p(Torr)</th>
<th>Cumulative Pulse Count</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1)</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>0.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2)</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3)</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>0.5-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4)</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5)</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(after first electrode reversal)

| TABLE 3 |

RESIDUAL GAS EFFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pressure in Torr</th>
<th>PPS in AIR</th>
<th>PPS in ARGON</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.45</td>
<td>ND</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>1.8 ± 0.3</td>
<td>ND</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>4.8 ± 0.9</td>
<td>15.7 ± 1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>11.4 ± 0.8</td>
<td>448 ± 27.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>214.5 ± 14.3</td>
<td>ND</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>35.2 ± 2.6</td>
<td>206 ± 19.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>1.36 ± 0.3</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| TABLE 4 |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Charge pack</th>
<th>No. of cells</th>
<th>PPS</th>
<th>PAGD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31'</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expt. No.</td>
<td>Battery 3 Pack Position</td>
<td>Open Voltage V/cell</td>
<td>V rel. cpty. %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Charge start</td>
<td>348</td>
<td>12.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Charge end</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>12.62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Driver start</td>
<td>576</td>
<td>12.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Driver end</td>
<td>572</td>
<td>12.63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>C b</td>
<td>331</td>
<td>11.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C a</td>
<td>351</td>
<td>12.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D b</td>
<td>553</td>
<td>12.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D a</td>
<td>546</td>
<td>11.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>C b</td>
<td>345</td>
<td>11.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C a</td>
<td>361</td>
<td>12.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D b</td>
<td>559</td>
<td>12.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D a</td>
<td>552</td>
<td>12.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>C b</td>
<td>360</td>
<td>12.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D b</td>
<td>562</td>
<td>12.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D a</td>
<td>557</td>
<td>12.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>C b</td>
<td>340</td>
<td>11.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C a</td>
<td>365</td>
<td>12.39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D b</td>
<td>527</td>
<td>11.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D a</td>
<td>517</td>
<td>11.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>C b</td>
<td>540</td>
<td>11.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C a</td>
<td>367</td>
<td>12.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D b</td>
<td>589</td>
<td>12.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D a</td>
<td>564</td>
<td>12.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>C b</td>
<td>318</td>
<td>10.97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C a</td>
<td>359</td>
<td>12.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D b</td>
<td>575</td>
<td>12.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D a</td>
<td>567</td>
<td>12.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>C b</td>
<td>328</td>
<td>11.71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C a</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>12.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D b</td>
<td>582</td>
<td>12.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D a</td>
<td>579.5</td>
<td>12.60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Expt. No.</th>
<th>Battery 3 Pack Position</th>
<th>Open Voltage V/cell</th>
<th>V rel. cpty. %</th>
<th>6 Total %</th>
<th>Max. hr. left</th>
<th>Rel. cpty. %</th>
<th>7 Total kWh</th>
<th>8 Gain kWh</th>
<th>9 Loss kWh</th>
<th>10 AhKWh</th>
<th>11 PAGD per sec</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Charge start</td>
<td>21.5°</td>
<td>2.071</td>
<td>388%</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>A26</td>
<td>128 cm²</td>
<td>H34</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Charge end</td>
<td></td>
<td>2.791</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### TABLE 5-continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Driver</th>
<th>start</th>
<th>end</th>
<th>46</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>18'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>3.207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>b</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>21.5'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>2.473</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>b</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>63.5'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>b</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>80'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>1.080</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>b</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>21.5'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>4.155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>b</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>64.5'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>1.331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>b</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>28.5'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>2.554</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>b</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Expt. No.</th>
<th>Battery</th>
<th>Pack Position</th>
<th>ohms mfd</th>
<th>mfd arm</th>
<th>Pressure cm</th>
<th>OV rlx. cm</th>
<th>C4</th>
<th>R4</th>
<th>Motor rpm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>R1 C3/C5 C7a/C7b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>R1 C3/C5 C7a/C7b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>R1 C3/C5 C7a/C7b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>R1 C3/C5 C7a/C7b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>R1 C3/C5 C7a/C7b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>R1 C3/C5 C7a/C7b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>R1 C3/C5 C7a/C7b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>R1 C3/C5 C7a/C7b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TABLE 5-continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Expt. No.</th>
<th>Battery</th>
<th>Pack Position</th>
<th>ohms mfd</th>
<th>mfd arm</th>
<th>Pressure cm</th>
<th>OV rlx. cm</th>
<th>C4</th>
<th>R4</th>
<th>Motor rpm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>R1 C3/C5 C7a/C7b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>R1 C3/C5 C7a/C7b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>R1 C3/C5 C7a/C7b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>R1 C3/C5 C7a/C7b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>R1 C3/C5 C7a/C7b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>R1 C3/C5 C7a/C7b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>R1 C3/C5 C7a/C7b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>R1 C3/C5 C7a/C7b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### TABLE 6

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Expt. No</th>
<th>Battery Pack</th>
<th>Position</th>
<th>Load Voltage</th>
<th>Watts/cell</th>
<th>Hr. left</th>
<th>Total kWh</th>
<th>akWh</th>
<th>rel. kWh/h net</th>
<th>Eff.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>C s</td>
<td>355.5</td>
<td>4.445</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.516</td>
<td>1.241</td>
<td>3.014</td>
<td>776%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C e</td>
<td>357.5</td>
<td>5.05</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>1.757</td>
<td>1.241</td>
<td>3.46</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D s</td>
<td>568.0</td>
<td>3.20</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>1.766</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>0.46</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D e</td>
<td>564.6</td>
<td>3.175</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>1.666</td>
<td>1.012</td>
<td>534%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>C s</td>
<td>315.5</td>
<td>3.93</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.114</td>
<td>0.502</td>
<td>0.387</td>
<td>1.225</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C e</td>
<td>327.8</td>
<td>4.25</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>0.502</td>
<td>0.387</td>
<td>1.225</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D s</td>
<td>340.7</td>
<td>2.91</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.535</td>
<td>0.073</td>
<td>0.243</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D e</td>
<td>335.3</td>
<td>2.87</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>0.462</td>
<td>1.175</td>
<td>703%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>C s</td>
<td>328</td>
<td>4.23</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.245</td>
<td>0.492</td>
<td>1.370</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C e</td>
<td>351.7</td>
<td>4.91</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>0.777</td>
<td>0.492</td>
<td>1.370</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D s</td>
<td>346</td>
<td>2.95</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.610</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D e</td>
<td>545.5</td>
<td>2.90</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>0.610</td>
<td>0.070</td>
<td>0.195</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TABLE 7

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Expt. No</th>
<th>2 Pressure Config.</th>
<th>3 Torr</th>
<th>4 Tube</th>
<th>5 DP</th>
<th>6 Plates DCV</th>
<th>7 DCV</th>
<th>8 DP</th>
<th>9 V/FAGD</th>
<th>10 V/FAGD</th>
<th>11 CP DCV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>dd</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>A29</td>
<td>562</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>0.65</td>
<td>157.8</td>
<td>212</td>
<td>71.4</td>
<td>375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>dd</td>
<td>0.09</td>
<td>A29</td>
<td>562</td>
<td>402</td>
<td>0.60</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>59.2</td>
<td>378</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>dd</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>A29</td>
<td>560</td>
<td>371</td>
<td>0.59</td>
<td>111.5</td>
<td>189</td>
<td>68.7</td>
<td>374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>dd</td>
<td>0.09</td>
<td>A29</td>
<td>563</td>
<td>409</td>
<td>0.49</td>
<td>75.9</td>
<td>154</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>379</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>A28</td>
<td>561</td>
<td>439</td>
<td>0.41</td>
<td>49.9</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>22.2</td>
<td>377</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>A28</td>
<td>560</td>
<td>425</td>
<td>0.51</td>
<td>68.9</td>
<td>135</td>
<td>24.5</td>
<td>375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>A23</td>
<td>556</td>
<td>398</td>
<td>0.48</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>158</td>
<td>28.7</td>
<td>376.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>A23</td>
<td>563</td>
<td>390</td>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>112.45</td>
<td>173</td>
<td>31.5</td>
<td>373</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>A23</td>
<td>565</td>
<td>422</td>
<td>0.47</td>
<td>67.2</td>
<td>143</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>376</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>sd</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>A23</td>
<td>561.5</td>
<td>415</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>146.5</td>
<td>26.6</td>
<td>380</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>sd</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>A23</td>
<td>562</td>
<td>413.5</td>
<td>0.53</td>
<td>81.7</td>
<td>148.5</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>380</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>sd</td>
<td>0.23</td>
<td>A23</td>
<td>553</td>
<td>438</td>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>41.8</td>
<td>381.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>sd</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>A28</td>
<td>549</td>
<td>325</td>
<td>0.70</td>
<td>326</td>
<td>224</td>
<td>81.5</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>dd</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>A23</td>
<td>553</td>
<td>438</td>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>41.8</td>
<td>381.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Expt. No | 2 CP Config. | 3 CP Watts Resistance | 4 Total Resistance | 5 Breakeven Efficiency | 6 Breakeven Efficiency | 7 Bridge Efficiency | 8 Bridge Efficiency | 9 Bridge Efficiency | 10 Bridge Efficiency | 11 Bridge Efficiency | 12 Bridge Efficiency | 13 Bridge Efficiency | 14 Bridge Efficiency | 15 Bridge Efficiency | 16 Bridge Efficiency | 17 Bridge Efficiency | 18 Bridge Efficiency | 19 Bridge Efficiency | 20 Bridge Efficiency | FIG. 3 |
|----------|--------------|------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1        | dd           | 1.25                   | 468.8              | 326                    | 340%                   | 450                 | M850                | HFR                 | off                 |                     | +                   |
| 2        | dd           | 0.70                   | 294.6              | 97                     | 276%                   | 96                  | M850                | HFR                 | off                 |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |
| 3        | dd           | 0.65                   | 243.1              | 243                    | 218%                   | 500                 | HFR                 | HFR                 | off                 |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |
| 4        | dd           | 0.76                   | 288                | 314                    | 379%                   | 77                  | HFR                 | HFR                 | off                 |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |
| 5        | t            | 0.58                   | 219                | 298                    | 439%                   | 52                  | HFR                 | HFR                 | off                 |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |
| 6        | t            | 0.69                   | 259                | 265                    | 376%                   | 100                 | M850                | HFR                 | off                 |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |
| 7        | t            | 0.57                   | 213.1              | 329                    | 284%                   | 355                 | M850                | HFR                 | off                 |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |
| 8        | t            | 0.67                   | 252.9              | 238                    | 230%                   | 92                  | HFR                 | HFR                 | off                 |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |
| 9        | t            | 0.65                   | 280                | 266                    | 249%                   | 118                 | M850                | HFR                 | off                 |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |
| 10       | sd           | 1.03                   | 287.3              | 286                    | 350%                   | 23                  | M850                | HFR                 | off                 |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |
| 11       | sd           | 0.73                   | 277.4              | 293                    | 379%                   | 11                  | HFR                 | HFR                 | off                 |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |
| 12       | sd           | 0.71                   | 269.8              | 270                    | 350%                   | 10                  | HFR                 | HFR                 | on                  |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |
| 13       | dd           | 0.59                   | 225.1              | 329                    | 563%                   | 10                  | HFR                 | HFR                 | off                 |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |
| 14       | dd           | 1.36                   | 257.7              | 320                    | 228%                   | 1                   | HFR                 | HFR                 | off                 |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |
### TABLE 8

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
<td>159</td>
<td>12%</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>269</td>
<td>733</td>
<td>+664</td>
<td>845%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>b</td>
<td></td>
<td>1764</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>115</td>
<td></td>
<td>32</td>
<td>89</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
<td>1732</td>
<td>84%</td>
<td>115</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>b</td>
<td></td>
<td>118</td>
<td>9%</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>192</td>
<td>640</td>
<td>+615</td>
<td>2,667%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
<td>303.5</td>
<td>23%</td>
<td>115</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>b</td>
<td></td>
<td>542.3</td>
<td>26%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
<td>335</td>
<td>25.9%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>b</td>
<td></td>
<td>930.4</td>
<td>72%</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>210.9</td>
<td>191.7</td>
<td>+189</td>
<td>3485%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
<td>1,161</td>
<td>88%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>b</td>
<td></td>
<td>660</td>
<td>32%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>65.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
<td>654</td>
<td>32%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>b</td>
<td></td>
<td>15.8</td>
<td>12%</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>64.5'</td>
<td>+53.7</td>
<td>406%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
<td>81.9</td>
<td>6%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>b</td>
<td></td>
<td>111</td>
<td>8.7%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
<td>165</td>
<td>8%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>b</td>
<td></td>
<td>34.5</td>
<td>2.5%</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>28.5'</td>
<td>+169.1</td>
<td>435%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
<td>138.8</td>
<td>10.5%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>104.3</td>
<td>219.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>b</td>
<td></td>
<td>1,114</td>
<td>54%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
<td>1,089</td>
<td>53%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>b</td>
<td></td>
<td>53.4</td>
<td>4.2%</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>74'</td>
<td>+117</td>
<td>483%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
<td>237.6</td>
<td>18%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>b</td>
<td></td>
<td>669.3</td>
<td>32%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
<td>631.7</td>
<td>30.6%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exp. No.</th>
<th>Battery</th>
<th>Pack</th>
<th>Position</th>
<th>12 Config.</th>
<th>13 Tube area</th>
<th>14 Cathode cm</th>
<th>15 gap cm</th>
<th>16 PPS</th>
<th>17 PAGD seq method</th>
<th>18 R1 ohms</th>
<th>19 Plate material</th>
<th>20 C1/C5 mf</th>
<th>21 C7a/C7b mf</th>
<th>22 mfd</th>
<th>mfd</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>b</td>
<td></td>
<td>Triode A26</td>
<td>128 cm2</td>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Continuous 300</td>
<td>H34</td>
<td>20,700</td>
<td>5,300</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
<td>Triode A26</td>
<td>128 cm2</td>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>Interrupted 300</td>
<td>H34</td>
<td>20,700</td>
<td>3,300</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>b</td>
<td></td>
<td>Triode A26</td>
<td>128 cm2</td>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>Interrupted 300</td>
<td>H220</td>
<td>34,700</td>
<td>5,500</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>b</td>
<td></td>
<td>Triode A46</td>
<td>64 cm2</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Continuous 600</td>
<td>H34</td>
<td>34,700</td>
<td>5,500</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>b</td>
<td></td>
<td>Triode A46</td>
<td>64 cm2</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>Interrupted 600</td>
<td>H34</td>
<td>34,700</td>
<td>5,500</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
<td>Triode A26</td>
<td>128 cm2</td>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Interrupted 300</td>
<td>H220</td>
<td>34,700</td>
<td>5,500</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>b</td>
<td></td>
<td>Plate Diode</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TABLE 9

Utilizing: AI H200, 128 cm² plates  
DP = 46 cells  
CF = 25 cells

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PPS</th>
<th>CP Gain per pulse in mWh</th>
<th>Net Gain per pulse mWh</th>
<th>CP Gain per second mWh</th>
<th>Net Gain per second mWh</th>
<th>Pressure in Torr</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>#1</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>22.3</td>
<td>11.7</td>
<td>33.45</td>
<td>17.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#2</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>44.8</td>
<td>35.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#3</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>0.78</td>
<td>0.27</td>
<td>85.8</td>
<td>29.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CLAIMS

1. Apparatus comprising a discharge tube and an electrical circuit containing said discharge tube and configured to operate the latter to provide endogenous pulsatory cold cathode auto-electronic emissions, the circuit being double ported with an input port connected to a source of direct current at a potential sufficient to initiate said emissions, and an output port connected to a current sink effective to absorb at least a substantial portion of electrical energy released by collapse of said emissions.

2. Apparatus according to claim 1 configured so that the emissions occur in a pulsed abnormal glow discharge regime.

3. Apparatus according to claim 2, wherein the input port includes components ensuring that the flow of current therein is unidirectional, and incorporating impedance sufficient to limit the flow of current therein.

4. Apparatus according to claim 2, including capacitors connected to the discharge tube, the input port and the output port, which provide charge storage in the input port and direct current isolation between the input and output ports.

5. Apparatus according to claim 4, wherein the output port comprises a rectifier having an input connected to said capacitors, reservoir capacitance connected to the output of said rectifier, and reverse current blocking devices connected between said reservoir capacitance and the current sink.

6. Apparatus according to claim 5, wherein the rectifier is a bridge rectifier, and the reservoir capacitance is provided by a capacitor bridge having ends connected to outputs of the bridge rectifier, and an intermediate point connected to one input of the bridge rectifier.

7. Apparatus according to claim 4, further including an alternating current motor and a capacitor in series, connected between the connections of said capacitors to the output port.

8. Apparatus according to claim 2, wherein the current sink comprises a secondary battery.

9. Apparatus according to claim 2, wherein the current sink comprises an electric motor.

10. Apparatus according to claim 2, wherein the direct current source comprises a secondary battery.

11. Apparatus according to claim 2, wherein the direct current source is a DC generator.

12. Apparatus according to claim 9, wherein the motor is a DC motor.

13. Apparatus according to claim 10, including a circuit for charging from the output port a battery to be used as the direct current source.

14. Apparatus according to claim 2, wherein the direct current source is a rectified AC source.

15. Apparatus according to claim 2, wherein the discharge tube is connected as a single diode.

16. Apparatus according to claim 2, wherein the discharge tube is connected as a multiple diode with plates connected as cathodes and an intermediate electrode connected as an anode.

17. Apparatus according to claim 2, wherein the discharge tube is connected as a triode, with an intermediate electrode functioning as an auxiliary cathode.

18. Apparatus according to claim 2, wherein a first potential is applied to the input port by the source of direct current to induce emission, a back EMF is applied to the output port by the current sink, and an extinction potential of the emissions is greater than the back EMF.

19. A method of energy conversion, comprising initiating plasma eruptions from the cathode of a discharge tube operating in a pulsed abnormal glow discharge regime utilising electrical energy from a source in a first circuit connected to said discharge tube, and capturing electrical energy generated by the collapse of such eruptions in a second circuit connected to said discharge tube.
20. A method according to claim 19, wherein current flowing into the discharge tube during said eruptions is at least 50 ma.

21. A method according to claim 19, wherein current flowing into the discharge tube during said eruptions is at least 500 ma.

22. A method according to claim 19, in which charge carriers within plasma outputs are accelerated through at least one of an electric and magnetic field.

23. A method of energy conversion, comprising inducing endogenous pulsatory low-field, large-area cold-cathode auto-electronic emissions from the cathode of a discharge tube capable of sustaining such emissions, utilising electrical energy from a source in a first circuit connected to said discharge tube, and capturing electrical energy generated by the collapse of such emissions in a second circuit connected to said discharge tube.
This patent shows a system for converting Zero-Point Energy into conventional electrical power.

ABSTRACT

A system is disclosed for converting high-frequency zero-point electromagnetic radiation energy to electrical energy. The system includes a pair of dielectric structures which are positioned near each other and which receive incident zero-point electromagnetic radiation. The volumetric sizes of the structures are selected so that they resonate at a frequency of the incident radiation. The volumetric sizes of the structures are also slightly different so that the secondary radiation emitted from them at resonance, interferes with each other producing a beat frequency radiation which is at a much lower frequency than that of the incident radiation and which is amenable to conversion to electrical energy. An antenna receives the beat frequency radiation. The beat frequency radiation from the antenna is transmitted to a converter via a conductor or waveguide and converted to electrical energy having a desired voltage and waveform.

US Patent References:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patent Number</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Inventor</th>
<th>Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3882503</td>
<td>May, 1975</td>
<td>Gamara</td>
<td>343/100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4725847</td>
<td>Feb., 1988</td>
<td>Poirier</td>
<td>343/840</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5008677</td>
<td>Apr., 1991</td>
<td>Trigon et al.</td>
<td>342/17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DESCRIPTION

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

The invention relates generally to conversion of electromagnetic radiation energy to electrical energy, and, more particularly, to conversion of high frequency bandwidths of the spectrum of a type of radiation known as ‘zero-point electromagnetic radiation’ to electrical energy.

The existence of zero-point electromagnetic radiation was discovered in 1958 by the Dutch physicist M. J. Sparnaay. Mr. Sparnaay continued the experiments carried out by Hendrik B. G. Casimir in 1948 which showed the existence of a force between two uncharged parallel plates which arose from electromagnetic radiation surrounding the plates in a vacuum. Mr. Sparnaay discovered that the forces acting on the plates arose from not only thermal radiation but also from another type of radiation now known as classical electromagnetic zero-point radiation. Mr. Sparnaay determined that not only did the zero-point electromagnetic radiation exist in a vacuum but also that it persisted even at a temperature of absolute zero. Because it exists in a vacuum, zero-point radiation is homogeneous and isotropic as well as ubiquitous. In addition, since zero-point radiation is also invariant with respect to Lorentz transformation, the zero-point radiation spectrum has the characteristic that the intensity of the radiation at any frequency is proportional to the cube of that frequency. Consequently, the intensity of the radiation increases without limit as the frequency increases resulting in an infinite energy density for the radiation spectrum. With the introduction of the zero-point radiation into the classical electron theory, a vacuum at a temperature of absolute zero is no longer considered empty of all electromagnetic fields. Instead, the vacuum is now considered as filled with randomly fluctuating fields having the zero-point radiation spectrum. The special characteristics of the zero-point radiation which are that it has a virtually infinite energy density and that it is ubiquitous (even present in outer space) make it very desirable as an energy source. However, because high energy densities exist at very high radiation frequencies and because conventional methods are only able to convert or extract energy effectively or efficiently only at lower frequencies at which zero-point radiation has relatively low energy densities, effectively tapping this energy source has been believed to be unavailable using conventional techniques for converting electromagnetic energy to electrical or other forms of easily usable energy. Consequently, zero-point electromagnetic radiation energy which may potentially be used to power interplanetary craft as well as provide for society’s other needs has remained unharvested.

There are many types of prior art systems which use a plurality of antennas to receive electromagnetic radiation and provide an electrical output from them. An example of such a prior art system is disclosed in U.S. Pat. No.
3,882,503 to Gamara. The Gamara system has two antenna structures which work in tandem and which oscillate by means of a motor attached to them in order to modulate the radiation reflected from the antenna surfaces. The reflecting surfaces of the antennas are also separated by a distance equal to a quarter wavelength of the incident radiation. However, the Gamara system does not convert the incident radiation to electrical current for the purpose of converting the incident electromagnetic radiation to another form of readily usable energy. In addition, the relatively large size of the Gamara system components make it unable to resonate at and modulate very high frequency radiation.

What is therefore needed is a system which is capable of converting high frequency electromagnetic radiation energy into another form of energy which can be more readily used to provide power for transportation, heating, cooling as well as various other needs of society. What is also needed is such a system which may be used to provide energy from any location on earth or in space.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION
It is a principle object of the present invention to provide a system for converting electromagnetic radiation energy to electrical energy.

It is another object of the present invention to provide a system for converting electromagnetic radiation energy having a high frequency to electrical energy.

It is another object of the present invention to provide a system for converting zero-point electromagnetic radiation energy to electrical energy.

It is another object of the present invention to provide a system for converting zero-point electromagnetic radiation energy to electrical energy which may used to provide such energy from any desired location on earth or in space.

It is another object of the present invention to provide a system for converting electromagnetic radiation energy to electrical energy having a desired waveform and voltage.

It is an object of the present invention to provide a miniaturised system for converting electromagnetic radiation energy to electrical energy in order to enhance effective utilisation of high energy densities of the electromagnetic radiation.

It is an object of the present invention to provide a system for converting electromagnetic radiation energy to electrical energy which is simple in construction for cost effectiveness and reliability of operation.

Essentially, the system of the present invention utilises a pair of structures for receiving incident electromagnetic radiation which may be propagating through a vacuum or any other medium in which the receiving structures may be suitably located. The system of the present invention is specifically designed to convert the energy of zero-point electromagnetic radiation; however, it may also be used to convert the energy of other types of electromagnetic radiation. The receiving structures are preferably composed of dielectric material in order to diffract and scatter the incident electromagnetic radiation. In addition, the receiving structures are of a volumetric size selected to enable the structures to resonate at a high frequency of the incident electromagnetic radiation based on the parameters of frequency of the incident radiation and propagation characteristics of the medium and of the receiving structures. Since zero-point radiation has the characteristic that its energy density increases as its frequency increases, greater amounts of electromagnetic energy are available at higher frequencies. Consequently, the size of the structures are preferably miniaturised in order to produce greater amounts of energy from a system located within a space or area of a given size. In this regard, the smaller the size of the receiving structures, the greater the amount of energy that can be produced by the system of the present invention.

At resonance, electromagnetically induced material deformations of the receiving structures produce secondary fields of electromagnetic energy therefrom which may have evanescent energy densities several times that of the incident radiation. The structures are of different sizes so that the secondary fields arising therefrom are of different frequencies. The difference in volumetric size is very small so that interference between the two emitted radiation fields, and the receiving structures at the two different frequencies produces a beat frequency radiation which has a much lower frequency than the incident radiation. The beat frequency radiation preferably is at a frequency which is sufficiently low that it may be relatively easily converted to usable electrical energy. In contrast, the incident zero-point radiation has its desirable high energy densities at frequencies which are so high that conventional systems for converting the radiation to electrical energy either cannot effectively or efficiently so convert the radiation energy or simply cannot be used to convert the radiation energy for other reasons.

The system of the present invention also includes an antenna which receives the beat frequency radiation. The antenna may be a conventional metallic antenna such as a loop or dipole type of antenna or a rf cavity structure.
which partially encloses the receiving structures. The antenna feeds the radiation energy to an electrical conductor (in the case of a conventional dipole or comparable type of antenna) or to a waveguide (in the case of a rf cavity structure). The conductor or waveguide feeds the electrical current (in the case of the electrical conductor) or the electromagnetic radiation (in the case of the waveguide) to a converter which converts the received energy to useful electrical energy. The converter preferably includes a tuning circuit or comparable device so that it can effectively receive the beat frequency radiation. The converter may include a transformer to convert the energy to electrical current having a desired voltage. In addition, the converter may also include a rectifier to convert the energy to electrical current having a desired waveform.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

Fig. 1 is a plan view of the receiving structures and antenna of a first embodiment of the system of the present invention with a schematic view of the conductor and converter thereof and also showing the incident primary and emitted secondary electromagnetic radiation.
Fig. 2 is a front view of the receiving structures, antenna and waveguide of a second embodiment of the system of the present invention with a schematic view of the converter thereof and also showing the incident primary and emitted secondary electromagnetic radiation.
**Fig. 3** is a perspective view of the receiving structures, antenna and waveguide of the second embodiment shown in **Fig. 2** with a schematic view of the converter thereof and also showing the incident primary and emitted secondary electromagnetic radiation.
**Fig. 4** is a front view of the substrate and a plurality of pairs of the receiving structures and a plurality of antennas of a third embodiment of the system of the present invention with a schematic view of the conductor and converter thereof and also showing the incident primary and emitted secondary electromagnetic radiation.

**Fig. 5** is a top view of some of the components of the third embodiment of the system of the present invention showing two of the plurality of pairs of receiving structures and two of the plurality of antennas mounted on the substrate.
Fig. 6 is a diagram of a receiving structure of the system of the present invention showing an incident electromagnetic plane wave impinging on the receiving structure and illustrating the directions of the electric and magnetic field vectors thereof.

Fig. 7 is a diagram of a spherical co-ordinate system as used in the formulas utilised in the system of the present invention.


**Fig. 8** is a graph showing an imaginary rho parameter plotted against a real rho parameter illustrating the values thereof at resonance as well as values thereof at other than resonance.

**Fig. 9** is a graph showing a portion of the graphical representation shown in **Fig. 8** illustrating the real and imaginary rho values at or near a single resonance.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENT
Referring to the drawings, a first embodiment of the present invention is generally designated by the numeral 10. The system 10 includes a first and second means for receiving 12 and 14 incident electromagnetic radiation 16. The means for receiving 12 and 14 are preferably a pair of spherical structures 12 and 14 which are preferably composed of a dielectric material. Alternatively, the spheres 12 and 14 may be cubical structures or any other suitable shape. The spheres 12 and 14 may be mounted on a suitable foundation by any suitable mounting means (not shown), or spheres 12 and 14 may be suspended from a suitable foundation by any suitable suspension means (not shown). The spheres 12 and 14 are preferably composed of a dielectric material. The dielectric spheres 12 and 14 scatter and concentrate electromagnetic waves. At very sharply defined frequencies, the spheres 12 and 14 will have resonances wherein the internal energy densities can be five orders of magnitude larger than the energy density of the incident electromagnetic field driving the spheres 12 and 14. At resonance, the electromagnetic stresses, equivalent to pressures proportional to the energy density, can cause material deformation of the spheres 12 and 14 which produce a secondary electromagnetic field. The spheres 12 and 14 are preferably positioned proximal to each other, as shown in Fig.1. Although the proximity of the spheres to each other will adversely affect the resonances, the very high Q's of the isolated-sphere resonances results in such adverse affect being relatively small. However, the proximity of the spheres 12 and 14 allows the spheres to interact electromechanically which increases the magnitude of the secondary radiation emitted from them.

The electromagnetic radiation incident upon the spheres 12 and 14 which drives the spheres to resonance is preferably zero-point radiation 16. However, other types of electromagnetic radiation may also be used to drive the spheres 12 and 14, if desired.

The effect of a dielectric sphere such as 12 or 14 on an incident electromagnetic radiation such as a plane wave thereof is shown in Fig.6. The plane wave propagates in the z axis direction and is diffracted by the sphere 12 resulting in scattering thereof. This scattering is commonly known as Mie scattering. The incident radiation wave has an electric vector component which is linearly polarised in the x axis direction and a magnetic vector component which is linearly polarised in the y axis direction.

An electromagnetic wave incident upon a structure produces a forced oscillation of free and bound charges in synch with the primary electromagnetic field of the incident electromagnetic wave. The movements of the charges produce a secondary electromagnetic field both inside and outside the structure. The secondary electromagnetic radiation comprising this secondary electromagnetic field is shown in Fig.1 and designated by the numerals 18 and 20. An antenna which is shown simply as a loop antenna but may also be a dipole or any other suitable type of antenna, is also shown in Fig.1 and designated by the numeral 22. The non-linear mutual interactions of the spheres produces interference between the secondary electromagnetic radiation 18 and 20 which produces a beat frequency radiation 24 which is preferably at a much lower frequency than the primary radiation 16. It is this beat frequency radiation 24 which is desired for conversion into electrical energy because it preferably is within the frequency range of rf radiation which may be converted into electrical energy by generally conventional systems. Thus, the radiation 24 received by the antenna 22 is fed via an electrical conductor 26 to a means for converting the beat frequency radiation 24 to electrical energy. This means for converting is designated by the numeral 28 and preferably includes a tuning capacitor 30 and a transformer 32 and a rectifier (preferably a diode) 34. Instead of including the capacitor 30, transformer 32 and rectifier 34, the converter 28 may alternatively include an rf receiver of any suitable type.

The resultant field at any point is the vector sum of the primary and secondary fields. For the equations that follow, the structure receiving the incident plane wave is a sphere of radius a having a propagation constant k1 positioned in an infinite, homogeneous medium having a propagation constant k2. The incident plane wave propagates in the z axis direction and is as shown in Fig.6. The spherical co-ordinate system used for the vector spherical wave functions is shown in Fig.7.

**Note:** As this patent contains so many non-standard keyboard characters, the remainder of this document is produced using direct images of the original text.
where E is the electric field and H is the magnetic field; and

\[
\begin{align*}
\eta_{\text{in}}^{(1)} &= \pm \frac{1}{\sin \theta} \cdot \frac{j_n(k_2 R)P_n^0(\cos \theta)}{\sin \phi_2} - j_n(k_3 R) \frac{\partial P_n^0}{\partial \theta} \sin \phi_2 \\
\eta_{\text{in}}^{(3)} &= \frac{n(n+1)}{k_3 R^2} \cdot \frac{j_n(k_2 R)P_n^1(\cos \theta)}{\cos \phi_2} + \frac{1}{k_3 R} \left[ k_3 R \eta_{\text{in}}^{(3)} \right] \times \\
&\quad \frac{\partial P_n^1}{\partial \theta} \cos \phi_2 \pm \frac{1}{k_3 R \sin \theta} \left[ k_3 R \eta_{\text{in}}^{(3)} \right] P_n^1(\cos \theta) \cos \phi_2
\end{align*}
\]

The electric and magnetic fields of the incident wave transmitted into the sphere i.e., \(R<a\), can be similarly expanded:

\[
E_i = E_0 e^{i\omega t} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sum_{p=1}^{2n+1} \frac{2n+1}{n(n+1)} \left( a_{n1}^{(1)} e^{i \phi_1} - i b_{n1}^{(1)} e^{-i \phi_1} \right)
\]

\[
H_i = \frac{k_2}{\phi_1} \cdot E_0 e^{i\omega t} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sum_{p=1}^{2n+1} \frac{2n+1}{n(n+1)} \left( b_{n1}^{(1)} e^{i \phi_1} - i a_{n1}^{(1)} e^{-i \phi_1} \right)
\]

If \(j_n(k_2 R)\) is replaced by \(h_n^{(1)}(k_2 R)\) in the previous equations, the functions \(m^{(1)}\) and \(n^{(1)}\) become \(m^{(3)}\) and \(n^{(3)}\). The outgoing fields i.e., \(R>a\), are represented by:

\[
E_r = E_0 e^{i\omega t} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sum_{p=1}^{2n+1} \frac{2n+1}{n(n+1)} \left( a_{n1}^{(3)} e^{i \phi_1} - i b_{n1}^{(3)} e^{-i \phi_1} \right)
\]

\[
H_r = \frac{k_2}{\phi_1} \cdot E_0 e^{i\omega t} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sum_{p=1}^{2n+1} \frac{2n+1}{n(n+1)} \left( b_{n1}^{(3)} e^{i \phi_1} - i a_{n1}^{(3)} e^{-i \phi_1} \right)
\]

where \(H_r\) represents the resultant wave in the medium surrounding the sphere. At resonance, the values of \(p\) at resonance require that the \(a_{n1}\) and \(b_{n1}\) coefficients be infinite. In order to determine these values of \(a_{n1}\) and \(b_{n1}\), the boundary conditions at the sphere radius are needed. Since there must be continuity of the E and H values at the surface, the following equations are used:

\[
i \times (E_r + E_i) = i \times E_i \quad \text{and} \quad i \times (H_r + H_i) = i \times H_i
\]

which lead to two pairs of inhomogeneous equations:

\[
a_{n1} j_n(Np) - a_{n1} k_n^{(1)}(p) = j_n(p) \\
\mu_1 a_{n1} [Nj_n(Np)] - \mu_1 a_{n1} [\phi_n^{(1)}(p)] = \mu_1 [\phi_n^{(1)}(p)]
\]

\[
\mu_2 j_n(Np) - a_{n1} k_n^{(1)}(p) = j_n(p) \\
\mu_1 a_{n1} [Nj_n(Np)] - \mu_1 a_{n1} [\phi_n^{(1)}(p)] = \mu_1 [\phi_n^{(1)}(p)]
\]

where \(k_n = N k_2\), \(p = k_2 a\), \(k_n = N p\). Spherical Bessel functions of the first kind are denoted by \(j_n\), while those of the third kind are denoted by \(h_n^{(1)}\). The resulting equations are:
\[ a_d = \frac{\mu_0 N_p (\rho D(\rho)') - \mu_0 N_p (\rho D(\rho))'}{\mu_0 N_p (\rho D(\rho)') - \mu_0 N_p (\rho D(\rho))'} \]

and

\[ b_d = \frac{\mu_1 N_p (\rho D(\rho)') - \mu_1 N_p (\rho D(\rho))'}{\mu_1 N_p (\rho D(\rho)') - \mu_1 N_p (\rho D(\rho))'} \]

At a resonance, the denominator of either \( a_d \) or \( b_d \) will be zero. Thus, \( \rho \) values are found using the above equations that correspond to a resonant combination of angular frequency \( \omega \) and radius \( a \) for a given sphere material and given surrounding medium. In determining such values of \( \rho \), the following equations are also specifically used:

\[ \rho = \alpha k_2 = a \alpha \sqrt{\varepsilon_2 \mu_2} \quad \text{and} \quad \rho_1 = (k_1/k_2)\rho \]

where \( \rho_1 \) corresponds to the sphere material. An iterative method is preferably used to find the desired values of \( \rho \) at resonance. In calculating \( \rho \) utilizing the above equations for purposes of example, it was assumed that \( \mu_1 = \mu_2 = \mu_0 = 4\pi \times 10^{-7} \) and \( \varepsilon_1 = \varepsilon_2 = 8.85419 \times 10^{-12} \).

One major root of \( \rho \) which was found has a value of:

Real \( (\rho) = 1.6639752607619131 \)

Imaginary \( (\rho) = -0.63478670771968998 \).

These particular values are not shown in FIG. 8. However, other values of \( \rho \) found using the equations set forth herein are shown in FIG. 8. The peaks in FIG. 8 are the resonances. One of these resonances shown in FIG. 8 is shown in detail in FIG. 9. These resonance values are shown for purposes of example. Other resonances also exist which have not been determined; thus, not all possible resonance values are shown in FIGS. 8 and 9.

Calculation of these values also allows the determination of a possible am combination which would have these root values. For \( \rho \), \( \varepsilon \) (epsilon) = \( \varepsilon_0 \) and \( \mu = \mu_0 \), and

\[ \rho = \alpha a \sqrt{\varepsilon_0 \mu_0} = a \alpha / c. \]

Expressed in SI units, the speed of light \( c = 2.99792458 \times 10^{14} \) m/s. If an \( a \) value of \( 10^{-6} \) m is assumed for the examples shown herein, then:

\[ \omega = c/a = 1.9919 \times 10^{14} = 1.9044 \times 10^{14} \text{ radians/s}. \]

This is an example of the angular frequency required within the imminent EM radiation in order to create a resonant situation. Examples of other resonances were indicated, and these are shown in FIG. 8. No complex-frequency plane waves exist. Therefore, the calculations were made by considering only the real portion of the above root and setting the imaginary portion equal to zero. However, upon
doing this, the iterative calculation procedure becomes insensitive to any root in the vicinity of the root's real portion. In the iterative calculation procedure, initially a range of ρ values is input into the equations. These ρ values are in the neighborhood of the prospective root. A range of ρ values is subsequently studied to find any imaginary ρ i.e., fp (a function of ρ), peaks in that range. Next, once a peak has been chosen, the function order n giving the dominant fp is determined. This also gives a clue as to whether the peak is due to a magnetic resonance (an approaches infinity) or an electrical resonance (bn approaches infinity). A large number of Newton-Raphson iterations is preferably performed in order to converge upon a root ρ value.

FIGS. 2 and 3 show a second embodiment of the present invention generally designated by the numeral 110. Embodiment 110 is essentially the same as embodiment 10 except that the antenna is a rf cavity structure 122 which feeds the received heat frequency radiation 124 to a waveguide 126. Embodiment 110 also preferably includes two spheres 112 and 114 which receive the primary incident electromagnetic radiation 116 and emit the secondary electromagnetic radiation 118 and 120. As with the spheres 18 and 20 of embodiment 10, spheres 118 and 120 are preferably composed of a dielectric material. Embodiment 110 also includes converter 128, capacitor 130, transformer 132 and rectifier 134 which are essentially identical to the correspondingly numbered elements of embodiment 10. Therefore, a description of these components of embodiment 110 will not be repeated in order to promote brevity. In addition, the same equations and method of calculation set forth above with regard to embodiment 10 also apply to embodiment. Therefore, their description will not be repeated in order to promote brevity.

FIGS. 4 and 5 show a third embodiment of the present invention generally designated by numeral 210. Embodiment 210 is essentially identical to the first embodiment 10 except that the embodiment 210 includes a plurality of pairs 215 of receiving means (spheres) 212 and 214 mounted on a substrate 236. The spheres 212 and 214 are thus in the form of an array 238. The pairs 215 of the array 238 are preferably positioned proximal to each other in order to maximize the amount of energy extracted from a particular area or space of a given size. Since, as set forth hereinabove, the energy density of the zero point radiation increases as the frequency of the radiation increases, it is desirable that the spheres resonate at as high a bandwidth of frequencies as possible. Because the spheres 212 and 214 must be small in direct proportion to the wavelength of the high frequencies of the incident electromagnetic radiation 216 at which resonance is desirably obtained, the spheres 212 and 214 are preferably microscopic in size. Current lithographic techniques are capable of manufacturing such microscopically small spheres mounted on a suitable substrate thereby providing a suitably miniaturized system 210. A miniaturized system enhances the energy output capability of the system by
enabling it to resonate at higher frequencies at which there are correspondingly higher energy densities. Consequently, utilization of array 238 in the system 210 enhances the maximum amount of electrical energy provided by the system 210.

Lithographic techniques may be more amenable to manufacturing microscopically small receiving structures 212 and 214 which may be disc shaped, semispherical or have another shape other than as shown in FIGS. 4 and 5. Consequently, the receiving means 212 and 214 may accordingly have such alternative shapes rather than the spherical shape shown in FIGS. 4 and 5. In addition, a large number of small spheres may be manufactured by bulk chemical reactions. Packing a volume with such spheres in close proximity could enhance the output of energy.

Embodiment 210 also includes a plurality of antennas 222 positioned preferably between the spheres 212 and 214 which receive the beat frequency radiation 224 produced by the interference between the secondary radiation 218 and 220. The antennas 222 are shown as loop antennas 222 but may be any other suitable type of antennas as well.

Embodiment 210 has a plurality of electrical conductors 226 which preferably include traces mounted on the substrate 236 which occupies a finite volume. The electrical conductors 226 feed the electrical output from the antennas 222 to a suitable converter 228 which preferably includes tuning capacitor 230, transformer 232 and rectifier 234, as with embodiment 10 and 110. Except as set forth above, the components of embodiment 210 are identical to embodiment 10 so the detailed description of these components will not be repeated in order to promote brevity. In addition, the same equations and method of calculation set forth above for embodiment 10 also apply to embodiment 210. Therefore, the description of these equations and method of calculation will not be repeated in order to promote brevity.

Accordingly, there has been provided, in accordance with the invention, a system which converts high frequency zero point electromagnetic radiation into electrical energy effectively and efficiently and thus fully satisfies the objectives set forth above. It is to be understood that all terms used herein are descriptive rather than limiting. Although the invention has been specifically described with regard to the specific embodiments set forth herein, many alternative embodiments, modifications and variations will be apparent to those skilled in the art in light of the disclosure set forth herein. Accordingly, it is intended to include all such alternatives, embodiments, modifications and variations that fall within the spirit and scope of the invention as set forth in the claims hereinafter.

What is claimed is:

1. A system for converting incident electromagnetic radiation energy to electrical energy, comprising:

a first means for receiving incident primary electromagnetic radiation, said means for receiving producing
emitted secondary electromagnetic radiation at a first frequency, said first means for receiving having a first volumetric size selected to resonate at a frequency within the frequency spectrum of the incident primary electromagnetic radiation in order to produce the secondary electromagnetic radiation at the first frequency at an enhanced energy density;

a second means for receiving the incident primary electromagnetic radiation, said means for receiving producing emitted secondary electromagnetic radiation at a second frequency, the secondary radiation at the first frequency and the secondary radiation at the second frequency interfering to produce secondary radiation at a lower frequency than that of the incident primary radiation, said second means for receiving having a second volumetric size selected to resonate at a frequency within the frequency spectrum of the incident primary electromagnetic radiation in order to produce the emitted secondary electromagnetic radiation at the second frequency at an enhanced energy density;

an antenna for receiving the emitted secondary electromagnetic radiation at the lower frequency, said antenna providing an electrical output responsive to the secondary electromagnetic radiation received;

a converter electrically connected to said antenna for receiving electrical current output from said antenna and converting the electrical current output to electrical current having a desired voltage and waveform.

2. The system of claim 1 wherein:

said first means for receiving is composed of a dielectric material; and

said second means for receiving is composed of a dielectric material.

3. The system of claim 1 wherein:

said first means for receiving is spherical; and

said second means for receiving is spherical.

4. A system for converting incident zero point electromagnetic radiation energy to electrical energy, comprising:

a first means for receiving incident primary zero point electromagnetic radiation, said means for receiving producing emitted secondary electromagnetic radiation at a first frequency;

a second means for receiving the incident primary zero point electromagnetic radiation, said means for receiving producing emitted secondary electromagnetic radiation at a second frequency, the secondary radiation at the first frequency and the secondary radiation at the second frequency interfering to produce secondary radiation at a beat frequency which is lower than that of the incident primary radiation;
an antenna for receiving the emitted secondary electromagnetic radiation at the lower frequency, said antenna providing an electrical output responsive to the secondary electromagnetic radiation received;

means for transmitting the emitted secondary electromagnetic radiation at the beat frequency from said antenna, said means for transmitting connected to said antenna;

a converter connected to said means for transmitting for receiving the emitted secondary electromagnetic radiation at the beat frequency from said antenna and converting the same to electrical current having a desired voltage and waveform.

5. The system of claim 4 wherein:
said first means for receiving has a first volumetric spherical size selected to resonate in response to the incident primary electromagnetic radiation in order to produce the secondary electromagnetic radiation at the first frequency at an enhanced energy density; and
	said second means for receiving has a second volumetric spherical size selected to resonate in response to the incident primary electromagnetic radiation in order to produce the emitted secondary electromagnetic radiation at the second frequency at an enhanced energy density, said first and second volumetric sizes selected based on parameters of propagation constant of said first and second means for receiving, propagation constant of medium in which said first and second means for receiving are located and frequency of the incident primary electromagnetic radiation.

6. The system of claim 5 wherein the first and second volumetric sizes are selected by utilizing the formulas:

\[
a'_n = \frac{\mu_j\mu_0(\rho)|\mu_j|_{n-1}(\rho)^* - \mu_j\mu_0(\rho)|\nu_j|_{n-1}(\rho)^*}{\mu_j\mu_0(\rho)|\mu_j|_{n-1}(\rho)^* - \mu_j\mu_0(\rho)|\nu_j|_{n-1}(\rho)^*}
\]

\[
b'_n = \frac{\mu_j\mu_0(\rho)|\nu_j|_{n-1}(\rho)^* - \mu_j\mu_0(\rho)|\nu_j|_{n-1}(\rho)^*}{\mu_j\mu_0(\rho)|\nu_j|_{n-1}(\rho)^* - \mu_j\mu_0(\rho)|\nu_j|_{n-1}(\rho)^*}
\]

\[
\rho = a_0 \sqrt{\epsilon}\]

wherein at a resonance, the denominator of either equation for \(a'_n\) or \(b'_n\) will be approximately zero and wherein \(k_1\) = propagation constant of the means for receiving, \(k_2\) = propagation constant of medium through which the incident electromagnetic radiation propagates, \(a\) is the radius of either means for receiving, \(N = k_1/k_2\), \(\rho = k_2a\), \(k_1a = N\), \(a'_n\) = magnitude of oscillations of the electric field of the nth order, \(b'_n\) = magnitude of oscillations of the magnetic field of the nth order, \(\omega\) = angular frequency of the incident electromagnetic radiation, \(\epsilon\) is the permittivity of the material or medium and \(\mu\) is the permeability of the material or medium.
7. The system of claim 6 wherein the radius of the first means for receiving is different from the radius of the second means for receiving, difference between the radius of said first means for receiving and the radius of said second means for receiving selected so that the beat frequency resulting from the difference is a frequency which facilitates conversion of the beat frequency electromagnetic radiation to electrical energy.

8. The system of claim 4 wherein:
said first means for receiving is composed of a dielectric material; and
said second means for receiving is composed of a dielectric material.

9. The system of claim 4 wherein:
said first means for receiving is spherical; and
said second means for receiving is spherical.

10. The system of claim 4 wherein said antenna is positioned generally between said first and second means for receiving.

11. The system of claim 4 wherein said antenna is a loop antenna.

12. The system of claim 4 wherein said antenna is a generally concave shell partially enclosing said first and second means for receiving.

13. The system of claim 4 wherein said means for transmitting is a waveguide.

14. A system for for converting incident zero point electromagnetic radiation energy to electrical energy, comprising:
a substrate;
a plurality of pairs of first means for receiving incident primary zero point electromagnetic radiation and second means for receiving incident primary zero point electromagnetic radiation, said plurality of pairs of means for receiving mounted on said substrate, said first means for receiving producing emitted secondary electromagnetic radiation at a first frequency, said second means for receiving the incident primary zero point electromagnetic radiation producing emitted secondary electromagnetic radiation at a second frequency, the secondary radiation at the first frequency and the secondary radiation at the second frequency interfering to produce secondary radiation at a beat frequency which is lower than that of the incident primary radiation, said first means for receiving having a first volumetric size selected to resonate in response to the incident primary electromagnetic radiation in
order to produce the secondary electromagnetic radiation at the first frequency at an enhanced energy density, and said second means for receiving having a second volumetric size selected to resonate in response to the incident primary electromagnetic radiation in order to produce the emitted secondary electromagnetic radiation at the second frequency at an enhanced energy density, said first and second volumetric sizes selected based on parameters of propagation constant of said first and second means for receiving, propagation constant of medium in which said first and second means for receiving are located and frequency of the incident primary electromagnetic radiation, said first and second volumetric sizes being different from each other;

a plurality of antennas for receiving the emitted secondary electromagnetic radiation at the lower frequency, said antenna providing an output responsive to the secondary electromagnetic radiation received, said plurality of antennas mounted on said substrate, each of said plurality of antennas receiving the emitted secondary electromagnetic radiation of one of said pairs of first and second means for receiving;

means for transmitting the emitted secondary electromagnetic radiation at the beat frequency from said antenna, said means for transmitting connected to said plurality of antennas;

a converter connected to said means for transmitting for receiving the emitted secondary electromagnetic radiation at the beat frequency from said antenna and converting the same to electrical current having a desired voltage and waveform.
METHOD FOR THE PRODUCTION OF A FUEL GAS

Please note that this is a re-worded excerpt from this patent. It describes one of the methods which Stan used to split water into hydrogen and oxygen using very low levels of input power.

OBJECTS OF THE INVENTION

It is an object of the invention to provide a fuel cell and a process in which molecules of water are broken down into hydrogen and oxygen gases, and other formerly dissolved within the water is produced. As used herein the term "fuel cell" refers to a single unit of the invention comprising a water capacitor cell, as hereinafter explained, that produces the fuel gas in accordance with the method of the invention.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS:

Fig. 1 Illustrates a circuit useful in the process.
Fig. 2  Shows a perspective of a "water capacitor" element used in the fuel cell circuit.

**FIG 2**

Figs. 3A through 3F are illustrations depicting the theoretical bases for the phenomena encountered during operation of the invention herein.

**FIG. 3 (Parts A to F)**

Figs. 3A through 3F are illustrations depicting the theoretical bases for the phenomena encountered during operation of the invention herein.
DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENT

In brief, the invention is a method of obtaining the release of a gas mixture including hydrogen on oxygen and other dissolved gases formerly trapped in water, from water consisting of:

(a) Providing a capacitor, in which the water is included as a dielectric liquid between capacitor plates, in a resonant charging choke circuit that includes an inductance in series with the capacitor;
(b) Subjecting the capacitor to a pulsating, unipolar electric voltage field in which the polarity does not pass beyond an arbitrary ground, whereby the water molecules within the capacitor are subjected to a charge of the same polarity and the water molecules are distended by their subjection to electrical polar forces;
(c) Further subjecting in said capacitor to said pulsating electric field to achieve a pulse frequency such that the pulsating electric field induces a resonance within the water molecule;
(d) Continuing the application of the pulsating frequency to the capacitor cell after resonance occurs so that the energy level within the molecule is increased in cascading incremental steps in proportion to the number of pulses;
(e) Maintaining the charge of said capacitor during the application of the pulsing field, whereby the co-valent electrical bonding of the hydrogen and oxygen atoms within said molecules is destabilised such that the force of the electrical field applied, as the force is effective within the molecule, exceeds the bonding force of the molecule, and hydrogen and oxygen atoms are liberated from the molecule as elemental gases; and
(f) Collecting said hydrogen and oxygen gases, and any other gases that were formerly dissolved within the water, and discharging the collected gases as a fuel gas mixture.

The process follows the sequence of steps shown in the following Table 1 in which water molecules are subjected to increasing electrical forces. In an ambient state, randomly orientated water molecules are aligned with respect to a molecule polar orientation.

They are next, themselves polarised and "elongated" by the application of an electrical potential to the extent that covalent bonding of the water molecule is so weakened that the atoms dissociate and the molecule breaks down into hydrogen and oxygen elemental components.

Engineering design parameters based on known theoretical principles of electrical circuits determine the incremental levels of electrical and wave energy input required to produce resonance in the system whereby the fuel gas comprised of a mixture of hydrogen, oxygen, and other gases such as air were formerly dissolved within the water, is produced.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Process Steps</th>
<th>The sequence of the relative state of the water molecule and/or hydrogen/oxygen/other atoms:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A. (ambient state) random</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Alignment of polar fields</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Polarisiation of molecule</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. Molecular elongation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E. Atom liberation by breakdown of covalent bond</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. Release of gases</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the process, the point of optimum gas release is reached at a circuit resonance. Water in the fuel cell is subjected to a pulsating, polar electric field produced by the electrical circuit whereby the water molecules are distended by reason of their subjection to electrical polar forces of the capacitor plates. The polar pulsating frequency applied is such that the pulsating electric field induces a resonance in the molecule. A cascade effect occurs and the overall energy level of specific water molecules is increased in cascading, incremental steps. The hydrogen and oxygen atomic gases, and other gas components formerly entrapped as dissolved gases in water, are released when the resonant energy exceeds the covalent bonding force of the water molecule. A preferred construction material for the capacitor plates is T304-grade stainless steel which is non-chemical reactive with water, hydrogen, or oxygen. An electrically conductive material which is inert in the fluid environment is a desirable material of construction for the electrical field plates of the "water capacitor" employed in the circuit.

Once triggered, the gas output is controllable by the attenuation of operational parameters. Thus, once the frequency of resonance is identified, by varying the applied pulse voltage to the water fuel cell assembly, gas output is varied. By varying the pulse shape and/or amplitude or pulse train sequence of the initial pulsing wave source, final gas output is varied. Attenuation of the voltage field frequency in the form of OFF and ON pulses likewise affects output.
The overall apparatus thus includes an electrical circuit in which a water capacitor having a known dielectric property is an element. The fuel gases are obtained from the water by the disassociation of the water molecule. The water molecules are split into component atomic elements (hydrogen and oxygen gases) by a voltage stimulation process called the electrical polarisation process which also releases dissolved gases entrapped in the water.

From the outline of physical phenomena associated with the process described in Table 1, the theoretical basis of the invention considers the respective states of molecules and gases and ions derived from liquid water. Before voltage stimulation, water molecules are randomly dispersed throughout water in a container. When a unipolar voltage pulse train such as shown in Figs.3B through 3F is applied to positive and negative capacitor plates, an increasing voltage potential is induced in the molecules in a linear, step like charging effect. The electrical field of the particles within a volume of water including the electrical field plates increases from a low energy state to a high energy state successively is a step manner following each pulse-train as illustrated figuratively in the depictions of Figs.3A through 3F. The increasing voltage potential is always positive in direct relationship to negative ground potential during each pulse. The voltage polarity on the plates which create the voltage fields remains constant although the voltage charge increases. Positive and negative voltage "zones" are thus formed simultaneously in the electrical field of the capacitor plates.

In the first stage of the process described in Table 1, because the water molecule naturally exhibits opposite electrical fields in a relatively polar configuration (the two hydrogen atoms are positively electrically charged relative to the negative electrically charged oxygen atom), the voltage pulse causes initially randomly oriented water molecules in the liquid state to spin and orient themselves with reference to positive and negative poles of the voltage fields applied. The positive electrically charged hydrogen atoms of said water molecule are attracted to a negative voltage field; while, at the same time, the negative electrically charged oxygen atoms of the same water molecule are attracted to a positive voltage field. Even a slight potential difference applied to inert, conductive plates of a containment chamber which forms a capacitor will initiate polar atomic orientation within the water molecule based on polarity differences.

When the potential difference applied causes the orientated water molecules to align themselves between the conductive plates, pulsing causes the voltage field intensity to be increased in accordance with Fig.3B. As further molecule alignment occurs, molecular movement is hindered. Because the positively charged hydrogen atoms of said aligned molecules are attracted in a direction opposite to the negatively charged oxygen atoms, a polar charge alignment or distribution occurs within the molecules between said voltage zones, as shown in Fig.3B. And as the energy level of the atoms subjected to resonant pulsing increases, the stationary water molecules become elongated as shown in Fig.3C and Fig.3D. Electrically charged nuclei and electrons are attracted toward opposite electrically charged equilibrium of the water molecule.

As the water molecule is further exposed to an increasing potential difference resulting from the step charging of the capacitor, the electrical force of attraction of the atoms within the molecule to the capacitor plates of the chamber also increase in strength. As a result, the covalent bonding between which form the molecule is weakened --- and ultimately terminated. The negatively charged electron is attracted toward the positively charged hydrogen atoms, while at the same time, the negatively charged oxygen atoms repel electrons.

In a more specific explanation of the "sub-atomic" action the occurs in the water fuel cell, it is known that natural water is a liquid which has a dielectric constant of 78.54 at 20 degrees C. and 1 atmosphere pressure. [Handbook of Chemistry & Physics, 68th ed., CRC Press(Boca Raton, Florida (1987-88)), Section E-50. H2O(water)].

When a volume of water is isolated and electrically conductive plates, that are chemically inert in water and are separated by a distance, are immersed in water, a capacitor is formed, having a capacitance determined by the surface area of the plates, the distance of their separation and the dielectric constant of water.

When water molecules are exposed to voltage at a restricted current, water takes on an electrical charge. By the laws of electrical attraction, molecules align according to positive and negative polarity fields of the molecule and the alignment field. The plates of the capacitor constitute such as alignment field when a voltage is applied.

When a charge is applied to a capacitor, the electrical charge of the capacitor equals the applied voltage charge; in a water capacitor, the dielectric property of water resists the flow of amps in the circuit, and the water molecule itself, because it has polarity fields formed by the relationship of hydrogen and oxygen in the covalent bond, and intrinsic dielectric property, becomes part of the electrical circuit, analogous to a "microcapacitor" within the capacitor defined by the plates.
In the Example of a fuel cell circuit of Fig.1, a water capacitor is included. The step-up coil is formed on a conventional toroidal core formed of a compressed ferromagnetic powered material that will not itself become permanently magnetised, such as the trademarked "Ferramic 06# "Permag" powder as described in Siemens Ferrites Catalogue, CG-2000-002-121, (Cleveland, Ohio) No. F626-1205". The core is 1.50 inch in diameter and 0.25 inch in thickness. A primary coil of 200 turns of 24 gauge copper wire is provided and coil of 600 turns of 36 gauge wire comprises the secondary winding.

In the circuit of Fig.1, the diode is a 1N1198 diode which acts as a blocking diode and an electric switch that allows voltage flow in one direction only. Thus, the capacitor is never subjected to a pulse of reverse polarity.

The primary coil of the toroid is subject to a 50% duty cycle pulse. The toroidal pulsing coil provides a voltage step-up from the pulse generator in excess of five times, although the relative amount of step-up is determined by preselected criteria for a particular application. As the stepped-up pulse enters first inductor (formed from 100 turns of 24 gauge wire 1 inch in diameter), an electromagnetic field is formed around the inductor, voltage is switched off when the pulse ends, and the field collapses and produces another pulse of the same polarity i.e., another positive pulse is formed where the 50% duty cycle was terminated. Thus, a double pulse frequency is produced; however, in pulse train of unipolar pulses, there is a brief time when pulses are not present.

By being so subjected to electrical pulses in the circuit of Fig.1, water confined in the volume that includes the capacitor plates takes on an electrical charge that is increased by a step charging phenomenon occurring in the water capacitor. Voltage continually increases (to about 1000 volts and more) and the water molecules starts to elongate.

Because a voltage potential applied to a capacitor can perform work, the higher the voltage the higher the voltage potential, the more work is performed by a given capacitor. In an optimum capacitor that is wholly non-conductive, zero (0) current flow will occur across the capacitor. Thus, in view of an idealised capacitor circuit, the object of the water capacitor circuit is to prevent electron flow through the circuit, i.e. such as occurs by electron flow or leakage through a resistive element that produces heat. Electrical leakage in the water will occur, however, because of some residual conductivity and impurities or ions that may be otherwise present in the water. Thus, the water capacitor is preferably chemically inert. An electrolyte is not added to the water.

In the isolated water bath, the water molecule takes on charge, and the charge increases. The object of the process is to switch off the covalent bonding of the water molecule and interrupt the subatomic force, i.e. the electrical force or electromagnetic force, that binds the hydrogen and oxygen atoms to form a molecule so that the hydrogen and oxygen separate.

Because an electron will only occupy a certain electron shell (shells are well known) the voltage applied to the capacitor affects the electrical forces inherent in the covalent bond. As a result of the charge applied by the plates, the applied force becomes greater than the force of the covalent bonds between the atom of the water molecule;
and the water molecule becomes elongated. When this happens, the time share ratio of the electron shells is modified.

In the process, electrons are extracted from the water bath; electrons are not consumed nor are electrons introduced into the water bath by the circuit as electrons are conventionally introduced in as electrolysis process. There may nevertheless occur a leakage current through the water. Those hydrogen atoms missing electrons become neutralised; atoms are liberated from the water. The charged atoms and electrons are attracted to the opposite polarity voltage zones created between the capacitor plates. The electrons formerly shared by atoms in the water covalent bond are reallocated such that neutral elemental gases are liberated.

In the process, the electrical resonance may be reached at all levels of voltage potential. The overall circuit is characterised as a "resonant charging choke" circuit which is an inductor in series with a capacitor that produces a resonant circuit. [SAMS Modern Dictionary of Electronics, Rudolf Garff, copyright 1984, Howard W. Sams & Co. (Indianapolis, Ind.), page 859.] Such a resonant charging choke is on each side of the capacitor. In the circuit, the diode acts as a switch that allows the magnetic field produced in the inductor to collapse, thereby doubling the pulse frequency and preventing the capacitor from discharging. In this manner a continuous voltage is produced across the capacitor plates in the water bath; and the capacitor does not discharge. The water molecules are thus subjected to a continuously charged field until the breakdown of the covalent bond occurs.

As noted initially, the capacitance depends on the dielectric properties of the water and the size and separation of the conductive elements forming the water capacitor.

**EXAMPLE 1**

In an example of the circuit of Fig.1 (in which other circuit element specifications are provided above), two concentric cylinders 4 inches long formed the water capacitor of the fuel cell in the volume of water. The outside cylinder was 0.75 inch in outside diameter; the inner cylinder was 0.5 inch in outside diameter. Spacing from the outside of the inner cylinder to the inner surface of the outside cylinder was 0.0625 inch. Resonance in the circuit was achieved at a 26 volt applied pulse to the primary coil of the toroid at 0 KHz (suspected mis-typing for 10KHz), and the water molecules disassociated into elemental hydrogen and oxygen and the gas released from the fuel cell comprised a mixture of hydrogen, oxygen from the water molecule, and gases formerly dissolved in the water such as the atmospheric gases or oxygen, nitrogen, and argon.

In achieving resonance in any circuit, as the pulse frequency is adjusted, the flow of amps is minimised and the voltage is maximised to a peak. Calculation of the resonance frequency of an overall circuit is determined by known means; different cavities have a different frequency of resonance dependant on parameters of the water dielectric, plate size, configuration and distance, circuit inductors, and the like. Control of the production of fuel gas is determined by variation of the period of time between a train of pulses, pulse amplitude and capacitor plate size and configuration, with corresponding value adjustments to other circuit components.

The wiper arm on the second conductor tunes the circuit and accommodates to contaminants in water so that the charge is always applied to the capacitor. The voltage applied determines the rate of breakdown of the molecule into its atomic components. As water in the cell is consumed, it is replaced by any appropriate means or control system.

Variations of the process and apparatus may be evident to those skilled in the art.

**CLAIMS:**

1. A method of obtaining the release of a gas mixture including hydrogen and oxygen and other dissolved gases formerly entrapped in water, from water, consisting of:
   (a) Providing a capacitor in which water is included as a dielectric between capacitor plates, in a resonant charging choke circuit that includes an inductance in series with the capacitor;
   (b) Subjecting the capacitor to a pulsating, unipolar electric charging voltage in which the polarity does not pass beyond an arbitrary ground, whereby the water molecules within the capacitor plates;
   (c) Further subjecting the water in said capacitor to a pulsating electric field resulting from the subjection of the capacitor to the charging voltage such that the pulsating electric field induces a resonance within the water molecules;
   (d) Continuing the application of the pulsating charging voltage to the capacitor after the resonance occurs so that the energy level within the molecules is increased in cascading incremental steps in proportion to the number of pulses;
   (e) Maintaining the charge of said capacitor during the application of the pulsating charge voltage, whereby the covalent electrical bonding of the hydrogen and oxygen atoms within said molecules is destabilised, such
that the force of the electrical field applied to the molecules exceeds the bonding force within the molecules, and the hydrogen and oxygen atoms are liberated from the molecules as elemental gases.

2. The method of claim 1 including the further steps of collecting said liberated gases and any other gases that were formerly dissolved within the water and discharging said collected gases as a fuel gas mixture.
HYDROGEN GAS INJECTOR SYSTEM FOR INTERNAL COMBUSTION ENGINES

Please note that this is a re-worded excerpt from this patent. It describes one method for using hydrogen and oxygen gases to fuel a standard vehicle engine.

ABSTRACT
System and apparatus for the controlled intermixing of a volatile hydrogen gas with oxygen and other non-combustible gasses in a combustion system. In a preferred arrangement the source of volatile gas is a hydrogen source, and the non-combustible gasses are the exhaust gasses of the combustion system in a closed loop arrangement. Specific structure for the controlled mixing of the gasses, the fuel flow control, and safety are disclosed.

CROSS REFERENCES AND BACKGROUND
There is disclosed in my co-pending U.S. patent application Serial No. 802,807 filed Sept. 16, 1981 for a Hydrogen-Generator, a generating system converting water into hydrogen and oxygen gasses. In that system and method the hydrogen atoms are dissociated from a water molecule by the application of a non-regulated, non-filtered, low-power, direct current voltage electrical potential applied to two non-oxidising similar metal plates having water passing between them. The sub-atomic action is enhanced by pulsing this DC voltage. The apparatus comprises structural configurations in alternative embodiments for segregating the generated hydrogen gas from the oxygen gas.

In my co-pending patent application filed May 5, 1981, U.S. Serial No. 262,744 now abandoned for Hydrogen-Airdation Processor, non-volatile and non-combustible gasses are controlled in a mixing stage with a volatile gas. The hydrogen airdation processor system utilises a rotational mechanical gas displacement system to transfer, meter, mix, and pressurise the various gasses. In the gas transformation process, ambient air is passed through an open flame gas-burner system to eliminate gasses and other substances present. After that, the non-combustible gas-mixture is cooled, filtered to remove impurities, and mechanically mixed with a pre-determined amount of hydrogen gas. This results in a new synthetic gas.

This synthetic gas-formation stage also measures the volume and determines the proper gas-mixing ratio for establishing the desired burn-rate of hydrogen gas. The rotational mechanical gas displacement system in that process determines the volume of synthetic gas to be produced.

The above-noted hydrogen airdation processor, of my co-pending application, is a multi-stage system suited to special applications. Whereas the hydrogen generator system of my other mentioned co-pending application does disclose a very simple and unique hydrogen generator.

In my co-pending patent application Serial No. 315,945, filed Oct. 18, 1981 there is disclosed a combustion system incorporating a mechanical drive system. In one instance, this is designed to drive a piston in an automobile device. There is shown a hydrogen generator for developing hydrogen gas, and perhaps other non-volatile gasses such as oxygen and nitrogen. The hydrogen gas with the attendant non-volatile gasses is fed via a line to a controlled air intake system. The combined hydrogen, non-volatile gasses, and the air, after inter-mixing, are fed to a combustion chamber where they are ignited. The exhaust gasses of the combustion chamber are returned in a closed loop arrangement to the mixing chamber to be used again as the non-combustible gas component. Particular applications and structural embodiments of the system are disclosed.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION
The system of the present invention in its most preferred embodiment is for a combustion system utilising hydrogen gas; particularly to drive the pistons in an car engine. The system utilises a hydrogen generator for developing hydrogen gas. The hydrogen gas and other non-volatile gasses are then fed, along with oxygen, to a mixing chamber. The mixture is controlled in such a way as to lower the temperature of the combustion to bring it in line with that of the currently existing commercial fuels. The hydrogen gas feed line to the combustion chamber includes a fine linear control gas flow valve. An air intake is the source of oxygen and it also includes a variable
valve. The exhaust gasses from the combustion chamber are utilised in a controlled manner as the non-combustible gasses.

The hydrogen generator is improved by the inclusion of a holding tank which provides a source of start-up fuel. Also, the hydrogen gas generator includes a pressure-controlled safety switch on the combustion chamber which disconnects the input power if the gas pressure rises above the required level. The simplified structure includes a series of one-way valves, safety valves, and quenching apparatus. The result is an apparatus which comprises the complete assembly for converting a standard car engine from petrol (or other fuels) to use a hydrogen/gas mixture.

OBJECTS

It is accordingly a principal object of the present invention to provide a combustion system of gasses combined from a source of hydrogen and non-combustible gasses.

Another object of the invention is to provide such a combustion system that intermixes the hydrogen and non-combustible gasses in a controlled manner and thereby control the combustion temperature.

A further object of the invention is to provide such a combustion system that controls the fuel flow to the combustion chamber in a system and apparatus particularly adapted to hydrogen gas.

Still other objects and features of the present invention will become apparent from the following detailed description when taken in conjunction with the drawings in which:

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

Fig.1 is a mechanical schematic illustration partly in block form of the present invention in its most preferred embodiment.
Fig. 2 is a block schematic illustration of the preferred embodiment of the hydrogen injector system shown in Fig. 1.

Fig. 3 is the fine linear fuel flow control shown in Fig. 1.

Fig. 4 is cross-sectional illustration of the complete fuel injector system in an car utilising the concepts of the present invention.
Fig. 5 is a schematic drawing in a top view of the fuel injector system utilised in the preferred embodiment. 

Fig. 6 is a cross-sectional side view of the fuel injector system in the present invention.

Fig. 7 is a side view of the fuel mixing chamber.

Fig. 8 is a top view of the air intake valve to fuel mixing chamber.
Fig. 9 is a comparison of the burning velocity of hydrogen with respect to other fuels.

**FIG 9**

**Appendix A**

Adjustable burn rate of hydrogen gas via the injector method

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Burning velocity in m/s at equivalence</th>
<th>Hydrogen</th>
<th>Alcohol</th>
<th>Petrol</th>
<th>LPG</th>
<th>Propane</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>360</td>
<td>340</td>
<td>320</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Types of land vehicle fuels

**DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF INVENTION TAKEN WITH DRAWINGS:**

Referring to Fig. 1 the complete overall gas mixing and fuel flow system is illustrated together for utilisation in a combustion engine, particularly an engine in a car. With specific reference to Fig. 1, the hydrogen source 10 is the hydrogen generator disclosed and described in my co-pending application, supra. The container 10 is an enclosure for a water bath 2. Immersed in the water 2 is an array of plates 3 as further described in my co-pending application, supra. Applied to plates 3 is a source of direct current potential via electrical inlet 27. The upper portion 7 of the container 10 is a hydrogen storage area maintaining a predetermined amount of pressure. In this way, there will be an immediate flow of hydrogen gas at start-up.
To replenish the expended water, the generator provides a continuous water source. Thereafter, the generator is operable as described in the aforesaid patent application. The safety valve is designed to rupture should there be an excessive build-up of gas. Switch is a gas-pressure switch included to maintain a predetermined gas pressure level about a regulated low-volume.

The generated hydrogen gas is fed from the one-way check valve via pipe to a gas-mixing chamber, where the hydrogen gas is mixed with non-combustible gasses via pipe from a source described later.

If the one-way valve failed, there could be a return spark which could ignite the hydrogen gas in the storage area of the hydrogen generator. To prevent this, the quenching assembly has been included to prevent just such an ignition.

With particular reference to Fig.2, the hydrogen gas (via pipe) and non-combustible gasses (via pipe), are fed to a carburettor (air-mixture) system also having an air intake for ambient air.

The hydrogen gas is fed via line through nozzle in a spray in to the trap area of the mixing chamber. Nozzle has an opening smaller than the plate openings in the quenching assembly, thereby preventing flash-back in the event of sparking. The non-volatile gasses are injected into mixing chamber trap area via nozzle. Quenching assembly is operable much in the same manner as quenching assembly.

In the preferred arrangement, the ambient air is the source of oxygen necessary for the combustion of the hydrogen gas. Further, as disclosed in the aforesaid co-pending application, the non-volatile gasses are in fact, the exhaust gasses passed back via a closed loop system. It is to be understood that the oxygen and/or the non-combustible gasses might also be provided from an independent source.

With continued reference to Fig.2 the gas trap area is a predetermined size. As hydrogen is lighter than air, the hydrogen will rise and become trapped in area. Area is large enough to contain enough hydrogen gas to allow instant ignition upon the subsequent start-up of the combustion engine.

It will be noted that the hydrogen gas is injected in the uppermost region of the trap area. Hydrogen rises at a much greater rate than oxygen or the non-combustible gasses; perhaps three times or greater. Therefore, if the hydrogen gas entered the trap area (mixing area) at its lowermost region the hydrogen gas would rise so rapidly that the air could not mix with the oxygen. With the trap area shown in Fig.2, the hydrogen is forced downwards into the air intake. That is, the hydrogen gas is forced downwards into the upwardly forced air and this causes adequate mixing of the gasses.

The ratio of the ambient air (oxygen) and the non-combustible gas via line is a controlled ratio which is tailored to the particular engine. Once the proper combustion rate has been determined by the adjustment of valve for varying the amount of the non-combustible gas and the adjustment of valve for varying the amount of the ambient air, the ratio is maintained thereafter.

In a system where the non-combustible gasses are the exhaust gasses of the engine itself, passed back through a closed loop-arrangement, and where the air intake is controlled by the engine, the flow velocity and hence the air/non-combustible mixture, is maintained by the acceleration of the engine.
The mixture of air with non-combustible gasses becomes the carrier for the hydrogen gas. That is, the hydrogen gas is mixed with the air/non-combustible gas mixture. By varying the amount of hydrogen gas added to the air/non-combustible mixture, the engine speed is controlled.

Reference is made to Fig.3 which shows in a side view cross-section, the fine linear fuel flow control 53. The hydrogen gas 4 enters chamber 43 via gas inlet 41. The hydrogen gas passes from chamber 43 to chamber 47 via port or opening 42. The amount of gas passing form chamber 43 to chamber 47 is dictated by the setting of the port opening 42.

The port opening is controlled by inserting the linearly tapered pin 73 into it. The blunt end of pin 73 is fixed to rod 71. Rod 71 is passed, (via supporting O-ring 75), through opening 81 in housing 30, to the manual adjustment mechanism 83.

Spring 49 retains the rod 71 in a fixed position relative to pin 73 and opening 42. When mechanism 83 is operated, pin 73 moves back from the opening 42. As pin 73 is tapered, this backward movement increases the free area of opening 42, thereby increasing the amount of gas passing from chamber 43 to chamber 47.

The stops 67 and 69 maintain spring 49 in its stable position. The nuts 63 and 67 on threaded rod 61 are used to set the minimum open area of opening 42 by the correct positioning of pin 73. This minimum opening setting, controls the idle speed of the engine, so pin 73 is locked in its correct position by nuts 63 and 67. This adjustment controls the minimum rate of gas flow from chamber 43 to chamber 47 which will allow continuous operation of the combustion engine.

Referring now to Fig.8 which illustrates the air adjustment control for manipulating the amount of air passing into the mixing chamber 20. The closure 21 mounted on plate 18 has an opening 17 on end 11. A plate-control 42 is mounted so as to slide over opening 17. The position of this plate, relative to opening 17, is controlled by the position of the control rod 19 which passes through grommet 12 to control line 13. Release valve 24 is designed to rupture should any malfunction occur which causes the combustion of the gasses in mixing chamber 20.

With reference now to Fig.4, if hydrogen gas 4 were to accumulate in mixing chamber 20 and reach an excessive pressure, the escape tube 36 which is connected to port 34 (located on the car bonnet 32), permits the excess hydrogen gas to escape safely to the atmosphere. In the event of a malfunction which causes the combustion of the gasses in mixing chamber 20, the pressure relief valve 33 will rupture, expelling the hydrogen gas without combustion.

In the constructed arrangement of Fig.1, there is illustrated a gas control system which may be fitted to an existing car’s internal combustion engine without changing or modifying the car’s design parameters or characteristics. The flow of the volatile hydrogen gas is, of course, critical; therefore, there is incorporated in line 5 a gas-flow valve 53, and this is used to adjust the hydrogen flow. This gas-flow valve is shown in detail in Fig.3.
The intake air 14 may be in a carburettor arrangement with an intake adjustment 55 which adjusts the plate 42 opening. This is shown more fully in Fig.8. To maintain constant pressure in hydrogen gas storage 7 in the on-off operation of the engine, the gas flow control valve is responsive to the electrical shut-off control 33. The constant pressure permits an abundant supply of gas on start-up and during certain periods of running time in re-supply.

The switch 33 is in turn responsive to the vacuum control switch 60. During running of the engine vacuum will be built up which in turn leaves switch 33 open by contact with vacuum switch 60 through lead 60a. When the engine is not running the vacuum will decrease to zero and through switch 60 will cause electrical switch 33 to shut off cutting off the flow of hydrogen gas to the control valve 53.

As low-voltage direct current is applied to safety valve 28, solenoid 29 is activated. The solenoid applies a control voltage to the hydrogen generator exciter 3 via terminal 27 through pressure switch 26. As the electrical power activates solenoid 29, hydrogen gas is caused to pass through flow adjustment valve 16 and then outlet pipe 5 for utilisation. The pressure differential hydrogen gas output to gas mixing chamber 20 is for example 30 lbs. to 15 lbs. Once hydrogen generator 10 reaches an optimum gas pressure level, pressure switch 26 shuts off the electrical power to the hydrogen excitors. If the chamber pressure exceeds a predetermined level, the safety release valve 28 is activated disconnecting the electrical current and thereby shutting down the entire system for safety inspection.

With particular reference now to Fig.6 which illustrates the fuel injector system in a side cross-sectional view and to Fig.5 the top view. The structural apparatus incorporated in the preferred embodiment comprises housing 90 which has air intakes 14a and 14e. The air passes through filter 91 around the components 14b and 14c and then to intake 14d of the mixing chamber 20. The hydrogen enters via line 5 via quenching plates 37 and into the mixing chamber 20. The non-volatile gasses pass via line 9 to the quenching plates 39 and into the mixing chamber 20.
Fig. 7 illustrates the mechanical arrangement of the components which make up the overall structure of mixing chamber 20 (shown independently in the other figures).

Returning to Fig. 1 there is illustrated the non-volatile gas line 9 passing through mixture pump 91 by engine pulley 93. Valve 95 controls the rate of flow. Also driven by pulley 93 is pump 96 having line 85 connected to an oil reservoir 92 and valve 87 and finally to mixing chamber 20. As a practical matter, such as in a non-oil lubricated engine, lubricating fluid such as oil 81 is sprayed in the chamber 20, via oil supply line 85 for lubrication.

There have been several publications in the past year or so, delving into the properties of Hydrogen gas, its potential use, generating systems, and safety. One such publication is "Selected Properties of Hydrogen" (Engineering Design Data) issued February 1981 by the National Bureau of Standards.

These publications are primarily concerned with the elaborate and costly processes for generating hydrogen. Equally so, they are concerned with the very limited use of hydrogen gas because of its extremely high burning velocities. This in turn reflects the danger in the practical use of hydrogen.

With reference to the graph of the Appendix A, it is seen that the burning velocities of alcohol, propane, methane, petrol, Liquid Petroleum Gas, and diesel oil are in the range of minimum 35 to maximum 45. Further, the graph illustrates that the burning velocity of hydrogen gas is in the range of 265 minimum to 325 maximum. In simple terms, the burning velocity of hydrogen is of the order of 7.5 times the burning velocity of ordinary commercial fuels.

Because of the unusually high burning velocity of hydrogen gas, it has been ruled out as a substitute fuel, by these prior investigators. Further, even if an engine could be designed to accommodate such high burning velocities, the danger of explosion would eliminate any thoughts of commercial use.

The present invention, as above described, has resolved the above-noted criteria for the use of hydrogen gas in a standard commercial engine. Primarily, the cost in the generation of hydrogen gas, as noted in the aforementioned co-pending patent applications, is minimal. Water with no chemicals or metals is used. Also, as noted in the aforementioned co-pending patent applications, the reduction in the hydrogen gas burn velocity has
been achieved. These co-pending applications not only teach the reduction in velocity, but teach the control of the velocity of the hydrogen gas.

In the preferred embodiment, practical apparatus adapting the hydrogen generator to a combustion engine is described. The apparatus linearly controls the hydrogen gas flow to a mixing chamber mixing with a controlled amount of non-combustible gas oxygen, hence, the reduction in the hydrogen gas velocity. The reduction in the hydrogen gas velocity makes the use of hydrogen as safe as other fuels.

In more practical terms the ordinary internal combustion engine of any size or type of fuel, is retrofitted to be operable with only water as a fuel source. Hydrogen gas is generated from the water without the use of chemicals or metals and at a very low voltage. The burning velocity of the hydrogen gas has been reduced to that of conventional fuels. Finally, every component or step in the process has one or more safety valves or features thereby making the hydrogen gas system safer than that of conventional cars.

In the above description the terms ‘non-volatile’ and ‘non-combustible’ were used. It is to be understood they are intended to be the same; that is, simply, gas which will not burn.

Again, the term ‘storage’ has been used, primarily with respect to the hydrogen storage area 7. It is not intended that the term ‘storage’ be taken literally - in fact, it is not storage, but a temporary holding area. With respect to area 7, this area retains a sufficient amount of hydrogen for immediate start-up.

Other terms, features, apparatus, and the such have been described with reference to a preferred embodiment. It is to be understood modifications and alternatives can be had without departing from the spirit and scope of the invention.
HYDROGEN GAS BURNER

Please note that this is a re-worded excerpt from this patent. It describes how to burn the hydrogen and oxygen gas mix produced by electrolysis of water. Normally, the flame produced is too hot for practical use other than cutting metal or welding. This patent shows a method of reducing the flame temperature to levels suitable for general use in boilers, stoves, heaters, etc.

ABSTRACT
A hydrogen gas burner for the mixture of hydrogen gas with ambient air and non-combustible gasses. The mixture of gasses when ignited provides a flame of extremely high, but controlled intensity and temperature.

The structure comprises a housing and a hydrogen gas inlet directed to a combustion chamber positioned within the housing. Air intake ports are provided for adding ambient air to the combustion chamber for ignition of the hydrogen gas by an ignitor therein. At the other end of the housing there is positioned adjacent to the outlet of the burner (flame) a barrier/heating element. The heating element uniformly disperses the flame and in turn absorbs the heat. The opposite side to the flame, the heating element uniformly disperses the extremely hot air. A non-combustible gas trap adjacent to the heating element captures a small portion of the non-combustible gas (burned air). A return line from the trap returns the captured non-combustible gas in a controlled ratio to the burning chamber for mixture with the hydrogen gas and the ambient air.

CROSS REFERENCE
The hydrogen/oxygen generator utilised in the present invention is that disclosed and claimed in my co-pending patent application, Serial. No.: 302,807, filed: Sept. 16, 1981, for: HYDROGEN GENERATOR SYSTEM. In that process for separating hydrogen and oxygen atoms from water having impurities, the water is passed between two plates of similar non-oxidising metal. No electrolyte is added to the water. The one plate has placed thereon a positive potential and the other a negative potential from a very low amperage direct-current power source. The sub-atomic action of the direct current voltage on the non-electrolytic water causes the hydrogen and oxygen atoms to be separated--and similarly other gasses entrapped in the water such as nitrogen. The contaminants in the water that are not released are forced to disassociate themselves and may be collected or utilised and disposed of in a known manner.

The direct current acts as a static force on the water molecules; whereas the non-regulated rippling direct current acts as a dynamic force. Pulsating the direct current further enhances the release of the hydrogen and oxygen atoms from the water molecules.

In my co-pending patent application, Serial. No. 262,744, filed: May 11, 1981, for: HYDROGEN AERATION PROCESSOR, there is disclosed and claimed the utilisation of the hydrogen/oxygen gas generator. In that system, the burn rate of the hydrogen gas is controlled by the controlled addition of non-combustible gasses to the mixture of hydrogen and oxygen gasses.

SUMMARY OF INVENTION
The present invention is for a hydrogen gas burner and comprises a combustion chamber for the mixture of hydrogen gas, ambient air, and non-combustible gasses. The mixture of gasses is ignited and burns at a retarded velocity rate and temperature from that of hydrogen gas, but at a higher temperature rate than other gasses.

The extremely narrow hydrogen gas mixture flame of very high temperature is restricted from the utilisation means by a heat absorbing barrier. The flame strikes the barrier which in turn disperses the flame and absorbs the heat therefrom and thereafter radiates the heat as extremely hot air into the utilisation means.

Positioned on the opposite side of the heat radiator/barrier is a hot air trap. A small portion of the radiated heat is captured and returned to the combustion chamber as non-combustible gasses. Valve means in the return line regulates the return of the non-combustible gas in a controlled amount to control the mixture.
The present invention is principally intended for use with the hydrogen generator of my co-pending patent application, supra; but it is not to be so limited and may be utilised with any other source of hydrogen gas.

OBJECTS

It is accordingly a principal object of the present application to provide a hydrogen gas burner that has a temperature controlled flame and a heat radiator/barrier.

Another object of the present invention is to provide a hydrogen gas burner that is capable of utilising the heat from a confined high temperature flame.

Another object of the present invention is to provide a hydrogen gas burner that is retarded from that of hydrogen gas, but above that of other gasses.

Another object of the present invention is to provide a hydrogen gas burner that utilises the exhaust air as non-combustible gas for mixture with the hydrogen gas.

Another object of the present invention is to provide a hydrogen gas burner that is simple but rugged and most importantly safe for all intended purposes.

Other objects and features of the present invention will become apparent from the following detailed description when taken in conjunction with the drawings in which:
BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

Fig. 1 is an overall cross-sectional view of the present invention in its most preferred embodiment.

Fig. 2 is a graphical illustration of the burning of various standard fuels with that of hydrogen velocities.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF INVENTION
With particular reference Fig.1 there is illustrated in a schematic cross-section the principals of the present invention. The structure of the preferred embodiment comprises a housing 10, having an igniter 20 extending through the wall 11 thereof. A combustion chamber 60 positioned within the housing 10 has a first open end 62. A hydrogen gas 72 inlet 30 directs hydrogen gas via port 37 from a source 35 to the inlet 62 of the combustion chamber 68. Also directed to the same inlet 62, and assisted by flanges 64 and 66, is ambient air 70 entering through ports 13 in the housing 10.

Adjacent the opposite end of the combustion chamber 60 the gas mixture 75 is ignited by the ignitor 20 to produce flame 77. The velocity of the flame 77 causes it to strike and penetrate the barrier/radiator 50. The barrier 50 is of a material, such as metallic mesh or ceramic material, to disperse therein the flame and in turn become saturated with heat. The flame 77 is of a size sufficient to be dispersed throughout the barrier 50, but yet, not penetrate through the barrier 50.

Radiated from the surface 52 of the barrier 50 is superheated air 56 (gasses) to be passed on to a utilization device. Adjacent to surface 52 of barrier/radiator 50 is a hot air trap 40 with closed loop line 45 returning non-combustible gas 44 to the combustion chamber 60. Control valve 42 is intermediate the line 45.

In operation of the preferred embodiment hydrogen gas, 72, emitted from the nozzle 37 is directed to the combustion chamber 60. The flanges 64 and 66 on the open end of housing 63 of the combustion chamber 60 enlarges the open end of 62. In the enlargement ambient air from the opening 13 in the housing 10 is also directed to the combustion chamber 60.

The ambient air and hydrogen traverses the opening 43 and further mixes with the non-combustible gas 44 from the closed loop line 45 with the hot air trap 40. The mixture of hydrogen gas 72, ambient air 70, and non-combustible gas 44, is ignited by the ignitor 20 having electrical electrodes 21 and 23. Upon ignition flame 77 ensues. The mixture is controlled with each of three gasses. That is, the line 32 from the hydrogen source 35 has a valve 38 therein for controlling the amount of hydrogen 72 emitted from the nozzle 37. The opening 13 has a
plate adjustment 15 for controlling the amount of ambient air 60 directed to the combustion chamber 60, and the closed-loop line has valve 42, as aforesaid, for controlling the amount of non-combustible gasses in the mixture.

It can be appreciated that the temperature of the flame 77 and the velocity of the flame 77 is a function of the percentage of the various gasses in the mixture. In a practical embodiment, the flame 70 temperature and velocity was substantially retarded from that of a hydrogen flame per se; but yet, much greater than the temperature and velocity of the flame from the gasses utilised in a conventional heating system.

To maintain a sufficient pressure for combustion of the hydrogen gass mixture with a minimum of pressure (for safety) and to limit blow-out, the nozzle 37 opening 39 is extremely small. As a consequence, if the hydrogen gas were burned directly from the nozzle 37, the flame would be finite in diameter. Further, its velocity would be so great it is questionable whether a flame could be sustained. The mixing of ambient air and non-combustible gas does enlarge the flame size and reduce its velocity. However, to maintain a flame higher in temperature and velocity than the conventional gasses, the size and temperature of the flame is controlled by the mixture mentioned earlier.

Therefore, to utilise the flame 77 in a present day utilisation means, the flame is barred by the barrier 50. The barrier 50 is of a material that can absorb safely the intense flame 77 and thereafter radiate heat from its entire surface 52. The material 54 can be a ceramic, metallic mesh or other heat absorbing material known in the art. The radiated heat 56 is directed to the utilisation means.

As stated earlier, the mixture of gasses which are burned include non-combustible gasses. As indicated in the above-noted co-pending patent applications, an excellent source of non-combustible gasses is exhaust gasses. In this embodiment, the trap 50 entraps the hot air 74 and returns the same, through valve 42, to the combustion chamber 60 as non-combustible gas.

With reference to Fig.2 there is illustrated the burning velocity of various standard fuels. It can be seen the common type of fuel burns at a velocity substantially less than hydrogen gas. The ratio of hydrogen with non-combustible oxygen gasses is varied to obtain optimum burning velocity and temperature for the particular utilisation. Once this is attained, the ratio, under normal conditions, will not be altered. Other uses having different fuel burn temperature and velocity will be adjusted in ratio of hydrogen/oxygen to non-combustible gasses in the same manner as exemplified above.

Further, perhaps due to the hydrogen gas velocity, there will occur unburned gas at the flame 77 output. The barrier 50, because of its material makeup will retard the movement and trap the unburned hydrogen gas. As the superheated air 77 is dispersed within the material 54, the unburned hydrogen gas is ignited and burns therein. In this way the barrier 50 performs somewhat in the nature of an after-burner.
Please note that this is a re-worded excerpt from this patent. It describes in considerable detail, one of Stan’s methods for splitting water into hydrogen and oxygen gasses and the subsequent methods for using those gasses.

ABSTRACT
Water molecules are broken down into hydrogen and oxygen gas atoms in a capacitive cell by a polarisation and resonance process dependent on the dielectric properties of water and water molecules. The gas atoms are then ionised or otherwise energised and thermally combusted to release a degree of energy greater than that of combustion of the gas in air.

OBJECTS OF THE INVENTION
A first object of the invention is to provide a fuel cell and a process in which molecules of water are broken down into hydrogen and oxygen gasses, and a fuel gas mixture comprised of hydrogen, oxygen and other gasses formerly dissolved in the water, is produced. A further object of the invention is to realise significant energy-yield from a fuel gas derived from water molecules. Molecules of water are broken down into hydrogen and oxygen gasses. Electrically charged hydrogen and oxygen ions of opposite electrical polarity are activated by electromagnetic wave energy and exposed to a high temperature thermal zone. Significant amounts of thermal energy with explosive force beyond the gas burning stage are released.

An explosive thermal energy under a controlled state is produced. The process and apparatus provide a heat energy source useful for power generation, aircraft rocket engines or space stations.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS
Figs. 1A through 1F are illustrations depicting the theoretical bases for phenomena encountered during operation of the fuel gas production stage of the invention.
Fig. 2 illustrates a circuit which is useful in the fuel gas generation process.
Fig. 3 shows a perspective of a “water capacitor” element used in the fuel cell circuit.

Fig. 4 illustrates a staged arrangement of apparatus useful in the process, beginning with a water inlet and culminating in the production of thermal explosive energy.
Fig. 5A shows a cross-section of a circular gas resonant cavity used in the final stage assembly of Fig. 4.
Fig.5B shows an alternative final stage injection system useful in the apparatus of Fig.4.

Fig.5C shows an optical thermal lens assembly for use with either final stage of Fig.5A or Fig.5B.
Figs. 6A, 6B, 6C and 6D are illustrations depicting various theoretical bases for atomic phenomena expected to occur during operation of this invention.
Fig. 7 is an electrical schematic of the voltage source for the gas resonant cavity.

Figs. 8A and 8B respectively, show (A) an electron extractor grid used in the injector assemblies of Fig. 5A and Fig. 5B, and (B) the electronic control circuit for the extractor grid.
Fig. 9 shows an alternative electrical circuit useful in providing a pulsating waveform to the apparatus.

**TABLE 1: PROCESS STEPS LEADING TO IGNITION**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Relative State of Water Molecule and/or Hydrogen/Oxygen/Other Atoms</th>
<th>Stage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Random (ambient state) alignment of polar fields, polarisation of molecules. Molecular elongation. Atom liberation by breakdown of covalent bond</td>
<td>1st Stage: Water to Gas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release of gasses, Liquid to gas ionisation, Electrical charging effect, Particle Impact</td>
<td>2nd Stage: Gas Ionisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electromagnetic Wave, Laser or photon injection, Electron extraction, Atomic destabilisation</td>
<td>3rd Stage: Priming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thermal Ignition</td>
<td>Final Stage: Ignition</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENT**
A preferred construction material for the capacitor plates is stainless steel T-304 which does not react chemically with water molecules. The capacitor has a known dielectric property. The fuel gases are obtained from the water by the disassociation of the water molecules. The water molecules are split into component atomic elements by a voltage stimulation process called the 'electrical Polarisation process' which also releases dissolved gases trapped in the water.

A fuel gas is produced by a hydrogen fracturing process which follows the sequence of steps shown in Table 1. Beginning with water molecules, the molecule is subjected to successively increasing electrical wave energy and thermal forces. In the successions of forces, randomly orientated water molecules are aligned with respect to molecular polar orientation and themselves polarised and “elongated” by the application of an electric potential to the extent that the co-valent bonding of the water molecules is so weakened that the atoms disassociate and the molecule breaks down into hydrogen and oxygen elemental components. Next, the released atomic gasses are ionised and electrically charged in a vessel while being subjected to a further energy source which promotes inter-particle impact in the gas at an increased overall energy level. Finally, the atomic particles in the excited gas, having achieved successively higher energy levels, are subjected to a laser or electromagnetic wave energy source which produces atomic destabilisation and the final release of thermal explosive energy.

In brief, in the first stage, a gas mixture including hydrogen, oxygen and other gasses formerly dissolved in the water, is obtained from water. In general, the method used in the first stage consists of:

(A) Providing a capacitor, in which the water is included as a dielectric liquid between capacitor plates, in a resonant charging choke circuit, which includes an inductor in series with the capacitor.

(B) Subjecting the capacitor to a pulsating, unipolar electric voltage field in which the polarity does not pass beyond an arbitrary ground, whereby the water molecules within the capacitor are subjected to a charge of the same polarity, and the water molecules are distended by the electrical polar forces.

(C) Further subjecting the water in the capacitor to the pulsating electric field to achieve a pulse frequency which induces a resonance within the water molecule.

(D) Continuing the application of the pulsing frequency to the capacitor cell after resonance occurs so that the energy level within the molecule is increased in cascading incremental steps in proportion to the number of pulses.

(E) Maintaining the charge of the capacitor during the application of the pulsating field, whereby the co-valent electrical bonding of the hydrogen and oxygen atoms within the water molecules is destabilised to such a degree that the force of the electrical field within the molecule exceeds the bonding force of the molecule, causing the molecule to break apart into the elemental gasses of hydrogen and oxygen.

(F) Collecting the hydrogen and oxygen gasses, along with any other gasses formerly dissolved in the water, and discharging the collected gasses as a fuel gas mixture.

The water molecules are subjected to increasing electrical forces. In an ambient state, randomly orientated water molecules are aligned with respect to a molecular polar orientation. Next, they themselves are polarised and “elongated” by the application of an electrical potential to the extent that co-valent bonding of the water molecules is so weakened that the atoms disassociate and the molecule breaks down into hydrogen and oxygen elemental components. In this process, the point of optimum gas release is reached when the circuit is at resonant frequency. Water in the cell is subjected to a pulsating, polar electric field produced by the electrical circuit, whereby the water molecules are distended by the electrical force on the plates of the capacitor. The polar pulsating frequency applied is such that the pulsating electric field induces a resonance in the molecules. A cascade effect occurs, and the overall energy of specific water molecules is increased in cascading incremental steps. The hydrogen and oxygen are released when the resonant energy exceeds the co-valent bonding force of the water molecules.

A preferred construction material for the capacitor plates is stainless steel T-304 which does not react chemically with water, hydrogen or oxygen. An electrically conductive material which is inert in the fluid environment, is a desirable material of construction for the electric field plates of the “water capacitor” employed in the circuit.

Once triggered, the gas output is controllable by the attenuation of operational parameters. Thus, once the frequency of resonance is identified, by varying the applied pulse voltage to the water fuel cell assembly, gas output is varied. By varying the pulse shape, pulse amplitude or pulse train sequence, the gas output can be varied. Attenuation of the voltage field’s mark/space ratio of OFF/ON periods also affects the rate of gas production.

The overall apparatus thus includes and electrical circuit in which a water capacitor is an element. The water capacitor has a known dielectric property. The fuel gasses are obtained from the water by the disassociation of the water molecules. The water molecules are split into component atomic elements by a voltage stimulation process called the ‘electrical Polarisation process’ which also releases dissolved gasses trapped in the water.

From the outline of physical phenomena associated with the first stage of the process described in Table 1, the theoretical basis of the invention considers the respective states of molecules, gasses and ions derived from liquid water. Before voltage stimulation, water molecules are randomly dispersed throughout water in a container.
When a unipolar voltage pulse train such as that shown in Figs.1B through 1F is applied to positive and negative capacitor plates, and increasing voltage potential is induced in the molecules in a linear, step-like charging effect. The electrical field of the particles within a volume of water including the electrical field plates, increases from a low energy state to a high energy state in a step manner following each pulse train as illustrated figuratively in Figs.1A through 1F. The increasing voltage potential is always positive in direct relationship to negative ground potential during each pulse. The voltage polarity on the plates which create the voltage fields remains constant although the voltage charge increases. Positive and negative voltage “zones” are thus formed simultaneously in the electrical field of the capacitor plates.

In the first stage of the process described in Table 1, because the water molecule naturally exhibits opposite electrical fields in a relatively polar configuration (the two hydrogen atoms have a positive charge while the oxygen atom has a negative charge), the voltage pulse causes the water molecules which were initially orientated in random directions, to spin and align themselves with the electrical field applied to the cell. The positively charged hydrogen atoms are attracted to the negative field while the negatively charged oxygen atoms, of the same water molecule, are attracted to the positive voltage field. Even a slight potential difference between the plates of a containment chamber capacitor will initiate the alignment of each water molecule within the cell.

When the voltage applied to the plates causes the water molecules to align themselves, then the pulsing causes the voltage field intensity to be increased in accordance with Fig.1B. As further molecular alignment occurs, molecular movement is hindered. Because the positively charged hydrogen atoms of the aligned molecules are attracted in a direction opposite to the negatively charged oxygen atoms, a polar charge alignment or distribution occurs within the molecules between the voltage zones as shown in Fig.1B, and as the energy level of the atoms, subjected to resonant pulsing, increases, the stationary water molecules become elongated as shown in Figs.1C and 1D. Electrically charged nuceli and electrons are attracted towards opposite electrically charged voltage zones - disrupting the mass and charge equilibrium of the water molecule.

As the water molecule is further exposed to an increasing potential difference resulting from the step charging of the capacitor, the electrical force of attraction of the atoms within the molecule to the capacitor plates of the chamber also increases in strength. As a result, the co-valent bonding between the atoms of the molecule is weakened and ultimately, terminated. The negatively charged electron is attracted toward the positively charged hydrogen atoms, while at the same time, the negatively charged oxygen atoms repel electrons.

In a more specific explanation of the “sub-atomic action which occurs in the water cell, it is known that natural water is a liquid which has a dielectric constant of 78.54 at 20 degrees Centigrade and 1 atmosphere of pressure [Handbook of Chemistry and Physics, Section E-50].

When a volume of water is isolated and electrically conductive plates that are chemically inert in water and which are separated by a distance, are immersed in the water, a capacitor is formed, having a capacitance determined by the surface area of the plates, the distance of their separation and the dielectric constant of the water.

When water molecules are exposed to voltage at a restricted current, water takes on an electrical charge. By the laws of electrical attraction, molecules align according to positive and negative polarity fields of the molecule and the alignment field. The plates of a capacitor constitute such an alignment field when a voltage is applied across them.

When a charge is applied to a capacitor, the electrical charge of the capacitor equals the applied voltage charge. In a water capacitor, the dielectric property of water resists the flow of current in the circuit, and the water molecule itself, because it has polarity fields formed by the relationship of hydrogen and oxygen in the co-valent bond, and an intrinsic dielectric property, becomes part of the electrical circuit, analogous to a “microcapacitor” within the capacitor defined by the plates.

In the Example of a fuel cell circuit of Fig.2, a water capacitor is included. The step-up coil is formed on a conventional toroidal core formed of a compressed ferromagnetic powered material that will not itself become permanently magnetised, such as the trademarked “Ferramic 06# ‘Permag” powder as described in Siemens Ferrites Catalogue, CG-2000-002-121, (Cleveland, Ohio) No. F626-1205. The core is 1.50 inch in diameter and 0.25 inch in thickness. A primary coil of 200 turns of 24 AWG gauge copper wire is provided and a coil of 600 turns of 36 AWG gauge wire comprises the secondary winding. Other primary/secondary coil winding ratios may be conveniently determined.

An alternate coil arrangement using a conventional M27 iron transformer core is shown in Fig.9. The coil wrap is always in one direction only.

In the circuit of Fig.2, the diode is a 1N1198 diode which acts as a blocking diode and an electric switch which allows current flow in one direction only. Thus, the capacitor is never subjected to a pulse of reverse polarity.
The primary coil of the torroid is subject to a 50% duty-cycle pulse. The toroidal pulsing coil provides a voltage step-up from the pulse generator in excess of five times, although the relative amount of step-up is determined by pre-selected criteria for a particular application. As the stepped-up pulse enters the first inductor (formed of 100 turns of 24 gauge wire, 1 inch in diameter), an electromagnetic field is formed around the inductor. Voltage is switched off when the pulse ends, and the field collapses and produces another pulse of the same polarity; i.e. another positive pulse is formed where the 50% duty-cycle was terminated. Thus, a double pulse frequency is produced; however, in a pulse train of unipolar pulses, there is a brief time when pulses are not present.

By being so subjected to electrical pulses in the circuit of Fig. 2, the water between the capacitor plates takes on an electrical charge which is increased by a step-charging phenomenon occurring in the water capacitor. Voltage continually increases (to about 1000 volts and more) and the water molecules start to elongate.

The pulse train is then switched off; the voltage across the water capacitor drops to the amount of charge that the water molecules have taken on, i.e. voltage is maintained across the charged capacitor. The pulse train is then applied again.

Because a voltage potential applied to a capacitor can perform work, the higher the voltage potential, the more work is performed by a given capacitor. In an optimum capacitor which is wholly non-conductive, zero current flow will occur across the capacitor. Thus, in view of an idealised capacitor circuit, the object of the water capacitor circuit is to prevent electron flow through the circuit, i.e. such as occurs by electron flow or leakage through a resistive element that produces heat. Electrical leakage in water will occur, however, because of some residual conductivity and impurities, or ions that may otherwise be present in the water. Thus, the water capacitor is preferably chemically inert. An electrolyte is not added to the water.

In the isolated water bath, the water molecule takes on charge, and the charge increases. The object of the process is to switch off the co-valent bonding of the water molecule and interrupt the sub-atomic force that binds the hydrogen and oxygen atoms together to form a molecule, thus causing the hydrogen and oxygen to separate.

Because an electron will only occupy a certain electron shell, the voltage applied to the capacitor affects the electrical forces inherent in the co-valent bond. As a result of the charge applied by the plates, the applied force becomes greater than the force of the co-valent bonds between the atoms of the water molecule, and the water molecule becomes elongated. When this happens, the time share ratio of the electrons between the atoms and the electron shells is modified.

In the process, electrons are extracted from the water bath; electrons are not consumed nor are electrons introduced into the water bath by the circuit, as electrons would be during conventional electrolysis. Nevertheless, a leakage current through the water may occur. Those hydrogen atoms missing electrons become neutralised and atoms are liberated from the water. The charged atoms and electrons are attracted to opposite polarity voltage zones created between the capacitor plates. The electrons formerly shared by atoms in the water co-valent bond are re-allocated so that neutral elemental gasses are liberated.

In the process, the electrical resonance may be reached at all levels of voltage potential. The overall circuit is characterised as a “resonant charging choke” circuit which is an inductor in series with a capacitor [SAMS Modern Dictionary of Electronics, 1984 p. 859]. Such a resonant charging choke is on each side of the capacitor. In the circuit, the diode acts as a switch which allows the magnetic field produced in the inductor to collapse, thereby doubling the pulse frequency and preventing the capacitor from discharging. In this manner, a continuous voltage is produced across the capacitor plates in the water bath and the capacitor does not discharge. The water molecules are thus subjected to a continuously charged field until the breakdown of the co-valent bond occurs.

As noted initially, the capacitance depends on the dielectric properties of the water and the size and separation of the conductive elements forming the water capacitor.

Example 1

In an example of the circuit of Fig. 2 (in which other circuit element specifications are provided above), two concentric cylinders 4 inches long, formed the water capacitor of the fuel cell in the volume of water. The outside cylinder was 0.75 in outside diameter; the inner cylinder was 0.5 inch in outside diameter. Spacing between the inside cylinder and the outside cylinder was 0.0625 inch (1.59 mm). Resonance in the circuit was achieved at a 26 volt pulse applied to the primary coil of the torroid at 10kHz and a gas mixture of hydrogen, oxygen and dissolved gasses was given off. The additional gasses included nitrogen and argon from air dissolved in the water.
In achieving resonance in any circuit, as the pulse frequency is adjusted, the current flow is minimised and the voltage on the capacitor plates is maximised. Calculation of the resonant frequency of an overall circuit is determined by known means; different cavities have a different resonant frequency. The gas production rate is varied by the period of time between trains of pulses, pulse amplitude, capacitor plate size and plate separation.

The wiper arm on the second inductor tunes the circuit and allows for contaminants in the water so that the charge is always applied to the capacitor. The voltage applied, determines the rate of breakdown of the molecule into its atomic components. As water in the cell is consumed, it is replaced by any appropriate means or control system.

Thus, in the first stage, which is of itself independently useful, a fuel gas mixture is produced having, in general, the components of elemental hydrogen and oxygen and some additional atmospheric gasses. The fuel gas is itself combustible in a conventional manner.

After the first stage, the gas atoms become elongated during electron removal as the atoms are ionised. Laser or light wave energy of a predetermined frequency is injected into a containment vessel in a gas ionisation process. The light energy absorbed by voltage-stimulated gas nuclei, causes destabilisation of gas ions still further. The absorbed laser energy causes the gas nuclei to increase in energy state, which in turn, causes electron deflection to a higher orbital shell.

The electrically charged and laser-primed combustible gas ions from a gas resonant cavity, may be directed into a an optical thermal lens assembly for triggering. Before entry into the optimal thermal lens, electrons are stripped from the ions and the atom is destabilised. The destabilised gas ions which are electrically and mass unbalanced atoms having highly energised nuclei, are pressurised during spark ignition. The unbalanced, destabilised atomic components interact thermally; the energised and unstable hydrogen gas nuclei collide with highly energised and unstable oxygen gas nuclei, causing and producing thermal explosive energy beyond the gas burning stage. The ambient air gas components in the initial mixture aid the thermal explosive process under a controlled state.

In the process, the point of optimum energy yield is reached when the electron-deficient oxygen atoms (having less than a normal number of electrons) lock on to an capture a hydrogen atom electron, prior to, or during, thermal combustion of the hydrogen/oxygen mixture. Atomic decay results in the release of energy.

After the first stage, the gas mixture is subjected to a pulsating, polar electric field which causes the orbits of the electrons of the gas atoms to become distended. The pulsating electrical field is applied at a frequency which resonates with the electrons of the gas atoms. This results in the energy levels of the electrons increasing in cascading incremental steps.

Next, the gas atoms are ionised and subjected to electromagnetic wave energy of the correct frequency to induce further electron resonance in the ion, whereby the energy level of the electron is successively increased. Electrons are extracted from the resonating ions while they are in this increased energy state, and this destabilises the nuclear electron configuration of the ions. This gas mixture of destabilised ions is thermally ignited.

In the apparatus shown in Fig.4, water is introduced at inlet 1 into a first stage water fracturing module 2, such as the water fuel cell described above, in which water molecules are broken down into hydrogen, oxygen and released gasses which were trapped in the water. These gasses may be introduced to a successive stage 3 or other number of like resonant cavities, which are arranged in either a series or parallel combined array. The successive energisation of the gas atoms, provides a cascading effect, successively increasing the voltage stimulation level of the released gasses as they pass sequentially through cavities 2, 3, etc. In a final stage, and injector system 4, of a configuration of the type shown in Fig.5A or Fig.5B, receives energised atomic and gas particles where the particles are subjected to further energy input, electrical excitation and thermal stimulation, which produces thermal explosive energy 5, which may be directed through a lens assembly of the type shown in Fig.5C to provide a controlled thermal energy output.

A single cell, or battery of cells such as shown in Fig.3, provides a fuel gas source for the stages following the first stage. The fuel gas is activated by electromagnetic waves, and electrically charged gas ions of hydrogen and oxygen (of opposite polarity) are expelled from the cascaded cells 2, 3, etc. shown in Fig.4. The circuit of Fig.9 may be utilised as a source of ionising energy for the gasses. The effect of cascading, successively increases the voltage stimulation level of the released gasses, which are then directed to the final injector assembly 4. In the injector assembly, gas ions are stimulated to an even greater energy level. The gasses are continually exposed to a pulsating laser or other electromagnetic wave energy source together with a high-intensity oscillating voltage field which occurs within the cell between electrodes or conductive plates of opposite electrical polarity. A preferred construction material for the plates is a stainless steel T-304 which is non-chemically reactive with water, hydrogen or oxygen. An electrically conductive material inserted in the fluid environment, is a desirable
material of construction for the electrical field producing plates, through which field, the stream of activated gas particles passes.

Gas ions of opposite electrical charges reach and maintain a critical energy level state. The gas ions have opposite electrical charges and are subjected to oscillating voltage fields of opposite polarity. They are also subjected to a pulsating electromagnetic wave energy source. Immediately after reaching critical energy, the excited gas ions are exposed to a high temperature thermal zone in the injection cell 4, which causes the excited gas ions to undergo gas combustion. The gas ignition triggers atomic decay and releases thermal energy 5, with explosive force.

Once triggered, the explosive thermal energy output is controllable by the attenuation of operational parameters. With reference to Fig.6A, for example, once the frequency of resonance is identified, by varying applied pulse voltage to the initial water fuel cell assemblies 2, 3, the ultimate explosive energy output is likewise varied. By varying the pulse shape and/or amplitude, or pulse train sequence of the electromagnetic wave energy source, final output is varied. Attenuation of the voltage field frequency in the form of OFF and ON pulses, likewise affects the output of the staged apparatus. Each control mechanism can be used separately, grouped in sections, or systematically arranged in a sequential manner.

A complete system in accordance with the present application thus includes:

1. A water fuel cell for providing a first fuel gas mixture consisting of at least a portion of hydrogen and oxygen gas.
2. An electrical circuit of the type shown in Fig.7 providing a pulsating, polar electric field to the gas mixture as illustrated in Fig.6A, whereby electron orbits of the gas atoms are distended by being subjected to electrical polar forces, changing from the state shown conceptually in Fig.6B to that of Fig.6C, at a frequency such that the pulsating electric field induces a resonance with respect to electrons of the gas atoms. The energy level of the resonant electrons is thereby increased in cascading incremental steps.
3. A further electric field to ionise the gas atoms and
4. An electromagnetic wave energy source for subjecting the ionised gas atoms to wave energy of a predetermined frequency to induce further electron resonance in the ions, whereby the energy level of the electron is successively increased, as shown in Fig.6D.
5. An electron sink, which may be in the form of the grid element shown in Fig.8A, extracts further electrons from the resonating ions while such ions are in an increased energy state and destabilises the nuclear electron configuration of the ions. The “extraction” of electrons by the sink is co-ordinated with the pulsating electrical field of the resonant cavity produced by the circuit of Fig.7, by means of
6. An interconnected synchronisation circuit, such as shown in Fig.8B.
7. A nozzle, 10 in Fig.5B, or thermal lens assembly, Fig.5C, provides the means to direct the destabilised ions, and in which they are finally thermally ignited.

As previously noted, to reach and trigger the ultimate atomic decay of the fuel cell gasses at the final stage, sequential steps are taken. First, water molecules are slit into hydrogen and oxygen gasses by a voltage stimulation process. In the injector assembly, a laser produced coherent light wave is absorbed by the gasses. At this point, as shown in Fig.6B, the individual atoms are subjected to an electric field to begin an ionisation process. The laser energy is absorbed and causes gas atoms to lose electrons and form positively charged gas ions. The energised, positively charged hydrogen atoms now accept electrons liberated from the heavier gasses and attract other negatively charged gas ions as conceptually illustrated in Fig.6C. Positively and negatively charged gas ions are re-exposed to further pulsating energy sources to maintain random distribution of ionised gas particles.

The gas ions within the wave energy chamber are subjected to an oscillating high-intensity voltage field in a chamber 11 in Fig.5A and Fig.5B formed within electrodes 12 and 13 in Fig.5A and Fig.5B of opposite electrical polarity, to produce a resonant cavity. The gas ions reach a critical energy state at the point of resonance.

At this point, within the chamber, additional electrons are attracted to the positive electrode; while positively charged ions or atomic nuclei are attracted to the negative electrode. The positive and negative attraction forces are co-ordinated and act on the gas ions simultaneously; the attraction forces are non-reversible. The gas ions experience atomic component deflection approaching the point of electron separation. At this point electrons are extracted from the chamber by a grid system such as shown in Fig.5A. The extracted electrons are consumed and prevented from re-entering the chamber by a circuit such as shown in Fig.8B. The elongated gas ions are subjected to a thermal heat zone to cause gas ignition, releasing thermal energy with explosive force. During ionic gas combustion, highly energised and stimulated atoms and atom nuclei collide and explode during thermal excitation. The hydrogen fracturing process occurring, sustains and maintains a thermal zone, at a temperature in excess of normal oxygen/hydrogen combustion temperature, that is, in excess of 2,500 degrees Fahrenheit. To cause and maintain the atomic elongation depicted in Fig.6C before gas ignition, a voltage intensifier circuit such
as shown in Fig.7 is utilised as a current-restricting voltage source to provide the excitation voltage applied to the resonant cavity. At the same time, the interconnected electron extractor circuit shown in Fig.8B, prevents the reintroduction of electrons back into the system. Depending on calculated design parameters, a predetermined voltage and frequency range may be designed for any particular application or physical configuration of the apparatus.

In the operation of the assembly, the pulse train source for the gas resonant cavity shown at 2 and 3 in Fig.4 may be derived from a circuit such as shown in Figs. 2, 7 or 9, and such cavity circuits may be in sequence to provide a cascading energy input. It is necessary in the final electron extraction, that the frequency with which electrons are removed from the system be sequenced and synchronised with the pulsing of the gas resonant cavity. In the circuit of Fig.8B, the co-ordination of synchronisation of the circuit with the circuit of Fig.7 may be achieved by interconnecting point “A” of the gate circuit of Fig.8B to point “A” of the pulsing circuit of Fig.7.

The circuit shown in Fig.9 enhances the voltage potential across the resonant charging choke coils during pulsing operations and restricts current flow by allowing an external electromagnetic pulsing field F, derived from the primary coil A being energised to traverse the coil windings D and E being energised by the incoming pulse train Ha xxx Hn, through switching diode G. The external pulse field F, and the incoming pulse train Ha xxx Hn, are sequentially the same, allowing resonant action to occur, restricting current flow while allowing voltage intensity to increase to stimulated the electrical polarisation process, the gas ionisation process and the electron extraction process. The voltage intensifier circuit of Fig.9 prevents electrons from entering into those processes.

Together, the hydrogen injector assembly 4, and the resonant cavity 2 and 3, form a gas injector fuel cell which is compact, low in weight and whose design can be varied. For example, the hydrogen injector system is suited for cars and jet engines. Industrial applications require larger systems. For rocket engine applications, the hydrogen gas injector system is positioned at the top of each resonant cavity arranged in a parallel cluster array. If resonant cavities are sequentially combined in a parallel/series array, the hydrogen injection assembly is positioned after the exits of the resonant cavities have been combined.

From the outline of the physical phenomena associated with the process described in Table 1, the theoretical basis of the invention considers the respective states of molecules, gasses and ions derived from liquid water. Before voltage stimulation, water molecules are randomly dispersed throughout water within a container. When a unipolar voltage pulse train such as shown in Fig.6A (53a xxx 53n) is applied, an increasing voltage potential is induced in the molecules, gasses and/or ions in a linear, step-like charging effect. The electrical field of the particles within a chamber including the electrical field plates increases from a low-energy state (A) to a high-energy state (J) in a step manner, following each pulse train as illustrated in Fig.6A. The increasing voltage potential is always positive in direct relationship to negative ground potential during each pulse. The voltage polarity on the plates which create the voltage fields, remains constant. Positive and negative voltage “zones” are thus formed simultaneously.

In the first stage of the process described in Table 1, because the water molecule naturally exhibits opposite electric fields in a relatively polar configuration (the two hydrogen atoms are positively electrically charged relative to the negatively electrically charged oxygen atom), the voltage pulse causes initially randomly orientated water molecules in the liquid state to spin and orientate themselves with reference to the voltage fields applied.

When the potential difference applied causes the oriented water molecules to align themselves between the conductive plates, pulsing causes the voltage field intensity to be increased in accordance with Fig.6A. As further molecular alignment occurs, molecular movement is hindered. Because the positively charged hydrogen atoms are attracted in the opposite direction to the negatively charged oxygen atoms, a polar charge alignment or distribution occurs as shown in Fig.6B. As the energy level of the atoms subjected to resonant pulsing increases, the stationary water molecules become elongated as shown in Fig.6C. Electrically charged nuclci and electrons are attracted towards opposite voltage zones, disrupting the mass equilibrium of the water molecule.

In the first stage, as the water molecule is further exposed to a potential difference, the electrical force of attraction of the atoms to the chamber electrodes also increases in intensity. As a result, the co-valent bonding between the atoms is weakened and ultimately, terminated. The negatively charged electron is attracted towards the positively charged hydrogen atoms, while at the same time, the negatively charged oxygen atoms repel electrons.

Once the applied resonant energy caused by pulsation of the electrical field in the cavities reaches a threshold level, the disassociated water molecules, now in the form of liberated hydrogen, oxygen and ambient air gasses, begin to ionise and lose or gain electrons during the final stage in the injector assembly. Atom destabilisation occurs and the electrical and mass equilibrium of the atoms is disrupted. Again, the positive field produced within the chamber or cavity that the encompasses the gas stream, attracts negatively charged ions while the positively charged ions are attracted to the negative field. Atom stabilisation does not occur because the pulsing voltage
applied is repetitive without polarity change. A potential of approximately several thousand volts, triggers the ionisation state.

As the ionised particles accumulate within the chamber, the electrical charging effect is again an incremental stepping effect that produces an accumulative increased potential, while, at the same time, resonance occurs. The components of the atom begin to “vibrate” at a resonant frequency such that an atomic instability is created. As shown in Fig.6D, a high energy level is achieved, which then collapses, resulting in the release of thermal explosive energy. Particle impact occurs when liberated ions in a gas are subjected to further voltage. A longitudinal cross-section of a gas resonant cavity is shown in Fig.5A. To promote gas ionisation, electromagnetic wave energy such as a laser or photon energy source of a predetermined wavelength and pulse intensity is directed to, and absorbed by, the ions of the gas. In the device of Fig.5A, semiconductor optical lasers 20a - 20p, 20xxx surround the gas flow path. In the device of Fig.5B, photo energy 20 is injected into a separate absorption chamber 21. The incremental stimulation of nuclei to a more highly energised state by electromagnetic wave energy causes electron deflection to a higher orbital state. The pulse rate as well as the intensity of the electromagnetic wave source is varied to match the absorption rate of ionised particles to produce the stepped incremental increase in energy. A single laser coupled by means of fibre optic light guides is an alternative to the plurality of lasers shown in Fig.5B. Continued exposure of the gas ions to different forms of wave energy during voltage stimulation, maintain individual atoms in a destabilised state and prevents atomic stabilisation.

The highly energised gas ions are thermally ignited when they pass from injector 4 and enter into and pass through a nozzle 10 in Fig.5B, or an optical thermal lens assembly as shown in Fig.5C. In Fig.5C, the combustible gas ions are expelled through and beyond a quenching circuit 30, and reflected by lenses 31 and 32, back and forth through a thermal heat zone 33, prior to atomic breakdown and then exiting through a final port 34. A quenching circuit is a restricted orifice through which the particle stream passes, such that flashback does not occur. The deflection shield or lens 31, superheats beyond 3000 degrees Fahrenheit and the combustible gas ions passing through the exit ports are regulated to allow a gas pressure to form inside the thermal zone. The energy yield is controlled by varying the applied voltage or pulse-train since the thermal-lens assembly is self-adjusting to the flow rate of the ionised and primed gasses. The combustible ion gas mixture is composed of hydrogen, oxygen and ambient air gasses. The hydrogen gas provides the thermal explosive force, the oxygen atoms aid the gas thermal ignition, and the ambient air gasses retard the gas thermal ignition process to a controllable state.

As the combustible gas mixture is exposed to a voltage pulse train, the stepped increasing voltage potential causes the moving gas atoms to become ionised (losing or gaining electrons) and changes the electrical and mass equilibrium of the atoms. Gasses which do not undergo the gas ionisation process may accept the liberated electrons (electron entrapment) when exposed to light or photon stimulation. The electron extractor grid circuit shown in Fig.8A and Fig.8B, is applied to the assembly of Fig.5A or Fig.5B, and restricts electron replacement. The extractor grid 56, is applied adjacent to electric field producing components 44 and 45, within the resonant cavity. The gas ions incrementally reach a critical state which occurs after a high energy resonant state. At this point, the atoms no longer tolerate the missing electrons, the unbalanced electrical field and the energy stored in the nucleus. Immediate collapse of the system occurs and energy is released as the atoms decay into thermal explosive energy.

The repetitive application of a voltage pulse train (A through J of Fig.6A) incrementally achieves the critical state of the gas ions. As the gas atoms or ions (1a xxx 1n) shown in Fig.6C, become elongated during electron removal, electromagnetic wave energy of a predetermined frequency and intensity is injected. The wave energy absorbed by the stimulated gas nuclei and electrons, causes further destabilisation of the ion gas. The absorbed energy from all sources, causes the gas nuclei to increase in energy state and induces the ejection of electrons from the nuclei.

To further stimulate the electron entrapment process beyond the atomic level (capturing the liberated electrons during the hydrogen fracturing process), the electron extractor grid (as shown in Fig.8A) is placed in spaced relationship to the gas resonant cavity structure shown in Fig.5A. The electron extractor grid is attached to an electrical circuit (such as that shown in Fig.8B) which allows electrons to flow to an electrical load 55, when a positive electrical potential is placed on the opposite side of the electrical load. The electrical load may be a typical power-consuming device such as a light bulb or resistive heat-producing device. As the positive electrical potential is switched on, or pulse-applied, the negatively charged electrons liberated in the gas resonant cavity, are drawn away and enter into the resistive load where they are released as heat or light energy. The consuming electrical circuit may be connected directly to the gas resonant cavity positive electrical voltage zone. The incoming positive wave form applied to the resonant cavity voltage zone through a blocking diode, is synchronised with the pulse train applied to the gas resonant cavity by the circuit of Fig.7 via an alternate gate circuit. As one pulse train is gated “ON”, the other pulse train is switched “OFF”. A blocking diode directs the electron flow to the electrical load, while resistive wire prevents voltage leakage during the pulse train “ON” time.
The electron extraction process is maintained during gas-flow change by varying the trigger pulse rate in relationship to the applied voltage. The electron extraction process also prevents spark-ignition of the combustible gasses travelling through the gas resonant cavity because electron build-up and potential sparking is prevented.

In an optical thermal lens assembly or thrust-nozzle, such as shown in Fig.5C, destabilised gas ions (electrically and mass unbalanced gas atoms having highly energised nuclei) can be pressurised during spark ignition. During thermal interaction, the highly energised and unstable hydrogen gas nuclei collide with the highly energised and unstable oxygen gas nuclei and produce thermal explosive energy beyond the gas-burning stage. Other ambient air gasses and ions not otherwise consumed, limit the thermal explosive process.
STANLEY MEYER

Canadian Patent 2,067,735 16th May 1991 Inventor: Stanley Meyer

WATER FUEL INJECTION SYSTEM

ABSTRACT
An injector system comprising an improved method and apparatus useful in the production of a hydrogen containing fuel gas from water in a process in which the dielectric property of water and/or a mixture of water and other components determines a resonant condition that produces a breakdown of the atomic bonding of atoms in the water molecule. The injector delivers a mixture of water mist, ionised gases and non-combustible gas to a zone within which the breakdown process leading to the release of elemental hydrogen from the water molecules occurs.

DESCRIPTION
This invention relates to a method and apparatus useful in producing thermal combustive energy from the hydrogen component of water.

In my patent no. 4,936,961 “Method for the Production of a Fuel Gas”, I describe a water fuel cell which produces a gas energy source by a method which utilises water as a dielectric component of a resonant electrical circuit.

In my patent no. 4,826,581 “Controlled Process for the Production of Thermal Energy From Gasses and Apparatus Useful Therefore”, I describe a method and apparatus for obtaining the enhanced release of thermal energy from a gas mixture including hydrogen and oxygen in which the gas is subjected to various electrical, ionising and electromagnetic fields.

In my co-pending application serial no. 07/460,859 “Process and Apparatus for the Production of Fuel Gas and the Enhanced Release of Thermal Energy from Fuel Gas”, I describe various means and methods for obtaining the release of thermal/combustive energy from the hydrogen (H) component of a fuel gas obtained from the dissociation of a water (H₂O) molecule by a process which utilises the dielectric properties of water in a resonant circuit; and in that application I more thoroughly describe the physical dynamics and chemical aspects of the water-to-fuel conversion process.

The invention of this present application represents generational improvement in methods and apparatus useful in the utilisation of water as a fuel source. In brief, the present invention is a microminiaturised water fuel cell which permits the direct injection of water, and its simultaneous transformation into a hydrogen-containing fuel, in a combustion zone, such as a cylinder in an internal combustion engine, a jet engine or a furnace. Alternatively, the injection system of the present invention may be utilised in any non-engine application in which a concentrated flame or heat source is desired, for example: welding.

The present injection system eliminates the need for an enclosed gas pressure vessel in a hydrogen fuel system and thereby reduces a potential physical hazard heretofore associated with the use of hydrogen-based fuels. The system produces fuel-on-demand in real-time operation and sets up an integrated environment of optimum parameters so that a water-to-fuel conversion process works at high efficiency.

The preferred embodiment of the invention is more fully explained below with reference to the drawings in which:
Fig. 1 figuratively illustrates the sections and operating zones included in a single injector of the invention.

Fig. 2A is a side cross-sectional view.
Fig. 2B is a frontal view from the operative end.

Fig. 2C is an exploded view of an individual injector.
Fig.3 and Fig.3A show the side and frontal cross-sectional views of an alternatively configured injector.
Fig. 4 shows a disk array of injectors.

Fig. 5 shows the resonance electrical circuit including the injector.
Fig. 6 depicts the inter-relationship of the electrical and fuel distribution components of an injector system.

Although I refer to an “injector” in this document, the invention relates not only to the physical configuration of an injector apparatus, but also to the overall process and system parameters determined in the apparatus to achieve the release of thermal energy. In a basic outline, an injector regulates the introduction of process constituents into a combustion zone and sets up a fuel mixture condition permitting combustion. That combustion condition is triggered simultaneously with injector operation in real-time correspondence with control parameters for the process constituents.

In the fuel mixture condition which is created by the injector, water (H₂O) is atomised into a fine spray and mixed with 1 ionised ambient air gasses and 2 other non-combustible gasses such as nitrogen, argon and other rare gasses, and water vapour. (Exhaust gas produced by the combustion of hydrogen with oxygen is a non-combustible water vapour. This water vapour and other inert gasses resulting from combustion may be recycled from an exhaust outlet in the injector system, back into the input mixture of non-combustible gasses.) The fuel mix is introduced at a consistent flow rate maintained under a predetermined pressure. In the triggering of the condition created by the injector, the conversion process described in my patent no. 4,936,961 and co-pending application serial no. 07/460,859 is set off spontaneously on a “micro” level in a predetermined reaction zone. The injector creates a mixture, under pressure in a defined zone of water, ionised gasses and non-combustible gasses. Pressure is an important factor in the maintenance of the reaction condition and causes the water/gas mixture to become intimately mixed, compressed and destabilised to produce combustion when activated under resonance conditions of ignition. In accordance with the earlier mentioned conversion process of my patent and application, when water is subjected to a resonance condition water molecules expand and distend; electrons are ejected from the water molecule and absorbed by ionised gasses and the water molecule, thus destabilised, breaks down into its elemental components of hydrogen (H₂) and oxygen (O) in the combustion zone. The hydrogen atoms released from the molecule provide the fuel source in the mixture for combustion with oxygen. The present invention is an application of that process and is outlined in Table 1:
The process occurs as water mist and gasses under pressure are injected into, and intimately mixed in the combustion zone and an electrically polarised zone. In the electrically polarised zone, the water mixture is subjected to a unipolar pulsed direct current voltage which is tuned to achieve resonance in accordance with the electrical, mass and other characteristics of the mixture as a dielectric in the environment of the combustion zone. The resonant frequency will vary according to the injector configuration and depends upon the physical characteristics, such as the mass and volume of the water and gasses in the zone. As my prior patents and application point out, the resonant condition in the capacitative circuit is determined by the dielectric properties of water: (1) as the dielectric in a capacitor formed by adjacent conductive surfaces, and (2) as the water molecule itself is a polar dielectric material. At resonance, current flow in the resonant electrical circuit will be minimised and voltage will peak.

The injector system provides a pressurised fuel mixture for subjection to the resonant environment of the voltage combustion zone as the mixture is injected into the zone. In a preferred embodiment, the injector includes concentrically nested serial orifices, one for each of the three constituent elements of the fuel mixture. (It may be feasible to combine and process non-combustible and ionised gasses in advance of the injector. In this event, only two orifices are required, one for the water and the other for the combined gasses.) The orifices disperse the water mist and gasses under pressure into a conically shaped activation and combustion zone.

**Fig1A** shows a transverse cross-section of an injector, in which, supply lines for water 1, ionised gas 2, and non-combustible gas 3, feed into a distribution disk assembly 4 which has concentrically nested orifices. The fuel mixture passes through a mixing zone 5, and a voltage zone 6, created by electrodes 7a and 7b (positive) and 8 (negative or ground). Electrical field lines are shown as 6a1 and 6a2 and 6b1 and 6b2. Combustion (i.e. the oxidation of hydrogen) occurs in the zone 9. Ignition of the hydrogen can be primed by a spark or may occur spontaneously as a result of the exceptionally high volatility of hydrogen and its presence in a high-voltage field.

---

### Table 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Injector Mixture</th>
<th>Process conditions</th>
<th>Thermal Energy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) Water Mist and</td>
<td>(1) Release Under pressure into Combustion Zone</td>
<td>(1) Heat or (2) Internal Combustion Engine (Explosive force)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) Ionised Gas and</td>
<td>(2) Resonance utilising the dielectric property of water as a capacitor</td>
<td>or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) Non-combustible Gas</td>
<td>(3) Unipolar pulsing at high voltage</td>
<td>(3) Jet Engine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(4) Other application</td>
<td>(4) Other application</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---
Although the mixing zone, the voltage zone and the combustion zone are mentioned separately in this explanation, they are not in fact physically separated, as can be seen from Fig.1. In the zone(s), there is produced an "excited" mixture of vaporised water mist, ionised gasses and other non-combustible gasses, all of which have been instantaneously released from under high pressure. Simultaneously, the released mixture in the zone, is exposed to a pulsed voltage at a frequency corresponding to electrical resonance. Under these conditions, outer-shell electrons of atoms in the water molecule are de-stabilised and molecular time-share is interrupted. Thus, the gas mixture in the injector zone is subjected to physical, electrical and chemical interactive forces which cause a breakdown of the atomic bonding forces of the water molecule.

Process parameters are determined, based on the size of a particular injector. In an injector sized appropriately for use to provide a fuel mixture to a conventional cylinder in a passenger vehicle car engine, the injector may resemble a conventional spark plug. In such an injector, the water orifice is 0.1 to 0.15 inch in diameter; the ionised gas orifice is 0.15 to 0.2 inch in diameter, and the non-combustible gas orifice is 0.2 to 0.25 inch in diameter. In such a configuration, the serial orifices increase in size from the innermost orifice, as appropriate in a concentric configuration. As noted above, it is desirable to maintain the introduction of the fuel components at a constant rate. Maintaining a back-pressure of about 125 pounds per square inch for each of the three fuel gas constituents appears to be satisfactory for a “spark-plug” injector. In the pressurised environment of the injector, spring-loaded one-way check valves in each supply line, such as 14 and 15, maintain pressure during pulse off times.

Voltage zone 6 surrounds the pressurised fuel mixture and provides an electrically charged environment of pulsed direct current in the range from about 500 to 20,000 volts and more, at a frequency tuned into the resonant characteristic of the mixture. this frequency will typically lie within the range from about 20 KHz to about 50 KHz, dependent, as noted above, on the mass flow of the mixture from the injector and the dielectric property of the mixture. In a spark-plug sized injector, the voltage zone will typically extend longitudinally about 0.25 to 1.0 inch to permit sufficient dwell time of the water mist and gas mixture between the conductive surfaces 7 and 8 which form a capacitor so that resonance occurs at a high-voltage pulsed frequency, and combustion is triggered. In the zone, an energy wave which is related to the resonant pulse frequency, is formed. The wave continues to pulse through the flame in the combustion zone. The thermal energy produced is released as heat energy. In a confined zone such as a piston/cylinder engine, gas detonation under resonant conditions, produces explosive physical power.

In the voltage zone, the time-share ratio of the hydrogen and oxygen atoms comprising the individual water molecules in the water mist, is upset in accordance with the process explained in my patent no. 4,936,961 and application serial no. 07/460,859. Namely, the water molecule, which is itself a polar structure, is distended or
are available for combustion. The non-combustible gasses in the fuel mixture, reduce the burn rate of hydrogen to that of a hydrocarbon fuel such as gasoline (petrol) or kerosene (paraffin), from its normal burn rate which is about 2.5 times that of gasoline. Hence the presence of non-combustible gasses in the fuel mixture, moderates the energy release and the rate at which the free hydrogen and oxygen molecules combine in the combustion process.

The combustion process does not occur spontaneously so the conditions in the zone must be fine-tuned carefully to achieve an optimum input flow rate for water and the gasses corresponding to the maintenance of a resonant condition. The input water mist and gasses may likewise be injected into the zone in a physically pulsed (on/off) manner corresponding to the resonance achieved. In an internal combustion engine, the resonance of the electrical circuit and the physical pulsing of the input mixture may be required to be related to the combustion cycle of the reciprocating engine. In this regard, one or two conventional spark plugs may require a spark cycle tuned in correspondence to the conversion cycle resonance, so that combustion of the mixture will occur. Thus, the input flow, conversion rate and combustion rate are interrelated and optimally, each should be tuned in accordance with the circuit resonance at which conversion occurs.

The injection system of the present invention is suited to retrofit applications in conventionally fuelled gasoline and diesel internal combustion engines and conventionally fuelled jet aircraft engines.

Example 1

Figs 2A, 2B and 2C illustrate a type of injector useful, among other things, as a fuel source for a conventional internal combustion engine. In the cross-section of Fig.2A, reference numerals corresponding to the identifying numerals used in Fig.1 show a supply line for water 1, leading to first distribution disc 1a and supply line for ionised gas 2, leading to second distribution disc 2a. In the cross-section, the supply line for non-combustible gas 3 leading to distribution disc 3a, is not illustrated, however, its location as a third line should be self evident. The three discs comprise distribution disc assembly 4. The supply lines are formed in an electrically insulating body 10, surrounded by electrically conductive sheath/housing 11 having a threaded end segment 12.

A central electrode 8, extends the length of the injector. Conductive elements 7a and 7b (7a and 7b depict opposite sides of the diameter in the cross-section of a circular body), adjacent threaded section 12 and electrode 8, form the electrical polarisation zone 6 adjacent to combustion zone 9. An electrical connector 13 may be provided at the other end of the injector. (In this document, the term “electrode” refers to the conductive surface of an element forming one side of a capacitor.) In the frontal view of Fig.2B, it is seen that each disc making up the distribution disc assembly 9, includes a plurality of micro-nozzles 1a1, 2a1, 3a1, etc. for the injection of the water and gasses into the polarisation/voltage and combustion zones. The exploded view of Fig.2C shows another view of the injector and additionally depicts two supply line inlets 1 and 2, the third not being shown because of the inability of representing the uniform 120° separation of three lines in a two-dimensional drawing.

In the injector, water mist (forming droplets in the range, for example, of from 10 to 250 microns and above, with size being related to voltage intensity) is injected into the fuel-mixing and polarising zone by way of water spray nozzles 1a1. The tendency of water to form a “bead” or droplet is a parameter related to droplet mist size and voltage intensity. Ionised air gasses and non-combustible gasses, introduced through nozzles 2a1 and 3a1, are intermixed with the expelling water mist to form a fuel-mixture which enters into voltage zone 6 where the mixture is exposed to a pulsating, unipolar, high-intensity voltage field (typically 20,000 volts at 50 Hz or above, at the resonant condition in which current flow in the circuit (amps) is reduced to a minimum) created between electrodes 7 and 8.

Laser energy prevents discharge of the ionised gasses and provides additional energy input into the molecular destabilisation process which occurs at resonance. It is preferable that the ionised gasses be subjected to laser (photon energy) activation prior to their introduction into the zone(s); although, for example, a fibre optic conduit may be useful to channel photonic energy directly into the zone. However, heat generated in the zone may affect the operability of such an alternate configuration. The electrical polarisation of the water molecule and a resonant condition occurs to destabilise the molecular bonding of the hydrogen and oxygen atoms. Combustion energy is then released by spark ignition.
To ensure proper flame projection and subsequent flame stability, pumps for the ambient air, non-combustible gas and water, introduce these components to the injector under static pressure up to and beyond 125 pounds per square inch.

Flame temperature is regulated by controlling the volume flow-rate of each fluid-media in direct relationship to applied voltage intensity. To elevate flame temperature, fluid displacement is increased while the volume flow rate of non-combustible gasses is maintained or reduced and the applied voltage amplitude is increased. To lower flame temperature, the fluid flow rate of non-combustible gasses is increased and pulse voltage amplitude is lowered. To establish a predetermined flame temperature, the fluid media and applied voltage are adjusted independently. The flame-pattern is further maintained as the ignited, compressed, and moving gasses are projected under pressure from the nozzle ports in distribution disc assembly 4 and the gas expands in the zone and is ignited.

In the voltage zone, several functions occur simultaneously to initiate and trigger thermal energy yield. Water mist droplets are exposed to high intensity pulsating voltage fields in accordance with an electrical polarisation process which separates the atoms of the water molecule and causes the atoms to experience electron ejection. The polar nature of the water molecule which facilitates the formation of minute droplets in the mist, appears to cause a relationship between the droplet size and the voltage required to effect the process, i.e. the greater the droplet size, the higher the voltage required. The liberated atoms of the water molecule interact with laser-primed ionised ambient air gasses to cause a highly energised and destabilised mass of combustible gas atoms to ignite thermally. Incoming ambient air gasses are laser primed and ionised when passing through a gas processor, and an electron extraction circuit (Fig.5) captures and consumes in sink 55, ejected electrons, and prevents electron flow into the resonant circuit.

In terms of performance, reliability and safety, ionised air gasses and water fuel liquid do not become volatile until the fuel mixture reaches the voltage and combustion zones. Injected non-combustible gasses retard and control the combustion rate of hydrogen during gas ignition.

In alternate applications, laser-primed ionised liquid oxygen and laser-primed liquid hydrogen stored in separate fuel tanks, can be used in place of the fuel mixture, or liquefied ambient air gasses alone with water can be substituted as a fuel source.

The injector assembly is design variable and is retro-fittable to fossil fuel injector ports conventionally used in jet/rocket engines, grain dryers, blast furnaces, heating systems, internal combustion engines and the like.

Example 2

A flange-mounted injector is shown in cross-section in Fig.3 which shows the fuel mixture inlets and illustrates an alternative three-nozzle configuration leading to the polarisation (voltage) and combustion zones in which one nozzle 31a, 32a and 33a is provided for each of the three gas mixtures, and connected to supply lines 31 and 32 (33 is not shown). Electrical polarisation zone 36 is formed between electrode 38 and surrounding conductive shell 37. The capacitative element of the resonant circuit is formed when the fuel mixture, acting as a dielectric, is introduced between the conductive surfaces of 37 and 38. Fig.3A is a frontal view of the operative end of the injector.

Example 3

Multiple injectors may be arranged in a gang as shown in Fig.4 in which injectors 40, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48 and 49 are arranged concentrically in an assembly 50. Such a ganged array is useful in applications having intensive energy requirements such as jet aircraft engines and blast furnaces.

Example 4

The basic electrical system utilised in the invention is depicted in Fig.5 showing the electrical polarisation zone 6 which receives and processes the water and gas mixture as a capacitative circuit element in a resonant charging circuit formed by inductors 51 and 52 connected in series with diode 53, pulsed voltage source 54, electron sink 55 and zone 6 formed from conductive elements 7 and 8. In this manner, electrodes 7 and 8 in the injector, form a capacitor which has electrical characteristics dependent on the dielectric media (e.g. the water mist, ionised gasses and non-combustible gasses) introduced between the conductive elements. Within the macro-dielectric media, however, the water molecules themselves, because of their polar nature, can be considered micro-capacitors.
Example 5

Fuel distribution and management systems useful with the injector of this application are described in my co-pending applications for patent; PCT/US90/6513 and PCT/US90/6407.

A distribution block for the assembly is shown in Fig.6. In Fig.6 the distribution block pulses and synchronises the input of the fuel components in sequence with the electrical pulsing circuit. The fuel components are injected into the injector ports in synchronisation with the resonant frequency, to enhance the energy wave pulse extending from the voltage zone through the flame. In the configuration of Fig.6, the electrical system is interrelated to distribution block 60, gate valve 61 and separate passageways 62, 63 and 64 for fuel components. The distributor produces a trigger pulse which activates a pulse-shaping circuit that forms a pulse having a width and amplitude determined by resonance of the mixture and establishes a dwell time for the mixture in the zone to produce combustion.

As in my referenced application regarding control and management and distribution systems for a hydrogen-containing fuel gas produced from water, the production of hydrogen gas is related to pulse frequency on/off time. In the system shown in Fig.6, the distributor block pulses the fluid media introduced to the injector in relationship to the resonant pulse frequency of the circuit and to the operational on/off gate pulse frequency. In this manner, the rate of water conversion (i.e. the rate of fuel produced by the injector) can be regulated and the pattern of resonance in the flame controlled.
CONTROL AND DRIVER CIRCUITS FOR A HYDROGEN GAS FUEL PRODUCING CELL

The major difficulty in using Stan’s low-current Water Fuel Cell (recently reproduced by Dave Lawton and shown in Chapter 10) is the issue of keeping the cell continuously at the resonant frequency point. This patent application shows the Stan’s circuitry for doing exactly that, and consequently, it is of major importance.

ABSTRACT

A control circuit for a capacitive resonant cavity water capacitor cell (7) for the production of a hydrogen containing fuel has a resonant scanning circuit co-operating with a resonance detector and PLL circuit to produce pulses. The pulses are fed into the primary transformer (TX1). The secondary transformer (TX2) is connected to the resonant cavity water capacitor cell (7) via a diode and resonant charging chokes (TX4, TX5).

This invention relates to electrical circuit systems useful in the operation of a Water Fuel Cell including a water capacitor/resonant cavity for the production of a hydrogen containing fuel gas, such as that described in my United States Letter Patent No. 4,936,961 “Method for the Production of a Fuel Gas” issued on 26th June 1990.

In my Letters Patent for a “Method for the Production of a Fuel Gas”, voltage pulses applied to the plates of a water capacitor tune into the dielectric properties of the water and attenuate the electrical forces between the hydrogen and oxygen atoms of the molecule. The attenuation of the electrical forces results in a change in the molecular electrical field and the covalent atomic bonding forces of the hydrogen and oxygen atoms. When resonance is achieved, the atomic bond of the molecule is broken, and the atoms of the molecule disassociate. At resonance, the current (amp) draw from a power source to the water capacitor is minimised and voltage across the water capacitor increases. Electron flow is not permitted (except at the minimum, corresponding to leakage resulting from the residual conductive properties of water). For the process to continue, however, a resonant condition must be maintained.

Because of the electrical polarity of the water molecule, the fields produced in the water capacitor respectively attract and repel the opposite and like charges in the molecule, and the forces eventually achieved at resonance are such that the strength of the covalent bonding force in the water molecule (which are normally in an electron-sharing mode) disassociate. Upon disassociation, the formerly shared bonding electrons migrate to the hydrogen nuclei, and both the hydrogen and oxygen revert to net zero electrical charge. The atoms are released from the water as a gas mixture.

In the invention herein, a control circuit for a resonant cavity water capacitor cell utilised for the production of a hydrogen-containing fuel gas is provided.

The circuit includes an isolation means such as a transformer having a ferromagnetic, ceramic or other electromagnetic material core and having one side of a secondary coil connected in series with a high speed switching diode to one plate of the water capacitor of the resonant cavity and the other side of the secondary coil connected to the other plate of the water capacitor to form a closed loop electronic circuit utilising the dielectric properties of water as part of the electronic resonant circuit. The primary coil of the isolation transformer is connected to a pulse generation means. The secondary coil of the transformer may include segments which form resonant charging choke circuits in series with the water capacitor plates.

In the pulse generation means, an adjustable resonant frequency generator and a gated pulse frequency generator are provided. A gate pulse controls the number of the pulses produced by the resonant frequency generator sent to the primary coil during a period determined by the gate frequency of the second pulse generator.

The invention also includes a means for sensing the occurrence of a resonant condition in the water capacitor / resonant cavity, which when a ferromagnetic or electromagnetic core is used, may be a pickup coil on the transformer core. The sensing means is interconnected to a scanning circuit and a phase lock loop circuit, whereby the pulsing frequency to the primary coil of the transformer is maintained at a sensed frequency corresponding to a resonant condition in the water capacitor.

Control means are provided in the circuit for adjusting the amplitude of a pulsing cycle sent to the primary coil and for maintaining the frequency of the pulsing cycle at a constant frequency regardless of pulse amplitude.
addition, the gated pulse frequency generator may be connected to a sensor which monitors the rate of gas production in the cell and controls the number of pulses from the resonant frequency generator sent to the cell in a gated frequency in correspondence with the rate of gas production. The sensor may be a gas pressure sensor in an enclosed water capacitor resonant cavity which also includes a gas outlet. The gas pressure sensor is connected to the circuit to determine the rate of gas production with respect to ambient gas pressure in the water capacitor enclosure.

Thus, a comprehensive control circuit and its individual components for maintaining and controlling the resonance and other aspects of the release of gas from a resonant cavity water cell is described here and illustrated in the drawings which depict the following:

Fig. 1 is a block diagram of an overall control circuit showing the interrelationship of sub-circuits, the pulsing core / resonant circuit and the water capacitor resonant cavity.

Fig. 2 shows a type of digital control circuit for regulating the ultimate rate of gas production as determined by an external input. (Such a control circuit would correspond, for example, to the accelerator in a car, or the thermostat control in a building).
Fig. 3 shows an analog voltage generator.
Fig. 4 is a voltage amplitude control circuit interconnected with the voltage generator and one side of the primary coil of the pulsing core.

Fig. 5 is the cell driver circuit that is connected with the opposite side of the primary coil of the pulsing core. Figures 6 to 9 form the pulsing control circuitry:

Fig. 6 is a gated pulse frequency generator.
Fig. 7 is a phase lock circuit.

Fig. 8 is a resonant scanning circuit.
Fig. 9 is the pulse indicator circuit.

These four circuits control the pulses transmitted to the resonant-cavity / Water Fuel Cell capacitor.

Fig. 10 shows the pulsing core and the voltage intensifier circuit which forms the interface between the control circuit and the resonant cavity.
Fig. 11 is a gas feedback control circuit.

Fig. 12 is an adjustable frequency generator circuit.
The circuits are interconnected as shown in Fig. 1 and to the pulsing core voltage intensifier circuit of Fig. 10, which, among other things, isolates the water capacitor electrically so that it becomes an electrically isolated cavity for the processing of water in accordance with its dielectric resonance properties. By reason of this isolation, power consumption in the control and driving circuits is minimised when resonance occurs, and current demand is minimised as voltage is maximised in the gas production mode of the water capacitor / Fuel Cell.

The reference letters “A” through “M” and “M1” show, with respect to each separate circuit shown, the point at which a connection in that circuit is made to another of the circuits shown.

In the invention, the water capacitor is subjected to a duty pulse which builds up in the resonant charging choke coil and then collapses. This occurrence allows a unipolar pulse to be applied to the Fuel Cell capacitor. When a resonant condition of the circuit is locked-in by the circuit, current leakage is held to a minimum as the voltage which creates the dielectric field tends to infinity. Thus, when high voltage is detected upon resonance, the phase-lock-loop circuit, which controls the cell driver circuit, maintains the resonance at the detected (or sensed) frequency.

The resonance of the water capacitor cell is affected by the volume of water in the cell. The resonance of any given volume of water contained in the water capacitor cell is also affected by “contaminants” in the water which act as a damper. For example, with a potential difference of 2,000 to 5,000 volts applied to the cell, a current spike or surge may be caused by inconsistencies in the water characteristics which cause an out-of-resonance condition which is remedied instantaneously by the control circuits.

In the invention, the adjustable frequency generator, shown in Fig. 12, tunes in to the resonant condition of the circuit which includes the water cell and the water inside it. The generator has a frequency capability of 0 to 10 KHz and tunes into resonance typically at a frequency of 5 KHz in a typical 3-inch long water capacitor formed from a 0.5 inch rod inside a 0.75 inch inside-diameter cylinder. At start up, in this example, current draw through the water cell will measure about 25 milliamps; however, when the circuit finds a tuned resonant condition, the current drops down to a 1 to 2 milliamp leakage condition.

The voltage to the capacitor water cell increases according to the turns of the winding and the size of the coils, as in a typical transformer circuit. For example, if 12 volts is sent to the primary coil of the pulsing core and the secondary coil resonant charging choke ratio is 30 to 1, then 360 volts is sent to the capacitor water cell. The number of turns is a design variable which controls the voltage of the unipolar pulses sent to the capacitor.

The high-speed switching diode, shown in Fig. 10, prevents charge leaking from the charged water in the water capacitor cavity, and the water capacitor as an overall capacitor circuit element, i.e. the pulse and charge status of the water/capacitor never pass through an arbitrary ground. The pulse to the water capacitor is always unipolar. The water capacitor is electrically isolated from the control, input and driver circuits by the electromagnetic coupling through the core. The switching diode in the Voltage Intensifier Circuit (Fig. 10) performs several functions in the pulsing. The diode is an electronic switch which determines the generation and collapse of an electromagnetic field to permit the resonant charging choke(s) to double the applied frequency and it also allows the pulse to be sent to the resonant cavity without discharging the “capacitor” therein. The diode is, of course,
The Voltage Intensifier Circuit of Fig.10 also includes a ferromagnetic or ceramic ferromagnetic pulsing core capable of producing electromagnetic flux lines in response to an electrical pulse input. The flux lines affect both the secondary coil and the resonant charging choke windings equally. Preferably, the core is of a closed loop construction. The effect of the core is to isolate the water capacitor and to prevent the pulsing signal from going below an arbitrary ground and to maintain the charge of the already charged water and water capacitor.

In the pulsing core, the coils are preferably wound in the same direction to maximise the additive effect of the electromagnetic field in them. The magnetic field of the pulsing core is synchronised with the pulse input to the primary coil. The potential from the secondary coil is introduced to the resonant charging choke(s) series circuit elements which are subjected to the same synchronous applied electromagnetic field, simultaneously with the primary pulse.

When resonance occurs, control of the gas output is achieved by varying the time of duty gate cycle. The transformer core is a pulse frequency doubler. In a figurative explanation of the workings of the fuel gas generator water capacitor cell, when a water molecule is “hit” by a pulse, electron time-share is effected and the molecule is charged. When the time of the duty cycle is changed, the number of pulses that “hit” the molecules in the fuel cell is modified correspondingly. More “hits” result in a greater rate of molecular disassociation.

With reference to the overall circuit of Fig.1, Fig.3 receives a digital input signal, and Fig.4 shows the control circuit which applies 0 to 12 volts across the primary coil of the pulsing core. Depending on design parameters of primary coil voltage and other factors relevant to core design, the secondary coil of the pulsing core can be set up for a predetermined maximum, such as 2,000 volts.

The cell driver circuit shown in Fig.5, allows a gated pulse to be varied in direct relation to voltage amplitude. As noted above, the circuit of Fig.6 produces a gate pulse frequency. The gate pulse is superimposed on the resonant frequency pulse, to create a duty cycle that determines the number of discrete pulses sent to the primary coil. For example, assuming a resonant pulse of 5 KHz, a 0.5 KHz gating pulse with a 50% duty cycle, will allow 2,500 discrete pulses to be sent to the primary coil, followed by an equal time interval in which no pulses are passed through. The relationship of resonant pulse to the gate pulse is determined by conventional signal addition/subtraction techniques.

The phase lock loop circuit shown in Fig.7 allows the pulse frequency to be maintained at a predetermined resonant condition sensed by the circuit. Together, the circuits of Fig.7 and Fig.8, determine an output signal to the pulsing core until the peak voltage signal sensed at resonance is achieved.

A resonant condition occurs when the pulse frequency and the voltage input attenuates the covalent bonding forces of the hydrogen and oxygen atoms of the water molecule. When this occurs, current leakage through the water capacitor is minimised. The tendency of voltage to maximise at resonance, increases the force of the electric potential applied to the water molecules, which ultimately disassociate into atoms.

Because resonances of different waters, water volumes and capacitor cells vary, the resonant scanning circuit of Fig.8 scans frequency from high to low and back to high, until a signal lock is achieved. The ferromagnetic core of the voltage intensifier circuit transformer, suppresses electron surge in an out-of-resonance condition of the fuel cell. In an example, the circuit scans at frequencies from 0 Hz to 10 KHz and back to 0 Hz. In water having contaminants in the range of 1 part per million to 20 parts per million, a 20% variation in resonant frequency is encountered. Depending on water flow rate into the fuel cell, the normal variation range is about 8% to 10%. For example, iron in well water affects the status of molecular disassociation. Also, at a resonant condition, harmonic effects occur. In a typical operation of the cell with a representative water capacitor described below, at a frequency of about 5 KHz, with unipolar pulses from 0 to 650 volts, at a sensed resonant condition in the resonant cavity, on average, the conversion into gas occurs at a rate of about 5 US gallons (19 litres) of water per hour. To increase the rate, multiple resonant cavities can be used and/or the surfaces of the water capacitor can be increased, however, the water capacitor cell is preferably small in size. A typical water capacitor may be formed from a 0.5 inch diameter stainless steel rod and a 0.75 inch inside-diameter cylinder which extends over the rod for a length of 3 inches.

The shape and size of the resonant cavity may vary. Larger resonant cavities and higher rates of consumption of water in the conversion process require higher frequencies up to 50 KHz and above. The pulsing rate, to sustain such high rates of conversion, must be increased correspondingly.

From the above description of the preferred embodiment, other variations and modifications of the system disclosed will be evident to those skilled in the art.
CLAIMS

1. A control circuit for a resonant cavity water capacitor cell utilised for the production of a hydrogen-containing fuel gas, including an isolation transformer with a ferromagnetic core, and having one side of a secondary coil connected in series with a high-speed switching diode to one plate of the water capacitor of the resonant cavity, and the other side of the secondary coil connected to the other plate of the water capacitor, to form a closed-loop electronic circuit utilising the dielectric properties of water as part of the electronic circuit, and a primary coil connected to a pulse generator.

2. The circuit of Claim 1. in which the secondary coil includes segments which form a resonant charging choke circuit in series with the water capacitor.

3. The circuit of Claim 1. in which the pulse generator includes an adjustable first frequency generator and a second gated pulse frequency generator which controls the number of pulses produced by the first frequency generator, sent to the primary coil during a period determined by the gate frequency of the second pulse generator.

4. The circuit of Claim 1. further including a means for sensing the occurrence of a resonant condition in the water capacitor of the resonant cavity.

5. The circuit of Claim 4. in which the means for sensing is a pickup coil on the ferromagnetic core of the transformer.

6. The circuit of Claim 4. or Claim 5. in which the sensing means is interconnected to a scanning circuit and a phase-lock-loop circuit, by which the pulsing frequency sent to the primary coil of the transformer is maintained at a sensed frequency corresponding to a resonant condition in the water capacitor.

7. The circuit of Claim 1. including means for adjusting the amplitude of a pulsing cycle sent to the primary coil.

8. The circuit of Claim 6. including further means for maintaining the frequency of the pulsing cycle at a constant frequency regardless of pulse amplitude.

9. The circuit of Claim 3. in which the gated pulse frequency generator is connected to a sensor which monitors the rate of gas production from the cell and controls the number of pulses sent to the cell in a gated frequency, corresponding to the rate of gas production.

10. The circuit of Claim 7. or Claim 8. or Claim 9. further including a gas-pressure sensor in an enclosed water capacitor resonant cavity which also includes a gas outlet, where the gas-pressure sensor is connected to the circuit to determine the rate of gas production with respect to ambient gas pressure in the water capacitor enclosure.

11. The methods and apparatus as substantially described herein.
This is a patent application from Stephen Meyer, brother of the late Stan Meyer. While this application mentions filling stations, it is clear that the design is aimed at use in vehicles with internal combustion engines. I believe that the impedance-matching interface between the alternator and the cell electrodes is particularly important. The water-splitter cell uses sets of three pipes in a concentric array which results in small gaps between the innermost, middle and outer pipe. Stephen refers to these three electrode pipes as a “wave-guide”, so please bear that in mind when reading this patent application. Stephen uses the word “hydroxyl” to refer to the mixture of hydrogen and oxygen gases produced by electrolysis of water. Other people use the word “hydroxy” to describe this mixture, so they should be considered interchangeable.

The operation of this system as described here, calls for the generating power to be removed when the gas pressure in the generating chambers reaches 5 psi. The gas is then pumped into a pressure chamber where the pressure ranges from 40 psi to 80 psi, at which point the compressor is powered down and the excess gas vented to some external storage or using device. It is not until this is completed that the power is applied again to the generating chambers. May I remark that, in my opinion, there is no need to remove the power from at generating chambers at any time when this system is in operation, since all that that does is to lower the generating capacity, unless of course, the production rate is so high that it exceeds the level of demand.

ABSTRACT
The usefulness of this system, its configuration, design and operation, are the keystone of a new type of automation: the production of hydroxyl gases from renewable sources.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION
Fuel Cell and auto industries have been looking for methods and apparatus that can supply a source of hydrogen and oxygen for its new hybrid industry. This invention is such a device.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION
The invention is a computerised, automatic, on-site/mobile hydroxyl gas producing filling station which allows the products being produced to be used, either by the hydrogen fuel cells installed in automobiles, trucks, buses, boats and land-based generating applications, or in any internal combustion engine.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS
Fig.1 shows the configuration of the components which go to make up the MLS-hydroxyl Filling Station.

Fig.2 shows the software display which the operator uses to monitor and control the production of hydroxy gases and heat.

Fig.3 shows the methods, configuration, and apparatus used in the hydroxyl producing cell system 120.

Fig.4 shows the electronic impedance-matching circuits 102, connected between the dual three-phase synchronised generators (110A and 110B in Fig.3) and each of the electrodes or “waveguide” arrays 132 in cell 120 of Fig.3. Note that only generator A is depicted in Fig.4 as being connected to arrays A, B and C using PC cards 1 to 3. generator B is connected to arrays D, E and F using cards 4 to 6.

Fig.5 Shows the signals emitted by each of the impedance-matching circuits (102 in Fig.4 mounted on cards 1 to 6) which are applied to each of the cylinder arrays (132 in Fig.3) installed in hydroxyl cell 120. These sets of signals with their offset phase relationship, frequencies and amplitudes, are the driving forces producing the hydroxy gases in cell 120 of Fig.3.

Fig.6 shows the high-frequency ringing signal which is produced between points T1 and T2 in the impedance-matching circuit 102 in Fig.4. It is this ringing which enhances the production of the hydroxyl gas in cell 120 of Fig.3.
DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

The heat-removing section in Fig.1 consists of a liquid bath 30 and its container 20, a liquid circulating pump 10, conveying-conduits 40, cooling chamber 50 attached to hydroxyl generating cell 120, filter 45, radiator 60 and cooling fans 61 attached to it.

The automatic-control section in Fig.1 consists of a computer 70, software program 75, video monitor 90 and its graphic operator display 95 (Fig.2), pointer 85, keyboard 80, interface card 72, and Input/Output controller 100 with its’ driver electronics cards 102 and 105.

Dual three-phase power sources 110 and impedance-matching circuits 102, provide the power needed to drive the hydroxyl cell 120.

The remaining apparatus is used to convey the gases from cells 120, through liquid trap 130, through gas flow restriction valve 135, elevate its gas pressures through compressor 140, transfer them to storage tank 150, then deliver the gases through safety cut off 165, regulators 160 and through flash-back arrestor 170 for external delivery.

Fig.2 shows the layout and functions of the operator control display 95 of program 75 in Fig.1. It consists of cell temperature indicator 230, vacuum controller 240, high-pressure tank indicator 250, delivery controller 260, delivery regulated-pressure indicator 265 and related alarm/status indicators 270. Also, software control buttons
are provided to start 280, stop 290, clear data 292, change setting 294 and the testing of equipment and their sequences 296.

Fig. 3 shows the configuration of our proprietary hydroxyl-producing apparatus 120 consisting of dual three-phase power source 110, impedance matching electronic circuits 102 and gas converter devices 132 submerged in a bath of water 133 in cell 120. The drawing also shows the water jacket 50 surrounding the cell 120 that helps lower its temperature and allows more production of the hydroxyl gases at higher voltage signals as shown in Fig. 5.
Fig. 4 shows the electrical circuits 102, used to drive the gas converting arrays (132 in Fig. 3) submerged in a bath of water 133 in cell 120. Fig. 4 shows three identical circuits connected to each of the three-phase signals from one half of the dual three-phase generator 110A in Fig. 3. The circuits 102, convert the AC signal from each phase of 110 into a modulated signal as depicted by Fig. 5. These signals are then coupled to the triple array elements 132, (Inside, Middle and Outside) by alternating the connection between the Inside and Outside elements of the arrays (132 in Fig. 3).
Fig. 5 shows the composite signals applied to each of the arrays (132 in Fig. 3) submerged in the water bath 133 in cell 120, and indicates the differential voltages used in the hydroxyl producing process. Note that the Middle wave-guide element is used as the electrical reference point for both the Outside and Inside elements of array 132. It is this composite signal applied to the surface of the stainless steel elements in array 132 submerged in water bath 133, heat allows the ions from the elements in array 132 to cross its water surface barriers 133 and contribute to the hydroxyl production. Note the DC bias voltage +,- on either side of the centre electrical
reference point 0V. It is this bias voltage being modulated by multi-polarity differential signals from 102, that contributes to the wave-guide action of arrays 132. Also, the frequency of the waveform shown in Fig.5 is adjusted to match the electrical wavelength of the arrays 132 of Fig.3 and the impedance of water bath 133.

Fig.6 shows the high-frequency ringing signals which contribute to the operation of the hydroxyl production, just as a tuning fork rings when struck by a hammer, so do the wave-guide elements in array 132 immersed in the hydroxyl-generating liquid 133 when struck by the electrical signals shown in Fig.5 and Fig.6, coming from the impedance-matching circuits 102 shown in Fig.4.

**Brief Description of Sequences**

This invention is a computerised Hydroxyl Gas producing filling station "MLS-HFS" designed to provide automatic control of its on-site gas production and delivery.
The MLS-HFS shown in Fig.1, is a hydroxyl gas and heat generating system which uses a renewable source of liquid supply 30 such as water. It uses a computer control program 75 with display interface 95, for the monitoring, adjusting and controlling of the electronic and hardware apparatus and process logic. The electronic circuits 102 mounted in driver 100, control the production of the gases and heating while circuit 105 controls the process of the routing of the hydroxyl gas.

The system consists of a low-pressure hydrolyser cell 120 in Fig.1, a liquid trap 130, an adjustable flow-restriction valve 135, high-pressure vacuum pump 140, and check valve 142 installed in 140. It also contains a high-pressure storage tank 150, an alarm/low-pressure cut-off valve 165, gas regulator 160, flashback arrestor 170, over-pressure safety release valves 125, pressure gauges 128, analogue pressure-sending units 122 installed on cell 120, and tank 150 at the regulating side of regulator 160. Also, 125 is installed on Compressor 140 high-pressure output. The computer controller 70, monitor 90, keyboard 80, interface I/O card 72 and software position pointer 85, are used to control the production process, using electronic driver 100 through it’s PC boards 105 and their attached control devices. The power to the cell-driving circuits 102, installed in driver 100, is supplied from a dual three-phase isolated power source 110. The amplitude, signal phases and frequency from this power source is controlled by signal adjustments coming from the computer 70.

**Detailed Description**

**Sequence of Operation**

The system shown in Fig.1 is monitored and controlled by the software program 75, computer 70, monitor 90, keyboard 80, pointer 85, and display interface 95 in Fig.2.

The software program has five main functions, namely: to purge the system of ambient air, check and test for any equipment malfunctions, prepare the system for production, monitor and control the current activities of the production process, and the safety shutdown of the system if alarms are detected.

During the initial installation, and again after any repairs, the total system is purged using the vacuum pump 140, using manual procedures to ensure that all ambient air has been removed from the system. Before the system is put into service, the operator can test the operation of the system by using the graphic display. The main functions of the testing is to ensure that the temperature electronics 131 attached to the hydroxyl cells 120, transferring compressor 140 and analogue pressure sensors 122 mounted on cells 120, high-pressure tank 150 and the discharge side of regulator 160 used for control and monitoring, are working properly. the operator can then activate the Run Sequence of the program 75 via the start software button 280 in Fig.2 on graphic display 95.

During the initial startup phase of the system, the computer program will configure the system for the purge sequence. this sequence allows the vacuum pump 140 to draw down the hydroxyl cells 120 liquid trap 130 coupled to flow-restriction valve 135, to remove all ambient air from them. Once the program has done this and detected no leaks in the system, it then prepares the system for gas production by switching the gas flow from cells 120 to high-pressure tank 150 and on to the output flashback protector 170.

The program starts it’s production sequence by turning on the cooling system pump 10 which is submerged in the liquid bath 30, contained in vessel 20. The cooling liquid is pumped through the cooling jacket 50 which is attached to the outside of cells 120, through filter 45 and then through an air-cooled radiator 60. Fans attached to the radiator are turned on for cooling.

Next, the computer turns on the dual three-phase power source 110, which supplies operating power to the frequency, phase-shifting, signal amplitude and impedance-matching circuits coupled to the hydroxyl generating cells.

The result of this is just like the operation of a radio transmitter matching it’s signal to the air via the antenna impedance. Fig.3 shows the relationship of this configuration to arrays 132, water bath 133 and Signals (Fig.5 and Fig.6).

While the power source 110 is operating, the computer 70 is monitoring the pressure 122 and temperature 131 of hydroxyl cells 120. When the cell pressure reaches a typical level of 5 pounds per square inch, the power source is turned off and compressor 140 is turned on the pump the gas into pressure tank 150. When the pressure in the hydroxyl cells 120 is drawn down to near zero, the compressor is turned off and the power to the gas generating cells is turned back on again, to repeat the cycle.
The production cycle is repeated until tank 150 reaches a pressure of, typically, 80 psi, at which time the computer enables the output pressure regulator 160 which is typically set to operate at 40 psi, for the delivery of the hydroxyl gas to some external storage system or device. During this operation, the computer program handles all switching and displays the current status and any alerts or warning messages for the operator on the graphical display 95.

**Impedance-Matching Circuit 102:**

The impedance-matching circuits 102 in Fig.4, convert the sinewave signals coming from the three-phase power source (110 in Fig.3) into multi-polarity differential signals (Fig.5) which are applied to the triple wave-guide cluster arrays 132 A, 132B, 132C, 132D, 132E and 132F installed in cell 120.

It is this converted signal, along with the phase relationship of the power source 110 and the triple wave-guide elements in cluster 132 submerged in water bath 133, which produce the hydroxyl gases. It is important to note that not only is the gas produced between the elements in the array, but also between each array installed in the cell - see the phase relationship of array A-B-C shown in Fig.3. Also note that the array elements themselves are supplying many of the ions needed for the production of the gases.

**Sequence of Hydroxyl Gas Generation:**

Once the hydroxyl-generating cell 120 has been purged of ambient air and the production routing completed (Fig.1), the dual three-phase power source 110 is activated, supplying frequency, amplitude and phase signals to the impedance-matching circuitry 102. The converted signals from 102 are then applied to cell array 132 for processing. It is the combination of the impedance-matching circuits signal transformations (as shown in Fig.5 and Fig.6), the cell configuration and materials used in arrays 132, and the rotational phase relationship between arrays AD, BE and CF and the submersion of these arrays in a bath of water 133, that allows this system to produce large amounts of hydroxyl gases. The computer program 75 and it's graphic display 95, is used by the operator to adjust the rate of gas production and set the upper limit to which the low-pressure cell 120 will charge.

After the cell 120 has reached its upper pressure cut-off limit (typically 5 psi), the power source 110 is turned off, enabling the compressor 140 to start its draw-down and transfer of the gases to the high-pressure tank 150. When the pressure in the cell 120 reaches a low-level limit (near zero psi), 140 stops its charging cycle of 150. Check valve 142 which is installed in 140, prevents any back flow of gases to 120 from high-pressure tank 150. The power source 110 is then turned back on to repeat the cycle. These charging cycles continue until the high-pressure tank 150 reaches its upper pressure limit (typically 80 psi), at which point the hydroxyl production is stopped. As the gases in the high-pressure tank are being used or transferred to some external storage system, the pressure in 150 is monitored at the output of pressure-regulator 160, until the low-pressure limit for this tank is reached (typically 40 psi). When this pressure level is reached, the hydroxyl gas production is started again.

During the operation of cell 120, its temperature is monitored to ensure that it does not exceed the “out of limits” conditions set by control 231 and monitored via the graphics display 95. If the temperature exceed the limit set, then the gas production is stopped and the computer program alerts the operator, indicating the problem. The cooling system 30 which uses water jacket 50 surrounding cell 120, helps to reduce the temperature and allows higher rates of gas production.

After extended running times, the water in cell 120 is replenished from bath 30 and filtered by 45, to help control the operating impedance of the cell.

**CLAIMS**

1. The MLS-HFS information in this specification is the embodiment of the claims.

2. The system according to Claim 1 further enhances the production of hydroxyls based on the configuration of the hydroxyl gas-producing apparatuses of Fig.3.

3. The system according to Claim 1 further enhances the production of hydroxyls based on the configuration of the impedance-matching circuits of Fig.4.

4. The system according to Claim 1 further enhances the production of hydroxyls based on the application of the electrical signals shown in Fig.5 applied to signal travelling wave-guides 132 submerged in a bath of water 133 installed in cell 120 and configured as depicted in Fig.3.
5. The system according to Claim 1 further enhances the production of hydroxyls based on the resonating action of the electrical signals depicted in Fig. 6.

6. The system according to Claim 1 further enhances the production of hydroxyls based on the software program's ability to control the production of hydroxyl gases; controlling its process limits, controlling its storage and controlling its delivery via operator controller Fig. 2.

7. The software program 75 according to Claim 6, further enhances the safety of the production of hydroxyls based on the monitoring of high and low limits and either alerting the operator of the conditions and/or stopping the production on device failures via operator controller Fig. 2.

8. The software according to Claim 6 further enhances the safety of the hydroxyls based on its ability to purge the system of ambient air before starting the production of hydroxyl gases.
Dr Andrija Puharich reports that he drove his motor home for hundreds of thousands of miles around North America in the 1970s using only water as fuel. At a mountain pass in Mexico, he collected snow for water. Here is an article which he wrote:

**Cutting The Gordian Knot of the Great Energy Bind**

by Andrija Puharich

**Introduction**

It is hardly necessary to weigh the value of the World Energy bank account for any sophisticated person, these days. It is grim. The oil reserves will dwindle away in a score of years or so, and the coal reserves will be gone in some twelve score years. This is not to say that the outlook is hopeless. There is an abundance of alternative energy sources, but the economics of development and exploitation present an enormous short-term strain on the world political and banking resources.

Visionary scientists tell us that the ideal fuel in the future will be as cheap as water, that it will be non-toxic both in its short-term, and in its long-term, effects, that it will be renewable in that it can be used over and over again, that it will be safe to handle, and present minimal storage and transportation problems and costs. And finally that it will be universally available anywhere on earth. What is this magical fuel, and why is it not being used? The fuel is water. It can be used in its fresh water form. It can be used in its salt water form. It can be used in its brackish form. It can be used in its snow and ice form. When such water is decomposed by electrolytic fission into hydrogen and oxygen gases, it becomes a high energy fuel with three times the energy output which is available from an equivalent weight of high grade gasoline.

Then why is water not being used as a fuel? The answer is simple - it costs too much with existing technology to convert water into hydrogen and oxygen gases. The basic cycle of using water for fuel is described in the following two equations, familiar to every high school student of Chemistry:

\[
\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{H}_2 + (1/2)\text{O}_2, \text{per mole of water}\]

(1 mole = 18 gm). This means that it requires 249.688 BTU of energy (from electricity) to break water by electrolysis into the gases hydrogen and oxygen.

\[
\text{H}_2 + (1/2)\text{O}_2 + \text{catalyst} \rightarrow \text{H}_2\text{O}, \text{\Delta H} = 302.375 \text{ BTU per mole of water}\]

This means that 302.375 BTU of energy (heat or electricity) will be released when the gases, hydrogen and oxygen, combine. The end product (the exhaust) from this reaction is water. Note that more energy (under ideal conditions) is released from combining the gases than is used to free them from water. It is known that under ideal conditions it is possible to get some 20% more energy out of reaction (2) above, then it takes to produce the gases of reaction (1) above. Therefore, if reaction (1) could be carried out at 100% efficiency, the release of energy from reaction (2) in an optimally efficient engine (such as a low temperature fuel cell), there would be a net energy profit which would make the use of water as a fuel an economically feasible source of energy.

The cost of producing hydrogen is directly related to the cost of producing electricity. Hydrogen as produced today is generally a by-product of off-peak-hour electrical production in either nuclear or hydroelectric plants. The electricity thus produced is the cheapest way of making hydrogen. We can compare the cost of production of electricity and the cost of producing hydrogen. The following table is adapted from Penner whose data source is based on Federal Power Commission, and American Gas Association Figures of 1970 and on a 1973 price evaluation (just before the OPEC oil price escalation.)

<p>| Table 1: Relative Prices in Dollars per 106 BTU |
|-------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cost Component</th>
<th>Electricity</th>
<th>Electrolytically-Produced H</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

A - 689
If we compare only the unit cost of production of electricity vs Hydrogen from the above table:

\[
\frac{106 \text{ BTU H}_2}{106 \text{ BTU El}} = \frac{$3.23}{$2.67}, \text{ or } 20.9\% \text{ higher cost, } H_2
\]

It must also be noted that the price of natural gas is much cheaper than either electricity or hydrogen, but because of the price fluctuations due to recent deregulation of gas it is not possible to present a realistic figure. In the opinion of Penner, if the hydrogen production cost component of its total cost could be reduced three fold, it would become a viable alternate energy source. In order to achieve such a three-fold reduction in production costs, several major breakthroughs would have to occur.

1. **Endergonic Reaction** A technological breakthrough which permits 100% conversion efficiency of water by electrolysis fission into the two gases, Hydrogen as fuel and Oxygen as oxidant.

2. **Hydrogen Production in Situ** A technological breakthrough which eliminates the need and cost of hydrogen liquefaction and storage, transmission, and distribution, by producing the fuel in situ, when and where needed.

3. **Exergonic Reaction** A technological breakthrough which yields a 100% efficient energy release from the combination of hydrogen and oxygen into water in an engine that can utilize the heat, steam, or electricity thus produced.

4. **Engine Efficiency** By a combination of the breakthroughs outlined above, 1, 2, and 3 utilized in a highly efficient engine to do work, it is theoretically possible to achieve a 15% to 20% surplus of energy return over energy input.

It is of interest to record that a new invention is now being developed to realise the above outlined goal of cheap, clean renewable and high grade energy. A Thermodynamic Device has been invented which produces hydrogen as fuel, and oxygen as oxidant, from ordinary water or from sea water, eliminating the cost and hazard of liquefaction, storage, transmission, and distribution. The saving of this aspect of the invention alone reduces the total cost of hydrogen by about 25%.

This Thermodynamic Device is based on a new discovery - the efficient electrolytic fission of water into hydrogen gas and oxygen gas by the use of low frequency alternating currents as opposed to the conventional use of direct current, or ultra-high frequency current today. Such gas production from water by electrolytic fission approaches 100% efficiency under laboratory conditions and measurements. No laws of physics are violated in this process.

This Thermodynamic Device has already been tested at ambient pressures and temperatures from sea level to an altitude of 10,000 feet above sea level without any loss of its peak efficiency. The device produces two types of gas bubbles; one type of bubble contains hydrogen gas; the other type contains oxygen gas. The two gases are thereafter easily separable by passive membrane filters to yield pure hydrogen gas, and pure oxygen gas.

The separate gases are now ready to be combined in a chemical fusion with a small activation energy such as that from a catalyst or an electrical spark, and yield energy in the form of heat, or steam, or electricity as needed. When the energy is released by the chemical fusion of hydrogen and oxygen, the exhaust product is clean water. The water exhaust can be released into nature and then renewed in its energy content by natural processes of evaporation, solar irradiation in cloud form, an subsequent precipitation as rain on land or sea, and then collected again as a fuel source. Or, the exhaust water can have its energy content pumped up by artificial processes such as through solar energy acting through photocells. Hence, the exhaust product is both clean and renewable. The fuel hydrogen, and the oxidant oxygen, can be used in any form of heat engine as an energy source if economy is not an important factor. But the practical considerations of maximum efficiency, dictate that a low temperature fuel cell with its direct chemical fusion conversion from gases to electricity offers the greatest economy and efficiency from small power plants of less than 5 kilowatts.

For large power plants, steam and gas turbines are the ideal heat engines for economy and efficiency. With the proper engineering effort, automobiles could be converted rather easily to use water as the main fuel source.

The Thermodynamic Device (“TD”) is made up of three principal components:

- **Component 1**: An electrical function generator which energizes a water cell.
- **Component 2**: The Thermodynamic Device
- **Component 3**: A weak electrolyte.
Component 1: The Electrical Function Generator:

This electronic device has a complex alternating current output consisting of an audio frequency (range 20 to 200 Hz) amplitude modulation of a carrier wave (range: 200 to 100,000 Hz). The output is connected by two wires to Component II at the center electrode, and at the ring electrode. See Fig.1. The impedance of this output signal is continuously being matched to the load which is the water solution in Component II.
Component 2: The Thermodynamic Device:

The TD is fabricated of metals and ceramic in the geometric form of a coaxial cylinder made up of a centered hollow tubular electrode which is surrounded by a larger tubular steel cylinder. These two electrodes comprise the coaxial electrode system energised by Component I. The space between the two electrodes is, properly speaking, Component III which contains the water solution to be electrolysed. The center hollow tubular electrode carries water into the cell, and is further separated from the outer cylindrical electrode by a porous ceramic vitreous material. The space between the two electrodes contains two lengths of tubular Pyrex glass, shown in Figures 2 and 3. The metal electrode surface in contact with the water solution are coated with a nickel alloy.
Component 3: The weak electrolyte water solution:

![Figure 3: The Water Cell Section of Component 2](image)

This consists of the water solution, the two glass tubes, and the geometry of the containing wall of Component 2. It is the true load for Component 1, and its electrode of Component 2.

The Component 3 water solution is more properly speaking, ideally a 0.1540 M Sodium Chloride solution, and as such, it is a weak electrolyte. In Figure 4 we show the hypothetical tetrahedral structure of water molecule, probably in the form in which the complex electromagnetic waves of Component 1 to see it. The center of mass of this tetrahedral form is the oxygen atom. The geometric arrangement of the p electrons of oxygen probably determine the vectors i (L1) and i (L2) and i (H1) and i (H2) which in turn probably determine the tetrahedral architecture of the water molecule. The p electron configuration of oxygen is shown in Figure 5. Reference to Figure 4, shows that the diagonal of the right side of the cube has at its corner terminations, the positive charge hydrogen (H+) atoms; and that the left side of the cube diagonal has at its corners, the lone pair electrons, (e-). It is to be further noted that this diagonal pair has an orthonormal relationship.

![Figure 4: The Water Molecule in Tetrahedral Form](image)

Hydrogen bonding occurs only along the four vectors pointing to the four vertices of a regular tetrahedron, and in the above drawing we show the four unit vectors along these directions originating from the oxygen atoms at the center. i(H1) and i(H2) are the vectors of the hydrogen bonds formed by the molecule i as a donor molecule. These are assigned to the lone pair electrons. Molecules i are the neighboring oxygen atoms at each vertex of the tetrahedron.
3. Electrothermodynamics

We will now portray the complex electromagnetic wave as the tetrahedral water molecule sees it. The first effect felt by the water molecule is in the protons of the vectors, i (H1) and i (H2). These protons feel the 3-second cycling of the amplitude of the carrier frequency and its associated side bands as generated by Component 1. This sets up a rotation moment of the proton magnetic moment which one can clearly see on the XY plot of an oscilloscope, as an hysteresis loop figure. However, it is noted that this hysteresis loop does not appear in the liquid water sample until all the parameters of the three components have been adjusted to the configuration which is the novel basis of this device. The hysteresis loop gives us a vivid portrayal of the nuclear magnetic relaxation cycle of the proton in water.

The next effect felt by the water molecule is the Component 1 carrier resonant frequency, Fo. At the peak efficiency for electrolysis the value of Fo is 600 Hz +/- 5 Hz.

This resonance however is achieved through control of two other factors. The first is the molal concentration of salt in the water. This is controlled by measuring the conductivity of the water through the built-in current meter of Component 1. There is maintained an idea ratio of current to voltage where I/E = 0.01870 which is an index to the optimum salt concentration of 0.1540 Molal.

The second factor which helps to hold the resonant frequency at 600 Hz is the gap distance of Y, between the centre electrode, and the ring electrode of Component 2. This gap distance will vary depending on the size scale of Component 2, but again, the current flow I, is used to set it to the optimal distance when the voltage reads between 2.30 (rms) volts, at resonance Fo, and at molal concentration, 0.1540. The molal concentration of the water is thus seen to represent the electric term of the water molecule and hence its conductivity.

The amplitude modulation of the carrier gives rise to side bands in the power spectrum of the carrier frequency distribution. It is these side bands which give rise to an acoustic vibration of the liquid water, and it is believed, also to the tetrahedral water molecule. The importance of the phonon effect - the acoustic vibration of water in electrolysis - was discovered in a roundabout way. Research work with Component 1 had earlier established that it could be used for the electro-stimulation of hearing in humans. When the output of Component 1 is comprised of flat circular metal plates applied to the head of normal hearing humans, it was found that they could hear pure tones and speech. Simultaneously, acoustic vibration could also be heard by an outside observer with a stethoscope placed near one of the electrodes on the skin. It was observed that the absolute threshold of hearing could be obtained at 0.16 mW (rms), and by calculation that there was an amplitude of displacement of the eardrum of the order of $10^{-11}$ meter and a corresponding amplitude of the cochlear basilar membrane of $10^{-13}$
meter. Corollary to this finding, I was able to achieve the absolute reversible threshold of electrolysis at a power level of 0.16 mW (rms). By carrying out new calculations, I was able to show that the water was being vibrated with a displacement of the order of 1 Angstrom unit \((= 10^{-10} \text{ meters})\). This displacement is of the order of the diameter of the hydrogen atom. Thus it is possible that the acoustic phonons generated by audio side bands of the carrier are able to vibrate particle structures within the unit water tetrahedron.

We now turn to the measurement problem with respect to efficiency of electrolysis. There are four means which can be used to measure the reactant product of water electrolysis. For simple volume measurements, one can use a precision nitrometer such as the Pregl type. For both volume and quantitative analysis one can use the gas chromatography with thermal conductivity detector. For a continuous flow analysis of both volume and gas species the mass spectrometer is very useful. For pure thermodynamic measurements the calorimeter is useful. In our measurements, all four methods were examined, and it was found that the mass spectrometer gave the most flexibility and the greatest precision. In the next section we will describe our measurement using the mass spectrometer.

**Protocol**


**Introduction**

All systems used today for the electrolysis of water into hydrogen as fuel, and oxygen as oxidant apply direct current to a strong electrolyte solution. These systems range in efficiency from 50% to 71%. The calculation of energy efficiency in electrolysis is defined as follows:

"The energy efficiency is the ratio of the energy released from the electrolysis products formed (when they are subsequently used) to the energy required to effect electrolysis."

The energy released by the exergonic process under standard conditions is

\[
\text{H}_2(\text{g}) + \frac{1}{2} \text{O}_2(\text{g}) \to \text{H}_2\text{O} = 3 \, 02.375 \, \text{BTU}
\]

which is 68.315 Kcal/mol. or, 286,021 Joules/mol, and is numerically equal to the enthalphy charge \((\Delta H)\) for the indicated process. On the other hand, the minimum energy (or useful work input) required at constant temperature and pressure for electrolysis equals the Gibbs free energy change \((\Delta G)\).

Penner shows that there is a basic relation derivable from the first and second laws of thermodynamics for isothermal changes which shows that

\[
\Delta G = \Delta H - T \Delta S \quad \text{......... (2)}
\]

where \(\Delta S\) represents the entropy change for the chemical reaction and \(T\) is the absolute temperature.

The Gibbs free energy change \((\Delta G)\) is also related to the voltage (\(e\)) required to implement electrolysis by Faraday’s equation:

\[
e = \left(\frac{\Delta G}{23.06 \, n}\right) \text{volts} \quad \text{......... (3)}
\]

where \(\Delta G\) is in Kcal/mol, and \(n\) is the number of electrons (or equivalents) per mole of water electrolysed and has the numerical value 2 in the equation (endergonic process),

\[
\text{H}_2\text{O} \to \text{H}_2 (\text{g}) + \frac{(1/2)\text{O}_2 (\text{g}) + 56.620 \text{ kcal or} + 249.68 \text{ BTU} \quad \text{......... (4)}
\]

Therefore, according to equation (2) at atmospheric pressure, and 300\(^\circ\)K:

\[
\Delta H = 68.315 \text{ kcal/mol of } \text{H}_2\text{O}, \quad \text{and}
\]

\[
\Delta G = 56.620 \text{ kcal / mol of } \text{H}_2\text{O} = 236,954 \text{ J/mol } \text{H}_2\text{O} \quad \text{for the electrolysis of liquid water.}
\]

In view of these thermodynamic parameters for the electrolysis of water into gases, hydrogen and oxygen, we can establish by Eq.(2) numeric values where,

\[
\Delta G = 236.954 \text{ J/mol } \text{H}_2\text{O} \quad \text{under standard conditions. Thus}
\]
\[ n = \frac{\Delta G \text{ (J/mol)}}{\Delta Ge \text{ (J/mol)}} < 1 \quad (5) \]

where \( \Delta Ge \) is the electrical energy input to \( \text{H}_2\text{O} \) in Joules, and \( \Delta G \) is the Gibbs free energy of \( \text{H}_2\text{O} \). The conversion between the two quantities is one Watt second (Ws) = one Joule.

Or, in terms of gas volume, as hydrogen, produced and measured,

\[ n = \frac{\text{Measured H}_2 \text{ (cc)}}{\text{Ideal H}_2 \text{ (cc)}} < 1 \quad (6) \]

In accordance with these general principles we present the methodology followed in evaluating the electrolytic of alternating current on \( \text{H}_2\text{O} \) in producing the gases, hydrogen and oxygen. No attempt has been made to utilize these gases according to the process of Eq.(1). It is to be noted that the process

\[ \text{H}_2 \text{ (g)} + \frac{1}{2}\text{O}_2 \text{ (g)} \rightarrow \text{H}_2\text{O} \text{ (g)} \quad (7) \]

yields only 57.796 kcal/mol. Eq.(7) shows that per mole of gases water formed at 300\(^\circ\)K, the heat released is reduced from the 68.315 kcal/mol at Eq. (1) by the molar heat of evaporation of water at 300\(^\circ\)K (10.5 kcal) and the overall heat release is 57.796 kcal/mol if \( \text{H}_2\text{O} \) (g) is formed at 300\(^\circ\)K.

In the following sections we describe the new method of electrolysis by means of alternating current, and the exact method and means used to measure the endergonic process of Eq.(4) and the governing Eq.(2) and Eq.(5).

5. Thermodynamic Measurement

In order to properly couple Component 2 to a mass spectrometer, one requires a special housing around Component 2 which will capture the gases produced, and permit these to be drawn under low vacuum into the mass spectrometer. Therefore a stainless steel and glass chamber was built to contain Component 2, and provision made to couple it directly through a \( \text{CO}_2 \) water-trap to the mass spectrometer with the appropriate stainless steel tubing. This chamber is designated as Component 4. Both the mass spectrometer and Component 4 were purged with helium and evacuated for a two hour period before any gas samples were drawn. In this way, contamination was minimized. The definitive measurement were done at Gollob Analytical Services in Berkeley Heights, New Jersey.

We now describe the use of Component 1 and how its energy output to Component 2 is measured. The energy output of Component 1 is an amplitude-modulated alternating current looking into a highly non-linear load, i.e., the water solution. Component 1 is so designed that at peak load it is in resonance across the system (Components 1, 2, and 3) and the vector diagrams show that the capacitive reactance, and the inductance reactance are almost exactly 180\(^\circ\) out of phase with each other, and so the net power output is reactive (the dissipative power is very small). This design ensures minimum power losses across the entire output system. In the experiments to be described, the entire emphasis is placed on achieving the maximum gas yield (credit) in exchange for the minimum applied electrical energy.

The most precise way to measure the applied energy from Component 1 to Component 2 and Component 3, is to measure the power, \( P \), in watts, W. Ideally this should be done with a precision wattmeter, but since we were interested in following the voltage and current separately, it was decided not to use the watt meter. Separate meters were used to continuously monitor the current and the volts.

This is done by precision measurement of the volts across Component 3 as root mean square (rms) volts; and the current flowing in the system as rms amperes. Precisely calibrated instruments were used to take these two measurements. A typical set of experiments using water in the form of 0.9% saline solution 0.1540 molar to obtain high efficiency hydrolysis gave the following results:

\[ \text{rms Current} = I = 25 \text{mA to 38 mA (0.025 A to 0.038 A.)} \]
\[ \text{rms Volts} = E = 4.0 \text{ Volts to 2.6 Volts} \]

The resultant ration between current and voltage is dependent on many factors such as the gap distance between the center and ring electrodes, dielectric properties of the water, conductivity properties of the water, equilibrium states, isothermal conditions, materials used, and even the pressure of clathrates. The above current and voltage values reflect the net effect of various combinations of such parameters. When one takes the product of rms current, and rms volts, one has a measure of the power, \( P \) in watts.

\[ P = I \times E = 25 \text{ mA} \times 4.0 \text{ volts} = 100 \text{ mW (0.1 W)} \]
and \( P = I \times E = 38 \text{ mA} \times 2.6 \text{ volts} = 98.8 \text{ mW (0.0988 W)} \)

At these power levels (with load), the resonant frequency of the system is 600 Hz (plus or minus 5 Hz) as measured on a precision frequency counter. The waveform was monitored for harmonic content on an oscilloscope, and the nuclear magnetic relaxation cycle was monitored on an XY plotting oscilloscope in order to maintain the proper hysteresis loop figure. All experiments were run so that the power in watts, applied through Components 1, 2, and 3 ranged between 98.8 mW to 100 mW.

Since by the International System of Units 1971 (ST), one Watt-second (Ws) is exactly equal to one Joule (J), our measurements of efficiency used these two yardsticks (1 Ws = 1 J) from the debit side of the measurement.

The energy output of the system is, of course, the two gases, Hydrogen (H\(_2\)) and Oxygen, (1/2)O\(_2\), and this credit side was measured in two laboratories, on two kinds of calibrated instruments, namely gas chromatography machine, and mass spectrometer machine.

The volume of gases H\(_2\) and (1/2)O\(_2\) was measured as produced under standard conditions of temperature and pressure in unit time, i.e., in cubic centimeters per minute (cc/min), as well as the possibility contaminating gases, such as air oxygen, nitrogen and argon, carbon monoxide, carbon dioxide, water vapor, etc.

The electrical and gas measurements were reduced to the common denominator of Joules of energy so that the efficiency accounting could all be handled in one currency. We now present the averaged results from many experiments. The standard error between different samples, machines, and locations is at +/- 10%, and we only use the mean for all the following calculations.

2. Thermodynamic Efficiency for the Endergonic Decomposition of Liquid Water (Salinized) to Gases Under Standard Atmosphere (754 to 750 mm. Hg) and Standard Isothermal Conditions @ 25\(^\circ\)C = 77\(^\circ\)F = 298.16\(^\circ\)K, According to the Following Reaction:

\[
\text{H}_2\text{O (1)} \rightarrow \text{H}_2(\text{g}) + (1/2)\text{O}_2(\text{g}) + \Delta G = 56.620 \text{ Kcal /mole} \quad \ldots \ldots \quad (10)
\]

As already described, \( \Delta G \) is the Gibbs function. We convert Kcal to our common currency of Joules by the formula, One Calorie = 4.1868 Joules

\[
\Delta G = 56.620 \text{ Kcal} \times 4.1868 \text{ J} = 236,954/\text{J/mol of H}_2\text{O where 1 mole = 18 gr.} \quad \ldots \ldots \quad (11)
\]

\( \Delta G = \) the electrical energy required to yield an equivalent amount of energy from H\(_2\)O in the form of gases H\(_2\) and (1/2)O\(_2\).

To simplify our calculation we wish to find out how much energy is required to produce the 1.0 cc of H\(_2\)O as the gases H\(_2\) and (1/2)O\(_2\). There are (under standard conditions) 22,400 cc = \( V \) of gas in one mole of H\(_2\)O. Therefore

\[
\Delta G / V = 236,954 \text{ J} / 22,400 \text{ cc} = 10.5783 \text{ J/cc.} \quad \ldots \ldots \quad (12)
\]

We now calculate how much electrical energy is required to liberate 1.0 cc of the H\(_2\)O gases (where H\(_2\) = 0.666 parts, and (1/2)O\(_2\) = 0.333 parts by volume) from liquid water. Since \( P = 1 \) Ws = 1 Joule , and \( V = 1.0 \) cc of gas = 10.5783 Joules, then

\[
P \times V = 1 \text{ Js} \times 10.5783 \text{ J} = 10.5783 \text{ Js, or,} = 10.5783 \text{ Ws} \quad \ldots \ldots \quad (13)
\]

Since our experiments were run at 100 mW ( 0.1 W) applied to the water sample in Component II, III, for 30 minutes, we wish to calculate the ideal (100% efficient) gas production at this total applied power level. This is,

0.1 Ws x 60 sec x 30 min = 180.00 Joules (for 30 min.). The total gas production at ideal 100% efficiency is 180 J/10.5783 J/cc = 17.01 cc H\(_2\)O (g)

We further wish to calculate how much hydrogen is present in the 17.01 cc H\(_2\)O (g).

17.01 cc H\(_2\)O (g) x 0.666 H\(_2\) (g) = 11.329 cc H\(_2\) (g) \ldots \ldots \quad (14)

17.01 cc H\(_2\)O (g) x 0.333 (1/2)O\(_2\) (g) = 5.681 cc (1/2)O\(_2\) (g)
Against this ideal standard of efficiency of expected gas production, we must measure the actual amount of gas produced under: (1) Standard conditions as defined above, and (2) 0.1 Ws power applied over 30 minutes. In our experiments, the mean amount of H₂ and (1/2)O₂ produced, as measured on precision calibrated GC, and MS machines in two different laboratories, where SE is +/- 10%, is,

Measured Mean = 10.80 cc H₂ (g)  
Measured Mean = 5.40 cc (1/2) cc (1/2)O₂ (g)  
Total Mean = 16.20 cc H₂O (g)

The ratio, n, between the ideal yield, and measured yield,

Measured H₂ (g) / Ideal H₂ (g) = 10.80 cc / 11.33 cc = 91.30%


This method is based on the number of electrons that must be removed, or added to decompose, or form one mole of, a substance of valence one. In water (H₂O), one mole has the following weight:

H = 1.008 gr /mol  
H = 1.008 gr /mol  
O = 15.999 gr/mol  
Thus, 1 mol H₂O = 18.015 gr/mol

For a univalent substance, one gram/mole contains 6.022 x 10-23 electrons = N = Avogadro's Number. If the substance is divalent, trivalent, etc., N is multiplied by the number of the valence. Water is generally considered to be of valence two.

At standard temperature and pressure ("STP") one mole of a substance contains 22.414 cc, where Standard temperature is 273.15K = 0°C = T. Standard Pressure (one atmosphere) = 760 mm Hg = P.

One Faraday ("F") is 96,485 Coulombs per mole (univalent).

One Coulomb ("C") is defined as:

1 N / 1 F = 6.122 x 10⁻²³ Electrons / 96,485 C = one C

The flow of one C/second = one Ampere.  
One C x one volt = one Joule second (Js).  
One Ampere per second @ one volt = one Watt = one Joule.

In alternating current, when amps (I) and Volts (E) are expressed in root mean squares (rms), their product is Power in watts.

P = IE watts (Watts = Amps x Volts).

With these basic definitions we can now calculate efficiency of electrolysis of water by the method of Faraday’s electrochemistry.

The two-electron model of water requires 2 moles of electrons for electrolysis (2 x 6.022 x 10⁻²³), or two Faraday quantities (2 x 96,485 = 192,970 Coulombs).

The amount of gas produced will be:

H₂ = 22.414 cc /mol at STP  
(1/2)O₂ = 11,207 cc / mol at STP  
Gases = 33.621 cc / mol H₂O (g)

The number of coulombs required to produce one cc of gases by electrolysis of water:

193,970 C / 33621 C = 5.739567 C per cc gases.
Then, 5.739 C/cc/sec = 5.739 amp/sec/cc. How many cc of total gases will be produced by 1 A/sec?

0.1742291709 cc.

How many cc of total gases will be produced by 1 A/min?

10.45375 cc/min

What does this represent as the gases H₂ and O₂?

\( \left( \frac{1}{2} \right) O_2 = 3.136438721 \text{ cc/Amp/min}. \)
\( H_2 = 6.2728 \text{ cc/Amp/min}. \)

We can now develop a Table for values of current used in some of our experiments, and disregarding the voltage as is done conventionally.

1. Calculations for 100 mA per minute:

Total Gases = 1.04537 cc/min
\( H_2 = 0.6968 \text{ cc/min} \)
\( \left( \frac{1}{2} \right) O_2 = 0.3484 \text{ cc/min} \)
30 min. \( H_2 = 20.9054 \text{ cc/30 minutes} \)

2. Calculations for 38 mA per minute:

Total Gases = 0.3972 cc/30 minutes
\( H_2 = 0.2645 \text{ cc/min} \)
\( \left( \frac{1}{2} \right) O_2 = 0.1323 \text{ cc/min} \)
30 min. \( H_2 = 7.9369 \text{ cc/min} \)

3. Calculations for 25mA per minute:

30 min. \( H_2 = 5.2263 \text{ cc/minute} \)

7. Conclusion

Fig.6 and Fig.7 [not available] show two of the many energy production systems that may be configured to include renewable sources and the present electrolysis technique. Figure 6 shows a proposed photovoltaic powered system using a fuel cell as the primary battery. Assuming optimum operating conditions using 0.25 watt seconds of energy from the photovoltaic array would enable 0.15 watt-seconds to be load.

Figure 7 depicts several renewable sources operating in conjunction with the electrolysis device to provide motive power for an automobile.

***************


METHOD AND APPARATUS FOR SPLITTING WATER MOLECULES

This is a re-worded extract from the United States Patent number 4,394,230. It describes how Henry Puharich was able to split water into hydrogen and oxygen gasses by a process which used very little input power.

ABSTRACT

Disclosed herein is a new and improved thermodynamic device to produce hydrogen gas and oxygen gas from ordinary water molecules or from seawater at normal temperatures and pressure. Also disclosed is a new and improved method for electrically treating water molecules to decompose them into hydrogen gas and oxygen gas at efficiency levels ranging between approximately 80-100%. The evolved hydrogen gas may be used as a fuel; and the evolved oxygen gas may be used as an oxidant.

Inventors: Puharich; Henry K. (Rte. 1, Box 97, Delaplane, VA 22025)
BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

The scientific community has long realised that water is an enormous natural energy resource, indeed an inexhaustible source, since there are over 300 million cubic miles of water on the earth’s surface, all of it a potential source of hydrogen for use as fuel. In fact, more than 100 years ago Jules Verne prophesied that water eventually would be employed as a fuel and that the hydrogen and oxygen which constitute it would furnish an inexhaustible source of heat and light.

Water has been split into its constituent elements of hydrogen and oxygen by electrolytic methods, which have been extremely inefficient, by thermochemical extraction processes called thermochemical water-splitting, which have likewise been inefficient and have also been inordinately expensive, and by other processes including some employing solar energy. In addition, artificial chloroplasts imitating the natural process of photosynthesis have been used to separate hydrogen from water utilising complicated membranes and sophisticated artificial catalysts. However, these artificial chloroplasts have yet to produce hydrogen at an efficient and economical rate.

These and other proposed water splitting techniques are all part of a massive effort by the scientific community to find a plentiful, clean, and inexpensive source of fuel. While none of the methods have yet proved to be commercially feasible, they all share in common the known acceptability of hydrogen gas as a clean fuel, one that can be transmitted easily and economically over long distances and one which when burned forms water.

SUMMARY OF THE PRESENT INVENTION

In classical quantum physical chemistry, the water molecule has two basic bond angles, one angle being 104°, and the other angle being 109°28'. The present invention involves a method by which a water molecule can be energised by electrical means so as to shift the bond angle from the 104° degree configuration to the 109° degree 28' tetrahedral geometrical configuration.

An electrical function generator (Component 1) is used to produce complex electrical wave form frequencies which are applied to, and match the complex resonant frequencies of the tetrahedral geometrical form of water. It is this complex electrical wave form applied to water which is contained in a special thermodynamic device (Component II) which shatters the water molecule by resonance into its component molecules --- hydrogen and oxygen.

The hydrogen, in gas form, may then be used as fuel; and oxygen, in gas form is used as oxidant. For example, the thermodynamic device of the present invention may be used as a hydrogen fuel source for any existing heat engine --- such as, internal combustion engines of all types, turbines, fuel cell, space heaters, water heaters, heat exchange systems, and other such devices. It can also be used for the desalination of sea water, and other water purification purposes. It can also be applied to the development of new closed cycle heat engines where water goes in as fuel, and water comes out as a clean exhaust.

For a more complete understanding of the present invention and for a greater appreciation of its attendant advantages, reference should be made to the following detailed description taken in conjunction with the accompanying drawings.

DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS:

Fig.1 is a schematic block diagram illustrating the electrical function generator, Component I, employed in the practice of the present invention:
Fig. 2 is a schematic illustration of the apparatus of the present invention, including a cross sectional representation of the thermodynamic device, Component II:

Fig. 3 is a cross-sectional view of Component III of the present invention, the water cell section of Component II:
Fig. 4 is an illustration of the hydrogen covalent bond:

![Diagram of hydrogen covalent bond](image)

Fig. 4A is an illustration of the hydrogen bond angle:

![Diagram of hydrogen bond angle](image)

Fig. 4B is an illustration of hybridised and un-hybridised orbitals:

![Diagram of hybridised and un-hybridised orbitals](image)
**Fig. 4C** is an illustration of the geometry of methane ammonia and water molecules:

**Fig. 5** is an illustration of an amplitude modulated carrier wave:
**Fig. 6** is an illustration of a ripple square wave:

![Ripple Square Wave](image)

**Fig. 6A** is an illustration of unipolar pulses.

**Fig. 7** is a diagram showing ion distribution at the negative electrode:

![Ion Distribution Diagram](image)
Fig. 8 is an illustration of tetrahedral bonding orbitals:
Fig. 9 is an illustration of water molecules:

Fig. 10 is an illustration of productive and non-productive collisions of hydrogen with iodine:
**Fig. 11** is a waveform found to be the prime characteristic for optimum efficiency:

**Fig. 12** is an illustration of pearl chain formation:

**Fig. 13** is a plot of the course of the onset of the barrier effect and the unblocking of the barrier effect:
Figs. 14A, B, and C are energy diagrams for exergonic reactions:
DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF INVENTION:

Section 1:
Apparatus of Invention;
The apparatus of the invention consists of three components, the Electrical Function Generator, the Thermodynamic Device, and the Water Cell.

Component I: The Electrical Function Generator;
This device has an output consisting of an audio frequency (range 20 to 200 Hz) amplitude modulation of a carrier wave (range 200 Hz to 100,000 Hz). The impedance of this output signal is continuously being matched to the load which is the second component, the thermodynamic device. The electrical function generator represents a novel application of circuitry disclosed in my earlier U.S. Pat. Nos. 3,629,521; 3,563,246; and 3,726,762, which are incorporated by reference herein. See Fig.1 for the block diagram of Component I.

Component II: The Thermodynamic Device;
The thermodynamic device is fabricated of metals and ceramic in the geometric form of coaxial cylinder made up of a central hollow tubular electrode which is surrounded by a larger tubular steel cylinder, said two electrodes comprising the coaxial electrode system which forms the load of the output of the electrical function generator, Component I. Said central hollow tubular electrode carries water, and is separated from the outer cylindrical electrode by a porous ceramic vitreous material. Between the outer surface of the insulating ceramic vitreous material, and the inner surface of the outer cylindrical electrode exists a space to contain the water to be electrolysed. This water cell space comprises the third component (Component III) of the invention. It contains two lengths of tubular Pyrex glass, shown in Fig.2 and Fig.3. The metal electrode surfaces of the two electrodes which are in contact with the water are coated with a nickel alloy.
The coaxial electrode system is specifically designed in materials and geometry to energise the water molecule to
the end that it might be electrolysed. The central electrode is a hollow tube and also serves as a conductor of
water to the Component III cell. The central tubular electrode is coated with a nickel alloy, and surrounded with a
porous vitreous ceramic and a glass tube with the exception of the tip that faces the second electrode. The outer
cylindrical electrode is made of a heat conducting steel alloy with fins on the outside, and coated on the inside
with a nickel alloy. The central electrode, and the cylindrical electrode are electrically connected by an arcing
dome extension of the outer electrode which brings the two electrodes at one point to a critical gap distance which
is determined by the known quenching distance for hydrogen. See Fig.2 for an illustration of Component II.

Component III: The Water Cell;
The water cell is a part of the upper end of Component II, and has been described. An enlarged schematic
illustration of the cell is presented in FIG. 3. The Component III consists of the water and glass tubes contained in
the geometrical form of the walls of cell in Component II, the thermodynamic device. The elements of a practical
device for the practice of the invention will include:
(A) Water reservoir; and salt reservoir; and/or salt

(B) Water injection system with microprocessor or other controls which sense and regulate (in accordance with
the parameters set forth here:
  a. Carrier frequency
  b. Current
  c. Voltage
  d. RC relaxation time constant of water in the cell
  e. Nuclear magnetic relaxation constant of water
  f. Temperature of hydrogen combustion
  g. Carrier wave form
  h. RPM of an internal combustion engine (if used)
  i. Ignition control system
  j. Temperature of region to be heated;

(C) An electrical ignition system to ignite the evolved hydrogen gas fuel.
The important aspects of Component III are the tubular vitreous material, the geometry of the containing walls of
the cell, and the geometrical forms of the water molecules that are contained in the cell. A further important aspect
of the invention is the manipulation of the tetrahedral geometry of the water molecule by the novel methods and
means which will be more fully described in the succeeding sections of this specification.

The different parts of a molecule are bound together by electrons. One of the electron configurations which can
exist is the covalent bond which is achieved by the sharing of electrons. A molecule of hydrogen gas, H₂ is the
smallest representative unit of covalent bonding, as can be seen in Fig.4. The molecule of hydrogen gas is
formed by the overlap and pairing of 1s orbital electrons. A new molecular orbit is formed in which the shared
electron pair orbits both nuclei as shown in Fig.4. The attraction of the nuclei for the shared electrons holds the
atoms together in a covalent bond.

Covalent bonds have direction. The electronic orbitals of an uncombined atom can change shape and direction
when that atom becomes part of a molecule. In a molecule in which two or more covalent bonds are present the
molecular geometry is dictated by the bond angles about the central atom. The outermost lone pair (non-bonding)
electrons profoundly affect the molecular geometry.

The geometry of water illustrates this concept. In the ground state, oxygen has the outer shell configuration:
\[ 1s^2 \ 2s^2 \ 2p_x^2 \ 2p_y^1 \ 2p_z^1 \]
In water the 1s electrons from two hydrogen atoms bond with the 2p_y and 2p_z electrons of oxygen. Since p orbitals
lie at right angles to each other (see Fig.4A), a bond angle of 90° might be expected. However, the bond angle is
found experimentally to be approximately 104°. Theoretically this is explained by the effect of lone pair electrons
on hybridised orbitals.

Combined or hybrid orbitals are formed when the excitation of 2s electrons results in their promotion from the
ground state to a state energetically equivalent to the 2p orbitals. The new hybrids are termed sp³ from the
combination of one s and three p orbitals (See Fig.4B). Hybrid sp³ orbitals are directed in space from the centre of
a regular tetrahedron toward the four corners. If the orbitals are equivalent the bond angle will be 109°28’ (See
Fig.15) consistent with the geometry of a tetrahedron. In the case of water two of the orbitals are occupied by
non-bonding electrons (See Fig.4C). There is greater repulsion of these lone pair electrons which orbit only one
nucleus, compared to the repulsion of electrons in bonding orbitals which orbit two nuclei. This tends to increase
the angle between non-bonding orbitals so that it is greater than 109°, which pushes the bonding orbitals together,
reducing the bond angle to 104°. In the case of ammonia, NH₃ where there is only one lone pair, the repulsion is
not so great and the bond angle is 107°. Carbon forms typical tetrahedral forms and components the simplest being the gas methane, CH₄. (See Fig.4C and Fig.8). The repulsion of lone pair electrons affects charge distribution and contributes to the polarity of a covalent bond. (See Fig.16)

As demonstrated in succeeding sections of this patent specification, a significant and novel aspect of this invention is the manipulation, by electronic methods and means, of the energy level of the water molecule, and the transformation of the water molecule into, and out of, the geometrical form of the tetrahedron. This is made possible only by certain subtle dynamic interactions among the Components I, II, and III of the present invention.

Section 2:
Electrodynamics (Pure Water);
The electrodynamics of Components I, II, and III, will be described individually and in interaction during the progress of pure water reaction rate in time. The reactions of saline water will be described in Section 3. It is to be noted that the output of Component I automatically follows the seven stages (hereinafter Stages A-F) of the reaction rate by varying its parameters of resonant carrier frequency, wave form, current voltage and impedance. All the seven states of the reaction herein described are not necessary for the practical operation of the system, but are included in order to explicate the dynamics and novel aspects of the invention. The seven stages are applicable only to the electrolysis of pure water.

Stage A:
Dry Charging of Component II by Component I;
To make the new system operational, the Component I output electrodes are connected to component II, but no water is placed in the cell of Component III. When Component I output is across the load of Component II we observe the following electrical parameters are observed:

Range of current (I) output with (dry) load: 0 to 25 mA (milliamps) rms.
Range of voltage (E) output with (dry) load: 0 to 250 Volts (AC) rms.
There is no distortion of the amplitude modulated (AM), or of the sine wave carrier whose central frequency, f_c', ranges between 59,748 Hz to 66,221 Hz, with f_c average = 62,985 Hz

The carrier frequency varies with the power output in that f_c goes down with an increase in amperes (current). The AM wave form is shown in Fig.5. It is to be noted here that the electrical function generator, Component I, has an automatic amplitude modulation volume control which cycles the degree of Amplitude Modulation from 0% to 100%, and then from 100% to 0% every 3.0 seconds. This cycle rate of 3.0 seconds corresponds to the nuclear spin relaxation time, tau/sec, of the water in Component III. The meaning of this effect will be discussed in greater detail in a later section.

In summary, the principal effects to be noted during Stage A -dry charging of Component II are as follows:

a. Tests the integrity of Component I circuitry.
b. Tests the integrity of the coaxial electrodes, and the vitreous ceramic materials of Component II and Component III.
c. Electrostatic cleaning of electrode and ceramic surfaces.

Stage B:
Initial operation of Component I, Component II, and with Component III containing pure water. There is no significant electrolysis of water during Stage B. However, in Stage B the sine wave output of Component I is shaped to a rippled square wave by the changing RC constant of the water as it is treated;

There is an `Open Circuit` reversible threshold effect that occurs in Component III due to water polarisation effects that lead to half wave rectification and the appearance of positive unipolar pulses; and
There are electrode polarisation effects in Component II which are a prelude to true electrolysis of water as evidenced by oxygen and hydrogen gas bubble formation.

Appearance of Rippled Square Waves:
Phase 1: At the end of the Stage A dry charging, the output of Component I is lowered to typical values of: I = 1 ma. E = 24V AC. f_c congruent.66,234 Hz.

Phase 2: Then water is added to the Component III water cell drop by drop until the top of the centre electrode, 1', in Fig.3 is covered, and when this water just makes contact with the inner surface of the top outer electrode at 2'. As this coupling of the two electrodes by water happens, the following series of events occur:

Phase 3: The f_c drops from 66,234 Hz, to a range from 1272 Hz to 1848 Hz. The current and voltage both drop, and begin to pulse in entrainment with the water nuclear spin relaxation constant, tau =3.0 sec. The presence of
the nuclear spin relaxation oscillation is proven by a characteristic hysteresis loop on the X-Y axes of an oscilloscope.

$I = 0$ to $0.2 \text{ mA}$ surging at .\text{tau.} cycle
$E = 4.3$ to $4.8 \text{ V}$ AC surging at .\text{tau.} cycle

The sine wave carrier converts to a rippled square wave pulse which reflects the RC time constant of water, and it is observed that the square wave contains higher order harmonics. See Fig.6:

With the appearance of the rippled square wave, the threshold of hydrolysis may be detected (just barely) as a vapour precipitation on a cover glass slip placed over the Component III cell and viewed under a low power microscope.

**The 'Open Circuit' Reversible Threshold Effect:**

**Phase 4** A secondary effect of the change in the RC constant of water on the wave form shows up as a full half wave rectification of the carrier wave indicating a high level of polarisation of the water molecule in tetrahedral form at the outer electrode.

With the already noted appearance of the rippled square wave, and the signs of faint vapour precipitation which indicate the earliest stage of electrolysis, it is possible to test for the presence of a reversible hydrolysis threshold. This test is carried out by creating an open circuit between Components I and II, i.e., no current flows. This is done by lowering the water level between the two electrodes in the region --- 1' and 2' shown in Fig.3; or by interrupting the circuit between Component I and II, while the Component I signal generator is on and oscillating.

Immediately, with the creation of an ‘open circuit’ condition, the following effects occur:

(a) The carrier frequency, $f_c$, shifts from Phase 4 valve 1272 Hz to 1848 Hz to 6128 Hz.
(b) The current and voltage drop to zero on the meters which record I and E, but the oscilloscope continues to show the presence of the peak-to-peak (p-p) voltage, and the waveform shows a remarkable effect. The rippled square wave has disappeared, and in its place appear unipolar (positive) pulses as follows in Fig.6A.

The unipolar pulse frequency stabilises to ca. 5000 Hz. The unipolar pulses undergo a 0 to 1.3 volt pulsing amplitude modulation with .\text{tau.} at 3.0 seconds. Thus, it is to be noted that pure water has a very high dielectric constant which makes such an effect possible.

The pulsing amplitude modulation of the voltage is determined by the Hydrogen Nuclear Spin Relaxation constant of 3.0 seconds. It is to be noted that the positive pulse spikes are followed by a negative after-potential. These pulse wave forms are identical to the classic nerve action potential spikes found in the nervous system of all of the living species which have a nervous system. The fact that these unipolar pulses were observed arising in water under the conditions of reversible threshold hydrolysis has a profound significance. These findings illuminate and confirm the Warren McCulloch Theory of water "crystal" dynamics as being the foundation of neural dynamics; and the converse theory of Linus Pauling which holds that water clathrate formation is the mechanism of neural anesthesia.

**Phase 5:** The effects associated with reversible threshold electrolysis are noted only in passing, since they reflect events which are occurring on the electrode surfaces of Component II, the Thermodynamic Device.

A principal effect which occurs in Stage B, Phase 3, in Component II, (the thermodynamic device), is that the two electrodes undergo stages of polarisation. It has been observed in extensive experiments with different kinds of fluids in the cell of Component II, i.e., distilled water, sea water, tap water, Ringers solution, dilute suspensions of animal and human blood cells, etc. that the inner surface of the outer ring electrode at 3’ in Fig.3 (the electrode that is in contact with the fluid) becomes negatively charged. Referring to Fig.7, this corresponds to the left hand columnar area marked, “Electrode .crclbar.”.

**Electrode Polarisation Effects at the Interface Between Components II and III:**
Concurrently with the driver pulsing of Component I at the .\text{tau.} constant cycle which leads to electrode polarisation effects in Component II, there is an action on Component III which energises and entrains the water molecule to a higher energy level which shifts the bond angle from 104° to the tetrahedral form with angle 109°28’ as shown in Fig.8 and Fig.15.

This electronic pumping action is most important, and represents a significant part of the novel method of this invention for several reasons. First, the shift to the tetrahedral form of water increases the structural stability of the water molecule, thereby making it more susceptible to breakage at the correct resonant frequency, or frequencies. Second, increasing the polarisation of the water molecule makes the lone pair electrons, $S-$ connected with the oxygen molecule more electronegative; and the weakly positive hydrogen atoms, $S+$ more positive. See Fig.9 and Fig.22.
As the outer electrode becomes more electrically negative, the central electrode becomes more electrically positive as will be shown. As the polarity of the water molecule tetrahedron increases, a repulsive force occurs between the two S+ apices of the water tetrahedron and the negatively charged electrode surface within the region of the Helmholtz layer, as shown in Fig. 7. This effect "orients" the water molecule in the field, and is the well-known "orientation factor" of electrochemistry which serves to catalyse the rate of oxygen dissociation from the water molecule, and thereby causes the reaction rate to proceed at the lowest energy levels. See Fig. 10 for an example of how the orientation factor works. Near the end of Stage B, the conditions are established for the beginning of the next stage, the stage of high efficiency electrolysis of water.

Stage C:
Generation of the complex wave form frequencies from Component I to match the complex wave form resonant frequencies of the energised and highly polarised water molecule in tetrahedral form with angles, 109°28’ are carried out in Stage C. In the operation of the invention active bubble electrolysis of water is initiated following Stage B, phase 3 by setting (automatically) the output of Component I to:

\[ I = 1 \, mA, \quad E = 22V \, AC\text{-}rms \]

causing the rippled square wave pulses to disappear with the appearance of a rippled sawtooth wave. The basic frequency of the carrier now becomes, \( f_c = 3980 \, Hz \).

The wave form now automatically shifts to a form found to be the prime characteristic necessary for optimum efficiency in the electrolysis of water and illustrated in Fig. 11. In the wave form of Fig. 11, the fundamental carrier frequency, \( f_c = 3980 \, Hz \), and a harmonic modulation of the carrier is as follows:

- 1st Order Harmonic Modulation (OHM) = 7960 Hz.
- 2nd Order Harmonic Modulation (II OHM) = 15,920 Hz.
- 3rd Order Harmonic Modulation (III OHM) = 31,840 Hz.
- 4th Order Harmonic Modulation (IV OHM) = 63,690 Hz.

What is believed to be happening in this IV OHM effect is that each of the four apices of the tetrahedron water molecule is resonant to one of the four harmonics observed. It is believed that the combination of negative repulsive forces at the outer electrode with the resonant frequencies just described work together to shatter the water molecule into its component hydrogen and oxygen atoms (as gases). This deduction is based on the following observations of the process through a low power microscope. The hydrogen bubbles were seen to originate at the electrode rim, 4’, of Fig. 3. The bubbles then moved in a very orderly ‘pearl chain’ formation centripetally (like the spokes of a wheel) toward the central electrode, 1’ of Fig. 3. (Fig. 12 shows a top view of this effect).

Thereafter, upon lowering the output of Component I, the threshold for electrolysis of water as evidenced by vapour deposition of water droplets on a glass cover plate over the cell of Component III, is:

\[ I = 1 \, mA, \quad E = 10V \, so, \quad \text{Power} = 10 \, mW \]

with all other conditions and waveforms as described under Stage C, supra. Occasionally, this threshold can be lowered to:

\[ I = 1 \, ma, \quad E = 2.6V \, so, \quad \text{Power} = 2.6 \, mW \]

This Stage C vapour hydrolysis threshold effect cannot be directly observed as taking place in the fluid because no bubbles are formed --- only invisible gas molecules which become visible when they strike a glass plate and combine into water molecules and form droplets which appear as vapour.

Stage D:
Production of hydrogen and oxygen gas at an efficient rate of water electrolysis is slowed in Stage D when a barrier potential is formed, which blocks electrolysis, irrespective of the amount of power applied to Components II and III.

A typical experiment will illustrate the problems of barrier potential formation. Components I, II, and III are set to operate with the following parameters:

\[ I = 1 \, ma, \quad E = 11.2V \, so, \quad \text{Power} = 11.2 \, mW \, (\text{at the start, rising to 100 mW later}) \]

This input to Component III yields, by electrolysis of water, approximately 0.1 cm³ of hydrogen gas per minute at one atmosphere and 289°K. It is observed that as a function of time the \( f_c \) crept up from 2978 Hz to 6474 Hz over 27 minutes. The current and the voltage also rose with time. At the 27th minute a barrier effect blocked the electrolysis of water, and one can best appreciate the cycle of events by reference to Fig. 13.
Stage E:
The Anatomy of the Barrier Effect:
Region A: Shows active and efficient hydrolysis
Region B: The barrier region effect can be initiated with taps of the finger, or it can spontaneously occur as a function of time.
Phase a: The current rose from 1 mA to 30 mA. The voltage fell from 22 volts to 2.5 V.
Phase b: If component II is tapped mechanically during Phase a supra --- it can be reversed as follows: The current dropped from 30 mA to 10 mA. The voltage shot up from 5 volts to over 250 volts (off scale).
Throughout ‘Phase a’ and ‘Phase b’, all hydrolysis has ceased. It was observed under the microscope that the inner surface of the outer electrode was thickly covered with hydrogen gas bubbles. It was reasoned that the hydrogen gas bubbles had become trapped in the electrostricted layer, because the water molecule tetrahedrons had flipped so that the S+ hydrogen apices had entered the Helmholtz layer and were absorbed to the electronegative charge of the electrode. This left the S- lone pair apices facing the electrostricted layer. This process bound the newly forming H+ ions which blocked the reaction
\[ H^+ + H^+ + 2e \rightarrow H_2 \text{ (gas)} \]

Stage F:
Region C: It was found that the barrier effect could be unblocked by some relatively simple procedures:
(a) Reversing the output electrodes from Component I to Component II, and/or:
(b) Mechanically tapping the Component III cell at a frequency T/2 = 1.5 seconds per tap.
These effects are shown in FIG. 12 and induce the drop in barrier potential from:
I = 10 mA to 1 ma, E = 250V to 4V so, Power fell from 2.5W to 4 mW

Upon unblocking of the barrier effect, electrolysis of water resumed with renewed bubble formation of hydrogen gas.

The barrier potential problem has been solved for practical application by lowering the high dielectric constant of pure water, by adding salts (NaCl, KOH, etc.) to the pure water thereby increasing its conductivity characteristics. For optimum efficiency the salt concentration need not exceed that of sea water (0.9% salinity) in Section 3, "Thermodynamics of the Invention", it is to be understood that all water solutions described are not "pure" water as in Section B, but refer only to saline water.

Section 3:
The Thermodynamics of the Invention (Saline Water);

Introduction: (water, hereinafter refers to saline water);
The thermodynamic considerations in the normal operations of Components I, II, and III in producing hydrogen as fuel, and oxygen as oxidant during the electrolysis of water, and the combustion of the hydrogen fuel to do work in various heat engines is discussed in this section.

In chemical reactions the participating atoms form new bonds resulting in compounds with different electronic configurations. Chemical reactions which release energy are said to be exergonic and result in products whose chemical bonds have a lower energy content than the reactants. The energy released most frequently appears as heat. Energy, like matter, can neither be created nor destroyed according to the Law of Conservation of Energy.
The energy released in a chemical reaction, plus the lower energy state of the products, is equal to the original energy content of the reactants. The burning of hydrogen occurs rather violently to produce water as follows:
\[ 2H_2 + O_2 \rightarrow 2H_2O - \Delta H 68.315 \text{ Kcal/mol (this is the enthalpy, or heat of combustion at constant pressure)} \] where 18 gms = 1 mol.
The chemical bonds of the water molecules have a lower energy content than the hydrogen and oxygen gases which serve at the reactants. Low energy molecules are characterised by their stability. High energy molecules are inherently unstable. These relations are summarised in the two graphs of Fig.14. It is to be noted that Fig.14B shows the endergonic reaction aspect of the invention when water is decomposed by electrolysis into hydrogen and oxygen.

Fig.14A shows the reaction when the hydrogen and oxygen gases combine, liberate energy, and re-form into water. Note that there is a difference in the potential energy of the two reactions. Fig.14C shows that there are two components to this potential energy. The net energy released, or the energy that yields net work is labelled in the diagram as “Net Energy Released”, and is more properly called the free energy change denoted by the Gibbs function, -\( \Delta G \).
The energy which must be supplied for a reaction to achieve (burning) spontaneity is called the “Activation Energy”. The sum of the two is the total energy released. A first thermodynamic subtlety of the thermodynamic device of the invention is noted in Angus McDougall's Fuel Cells, Energy Alternative Series, The MacMillan Press Ltd., London, 1976, where on page 15 it is stated:

"The Gibbs function is defined in terms of the enthalpy $H$, and the entropy $S$ of the system:

$$G = H - T\ S$$ (where $\tau$ is the thermodynamic temperature). A particularly important result is that for an electrochemical cell working reversibly at constant temperature and pressure, the electrical work done is the net work and hence,

$$\Delta G = -w_e$$

For this to be a reversible process, it is necessary for the cell to be on 'open circuit', that is, no current flows and the potential difference across the electrodes is the EMF, $E$. Thus,

$$\Delta G = -zFE$$

(where $F$ is the Faraday constant --- the product of the Avogadro Constant + $N_A = 6.022045 \times 10^{23}$ mole$^{-1}$, and the charge on the electron, $e = 1.602 189 \times 10^{-19}$ C --- both in SI units; and $z$ is the number of electrons transported.)

when the cell reaction proceeds from left to right."

It is to be noted that the Activation Energy is directly related to the controlling reaction rate process, and thus is related to the Gibbs free energy changes. The other thermodynamic subtlety is described by S. S. Penner in his work: Penner, S. S. and L. Icerman, Energy, Vol. II, Non-Nuclear Energy Technologies. Addison-Wesley Publishing Company, Inc. Revised Edition, 1977. Reading, Mass. where on page 140 it is stated that:

"It should be possible to improve the efficiency achieved in practical electrolysis to about 100% because, under optimal operating conditions, the theoretically-attainable energy conversion by electrolysis is about 120% of the electrical energy input. The physical basis for this last statement will now be considered:

"A useful definition for energy efficiency in electrolysis is the following: the energy efficiency is the ratio of the energy released from the electrolysis products formed (when they are subsequently used) to the energy required to effect electrolysis. The energy released by the process

$$H_2 (\text{gas}) + (1/2)O_2 (\text{gas}) \rightarrow H_2O (\text{liquid})$$

under standard conditions (standard conditions in this example are: (1) atmospheric pressure = 760 mm Hg and (2) temperature = 298.16$^\circ$K = 25$^\circ$C. = 77$^\circ$F.) is 68.315 Kcal and is numerically equal to the enthalpy change ($\Delta H$) for the indicated process. On the other hand, the minimum energy (or useful work input) required at constant temperature and pressure for electrolysis equals the Gibbs free energy change ($\Delta G$). There is a basic relation derivable from the first and second laws of thermodynamics for isothermal changes, which shows that:

$$\Delta G = \Delta H - T \cdot \Delta S$$

where $\Delta S$ represents the entropy change for the chemical reaction. The Gibbs free energy change ($\Delta G$) is also related to the voltage ($E$) required to implement electrolysis by Faraday's equation, viz.

$$E = (\Delta G/23.06n) \text{ volts}$$

where $\Delta G$ is in Kcal/mol and $n$ is the number of electrons (or equivalents) per mol of water electrolysed and has the numerical value 2.

At atmospheric pressure and 300$^\circ$K., $\Delta H = 68.315$ Kcal/mol of $H_2O (i)$ and $\Delta G = 56.62$ Kcal/mole of $H_2O (i)$ for the electrolysis of liquid water. Hence, the energy efficiency of electrolysis at 300$^\circ$K. is about 120%.

(When) $H_2 (\text{gas})$ and $O_2 (\text{gas})$ are generated by electrolysis, the electrolysis cell must absorb heat from the surroundings, in order to remain at constant temperature. It is this ability to produce gaseous electrolysis products with heat absorption from the surroundings that is ultimately responsible for energy-conversion efficiencies during electrolysis greater than unity."

Using the criteria of these two authorities, it is possible to make a rough calculation of the efficiency of the present invention.

**Section 4: Thermodynamic Efficiency of the Invention;**

Efficiency is deduced on the grounds of scientific accounting principles which are based on accurate measurements of total energy input to a system (debit), and accurate measurements of total energy (or work) obtained out of the system (credit). In principle, this is followed by drawing up a balance sheet of energy debits and credits, and expressing them as an efficiency ration, $\epsilon$.

$$\epsilon = \frac{\text{Credit}}{\text{Debit}} = \frac{\text{Energy Out}}{\text{Energy In}} < 1$$
The energy output of Component I is an alternating current passing into a highly non-linear load, i.e., the water solution. This alternating current generator (Component I) is so designed that at peak load it is in resonance (Components I, II, III), and the vector diagrams show that the capacitive reactance, and the inductive reactance are almost exactly 180° out of phase, so that the net power output is reactive, and the dissipative power is very small. This design insures minimum power losses across the entire output system. In the experiments which are now to be described the entire emphasis was placed on achieving the maximum gas yield (credit) in exchange for the minimum applied energy (debit).

The most precise way to measure the applied energy to Components II and III is to measure the Power, P, in Watts, W. This was done by precision measurements of the volts across Component II as root mean square (rms) volts; and the current flowing in the system as rms amperes. Precisely calibrated instruments were used to take these two measurements. A typical set of experiments (using water in the form of 0.9% saline solution = 0.1540 molar concentration) to obtain high efficiency hydrolysis gave the following results:

- rms Current = 25 mA to 38 mA (0.025 A to 0.038 A)
- rms Volts = 4 Volts to 2.6 Volts

At these power levels (with load), the resonant frequency of the system is 600 Hz (plus or minus 5 Hz) as measured on a precision frequency counter. The wave form was monitored for harmonic content on an oscilloscope, and the nuclear magnetic relaxation cycle was monitored on an X-Y plotting oscilloscope in order to maintain the proper hysteresis loop figure. All experiments were run so that the power in Watts, applied through Components I, II, and III ranged between 98.8 mW to 100 mW. Since, by the International System of Units --- 1971 (SI), One-Watt-second (Ws) is exactly equal to One Joule (J), the measurements of efficiency used these two yardsticks (1 Ws = 1 J) for the debit side of the measurement.

The energy output of the system is, of course, the two gases, hydrogen (H₂) and oxygen (1/2O₂), and this credit side was measured in two laboratories, on two kinds of calibrated instruments, namely, a Gas Chromatography Machine, and, a Mass Spectrometer Machine.

The volume of gases, H₂ and (1/2)O₂, was measured as produced under standard conditions of temperature and pressure in unit time, i.e., in ccs per minute (cc/min), as well as the possibly contaminating gases, such as air oxygen, nitrogen and argon; carbon monoxide, carbon dioxide, water vapour, etc.

The electrical, and gas, measurements were reduced to the common denominator of Joules of energy so that the efficiency accounting could all be handled in common units. The averaged results from many experiments follow. The Standard Error between different samples, machines, and locations is plus or minus 10%, and only the mean was used for all the following calculations.

Section 5:
Endergonic Decomposition of Liquid Water;
Thermodynamic efficiency for the endergonic decomposition of saline liquid water into gases under standard atmosphere (754 to 750 m.m. Hg), and standard isothermal conditions @ 25°C. = 77°F. = 298.16°K., according to the following reaction:

\[ \text{H}_2\text{O}(1) \rightarrow \text{H}_2(\text{g}) + (1/2)\text{O}_2(\text{g}) + \Delta G \text{ 56.620 KCal/mole} \]

As already described, \( \Delta G \) is the Gibbs function (Fig.14B). A conversion of Kcal to the common units, Joules, by the formula, One Calorie = 4.1868 Joules was made.

\[ \Delta G = 56.620 \text{ Kcal} \times 4.1868 \text{ J} = 236,954 \text{ J/mol of H}_2\text{O (1) where, 1 mole is 18 gms.} \]

\( \Delta G \) = the free energy required to yield an equivalent amount of energy from H₂O in the form of the gases, H₂ and (1/2)O₂.

To simplify the calculations, the energy required to produce 1.0 cc of H₂O as the gases, H₂ and (1/2)O₂ was determined. There are (under standard conditions) 22,400 cc = V, of gas in one mole of H₂O. Therefore:

\[ \frac{\Delta G}{V} = \frac{236,954 \text{ J}}{22,400 \text{ cc}} = 10.5793 \text{ J/cc} \]
The electrical energy required to liberate 1.0 cc of the H₂O gases (where H₂ = 0.666 parts, and (1/2)O₂ = 0.333 parts, by volume) from liquid water is then determined. Since P = 1 Ws = 1 Joule, and V=1.0 cc of gas = 10.5783 Joules, then:

\[ PV = 1 \times 10.5783 \text{ J} = 10.5783 \text{ Ws} \]

Since the experiments were run at 100 mW (0.1 W) applied to the water sample in Component II, III, for 30 minutes, the ideal (100% efficient) gas production at this total applied power level was calculated.

0.1 Ws x 60 sec x 30 min = 180.00 Joules (for 30 min)
The total gas production at Ideal 100% efficiency is,

\[ 180.00 \text{ J} / 10.5783 \text{ J/cc} = 17.01 \text{ cc H₂O (g)} \]
The amount of hydrogen present in the 17.01 cc H₂O (g) was then calculated.

17.01 cc H₂O (gas) x 0.666 H₂ (g) = 11.329 cc H₂ (g)
17.01 cc H₂O (g) x 0.333 (1/2)O₂ (g) = 5.681 cc (1/2)O₂ (g)

Against this ideal standard of efficiency of expected gas production, the actual amount of gas produced was measured under: (1) standard conditions as defined above (2) 0.1 Ws power applied over 30 minutes. In the experiments, the mean amount of H₂ and (1/2)O₂ produced, as measured on precision calibrated GC, and MS machines in two different laboratories, where the S.E. is +/-10%, was,

Measured Mean = 10.80 cc H₂ (g)
Measured Mean = 5.40 cc (1/2)O₂ (g)
Total Mean = 16.20 cc H₂O(g)

The ratio, \( \eta \), between the ideal yield, and measured yield is:

\[ \eta = \frac{\text{Measured H₂(g)}}{\text{Ideal H₂(g)}} = \frac{10.80 \text{ cc}}{11.33 \text{ cc}} = 94.30\% \]

Section 6:
Energy Release;
The total energy release (as heat, or electricity) from an exergonic reaction of the gases, H₂ and O₂, is given by:

\[ \text{H₂(g)} + \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)\text{O₂(g)} \rightarrow \text{H₂O(ρ)} - \Delta H = 68.315 \text{ Kcal/mol} = (-\Delta H) 286,021 \text{ Joules/mol} \]

It is possible (Penner, Op. Cit., p.128) to get a total heat release, or total conversion to electricity in a fuel cell, in the above reaction when the reactants are initially near room temperature (298.16°K.), and the reactant product (H₂O) is finally returned to room temperature. With this authoritative opinion in mind, it is desirable to determine the amount of energy released (ideal) from the exergonic experiment. The total energy of 1.0 cc of H₂O (1), as above is:

\[ 1.0 \text{ cc } \Delta H = \frac{286,021 \text{ J/mol}}{22,400 \text{ cc/mol}} - 12,7687 \text{ J/cc H₂O} \]

for H₂ = 12.7687 x 0.666 = 8.509 J/0.66 cc H₂ for O₂ = 12.7687 x 0.333 = 4.259 J/0.33 cc (1/2)O₂ The energy produced from the gases produced in the experiments in an exergonic reaction was:

16.20 cc H₂O (g) x 12.7687 J/cc H₂O = 206,8544 J.

The overall energy transaction can be written as:

\[ \frac{\text{EXERGONIC}}{\text{ENDERGONIC}} - \eta - \frac{-\Delta H}{+\Delta G} = \frac{206,854.4 \text{ J}}{180,000 \text{ J}} = 114.92\% \]

In practical bookkeeping terms the balance of debits and credits, n = (-.ΔH) - (+.ΔG), so:

\[ n = 206.8544 \text{ J} - 180.0 = + 26.8544 \text{ J (surplus)} \]

Since, in the invention, the gas is produced where and when needed, there is no additional cost accounting for liquefaction, storage, or transportation of the hydrogen fuel, and the oxygen oxidant. Therefore, the practical efficiency, is:
In practical applications, the energy output (exergonic) of the Component II System can be parsed between the electrical energy required to power the Component I System, as an isothermal closed loop; while the surplus of approximately 15% can be shunted to an engine (heat, electrical, battery, etc.) that has a work load. Although this energy cost accounting represents an ideal model, it is believed that there is enough return (approximately 15%) on the capital energy investment to yield a net energy profit that can be used to do useful work.

CONCLUSION:

From the foregoing disclosure it will be appreciated that the achievement of efficient water splitting through the application of complex electrical waveforms to energised water molecules, i.e. tetrahedral molecules having bonding angles of 109°28', in the special apparatus described and illustrated, will provide ample and economical production of hydrogen gas and oxygen gas from readily available sources of water. It is to be understood, that the specific forms of the invention disclosed and discussed herein are intended to be representative and by way of illustrative example only, since various changes may be made therein without departing from the clear and specific teachings of the disclosure. Accordingly, reference should be made to the following appended claims in determining the full scope of the method and apparatus of the present invention.
Please note that this is a re-worded excerpt from this patent. This patent describes an electrolysis system which it is claimed has demonstrated ten times the efficiency that Faraday considered to be the maximum possible.

**ABSTRACT**
An apparatus for decomposition of liquid, in which spiral negative and positive electrodes are arranged close together but not touching. These two electrodes are supplied with power through external terminals and the electrolyte is caused to flow between the negative and positive electrodes for the electrolysis between two electrodes under the function of the potential magnetic field formed by the coil current which is generated by the electrodes with active movement of an electrolytic ion so that the electrolysis of water takes place smoothly under the spin functions of the atom and electron.

**BACKGROUND AND SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION**
This invention relates to an apparatus for decomposition of liquid where a flowing electrolyte is subjected to electrolysis for the production of gases.

As is well known, water is composed of hydrogen atoms and oxygen atoms. When water is sufficiently magnetised, each constitutive atom is also weakly magnetised to rotate the elementary particle in a regular direction. This rotation of the elementary particle is generally called "spin". That is, the spin function is caused by an electron, atomic nucleus, atom and even by the molecule. When a negative electrode is immersed in the electrolyte - Sodium Hydroxide ("lye") solution - with a view to applying a voltage to it in order to cause the elementary particle to react with the electric field, the coupling state of the hydrogen with the oxygen is varied and the electrolysis is facilitated by the spin.

In the present invention, spiral negative and positive electrodes are arranged close together but not touching and these two electrodes are supplied with power through external terminals and the electrolyte is caused to flow between the negative and positive electrodes. Thus, the electrolyte is subjected to the electrolysis between two electrodes while within a magnetic field formed by the coil current which is generated by the electrodes with active movement of an electrolytic ion ($\text{Na}^+$, $\text{OH}^-$) so that the electrolysis of water takes place smoothly under the spin functions of the atom and electron.

It has been confirmed that the rate of the electrolysis of water using this invention is approximately 10 or more times (approximately 20 times when calculated) than that produced by conventional electrolysis.

The design of the electrolytic cell of this invention is such that the electrolyte flowing through the supply ports provided at the lower portion of the electrolytic cell is subjected to the magnetic field produced by a permanent magnet and the electrodes cause it to be further subjected to magnetic and electric fields which cause it to obtain a sufficient spin effect.

It is, therefore, a general object of the invention to provide a novel apparatus for decomposition of liquid in which an electrolyte (NaOH) solution is subjected to magnetic fields to cause electrolysis assisted by the spin of the water molecules which produces a great amount of gas with less consumption of electrical energy.

A principal object of the invention is to provide an apparatus for decomposition of liquid which has a liquid circulating system for the separation of gas and liquid in which positive and negative spiral electrodes are arranged across the flow path of the liquid and the opposite ends of the electrodes being provided with magnetic materials to augment the effect caused by the applied voltage across a liquid passing through a magnetic field caused by the positive and negative spiral electrodes, thereby to promote generation and separation of cat-ions and an-ions with a high efficiency in production of a large quantity of gases.

Other objects and advantages of the present invention will become apparent through the detailed description which follows.
BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS
The invention will be described more in detail in the following with reference to the accompanying drawings, wherein:

Fig.1 is a partially cross-sectional schematic elevation of an apparatus in accordance with the invention;
**Fig. 2** is a perspective view of electrodes arranged in accordance with the invention;

**Fig. 3** is a plan view of electrodes with magnetic materials.

**DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENT**

A - 721
In Fig.1, an electrolysis cell 10, a gas-liquid separation tank 12 and a gas-washing tank 14 are vertically arranged as shown with the electrolytic cell 10 being positioned a little lower than the tanks.

Cell 10 and tanks 12 and 14 are connected together by a delivery pipe 16 which connects the top of the electrolytic cell 10 with the middle of the gas-liquid separation tank 12. A feed-back pipe 18 containing a pump 20, is provided to connect the bottom of the gas-liquid separation tank 12, with the bottom of the electrolytic cell 10. Also provided is pipe 22, which runs from the top of the gas-liquid separation tank 12 through a valve 24 to the bottom of the gas-washing tank 14. A drain pipe 26, provided with a valve 28, is taken from the top of the gas-washing tank 14.

In the electrolytic cell 10, positive and negative spiral electrodes 30 of diameters suited to the internal diameter of the electrolytic cell 10 are arranged coaxially. At the upper and lower parts of the spiral electrodes 30 are arranged magnet rings 32 and 34 made from ferrite or similar material, positioned so that North and South poles are opposite one another to create a magnetic field which is at right angles to the axis of the electrolytic cell.

Electrodes 30 are composed of two metal strips 36 which are wound into spiral shapes with cylindrical insulating spacers 38 made of rubber or a similar material, placed between them and attached to the surface of the metal strips 36. From the metal strips 36, wires 40, are taken to the positive and negative power supply terminals, via connectors provided in the inner wall of the electrolytic cell.

The electrolytic cell 10 and the gas-liquid separation tank 12 are filled with an electrolyte 44 which is circulated by the pump 20, while the gas-washing tank 14 is filled with a washing liquid 46 to such a level that gases gushing out of the conduit 22 are thoroughly washed.

The apparatus of the present invention may be well be used for the electrolysis of flowing water for the production of hydrogen gas and oxygen gas at a high efficiency. That is to say, the electrolytic cell 10 and the gas-liquid separation tank 12 are filled with the electrolyte 44 which is caused by pump 20 to flow through a magnetic field in an vortex path in which positive and negative magnetic poles N, S of the magnets 32 and 34 face each other to
produce a transverse field, and through the metal plates 36 of the vortical electrodes 30 to generate an orientation for the electrical migration of cat-ions and an-ions, causing an increased gas separation rate and enhancement of the electrolysis.

In particular, the flowing oxygen gas serves to facilitate an aeration of the electrolyte since it has varying magnetic effects as it passes through the magnetic field. The spiral electrodes 30 of this invention, create a remarkable increase in the rate of electrolysis. This is caused by the continuously decreasing space between the electrodes 30 which causes the flow velocity to increase as the flow progresses along its path. This causes turbulence which instantly removes bubbles of gas from the surface of the electrodes, allowing fresh ions full contact with the metal surfaces, thus raising the efficiency of the cell.

The spiral coiling of the electrodes also enables a very desirable reduction in the size of the cell, while increasing the electrode area and improving its contact with the electrolyte 44. There is also a relatively short migration distance of ions which also promotes rapid gas production. On the other hand, insulating spacers 38 interposed between the metal strips 36 serves to create the desired turbulence of the electrolyte passing through the cell.

The liquid circulating system for separation of gas and liquid requires no other driving unit except the circulation pump 20 to achieve separation of gas and liquid by utilising differences in water heads between cell 10 and tanks 12 and 14. In other words, a flow of gas-liquid mixture supplied from electrolytic cell 10 is fed into the gas-liquid separation tank 12 where, due to the difference in buoyancy of gases and liquid, the gas rises and is fed into the gas-washing tank 14 while the liquid moves down and is returned to the electrolytic cell 10. The washing tank 14 is filled with any convenient washing liquid 46 so that the gases gushing out of conduit 22 are thoroughly washed and fed into the drain pipe 26. Thus, the apparatus may be constructed at reduced cost and without any complexity.

As described earlier, the magnets 32 and 34 provide positive and negative magnetic poles N, S which are confronted in the annular wall for facilitating an alignment between the cross section of the flow-path of the liquid and the annular portion of the magnets 32 and 34 and a generation of a magnetic field in a direction perpendicular to that of the liquid flow, so that the liquid is forced to flow through the magnetic field.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Experimental data</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Room temperature</td>
<td>20°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Centigrade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atmospheric pressure</td>
<td>1003 millibars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrolyte temperature</td>
<td>25°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Centigrade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Humidity</td>
<td>43%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voltage</td>
<td>2.8 Volts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current</td>
<td>30 Amps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydroxy gas production rate</td>
<td>116 cc/sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrogen production per Coulomb (1A x 1 sec.)</td>
<td>2.6 cc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxygen production per Coulomb</td>
<td>1.3 cc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The rate of generation shown by these figures is over 20 times that which could be obtained by standard Faraday electrolysis.
While a preferred embodiment of the invention has been illustrated by way of example in the drawings and particularly described, it will be understood that various modifications may be made in the construction and that the invention is no way limited to the embodiments shown.
This patent describes an electrolyser system capable of running a small internal combustion engine directly from water alone.

**ABSTRACT**
An apparatus for producing orthohydrogen and/or parahydrogen. The apparatus includes a container holding water and at least one pair of closely-spaced electrodes arranged within the container and submerged in the water. A first power supply provides a particular first pulsed signal to the electrodes. A coil may also be arranged within the container and submerged in the water if the production of parahydrogen is also required. A second power supply provides a second pulsed signal to the coil through a switch to apply energy to the water. When the second power supply is disconnected from the coil by the switch and only the electrodes receive a pulsed signal, then orthohydrogen can be produced. When the second power supply is connected to the coil and both the electrodes and coil receive pulsed signals, then the first and second pulsed signals can be controlled to produce parahydrogen. The container is self-pressurised and the water within the container requires no chemical catalyst and yet can produce the orthohydrogen and/or parahydrogen efficiently. Heat is not generated, and bubbles do not form on the electrodes.

**BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION**
Conventional electrolysis cells are capable of producing hydrogen and oxygen from water. These conventional cells generally include two electrodes arranged within the cell which apply energy to the water to thereby produce hydrogen and oxygen. The two electrodes are conventionally made of two different materials.

However, the hydrogen and oxygen generated in the conventional cells are generally produced in an inefficient manner. That is, a large amount of electrical power has to be applied to the electrodes in order to produce the hydrogen and oxygen. Moreover, a chemical catalyst such as sodium hydroxide or potassium hydroxide must be added to the water to separate hydrogen or oxygen bubbles from the electrodes. Also, the produced gas must often be transported to a pressurised container for storage, because conventional cells produce the gases slowly. Also, conventional cells tend to heat up, creating a variety of problems, including boiling of the water. In addition, conventional cells tend to form gas bubbles on the electrodes which act as electrical insulators and reduce the efficiency of the cell.

Accordingly, it is extremely desirable to produce a large amount of hydrogen and oxygen with only a modest amount of input power. Furthermore, it is desirable to produce the hydrogen and oxygen with "regular" tap water and without any additional chemical catalyst, and to operate the cell without the need for an additional pump to pressurise it. It is also desirable to construct both of the electrodes from the same material. It is also desirable to produce the gases quickly, and without heat, and without bubbles forming on the electrodes.

Orthohydrogen and parahydrogen are two different isomers of hydrogen. Orthohydrogen is that state of hydrogen molecules in which the spins of the two nuclei are parallel. Parahydrogen is that state of hydrogen molecules in which the spins of the two nuclei are antiparallel. The different characteristics of orthohydrogen and parahydrogen lead to different physical properties. For example, orthohydrogen is highly combustible whereas parahydrogen is a slower burning form of hydrogen. Thus, orthohydrogen and parahydrogen can be used for different applications. Conventional electrolytic cells make only orthohydrogen and parahydrogen. Parahydrogen is difficult and expensive to make by conventional means.

Accordingly, it is desirable to produce orthohydrogen and/or parahydrogen cheaply within a cell and to be able to control the amount of either produced by that cell. It is also desirable to direct the produced orthohydrogen or parahydrogen to a coupled machine in order to provide a source of energy for it.

**SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION**
It is therefore an object of the present invention to provide a cell having electrodes and containing water which produces a large amount of hydrogen and oxygen in a relatively small amount of time, and with a modest amount of input power, and without generating heat.
It is another object of the present invention for the cell to produce bubbles of hydrogen and oxygen which do not bunch around or on the electrodes.

It is also an object of the present invention for the cell to operate properly without a chemical catalyst. Thus, the cell can be run using ordinary tap water. This has the advantage of avoiding the additional costs required for producing the chemical catalyst.

It is another object of the present invention for the cell to be self-pressurising. Thus avoiding the need for an additional pump.

It is another object of the present invention to provide a cell having electrodes made of the same material. This material can, for example, be stainless steel. Thus, the construction of the cell can be simplified and construction costs reduced.

It is another object of the present invention to provide a cell which is capable of producing orthohydrogen, parahydrogen or a mixture thereof and can be set so as to produce any relative amount of orthohydrogen and parahydrogen desired by the user.

It is another object of the invention to couple the gaseous output of the cell to a device, such as an internal combustion engine, so that the device may be powered from the gas supplied to it.

These and other objects, features, and characteristics of the present invention will be more apparent upon consideration of the following detailed description and appended claims with reference to the accompanying drawings, wherein the same reference numbers have been used to indicate corresponding parts in the various figures.

Accordingly, the present invention includes a container for holding water. At least one pair of closely-spaced electrodes are positioned within the container and submerged under the water. A first power supply provides a particular pulsed signal to the electrodes. A coil is also arranged in the container and submerged under the water. A second power supply provides a particular pulsed signal through a switch to the electrodes.

When only the electrodes receive a pulsed signal, then orthohydrogen can be produced. When both the electrodes and coil receive pulsed signals, then parahydrogen or a mixture of parahydrogen and orthohydrogen can be produced. The container is self pressurised and the water within the container requires no chemical catalyst to produce the orthohydrogen and/or parahydrogen efficiently.
BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

Fig. 1 is a side view of a cell for producing orthohydrogen including a pair of electrodes according to a first embodiment of the present invention;
Fig. 2 is a side view of a cell for producing orthohydrogen including two pairs of electrodes according to a second embodiment of the present invention;
Fig. 3 is a side view of a cell for producing orthohydrogen including a pair of cylindrical-shaped electrodes according to a third embodiment of the present invention;
Fig. 4a is a diagram illustrating a square wave pulsed signal which can be produced by the circuit of Fig. 5 and applied to the electrodes of Fig. 1 through Fig. 3;

Fig. 4b is a diagram illustrating a sawtooth wave pulsed signal which can be produced by the circuit of Fig. 5 and applied to the electrodes of Fig. 1 through Fig. 3;

Fig. 4c is a diagram illustrating a triangular wave pulsed signal which can be produced by the circuit of Fig. 5 and applied to the electrodes of Fig. 1 through Fig. 3;
Fig. 5 is an electronic circuit diagram illustrating a power supply which is connected to the electrodes of Fig. 1 through Fig. 3;

![Fig. 5](image)

Fig. 6 is a side view of a cell for producing at least parahydrogen including a coil and a pair of electrodes according to a fourth embodiment of the present invention;

![Fig. 6](image)
Fig. 7 is a side view of a cell for producing at least para-hydrogen including a coil and two pairs of electrodes according to a fifth embodiment of the present invention;
Fig. 8 is a side view of a cell for producing at least parahydrogen including a coil and a pair of cylindrical-shaped electrodes according to a sixth embodiment of the present invention; and
Fig. 9 is an electronic circuit diagram illustrating a power supply which is connected to the coil and electrodes of Fig. 6 through Fig. 8.

**DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENT**

Fig. 1 shows a first embodiment of the present invention including a cell for producing hydrogen and oxygen. As will be discussed below in conjunction with Figs. 6-8, the production of parahydrogen requires an additional coil not shown in Fig. 1. Thus, the hydrogen produced by the first embodiment of Fig. 1 is orthohydrogen.
The cell includes a closed container 111 which is closed at its bottom portion by threaded plastic base 113 and screw thread base 109. The container 111 can be made of, for example, Plexiglas and might have a height of 430 mm and a width of 90 mm. The container 111 holds tap water 110.

The cell also includes a pressure gauge 103 to measure the pressure within the container 111. An outlet valve 102 is connected to the top of the container 111 to permit any gas within the container to escape into an output tube 101.

The cell also includes an over-pressure valve 106 connected to a base 113. The valve 106 provides a safety function by automatically releasing the pressure within the container 111 if the pressure exceeds a predetermined threshold. For example, the valve 106 may be set so that it will open if the pressure in the container exceeds 75 p.s.i. Since the container 111 is built to withstand a pressure of about 200 p.s.i., the cell is provided with a large safety margin.

A pair of electrodes 105a and 105b are arranged within the container 111. These electrodes are submerged under the top level of the water 110 and define an interaction zone 112 between them. The electrodes are preferably made from the same material, such as stainless steel.

In order to produce an optimum amount of hydrogen and oxygen, an equal spacing between the electrodes 105a and 105b must be maintained. Moreover, it is preferable to minimise the spacing between the electrodes. However, the electrodes cannot be positioned excessively close together, because arcing between the electrodes would occur. It has been determined that a spacing of 1 mm is the optimum spacing for producing hydrogen and oxygen. Spacing up to 5 mm can work effectively, but spacing above 5 mm has not worked well, except with excessive power.

Hydrogen and oxygen gas may be output through tube 101 to a device 120 which can use those gases, for example an internal combustion engine, such as shown in Fig.1. Instead of an internal combustion engine, device 120 may be any device using hydrogen and oxygen, including a reciprocating piston engine, a gas turbine engine, a stove, a heater, a furnace, a distillation unit, a water purification unit, a hydrogen/oxygen jet, or other device using the gases. With an adequately productive example of the present invention, any such device 120 using the output gases can be run continuously without the need for storing dangerous hydrogen and oxygen gases.

Fig.2 shows a second embodiment of the present invention which includes more than one pair of electrodes 205a-d. The spacing between the electrodes is less than 5 mm as in the embodiment of Fig.1. While Fig.2 shows only one additional pair of electrodes, it is possible to include many more pairs (e.g., as many as 40 pairs of electrodes) within the cell. The rest of the cell illustrated in Fig.2 remains the same as that illustrated in Fig.1. The multiple electrodes are preferably flat plates closely spaced, parallel to each other.
Fig. 3 illustrates a cell having a cylindrically shaped electrodes 305a and 305b. The outer electrode 305b surrounds the coaxially aligned inner electrode 305a. The equal spacing of the electrodes 305a and 305b is less than 5 mm and the interactive zone is coaxially arranged between the two electrodes. While Fig. 3 illustrates the top portion of the container 111 being formed by a plastic cap 301, it will be appreciated by those skilled in the art, that the cap 301 may be used in the embodiments of Fig. 1 and Fig. 2 and the embodiment of Fig. 3 can utilise the same container 111 illustrated in Figs. 1-2. As suggested by Fig. 3, the electrodes can be almost any shape such as flat plates, rods, tubes or coaxial cylinders.

The electrodes 105a and 105b of Fig. 1 (or electrodes 205a-d of Fig. 2 or electrodes 305a and 305b of Fig. 3) are respectively connected to power supply terminals 108a and 108b so that they can receive a pulsed electrical signal from a power supply. The pulsed signal can be almost any waveform and have a variable current level, voltage level, frequency and mark-space ratio (i.e., a ratio of the duration of a single pulse to the interval between two successive pulses). For example, the power supply providing power to the electrodes can be a mains 110 volts to a 12 volt supply or a car battery.

Fig. 4a, Fig. 4b and Fig. 4c illustrate a square wave, a saw tooth wave and a triangular wave, respectively which can be applied to the electrodes 105a and 105b (or 205a-d or 305a, 305b) in accordance with the present invention. Each of the waveforms illustrated in Figs. 4a-4c has a 1:1 mark-space ratio. As shown in Fig. 4b, the saw tooth wave will only reach a peak voltage at the end of the pulse duration. As shown in Fig. 4c, the triangular wave has a low peak voltage. It has been found that optimal results for producing hydrogen and oxygen in the present invention are obtained using a square wave.

After initiation of the pulsed signal from the power supply, the electrodes 105a and 105b continuously and almost instantaneously generate hydrogen and oxygen bubbles from the water 110 in the interaction zone 112. Moreover, the bubbles can be generated with only minimal heating of the water or any other part of the cell. These bubbles rise through the water and collect in the upper portion of the container 111.

The generated bubbles are not bunched around or on the electrodes 105a and 105b and thus readily float to the surface of the water. Therefore, there is no need to add a chemical catalyst to assist the conduction of the solution or reduce the bubble bunching around or on the electrodes. Thus, only tap water is needed for generation of the hydrogen and oxygen in the present invention.

The gases produced within the container are self-pressurising (i.e., pressure builds in the container by the production of gas, without an air pump). Thus, no additional pump is needed to be coupled to the container 111 and the produced gases do no need to be transported into a pressurised container.

The power supply in the present invention is required to provide a pulsed signal having only 12 volts at 300 mA (3.6 watts). It has been found that an optimal amount of hydrogen and oxygen has been produced when the pulsed signal has mark-space ratio of 10:1 and a frequency of 10-250 KHz. Using these parameters, the prototype cell of the present invention is capable of producing gas at the rate of 1 p.s.i. per minute. Accordingly,
the cell of the present invention is capable of producing hydrogen and oxygen in a highly efficient manner, quickly and with low power requirements.

As noted above, the hydrogen produced by the embodiments of Figs.1-3 is orthohydrogen. As is well understood by those skilled in the art, orthohydrogen is highly combustible. Therefore, any orthohydrogen produced can be transported from the container 111 through valve 102 and outlet tube 101 to be used by a device such as an internal combustion engine.

The present invention, with sufficient electrodes, can generate hydrogen and oxygen fast enough to feed the gases directly into an internal combustion engine or turbine engine, and run the engine continuously without accumulation and storage of the gases. Hence, this provides for the first time a hydrogen/oxygen driven engine that is safe because it requires no storage of hydrogen or oxygen gas.

![Diagram](image)

**Fig.5** illustrates an exemplary power supply for providing D.C. pulsed signals such as those illustrated in Figs.4a-4c to the electrodes illustrated in Figs.1-3. As will be readily understood by those skilled in the art, any other power supply which is capable of providing the pulsed signals discussed above can be substituted. The power supply illustrated in Fig.5 includes the following parts, components and values:

The astable circuit is connected to the base of transistor TR1 through resistor R2. The collector of transistor TR1 is connected to voltage supply Vcc through resistor R5 and the base of transistor TR2 through resistor R3. The collector of transistor TR2 is connected to voltage supply Vcc through resistor R6 and the base of transistor TR3 through resistor R4. The collector of transistor TR3 is connect to one of the electrodes of the cell and diode D2. The emitters of transistors TR1, TR2 and TR3 are connected to ground. Resistors R5 and R6 serve as collector loads for transistors TR1 and TR2, respectively. The cell serves as the collector load for transistor TR3. Resistors R2, R3 and R4 ensure that transistors TR1, TR2 and TR3 are saturated. Diode D2 protects the rest of the circuit from any induced back emf within the cell.

The astable circuit is used to generate a pulse train at a specific time and with a specific mark-space ratio. This pulse train is provided to the base of transistor TR1 through resistor R2. Transistor TR1 operates as an inverter. Thus, when the a stable circuit produces an output pulse, the base voltage of the transistor TR1 goes high (i.e. close to Vcc or logic 1). Hence, the voltage level of the collector of transistor TR1 goes low (i.e., close to ground or logic 0).

Transistor TR2 also operates as an inverter. When the collector voltage of transistor TR1 goes low, the base voltage of transistor TR2 also goes low and transistor TR2 turns off. Hence, the collector voltage of transistor TR2 and the base voltage of Transistor TR3 go high. Therefore, transistor TR3 turns on with the same mark-space ratio as the astable circuit. When the transistor TR3 is on, one electrode of the cell is connected to Vcc and the other is connected to ground through transistor TR3. Thus, the transistor TR3 can be turned on (and off) and therefore the transistor TR3 effectively serves as a power switch for the electrodes of the cell.

Figs.6-8 illustrate additional embodiments of the cell which are similar to the embodiments of Figs.1-3, respectively. However, each of embodiments of Figs.6-8 further includes a coil 104 arranged above the electrodes and power supply terminals 107 connected to the coil 104. The dimensions of coil 104 can be, for example, 5 x 7 cm and have, for example, 1500 turns. The coil 104 is submerged under the surface of the water 110.

The embodiments of Figs.6-8 further include an optional switch 121 which can be switched on or off by the user. When the switch 121 is not closed, then the cell forms basically the same structure as Figs.1-3 and thus can be operated in the same manner described in Figs.1-3 to produce orthohydrogen and oxygen. When the switch 121 is closed, the additional coil 104 makes the cell capable of producing oxygen and either (1) parahydrogen or (2) a
A mixture of parahydrogen and orthohydrogen.

When the switch 121 is closed (or not included), the coil 104 is connected through terminals 106 and the switch 121 (or directly connected only through terminals 106) to a power supply so that the coil 104 can receive a pulsed signal. As will be discussed below, this power supply can be formed by the circuit illustrated in Fig.9.

When the coil 104 and the electrodes 105a and 105b receive pulses, it is possible to produce bubbles of parahydrogen or a mixture of parahydrogen and orthohydrogen. The bubbles are formed and float to the surface of the water 110 as discussed in Figs.1-3. When the coil is pulsed with a higher current, a greater amount of parahydrogen is produced. Moreover, by varying the voltage of the coil 104, a greater/lesser percentage of orthohydrogen/parahydrogen can be produced. Thus, by controlling the voltage level, current level and frequency (discussed below) provided to the coil 104 and the parameters such as voltage level, current level, frequency, mark-space ratio and waveform provided to the electrodes 105a and 105b as discussed above) the composition of the gas produced by the cell can be controlled. For example, it is possible to produce only oxygen and orthohydrogen by simply disconnecting the coil 104. It is also possible to produce only oxygen and parahydrogen by providing the appropriate pulsed signals to the coil 104 and the electrodes 105a and 105b. All of the benefits and results discussed in connection with the embodiments of Figs.1-3 are equally derived from the embodiments of Figs.6-8. For example, the cells of Figs.6-8 are self-pressurising, require no-chemical catalyst, do not greatly heat the water 110 or cell, and produce a large amount of hydrogen and oxygen gases from a modest amount of input power, without bubbles on the electrodes.

A considerable amount of time must pass before the next pulse provides current to the coil 104. Hence, the frequency of the pulsed signal is much lower than that provided to the electrodes 105a and 105b. Accordingly, with the type of coil 104 having the dimensions described above, the frequency of pulsed signals can be as high as 30 Hz, but is preferably 17-22 Hz to obtain optimum results.

Parahydrogen is not as highly combustible as orthohydrogen and hence is a slower burning form of hydrogen. Thus, if parahydrogen is produced by the cell, the parahydrogen can be coupled to a suitable device such as a cooker or a furnace to provide a source of power or heat with a slower flame.

Fig.9 illustrates an exemplary power supply for providing D.C. pulsed signals such as those illustrated in Figs.4a-4c to the electrodes illustrated in Figs.6-8. Additionally, the power supply can provide another pulsed signal to the coil. As will be readily understood by those skilled in the art, any other power supply which is capable of providing the pulsed signals discussed above to the electrodes of the cell and the coil can be substituted. Alternatively, the pulsed signals provided to the electrodes and the coil can be provided by two separate power supplies.

The portion of the power supply (astable circuit, R2-R6, TR1-TR3, D2) providing a pulsed signal to the electrodes of the cell is identical to that illustrated in Fig.5. The power supply illustrated in Fig.9 further includes the following parts and their respective exemplary values:

The input of the ‘divide-by-N’ counter (hereinafter "the divider") is connected to the collector of transistor TR1. The output of the divider is connected to the monostable circuit and the output of the monostable circuit is connected to the base of transistor TR4 through resistor R1. The collector of transistor TR4 is connected to one end of the coil and a diode D1. The other end of the coil and the diode D1 are connected to the voltage supply.
Resistor $R_1$ ensures that $TR_4$ is fully saturated. Diode $D_2$ prevents any induced back emf generated within the coil from damaging the rest of the circuit. As illustrated in Figs.6-8, a switch 121 can also be incorporated into the circuit to allow the user to switch between (1) a cell which produces orthohydrogen and oxygen, and (2) a cell which produces at least parahydrogen and oxygen.

The high/low switching of the collector voltage of transistor TR1 provides a pulsed signal to the divider. The divider divides this pulsed signal by N (where N is a positive integer) to produce a pulsed output signal. This output signal is used to trigger the monostable circuit. The monostable circuit restores the pulse length so that it has a suitable timing. The output signal from the monostable circuit is connected to the base of transistor TR4 through resistor $R_1$ to switch transistor TR4 on/off. When transistor TR4 is switched on, the coil is placed between Vcc and ground. When the transistor TR4 is switched off, the coil is disconnected from the rest of the circuit. As discussed in conjunction with Figs.6-8, the frequency of pulse signal provided to the coil is switched at a rate preferably between 17-22 Hz; i.e., much lower than the frequency of the pulsed signal provided to the electrodes.

As indicated above, it is not required that the circuit (divider, monostable circuit, $R_1$, TR4 and D1) providing the pulsed signal to the coil be connected to the circuit (astable circuit, $R_2$-$R_6$, TR1-TR3, D2) providing the pulsed signal to the electrodes. However, connecting the circuits in this manner provides an easy way to initiate the pulsed signal to the coil.

A working prototype of the present invention has been successfully built and operated with the exemplary and optimal parameters indicated above to generate orthohydrogen, parahydrogen and oxygen from water. The output gas from the prototype has been connected by a tube to the manifold inlet of a small one cylinder gasoline engine, with the carburettor removed, and has thus successfully run such engine without any gasoline:
Please note that this is a re-worded excerpt from this patent. It describes an electrolyser which Charles claimed was able to generate enough gas from hydrolysis of water, to be able to run a car engine without the use of any other fuel. It should be remembered that in Garrett's day, car electrics were all 6-volt systems.

**DESCRIPTION**

This invention relates to carburettors and it has particular reference to an electrolytic carburettor by means of which water may be broken up into its hydrogen and oxygen constituents and the gases so formed suitably mixed with each other and with air.

Another object of the invention is to provide a means whereby the electrolyte level in the carburettor may be maintained at a more or less constant level regardless of fluctuations in water pressure at the water inlet of the carburettor.

Another object of the invention is to provide a means whereby the relative amount of air mixed with the hydrogen and oxygen may be regulated as desired.

Still another object of the invention is the provision of a means to prevent the loss of hydrogen and oxygen gases during periods in which these gases are not being drawn from the carburettor.

Still another object of the invention is the provision of a means whereby the hydrogen and oxygen resulting from electrolysis may be formed in separate compartments, and a further object of the invention is the provision of a means to periodically reverse the direction of current flow and thereby alternate the evolution of the gases in the separate compartments, to be intermingled at a later time.

With reference to the accompanying drawings: -
Figure 1 is a view in vertical section of one form of carburettor.
Figure 2 is a modified form.
Figure 3 is a diagrammatic view of a pole changer, showing its actuating mechanism, and
Figure 4 is a wiring diagram for the modified form of carburettor shown in Figure 2.

With reference to Fig.1: The reference numeral 1 designates the carburettor housing, which is preferably constructed of bakelite or other suitable insulating material. This housing is designed so as to divide the carburettor into a float chamber 2 and gas generating chamber 4, connected by a fluid passage 3.
Water under pressure is forced into the carburettor through an opening 5 which communicates with the float chamber 2 through the medium of the sediment chamber 6 and the needle valve orifice 7, which is closed by a needle valve 8 when the device is not in operation. A float 9 surrounds the needle valve 8 and is free to move vertically relative thereto. Descending from the cover 10 to the float chamber 2 are two ears 11, located at spaced intervals on opposite sides of the needle valve 8. The members 12 are pivoted to the ears 11, as shown. The weighted outer ends of the members 12 rest on top of the float 9, and their inner ends are received in an annular groove in the collar 13 which is rigidly attached to the needle valve 8.

Within the gas generating chamber 4, a series of spaced, descending plates 14 are suspended from a horizontal member 15 to which a wire 16 has electrical contact through the medium of the bolt 17, which extends inwards through housing 1 and is threaded into the horizontal member 15.

A second series of plates 18 is located between the plates 14 and attached to the horizontal member 19, and has electrical contact with the wire 20 through the bolt 21.

A gas passageway 22, in which a butterfly valve 23 is located, communicates with the gas generating chamber 4 through an orifice 24. An air inlet chamber 25 has communication with the gas passageway 22 above the orifice 24. A check valve 26 which opens downwards, controls the openings 27, and is held closed and inoperative by means of light spring 28.

An adjustable auxiliary air valve 29 is provided in the wall of the gas passageway 22, which air valve is closed by the butterfly valve 23 when the butterfly valve is closed, but communicates with the outside air when the butterfly valve is open.

**The operation of the device is as follows**: The chambers 2 and 4 are first filled to the level 'a' with a solution of weak sulphuric acid (or other electrolyte not changed by the passage of current through it), and the opening 5 is connected to a tank of water (not shown).

The wire 16 is next connected to the positive pole of a storage battery or other source of direct current and the wire 20 to the negative pole. Since the solution within the carburettor is a conductor of electricity, current will flow through it and hydrogen will be given off from the negative or cathode plates 18 and oxygen from the positive or anode plates 14.

The butterfly valve 23 is opened and the gas passageway 22 brought into communication with a partial vacuum. Atmospheric pressure acting on the top of the check valve 26 causes it to be forced downwards as shown in dotted lines. The hydrogen and oxygen liberated from the water at the plates 18 and 14 are drawn upwards through the orifice 24 covered by the check valve 30 where they are mixed with air entering through the openings 27 and through the auxiliary air valve 29.

When it is desired to reduce the flow of hydrogen and oxygen from the plates 18 and 14, the current flowing through the device is reduced, and when the current is interrupted the flow ceases. When the butterfly valve 23 is moved to its 'closed' position, the check-valve 26 is automatically closed by the spring 28. Any excess given off during these operations is stored in the space above the fluid where it is ready for subsequent use.

Water is converted into its gaseous constituents by the device herein described, but the dilute sulphuric acid or other suitable electrolyte in the carburettor remains unchanged, since it is not destroyed by electrolysis, and the parts in contact therewith are made of bakellite and lead or other material not attacked by the electrolyte.
The structure shown in Fig. 2 is substantially the same as that shown in Fig. 1 with the exception that the modified structure embraces a larger gas generating chamber which is divided by means of an insulating plate 31 and is further provided with a depending baffle plate 32 which separates the gas generating chamber 33 from the float chamber 34 in which the float 35 operates in the same manner as in Fig. 1. Moreover, the structure shown in Fig. 2 provides a series of spaced depending plates 36 which are electrically connected to the wire 37, and a second series of similar plates 38 which are electrically connected to the wire 39 and are kept apart from the plates 36 by the insulating plate 31.

Gases generated on the surfaces of the plates 36 and 38 pass upward through the orifice 39a into the gas passageway 40 where they are mixed with air as explained in the description of Fig. 1.

A pipe 51, bent as shown in Fig. 2, passes downwards through the housing of the carburettor and has a series of spaced apertures ‘a’ in its horizontal portion beneath the plates 36 and 38. Check valve 53, with opens upwards, controls air inlet 54. When a partial vacuum exists in the chamber 33, air is drawn in through the opening 54 and then passes upwards through the apertures ‘a’. This air tends to remove any bubbles of gas collecting on the plates 36 and 38 and also tends to cool the electrolyte. The check valve 53 automatically closes when a gas pressure exists within the carburettor and thereby prevents the electrolyte from being forced out of the opening 54.
In order to provide for alternate evolution of the gases from the plates 36 and 38, a pole changer 41, shown in Fig.3, is actuated periodically by the motor 42 which drives the worm 43 and the gear 44 and causes oscillations of the member 45 which is connected by a spring 46 to the arm 47, thereby causing the pole changer to snap from one position to the other.

In operation, the carburettor shown in Fig.2 is connected as shown in the wiring diagram of Fig.4. A storage battery 48 or other suitable source of direct current is connected to a variable rheostat 49, switch 50, pole changer 41 and to the carburettor as shown. Thus the rate of evolution of the gases can be controlled by the setting of the rheostat 49 and the desired alternate evolution of the gases in the compartments of the carburettor is accomplished by means of the periodically operated pole changer 41.

Manifestly, the construction shown is capable of considerable modification and such modification as is considered within the scope and meaning of the appended claims is also considered within the spirit and intent of the invention.
Please note that this is a re-worded excerpt from this patent. It describes an electrolyser system where air is drawn through the electrolyte to dislodge bubbles from the electrodes.

ABSTRACT
In the electrolytic production of hydrogen and oxygen, air is pumped through the cell while the electrolysis is in progress so as to obtain a mixture of air, hydrogen and oxygen.

BACKGROUND AND BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION
This invention relates to the production of gases which can be utilised primarily, but not necessarily, as a fuel.

To decompose water electrically, it is necessary to pass direct current between a pair of electrodes which are immersed in a suitable electrolyte. During such electrolysis, it is normal to place some form of gas barrier between the two electrodes, in order to prevent the gases produced forming an explosive mixture. However provided suitable precautions are taken, it has been found that the gases can be allowed to mix and can be fed into a storage tank for subsequent use. Because the gases when mixed form an explosive mixture, it is possible for the mixture to be utilised, for instance, as a fuel for an internal combustion engine. In such circumstances it is desirable that the gases should also be mixed with a certain proportion of air in order to control the explosive force which results when the gases are ignited.

One of the difficulties encountered with electrolysis is that bubbles of gas are liable to remain on the electrodes during the electrolysis thus effectively limiting the area of electrode which is in contact with the electrolyte and preventing optimum current flow between the electrodes. Because it is desirable that the gases evolved during the electrolysis be mixed with air, it is possible for air to be passed through the cell while electrolysis is in progress. The passage of air through the cell can be directed past the electrodes so as to pick up any gas bubbles on the electrodes.

Accordingly, the invention comprises an electrolytic cell with a gas tight casing, several electrodes supported on a central post within the cell, spaced apart and electrically insulated from each other, each alternative electrode being connected to a positive direct current source or a negative direct current source respectively and wherein the central post is in the form of a tube, one end of which is extended out of the cell and connected to a source of air under pressure, with the other end of the central post terminating in an air outlet below the electrodes. The cell also includes a gas outlet to carry the air forced into the cell through the central post and to exhaust the gases produced by electrolysis.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION
Various forms of the invention will now be described with the aid of the accompanying drawings wherein:
Fig. 1 is a diagrammatic elevational view partly in section of one form of the invention,

**FIG. 1**
Fig. 2 is a diagrammatic elevational view partly in section of a modified form of the invention.

**FIG. 2**

![Diagram of Fig. 2 with labeled parts](image1)

Fig. 3 is a section along the line III–III of Fig. 2.

**FIG. 3**

![Diagram of Fig. 3 with labeled parts](image2)

Section III - III
The cell as shown in Fig. 1 comprises a gas-tight casing 10 which is formed from a material incapable of corrosion, such as plastic. Several cathode plates 11 and several anode plates 12 are supported within the cell on an electrically insulating central post 13, with the cathode plates and anode plates being spaced apart by means of insulating spacers 14. The anode plates 12 are all connected in parallel to a positive terminal post 15 while the cathode plates are all connected in parallel to the negative terminal post 16, these connections being indicated in dotted lines in the drawings. The cathode and anode plates are preferably in the form of discs made from a metal suited to the electrolyte, thus ensuring a satisfactory cell life. These plates may be shaped to conform with the shape of the walls of the cell which may be circular in cross section as indicated or any other desired shape.

The central post 26 is preferably in the form of a tube which extends out of the cell. The lower end of the tube 18 is open so that air can be pumped into the cell through the central post 26 and enter the cell via the lower end 18 where it will pass up through the electrolyte. This keeps the electrolyte in constant motion which assists in the rapid removal of any gas bubbles which may be adhering to the electrode plates.
In the modification shown in Fig. 2 and Fig. 3, each electrode plate is provided with holes 17. The central post 26 is also provided with at least one air hole 19 adjacent to its lower end. A deflector plate 20 is also supported by the central post 26, this plate being dish shaped so as to deflect air issuing out of the air hole 19 up through the holes 17 in the electrodes. This further assists in dislodging any bubbles of gas clinging to the electrode plates.

The cell also includes a gas outlet 21 so that the air which enters the cell, together with the gases produced by electrolysis, can be taken out of the cell into a suitable storage tank (not shown in the drawings). If desired, such storage tank can be arranged to accept the gases under pressure and for this purpose the air pumped into the cell will be pumped in under the required pressure. A gas drier (not shown in the drawings) can also be interposed between the gas outlet 21 and the storage tank.

Although the electrolysis will naturally produce considerable heat, nevertheless it can be found advantageous to install a heater in the cell, preferably in the bottom of the cell, to assist and facilitate the warming up of the electrolyte so that the cell reaches its most efficient operating conditions as quickly as possible.

Preferably also, a current-control device should be employed so that the intensity of the electrolytic action can be controlled.

A mechanism may also be provided for the automatic replenishment of water within the cell as the level of the electrolytic drops during use.

While it is recognised that the mixing of hydrogen and oxygen will create a dangerous explosive mixture, nevertheless by carrying out the invention as described above, the risk of explosion is minimised. The gases produced can be utilised, for instance, as a fuel to power an internal combustion engine and for this purpose it is desirable, as already mentioned, to mix a proportion of air with the gases produced during electrolysis, so that when the mixture is ignited within the cylinder or cylinders of the engine, the explosive force so created can be of the desired amount.

While in the foregoing description reference is made to the utilisation of the mixed gases as a fuel, it will of course be understood that the gases can be separated for individual use.

**CLAIMS**
1. A process for producing, Through the electrolysis of an aqueous liquid, a combustible mixture of hydrogen, oxygen and air. This is achieved in an electrolytic cell having a gas-tight casing, a substantially central tubular post mounted in the casing and having an air inlet at its upper end, and a several electrodes supported on the post and axially spaced along it, alternate electrodes being connected to a first electrical terminal and to a second electrical terminal respectively connected to a respective poles of a current source and being mutually insulated, the post having an air outlet below the electrodes out of which flows air from the air inlet into the cell and over the electrodes; and a source of air under pressure connected to the said air inlet forcing a flow of air through the aqueous liquid contained in the cell; the cell having in its upper region a common outlet exhausting the combustible mixture comprising air forced through the cell, along with hydrogen and oxygen produced by electrolysis in the cell.

2. The process according to claim 1 wherein the electrodes are discs each having a several holes through them.

3. The process according to claim 1 further including a dish-shaped air deflector plate supported on the post below the air outlet.

4. Apparatus for producing by electrolysis of an aqueous liquid, a combustible mixture of hydrogen and oxygen, comprising: an electrolytic cell having a gas-tight casing, a substantially central tubular post mounted in the casing and having an air inlet at its upper end, and a plurality of electrodes supported on the post and axially spaced along it, alternate electrodes being connected to a first electrical terminal and to a second electrical terminal respectively for connection to respective poles of a current source and being mutually insulated, the post having an air outlet below the electrodes for flow of air from the air inlet into the cell and over the electrodes; a dish-shaped air deflector supported on said post below said air outlet; and a source of air under pressure connected to the said air inlet for forcing a flow of air through the aqueous liquid contained in the cell in operation thereof; the cell having in its upper region a common outlet for exhausting the combustible mixture comprising air forced through the cell and hydrogen and oxygen produced by electrolysis of the liquid in the cell.

5. The apparatus according to claim 4 wherein the electrodes are discs each having a several holes through them.
Please note that this is a re-worded excerpt from this patent. It shows how electrolysis of water can be carried out on a large scale as a continuous process.

ABSTRACT
A system for producing a clean burning combustible gas comprising an electrically conductive first electrode and an electrically conductive second electrode. A motor coupled to the first electrode is adapted to move the first electrode with respect to the second electrode to continuously move the arc away from the plasma created by the arc. A water-tight container for the electrodes is provided with a quantity of water within the tank sufficient to submerge the electrodes.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION
1. Field of the Invention
The present invention relates to durable and efficient equipment for the production of a combustible and non-polluting gas from underwater arcs and the method for doing this and more particularly, the invention pertains to producing a combustible gas from the underwater arcing of electrodes which move with respect to each other.

2. Description of the Prior Art
The combustible nature of the gas bubbling to the surface from an underwater welding arc between carbon electrodes was discovered and patented in the last century. Various improved equipment for the production of said combustible gas have been patented during this century. Nevertheless, the technology has not yet reached sufficient maturity for regular industrial and consumer production and sales because of numerous insufficiencies, including excessively short duration of the carbon electrodes which requires prohibitive replacement and service, as well as low efficiency and high content of carbon dioxide responsible for the greenhouse effect. As a result of numerous experiments, this invention deals with new equipment for the production of a combustible gas from underwater arcs between carbon electrodes which resolves the previous problems, and achieves the first known practical equipment for industrial production and sales.

The technology of underwater electric welding via the use of an arc between carbon electrodes to repair ships, was established in the last century. It was then discovered that the gas bubbling to the surface from underwater arcs is combustible. In fact, one of the first U.S. patents on the production of a combustible gas via an underwater electric arc between carbon electrodes dates back to 1898 (U.S. Pat. No. 603,058 by H. Eldridge).

Subsequently, various other patents were obtained in this century on improved equipment for the production of this combustible gas, among which are:

US Pat. No. 5,159,900 (W.A. Dammann abd D. Wallman, 1992);
5,435,274 (W. H. Richardson, Jr., 1995);
5,417,817 (W. A. Dammann and D. Wallman, 1995);
H. Richardson, Jr., 1997);
Richardson, Jr., 1998); and
Jr., 1998).

U.S. Pat. No.
5,692,459 (W. H. Richardson, Jr., 1997);
5,792,325 (W. H. Richardson, Jr., 1998);
5,826,548 (W. H. Richardson,
The main process in these inventions is essentially the following. The arc is generally produced by a DC power unit, such as a welder, operating at low voltage (25-35 V) and high current (300 A to 3,000 A) depending on the available Kwh input power. The high value of the current brings the tip of the carbon electrode in the cathode to incandescence, with the consequential disintegration of the carbon crystal, and release of highly ionised carbon atoms to the arc. Jointly, the arc separates the water into highly ionised atoms of Hydrogen and Oxygen. This causes a high temperature plasma in the immediate surrounding of the arc, of about 7,000°F, which is composed of highly ionised H, O and C atoms.

A number of chemical reactions then occur within or near the plasma, such as: the formation of the H2O2 molecule; the burning of H and O into H2O; the burning of C and O into CO; the burning of CO and O into CO2, and other reactions. Since all these reactions are highly exothermic, they result in the typical, very intense glow of the arc within water, which is bigger than that of the same arc in air. The resulting gases cool down in the water surrounding the discharge, and bubble to the surface, where they are collected with various means. According to numerous measurements conducted at various independent laboratories, the combustible gas produced with the above process essentially consists of 45%-48% H2, 36%-38% CO, 8%-10% CO2, and 1%-2% O2, the remaining gas consisting of parts per million of more complex molecules composed by H, O and C.

This process produces an excellent combustible gas because the combustion exhausts meet all current EPA requirement without any catalytic converter at all, and without the highly harmful carcinogenic pollutants which are contained in the combustion exhausts of gasoline, diesel, natural gas and other fuels of current use.

Despite the indicated excellent combustion characteristics, and despite research and development conducted by inventors for decades, the technology of the combustible gas produced by an underwater arc between carbon electrodes has not reached industrial maturity until now, and no equipment producing said combustible gas for actual practical usages is currently sold to the public in the U.S.A. or abroad, the only equipment currently available for sale being limited to research and testing. The sole equipment currently sold for public use produce different gases, such as Brown’s gas which is not suitable for use in internal combustion engines because it implodes, rather than explodes, during combustion.

The main reason for lack of industrial and consumer maturity is the excessively short duration of the carbon electrodes, which requires prohibitive replacement and services. According to extensive, independently supervised, and certified measurements, the electrodes are typically composed of solid carbon rods of about 3/8 inch (9 mm) in diameter and about 1 foot length. Under 14 Kwh power input, said electrodes consume at the rate of about one and one quarter inch (32 mm) length per minute, requiring the halting of the operation, and replacement of the electrodes every ten minutes.

The same tests have shown that, for 100 Kwh power input, said electrodes are generally constituted by solid carbon rod of about 1 inch diameter and of the approximate length of one foot, and are consumed under a continuous underwater arc at the rate of about 3 inch length per minute, thus requiring servicing after 3 to 4 minutes of operation. In either case, current equipment requires servicing after only a few minutes of usage, which is unacceptable on industrial and consumer grounds for evident reasons, including increased risks of accidents for very frequent manual operations in a piece of high current equipment.

An additional insufficiency of existing equipment is the low efficiency in the production of said combustible gas, which efficiency will from now on be referred to as the ratio between the volume of combustible gas produced in cubic feet per hour (cfh) and the real input power per hour (Kwh). For instance extensive measurements have established that pre-existing equipment has an efficiency of 2-3 cfh/Kwh. Yet another insufficiency of existing equipment is the high carbon dioxide content in the gas produced. Carbon dioxide is the gas responsible for the greenhouse effect. In fact, prior to combustion the gas has a CO2 content of 8%-10% with a corresponding content after combustion of about 15% CO2, thus causing evident environmental problems.

**SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION**

In view of the foregoing disadvantages inherent in the known types of traditional equipment for the production of combustible and non-polluting gases now present in the prior art, the present invention provides improved durable and efficient equipment for the production of a combustible and non-polluting gas from underwater arcs and the method of production.

As such, the general purpose of the present invention, which will be described later in greater detail, is to provide new, improved, durable and efficient equipment for the production of a combustible and non-polluting gas from underwater arcs and the method for achieving this, a method which has all the advantages of the prior art and none of the disadvantages.
To attain this, the present invention essentially comprises of a new and improved system for producing a clean burning combustible gas from an electric arc generating plasma under water. First provided is an electrically conductive anode fabricated of tungsten. The anode is solid in a generally cylindrical configuration with a diameter of about one inch and a length of about three inches. Next provided is a generally Z-shaped crank of a electrically conductive material. The crank has a linear output end supporting the anode. The crank also has a linear input end essentially parallel with the output end. A transverse connecting portion is located between the input and output ends.

An electrically conductive cathode is next provided. The cathode is fabricated of carbon. The carbon is in a hollow tubular configuration with an axis. The cathode has a supported end and a free end. The cathode has a length of about 12 inches and an internal diameter of about 11.5 inches and an external diameter of about 12.5 inches. A motor is next provided. The motor has a rotatable drive shaft. The drive shaft has a fixed axis of rotation. The motor is coupled to the input end of the crank and is adapted to rotate the crank to move the output end and anode in a circular path of travel. The circular path of travel has a diameter of about twelve inches with the anode located adjacent to the free end of the cathode. In this manner the anode and the arc are continuously moved around the cathode and away from the plasma created by the arc.

Next provided is an axially shifted support. The support is in a circular configuration to receive the supported end of the cathode and to move the cathode axially toward the anode as the carbon of the cathode is consumed during operation and use. Next provided is a water tight container for the anode, cathode, crank and support. A quantity of water is provided within the tank, sufficient to submerge the anode and the cathode. Next provided is an entrance port in the container. The entrance port functions to feed water and a carbon enriched fluid into the container to supplement the carbon and water lost from the container during operation and use. Next provided is a source of potential. The source of potential couples the anode and the cathode. In this manner an electrical arc is created between the anode and the cathode with a surrounding plasma for the production of gas within the water. The gas will then bubble upwards and collect above the water. Last provided is an exit port for removing the gas which results from the application of current from the source of potential to the anode and the cathode while the anode is rotating and the cathode is shifting axially.

This broad outline indicates the more important features of the invention in order that the detailed description which follows may be better understood and in order that the present contribution to the art may be better appreciated. There are, of course, additional features of the invention that will be described and which will form the subject matter of the claims made.

In this respect, before explaining at least one embodiment of the invention in detail, it is to be understood that the invention is not limited in its application to the details of construction and to the arrangements of the components set forth in the following description or illustrated in the drawings. The invention is capable of other embodiments and of being practised and carried out in various ways. Also, it is to be understood that the phraseology and terminology employed here are for the purpose of descriptions and should not be regarded as limiting the scope of this invention.

It is another object of the present invention to provide new and improved durable and efficient equipment for the production of a combustible and non-polluting gas from underwater arcs and method therefor which may be easily and efficiently manufactured and marketed on a commercial basis.

Lastly, it is an object of the present invention to provide a new and improved system for producing a clean burning combustible gas comprising an electrically conductive first electrode, an electrically conductive second electrode, a motor coupled to the first electrode and adapted to move the first electrode with respect to the second electrode to continuously move the arc away from the plasma created by the arc, and a water-tight container for the electrodes with a quantity of water within the tank sufficient to submerge the electrodes.

These together with other objects of the invention, along with the various novel features which characterise the invention, are pointed out particularly in the claims section of this disclosure. For a better understanding of the invention, its operating advantages and the specific objects attained by its uses, reference should be made to the accompanying drawings and descriptive matter in which there is illustrated preferred embodiments of the invention.

**BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS**

The invention will be better understood and objects other than those set forth above will become apparent when consideration is given to the following detailed description thereof. Such description makes reference to the annexed drawings wherein:
Fig. 1 and Fig. 2 are illustrations of prior art equipment for the fabrication of a pollutant-free combustible gas produced by an electric arc under water constructed with prior art techniques.

Fig. 3 is a schematic diagram depicting the principles of the present invention.
Fig. 4 is a schematic diagram of a partial sectional view taken along line 4--4 of Fig. 3, depicting an additional embodiment of the present invention.

The same reference numerals refer to the same parts throughout the various Figures.

DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENT
With reference to Fig. 1, a typical embodiment of the electrodes of current use for the production of a combustible gas from underwater arcs is that in which one or more pairs of solid carbon rods are immersed within the selected liquid head-on along their cylindrical symmetry axis. The activation of the arc first requires the physical contact of the tips of the two rods, with consequential large surge of electricity due to shorting, followed by a retraction of the electrodes up to the arc gap, which is typically of the order of 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) depending on the input power. The components of such embodiment include:

- a, b: carbon electrodes
- c, d: holder of a & b
- e, f: screws for advancement of a & b
- g, h: mechanism for the advancement of a & b
- i: reaction chamber
- j: exit of combustible gas from chamber

Numerous alternatives to the above typical embodiment have been invented. For instance, in the U.S. Pat. No. 603,058 (H. Eldridge, 1898) one can see a variety of configurations of the electrodes, including rod shaped anodes and disk-shaped cathodes. As a further example also with reference to Fig. 1, the embodiment of U.S. Pat. No. 5,159,900 (W. A. Dammann and D. Wallman, 1992) and U.S. Pat. No. 5,417,817 (W. A. Dammann and D. Wallman, 1995), essentially consists of the preceding geometric configuration of the electrodes, complemented by a mechanism for the inversion of polarity between the electrodes, because the cathode experiences the highest consumption under a DC arc, while the anode experiences a much reduced consumption. Even though innovative, this second embodiment also remains manifestly insufficient to achieve the duration of the electrodes needed for industrial maturity, while adding other insufficiencies, such as the interruption of the arc at each time the polarities are inverted, with consequential loss of time and efficiency due to the indicated electrical surges each time the arc is initiated.

As an additional example, and with reference to Fig. 2, the mechanism of the U.S. Pat. No. 5,792,325 (W. H. Richardson, Jr., 1998), has a different preferred embodiment consisting of one or more pairs of electrodes in
the shape of carbon disks rotating at a distance along their peripheral edges, in between which an electrically neutral carbon rod is inserted. This rod causes the shorting necessary to activate the arc, and then the maintenance of the arc itself. This latter mechanism also does not resolve the main problem considered here. In fact, the neutral carbon rod is consumed at essentially the same rate as that of the preceding embodiments. In addition, the mechanism has the disadvantage of breaking down the single arc between two cylindrical electrodes into two separate arcs, one per each the two couplings of the conducting disk and the neutral rod, with consequential reduction of efficiency due to the drop of voltage and other factors. Numerous means can be envisaged to improve the life of carbon electrodes, such as mechanisms based on barrel-type rapid replacements of the carbon rods. These mechanisms are not preferred here because the arc has to be reactivated every time a rod is replaced, thus requiring the re-establishing of the arc with physical contact, and consequential shortcomings indicated earlier. The components of such embodiment include:

l, m: carbon disk electrodes
n, O: gear rotating l & m
p, q: side gear for rotating n & o
r, s: shaft of gears p & q
t, u: mechanism for rotating shafts r & s
v: electrodes neutral vertical rod
w: advancement of v
x: mechanism for advancement of v
y: reactor chamber
z: electrical power mechanism

This inventor believes that the primary origin of the insufficiency considered here, rests with the carbon rods themselves, which are indeed effective for underwater welding, but are not adequate for the different scope of producing a combustible gas from underwater arcs.

With reference to Fig.3, this invention specifically deals with equipment which solves the insufficiency considered here, by achieving the duration of operation desired by the manufacturer, while sustaining a continuous arc without interruptions for the entire desired duration. For the case of large industrial production of this combustible gas with electrical energy input of the order of 100 Kwh, a representative equipment of this invention essentially consists of:

1) One or more arcs produced by a DC current as typically available in commercially sold power units;
2) One or more anodes made of solid rods of about 1 inch in diameter and about 2 inches in length and composed of a high temperature conductor, such as Tungsten or ceramic. Extensive and diversified experiments have established that the consumption of an anode composed of ordinary Tungsten is minimal, and definitely of the order of several weeks of operation.
3) One or more carbon-based cathodes in the configuration of a large hollow rod geometrically defined as a cylinder with the same thickness of the anode, but with a radius and length selected to provide the desired duration. This cathode performs the vital function of becoming incandescent in the immediate vicinity of the arc, thus releasing carbon to the plasma.

More specifically, and with reference to Fig.3 and Fig.4, the present invention essentially comprises a new and improved system 10 for producing a clean burning combustible gas from an electric arc generating plasma under water. First provided is an electrically conductive anode 12 fabricated of tungsten. The anode is solid in a generally cylindrical configuration with a diameter of about one inch and a length of about three inches.

Next provided is a generally Z-shaped crank 14 of a electrically conductive material. The crank has a linear output end 16 supporting the anode. The crank also has a linear input end 18 essentially parallel with the output end. A transverse connecting portion 20 is located between the input and output ends. An electrically conductive cathode 22 is next provided. The cathode is fabricated of carbon. The carbon is in a hollow tubular configuration with an axis. The cathode has a supported end 24 and a free end 26. The cathode has a length of about 12 inches and an internal diameter of about 11.5 inches and an external diameter of about 12.5 inches.

A motor 28 is next provided. The motor has a rotatable drive shaft 30. The drive shaft has a fixed axis of rotation. The motor is coupled to the input end of the crank and is positioned so as to rotate the crank and move the output end and anode in a circular path of travel. The circular path of travel has a diameter of about twelve inches with the anode located adjacent to the free end of the cathode. In this manner the anode and the arc are continuously moved around the cathode and away from the plasma created by the arc.
Next provided is an axially shifted support 32. The support is in a circular configuration to receive the supported end of the cathode and to move the cathode axially toward the anode as the carbon of the cathode is consumed during operation and use.

A water-tight container 34 for the anode, cathode, crank and support is next provided. A quantity of water 36 is provided within the tank sufficient to submerge the anode and the cathode.

An entrance port 38 is provided in the container. The entrance port functions to feed water and a carbon enriched fluid into the container to supplement the carbon and water lost from the container during operation and use.

Next provided is a source of potential 42. The source of potential couples the anode and the cathode. In this manner an electrical arc is created between the anode and the cathode with a surrounding plasma for the production of gas within the water. The gas will then bubble upwardly to above the water.

Lastly provided is an exit port 44 for the gas resulting from the application of current from the source of potential to the anode and the cathode while the anode is rotating and the cathode is shifting axially.

Fig 4 is a cross-sectional view taken along line 4--4 of Fig.3, but is directed to an alternate embodiment. In such an embodiment, the anode 48 is wing shaped to cause less turbulence in the water when moving. In addition, various supports 50 are provided for abating turbulence and for providing rigidity.

Again with reference to Fig.3, the anode rod is placed head-on on the edge of the cylindrical cathode and is permitted to rotate around the entire periphery of the cylindrical edge via an electric motor or other means. (The inverse case of the rotation of the cathode cylinder on a fixed anode rod or the simultaneous rotation of both, are equally acceptable, although more expensive for engineering production). Extensive tests have established, that under a sufficient rotational speed of the anode rod on the cylindrical cathode of the order of 100 r.p.m. or thereabouts, the consumption of the edge of the cathode tube is uniform, thus permitting the desired continuous underwater arc without the interruptions necessary for the frequent cathode rod replacements in the pre-existing configurations.

For the case of smaller electrical power input the above equipment remains essentially the same, except for the reduction of the diameter of the non-carbon based anode and of the corresponding thickness of the carbon-based cylindrical cathode. For instance, for 14 Kwh power input, the anode diameter and related thickness of the cylindrical cathode can be reduced to about 3/8 inch.

The above new equipment does indeed permit the achievement of the desired duration of the electrodes prior to servicing. As a first illustration for industrial usage, suppose that the manufacturer desires an equipment for the high volume industrial production of said combustible gas from about 100 Kwh energy input with the duration of four hours, thus requiring the servicing twice a day, once for lunch break and the other at the end of the working day, as compared to the servicing only after a few minutes of use for the pre-existing equipment.

This invention readily permits the achievement of this duration with this power input. Recall that carbon rods of about 1 inch in diameter are consumed by the underwater arc from 100 Kwh at the speed of about 3 inches in length per minute. Numerous experiments have established that a cylindrical carbon cathode of 1 inch thickness, approximately one foot radius and approximately two feet in length, permits the achievement of the desired duration of 4 hours of continuous use prior to service. In fact, such a geometry implies that each 1 inch section of the cylindrical cathode is consumed in 6 minutes. Since 4 hours correspond to 240 minutes, the duration of four hours of continuous use requires forty 1 inch sections of the cylindrical cathode. Then, the desired 4 hours duration of said cathode requires the radius R = 40/3.14 or 12.7 inches, as indicated. It is evident that a cylindrical carbon cathode of about two feet in radius and about one foot in length has essentially the same duration as the preceding configuration of one foot radius and two feet in length. As a second example for consumer units with smaller power input than the above, the same duration of 4 hours prior to servicing can be reached with proportionately smaller dimensions of said electrodes which can be easily computed via the above calculations.

It is important to show that the same equipment described above also permits the increase of the efficiency as defined earlier. In-depth studies conducted by this inventor at the particle, atomic and molecular levels, here omitted for brevity, have established that the arc is very efficient in decomposing water molecules into hydrogen and oxygen gases. The low efficiency in the production of a combustible gas under the additional presence of carbon as in pre-existing patents is due to the fact that, when said H and O gases are formed in the plasma surrounding the discharge, most of these gases burn, by returning to form water molecules again. In turn, the loss due to re-creation of water molecules is the evident main reason for the low efficiency of pre-
existing equipment. The very reason for this poor efficiency is the stationary nature of the arc itself within the plasma, because under these conditions the arc triggers the combustion of hydrogen and oxygen originally created from the separation of the water.

The above described new equipment of this invention also improves the efficiency. In fact, the efficiency can be improved by removing the arc from the plasma immediately after its formation. In turn, an effective way for achieving such an objective without extinguishing the arc itself is to keep the liquid and plasma in stationary conditions, and instead, rapidly move the arc away from the plasma. This function is precisely fulfilled by the new equipment of this invention because the arc rotates continuously, therefore exiting the plasma immediately after its formation. Extensive experiments which were conducted, have established that the new equipment of this invention can increase the efficiency from the 2-3 cu. ft. per kWh of current embodiments to 4-6 cu. ft. per kWh.

It is easy to see that the same equipment of this invention also decreases the content of carbon dioxide. In fact, CO₂ is formed by burning CO and O₂, thus originating from a secondary chemical reaction in the arc plasma following the creation of CO. But the latter reaction is triggered precisely by the stationary arc within the plasma. Therefore, the removal of the arc from the plasma after its formation via the fast rotation of the anode on the cylindrical edge of the cathode while the liquid is stationary implies a decrease of CO₂ content because of the decrease of the ignition of CO and O₂. Extensive experimentation has established that a rotation of 100 r.p.m. of the anode over the edge of the cylindrical cathode of radius one foot decreases the content of carbon dioxide in the combustible gas at least by half, thus permitting a significant environmental advantage. The decrease of the CO₂ content also implies an increase of the efficiency, alternatively defined as energy content of the gas produced per hour (BTU/hr) divided by the real electric energy absorbed per hour (kWh). In fact, CO₂ is a non-combustible gas, thus having no meaningful BTU content. It is then evident that, since the total carbon content in the gas remains the same, the decrease of the non-combustible CO₂ is replaced in the gas by a corresponding increase of the combustible CO with the same carbon content, thus increasing the energy content of the gas for the same production volume of pre-existing inventions and for the same real power absorbed.

With reference to Fig.3, among various possible alternatives, a preferred embodiment of this invention for the high volume industrial production of a combustible gas from underwater arcs with about 100 Kwh real electrical energy essentially comprises:

A) An enclosed reactor chamber 56 of the approximate dimensions 4 feet high, 3 feet wide and 3 feet long fabricated out of steel sheets or other metal of about 1/4 inch thickness, comprising in its interior the electrodes for the creation of the arc and having some means for the exiting of the gas produced in its interior as well as some means for the rapid access or servicing of the internal electrodes;
B) The filling up of said chamber with a liquid generally consisting of water and/or water saturated with carbon rich water soluble substances;
C) One or more anodes consisting of rods of about 1 inch in diameter and about 2 inches in length made of Tungsten or other temperature resistant conductor;
D) One or more cylindrical shaped carbon cathodes with essentially the same thickness as that of the anodes and with radius and length selected for the desired duration;
E) Electromechanical means for the rotation of the anode rod head-wise on the edge of the cylindrical cathode, or the rotation of the edge of the cylindrical cathode on a stationary anode rod, or the simultaneous rotation of both;
F) Automation for the initiation of the arc and its maintenance via the automatic advancement of the carbon cathode, and/or the anode rod and/or both, in such a way to maintain constant the arc gap 58.
G) Fastenings of the cylindrical carbon cathode so as to permit its rapid replacement; various gauges for the remote monitoring of the power unit, combustible gas, liquid and electrodes; tank for the storage of the gas produced and miscellaneous other items.

An improved version of the above embodiment is conceived to minimise the rotation of the liquid because of drag due to the submerged rotation of the anode, with consequential return to the stationary character of the plasma 54 and the arc, consequential loss of efficiency and increase of CO₂ content for the reasons indicated above.

With reference to Fig.4, and among a variety of embodiments, this objective can be achieved by shaping the rotating anode in the form of a wing with minimal possible drag resistance while rotating within said liquid, and by inserting in the interior of the enclosed reactor chamber panels fabricated out of metal or other strong material with the approximate thickness of 1/8 inch, said panels being placed not in contact with yet close to the cathode and the anode in a radially distributed with respect to the cylindrical symmetry axis of the equipment and placed both inside as well as outside said cylindrical cathode. The latter panels perform the
evident function of minimising the rotational motion of said liquid due to drag created by the submerged rotation of the anode.

The remote operation of the equipment is essentially as follows:
1) The equipment is switched on with electric current automatically set at minimum, the anode rod automatically initiating its rotation on the edge of the cylindrical cathode, and the arc being open;
2) The automation decreases the distance between anode and cathode until the arc is initiated, while the amps are released automatically to the desired value per each given Kwh, and the gap distance is automatically kept to the optimal value of the selected liquid and Kwh via mechanical and/or optical and/or electrical sensors;
3) The above equipment produces the combustible gas under pressure inside the metal vessel, which is then transferred to the storage tank via pressure difference or a pump; production of said combustible gas then continues automatically until the complete consumption of said cylindrical carbon cathode.

As to the manner of usage and operation of the present invention, the same should be apparent from the above description. Accordingly, no further discussion relating to the manner of usage and operation will be provided.

With respect to the above description then, it is to be realised that the optimum dimensional relationships for the parts of the invention, to include variations in size, materials, shape, form, function and manner of operation, assembly and use, are deemed readily apparent and obvious to one skilled in the art, and all equivalent relationships to those illustrated in the drawings and described in the specification are intended to be encompassed by the present invention.

Therefore, the foregoing is considered as illustrative only of the principles of the invention. Further, since numerous modifications and changes will readily occur to those skilled in the art, it is not desired to limit the invention to the exact construction and operation shown and described, and accordingly, all suitable modifications and equivalents may be resorted to, falling within the scope of the invention.
This patent application is for a most unusual system which produces a plasma discharge at room temperature and ambient pressure, using voltages as low as 350 volts and currents as low as 50 milliamps and among other things, it is capable of promoting the production of pharmaceuticals, production of nano-particles, the extraction of metals from liquids, low temperature sterilisation of liquid food, use in paper industries to decontaminate the effluent discharge, fragmentation or de-lignifications of cellulose; the removal of odour from discharging liquid in the food industries, and the treatment of fluid effluent. It is also a method of producing hydrogen gas at low cost.

ABSTRACT
A method and apparatus for generating plasma in a fluid. The fluid is placed in a bath having a pair of spaced electrodes forming a cathode and an anode. A stream of bubbles is introduced or generated within the fluid adjacent to the cathode. A potential difference is applied across the cathode and anode such that a glow discharge is formed in the bubble region and a plasma of ionised gas molecules is formed within the bubbles. The plasma may then be used in electrolysis, gas production, effluent treatment or sterilisation, mineral extraction, production of nanoparticles or material enhancement. The method can be carried out at atmospheric pressure and room temperature. The electrodes may carry means to trap the bubbles in close proximity. Partitions may be present between the electrodes.

DESCRIPTION
The invention relates to the provision and utilisation of a plasma formed in a fluid, and in particular to the provision and utility of a plasma formed within bubbles contained in an aqueous medium.

BACKGROUND
Plasma is an electrically conductive gas containing highly reactive particles such as radicals, atoms, plasma electrons, ions and the like. For example plasma may be formed when atoms of a gas are excited to high energy levels whereby the gas atoms lose hold of some of their electrons and become ionised to produce plasma.

Thermal plasma, including plasma arc is known. However plasma arc is associated with high power consumption, the rapid erosion of electrodes when used in electrolysis, the need for catalysts and high-energy loss due to the associated high temperatures.

Clearly therefore, it would be advantageous if a non-thermal plasma could be devised. This would enable the plasma to be used for a number of applications for which plasma is useful without the disadvantages associated with using a high temperature plasma arc.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION
According to a first aspect of the present invention, there is provided a method for generating plasma in a fluid, comprising the steps of providing a fluid, introducing and/or generating one or more gas chambers or bubbles within the fluid, whereby the chambers or bubbles are contained by the fluid, and treating the fluid such that a plasma is generated within the chambers or bubbles.

The fluid may be a liquid that is contained within liquid containment means.

The applicant has discovered that a plasma can be generated relatively easily within bubbles within an aqueous medium. This plasma causes dissociation of molecules and/or atoms which can then be treated and/or reacted to obtain beneficial reaction products and/or molecules and/or atoms.

The liquid container may be open to the atmosphere and the process may therefore be carried out at substantially atmospheric pressure. Alternatively the container may be placed inside a sealed reaction chamber, e.g. under...
partial vacuum. This reduction in pressure can reduce the energy required to achieve a glow discharge within the bubbles passing over a cathode.

Importantly the process is not required to be carried out in a vacuum.

The plasma may be formed, for example, by applying a potential difference across electrodes which are immersed in the liquid.

Upon passing electricity of sufficient potential between two electrodes, the dielectric barrier associated with the bubble/chamber surface breaks down, with the accompanying formation of a glow discharge and plasma inside the gas bubbles or chambers. This enables plasma formation to be effected at very low voltages, current, temperature and pressure, as compared with known methods of plasma formation.

For example, typical voltages and currents associated with plasma arc are in the region of 5 KV and 200 A respectively, whilst in the present invention, a plasma may be provided with a voltage as low as 350 V and a current as low as 50 mA.

The formation of a glow discharge region adjacent said one electrode is caused by a dielectric breakdown in the bubbles surrounding the electrode. The bubbles have a low electrical conductivity and as a result there is a large voltage drop between the electrodes across this bubble region. This voltage drop accounts for a large portion of the overall voltage drop across the electrodes. The plasma is generated within the bubbles contained within the electrolyte. The liquid electrolyte acts as containment for the plasma within the bubbles.

When plasma discharge occurs, any water vapour inside the bubbles will experience plasma dissociation whereby H+, OH\(^-\), O\(^-\), H, H\(_3\), and other oxidative, reductive and radicals species are formed. The formation of charged plasma species will of course also depend on the chemical composition of the electrolyte.

In the present invention, the voltage needed for plasma generation is much lower than plasma glow discharge generated under gas only conditions. For example experiments have demonstrated that plasma begins to occur at voltages as low as 350 V and the maximum voltage required should not exceed 3,000 V. This requirement is based on a current density of 1 to 3 Amp/cm\(^2\) which can be achieved at the point of discharge whereby the current input ranges from 50 mA to about 900 mA.

Plasma can be created, according to the present invention, in a steady manner with a low voltage and current supply, which leads to an economy in power consumption.

The bubbles may contain precursor materials originating in the fluid, which is preferably a liquid, more preferably being an aqueous electrolyte. This material may have been transferred from the liquid to the bubbles by diffusion or evaporation.

Alternatively the precursor may be introduced directly into the bubbles from outside the system.

The step of generating bubbles within the aqueous medium may be accomplished by one or more of the following: electrolysis, ebullition, ultrasonic cavitations, entrainment, scattering, chemical reaction, dissociation by electrons and ion collisions or local heating or ebullition, hydraulic impingement, ultrasonic waves, laser heating, or electrochemical reaction, electrode heating, releasing of trapped gases in the liquid, and externally introduced gases or a combination of them.

Electrolysis bubbles may be generated by the electrode as a result of the potential differences applied across them, e.g. hydrogen bubbles liberated by the cathode or oxygen bubbles liberated by the anode. Ebullition bubbles may be generated by electrical heating in the region of the electrodes. The bubbles may be generated by direct electrical heating or by heating in proximity to the electrode by a moving wire or grid. Microwave heating and heating using lasers may also be used to generate ebullition bubbles.

Cavitation bubbles may be generated by using an ultrasonic bubble generator or a jet of fluid or a jet of a mixture of gas and liquid injected into the electrolyte in proximity to the electrode. Cavitation bubbles may also be generated by hydrodynamic flow of the electrolyte in proximity to the electrode. Scattering of gas in proximity to the electrode may also be used to generate bubbles.

Bubbles may also be generated by a chemical reaction which evolves gas as a reaction product. Typically such reactions involve thermal decomposition of compounds in the electrolyte or acid based reactions in the electrolyte. Bubbles may also be formed in the electrolyte by adding a frother to it.
Typically the generation of bubbles forms a bubble sheath around one electrode. The bubble sheath may have a thickness of anything from a few nanometres to say, 50 millimetres. Typically the bubble sheath may have a thickness of 1 mm to 5 mm. Further, it should be understood that the bubbles may not be homogeneous throughout the sheath.

Gas or vapour formed external to the container may be pumped or blown into the aqueous medium near the cathode.

Thus the composition of the plasma that is generated within the bubbles may be tailored to suit the application to which the plasma is being put and the bubbles may either be generated within the liquid from components within the liquid or introduced into the liquid from outside the containment means.

The bubbles can assume various sizes and shapes including a sheet form air gap or air pocket covering shrouding the electrodes or spread across the liquid medium in micro bubbles.

Liquid foam may also be considered to be bubbles or gas chambers for the purposes of the present invention. This is a highly concentrated dispersion of gas within a continuous interconnecting thin film of liquid. The gas volume can reach up to 80% of a contained area. Gas generated within or introduced to the reactor externally can also be encapsulated within a foaming agent to enable it to undergo plasma discharge treatment.

Gases trapped inside a thick liquid mist in a confined space are also considered to be gas containing bubbles, which contain the gases, and liquid vapours that provide the condition for generation of non-thermal plasma. The liquid may contribute one or more source materials for dissociation during the plasma discharge.

In practise, gas bubbles evolving near and shrouding an electrode in an electrolysis process create a dielectric barrier which prevents and slows down the flow of current. At the same time the dissolved gas or micro bubbles spread and diffuse in the liquid volume thereby creating a high percentage of void fractions (micro gas bubbles) which in turn increase the electric resistance whereby the voltage across the liquid medium is raised. When the voltage has increased sufficiently, gas trapped inside the bubbles undergoes non-equilibrium plasma transformation. At this point, dielectric breakdown occurs enabling resumption of current flow through the bubbles sheath or air pocket layer.

Any water molecules and atoms lining the gas and liquid interface of a bubble shell will also be subjected to the influence of the plasma to produce $\text{H}^+$ and $\text{OH}^-$ and other radical species. Some of these neutralised atoms and molecules will transverse into the gas bubbles as additional gas that increases the size of the bubble. As such the bubbles pick up more liquid vapours before a next succession of plasma discharge. Such a cycle of such repetitive discharge can take place in a fraction of a second to several seconds depending on the make up of the electrode and reactor.

The step of generating bubbles within the aqueous medium may include adding a foaming agent to the aqueous medium such that bubbles are formed within foam. The foam bubbles are confined by an aqueous medium that is electrically conductive. The foam bubbles can vary widely in size down to a fraction of a millimetre.

The step of generating bubbles may include forming an aerosol mist. The gas within the aerosol mist broadly defines bubbles in the sense that there are volumes of gas between liquid droplets. These bubbles in the form of spaces between liquid drops function in a similar way to conventional bubbles within a liquid and a plasma is formed in this gas in the same way as described above.

An advantage of foam and aerosol mist is that it provides for good mixing of gaseous components within the mist and foam. The plasma is generated in the bubbles of the foam and aerosol mist in the same way that they are formed in an aqueous liquid, e.g. by passing electrical current between spaced electrodes within the foam or mist.

The step of forming a glow discharge in the bubble region may be achieved by increasing the potential difference across the electrodes above a certain threshold point.

The formation of a glow discharge and generation of plasma within the bubbles may be assisted by a pulsed or steady power supply, a magnetron field, ultrasonic radiation, a hot filament capable of electron emission, laser radiation, radio radiation or microwave radiation. The energy requirements may also be assisted by a combination of any two or more of the above features. These factors may have the effect of lowering the energy input required to reach the threshold potential difference at which glow discharge is formed.

In conventional electrochemical processes bubbles are regarded as undesirable. As a result concerted efforts are made to avoid the generation of bubbles during the operation of electrochemical cells. By contrast the process of the current invention deliberately fosters the formation of bubbles and utilises bubbles in proximity to the electrode.
as an essential feature of the invention. The bubble sheath surrounding the electrode is essential to establishing a plasma region which then gives rise to the plasma deposition on the article.

Thus the plasma is formed within bubbles and the molecules and/or atoms that are ionised are surrounded by liquid which effectively provides a containment structure within which the plasma is contained. The liquid in turn generally opens to the atmosphere.

Plasma glow discharge can be fairly easily accomplished within the cell because the sheath of bubbles has the effect of causing a substantial proportion of the voltage drop to occur across the bubble sheath. It is concentrated in this area rather than a linear drop across the electrode space. This provides the driving force to generate plasma glow discharge and from there deposition of the ionic species.

The electrical charge is preferably applied in pulses, since this enables plasma production at lower voltages.

The fluid is preferably a liquid electrolyte, for example an aqueous medium, whereby in one preferred embodiment, the medium is water.

The electrolyte may comprise a carrier liquid and/or a source or precursor of the material to be ionised by the plasma.

When the liquid is water, charged plasma particles include species such as OH radicals, O\(^{-}\) and H\(^{+}\), -OH, O\(_2\) and O\(_3\), which will react with the surrounding liquid.

Distilled water is known to be dielectric and non-conductive. It is however when water contains impurities such as dissolved minerals, salts and colloids of particles, whereby water becomes conductive, that ionisation and electrolysis can occur.

The method may further include adding an additive, such as an acidic or alkaline conductivity enhancing agent, to the aqueous medium to enhance this electrical conductivity such as organic salts or inorganic salts, e.g. KCl, MgCl\(_2\), NaOH, Na\(_2\)CO\(_3\), K\(_2\)CO\(_3\), H\(_2\)SO\(_4\), HCl.

The method may include adding a surfactant to the aqueous medium for lowering the surface tension of the medium and enhancing the formation of bubbles, e.g. to stabilise bubble formation.

The electrolyte may further include additives in the form of catalysts for increasing the reaction of molecules and/or atoms produced in the plasma, additives for assisting the formation of bubbles, and additives for buffering the pH.

The method may further include cooling the electrolyte to remove excess heat generated by the plasma reaction and regulating the concentration of one or more components within the electrolyte.

Plasma creation, according to the present invention can be effected in the absence of extreme conditions, for example plasma according to the present invention may be provide under atmospheric pressure and at room temperature.

During plasma production according to the present invention, a shroud of bubbles preferably builds up and smotherers around at least one of the electrodes, whereby electrical charge builds up in the bubble shroud thereby creating a dielectric barrier which impedes current flow, whereby electrical resistance in the fluid medium builds up so that voltage through the medium is raised to a degree such that gas within the bubbles is excited to an energy level at which a plasma is produced.

The method according to the present invention preferably comprises the further step of exposing the plasma to a material, which on contact with the plasma undergoes a chemical and/or physical change.

For example the plasma can be used to cause dissociation of toxic compounds and then break down the compounds and/or cause them to undergo reactions leading to innocuous reaction products.

The plasma produced according to the present invention, which will be referred to as 'under-liquid' plasma has the same physical and chemical properties as plasma produced according to known methods and accordingly also has the utility of such plasma.
The under-liquid plasma according to the present invention can create an active catalytic condition which facilitates gas and liquid interaction. As such, the plasma according to the present invention, may promote any reaction which takes place in a liquid medium, for example chemical reactions, the production of pharmaceuticals, production of nano-particles, the extraction of metals from liquid, low temperature sterilisation of liquid food, use in paper industries to decontaminate the effluent discharge, fragmentation or de-lignifications of cellulose; the removal of odour from discharging liquid in the food industries, and the treatment of fluid effluent. Material may be chemically modified by means comprising one or more of the following: ionisation, reduction, oxidation, association, dissociation, free radical addition/removal, whereby, optionally, following chemical modification, the material is removed.

The invention may be used to tackle existing problems. For example, water that has been used in industrial processes or used in some other way has to be treated to remove harmful components before it is returned to ground water. This is typically achieved by reacting the harmful components with other chemical components introduced to the water to form relatively harmless products. Many undesirable components are treated fairly effectively in this way.

However some harmful components within water are not capable of being treated in this fashion. This poses a problem as these harmful components, e.g. contaminants, need to be removed from the water before it is returned to ground water. One known way of treating some of these components is to use an electric arc process to break down these toxic chemicals. However an electric arc process requires a substantial amount of energy to arc between electrodes within the liquid and is therefore costly. In addition the number of chemicals that are able to be treated in this way is limited. A further limitation of these processes is that they often cause rapid consumption and degradation of electrode material. Applicant believes that this water could be better treated by the method of this invention.

Moreover, the electric arc method of providing plasma, applies a high voltage across closely spaced electrodes causing the break down and ionisation of molecules, and then a surge of electrical current between the electrodes.

Further, many metals or mineral occur naturally in the ground in the form of ores as mineral oxides. The minerals need to be reduced to useful minerals. Typically the reduction is carried out using pyrometallurgical techniques, e.g. such as are used in electric arc furnaces. These treatments are very aggressive and utilise enormous amounts of electrical energy. Clearly it would be advantageous if a simpler more streamlined and more energy efficient method of reducing a mineral oxide to a mineral could be devised. Applicant believes that this could be done by the method of this invention.

Yet further, the generation of electrical energy with fuel cells is seen as an exciting new area of technology. Such fuel cells utilise hydrogen as a fuel. Accordingly a relatively inexpensive source of this hydrogen as a fuel is required. Currently hydrogen is produced by solar cells. However the present invention could be used to provide such a source of hydrogen.

In one form of the current invention, the undesirable compounds may be deposited on an electrode, e.g. the cathode, as a layer or coating. The compound can then be removed from the liquid by simply removing it from the aqueous medium.

In another form, the undesirable component can be reacted with a chemical compound, e.g. within the plasma, to form a solid compound, e.g. a salt in the form of a precipitate, that settles out of the aqueous medium and can then be removed from the aqueous medium.

Typically the undesirable component will be toxic to animals or harmful to the environment. However components that are undesirable in other ways are also included within the scope of the invention.

Applicant envisages that this will be particularly useful for the removal of harmful heavy metals from waste water. It will probably also be useful for the treatment of contaminated gases. Such gases will be introduced to the aqueous medium in such a way that they form part of the bubbles passing over the cathode and then be treated as described above.

Another example is the extraction of a mineral, e.g. a metal, from its metal oxide, the method including: dissolving the mineral oxide in an aqueous medium and then subjecting it to the method described above according to the first aspect of the invention whereby a plasma is generated within bubbles passing over the cathode, and the plasma reduces the mineral oxide to the mineral per se.

The ozone which is formed in the plasma can then be reacted with hydrogen to form an innocuous compound such as water. The reduced mineral which is formed in the plasma, e.g. a metal, may be deposited on the cathode or else may be precipitated out as a solid in the container.
In the case of water, hydrogen and oxygen produced, travel to the anode and cathode and are preferably then removed. As such, the process according to the present invention is an economical, simple and effective way of producing hydrogen.

The hydrogen produced in this fashion may be used as fuel, e.g. in fuel cells for the generation of electricity. Applicant believes that hydrogen can be produced relatively inexpensively in this fashion. Fuel cell technology is currently receiving an increased level of acceptance looking for a cheap source of the supply of hydrogen.

According to another aspect of the present invention, there is provided the use of this 'under-liquid' plasma in one or more of the following: chemical and/or physical treatments of matter, electrolysis, gas production, in particular hydrogen gas production; water, fluid and/or effluent treatment; mineral extraction; sterilisation of drinking water and/or liquid food, production of nano-particles, the enhancement of material chemical and physical properties.

According to a further related aspect of the present invention there is provided an apparatus for providing a plasma comprising: a container in which a plasma is provideable, bubble trapping means, arranged within the container, for trapping gas bubbles at a predetermined location in the container and, plasma creation means, in association with the container, for creating a plasma from the gas within the bubbles.

The plasma creation means preferably comprise electrical discharge means which most preferably comprise a cathode and/or an anode.

The apparatus, in one preferred embodiment being an electrolysis cell, further preferably comprises bubble introduction and/or generating means, for introducing and/or generating bubbles in the container.

Furthermore, the apparatus preferably comprises one or more of the following: enhancing means for enhancing plasma formation and one or more non-conductive partitions arranged between the electrodes, whereby the enhancing means preferably comprise bubble trapping means most preferably associated with the electrodes and wherein the enhancing means may also comprise current concentrating means for concentrating the electrical current at a predetermined position in the container which can take the form of one or more channels arranged through one or more of the electrodes.

The electrodes may take any suitable form, for example the electrodes may be so profiled as to entrap/attract bubbles, in order to help gas bubbles being created or introduced to the discharging electrode to form a dielectric barrier by which the voltage can be raised whereby a suitable current density is provided directly by high input of current or passively created by a current concentrating arrangement, for example, by conducting the current through small holes on the electrodes or by reducing the discharge surface area of the electrodes whereby in the latter case, the electrodes may take the form of pins, wires, rods and the like.

For example, the cathode may be formed by a hollow tube with perforated holes therein, e.g. small perforated holes. The holes allow bubbles introduced into the tube to pass out of the tube into the aqueous medium. Alternatively a cathode may be made of wire mesh or have a roughened surface, e.g. to encourage the attachment of bubbles thereto to slow down the movement of the bubbles.

In one embodiment there are a plurality of cathodes spaced apart from each other and in parallel with each other, and a single rod-like anode, e.g. centrally positioned relative to the cathode.

The other electrode (non discharging) preferably has a larger surface area such than the discharging electrode.

The discharging electrode can either be cathode or anode depending on the application necessity.

In an experimental reactor the separating membrane, non-conductive partition, was nylon cleaning cloth having a tight matrix 0.5 mm thick. This semi-permeable membrane is capable of resisting the passage of oxygen and hydrogen ions through it in the aqueous medium, intermediate the anodes and cathodes thereby to maintain separation of oxygen and hydrogen produced in the plasma.

Most preferably, the apparatus according to the present invention is an electrolytic cell.

A known problem with carrying out electrolysis is that any gas/bubble build up in the electrolytic cell creates a barrier to the flow of current through the electrolyte, thereby impeding electrolysis, which increase in resistance in turn forces the required voltage up. As such, electrolytic cells require a great deal of energy and are often very large in order to effect dispersion of such gas/bubbles. However the present invention actively promotes such bubble build up, in order to effect plasma creation which the inventors have shown is effective in carrying out electrolysis.
DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS OF THE INVENTION

A plasma formed in a fluid in accordance with this invention may manifest itself in a variety of forms. It will be convenient to provide a detailed description of embodiments of the invention with reference to the accompanying drawings. The purpose of providing this detailed description is to instruct persons having an interest in the subject matter of the invention how to put the invention into practice. It is to be clearly understood however that the specific nature of this detailed description does not supersede the generality of the preceding statements. In the drawings:

Fig. 1 is a schematic sectional front view of apparatus for carrying out a method in accordance with the invention.

Fig. 2 is a schematic sectional front view of a variation on the apparatus of Fig. 1.
Fig. 3 is a schematic sectional front view of an apparatus in accordance with the invention suitable for producing hydrogen gas.

Fig. 4 is a schematic sectional front view of a tubular reactor carrying out a method in accordance with another embodiment of the invention.
Fig. 5 is a schematic flow sheet of apparatus in the form of a cell for carrying out the invention.

Fig. 6 is a schematic view of a bath for the cell of Fig. 5 having an ultrasonic generator for generating bubbles.
Fig. 7 is a schematic graph of current against voltage in an electrolytic cell.

Fig. 8 shows the initial formation of a bubble sheath around the cathode due to the application of voltage across the electrodes.
Fig. 9 shows the bubble sheath around the cathode during stable glow discharge within the cell, and Figs. 10-53 refer to further embodiments and experimental results in respect of the present invention.

The present invention relates to the production of non-thermal plasma contained in a liquid by generating corona discharge and or glow plasma discharge inside the bubbles or air pockets present in the liquid.

Upon passing electricity of sufficient potential through the liquid, electric breakdown of the dielectric bubble barrier results in the formation of plasma discharge inside the gas bubbles or pockets present in the liquid. In most cases glow discharge occurs near the electrodes but occasionally glow discharge is also observed away from the electrode.

The bubbles can be produced either by electrolysis, electrochemical reaction, heating of electrodes, releasing of trapped gases in the liquid, ultrasonic cavitations, laser heating, and externally introduced gases.

Bubbles produced by electrolysis of water contain hydrogen gas at the cathode and oxygen gas at the anode. Such bubbles can also contain other chemical vapours originating from the electrolyte or additives.

The liquid serves as an electrolyte which provides conductivity of electricity, the source material from which gases and vapour are produced for plasma dissociation to form, for example, reduction and oxidation, radicals and neutral species. The liquid also provides an active catalytic chemical environment for forming new compounds. It also serves as containment of gases in the form of bubbles or air pockets in which the non-thermal plasma discharge takes place.

In practise, gas bubbles evolving and shrouding the electrodes during electrolysis create a dielectric barrier which inhibits the flow of current.

At the same time the dissolved gas or micro bubbles spread and diffuse in the liquid volume create a high percentage of void fractions (micro gas bubbles) which also increase the electric resistance and so raise the voltage across the liquid medium.

When the voltage between two electrodes reaches a critical level, the gas trapped inside the bubbles undergoes non-equilibrium plasma transformation. This is also known as electric breakdown which enables the resumption of current flow through the bubble sheath or air pocket layer. In the case of water electrolysis, the production of hydrogen will then resume.

During plasma discharge, light emission may be observed in the bubbles in a sporadic or steady manner in short and continuous flashes near the surface of the electrodes and in the liquid medium.
Continuous light spots may also be observed in areas distanced from the electrodes where suspected small air bubbles are trapped and yet remain under the influence of strong electrical field.

The temperature in the electrolyte near the electrodes has been measured to be in the region of 50°C to about 90°C with an experiment running in water for 30 minutes, which indicates that the plasma is non-thermal plasma.

The temperature variation may be influenced by electrode geometry, electrolyte concentration, level of inception voltage and current density for the glow discharge. The temperature measured directly over the discharging electrode can reach over 200°C during reformation of methanol for example.

Configurations of electrodes, size, spacing, dielectric barrier coating, electrolyte temperature, current density, voltage and reactor geometry are factors influencing plasma formation.

A special structure and arrangement to retain gas or gas bubbles close to the electrodes provide favourable circumstances for the ready formation of a steady and cyclical plasma glow discharge with lower voltage and current input.

Electrode configurations can be in following forms: plate to plate, plate to pinned plate, dielectric coated plate to plate or pinned plate or both, wire mesh to plate, wire mesh to wire mesh or to perforated plate, wire or groups of wires in perforated cylinder tube, and tube in tube.

The electrode material may be sponge porous metal electrode, electrode covered with honeycomb non-conductive materials and porous ceramic filter to entrench gas or using non-conductive plate with drilled holes and gas traps that retain gas bubbles and concentrate the current density next to the electrode surface.

In general keeping the bubbles close to the surface of the electrodes can also be achieved by attaching a porous non-conductive nylon foam mattress and/or a honeycomb or porous ceramics slab of suitable thickness, so that the mobility of the bubbles is slowed down and at the same time the conduit for current flow is narrowed by a shading effect of the dielectric materials which in turn raises the current density locally.

For the same reason glass beads, plastic beads and beads of catalytic material i.e. TiO₂, graphite of suitable size can be placed between the electrodes in order to slow down the flow of bubbles.

A non-conductive, heat and corrosion electrode covering material, structured to retain and trap gas bubbles which also concentrates current density through small openings arranged through it whilst providing an adequate exposed electrode surface for electro-chemical and electrolysis reactions, improves the generation of steady and short cyclical reactions under-liquid plasma discharge.

Multiple layers of very fine stainless mesh, sandwiched between two plastic cover plates with small perforated holes, have produced a steady glow plasma. The void space created by the layered wire mesh provides a trap for air bubbles as well as enlarging the contact surface for electrochemical and electrolysis reaction.

In an experiment both vertical or horizontal electrodes were covered and bonded with non-conductive materials (plastic) with patterned perforations to trap gas bubbles while at the same time allowing for electrical contact of the electrodes through the perforations.

The electrode contact surface was enlarged underneath the shielding to increase gas production during electrolysis or heating. Current flow was concentrated through small holes of 1 to 3 mm leading to the trapped gas and bubbles, which underwent plasma transformation. Cyclic and steady plasma was observed with an input DC voltage ranging from 350V to 1900V and current ranging from 50 mA to 800 mA.

A non-conductive diaphragm, which does not restrict the free flow of ions and electrolyte, is placed between two opposite electrodes to prevent crossing of bubbles between two half electrolytic cells avoids re-mixing of the gases which have been separated by electrolysis.

A reactor may be so structured that the electrolyte is able to enter into the reactor through the separating membrane or opening form in the reactor to replenish the loss of electrolyte within the enclosed reactor.

There are other techniques which can be incorporated into the proposed invention for the enhancement of plasma generation such as pulsed power supply, RF power, microwaves, ultrasonic waves, magnetron field, and laser. Some of the above techniques may also be applied in pulsed form.
Ultrasonic cavitations in liquid (sonic-technology) will enhance the plasma formation and the catalytic reactions that benefit a number of under-liquid plasma applications.

The under-liquid plasma requires an input of DC or AC voltage in the range from 350V up to 3000V and current density ranging from 1 Amp to 3 Amp per cm² in dealing with a large range of liquid media. The specific voltage and current requirement for a given application depends very much on the chemical and physical properties of electrolytic liquid as well as those factors mentioned above.

The under-liquid plasma method according to the current invention, can operate at atmospheric pressure and ambient temperature. However, an external pressure less than one atmosphere or over one atmosphere with higher temperatures does not deter the generation of plasma in the bubbles. A higher temperature in the liquid also means more active gas molecules within the bubbles, which can benefit plasma formation.

Non-thermal plasma generated in a liquid according to the present invention, has advantages over known types of plasma discharge, for example in gas, under water plasma arc and pulse power electric discharge, these being:

It requires only simple electrolytic cells to be the reactor to perform such discharge. There is little erosion to the electrodes and wider range of electrode materials can be chosen such as stainless steel, graphite, aluminium and good conductive materials which are resistance to chemical erosion. The polarity of the electrode can be reverted if necessary to compensate the lost of electrode materials if so desired.

It works under one atmospheric pressure and ambient temperature. The liquid electrolyte will be primary source of materials for the chemical and physical reaction take part in the process. There are number of ways that bubbles can be produced within the electrolytic cell. Gas can also be introduced to the reactor where plasma catalytic and dissociation is taking place.

It is a low-temperature system as the plasma discharge is non-thermal. Any excessive or undesirable high temperature can be lowered by increasing the circulation rate of the liquid which can lose its temperature through heat exchange. Heat generated can be recovered as secondary energy.

The electrolyte (liquid) will serve as extension of the conducting electrodes in contact with the gases or vapour trapped inside the bubbles. The air gap between two electrodes is reduced to the thickness of the gas bubbles or air pocket which thus enables plasma discharge at a much lower voltage and current compared with other plasma discharge systems. Plasma glow discharge, according to the present invention, can be initiated under conditions of a voltage as low as 350V and the current ranging from 50 mA to 800 mA. Extra energy is not required in splitting the water molecules to transient bubbles as in the other underwater electrical discharge system which requires voltage not less than 5 to 6 KV, and very high current over 200 A in pulsed supply. Plasma discharge will also take place in gas pockets or bubbles away from the electrode as long as the electric field strength is sufficient to cause such discharge.

The electrolyte also serves as a confinement of gas generated within the system, or purposely introduced gas of known properties, instead of ordinary air which may lead to production of unwanted NOx for example. Noble gas such as argon is not necessary to enhance the initiation of glow discharge sometime required in the air discharge system.

The electrolyte also serves as a conductor and passage for the transportation of ionised species and transmission of electrons. The ionised atoms and molecules deriving from the electrolyte will be collected in their respective electrodes in the form of gas or material deposit. These ionised species are either serving as a reduction or oxidation agent in their respective half-cell. Since the gas ions produced during the discharge migrate to their respective poles to be collected individually, hydrogen gas and oxygen gas can be collected separately.

The gas and vapour molecules and atoms inside the bubble which undergo plasma glow discharge are ionised, excited or dissociated to produce the very active species for reduction, oxidation, and the forming of neutral or radical species which in turn react with the chemical elements present in the gas and liquid interface aligning bubbles wall. The large number of bubbles generated near the electrodes and in the nearby liquid, come into contact with a much larger volume of liquid nad so provides effective treatment, breakdown, transformation of chemicals, organic matter or elements which have been targeted.

Liquid is a good medium for transmitting ultrasonic waves. Sonic-excitation is beneficial for the dissociation of materials and extermination of microbes and it aids the breakdown and local melting of colloidal solids during impact which also enhances the plasma oxide reduction process. The generated ultrasonic cavitations may be fully utilised to work in conjunction with the under-liquid plasma discharge. An ultrasonic cavity is micro in size and uniformly distributed in the entire liquid volume. The cavities are a high vacuum which contain liquid vapour and gas, and these favour plasma discharge. The high temperature and pressure reaching 10,000°K and a
A thousand times atmospheric pressure, produced on the collapsing phase of these cavities is complementary to that of the electrode discharge plasma. This enables under-liquid plasma discharge to spread further from the electrodes and be well distributed in the liquid volume which increases its overall effectiveness.

The electrolyte may also be in the form of a mixture, an emulsified liquid, a colloid, or foams encapsulating gas emissions either coming from the liquid or introduced externally. The emulsified liquid of an oil/water mixture and encapsulating gas of hydrocarbon fuel with the ultrasonic irradiation, will facilitate their reformation for hydrogen production.

Fine granular insoluble particles of mineral oxide such as aluminium, titanium, iron, silica etc. can be suspended in the form of colloidal with the liquid which is then subjected to reduction with active ionic hydrogen atoms in a highly reactive plasma catalytic environment to become deoxidised and refined. This will be more so, with the assistance of sonic impedance. The Plasma glow discharge has also demonstrated the ability to dissociate soluble ionic metal compounds, whereby subsequently the positively charged metal ions will be segregated near the cathode electrode in the form of precipitation and plasma electroplating deposition.

The electrolyte may be a source of materials for thin-film deposition with the assistance of plasma glow discharge. In addition, nano size particles of certain compounds and elements i.e. metal hydride, oxide, pure metals, semi metals, organic, ceramic etc. can also be produced with the assistance of the under-liquid plasma discharge in conjunction with the ultrasonic cavitations mechanism, to cause breakdown and reformation of certain compounds. The highly catalytic, reactive and dissociation capacity of the glow discharge plasma, reforms and reconstitutes chemical elements and compounds from basic atoms or molecules to form nano particles. These include organic, inorganic, metallic and non-metallic materials such as silica, titanium carbon etc. This is also a very effective way to extract or remove heavy metals from a liquid by oxidising such as Hg to HgO: Cu, Zn, Cr etc. to form hydroxide precipitation and ionic metal solute to be deposited by the plasma electroplating process.

The under-liquid plasma technique, coupled with the sonic-excitation and electro-chemical action, creates an environment of localised high temperature up to 10,000°K and pressure up to thousands of atmospheres which favour the generation of cold-fusion phenomena.

It is a low-energy system. Generally high voltage from 0.35 KV up to 3 KV with low current density rarely required more than 3 Amp/cm² will be needed to deal with a vast number of different types of the under-liquid plasma process. If other enhancement method is applied, the high voltage and current requirement will be further reduced.

It is a method for producing hydrogen, oxygen with water or other gases and material deposition with liquid containing chemical solute, other than the conventional exchange of ions. The molecules and atoms are being ionised, excited and subjected to dissociation to form ionised, radicals and neutral species by the influence of plasma discharge. The dissociated species can be produced near either anode or cathode electrodes. The ionised species are then attracted to their respective polarity to be neutralised to produce gas or deposition of materials. The dissociation of atoms or molecules are the result of electron collisions and a wide variety of dissociated species is produced which creates the reactive elements for reduction, oxidation, and highly catalytic environments that facilitate chemical reaction of those relatively stable compounds and elements.

No chemicals are needed as an additive in a decontamination process, of which chemicals, i.e. chlorine and ozone, could become a secondary source of pollution.

**EXPERIMENTAL OBSERVATIONS**

When sufficient micro bubbles originating from the electrode surface block the current flow, the voltage rises steadily until a point of voltage inception is reached whereby some micro bubbles begin experiencing glow discharge. This precedes an avalanche effect which spreads through other micro bubbles close by.

A massive light is then emitted in a flash with a sound of bursting bubbles. The light is yellow to orange in colour indicating plasma discharge in hydrogen gas at the cathode electrode. Soon after switching on the reactor, temperature in the electrode rises which contributes to the formation of vapour bubbles which in turn creates a large bubble environment full of water vapour whereby the next succession of plasma discharge takes place within a fraction of a second.
The features which enable the trapping of gas, the concentration of current density within a small region, and the continued replenishment of gas, are steady and a self-regulating voltage and current power supply, electrode spacing, electrode configuration and electrolyte concentration, all of which have a bearing on generating desirable steady, and short cycle plasma glow discharges.

The invention has a number of applications including:
- Plasma assisted electrolysis for hydrogen generation.
- Non-thermal plasma reformation of hydrocarbon and hydrogen rich compounds for the production of hydrogen.
- Treatment of polluted and contaminated liquid waste containing chemical and heavy metal pollutants.
- Treatment of polluted gas emission and removal of odours.
- Sterilisation of drinking water and liquid foods.
- Extraction and refinement of mineral from its oxide or oxide ores.
- Production of nano particles.
- Enhancement of a material's chemical and physical properties by plasma discharge irradiation in under-liquid conditions. This also favours the need of any plasma reaction and treatment under-liquid.

**Fig. 1** illustrates a basic apparatus 1 for carrying out the method of the invention, namely, generating a plasma within bubbles formed adjacent to a cathode within an aqueous medium. The apparatus 1 comprises a liquid containment means in the form of an open rectangular tank 2 opening to the atmosphere and containing an aqueous liquid 3. A stirrer 4 for agitating the aqueous liquids in the tank 2.

Two spaced cathodes 5 are positioned in the tank 2 alternating with three anodes 6 projecting into the tank 2 and extending generally parallel to the cathodes 5. A bubble pipe 8 is positioned at the bottom of the tank 2 for introducing bubbles into the aqueous medium in proximity to each of the cathodes 5.

The application of a suitable potential difference across the anodes and cathodes leads to a glow discharge being formed and a plasma within the bubbles adjacent the cathode. This ionises the atoms and/or molecules within the bubbles and can be used to achieve a number of industrially and commercially useful objectives. For example, it can be used to generate hydrogen gas, one of its uses includes placement in a fuel cell to generate electricity. It can also be used to neutralise harmful compounds within the aqueous medium, e.g. originating in a liquid source or a contaminated gas and treating these harmful compounds. Finally, it can also be used to coat the surface of an article with a particular material.

Each of the cathodes is in the form of a perforated tube. At least one end of the tube is open and typically gas is introduced through such an open end. The side wall of the tube is perforated such that gas issues from the tube into the aqueous medium around the cathode. Alternatively, each of the anodes may be rod-like.
Fig. 2 illustrates a variation on the apparatus of Fig. 1. This description will be confined to the difference between the Fig. 1 and Fig. 2 apparatuses. In Fig. 2 the electrodes extend horizontally with each cathode positioned between two vertically spaced anodes.

Fig. 3 illustrates an apparatus suitable for the generation of hydrogen. The tank contains an anode and a cathode spaced apart from each other. The electrodes are generally the same as those described above with reference to Fig. 1. The cathode is surrounded by a semi-permeable membrane. Specifically the membrane is designed to resist the passage of hydrogen and oxygen bubbles through it. Hydrogen gas is formed from the combining the two neutralised hydrogen ions adjacent to the cathode and then is drawn off from the aqueous medium above the cathode and collected for use.

Similarly, oxygen gas is formed adjacent to the anode and this is also drawn off separately and collected for use. An advantage of this method for the formation of hydrogen fuel is that it consumes essentially less energy than other known methods, and as a result, will be a very attractive source of hydrogen for use in fuel cells.
Fig. 4 illustrates a tubular reactor which is quite different to the tank 2 shown in the previous embodiment. The reactor 30 comprises a circular cylindrical body 31 with its longitudinal axis extending horizontally. A pair of electrodes 32, 33 extend longitudinally through the body, spaced in from the wall of the body 31. Each cathode 33 is formed by a perforated tube. By contrast, the anode is formed by the body 31. Thus the single anode 31 extends concentrically around the cathodes 33, positioned radially inwards from them. A gas, which ultimately forms the bubbles, is pumped into the cathodes, e.g. through their open ends, and then issues through the openings along the length of the cathodes 33.

Settling tanks are located at each end of the body 31. The settling tanks 40 permit gas to be separated from the liquid. The gas rises to the top of the tanks 40 from where it can be drawn off. The aqueous liquid can be drawn off through a drain point positioned below this level of aqueous medium in the tank 40. An aqueous medium can also be introduced into the apparatus, by passing it through an inlet into one of the tanks 40. Otherwise, the method of generating plasma in bubbles adjacent to the cathodes is very similar to that described above with reference to Fig. 1 to Fig. 3.

In Fig. 5, reference number 1 refers generally to apparatus in the form of a cell and associated components for carrying out a plasma electroplating process (PEP) in accordance with the invention. The cell 1 comprises
broadly, a liquid container in the form of a bath which is filled with an electrolyte which also forms part of the apparatus or cell. A pair of spaced electrodes are positioned in the bath, one being a cathode and the other being an anode. An electrical circuit is formed by electrically connecting up the anode and cathode to a power supply, e.g. a mains power supply. When the bath is being used, a potential difference is applied across the electrodes. A partition divides the bath into an electrode compartment and a circulating compartment. Electrolyte is drawn off the circulating compartment and pumped through a heat exchanger to cool it and then return it to the bath. This helps to keep the temperature of the electrolyte within a suitable range during operation. In addition a make-up tank is positioned adjacent the circulating compartment to replenish the level of electrolyte within the bath as and when required.

The apparatus also includes the means for producing a bubble sheath around the cathode. The bubbles can be generated by gas evolved at the cathode as a result of a cathodic electrochemical reaction. This is one of the ways in which the bubbles were generated in the experiments conducted by the applicant. There are however, alternative ways of generating the bubbles for the bubble sheath. One alternative way, is by boiling the solution (ebullition bubbles). Other ways of producing the bubbles are by cavitation generated by ultrasonic waves or by hydrodynamic flow. Entrainment bubbles can also be produced by a mixture of gas and liquids.

![Fig. 6](image)

**Fig. 6** illustrates an ultrasonic generator surrounding a bath similar to that in **Fig.5**. The generator generates ultrasonic waves which are transmitted into the electrolyte liquid and act to generate bubbles in the electrolyte which then surround the cathode. The cathode, which typically provides the surface for deposition, can be formed of a conductive material, a semi-conductive material or a non-conductive material, coated with a conductive coating. Cathodic materials that have been successfully used in this method are nickel, mild steel, stainless steel, tungsten and aluminium. The cathode can be in the form of either a plate, a mesh, a rod or wire. There may be any number of cathodes and the cathodes can be any shape or size. Any conductive material can be used for the anodes. Graphite, aluminium and stainless steel have all been successfully used to practise this method by the applicant. Generally, aluminium is preferred for the anodes. There may be any number of anodes and the anodes can be any shape.

In use, the bath is filled with an appropriate electrolyte. Broadly speaking, the electrolyte contains a solvent or carrier which provides a liquid environment, within which, electrolysis can occur and which also provides a support for plasma generation in the sense that it provides containment for the plasma generation. The electrolyte also contains a source of the material to be deposited in the form of a precursor. The electrolyte may also include additives for example for enhancing the electrical conductivity of the electrolyte and for assisting in bubble formation and a buffer to maintain a suitable pH in the cell.

In use, the article to be coated is placed in the bath where it typically forms the cathode. In some instances however, it may also form the anode. A voltage or potential difference is then applied across the electrodes and this voltage is set at a level that is higher than the firing point at which the system or cell achieves a stable glow discharge in which glow clusters envelope the cathode surface.
**Fig. 7** illustrates a typical current against voltage profile for such a cell as the voltage is progressively increased. Initially there is an ohmic zone where the current increases proportionally with the voltage. After that the curve enters an oscillation zone where the current starts to oscillate. Applicant believes that this condition may be due to the fact that bubbles are evolving out of the solution and partly obscuring the electrodes. The bubbles form plasma, grow and then burst forming a shield shrouding the electrode. These bubbles block the conducting part of the cathode and this might lead to a decrease in apparent current density.

At the cathode, the evolved bubbles include hydrogen generated by the electrolysis of water in the electrolyte and by evaporation of liquid within the electrolyte. The bubbles may also be generated by other means as described above, for example ultrasonic generation. After some time, the number and density of bubbles increases until the entire cathode surface is sheathed in bubbles. At a critical voltage that is constant for a given system, known as the fire point, a glow discharge is formed. Experimental observation shows that this occurs when there is a near continuous bubble sheath around the cathode.

With a wire cathode, a tiny fireball or cluster of fireballs usually appears at the tip of the wire at the fire point. With further increases in voltage a glow discharge is established across the entire cathode. The glow discharge is dynamic and usually shows evidence of glow clusters and/or flashing through the bubble region. The glow discharge is caused by a dielectric breakdown in the bubbles. This is caused mainly by a high electrical field strength. Due to the presence of the bubbles the majority of the voltage drop from the anode to the cathode occurs in the near cathode region occupied by the bubbles. The electric field strength in this region may be of the order of 10,000 to 100,000 V/m. The voltage is set at a setting of 50 to 100 volts higher than the ignition point. This may typically mean a setting of 250 to 1500 volts. A preferred voltage setting would be at the low point of the graph in **Fig.4** within the glow discharge region.
The glow discharge causes the generation of a plasma in the bubble. **Fig. 8** shows the formation of a bubble sheath around the cathode. **Fig. 9** shows the cathode during stable glow discharge. As shown in the drawings, applicant has observed the formation of two distinct zones during stable glow discharge. In zone 1 where the glow discharge clusters are present, there is a plasma envelope that directly shrouds the cathode surface. This envelope is where plasma deposition takes place. The plasma interacts with the cathode surface in a process similar to ion plating and deposition occurs. A film is progressively formed through nucleation and growth on the cathode surface. Zone 2 is a plasma-chemical reaction zone, which forms the interface between the electrolyte and zone 1. This zone envelopes the plasma deposition zone and is often clearly visible as a separate region with a milky appearance.

Dissociation, and possibly also ionisation of the electrolyte components, including the precursor, occur in the outer zone, zone 2. This gives rise to the species that are deposited on the cathode. The species is transferred from the outer zone 2 to the inner zone 1 by the electric field strength, diffusion, and convection. Deposition on the cathode then occurs for as long as these conditions are maintained and the precursor material is available in the electrolyte. After the glow discharge commences the temperature of the electrodes increases in a short space of time. The temperature of the electrolyte must be maintained within acceptable limits for certain type of application. To do this, electrolyte is drawn off from the bath and pumped through a cooling system as shown in **Fig. 5**. The cooled electrolyte is then re-introduced into the bath. This cooling is required for both stability and safety reasons. Some of the electrolyte components are flammable. In addition electrolyte is consumed during the deposition reaction. Accordingly, it is necessary to top up the bath with additional electrolyte from time to time. A replenishment tank containing electrolytes is provided to perform this purpose.
As shown in Fig. 10, the reactor may include a pair of metal electrodes spaced apart and separated by an ion-conducting diaphragm. The electrodes can also be positioned horizontally or vertically.

As shown in Fig. 11, the reactor may also include multiple pairs of alternating anodes and cathodes with a diaphragm. The diaphragm can be removed for decontamination and partial oxidation reforming process (Fig. 12). In the case of reduction process, the hydrogen atoms produced on the side of cathode electrode are kept well separated from mixing back with oxygen by a diaphragm (Fig. 13). It is possible to increase the throughput capacity of the reactor in treating contaminants with transverse flow through multitudes of alternating electrodes of anode and cathode (Fig. 14). Wires or rods in tube reactors are suitable to adopt for hydrogen production and reduction process with the metal oxide confined within the narrow space within the cathode half cell and subjecting it to ultrasonic irradiation (Fig. 15 and Fig. 16).
FIG. 12

Tower Reactor with Perforated Electrodes

FIG. 13

Reactor for Metal Oxide Reducing Process
(which is to be placed inside an electrolytic bath)
FIG. 14

Transverse Flow Reactor
With Multiple Electrodes

Ultrasonic transducer

FIG. 15

Wires or Rode in Tube Reactor
The outer electrode serving as bath
Tube in tube reactor (Fig. 17) has a tube electrode within the outer tube electrode instead of wire or rod. The inner tube is covered with non-conductive materials of suitable thickness with small diameter holes and gas trap forming in between the inner metal tube which also have small holes formed correspondingly. The gap between the outer electrode and inner electrode is kept close but giving a minimum 3 mm to 5 mm space between the separation diaphragm and the dielectric cover of the inner electrode, to allow free flow of electrolyte and gas. Bubbles of gas will be discharged into the plasma discharging zone with hydrocarbon rich gas i.e. methane, natural gas, H₂S to undergo reformation for the production of hydrogen gas. It can also be adopted for decontamination of polluted gas laden with NOx, SOx and particulates; and reduction process where the metal oxide will flow through the space between the electrodes with the ultrasonic irradiation keeping the fine powder in colloidal and at the same time hydrogen gas or methane gas may also bubble in to provide the extra H₂, H⁺ and CO to enhance the reduction process.
A number of gas trap and bubble retaining arrangements are shown in Fig. 18A to Fig. 18F.
The under-liquid plasma discharge, in order to produce various reductive, oxidative, radicals and neutrals species through excitation, ionisation and dissociation of the liquid molecules and atoms, requires high voltage input DC or AC, normally within 3 KV and current density under 3 Amp/cm². The electrodes cathode and anode have to be kept as close as possible but not close enough to cause arcing. The electrode surface is preferably flat, even and smooth with no pronounced irregularities. Because of the need of placing diaphragm and complementary gas trapping and retaining construction on the discharging electrode, a minimum distance of 6 mm to 15 mm has been experimented with and shown to produce steady glow plasma under-liquid. With better material choice and engineering capability, there is no reason why the electrode space distant cannot be further reduced. The size, shape and arrangement of the electrodes is not restricted, but the electrodes will usually be somewhat smaller than those required for conventional electrolysis, for the same gas production volume. Both the electrodes, anode and cathode, can be at work at the same time as the plasma discharging electrodes especially if a gas-trapping dielectric cover construction is provided.

Experiments have been conducted to establish the basic criteria to generate steady and rapid cyclical non-thermal plasma glow discharge under-liquid with basic DC high voltage and low current input at atmospheric pressure and ambient temperature leading to the proposal of a phenomenal model of reactor structure and electrode configuration which demonstrate the usefulness of bubbles or gas pocket that creates the under-liquid environment for plasma discharge and it also provides the back ground of further improvement and construction of reactor unite which verify the inventive idea of under-liquid plasma and it subsequent practical applications.

A reactor according to the present invention can basically follow that of a simple water electrolysis cell with one anode electrode separated from the cathode electrode with an ion conducting membrane and yet has the capability to prevent re-mixing of the produced gas on each half-cell. The electrolyte allows moving across the membrane or replenish through the opening in the reactor. In order to increase the proficiency of the reactor the cathode electrode is placed inbetween two anode electrodes and separated from them by a membrane. The hydrogen gas produced is isolated and collected independently. The polarity of the electrode can be reversed with the anode electrode in the middle when oxidative species are needed for the decontamination process. Most importantly, the simple electrode and reactor unit will form the basic module, placed inside a common bath and linked together to form a lage production unit, and these modules can be replaced individually.

Despite the apparent success of the simple perforated plate-to-plate electrode arrangement, it does not preclude other electrode configurations and arrangements such as tube in tube, wire in tube and other flat surface electrodes having different surface structure e.g. wire mesh, expanded metals, pinned plate, sponge porous metal, corrugated plate etc. as long as it is a good electric conductor, corrosion resistant, heat-tolerant material, i.e. stainless steel, aluminium, graphite, platinum etc. The shape and size of the electrode piece is not restricted and sometime it may form the object article which is to undergo plasma surface enhancement treatment.

In practice, a reactor with vertical electrodes, suits plasma-assisted water electrolysis, reformation of hydrocarbon liquid fuel, production of nano materials and decontamination process, while the reactor with horizontal electrodes suits reformation of hydrocarbon gas such as natural gas, methane, hydrogen sulphurs and the like.

This ability to generate steady plasma discharge, can well be adopted for other useful purposes such as thin and thick-film deposition and additional method in the creating of cold fusion.

There have been a series of experiments conducted to generate non-thermal plasma under-liquid by utilising the gas bubbles self generated during electrolysis, electrochemical reaction, heating and releasing of dissolved air or gases in the liquid. Bubbles can also be produce with the influence such as transient bubbles created by shock waves resulted from pulsed power input, ultrasonic cavitations, laser heating and hydraulic impingement. External introduced gas (e.g. air & fuel gas) is found to work well in providing bubbles environment for ready plasma discharge in a steady manner. A number of experiments have also been conducted to test the applicability of under-liquid plasma in the field of hydrogen generation, hydrocarbon fuel reformation, sterilisation and decontamination and reduction of metal oxide. Because of the restriction of the power converter that some result is less than ideal but it all indicate the potential of the under-liquid plasma which is in the first place having the same physical/chemical capability as its counter part operating in gases environment in exciting, ionisation and dissociation, but with some distinctive advantage which has well been described in the foregoing text.

Generation of steady plasma discharge under-liquid has been one of the primary objectives in the research. In general the generation of steady plasma glow discharge are influenced by a number of factors, such as physical and chemical properties of the liquid, its conductivity, temperature, electrode type, electrode spacing, gas retaining or trapping arrangement, current density, voltage input, reactor construction, liquid circulation, influence of ultrasonic irradiation, pulsed power input etc.

There are of course a number of electrode shapes, size and configuration one could choose. In order to find out the how important is the supply of bubbles or gas pocket affects the generation of plasma, a gas retaining or
trapping covering with current concentrating conducting holes over perforated plate electrode is formulated, which has proved effective producing steady glow plasma discharge within the range of 350 V to 2 KV (2,000 V) and current up to 850 mA, but most the time around 100 to 300 mA range. This is considered low in compare with other under-liquid plasma system (i.e. Plasma arc, pulsed high voltage and current electric discharge). Throughout the experiments, a horizontal reactor was used. However an alternative reactor is a vertical reactor.

INTRODUCTION TO THE EXPERIMENTS
Several groups of experiments have been conducted:
1. Preliminary trial experiments
2. Plasma assisted water electrolysis
3. Reformation of methanol
4. Reformation of emulsified diesel
5. Reformation of LPG as hydrocarbon gas (methane is not available in the market)
6. Decontamination or sterilisation of food drink

In the preliminary trial experiments a number of electrode types have been adopted and have eventually select the wire to plate configuration and perforated plate to perforated plate or wire mesh as the most suitable under the limiting power supply condition where max. voltage available is 2,000 V and the maximum current is 1,200 mA. In reality, the current input is voluntarily restricted to work below 900 mA for durations not exceeding 30 minutes, to avoid damage to the converter which has happen in a number of occasion which caused stoppage of the experiments for weeks.

To overcome the power supply limitation, and to achieve steady plasma glow discharge, a gas-retaining or trapping cover or layer with current concentration holes has been devised to cover the discharging electrode surface (perforated electrode plate) which is the basic features adopted in the construction of reactor.

In the trial experiments, it has been demonstrated that infrequent visual plasma discharge begins with a voltage of 350 V and steady plasma can be achieved in around 550 V. The initial current input reaches 850 mA and begins to fluctuating in the range of 150 to 650 mA. On many occasions the current fluctuated at 100 mA to 350 mA. Through these experiments, the mechanism of generating bubbles or gas pocket dielectric barrier which impedes the current flow, leading to an increase of voltage until a threshold voltage is reached which causes the electric breakdown and the formation of plasma inside the bubble, at which point the current immediately returns to its normal level and then another cycle of discharge is established. When the discharge is infrequent it resembles a corona streamer discharge but as the voltage increases, the glow discharge becomes a continuous glow over an extend electrode surface resembling a glow plasma discharge. The colour of the discharge appears as an orange-yellow or red colour in the electrolysis of water and the temperature of the discharging electrode ranges from 50°C to about 90°C and the temperature of the bath liquid ranges from 40°C to 70°C. No sign of any damage to the electrode or its covering plastic gas trapping plate was observed even after prolong experimentation. When the voltage is allowed to increase beyond the glow plasma region, a plasma arc begin to occurs and becomes an intensive bright blue discharge when voltage is further increased and this causes damage to the metal electrode and plastic covering plate which is easily seen.

On two occasions, hydrogen production was recorded which produced a gas volume with an equivalent energy conversion efficiency up to 56%. Due to damage to the reactor by the plasma arc, that particular experiment cannot be repeated as new model of reactor is designed to achieve low current input and early high voltage response. However with the apparent success of the trial experiment, it shows that a more suitable reactor can be designed specifically for the purpose of hydrogen production by plasma assisted water electrolysis and a higher energy efficiency figure can be achieved with a small reactor.

PLASMA ASSISTED WATER ELECTROLYSIS
Experiments to check the behaviour of plasma discharge at different voltage input levels were carried out. Despite the apparently large volume of bubbles boiling inside the reactor, the total volume of gas produced was unexpectedly low. This may have been caused by the horizontal reactor design adopted throughout the experiments. This may have allowed the hydrogen gas recombine with the hydroxyl ions and convert back into water again. A vertical reactor would be more suited for the plasma assisted water electrolysis where the produced hydrogen gas will rise quickly to the top of the reactor and can be channeled away from the area filled with OH ions.

In this experiments plasma discharge begin to occur at 1,350 V with current fluctuating around 100 mA to 200 mA. At about 1,550 V the reactor produced highest volume of gas. Plasma arc discharge occurs at 1,900 V and is
becoming vigorous when the voltage is increased further. KOH of 0.02% concentration has been used as electrolyte additive throughout the experiment.

The production of gas appears to have a linear relation with time but various substantially with different voltage input. The rate of energy consumption is increasing slowly with time in a constant rate which various with the voltage input and its corresponding energy consumption per unit gas volume produced is having a peak at the first 10 minutes of the experiments and level off with time. The temperature in the electrode rise sharply to from 50°C to 90°C and is maintained more or less at that level throughout the test. The temperature in the bath liquid within the reactor rises slowly from its ambient temperature to around 50°C to 55°C.

EXPERIMENTS WITH METHANOL

Several sets of tests have been conducted with the aim of finding out how different hydrocarbon fuels will be affected by the non-thermal plasma under-liquid system. A methanol / water mixture with methanol concentrations of 5%, 10%, 15%, 20%, 25%, 30% and 40% were tested using the same method and equipment set-up already used for the plasma-assisted water electrolysis. There are three independent tests for each methanol concentration. It has been observed that the gas production is peaked at 25% methanol concentration and the energy consumption per unit gas volume produced is also lower than the others and is nearly at constant rate around 0.0225 Kw.h/L. The voltage input for each test is kept at 1,850 V and the current fluctuating in the range of 100 mA to 200 mA. The temperature measured at the cathode electrode started at 80°C and rose quickly to reach over 200°C at the end of a 30 minute experiment. The temperature recorded in other tests stayed within the range of 60°C to 80°C. The temperature of bath liquid at 25% concentration stayed in the range of 50°C to 60°C, which is typical for each of these tests.

The greatest surprise coming out of the experiments is that the produced gas is composed of two gases. One is hydrogen gas and the other is oxygen gas and no trace of carbon dioxide is found. Repeated examination of the gases produced shows the same result and the hydrogen is having an average value of 51.3% and oxygen 48.7%. This is later found out that the presence of oxygen in the gas is the result of the removal of the separating diaphragm. An acidic electrolyte is preferable in order to increase the hydrogen gas percentage in the output gas mix. This is shown in the latest experiments using sulphuric acid of 0.02% concentration.

A set of experiments with the use of 40 KHz ultrasonic bath having methanol concentration of 10%, 15%, 20% and 25% with the same reactor and equipment arrangement have been conducted to find out the influence of ultrasonic radiation. It has been observed that gas production at 25% is substantially higher than the others and yet the energy consumption per unit gas volume produced is around 0.015 Kw.h/L throughout the 30 minute experiment, which is lower than that without ultrasonic radiation.

The chromatographic analysis of the output gas having an average value of 97.56% hydrogen and 2.4039% of carbon monoxide. Chromatographic analysis of gas produced by reformation of methanol with ultrasonic radiation. Methanol concentration at 25%, and conductive reagent 0.02% sulphuric acid.
TABLE 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Resident time minutes</th>
<th>Composition V/V %</th>
<th>Gas type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First Test</td>
<td>0.364</td>
<td>98.9937</td>
<td>H₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.047</td>
<td>1.0063</td>
<td>CO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Test</td>
<td>0.364</td>
<td>96.7418</td>
<td>H₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.047</td>
<td>3.2582</td>
<td>CO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third Test</td>
<td>0.354</td>
<td>96.9719</td>
<td>H₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.048</td>
<td>3.0281</td>
<td>CO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average</td>
<td></td>
<td>97.5691</td>
<td>H₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2.4309</td>
<td>CO</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXPERIMENTS WITH LPG

Decomposition of LPG by under-liquid plasma has been conducted (methane or natural gas is preferred but none is available in the market). The LPG is allowed to pass through the horizontal reactor through the perforated anode plate and enter the reactor and trapped at the cathode plate where plasma is taking place at voltage 1980V and current at 100 to 130 mA input. C₃H₈ and C₄H₁₀ are the two main components of LPG, it is expected that the volume output having been subjected to plasma dissociation should be larger than the original input volume. This is found to be so that the output gas volume increases by about 50%. The experiment is conducted together with ultrasonic radiation. It is regrettable that the chromatogram is incapable of undertaking analysis of the output gas composition. The next set of experiments should be conducted with methane or natural gas so that more definitive result could be obtained. Rudimentary analysis of the produced gas has shown the presence of H₂, CO₂ and C₃H₆ etc.

REFORMATION OF EMULSIFIED DIESEL AND WATER WITH ULTRASONIC IRRADIATION

Decomposition of emulsified diesel with distilled water has also been carried out. Diesel oil in 25% and 50% by volume has been emulsified by adding 1.25% emulsified agent inside the ultrasonic bath. Since the diesel oil is dielectric, a KOH additive is needed. The emulsified liquid is subjected to plasma discharge at a voltage of 1,850 V and a current fluctuating from 100 mA to 200 mA for a period of 30 minutes. The temperature of the cathode electrode increased from 70°C to about 94°C during the experiment. The gas volume produced was 160 ml with 25% diesel and 1,740 ml with 50% diesel, which is substantially higher and its energy consumption is 0.1213 KWh/L. It is clearly indicated, that gas production is proportional to the diesel contend in the emulsion. Because of the limited power supply capability, the voltage of 1,850 V is merely adequate to produce some plasma discharge but it is far from establishing extensive vigorous plasma with higher current and voltage input, which would produce more gas.

STERILISATION (DECONTAMINATION) OF MULBERRY FRUIT DRINK

The ability of non-thermal plasma to decontaminate noxious chemicals and gases has already established. This experiment is conducted to find out how well the under-liquid plasma may apply in the field of beverage sterilisation with low levels of plasma radiation and keeping the treated liquid within an acceptable temperature.

Two litters of 15% concentrated fruit drink is placed in the bath where a horizontal reactor is submerged. The bacteria count and mold colony count is obtained before the forty minute test. A sample of the fruit drink is extracted at 20 minutes and 40 minutes. The mulberry drink has good natural conductivity so no additive is required. The applied voltage is kept at 1,200 V and the current fluctuates around 200 mA. The temperature at the electrode is maintained at around 62°C and the bath liquid (fruit drink) is kept at around 50°C.
### Table 2 - The micro-organism count

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time (minutes)</th>
<th>Bacteria count/ml</th>
<th>Mold colony count/ml</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>3,400</td>
<td>37,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>1,300</td>
<td>17,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The favour and colour of the fruit drink had not changed after the test. The bacteria sterilisation is 97.5% and that of mold colony has been sterilised more than 99%. This has given proof that the under-liquid plasma has the same capability as those operated in a gaseous environment.

The time for the treatment could be reduced by providing forced circulation of the liquid and increasing the electrode size. Sterilisation of drinking water imposes no limit on the temperature. Higher voltage input for better plasma glow discharge spreading over larger and multiple electrodes should be able to remove all harmful chemical substance, bacteria, biological matter and microbial matter, thus meeting the municipal requirement for drinking water.

### REDUCTION OF METAL OXIDE

One trial experiment to reduce TiO$_2$ back to Titanium metal has been attempted with little success. It was found that in the X-ray diffraction test, minor traces of titanium nitride and titanium monoxide (TiO) were found. In the experiment, only a minor electrolyte of 0.05% KOH with 25% methanol added to the distilled water was used to increase the production of hydrogen. The applied voltage was fixed at 1,850 V and the current fluctuated in the range of 200 mA to 500 mA. Ultrasonic radiation up to 40 KHz was also provided through an ultrasonic bath. The temperature recorded in the bath liquid rose from 46°C to 75°C at the end of the 60 minute test. The fine TiO$_2$ with was suspended with ultrasonic radiation, in the bath liquid in colloidal form, showing as a milky white colour, which gradually became a milky yellow colour towards the end of the experiment. The bath liquid also became viscous.

The X-ray refractive "d" value of TiO$_2$ were:

Before the experiment: 3.512, 1.892, 2.376 but after the experiment there were two new groups of "d" measurements not seen before the experiment:

a: 2.089, 1.480, 2.400
b: 2.400, 2.329, 2.213

This indicates a new material, positioned between TiO and n-Ti$_3$N$_2$-x.

This experiment indicates that a change did happen to the TiO$_2$, possibly because of the limited voltage and current available as input, which could not provide the intensity of plasma discharge needed to effect the reduction process properly. Higher concentration of either HCl or H$_2$SO$_4$ should be used as reagent demonstrated in the following chemical reaction and in the same time serving as electrolyte. The horizontal reactor is not a suitable piece of equipment to undertake such experiment; it is adopted merely for convenience. A wire-in-tube and tube-in-tube reactor would be a suitable candidate, which would keep the metal oxide exposed to plasma discharge throughout the whole of the duration of the experiment. Further, more hydrogen or CO gases produced during the process may be passed back to the reactor to enhance the reaction. (Methane is a suitable gas for this type of reduction process, as both hydrogen and CO gas will be produced to enhance the reaction). The following are the chemical formula, which suggested by transforming TiO$_2$ to either TiCl$_4$ or TiOSO$_4$ as a soluble ionic compound, will facilitate its reduction with prolong exposure to active atomic hydrogen under the influence of a plasma catalytic environment.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{TiO}_2 + 4\text{HCl} & \rightarrow \text{TiCl}_4 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}, \\
\text{TiCl}_4 + 4\text{H} & \rightarrow \text{Ti} + 4\text{HCl}. \\
\text{TiO}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4 & \rightarrow \text{TiO(SO}_4) + \text{H}_2\text{O}, \\
\text{TiO(SO}_4) + 4\text{H} & \rightarrow \text{Ti} + \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4 + \text{H}_2\text{O}
\end{align*}
\]

Where TiCl$_4$ is readily produced by an established process from ilmenite.

Similarly, aluminium oxide Al$_2$O$_3$ can first be transformed to AlCl$_3$, which is soluble ionic compound, ready to be extracted by electro-deposition enhanced with plasma-reduction and plasma-electroplating process:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3 + 6\text{HCl} & \rightarrow 2\text{AlCl}_3 + 3\text{H}_2\text{O}, \\
\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3 + 6\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4 & \rightarrow 2\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3\text{SO}_4 + 6\text{H}_2\text{O}
\end{align*}
\]
2AlCl$_3$ + 6H → 2Al + 6HCl.

In the case of electrode positive oxide such as Fe$_2$O$_3$, it can be reduced in the presence of ionised atomic hydrogen and the presence of carbon monoxide with catalytic reactive plasma irradiation.

Fine metal oxide powder irradiated with ultrasonic waves will maintain in colloidal form allowing it to be exposed to the reduction agent atomic hydrogen and/or carbon monoxide. The process of ultrasonic cavitations and collapse is also known to create extreme localised high temperature up to 10,000$^\circ$K and thousands of atmospheres of pressure together with the high temperature at the impact point of the fine powder particles which is beneficial to the entire reduction process.

DETAILS OF THE EXPERIMENTS CARRIED OUT

*Establishing Generation of Under-Liquid Plasma:*

Distilled water is used in the experiments with 0.05% KOH as a conducting reagent. The voltage is controlled at 1,250 V & 1,850 V. The current is raised in steps of 100 mA until it reaches 850 mA. In the beginning the voltage remains low and gradually builds up as more gas bubbles are generated. Once it reaches a certain high level the current drops immediately. The self-regulating current and voltage input of the power unit automatically switches from current input control to voltage input control. At 45 seconds after switching the experiment on, the voltage rose to 470 V and the current dropped below 500 mA. From 3 min. 10 sec to 5 min 20 sec, the voltage rose to a relatively high level while the current kept on fluctuating. After a period of unstable voltage and current movement they become stabilised at 20 min with the characteristic high voltage and low current. At this instant prominent glow is observed at the perforated cover plate (current concentrating holes). The temperature of the cathode electrode has risen and stays steady at around 70$^\circ$C.

![Glow discharge at stable 1250V input](image)

*FIG. 25*

Fig.25 shows the current fluctuating with stable 1,250 V voltage input and a steady plasma glow discharge. The temperature of the cathode increases rapidly in the early stages and then becomes steady at the 5 min mark, and then rising slowly to it's highest temperature of about 96$^\circ$C.

**OBSERVATION**

*Generating Under-Liquid Plasma:*

In accordance with the experimental results, it is possible to generate non-thermal plasma under-liquid providing that certain conditions are met: a suitable power supply, electrolytic liquid, reactor and other supplementary equipment.

The design of the reactor, with relatively low voltage and limited power rating (restricted current input) requires special construction to trap or retain gas and at the same time to raise the current density at the discharge area.
The gas trap or chamber should be of a suitable size. If the gas trap or chamber is too big, then the trapped gas is too thick which requires a much higher voltage for discharge breakdown and prolongs the time of each cycle of discharge. It becomes difficult to maintain rapid cyclical steady glow discharge. The perforated covering plate, is also an important part of the electrode structure, concentrating the current density. The thickness of the perforated plate and the size of the gas trapping chamber should be carefully controlled so that the electrode spacing gap is not unduly wide as that also influences the voltage requirement. The size and disposition of perforated holes can be determined by trial and error. Wide electrode spacing increase the voltage input requirement and unsuitably close electrode spacing will cause early occurrence of plasma arcing with high current surge and generation of temperatures which will damage the electrodes and their attachments.

The power unit should be of adequate power rating. The electric breakdown is highly dependent on the high voltage supply. If the rating of the power supply unit is inadequate, it could easily be damaged during sudden the high current surge caused at cyclical electric breakdown. There will be no plasma discharge if the power input is inadequate.

The electrolytic liquid should have suitable conductivity, not too low nor too high. Voltage cannot be easily raised between two electrodes the liquid has high conductivity and no plasma discharge will be generated unless there is a high voltage input. The discharging electrode may be fully encapsulated inside a bubble barrier, but high conductivity liquid allows the current to pass through the bubble-liquid interface which in turn, also prevents the voltage rising high enough. If the conductivity of the liquid is too low, then the bubble barrier forms a complete dielectric barrier which requires a much higher inception voltage to cause electric breakdown or discharge and at the same time, the passage of current becomes too low which results in a low current density which also influences the occurrence of discharge. A much higher breakdown voltage (discharging voltage) creates electric arcing in gaseous condition which is no longer considered non-thermal under-liquid plasma discharge.

CONCLUSIONS

1. Gas layer or bubbles form the dielectric barrier that provide the environment for building up the discharge voltage and gaseous space for plasma discharge to take place. High voltage and relatively low current input is characteristic of under-liquid plasma.

2. With the characteristic high voltage and low current requirement, the under-liquid plasma can be generated over a wide range of liquids. The electrolyte liquid can be acidic, alkaline or a solution of salts. Liquids containing conducting impurities or a mixture of organic compounds may also serve as electrolyte such as the case of tape water and fruit drinks.

3. There are a number of factors which would affect the generating of under-liquid plasma such as voltage, current density, configuration of electrodes, area of electrode surface, electrode gap spacing, electrolytic physical and chemical properties, gas retaining and trapping arrangement, provision of plasma enhancement, ultrasonic cavitations, pulsed power supply, ambient temperature and reactor construction. This appears complicated, but the experiments undertaken have demonstrated that all the mentioned factors can be manipulated to achieve generation of stable non-thermal plasma at one atmosphere of pressure.

4. Plasma is the fourth state of matter. It has been widely employed in the field of chemical, electronic, materials and energy industries. Plasma generated under-liquid plasma has its own intrinsic characteristics and advantages, which have already proved to be a useful tool for plasma electroplating or deposition of both metallic and non-metallic materials. It will find its application in the plasma-assisted water electrolysis for hydrogen production; reformation of hydrogen rich compounds or hydrocarbon fuel (gas and liquid); decontamination of both liquid and gas pollution discharges containing persistent harmful chemicals, dissolved heavy metals and organic and biological contaminants; sterilisation of fruit drinks, potable water supply; and reduction of material oxide such as oxide ores, metal oxide as an alternative method metal refinement. It is probable that the proposed under-liquid plasma generation, and this established basic scientific information, would form the basis for further refinements leading to the practical new applications put forward in this patent application.
PLASMA ASSISTED ELECTROLYTES FOR HYDROGEN PRODUCTION

Water electrolysis is still used for the production of pure hydrogen. This hydrogen production is restricted because of its relatively low energy conversion efficiency. In order to achieve higher energy efficiency, the electric voltage must be kept low to avoid energy loss through heat conversion. There are also claims that the energy efficiency can be improved by better electrode configuration, an increase in the reactive surface area, reduction of the electrode gap and increasing the operating pressure. The PEM solid electrode system is in its early development and its efficiency remains similar to that of water electrolysis system. In any case the basic principle of water electrolysis has not changed since it was first put to use. Electrolysis as a whole, is considered to be non-competitive with the competing production process of reforming hydrocarbon fuel, but electrolysis has the advantage of being a clean process producing high gas purity and CO₂ is not produced.

The hydrogen bubbles evolving from the electrode surface slow down with time when tiny bubbles gradually built up and smother the electrode surface. These are not easily dislodged and the rate of hydrogen production is reduced further as those tiny bubbles become a barrier to current flow between the two electrodes.

The proposed invention is closely related to the water electrolysis process but the mechanism of separating hydrogen from water molecules is different. Generating non-equilibrium plasma within the bubbles that smother the electrodes will break down the dielectric barrier bubble layer and cause the normal flow of current to be resumed. At the same time, water molecules contained in the bubbles coming into contact with the plasma discharge, will be dissociated to produce extra hydrogen. In addition, the vigorous plasma discharge near the electrode surface will also create an hydrodynamic condition, which will wash away the fine bubbles which block the current flow. The mechanism of producing hydrogen by plasma discharge is different from the conventional electrolysis which splits the ionic water molecules by electro-polarity attraction, while in the plasma discharge the water molecule is broken down as the result of electron collisions. The water molecules under the plasma discharge irradiation would lose one electron due to electron collision to yield H₂O + e⁻ → OH⁻ + H⁺ + e⁻

The hydrogen produced is of high purity. Ordinary potable water or rainwater with a very low concentration of electrolyte can be used as the main source of material, instead of distilled water, as they contain sufficient impurity to be slightly electro-conductive.

The experiment has demonstrated that hydrogen gas can be produced with plasma glow discharge as a supplementary process to the conventional method. The energy required to produce 1 cubic meter of hydrogen with plasma glow discharge with a very rudimentary reactor has achieved an efficiency of 56% which can be further improved with better engineering, by closing the electrode gap distance, selecting the right concentration of electrolyte, reactor construction and better means of trapping and retaining gas near the discharge electrode.

High temperatures of up to 90°C is recorded in the electrolyte, which increases within very short time of the reaction. This may in part due exothermic reaction of recombining H and OH to water. The excessive heat can well be utilised as secondary source of energy. The gas or vapour bubbles by heating assuming greater importance as source materials for plasma dissociation leading to the production of Hydrogen. The high purity oxygen co-produce is also a valuable by-product with many applications.

Since high voltage with moderate current is needed in the plasma process, the production rate per unite area of electrode surface is high, and so only a small reactor is needed for the production of hydrogen, especially when other plasma enhancement methods are employed, such as ultrasonic cavitations, pulsed powers and RF input.

The electrodes could be of any conductive materials such as aluminium, stainless steel, graphite, tungsten, platinum, palladium etc. The size of the electrode for the plasma discharge is much smaller than that required by the conventional electrolysis to produce the same quantity of gas. As a result of this, a smaller reactor is possible.

Sponge porous electrodes will increase the reactive surface area available to produce electrolysis gases. In the experiment, several layers of fine wire mesh were packed tightly together to mimic a sponge porous electrode plate.

Some of the basic electrode configuration is: plate to plate; perforated plate to perforated plate; plate or perforated plate to wire mesh; wire mesh to wire mesh; plate to pinned plate; dielectric coating on one or both electrodes plate or mesh or pinned plate, tube in tube and wire in tube arrangement. It is noted that electrode configuration including any lining or covering materials that help to concentrate the current density and having the ability in retaining gas around the electrode would be adopted which will help to lower the voltage and current requirement to generate steady plasma discharge.

In order to create an environment for steady and short cyclical plasma glow discharge as already mention in the previous text, the electrode configuration should be so structured to retain the bubbles and concentrate the current density and yet keeping the true electrode gap distance to a minimum. This creates a suitable voided...
space either in the metal electrode or in the covering materials, capable of retaining gas while at the same time having the mechanism to concentrate the current density to a localised discharge point. This leads to a wide variety of designs and choice of materials to satisfy plasma discharge requirement.

In order to avoid recombination of H⁺ and H₂ with OH ions and reverting back to water, the hydrogen atoms after regaining their lost electrons through contacting the cathode should be allowed to escape quickly from the area which abounds with other oxidation species and radicals. This has greatly influenced the productivity of hydrogen gas. If H⁺ and OH is allowed to recombined, despite of the apparent bubble boiling in the reactor very little gas can be collected and the temperature in the reactor rises quickly which could well be the exothermic effect of recombination of H⁺ and OH.

The hydrogen produced is collected separately from the oxygen. Since the produced hydrogen gas contains a fair amount of water vapour, the hydrogen gas is collected by passing it through a water chiller or other known method, so that the measured gas volume is at room temperature with minimum water vapour content.

The basic plasma assisted electrolysis cell or reactor can be produced in modular form which can be mounted side by side and placed inside a single electrolytic tank with their respective power and output gas collected to form a major production unit. Several reactor types can be employed for the production of hydrogen. Rod or wire in tube reactor, tube in tube reactor, single or multiple cell reactors are also suitable for the plasma assisted water electrolysis. The gas retaining and current concentrating cover will be affixed on the cathode electrode facing the anode electrode. A horizontal reactor whose cathode has a gas-retaining cover can be placed on top of an anode which is separated by a diaphragm and the hydrogen gas will then collect in isolation.

The introduction of ultrasonic cavitations into the electrolytic liquid is easy since the electrolysis bath is also the ultrasonic bath and ultrasonic transducers can be attached to the bath externally. A mixture of sonic frequency should be used to avoid any occurrence of a dead sonic zone. The introduction of sonic excitation through cavitations enhances the production performance of plasma-assisted electrolysis.

Pulsed high-voltage DC supply with single polarity square wave from 5 KHz up to 100 KHz has been found to be beneficial for generating plasma at a much reduced voltage.

The distinct advantage of the under-liquid plasma enables ionised species migrate to the respective half cell and electrodes which will avoid and minimise re-mixing of the produced hydrogen and oxygen causing a reversion to water again and creating a hazardous, explosive condition. The oxygen is considered as a by-product which can be collected for use or it can be channelled to the combustion chamber if hydrogen is used as direct fuel for a combustion engine.

Water is the primary source material for hydrogen production, being economically available and of unlimited supply. It is a completely clean source material that produces no unwanted by-products.

The anode may be gradually losing its materials due to electro transportation, but if so, it will be a very slow process. In practice the polarity of electrodes can be reversed which reverses the materials transportation and deposition. Conductor materials which are inert to electro-chemical corrosion are a good choice to serve as electrodes.

A chemically conductive reagent may be added to water to increase its conductivity and a foaming agent added to enhance generation of bubbles. The electrolyte can be of acidic or alkaline base. The concentration of the electrolyte should be maintained at a steady level for best results. High electrolyte concentration increases liquid conductivity as well as productivity of gas bubbles but it might prevent the rising voltage required for discharge as the current flow between electrode will not be inhibited by the presence of bubbles. However, a very low concentration of electrolyte will favour dielectric breakdown of bubbles, as a lesser current will be carried by the liquid medium inbetween the bubbles. It has been found that either acidic or alkaline electrolyte with 0.02% concentration work extremely well in maintaining steady glow discharge with DC voltage ranging from 350 V to 1,800 V and a current from 100 mA to 800 mA.

Tap water has been used without adding any conducting reagent and it often works unexpected well, most likely due to present of impurity and high pH, in the plasma-assisted electrolysis where steady glow discharge occurs at around 450 V to 900 V and current around 200 mA to 350 mA. The power input requirement varies in accordance to electrode spacing, electrode and reactor configuration, electrolyte concentration and the structure of gas retaining arrangement. Again other plasma assisted method such as pulsed power input and ultrasonic cavitations etc. also help to lower the power input requirement.

The process is in general, conducted at one atmosphere pressure. An increase of pressure will slow down upward movement of the bubbles and raise the temperature of the electrolyte. Some increase in temperature in
the electrolyte is not detrimental to the generation of plasma. Water vapour bubbles provide the source materials and active environment for plasma discharge. In general, electrolyte temperature is well below boiling point as non-thermal plasma produces little heat. The temperature sometime rises quickly in the electrolyte due to occurrence of infrequent plasma arc and exothermic in the recombination of H+ and OH- in quantity.

During the steady glow discharge, vigorous bubbles with yellow/orange/red colour light spots appear all over the plastic perforation. The light spots also appear widely on the electrode surface when the voltage is increased. On examination of the electrode and plastic cover sheet, no burn marks were observed. This proves that the plasma glow is non-thermal after an hour of glow discharge. The temperature in the electrode plate recorded with a thermal couple was around 50°C to about 90°C. The gas produced is composed mainly of hydrogen with some water vapour, which condenses quickly on cooling. The rate of hydrogen production is variable and energy conversion rate also fluctuated throughout the test. This is suspected to cause by the recombination of H and OH, which is affected by the electrode and reactor structure and configuration.

Hydrogen can now be produced with high voltage and low current, which is contrary to the conventional electrolysis system where a small reactor with a high rate of production is becoming possible. This has clearly demonstrated that the mechanism of producing hydrogen with plasma discharge is different from conventional water electrolysis in a number of ways. Steam and gas vapour produced due to heating of the electrodes (cathode) in short space of time are becoming an importance source of materials for plasma dissociation that also influence the productivity of hydrogen.

1.3 Experimental Procedure
1.3.1 A flow diagram for carrying out experiments in relation to this invention is shown in Fig.28.

![Flow Diagram](image)

FIG. 28

The apparatus comprises broadly, a DC power source 1, liquid bath 2, reactor 3, gas and liquid separator 4, water chiller 5, and gas-volume measuring meter 6. Gas was produced by electrolysis which was catalysed by the plasma. Hydrogen gas was produced at the cathode and oxygen gas at the anode.
1.3.2 Equipment Function:

DC power source: provides high voltage DC.
Horizontal reactor: generation of non-thermal under-liquid plasma.
Gas and liquid separator: to separate liquid from gas and return as chilled liquid.
Chiller: to condense any liquid vapour admixed in the gas and return to reactor.
Gas-volume measuring meter: to measure the volume of gas flow.

1.4 Method and Operation of the Experiments

(1) The experiment is conducted in accordance to the occurrence of plasma discharge. Six different levels of voltage are selected to produce under-liquid plasma with same reactor for the generation of hydrogen. They are: 1350 V, 1450 V, 1550 V, 1650 V, 1750 V, and 1850 V. Each experiment lasts 30 minutes and the experiment is repeated three times under the same set of conditions. The data obtained are then averaged out.

1.5 Experimental Observations

Plasma discharge at 1,350 V is observed to have few and limited lighting illumination on the electrode in comparing with those vigorous, steady discharging over a much larger electrode surface at voltage 1,850 V. The corresponding current input is also very much reduced. It has been recorded that the temperature at the cathode electrode rises with time until it reaches about 90°C and gradually becomes steady. The colour of the plasma discharge appears to be orange and red and its colour is greatly different from that of electric arc (plasma arc discharge) which appears to be sharp bright blue in colour.

Applicant also conducted experiments with the same equipment utilising the under-liquid plasma to transform methanol for use in hydrogen production. Applicant found that the plasma was efficacious in producing hydrogen gas from the methanol. CO and CO₂ gases were completely absent from the gas produced. This was unexpected. Without being bound thereby, Applicant believes that CO and CO₂ may have been absorbed by KOH which was added as a conductive agent to the electrolyte. Some oxygen gases were recorded before methanol was added to the electrolyte.

Applicant also conducted experiments with the same equipment utilising the under-liquid plasma to reform hydrocarbons for hydrogen production. Applicant found that the plasma was efficacious in reforming the hydrocarbons and producing amongst other things hydrogen gas.

Applicant also conducted experiments with the same equipment utilising the under-liquid plasma to treat diesel oil. The diesel oil was emulsified in water to disperse it through the body of liquid. After being subjected to plasma conditions near the cathode, a gas was produced that was smoky and resembled an exhaust gas emission that did not easily burn. Applicant established by means of these experiments that diesel oil could be reformed and also dissociated by the in liquid plasma with this equipment.

Reformation of hydrocarbon liquid and gas fuel, and hydrogen rich compounds for hydrogen production:

Water is one of the primary source materials, which serves as carrier, conductor and confinement to the bubbles space where plasma corona and glow discharge would take place when adequate electro-potentials apply across single, or multiple electrodes pairs. The hydrocarbon fuel methane (gas), methanol, diesel, gasoline, kerosene (paraffin), ethane, natural gas, LPG gas, bio-diesel etc. and hydrogen sulphur (H₂S) are also good source material for hydrogen production.

The majority world-wide of hydrogen production conventionally is by high-pressure steam reformation of methane. This requires high pressure and high temperature. The production plant is large and costly to set up. Storage and delivery in association with the production are an added cost for the supply of hydrogen gas. The importance of hydrogen as an alternative environmentally clean fuel is well understood. The upcoming fuel cell technology demands an economic and ready supply of pure hydrogen gas. To produce hydrogen with a small processor to enrich fuels for combustion engines and gas turbines will not only be reducing fuel consumption but it also reduces polluting emissions.

The proposed plasma reforming process can deal with both gaseous fuel and liquid fuel. The gas fuel will be bubbled into the reactor along with an inhibitor to slow down the upward flow of the fuel gas. Since the dissociation of the hydrocarbon fuel will be mainly achieved by plasma dissociation which is similar to the plasma-assisted electrolysis process, but with electrolytic liquid containing hydrogen rich compounds. In the case of liquid fuel, it can either form a mixture with water or be emulsified with water. The percentage of fuel in the mix depends on the type of fuel, its conductivity, boiling point, flammability and electrochemical reaction. The reformation is mainly due to partial oxidation either with the active OH-, O-, O₂, O₃ created by the plasma dissociation. At the same time, the hydrogen-rich compound such as CH₄ or CH₃OH will be dissociated directly with electron
collisions. Since carbon dioxide is a major by-product together with some other minor gases coming out from the impurity of the fuel, they will be separated by the conventional absorption method or the membrane separation method.

Transformation of hydrocarbon fuel by corona and glow plasma has been attempted by passing the hydrocarbon gas such as methane, natural gas, LPG and vaporised liquid fuel sometime mixed with water vapours through the plasma reactor. They have all been successful in producing hydrogen-rich gas through corona discharge at atmospheric pressure by subjecting methane, vaporised methanol, diesel fuel mixed with water vapour, by passing it through a plasma gild arc reactor, wire in tube reactor and reactor proposed by MIT plasmatron or other gas phase corona streamer reactor.

The proposed under-liquid plasma reactor has many advantage over the gas-phase plasma reactor as it is able to generate a steady plasma-glow discharge at a very much lower voltage, i.e. from 350 V to (rarely) 1,800 V with current in the range of 100 mA to 800 mA in water. The liquid medium will also permit the application of ultrasonic waves producing an effect which will enhance the generation of glow plasma and thereby increase the overall transformation process. Again, no external air or gas is need be introduced for the reaction. However, the hydrocarbon gas such as methane, natural, LPG or hydrogen sulphurs gas can be introduced to work in conjunction, and complementing the liquid fuel in the reformation process. The fuel gases will enhance plasma-discharge reformation and allow it to take place without having to rely on gas produced by electrolysis.

Those hydrocarbon fuel molecules which come in contact with the plasma-discharge, will be subjected to dissociation and partial oxidation depicted in the following:

\[
\begin{align*}
    \text{H}_2\text{O} + e & \rightarrow +\text{OH} + \text{H}^+ + e \quad \text{dissociation} \\
    \text{CH}_4 + e & \rightarrow \text{CH}_3 + \text{H}^+ + e \quad \text{direct plasma dissociation} \\
    \text{CH}_4 + \text{H} & \rightarrow \text{CH}_3 + \text{H}_2 \quad \text{reacting with H radicals} \\
    \text{CH}_4 + \text{H}_2\text{O} & \rightarrow \text{CO} + 3\text{H}_2 \quad \text{partial oxidation} \\
    \text{CO} + \text{H}_2\text{O} & \rightarrow \text{CO}_2 + \text{H}_2 \quad \text{water shifting} \\
    \text{CH}_3\text{OH} + \text{H}_2\text{O} & \rightarrow \text{CO}_2 + 3\text{H}_2 \quad \text{electrolysis and partial oxidation} \\
    \text{H}_2\text{S} & \rightarrow \text{S} + 2\text{H} \quad \text{without experiencing oxidation} \\
    \text{H}_2\text{S} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} & \rightarrow \text{SO}_2 + 3\text{H}_2 \quad \text{partial oxidation} \\
    \text{SO}_2 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} & \rightarrow \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4 + \text{H}_2 \\
\end{align*}
\]

Endothermic catalytic conversion of light hydro-carbon (methane to gasoline):

\[
\text{CnH}_m + n\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow n\text{CO} + (n + m/2)\text{H}_2
\]

With heavy hydro-carbon:

\[
\begin{align*}
    \text{CH}_1\text{,4} + 0.3\text{H}_2\text{O} + 0.4\text{O}_2 & \rightarrow 0.9\text{CO} + 0.1\text{CO}_2 + \text{H}_2 \\
    \text{C}_8\text{H}_{18} + \text{H}_2\text{O} + 9/2\text{O}_2 & \rightarrow 6\text{CO} + 2\text{CO}_2 + 10\text{H}_2
\end{align*}
\]

The hydrogen gas and carbon dioxide are collected. The CO₂ is separated by establish absorption or the membrane separation method.

The OH radical produced by the plasma dissociation will play an important role in oxidising the CH₄ to produce CO which would further be oxidised to become CO₂. The same applied to methanol CH₃OH and H₂S. The S is being oxidised to form SO₂ and further oxidising to become SO₃ and subsequently reacting with H₂O to produce H₂SO₄. This type of chemical reaction will be possible only with the encouragement of the highly chemical reactive and plasma catalytic environment. Not every CO will become CO₂ and sulphur particles may be observed in the precipitation.

**REACTOR**

There are number of reactors which can be used for the reformation of hydrogen-rich compounds. Reactors such as the wire in tube, tube in tube; single cell and multiple cell reactors; and the multi-electrodes without diaphragm separation. The tube in tube reactor and tower reactor with horizontal electrodes are suitable for treating both liquid and gas hydrocarbons and both at the same time. The anode and cathode are closely spaced with a gap distance ranging from 6 mm to 12 mm and are covered with dielectric gas-retaining and current-concentrating
construction on one side or both sides of the electrode. One important aspect of the reactor is having the construction, which will accommodate the ultrasonic transducer, which would induce proper sonic cavitations uniformly distributed throughout the reacting volume. The size, shape and arrangement of the electrodes can vary but its size would be restricted by the electric power available. A small reactor electrode plate is quite adequate for good uniform discharge and high productivity. The size of reactor plate use in most of the experiments is in the range of 16 cm$^2$ to 30 cm$^2$. It is preferable that the non-discharging electrode has an electrode area larger than the discharging electrode with the dielectric gas-retaining construction. With sufficient power available, both the anode and the cathode electrode can be functioning as plasma discharging electrodes at the same time. This is particularly useful in the partial oxidation process.

In the case of an emulsified oil/water mixture, it is best maintained with ultrasonic excitation which at the same time generates transient micro bubbles which enhance the whole reactive process. Hydrocarbon gas may also introduce to the reactor to form air bubbles or trapped gas pockets for the ready formation of the plasma glow discharge. Since the oily hydrocarbon fuel is highly dielectric this would require a higher concentration of conducting reagent than that required for the plasma-assisted water electrolysis, in order to maintain a suitable level of current density for the discharge to occur.

Reformation of methane gas by the under-liquid non-thermal plasma is by bubbling the gas through the perforated horizontal electrodes of tower a reactor or a tube-in-tube reactor. Since the methane gas is to be oxidised by the plasma dissociated water molecule (OH$^-$ + H$^+$) to form carbon monoxide and hydrogen gas (CH$_4$ + H$_2$O → CO + 3H$_2$). The CO will be further oxidised to form CO$_2$ with oxygen derived from the plasma dissociated water molecule, releasing two more hydrogen atoms (H$_2$). The resultant gas is either H$_2$ or CO$_2$ with perhaps small amount of CO. The hydrogen gas will be collected with reasonable purity after the CO$_2$ or CO is removed by absorption or membrane separation. Since the methane gas may not thoroughly reform with one past through the reactor, it is important to regulate the gas flow rate to ensure suitable resident time for the reformation or to have the methane gas recovered by the next round of reformation or to have the gas going through a series of reactors to make sure that the methane gas is fully utilised. The later case may not be energy efficient.

Reformation of methanol for hydrogen production can be achieved in the first place, by ordinary electrolysis or by partial oxidation. When CH$_3$OH is subjected to plasma discharge irradiation, it will react with the oxidising species and radicals dissociated from the water molecules. Conventional electrolysis will also contribute to the overall production of hydrogen gas. Reformation of methanol/water mixture will achieve better efficiency when plasma discharges is used in conjunction with ultrasonic excitation and cavitation. Several types of reactor can be adopted for the methanol reformation such as a tower reactor with horizontal electrodes, a tube-in-tube reactor, a transverse flow reactor, etc. These types of reactor offer very active oxidising species and hydroxyl radicals needed in the reformation.

Reformation of heavy oil such as diesel by under-liquid plasma discharge will be with emulsified liquid. The best way to maintain a thorough emulsification of diesel fuel and water is by ultrasonic excitation. Micro droplets of diesel will be encapsulated in the water. It is again observed that the conductivity of the emulsified liquid is very low as diesel oil is dielectric and current can only be conducted through the water film inbetween. This has rendered the need of more electrolytes added, especially as the diesel content increases. Bubbles are not easily produced by electrolysis due to its low current flow. It is therefore an advantage to either introduce gas to the reactor from outside or to produce ultrasonic cavitations in the liquid at the same time as the emulsification of the water/oil mixture. The tower reactor, tube-in-tube reactor and the transverse-flow reactor are all suitable for heavy hydrocarbon fuel reformation provided that an adequate ultrasonic transducer is properly located to ensure effective excitation and cavitations distributed throughout the liquid volume. A pulsed power supply will enhance the plasma generation and electrode heating will assist the generation of bubbles at the discharging electrode.

**REDUCTION OF METAL AND MINERAL OXIDE PROCESS**

Mineral refinement is an expensive and polluting process. To remove oxygen from the oxide, is either by reacting with higher electro-positive elements, which is uneconomic, or by exposing the metal oxide to C, CO, and hydrogen inside a high-temperature furnace such as the case in iron production. The electrolysis of a molten melt of Al$_2$O$_3$ or TiO$_2$ to extract pure metals Al or Ti respectively, consumes a large quantity of electricity, and requires the use of expensive refractory and electrode materials along with polluting emissions, render these two useful metals very expensive and inhibit their common application.

An under-liquid plasma reductive process to reduce oxide of ore or metals is proposed. The plasma discharge irradiation of the metal oxides in a highly catalytic environment, will cause interaction with the active hydrogen atoms produced by the plasma dissociation of water or methane or a methanol/water mix and introduced hydrogen gas together with the assistance of ultrasonic excitation would be sufficient in many instances to dislodge the most stubborn oxide.
It is reported that research is underway to extract Al from Al₂O₃ by electrolysis. Aluminium is electrode wired to cathode from porous Alumina anode electrode. The reduction of TiO₂ and Al₂O₃ by hydrogen plasma discharge is also being actively researched elsewhere with the aim of economically refining these two useful metals. A tube-in-tube reactor, or a wire-in-tube reactor can be used for this reduction process. These two reactors can be easily modified for continuous processing of either the granular form of the mineral or the metal oxide. The metal oxide will be exposed to the influence of highly active hydrogen atoms and subsequently the oxygen in the metal will be removed. This would not be a problem for those electro-positive elements but would present some difficulty for oxides such as Al and Ti.

The oxygen is strongly bonded with the parent metals such as Al₂O₃ and TiO₂ which cannot be reduced easily. This rudimentary horizontal reactor serves to demonstrate that metal oxide can be refined by exposing it in granular form to plasma discharge irradiation, ultrasonic excitation and in a highly reactive environment containing active hydrogen atoms. Additional hydrogen can be derived from the plasma dissociation of methane gas introduced to the reaction chamber where CO and atomic H are produced. Similarly by plasma dissociation of the methane water mixture that active hydrogen and CO₂ are also produced to supplement the reductive atomic hydrogen. Hydrogen gas can also bubble into the reactor and any excess will be collected and passed back to the reactor.

Reduction of Al₂O₃, TiO₂, TiF₃, TiO, AlCl₃ will be taking place in the following manner, where:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{TiO}_2 + 4\text{H(2H}_2) & \rightarrow \text{Ti} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \\
\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3 + 6\text{H(3H}_2) & \rightarrow \text{Al} + 3\text{H}_2\text{O} \\
\text{TiF}_3 + 3\text{H(3/2H}_2) & \rightarrow \text{Ti} + 3\text{HF}
\end{align*}
\]

The alternative is to have:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{TiO}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4 & \rightarrow \text{TiOSO}_4 + \text{H}_2\text{O} \\
\text{TiOSO}_4 + 2\text{H} & \rightarrow \text{TiO} + \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4 \\
\text{or TiO} + 2\text{H} & \rightarrow \text{Ti} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \\
\text{and TiO}_2 + 4\text{HCL} & \rightarrow \text{TiCl}_4 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \\
\text{TiCl}_4 + 4\text{H} & \rightarrow \text{Ti} + 4\text{HCl}
\end{align*}
\]

where TiCl₄ is ionic and is soluble in water

The above reaction is under the influence of a non-thermal plasma so that the oxide of ores or metal is subjected to a highly catalytic environment and comes into contact with the reactive atomic hydrogen whereby the oxygen will be taken out. To enhance the matter further, the whole reaction process is also subjected to sonic excitation. The fine particles in the colloidal suspension of the granular oxide will collide with each other and at the point of impact, the temperature will rise over 1,500°C to 3,000°C and local melting is reported. The high temperature and pressure of a collapsing sonic bubble will work in conjunction with the plasma glow discharge irradiating the oxide particles with atomic hydrogen with localised high temperature due to collision and cavitations implosion which in the end remove the oxygen. The refined metals will be in powder form down to nano size.

The other method of extracting and refining metals from their oxides is to subject the ionic solution of the metal such as AlCl₃ to an electrolysis process which is reported to have achieved efficiency of 3 KWh/Kg of Al. The whole process can be further improved with the plasma electroplating technique with the proposed under-liquid glow plasma discharge. The Al will be deposited on the cathode electrode. Part of the chlorine gas will come out from the anode side and will react with the active hydrogen to form HCl.

The fine granular metal oxide is placed inside a horizontal reactor on top of cathode electrode. A close matrix separator membrane, used to prevent the metal oxide from crossing over, placed above and below the anode electrode is used to separate it from the cathode. The whole reactor is submerged inside an ultrasonic bath. Ultrasonic waves will penetrate the membrane separator to cause the granular metal oxide in colloidal suspension. The oxide will be subjected to the under-liquid plasma glow discharge irradiation and atomic hydrogen reduction. The percentage of metal oxide being reduced after a period of time is evaluated. Metal oxide of TiO₂ will be put to test. A methane/water mixture will be employed as the liquid medium which will produce larger amount of active atomic hydrogen serving as reduction agents.

DECONTAMINATION OF LIQUID
The problem of pollution is a major issue affecting every living being on this planet. A lot of effort has been expended by Governments, universities and private enterprises, seeking a comprehensive process to deal with a vast variety of pollution issues. Polluting gas emissions from industries and motor vehicles produce large quantities of CO₂ causing global warming; NOₓ, VOC, and particulates causes cancer and smog; SO₂ causes acid rain. Decontamination of the gases discharged from industries is costly to achieve and what is urgently needed is a comprehensive and economical treatment process to reduce the overall treatment cost. Water contamination is another major issue. Contaminated water unfit for human consumption, enters the sea and kills marine life near the shore. Governments worldwide are passing stringent laws setting a pollution standard, which demands the development of efficient and economic ways to control pollutants. The present proposed invention is put forward as a versatile process, which can treat a variety of contaminants either separately or together.

Corona discharge and glow plasma discharge as non-equilibrium plasma has been developed for applications in the decontamination of a wide range of noxious chemical compounds and recalcitrant chlorinated organic compounds such as dichloro-ethane, pentachlorophenol, perchloroethylene, chlorom, carbon tetrachloride, organochlorine presistentes, endocrine disrupter, dioxin etc. It is also capable of sterilising tough microbial, bacteria and biological contaminants present in ground water such as cryptosporidia parvum. Noxious gas emissions such as NOₓ and SOₓ can also be neutralised by passing them through the wet reactor, which includes the removal of particulates as well as the pollution emissions. This is mainly due to the ability of plasma to create a very reactive catalytic environment for those normally very stable and inactive compounds to be reduced, oxidised or neutralised by reacting with the OH⁺ radicals, atomic hydrogen H⁺ and other oxidative species such as O⁻, O₂⁻, O₃, H₂O₂ etc. present and is reported to have high efficiency especially in dealing with diluted contaminants.

Microbial bacteria is removed by both oxidations when they come in contact with the oxidative species such as O₃, O₂⁻, O⁻, H₂O₂, and OH⁺. At the same time, they are subjected to the electromechanical stretching of the cell wall, which weakens its oxidative resistance, especially when ultrasonic cavitations, implosions and shock waves created by pulse power, are incorporated into the reactive process. Again reports of over 99% sterilisation are not uncommon.

At the present, most of the treatment work is conducted in a gaseous environment, by spraying or vaporising the contaminated liquid over the plasma discharging electrodes, or by producing plasma discharge irradiating over the surface of a liquid which contains the undesirable contaminants, or by passing the polluted gas through a dry reactor sometimes mixed with water vapour or using plasma torch irradiation of the polluted object.

A surface water contact plasma glow discharge system has also been developed as a decontamination process under the name “Plasmate”. Under water plasma by pulsed high voltage electric discharge with high current input to dissociate the water to produce H and OH⁺ radicals to treat bacterial and microbial decontamination has also been reported as being successful.

The proposed under-liquid plasma is a low energy consumption system, which produces steady plasma by utilising the present of bubbles. The voltage required for dealing with a wide range of liquids having variable electrolytic properties, ranges from 350 V to 3,000 V and current intensity ranging from 1 to 2 Amp/cm². It produces a highly reactive environment with a supply of oxidative radicals and reductive atomic hydrogen spread over a large volume of liquid, making it highly effective as a decontaminatinf process, and one which is also both economic and easy to operate.

The under-liquid plasma has the advantage of being able to decontaminate several pollutants at the same time and it also has a very active gas and liquid interaction which makes it highly effective as a treatment process. Liquid waste, containing harmful chemical, bacteria, microbial, heavy metals, noxious gas, polluted air and odour can be treated in the same reactor simultaneously.

Recalcitrant organic chlorinated materials in water, which include dichloromethane, pentachlorophenol, chloroform and carbon tetrachloride, will either be oxidised or degraded to CO₂ and chlorine. While the pathogens in drinking water such as cryptosporidia with thick phospholipids wall protecting the trophs is in the first place being stretched and weakened and subsequently broken down by the oxidising species. Some of the oxidative species such as OH radicals, O⁻, O₂⁻, and O₃ are present in quantity and are more active than chlorine and other mild oxidants. It has the advantage that no chemical is needed as an oxidation agent, which can sometimes result in secondary pollution.

Heavy metals in dilute solution, can be extracted or removed through a simple electrolysis process by turning the metal to hydroxide which could than be removed by filter. Soluble metal ions can also be extracted by deposition on to the cathode electrode, which can be further facilitated by the plasma electroplating process owned by the inventor, and which uses the same under-liquid bubble plasma process.
The treatment of NO, SO₂ and particulates is to pass the polluted gas through the reactor where the particulate will be removed and the NO is either oxidised to become NO₂ or NO₃ by O⁻ or O₃. It can also be reduced to N by the active hydrogen. NO₃ will react with water to become nitric acid. NO₂ is not considered to be a noxious gas. SO₂ reacting with O₃ or oxygen radical to form SO₃ can be easily oxidised and then react with water to become H₂SO₄ (sulpheric acid). When the said gas is introduced to the reactor it can be utilised as a gas bubble for plasma discharge especially when this gas bubble is collected or retained near the electrodes.

The effectiveness of non-thermal plasma discharge in treating carcinogenic organic compounds and pollutant gases is well established. Removal or reduction of the amount of heavy metals, arsenic and mercury to an acceptable safe low concentration level from or in water, have been successfully carried out by a simple electrolysis process. The extraction efficiency is further improved by the presence of an under-liquid plasma discharge where some of them will readily react with the OH radicals to become metal hydroxide or to be deposited by the very active plasma electroplating (deposition) method which has been adequately proven as a useful technique.

Further experiments in this area are unnecessary. Adequate information can be drawn upon from much research work which already been carried out. Concentrated effort has already been used to search for a better way of generating steady plasma glow discharge under-liquid by utilising the bubbles which will enable the manufacturing of a simple and economic reactor which requires only low power input and which will work well in treating a wide scope of contaminants.

Sterilisation of drinking water at municipal scale can be simplified by adopting the under-liquid plasma discharge which will effectively neutralise and degrade carcinogenic organic compounds in the water by creating the dissociation and active catalytic environment which encourages the breakdown of the inert chemicals and at the same time subject it to the active reductive and oxidative radicals. The heavy metals dissolved in the water will also be removed or reduced in the same time through the plasma electrolysis and electroplating as described previously. The biological contaminants will be sterilised by the highly oxidative environment existing during the glow discharge. The effectiveness of the combined treatment to produce potable water fit for human consumption is further enhanced by the adoption of ultrasonic cavitation and shock waves with a pulsed power supply.

The entire sterilisation process does not require any added chemicals such as ozone, chlorine or any electrolytic additive. The impurity in the pre-treated liquid will be adequate to serve as conductor for the under-water plasma discharge to take place. Any excessive ozone, which has not been used up in the oxidation process during the plasma discharge, will be easily neutralised by the presence of active hydrogen atoms. Hydroxyl radicals (OH) are one of the most aggressive oxidising agents, which being produced in quantity will do most of the useful work. There will be no chlorine remnant left in the water, as it is unnecessary.

The under-liquid plasma technique will be useful in food industries for low temperature sterilisation and removal of odour. The same method may also find its use in the paper-making industry in fragmentation and de-lignification of the fluidised pulps, treating the highly polluted discharge, and treating fabrics and dyes in the textiles industry.

There are several types of reactors which can be employed in the decontamination process. The separation membrane diaphragm in the wire-in-tube and tube-in-tube reactor is no longer required. Other reactors such as the transverse-flow reactor and the tower reactor can also be adopted.

The reactor can be arrange in such way that the plasma discharge occurs either at the cathode or at the anode provided that a good gas-trapping cover is provided on the electrode. Since much of the decontamination action relies on the presence of strong oxidation agents such as hydroxyl radicals, atomic oxygen, ozone, singlet oxygen and hydroperoxyl radicals, plasma discharge on the side of anode electrode enhanced with the gas retaining cover will cause the formation of said species represented by the following equations:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{H}_2\text{O} + e & \rightarrow +\text{OH} + \text{H} + e \quad \text{dissociation} \\
\text{H}_2\text{O} + e & \rightarrow +\text{H}_2\text{O}_2 + 2e \quad \text{ionisation} \\
\text{H}_2\text{O}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O} & \rightarrow \text{H}_3\text{O}_2 + \text{OH} \quad \text{dissociation} \\
\text{O}_2 + e & \rightarrow \text{O}_2^* + e \quad \text{excitation} \\
\text{O}_2 + e & \rightarrow +2\text{O} + e \quad \text{dissociation} \\
\text{O}_2 + e & \rightarrow \text{O}_2^* + e \quad \text{excitation} \\
\text{O}_2 + \text{O} & \rightarrow \text{O}_3 \quad \text{association} \\
\text{OH} + \text{OH} & \rightarrow \text{H}_2\text{O}_2 \quad \text{association}
\end{align*}
\]
Some chemical contaminants can only be broken down by reduction with active atomic hydrogen, which would require plasma discharge at the cathode electrode. In the tower reactor (Fig.7) and transverse-flow reactor (Fig.6) it is possible to have the gas-retaining cover on one side of electrode facing the side of the opposite electrode with the gas-retaining covers, so that an alternating zone of oxidation and reduction is created in the reactors to deal with a variety of contaminants.

Production of hydrogen by plasma dissociation of water molecules is the result of electron collisions, which is different from the conventional electrolysis, which separates the dipole water molecules by electro-induction. They also have different sets of requirements to dissociate water molecules for the production of hydrogen:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conventional electrolysis</th>
<th>Plasma glow discharge under water, according to the present invention</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Low voltage and high current density</td>
<td>High voltage and relatively low current density</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. High concentration of electrolyte (up to 25% KOH)</td>
<td>Low concentration electrolyte (0.01% KOH) low electrolytic requirement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Avoid bubble attachment to the electrodes</td>
<td>Bubbles smothering the electrodes is welcome to create a dielectric barrier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Electrode space distance is not restricted.</td>
<td>Electrode space distance has to keep close as far as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Water molecules is split by induction</td>
<td>Water molecules are dissociated by electron collision.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Large production unit is required for efficiency and productivity</td>
<td>Small production unit favours the decentralisation of production.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The reactors and gas-trapping and retaining structures enclosing the electrode is made of perspex plastic. No sign of burning is observed in the plastic covering plate directly over the discharging electrode and the light emission is an orange/red colour (burning of hydrogen) which is distinctively different from the plasma arc which is bright blue colour when the voltage is brought beyond the glow discharge voltage level. A burn mark will be observed after plasma arc discharge. This proves that the plasma glow discharge with it's orange yellow colour, is non-thermal in nature.

Applicant also conducted experiments with the same equipment utilising the under-liquid plasma to sterilise mulberry juice. Applicant found that the plasma was effective in reducing the bacterial count and the mold colony count in the juice. After 40 minutes the counts of both bacteria and mold had been reduced substantially to less than 100 per ml. This demonstrates that the invention could be used to sterilise potable water, waste water, food, and liquid food and others.

CONCLUSION

A further advantage of the method described above is that plasma can be generated with relative ease within bubbles in the aqueous medium. It does not require excessive amounts of energy and can be done at atmospheric pressure. It certainly does not require a vacuum chamber.

A further advantage of the invention is that it provides a method of treating aqueous waste which contains components that cannot be neutralised or otherwise rendered harmless by the addition of chemicals to the liquid.

It will of course be realised that the above has been given only by way of illustrative example of the invention and that all such modifications and variations thereto as would be apparent to persons skilled in the art are deemed to fall within the broad scope and ambit of the invention as herein set forth.

Figures which are included in the patent application but which are not directly referenced in it:
Glow discharge at stable 1800V voltage input

FIG. 26

Temperature measured in the cathode electrodes

FIG. 27
FIG. 29

FIG. 30
Voltage = 1650V

FIG. 45

Voltage = 1750V

FIG. 46
FIG. 47

Voltage = 1850V

- - - - Power (kW·h)
- - - - Power/L (kW·h/L)

Time

FIG. 48

Voltage = 1350V

- - Cathode temperature
- - Pond temperature

Temperature

Time
FIG. 49

Voltage = 1450V

Temperature vs. Time

FIG. 50

Voltage = 1550V

Temperature vs. Time
Voltage = 1850V

- Cathode temperature
- Pond temperature

Temperature vs. Time

FIG. 53
WATER-PROPELLED INTERNAL-COMBUSTION ENGINE SYSTEM

Please note that this is a re-worded excerpt from this patent application. It describes a method which it is claimed is capable of operating an internal combustion engine from a mixture of steam and hydrogen gas.

ABSTRACT
This is an energy-transforming system for driving, for instance, an internal combustion engine which uses hydrogen gas as its fuel. The gas is obtained by electrolysis on board and is then injected into the combustion chambers. The electrolysis is carried out in an electrolytic tank 15, energised with electric current generated by the engine. The hydrogen passes from a reservoir 23, via collector cylinder 29, to carburettor device 39. The hydrogen is then fed into the engine together with dry saturated steam and at least part of the hydrogen may be heated 51 prior to admission. A cooler and more controlled combustion is achieved with the steam and furthermore relatively lesser amounts of hydrogen are required. This is probably caused by the steam acting as a temperature moderator during admission and combustion of the hydrogen and additionally expanding during the expansion stroke.

FIELD OF THE INVENTION
The present invention refers to energy-converter systems, in particular related to an internal combustion engine fuelled by hydrogen gas, i.e. wherein the main propellant admitted to the combustion chambers is hydrogen. More particularly still, the present invention refers to method and means for obtaining hydrogen gas in an efficient and reasonably economical manner, and for supplying the gas to the combustion chambers under conditions for controlled ignition and optimum energy conversion. The present invention also refers to means and method for running an internal-combustion engine system from an available, cheap and non-contaminant hydrogen containing matter such as water as a fuel supply.

In general, the invention may find application in any system employing internal combustion principles, ranging from large installations such as electricity works to relatively smaller automobile systems like locomotives, lorries, motor-cars, ships and motor-boats. In the ensuing description, the invention is generally disclosed for application in the automotive field, however its adaptation and application in other fields may also be considered to be within the purview of the present invention.

BACKGROUND
Dwindling natural resources, dangerous contamination levels, increasing prices and unreliable dependence on other countries are making it increasingly necessary to search an alternative to fossil fuels like oil (hydrocarbons) and oil derivatives as the primary energy source in automobiles. To date, none of the attempted alternatives appears to have proved its worth as a substitute for petrol, either because of inherent drawbacks as to contamination, safety, cost, etc. or because man has not yet been able to find a practical way of applying the alternative energy forms to domestic motor cars.

For instance, electricity is a good alternative in the ecological sense, both chemically and acoustically, however it appears to be the least efficient form of energy known, which together with the high cost of manufacture of electric motors and the severe storage limitations insofar capacity and size have stopped it from coming into the market at least for the time being. The same is generally true even when solar energy is concerned.

Nuclear power is efficient, available and relatively cheap, but extremely perilous. Synthetic fuels may certainly be the answer in the future, however it appears that none practical enough have been developed. Use of gases such as methane or propane, or of alcohol distilled from sugar cane, has also been tried, but for one reason or another its marketing has been limited to small regions. Methanol for instance is a promising synthetic fuel, but it is extremely difficult to ignite in cold weather and has a low energy content (about half that of petrol).

The use of hydrogen gas as a substitute for petrol has been experimented lately. The chemistry investigator Derek P. Gregory is cited as believing that hydrogen is the ideal fuel in not just one sense. Hydrogen combustion produces steam as its only residue, a decisive advantage over contaminating conventional fuels such as petrol and coal. Unfortunately, hydrogen hardly exists on earth in its natural free form but only combined in chemical compounds, from which it must be extracted using complicated, expensive and often hazardous industrial
processes. In addition, if this obstacle were overcome, it would still be necessary to transport and store the hydrogen in service stations and moreover find a safe and practical way of loading and storing it in motor vehicles. Mercedes-Benz for one is experimenting with a vehicle equipped with a special tank for storing hydrogen gas and means for supplying the gas to the injection system, instead of the conventional petrol tank and circuit, without however yet achieving a satisfactory degree of safety and cost-efficiency. The use of dry hydrogen gas as a propellant has heretofore been found to produce a generally uncontrolled ignition, a large temperature excursion upwards which proved too destructive for the chamber walls. The engine life was limited to less than 10,000 km (about 6,000 miles).

DISCLOSURE OF THE INVENTION
The invention is based on the discovery of an energy-converter system to run an internal combustion engine and particularly is based on the discovery of a method and means for reliably, economically, safely and cleanly fuel an internal combustion engine with hydrogen, and obtaining the hydrogen in a usable form to this end from a cheap and plentifully available substance such as water. The hydrogen may be generated in optimum conditions to be fed into the engine.

According to the invention, hydrogen is obtained on board from a readily available hydrogenous source such as ionised water which is subjected to electrolysis, from whence the hydrogen is injected in each cylinder of the engine on the admission stroke. The hydrogen gas is mixed with water vapour (steam at atmospheric temperature) and surrounding air, and when this mixture is ignited within the combustion chamber, the steam (vapour) seems to act as a temperature moderator first and then assist in the expansion stroke. Preferably, the steam is dry saturated steam which, as a moderator, limits the maximum temperature of the combustion, thus helping to preserve the cylinder, valve and piston elements; and in assisting the expansion, the steam expands fast to contribute extra pressure on the piston head, increasing the mechanical output power of the engine. In other words, the inclusion of steam in the hydrogen propellant as suggested by the present invention moderates the negative effects of hydrogen and enhances the positive effects thereof in the combustion cycle.

As a result of this discovery, the amount of hydrogen required to drive the engine is lower than was heretofore expected, hence the electrolysis need not produce more than 10 cc/sec (for example, for a 1,400 cc engine). Thus the amount of electricity required for the electrolysis, a stumbling block in earlier attempts, is lower, so much so, that on-board hydrogen production is now feasible.

The invention includes an apparatus comprising a first system for generating hydrogen and a second system for conditioning and supplying the hydrogen to the admission valves on the cylinder caps. The hydrogen-generating system basically consists of an electrolysis device which receives electrolytically adapted (i.e. at least partially ionised) water or some other suitable hydrogenous substance. An electric power supply is connected to the electrodes of the electrolysis device for generating the hydrogen, and the electricity requirements and the device dimensions are designed for a maximum hydrogen output rate of about 10 cc/sec for a typical automotive application.

The second system comprises means such as a vacuum pump or the like to draw out the hydrogen from the first system, means for supplying the hydrogen gas to the admission valves, means for conditioning the moisture content of the hydrogen, carburettor means or the like for mixing the hydrogen with atmospheric air or some other combustion enabling substance, and means to control and maintain a specified gas pressure valve or range for the hydrogen supplied to the mixing means.

The apparatus was tested and worked surprisingly well. It was discovered that this seemed to be the result of the steam content in the electrolytic hydrogen gas overcoming the pitfalls encountered in the prior art systems which injected relatively dry gas into the cylinder chambers, or at the most with a relatively small proportion of humidity coming from the air itself.

In the preferred embodiment, the electrolysis system is driven with a pulsed DC power signal of up to 80 Amps at between 75 and 100 Volts. The electrolyte is distilled water salted with sodium chloride with a concentration of about 30 grams of salt per litre of water, to 150 grams of salt in 10 litres of water. Other concentrations are possible depending on the kind of engine, fuel and electricity consumption etc. The maximum rate of hydrogen production required for a typical domestic car engine has been estimated at 10 cc/sec. This hydrogen is drawn out by a pump generating a pressure head of around 2 Kg/cm² to feed the generated steam-containing hydrogen to a receptacle provided with means for removing the undesired excess of moisture from the gas. The gas is thus mixed with the desired content of steam when it enters the carburettor or mixing device.

In the event that the generated hydrogen does not have enough steam content, dry saturated steam may be added to the hydrogen as it proceeds to the engine. This may be done conveniently, before it enters the carburettor and is mixed with the intake air. Part of the gas may be shunted via a heat-exchanger serpentine connected to
the exhaust manifold. This heats some of the gas before it is injected into the base of the carburettor. This heated gas injection operates like a supercharger. The main unheated hydrogen stream is piped directly into the venturi system of the carburettor, where it mixes with air drawn in by the admission stroke vacuum.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

Fig. 1 is a schematic layout of the first and second systems and shows the electrolysis device for obtaining hydrogen, and the circuit means for injecting the steam-laden hydrogen into the combustion chambers of a car engine, according to one embodiment of this invention.
Figure 2 is an elevational view of the electrolysis device of figure 1.

**DETAILED ACCOUNT OF AN EMBODIMENT**

Fig.1 shows a system 11 for obtaining hydrogen from water piped from a reservoir or tank (not illustrated) to an inlet 13 of an electrolysis cell 15. The water is salted by adding sodium chloride to ionise it and enable electrolysis when electric power is applied to a pair of terminals 17. As disclosed in more detail later, the power applied to the terminals 17 is in the form of a DC pulse signal of 65 Amps at 87 Volts, generated via a suitable converter from, in the event that the present system is applied to an automobile, the standard automotive 12 Volt DC level. The device 15 has various outlets, one of which is the hydrogen gas outlet 19 which is connected through a solenoid valve 21 to an accumulator or reservoir cylinder 23. Other outlets of the electrolysis device 15 are for removing electrolysis effluents such as sodium hydroxide and chlorine gas, to which further reference is made below.

A vacuum pump 25 or similar, extracts gas from the reservoir 23 and channels it through a hydrogen circuit system 27. Thus the reservoir 23 acts as a pressure buffer of a systems interface between the electrolysis device 15 and the pump 25. The reservoir 23 may be a 2,000 cc capacity, stainless-steel cylinder with the valve 21 metering the passage of gas through it, so that the reservoir is initially filled with about 1,500 cc of hydrogen at normal pressure and temperature (NPT) conditions. To this end, the cylinder 23 may be provided with a gauge 28V which controls the state of valve 21 electronically. Valve 21 may be a Jefferson Model SPS solenoid valve, available from OTASI, Santa Rosa 556, Córdoba, Argentina. Vacuum pump 25 is a diaphragm pump with a pulley drive and it is coupled by means of a transmission belt to the engine’s crankshaft output. Such a device 25 may be a Bosch model available in Germany. The pulley drive is decoupled by an electromagnetic clutch when the pressure read by a gauge 28P screwed into the outlet side of pump 25 exceeds 2Kg/sq. cm.

Pump 25 sends hydrogen through tubing 26, which also includes a by-pass 24 provided for inspection and safety purposes together with a two-way valve 28, and into a second cylinder 29 which contains means 31 which cause a turbulence or a labyrinthine movement in the gas, in order to condense the heavy mixture, schematically shown as droplets 32, present in the gas stream. The condensed mixture collects in the form of distilled water 33 at the bottom of cylinder 29. Near the top of the cylinder, there is an outlet 35 through which hydrogen gas, laden with a good amount of steam, is transported to mixer 37. Also at the top of collector cylinder 29, there is a temperature sensor 38 which is connected to an electronic digital thermometer circuit (not shown).

Mixer 37 comprises a carburettor device 39 for mixing hydrogen with air prior to feeding the mixture to the
combustion chambers. The hydrogen is piped through a 3/8" diameter tube 41 from dryer cylinder 29 and then into the venturi section 43 of the carburettor 39 through a pair of 5/16" diameter tubes or hydrogen injecting nozzles 45. The venturi section 43 is a section of the intake air passage which narrows to increase the air speed at the point where hydrogen is drawn out for mixing. The venturi intake 42 may be covered by a mesh 46. However, it appears that no air filter is needed for the mixer to operate well. The carburettor device 39 may be a simplified form of a conventional carburettor, since the propellant, i.e. hydrogen gas, is fed directly to the venturi 43. A butterfly valve, or the like, connected to an accelerator pedal (not illustrated) of the motor-car, controls the air intake rate and therefore the speed of the engine. This mixer device 39 is mounted as is a conventional carburettor, such that its outlet at the bottom communicates with the admission valves in the cylinder caps.

At the bottom part of the carburettor there is a supplementary hydrogen intake 47 connected to another 3/8" diameter pipe 49 which shunts part of the hydrogen through a heater 51. This heater comprises a serpentine tube 51 of a chromium/cobalt alloy, mounted in close heat-exchange relationship with the body of the exhaust manifold 50 (schematically illustrated) in order to add a portion of heated gas to the fuel mixture before it is drawn into the combustion chambers through the corresponding admission valves on the cylinder caps. This pre-admission heating step, takes the hydrogen mixture to a near critical temperature for detonation. It has been found that this improves performance (e.g. the engine smoothness) at some speed ranges, and it works like a supercharger.

In practice, the engine of the present invention has shown a high efficiency when using three-electrode sparking plugs and an electronic ignition system (not illustrated).

Fig.2 shows the electrolysis cell 15 outlined in Fig.1 in more detail. It is comprised of a rectangular prism reservoir 53 with a pair of spaced-apart vertical electrodes 55. The reservoir may measure, for instance, 24 cm long by 20 cm wide and 28 cm high. Both the anode and cathode 55 may each comprise double electrodes of carbon having a spacing between the electrodes 55 of the same polarity of about 10 cm. Alternatively, the anode 55A may be a ring made of carbon while the cathode 55C is an iron-mesh cylindrical electrode. Each electrode 55 has a terminal 57 at the top for inputting electric power as mentioned earlier. At each outer side of the electrodes 55 there is a porous membrane 59 made from a sheet of amianto (asbestos) for holding the water solution 61 in whilst at the same time letting the electrolysis products, i.e. hydrogen and oxygen, pass through. Thus, the hydrogen gas passes through the membrane 59 into a gas collector chamber 56 and exits out through pipe 19 to fuel the combustion engine. The hydrogen pipe 19 may have a proportioning valve 62 for regulating the flow of hydrogen. The oxygen on the other hand may be vented out into the atmosphere through an outlet 63.

There is a heater element 64, immersed in the salted water 61 fed through a resistor connected to a 12 Volt DC supply. This heats the water to about 85 degrees C (185 degrees F) to enhance the galvanic action of the electrolysis current on the aqueous solution 61. A thermostat with a solid state silicon thermal sensor may be used to control the water temperature via a threshold comparator driving a relay which controls the current in the heater element 64.

The electrolysis of the heated salted water solution 61 further produces, as effluents, chlorine gas (Cl2) and sodium hydroxide (NaOH). The chlorine gas may be vented through an opening 65 at the top of the reservoir 53 or else stored in an appropriate disposal tank (not shown). The sodium hydroxide precipitates and may be removed periodically through tap 67 at the bottom of the electrolysis cell.

It is important to note that the practice of the present invention requires practically no modifications in the engine itself. That is, existing petrol engines may be used with hardly any adjustments. Ignition is initiated at the dead top of the compression stroke or with a 1.5 degree lag at the most, and it has been found convenient to widen the gaps of the admission and exhaust valve pushers and use tri-electrode spark plugs. However it is advisable to use some rust-resistant compound such as plastics for the exhaust pipe and silencer, bearing in mind that the combustion residue is hot steam.

Fig.1 also shows schematically, the electric power supply 71 connected to the terminals 17 of the cube 15. Electrical current is obtained at 12 volt DC from the car battery/alternator system 73 and processed by an inverter device 75 for generating DC pulses of 65 Amps at 87 Volts. Pulse energisation of the electrolysis appears to maximise the ratio of hydrogen output rate to electric power input.

CLAIMS
1. A method of providing propellant to an internal combustion engine wherein combustion is fuelled on the basis of hydrogen gas admitted into at least one combustion chamber of the engine during the intake stroke, characterised in that the hydrogen is injected into the combustion chamber together with vapour.

2. The method of claim 1, characterised in that the surrounding air enters the combustion chamber, together with the hydrogen and vapour.
3. The method of claim 2, characterised in that the hydrogen gas is obtained from water which is continuously subjected to electrolysis energised by the engine.

4. The method of claim 2 or 3, characterised in that the hydrogen is generated at a rate of not more than 10 cc/sec.

5. The method of any of the preceding claims, characterised in that the engine drives a motor-car.

6. The method of any of preceding claims, characterised in that the vapour is added to the hydrogen prior to entering the combustion chamber.

7. The method of any of claims 1 to 5, characterised in that the vapour is contained in the hydrogen when generated.

8. The method of any of the preceding claims, characterised in that the vapour is dry saturated steam.

9. A method of driving a internal combustion engine with water as its primary source of energy, characterised by the steps of subjecting the water to hydrolysis thereby producing gaseous hydrogen, and controllably supplying the hydrogen produced by the hydrolysis to the engine combustion chambers during the admission stroke of each cylinder together with a proportion of steam.

10. The method of claim 9, characterised in that the steam is dry saturated steam.

11. The method of any of claims 9 or 10, characterised in that the hydrolysis driven by electric power to produce not more than 10 cc/sec of the hydrogen gas.

12. The method of any of claims 9 to 11, characterised in that the engine drives a motor-car including a water tank as its main propellant supply.

13. The method of any of claims 9 to 12, characterised in that at least part of the hydrogen is heated before injecting it into the chamber.

14. The method of any claims of 9 to 13, characterised in that steam is obtained together with the hydrogen gas from the electrolysis and then subjected to a drying cycle up to a predetermined point of saturation before being passed into the chambers.

15. The method of claim 11, characterised in that the hydrolysis means is supplied with about 5 kW pulsed electrical power.

16. A method of injecting propellant into an hydrogen-driven internal combustion engine cylinder during the admission stroke thereof, characterised in that dry steam is passed into said cylinder during the intake stroke to moderate temperature generation of the hydrogen ignition and enhance expansion after ignition has begun to increase the power of the pistons.

17. A method of obtaining hydrogen capable of being used to fuel an internal combustion engine, characterised by dissociating hydrogen gas from a hydrogenous compound, and admitting the hydrogen gas into each cylinder of said engine together with an amount of dry steam.

18. The method of claim 17, characterised in that the hydrogen gas is admitted to the engine cylinders at a rate of not more than 10 cc/sec.

19. The method of claim 17 or 18, characterised in that the compound is slightly salted water and the steam is saturated steam.

20. A system for obtaining and providing hydrogen propellant to an internal combustion engine including at least one cylinder containing a piston which is subjected to successive combustion cycles and injection means for admitting fuel into the cylinder on the intake or admission stroke of the cycle, characterised by comprising: fuel source means for containing a hydrogenous compound, electrolysis means (15) having at least one pair of electrodes (55) for receiving electric power and intake means (13) connected to the source for supplying the compound to the electrolysis means, a means (27, 37) for extracting hydrogen gas from one of the electrodes and supplying it to the cylinder injection means, and control means (25, 28, 29) for controlling the supply of hydrogen gas to the cylinder injection means whereby the rate of gas consumption in the engine is not more than 10 cc/sec.
21. The system of claim 20, characterised in that the means supplying hydrogen gas to the cylinder injection means further include means (37) for mixing said hydrogen gas with steam.

22. The system of claim 20 or 21, characterised in that the compound is water and the source means includes a water tank, the water including salt to facilitate electrolysis.

23. The system of claim 20, 21 or 22, characterised in that the control means include means (29) for removing the excessive moisture from the hydrogen gas extracted from the hydrolysis means.

24. The system of any of claims 20 to 23, characterised in that the electrolysis means is energised by the engine.

25. An internal combustion engine operating on hydrogen and having a water tank as its primary source of combustion fuel, a cylinder block containing at least one cylinder chamber, each chamber, having an associated piston, fuel intake means, ignition means, and exhaust means, and crankshaft means coupled to be driven by the pistons for providing mechanical output power from the engine, and characterised by further comprising: electrolysis means (15) connected to the water tank for electrolysis of water to obtain hydrogen, electrical means (17) connected to supply electric power to at least one pair of electrodes (55) of the electrolysis means for carrying out the electrolysis of the water, and hydrogen circuit means (27) for extracting the hydrogen gas from the electrolysis means and passing it onto said intake means in a manner enabling controlled ignition and expansion of the fuel in the chamber.

26. The engine of claim 25, characterised in that said hydrogen circuit means passes hydrogen gas to the intake means at a rate of not more than 10 cc/sec.

27. The engine of claim 25 or 26, characterised by further comprising means for adding steam into each chamber before ignition of the hydrogen.

28. The engine of claim 27, characterised in that the steam adder means comprises means (25) for extracting steam from the electrolysis means, and means (29) for subjecting said steam to a drying process up to a predetermined point.

29. The engine of any of claims 25 to 28, characterised by further comprising means (49, 51) for heating at least part of the hydrogen gas before it is passed into the chambers.

30. The engine of claim 29, characterised in that said heating means is a serpentine (51) inserted in a shunt (49) of the hydrogen circuit means and mounted in heat-exchange relationship on a manifold exhaust of the engine.

31. The engine of any of claims 25 to 30, characterised in that said electrical means include pulse generator means for supplying electrical pulses to said at least one pair of electrodes.

32. The engine of claim 31, characterised in that said pulse generator means supplies electrical DC pulses of between 50 and 75 Amps at between 60 and 100 Volts.

33. The engine of any of claims 25 to 32, characterised in that said hydrogen circuit means includes drying means (33) for removing excess moisture from the hydrogen extracted from the electrolysis means.

34. The engine of any of claims 25 to 33, characterised in that said crankshaft means drives a water-fuelled automobile.

35. The engine of any of claims 25 to 34, characterised in that the electrolysis means is driven by electricity derived from the engine.
ABSTRACT
A fuel supply apparatus generates hydrogen and oxygen by electrolysis of water. There is provided an electrolytic cell which has a circular anode surrounded by a cathode with a porous membrane between them. The anode is fluted and the cathode is slotted to provide anode and cathode areas of substantially equal surface area. A pulsed electrical current is provided between the anode and cathode for the efficient generation of hydrogen and oxygen.

The electrolytic cell is equipped with a float, which detects the level of electrolyte within the cell, and water is added to the cell as needed to replace the water lost through the electrolysis process. The hydrogen and oxygen are collected in chambers which are an integral part of the electrolytic cell, and these two gases are supplied to a mixing chamber where they are mixed in the ratio of two parts hydrogen to one part oxygen. This mixture of hydrogen and oxygen flows to another mixing chamber wherein it is mixed with air from the atmosphere.

The system is disclosed as being installed in an car, and a dual control system, which is actuated by the car throttle, first meters the hydrogen and oxygen mixture into the chamber wherein it is combined with air and then meters the combined mixture into the car engine. The heat of combustion of a pure hydrogen and oxygen mixture is greater than that of a gasoline and air mixture of comparable volume, and air is therefore mixed with the hydrogen and oxygen to produce a composite mixture which has a heat of combustion approximating that of a normal gas-air mixture. This composite mixture of air, hydrogen and oxygen then can be supplied directly to a conventional internal combustion engine without overheating and without creation of a vacuum in the system.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION
This invention relates to internal combustion engines. More particularly it is concerned with a fuel supply apparatus by means of which an internal combustion engine can be run on a fuel comprised of hydrogen and oxygen gases generated on demand by electrolysis of water.

In electrolysis a potential difference is applied between an anode and a cathode in contact with an electrolytic conductor to produce an electric current through the electrolytic conductor. Many molten salts and hydroxides are electrolytic conductors but usually the conductor is a solution of a substance which dissociates in the solution to form ions. The term "electrolyte" will be used herein to refer to a substance which dissociates into ions, at least to some extent, when dissolved in a suitable solvent. The resulting solution will be referred to as an "electrolyte solution".

Faraday's Laws of Electrolysis provide that in any electrolysis process the mass of substance liberated at an anode or cathode is in accordance with the formula

\[ m = zq \]

where \( m \) is the mass of substance liberated in grams, \( z \) is the electrochemical equivalent of the substance, and \( q \) is the quantity of electricity passed, in coulombs. An important consequence of Faraday's Laws is that the rate of decomposition of an electrolyte is dependent on current and is independent of voltage. For example, in a conventional electrolysis process in which a constant current \( I \) amps flows for \( t \) seconds, \( q = It \) and the mass of material deposited or dissolved will depend on \( I \) regardless of voltage, provided that the voltage exceeds the minimum necessary for the electrolysis to proceed. For most electrolytes, the minimum voltage is very low.

There have been previous proposals to run internal combustion engines on a fuel comprised of hydrogen gas. Examples of such proposals are disclosed in U.S. Pat. Nos. 1,275,481, 2,183,674 and 3,471,274 and British specifications Nos., 353,570 and 364,179. It has further been proposed to derive the hydrogen from electrolysis of water, as exemplified by U.S. Pat. No. 1,380,183. However, none of the prior art constructions is capable of producing hydrogen at a rate such that it can be fed directly to internal combustion engines without intermediate storage. The present invention enables a fuel comprised of hydrogen and oxygen gases to be generated by...
electrolysis of water at such a rate that it can sustain operation of an internal combustion engine. It achieves this result by use of an improved electrolysis process of the type generally proposed in the parent application hereof.

As disclosed in my aforesaid parent application the prior art also shows electrolytic reactions employing DC or rectified AC which necessarily will have a ripple component; an example of the former being shown for instance in Kilgus U.S. Pat. No. 2,016,442 and an example of the latter being shown in Emich al. U.S. Pat. No. 3,485,742. It will be noted that the Kilgus Patent also discloses the application of a magnetic field to his electrolyte, which field is said to increase the production of gas at the two electrodes.

**SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION**

The apparatus of the invention applies a pulsating current to an electrolytic solution of an electrolyte in water. Specifically, it enables high pulses of quite high current value and appropriately low voltage to be generated in the electrolyte solution by a direct input supply to produce a yield of electrolysis products such that these products may be fed directly to the internal combustion engine. The pulsating current generated by the apparatus of the present invention is to be distinguished from normal variations which occur in rectification of AC current and as hereinafter employed the term pulsed current will be taken to mean current having a duty cycle of less than 0.5.

It is a specific object of this invention to provide a fuel supply apparatus for an internal combustion engine by which hydrogen and oxygen gases generated by electrolysis of water are mixed together and fed directly to the internal combustion engine. A still further object of the invention is to provide, for use with an internal combustion engine having inlet means to receive a combustible fuel, fuel supply apparatus comprising:

- a vessel to hold an electrolyte solution of electrolyte dissolved in water;
- an anode and a cathode to contact the electrolyte solution within the vessel;
- electrical supply means to apply between said diode and said cathode pulses of electrical energy to induce a pulsating current in the electrolyte solution thereby to generate by electrolysis hydrogen gas at the cathode and oxygen gas at the anode;
- gas collection and delivery means to collect the hydrogen and oxygen gases and to direct them to the engine inlet means; and
- water admission means for admission of water to said vessel to make up loss due to electrolysis.

In order that the invention may be more fully explained one particular example of an car internal combustion engine fitted with fuel supply apparatus in accordance with the invention will now be described in detail with reference to the accompanying drawings.

**BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS**

Fig. 1 is a plan view of part of the car with its engine bay exposed to show the layout of the fuel supply apparatus and the manner in which it is connected to the car engine;
Fig. 2 is a circuit diagram of the fuel supply apparatus;

Fig. 3 is a plan view of a housing which carries electrical components of the fuel supply apparatus;
Fig. 4 is an elevation view of the housing shown in Fig. 3;

Fig. 5 is a cross-section on the line 5--5 in Fig. 3;
Fig. 6 is a cross-section on the line 6--6 in Fig. 3;

Fig. 7 is a cross-section on the line 7--7 in Fig. 5;

Fig. 8 is a perspective view of a diode heat sink included in the components illustrated in Fig. 5 and Fig. 7;

Fig. 9 illustrates a transformer coil assembly included in the electrical components mounted within the housing;
Fig. 10 is a cross-section on the line 10--10 in Fig. 4;

Fig. 11 is a cross-section on the line 11--11 in Fig. 5;

Fig. 12 is a cross-section through a terminal block mounted in the floor of the housing;

Fig. 13 is a plan view of an electrolytic cell incorporated in the fuel supply apparatus;
Fig. 14 is a cross-section on the line 14--14 in Fig. 13;

Fig. 15 is a cross-section generally on the line 15--15 in Fig. 14;
Fig.16 is a cross-section on the line 16--16 in Fig.14;

Fig.17 is a cross-section on the line 17--17 in Fig.13;
Fig. 18 is a cross-section on the line 18–18 of Fig. 13;

Fig. 19 is a vertical cross-section through a gas valve taken generally on line 19–19 in Fig. 13;

Fig. 20 is a perspective view of a membrane assembly disposed in the electrolytic cell;

Fig. 21 is a cross-section through part of the membrane assembly;

Fig. 22 is a perspective view of a float disposed in the electrolytic cell;
Fig. 23 is an enlargement of part of Fig. 14;

Fig. 24 is an enlarged cross-section on the line 24--24 in Fig. 16;

Fig. 25 is a perspective view of a water inlet valve member included in the components shown in Fig. 24;

Fig. 26 is a cross-section on line 26--26 in Fig. 16;

Fig. 27 is an exploded and partly broken view of a cathode and cathode collar fitted to the upper end of the cathode;

Fig. 28 is an enlarged cross-section showing some of the components of Fig. 15;
Fig. 29 is a perspective view of a valve cover member;

Fig. 30 shows a gas mixing and delivery unit of the apparatus generally in side elevation but with an air filter assembly included in the unit shown in section;

Fig. 31 is a vertical cross-section through the gas mixing and delivery unit with the air filter assembly removed;

Fig. 32 is a cross-section on the line 32–32 in Fig. 31;
Fig. 33 is a perspective view of a valve and jet nozzle assembly incorporated in the gas mixing and delivery unit;

Fig. 34 is a cross-section generally on the line 34--34 in Fig.31;

Fig. 35 is a cross-section through a solenoid assembly;

Fig. 36 is a cross-section on the line 36--36 in Fig.32;
Fig. 37 is a rear elevation of part of the gas mixing and delivery unit;

![Fig. 36](image1)
![Fig. 37](image2)

Fig. 38 is a cross-section on the line 38--38 in Fig. 34;

Fig. 39 is a plan view of the lower section of the gas mixing and delivery unit, which is broken away from the upper section along the interface 39--39 of Fig. 30;

![Fig. 38](image3)
![Fig. 39](image4)

Fig. 40 is a cross-section on the line 40--40 in Fig. 32; and

Fig. 41 is a plan of a lower body part of the gas mixing and delivery unit.
DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENT

Fig. 1 shows an assembly denoted generally as 31 having an engine bay 32 in which an internal combustion engine 33 is mounted behind a radiator 34. Engine 33 is a conventional engine and, as illustrated, it may have two banks of cylinders in "V" formation. Specifically, it may be a V8 engine. It is generally of conventional construction and Fig. 1 shows the usual cooling fan 34, fan belt 36 and generator or alternator 37.

In accordance with the invention the engine does not run on the usual petroleum fuel but is equipped with fuel supply apparatus which supplies it with a mixture of hydrogen and oxygen gases generated as products of a water electrolysis process carried out in the fuel supply apparatus. The major components of the fuel supply apparatus are an electrolytic cell denoted generally as 41 and a gas mixing and delivery unit 38 to mix the hydrogen and oxygen gases generated within the cell 41 and to deliver them to engine 33. The electrolytic cell 41 receives water through a water delivery line 39 to make up the electrolyte solution within it. It has an anode and a cathode which contact the electrolyte solution, and in operation of the apparatus pulses of electrical energy are applied between the anode and cathode to produce pulses of high current flow through the electrolyte solution. Some of the electrical components necessary to produce the pulses of electrical energy applied between the anode and cathode are carried in a housing 40 mounted on one side of engine bay 32. The car battery 30 is mounted at the other side of the engine bay.

Before the physical construction of the fuel delivery apparatus is described in detail the general principles of its operation will firstly be described with reference to the electrical circuit diagram of Fig. 2.

In the illustrated circuit terminals 44, 45, 46 are all connected to the positive terminal of the car battery 30 and terminal 47 is connected to the negative terminal of that battery. Switch 48 is the usual ignition switch of the car and closure of this switch provides current to the coil 49 of a relay 51. The moving contact 52 of relay 51 receives current at 12 volts from terminal 45, and when the relay is operated by closure of ignition switch 48 current is supplied through this contact to line 53 so that line 53 may be considered as receiving a positive input and line 54 from terminal 47 may be considered as a common negative for the circuit. Closure of ignition switch 48 also supplies current to one side of the coil 55 of a solenoid 56. The other side of solenoid coil 55 is earthed by a connection to the car body within the engine bay. As will be explained below solenoid 56 must be energised to open a valve which controls supply of hydrogen and oxygen gases to the engine and the valve closes to cut off that supply as soon as ignition switch 48 is opened.

The function of relay 51 is to connect circuit line 53 directly to the positive terminal of the car battery so that it receives a positive signal directly rather than through the ignition switch and wiring.

The circuit comprises pulse generator circuitry which includes unijunction transistor Q1 with associated resistors R1, R2 and R3 and capacitors C2 and C3. This circuitry produces pulses which are used to trigger an NPN silicon power transistor Q2 which in turn provides via a capacitor C4 triggering pulses for a thyristor T1.

Resistor R1 and capacitor C2 are connected in series in a line 57 extending to one of the fixed contacts of a relay 58. The coil 59 of relay 58 is connected between line 53 and a line 61 which extends from the moving contact of the relay to the common negative line 54 via a normally closed pressure operated switch 62. The pressure control line 63 of switch 62 is connected in a manner to be described below to a gas collection chamber of electrolytic cell 41 in order to provide a control connection whereby switch 62 is opened when the gas in the collection chamber reaches a certain pressure. However, provided that switch 62 remains closed, relay 58 will operate when ignition switch 48 is closed to provide a connection between lines 57 and 61 thereby to connect capacitor C2 to the common negative line 54. The main purpose of relay 58 is to provide a slight delay in this connection between the capacitor C2 and the common negative line 54 when the circuit is first energised. This will delay the generation of triggering pulses to thyristor T1 until a required electrical condition has been achieved in the transformer circuitry to be described below. Relay 58 is hermetically sealed and has a balanced armature so that it can operate in any position and can withstand substantial shock or vibration when the car is in use.

When the connection between capacitor C2 and line 54 is made via relay 58, unijunction transistor Q1 will act as an oscillator to provide positive output pulses in line 64 at a pulse rate which is controlled by the ratio of R1:C1 and at a pulse strength determined by the ratio of R2:R3. These pulses will charge the capacitor C3. Electrolytic capacitor C1 is connected directly between the common positive line 53 and the common negative line 54 to filter the circuitry from all static noise.

Resistor R1 and capacitor C2 are chosen such that at the input to transistor Q1 the pulses will be of saw tooth form. This will control the form of the pulses generated in the subsequent circuitry and the saw tooth pulse form is chosen since it is believed that it produces the most satisfactory operation of the pulsing circuitry. It should be stressed, however, that other pulse forms, such as square wave pulses, could be used. Capacitor C3 discharges
through a resistor $R_4$ to provide triggering signals for transistor $Q_2$. Resistor $R_4$ is connected to the common negative line $54$ to serve as a gate current limiting device for transistor $Q_2$.

The triggering signals produced by transistor $Q_2$ via the network of capacitor $C_3$ and a resistor $R_4$ will be in the form of positive pulses of sharply spiked form. The collector of transistor $Q_2$ is connected to the positive supply line $53$ through resistor $R_6$ while the emitter of that transistor is connected to the common negative line $54$ through resistor $R_5$. These resistors $R_5$ and $R_6$ control the strength of current pulses applied to a capacitor $C_4$, which discharges through a resistor $R_7$ to the common negative line $54$, thereby to apply triggering signals to the gate of thyristor $T_1$. The gate of thyristor $T_1$ receives a negative bias from the common negative line via resistor $R_7$ which thus serves to prevent triggering of the thyristor by inrush currents.

The triggering pulses applied to the gate of thyristor $T_1$ will be very sharp spikes occurring at the same frequency as the saw tooth wave form pulses established by unijunction transistor $Q_1$. It is preferred that this frequency be of the order of 10,000 pulses per minute and details of specific circuit components which will achieve this result are listed below. Transistor $Q_2$ serves as an interface between unijunction transistor $Q_1$ and thyristor $T_1$, preventing back flow of emf from the gate of the thyristor which might otherwise interfere with the operation of transistor $Q_1$. Because of the high voltages being handled by the thyristor and the high back emf applied to transistor $Q_2$, the latter transistor must be mounted on a heat sink.

The cathode of thyristor $T_1$ is connected via a line $65$ to the common negative line $54$ and the anode is connected via a line $66$ to the centre of the secondary coil $67$ of a first stage transformer $TR_1$. The two ends of transformer coil $67$ are connected via diodes $D_1$ and $D_2$ and a line $68$ to the common negative line $54$ to provide full wave rectification of the transformer output.

First stage transformer $T_1$ has three primary coils $71, 72, 73$ wound together with secondary coil $67$ about a core $74$. This transformer may be of conventional half cup construction with a ferrite core. The secondary coil may be wound on to a coil former disposed about the core and primary coils $71$ and $73$ may be wound in bifilar fashion over the secondary coil. The other primary coil $72$ may then be wound over the coils $71, 73$. Primary coils $71$ and $73$ are connected at one side by a line $75$ to the uniform positive potential of circuit line $53$ and at their other sides by lines $79, 81$ to the collectors of transistors $Q_3, Q_4$. The emitters of transistors $Q_3, Q_4$ are connected permanently via a line $82$ to the common negative line $54$. A capacitor $C_6$ is connected between lines $79, 81$ to act as a filter preventing any potential difference between the collectors of transistors $Q_3, Q_4$.

The two ends of primary coil $72$ are connected by lines $83, 84$ to the bases of transistors $Q_3, Q_4$. This coil is centre tapped by a line $85$ connected via resistor $R_9$ to the positive line $53$ and via resistor $R_{10}$ to the common negative line $54$.

When power is first applied to the circuit transistors $Q_3$ and $Q_4$ will be in their non-conducting states and there will be no current in primary coils $71, 73$. However, the positive current in line $53$ will provide via resistor $R_9$ a triggering signal applied to the centre tap of coil $72$ and this signal operates to trigger alternate high frequency oscillation of transistors $Q_3, Q_4$ which will result in rapid alternating pulses in primary coils $71, 73$. The triggering signal applied to the centre tap of coil $72$ is controlled by the resistor network provided by resistors $R_9$ and $R_{10}$ such that its magnitude is not sufficient to enable it to trigger $Q_3$ and $Q_4$ simultaneously but is sufficient to trigger one of those transistors. Therefore only one of the transistors is fired by the initial triggering signal to cause a current to flow through the respective primary coil $71$ or $73$. The signal required to hold the transistor in the conducting state is much less than that required to trigger it initially, so that when the transistor becomes conductive some of the signal applied to the centre tap of coil $72$ will be diverted to the non-conducting transistor to trigger it. When the second transistor is thus fired to become conductive, current will flow through the other of the primary coils $71, 73$, and since the emitters of the two transistors are directly connected together, the positive output of the second transistor will cause the first-fired transistor to be shut off. When the current drawn by the collector of the second-fired resistor drops, part of the signal on the centre tap of coil $72$ is diverted back to the collector of the first transistor which is re-fired. It will be seen that the cycle will then repeat indefinitely so that transistors $Q_3, Q_4$ are alternately fired and shut off in very rapid sequence. Thus current pulses flow in alternate sequence through primary coils $71, 73$ at a very high frequency, this frequency being constant and independent of changes in input voltage to the circuit. The rapidly alternating pulses in primary coils $71$ and $73$, which will continue for so long as ignition switch $48$ remains closed, will generate higher voltage signals at the same frequency in the transformer secondary coil $67$.

A dump capacitor $C_5$ bridged by a resistor $R_8$ is connected by a line $86$ to the line $66$ from the secondary coil of transformer $TR_1$ and provides the output from that transformer which is fed via line $87$ to a second stage transformer $TR_2$.

When thyristor $T_1$ is triggered to become conductive the full charge of dump capacitor $C_5$ is released to second stage transformer $TR_2$. At the same time the first stage of transformer $TR_1$ ceases to function because of this
momentary short circuit placed across it and consequently thyristor T1 releases, i.e. becomes non-conductive. This permits charge to be built up again in dump capacitor C5 for release when the thyristor is next triggered by a signal from transistor Q2. Thus during each of the intervals when the thyristor is in its non-conducting state the rapidly alternating pulses in primary coils 71, 73 of transformer TR1 produced by the continuously oscillating transistors Q3, Q4 produce, via the transformer coupling, relatively high voltage output pulses which build up a high charge in capacitor C5, and this charge is released suddenly when the thyristor is triggered. In a typical apparatus using a 12 volt DC supply battery pulses of the order of 22 amps at 300 volts may be produced in line 87.

As previously mentioned relay 58 is provided in the circuit to provide a delay in the connection of capacitor C2 to the common negative line 54. This delay, although very short, is sufficient to enable transistors Q3, Q4 to start oscillating to cause transformer TR1 to build up a charge in dumping capacitor C5 before the first triggering signal is applied to thyristor T1 to cause discharge of the capacitor.

Transformer TR2 is a step-down transformer which produces pulses of very high current flow at low voltage. It is built into the anode of electrolytic cell 41 and comprises a primary coil 88 and a secondary coil 89 wound about a core 91. Secondary coil 89 is formed of heavy wire in order to handle the large current induced in it and its ends are connected directly to the anode 42 and cathode 43 of the electrolytic cell 41 in a manner to be described below.

In a typical apparatus, the output from the first stage transformer TR1 would be 300 volt pulses of the order of 22 amps at 10,000 pulses per minute and a duty cycle of slightly less than 0.006. This can be achieved from a uniform 12 volt and 40 amps DC supply using the following circuit components:

**Components:**

- R1 2.7 k ohms 1/2 watt 2% resistor
- R2 220 ohms 1/2 watt 2% resistor
- R3 100 ohms 1/2 watt 2% resistor
- R4 22 k ohms 1/2 watt 2% resistor
- R5 100 ohms 1/2 watt 2% resistor
- R6 220 ohms 1/2 watt 2% resistor
- R7 1 k ohms 1/2 watt 2% resistor
- R8 10 m ohms 1 watt 5% resistor
- R9 100 ohms 5 watt 10% resistor
- R10 5.6 ohms 1 watt 5% resistor
- C1 2200 mF 16v electrolytic capacitor
- C2 2.2 mF 100v 10% capacitor
- C3 2.2 mF 100v 10% capacitor
- C4 1 mF 100v 10% capacitor
- C5 1 mF 1000v ducon paper capacitor 5S10A
- C6 0.002 mF 160v capacitor
- Q1 2n 2647 PN unijunction transistor
- Q2 2N 3055 NPN silicon power transistor
- Q3 2n 3055 NPN silicon power transistor
- Q4 2n 3055 NPN silicon power transistor
- T1 btw 30-800 rm fast turn-off thyristor
- D1 a 14 p diode
- D2 a 14 p diode

- L1 indicator lamp
- Sv1 continuously rated solenoid
- R11 pw5ls hermetically sealed relay
- Ps1 p658a-10051 pressure operated micro switch

**Tr1** half cup transformer cores 36/22-341
Coil former 4322-021-30390 wound to provide a turns ratio between secondary and primary of 18:1
Secondary coil 67 = 380 turns
Primary coil 71 = 9 turns
Primary coil 73 = 9 turns
Primary coil 72 = 4 turns
The installation of the above circuit components is illustrated in Fig.3 to Fig.13. They are mounted within and on a housing which is denoted generally as 101 and which is fastened to a side wall of the car engine bay 32 via a mounting bracket 102. Housing 101, which may be formed as an aluminium casting, has a front wall 103, top and bottom walls 104, 105 and side walls 106, 107. All of these walls have external cooling fins. The back of housing 101 is closed by a printed circuit board 108 which is held clamped in position by a peripheral frame 109 formed of an insulated plastics material clamped between the circuit board and mounting bracket 102. An insulating sheet 111 of cork is held between the frame 109 and mounting bracket 102.

Printed circuit board 108 carries all of the above-listed circuit components except for capacitor C5 and transistors Q3 and Q4. Fig.5 illustrates the position in which transistor Q2 and the coil assembly 112 of transformer TR1 are mounted on the printed circuit board. Transistor Q2 must withstand considerable heat generation and it is therefore mounted on a specially designed heat sink 113 clamped to circuit board 108 by clamping screws 114 and nuts 115. As most clearly illustrated in Fig.7 and Fig.8, heat sink 113 has a flat base plate portion 116 which is generally diamond shaped and a series of rod like cooling fins 117 project to one side of the base plate around its periphery. It has a pair of countersunk holes 118 of the clamping screws and a similar pair of holes 119 to receive the connector pins 121 which connect transistor Q2 to the printed circuit board. Holes 118, 119 are lined with nylon bushes 122 and a Formica sheet 123 is fitted between the transistor and the heat sink so that the sink is electrically insulated from the transistor.

The coil assembly 112 of transformer TR1 (See Fig.9) is comprised of a casing 124 which contains transformer coils and the associated core and former and is closed by a plastic closing plate 125. Plate 125 is held in position by a clamping stud 126 and is fitted with electrical connector pins 127 which are simply pushed through holes in circuit board 108 and are soldered to appropriate copper conductor strips 128 on the outer face of the board.

For clarity the other circuit components mounted on printed circuit board 108 are not illustrated in the drawings. These are standard small size components and the manner in which they may be fitted to the circuit board is entirely conventional.

Capacitor C5 is mounted within casing 101. More specifically it is clamped in position between a flange 131 which stands up from the floor 105 of the casing and a clamping pad 132 engaged by a clamping screw 133, which is mounted in a threaded hole in casing side wall 106 and is set in position by a lock screw 134. Flange 131 has two holes 135 (See Fig.6) in which the terminal bosses 136 of capacitor C5 are located. The terminal pins 137 projecting from bosses 136 are connected to the terminal board 108 by wires (not shown) and appropriate connector pins which are extended through holes in the circuit board and soldered to the appropriate conductor strips on the other face of that board.

Transistors Q3 and Q4 are mounted on the front wall 103 of casing 101 so that the finned casing serves as an extended heat sink for these two transistors. They are mounted on the casing wall and electrically connected to the printed circuit board in identical fashion and this is illustrated by Fig.10 which shows the mounting of transistor Q3. As shown in that figure the transistor is clamped in position by clamping screws 138 and nuts 139 which also serve to provide electrical connections to the appropriate conductors of the printed circuit board via conductor wires 141. The third connection from the emitter of the transistor to the common negative conductor of the printed circuit is made by conductor 142. Screws 130 and conductor 142 extend through three holes in the casing front wall 103 and these holes are lined with electrically insulating nylon bushes 143, 144. A Formica sheet 145 is sandwiched between casing plate 103 and the transistor which is therefore electrically insulated from the casing. Two washers 146 are placed beneath the ends of conductor wires 141.

Pressure operated microswitch 52 is mounted on a bracket 147 projecting inwardly from front wall 103 of casing 101 adjacent the top wall 104 of the casing and the pressure sensing unit 148 for this switch is installed in an opening 149 through top wall 104. As most clearly seen in Fig.11, pressure sensing unit 148 is comprised of two generally cylindrical body members 150, 151 between which a flexible diaphragm 152 is clamped to provide a diaphragm chamber 153. The gas pressure of sensing tube 63 is applied to chamber 153 via a small diameter passage 154 in body member 150 and a larger passage 155 in a cap member 156. The cap member and body members are fastened together and clamped to the casing top plate 104 by means of clamping screws 157. Sensing tube 63 is connected to the passage 155 in cap member 156 by a tapered thread connector 158 and the interface between cap member 156 and body member 150 is sealed by an O-ring 159.

The lower end of body member 151 of pressure sensing unit 148 has an internally screw threaded opening which receives a screw 161 which at its lower end is formed as an externally toothed adjusting wheel 162. A switch actuating plunger 163 extends through a central bore in adjusting wheel 162 so that it engages at one end flexible diaphragm 152 and at the other end the actuator member 164 of microswitch 62. The end of plunger 163 which engages the diaphragm has a flange 165 to serve as a pressure pad and a helical compression spring 167 encircles plunger 163 to act between flange 165 and the adjusting wheel 162 to bias the plunger upwardly against the action of the gas pressure acting on diaphragm 152 in chamber 153. The pressure at which diaphragm 152

A - 847
will force plunger 163 down against the action of spring 167 to cause actuation of switch 62 may be varied by rotating screw 161 and the setting of this screw may be held by a setting screw 168 mounted in a threaded hole in the upper part of casing front wall 103 and projecting inwardly to fit between successive teeth of adjusting wheel 162. After correct setting of screw 161 is achieved set screw 168 will be locked in position by locking screw 169 which is then sealed by a permanent seal 170 to prevent tampering. Microswitch 62 is also electrically connected to the appropriate conductors of the printed circuit board via wires within the housing and connector pins.

Electrical connections are made between the conductors of printed circuit board 108 and the internal wiring of the circuit via a terminal block 150 (Fig.12) set in an opening of housing floor 105 by screws 160 and fitted with terminal plates 140.

The physical construction of electrolytic cell 41 and the second stage transformer TR2 is illustrated in Fig.13 to Fig.29. The cell comprises an outer casing 171 having a tubular peripheral wall 172 and top and bottom closures 173, 174. Bottom closure 174 is comprised of a domed cover 175 and an electrically insulated disc 176 which are held to the bottom of peripheral wall 172 by circumferentially spaced clamping studs 177. Top closure 173 is comprised of a pair of top plates 178, 179 disposed face to face and held by circumferentially spaced clamping studs 181 screwed into tapped holes in the upper end of peripheral wall 172. The peripheral wall of the casing is provided with cooling fins 180.

The anode 42 of the cell is of generally tubular formation. It is disposed vertically within the outer casing and is clamped between upper and lower insulators 182, 183. Upper insulator 182 has a central boss portion 184 and an annular peripheral flange 185 portion the outer rim of which is clamped between upper closure plate 179 and the upper end of peripheral wall 172. Lower insulator 183 has a central boss portion 186, an annular flange portion 187 surrounding the boss portion and an outer tubular portion 188 standing up from the outer margin of flange portion 187. Insulators 182, 183 are moulded from an electrically insulating material which is also alkali resistant. Polytetrafluoroethylene is one suitable material.

When held together by the upper and lower closures, insulators 182, 183 form an enclosure within which anode 42 and the second stage transformer TR2 are disposed. Anode 42 is of generally tubular formation and it is simply clamped between insulators 182, 183 with its cylindrical inner periphery located on the boss portions 184, 186 of those insulators. It forms a transformer chamber which is closed by the boss portions of the two insulators and which is filled with a suitable transformer oil. O-ring seals 190 are fitted between the central bosses of the insulator plates and the anode to prevent loss of oil from the transformer chamber.

The transformer core 91 is formed as a laminated mild steel bar of square section. It extends vertically between the insulator boss portions 184, 186 and its ends are located within recesses in those boss portions. The primary transformer winding 88 is wound on a first tubular former 401 fitted directly onto core 91 whereas the secondary winding 89 is wound on a second tubular former 402 so as to be spaced outwardly from the primary winding within the oil filled transformer chamber.

The cathode 43 in the form of a longitudinally slotted tube which is embedded in the peripheral wall portion 183, this being achieved by moulding the insulator around the cathode. The cathode has eight equally spaced longitudinal slots 191 so that it is essentially comprised of eight cathode strips 192 disposed between the slots and connected together at top and bottom only, the slots being filled with the insulating material of insulator 183.

Both the anode and cathode are made of nickel plated mild steel. The outer periphery of the anode is machined to form eight circumferentially spaced flutes 193 which have arcuate roots meeting at sharp crests or ridges 194 defined between the flutes. The eight anode crests 194 are radially aligned centrally of the cathode strips 192 and the perimeter of the anode measured along its external surface is equal to the combined widths of the cathode strips measured at the internal surfaces of these strips, so that over the major part of their lengths the anode and cathode have equal effective areas. This equalisation of areas generally have not been available in prior art cylindrical anode/cathode arrangements.

As most clearly seen in Fig.27 the upper end of anode 42 is relieved and fitted with an annular collar 200 the outer periphery of which is shaped to form an extension of the outer peripheral surface of the fluted anode. This collar is formed of an electrically insulated plastics material such as polyvinyl chloride or teflon. A locating pin 205 extends through collar 200 to project upwardly into an opening in upper insulating plate 182 and to extend down into a hole 210 in the cathode. The collar is thus located in correct annular alignment relative to the anode and the anode is correctly aligned relative to the cathode.

The annular space 195 between the anode and cathode serves as the electrolyte solution chamber. Initially this chamber is filled approximately 75% full with an electrolyte solution of 25% potassium hydroxide in distilled water. As the electrolysis reaction progresses hydrogen and oxygen gases collect in the upper part of this chamber and water is admitted to maintain the level of electrolyte solution in the chamber. Insulating collar 200 shields the
cathode in the upper region of the chamber where hydrogen and oxygen gases collect to prevent any possibility of arcing through these gases between the anode and cathode.

Electrolyte chamber 195 is divided by a tubular membrane 196 formed by nylon woven mesh material 408 stretched over a tubular former 197 formed of very thin sheet steel. As most clearly illustrated in Fig.20 and Fig.21 former 197 has upper and lower rim portions 198, 199 connected by circumferentially spaced strip portions 201. The nylon mesh material 408 may be simply folded around the upper and lower insulators 182, 183 so that the former is electrically isolated from all other components of the cell. Material 408 has a mesh size which is so small that the mesh openings will not pass bubbles of greater than 0.004 inch diameter and the material can therefore serve as a barrier against mixing of hydrogen and oxygen generated at the cathode and anode respectively while permitting the electrolytic flow of current between the electrodes. The upper rim portion 198 of the membrane former 197 is deep enough to constitute a solid barrier through the depth of the gas collection chamber above the electrolyte solution level so that there will be no mixing of hydrogen and oxygen within the upper part of the chamber.

Fresh water is admitted into the outer section of chamber 195 via an inlet nozzle 211 formed in upper closure plate 178. The electrolyte solution passes from the outer to the inner sections of chamber 195 through the mesh membrane 408.

Nozzle 211 has a flow passage 212 extending to an electrolyte inlet valve 213 controlled by a float 214 in chamber 195. Valve 213 comprises a bushing 215 mounted within an opening extending down through upper closure plate 179 and the peripheral flange 185 of upper insulator 182 and providing a valve seat which cooperates with valve needle 216. Needle 216 rests on a pad 217 on the upper end of float 214 so that when the electrolyte solution is at the required level the float lifts the needle hard against the valve seat. The float slides vertically on a pair of square section slide rods 218 extending between the upper and lower insulators 182 and 183. These rods, which may be formed of polytetrafluoroethylene extend through appropriate holes 107 through the float.

The depth of float 214 is chosen such that the electrolyte solution fills only approximately 75% of the chamber 195, leaving the upper part of the chamber as a gas space which can accommodate expansion of the generated gas due to heating within the cell.

As electrolysis of the electrolyte solution within chamber 195 proceeds, hydrogen gas is produced at the cathode and oxygen gas is produced at the anode. These gases bubble upwardly into the upper part of chamber 195 where they remain separated in the inner and outer compartments defined by membrane and it should be noted that the electrolyte solution enters that part of the chamber which is filled with oxygen rather than hydrogen so there is no chance of leakage of hydrogen back through the electrolyte inlet nozzle.

The abutting faces of upper closure plates 178, 179 have matching annular grooves forming within the upper closure inner and outer gas collection passages 221, 222. Outer passage 222 is circular and it communicates with the hydrogen compartment of chamber 195 via eight ports 223 extending down through top closure plate 179 and the peripheral flange of upper insulator 182 adjacent the cathode strips 192. Hydrogen gas flows upwardly through ports 223 into passage 222 and thence upwardly through a one-way valve 224 (Fig.19) into a reservoir 225 provided by a plastic housing 226 bolted to top closure plate 178 via a centre stud 229 and sealed by a gasket 227. The lower part of housing 114 is charged with water. Stud 229 is hollow and its lower end has a transverse port 228 so that, on removal of a sealing cap 229 from its upper end it can be used as a filter down which to pour water into the reservoir 225. Cap 229 fits over a nut 231 which provides the clamping action on plastic housing 226 and resilient gaskets 232, 233 and 234 are fitted between the nut and cover, between the cap and the nut and between the cap and the upper end of stud 229.

One-way valve 224 comprises a bushing 236 which projects down into the annular hydrogen passage 221 and has a valve head member 237 screw fitted to its upper end to provide clamping action on top closure plate 178 between the head member and a flange 238 at the bottom end bushing 236. Bushing 236 has a central bore 239, the upper end of which receives the diamond cross-section stem of a valve member 240, which also comprises a valve plate portion 242 biased against the upper end of the bushing by compression spring 243. Valve member 240 is lifted against the action of spring 243 by the pressure of hydrogen gas within passage 221 to allow the gas to pass into the interior of valve head 237 and then out through ports 220 in that member into reservoir 225.

Hydrogen is withdrawn from reservoir 225 via a stainless steel crooked tube 241 which connects with a passage 409. Passage 409 extends to a port 250 which extends down through the top and bottom closure plates 178, 179 and top insulator 182 into a hydrogen duct 244 extending vertically within the casting of casing 171. Duct 244 is of triangular cross-section. As will be explained below, the hydrogen passes from this duct into a mixing chamber defined in the gas mixing and delivery unit 38 which is bolted to casing 171.
Oxygen is withdrawn from chamber 195 via the inner annular passage 221 in the top closure. Passage 221 is not circular but has a scalloped configuration to extend around the water inlet. Oxygen enters it through eight ports 245 extended through top closure plate 179 and the annular flange portion of upper insulator 182. The oxygen flows upwardly from passage 222 through a one-way valve 246 and into a reservoir 260 provided by a plastic housing 247. The arrangement is similar to that for withdrawal of hydrogen and will not be described in great detail. Suffice to say that the bottom of the chamber is charged with water and the oxygen is withdrawn through a crooked tube 248, an outlet passage 249 in top closure plate 178, and a port which extends down through closure plates 178, 179 and top insulator 182 into a triangular cross-section oxygen duct 251 extending vertically within casing 171 disposed opposite hydrogen duct 244. The oxygen is also delivered to the gas mixing chamber of the mixing and delivery unit 38.

The pressure sensing tube 63 for switch 62 is connected via a tapered thread connector 410 and a passage 411 in the top closure plate 178 directly to the annular hydrogen passage 222. If the pressure within the passage rises above a predetermined level, switch 62 is operated to disconnect capacitor C2 from the common negative line 54. This removes the negative signal from capacitor C2 which is necessary to maintain continuous operation of the pulse generating circuitry for generating the triggering pulses on thyristor T1 and these triggering pulses therefore cease. The transformer TR1 continues to remain in operation to charge dumping capacitor C5 but because thyristor T1 cannot be triggered dumping capacitor C5 will simply remain charged until the hydrogen pressure in passage 222, and therefore in chamber 195 falls below the predetermined level and triggering pulses are applied once more to thyristor T1. Pressure actuated switch 62 thus controls the rate of gas production according to the rate at which it is withdrawn. The stiffness of the control springs for gas escape valves 224, 246 must of course be chosen to allow escape of the hydrogen and oxygen in the proportions in which they are produced by electrolysis, i.e. in the ratios 2:1 by volume.

Reservoirs 225, 260 are provided as a safety precaution. If a sudden back-pressure were developed in the delivery pipes this could only shatter the plastic housings 226, 247 and could not be transmitted back into the electrolytic cell. Switch 62 would then operate to stop further generation of gases within the cell.

The electrical connections of secondary transformer coil 89 to the anode and the cathode are shown in Fig.14. One end of coil 89 is extended as a wire 252 which extends into a blind hole in the inner face of the anode where it is gripped by a grub screw 253 screwed into a threaded hole extended vertically into the anode underneath collar 200. A tapered nylon plug 254 is fitted above screw 253 to seal against loss of oil from the interior of the anode. The other end of coil 89 is extended as a wire 255 to pass down through a brass bush 256 in the bottom insulator 183 and then horizontally to leave casing 171 between bottom insulating disc 176 and insulator 183.

As most clearly shown in Fig.23, brass bush 256 has a head flange 257 and is fitted at its lower end with a nut 258 whereby it is firmly clamped in position. Gaskets 259, 261 are disposed beneath head flange 257 and above nut 258 respectively.

At the location where wire 255 is extended horizontally to leave the casing the upper face of disc 176 and the lower face of insulator 183 are grooved to receive and clamp onto the wire. Disc 176 and insulator 183 are also extended radially outwardly at this location to form tabs which extend out beneath casing 171 and ensure proper insulation of the wire through to the outer periphery of the casing.

Outside the casing, wire 255 is connected to a cathode terminal bolt 262. Terminal bolt 262 has a head which is received in a socket in separate head piece 263 shaped to suit the cylindrically curved inner periphery of the cathode and nickel plated to resist chemical attack by the electrolyte solution. The stem of the terminal bolt extends through openings in the cathode and peripheral wall portion 188 of insulator 183 and air insulating bush fitted in an aligned opening in the casing wall 172. The head piece 263 of the terminal bolt is drawn against the inner periphery of the cathode by tightening of a clamping nut 265 and the end of wire 255 has an eye which is clamped between nut 265 and a washer 266 by tightening a terminal end nut 267. A washer 268 is provided between nut 265 and brush 264 and a sealing O-ring 269 is fitted in an annular groove in the bolt stem to engage the inner periphery of the bush in order to prevent escape of electrolyte solution. The terminal connection is covered by a cover plate 271 held in place by fixing screws 272.

The two ends of the primary transformer coil 88 are connected to strip conductors 273, 274 which extend upwardly through the central portion of upper insulator 183. The upper ends of conductors 273, 274 project upwardly as pins within a socket 275 formed in the top of upper insulator 183. The top of socket 275 is closed by a cover 276 which is held by a centre stud 277 and through which wires 278, 279 from the external circuit are extended and connected to conductors 273, 274 by push-on connectors 281, 282.

The transformer connections shown in Fig.14 are in accordance with the circuit of Fig.2, i.e. the ends of secondary coil 89 are connected directly between the anode and the cathode. Transformer TR2 is a step-down
transformer and, assuming an input of pulses of 22 amps at 300 volts and a coil ratio between the primary and secondary of 10:1 the output applied between the anode and the cathode will be pulses of 200 amps at a low voltage of the order of 3 volts. The voltage is well in excess of that required for electrolysis to proceed and the very high current achieved produces a high rate of yield of hydrogen and oxygen. The rapid discharge of energy which produces the large current flow will be accompanied by a release of heat. This energy is not entirely lost in that the consequent heating of the electrolyte solution increases the mobility of the ions which tends to increase the rate of electrolysis.

The configuration of the anode and cathode arrangement of electrolytic cell 41 is of significant importance. The fluted external periphery of the anode causes a concentration of current flow which produces a better gas yield over a given electrode area. This particular configuration also causes the surface area of the anode to be extended and permits an arrangement in which the anode and cathode have equal surface areas which is most desirable in order to minimise electrical losses. It is also desirable that the anode and cathode surfaces at which gas is produced be roughened, for example by sand-blasting. This promotes separation of the gas bubbles from the electrode surfaces and avoids the possibility of overvoltages.

The arrangement of the secondary transformer in which the central anode is surrounded by the cathode is also of great importance. The anode, being constructed of a magnetic material, is acted on by the magnetic field of transformer TR2 to become, during the period of energisation of that transformer, a strong conductor of magnetic flux. This in turn creates a strong magnetic field in the inter-electrode space between the anode and the cathode. It is believed that this magnetic field increases the mobility of the ions in solution thereby improving the efficiency of the cell.

The heat generated by transformer TR2 is conducted via the anode to the electrolyte solution and increases the mobility of the ions within the electrolyte solution as above mentioned. The cooling fins 180 are provided on casing 171 to assist in dissipation of excess generated heat. The location of the transformer within the anode also enables the connections of the secondary coil 89 to the anode and cathode to be made of short, well protected conductors.

As mentioned above the hydrogen and oxygen gas generated in electrolytic cell 41 and collected in ducts 244, 251 is delivered to a gas mixing chamber of the mixing and delivery unit 38. More specifically, these gases are delivered from ducts 244, 251 via escape valves 283, 284 (Fig.15) which are held in position over discharge ports 285, 286 from the ducts by means of a leaf spring 287. The outer ends of spring 287 engage the valves 283, 284 and the centre part of the spring is bowed inwardly by a clamping stud 288 screwed into a tapped hole in a boss 289 formed in the cell casing 171.

Valve 283 is detailed in Fig.28 and Fig.29 and valve 284 is of identical construction. Valve 283 includes an inner valve body 291 having a cap portion 292 and an annular end ring portion 293 which holds an annular valve seat 294. A valve disc 295 is biased against the valve seat by a valve spring 296 reacting against the cap portion 292. An outer valve cover 297 fits around the inner member 291 and is engaged by spring 287 to force the inner member firmly into a socket in the wall of the cell casing so to cover the hydrogen discharge port 285. The end ring portion 293 of the inner body member beds on a gasket 298 within the socket.

During normal operation of the apparatus valves 283, 284 act as simple one-way valves by movements of their spring loaded valve plates. However, if an excessive gas pressure should arise within the electrolytic cell these valves will be forced back against the action of holding spring 287 to provide pressure relief. The escaping excess gas then flows to atmosphere via the mixing and delivery unit 38 as described below. The pressure at which valves 283, 284 will lift away to provide pressure relief may be adjusted by appropriate setting of stud 288, which setting is held by a nut 299.

The construction of the gas mixing and delivery unit 38 is shown in Fig.30 and Fig.40. It comprises an upper body portion 301 which carries an air filter assembly 302, an intermediate body portion 303, which is bolted to the casing of electrolytic cell 41 by six studs 304, and successive lower body portions 305, 300, the latter of which is bolted to the inlet manifold of the engine by four studs 306.

The bolted connection between intermediate body portion 303 and the casing of the electrolytic cell is sealed by a gasket 307. This connection surrounds valves 283, 284 which deliver hydrogen and oxygen gases directly into a mixing chamber 308 (Fig.34) defined by body portion 303. The gases are allowed to mix together within this chamber and the resulting hydrogen and oxygen mixture passes along small diameter horizontal passageway 309 within body portion 303 which passageway is traversed by a rotary valve member 311. Valve member 311 is conically tapered and is held within a correspondingly tapered valve housing by a spring 312 (Fig.38) reacting against a bush 313 which is screwed into body portion 303 and serves as a mounting for the rotary valve stem 314. Valve member 311 has a diametral valve port 315 and can be rotated to vary the extent to which this port is
aligned with passageway 309 thereby to vary the effective cross-section for flow through that passageway. As will be explained below, the rotational positions of the valve member is controlled in relation to the engine speed.

Passage 309 extends to the lower end of a larger diameter vertical passageway 316 which extends upwardly to a solenoid freed valve 310 incorporated in a valve and jet assembly denoted generally as 317.

Assembly 317 comprises a main body 321 (Fig.32) closed at the top by a cap 322 when the assembly is clamped to body portion 303 by two clamping studs 323 to form a gas chamber 324 from which gas is to be drawn through jet nozzles 318 into two vertical bores or throats 319 (Fig.31) in body portion 303. The underside of body 321 has a tapped opening into which is fitted an externally screw threaded valve seat 325 of valve 310. A valve member 326 is biased down against seat 325 by a spring 327 which reacts against cap 322. Spring 327 encircles a cylindrical stem 328 of valve member 326 which stem projects upwardly through an opening in cap 322 so that it may be acted on by solenoid 56 which is mounted immediately above the valve in upper body portion 301.

Solenoid 56 is comprised of an outer insulating casing 366 which has two mounting flanges 367. This casing houses the copper windings constituting coil 55. These are wound on a plastic bobbin 369 disposed about a central mild steel core 371. The core has a bottom flange 372 and the bobbin and coils are held clamped in the casing through insulating closure 373 acted on by flange 372 on tightening of a clamping nut 374 which is fitted to the other end of the core.

Upper body portion 301 of unit 38 is tubular but at one side it has an internal face shaped to suit the exterior profile of solenoid casing 366 and mounting flanges 367. Two mounting screws 375 screw into holes in this face and engage slots 376 in the mounting flanges 367 so that the height of the solenoid above valve 310 can be adjusted. The two terminals 377 are connected into the electrical circuit by wires (not shown) which may be extended into unit 38 via the air filter assembly.

When solenoid 56 is energised its magnetised core attracts valve stem 328 and valve member 326 is lifted until stem 328 abuts the lower flange 372 of the solenoid core. Thus valve 310 is opened when the ignition switch is closed and will close under the influence of spring 327 when the ignition switch is opened. Vertical adjustment of the solenoid position controls the lift of valve member 326 and therefore the maximum fuel flow rate through unit 38.

Electrolyte cell 41 produces hydrogen in the ratio 2:1 to provide a mixture which is by itself completely combustible. However, as used in connection with existing internal combustion engines the volume of hydrogen and oxygen required for normal operation is less than that of a normal fuel air mixture. Thus a direct application to such an engine of only hydrogen and oxygen in the amount required to meet power demands will result in a vacuum condition within the system. In order to overcome this vacuum condition provision is made to draw make-up air into throats 319 via the air filter assembly 302 and upper body portion 301.

Upper body portion 301 has a single interior passage 328 through which make-up air is delivered to the dual throats 319. It is fastened to body portion 303 by clamping studs 329 and a gasket 331 is sandwiched between the two body portions. The amount of make-up air admitted is controlled by an air valve flap 332 disposed across passage 328 and rotatably mounted on a shaft 333 to which it is attached by screws 334. The valve flap is notched to fit around solenoid casing 366. Shaft 333 extends through the wall of body portion 301 and outside that wall it is fitted with a bracket 335 which carries an adjustable setting screw 336 and a biasing spring 337. Spring 337 provides a rotational bias on shaft 333 and during normal running of the engine it simply holds flap 332 in a position determined by engagement of setting screw 336 with a flange 338 of body portion 301. This position is one in which the flap almost completely closes passage 328 to allow only a small amount of make-up air to enter, this small amount being adjustable by appropriate setting of screw 336. Screw 336 is fitted with a spring 339 so that it will hold its setting.

Although flaps 332 normally serve only to adjust the amount of make-up air admitted to unit 38, it also serves as a pressure relief valve if excessive pressures are built up, either due to excessive generation of hydrogen and oxygen gases or due to burning of gases in the inlet manifold of the engine. In either event the gas pressure applied to flaps 332 will cause it to rotate so as to open passage 328 and allow gases to escape back through the air filter. It will be seen in Fig.32 that flap mounting shaft 333 is offset from the centre of passage 328 such that internal pressure will tend to open the flap and thus exactly the reverse of the air valve in a conventional gasoline carburettor.

Air filter assembly 302 comprises an annular bottom pan 341 which fits snugly onto the top of upper body portion 301 and domed filter element 342 held between an inner frame 343 and an outer steel mesh covering 344. The assembly is held in position by a wire and eyebolt fitting 345 and clamping nut 346.

Body portion 305 of unit 38 (Fig.31), which is fastened to body portion 303 by clamping studs 347, carries throttle
valve apparatus to control engine speed. It has two vertical bores 348, 349 serving as continuations of the dual throats which started in body portion 303 and these are fitted with throttle valve flaps 351, 352 fixed to a common throttle valve shaft 353 by fixing screws 354. Both ends of shaft 353 are extended through the wall of body portion 305 to project outwardly therefrom. One end of this shaft is fitted with a bracket 355 via which it is connected as in a conventional carburettor to a throttle cable 356 and also to an automatic transmission kick-down control linkage 357. A biasing spring 358 acts on shaft 353 to bias throttle flaps toward closed positions as determined by engagement of a setting screw 359 carried by bracket 355 with a plate 361 projecting from body portion 303.

The other end of throttle valve shaft 353 carries a lever 362 the outer end of which is connected to a wire link 407 by means of which a control connection is made to the valve stem 314 of valve member 311 via a further lever 406 connected to the outer end of the valve stem. This control connection is such that valve member 311 is at all times positioned to pass a quantity of gas mixture appropriate to the engine speed as determined by the throttle setting. The initial setting of valve member 311 can be adjusted by selection between two connection holes 405 in lever 406 and by bending of link 407.

Body portion 303 is fastened to the bottom body portion 300 of unit 38 by four clamping studs 306. The bottom body portion has two holes 364, 365 which form continuations of the dual throats and which diverge in the downward direction so as to direct the hydrogen, oxygen and air mixture delivered through these throats outwardly toward the two banks of cylinder inlets. Since this fuel is dry, a small quantity of oil vapour is added to it via a passage 403 in body portion 305 to provide some upper cylinder lubrication. Passage 403 receives oil vapour through a tube 404 connected to a tapping on the engine tapped cover. It discharges the oil vapour down on to a relieved top face part 368 of body portion 300 between holes 364, 365. The vapour impinges on the relieved face part and is deflected into the two holes to be drawn with the gases into the engine.

In the illustrated gas mixing and delivery unit 38, it will be seen that passageway 309, vertical passageway 316, chamber 324 and nozzles 318 constitute transfer passage means via which the hydrogen mixture pass to the gas flow duct means comprised of the dual throats via which it passes to the engine. The transfer passage means has a gas metering valve comprised of the valve member 311 and the solenoid operated valve is disposed in the transfer passage means between the metering valve and the gas flow duct means. The gas metering valve is set to give maximum flow rate through the transfer passage means at full throttle setting of throttle flaps 351, 352. The solenoid operated valve acts as an on/off valve so that when the ignition switch is opened the supply of gas to the engine is positively cut-off thereby preventing any possibility of spontaneous combustion in the cylinders causing the engine to "run on". It also acts to trap gas in the electrolytic cell and within the mixing chamber of the mixing and delivery unit so that gas will be available immediately on restarting the engine.

Dumping capacitor C5 will determine a ratio of charging time to discharge time which will be largely independent of the pulse rate and the pulse rate determined by the oscillation transistor Q1 must be chosen so that the discharge time is not so long as to produce overheating of the transformer coils and more particularly the secondary coil 89 of transformer TR2. Experiments indicate that overheating problems are encountered at pulse rates below about 5,000 and that the system will behave much like a DC system, with consequently reduced performance at pulse rates greater than about 40,000. A pulse rate of about 10,000 pulses per minute will be nearly optimum. With the saw tooth wave input and sharply spiked output pulses of the preferred oscillator circuit the duty cycle of the pulses produced at a frequency of 10,000 pulses per minute was about 0.006. This pulse form helps to minimise overheating problems in the components of the oscillator circuit at the high pulse rates involved. A duty cycle of up to 0.1, as may result from a square wave input, would be feasible but at a pulse rate of 10,000 pulses per minute some of the components of the oscillator circuit would then be required to withstand unusually high heat inputs. A duty cycle of about 0.005 would be a minimum which could be obtained with the illustrated type of oscillator circuitry.

From the foregoing description it can be seen that the electrolytic cell 41 converts water to hydrogen and oxygen whenever ignition switch 44 is closed to activate solenoid 51, and this hydrogen and oxygen are mixed in chamber 308. Closure of the ignition switch also activates solenoid 56 to permit entry of the hydrogen and oxygen mixture into chamber 319, when it mixes with air admitted into the chamber by air valve flap 332. As described above, air valve flap 332 may be set to admit air in an amount as required to avoid a vacuum condition in the engine.

In operation the throttle cable 356 causes bracket 355 to pivot about throttle valve shaft 353, which rotates flap 351 to control the amount of hydrogen-oxygen-air mixture entering the engine. At the same time shaft 353 acts via the linkage shown in Fig.37 to control the position of shaft 314, and shaft 314 adjusts the amount of hydrogen-oxygen mixture provided for mixing with the air. As shown in Fig.30, bracket 355 may also be linked to a shaft 357, which is connected to the car transmission. Shaft 357 is a common type of shaft used for down shifting into a passing gear when the throttle has been advanced beyond a predetermined point. Thus there is provided a
compact fuel generation system which is compatible with existing internal combustion engines and which has been designed to fit into a standard passenger car.

While the form of apparatus herein described constitutes a preferred embodiment of the invention, it is to be understood that the invention is not limited to this precise form of apparatus, and that changes may be made therein without departing from the scope of the invention.

CLAIMS

1. For an internal combustion engine having inlet means to receive a combustible fuel, fuel supply apparatus comprising:

   a vessel to hold an aqueous electrolyte solution;

   an anode and a cathode to contact the electrolyte solution within the vessel;

   electrical supply means to apply between said anode and said cathode pulses of electrical energy to induce a pulsating current in the electrolyte solution thereby to generate by electrolysis hydrogen and oxygen gases;

   gas collection and delivery means to collect the hydrogen and oxygen gases and to direct them to the engine inlet means; and

   water admission means to admit water to said vessel;

   said electrical supply means comprising a source of direct current electrical energy of substantially uniform voltage and current and electrical converter means to convert that energy to said pulses, said converter means comprising a transformer means having primary coil means energised by direct current energy from said source and secondary coil means inductively coupled to the primary coil means; a dump capacitor connected to the secondary coil means of the transformer means so as to be charged by electrical output of that coil means; oscillator means to derive electrical pulses from direct current energy of said source; a switching device switchable from a non-conducting state to a conducting state in response to each of the electrical pulses derived by the oscillator means and connected to the secondary coil means of the transformer means and the dump capacitor such that each switching from its non-conducting state to its conducting state causes the dump capacitor to discharge and also short circuits the transformer means to cause the switching means to revert to its non-conducting state; and electrical conversion means to receive the pulse discharges from the dump capacitor and to convert them to said pulses of electrical energy which are applied between the anode and cathode.

2. Fuel supply as claimed in claim 1, wherein the electrical supply means applies said pulses of electrical energy at a frequency of ranging between about 5,000 and 40,000 pulses per minute.

3. Fuel supply apparatus as claimed in claim 2, wherein the electrical supply means applies said pulses of electrical energy at a frequency of about 10,000 pulses per minute.

4. Fuel supply apparatus as claimed in claim 2, wherein the electrical supply means comprises a source of direct current electrical energy of substantially uniform voltage and current and electrical converter means to convert that energy to said pulses.

5. Fuel supply apparatus as claimed in claim 1, wherein the electrical conversion means is a voltage step-down transformer comprising a primary coil to receive the pulse discharge from said dump capacitor and a secondary coil electrically connected between the anode and cathode and inductively coupled to the primary coil.

6. Fuel supply apparatus as claimed in claim 5, wherein said cathode encompasses the anode.

7. Fuel supply apparatus as claimed in claim 1, wherein the cathode encompasses the anode which is hollow and the primary and secondary coils of the second transformer means are disposed within the anode.

8. Fuel supply apparatus as claimed in claim 1, wherein the anode is tubular and its ends are closed to form a chamber which contains the primary and secondary coils of the second transformer means and which is charged with oil.

9. In combination with an internal combustion engine having an inlet for combustible fuel, fuel supply apparatus comprising:

   a. an electrolytic cell to hold an electrolytic conductor;
b. a first hollow cylindrical electrode disposed within said cell and provided about its outer surface with a series of circumferentially spaced and longitudinally extending flutes;

c. a second hollow cylindrical electrode surrounding said anode and segmented into a series of electrically connected longitudinally extending strip; said strips being equal in number to the number of said flutes, said strips having a total active surface area approximately equal to the total active surface area of said flutes, and said strips being in radial alignment with the crests of said flutes;

d. current generating means for generating a flow of electrolysis current between said first and second electrodes;

e. gas collection and delivery means to collect hydrogen and oxygen gases from the cell and to direct them to said fuel inlet of the engine; and

f. water admission means to admit water to the cell.

10. The combination claimed in claim 9, wherein said current generating means comprises a transformer situated inside said first electrode.

11. The combination claimed in claim 10, wherein the secondary winding of said transformer is connected whereby said first electrode operates as an anode and said second electrode operates as a cathode.

12. The combination claimed in claim 11, wherein said current generating means further comprising means to generate a pulsed current in the primary winding of said transformer.

13. The combination claimed in claim 9, wherein the roots of said flutes are cylindrically curved.

14. The combination claimed in claim 10, wherein said current generating means comprises a source of direct current; a transformer means having primary coil means energised by direct current energy from said source and secondary coil means inductively coupled to the primary coil means; a dump capacitor connected to the secondary coil means of the transformer means so as to be charged by electrical output of that coil means; oscillator means to derive electrical pulses from direct current energy of said source, a switching device switchable from a non-conducting state to a conducting state in response to each of the electrical pulses derived by the oscillator means and connected to the secondary coil means of the transformer means and the dump capacitor such that each switching from its non-conducting state to its conducting state causes the dump capacitor to discharge and also short circuits the transformer means to cause the switching means to revert to its non-conducting state; and electrical conversion means to receive the pulse discharges from the dump capacitor and to convert them to said pulses of electrical electrical which are applied between said first and second electrodes.

15. The combination claimed in claim 10, wherein the electrical conversion means comprises a voltage step-down transformer having a primary coil to receive the pulse discharge from said dump capacitor and a secondary coil electrically connected between said first and second electrodes.

16. The combination of an internal combustion engine having an inlet to receive a combustible fuel and fuel supply apparatus comprising:

a. a vessel to hold an aqueous electrolyte solution;

b. a first hollow cylindrical electrode disposed within said vessel and provided about its outer surface with a series of circumferentially spaced and longitudinally extending flutes;

c. a second hollow cylindrical electrode surrounding the first electrode and segmented into a series of electrically connected longitudinally extending strips; said strips being equal in number to the number of said flutes and being in radial alignment with the crests of said flutes;

d. current generating means for generating a pulsating current between said first and second electrodes to produce hydrogen and oxygen gases within the vessel;

e. gas collection and delivery means to collect the hydrogen and oxygen gases and to direct them to the engine inlet means; and

f. water admission means to admit water to the vessel.

A - 855
17. The combination claimed in claim 26, wherein said current generating means comprises a source of direct current; a first transformer means having primary coil means energised by direct current energy from said source and secondary coil means inductively coupled to the primary coil means; a dump capacitor connected to the secondary coil means of the first transformer means so as to be charged by electrical output of that coil means; oscillator means to derive electrical pulses from direct current energy of said source; a switching device switchable from non-conducting state to a conducting state in response to each of the electrical pulses derived by the oscillator means and connected to the secondary coil means of the first transformer means and the dump capacitor such that each switching from its non-conducting state to its conducting state causes the dump capacitor to discharge and also short circuits the first transformer means to cause a second transformer to receive the pulse discharges from the dump capacitor and to transform them to pulses of electrical energy which are applied between said first and second electrodes.

18. The combination claimed in claim 26, wherein the second transformer means has primary coil means energised by the pulse discharges from the dump capacitor and secondary coil means which is inductively coupled to the primary coil means and is connected to the first and second electrodes such that the first electrode operates as an anode and the second electrode operates as a cathode.
FRACTURE CELL APPARATUS

Please note that this is a re-worded extract from the patent and the diagrams have been adapted slightly. It describes a device for splitting water into hydrogen and oxygen gasses via electrolysis using electrodes which are placed on the outside of the cell.

ABSTRACT

Fracture cell apparatus including a capacitive fracture cell 20 comprising a container 21 having walls 21a, and 21b made of non-electrically conducting material for containing a liquid dielectric 26, and spaced apart electrodes 22 and 23 positioned outside container 21 with the liquid dielectric 26 between the electrodes, and a mechanism (8a and 8b in Fig.1 and Fig.2) for applying positive and negative voltage pulses to each of the electrodes 22 and 23. In use, whenever one of a positive voltage pulse and a negative voltage pulse is applied to one of the two electrodes, the other of a positive voltage pulse and a negative voltage pulse is applied to the other of the two electrodes, thereby creating an alternating electric field across the liquid dielectric to cause fracture of the liquid dielectric 26. The apparatus may be used for generating hydrogen gas.

FRACTURE CELL APPARATUS

This invention relates to a fracture cell apparatus and to a method of generating fuel gas from such fracture cell apparatus. In particular, but not exclusively, the invention relates to an apparatus and method for providing fuel gas from water.

Conventionally, the principal methods of splitting a molecular species into its component atomic constituents have been either purely chemical or purely electrolytic:

Purely chemical reactions always involve "third-party" reagents and do not involve the interaction of (1) an applied external electrical influence, and (2) a simple substance. Conventional electrolysis involves the passage of an electric current through a medium (the electrolyte), such current being the product of ion-transits between the electrodes of the cell. When ions are attracted towards either the cathode or the anode of a conventional electrolytic cell, they either receive or donate electrons on contact with the respective electrode. Such electron exchanges constitute the current during electrolysis. It is not possible to effect conventional electrolysis to any useful degree without the passage of this current; it is a feature of the process.

A number of devices have recently been described which purport to effect "fracture" of, particularly, water by means of resonant electrostatic phenomena. In particular one known device and process for producing oxygen and hydrogen from water is disclosed in US-A-4936961. In this known device a so-called fuel cell water "capacitor" is provided in which two concentrically arranged spaced apart "capacitor" plates are positioned in a container of water, the water contacting, and serving as the dielectric between, the "capacitor" plates. The "capacitor" is in effect a charge-dependent resistor which begins to conduct after a small displacement current begins to flow. The "capacitor" forms part of a resonant charging circuit that includes an inductance in series with the "capacitor". The "capacitor" is subjected to a pulsating, unipolar electric charging voltage which subjects the water molecules within the "capacitor" to a pulsating electric field between the capacitor plates. The "capacitor" remains charged during the application of the pulsating charging voltage causing the covalent electrical bonding of the hydrogen and oxygen atoms within the water molecules to become destabilised, resulting in hydrogen and oxygen atoms being liberated from the molecules as elemental gases.

Such known fracture devices have, hitherto, always featured, as part of their characteristics, the physical contact of a set of electrodes with the water, or other medium to be fractured. The primary method for limiting current flow through the cell is the provision of a high impedance power supply network, and the heavy reliance on the time-domain performance of the ions within the water (or other medium), the applied voltage being effectively "switched off" in each cycle before ion-transit can occur to any significant degree.

In use of such a known system, there is obviously an upper limit to the number of ion-migrations, electron captures, and consequent molecule-to-atom disruptions which can occur during any given momentary application of an external voltage. In order to perform effectively, such devices require sophisticated current-limiting and very precise switching mechanisms.
A common characteristic of all such known fracture devices described above, which causes them to behave as though they were conventional electrolysis cells at some point in time after the application of the external voltage, is that they have electrodes in actual contact with the water or other medium.

The present invention seeks to provide an alternative method of producing fracture of certain simple molecular species, for example water.

According to one aspect of the present invention there is provided a fracture cell apparatus including a capacitive fracture cell comprising a container having walls made of non-electrically conducting material for containing a liquid dielectric, and spaced apart electrodes positioned outside the container with the liquid dielectric between the electrodes, and a mechanism for applying positive and negative voltage pulses to each of the electrodes so that, whenever one of a positive voltage pulse and a negative voltage pulse is applied to one of the two electrodes, the other voltage pulse is applied to the other electrode, thereby creating an alternating electric field across the liquid dielectric to cause fracture of the liquid dielectric.

In the apparatus of this invention, the electrodes do not contact the liquid dielectric which is to be fractured or disrupted. The liquid to be fractured is the simple dielectric of a capacitor. No purely ohmic element of conductance exists within the fracture cell and, in use, no current flows due to an ion-carrier mechanism within the cell. The required fracture or disruption of the liquid dielectric is effected by the applied electric field whilst only a simple displacement current occurs within the cell.

Preferably the liquid dielectric comprises water, e.g. distilled water, tap water or deuterated water.

Conveniently each electrode comprises a bipolar electrode.

The mechanism for alternately applying positive and negative pulses, provides step voltages alternately to the two electrodes with a short period of time during each charge voltage cycle in which no step voltage is applied to either electrode. Typically, step voltages in excess of 15 kV, typically about 25 kV, on either side of a reference potential, e.g. earth, are applied to the electrodes. In effect, trains of pulses having alternating positive and negative values are applied to the electrodes, the pulses applied to the different electrodes being "phase shifted". In the case where each electrode comprises a bipolar electrode, each bipolar electrode comprising first and second electrode "plates" electrically insulated from each other, a train of positive pulses is arranged to be applied to one electrode plate of each bipolar electrode and a train of negative pulses is arranged to be applied to the other electrode plate of each bipolar electrode. One electrode plate of one bipolar electrode forms a first set with one electrode plate of the other bipolar electrode and the other electrode plate of the one bipolar electrode forms a second set with the other electrode plate of the other bipolar electrode. For each set, a positive pulse is applied to one electrode plate and a negative pulse is applied simultaneously to the other electrode plate. By alternately switching the application of positive and negative pulses from one to the other set of electrode plates, an "alternating" electric field is generated across the dielectric material contained in the container. The pulse trains are synchronised so that there is a short time interval between the removal of pulses from one electrode plate set and the application of pulses to the other electrode plate set.

According to another aspect of the present invention, there is provided a method of generating gas comprising, applying positive and negative voltage pulses alternately to the electrodes (positioned either side of, but not in contact with, a liquid dielectric), the voltage pulses being applied so that, whenever one of a positive voltage pulse and a negative voltage pulse is applied to one of the two electrodes, the other of a positive voltage pulse and a negative voltage pulse is applied to the other of the two electrodes, the applied voltage pulses generating an alternating electric field across the liquid dielectric causing fracture of the liquid dielectric into gaseous media. Preferably, voltages of at least 15 kV, e.g. 25 kV, either side of a reference value, e.g. earth, are applied across the liquid dielectric to generate the alternating electric field.

An embodiment of the invention will now be described by way of example only, with particular reference to the accompanying drawings, in which:
Fig. 1 is a circuit diagram of fracture cell apparatus according to the invention;

Fig. 2 shows in more detail a part of the circuit diagram of Figure 1;

Fig. 3 shows the different waveforms at various parts of the circuit diagram of Fig. 1;
Fig. 4 is a schematic diagram of a fracture cell for use in fracture cell apparatus according to the invention.

Fig. 5 shows trains of pulses applied to electrodes of the fracture cell apparatus according to the invention.
If a large electric field is applied across a pair of electrode plates positioned either side of a cell containing water, disruption of the water molecules will occur. Such disruption yields hydrogen nuclei and HO- ions. Such a molecular disruption is of little interest in terms of obtaining a usable result from the cell. A proton-rich zone exists for as long as the field exists and quickly re-establishes equilibrium ion-product when the field is removed.

One noticeable side-effect, however, is that the hydroxyl ions (which will migrate to the +ve charged plate) are stripped of electrons as they approach the cell boundary. Any negatively-charged ion will exhibit this behaviour in a strong enough potential well, but the OH ions have a strong tendency to such dissociation. This results, momentarily, in a region of negative-charge close to the positive cell boundary. Thus, on opposite sides of the active cell, there are hydrogen nuclei (free proton zone) and displaced electrons (-ve charge zone), both tending to increase in density closer to the charged plates.

If, at this point, the charge is removed from the plates, there is a tendency for the charge-zones to move, albeit very slowly, towards the centre of the active cell. The ion-transit rates of free electrons and of hydrogen nuclei are, however, some two orders of magnitude greater than either H3O+ ions or OH ions.

If the charges are now replaced on the plates, but with opposite polarity, the interesting and potentially useful aspect of the process is revealed. Hydrogen nucleus migration is accelerated in the direction of the new -ve plate and free electron migration takes place towards the new +ve plate. Where there is a sufficient concentration of both species, including the accumulations due to previous polarity changes, monatomic hydrogen is formed with the liberation of some heat energy. Normal molecular association occurs and H2 gas bubbles off from the cell.

Also existing OH radicals are further stripped of hydrogen nuclei and contribute to the process. Active, nascent 0- ions rapidly lose their electronic space charge to the +ve field and monatomic oxygen forms, forming the diatomic molecule and similarly bubbling off from the cell.

Thus, the continuous application of a strong electric field, changing in polarity every cycle, is sufficient to disrupt water into its constituent gaseous elements, utilising a small fraction of the energy required in conventional electrolysis or chemical energetics, and yielding heat energy of the enthalpy of formation of the diatomic bonds in the hydrogen and oxygen.

Apparatus for performing the above process is described below. In particular, electronic circuitry to effect the invention is shown in the simplified block diagram of Fig.1. In Fig.1 a pulse-repetition frequency (PRF) generator 1 comprises an astable multivibrator clock running at a frequency which is preset for any application, but able to be varied across a range of approximately 5-30 kHz. The generator 1 drives, by triggering with the trailing edge of its waveform, a pulse-width (PW) timer 2.

The output of the timer 2 is a train of regular pulses whose width is determined by the setting of timer 2 and whose repetition frequency is set by the PRF generator 1.

The output of the timer 2 is a train of regular pulses whose width is determined by the setting of timer 2 and whose repetition frequency is set by the PRF generator 1.

A gate clock 3 comprises a simple 555-type circuit which produce a waveform (see Fig.3a) having a period of 1 to 5 ms, e.g. 2 ms as shown in Fig.3a. The duty cycle of this waveform is variable from 50% to around 95%. The waveform is applied to one input of each of a pair of AND gates 5a and 5b and also to a binary divide-by-two counter 4. The output of the counter 4 is shown in Fig.3b.

The signal from the divide-by-two counter 4 is applied directly to the AND gate 5b serving phase-2 driver circuitry 7a but is inverted before application to the AND gate 5a serving phase-1 driver circuitry 7a. The output of the AND gate 5a is therefore ((CLOCK and (NOT (CLOCK)/2)) and the output of the AND gate 5b is ((CLOCK) and (CLOCK/2)), the waveforms, which are applied to pulse-train gates 6a and 6b, being shown in Fig.3c and Fig.3d.
Trains of 5-30 kHz pulses are applied to drive amplifiers 7a and 7b alternately, with a small "off"-period during which no pulses are applied to either amplifier. The duration of each "off" period is dependent upon the original duty cycle of the clock timer 3. The reason for the small "off" period in the driver waveforms is to prevent local corona arc as the phases change over each cycle.

The drive amplifiers 7a and 7b each use a BC182L transistor 10 (see Fig.2), small toroidal 2:1 pulse transformer 11 and a BUZII power-MOSFET 12 and apply pulse packets across the primary windings of their respective 25 kV line-output transformers 8a and 8b to produce an EHT ac voltage of high frequency at their secondary windings. The secondary windings are 'lifted' from system ground and provide, after simple half-wave rectification, the applied field for application to cell 20 (see Fig.4).

Cell 20 comprises a container 21 having walls 21a, 21b of electrically insulating material, e.g. a thermoplastics material, such as polymethyl methacrylate, typically spaced about 5 mm apart, and bipolar cell electrodes generally designated 22 and 23 and typically constructed from aluminium foil, positioned outside the walls 21a and 21b. Each bipolar cell electrode comprises a pair of electrode plates 22a and 22b (or 23a and 23b) for each side of the cell 20 separated from each other by an electrically insulating layer 24 (or 25), e.g. of polycarbonate plastics material about 0.3 mm thick.

The electrode plates 22a and 23a form one set (set A) of electrode plates positioned on opposite sides of container 21 and the electrode plates 22b and 23b form another set of electrode plates positioned on opposite sides of the container 21. An insulating layer 25, e.g. of polycarbonate material, similar to the insulating layers 24a or 24b may be positioned between each bipolar cell electrode 22 (or 23) and its adjacent container wall 21a(or 21b). A liquid electrolyte, preferably water, is placed in the container 21.

In use, a train of positive pulses is applied to the electrode plates 22a and 23b and a train of negative pulses is applied to the electrode plates 23a and 22b. The timing of the pulses is shown schematically in Fig.5, which illustrates that, for set A (or for set B), whenever a positive pulse is applied to electrode plate 22a (or 23a), a negative pulse is also applied to electrode plate 23a (or 22a). However the pulses applied to the electrode plate set A are "out of phase" with the pulses applied to the electrode plate set B. In each train of pulses, the duration of each pulse is less than the gap between successive pulses.

By arranging for the pulses of electrode plate set B to be applied in the periods when no pulses are applied to the electrode plate set A, the situation arises where pairs of pulses are applied successively to the electrode plates of different sets of electrode plates, there being a short interval of time when no pulses are applied between each successive application of pulses to pairs of electrode plates. In other words, looking at Fig.5, pulses P1 and Q1 are applied at the same time to the electrode plates 22a and 23a. The pulses P1 and Q1 are of the same pulse length and, at the end of their duration, there is a short time period t before pulses R1 and S1 are applied to the electrode plates 23b and 22b.
The pulses \textbf{R1} and \textbf{S1} are of the same pulse length as the pulses \textbf{P1} and \textbf{Q1} and, at the end of their duration, there is a further time \( t \) before the next pulses \textbf{P2} and \textbf{Q2} are applied to the electrode plates \textit{22a} and \textit{23a}. It will be appreciated that whenever a pulse of one sign is applied to one of the electrode plates of a set, a pulse of the opposite sign is applied to the other electrode plate of that set.

Furthermore, by switching from one to the other electrode plate set the polarities applied across the container are repeatedly switched resulting in an "alternating" electric field being created across the "liquid dielectric" water in the container.
This patent application shows the details of an electrolyser system which it is claimed, produces greater output than the input power needed to operate it.

**ABSTRACT**

A looped energy system for the generation of excess energy available to do work is disclosed. The system comprises an electrolysis cell unit 150 receiving a supply of water to liberate separated hydrogen gas 154 and oxygen 156 by electrolysis driven by a DC voltage 152 applied across respective anodes and cathodes of the cell unit 150. A hydrogen gas receiver 158 receives and stores hydrogen gas liberated by the cell unit 150, and an oxygen gas receiver 160 receives and stores oxygen gas liberated by the cell unit 150. A gas expansion device 162 expands the stored gases to recover expansion work, and a gas combustion device 168 mixes and combusts the expanded hydrogen gas and oxygen gas to recover combusted work. A proportion of the sum of the expansion work and the combustion work sustains electrolysis of the cell unit to retain operational gas pressure in the gas receivers 158, 160 such that the energy system is self-sustaining, and there is excess energy available from the sum of energies.

**TECHNICAL FIELD OF THE INVENTION**

The present invention relates to the generation of hydrogen gas and oxygen gas from water, either as an admixture or as separated gases, by the process of electrolysis, and relates further to applications for the use of the liberated gas. Embodiments of the invention relate particularly to apparatus for the efficient generation of these gases, and to use of the gases in an internal combustion engine and an implosion pump. The invention also discloses a closed-loop energy generation system where latent molecular energy is liberated as a form of 'free energy' so the system can be self-sustaining.

Reference is made to commonly-owned International patent application No. PCT/AU94/000532, having the International filing date of 6 September 1994.

**Background Art**

The technique of electrolysing water in the presence of an electrolyte such as sodium hydroxide (NaOH) or potassium hydroxide (KOH) to liberate hydrogen and oxygen gas (H2, 02) is well known. The process involves applying a DC potential difference between two or more anode/cathode electrode pairs and delivering the minimum energy required to break the H-O bonds (i.e. 68.3 kcal per mole @ STP).

The gases are produced in the stoichiometric proportions for O2:H2 of 1:2 liberated respectively from the anode (+) and cathode (-).

Reference can be made to the following texts:
"Electro-Chemical Science, J. O'M. Bockris and D.M. Drazic, Taylor and Francis Limited" and


On a macro-scale, the amount of gas produced depends upon a number of variables, including the type and concentration of the electrolytic solution used, the anode/cathode electrode pair surface area, the electrolytic resistance (equating to ionic conductivity, which is a function of temperature and pressure), achievable current density and anode/cathode potential difference. The total energy delivered must be sufficient to dissociate the water ions to generate hydrogen and oxygen gases, yet avoid plating (oxidation/reduction) of the metallic or conductive non-metallic materials from which the electrodes are constructed.
DISCLOSURE OF THE INVENTION

The invention discloses a looped-energy system for the generation of excess energy available to do work, the said system comprising of:

An electrolysis cell unit receiving a supply of water for liberating separated hydrogen gas and oxygen gas by electrolysis due to a DC voltage applied across respective anodes and cathodes of the cell;

A hydrogen gas receiver to receive and store the hydrogen gas liberated by the electrolysis cell;

An oxygen gas receiver to receive and store the oxygen gas liberated by the electrolysis cell;

A gas-expansion chamber to allow the expansion of the stored gases to recover expansion work; and

A gas-combustion mechanism for mixing and combusting the expanded hydrogen and oxygen gases to recover combustion work; and wherein a proportion of the sum of the expansion work and the combustion work sustains the electrolysis of the electrolysis cell in order to retain the operational gas pressure in the hydrogen and oxygen gas receivers so that the energy system is self-sustaining and there is excess energy available.

The invention further discloses a method for the generation of excess energy available to do work by the process of electrolysis, said method comprising the steps of: electrolysing water by a DC voltage to liberate separated hydrogen gas and oxygen gas; separately receiving and storing the hydrogen and oxygen gases in a manner to be self-pressuring; separately expanding the stored gas to recover expansion energy; burning the expanded gases to recover combustion energy; and applying a portion of the sum of the expansion work and the combustion work as the DC voltage to retain operational gas pressures and sustain the electrolysis, there being excess energy available to do this.

The invention also discloses an internal combustion engine powered by hydrogen and oxygen comprising of:

At least one cylinder and

At least one reciprocating piston within the cylinder;

A hydrogen gas input port in communication with the cylinder for receiving a supply of pressurised hydrogen;

An oxygen gas input port in communication with the cylinder for receiving a supply of pressurised oxygen; and

An exhaust port in communication with the cylinder and wherein the engine can be operated in a two-stroke manner whereby, at the top of the stroke, hydrogen gas is supplied through the respective inlet port to the cylinder driving the piston downwards, oxygen gas then is supplied through the respective inlet port to the cylinder to drive the cylinder further downwards, after which time self-detonation occurs and the piston moves to the bottom of the stroke and upwards again with the exhaust port opened to force out the water vapour resulting from the detonation.

The invention also discloses an implosion pump comprising of;

A combustion chamber interposed, and in communication with,

An upper reservoir and a lower reservoir separated by a vertical distance across which water is to be pumped, this chamber receiving admixed hydrogen and oxygen at a pressure sufficient to lift a volume of water the distance from there to the top reservoir, the gas in the chamber then being ignited to create a vacuum in the chamber to draw water from the lower reservoir to fill the chamber, whereupon a pumping cycle is established and can be repeated.

The invention also discloses a parallel stacked arrangement of cell plates for a water electrolysis unit, the cell plates alternately forming an anode and cathode of the electrolysis unit, and the arrangement including separate hydrogen gas and oxygen gas outlet ports respectively linked to the anode cell plates and the cathode cell plates.
and extending longitudinally along the plate stack. These outlet ports are arranged so as to be insulated from the anode and cathode plates.

**DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS**

Figs. 1a-16 of noted International application no. PCT/AU94/000532 are reproduced to aid description of the present invention, but herein denoted as Figs. la-6:

**Fig.1A** and **Fig.1B** show an embodiment of a cell plate:

**Fig.2A** and **Fig.2B** show a complementary cell plate to that of Fig.1A and Fig.1B:
Fig. 3 shows detail of the perforations and porting of the cell plates of Figs. 1A, 1B, 2A and 2B:

Fig. 4 shows an exploded stacked arrangement of the cell plates of Figs. 1A, 1B, 2A and 2B:

Fig. 5A shows a schematic view of the gas separation system of Fig. 4:
Fig. 5B shows a stylised representation of Fig. 5a:

Fig. 5C shows an electrical equivalent circuit of Fig. 5A and
FIG. 5c
Fig. 6 shows a gas collection system for use with the cell bank separation system of Figs. 4 and 5a.
The remaining drawings are:
Fig.7A and Fig.7B are views of a first cell plate:
Fig. 8A and Fig. 8B are views of a second cell plate:

Fig. 9 shows detail of the edge margin of the first cell plate:

Fig. 10 shows an exploded stacked arrangement of the cell plates shown in Fig. 7A and Fig. 8A:
Fig. 11 is a cross-sectional view of three of the stacked cell plates shown in Fig. 10 in the vicinity of a gas port:

Fig. 12A and Fig. 12B respectively show detail of the first and second cell plates in the vicinity of a gas port:
Fig. 13 is a cross-sectional view of a cell unit of four stacked cell plates in the vicinity of an interconnecting shaft:

![Fig. 13](image)

Fig. 14 shows a perspective view of a locking nut used in the arrangement of Fig. 13:

![Fig. 14](image)

Fig. 15 shows an idealised electrolysis system:
Figs. 16-30 are graphs supporting the system of Fig. 15 and the availability of over-unity energy.
THE EFFECT OF TEMPERATURE ON CELL VOLTAGE

FIG. 17

FLOW RATE OF HYDROGEN AND OXYGEN AT 2:1

FIG. 18
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TEST RUN</th>
<th>AMPS</th>
<th>VOLTS</th>
<th>TEMPC° (INITIAL)</th>
<th>TEMPC° (FINAL)</th>
<th>TIME (SECS.)</th>
<th>WATTS (A*V)</th>
<th>PRESSURE (psig)</th>
<th>FLOW RATE (lph)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>38.5</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1817.2</td>
<td>1 ATOMSPH.</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>54.3</td>
<td>34.4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>222.13</td>
<td>1867.9</td>
<td>1 ATOMSPH.</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>65.2</td>
<td>34.4</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>26.37</td>
<td>2242.9</td>
<td>100 - 170</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>65.6</td>
<td>29.1</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>20.47</td>
<td>1909.0</td>
<td>300 - 410</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>62.9</td>
<td>29.4</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>22.93</td>
<td>1849.3</td>
<td>500 - 610</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>64.7</td>
<td>29.4</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>24.13</td>
<td>1902.2</td>
<td>700 - 850</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>63.9</td>
<td>29.2</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>24.13</td>
<td>1865.9</td>
<td>900 - 1050</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>64.0</td>
<td>29.3</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>22.87</td>
<td>1875.2</td>
<td>1100 - 1250</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>64.4</td>
<td>29.8</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>21.83</td>
<td>1886.9</td>
<td>1300 - 1450</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>63.7</td>
<td>29.1</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>23.34</td>
<td>1853.7</td>
<td>1500 - 1660</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>62.7</td>
<td>29.7</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>12.76</td>
<td>1862.2</td>
<td>1700 - 1890</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>61.9</td>
<td>29.9</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>11.17</td>
<td>1850.8</td>
<td>1900 - 1990</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>61.7</td>
<td>30.0</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>11.19</td>
<td>1851.0</td>
<td>2030 - 2170</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>60.7</td>
<td>30.6</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>15.71</td>
<td>1857.4</td>
<td>2230 - 2400</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>66.6</td>
<td>29.9</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1931.3</td>
<td>2280 - 2420</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>61.7</td>
<td>30.0</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1851.0</td>
<td>2270 - 2390</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>62.5</td>
<td>30.0</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1875.0</td>
<td>2350 - 2380</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>62.0</td>
<td>30.1</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1866.2</td>
<td>2350 - 2390</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>62.9</td>
<td>29.9</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1880.7</td>
<td>2400 - 2420</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>63.0</td>
<td>29.4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1852.2</td>
<td>2430 - 2450</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Fig. 19**

**Volts per Pressure Increase**

- **Fig. 20**
### Flow Rate Analysis Per Pressure Increase

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RUN</th>
<th>VOLTS</th>
<th>AMPS</th>
<th>TEMP°C</th>
<th>TIME-SECS</th>
<th>VOLUME (LITRES)</th>
<th>LPH</th>
<th>PRESSURE PSI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>27.5</td>
<td>49.7</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>114.0</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>14.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>34.4</td>
<td>54.3</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>222.13</td>
<td>5.49</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>14.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>20.5</td>
<td>51.9</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>150.0</td>
<td>4.7</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>33.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>109</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>34.4</td>
<td>65.2</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>26.37</td>
<td>0.69</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>29.1</td>
<td>65.6</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>20.47</td>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>410</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>29.4</td>
<td>62.9</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>22.93</td>
<td>0.62</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>610</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>29.4</td>
<td>64.7</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>24.19</td>
<td>0.66</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>850</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>29.2</td>
<td>63.9</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>24.13</td>
<td>0.66</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>1050</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>29.3</td>
<td>64.0</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>22.37</td>
<td>0.61</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>1250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>29.3</td>
<td>64.4</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>21.83</td>
<td>0.59</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>1450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>29.1</td>
<td>63.7</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>23.34</td>
<td>0.64</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>1660</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>29.7</td>
<td>62.7</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>12.76</td>
<td>0.35</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1890</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FIG. 25**

### Flow Rate Per Pressure Increase

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRESSURE psi</th>
<th>LITRES PER HOUR (LPH)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14.7</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.7</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>170</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>900</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1100</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1200</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1300</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1400</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1500</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1600</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1700</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1800</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1900</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FIG. 26**
OVER-UNITY IN WATT-HOURS
BASED ON 500/PH OF HYD & OXY. @ 1000°C

![Graph 1](image1)

FIG. 27

OVER-UNITY IN WATT-HOURS
BASED ON 500/PH OF HYD & OXY. @ 1000°C

![Graph 2](image2)

FIG. 28
Figs. 31a to 31e show a hydrogen/oxygen gas-driven internal combustion engine:
**DETAILED DESCRIPTION AND BEST MODE OF PERFORMANCE**

Fig.1A and Fig.2A show embodiments of a first and second type of cell plate 90, 98 as an end view. Fig.1B and Fig.2B are partial cross-sectional views along the respective mid-lines as shown. Common reference numerals have been used where appropriate. The plates 90, 98 can have the function of either an anode (+) or a cathode (-), as will become apparent. Each comprises an electrode disc 92 which is perforated with hexagonally shaped holes 96. The disc 92 is made from steel or resin-bonded carbon or conductive polymer material. The disc 92 is housed in a circular rim or sleeve 94. The function of the perforations 96 is to maximise the surface area of the electrode disc 92 and minimise the weight over solid constructions by 45%.

By way of example, for a disc of diameter 280 mm, the thickness of the disc must be 1 mm in order to allow the current density (which ranges from 90 A / 2,650 cm² - 100 A / 2,940 cm² of the anode or cathode) to be optimal. If the diameter of the plate is increased, which consequently increases the surface area, it is necessary to increase the thickness of the plate in order to maintain uniformity of conductance for the desired current density.

The hexagonal perforations in a 1 mm disc have a distance of 2 mm between the flats, twice the thickness of the plate in order to maintain the same total surface area prior to perforation, and be 1 mm away from the next adjacent perforation to allow the current density to be optimal. A (flat-to-flat) distance of 1 mm between the hexagonal perforations is required, because a smaller distance will result in thermal losses and a larger distance will add to the overall weight of the plate.

The sleeve 94 is constructed of PVC material and incorporates a number of equally spaced shaft holes 100,102. The holes are for the passage of interconnecting shafts provided in a stacked arrangement of the plates 90, 98 forming the common conductor for the respective anode and cathode plates. The further two upper holes 104,106 each support a conduit respectively for the out-flow of oxygen and hydrogen gases. The further holes 108,110 at the bottom of the sleeve 94 are provided for the inlet of water and electrolyte to the respective cell plates 90, 98.

Fig.3 shows an enlarged view of a portion of the cell plate 90 shown in Fig.1A. The port hole 104 is connected to the hexagonal perforations 96 within the sleeve 94 by an internal channel 112. A similar arrangement is in place for the other port hole 106, and for the water/electrolyte supply holes 108, 110.
If it is the case that the hydrogen and oxygen gases liberated are to be kept separate (i.e. not to be formed as an admixture), then it is necessary to separate those gases as they are produced. In the prior art this is achieved by use of diaphragms which block the passage of gases and effectively isolate the water/electrolyte on each side of the diaphragm. Ionic transfer thus is facilitated by the conductive nature of the diaphragm material (i.e. a water-diaphragm-water path). This results in an increase in the ionic resistance and hence a reduction in efficiency.

**Fig.4** shows an exploded stacked arrangement of four cell plates, being an alternative stacking of two (anode) cell plates **90** and two (cathode) cell plates **98**. The two ends of the stacked arrangement of cell plates delineates a single cell unit **125**.

Interposed between each adjacent cell plate **90, 98** is a PTFE separation **116**. Although not shown in **Fig.4**, the cell unit includes separate hydrogen and oxygen gas conduits that respectively pass through the stacked arrangement of cell plates via the port holes **106, 104** respectively. In a similar way, conduits are provided for the supply of water/electrolyte, respectively passing through the holes **108, 110** at the bottom of the respective plates **90, 98**. Only two pairs of anode/cathode cell plates are shown. The number of such plates can be greatly increased per cell unit **125**.

Also not shown are the interconnecting conductive shafts that electrically interconnect alternative common cell plates. The reason for having a large diameter hole in one cell plate adjacent to a smaller diameter hole in the next cell plate, is so that an interconnecting shaft will pass through the larger diameter hole, and not make an electrical connection (i.e. insulated with PVC tubing) rather only forming an electrical connection between alternate (common) cell plates.

**Fig.4** is an exploded view of one cell unit **125** arrangement. When fully constructed, all the elements are stacked in intimate contact. Mechanical fastening is achieved by use of one of two adhesives such as (a) "PUR-FECT LOK" (TM) 34-9002, which is a Urethane Reactive Hot Melt adhesive with a main ingredient of Methylene Bisphenol/Diisocynate (MDI), and (b) "MY-T-BOND" (TM) which is a PVC solvent based adhesive. Both adhesives are Sodium Hydroxide resistant, which is necessary because the electrolyte contains 20% Sodium Hydroxide. In that case the water/electrolyte only resides within the area contained within the cell plate sleeve **94**. Thus the only path for the inlet of water/electrolyte is by bottom channels **118, 122** and the only outlet for the gases is by the top channels **112, 120**. In a system constructed and tested by the inventor, the thickness of the cell plates **90, 98** is 1 mm (2 mm on the rim because of the PVC sleeve **94**), with a diameter of 336 mm. The cell unit **125** is segmented from the next cell by an insulating PVC segmentation disc **114**. A segmentation disc **114** is also placed at the beginning and end of the entire cell bank. If there is to be no separation of the liberated gases, then the PTFE membranes **116** are omitted and sleeve **94** is not required.

The PTFE membrane **116** is fibrous and has 0.2 to 1.0 micron interstices. A suitable type is type Catalogue Code J, supplied by Tokyo Roshi International Inc (Advantec). The water/electrolyte fills the interstices and ionic current flows only via the water - there is no contribution of ionic flow through the PTFE material itself. This leads to a reduction in the resistance to ionic flow. The PTFE material also has a 'bubble point' that is a function of pressure, hence by controlling the relative pressures at either side of the PTFE separation sheets, the gases can be "forced" through the interstices to form an admixture, or otherwise kept separate. Other advantages of this arrangement include a lesser cost of construction, improved operational efficiency and greater resistance to faults.

**Fig.5A** is a stylised, and exploded, schematic view of a linear array of three series-connected cell units **125**. For clarity, only six interconnecting shafts **126-131** are shown. The shafts **126-131** pass through the respective shaft holes **102,100** in the various cell plates **90,98** in the stacked arrangement. The polarity attached to each of the exposed end shafts, to which the DC supply is connected also is indicated. The shafts **126-131** do not run the full length of the three cell banks **125**. The representation is similar to the arrangement shown in **Fig.7A** and **Fig.8**. One third the full DC source voltage appears across each anode/cathode cell plate pair **90,98**.

Further, the gas conduits **132,133**, respectively for hydrogen and oxygen, that pass through the port holes **104,106** in the cell plates **90,98** also are shown. In a similar way, water/electrolyte conduits **134,135**, passing through the water port holes **108,110** in the cell plates also are shown.

**Fig.5B** particularly shows how the relative potential difference in the middle cell bank **125** changes. That is, the plate electrode **90a** now functions as a cathode (i.e. relatively more negative) to generate hydrogen, and the plate electrode **98a** now functions as an anode (i.e. relatively more positive) to generate oxygen. This is the case for every alternate cell unit. The arrowheads shown in **Fig.5B** indicate the electron and ionic current circuit. **Fig.5C** is an electrical equivalent circuit representation of **Fig.5B**, where the resistive elements represent the ionic resistance between adjacent anode/cathode plates. Thus it can be seen that the cell units are connected in series.

---

A - 889
Because of the change of function of the cell plates 90a and 98a, the complementary gases are liberated at each, hence the respective channels 112 are connected to the opposite gas conduit 132,133. Practically, this can be achieved by the simple reversal of the cell plates 90,98.

Fig.6 shows the three cell units 125 of Fig.5A connected to a gas collection arrangement. The cell units 125 are located within a tank 140 which is filled with water/electrolyte to the indicated level h. The water is consumed as the electrolysis process proceeds, and replenishing supply is provided via the inlet 152. The water/electrolyte level h can be viewed via the sight glass 154. In normal operation, the different streams of hydrogen and oxygen are produced and passed from the cell units 125 to respective rising columns 142,144. That is, the pressure of electrolyte on opposed sides of the PTFE membranes 116 is equalised, thus the gases cannot admix.

The columns 142,144 also are filled with the water/electrolyte, and as it is consumed at the electrode plates, replenishing supply of electrolyte is provided by way of circulation through the water/electrolyte conduits 134,135. The circulation is caused by entrainment by the liberated gases, and by the circulatory inducing nature of the conduits and columns.

The upper extent of the tank 140 forms two scrubbing towers 156,158, respectively for the collection of oxygen and hydrogen gases. The gases pass up a respective column 142,144, and out from the columns via openings therein at a point within the interleaved baffles 146. The point where the gases exit the columns 142,144 is beneath the water level h, which serves to settle any turbulent flow and entrained electrolyte. The baffles 146 located above the level h scrub the gas of any entrained electrolyte, and the scrubbed gas then exits by respective gas outlet columns 148,150 and so to a gas receiver. The level h within the tank 140 can be regulated by any convenient means, including a float switch, again with the replenishing water being supplied by the inlet pipe 152.

The liberated gases will always separate from the water/electrolyte solution by virtue of the difference in densities. Because of the relative height of the respective set of baffles, and due to the density differential between the gases and the water/electrolyte, it is not possible for the liberated hydrogen and oxygen gases to mix. The presence of the full volume of water within the tank 140 maintains the cell plates in an immersed state, and further serves to absorb the shock of any internal detonations should they occur.

In the event that a gas admixture is required, then firstly the two flow valves 136,137 respectively located in the oxygen gas outlet conduit 132 and water/electrolyte inlet port 134 are closed. This blocks the outlet path for the oxygen gas and forces the inlet water/electrolyte to pass to the inlet conduit 134 via a one-way check valve 139 and pump 138. The water/electrolyte within the tank 140 is under pressure by virtue of its depth (volume), and the pump 138 operates to increase the pressure of water/electrolyte occurring about the anode cell plates 90,98a to be at an increased pressure with respect to the water/electrolyte on the other side of the membrane 116.

This pressure differential is sufficient to cause the oxygen gas to migrate through the membrane, thus admixed oxygen and hydrogen are liberated via the gas output conduit 133 and column 144. Since there is no return path for the water/electrolyte supplied by the pump 138, the pressure about the cell plates 90,98a will increase further, and to a point where the difference is sufficient such that the water/electrolyte also can pass through the membrane 116. Typically, pressure differential in the range of 1.5 - 10 psi is required to allow passage of gas, and a pressure differential in the range of 10 - 40 psi for water/electrolyte.

While only three cell units 125 are shown, clearly any number, connected in series, can be implemented.

Embodiments of the present invention now will be described. Where applicable, like reference numerals have been used.

Fig.7A and Fig.7B show a first type of cell plate 190 respectively as an end view and as an enlarged cross-sectional view along line VIIb-VIIb. The cell plate 190 differs from the previous cell plate 90 shown in Fig.1A and Fig.1B in a number of important aspects. The region of the electrode disc 192 received within the sleeve 194 now is perforated. The function of these perforations is to further reduce the weight of the cell plate 190. The shaft holes 200,202 again pass through the electrode disc 192, but so too do the upper holes 204,206 through which the conduits for the out-flow of liberated hydrogen and oxygen gases pass. The bottom holes 208,210, provided for the inlet of water and electrolyte, now also are located in the region of the sleeve 194 coincident with the perforated edge margin of the electrode disc 192. The channels 212,218 respectively communicating with the port hole 204 and the supply hole 210 also are shown.

Fig.8A and Fig.8B show a second type of cell plate 198 as a companion to the first cell plate 190, and as the same respective views. The second cell plate 198 is somewhat similar to the cell plate 98 previously shown in Fig.2A and Fig.2B. The differences between them are the same as the respective differences between the cell
Plate shown in Fig.1A and Fig.1B and the one shown in Fig.7A and Fig.7B. The arrangement of the respective channels 220,222 with respect to the port 206 and the water supply hole 208 also are shown.

In the fabrication of the cell plates 190,198, the sleeve 94 is injection moulded from PVC plastics material formed about the edge margin of the electrode disc 192.

The injection moulding process results in the advantageous forming of interconnecting sprues forming within the perforations 196 in the region of the disc 192 held within the sleeve 194, thus firmly anchoring the sleeve 194 to the disc 192.

Fig.9 is a view similar to Fig.3, but for the modified porting arrangement and perforations (shown in phantom where covered by the sleeve) of the region of the disc 192 within and immediately outside of the sleeve 194.

Fig.10 shows a cell unit 225 in the form of an exploded alternating stacking of first and second cell plates 190,198, much in the same manner as Fig.4. Only two pairs of anode/cathode cell plates are shown, however the number of such plates can be greatly increased per cell unit 225. The membrane 216 preferably is type QR-HE silica fibre with the alternative being PTFE. Both are available from Tokyo Roshi International Inc. (Advantec) of Japan. Type QR-HE is a hydrophobic material having 0.2 to 1.0 micron interstices, and is capable of operation at temperatures up to 1,000°C. The cell unit 225 can be combined with other such cell units 225 to form an interconnected cell bank in the same manner as shown in Fig.5A, Fig.5B and Fig.5C.

Furthermore, the cell units can be put to use in a gas collection arrangement such as that shown in Fig.6. Operation of the gas separation system utilising the new cell plates 190,198 is in the same manner as previously described.

Fig.11 is an enlarged cross-sectional view of three cell plates in the vicinity of the oxygen port 204. The cell plates comprise two of the first type of plate 190 shown in Fig.7A constituting a positive plate, and a single one of the second type of plate 198 shown in Fig.8A representing a negative plate. The location of the respective channels 212 for each of the positive cell plates 190 is shown as a dashed representation. The respective sleeves 194 of the three cell plates are formed from moulded PVC plastics as previously described, and in the region that forms the perimeter of the port 204 have a configuration particular to whether a cell plate is positive or negative. In the present case, the positive cell plates 190 have a flanged foot 230 that, in the assembled construction, form the contiguous boundary of the gas port 204. Each foot 230 has two circumferential ribs 232 which engage corresponding circumferential grooves 234 in the sleeve 194 of the negative plate 198.

The result of this arrangement is that the exposed metal area of the negative cell plates 198 always are insulated from the flow of oxygen gas liberated from the positive cell plates 190, thus avoiding the possibility of spontaneous explosion by the mixing of the separated hydrogen and oxygen gases. This arrangement also overcomes the unwanted production of either oxygen gas or hydrogen gas in the gas port.

For the case of the gas port 206 carrying the hydrogen gas, the relative arrangement of the cell plates is reversed such that a flanged footing now is formed on the sleeve 194 of the other type of cell plate 198. This represents the converse arrangement to that shown in Fig.11.

Fig.12A and Fig.12B show perspective side views of adjacent cell plates, with Fig.12A representing a positive cell plate 190 and Fig.12B representing a negative cell plate 198. The gas port 206 thus formed is to carry hydrogen gas. The mating relationship between the flanged foot 230 and the end margin of the sleeve 194 of the positive cell plate 192 can be seen, particularly the interaction between the ribs 232 and the grooves 234.

Fig.13 is a cross-sectional view of four cell plates formed into a stacked arrangement delimited by two segmentation plates 240, together forming a cell unit 242. Thus there are two positive cell plates 190 and two negative cell plates 198 in alternating arrangement. The cross-section is taken in the vicinity of a shaft hole 202 through which a negative conductive shaft 244 passes. The shaft 244 therefore is in intimate contact with the electrode discs 192 of the negative cell plates 198. The electrodes discs 192 of the positive cell plates 190 do not extend to contact the shaft 244. The sleeve 194 of the alternating negative cell plates 198 again have a form of flanged foot 246, although in this case the complementarily shaped ribs and grooves are formed only on the sleeve of the negative cell plates 198, and not on the sleeve 194 of the positive cell plates 190. The segmentation plates 240 serve to delimit the stacked plates forming a single cell unit 242, with ones of the cell units 242 being stacked in a linear array to form a cell bank such as has been shown in Fig.5A.
A threaded shaft nut 250 acts as a spacer between adjacent electrodes connecting with the shaft 244. Fig.14 is a perspective view of the shaft nut 250 showing the thread 252 and three recesses 254 for fastening nuts, screws or the like.

In all of Figs.11 to 13, the separation membrane material 216 is not shown, but is located in the spaces 248 between adjacent cell plates 190,198, extending to the margins of the electrode disks 192 in the vicinity of the gas ports 204,206 or the shaft holes 200,202.

An electrolysis hydrogen and oxygen gas system incorporating a gas separation system, such as has been described above, can therefore be operated to establish respective high pressure stores of gas. That is, the separated hydrogen and oxygen gases liberated by the electrolysis process are stored in separate gas receivers or pressure vessels. The pressure in each will increase with the continuing inflow of gas.

Fig.15 shows an idealised electrolysis system, comprising an electrolysis cell 150 that receives a supply of water to be consumed. The electrolysis process is driven by a DC potential (Es) 152. The potential difference applied to the cell 150 therefore must be sufficient to electrolyse the water into hydrogen and oxygen gas dependent upon, inter alia, the water pressure PC and the back pressure of gas PB acting on the surface of the water, together with the water temperature Tc. The separate liberated hydrogen and oxygen gases, by a priming function, are pressurised to a high value by storage in respective pressure vessels 158,160, being carried by gas lines 154,156.

The pressurised store of gases then are passed to an energy conversion device that converts the flow of gas under pressure to mechanical energy (e.g. a pressure drop device 162). This mechanical energy recovered WM is available to be utilised to provide useful work. The mechanical energy WM also can be converted into electrical form, again to be available for use.

The resultant exhausted gases are passed via lines 164,166 to a combustion chamber 168. Here, the gases are combusted to generate heat QR, with the waste product being water vapour. The recovered heat QR can be recycled to the electrolysis cell to assist in maintaining the advantageous operating temperature of the cell.

The previously described combustion chamber 168 can alternatively be a fuel cell. The type of fuel cell can vary from phosphoric acid fuel cells through to molten carbonate fuel cells and solid oxide cells. A fuel cell generates both heat (QR) and electrical energy (WE), and thus can supply both heat to the cell 150 or to supplement or replace the DC supply (Es) 152.

Typically, these fuel cells can be of the type LaserCell™ as developed by Dr Roger Billings, the PEM Cell as available from Ballard Power Systems Inc. Canada or the Ceramic Fuel Cell (solid oxide) as developed by Ceramic Fuel Cells Ltd., Melbourne, Australia.

It is, of course, necessary to replenish the pressurised store of gases, thus requiring the continuing consumption of electrical energy. The recovered electrical energy WE is in excess of the energy required to drive electrolysis at the elevated temperature and is used to replace the external electrical energy source 152, thereby completing the energy loop after the system is initially primed and started.

The present inventor has determined that there are some combinations of pressure and temperature where the efficiency of the electrolysis process becomes advantageous in terms of the total energy recovered, either as mechanical energy by virtue of a flow of gas at high pressure or as thermal energy by virtue of combustion (or by means of a fuel cell), with respect to the electrical energy consumed, to the extent of the recovered energy exceeding the energy required to sustain electrolysis at the operational pressure and temperature. This has been substantiated by experimentation. This notion has been termed "over-unity".

"Over-unity" systems can be categorised as broadly falling into three types of physical phenomena:

(i) An electrical device which produces 100 Watts of electrical energy as output after 10 Watts of electrical energy is input thereby providing 90 Watts of overunity (electrical) energy.

(ii) An electro-chemical device such as an electrolysis device where 10 Watts of electrical energy is input and 8 Watts is output being the thermal value of the hydrogen and oxygen gas output. During this process, 2 Watts of electrical energy converted to thermal energy is lost due to specific inefficiencies of the electrolysis system. Pressure - as the over-unity energy - is irrefutably produced during the process of hydrogen and oxygen gas generation during electrolysis. Pressure is a product of the containment of the two separated gases. The Law of Conservation of Energy (as referenced in "Chemistry Experimental Foundations", edited by Parry, R.W.; Steiner, L.E.; Tellefsen, R.L.; Dietz, P.M. Chap. 9, pp. 199-200, Prentice-Hall, New Jersey” and “An Experimental Science”, edited by Pimentel, G.C., Chap. 7, pp. 115-117, W.H. & Freeman Co. San Francisco)
is in equilibrium where the 10 watts of input equals the 8 watts thermal energy output plus the 2 watts of losses. However, this Law ends at this point. The present invention utilises the apparent additional energy being the pressure which is a by-product of the electrolysis process to achieve over-unity.

(iii) An electro-chemical device which produces an excess of thermal energy after an input of electrical energy in such devices utilised in "cold fusion" e.g. 10 watts of electrical energy as input and 50 watts of thermal energy as output.

The present invention represents the discovery of means by which the previously mentioned second phenomenon can be embodied to result in "over-unity" and the realisation of 'free' energy. As previously noted, this is the process of liberating latent molecular energy. The following sequence of events describes the basis of the availability of over-unity energy.

In a simple two plate (anode/cathode) electrolysis cell, an applied voltage differential of 1.57 DC Volts draws 0.034 Amps per cm$^2$ and results in the liberation of hydrogen and oxygen gas from the relevant electrode plate. The electrolyte is kept at a constant temperature of 40°C, and is open to atmospheric pressure.

The inefficiency of an electrolytic cell is due to its ionic resistance (approximately 20%), and produces a by-product of thermal energy. The resistance reduces, as does the minimum DC voltage required to drive electrolysis, as the temperature increases. The overall energy required to dissociate the bonding electrons from the water molecule also decreases as the temperature increases. In effect, thermal energy acts as a catalyst to reduce the energy requirements in the production of hydrogen and oxygen gases from the water molecule. Improvements in efficiency are obtainable by way of a combination of thermal energy itself and the NaOH electrolyte both acting to reduce the resistance of the ionic flow of current.

Thermal 'cracking' of the water molecule is known to occur at 1,500°C, whereby the bonding electrons are dissociated and subsequently 'separate' the water molecule into its constituent elements in gaseous form. This thermal cracking then allows the thermal energy to become a consumable. Insulation can be introduced to conserve thermal energy, however there will always be some thermal energy losses.

Accordingly, thermal energy is both a catalyst and a consumable (in the sense that the thermal energy excites bonding electrons to a higher energetic state) in the electrolysis process. A net result from the foregoing process is that hydrogen is being produced from thermal energy because thermal energy reduces the overall energy requirements of the electrolysis system.

Referring to the graph titled "Flow Rate At A Given Temperature" shown in Fig.16, it has been calculated that at a temperature of 2,000°C, 693 litres of hydrogen/oxygen admixed gas (2:1) will be produced. The hydrogen content of this volume is 462 litres. At an energy content of 11 BTUs per litre of hydrogen, this then gives an energy amount of 5,082 BTUs (11 x 462). Using the BTU:kilowatt conversion factor of 3413:1, 5,082 BTUs of the hydrogen gas equate to 1.49 kW. Compare this with 1 kW to produce the 693 litres of hydrogen/oxygen (including 463 litres of hydrogen). The usage of this apparatus therefore identifies that thermal energy, through the process of electrolysis, is being converted into hydrogen. These inefficiencies, i.e. increased temperature and NaOH electrolyte, reduce with temperature to a point at approximately 1000°C where the ionic resistance reduces to zero, and the volumetric amount of gases produced per kWh increases.

The lowering of DC voltage necessary to drive electrolysis by way of higher temperatures is demonstrated in the graph in Fig.17 titled "The Effect of temperature on Cell Voltage".

The data in Fig.16 and Fig.17 have two sources. Cell voltages obtained from 0°C up to and including 100°C were those obtained by an electrolysis system as described above. Cell voltages obtained from 150°C up to 2,000°C are theoretical calculations presented by an acknowledged authority in this field, Prof. J. O'M. Bockris. Specifically, these findings were presented in "Hydrogen Energy, Part A, Hydrogen Economy", Miami Energy Conference, Miami Beach, Florida, 1974, edited by T. Nejat Veziroglu, Plenum Press, pp. 371-379. These calculations appear on page 374.

By inspection of Fig.17 and Fig.18 (titled "Flow Rate of Hydrogen and Oxygen at 2:1"), it can be seen that as temperature increases in the cell, the voltage necessary to dissociate the water molecule is reduced, as is the overall energy requirement. This then results in a higher gas flow per kWh.

As constrained by the limitation of the materials within the system, the operationally acceptable temperature of the system is 1000°C. This temperature level should not, however, be considered as a restriction. This temperature is based on the limitations of the currently commercially available materials. Specifically, this system can utilise material such as compressed Silica Fibre for the sleeve around the electrolysis plate and hydrophobic Silica Fibre.
(part no. QR-100HE supplied by Tokyo Roshi International Inc., also known as "Advantec") for the diaphragm (as previously discussed) which separates the electrolysis disc plates. In the process of assembling the cells, the diaphragm material and sleeved electrolysis plates 190,198 are adhered to one another by using high-temperature-resistant silica adhesive (e.g. the "Aremco" product "Ceramabond 618" which has an operational tolerance specification of 1,000°C).

For the electrolysis cell described above, with the electrolyte at 1,000°C and utilising electrical energy at the rate of 1 kWh, 167 litres of oxygen and 334 litres of hydrogen per hour will be produced.

The silica fibre diaphragm 116 previously discussed separates the oxygen and hydrogen gas streams by the mechanism of density separation, and produce a separate store of oxygen and hydrogen at pressure. Pressure from the produced gases can range from 0 to 150,000 Atmospheres. At higher pressures, density separation may not occur. In this instance, the gas molecules can be magnetically separated from the electrolyte if required.

In reference to the experiments conducted by Messrs Hamann and Linton (S.D. Hamann and M. Linton, Trans. Faraday Soc. 62,2234-2241, specifically, page 2,240), this research has proven that higher pressures can produce the same effect as higher temperatures in that the conductivity increases as temperature and/or pressure increases. At very high pressures, the water molecule dissociates at low temperatures. The reason for this is that the bonding electron is more readily removed when under high pressure. The same phenomenon occurs when the bonding electrons are at a high temperature (e.g. 1,500°C) but at low pressures.

As shown in Fig.15, hydrogen and oxygen gases are separated into independent gas streams flowing into separate pressure vessels 158,160 capable of withstanding pressures up to 150,000 Atmospheres. Separation of the two gases thereby eliminates the possibility of detonation. It should also be noted that high pressures can facilitate the use of high temperatures within the electrolyte because the higher pressure elevates the boiling point of water.

Experimentation shows that 1 litre of water can yield 1,850 litres of hydrogen/oxygen (in a ratio of 2:1) gas mix after decomposition, this significant differential(1:1,850) is the source of the pressure. Stripping the bonding electrons from the water molecule, which subsequently converts liquid into a gaseous state, releases energy which can be utilised as pressure when this occurs in a confined space.


Attention must be drawn to the above published material; specifically on page 434, third paragraph, where reference is made to "Fig.7 shows the effect of pressure on cell voltage...". Fig. 7 on page 436 ("Effect of Pressure on SFWES Single Cell") indicates that if pressure is increased, then so too does the minimum DC voltage.

These quotes were provided for familiarisation purposes only and not as demonstrable and empirical fact. Experimentation by the inventor factually indicates that increased pressure (up to 2,450 psi) in fact lowers the minimum DC voltage.

This now demonstrable fact, whereby increased pressure actually lowers minimum DC voltage, is further exemplified by the findings of Messrs. Nayar, Ragunathan and Mitra in 1979 which can be referenced in their paper: "Development and operation of a high current density high pressure advanced electrolysis cell".

Nayar, M.G.; Ragunathan, P. and Mitra, S.K. International Journal of Hydrogen Energy (Pergamon Press Ltd.), 1980, Vol. 5, pp. 65-74. Their Table 2 on page 72 expressly highlights this as follows: "At a Current density (ASM) of 7,000 and at a temperature of 80°C, the table shows identical Cell voltages at both pressures of 7.6 kg/cm² and 11.0 kg/cm². But at Current densities of 5,000, 6,000, 8,000, 9,000 and 10,000 (at a temperature of 80°C), the Cell voltages were lower at a pressure of 11.0 kg/cm² than at a pressure of 7.6 kg/cm². " The present invention thus significantly improves on the apparatus employed by Mr. M.G. Nayar, et al, at least in the areas of cell plate materials, current density and cell configuration.

In the preferred form the electrode discs 192 are perforated mild steel, conductive polymer or perforated resin bonded carbon cell plates. The diameter of the perforated holes 196 is chosen to be twice the thickness of the plate in order to maintain the same total surface area prior to perforation. Nickel was utilised in the noted prior art system. That material has a higher electrical resistance than mild steel or carbon, providing the present invention with a lower voltage capability per cell.
The previously mentioned prior art system quotes a minimum current density (after conversion from ASM to Amps per square cm.) at 0.5 Amps per cm². The present invention operates at the ideal current density, established by experimentation, to minimise cell voltage which is 0.034 Amps per cm².

When compared with the aforementioned system, an embodiment of the present invention operates more efficiently due to a current density improvement by a factor of 14.7, the utilisation of better conducting cell plate material which additionally lowers cell voltage, a lower cell voltage of 1.49 at 80°C as opposed to 1.8 volts at 80°C, and a compact and efficient cell configuration.

In order to further investigate the findings of Messrs. M.G. Nayer, et al, the inventor conducted experiments utilising much higher pressures. For Nayer, et al, the pressures were 7.6 kg/cm² to 11.0 kg/cm², whereas inventor's pressures were 0 psi to 2,450 psi in an hydrogen/oxygen admixture electrolysis system.

This electrolysis system was run from the secondary coil of a transformer set approximately at maximum 50 Amps and with an open circuit voltage of 60 Volts. In addition, this electrolysis system is designed with reduced surface area in order that it can be housed in a hydraulic container for testing purposes. The reduced surface area subsequently caused the gas production efficiency to drop when compared with previous (i.e. more efficient) prototypes. The gas flow rate was observed to be approximately 90 litres per hour at 70°C in this system as opposed to 310 litres per hour at 70°C obtained from previous prototypes. All of the following data and graphs have been taken from the table shown in Fig.19.

Referring to Fig.20 (titled "Volts Per Pressure Increase"), it can be seen that at a pressure of 14.7 psi (i.e. 1 Atmosphere), the voltage measured as 38.5V and at a pressure of 2,450 psi, the voltage measured as 29.4V. This confirms the findings of Nayar et al that increased pressure lowers the system's voltage. Furthermore, these experiments contradict the conclusion drawn by F.C. Jensen and F.H. Schubert ("Hydrogen Energy, Part A, Hydrogen Economy Miami Energy Conference, Miami Beach, Florida, 1974, edited by T. Nejat Veziroglou, Plenum Press", pp 425 to 439, specifically Fig. 7 on page 434) being that "... as the pressure of the water being electrolysed increases, then so too does the minimum DC Voltage". As the inventor's experiments are current and demonstrable, the inventor now presents his findings as the current state of the art and not the previously accepted findings of Schubert and Jensen.

Referring to Fig.21 (titled "Amps Per Pressure Increase"), it can be seen that at a pressure of 14.7 psi (i.e. 1 Atmosphere being Test Run No. 1), the current was measured as 47.2A and at a pressure of 2,450 psi (Test Run No. 20), the current was measured as 63A.

Referring to Fig.22 (titled "Kilowatts Per Pressure Increase"), examination of the power from Test Run No. 1 (1.82 kW) through to Test Run No. 20 (1.85 kW) indicates that there was no major increase in energy input required at higher pressures in order to maintain adequate gas flow.

Referring to Fig.23 (titled "Resistance (Ohms) Per Pressure Increase"), the resistance was calculated from Test Run No. 1 (0.82 ohms) to Test Run No. 20 (0.47 ohms). These data indicate that the losses due to resistance in the electrolysis system at high pressures are negligible.

Currently accepted convention has it that dissolved hydrogen, due to high pressures within the electrolyte, would cause an increase in resistance because hydrogen and oxygen are bad conductors of ionic flow. The net result of which would be that this would decrease the production of gases.

These tests indicate that the ions find their way around the H2 and O2 molecules within the solution and that at higher pressures, density separation will always cause the gases to separate from the water and facilitate the movement of the gases from the electrolysis plates. A very descriptive analogy of this phenomenon is where the ion is about the size of a football and the gas molecules are each about the size of a football field thereby allowing the ion a large manoeuvring area in which to skirt the molecule.

Referring to Fig.24 (titled "Pressure Differential (Increase)"), it can be seen that the hydrogen/oxygen admixture caused a significant pressure increase on each successive test run from Test Run No. 1 to Test Run No. 11. Test Runs thereafter indicated that the hydrogen/oxygen admixture within the electrolyte solution imploded at the point of conception (being on the surface of the plate).

Referring again to the table of Fig.19, it can be noted the time taken from the initial temperature to the final temperature in Test Run No. 12 was approximately half the time taken in Test Run No. 10. The halved elapsed time (from 40°C to 70°C) was due to the higher pressure causing the hydrogen/oxygen admixture to detonate which subsequently imploded within the system thereby releasing thermal energy.
Referring to the table shown in Fig.25 (titled "Flow Rate Analysis Per Pressure Increase"), these findings were brought about from flow rate tests up to 200 psi and data from Fig.24. These findings result in the data of Fig.25 concerning gas flow rate per pressure increase. Referring to Fig.25, it can be seen that at a pressure of 14.7 psi (1 Atmosphere) a gas production rate of 88 litres per kWh is being achieved. At 1,890 psi, the system produces 100 litres per kWh. These findings point to the conclusion that higher pressures do not affect the gas production rate of the system, the gas production rate remains constant between pressures of 14.7 psi (1 Atmosphere) and 1,890 psi.

Inferring from all of the foregoing data, increased pressure will not adversely affect cell performance (gas production rate) in separation systems where hydrogen and oxygen gases are produced separately, nor as a combined admixture. Therefore, in an enclosed electrolysis system embodying the invention, the pressure can be allowed to build up to a predetermined level and remain at this level through continuous (on-demand) replenishment. This pressure is the over-unity energy because it has been obtained during the normal course of electrolysis operation without additional energy input. This over-unity energy (i.e. the produced pressure) can be utilised to maintain the requisite electrical energy supply to the electrolysis system as well as provide useful work.

The following formulae and subsequent data do not take into account the apparent efficiencies gained by pressure increase in this electrolysis system such as the gained efficiency factors highlighted by the previously quoted Hamann and Linton research. Accordingly, the over-unity energy should therefore be considered as conservative claims and that such claimed over-unity energy would in fact occur at much lower pressures.

This over-unity energy can be formalised by way of utilising a pressure formula as follows: \( E = (P - P_0) V \) which is the energy \( E \) in Joules per second that can be extracted from a volume \( V \) which is cubic meters of gas per second at a pressure \( P \) measured in Pascals and where \( P_0 \) is the ambient pressure (i.e. 1 Atmosphere).

In order to formulate total available over-unity energy, we will first use the above formula but will not take into account efficiency losses. The formula is based on a flow rate of 500 litres per kWh at 1,000°C. When the gases are produced in the electrolysis system, they are allowed to self-compress up to 150,000 Atmospheres which will then produce a volume \( V \) of \( 5.07 \times 10^{-8} \text{ m}^3/\text{sec} \).

\[
\text{Work [Joules/sec]} = ((150-1) \times 10^8) \times 5.07 \times 10^{-8} \text{ m}^3/\text{sec} = 760.4 \text{ Watts}
\]

The graphs in Figs.27-29 (Over-Unity in watt-hours) indicate over-unity energy available excluding efficiency losses. However, in a normal work environment, inefficiencies are encountered as energy is converted from one form to another.

The results of these calculations will indicate the amount of surplus- over-unity energy after the electrolysis system has been supplied with its required 1 kWh to maintain its operation of producing the 500 lph of hydrogen and oxygen (separately in a ratio of 2:1).

The following calculations utilise the formula stated above, including the efficiency factor. The losses which we will incorporate will be 10% loss due to the energy conversion device (converting pressure to mechanical energy, which is represented by device 162 in Fig.15) and 5% loss due to the DC generator \( W_e \) providing a total of 650 watt-hours which results from the pressurised gases.

Returning to the 1 kWh, which is required for electrolysis operation, this 1 kWh is converted (during electrolysis) to hydrogen and oxygen. The 1 kWh of hydrogen and oxygen is fed into a fuel cell. After conversion to electrical energy in the fuel cell, we are left with 585 watt-hours due to a 65% efficiency factor in the fuel cell (35% thermal losses are fed back into electrolysis unit 150 via \( Q_r \) in Fig.15).

Fig.30 graphically indicates the total over-unity energy available combining a fuel cell with the pressure in this electrolysis system in a range from 0 kAtmospheres to 150 kAtmospheres. The data in Fig.30 have been compiled utilising the previously quoted formulae where the watt-hours findings are based on incorporating the 1 kWh required to drive the electrolysis system, taking into account all inefficiencies in the idealised electrolysis system (complete the loop) and then adding the output energy from the pressurised electrolysis system with the output of the fuel cell. This graph thereby indicates the energy break-even point (at approximately 66 kAtmospheres) where the idealised electrolysis system becomes self-sustaining.

In order to scale up this system for practical applications, such as power stations that will produce 50 MW of available electrical energy (as an example), the required input energy to the electrolysis system will be 170 MW (which is continually looped).
The stores of high pressure gases can be used with a hydrogen/oxygen internal combustion engine, as shown in Figs. 31A to 31E. The stores of high pressure gases can be used with either forms of combustion engines having an expansion stroke, including turbines, rotary, Wankel and orbital engines. One cylinder of an internal combustion engine is represented, however it is usually, but not necessarily always the case, that there will be other cylinders in the engine offset from each other in the timing of their stroke. The cylinder 320 houses a piston head 322 and crank 324, with the lower end of the crank 324 being connected with a shaft 326. The piston head 322 has conventional rings 328 sealing the periphery of the piston head 322 to the bore of the cylinder 320.

A chamber 330, located above the top of the piston head 322, receives a supply of regulated separated hydrogen gas and oxygen gas via respective inlet ports 332,334. There is also an exhaust port 336 venting gas from the chamber 330.

The engine's operational cycle commences as shown in Fig.31A, with the injection of pressurised hydrogen gas, typically at a pressure of 5,000 psi to 30,000 psi, sourced from a reservoir of that gas (not shown). The oxygen gas port 334 is closed at this stage, as is the exhaust port 336. Therefore, as shown in Fig.31B, the pressure of gas forces the piston head 322 downwards, thus driving the shaft 326. The stroke is shown as distance "A".

At this point, the oxygen inlet 334 is opened to a flow of pressurised oxygen, again typically at a pressure of 5,000 psi to 30,000 psi, the volumetric flow rate being one half of the hydrogen already injected, so that the hydrogen and oxygen gas within the chamber 330 are the proportion 2:1.

Conventional expectations when injecting a gas into a confined space (e.g. such as a closed cylinder) are that gases will have a cooling effect on itself and subsequently its immediate environment (e.g. cooling systems/refrigeration). This is not the case with hydrogen. The inverse applies where hydrogen, as it is being injected, heats itself up and subsequently heats up its immediate surroundings. This effect, being the inverse of other gases, adds to the efficiency of the overall energy equation when producing over-unity energy.

As shown in Fig.31C, the piston head 322 has moved a further stroke, shown as distance "B", at which time there is self-detonation of the hydrogen and oxygen mixture. The hydrogen and oxygen inlets 332,334 are closed at this point, as is the exhaust 336.

As shown in Fig.31D, the piston head is driven further downwards by an additional stroke, shown as distance "C", to an overall stroke represented by distance "D". The added piston displacement occurs by virtue of the detonation.

As shown in Fig.31E, the exhaust port 336 is now opened, and by virtue of the kinetic energy of the shaft 326 (or due to the action of others of the pistons connected with the shaft), the piston head 322 is driven upwards, thus exhausting the waste steam by the exhaust port 336 until such time as the situation of Fig.31E is achieved so that the cycle can repeat.

A particular advantage of an internal combustion motor constructed in accordance with the arrangement shown in Figs.31A to 31E is that no compression stroke is required, and neither is an ignition system required to ignite the working gases, rather the pressurised gases spontaneouly combust when provided in the correction proportion and under conditions of high pressure.

Useful mechanical energy can be extracted from the internal combustion engine, and be utilised to do work. Clearly the supply of pressurised gas must be replenished by the electrolysis process in order to allow the mechanical work to continue to be done. Nevertheless, the inventor believes that it should be possible to power a vehicle with an internal combustion engine of the type described in Figs.31A to 31E, with that vehicle having a store of the gases generated by the electrolysis process, and still be possible to undertake regular length journeys with the vehicle carrying a supply of the gases in pressure vessels (somewhat in a similar way to, and the size of, petrol tanks in conventional internal combustion engines).

When applying over-unity energy in the form of pressurised hydrogen and oxygen gases to this internal combustion engine for the purpose of providing acceptable ranging (i.e. distance travelled), pressurised stored gases as mentioned above may be necessary to overcome the problem of mass inertia (e.g. stop-start driving). Inclusion of the stored pressurised gases also facilitates the ranging (i.e. distance travelled) of the vehicle.

Over-unity energy (as claimed in this submission) for an average sized passenger vehicle will be supplied at a continual rate of between 20 kW and 40 kW. In the case of an over-unity energy supplied vehicle, a supply of water (e.g. similar to a petrol tank in function) must be carried in the vehicle.

Clearly electrical energy is consumed in generating the gases. However it is also claimed by the inventor that an over-unity energy system can provide the requisite energy thereby overcoming the problem of the consumption of
fossil fuels either in conventional internal combustion engines or in the generation of the electricity to drive the electrolysis process by coal, oil or natural gas generators.

Experimentation by the inventor shows that if 1,850 litres of hydrogen/oxygen gas mix (in a ratio of 2:1) is detonated, the resultant product is 1 litre of water and 1,850 litres of vacuum if the thermal value of the hydrogen and oxygen gas mix is dissipated. At atmospheric pressure, 1 litre of admixed hydrogen/oxygen (2:1) contains 11 BTUs of thermal energy. Upon detonation, this amount of heat is readily dissipated at a rate measured in microseconds which subsequently causes an implosion (inverse differential of 1,850:1). Tests conducted by the inventor at 3 atmospheres (hydrogen/oxygen gas at a pressure of 50 psi) have proven that complete implosion does not occur. However, even if the implosion container is heated (or becomes heated) to 400°C, total implosion will still occur.

This now available function of idiosyncratic implosion can be utilised by a pump taking advantage of this action. Such a pump necessarily requires an electrolysis gas system such as that described above, and particularly shown in Fig.6.

Figs. 32A-32C show the use of implosion and its cycles in a pumping device 400. The pump 400 is initially primed from a water inlet 406. The water inlet 406 then is closed-off and the hydrogen/oxygen gas inlet 408 is opened.

As shown in Fig.32B, the admixed hydrogen/oxygen gas forces the water upward through the one-way check valve 410 and outlet tube 412 into the top reservoir 414. The one-way check valves 410,416 will not allow the water to drop back into the cylinder 404 or the first reservoir 402. This force equates to lifting the water over a distance. The gas inlet valve 408 then is closed, and the spark plug 418 detonates the gas mixture which causes an implosion (vacuum). Atmospheric pressure forces the water in reservoir 402 up through tube 420.

Fig.32C shows the water having been transferred into the pump cylinder 404 by the previous action. The implosion therefore is able to ‘lift’ the water from the bottom reservoir 402 over a distance which is approximately the length of tube 420.

The lifting capacity of the implosion pump is therefore approximately the total of the two distances mentioned. This completes the pumping cycle, which can then be repeated after the reservoir 402 has been refilled.

Significant advantages of this pump are that it does not have any diaphragms, impellers nor pistons thereby essentially not having any moving parts (other than solenoids and one-way check valves). As such, the pump is significantly maintenance free when compared to current pump technology.

It is envisaged that this pump with the obvious foregoing positive attributes and advantages in pumping fluids, semi-fluids and gases can replace all currently known general pumps and vacuum pumps with significant benefits to the end-user of this pump.

CLAIMS

1. A looped energy system for the generation of excess energy available to do work, said system comprising:
   An electrolysis cell unit receiving a supply of water and for liberating separated hydrogen gas and oxygen gas by electrolysis due to a DC voltage applied across respective anodes and cathodes of said cell unit;
   Hydrogen gas receiver means for receiving and storing hydrogen gas liberated by said cell unit;
   Oxygen gas receiver means for receiving and storing oxygen gas liberated by said cell unit;
   Gas expansion means for expanding said stored gases to recover expansion work; and
   Gas combustion means for mixing and combusting said expanded hydrogen gas and oxygen gas to recover combustion work; and in which a proportion of the sum of the expansion work and the combustion work sustains electrolysis of said cell unit to retain operational gas pressure in said hydrogen and oxygen gas receiver means such that the energy system is self-sustaining and there is excess energy available from said sum of energies.

2. A looped energy system for the generation of excess energy available to do work, said system comprising:
   An electrolysis cell unit receiving a supply of water and for liberating separated hydrogen gas and oxygen gas by electrolysis due to a DC voltage applied across respective anodes and cathodes of said cell unit;
   Hydrogen gas receiver means for receiving and storing hydrogen gas liberated by said cell unit;
   Oxygen gas receiver means for receiving and storing oxygen gas liberated by said cell unit;
   Gas expansion means for expanding said stored gases to recover expansion work; and
   Fuel cell means for recovering electrical work from said expanded hydrogen gas and oxygen gas; and wherein a proportion of the sum of the expansion work and the recovered electrical work sustains electrolysis of said cell
unit to retain operational gas pressure in said hydrogen and oxygen gas receiver means such that the energy system is self-sustaining and there is excess energy available from said sum of energies.

3. An energy system as claimed in Claim 1 or Claim 2 further comprising mechanical-to-electrical energy conversion means coupled to said gas expansion means to convert the expansion work to electrical expansion work to be supplied as said DC voltage to said cell unit.

4. An energy system as claimed in any one of the preceding claims wherein said water in said cell unit is maintained above a predetermined pressure by the effect of back pressure from said gas receiver means and above a predetermined temperature resulting from input heat arising from said combustion work and/or said expansion work.

5. A method for the generation of excess energy available to do work by the process of electrolysis, said method comprising the steps of:
   - Electrolysing water by a DC voltage to liberate separated hydrogen gas and oxygen gas;
   - Separately receiving and storing said hydrogen gas and oxygen gas in a manner to be self-pressuring;
   - Separately expanding said stores of gas to recover expansion work;
   - Combusting said expanded gases together to recover combustion work; and
   - Applying a portion of the sum of the expansion work and the combustion work as said DC voltage to retain operational gas pressures and sustain said electrolysis step, there thus being excess energy of said sum available.

6. A method for the generation of excess energy available to do work by the process of electrolysis, said method comprising the steps of:
   - Electrolysing water by a DC voltage to liberate separated hydrogen gas and oxygen gas;
   - Separately receiving and storing said hydrogen gas and oxygen gas in a manner to be self-pressuring;
   - Separately expanding said stores of gas to recover expansion work;
   - Passing said expanded gases together through a fuel cell to recover electrical work; and
   - Applying a portion of the sum of the expansion work and the recovered electrical work as said DC voltage to retain operational gas pressures and sustain said electrolysis step, there thus being excess energy of said sum available.

7. An internal combustion engine powered by hydrogen and oxygen comprising:
   - At least one cylinder and at least one reciprocating piston within the cylinder;
   - A hydrogen gas input port in communication with the cylinder for receiving a supply of pressurised hydrogen;
   - An oxygen gas input port in communication with the cylinder for receiving a supply of pressurised oxygen; and
   - An exhaust port in communication with the cylinder and wherein the engine is operable in a two-stroke manner whereby, at the top of the stroke, hydrogen gas is supplied by the respective inlet port to the cylinder driving the piston downwards, oxygen gas then is supplied by the respective inlet port to the cylinder to drive the cylinder further downwards, after which time self-detonation occurs and the piston moves to the bottom of the stroke and upwardly again with said exhaust port opened to exhaust water vapour resulting from the detonation.

8. An engine as claimed in Claim 7, wherein there are a plurality of said cylinder and an equal plurality of said pistons, said pistons being commonly connected to a shaft and relatively offset in stroke timing to co-operate in driving the shaft.

9. An implosion pump comprising a combustion chamber interposed, and in communication with, an upper reservoir and a lower reservoir separated by a vertical distance across which water is to be pumped, said chamber receiving admixed hydrogen and oxygen at a pressure sufficient to lift a volume of water the distance therefrom to the top reservoir, said gas in the chamber then being combusted to create a vacuum in said chamber to draw water from said lower reservoir to fill said chamber, whereupon a pumping cycle is established and can be repeated.

10. An implosion pump as claimed in Claim 9, further comprising conduit means connecting a respective reservoir with said chamber and one-way flow valve means located in each conduit means to disallow reverse flow of water from said upper reservoir to said chamber and from said chamber to said lower reservoir.

11. A parallel stacked arrangement of cell plates for a water electrolysis unit, the cell plates alternately forming an anode and cathode of said electrolysis unit, and said arrangement including separate hydrogen gas and oxygen gas outlet port means respectively in communication with said anode cell plates and said cathode cell plates and extending longitudinally of said stacked plates, said stacked cell plates being configured in the region of said conduits to mate in a complementary manner to form said conduits such that a respective anode cell plate or cathode cell plate is insulated from the hydrogen gas conduit or the oxygen gas conduit.
12. An arrangement of cell plates as claimed in Claim 11, wherein said configuration is in the form of a flanged foot that extends to a flanged foot of the next adjacent like-type of anode or cathode cell plate respectively.
HENRY PAINE

This is a very interesting patent which describes a simple system for overcoming the difficult problem of storing the hydrogen/oxygen gas mix produced by electrolysis of water. Normally this “hydroxy” gas mix is too dangerous to be compressed and stored like propane and butane are, but this patent states that hydroxy gas can be converted to a more benign form merely by bubbling it through a hydrocarbon liquid. Henry automatically speaks of turpentine in the patent, which strongly suggests that he used it himself, and consequently, it would probably be a good choice for any tests of the process.

This patent is more than 120 years old and has only recently been brought to the attention of the various “watercar” internet Groups. Consequently, it should be tested carefully before being used. Any tests should be done with extreme caution, taking every precaution against injury or damage should the mixture explode. It should be stressed that hydroxy gas is highly explosive, with a flame front speed far too fast to be contained by conventional commercial flashback arrestors. It is always essential to use a bubbler to contain any accidental ignition of the gas coming out of the electrolyser cell, as shown here:

For the purposes of a test of the claims of this patent, it should be sufficient to fill the bubbler with turpentine rather than water, though if possible, it would be good to have an additional bubbler container for the turpentine, in which case, the bubbler with the water should come between the turpentine and the source of the flame. Any tests should be done in an open space, ignited remotely and the person running the test should be well protected behind a robust object. A disadvantage of hydroxy gas is that it requires a very small orifice in the nozzle used for maintaining a continuous flame and the flame temperature is very high indeed. If this patent is correct, then the modified gas produced by the process should be capable of being used in any conventional gas burner.

US Letters Patent 308,276 18th November 1884 Inventor: Henry M. Paine

PROCESS OF MANUFACTURING ILLUMINATING GAS

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, Henry M. Paine, a citizen of the United States, residing at Newark, in the county of Essex and State of New Jersey, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in the Process of Manufacturing Illuminating-Gas; and I do hereby declare the following to be a full, clear, and exact description of the invention, such as will enable others skilled in the art to which it appertains, to make and use the same, reference being had to the accompanying drawing, and to letters or figures of reference marked thereon, which form a part of this specification.

The present invention relates to the processes for manufacturing illuminating-gas, as explained and set forth here. Up to now, it has always been found necessary to keep the constituent gases of water separated from each other from the point of production to the point of ignition, as hydrogen and oxygen being present in the proper proportions for a complete reunion, form a highly-explosive mixture. Consequently, the two gases have either been preserved in separate holders and only brought together at the point of ignition, or else the hydrogen alone has been saved and the oxygen to support combustion has been drawn from the open air, and the hydrogen gas thus obtained has been carburetted by itself by passing through a liquid hydrocarbon, which imparts luminosity to the flame.

I have discovered that the mixed gases obtained by the decomposition of water through electrolysis can be used with absolute safety if passed through a volatile hydrocarbon; and my invention consists of the new gas thus
obtained, and the process described here for treating the gas mixture whereby it is rendered safe for use and
storage under the same conditions as prevail in the use of ordinary coal-gas, and is transformed into a highly-
luminiferous gas.

In the accompanying drawing, which shows in sectional elevation, an apparatus adapted to carry out my
invention, G is a producer for generating the mixed gases, preferably by the decomposition of water by an electric
current. A is a tank partly filled with turpentine, camphene or other hydrocarbon fluid as indicated by B. The two
vessels are connected by the pipe C, the end of which terminates below the surface of the turpentine, and has a
broad mouthpiece C', with numerous small perforations, so that the gas rises through the turpentine in fine
streams or bubbles in order that it may be brought intimately in contact with the hydrocarbon.

Above the surface of the turpentine there may be a diaphragm E, of wire netting or perforated sheet metal, and
above this, a layer of wool or other fibre packed sufficiently tightly to catch all particles of the hydrocarbon fluid
which may be mechanically held in suspension, but loose enough to allow free passage of the gases. The pipe F,
conducts the mixed gases off directly to the burners or to a holder.

I am aware that the hydrocarbons have been used in the manufacturer of water-gas from steam, and, as stated
above, hydrogen gas alone has been carburetted; but I am not aware of any attempt being made to treat the
explosive mixed gases in this manner.

Experiments have demonstrated that the amount of turpentine or other volatile hydrocarbon taken up by the
gases in this process is very small and that the consumption of the hydrocarbon does not appear to bear any fixed
ratio to the volume of the mixed gases passed through it. I do not, however, attempt to explain the action of the
hydrocarbon on the gases.

What I claim as my invention and desire to secure by Letters Patent, is -

The process described here of manufacturing gas, which consists in decomposing water by electrolysis and
conjointly passing the mixed constituent gases of water thus obtained, through a volatile hydrocarbon,
substantially as and for the purpose set forth.

In testimony whereof I affix my signature in presence of two witnesses.

HENRY M. PAINE

Witnesses:
Henry Paine's apparatus would therefor be:
A space vehicle propelled by the pressure of inflationary vacuum state is provided comprising a hollow superconductive shield, an inner shield, a power source, a support structure, upper and lower means for generating an electromagnetic field, and a flux modulation controller. A cooled hollow superconductive shield is energised by an electromagnetic field resulting in the quantised vortices of lattice ions projecting a gravitomagnetic field that forms a space-time curvature anomaly outside the space vehicle. The space-time curvature imbalance, the space-time curvature being the same as gravity, provides for the space vehicle's propulsion. The space vehicle, surrounded by the space-time anomaly, may move at a speed approaching the light-speed characteristic for the modified locale.

US Patent References:
6353311 Mar., 2002 Brainard et al.

Other References:
M.T. French, "To the Stars by Electromagnetic Propulsion", http://www.mtjf.demon.co.uk/antigravp2.htm#cforce.


BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION
The existence of a magnetic-like gravitational field has been well established by physicists for general relativity, gravitational theories, and cosmology. The consequences of the effect of electromagnetically-affected gravity could be substantial and have many practical applications, particularly in aviation and space exploration.

There are methods known for converting electromagnetism into a propulsive force that potentially generates a large propulsive thrust. According to these methods, the machine thrust is produced by rotating, reciprocating masses in the following ways: centrifugal thrust, momentum thrust, and impulse thrust. ("To the Stars by Electromagnetic Propulsion", M. T. French, http://www.mtjf.demon.co.uk/antigravp2.htm#cforce).

However, the electromagnetic propulsion in an ambient space, or space that is not artificially modified, is not practical for interstellar travel because of the great distances involved. No interstellar travel is feasible without
some form of distortion of space. In turn, no alteration of space is possible without the corresponding deformation of time. Gravitomagnetic alteration of space, resulting in the space-time curvature anomaly that could propel the space vehicle, could be a feasible approach to future space travel.

In the late 1940s, H. B. G. Casimir proved that the vacuum is neither particle nor field-free. It is a source of zero-point-fluctuation (ZPF) of fields such as the vacuum gravitomagnetic field. ZPF fields lead to real, measurable physical consequences such as the Casimir force. The quantised hand-made electromagnetic processes, such as those occurring in superconductors, affect the similarly quantised ZPFs. The most likely reason is the electron-positron creation and annihilation, in part corresponding to the "polarisation effect" sited by Evgeny Podkletnov in explaining the gravitomagnetic effect reportedly observed by him in 1992. ("Weak Gravitational Shielding Properties of Composite Bulk YBa2Cu3O7-δ Superconductor Below 70 K Under E.M. Field", Evgeny Podkletnov, LANL database number cond-mat/9701074, v. 3, 10 pages, 16 Sep. 1997).

The investigation of gravitomagnetism, however, started well before Podkletnov. In the U.S. Pat. No. 3,626,605, Henry Wm. Wallace describes an experimental apparatus for generating and detecting a secondary gravitational field. He also shows how a time-varying gravitomagnetic field can be used to shield the primary background of a gravitoelectric field.

In the U.S. Pat. No. 3,626,606, Henry Wm. Wallace provides a variation of his earlier experiment. A type III-V semiconductor material, of which both components have unpaired nuclear spin, is used as an electronic detector for the gravitomagnetic field. The experiment demonstrates that the material in his gravitomagnetic field circuit has hysteresis and remanence effects analogous to magnetic materials.

In the U.S. Pat. No. 3,823,570, Henry Wm. Wallace provides an additional variation of his experiment. Wallace demonstrates that, by aligning the nuclear spin of materials having an odd number of nucleons, a change in specific heat occurs.

In the U.S. Pat. No. 5,197,279, James R. Taylor discloses Electromagnetic Propulsion Engine where solenoid windings generate an electromagnetic field that, without the conversion into a gravitomagnetic field, generates the thrust necessary for the propulsion.

In the U.S. Pat. No. 6,353,311 B1, John P. Brainard et al. offer a controversial theory of Universal Particle Flux Field, and in order to prove it empirically, provide a shaded motor-type device. This device is also intended for extracting energy from this hypothetical Field.

In the early 1980s, Sidney Coleman and F. de Luca noted that the Einsteinian postulate of a homogeneous Universe, while correct in general, ignores quantised local fluctuation of the pressure of inflationary vacuum state, this fluctuation causing local cosmic calamities. While the mass-less particles propagate through large portions of Universe at light speed, these anomaly bubbles, depending on their low or high relative vacuum density, cause a local increase or decrease of the propagation values for these particles. Scientists disagree about the possibility, and possible ways, to artificially create models of such anomalies.

In the early 1990s, Ning Li and D. G Torr described a method and means for converting an electromagnetic field into a gravitomagnetic field. Li and Torr suggested that, under the proper conditions, the minuscule force fields of superconducting atoms can "couple", compounding in strength to the point where they can produce a repulsion force ("Effects of a Gravitomagnetic Field on Pure Superconductors", N. Li and D. G. Torr, Physical Review, Volume 43, Page 457, 3 pages, 15 Jan. 1991).

A series of experiments, performed in the early 1990s by Podkletnov and R. Nieminen, reportedly resulted in a reduction of the weights of objects placed above a levitating, rotating superconductive disk subjected to high frequency magnetic fields. These results substantially support the expansion of Einsteinian physics offered by Li & Torr. Podkletnov and Giovanni Modanese have provided a number of interesting theories as to why the weight reduction effect could have occurred, citing quantum gravitational effects, specifically, a local change in the cosmological constant. The cosmological constant, under ordinary circumstances, is the same everywhere. But, according to Podkletnov and Modanese, above a levitating, rotating superconductive disk exposed to high frequency magnetic fields, it is modified. ("Impulse Gravity Generator Based on Charged YBa2Cu3O7-δ Superconductor with Composite Crystal Structure", Evgeny Podkletnov, Giovanni Modanese, arXiv.org/physics database, #0108005 volume 2, 32 pages, 8 figures, Aug. 30, 2001).

In the July 2004 paper, Ning Wu hypothesised that exponential decay of the gravitation gauge field, characteristic for the unstable vacuum such as that created by Podkletnov and Nieminen, is at the root of the gravitational shielding effects (Gravitational Shielding Effects in Gauge Theory of Gravity, Ning Wu, arXiv:hep-th/0307225 v 1 23 Jul. 2003, 38 pages incl. 3 figures, July 2004).

String theory unifies gravity with all other known forces. According to String theory, all interactions are carried by fundamental particles, and all particles are just tiny loops of space itself forming the space-time curvature. Gravity and bent space are the same thing, propagating with the speed of light characteristic of the particular curvature. In light of the Fomalont and Kopeikin discovery, one can conclude that if there is a change in the speed of propagation of gravity within the space-time curvature, then the speed of light within the locality would also be affected.

In general relativity, any form of energy affects the gravitational field, so the vacuum energy density becomes a potentially crucial ingredient. Traditionally, the vacuum is assumed to be the same everywhere in the Universe, so the vacuum energy density is a universal number. The cosmological constant Lambda is proportional to the vacuum pressure:

$$\rho_\Lambda = \left(\frac{8\pi G}{3c^2}\right)\Lambda$$

Where:
- $G$ is Newton's constant of gravitation and
- $c$ is the speed of light

(“The Cosmological Constant”, Sean M. Carroll, [http://pancake.uchicago.edu/~carroll/encyc/](http://pancake.uchicago.edu/~carroll/encyc/), 6 pages). Newer theories, however, permit local vacuum fluctuations where even the "universal" constants are affected:

$$\Lambda_i = \left(\frac{8\pi G_i}{3c_i^2}\right)\rho_\Lambda$$

Analysing physics laws defining the cosmological constant, a conclusion can be drawn that, if a levitating, rotating superconductive disk subjected to high frequency magnetic fields affects the cosmological constant within a locality, it would also affect the vacuum energy density. According to the general relativity theory, the gravitational attraction is explained as the result of the curvature of space-time being proportional to the cosmological constant. Thus, the change in the gravitational attraction of the vacuum's subatomic particles would cause a local anomaly in the curvature of the Einsteinian space-time.

Time is the fourth dimension. Lorentz and Einstein showed that space and time are intrinsically related. Later in his life, Einstein hypothesised that time fluctuates both locally and universally. Ruggero Santilli, recognised for expanding relativity theory, has developed the isocosmology theory, which allows for variable rates of time. Time is also a force field only detected at speeds above light speed. The energy of this force field grows as its propagation speed declines when approaching light-speed. Not just any light-speed: the light-speed of a locale. If the conditions of the locale were modified, this change would affect the local time rate relative to the rate outside the affected locale, or ambient rate. The electromagnetically-generated gravitomagnetic field could be one such locale modifier.

Analysing the expansion of Einsteinian physics offered by Li & Torr, one could conclude that gravity, time, and light speed could be altered by the application of electromagnetic force to a superconductor.

By creating a space-time curvature anomaly associated with lowered pressure of inflationary vacuum state around a space vehicle, with the lowest vacuum pressure density located directly in front of the vehicle, a condition could be created where gravity associated with lowered vacuum pressure density pulls the vehicle forward in modified space-time.

By creating a space-time curvature anomaly associated with elevated pressure of inflationary vacuum state around the space vehicle, with the point of highest vacuum pressure density located directly behind the vehicle, a condition could be created where a repulsion force associated with elevated vacuum pressure density pushes the space vehicle forward in modified space-time. From the above-mentioned cosmological constant equation, re-written as:

$$\rho_\Lambda = \frac{3\lambda^2}{8\pi G}$$

it is clear that the increase in the vacuum pressure density could lead to a substantial increase in the light-speed. If the space vehicle is moving in the anomaly where the local light-speed is higher than the light-speed of the ambient vacuum, and if this vehicle approaches this local light-speed, the space vehicle would then possibly exceed the light-speed characteristic for the ambient area.

The levitating and rotating superconductor disk, which Podkletnov used to protect the object of experiment from the attraction produced by the energy of the vacuum, was externally energised by the externally-powered solenoid coils. Thus, Podkletnov's system is stationary by definition and not suitable for travel in air or space. Even if the
superconductive disk is made part of the craft, and if it is energised by the energy available on the craft, the resulting anomaly is one-sided, not enveloping, and not providing the variable speed of light (VSL) environment for the craft.

In a recent (2002) article, Chris Y. Tailor and Modanese propose to employ an impulse gravity generator directing, from an outside location, an anomalous beam toward a spacecraft, this beam acting as a repulsion force field producing propulsion for the spacecraft. (“Evaluation of an Impulse Gravity Generator Based Beamed Propulsion Concept”, Chris Y. Taylor and Giovanni Modanese, American Institute of Aeronautics and Astronautics, Inc., 2002, 21 pages, 10 figures). The authors of the article, however, didn't take into account the powerful quantised processes of field dispersion, which would greatly limit the distance of propagation of the repulsive force. At best, the implementation of this concept could assist in acceleration and deceleration at short distances from the impulse gravity generator, and only along a straight line of travel. If the travel goal is a space exploration mission rather than the shuttle-like commute, the proposed system is of little use.

Only a self-sufficient craft, equipped with the internal gravity generator and the internal energy source powering this generator, would have the flexibility needed to explore new frontiers of space. The modification of the space-time curvature all around the spacecraft would allow the spacecraft to approach the light-speed characteristic for the modified locale, this light-speed, when observed from a location in the ambient space, being potentially many times higher than the ambient light-speed. Then, under sufficient local energies, that is, energies available on the spacecraft, very large intergalactic distances could be reduced to conventional planetary distances.

In “The First Men in the Moon” (1903), H. G. Wells anticipates gravitational propulsion methods when he describes gravity repelling "cavorite." Discovered by Professor Cavor, the material acts as a "gravity shield" allowing Cavor's vehicle to reach the Moon. Prof. Cavor built a large spherical gondola surrounded on all sides by cavorite shutters that could be closed or opened. When Prof. Cavor closed all the shutters facing the ground and opened the shutters facing the moon, the gondola took off for the Moon.

Until today, no cavorite has been discovered. However, recent research in the area of superconductivity, nano materials and quantum state of vacuum, including that of Li, Torr, Podkletnov, and Modanese, has resulted in important new information about the interaction between a gravitational field and special states of matter at a quantum level. This new research opens the possibility of using new electromagnetically-energised superconductive materials allowing stable states of energy, the materials useful not only in controlling the local gravitational fields, but also in creating new gravitomagnetic fields.

BACKGROUND OF INVENTION: OBJECTS AND ADVANTAGES

There are four objects of this invention:

The first object is to provide a method for generating a pressure anomaly of inflationary vacuum state that leads to electromagnetic propulsion.

The second object is to provide a space vehicle capable of electromagnetically-generated propulsion. The implementation of these two objects leads to the development of the space vehicle propelled by gravitational imbalance with gravity pulling, and/or antigravity pushing, the space vehicle forward.

The third object is to provide a method for generating a pressure anomaly of inflationary vacuum state, specifically, the local increase in the level of vacuum pressure density associated with the greater curvature of space-time. The speed of light in such an anomaly would be higher than the speed of light in the ambient space.

The fourth object is to provide the space vehicle capable of generating an unequally-distributed external anomaly all around this vehicle, specifically the anomaly with the elevated level of vacuum pressure density. The anomaly is formed in such a way that gravity pulls the space vehicle forward in the modified space-time at a speed possibly approaching the light-speed specific for this modified locale. If the vacuum pressure density of the locale is modified to be substantially higher than that of the ambient vacuum, the speed of the vehicle could conceivably be higher than the ambient light-speed.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

This invention concerns devices self-propelled by the artificially changed properties of the pressure of inflationary vacuum state to speeds possibly approaching the light-speed specific for this modified locale. Furthermore, this invention concerns devices capable of generating the space-time anomaly characterised by the elevated vacuum pressure density. The devices combining these capabilities may be able to move at speeds substantially higher than the light-speed in the ambient space.
The device of this invention is a space vehicle. The outside shell of the space vehicle is formed by a hollow disk, sphere, or the like hollowed 3-dimensional shape made of a superconductor material, hereinafter a hollow superconductive shield. An inner shield is disposed inside the hollow superconductive shield. The inner shield is provided to protect crew and life-support equipment inside.

A support structure, upper means for generating an electromagnetic field and lower means for generating an electromagnetic field are disposed between the hollow superconductive shield and the inner shield. A flux modulation controller is disposed inside the inner shield to be accessible to the crew.

Electrical energy is generated in a power source disposed inside the hollow superconductive shield. The electrical energy is converted into an electromagnetic field in the upper means for generating an electromagnetic field and the lower means for generating an electromagnetic field.

Electrical motors, also disposed inside the hollow superconductive shield, convert the electrical energy into mechanical energy.

The mechanical energy and the electromagnetic field rotate the hollow superconductive shield, and the upper and the lower means for generating an electromagnetic field, against each other.

The electromagnetic field is converted into a gravitomagnetic field in the hollow superconductive shield.

The gravitomagnetic field, propagated outward, orthogonally to the walls of the hollow superconductive shield, forms a pressure anomaly of inflationary vacuum state in the area of propagation. The pressure anomaly of inflationary vacuum state is comprised of an area of relatively lower vacuum pressure density in front of the space vehicle and an area of relatively higher vacuum pressure density behind the vehicle.

The difference in the vacuum pressure density propels the space vehicle of this invention forward.

**BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS**

Fig.1 is a cross-sectional view through the front plane taken along the central axis of a space vehicle provided by the method and device of this invention.
Fig. 2A and Fig. 2B are diagrams, presented as perspective views, showing some of the physical processes resulting from a dynamic application of an electromagnetic field to a hollow superconductive shield. Only one line of quantised vortices, shown out of scale, is presented for illustration purposes.
Fig. 3A and Fig. 3B are diagrams, presented as perspective views, showing a vacuum pressure density anomaly associated with lowered pressure of inflationary vacuum state and a vacuum pressure density anomaly associated with elevated pressure of inflationary vacuum state, respectively. Both anomalies are shown on the background of Universal curvature of inflationary vacuum state.
Fig. 4A and Fig. 4B are diagrams, presented as perspective views, showing a space-time anomaly associated with lowered pressure of inflationary vacuum state and a space-time anomaly associated with elevated pressure of inflationary vacuum state, respectively. Both anomalies are shown on the background of Universal space-time.
Figs. 5A, 5B, 6, 7A, & 7B are diagrams of space-time curvature anomalies generated by the space vehicle of the current invention, these anomalies providing for the propulsion of the space vehicle.
DESCRIPTION OF THE PRESENTLY PREFERRED EMBODIMENT

Fig.1 is a cross-sectional view through the front plane taken along the central axis of a space vehicle provided by the method and device of this invention. A hollow superconductive shield 1 forms a protective outer shell of the space vehicle. The hollow superconductive shield 1 may be shaped as a hollow disk, sphere, or the like 3-dimensional geometrical figure formed by the 2-dimensional rotation of a curve around the central axis.

In the preferred embodiment, the hollow superconductive shield 1 is made of a superconductor such as $\text{YBa}_2\text{Cu}_3\text{O}_{7-y}$, or a like high-temperature superconductor with a composite crystal structure cooled to the temperature of about $40^\circ\text{K}$. Those skilled in the art may envision the use of many other low and high temperature superconductors, all within the scope of this invention.

An inner shield 2 is disposed inside the hollow superconductive shield 1. The inner shield 2 is comprised of an upper shell 3 and a lower shell 4, the shells 3 and 4 adjoined with each other. Executed from insulation materials such as foamed ceramics, the inner shield 2 protects the environment within the shield from the electromagnetic field and severe temperatures.

A support structure 5 is disposed between the hollow superconductive shield 1 and the inner shield 2, concentric to the hollow superconductive shield. The support structure 5 is comprised of an upper rotating element 6 and a lower rotating element 7.

The upper rotating element 6 is pivotably disposed inside the hollow superconductive shield 1 and may envelop the upper shell 3. The lower rotating element 7 is pivotably disposed inside the hollow superconductive shield 1.
and may envelope the lower shell 4. Even though the preferred embodiment has two rotating elements, those skilled in the art may envision only one rotating element, or three or more rotation elements, all within the scope of this invention.

Upper means for generating an electromagnetic field 8 are disposed between the hollow superconductive shield 1 and the upper shell 3. The upper means for generating an electromagnetic field 8 are fixed to the upper rotating element 6 at an electromagnetic field-penetrable distance to the hollow superconductive shield 1.

Lower means for generating an electromagnetic field 9 are disposed between the hollow superconductive shield 1 and the lower shell 4. The lower means for generating an electromagnetic field 9 are fixed to the lower rotating element 7 at an electromagnetic field-penetrable distance to the hollow superconductive shield 1.

The upper means for generating an electromagnetic field 8 and the lower means for generating an electromagnetic field 9 could be solenoid coils or electromagnets. In the process of operation of the space vehicle, the electromagnetic field identified by flux lines 10, is controllably and variably applied to the hollow superconductive shield 1.

Electric motors are disposed inside the hollow superconductive shield along its central axis.

A power source 11 is disposed inside the hollow superconductive shield 1 and may be disposed inside the lower shell 4. The power source 11 is electrically connected with the upper means for generating an electromagnetic field 8, the lower means for generating an electromagnetic field 9, and the electric motors. The upper means for generating an electromagnetic field 8, the lower means for generating an electromagnetic field 9, and the electric motors provide for the rotation of the upper rotating element 6 and the lower rotating element 7. The power source 11 may be a nuclear power generator.

Life-support equipment 12 is disposed inside the inner shield 2, and may be disposed inside the lower shell 4. The life-support equipment 12 may include oxygen, water, and food.

A flux modulation controller 13 is disposed inside the inner shield 2, and may be disposed inside the upper shell 3. The flux modulation controller 13 is in communication with the upper means for generating an electromagnetic field 8, the lower means for generating an electromagnetic field 9, the power source 11, and the electric motors.

The flux modulation controller 8 may be executed as a computer or a microprocessor. The flux modulation controller 8 is provided with a capability of modulating the performance parameters of the upper means for generating an electromagnetic field 8, the lower means for generating an electromagnetic field 9, the power source 11, and the electric motors.

A crew 14 may be located inside the upper shell 3 of the inner shield 2 and may consist of one or more astronauts. The crew has a free access to the life-support equipment 12 and the flux modulation controller 8. A person skilled in the art, may envision a fully-automated, pilotless craft, which is also within the scope of this invention.

A person skilled in the art, may also envision the embodiment (not shown), also within the scope of this invention, where the hollow superconductive shield is pivotable, and the support structure with the means for generating an electromagnetic field is affixed on the outside of the inner shield.

Fig.2A and Fig.2B are diagrams showing the results of the quantised electromagnetic turbulence within the superconductive shell of the hollow superconductive shield provided by the relative rotational motion of the hollow superconductive shield against the upper means for generating an electromagnetic field.

Fig.2A shows the clockwise relative rotational motion of the hollow superconductive shield, this motion identified by a clockwise shield motion vector 15, and the counter-clockwise relative rotational motion of upper means for generating an electromagnetic field, this motion identified by a counter-clockwise EMF motion vector 16.

The electromagnetic field, controllably and variably applied by the upper means for generating an electromagnetic field, whose various positions are identified by a wire grid 17, to the hollow superconductive shield (not shown), causes quantised electromagnetic turbulence within the hollow superconductive shield. This turbulence is represented by a plurality of clockwise quantised vortices of lattice ions 18. Only one line of the clockwise quantised vortices of lattice ions 18, (not to scale), is shown for illustration purposes only. Each of the clockwise quantised vortices of lattice ions 18 generates a gravitomagnetic field identified by an outward gravitomagnetic field vector 19 directed orthogonally away from the hollow superconductive shield.
Fig.2B shows the counter-clockwise relative rotational motion of the hollow superconductive shield, this motion identified by a counter-clockwise shield motion vector and the clockwise relative rotational motion of upper means for generating an electromagnetic field, this motion identified by a clockwise EMF motion vector.

The electromagnetic field, controllably and variably applied by the upper means for generating an electromagnetic field identified by the wire grid, to the hollow superconductive shield (not shown), causes quantised electromagnetic turbulence within the hollow superconductive shield, this turbulence represented by a plurality of counter-clockwise quantised vortices of lattice ions. Only one line of the counter-clockwise quantised vortices of lattice ions, (not to scale), is shown for illustration purposes only. Each of the counter-clockwise quantised vortices of lattice ions generates a gravitomagnetic field identified by an inward gravitomagnetic field vector directed orthogonally toward the hollow superconductive shield.

The electrical requirements for providing the Li-Torr effect are as follows:

Podkletnov has reported using the high frequency current of 105 Hz. He also used 6 solenoid coils @ 850 Gauss each. The reported system's efficiency reached 100% and the total field in the Podkletnov's disk was about 0.5 Tesla. The maximum weight loss reported by Podkletnov was 2.1%.

The preferred embodiment of the device of current invention is capable of housing 2-3 astronauts and therefore is envisioned to be about 5 meters in diameter at the widest point. The preferred space vehicle's acceleration is set at 9.8 m/s/s providing that gravity on board is similar to that on the surface of Earth.

The means for generating an electromagnetic field may be comprised of 124 solenoid coils. At the same 100% efficiency reported by Podkletnov, the total field required providing the acceleration of 9.8 m/s/s is 5,000 Tesla, or about 40 Tesla per coil. Skeggs suggests that on the Podkletnov device, out of 850 Gauss developed on the coil surface, the field affecting the superconductor and causing the gravitomagnetism is only 400 Gauss ("Engineering Analysis of the Podkletnov Gravity Shielding Experiment, Peter L. Skeggs, Quantum Forum, Nov. 7, 1997, http://www.inetarena.com/~noetic/pls/podlev.html, 7 pages). This translates into 47% device efficiency.

In this 47%-efficient space vehicle, the total field required achieving the 9.8 m/s/s acceleration is about 10,600 Tesla, or 85.5 Tesla per each of 124 solenoid coils. It must be noted that at this acceleration rate, it would take nearly a year for the space vehicle to reach the speed of light.

It also must be noted that Skeggs has detected a discrepancy between the Li-Torr estimates and Podkletnov's practical results. If Podkletnov's experimental results are erroneous while the Li-Torr estimates are indeed applicable to the space vehicle of this invention, then the energy requirements for achieving the sought speed would be substantially higher than the above estimate of 10,600 Tesla.

Podkletnov has concluded that, in order for the vacuum pressure density anomaly to take place, the Earth-bound device must be in the condition of Meissner levitation. As are all space bodies, the space vehicle is a subject to the pressure inflationary vacuum state and the gravitational force, which, within the migrating locality of the expanding Universe, in any single linear direction, are substantially in equilibrium. Thus, for the space vehicle, the requirement of Meissner levitation is waved.

The propagation of the gravitomagnetic field identified by the outward gravitomagnetic field vector and the inward gravitomagnetic field vector would cause exotic quantised processes in the vacuum's subatomic particles that include particle polarisation, ZPF field defects, and the matter-energy transformation per $E=mc^2$. The combination of these processes would result in the gravitational anomaly. According to the general relativity theory, gravitational attraction is explained as the result of the curvature of space-time being proportional to the gravitational constant. Thus, the change in the gravitational attraction of the vacuum's subatomic particles would cause a local anomaly in the curvature of the Einsteinean space-time.

Gravity is the same thing as bent space, propagating with the speed of light characteristic for the particular space-time curvature. When bent space is affected, there is a change in the speed of propagation of gravity within the space-time curvature anomaly. The local speed of light, according to Fomalont and Kopeikin always equal to the local speed of propagation of gravity, is also affected within the locality of space-time curvature anomaly.

Creation of space-time curvature anomalies adjacent to, or around, the space vehicle, these anomalies characterised by the local gravity and light-speed change, has been the main object of this invention.

Fig.3A shows a diagram of a vacuum pressure density anomaly associated with lowered pressure of inflationary vacuum state on the background of Universal curvature of inflationary vacuum state. The vacuum pressure density anomaly associated with lowered pressure of inflationary vacuum state is formed by a multitude of the inward gravitomagnetic field vectors. According to the cosmological constant equation,
\[ \rho_\Lambda = \left( \frac{8\pi G}{3c^2} \rho \right) \]

where:

The cosmological constant \( \Lambda \), is proportional to the vacuum energy pressure \( \rho - \Lambda \), \( G \) is Newton's constant of gravitation, and \( c \) is the speed of light, so the curvature of space-time is proportional to the gravitational constant. According to the general relativity theory, the change in the vacuum pressure density is proportional to the change in the space-time curvature anomaly. By replacing \( \rho - \Lambda \) with the vacuum pressure density, \( P \) times the vacuum energy coefficient \( \kappa \), and replacing \( c \) with: \delta-distance/\delta-time, we derive to the equation:

\[ \Lambda = \left[ \frac{8\pi G}{3} \left( \frac{\Delta \text{distance}}{\Delta \text{time}} \right)^2 \right] P \kappa \]

and can now construct a vacuum pressure density curvature diagram.

The vacuum pressure density curvature anomaly associated with lowered pressure of inflationary vacuum state 24 is shown here as a flattened surface representing the lowered pressure of the inflationary vacuum state. This anomaly is the result of the exotic quantised processes in the subatomic particles caused by the quantised turbulence occurring in the hollow superconductive shield. The XYZ axes represent three dimensions of space and the P axis represents the vacuum pressure density.

**Fig.3B** shows a diagram of a vacuum pressure density anomaly associated with elevated pressure of inflationary vacuum state 26 on the background of the Universal curvature of inflationary vacuum state 25. The vacuum pressure density anomaly associated with elevated pressure of inflationary vacuum state 26 is formed by a multitude of the outward gravitomagnetic field vectors. The anomaly is shown here as a convex surface representing the elevated pressure of inflationary vacuum state. The diagrams of **Fig.3A** and **Fig.3B** are not to scale with the anomaly sizes being exaggerated for clarity.

**Fig.4A** and **Fig.4B** show diagrams of a space-time anomaly associated with lowered pressure of inflationary vacuum state 27, and a space-time anomaly associated with elevated pressure of inflationary vacuum state 28, respectively, each on the background a diagram of Universal space-time 29.

The quaterised Julia set \( Q_{n+1} = Q_n^2 + C_0 \) is assumed to be an accurate mathematical representation of the Universal space-time. The generic quaterion \( Q_0 \) belongs to the Julia set associated with the quaternion \( C \), and \( n \) tends to infinity. If we assume that the quaterion value \( C_0 \) is associated with the Universal space-time 29, \( C_1 \) is the value of quaterion \( C \) for the space-time anomaly associated with lowered pressure of inflationary vacuum state 27, and \( C_2 \) is the value of quaterion \( C \) for the space-time anomaly associated with elevated pressure of inflationary vacuum state 28, then we can construct two diagrams.

The diagram of **Fig.4A** shows the space-time anomaly associated with lowered pressure of inflationary vacuum state 27 as a quaterised Julia set contained in a 4-dimensional space: \( Q_{n+1} = Q_n^2 + C_1 \) on the background of the Universal space-time 29 represented by \( Q_{n+1} = Q_n^2 + C_0 \).

The diagram of **Fig.4B** shows the space-time anomaly associated with elevated pressure of inflationary vacuum state 28 as a quaterised Julia set \( Q_{n+1} = Q_n^2 + C_2 \), also on the background of the Universal space-time 29 represented by \( Q_{n+1} = Q_n^2 + C_0 \). On both diagrams, the XYZ axes represent three dimensions of space, and the T axis represents time. The diagrams are not to scale: the anomaly sizes are exaggerated for clarity, and the halves of quaterised Julia sets, conventionally associated with the hypothetical Anti-Universe, are omitted.

**Figs. 5A, 5B, 6, 7A, & 7B** show simplified diagrams of space-time curvature anomalies generated by the space vehicle of the current invention, these anomalies providing for the propulsion of the space vehicle. In each case, the pressure anomaly of inflationary vacuum state is comprised of an area of relatively lower vacuum pressure density in front of the space vehicle and an area of relatively higher vacuum pressure density behind the space vehicle. Because the lower pressure of inflationary vacuum state is associated with greater gravity and the higher pressure is associated with the higher repulsive force, the space vehicle is urged to move from the area of relatively higher vacuum pressure density toward the area of relatively lower vacuum pressure density.

**Fig.5A** illustrates the first example of space-time curvature modification. This example shows a substantially droplet-shaped space-time curvature anomaly associated with lowered pressure of inflationary vacuum state 30 adjacent to the hollow superconductive shield 1 of the space vehicle. The anomaly 30 is provided by the propagation of a gravitomagnetic field radiating orthogonally away from the front of the hollow superconductive shield 1. This gravitomagnetic field may be provided by the relative clockwise motion of the upper means for generating an electromagnetic field, and relative counterclockwise motion of the hollow superconductive field, as observed from above the space vehicle.
In this example, the difference between the space-time curvature within the substantially droplet-shaped space-time anomaly associated with lowered pressure of inflationary vacuum state, and the ambient space-time curvature, the space-time curvature being the same as gravity, results in the gravitational imbalance, with gravity pulling the space vehicle forward.

Fig.5B illustrates the second example of space-time curvature modification. This example shows a substantially droplet-shaped space-time anomaly associated with elevated pressure of inflationary vacuum state 31 adjacent to the hollow superconductive shield 1 of the space vehicle. The anomaly 31 is provided by the propagation of a gravitomagnetic field radiating orthogonally away from the back of the hollow superconductive shield. This gravitomagnetic field may be provided by the relative counter-clockwise motion of the lower means for generating an electromagnetic field, and relative clockwise motion of the hollow superconductive field, as observed from below the space vehicle.

In this example, the difference between the space-time curvature within the substantially droplet-shaped space-time anomaly associated with elevated pressure of inflationary vacuum state, and the ambient space-time curvature, the space-time curvature being the same as gravity, results in the gravitational imbalance, with gravity pulling, and the repulsion force pushing the space vehicle forward.

Fig.6 illustrates the third example of space-time curvature modification. This example shows the formation of the substantially droplet-shaped space-time anomaly associated with lowered pressure of inflationary vacuum state 30 combined with the substantially droplet-shaped space-time anomaly associated with elevated pressure of inflationary vacuum state 31. This combination of anomalies may be provided by the relative clockwise motion of the upper means for generating an electromagnetic field and relative clockwise motion of the hollow superconductive field, combined with the relative clockwise motion of the lower means for generating an electromagnetic field, as observed from above the space vehicle.

In this example, the difference between the space-time curvature within the substantially droplet-shaped space-time anomaly associated with lowered pressure of inflationary vacuum state, and the space-time curvature of the substantially droplet-shaped space-time anomaly associated with elevated pressure of inflationary vacuum state, the space-time curvature being the same as gravity, results in the gravitational imbalance, with gravity pulling, and the repulsion force pushing, the space vehicle forward.

Fig.7A illustrates the fourth example of space-time curvature modification. This example shows the formation of a substantially egg-shaped space-time anomaly associated with lowered pressure of inflationary vacuum state 32 around the hollow superconductive shield 1 of the space vehicle. The anomaly 32 is provided by the propagation of gravitomagnetic field of unequally-distributed density, this gravitomagnetic field radiating in all directions orthogonally away from the hollow superconductive shield. The propagation of the unequally-distributed gravitomagnetic field leads to the similarly unequally-distributed space-time curvature anomaly. This unequally-distributed gravitomagnetic field may be provided by the relatively faster clockwise motion of the upper means for generating an electromagnetic field relative to the hollow superconductive field, combined with the relatively slower counter-clockwise motion of the lower means for generating an electromagnetic field, as observed from above the space vehicle.

An area of the lowest vacuum pressure density 33 of the substantially egg-shaped space-time anomaly associated with lowered pressure of inflationary vacuum state 32 is located directly in front of the space vehicle.

In this example, the variation in the space-time curvature within the substantially egg-shaped space-time anomaly associated with lowered pressure of inflationary vacuum state, the space-time curvature being the same as gravity, results in a gravitational imbalance, with gravity pulling the space vehicle forward in modified space-time.

Fig.7B illustrates the fifth example of space-time curvature modification, also with the purpose of providing for a propulsion in modified space-time. This example shows the formation of a substantially egg-shaped space-time anomaly associated with elevated pressure of inflationary vacuum state 34 around the hollow superconductive shield 1 of the space vehicle. The anomaly 34 is provided by the propagation of gravitomagnetic field of unequally-distributed density, this gravitomagnetic field radiating in all directions orthogonally away from the hollow superconductive shield. The propagation of the unequally-distributed gravitomagnetic field leads to the similarly unequally-distributed space-time curvature anomaly. This unequally-distributed gravitomagnetic field may be provided by the relatively slower counter-clockwise motion of the upper means for generating an electromagnetic field relative to the hollow superconductive field, combined with the relatively faster clockwise motion of the lower means for generating an electromagnetic field, as observed from above the space vehicle.

An area of the highest vacuum pressure density 35 of the substantially egg-shaped space-time anomaly associated with elevated pressure of inflationary vacuum state 34 is located directly behind the space vehicle.
In this example, the variation in the space-time curvature within the substantially egg-shaped space-time anomaly associated with elevated pressure of inflationary vacuum state, the space-time curvature being same as gravity, results in a gravitational imbalance, with the repulsion force pushing the space vehicle forward in modified space-time at speeds approaching the light-speed characteristic for this modified area. This light-speed might be much higher than the light-speed in the ambient space.

By creating alternative anomalies and modulating their parameters, the space vehicle’s crew would dilate and contract time and space on demand. The space vehicle, emitting a vacuum pressure modifying, controllably-modulated gravitomagnetic field in all directions, would rapidly move in the uneven space-time anomaly it created, pulled forward by gravity or pushed by the repulsion force. The time rate zone of the anomaly is expected to have multiple quantised boundaries rather than a single sudden boundary affecting space and time in the immediate proximity of the vehicle. Speed, rate of time, and direction in space could be shifted on demand and in a rapid manner. The modulated light-speed could make the space vehicle suitable for interstellar travel. Because of the time rate control in the newly created isospace, the accelerations would be gradual and the angles of deviation would be relatively smooth. The gravity shielding would further protect pilots from the ill-effects of gravity during rapid accelerations, directional changes, and sudden stops.

If you find the thought of generating a gravitational field, difficult to come to terms with, then consider the work of Henry Wallace who was an engineer at General Electric about 25 years ago, and who developed some incredible inventions relating to the underlying physics of the gravitational field. Few people have heard of him or his work. Wallace discovered that a force field, similar or related to the gravitational field, results from the interaction of relatively moving masses. He built machines which demonstrated that this field could be generated by spinning masses of elemental material having an odd number of nucleons -- i.e. a nucleus having a multiple half-integral value of $\hbar$, the quantum of angular momentum. Wallace used bismuth or copper material for his rotating bodies and "kinnemassic" field concentrators.

Aside from the immense benefits to humanity which could result from a better understanding of the physical nature of gravity, and other fundamental forces, Wallace’s inventions could have enormous practical value in countering gravity or converting gravitational force fields into energy for doing useful work. So, why has no one heard of him? One might think that the discoverer of important knowledge such as this would be heralded as a great scientist and nominated for dynamite prizes. Could it be that his invention does not work? Anyone can get the patents. Study them -- Wallace -- General Electric -- detailed descriptions of operations -- measurements of effects -- drawings and models -- it is authentic. If you are handy with tools, then you can even build it yourself. It does work.

Henry was granted two patents in this field:
US Patent #3626605 -- "Method and Apparatus for Generating a Secondary Gravitational Force Field", Dec 14, 1971 and


These patents can be accessed via [http://www.freepatentsonline.com](http://www.freepatentsonline.com)
This invention relates to a device for obtaining an intimate contact between a liquid in a vaporous state and a gas, and particularly to such a device which may serve as a carburettor for internal combustion engines.

Carburettors commonly used for supplying a combustible mixture of air and liquid fuel to internal combustion engines, comprise a bowl in which a supply of the fuel is maintained in the liquid phase and a fuel jet which extends from the liquid fuel into a passage through which air is drawn by the suction of the engine cylinders. On the suction, or intake stroke of the cylinders, air is drawn over and around the fuel jet and a charge of liquid fuel is drawn in, broken up and partially vaporised during its passage to the engine cylinders. However, I have found that in such carburettors, a relatively large amount of the atomised liquid fuel is not vaporised and enters the engine cylinder in the form of microscopic droplets. When such a charge is ignited in the engine cylinder, only that portion of the liquid fuel which has been converted into the vaporous (molecular) state, combines with the air to give an explosive mixture. The remaining portion of the liquid fuel which is drawn into the engine cylinders and remains in the form of small droplets, does not explode and impart power to the engine, but burns with a flame and raises the temperature of the engine above that at which the engine operates most efficiently, i.e. 160°F to 180°F.

According to this invention, a carburettor for internal combustion engines is provided in which substantially all of the liquid fuel entering the engine cylinder will be in the vapour phase and consequently, capable of combining with the air to form a mixture which will explode and impart a maximum amount of power to the engine, and which will not burn and unduly raise the temperature of the engine.

A mixture of air and liquid fuel in truly vapour phase in the engine cylinder is obtained by vaporising all, or a large portion of the liquid fuel before it is introduced into the intake manifold of the engine. This is preferably done in a vaporising chamber, and the “dry” vaporous fuel is drawn from the top of this chamber into the intake manifold on the intake or suction stroke of the engine. The term “dry” used here refers to the fuel in the vaporous phase which is at least substantially free from droplets of the fuel in the liquid phase, which on ignition would burn rather than explode.

More particularly, the invention comprises a carburettor embodying a vaporising chamber in the bottom of which, a constant body of liquid fuel is maintained, and in the top of which there is always maintained a supply of “dry” vaporised fuel, ready for admission into the intake manifold of the engine. The supply of vapourised liquid fuel is maintained by drawing air through the supply of liquid fuel in the bottom of the vaporising chamber, and by constantly atomising a portion of the liquid fuel so that it may more readily pass into the vapour phase. This is preferably accomplished by a double-acting suction pump operated from the intake manifold, which forces a mixture of the liquid fuel and air against a plate located within the chamber. To obtain a more complete vaporisation of the liquid fuel, the vaporising chamber and the incoming air are preferably heated by the exhaust gasses from the engine. The carburettor also includes means for initially supplying a mixture of air and vapourised fuel so that starting the engine will not be dependent on the existence of a supply of fuel vapours in the vaporising chamber.

The invention will be further described in connection with the accompanying drawings, but this further disclosure and description is to be taken as an exemplification of the invention and the same is not limited thereby except as is pointed out in the claims.

Fig. 1 is an elevational view of a carburettor embodying my invention.
Fig. 2 is a vertical cross-sectional view through the centre of Fig. 1.
Fig. 3 is a horizontal sectional view on line 3--3 of Fig. 2.

Fig. 4 is an enlarged vertical sectional view through one of the pump cylinders and adjacent parts of the carburettor.

Fig. 5 is an enlarged view through the complete double-acting pump and showing the associated distributing valve.
Fig. 6 is an enlarged vertical sectional view through the atomising nozzle for supplying a starting charge for the engine.

Fig. 7 and Fig. 8 are detail sectional views of parts 16 and 22 of Fig. 6.
Fig.9 and Fig.10 are detail sectional views showing the inlet and outlet to the cylinders of the atomising pump.

Referring to the drawings, the numeral 1 indicates a combined vaporising chamber and fuel bowl in which liquid fuel is maintained at the level indicated in Fig.1 by a float-valve 2 controlling the flow of liquid fuel through pipe 3 which leads from the vacuum tank or other liquid fuel reservoir.

The vaporising chamber 1 is surrounded by a chamber 4 through which hot exhaust gasses from the engine, enter through pipe 5 located at the bottom of the chamber. These gasses pass around the vaporising chamber 1 and heat the chamber, which accelerates the vaporisation of the liquid fuel. The gasses then pass out through the upper outlet pipe 6.

Chamber 4 for the hot exhaust gasses, is in turn surrounded by chamber 7 into which air for vaporising part of the liquid fuel in chamber 1 enters through a lower intake pipe 8. This air passes upwards through chamber 4 through which the hot exhaust gasses pass, and so the air becomes heated. A portion of the heated air then passes through pipe 9 into an aerator 10, located in the bottom of the vaporising chamber 1 and submerged in the liquid fuel in it. The aerator 10 is comprised of a relatively flat chamber which extends over a substantial portion of the bottom of the chamber and has a large number of small orifices 11 in its upper wall. The heated air entering the aerator passes through the orifices 11 as small bubbles which then pass upwards through the liquid fuel. These bubbles, together with the heat imparted to the vaporising chamber by the hot exhaust gasses, cause a vaporisation of a portion of the liquid fuel.

Another portion of the air from chamber 7 passes through a connection 12 into passage 13, through which air is drawn directly from the atmosphere into the intake manifold. Passage 13 is provided with a valve 14 which is normally held closed by spring 14a, the tension of which may be adjusted by means of the threaded plug 14b. Passage 13 has an upward extension 13a, in which is located a choke valve 13b for assisting in starting the engine. Passage 13 passes through the vaporising chamber 1 and has its inner end communicating with passage 15 via connector 15a which is secured to the intake manifold of the engine. Passage 15 is provided with the usual butterfly valve 16 which controls the amount of fuel admitted to the engine cylinders, and consequently, regulates the speed of the engine.

The portion of passage 13 which passes through the vaporising chamber has an opening 17 normally closed by valve 17a which is held against its seat by spring 17b, the tension of which may be adjusted by a threaded plug 17c. As air is drawn past valve 14 and through passage 13 on the intake or suction stroke of the engine, valve 17a will be lifted from its seat and a portion of the dry fuel vapour from the upper portion of the vaporising chamber will be sucked into passage 13 through opening 17 and mingle with the air in it before entering passage 15.

In order to regulate the amount of air passing from chamber 7 to aerator 10 and into passage 13, pipe 9 and connection 12 are provided with suitable valves 18 and 19 respectively. Valve 18 in pipe 9 is synchronised with butterfly valve 16 in passage 15. Valve 19 is adjustable and preferably synchronised with butterfly valve 16 as shown, but this is not essential.

The bottom of passage 15 is made in the form of a venturi 20 and a nozzle 21 for atomised liquid fuel and air is located at or adjacent to the point of greatest restriction. Nozzle 21 is preferably supplied with fuel from the supply of liquid fuel in the bottom of the vaporising chamber, and to that end, a member 22 is secured within the vaporising chamber by a removable threaded plug 23 having a flanged lower end 24. Plug 22 extends through an opening in the bottom of chamber 1, and is threaded into the bottom of member 22. This causes the bottom wall of chamber 1 to be securely clamped between the lower end of member 22 and flange 24, thus securely retaining member 22 in place.

Plug 23 is provided with a sediment bowl 24 and extending from bowl 24 are several small passages 25 extending laterally, and a central vertical passage 26. The lateral passages 25 register with corresponding passages 27 located in the lower end of member 22 at a level lower than that at which fuel stands in chamber 1, whereby liquid fuel is free to pass into bowl 24.

Vertical passage 26 communicates with a vertical nozzle 28 which terminates within the flaring lower end of nozzle 21. The external diameter of nozzle 26 is less than the interior diameter of the nozzle 21 so that a space is provided between them for the passage of air or and vapour mixtures. Nozzle 26 is also provided with a series of
inlets 29, for air or air and vapour mixtures, and a fuel inlet 30. Fuel inlet 30 communicates with a chamber 31 located in the member 22 and surrounding the nozzle 28. Chamber 30 is supplied with liquid fuel by means of a passage 32 which is controlled by a needle valve 33, the stem of which, extends to the outside of the carburettor and is provided with a knurled nut 34 for adjusting purposes.

The upper end of member 22 is made hollow to provide a space 35 surrounding the nozzles 21 and 28. The lower wall of the passage 13 is provided with a series of openings 35a, to allow vapours to enter space 35 through them. The vapours may then pass through inlets 29 into the nozzle 28, and around the upper end of the nozzle 28 into the lower end of nozzle 21.

Extending from chamber 31 at the side opposite passage 32, is a passage 36 which communicates with a conduit 37 which extends upwards through passage 13, and connects through a lateral extension 39, with passage 15 just above the butterfly valve 16. The portion of conduit 37 which extends through passage 13 is provided with an orifice 39 through which air or air and fuel vapour may be drawn into the conduit 37 mingle with and atomise the liquid fuel being drawn through the conduit. To further assist in this atomisation of the liquid fuel passing through conduit 37, the conduit is restricted at 40 just below orifice 39.

The upper end of conduit 37 is in communication with the atmosphere through opening 41 through which air may be drawn directly into the upper portion of the conduit. The proportion of air to combustible vapours coming through conduit 37 is controlled by needle valve 42.

As nozzle 21 enters directly into the lower end of passage 15, suction in the inlet manifold will, in turn, create a suction on nozzle 21 which will cause a mixture of atomised fuel and air to be drawn directly into the intake manifold. This is found to be desirable when starting the engine, particularly in cold weather, when there might not be an adequate supply of vapour in the vaporising chamber, or the mixture of air and vapour passing through passage 13 might be to “lean” to cause a prompt starting of the engine. At such times, closing the choke valve 13b will cause the maximum suction to be exerted on nozzle 21 and the maximum amount of air and atomised fuel to be drawn directly into the intake manifold. After the engine has been started, only a small portion of the combustible air and mixture necessary for proper operation of the engine is drawn through nozzle 21 as the choke valve will then be open to a greater extent and substantially all of the air and vapour mixture necessary for operation of the engine will be drawn through the lower end 20 of passage 15, around nozzle 21.

Conduit 37 extending from fuel chamber 31 to a point above butterfly valve 16 provides an adequate supply of fuel when the engine is idling with valve 16 closed or nearly closed.

The casings forming chambers 1, 4 and 7, will be provided with the necessary openings, to subsequently be closed, so that the various parts may be assembled, and subsequently adjusted or repaired.

The intake stroke of the engine creates a suction in the intake manifold, which in turn causes air to be drawn past spring valve 14 into passage 13 and simultaneously a portion of the dry fuel vapour from the top of vaporising chamber 1 is drawn through opening 17 past valve 17a to mix with the air moving through the passage. This mixture then passes through passage 15 to the intake manifold and engine cylinders.

The drawing of the dry fuel vapour into passage 13 creates a partial vacuum in chamber 1 which causes air to be drawn into chamber 7 around heated chamber 4 from where it passes through connection 12 and valve 19, into passage 13 and through pipe 9 and valve 18 into aerator 10, from which it bubbles up through the liquid fuel in the bottom of chamber 1 to vaporise more liquid fuel.

To assist in maintaining a supply of dry fuel vapour in the upper portion of vaporising chamber 1, the carburettor is provided with means for atomising a portion of the liquid fuel in vaporising chamber 1. This atomising means preferably is comprised of a double-acting pump which is operated by the suction existing in the intake manifold of the engine.

The double-acting pump is comprised of a pair of cylinders 43 which have their lower ends located in the vaporising chamber 1, and each of which has a reciprocating pump piston 44 mounted in it. Pistons 44 have rods 45 extending from their upper ends, passing through cylinders 46 and have pistons 47 mounted on them within the cylinders 46.

Cylinders 46 are connected at each end to a distributing valve V which connects the cylinders alternately to the intake manifold so that the suction in the manifold will cause the two pistons 44 to operate as a double-acting suction pump.

The distributing valve V is comprised of a pair of discs 48 and 49 between which is located a hollow oscillatable chamber 50 which is constantly subjected to the suction existing in the intake manifold through connection 51.
having a valve 52 in it. Chamber 50 has a pair of upper openings and a pair of lower openings. These openings are so arranged with respect to the conduits leading to the opposite ends of cylinders 46 that the suction of the engine simultaneously forces one piston 47 upwards while forcing the other one downwards.

The oscillatable chamber 50 has a T-shaped extension 53. The arms of this extension are engaged alternately by the upper ends of the piston rods 45, so as to cause valve V to connect cylinders 46 in sequence to the intake manifold.

Spring 54 causes a quick opening and closing of the ports leading to the cylinders 46 so that at no time will the suction of the engine be exerted on both of the pistons 47. The tension between discs 48 and 49 and the oscillatable chamber 50 may be regulated by screw 55.

The particular form of the distributing valve V is not claimed here so a further description of operation is not necessary. As far as the present invention is concerned, any form of means for imparting movement to pistons 47 may be substituted for the valve V and its associated parts.

The cylinders 43 are each provided with inlets and outlets 56 and 57, each located below the fuel level in chamber 1. The inlets 56 are connected to horizontally and upwardly extending conduits 58 which pass through the carburettor to the outside. The upper ends of these conduits are enlarged at 59 and are provided with a vertically extending slot 60. The enlarged ends 59 are threaded on the inside to accept plugs 61. The position of these plugs with respect to slots 60 determines the amount of air which may pass through the slots 60 and into cylinder 43 on the suction stroke of the pistons 44.

The upper walls of the horizontal portions of conduits 58 have an opening 62 for the passage of liquid fuel from chamber 1. The extent to which liquid fuel may pass through these openings is controlled by needle valves 63, whose stems 64 pass up through and out of the carburettor and terminate in knurled adjusting nuts 65.

The horizontal portion of each conduit 58 is also provided with a check valve 66 (shown in Fig.10) which allows air to be drawn into the cylinders through conduits 58 but prevents liquid fuel from being forced upwards through the conduits on the down stroke of pistons 44.

Outlets 57 connect with horizontal pipes 67 which merge into a single open-ended pipe 68 which extends upwards. The upper open end of this pipe terminates about half way up the height of the vaporising chamber 1 and is provided with a bail 69 which carries a deflecting plate 70 positioned directly over the open end of pipe 68.

The horizontal pipes 67 are provided with check valves 71 which permit the mingled air and fuel to be forced from cylinders 43 by the pistons 44, but which prevent fuel vapour from being drawn from chamber 1 into cylinders 43.

When operating, pistons 44 on the ‘up’ strokes, draw a charge of air and liquid fuel into cylinders 43, and on the ‘down’ stroke, discharge the charge in an atomised condition through pipes 67 and 68, against deflecting plate 70 which further atomises the particles of liquid fuel so that they will readily vaporise. Any portions of the liquid fuel which do not vaporise, drop down into the supply of liquid fuel in the bottom of the vaporising chamber where they are subjected to the vaporising influence of the bubbles of heated air coming from the aerator 10, and may again pass into the cylinders 43.

As previously stated, the vaporised fuel for introduction into the intake manifold of the engine, is taken from the upper portion of the vaporising chamber 1. To ensure that the vapour in this portion of the chamber shall contain no, or substantially no, entrained droplets of liquid fuel, chamber 1 is divided into upper and lower portions by the walls 71 and 72 which converge from all directions to form a central opening 73. With the vaporising chamber thus divided into upper and lower portions which are connected only by the relatively small opening 73, any droplets entrained by the bubbles rising from the aerator 10, will come into contact with the sloping wall 72 and be deflected back into the main body of liquid fuel in the bottom of the chamber. Likewise, the droplets of atomised fuel being forced from the upper end of pipe 68 will, on striking plate 70, be deflected back into the body of liquid fuel and not pass into the upper portion of the chamber.

In order that the speed of operation of the atomising pump may be governed by the speed at which the engine is running, and further, that the amount of air admitted from chamber 7 to the aerator 10, and to passage 13 through connection 12, may be increased as the speed of the engine increases, the valves 18, 19 and 52 and butterfly valve 16 are all connected by a suitable linkage L so that as butterfly valve 16 is opened to increase the speed of the engine, valves 18, 19 and 52 will also be opened.

As shown in Fig.2, the passage of the exhaust gasses from the engine to the heating chamber 4, located between the vaporising chamber 1 and the air chamber 7, is controlled by valve 74. The opening and closing of valve 74 is controlled by a thermostat in accordance with the temperature inside chamber 4, by means of an adjustable metal
rod 75 having a high coefficient of expansion, whereby the optimum temperature may be maintained in the vaporising chamber, irrespective of the surrounding temperature.

From the foregoing description, it will be understood that the present invention provides a carburettor for supplying to internal combustion engines, a comingled mixture of air and liquid fuel vapour free from microscopic droplets of liquid fuel which would burn rather than explode in the cylinders and that a supply of such dry vaporised fuel is constantly maintained in the carburettor.
CARBURETTOR

This patent describes a carburettor design which was able to produce very high mpg figures using the gasoline available in the USA in the 1930s but which is no longer available as the oil industry does not want functional high mpg carburettors to be available to the public.

DESCRIPTION

This invention relates to a device for obtaining an intimate contact between a liquid in a truly vaporous state and a gas, and particularly to such a device which may serve as a carburettor for internal combustion engines and is an improvement on the form of device shown in my Patent No. 1,938,497, granted on 5th December 1933.

In carburettors commonly used for supplying a combustible mixture of air and liquid fuel to internal combustion engines, a relatively large amount of the atomised liquid fuel is not vaporised and enters the engine cylinder more or less in the form of microscopic droplets. When such a charge is ignited in the engine cylinder, only that portion of the liquid fuel which has been converted into the vaporous, and consequently molecular state, combines with the air to give an explosive mixture. The remaining portion of the liquid fuel which is drawn into the engine cylinders remains in the form of small droplets and does not explode imparting power to the engine, but instead burns with a flame and raises the engine temperature above that at which the engine operates most efficiently, i.e. from 160° F. to 180° F.

In my earlier patent, there is shown and described a form of carburettor in which the liquid fuel is substantially completely vaporised prior to its introduction into the engine cylinders, and in which, means are provided for maintaining a reverse supply of “dry” vapour available for introduction into the engine cylinder. Such a carburettor has been found superior to the standard type of carburettor referred to above, and to give a better engine performance with far less consumption of fuel.

It is an object of the present invention to provide a carburettor in which the liquid fuel is broken up and prepared in advance of and independent of the suction of the engine and in which a reserve supply of dry vapour will be maintained under pressure, ready for introduction into the engine cylinder at all times. It is also an object of the invention to provide a carburettor in which the dry vapour is heated to a sufficient extent prior to being mixed with the main supply of air which carries it into the engine cylinder, to cause it to expand so that it will be relatively lighter and will become more intimately mixed with the air, prior to explosion in the engine cylinders.

I have found that when the reserve supply of dry vapour is heated and expanded prior to being mixed with the air, a greater proportion of the potential energy of the fuel is obtained and the mixture of air and fuel vapour will explode in the engine cylinders without any apparent burning of the fuel which would result in unduly raising the operating temperature of the engine.

More particularly, the present invention comprises a carburettor in which liquid fuel vapour is passed from a main vaporising chamber under at least a slight pressure, into and through a heated chamber where it is caused to expand and in which droplets of liquid fuel are either vaporised or separated from the vapour, so that the fuel finally introduced into the engine cylinders is in the true vapour phase. The chamber in which the liquid fuel vapour is heated and caused to expand, is preferably comprised of a series of passages through which the vapour and exhaust gases from the engine pass in tortuous paths in such a manner that the exhaust gasses are brought into heat interchange relation with the vapour and give up a part of their heat to the vapour, thus causing heating and expansion of the vapour.

The invention will be further described in connection with the accompanying drawings, but this further disclosure and description is to be taken merely as an exemplification of the invention and the invention is not limited to the embodiment so described.

DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

Fig.1 is a vertical cross-sectional view through a carburettor embodying my invention.
Fig. 2 is a horizontal sectional view through the main vaporising or atomising chamber, taken on line 2--2 of Fig. 1.

Fig. 3 is a side elevation of the carburettor.
Fig. 4 is a detail sectional view of one of the atomising nozzles and its associated parts.

Fig. 5 is a detail cross-sectional view showing the means for controlling the passage of gasses from the vapour expanding chamber into the intake manifold of the engine.

Fig. 6 is a perspective view of one of the valves shown in Fig. 5.

Fig. 7 is a cross-sectional view showing means for adjusting the valves shown in Fig. 5.

Fig. 8 is a cross-sectional view on line 8--8 of Fig. 7.

Referring now to the drawings, the numeral 1 indicates a main vaporising and atomising chamber for the liquid fuel located at the bottom of, and communicating with, a vapour heating and expanding chamber 2.
The vaporising chamber is provided with a perforated false bottom and is normally filled with liquid fuel to the level. Air enters the space below the false bottom and passes upwards through perforations in the false bottom and then bubbles up through the liquid fuel, vaporising a portion of it.

To maintain the fuel level in chamber, liquid fuel passes from the usual fuel tank (not shown) through pipe into and through a pair of nozzles which have their outlets located in chamber, just above the level of the liquid fuel in it. The pump may be of any approved form but is preferably of the diaphragm type, as such fuel pumps are now standard equipment on most cars.

The nozzles are externally threaded at their lower ends to facilitate their assembly in chamber and to permit them to be removed readily, should cleaning be necessary.

The upper ends of nozzles are surrounded by venturi tubes, having a baffle, located at their upper ends opposite the outlets of the nozzles. The liquid fuel being forced from the ends of nozzles into the restricted portions of the Venturi tubes, causes a rapid circulation of the air and vapour in the chamber through the tubes and brings the air and vapour into intimate contact with the liquid fuel, with the result that a portion of the liquid fuel is vaporised. The part of the liquid fuel which is not vaporised, strikes the baffles and is further broken up and deflected downwards into the upward-flowing current of air and vapour.

Pump is regulated to supply a greater amount of liquid fuel to the nozzles than will be vaporised. The excess drops into chamber and causes the liquid to be maintained at the indicated level. When the liquid fuel rises above that level, a float valve is lifted, allowing the excess fuel to flow out through overflow pipe which leads back to pipe on the intake side of pump. Such an arrangement allows a large amount of liquid fuel to be circulated by pump without more fuel being withdrawn from the fuel tank than is actually vaporised and consumed in the engine. As the float valve will set upon the end of the outlet pipe as soon as the liquid level drops below the indicated level, there is no danger of vapour passing into pipe and from there into pump and interfere with its normal operation.

The upper end of the vaporising and atomising chamber is open and vapour formed by air bubbling through the liquid fuel in the bottom of the chamber and that formed as the result of atomisation at nozzles, pass into the heating and expanding chamber. As is clearly shown in Fig., chamber comprises a series of tortuous passages leading from the bottom to the top. The fuel vapour passes through passages and the exhaust gasses of the engine pass through passages, a suitable entrance and exit being provided for that purpose.

The vapour passing upwards in a zigzag path through passages, will be brought into heat interchange relation with the hot walls of the passages traversed by the hot exhaust gasses. The total length of the passages is such that a relatively large reserve supply of the liquid fuel is always maintained in chamber, and by maintaining the vapour in heat interchange relation with the hot exhaust gasses for a substantial period, the vapour will absorb sufficient heat to cause it to expand, with the result that when it is withdrawn from the top of chamber, it will be in the true vapour phase, and due to expansion, relatively light.

Any minute droplets of liquid fuel entrained by the vapour in chamber will precipitate out in the lower passages and flow back into chamber, or else be vaporised by the heat absorbed from the exhaust gasses during its passage through chamber.

The upper end of vapour passage communicates with openings adjacent to the upper end of a down-draft air tube leading to the intake manifold of the engine. Valves are interposed in openings, so that the passage of the vapour through them into the air tube may be controlled. Valves are preferably of the rotary plug type and are controlled as described below.

Suitable means are provided for causing the vapour to be maintained in chamber, under a pressure greater than atmospheric, so that when the valves are opened, the vapour will be forced into air tube independent of the engine suction. Such means may comprise an air pump (not shown) for forcing air through pipe into chamber beneath the false bottom, but I prefer merely to provide pipe with a funnel-shaped inlet end and placement just behind the usual engine fan. This causes air to pass through pipe with sufficient force to maintain the desired pressure in chamber, and the air being drawn through the radiator by the fan will be preheated prior to its introduction into chamber and hence will vaporise greater amounts of the liquid fuel. If desired, pipe may be surrounded by an electric or other heater, or exhaust gasses from the engine may be passed around it to further preheat the air passing through it prior to its introduction into the liquid fuel in the bottom of chamber.

Air tube is provided with a butterfly throttle valve and a choke valve, as is customary with carburettors used for internal combustion engines. The upper end of air tube extends above chamber a distance sufficient to receive an air filter and/or silencer, if desired.
A low-speed or idling jet 25 has its upper end communicating with the passage through air tube 20 adjacent to the throttling valve 24 and its lower end extending into the liquid fuel in the bottom of chamber 1, for supplying fuel to the engine when the valves are in a position such as to close the passages 19. However, the passage through idling jet 25 is so small that under normal operations, the suction on it is not sufficient to lift fuel from the bottom of chamber 1.

To prevent the engine from backfiring into vapour chamber 2, the ends of the passages 19 are covered with a fine mesh screen 26 which, operating on the principle of the miner's lamp, will prevent the vapour in chamber 2 from exploding in case of a backfire, but which will not interfere substantially with the passage of the vapour from chamber 2 into air tube 20 when valves 21 are open. Air tube 20 is preferably in the form of a venturi with the greatest restriction being at that point where the openings 19 are located, so that when valves 21 are opened, there will be a pulling force on the vapour caused by the increased velocity of the air at the restricted portion of air tube 20 opposite the openings 19, as well as an expelling force on them due to the pressure in chamber 2.

As shown in Fig.3, the operating mechanism of valves 21 is connected to the operating mechanism for throttle valve 24, so that they are opened and closed simultaneously with the opening and closing of the throttle valve, ensuring that the amount of vapour supplied to the engine will, at all times, be in proportion to the demands placed upon the engine. To that end, each valve 21 has an extension, or operating stem 27, protruding through one of the side walls of the vapour-heating and expanding chamber 2. Packing glands 28 of ordinary construction, surround stems 27 where they pass through the chamber wall, to prevent leakage of vapour at those points.

Operating arms 29 are rigidly secured to the outer ends of stems 27 and extend towards each other. The arms are pivotally and adjustably connected to a pair of links 30 which, at their lower ends are pivotally connected to an operating link 31, which in turn, is pivotally connected to arm 32 which is rigidly secured on an outer extension 33 of the stem of the throttle valve 24. Extension 33 also has rigidly connected to it, arm 34 to which is connected operating link 35 leading from the means for accelerating the engine.

The means for adjusting the connection from the upper ends of links 30 to valve stems 27 of valves 21, so that the amount of vapour delivered from chamber 2 may be regulated to cause the most efficient operation of the particular engine to which the carburettor is attached, comprises angular slides 36, to which is connected a valve 39 which is also preferably thermostatically controlled, as for example, by an expanding rod thermostat 40, which extends through chamber 2. However, any other means may be provided for reducing the amount of hot exhaust gasses entering passage 16 when the temperature of the vapour in the chamber reaches or exceeds the optimum.

The carburettor has been described in detail in connection with a down-draft type of carburettor, but it is to be understood that its usefulness is not to be restricted to that particular type of carburettor, and that the manner in which the mixture of air and vapour is introduced into the engine cylinders is immaterial as far as the advantages of the carburettor are concerned.

The term “dry vapour” is used to define the physical condition of the liquid fuel vapour after removal of liquid droplets or the mist which is frequently entrained in what is ordinarily termed a vapour.

From the foregoing description it will be seen that the present invention provides a carburettor in which the breaking up of the liquid fuel for subsequent use is independent of the suction created by the engine, and that after the liquid fuel is broken up, it is maintained under pressure in a heated space for a length of time sufficient to permit all entrained liquid particles to be separated or vaporised and to permit the dry vapour to expand prior to its introduction into and admixture with the main volume of air passing into the engine cylinders.
This patent describes a carburettor design which was able to produce very high mpg figures using the gasoline available in the USA in the 1930s but which is no longer available as the oil industry does not want functional high mpg carburettors to be available to the public.

**DESCRIPTION**

This invention relates to carburettors suitable for use with internal combustion engines and is an improvement on the carburettors shown in my Patents Nos. 1,938,497, granted on 5th December 1933 and 1,997,497 granted on 9th April 1935.

In my earlier patents, an intimate contact between such as the fuel used for internal combustion engines, and a gas such as air, is obtained by causing the gas to bubble up through a body of the liquid. The vaporised liquid passes into a vapour chamber which preferably is heated, and any liquid droplets are returned to the body of the liquid, with the result that the fuel introduced into the combustion chambers is free of liquid particles, and in the molecular state so that an intimate mixture with the air is obtained to give an explosive mixture from which nearer the maximum energy contained in the liquid fuel is obtained. Moreover, as there are no liquid particles introduced into the combustion chambers, there will be no burning of the fuel and consequently, the temperature of the engine will not be increased above that at which it operates most efficiently.

In my Patent No. 1,997,497, the air which is to bubble up through the body of the liquid fuel is forced into and through the fuel under pressure and the fuel vapour and air pass into a chamber where they are heated and caused to expand. The introduction of the air under pressure and the expansion of the vaporous mixture ensures a sufficient pressure being maintained in the vapour heating and expanding chamber, to cause at least a portion of it to be expelled from it into the intake manifold as soon as the valve controlling the passage to it is opened.

In accordance with the present invention, improved means are provided for maintaining the vaporous mixture in the vapour-heating chamber under a predetermined pressure, and for regulating such pressure so that it will be at the optimum for the particular conditions under which the engine is to operate. Such means preferably comprises a reciprocating pump operated by a vacuum-actuated motor for forcing the vapour into and through the chamber. The pump is provided with a suitable pressure-regulating valve so that when the pressure in the vapour-heating chamber exceeds the predetermined amount, a portion of the vapour mixture will be by-passed from the outlet side to the inlet side of the pump, and so be recirculated.

The invention will be described further in connection with the accompanying drawings, but such further disclosure and description is to be taken merely as an exemplification of the invention, and the invention is not limited to that embodiment of the invention.
DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

Fig. 1 is a side elevation of a carburettor embodying the invention.

Fig. 2 is a plan view of the carburettor
Fig. 3 is an enlarged vertical section view.

Fig. 4 is a transverse sectional view on line 4--4 of Fig.3
Fig. 5 is a detail sectional view on line 5--5 of Fig. 3

Fig. 6 is a transverse sectional view through the pump and actuating motor, taken on line 6--6 of Fig. 2
Fig. 7 is a longitudinal sectional view through the pump taken on line 7--7 of Fig. 2

Fig. 8 is a longitudinal sectional view through a part of the pump cylinder, showing the piston in elevation.

In the drawings, a vaporising and atomising chamber 1 is located at the bottom of the carburettor and has an outlet at its top for the passage of fuel vapour and air into a primary vapour-heating chamber 2.

The vaporising chamber 1 is provided with a perforated false bottom 3 and is normally filled with liquid fuel to the level indicated in Fig. 1. Air is introduced via conduit 4 into the space below the false bottom 3, and then through the perforations 5 in the false bottom which breaks it into a myriad of fine bubbles, which pass upwards through the liquid fuel above the false bottom.

Liquid fuel for maintaining the level indicated in chamber 1 passes from the usual fuel tank (not shown) through pipe 6, and is forced by pump 7 through pipe 8 through a pair of nozzles 9 having their outlets located in chamber 1, just above the level of the liquid fuel in it. Pump 7 may be of any approved form but is preferably of the diaphragm type, as such fuel pumps are now standard equipment on most cars.

The nozzles 9 are externally threaded at their lower ends to facilitate their assembly in chamber 1 and to permit them to be readily removed should cleaning become necessary.

The upper ends of nozzles 9 are surrounded by venturi tubes 10 having baffles 11 located at their upper ends opposite the outlets of the nozzles, as is shown and described in detail in my Patent No. 1,997,497. The liquid fuel being forced from the ends of nozzles 9 into the restricted portions of the venturi tubes, causes a rapid circulation of the air and vapour in the chamber through tubes 10 and brings the air and vapour into intimate contact with the liquid fuel, with the result that a portion of the liquid fuel is vaporised. Unvaporised portions of the liquid fuel strike the baffles 11 and are thereby further broken up and deflected downwards into the upward-flowing current of air and vapour.

Pump 7 is regulated to supply a greater amount of liquid fuel to nozzles 9 than will be vaporised. The excess liquid fuel drops into chamber 1 which causes the liquid there to be maintained at the indicated level. When the liquid fuel rises above that level, float valve 12 opens and the excess fuel flows through overflow pipe 13 into pipe 14 which leads back to pipe 6 on the intake side of pump 7. Such an arrangement permits a large amount of liquid fuel to be circulated by pump 7 without more fuel being withdrawn from the fuel tank than is actually vaporised and consumed by the engine. As float valve 12 will set upon the end of the outlet pipe 13 as soon as the liquid level drops below the indicated level, there is no danger of vapour passing into pipe 14 and thence into pump 7 to interfere with its normal operation.

The amount of liquid fuel vaporised by nozzles 9 and by the passage of air through the body of liquid, is sufficient to provide a suitably enriched vaporous mixture for introducing into the passage leading to the intake manifold of the engine, through which the main volume of air passes.
Vapour formed by air bubbling through the liquid fuel in the bottom of chamber 1 and that formed by the atomisation at the nozzles 9, pass from the top of that chamber into the primary heating chamber 2. As is clearly shown in Fig.1, chamber 2 comprises a relatively long spiral passage 15 through which the vaporous mixture gradually passes inwards to a central outlet 16 to which is connected a conduit 17 leading to a reciprocating pump 18 which forces the vaporous mixture under pressure into conduit 19 leading to a central inlet 20 of a secondary heating chamber 21, which like the primary heating chamber, comprises a relatively long spiral. The vaporous mixture gradually passes outwards through the spiral chamber 21 and enters a downdraft air tube 22, leading to the intake manifold of the engine, through an outlet 23 controlled by a rotary plug valve 24.

To prevent the engine from backfiring into vapour chamber 2, the ends of passage 19 are covered with a fine mesh screen 25, which, opening on the principle of a miner's lamp, will prevent the vapour in chamber 2 from exploding in case of a backfire, but will not interfere substantially with the passage of the vapour from chamber 21 into air tube 22 when valve 24 is open.

The air tube 22 is preferably in the form of a venturi with the greatest constriction being at that point where outlet 23 is located, so that when valve 24 is opened, there will be a pulling force on the vaporous mixture due to the increased velocity of the air at the restricted portion of the air tube opposite outlet 23, as well as an expelling force on it due to the pressure maintained in chamber 21 by pump 18.

Both the primary and secondary spiral heating chambers 15 and 21, and the central portion of air tube 22 are enclosed by a casing 26 having an inlet 27 and an outlet 28 for a suitable heating medium such as the gasses coming from the exhaust manifold.

Pump 18, used to force the vaporous mixture from primary heating chamber 2 into and through the secondary chamber 21, includes a working chamber 29 for hollow piston 30, provided with an inlet 31 controlled by valve 32, and an outlet 33 controlled by a valve 34. The end of the working chamber 29 to which is connected conduit 17, which conducts the vaporous mixture from primary heating chamber 2, has an inlet valve 35, and the opposite end of the working chamber has an outlet 36 controlled by valve 37 positioned in an auxiliary chamber 38, to which is connected outlet pipe 19 which conducts the vaporous mixture under pressure to the secondary heating chamber 21. Each of the valves 32, 34, 35 and 37 is of the one-way type. They are shown as being gravity-actuated flap valves, but it will be understood that spring-loaded or other types of one-way valves may be used if desired.

One side of piston 30 is formed with a gear rack 39 which is received in a groove 39a of the wall forming the cylinder of the pump. The gear rack 39 engages with an actuating spur gear 40 carried on one end of shaft 41 and operating in a housing 42 formed on the pump cylinder. The other end of shaft 41 carries a spur gear 43, which engages and is operated by a gear rack 44 carried on a piston 46 of a double-acting motor 47. The particular construction of the double-acting motor 47 is not material, and it may be of a vacuum type commonly used for operating windscreen wipers on cars, in which case a flexible hose 48 would be connected with the intake manifold of the engine to provide the necessary vacuum for operating the piston 45.

Under the influence of the double-acting motor 47, the piston 30 of the pump has a reciprocatory movement in the working chamber 29. Movement of the piston towards the left in Fig.7 tends to compress the vaporous mixture in the working chamber between the end of the piston and the inlet from pipe 17, and causes valve 35 to be forced tightly against the inlet opening. In a like manner, valves 32 and 34 are forced open and the vaporous mixture in that portion of the working chamber is forced through the inlet 31 in the end of the piston 30, into the interior of the piston, where it displaces the vaporous mixture there and forces it into the space between the right-hand end of the piston and the right-hand end of the working chamber. The passage of the vaporous mixture into the right-hand end of the working chamber is supplemented by the partial vacuum created there when the piston moves to the left. During such movement of the piston, valve 37 is maintained closed and prevents any sucking back of the vaporous mixture from the secondary heating chamber 21.

When motor 47 reverses, piston 30 moves to the right and the vaporous mixture in the right-hand end of the working chamber is forced past valve 37 through pipe 19 into the secondary heating chamber 21. At the same time, a vacuum is created behind piston 30 which results in the left-hand end of the working chamber being filled again with the vaporous mixture from the primary heating chamber 2.

As the operation of pump 47 varies in accordance with the suction created in the intake manifold, it should be regulated so that the vaporous mixture is pumped into the secondary heating chamber at a rate sufficient to maintain a greater pressure there than is needed. In order that the pressure in the working chamber may at all times be maintained at the optimum, a pipe 50 having an adjustable pressure-regulating valve 51 is connected between the inlet and outlet pipes 17 and 19. Valve 51 will permit a portion of the vaporous mixture discharged...
from the pump to be bypassed to inlet 17 so that a pressure predetermined by the seating of valve 51 will at all times be maintained in the second heating chamber 21.

Air tube 22 is provided with a butterfly throttle valve 52 and a choke valve 53, as is usual with carburettors adapted for use with internal combustion engines. Operating stems 54, 55 and 56 for valves 52, 53 and 24 respectively, extend through casing 26. An operating arm 57 is rigidly secured to the outer end of stem 55 and is connected to a rod 58 which extends to the dashboard of the car, or some other place convenient to the driver. The outer end of stem 56 of valve 24 which controls outlet 23 from the secondary heating chamber 21 has one end of an operating arm 59 fixed securely to it. The other end is pivotally connected to link 60 which extends downwards and pivotally connects to one end of a bell crank lever 61, rigidly attached to the end of stem 54 of throttle valve 52. The other end of the bell crank lever is connected to an operating rod 62 which, like rod 58, extends to a place convenient to the driver. Valves 24 and 52 are connected for simultaneous operation so that when the throttle valve 52 is opened to increase the speed of the engine, valve 24 will also be opened to admit a larger amount of the heated vaporous mixture from the secondary heating chamber 21.

While the suction created by pump 18 ordinarily will create a sufficient vacuum in the primary heating chamber 2 to cause air to be drawn into and upwards through the body of liquid fuel in the bottom of vaporising chamber 1, in some instances it may be desirable to provide supplemental means for forcing the air into and up through the liquid, and in such cases an auxiliary pump may be provided for that purpose, or the air conduit 4 may be provided with a funnel-shaped intake which is positioned behind the engine fan 63 which is customarily placed behind the engine radiator.

The foregoing description has been given in connection with a downdraft type of carburettor, but it is to be understood that the invention is not limited to use with such type of carburettors and that the manner in which the mixture of air and vapour is introduced into the engine cylinders is immaterial as far as the advantages of the carburettor are concerned.

Before the carburettor is put into use, the pressure-regulating valve 51 in the bypass pipe 50 will be adjusted so that the pressure best suited to the conditions under which the engine is to be operated, will be maintained in the secondary heating chamber 21. When valve 51 has thus been set and the engine started, pump 18 will create a partial vacuum in the primary heating chamber 2 and cause air to be drawn through conduit 4 to bubble upwards through the liquid fuel in the bottom of the vaporising and atomising chamber 1 with the resulting vaporisation of a part of the liquid fuel. At the same time, pump 7 will be set into operation and liquid fuel will be pumped from the fuel tank through the nozzles 9 which results in an additional amount of the fuel being vaporised. The vapour resulting from such atomisation of the liquid fuel and the passage of air through the body of the liquid, will pass into and through spiral chamber 1 where they will be heated by the products of combustion in the surrounding chamber formed by casing 26. The fuel vapour and air will gradually pass inwards through the body of liquid fuel in the bottom of spiral chamber 1, in which they will be vaporised and atomised. The vaporous mixture is further heated in chamber 21 and passes spirally outward to the valve-controlled outlet 23 which opens into air tube 22 which conducts the main volume of air to the intake manifold of the engine.

The heating of the vaporous mixture in the heating chambers 2 and 21, tends to cause them to expand, but expansion in chamber 21 is prevented due to the pressure regulating valve 51. However, as soon as the heated vaporous mixture passes valve 24 and is introduced into the air flowing through intake tube 22, it is free to expand and thereby become relatively light so that a more intimate mixture with the air is obtained prior to the mixture being exploded in the engine cylinders. Thus it will be seen that the present invention not only provides means wherein the vaporous mixture from heating chamber 21 is forced into the air passing through air tube 22 by a positive force, but it is also heated to such an extent that after it leaves chamber 21 it will expand to such an extent as to have a density less than it would if introduced directly from the vaporising and atomising chamber 1 into the air tube 22.

The majority of the liquid particles entrained by the vaporous mixture leaving chamber 1 will be separated in the first half of the outermost spiral of the primary heating chamber 2 and drained back into the body of liquid fuel in tank 1. Any liquid particles which are not thus separated, will be carried on with the vaporous mixture and due to the circulation of that mixture and the application of heat, will be vaporised before the vaporous mixture is introduced into the air tube 22 from the secondary heating chamber 21. Thus only "dry" vapour is introduced into the engine cylinders and any burning in the engine cylinders of liquid particles of the fuel, which would tend to raise the engine temperature above its most efficient level, is avoided.

While the fullest benefits of the invention are obtained by using both a primary and secondary heating chamber, the primary heating chamber may, if desired, be eliminated and the vaporous mixture pumped directly from the vaporising and atomising chamber 1 into the spiral heating chamber 21.
From the foregoing description it will be seen that the present invention provides an improvement over the carburettor disclosed in my Patent No. 1,997,497, in that it is possible to maintain the vaporous mixture in the heating chamber 21 under a predetermined pressure, and that as soon as the vaporous mixture is introduced into the main supply of air passing to the intake manifold of the engine, it will expand and reach a density at which it will form a more intimate mixture with the air. Furthermore, the introduction of the vaporous mixture into the air stream in the tube 22, causes a certain amount of turbulence which also tends to give a more intimate mixture of vapour molecules with the air.
VAPORIZER FOR COMBUSTION ENGINES

This patent describes a carburettor design which was able to produce very high mpg figures using the gasoline available in the USA in the 1930s but which is no longer available as the oil industry does not want functional high mpg carburettors to be available to the public.

DESCRIPTION
This invention relates to fuel vaporising devices for combustion engines and more particularly, is concerned with improvements in devices of the kind where provision is made for using the exhaust gasses of the engines as a heating medium to aid in the vaporisation of the fuel.

One object of the invention is to provide a device which will condition the fuel in such a manner that its potential energy may be fully utilised, thereby ensuring better engine performance and a saving in fuel consumption, and preventing the formation of carbon deposits in the cylinders of the engine and the production of carbon monoxide and other objectionable gasses.

A further object is to provide a device which is so designed that the fuel is delivered to the cylinders of the engine in a highly vaporised, dry and expanded state, this object contemplating a device which is available as an exhaust box in which the vaporisation and expansion of the liquid components is effected at sub-atmospheric pressures and prior to their being mixed with the air component.

A still further object is to provide a device which will condition the components of the fuel in such a manner that they be uniformly and intimately mixed without the use of a carburettor.

A still further object is to provide a device which will enable the use of various inferior and inexpensive grades of fuel.

DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS
Fig.1 is an elevational view of the device as applied to the engine of a motor vehicle.
Fig. 2 is an enlarged view of the device, partially in elevation and partially in section.

Fig. 3 is a section taken along line 3--3 of Fig. 2
Fig. 4 is a section taken along line 4--4 of Fig. 3

Fig. 5 is a fragmentary section taken along line 5--5 of Fig. 3
DESCRIPTION

The device as illustrated, includes similar casings 8 and 9 which are secured together as a unit and which are formed to provide vaporising chambers 10 and 11, respectively, it being understood that the number of casings may be varied. Two series of ribs 12 are formed in each of the vaporising chambers, the ribs of each series being spaced from one another so as to provide branch passages 13 and being spaced from the ribs of the adjacent series to provide main passages 14 with which the branch passages communicate.

The vaporising chambers are closed by cover plates 15. The cover plates carry baffles 16 which are supported in the spaces between the ribs 12. The baffles extend across the main passages 14 and into, but short of the ends of the branch passages 13 to provide tortuous paths. Outlet 10a of chamber 10 is connected by conduit 17 to inlet 11a of chamber 11. Outlet 18 of chamber 11, is connected by conduit 19 with mixing chamber 20 which is located at the lower end of pipe 21 which in turn is connected to and extension 22 of the intake manifold 22a of the engine. Extension 22 contains a valve 23 which is connected by a lever 23a (Fig.1) and rod 23b to a conventional throttle (not shown).

The liquid fuel is introduced into the vaporising chamber 10 through nozzle 24 which is connected by pipe 25 to a reservoir 26 in which the fuel level is maintained by float-controlled valve 27, the fuel being supplied to the reservoir through pipe 28.

In accordance with the invention, ribs 12 are hollow, each being formed to provide a cell 29. The cells in one series of ribs open at one side into an inlet chamber 30, while the cells of the companion series open at one side into an outlet chamber 31. The cells of both series of ribs open at their backs into a connecting chamber 32 which is located behind the ribs and which is closed by a cover plate 33. Casings 8 and 9 are arranged end-to-end so that the outlet chamber of 9 communicates with the inlet chamber of 8, the gasses from the exhaust manifold 34 being introduced into the inlet chamber of casing 9 through extension 34a. The exhaust gasses enter the series of cells at the right hand side of the casing, pass through the cells into the connecting chamber at the rear and then enter the inlet chamber of casing 8. They pass successively through the two series of cells and enter exhaust pipe 35. The exhaust gasses leave the outlet chamber 31, and the path along which they travel is clearly shown by the arrows in Fig.6. As the gasses pass through casings 8 and 9, their speed is reduced to such a degree that an exhaust box (muffler) or other silencing device is rendered unnecessary.

It will be apparent that when the engine is operating a normal temperature, the liquid fuel introduced into chamber 10 will be vaporised immediately by contact with the hot walls of ribs 12. The vapour thus produced is divided into two streams, one of which is caused to enter each of the branch passages at one side of the casing and the other is caused to enter each of the branch passages at the opposite side of the casing. The two streams of vapour merge as they pass around the final baffle and enter conduit 17, but are again divided and heated in a similar manner as they flow through casing 9. Each of the vapour streams is constantly in contact with the highly heated walls of ribs 12. This passage of the vapour through the casings causes the vapour to be heated to such a degree that a dry highly-vaporised gas is produced. In this connection, it will be noted that the vaporising chambers are maintained under a vacuum and that vaporisation is effected in the absence of air. Conversion of the liquid into highly expanded vapour is thus ensured. The flow of the exhaust gasses through casings 8 and 9 is in the opposite direction to the flow of the vapour. The vapour is heated in stages and is introduced into chamber 20 at its highest temperature.

The air which is mixed with the fuel vapour, enters pipe 21 after passing through a conventional filter 36, the amount of air being regulated by valve 37. The invention also contemplates the heating of the air prior to its entry into mixing chamber 20. To this end, a jacket 39 is formed around pipe 21. The jacket has a chamber 40 which communicates with chamber 32 of casing 9 through inlet pipe 41 and with the corresponding chamber of casing 8.

Fig.6 is a section taken along line 6-6 of Fig.4
through outlet pipe 42. A portion of the exhaust gasses is thus caused to pass through chamber 40 to heat the air as it passes through conduit 21 on its way to the mixing chamber. Valve 37 is connected to valve 23 by arms 43 and 43a and link 44 so that the volume of air admitted to the mixing chamber is increased proportionately as the volume of vapour is increased. As the fuel vapour and air are both heated to a high temperature and are in a highly expanded state when they enter the mixing chamber, they readily unite to provide a uniform mixture, the use of a carburettor or similar device for this purpose being unnecessary.

From the foregoing it will be apparent that the components of the fuel mixture are separately heated prior to their entry into mixing chamber 20. As the vapour which is produced is dry (containing no droplets of liquid fuel) and highly expanded, complete combustion is ensured. The potential energy represented by the vapour may thus be fully utilised, thereby ensuring better engine performance and a saving in fuel consumption. At the same time, the formation of carbon deposits in the combustion chambers and the production of carbon monoxide and other objectionable exhaust gasses is prevented. The device has the further advantage that, owing to the high temperature to which the fuel is heated prior to its admission into the combustion chambers, various inferior and inexpensive grades of fuel may be used with satisfactory results.
This patent describes a carburettor design which was able to produce very high mpg figures using the gasoline available in the USA in the 1930s but which is no longer available as the oil industry does not want functional high mpg carburettors to be available to the public.

DESCRIPTION
This invention relates to improvements in vapour fuel systems which are to be used for internal combustion engines.

An object of this invention is to provide a vapour fuel system which will provide a great saving in fuel since approximately eight times the mileage that is obtained by the conventional combustion engine, is provided by the use of this system.

Another object of the invention is to provide a vapour fuel system which is provided with a reservoir to contain liquid fuel which is heated to provide vapour from which the internal combustion engine will operate.

With the above and other objects and advantages in view, the invention consists of the novel details of construction, arrangement and combination of parts more fully described below, claimed and illustrated in the accompanying drawings.

DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS
Fig.1 is an elevational view of a vapour fuel system embodying the invention.
Fig. 2 is an enlarged view, partly in section, showing the carburettor forming part of the system shown in Fig. 1.

Fig. 3 is a transverse sectional view on line 3--3 of Fig. 2.
The reference numbers used in the drawings always refer to the same item in each of the drawings. The vapour fuel system 10 includes a conduit 11 which is connected to the fuel tank at one end and to a carburettor 12 at the opposite end. In conduit 11 there is a fuel filter 13 and an electric fuel pump 14. Wire 15 grounds the pump and wire 16 connects the pump to a fuel gauge 18 on which is mounted a switch 17 which is connected to a battery 19 of the engine by wire 20.

The fuel gauge/switch is of conventional construction and is of the type disclosed in US Patents No. 2,894,093, No. 2,825,895 and No. 2,749,401. The switch is so constructed that a float in the liquid in the gauge, opens a pair of contacts when the liquid rises and this cuts off the electric pump 14. As the float lowers due to the consumption of the liquid fuel in the body, the float falls, closing the contacts and starting pump 14 which replenishes the liquid fuel in the body.

Carburettor 12 includes a dome-shaped circular bowl or reservoir 21 which is provided with a centrally located flanged opening 22 whereby the reservoir 21 is mounted on a tubular throat 23. An apratured collar 24 on the lower end of throat 23 is positioned on the intake manifold 25 of an internal combustion engine 26 and fastenings 27 secure the collar to the manifold in a fixed position.

A vapour control butterfly valve 28 is pivotally mounted in the lower end of throat 23 and valve 28 controls the entrance of the vapour into the engine and so controls its speed.

A fuel pump 29, having an inlet 30, is mounted in the bottom of the reservoir 21 so that the inlet 30 communicates with the interior of the reservoir. A spurt or feed pipe 31 connected to pump 29 extends into throat 23 so that by means of a linkage 32 which is connected to pump 29 and to a linkage for control valve 28 and the foot throttle of the engine, raw fuel may be forced into throat 23 to start the engine when it is cold.
The upper end of throat 23 is turned over upon itself to provide a bulbous hollow portion 33 within reservoir 21. An immersion heater 34 is positioned in the bottom of the reservoir and wire 35 grounds the heater. A thermostat 36 is mounted in the wall of the reservoir and extends into it. Wire 37 connects the thermostat to heater 34 and wire 38 connects the thermostat to the thermostat control 39. Wire 40 connects the control to the ignition switch 41 which in turn is connected to battery 19 via wires 20 and 42.

A pair of relatively spaced parallel perforated baffle plates 43 and 44, are connected to the bulbous portion 33 on the upper end of throat 23, and a second pair of perforated baffle plates 45 and 46 extend inwards from the wall of reservoir 21 parallel to each other and parallel to baffle plates 43 and 44.

The baffle plates are arranged in staggered relation to each other so that baffle plate 45 is between baffle plates 43 and 44 and baffle plate 46 extends over baffle plate 44.

Baffle plate 45 has a central opening 47 and baffle plate 46 has a central opening 48 which has a greater diameter than opening 47. The domed top 49 of reservoir 21, extends into a tubular air intake 50 which extends downwards into throat 23 and a mounting ring 51 is positioned on the exterior of the domed top, vertically aligned with intake 50. An air filter 52 is mounted on the mounting ring 51 by a coupling 53 as is the usual procedure, and a spider 54 is mounted in the upper end of mounting ring 51 to break up the air as it enters ring 51 from air filter 52.

In operation, with carburettor 12 mounted on the internal combustion engine instead of a conventional carburettor, ignition switch 41 is turned on. Current from battery 19 will cause pump 14 to move liquid fuel into reservoir 21 until float switch 18 cuts the pump off when the liquid fuel A has reached level B in the reservoir. The control 39 is adjusted so that thermostat 36 will operate heater 34 until the liquid fuel has reached a temperature of 105°F at which time heater 34 will be cut off. When the liquid fuel has reached the proper temperature, vapour will be available to follow the course indicated by the arrows in Fig.2.

The engine is then started and if the foot control is actuated, pump 29 will cause raw liquid fuel to enter the intake manifold 25 until the vapour from the carburettor is drawn into the manifold to cause the engine to operate. As the fuel is consumed, pump 14 will again be operated and heater 34 will be operated by thermostat 36. Thus, the operation as described will continue as long as the engine is operating and the ignition switch 41 is turned on. Reservoir 21 will hold from 4 to 6 pints (2 to 4 litres) of liquid fuel and since only the vapour from the heated fuel will cause the carburettor 12 to run the engine, the engine will operate for a long time before more fuel is drawn into reservoir 21.

Baffles 43, 44, 45 and 46 are arranged in staggered relation to prevent splashing of the liquid fuel within the carburettor. The level B of the fuel in reservoir 21 is maintained constant by switch 18 and with all elements properly sealed, the vapour fuel system 10 will operate the engine efficiently.

Valve 28 controlling the entrance of vapour into intake manifold 25, controls the speed of the engine in the same manner as the control valve in a conventional carburettor.

There has thus been described a vapour fuel system embodying the invention and it is believed that the structure and operation of it will be apparent to those skilled in the art. It is also to be understood that changes in the minor details of construction, arrangement and combination of parts may be resorted to provided that they fall within the spirit of the invention.
This patent describes a carburettor design which was able to produce very high mpg figures using the gasoline available in the USA at the time but which is no longer available as the oil industry does not want functional high mpg carburettors to be available to the public.

**DESCRIPTION**

This invention relates to a carburettor construction. An object of the present invention is to provide a carburettor in which the fuel is treated by the hot exhaust fumes of an engine before being combined with air and being fed into the engine.

Another object of the invention is to provide a carburettor as characterised above, which circulates the fume-laden fuel in a manner to free it of inordinately large globules of fuel, thereby insuring that only finely divided and pre-heated fuel of mist-like consistency is fed to the intake manifold of the engine.

The present carburettor, when used for feeding the six-cylinder engine of a popular car, improved the miles per gallon performance under normal driving conditions using a common grade of fuel, by over 200%. This increased efficiency was achieved from the pre-heating of the fuel and keeping it under low pressure imposed by suction applied to the carburettor for the purpose of maintaining the level of fuel during operation of the engine. This low pressure in the carburettor causes increased vaporisation of the fuel in the carburettor and raises the efficiency of operation.

This invention also has for its objects; to provide a carburettor which is positive in operation, convenient to use, easily installed in its working position, easily removed from the engine, economical to manufacture, of relatively simple design and of general superiority and serviceability.

The invention also comprises novel details of construction and novel combinations and arrangements of parts, which will appear more fully in the course of the following description and which is based on the accompanying drawings. However, the drawings and following description merely describes one embodiment of the present invention, and are only given as an illustration or example.

**DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS**

In the drawings, all reference numbers apply to the same parts in each drawing.
Fig. 1 is a partly broken plan view of a carburettor constructed in accordance with the present invention, shown with a fuel supply, feeding and return system.

Fig. 2 is a vertical sectional view of the carburettor taken on the plane of line 2–2 in Fig. 1.

Fig. 3 is a partial side elevation and partial sectional view of the carburettor, showing additional structural details.

The carburettor is preferably mounted on the usual downdraft air tube 5 which receives a flow of air through the air filter. Tube 5 is provided with a throttle or butterfly valve which controls the flow and incorporates a flow-increasing venturi passage. These common features of the fuel feed to the engine intake manifold are not shown since these features are well known and they are also disclosed in my pending Patent application Serial No.
182,420 now abandoned. The present carburettor embodies improvements over the disclosure of the earlier application.

The present carburettor comprises a housing 6 mounted on air tube 5, and designed to hold a shallow pool of fuel 7, a fuel inlet 8 terminating in a spray nozzle 9, an exhaust gas manifold 10 to conduct heated exhaust gasses for discharge into the spray of fuel coming out of nozzle 9 and for heating the pool of fuel 7 underneath it. Means 11 to scrub the fuel-fumes mixture to eliminate large droplets of fuel from the mixture (the droplets fall into pool 7 underneath), a nozzle tube 12 to receive the scrubbed mixture and to pass the mixture under venturi action into air tube 5 where it is combined with air and made ready for injection into the intake manifold of the engine. Pickup pipe 13 is connected to an outlet 14 for drawing excess fuel from pool 7 during operation of the carburettor.

The system connected to the carburettor is shown in Fig.1, and comprises a fuel tank 15, a generally conventional fuel pump 16 for drawing fuel from the tank and directing it to inlet 8, a fuel filter 17, and a pump 18 connected in series between the fuel tank and outlet 14 to place pipe 13 under suction and to draw excess fuel from the carburettor back to tank 15 for re-circulation to inlet 8.

Carburettor housing 6 may be circular, as shown and quite flat compared to its diameter, so as to have a large flat bottom 20 which, with the cylindrical wall 21, holds the fuel pool 7. Cover 22 encloses the top of the housing. The bottom 20 and cover 22 have aligned central openings through which the downdraft tube 5 extends, this pipe forming the interior of the housing, creating an annular inner space 23.

The fuel inlet 8 is attached to cover 22 by a removable connection. Spray nozzle 9 extends through the cover. While the drawing shows spray-emitting holes 24 arranged to provide a spray around nozzle 7, the nozzle may be formed so that the spray is directional as desired to achieve the most efficient interengagement of the sprayed fuel with the heating gasses supplied by the manifold 10.

The manifold is shown as a pipe 25 which has and end 26 extending from the conventional heat riser chamber (not shown) of the engine, the arrow 27 indicating exhaust gas flow into pipe 25. The pipe may encircle the lower portion of the housing 6, to heat the pool of fuel 7 by transfer of heat through the wall of the housing. The manifold pipe is shown with a discharge end 28 which extends into the housing in an inward and upward direction towards nozzle 9 so that the exhaust gasses flowing in the pipe intermingle with the sprayed fuel and heat it as it leaves the nozzle.

The fuel-scrubbing means 11 is shown as a curved chamber 29 located inside housing 6, provided with a series of baffle walls 30 which cause the fumes-heated fuel mist to follow a winding path and intercept the heavier droplets of fuel which then run down the faces of the baffle walls, through openings 31 in the bottom wall 32 of scrubbing chamber 29 into the interior space 23 of housing 6 above the level of the fuel pool 7.

Pickup pipe 13 is also shown as carried by housing cover 22 and may be adjusted so that its lower open end is so spaced from the housing bottom 20 as to regulate the depth of pool 7, which is preferably below the bottom wall 32 of the scrubbing chamber 29. Since this pipe is subject to the suction of pump 18 through outlet 14 and filter 17, the level of pool 7 is maintained by excess fuel being returned to tank 15 by pump 16.

It will be seen that the surface of pool 7 is subject not only to the venturi action in tube 5, but also to the suction of pump 18 as it draws excess fuel back to fuel tank 15. Thus, the surface of the pool is under somewhat less than atmospheric pressure which increases the rate of vaporisation from the pool surface, the resulting vapour combining with the flow from the scrubbing chamber to the downdraft tube 5.

While this description has illustrated what is now contemplated to be the best mode of carrying out the invention, the construction is, of course, subject to modification without departing from the spirit and scope of the invention. Therefore, it is not desired to restrict the invention to the particular form of construction illustrated and described, but to cover all modifications which may fall within its scope.
CARBURETTOR

This patent describes a carburettor design which was able to produce very high mpg figures using the gasoline available in the USA at the time but which is no longer available as the oil industry does not want functional high mpg carburettors to be available to the public.

ABSTRACT

A carburettor including a housing having a fluid reservoir in the bottom, an air inlet at the top of the housing, a delivery pipe coaxially mounted within the housing and terminating short of the top of the housing, and a porous vaporising filter substantially filling the reservoir. A baffle is concentrically mounted within the housing and extends partially into the vaporising filter in the reservoir to deflect the incoming air through the filter. The level of liquid fuel in the reservoir is kept above the bottom of the baffle, so that air entering the carburettor through the inlet must pass through the liquid fuel and vaporising filter in the reservoir before discharge through the outlet. A secondary air inlet is provided in the top of the housing for controlling the fuel air ratio of the vaporised fuel passing into the delivery pipe.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

It is generally well known that liquid fuel must be vaporised in order to obtain complete combustion. Incomplete combustion of fuel in internal combustion engines is a major cause of atmospheric pollution. In a typical automotive carburettor, the liquid fuel is atomised and injected into the air stream in a manifold of approximately 3.14 square inches in cross-sectional area. In an eight cylinder 283 cubic inch engine running at approximately 2,400 rpm requires 340,000 cubic inches of air per minute. The air velocity in the intake manifold at this engine speed will be approximately 150 feet per second and it will therefore take approximately 0.07 seconds for a particle of fuel to move from the carburettor to the combustion chamber and the fuel will remain in the combustion chamber for approximately 0.0025 seconds.

It is conceivable that in this short period of time, complete vaporisation of the fuel is not achieved and as a consequence, incomplete combustion occurs, resulting in further air pollution. The liquid fuel particles if not vaporised, can deposit on the cylinder walls and dilute the lubricating oil film there, promoting partial burning of the lubricating oil and adding further to the pollution problem. Destruction of the film of lubricating oil by combustion can also increase mechanical wear of both cylinders and piston rings.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The carburettor of this invention provides for the complete combustion of liquid fuel in an internal combustion engine, with a corresponding decrease of air pollutant in the exhaust gasses. This is achieved by supplying completely vaporised or dry gas to the combustion chamber. The primary air is initially filtered prior to passing through a vaporising filter which is immersed in liquid fuel drawn from a reservoir in the carburettor. The vaporising filter continuously breaks the primary air up into small bubbles thereby increasing the surface area available for evaporation of the liquid fuel. Secondary air is added to the enriched fuel-air mixture through a secondary air filter prior to admission of the fuel-air mixture into the combustion chambers of the engine. Initial filtration of both the primary and secondary air removes any foreign particles which may be present in the air, and which could cause increased wear within the engine. The carburettor also assures delivery of a clean dry gas to the engine due to the gravity separation of any liquid or dirt particles from the fuel-enriched primary air.

Other objects and advantages will become apparent from the following detailed description when read in conjunction with the accompanying drawing, in which the single figure shows a perspective cross-sectional view of the carburettor of this invention.
DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The carburettor 40 disclosed here is adapted for use with an internal combustion engine where air is drawn through the carburettor to vaporise the fuel in the carburettor prior to its admission to the engine.

In this regard, the flow of liquid fuel, gas or oil, to the carburettor is controlled by means of a float valve assembly 10 connected to a source of liquid fuel by fuel line 12 and to the carburettor 40 by a connecting tube 14. The flow of liquid fuel through the float valve assembly 10 is controlled by a float 16, pivotally mounted within a float chamber 18 and operatively connected to a float valve 20.

In accordance with the invention, the liquid fuel admitted to the carburettor 40 through tube 14, is completely evaporated by the primary air for the engine within the carburettor and mixed with secondary air prior to admission into a delivery tube 100 which is connected to the manifold 102 of the engine. More specifically, carburettor 40 includes a cylindrical housing or pan 42, having a bottom wall 44 which forms a liquid fuel and filter reservoir 46. A vaporising filter 48 is positioned within reservoir 46 and extends upwards for a distance from the bottom wall 44 of the housing 42. The vaporising filter 48 is used to continuously break up the primary air into a large number of small bubbles as it passes through the liquid fuel in reservoir 46. This increases the surface area per volume of air available for evaporation of the liquid fuel, as described in more detail below. This filter 48 is formed of a three-dimensional skeletal material that is washable and is not subject to breakdown under the operating conditions inside the carburettor. A foamed cellular plastic polyurethane filter having approximately 10 to 20 pores per inch has been used successfully in the carburettor.

Housing 42 is closed at the top by a hood or cover 50 which can be secured in place by any appropriate means. The hood has a larger diameter than the diameter of housing 42 and includes a descending flange 52 and a descending baffle 54. Flange 52 is concentrically arranged and projects outwards beyond the sides of housing 42 to form a primary air inlet 56. Baffle 54 is concentrically positioned inside housing 42 to create a primary air chamber 58 and a central mixing chamber 60.

Primary air is drawn into housing 42 through air inlet 56 and is filtered through primary air filter 62 which is removably mounted in the space between flange 52 and the outside of the wall of housing 42 by means of a screen 64. The primary air filter 62 can be made of the same filtering material as the vaporising filter 48.
As the primary air enters the primary air chamber 58 it is deflected through the liquid fuel in reservoir 46 by means of the cylindrical baffle 54. This baffle extends down from hood 50 far enough to penetrate the upper portion of the vaporising filter 48. The primary air must pass around the bottom of baffle 54 and through both the liquid fuel and the vaporising filter 48 prior to entering the mixing chamber 60.

The level of the liquid fuel in reservoir 46 is maintained above the bottom edge of baffle 54 by means of the float valve assembly 10. The operation of the float valve assembly 10 is well known. Float chamber 18 is located at approximately the same level as reservoir 46 and float 16 pivots in response to a drop in the level of the liquid fuel in the float chamber and opens the float valve 20.

One of the important features of the present invention is the efficiency of evaporation of the liquid fuel by the flow of the large number of bubbles through the reservoir. This is believed to be caused by the continual break up of the bubbles as they pass through the vaporising filter 48. It is well known that the rate of evaporation caused by a bubble of air passing unmolested through a liquid, is relatively slow due to the surface tension of the bubble. However, if the bubble is continuously broken, the surface tension of the bubble is reduced and a continual evaporating process occurs. This phenomenon is believed to be the cause of the high evaporation rate of the liquid fuel in the carburettor of this invention.

Another feature of the carburettor of this invention is its ability to supply dry gas to the central mixing chamber 60 in housing 42. Since the flow of primary air in the central mixing chamber 60 is vertically upwards, the force of gravity will prevent any droplets of liquid fuel from rising high enough in the carburettor to enter the delivery tube 100. The delivery of dry gas to the delivery tube increases the efficiency of combustion and thereby reduces the amount of unburnt gasses or pollutants which are exhausted into the air by the engine.

Means are provided for admitting secondary air into the central mixing chamber 60 to achieve the proper fuel-air ratio required for complete combustion. Such means is in the form of a secondary air filter assembly 80 mounted on an inlet tube 82 provided in opening 84 in hood 50. The secondary air filter assembly 80 includes an upper plate 86, a lower plate 88, and a secondary air filter 90 positioned between plates 86 and 88. The secondary air filter 90 is prevented from being drawn into inlet tube 82 by means of a cylindrical screen 92 which forms a continuation of tube 82. The secondary air passes through the outer periphery of the secondary air filter 90, through screen 92 and into tube 82. The flow of secondary air through tube 82 is controlled by means of a butterfly valve 94 as is generally understood in the art.

Complete mixing of the dry gas-enriched primary air with the incoming secondary air within housing 42, is achieved by means of deflector 96 positioned at the end of tube 82. Deflector 96 includes a number of vanes 98 which are twisted to provide an outwardly-deflected circular air flow into the central mixing chamber 60 and thereby creating an increase in the turbulence of the secondary air as it combines with the fuel-enriched primary air. The deflector prevents cavitation from occurring at the upper end of the outlet tube 100.

The flow of fuel-air mixture to the engine is controlled by means of a throttle valve 104 provided in the outlet or delivery tube 100. The operation of the throttle valve 104 and butterfly valve 94 are both controlled in a conventional manner.

**THE OPERATION OF THE CARBURETTOR**

Primary air is drawn into housing 42 through primary air inlet 56 and passes upwards through primary air filter 62 where substantially all foreign particles are removed from the primary air. The filtered primary air then flows downwards through primary air chamber 58, under baffle 54, through fuel filter reservoir 46, and upwards into central mixing chamber 60. All of the primary air passes through the vaporising filter 48 provided in reservoir 46. The vaporising filter 48 continuously breaks the primary air stream into thousands of small bubbles, reducing surface tension and increasing the air surface available for evaporation of the liquid fuel. Since the outer surface of each bubble is being constantly broken up by the vaporising filter 48 and is in constant contact with the liquid fuel as the bubble passes through the vaporising filter 48, there is a greater opportunity for evaporation of the fuel prior to entering the central mixing chamber 60. The vertical upward flow of the fuel-enriched primary air in the central mixing chamber, ensures that no liquid fuel droplets will be carried into the delivery tube 100.

The fuel-enriched primary air is thoroughly mixed with the secondary air entering through tube 82 by means of the deflector system 96 which increases the turbulence of the primary and secondary air within the central mixing chamber and prevents cavitation from occurring in delivery tube 100. The completely mixed fuel-enriched primary air and the secondary air then pass through delivery tube 100 into the inlet manifold of the engine.
This patent describes a carburettor design which was able to produce very high mpg figures using the gasoline available in the USA at the time but which is no longer available as the oil industry does not want functional high mpg carburettors to be available to the public.

ABSTRACT
A fuel economy system for an internal combustion engine which, when installed in a motor vehicle, overcomes the need for a conventional carburettor, fuel pump and fuel tank. The system operates by using the engine vacuum to draw fuel vapours from a vapour tank through a vapour conduit to a vapour equaliser which is positioned directly over the intake manifold of the engine. The vapour tank is constructed of heavy duty steel, or the like, to withstand the large vacuum pressure and includes an air inlet valve coupled for control to the accelerator pedal. The vapour equaliser ensures distribution of the correct mixture of air and vapour to the cylinders of the engine for combustion, and also includes its own air inlet valve coupled for control to the accelerator pedal. The system utilises vapour-retarding filters in the vapour conduit, vapour tank and vapour equaliser to deliver the correct vapour/air mixture for proper operation. The vapour tank and fuel contained in it, are heated by running the engine coolant through a conduit within the tank. Due to the extremely lean fuel mixtures used by the present invention, gas mileage in excess of one hundred miles per gallon may be achieved.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION
1. Field of the Invention
The present invention is related to internal combustion engines and, more particularly, is directed towards a fuel economy system for an internal combustion engine which, when applied to a motor vehicle, overcomes the need for conventional carburettors, fuel pumps and fuel tanks, and enables vastly improved fuel consumption to be achieved.

2. Description of the Prior Art
The prior art evidences many different approaches to the problem of increasing the efficiency of an internal combustion engine. Due to the rising price of fuel, and the popularity of motor vehicles as a mode of transportation, much of the effort in this area is generally directed towards improving fuel consumption for motor vehicles. Along with increased mileage, much work has been done with a view towards reducing pollutant emissions from motor vehicles.

I am aware of the following United States patents which are generally directed towards systems for improving the efficiency and/or reducing the pollutant emissions of internal combustion engines:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Inventor</th>
<th>Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chapin</td>
<td>1,530,882</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crabtree et al</td>
<td>2,312,151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hietrich et al</td>
<td>3,001,519</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hall</td>
<td>3,191,587</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wentworth</td>
<td>3,221,724</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walker</td>
<td>3,395,681</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holzappfel</td>
<td>3,633,533</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dwyre</td>
<td>3,713,429</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herpin</td>
<td>3,716,040</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gorman, Jr.</td>
<td>3,728,092</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alm et al</td>
<td>3,749,376</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hollis, Jr.</td>
<td>3,752,134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buckton et al</td>
<td>3,759,234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kihin</td>
<td>3,817,233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shih</td>
<td>3,851,633</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burden, Sr.</td>
<td>3,854,463</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Woolridge</td>
<td>3,874,353</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Chapin U.S. Pat. No. 1,530,882 discloses a fuel tank surrounded by a water jacket, the latter of which is included in a circulation system with the radiator of the automobile. The heated water in the circulation system causes the fuel in the fuel tank to readily vaporise. Suction from the inlet manifold causes air to be drawn into the tank to bubble air through the fuel to help form the desired vapour which is then drawn to the manifold for combustion.

The Buckton et al U.S. Pat. No. 3,759,234 advances a fuel system which provides supplementary vapours for an internal combustion engine by means of a canister that contains a bed of charcoal granules. The Wentworth and Hietrich et al U.S. Pat. Nos. 3,221,724 and 3,001,519 also teach vapour recovery systems which utilise filters of charcoal granules or the like.

The Dwyre U.S. Pat. No. 3,713,429 uses, in addition to the normal fuel tank and carburettor, an auxiliary tank having a chamber at the bottom which is designed to receive coolant from the engine cooling system for producing fuel vapours, while the Walker U.S. Pat. No. 3,395,681 discloses a fuel evaporator system which includes a fuel tank intended to replace the normal fuel tank, and which includes a fresh air conduit for drawing air into the tank.

The Fortino U.S. Pat. No. 4,011,847 teaches a fuel supply system wherein the fuel is vaporised primarily by atmospheric air which is released below the level of the fuel, while the Crabtree et al U.S. Pat. No. 2,312,151 teaches a vaporisation system which includes a gas and air inlet port located in a vapourising chamber and which includes a set of baffles for effecting a mixture of the air and vapour within the tank. The Mondt U.S. Pat. No. 3,888,223 also discloses an evaporative control canister for improving cold start operation and emissions, while Sommerville U.S. Pat. No. 4,015,570 teaches a liquid-fuel vaporiser which is intended to replace the conventional fuel pump and carburettor that is designed to mechanically change liquid fuel to a vapour state.

While the foregoing patents evidence a proliferation of attempts to increase the efficiency and/or reduce pollutant emissions from internal combustion engines, no practical system has yet found its way to the marketplace.

**OBJECTS AND SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION**

It is therefore a primary object of the present invention to provide a new and improved fuel economy system for an internal combustion engine which greatly improves the efficiency of the engine.

Another object of the present invention is to provide a unique fuel economy system for an internal combustion engine which provides a practical, operative and readily realisable means for dramatically increasing the gas mileage of conventional motor vehicles.

A further object of the present invention is to provide an improved fuel economy system for internal combustion engines which also reduces the pollutant emissions.

The foregoing and other objects are attained in accordance with one aspect of the present invention through the provision of a fuel vapour system for an internal combustion engine having an intake manifold, which comprises a tank for containing fuel vapour, a vapour equaliser mounted on and in fluid communication with the intake manifold of the engine, and a vapour conduit which connect the tank to the vapour equaliser for delivering fuel vapour from the former to the latter. The vapour equaliser includes a first valve connected to it for controlling the admission of air to the vapour equaliser, while the tank has a second valve connected to it for controlling the admission of air to the tank. A throttle controls the first and second valves so that the opening of the first valve precedes and exceeds the opening of the second valve during operation.
In accordance with other aspects of the present invention, a filter is positioned in the vapour conduit to retard the flow of fuel vapour from the tank to the vapour equaliser. In a preferred form, the filter comprises carbon particles and may include a sponge-like collection of, for example, neoprene fibres. In a preferred embodiment, the filter comprises a substantially tubular housing positioned in series in the vapour conduit, the housing containing a central portion comprising a mixture of carbon and neoprene, and end portions comprising carbon, positioned on each side of the central portion.

In accordance with another aspect of the present invention, a second filter is positioned in the vapour equaliser for again retarding the flow of the fuel vapour to the engine intake manifold. The second filter is positioned downstream of the first valve and in a preferred form, includes carbon particles mounted in a pair of recesses formed in a porous support member. The porous support member, which may comprise neoprene, includes a first recessed portion positioned opposite a vapour inlet port in the vapour equaliser to which the vapour conduit is connected, while a second recessed portion is positioned opposite the intake manifold of the engine.

In accordance with still other aspects of the present invention, a third filter is positioned in the tank for controlling the flow of fuel vapour into the vapour conduit in proportion to the degree of vacuum in the tank. The filter more particularly comprises a mechanism for reducing the amount of fuel vapour delivered to the vapour conduit when the engine is idling and when the engine has attained a steady speed. The throttle acts to close the second valve when the engine is idling and when the engine has attained a steady speed, to thereby increase the vacuum pressure in the tank. In a preferred form, the third filter comprises a frame pivotally mounted within the tank and movable between first and second operating positions. The first operating position corresponds to an open condition of the second valve, while the second operating position corresponds to a closed condition of the second valve. The tank includes a vapour outlet port to which one end of the vapour conduit is connected, such that the second operating position of the frame places the third filter in communication with the vapour outlet port.

More particularly, the third filter in a preferred form includes carbon particles sandwiched between two layers of a sponge-like filter material, which may comprise neoprene, and screens for supporting the layered composition within the pivotable frame. A conduit is positioned on the third filter for placing it in direct fluid communication with the vapour outlet port when the frame is in its second operating position.

In accordance with yet other aspects of the present invention, a conduit is connected between the valve cover of the engine and the vapour equaliser for directing the oil blow-by to the vapour equaliser in order to minimise valve clatter. The tank also preferably includes a copper conduit positioned in the bottom of it, which is connected in series with the cooling system of the motor vehicle, for heating the tank and generating more vapour. A beneficial by-product of the circulating system reduces the engine operating temperature to further improve operating efficiency.

**BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS**

Various objects, features and attendant advantages of the present invention will be more fully appreciated as the same become better understood from the following detailed description of the present invention when considered in connection with the accompanying drawings, in which:
Fig. 1 is a perspective view illustrating the various components which together comprise a preferred embodiment of the present invention as installed in a motor vehicle;

Fig. 2 is a cross-sectional view of one of the components of the preferred embodiment illustrated in Fig. 1 taken along line 2--2
Fig. 3 is a sectional view of the vapour tank illustrated in Fig. 2 taken along line 3--3.

**FIG. 3.**

Fig. 4 is an enlarged sectional view illustrating in greater detail one component of the vapour tank shown in Fig. 3 taken along line 4--4.

**FIG. 4.**
Fig. 5 is a perspective, partially sectional view illustrating a filter component of the vapour tank illustrated in Fig. 2.

Fig. 6 is a cross-sectional view of another component of the preferred embodiment of the present invention illustrated in Fig. 1 taken along line 6–6.
Fig. 7 is a partial side, partial sectional view of the vapour equaliser illustrated in Fig. 6 taken along line 7–7.

Fig. 8 is a side view illustrating the throttle linkage of the vapour equaliser shown in Fig. 7 taken along line 8–8.

Fig. 9 is a longitudinal sectional view of another filter component of the preferred embodiment illustrated in Fig. 1.

Fig. 10 is a view of another component of the present invention.
Fig. 11 is an exploded, perspective view which illustrates the main components of the filter portion of the vapour equaliser of the present invention.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENT

Referring now to the drawings, where parts are numbered the same in each drawing, and more particularly to Fig. 1 which illustrates a preferred embodiment of the present invention as installed in a motor vehicle.

The preferred embodiment includes as its main components a fuel vapour tank 10 in which the fuel vapour is stored and generated for subsequent delivery to the internal combustion engine 20. On the top of fuel vapour tank 10 is mounted an air inlet control valve 12 whose structure and operation will be described in greater detail below.

The internal combustion engine 20 includes a standard intake manifold 18. Mounted upon the intake manifold 18 is a vapour equaliser chamber 16. Connected between the fuel vapour tank 10 and the vapour equaliser chamber 16 is a vapour conduit or hose 14 for conducting the vapours from within tank 10 to the chamber 16.

Reference numeral 22 indicates generally an air inlet control valve which is mounted on the vapour equaliser chamber 16. Thus, the system is provided with two separate air inlet control valves 12 and 22 which are respectively coupled via cables 24 and 26 to the throttle control for the motor vehicle which may take the form of a standard accelerator pedal 28. The air inlet control valves 12 and 22 are synchronised in such a fashion that the opening of the air inlet control valve 22 of the vapour equaliser 16 always precedes and exceeds the opening of the air inlet control valve 12 of the fuel vapour tank 10, for reasons which will become more clear later.
The cooling system of the vehicle conventionally includes a radiator 30 for storing liquid coolant which is circulated through the engine 20 in the well-known fashion. A pair of hoses 32 and 34 are preferably coupled into the normal heater lines from the engine 20 so as to direct heated liquid coolant from the engine 20 to a warming coil 36, preferably constructed of copper, which is positioned within vapour tank 10. I have found that the water circulation system consisting of hoses 32, 34 and 36 serves three distinct functions. Firstly, it prevents the vapour tank from reaching the cold temperatures to which it would otherwise be subjected as a result of high vacuum pressure and air flow through it. Secondly, the heated coolant serves to enhance vapourisation of the fuel stored within tank 10 by raising its temperature. Thirdly, the liquid coolant, after leaving tank 10 via conduit 34, has been cooled to the point where engine 20 may then be run at substantially lower operating temperatures to further increase efficiency and prolong the life of the engine.

Included in series with vapour conduit 14 is a filter unit 38 which is designed to retard the flow of fuel vapour from the tank 10 to the vapour equaliser 16. The precise structure of the filter unit 38 will be described in greater detail below. A thrust adjustment valve 40 is positioned upstream of the filter unit 38 in conduit 14 and acts as a fine adjustment for the idling speed of the vehicle. Positioned on the other side of filter unit 38 in conduit 14 is a safety shut-off valve 42 which comprises a one-way valve. Starting the engine 20 will open the valve 42 to permit the engine vacuum pressure to be transmitted to tank 10, but, for example, a backfire will close the valve to prevent a possible explosion. The tank 10 may also be provided with a drain 44 positioned at the bottom of the tank.

Positioned on the side of the vapour equaliser chamber 16 is a primer connection 46 which may be controlled by a dash mounted primer control knob 48 connected to tank 10 via conduit 47. A conduit 50 extends from the oil breather cap opening 52 in a valve cover 54 of the engine 20 to the vapour equaliser 16 to feed the oil blow-by to the engine as a means for eliminating valve clatter. This is believed necessary due to the extreme lean mixture of fuel vapour and air fed to the combustion cylinders of the engine 20 in accordance with the present invention.

Referring now to Fig.2 and Fig.3, the fuel vapour tank 10 of the present invention is illustrated in greater detail in orthogonal sectional views and is seen to include a pair of side walls 56 and 58 which are preferably comprised of heavy duty steel plate (e.g. 1/2" thick) in order to withstand the high vacuum pressures developed inside it. Tank 10 further comprises top wall 60 and bottom wall 62, and front and rear walls 64 and 66, respectively.

In the front wall 64 of tank 10 is positioned a coupling 68 for mating the heater hose 32 with the internal copper conduit 36. Tank 10 is also provided with a pair of vertically oriented planar support plates 70 and 72 which are positioned somewhat inside the side walls 56 and 58 and are substantially parallel to them. Support plates 70 and 72 lend structural integrity to the tank 10 and are also provided with a plurality of openings 74 (Fig.2) at the bottom of them to permit fluid communication through it. The bottom of tank 10 is generally filled with from one to five gallons of fuel, and the walls of tank 10 along with plates 70 and 72 define three tank chambers 76, 78 and 80 which are, by virtue of openings 74, in fluid communication with one another.

In the top wall 60 of tank 10 is formed an opening 82 for placing one end of vapour conduit 14 in fluid communication with the interior chamber 76 of tank 10. A second opening 84 is positioned in the top wall 60 of tank 10 over which the air inlet control valve 12 is positioned. The valve assembly 12 comprises a pair of conventional butterfly valves 86 and 88 which are coupled via a control rod 90 to a control arm 92. Control arm 92 is, in turn, pivoted under the control of a cable 24 and is movable between a solid line position indicated in Fig.2 by reference numeral 92 and a dotted line position indicated in Fig.2 by reference numeral 92'.

Rod 90 and valves 86 and 88 are journaled in a housing 94 having a base plate 96 which is mounted on a cover 98. As seen in Fig.1, the base plate 96 includes several small air intake ports or apertures 100 formed on both sides of the butterfly valves 86 and 88, which are utilised for a purpose to become more clear later on.

Rod 90 is also journaled in a flange 102 which is mounted to cover 98, while a return spring 104 for control arm 92 is journaled to cover 98 via flange 106.

Extending through the baffle and support plates 70 and 72 from the side chambers 78 and 80 of tank 10 to be in fluid communication with apertures 100 are a pair of air conduits 108 and 110 each having a reed valve 112 and 114 positioned at the ends, for controlling air and vapour flow through it. The reed valves 112 and 114 cooperate with the small apertures 100 formed in the base plate 96 to provide the proper amount of air into the tank 10 while the engine is idling and the butterfly valves 86 and 88 are closed.

Mounted to the front wall 64 of tank 10 is a pivot support member 132 for pivotally receiving a filter element which is indicated generally by reference numeral 134 and is illustrated in a perspective, partially cut away view in Fig.5. The unique, pivotable filter element 134 comprises a frame member 136 having a pin-receiving stub 138 extending along one side member of it. The actual filter material contained within the frame 136 comprises a layer of carbon particles 148 which is sandwiched between a pair of layers of sponge-like filter material which
may, for example, be made of neoprene. The neoprene layers 144 and 146 and carbon particles 148 are maintained in place by top and bottom screens 140 and 142 which extend within, and are secured by, frame member 136. A thick-walled rubber hose 150 having a central annulus 151 is secured to the top of screen 140 so as to mate with opening 82 of top wall 60 (see Fig.2) when the filter assembly 134 is in its solid line operative position illustrated in Fig.2. In the latter position, it may be appreciated that the vapour conduit 14 draws vapour fumes directly from the filter element 134, rather than from the interior portion 76 of tank 10. In contradistinction, when the filter element 134 is in its alternate operative position, indicated by dotted lines in Fig.2, the vapour conduit 14 draws fumes mainly from the interior portions 76, 78 and 80 of tank 10.

Fig.4 is an enlarged view of one of the reed valve assemblies 114 which illustrates the manner in which the valve opens and closes in response to the particular vacuum pressure created within the tank 10. Valves 112 and 114 are designed to admit just enough air to the tank 10 from the apertures 100 at engine idle to prevent the engine from stalling.

Referring now to Fig.6, Fig.7 and Fig.8, the vapour equaliser chamber 16 of the present invention is seen to include front and rear walls 152 and 154, respectively, a top wall 156, a side wall 158, and another side wall 160. The vapour equaliser chamber 16 is secured to the manifold 18 as by a plurality of bolts 162 under which may be positioned a conventional gasket 164.

In the top wall 156 of the vapour equaliser 16 is formed an opening 166 for communicating the outlet end of vapour conduit 14 with a mixing and equalising chamber 168. Adjacent to the mixing and equalising chamber 168 in wall 154 is formed another opening 170 which communicates with the outside air via opening 178 formed in the upper portion of housing 176. The amount of air admitted through openings 178 and 170 is controlled by a conventional butterfly valve 172. Butterfly valve 172 is rotated by a control rod 180 which, in turn, is coupled to a control arm 182. Cable 26 is connected to the end of control arm 182 furthest from the centreline and acts against the return bias of spring 184, the latter of which is journaled to side plate 152 of vapour equaliser 16 via an upstanding flange 188. Reference numeral 186 indicates generally a butterfly valve operating linkage, as illustrated more clearly in Fig.8, and which is of conventional design as may be appreciated by a person skilled in the art.

Positioned below mixing and equalising chamber 168 is a filter unit which is indicated generally by reference numeral 188. The filter unit 188, which is illustrated in an exploded view in Fig.11, comprises a top plastic fluted cover 190 and a bottom plastic fluted cover 192. Positioned adjacent to the top and bottom covers 190 and 192 is a pair of screen mesh elements 194 and 196, respectively. Positioned between the screen mesh elements 194 and 196 is a support member 198 which is preferably formed of a sponge-like filter material, such as, for example, neoprene. The support member 199 has formed on its upper and lower surfaces, a pair of receptacles 200 and 202, whose diameters are sized similarly to the opening 166 in top plate 156 and the openings formed in the intake manifold 18 which are respectively indicated by reference numerals 210 and 212 in Fig.6.

Positioned in receptacles 200 and 202 are carbon particles 204 and 206, respectively, for vapour retardation and control purposes.

Referring now to Fig.9, the filter unit 38 mounted in vapour conduit 14 is illustrated in a longitudinal sectional view and is seen to comprise an outer flexible cylindrical hose 214 which is adapted to connect with hose 14 at both ends by a pair of adapter elements 216 and 218. Contained within the outer flexible hose 214 is a cylindrical container 220, preferably of plastic, which houses, in its centre, a mixture of carbon and neoprene filter fibres 222. At both ends of the mixture 222 are deposited carbon particles 224 and 226, while the entire filtering unit is held within the container 220 by end screens 228 and 230 which permit passage of vapours through it while holding the carbon particles 224 and 226 in place.

Fig.10 illustrates one form of the thrust adjustment valve 40 which is placed within line 14. This valve simply controls the amount of fluid which can pass through conduit 14 via a rotating valve member 41.

In operation, the thrust adjustment valve 40 is initially adjusted to achieve as smooth an idle as possible for the particular motor vehicle in which the system is installed. The emergency shut-off valve 42, which is closed when the engine is off, generally traps enough vapour between it and the vapour equaliser 16 to start the engine 20. Initially, the rear intake valves 12 on the tank 10 are fully closed, while the air intake valves 22 on the equaliser 16 are open to admit a charge of air to the vapour equaliser prior to the vapour from the tank, thus forcing the pre-existing vapour in the vapour equaliser into the manifold. The small apertures 100 formed in base plate 96 on tank 10 admit just enough air to actuate the reed valves to permit sufficient vapour and air to be drawn through vapour conduit 14 and equaliser 16 to the engine 20 to provide smooth idling. The front air valves 22 are always set ahead of the rear air valves 12 and the linkages 24 and 26 are coupled to throttle pedal 28 such that the degree of opening of front valves 22 always exceeds the degree of opening of the rear valves 12.
Upon initial starting of the engine 20, due to the closed condition of rear valves 12, a high vacuum pressure is created within tank 10 which causes the filter assembly 134 positioned in tank 10 to rise to its operative position indicated by solid outline in Fig.2. In this manner, a relatively small amount of vapour will be drawn directly from filter 134 through vapour conduit 14 to the engine to permit the latter to run on an extremely lean mixture.

Upon initial acceleration, the front air intake valve 22 will open further, while the rear butterfly assembly 12 will begin to open. The latter action will reduce the vacuum pressure within tank 10 whereby the filter assembly 134 will be lowered to its alternate operating position illustrated in dotted outline in Fig.2. In this position, the lower end of the filter assembly 134 may actually rest in the liquid fuel contained within the tank 10. Accordingly, upon acceleration, the filter assembly 134 is moved out of direct fluid communication with the opening 82 such that the vapour conduit 14 then draws fuel vapour and air from the entire tank 10 to provide a richer combustion mixture to the engine, which is necessary during acceleration.

When the motor vehicle attains a steady speed, and the operator eases off the accelerator pedal 28, the rear butterfly valve assembly 12 closes, but the front air intake 22 remains open to a certain degree. The closing of the rear air intake 12 increases the vacuum pressure within tank 10 to the point where the filter assembly 134 is drawn up to its initial operating position. As illustrated, in this position, the opening 82 is in substantial alignment with the aperture 151 of hose 150 to place the filter unit 134 in direct fluid communication with the vapour conduit 14, thereby lessening the amount of vapour and air mixture fed to the engine. Any vapour fed through conduit 14 while the filter 134 is at this position is believed to be drawn directly off the filter unit itself.

I have been able to obtain extremely high mpg figures with the system of the present invention installed on a V-8 engine of a conventional 1971 American-made car. In fact, mileage rates in excess of one hundred miles per US gallon have been achieved with the present invention. The present invention eliminates the need for conventional fuel pumps, carburettors, and fuel tanks, thereby more than offsetting whatever the components of the present invention might otherwise add to the cost of a car. The system may be constructed with readily available components and technology, and may be supplied in kit form as well as original equipment.

Obviously, numerous modifications and variations of the present invention are possible in light of the above teachings. For example, although described in connection with the operation of a motor vehicle, the present invention may be universally applied to any four-stroke engine for which its operation depends upon the internal combustion of fossil fuels. Therefore, it is to be understood that within the scope of the appended claims the invention may be practiced otherwise than as specifically described here.

CLAIMS

1. A fuel vapour system for an internal combustion engine having an intake manifold, which comprises:
   (a) A tank for containing fuel vapour;
   (b) A vapour equaliser mounted on and in fluid communication with the intake manifold of the engine;
   (c) A vapour conduit connecting the tank to the vapour equaliser for delivering fuel vapour from the former to the latter;
   (d) A vapour equaliser having a valve connected to it for controlling the admission of air to the vapour equaliser;
   (e) A tank having a second valve connected to it for controlling the admission of air to the tank;
   (f) A throttle for controlling the first and second valves so that the opening of the first valve precedes and exceeds the opening of the second valve.

2. The fuel vapour system as set forth in claim 1, further comprising a filter positioned in the vapour conduit for retarding the flow of fuel vapour from the tank to the vapour equaliser.

3. The fuel vapour system as set forth in claim 2, where the filter comprises carbon particles.

4. The fuel vapour system as set forth in claim 2, where the filter comprises carbon particles and neoprene fibres.

5. The fuel vapour system as set forth in claim 2, where the filter comprises a substantially tubular housing positioned in series in the vapour conduit, the housing containing a central portion comprising a mixture of carbon and neoprene and end portions comprising carbon positioned on each side of the central portion.

6. The fuel vapour system as set forth in claim 1, further comprising a filter positioned in the vapour equaliser, for retarding the flow of the fuel vapour to the engine intake manifold.

7. The fuel vapour system as set forth in claim 6, where the filter is positioned downstream of the first valve.
8. The fuel vapour system as set forth in claim 7, where the filter comprises carbon particles.

9. The fuel vapour system as set forth in claim 8, where the filter further comprises a porous support member having first and second recessed portions for containing the carbon particles, the first recessed portion being positioned opposite a vapour inlet port in the vapour equaliser to which the vapour conduit is connected, the second recessed portion being positioned opposite the intake manifold of the engine.

10. The fuel vapour system as set forth in claim 9, where the porous support member is comprised of neoprene.

11. The fuel vapour system as set forth in claim 1, with a further filter positioned in the tank for controlling the flow of fuel vapour into the vapour conduit in proportion to the degree of vacuum in the tank.

12. The fuel vapour system as set forth in claim 11, where the filter incorporates a method for reducing the amount of fuel vapour delivered to the vapour conduit when the engine is idling and when the engine has attained a steady speed.

13. The fuel vapour system as set forth in claim 12, where the throttle acts to close the second valve when the engine is idling and when the engine has attained a steady speed to thereby increase the vacuum pressure in the tank.

14. The fuel vapour system as set forth in claim 13, where the filter comprises a frame pivotally mounted within the tank and movable between first and second operating positions, the first operating position corresponding to an open condition of the second valve, said second operating position corresponding to a closed condition of the second valve.

15. The fuel vapour system as set forth in claim 14, where the tank includes a vapour outlet port to which one end of the vapour conduit is connected, and where the second operating position of the frame places the filter in direct fluid communication with the vapour outlet port.

16. The fuel vapour system as set forth in claim 15, where the filter includes carbon particles.

17. The fuel vapour system as set forth in claim 16, where the filter includes neoprene filter material.

18. The fuel vapour system as set forth in claim 17, where the filter comprises a layer of carbon particles sandwiched between two layers of neoprene filter material, and a screen for supporting them within the pivotable frame.

19. The fuel vapour system as set forth in claim 18, further comprising a mechanism positioned on the filter for placing the filter in direct fluid communication with the vapour outlet port when the frame is in the second operating position.

20. A fuel vapour system for an internal combustion engine having an intake manifold, which comprises:
   (a) A tank for containing fuel vapour;
   (b) A vapour equaliser mounted on, and in fluid communication with, the intake manifold of the engine;
   (c) A vapour conduit connecting the tank to the vapour equaliser for delivering fuel vapour from the former to the latter;
   (d) A vapour equaliser having a first valve connected to it for controlling the admission of air to the vapour equaliser;
   (e) A tank having a second valve connected to it for controlling the admission of air to the tank;
   (f) A filter positioned in the vapour conduit for retarding the flow of the fuel vapour from the tank to the vapour equaliser means.

21. The fuel vapour system as set forth in claim 20, where the filter comprises a substantially tubular housing positioned in series in the vapour conduit, the housing containing a central portion comprising a mixture of carbon and neoprene and end portions comprising carbon positioned on each side of the central portion.

22. A fuel vapour system for an internal combustion engine having an intake manifold, which comprises:
   (a) A tank for containing fuel vapour;
   (b) A vapour equaliser mounted on and in fluid communication with the intake manifold of the engine;
   (c) A vapour conduit connecting the tank to the vapour equaliser for delivering fuel vapour from the former to the latter;
   (d) The vapour equaliser having a first valve connected to it for controlling the admission of air to the vapour equaliser;
   (e) The tank having a second valve connected to it for controlling the admission of air to the tank;
(f) A filter positioned in the vapour equaliser for retarding the flow of the fuel vapour to the engine intake manifold.

23. The fuel vapour system as set forth in claim 22, where the filter is positioned downstream of the first valve, the filter comprises carbon particles and a porous support member having first and second recessed portions for containing the carbon particles, the first recessed portion being positioned opposite a vapour inlet port in the vapour equaliser to which the vapour conduit is connected, the second recessed portion being positioned opposite the intake manifold of the engine, and where the porous support member is comprised of neoprene.
Scientific Papers

The following links connect to various scientific papers and documents of interest. As web-based resources are very prone to change and disappear, if any of these links cease to work, then a successful link may be established by changing the "www.panaceauniversity.org" section of the link to "www.free-energy-info.co.uk". If you download any of these to read, I suggest that you store them on your local drive in case they become unavailable at a later date.

http://www.panaceauniversity.org/CALC.XLS  (an electronics calculation spreadsheet which needs Excel)
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P1.pdf  4 Mb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P2.pdf  360 Kb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P3.pdf  388 Kb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P4.pdf  321 Kb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P5.pdf  151 Kb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P6.pdf  63 Kb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P7.pdf  600 Kb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P8.pdf  3.5 Mb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P9.pdf  303 Kb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P10.pdf  68 Kb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P11.pdf  106 Kb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P12.pdf  223 Kb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P13.pdf  347 Kb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P14.pdf  711 Kb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P15.pdf  215 Kb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P16.pdf  2.5 Mb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P17.pdf  62 Kb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P18.pdf  8 Mb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P21.pdf  754 Kb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P22.pdf  13.3 Mb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P23.pdf  6.9 Mb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P24.pdf  10 Mb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P25.pdf  1.5 Mb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P31.pdf  14.5 Mb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P32.pdf  605 Kb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P33.pdf  632 Kb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P34.pdf  488 Kb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P41.pdf  3.2 Mb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P42.pdf  2.5 Mb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P63.pdf  181 Kb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P64.pdf  599 Kb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P65.pdf  592 Kb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/P66.pdf  450 Kb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/Magnetic_Motor.pdf  511 Kb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/Maxwell.pdf  2.2 Mb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/McKay1.pdf  1.4 Mb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/McKay2.pdf  499 Kb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/McKay3.pdf  271 Kb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/McKay4.pdf  987 Kb
http://www.panaceauniversity.org/McKay5.pdf  948 Kb